



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

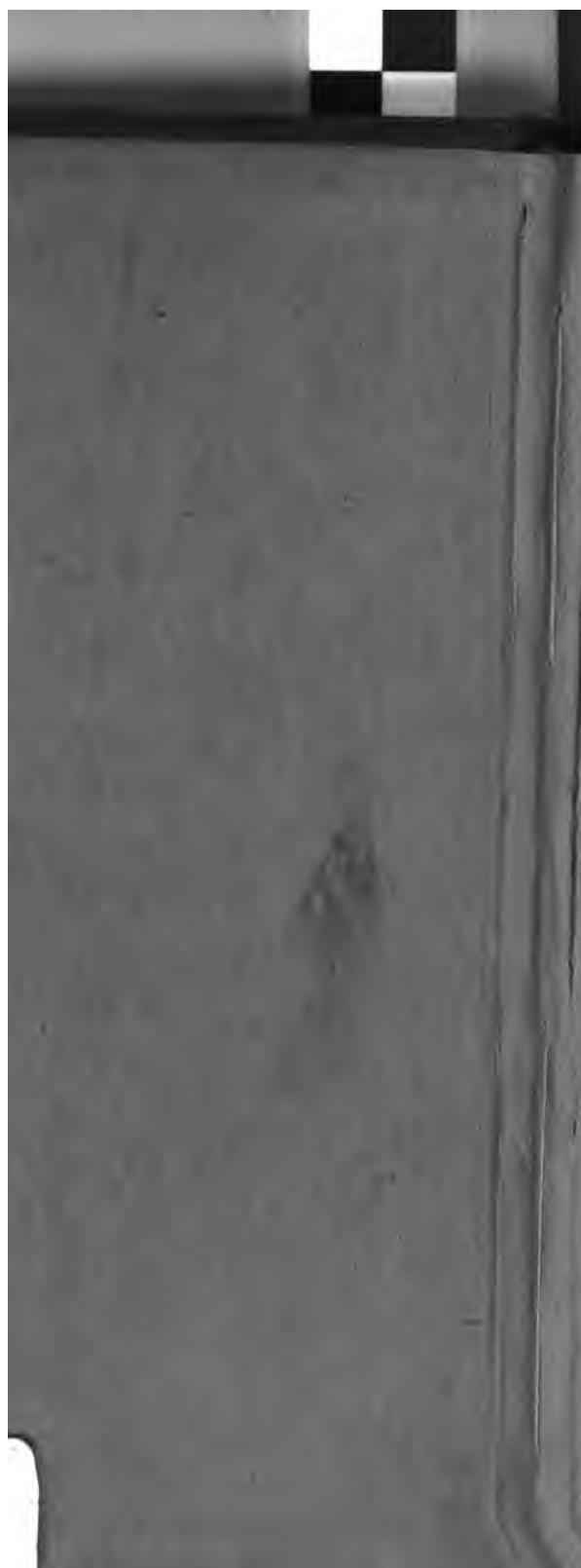
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





Wichita  
—  
—







SCIENCE DE L'






A TEXT-BOOK  
OF  
ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

---

RICHTER  
— — —  
ANSCHÜTZ  
—  
SMITH



**VOLUME I OF THIS WORK INCLUDES THE  
CHEMISTRY OF THE ALIPHATIC SERIES**

VICTOR VON RICHTER'S

ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

OR

CHEMISTRY

OF THE

CARBON COMPOUNDS

EDITED BY

PROF. R. ANSCHÜTZ

UNIVERSITY OF BONN

(ASSISTED BY DR. G. SCHROETER)

AUTHORIZED TRANSLATION

BY

EDGAR F. SMITH

PROFESSOR OF CHEMISTRY, UNIVERSITY OF PENNSYLVANIA

Third American from the Eighth German Edition

VOLUME II

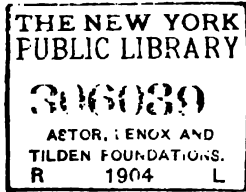
CARBOCYCLIC AND HETEROCYCLIC SERIES

PHILADELPHIA

P. BLAKISTON'S SON & CO.

1012 WALNUT STREET

1902



---

Copyright, 1900, by P. Blakiston's Son & Co.

---

WROY WAB  
CLUB  
VABOL

---

WM. F. FELL & CO.,  
ELECTROTYPERS AND PRINTERS,  
1220-24 BANCOR STREET,  
PHILADELPHIA.



# PREFACE

TO THE

## THIRD AMERICAN EDITION.

---

In the preparation of the second volume of von Richter's organic chemistry Professor Anschütz availed himself of the services of all his colleagues who were especially interested in the experimental development of the chapters considered in the present text, so that the reader may rely upon its statements, which the translator has conscientiously striven to give a simple and correct English rendering.

The preparation of the index to this volume is due to the patient and painstaking efforts of Messrs. Walter T. Taggart, Owen L. Shinn, and J. Bird Moyer, to whom the translator would here acknowledge his deep obligations for the material aid thus given him in completing a work which has extended over a period of three years.



# CONTENTS.

## II. CARBOCYCLIC COMPOUNDS, 17.

Methods of Ring-formation in the case of the Cycloparaffins, 19.

### I. TRI-, TETRA-, PENTA-, AND HEPTACARBOCYCLIC COMPOUNDS, 22.

- A. Trimethylene Group, 22. *Trimethylene*, 22. Trimethylene Carboxylic Acids, 22.
- B. Tetramethylene Group, 24.
- C. Pentacarbo-cyclic Compounds, 25. Pentamethylene, 25. Alcohols, 26. Ketones, 26. *Adipinketone*, 26. Carboxylic Acids, 27. Alcohol Carboxylic Acids, 27.
- D. Heptacarbo-cyclic Compounds, 28. Suberane, 28. Suberone, 28.

## II. HEXACARBOCYCLIC COMPOUNDS, 29.

### A. AROMATIC COMPOUNDS OR BENZENE DERIVATIVES CONTAINING A SINGLE NUCLEUS, 30.

The Benzene Derivatives, 30. Isomerism of the Benzene Derivatives, 32. Proof of the Equivalence of the Six Hydrogen Atoms in Benzene, 32. Basis of the Determination of Position of the Benzene Substitution Products, 34. Determination of the Positions in Diderivatives, 36. Isomerism of the Benzene Polysubstitution Products, 39. Constitution of the Benzene Nucleus, 39. Benzene Ring-formations, 41. Decompositions of the Benzene Ring, 44. 1. Decomposition by Moderated Oxidation, 44. 2. Decomposition by Simultaneous Chlorination and Oxidation, 44. 3. Decomposition by Reduction in Alkaline Solution, 47.

- 1. Benzene Hydrocarbons Containing a Single Nucleus, 47. BENZENE, 47. Coal Tar, 48. Alkyl Benzenes, 50. TOLUENE, 53. *Cymene*, 56.

- 2. Halogen Derivatives of the Benzene Hydrocarbons, 57.

- 3. Nitrogen Derivatives of the Benzene Hydrocarbons, 63.

- 1. Nitro-derivatives of Benzene and the Alkyl Benzenes, 64. *Nitrobenzene*, 66. Regularities in Substitution, 69.

- 2. Nitroso-derivatives of Benzene and the Alkyl Benzenes, 69.

- 3.  $\beta$ -Alphylhydroxylamines, 70.

- 4. Nitroso- $\beta$ -Alphylhydroxylamines, 70.

- 5. AMIDO-COMPOUNDS, or ANILINES, 70. A. PRIMARY PHENYLAMINES, 71.

*Aniline*, 74. B. SECONDARY and TERTIARY PHENYLAMINES. Phenylammonium Bases, 77. Alkylen-dianilines, 79. Alkylidene Anilines, 79.

- C. POLYPHENYLAMINES: Diphenylamine, 79. Triphenylamine, 80.

*Aniline Derivatives of Inorganic Acids*: Aromatic Thionylamines, 80.

Phosphorphenylamines, 80. Arsenphenylamines, 81.

*Carbonic Acid Derivatives of the Primary and Secondary Amines*, 81.

Anilides of Monobasic Fatty Acids, 81. *Formanilide*, 82. *Acetanilide*,

82. Thioanilides, 83. Phenylated Amidines of Formic Acid and Acetic Acid, 83. Phenylated Carbylamines, 83. Phenylamine Derivatives of Oxy-acids, 84. *Phenyl Glycolol*, 84. Homologous Anilido-fatty Acids, 84. Aniline Derivatives of Ketone Carboxylic Acids, 84. Aniline Derivatives of Carbonic Acid, 85. *Carbanilic Acid*, 85. Phenylated Ureas, 85. Carbanilide, 85. Phenylated Derivatives of the Thiocarbamic Acids and of Thiourea, 86. Phenylated Guanidine Derivatives, 88. Phenylated Nitriles and Imides of Carbonic Acid, 89. Phenylisocyanate, 89. Phenyl Mustard Oil, 89. Phenylated Cyanamide Derivatives, 90. Anilides of Dicarboxylic Acids, 90. Oxanilic Acid, 90. Oxanilide, 91. Phenylated Ureides of Dicarboxylic Acids, 91. Aniline Substitution Products, 91. Aniline Haloids, 91. Nitranilines, 92. Nitrodiphenylamines, 93. Nitroso-derivatives of the Primary, Secondary, and Tertiary Aromatic Amines, 93. *Nitrosodimethyl Aniline*, 94. C. DIAMINES, 94. Phenylenediamines, 95. Condensations of o-Diamines, 95. Differences between the o-, m-, and p-Diamines, 96. Triamines, 97. Tetramines, 97. Pentamines, 97.
6. PHENYLNITROSAMINES, 97. 7. PHENYLNITRAMINES, 98. *Diazobenzene Acid*, 98. 8. DIAZO-COMPOUNDS, 99. 9. DIAZOAMIDO-COMPOUNDS, 106. 10. DISDIAZOAMIDO-COMPOUNDS, 106. DIAZO-AMIDO-BENZENE, 108. 11. DIAZO-OXYAMIDO-COMPOUNDS, 110. 12. DIAZOIMIDO-COMPOUNDS, 110. *Diazobenzene Imide*, 111. 13. AZOXY-COMPOUNDS, 111. *Azoxybenzene*, 111. 14. AZO-COMPOUNDS, 112. Azobenzene, 113. AMIDO-AZO-COMPOUNDS, 114. 15. HYDRAZINE COMPOUNDS, 116. Hydrazobenzene, 117. Benzidine and Semidine Rearrangement of Hydrazo-compounds, 117. Phenylhydrazine, 120. Phenylalkyl Hydrazines, 121. Phenylhydrazones, 122. Phenylhydrazine Derivatives of Inorganic Acids, 125. Carboxylic Acid Derivatives of Phenylhydrazine, 125. Fatty Acid Derivatives, 125. Alcohol Acid Derivatives of Phenylhydrazine, 126. Phenylhydrazine Derivatives of the Mono-ketonic Acids, 127. Phenylhydrazine Derivatives of Carbonic Acid, 127. Phenylhydrazine Derivatives of Dicarboxylic Acids, 129. Hydrazidines or Amidrazones, 129. Formazyl Compounds, 129. 16. PHENYLNITROSOHYDRAZINE, 131. 16a. TETRAZONES, 131. 16b. HYDROTETRAZONES, 131. 17. BUZYLENE or DIAZOHYDRAZO-COMPOUNDS, 131.
4. Aromatic Compounds of Phosphorus, Arsenic, Antimony, Bismuth, Boron, Silicon, and Tin, 131.
5. Phenyl Metal Derivatives, 133. Mercury-phenyl, 133.
6. Sulpho-acids, 133. CHLOR-, BROM-, IOD-, IODO-, NITRO-, NITROSO-, and AMIDOBENZENE SULPHONIC ACIDS, 136. Diazobenzene-sulphonic Acid Anhydrides, 137. Amido-azo-benzene-sulphonic Acids, 137. Phenylhydrazine Sulphonic Acids, 138. Sulphinic Acids, 138. Disulphoxides, 139. Sulphones, 139. Diphenylsulphone, 140.
7. Phenols. Monohydric Phenols, 140. Benzophenol, Phenol, Carbollic Acid, 142. Homologous Phenols, 144. Cresols, 143. Thymol, 144. Phenol Alcohol-ethers, 145. Anisol, 146. Phenetol, 146. Phenol Ethers, 146. Acid Esters of Phenol, 146. Phenol Substitution Products, 148. Phenol Haloids, 148. Nitrophenols, 149. *Picric Acid*, 150. Nitroso-compounds of the Phenols, 151. Amidophenols, 152. Diazophenols, 154. Hydrazine Phenols, 155. Azophenols, 155. Oxyazobenzenes, 155. Sulphonic Acids of Phenol, 156. Thio-derivatives of Phenol, 156. DIHYDRIC PHENOLS, 158. *Pyrocatechin*, 159. *Resorcinol*, 160. *Orcinol*, 162. *Hydroquinone*, 162. TRIHYDRIC PHENOLS: *Pyrogallol*, 164. Phloroglucin, 165. TETRAHYDRIC PHENOLS, 166. PENTAHYDRIC and HEXAHYDRIC PHENOLS, 166.
8. Quinones. ORTHOQUINONES, 167. PARAQUINONES, 167. *Quinone*, 167. *Quinone Haloids*, *Nitroquinone*, 169. Amidoquinone, 170. OXYQUINONES and POLYQUINOYLS, 170. *Chloranilic Acid*, 170. Quinone Nitrogen Derivatives, 172. Quinone Dioximes, Quinone-chlorimides, 172. Indophenols and Indanilines, 173. Indamines, 174.

## 9. Phenyl-paraffin Alcohols and their Oxidation Products.

## 1 a: Monohydric Phenyl-paraffin Alcohols and their Oxidation Products, 176.

1. MONOHYDRIC PHENYL-PARAFFIN ALCOHOLS, 176. *Benzyl Alcohol*, 176. *Benzyl Chloride*, 177. *Benzyl Sulphide*, 178. Phenyl Nitro-paraffins: Phenylnitromethane, 178. *Benzylamine*, 179. Benzylhydroxylamines, 180. Substituted Benzyl Alcohols, 180.

2. AROMATIC MONALDEHYDES, 182. *Benzaldehyde*, 183. *Cuminol*, 184. Derivatives of Benzaldehyde: *Benzal Chloride*, 184. *Hydrobenzamide*, 184. *Benzaldoximes*, 185. *Substituted Benzaldehydes*, 186.

3. AROMATIC MONO-KETONES, 188. Acetophenone, 189. Substituted Acetophenones, 190.

4. AROMATIC MONOCARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 191. *Benzoic Acid*, 193. Homologues of Benzoic Acid, 194. Alkyl Benzoic Acids, 194. *Toluic Acids*, 195. *Cumic Acid*, 195. Phenyl Fatty Acids, 196. Hydrocinnamic Acid, 197. Hydratropic Acid, 197.

## Derivatives of the Aromatic Monocarboxylic Acids, 197.

1. Esters, 197. 2. AROMATIC ACID HALOIDS: Benzoyl Chloride, 198. 3. ACID ANHYDRIDES, 198. Benzoic Anhydride, 198. 4. ACID PEROXIDES, 198. 5. THIOACIDS, 199. 6. ACID AMIDES, 199. Benzamide, 199. Hippuric Acid, 200. 7. ACID HYDRAZIDES, 200. 8. ACIDYL-AZIDES, 201. 9. AROMATIC MONOCARBOXYLIC ACID NITRILES, 201. *Benzonitrile*, 202. *Benzyl Cyanide*, 203. 10. AMID-HALOIDS, 203. 11. IMIDE CHLORIDES, 203. 12. PHENYLHYDRAZIDE IMIDE CHLORIDES, 203. 13. IMIDO-ETHERS, 203. 14. THIAMIDES, 204. 15. IMIDO-THIO-ETHERS, 204. 16. AMIDINES, 204. *Benzamidine*, 204. 17. DIOXYTETRAZOTIC ACIDS, 205. 18. HYDRAZIDINES or AMIDRAZONES, 205. 19. FORMAZYL DERIVATIVES, 206. 20. HYDROXAMIC ACIDS, 206. 21. HALOIDS OF BENZHYDROXIMIC ACID, 207. 22. AMIDOXIMES, 208. 23. AROMATIC NITROLIC ACIDS, 208. 24. ETHYL ORTHOBENZOIC ESTER, 208. 25. BENZOTRICHLORIDE, 208. 26. ORTHOBENZOIC AMIDES, 209.

## Substituted Aromatic Monocarboxylic Acids, 209.

1. HALOGEN BENZOIC ACIDS, 209. 2. IODOSO- and IOD-BENZOIC ACIDS, 209. 3. NITROMONOCARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 210. 4. AMIDOMONOCARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 211. *Anthranilic Acid*, 211. *Isatoic Acid*, 212. *Oxindol*, 214. *Hydrocarbostyryl*, 214. 5. Diazobenzoic Acids, 215. 6. DIAZOAMIDOBENZOIC ACIDS, 215. 7. DIAZOIMIDOBENZOIC ACIDS, 215. 8. AZOXYBENZOIC ACIDS, 215. 9. AZOBENZOIC ACIDS, 215. 10. HYDRAZINE-BENZOIC ACIDS, 215. 11. SULPHOBENZOIC ACIDS: Saccharin, 216.

## 1 b: Monohydric Oxyphenyl-paraffin Alcohols and their Oxidation Products, 217.

1. MONOHYDRIC OXYPHENYL-PARAFFIN ALCOHOLS, OR PHENOL ALCOHOLS, 217. *Saligenin*, 217.

2. AROMATIC OXYMON-ALDEHYDES, PHENOL ALDEHYDES, 218. *Salicylic Aldehyde*, 218. *Anisic Aldehyde*, 219. *Protocatechuic Aldehyde*, 219. *Vanillin*, 219. *Piperonal*, 220.

3. PHENOL KETONES, 220.

4. PHENOL MONOCARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 221. *Salicylic Acid*, 222. *Anisic Acid*, 225. *Protocatechuic Acid*, 227. *Gentisinic Acid*, 229. *Orsellic Acid*, 229. *Gallie Acid*, 230. *Tannic Acids*, 231.

## 2. Polyhydric Aromatic Alcohols, in Which Only One Hydroxyl is Present in Each Side-chain, and their Oxidation Products, 232.

1. DI- AND TRIHYDRIC AROMATIC ALCOHOLS: *Xylylene Alcohols*, 232.

2. ALDEHYDE ALCOHOLS, 233.

3. AROMATIC DIALDEHYDES, 233.

4. DI- AND TRIKETONES, 233.

5. ALCOHOL CARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 233. *Phthalide*, 234. *Meconine*, 235.

6. ALDEHYDE ACIDS, 236. Phthalaldehydic Acid, 236. *Opianic Acid*, 237.

7. KETONE CARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 238.
8. DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 239. *Phthalic Acid*, 239. *Isophthalic Acid*, 242. *Uvic Acid*, 242. *Terephthalic Acid*, 243. *Aromatic Dicarboxylic Acids Containing 1 CO<sub>2</sub>H in the Nucleus and One in the Side-chain*, 244. *Aromatic Dicarboxylic Acids Having the Carboxyls in Different Side-groups*, 245.
9. ALDEHYDO-CARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 245.
10. TRICARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 245. *Trimesic Acid*, 245.
11. TETRACARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 246.
12. PENTACARBOXYLIC ACID, 246.
13. HEXACARBOXYLIC ACID, 246. *Mellitic Acid*, 246.
3. Aromatic Polyalcohols, Containing More Than One Hydroxyl Group in the Same Side-chain, and Their Oxidation Products, 247.
  1. *Phenyl Glycols and Phenyl Glycerol*, 247. *Stylerine*, 248.
  2. PHENYLALCOHOL ALDEHYDES: *Phenyltetrose*, 248.
  3. PHENYL KETOLS, 248. *Acetophenone Alcohol*, 248.
  4. PHENYL ALDEHYDE KETONES, 249. *Phenyl Glyoxal*, 249.
  5. PHENYL PARAFFIN DIKETONES: *Benzoyl Acetyl*, 250. *Acetyl Acetophenone*, 250. *Acetophenone Acetone*, 250.
  6. PHENYL PARAFFIN ALCOHOL ACIDS: A. Monoxylalcohol Acids: *Mandelic Acid*, 251. Phenyl-lactic Acids: *Atrolactic Acid*, 252. *Tropic Acid*, 252. *Phenylalanine*, 253. *Tyrosine*, 253. B. Dioxylalcohol Acids: *Atroglyceric Acid*, 255. *Styleric Acid*, 255. C. Trioxylalcohol Acids, 256.
  7. PHENYLPARAFFIN-ALDEHYDE CARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 256.
  8. PHENYLPARAFFIN-KETONE CARBOXYLIC ACIDS: A.  $\alpha$ -Ketone-carboxylic Acids, 257. *Phenylglyoxylic Acid*, 257. *Isatin*, 258. B. Phenylparaffin- $\beta$ -ketone Carboxylic Acids, 259. *Benzoyl Acetic Acid*, 259. C.  $\gamma$ - and  $\delta$ -ketone Carboxylic Acids, 261.
  9. PHENYL-ALCOHOL-KETONE CARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 261.
  10. PHENYL DIKETONE CARBOXYLIC ACIDS: *Quinisatinic Acid*, 261. *Benzoyl Pyroracemic Acid*, 261.
  11. PHENYLPARAFFIN DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 262. *Phenylmalonic Acid*, 262.
  12. PHENYL-ALCOHOL DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 262. *Phenylmalic Acids*, 263.
  13. PHENYLKETONE DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS: *Benzoyl Malonic Ester*, 263.
  14. PHENYL-OXYKETONE DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 264.
  15. PHENYLPARAFFIN TRICARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 264.
  16. PHENYLKETO-TRICARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 264.
  17. PHENYLENE OXYDICARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 264. *Phthalid-acetic Acid*, 264.
  18. PHENYLENE KETONE DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 265. *Phthalonic Acid*, 265.
  19. TRI- and TETRA-CARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 265.
  20. OXYTRI- and PENTACARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 265.
  21. KETONE TRICARBOXYLIC ACIDS, 266.
- Mono-nucleus, Aromatic Substances with Unsaturated Side-chains, 266.
  - 1a. OLEFINE BENZENES: *Styrolene*, 266. 1b. *Acetylene Benzenes*: Phenyl-acetylene, 268. 1c. DIOLEFINE BENZENES.
  - 2a. OLEFINE PHENOLS: A. Olefine Monoxybenzenes, 269. *Chavicol*, 269. B. Olefine Dioxibenzenes, 269. *Eugenol*, 270. *Safrol*, 270. C. Olefine Trioxybenzenes, 270. D. Olefine Tetraoxybenzenes, 271. *Apiol*, 271. 2b. *Acetylene Phenetol*, 271.
  3. PHENYLOLEFINE ALCOHOLS WITH THEIR OXIDATION PRODUCTS. 1a. Phenylolefine Alcohols, 271. *Styrene*, 271. 1b. Oxyphenylolefine Alcohols: *Coniferyl Alcohol*, 272. 2a. Phenylolefine Aldehydes: *Cinnamic Aldehyde*, 272. 2b. Oxyphenylolefine Aldehydes, 272. 3. Phenylidolefine Aldehydes, 272.
  - 4a. PHENYLOLEFINE KETONES: *Benzal Acetone*, 272. 4b. Oxyphenylolefine Ketones, 273. 5. Phenylidolefine Ketones, 273. 6. Phenylidolefine Carboxylic Acids, 273. *Vinyl Benzoic Acid*, 273. *Cinnamic*

*Acid*, 274. Cinnamic Acids Substituted in the Benzene Nucleus, 276. Homologous Cinnamic Acids, 278. *Atropic Acid*, 278. 7. Oxyphenyl-olefine Carboxylic Acids, 279. A. Monoxyphenyl-olefine Carboxylic Acids, 279. *Coumarin*, 281. B. Dioxyphe-nyl-olefine Carboxylic Acids, 282. *Caffeic Acid*, 282. *Umbelliferone*, 283. C. Trioxycinnamic Acids, 283. D. Tetra-oxycinnamic Acids, 283. 8. Phenylacetylene Carboxylic Acids, 284. *Phenyl-propionic Acid*, 284. 9. Phenyldiolefine Carboxylic Acids, 285. *Piperic Acid*, 285.

4. Compounds which may be Viewed as Oxidation Products of Mono-nucleus, Aromatic Polyalcohols with Unsaturated Side-chains, 285. 1. Phenylene Oxyolefine Carboxylic Acids, 285. *Isocoumarin*, 286. *Isocarbostyryl*, 286. 2. Phenylene Aldehyde-carboxylic Acids, 286. 3. Phenylene Dicarboxylic Acids, 286. 4. Phenyl-olefine Ketols, 287. 5 and 6. Phenyl-oxyolefine and Diolefine Carboxylic Acids, 287. 7 and 8. Phenyl-olefine and Diolefine- $\alpha$ -keto-carboxylic Acids, 287. 9. Phenyl-olefine- $\beta$ -ketone Carboxylic Acids, 287. 10. Phenyl-olefine- $\gamma$ -ketone Carboxylic Acids, 288. *Benzal-lavulinic Acid*, 288. 11 and 12. Phenyl-olefine and Diolefine Carboxylic Acids, 288. *Benzal Malonic Acid*, 288. *Phenyl Maleic Acid*, 289. *Cinnamenyl Malonic Acid*, 289. 13. Phenylene Oxyolefine Dicarboxylic Acids, 289. *Phthalyl Acetic Acid*, 289. 14. Phenylene Oxyolefine Tricarboxylic Acids, 290.

#### B. HYDROAROMATIC SUBSTANCES WITH SINGLE NUCLEUS, HYDROBENZENE DERIVATIVES, 290.

1. Hydroaromatic Hydrocarbons, 290. 1a. Hexahydrobenzenes, Naphthenes, 291. *Hexahydrobenzene*, 292. Halogen Substitution Products of the Hexahydrobenzenes, 292. *Benzene Hexachloride*, 293. 1b. Tetrahydrobenzenes, Naphthylenes: Tetrahydrobenzene, 293. 1c. Dihydrobenzenes: *Dihydrobenzene*, 294.
2. Ring-alcohols of the Hydroaromatic Hydrocarbons: *Quinite*, 294. *Quercite*, 295. *Inosite*, 295.
3. Ring-amines of the Hydroaromatic Hydrocarbons, 295.
4. Ring-ketones of the Hydroaromatic Hydrocarbons, 296. a. Ring-ketone of Hexamethylene: *Pimelin Ketone*, 296. *Dihydroresorcinol*, 296. b. Ring-ketones of the Tetrahydrobenzenes, 298. c. Ring-ketones of the Dihydrobenzenes, 299.
5. Hydroaromatic Carboxylic Acids, 299. 1. Hydroaromatic Monocarboxylic Acids: A. Hexahydrobenzoic Acids, 300. B. Hexahydro-oxybenzoic Acids, 301. *Quinic Acid*, 301. C. Ketohydromonocarboxylic Acids, 301. 2. Hydroaromatic Dicarboxylic Acids: Hydrophthalic Acids, 302. Oxy- and Keto-hydrobenzene Dicarboxylic Acids, 304. *Succino-succinic Acid*, 305. 3. Hydrobenzene Tricarboxylic Acids, 306. 4. Hydrobenzene-tetracarboxylic Acids, 306. 5. Hexahydrobenzene-hexacarboxylic Acids, 307.

#### TERPENES, 307.

- A. Olefinic Terpene Group, 309. 1. Olefinic Terpenes, 309. 2. Olefinic Terpene Alcohols, 309. 3. Olefinic Terpene Aldehydes, 310. *Citronellal*, 310. 4. Olefinic Terpenic Acids, 310.
- B. Terpan or Menthane Group. 1. HYDROCARBONS: *Limonene* and *Dipentene Group*, 310. *Terpinene* and *Phellandrene*, 312. Hydroterpenes, 313. 2. ALCOHOLS of the Terpan or Menthane Group: *Menthol*, 313. *Terpine*, 314. *Cineol*, 315. *Terpineols*, 316. 3. BASES of the Terpan or Menthane Group, 317. 4. RING-KETONES of the Terpan or Menthane Group: *Menthone*, 318. *Carvone*, 320.
- C. Camphan Group, 321. 1. Hydrocarbons: *Camphene*, 321. *Pinene*, 322. Decomposition Products of Pinene, 323. *Terebic Acid*, 324. Ter-

*penylic Acid*, 324. 2. ALCOHOLS: *Borneol*, 324. 3. AMINES, 326. 4. KETONES: *Camphor*, 327. Constitution of *Camphor*, 327. Transposition Products of *Camphor*, 328. *Camphoric Acid*, 331. *Fenchones*, 333. RESINS, 334.

# AROMATIC HYDROCARBONS CONTAINING SEVERAL NUCLEI, 335.

## A. Phenylbenzenes and Polyphenyl-fatty Hydrocarbons, 335.

I. PHENYLBENZENE GROUP: *Diphenyl*, 335. *Benzidine*, 337. *Diphenic Acid*, 340. Diphenylbenzenes, 341. Triphenyl Benzenes, 342.

II. BENZYL BENZENE GROUP: *Diphenyl Methane*, 342. *Benzhy-drol*, 344. *Benzophenone*, 345. *Auramine*, 348. Oxybenzo-phenones, 348. Carboxylic Acids: Benzyl-benzoic Acid, 349. *Benzhydrylic benzoic Acid*, 349. Benzophenone-carboxylic Acid, 349. Benzyl Diphenyls, 350. Dibenzyl Benzene, 350.

III. TRIPHENYL METHANE GROUP: *Triphenyl Methane*, 351. *Tetramethyldiamidotriphenyl Methane*, 352. *Triphenyl Carbinol*, 353. *Malachite Green*, 354. *Rosaniline*, 355. *Methyl Violet*, 358. Phenylated Rosanilines, 359. Phenol Derivatives: *Leucaurine*, 360. Benzetnes, 360. Rosamines, 360. *Aurine*, 361. *Rosolic Acid*, 361. *Eupittonic Acid*, 361. Carboxyl Derivatives, 361. *Benzene Phthalin*, 361. *Diphenylphthalide*, 362. Phthaleins, 363. *Fluorescein*, 365. Rhodamines, 366.

IV. DIPHENYL ETHANE GROUP, 367. A. Un-Diphenyl Ethane Derivatives, 367. *Benzilic Acid*, 369. *Triphenyl Acetic Acid*, 369. B. Sym. Diphenyl Ethane Group, 369. *Dibenzyl*, 369. *Stilbene*, 370. *Tolane*, 371. 1. Alcohol and Ketone Derivatives of Dibenzyl, 371. *Desoxybenzoïn*, 371. *Hydrobenzoïn*, 371. *Benzoïn*, 372. *Benzil*, 373. 2. Alcohol Derivatives of Stilbene, 375. *Isobenzil*, 375. Haloid Stilbenes, 375. Carboxylic Acids of the Dibenzyl Group, 375. Tri- and Tetra-phenyl Ethane Group, 377. *Benzpinacone*, 378.

V. DIPHENYL PROPANE GROUP, 378. *Dibenzyl Ketone*, 378. *Dypnone*, 379. Carboxylic Acids, 379.

VI. DIPHENYL BUTANE GROUP, 380. *Diphenyl Diacetylene*, 380. *Diphenacyl*, 380. *Bidesyl*, 381. *Diphenyl Tetraketone*, 381. Carboxylic Acids, 381. *Vulpic Acid*, 382.

VII. DIPHENYLPENTANE GROUP, 383. *Benzamarone*, 383.

VIII. DIPHENYL HEXANE GROUP and higher homologues, 383. *Oxalyldiacetophenone*, 383.

## B. Condensed Nuclei, 384.

1. INDENE AND HYDRINDENE GROUP, 384. *Indene*, 384. *Hydrindene*, 387. *Hydrindone*, 387. *Diketohydrindene*, 388.

2. NAPHTHALENE GROUP, 389. Constitution of the Naphthalene Nucleus, 389. Isomerisms of Naphthalene Derivatives, 390. Naphthalene Ring-formations, 390. Decompositions of the Naphthalene Ring, 392. *Naphthalene*, 394. Naphthalene Homologues, 394.

1. Haloid Naphthalenes, 395. 2. Nitronaphthalenes, 395. Nitronaphthalenes, 396. 4. Naphthylamines, 396. 5. Diazo- and Azo-compounds of Naphthalene, 397. *Naphthalene Red*, 398. 6. Naphthyl Hydrazines, 398. 7. Sulphonic Acids, 398. Naphthylamine Sulphonic Acids, 399. *Naphthionic Acid*, 399. *Congo Red*, 399. *Rocellin*, 400. *Naphthol Black*, 400. 8. Naphthalene Sulphonic Acids, 400. 9. Naphthols, 400. Nitronaphthols, 401. *Martius Yellow*, 401. Amido-naphthols, 401. Azo-naphthols, 401. *Bieberich Scarlet*, 402. *Naphthol Orange*, 402. Naphthol Sulphonic

- Acids, 402. Amido-naphthol Sulphonic Acids, 403. Dioxynaphthalenes, 403. Trioxynaphthalenes, 404. Thionaphthols, 404. 10. *Quinones*, 404. *Juglone*, 405. Nitrogen Derivatives of the Naphthoquinones, 406. Nitrosonaphthols, 406. Naphthoquinone Dioxime, 406. Naphthoquinone Chlorimide, 407. Anils, 407.
11. *Alcohols of the Naphthalene Series and their Oxidation Products*, 407. Naphthobenzyl Alcohol, 407. *Naphthaldehyde*, 407. Naphthyl Methyl Ketone, 407. Naphthoic Acids, 408. Naphthol Carboxylic Acids, 408. *Naphthalic Acid*, 409. Naphthonitriles, 409. Cyan-naphthalenes, 409. 12. Dinaphthyls, 409. Dinaphthyl Methanes, 409. 13. Acenaphthene, 410.
14. *Hydronaphthalene Derivatives*, 410. A. Dihydronaphthalenes, 411. B. Tetrahydronaphthalenes, 411. ac- and ar- Tetrahydronaphthylamines and Naphthols, 412. C. Hexa-, Octo-, Deca-, and Dodeca-hydronaphthalenes, 413.
3. PHENANTHRENE GROUP, 413. *Phenanthraquinone*, 415. *Retene*, 415. *Chrysene*, 416. *Picene*, 416.
4. FLUORENE GROUP, 417. *Retene*-, *Chrysene*-, *Picene*-fluorene, 417. *Bi-fluorene*, 418. *Diphenylene Ketone*, 419. *Fluorenone*, 419. Carboxylic Acids, 419. *Fluoranthene*, 420. *Pyrene*, 420.
5. ANTHRACENE GROUP, 420. *Anthracene*, 422. Alkyl Anthracenes, 422. Substituted Anthracenes, 423. Oxyanthracenes, 423. *Anthrol*, 423. *Anthranol*, 424. Hydroanthracenes, 424. Hydro-anthranol and Oxanthranol, 425. *Anthraquinone*, 425. Anthraquinone Sulphonic Acids, 426. Oxyanthraquinones, 426. *Alizarin*, 427. *Alizarin Orange*, 427. *Purpurin*, 428. Anthraquinone Carboxylic Acids, 429. Naphanthraquinone, 429.
- GLYCOSIDES and PENTOSIDES, 429. *Myronic Acid*, 429. *Arbutin*, 429. *Salicin*, 430. *Amygdalin*, 430. *Coniferin*, 430. *Phloridzin*, 430. *Iridin*, 431. Digitalin, 431.
- PENTOSIDES, RHAMNOSIDES, 431. *Naringin*, 432. *Hesperidin*, 432. *Quercitrin*, 432. *Frangulin*, 432.
- BITTER PRINCIPLES, 432. *Cantharidin*, 432. *Picrotoxin*, 432. *Santonin*, 432.
- NATURAL DYES, 433. *Brasilin*, 433. *Hematoxylin*, 433. *Curcumin*, 433. *Carminic Acid*, 433. *Chlorophyl*, 434.

### III. HETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDS, 435.

Homologous Series, 437.

#### 1. THREE-MEMBERED HETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDS, 444.

A. Monoheteroatomic Three-membered Rings, 444. *Ethylene Oxide*, 444. *Tolane Sulphide*, 444. *Lactimides*, 444. B. Diheteroatomic Three-membered Rings, 444. Hydrazo- and Azimethylene Group, 445. Diazomethane, 445.

#### 2. FOUR-MEMBERED HETEROCYCLIC SUBSTANCES, 446.

A. Monoheteroatomic Four-membered Rings, 446. B. Diheteroatomic Four-membered Rings, 446. *Betaines*, 446.

#### 3. FIVE-MEMBERED HETEROCYCLIC SUBSTANCES, 447.

A. Monoheteroatomic Five-membered Rings, 447.

1. FURFURANE GROUP, 448. *Furfuran*, 448. *Furfurol*, 449. *Pyromucic Acid*, 450. *Uvic Acid*, 451. *Hydrofurfuranes*, 451.
2. THIOPHENE GROUP, 452. *Thiophene*, 452. Thiophene Homologues, 453. Haloid Thiophenes, 454. Nitrothiophenes, 454. *Thiophenin*, 455. Thiophene Carboxylic Acids, 455. Thiophene, 456.

3. SELENOPHENE, 456.
  4. PYRROL GROUP, 456. *Pyrrol*, 456. n-Derivatives of Pyrrol, 458. c-Alkyl Pyrrols, 458. Haloid Pyrrols, 459. *Iodol*, 459. Nitropyrrols, 459. Pyrrol-azo-compounds, 459. Pyrrol Ketones, 460. Pyrrol Carboxylic Acids, 460. *Pyrocoll*, 460. Hydropyrrol Derivatives: *Pyrrolone*, 461. *Pyrrolidine*, 461.
- CONDENSED NUCLEI OF THE FURFURANE, THIOPHENE, AND PYRROL GROUPS, 462.
5. BENZOFURFURANE or COUMARONE GROUP, 463. COUMARONE, 464. *Coumarilic Acid*, 464. Benzodi- and trifurfuranes, 464.
  6. BENZOTHIOPHENE GROUP, 465. *Thionaphthene*, 465.
  7. BENZPYRROL or INDOL GROUP, 465. *Indol*, 465. Homologous Indols, 466. *Skatole*, 467. Indol Sulphonic Acids, 468. Indol Carboxylic Acids, 468. Oxindol Derivatives, 468. *Indoxyl*, 468. *Indoxyllic Acid*, 469. *Indogenides*, 469. Hydrolindol Derivatives, 470. Dihydromethyl Ketol, 470. Indolinons, 470. *Oxindol*, 471. *Dioxindol*, 471. *Isatin*, 471. *Isatin Chloride*, 472. *Indigo Blue*, 473—History, 473. Syntheses, 473. Constitution, 475. Derivatives, 475. *Indigo White*, 476.
  8. DIBENZOFURFURANE, DIPHENYLENE OXIDE, 476.
  9. DIBENZOTHIOPHENE, DIPHENYLENE SULPHIDE, 476.
  10. DIBENZOPYRROL, CARBAZOLE, 477. Hydrocarbazoles, 477. Naphthophenocarbazole, 478. Dinaphtho-carbazole, 478.
- B. Polyheteroatomic Five-membered Rings, 478. Nomenclature of Azoles, 478. Arrangement of Azoles, 479.
1. PYRAZOLE GROUP, 480. Pyrazole or Pyrro-[a]-monazole, 481. Homologous Pyrazoles, 481. Haloid-, nitro-, amidopyrazoles, 483. Pyrazole Sulphonic Acids, 483. Oxypyrazoles, 483. Pyrazole Ketones, 484. Pyrazole Carboxylic Acids, 484. *Pyrazolines*, 485. Pyrazolons, 486. *Pyrazolon*, 487. *Antipyrine*, 488. Pyrazolon Carboxylic Acids, 489. *Pyrazolidines*, 490. *Pyrazolidones*, 490.
  2. *Indazoles* or Benzopyrazoles, 491. Indazolons or Benzo pyrazolons, 493.
  3. ISOXAZOLE GROUP, 493. Isoxazole or furo-[a]-monazoles, 493. Isoxazolons, 495.
  4. INDOXAZENE or BENZISOXAZOLE GROUP, 495. PHENYL INDOXAZENE, 496.
  5. GLYOXALINES or IMIDAZOLES, 496. *Glyoxaline*, 497. *Lophine*, 498. Hydroglyoxalines, 498. *Lysidine*, 499. *Amarine*, 499. Imidazolons, 499. Keto-, thio-, diketo-, imidoketotetrahydroglyoxalines, 499.
  6. BENZOGLYOXALINES or BENZIMIDAZOLES, 499. *Benzimidazole*, 500. *Methyltolimidazole*, 501. Keto-, Thio-, and Imido-benzimidazolines, 502. Phenylene Urea, 502. Phenylene Sulpho-urea, 502.
  7. OXAZOLES or *Furo*-[b]-monazoles, 502. Oxazolines, 503. Alkylene- $\gamma$ -ureas, 503.
  8. BENZOXAZOLES, 503. Benzoxazole or Methenylamidophenol, 504. Oxy-, Thio-, and Amido-benzoxazoles, 504.
  9. THIAZOLES or *Thio*-[b]-monazoles, 504. Amido-thiazole, 505. Oxythiazoles, 505. Thiazole Carboxylic Acids, 506. *Sulphuvinic Acid*, 506. Thiazolines, 506. Alkylene- $\gamma$ -thioureas, 507. Mustard Oil Acetic Acid, 507.
  10. BENZOTHAZOLES, 507. *Benzothiazole* or *Methenyl-amidothiophenol*, 507. *Dehydrothiotoluidine*, 507. *Thioflavin*, 508. *Primulin*, 508. Chlorphenyl Mustard Oil, 508.
- SELENAZOLES, 508. Trimethylene Selenurea, 508.
11. OSOTRIAZOLES or *Pyrro*-[aa<sub>1</sub>]-diazoles, 508. Osotriazole Carboxylic Acids, 509. Pseudo azimidobenzenes or benzosotriazoles, 509. Azammonium Hydroxides, 510.
  12. PYRRO-[ab]-DIAZOLES, 510. Benzopyrro[ab]diazoles, 510. Azimide Benzenes, 510. Azimidazoles, 511.
  13. TRIAZOLES or *Pyrro*-[ab<sub>1</sub>]-diazoles, 511. Triazolons, 513. Urazoles, 514. Guanazoles, 514.

14. FURAZANES, *Azoxazoles* or *Furo*[aa<sub>1</sub>]*diazoles*, 514. Benzo-, Naphtho-, and Phenanthro-furazanes, 515.
15. AZOXIMES or *Furo*[ah<sub>1</sub>]*diazoles*, 515. Ethenyl Benzenyl Azoxime, 515.
16. OXYBIAZOLES or *Furo*[bb<sub>1</sub>]*diazoles*, 516. Keto-, Thio-, and Imido-oxybiazoles, 516.
17. DIAZO-OXIDES or *Benso-* and *Naphtho-furo*[ab]*diazoles*, 516.
18. AZOSULPHIMES or *Thio*[ab<sub>1</sub>]*diazoles*, 517. Dibenzyl Azosulphime, 517.
19. THIO[bb<sub>1</sub>]*DIAZOLES*, 517. Thiobiazolines, 517. Keto- and imido-thiobiazolines, 517.
20. THIO[ab]*DIAZOLES*, 518. Phenylene Diazosulphides or benzothio[ab]-diazoles, 518.
21. DIAZTHIOLES and PIASELENOLS or *Benzothio*[aa<sub>1</sub>]*diazoles* and *Benzoseleno*-[a<sub>1</sub>a<sub>1</sub>]*diazoles*, 518.
22. THIO[abb<sub>1</sub>]*TRIAZOLES* or *TRIAZSULPHOLES*, 518.
23. TETRAZOLES or *Pyrrotriazoles*, 519. *Benzenyl Tetrazotic Acid*, 520. *Amidotetrazotic Acid*, 520. *Diazoetetrazole*, 520. *Tetrazolium Compounds*, 520.

#### 4. SIX-MEMBERED HETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDS, 521.

##### A. Monoheteroatomic Six-membered Rings, 521.

1. Six-membered Rings with an O-member, 521. *α*-Pyrone, Coumalin, 522. Isodehydracetic Acid, 522. *γ*-Pyrones, 522. Meconic Acid, 523. Benzo-*α*-pyrones: Coumarins and Isocoumarins, 523. Benzo-*γ*-pyrones: Chrysin, Fisetin, Quercetin, 523. Dibenzo-pyrones or *Xanthoness*, 524. *Xanthene*, 524. *Xanthone*, 524. *Euxanthone*, 525. *Gentisein*, 525. *Pyronine*, 525.
2. Six-membered Rings Containing one S-member, 525. *Penthiophene*, 525. *Thioxanthene*, 526. *Thioxanthone*, 526.
3. Six-membered Rings Containing an N-member, 526. I. PYRIDINE GROUP, 526. Constitution of Pyridine, 527. Synthesis of the Pyridines, 528. Behavior of Pyridine Bases, 530. Isomerisms, 531. Pyridine, 531. Homologous Pyridines, 532. Halogen Pyridines, 533. Pyridine Sulphonic Acids, 533. Nitro- and amido-pyridines, 533. Oxypyridines, 533. *α*-Pyridine, 534. *Pseudolutidostyryl*, 534. *γ*-Pyridone, 534. *γ*-Lutidone, 534. Dioxypyridines, 534. *Glutaconimide*, 534. Trioxypyridines, 535. *Glutazine*, 535. Pyridyl Alkines, 535. Pyridyl Ketones, 535. Pyridine Carboxylic Acids, 535. Pyridine Monocarboxylic Acids: *Picolinic Acid*, *Nicotinic Acid*, *Isonicotinic Acid*, 536. Pyridine Dicarboxylic Acids: *Quinolinic Acid*, *Cinchomeronic Acid*, 536. Pyridine Tri-, Tetra-, and Penta-carboxylic Acids, 537. Oxypyridine Carboxylic Acids, 537. Phenyl-lutidone Carboxylic Acid, 538. *Comenamic Acid*, 538. *Citrazinic Acid*, 538. Pyridyl Substituted Acids of the Fatty Series: *Pyridyl Lactic Acids*, *Pyridyl Acrylic Acid*, 538. *Hydropyridine Derivatives*, 538. *Piperidine*, 538. Decomposition of the Piperidine Ring, 539. Piperidine Carboxylic Acid, 540. *Eucatne*, 540.

II. QUINOLINE GROUP, 541. Syntheses of Quinoline Derivatives, 542. Behavior of the Quinolines, 544. *Quinoline*, 545. Homologous Quinolines, 545. *Quinaldine*, 546. Haloid, Sulpho-, and Nitro-derivatives of the Quinolines, 547. Amidoquinolines, 547. Oxypyridines, 547. *Analgin*, 547. *Carbostyryl*, 548. *Lepidone*, 548. *Kynurine*, 549. Quinoline Aldehydes and Ketones, 549. Quinoline Carboxylic Acids, 549. *Cinchoninic Acid*, 549. Oxypyridine Carboxylic Acids, 550. *Xanthoquinic Acid*, 550. *Quinic Acid*, 550. *Hydroquinolines*, 550. Tetrahydroquinoline, 551. Decahydroquinoline, 551. *Julole* and *Lilole* Derivatives, 552.

III. CONDENSED QUINOLINES, 552. Naphthoquinoline, 553. Anthraquinoline, 554. *Alizarin Blue*, 554. Phenanthroline, 554. Quinoquinolines, 554.

IV. ISOQUINOLINE GROUP, 554. *Isoquinoline*, 555. Homologous *Isoquinolines*, 556. Oxypyridines, 556. *Isocarbstyryl*, 556. Hydro-

isoquinolines, 557. Tetrahydroisoquinoline, 557. Hydroisocarbostyryl, 557.

V. PHENANTHRIDINE, 557. Phenanthridone, 558.

VI. NAPHTHYRIDINE and NAPHTHINOLINE, 558.

VII. ACRIDINE GROUP, 559. *Acridine*, 560. Chrysaniline, 560. Acridone, 560. Carbazacridine, 561. Quinacridine, 561.

VIII. ANTHRAPHYRIDINES, 561.

#### Alkaloids, 561.

I. PYRIDINE GROUP OF THE ALKALOIDS, 562. *Piperine*, 562. *Conine*, 562. Decomposition and Synthesis of Conine, 563. *Trigonelline*, 565. *Arecaidine*, 565. *Pilocarpine*, 565. *Nicotine*, 565.

II. TROPINE GROUP, 567. *Solanum Bases*, 567. *Atropine*, 567. *Tropelnes*, 567. *Tropine*, 568. Decomposition and Synthesis of *Tropine*, 568, 569. *Cocaine*, 569. *Truxillic Acids*, 569. *Tropa-cocaine*, 569. *Egonine*, 570. *Anhydroecgonine*, 570. *Pelletierine*, 571. *Methyl Granatoline*, 571.

III. QUINOLINE GROUP OF THE ALKALOIDS, 571. *Quinine*, 571. *Cinchonine*, 572. Decomposition and Oxidation of Cinchonine and Quinine, 572, 573. Decomposition of Apocinchene, 574. Synthesis of  $\gamma$ , $\alpha$ -Oxyphenylquinoline, 574. *Strychnos Bases*, 575. *Strychnine*, 575. *Brucine*, 575. *Veratrine*, 575.

IV. ISOQUINOLINE GROUP OF THE ALKALOIDS, 575. *Opium Bases*, 575. *Morphine*, 576. *Papaverine*, 576. *Narcotine*, 577. *Hydrastine*, 578. *Berberine*, 579.

#### B. Polyhetero-atomic Six-membered Rings: AZINES, 579. Nomenclature, 579.

1. A. OXAZINES, 580. Benzorthoxazinone or *o*-Benzaldoxime and *o*-Benzoketoxime Carboxylic Anhydrides, 580.

B. METOXAZINES: Pentoxazolines, 580. Benzometoxazines or Phen-pentoxazolines, 580. Coumazonic Acids, 580. Imido and Thiocoumazones, 581.

C. PAROXAZINES: Morpholines, 581. Benzoparoxazines, 581. Dibenzoparoxazines or Phenoxazines, 581. Phenoxazine Dyes: *Resorufin*, *Gallocyanine*, 582.

2. THIAZINES: A. Orthothiazines, 582. B. Metathiazines, 582. Pen-thiazolines, 583. Benzometathiazines or Phenpenthiazolines, 583. Imido- and Thio-coumothiazones, 583. C. Parathiazines: *Dibenzoparathiazine*, 583. *Thiodiphenylamine*, 583. *Thionine Dyes*, 584. *Methylene Blue*, 584.

3. DIAZINES: A. *Orthodiazines*, 584. *Pyridazine*, 584. Dihydropyridazines, 585. Pyridazinones, 585. Orthopiperazines, 586. Benzorthodiazines: *Cinnoline* and *Phthalazine*, 586. Dibenzorthodiazines: Phenazone, 587. B. Metadiazines: *Pyrimidines*, 587. Cyanalkines, 588. Hydropyrimidines, 588. Uracil Derivatives, 589. Benzometadiazines: *Quinazolines* or *Phenmiasines*, 589. Hydro- and Ketohydroquinazolines, 589, 590, 591. C. *Paradiazines*: Pyrazines or Piazines, 592. Piperazines, 594. Benzoparadiazines: Quinoxalines, 594. Dibenzoparadiazines: Phenazine Group, 597. Amido-phenazines or Eurhodines, 599. Diamidophenazines, 599. Toluyene Red, 599. Oxyphenazines or Eurhodols, 600. Azonium Compounds, 600. Indulines, Indones, and Safranines, 600. Benzoin-dulines, 601. Rosindulines, Isorosindulines, 601. Naphthindulines, 601. Safranines, 602. Fluorindenes, 603.

4. TRIAZINES: A. *Cyanidines*, 604. *Cyanphenine*, 604. B. Unsym. ( $\alpha$ )-*Triazines*, 605. Phen- $\alpha$ -triazines, 605. Phen-dihydro- $\alpha$ -triazines, 606. C.  $\alpha$ - or  $\beta$ -triazines: Phen-dihydro- $\beta$ -triazines, 606.

5. TETRAZINES: A. *Osoletrazones*, 606. Phen-dihydro-tetrazine, 606. Iso-phen-dihydro-tetrazines, 606. *Urazine*, 607.

6. Substances Consisting of Polyhetero-atomic Six-membered Rings, which Contain O- and S-members, in Addition to Nitrogen, 607. Benzenyl-amidoxime-acetic Acid Isoanhydride, 608. Azoxazine Derivatives, 608. *Diazthines*, 608. *Thialdines*, 608.

# A TEXT-BOOK

## OF

# ORGANIC CHEMISTRY.

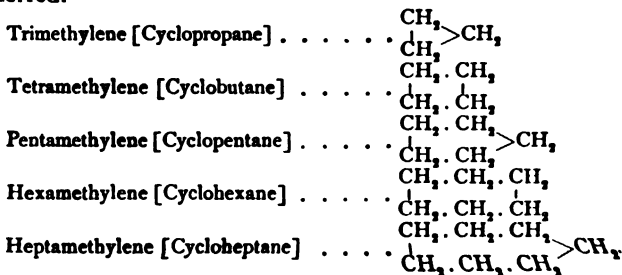
---

## II. CARBOCYCLIC COMPOUNDS.

(Compounds containing carbon rings.)

The derivatives of methane considered in the first volume consist of open carbon chains. Following these are those derivatives which have closed carbon chains or carbon rings. They are called *carbocyclic compounds*. In contrast to them are the azocyclic derivatives, which contain a ring consisting entirely of nitrogen atoms: *e. g.*, hydrazoic acid and its derivatives. The carbocyclic compounds are usually called *isocyclic derivatives*. This latter designation is, however, too comprehensive, as it includes bodies containing a ring composed of atoms of any one element at pleasure. In contradistinction to the isocyclic derivatives there are also the *heterocyclic derivatives*. In the latter, atoms of different elements have taken part in the formation of the ring (I, 78).

The carbocyclic hydrocarbons are the ring-shaped hydrocarbons, consisting of from three to seven methylene groups, which are isomeric with the olefines of like carbon content. They are either called *polymethylenes*, from the number of methylene groups present in them, or they are named after their isomeric olefines, to which is added the prefix R—*i. e.*, *R-olefines* (B. 21, 2720 Anm.; 26, 1085 Anm.); or, in accordance with the decision of the Geneva Conference, they take the name of the normal hydrocarbons with like carbon content, and add to the same the prefix “cyclo”—*e. g.*, *cycloparaffins*. The first and third designations are preferred.



Hexamethylene is also called hexahydrobenzene, and heptamethylene is known as suberane.

Consult B. 29, 587, for the nomenclature of ring-shaped bodies.

Olefines and diolefines followed the normal hydrocarbons. In the same manner we find *cyclo-olefines*, *cyclodiolefines*, and *cyclotrioiefines* attaching themselves to the *cycloparaffins*.

Benzene, of all the carbocyclic forms, demands especial consideration. It is the parent hydrocarbon of the aromatic or benzene derivatives, the most numerous of the compounds of carbon. Accepting, with Aug. Kekulé, the presence in benzene of a ring of six carbon atoms joined by an alternate single and double union to one another, then benzene would be a cyclotrioiefine:



The addition of hydrogen converts benzene into hexahydrobenzene, hexamethylene, or cyclohexane. The transformation products of aromatic derivatives, which can be referred to dihydro- or tetrahydrobenzene—[cyclohexadiën] and [cyclohexene]—as the parent substances, are constantly growing in number. It has become customary to consider them, in conjunction with the hexamethylene or hexahydrobenzene compounds, as *hydroaromatic derivatives*.

Many naturally occurring bodies, particularly the terpenes and camphor, belong in this group. By rigid adherence to the system just developed, every cycloparaffin system would be succeeded by a corresponding cyclo-olefine system having a like number of carbon atoms. However, in order to fully comprehend the hydroaromatic bodies, it is essential to know the aromatic compounds; therefore the discussion of the former will be deferred until the latter have been fully considered. The tricarbo-, tetracarbo-, and pentacarbo-cyclic compounds will be followed by the heptacarbo-cyclic derivatives, which are not very numerous, and lastly will appear the hexacarbo-cyclic compounds.

In many respects the aromatic bodies manifest a peculiar deportment, varying greatly from that of the aliphatic derivatives. However, the hydroaromatic compounds, and also the known tri-, tetra-, penta-, and heptacarbo-cyclic derivatives approach, in their chemical behavior, the saturated aliphatic substances, or, in case they contain pairs of doubly linked carbon atoms in the ring, they resemble the unsaturated aliphatic derivatives. Therefore, these classes of compounds, in contrast to the aromatic bodies, are designated *aliphatic-cyclic* or *alicyclic saturated* and *unsaturated compounds* (B. 22, 769).

The study of carbocyclic derivatives has shown that the trimethylene ring can be more readily ruptured than the more stable pentamethylene or hexamethylene rings, whereas the latter are produced with greater difficulty. It is not certain whether octocarbo-cyclic bodies have really been prepared.

Similar phenomena have been encountered in the formation of certain heterocyclic aliphatic series—e. g., the lactones (1, 342), the lactams (1, 358), and the anhydrides of the dicarboxylic acids (1, 429), etc.

In presenting the oxy-acids (I, 334) a representation of the spacial arrangement or configuration of the carbon atoms was given; this was intended to account for the non-formation of  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -lactones, in comparison with the ease with which  $\gamma$ - and  $\delta$ -lactones are produced.

The *strain theory* of A. v. Baeyer (B. 18, 2278; 23, 1275) has been proposed to explain the varying stability of the tri-, tetra-, penta-, and hexamethylene rings. This theory is based on the assumption that "the four valences of the carbon atom act in lines, which connect the center of a sphere with the solid angles of a regular tetrahedron inscribed within it, and hence form an angle of  $109^\circ 28'$  with each other." These four connecting lines are called the axes.

"The direction of attraction can suffer deviation; however, the magnitude of the latter has increasing tension as the consequence. The assumption of valence forces, acting at an angle, is excluded. The magnitude of the angle of deviation is the measure of the strain. In the case of ethylene the direction of attraction for the two valences of each carbon atom sustains an equally great deviation, until finally the directions have become parallel. The angle of deviation with ethylene is  $\frac{109^\circ 28'}{2} = 54^\circ 44'$ . With trimethylene, which may be imagined to be an equilateral triangle, the angle made by the axes equals  $60^\circ$ , and the deviation of each, therefore,  $\frac{1}{2}(109^\circ 28' - 60^\circ) = 24^\circ 44'$ ."

The following deviations are obtained in a similar manner:

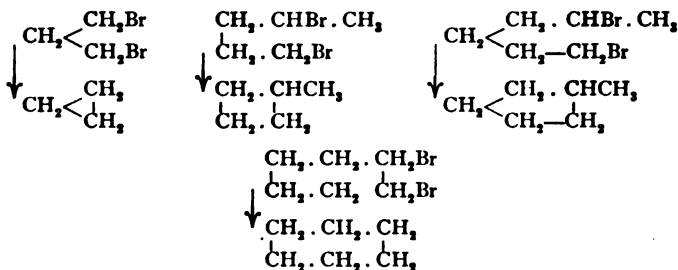
$$\begin{aligned}\text{Tetramethylene } \frac{1}{2}(109^\circ 28' - 90^\circ) &= 9^\circ 44' \\ \text{Pentamethylene } \frac{1}{2}(109^\circ 28' - 108^\circ) &= 0^\circ 44' \\ \text{Hexamethylene } \frac{1}{2}(109^\circ 28' - 120^\circ) &= -5^\circ 16'\end{aligned}$$

It is, of course, presupposed that in the case of tetra-, penta-, and hexamethylene the carbon atoms lie in the same plane—the ring plane. The greatest deviation of the attraction of the two valences has occurred in dimethylene or ethylene. The greatest strain prevails in this body. It is the most unstable ring. It can be torn asunder not only by chlorine, bromine, and hydrogen bromide, but also by iodine. Trimethylene adds to itself with much more difficulty. Tetra-, penta-, and hexamethylene rings no longer behave like unsaturated bodies; they are quite stable in their behavior with chlorine, haloid acids, and potassium permanganate. The determination of the heat of combustion of the simplest cycloparaffins shows an appreciable fall from tri- to hexamethylene (B. 25, R. 496), which harmonizes with the views just expressed. The strain theory of v. Baeyer would indicate that the pentamethylene ring is more readily produced than the hexamethylene ring. This conclusion was the impulse that led to the execution of a series of successful experiments resulting in the formation of pentamethylene derivatives (consult B. 28, 655).

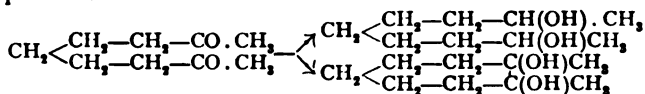
## METHODS OF RING-FORMATION IN THE CASE OF CYCLO-PARAFFINS.

Methods allowing of the conversion of open carbon chains into closed carbon chains demand special consideration. *Nucleus-syntheses* were described as reactions by which carbon atoms, not previously in union with each other, were made to unite (vol. I, 85); hence every transformation of an open chain into a closed carbon chain is a nucleus-synthesis. Indeed, there are well-known nucleus-synthetic methods which, applied to suitable aliphatic substances, lead to ring-formations with the production of cycloparaffins. These facts have already been mentioned at various places in the first volume of this book. They constitute the transition-reactions from the domain of the paraffins to that of the cycloparaffins. The most important of them are, therefore, arranged in a more tangible form:

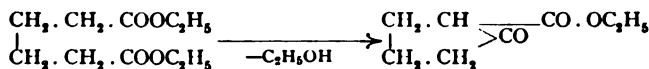
1. Cycloparaffins are produced by the action of sodium (vol. I, 84) upon dibromoparaffins—the hydrobromic acid esters of the glycols:



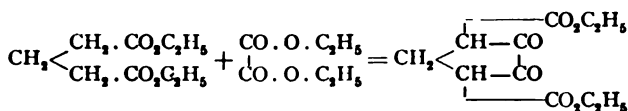
2. *Intramolecular Pinacone Formation.*—Ditertiary glycols, the pinacones, are formed, together with secondary alcohols, in the reduction of ketones. Diacetyl pentane, when reduced, yields not only an aliphatic dissecondary glycol, but a ditertiary glycol, a cyclic pinacone:



3a. *Intramolecular Acetoacetic Ester Condensation.*—When sodium acts upon adipic ester, an intramolecular condensation corresponding to the acetoacetic ester formation takes place, and the product is a cyclic  $\beta$ -ketone carboxylic ester:

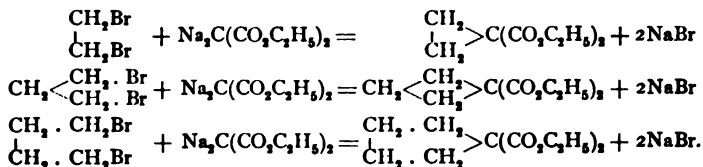


3b. *Oxalo-acetic Ester Condensation.*—Diketopentamethylene dicarboxylic ester results from the action of sodium ethylate upon oxalic ester and glutaric ester:



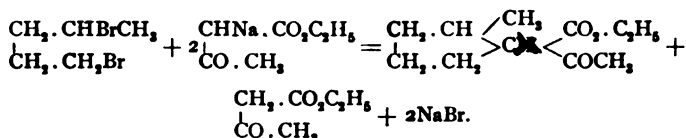
Triketopentamethylene dicarboxylic ester is similarly formed from oxalic ester and acetone dicarboxylic ester.

4. *Malonic Ester Syntheses and Acetoacetic Ester Syntheses.*—Cycloparaffindicarboxylic esters (W. H. Perkin, Jr.) result from the action of alkylene bromides upon disodium malonic esters:

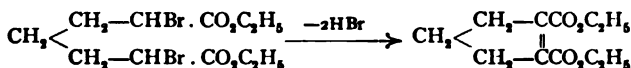


This reaction has been largely applied in the preparation of numerous trimethylene derivatives by merely substituting the brom- addition products of the olefine mono- and olefine dicarboxylic esters for the alkylene bromides. Thus, when sodium acetoacetic

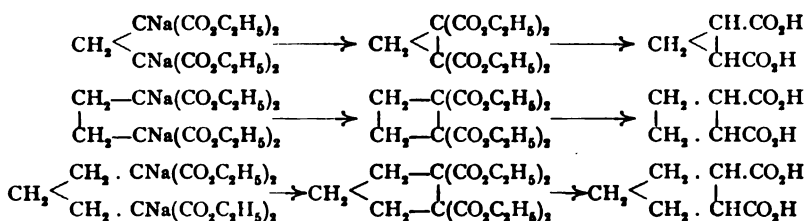
ester is allowed to act upon 1,4-dibrom-n-pentane, 1,2-methyl acetyl pentamethylene carboxylic ester is produced (B. 21, 742):



$\alpha\alpha_1$ -Dibrompimelic ester and sodium malonic ester form cyclopentene dicarboxylic ester, and not the expected hexamethylene tetracarboxylic ester. An exit of hydrobromic acid occurs:

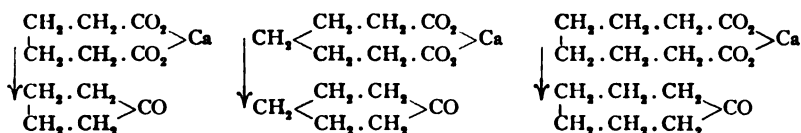


5. When iodine or bromine acts upon the disodium compounds of the alkylen dimalonic esters, upon disodium methylene, disodium ethylene dimalonic esters, etc., the sodium is withdrawn while a ring is simultaneously produced. This is analogous to the conversion of sodium malonic ester into diacetosuccinic ester and monosodium malonic ester into dimalonic ester by means of iodine. The resulting cycloparaffin tetracarboxylic acids split off two molecules of carbon dioxide and become cycloparaffin dicarboxylic acids (W. H. Perkin, Jr.):



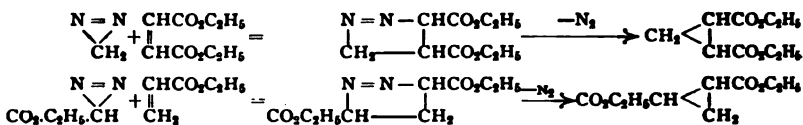
The disodium compound of diacetyl adipic ester behaves similarly towards iodine.

6. *Cyclic Ketone Formation*.—Just as the calcium salts of the paraffin monocarboxylic acids, when heated alone, yield open-chain ketones, so do the calcium salts of some of the higher normal paraffin dicarboxylic acids afford cyclic ketones when they are subjected to dry distillation (J. Wislicenus):



7. Aliphatic diazo-bodies, like diazomethane and diazoacetic ester (1, 207), add themselves to olefine mono- and dicarboxylic esters, with the production of *cyclic azo-derivatives* or pyrazoline compounds, which

give up nitrogen quite readily and change to trimethylene compounds (E. Buchner):



## I. TRI-, TETRA-, PENTA-, AND HEPTACARBOCYCLIC COMPOUNDS.

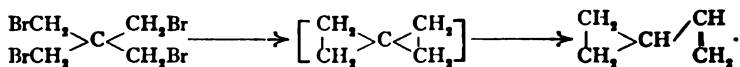
This chapter will mainly consist of the cycloparaffins and their derivatives containing the number of carbon atoms indicated above. They are distinguished from their isomeric olefines in that they possess little power (sometimes lack it entirely) of combining with the halogens and haloid acids, and are quite stable toward potassium permanganate (B. 23, 704).

### A. TRIMETHYLENE GROUP.

Trimethylene [Cyclopropane],  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array} > \text{CH}_2$ , is a readily condensable gas. It is obtained by heating trimethylene bromide with metallic sodium (*Freund*, 1882), or by the action of alcohol and zinc dust (B. 20, R. 706).

It unites with more difficulty with bromine and hydriodic acid than propylene,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}.\text{CH}_3$ . It is rearranged at a red heat into propylene (B. 29, 1297). It is not oxidized by potassium permanganate (B. 21, 1282).

Methyl Trimethylene boils at  $4^\circ$  (B. 28, 22). Vinyl Trimethylene,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array} > \text{CH}.\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ , boils at  $40^\circ$ ; its specific gravity is 0.73. It is formed in a peculiar manner by the action of alcohol and zinc dust upon the tetra-bromhydrate of pentaerythrol:



It yields a dibromide. Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to the corresponding glycol,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array} > \text{CH} < \begin{array}{c} \text{CHOH} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \end{array}$ , which, by the further action of dilute nitric acid, becomes  $\alpha$ -oxyglutaric acid (B. 29, R. 780).

Monochlor-trimethylene boils at  $43^\circ$  (B. 24, R. 637). Dichlor-trimethylene boils at  $74^\circ$  (B. 25, 1954).

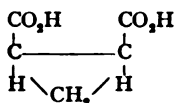
Acetyltrimethylene,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array} > \text{CH}.\text{CO}.\text{CH}_3$ , boils at  $113^\circ$ . (See acetotrimethylene carboxylic acid, p. 23.)

Trimethylene Carboxylic Acids (A. 284, 197) are obtained by the general methods 4 and 5, and also by method 7 (p. 21), which is only suitable for the preparation of trimethylene derivatives. The trimethylene polycarboxylic acids, which contain two carboxyls linked to one carbon atom, split off carbon dioxide and pass into acids containing less carboxyl. Remarkable isomeric phenomena are due to the arrangement of the carboxyl groups upon the same or different sides of the plane assumed by the trimethylene ring. This is similar to the isomerism of the trithioaldehydes (I, 203).

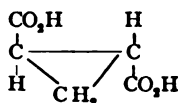
**Trimethylene Carboxylic Acid**,  $C_3H_5 \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $18^\circ$  and boiling at  $183^\circ$ , is isomeric with crotonic acid. It is produced, together with butyrolactone, by heating

**Trimethylene-1,1-dicarboxylic Acid** (Vinaconic Acid),  $\begin{matrix} CH_2 \\ | \\ CH_2 \end{matrix} > C(CO_2H)_2$ , melting at  $140^\circ$  (see method 4, p. 20). Hydrobromic acid converts it into brom-ethylmalonic acid,  $BrCH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH(CO_2H)_2$ . It also unites with bromine (B. 18, 3314). It is not altered by nitric acid, potassium permanganate, or by nascent hydrogen (B. 23, 704; 28, 8). The esters of vinaconic acid condense to butane tetracarboxylic esters with sodium malonic ester. In this respect it departs itself like the  $\alpha, \beta$ -olefine carboxylic esters (vol. 1, and B. 28, R. 464). Consult A. 294, 89, for the constitution of vinaconic acid and the homologue—Methyl Vinaconic Acid.

**Trimethylene-1,2-dicarboxylic Acid** is known in two isomeric modifications, called the *cis*- and *cis-trans* forms (A. 245, 128):



*F*-cis form.



*F*-cis-trans form (1, 50).

**Cis-Trimethylene-1,2-dicarboxylic Acid** melts at  $139^\circ$ ; its *anhydride* at  $59^\circ$ . The acid is produced when trimethyl-1,2-tri- and 1,2-tetracarboxylic acids are heated. **Cis-trans-Trimethylene-1,2-dicarboxylic Acid** melts at  $175^\circ$ ; its *methyl ester*, boiling at about  $210^\circ$ , is obtained, together with glutaconic ester, from acryldiazoacetic ester by method 7, p. 21, and by the action of diazomethane upon fumaric ester (B. 27, 1888; 28, R. 290).

**Trimethylene-1,2-tricarboxylic Acid**,  $CH_2 < \begin{matrix} C(CO_2H)_2 \\ | \\ CHCO_2H \end{matrix}$ , melts at  $187^\circ$ , with decomposition. Its *ethyl ester*, boiling at  $276^\circ$ , is obtained from  $\alpha\beta$ -dibromopropionic ester by method 4, p. 20 (B. 17, 1187), and from  $\alpha$ -bromacrylic ester (B. 20, R. 140, 258).

**Sym. Trimethylene-1,2,3-tricarboxylic Acid**,  $CO_2H \cdot CH < \begin{matrix} CH \cdot CO_2H \\ | \\ CH \cdot CO_2H \end{matrix}$ . The *cis*-form melts at  $150$ – $153^\circ$ ; the *cis-trans* form melts at  $220^\circ$ . The *anhydride* melts at  $187^\circ$  and boils at  $265^\circ$ . The *cis*-acid is derived from 1,2,3-tetracarboxylic acid (B. 17, 1652), the *cis-trans* form from fumaric-diazoacetic ester (B. 23, 2583). See B. 27, 868, for alkyltrimethylene tricarboxylic acids.

**Trimethylene-1,2-tetracarboxylic Acid**,  $CH_2 < \begin{matrix} C(CO_2H)_2 \\ | \\ C(CO_2H)_2 \end{matrix}$ , is converted at  $200^\circ$  into the *anhydride* of *cis*-1,2-dicarboxylic acid. Its *ethyl ester*, melting at  $43^\circ$  and boiling at  $187^\circ$  (12 mm.), is produced according to method 5, p. 21 (B. 23, R. 241).

**Trimethylene-1,2,3-tetracarboxylic Acid**,  $(CO_2H)_2 < \begin{matrix} CH \cdot CO_2H \\ | \\ CH \cdot CO_2H \end{matrix}$ , passes at  $95$ – $100^\circ$  into *cis*-1,2,3-tricarboxylic acid. Its *ethyl ester*, boiling at  $246^\circ$ , is obtained by method 4 (p. 20) from dibromosuccinic ester. The *cis*-1,2, *trans*-1,3-Acid decomposes at  $196$ – $198^\circ$  (B. 28, R. 290).

**1,1-Dimethyl-2,3-trimethylene Dicarboxylic Acid**,  $(CH_3)_2C < \begin{matrix} CH \cdot CO_2H \\ | \\ CH \cdot CO_2H \end{matrix}$  is probably *caronic acid*, a decomposition product of carone, a ketone of the terpene group (see this). It can be readily changed to terebic acid (see this).

**Aceto-trimethylene Carboxylic Acid**,  $\begin{matrix} CO_2H \\ | \\ CH_3CO \end{matrix} > C < \begin{matrix} CH_2 \\ | \\ CH_2 \end{matrix}$ , decomposes at  $200^\circ$  into  $CO_2$  and aceto-trimethylene. Its *ester* is formed from ethylene bromide and sodium acetoacetic ester (B. 17, 1440).

*Diaceto-adipic ester* results simultaneously. The ester boils at about  $195^\circ$ .

**Methylcyclopropen-dicarboxylic Acid**,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH} < \begin{smallmatrix} \text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{H}) \\ \parallel \\ \text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{H}) \end{smallmatrix}$ , melts at  $200^\circ$  (see B. 26, 750).

## B. TETRAMETHYLENE GROUP.

The methods 1, 4, and 5, producing ring-formations, have been applied in the preparation of tetramethylene derivatives.

**Methyl-tetra-methylene**,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHCH}_3 \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ , boiling at  $39-42^\circ$ , is obtained by means of method 1, p. 20.

**Amido-tetramethylene**,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_7 \cdot \text{NH}_2$ , boiling at  $81^\circ$ , results in the action of bromine and caustic potash upon tetramethylene carbonamide. Nitrous acid changes it to

**Oxy-tetramethylene**,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_7 \cdot \text{OH}$ , boiling at  $123^\circ$ , which, acted upon with concentrated hydrobromic acid, sustains a rupture of its ring with the production of its *bromide* (boiling point,  $103^\circ$ ) and 1,3-dibrombutane,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Br} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CHBr} \cdot \text{CH}_3$  (J. Ch. Soc. 65, 950).

**Tetramethylene-methylamine**,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_7 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NH}_2$ , boiling at  $83^\circ$ , is prepared by reducing the nitrile of tetramethylene carboxylic acid.

**Tetramethylene-methyl Carbinol**,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_7 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , from the corresponding ketone, boils at  $144^\circ$ .

**Tetramethylene-diethyl Glycol**,  $[\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{OH})\text{C}_2\text{H}_5]_2$ , obtained by the reduction of tetramethylene ethyl ketone, melts at  $95^\circ$ .

**Tetramethylene-methyl- and ethyl Ketones**, boiling at  $135^\circ$  and  $145^\circ$ , have been prepared from the acid chloride by action of zinc alkyls (B. 25, R. 371).

**Ditetramethylene Ketone**,  $(\text{C}_4\text{H}_7)_2\text{CO}$ , boiling at  $205^\circ$ , is prepared from the calcium salt of the carboxylic acid.

**Tetramethylene Carboxylic Acid**,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_7\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , boiling at  $194^\circ$ , smells like a fatty acid, and is obtained from the 1-dicarboxylic acid. Its *ethyl ester* boils at  $160^\circ$ ; its *chloride* boils at  $142^\circ$ ; its *anhydride* at  $160^\circ$ ; while the *amide* melts at  $130^\circ$ , and the nitrile boils at  $150^\circ$  (B. 21, 2692).

**Tetramethylene-1,1-dicarboxylic Acid** melts at  $155^\circ$ , and then reverts to the monocarboxylic acid. Its *ethyl ester* boils at  $224^\circ$ , and is produced by method 4, p. 20.

**Cis-Tetramethylene-1,2-dicarboxylic Acid**, melting at  $137^\circ$ , is obtained from the tetracarboxylic acid. Its *anhydride* melts at  $77^\circ$  and boils at  $271^\circ$  (B. 26, 2243). The *trans-acid*, melting at  $131^\circ$  (B. 27, R. 734), is produced when the preceding acid is heated to  $190^\circ$  with hydrochloric acid.

Bromine and phosphorus produce 1,2-dibromtetramethylene dicarboxylic acid, the ester of which is converted by alcohol and potassium iodide into the ester of Cyclobutene

**Dicarboxylic Acid**,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 - \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CCO}_2\text{H} \end{smallmatrix}$ , which melts at  $178^\circ$  with decomposition, and readily changes to its *anhydride* (J. Ch. Soc. 65, 950).

**Tetramethylene-1,3-dicarboxylic Acid**.—See A. 256, 198.

**Diaceto-tetramethylene Dicarboxylic Ester** is produced according to method 5, p. 21 (B. 19, 2048).

**Tetramethylene-1,2-tetracarboxylic Acid** melts at  $145-150^\circ$ , when it changes into the cis-1,2-dicarboxylic acid. Its *ester* is obtained by method 5, p. 21.

**Tetramethylene-1,3-diglyoxylic Acid**,  $\text{COOH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH} < \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 \\ \parallel \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} > \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{COOH}$ , melting at  $240^\circ$ , is produced in the condensation of pyrrolic acid and para-formaldehyde with concentrated sulphuric acid. It is decomposed when heated with alkalis into ethylene and oxalic acid, and by concentrated sulphuric acid into a *dilactone* (B. 29, 2273).

The *truxillic acids*, found among the secondary alkaloids of cocaine, are regarded as *diphenyl tetramethylene dicarboxylic acids* (see alkaloids).

See pinene for the view that it is a derivative of a combined hexa- and tetra-

methylene ring,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CH}_2 \quad \text{CH}_2 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CH}_2 \quad \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CH} \end{array}$ , and for the argument that its decomposition products

—*e. g.*, pinonic acid, pinic acid, norpinic acid—are derivatives of tetramethylene.

### C. PENTACARBOCYCLIC COMPOUNDS.

The number of known pentacarbocyclic derivatives is much greater than that of the tri- and tetracarbocyclic compounds. They are derived in part from cyclopentane or pentamethylene, and in part from cyclopentenenes. Cyclopentane and its derivatives have been obtained not only by the ring-synthetic methods 1, 3, 4, 5, and 6 (pp. 20, 21), but also from hexacarbocyclic ring-shaped ortho-diketones by an intramolecular atomic rearrangement—*e. g.*, benzoic acid from benzil (1, p. 54); see below—chlordiketopentamethylene. This second reaction will be again presented in the decomposition of aromatic bodies (see these). Furthermore, hexaoxybenzene has yielded remarkable pentamethylene derivatives: *croconic* acid and *leuconic* acid. They will be discussed later in connection with hexaoxybenzene.

*Camphor* can be readily rearranged into aromatic derivatives, and should probably be regarded as a derivative of the hydrocarbon,

$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CH}_2 \quad \text{CH}_2 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CH}_2 \quad \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CH} \end{array}$ , which is not known. In various reactions it yields penta-

methylene derivatives—*e. g.*, camphorophorone and camphoric acid. Camphor and its cyclic transformation products will not be considered until after the benzene derivatives, along with the terpenes, under the hydroaromatic bodies.

1. **Hydrocarbons.** Pentamethylene, *R-Pentene* [*Cyclo-Pentane*]  $\text{CH}_2 \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{array}$ , boiling at 50°, is obtained by the reduction of pentamethylene iodide. *Methyl pentamethylene*, boiling at 75°, is made from 1,5-dibrom n-hexane. 1,2-Methyl-ethyl-cyclopentane boils at 124°. 1,3-Dimethyl Pentamethylene, from the corresponding ketone (B. 29, 403), boils at 93°.

Cyclopentene,  $\text{CH} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{array}$ , boiling at 45°, is prepared by the action of caustic potash upon pentamethylene iodide (A. 275, 331), and Perchlorcyclopentene,  $\text{C}_5\text{Cl}_8$ , melting at 41° and boiling at 283°, by acting with  $\text{PCl}_5$  upon perchlor-ketocyclopentenon (B. 23, 2214).

Methylcyclopentene,  $\text{CH} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{array}$ , boiling at 70°, and obtained from 3-methylcyclopentanol by means of zinc chloride (B. 26, 775), yields methylglutaric acid upon oxidation.

Cyclopentadiene, *Pentol* (B. 22, 916),  $\text{CH}_2 \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} = \text{CH} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CH} = \text{CH} \end{array}$ , boiling at 41°, is present

in the crude benzene from coal tar. It is a colorless liquid. Both acids and alkalis attack it energetically. It reduces an ammoniacal silver solution. It forms addition products with one and two molecules of the halogens and haloid acids—*e. g.*, *monochlorcyclopentene*,  $C_5H_7Cl$ , boiling at  $50^\circ$  (40 mm.), *trichlorcyclopentane*,  $C_5H_3Cl_3$ , boiling at  $196^\circ$ , and *tetrachlorcyclopentane*,  $C_5H_2Cl_4$ , boiling at  $94^\circ$  (15 mm.). It polymerizes readily on standing to a *dimolecular compound*,  $(C_5H_8)_2$ , which at the ordinary temperature boils at  $170^\circ$ , with partial return to the monomolecular body, and without decomposition at  $88^\circ$  (35 mm.). It is much more stable than the simpler compound, and recalls the terpenes in its behavior (B. 29, 552).

2. **Alcohols.**—Cyclopentanol,  $C_5H_9OH$ , boils at  $139^\circ$ . Its *bromide* boils at  $137^\circ$ , the *iodide* at  $164^\circ$ , and the *amine* at  $107^\circ$  (A. 275, 322). [3-Methylcyclopentanol],  $HIOCH < \begin{array}{c} CH_2 \cdot CH \cdot CH_3 \\ CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \end{array}$ , boils at  $49^\circ$  (12 mm.), and the *amine* at  $42^\circ$  (12 mm.) (B. 25, 3519; 26, 775). Both alcohols have been prepared by the reduction of their corresponding ketones.

2-Methylcyclopentanol,  $HO \cdot CH < \begin{array}{c} CH(CH_3) \cdot CH_2 \\ CH_2 \text{---} CH_2 \end{array}$ , from [methylcyclopentenon], boils at  $148^\circ$ .

3. **Ketones.**—The *cyclic ketones*, obtained from calcium adipate and  $\beta$ -methyl-adipate, according to method 6 (p. 21), constitute the starting-out material for the preparation of the corresponding alcohols, from which the saturated and unsaturated pentacarbocyclic hydrocarbons are subsequently prepared. Adipinketone [Cyclopentanone], *keto-pentamethylene*,  $CO < \begin{array}{c} CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \\ CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \end{array}$ , boiling at  $130^\circ$ , occurs in "wood oils," and results from the saponification of 2-ketopentamethylene carboxylic ester (p. 28). It has an odor like that of peppermint, and yields glutaric acid when it is oxidized. Its *oxime* melts at  $120^\circ$  (A. 275, 312). It condenses with benzaldehyde to a *mono-* and a *di*benzal compound,  $C_6H_5CH : (C_5H_8O)$  and  $C_6H_5CH : (C_5H_8O) : CHC_6H_5$  (B. 29, 1601, 1836). Sodium ethylate condenses two and three molecules of cyclopentanone to *cyclopentanpentanon*,  $(C_5H_8O) : (C_5H_8O)$ , boiling at  $118^\circ$  (12 mm.), and *cyclodipentanpentanon*,  $(C_5H_8O) : (C_5H_8O) : (C_5H_8O)$ , melting at  $77^\circ$  and boiling at  $190^\circ$  (12 mm.) (B. 29, 2962). 3-Methylcyclopentanone,  $CO < \begin{array}{c} CH_2 \cdot CHCH_3 \\ CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \end{array}$ , boiling at  $142^\circ$  (B. 25, 3517), smells like *camphorophorone* (see this), which also, like *tanacetophorone*, belongs to the cyclopentanones. These last-mentioned phorones will be treated after camphor. A 2-Methylcyclopentanone, which also boils at  $142$ – $144^\circ$ , has been prepared from *a*-methyladipic acid (B. 29, R. 1115). 2,5-Dimethylcyclopentanone, boiling at  $146^\circ$ , is obtained from *aa*<sub>1</sub>-dimethyladipic acid (B. 29, 403).

1,2-Acetylmethyl-pentamethylene,  $CH_3CO \cdot CH < \begin{array}{c} CH(CH_3) - CH_2 \\ CH_2 \text{---} CH_2 \end{array}$ , boiling at  $170^\circ$ , is obtained from the corresponding carboxylic acid (see below).

Methylcyclopentenon,  $CH_3 \cdot C < \begin{array}{c} CO \cdot CH_2 \\ CH \cdot CH_2 \end{array}$ , boiling at  $157^\circ$ , occurs in wood-oil. Its *oxime* melts at  $128^\circ$  (B. 27, 1538). Hexachloroketo-R-pentene,  $\begin{array}{c} CCl_2 \cdot CCl_2 \\ CCl = CCl \end{array} > CO$ , melting at  $31^\circ$ , boiling at  $156^\circ$  (80 mm.), and  $\begin{array}{c} CCl_2 \cdot CCl_2 \\ || \\ CCl \cdot CCl_2 \end{array} > CO$ , melting at  $92^\circ$  and boiling at  $148^\circ$  (75 mm.), result upon oxidizing the corresponding  $\alpha$ -oxyacids, prepared from *o*-amidophenol and pyrocatechol, with chromic acid (B. 24, 926; 25, 2697).

Mono-, di-, and trichlor-*o*-diketopentamethylenes are obtained, in a manner similar to the chlorinated keto-R-pentenons, from phenol and chloranilic acid. Hydrogen sulphide converts the monochlorodiketopentamethylene into *a*-thiophenalddehyde (see this), and ammonia changes it to *chlorpyridine* (B. 22, 2827). Potassium chloranilate, acted upon with chlorine or bromine and water, yields Trichlortriketopentamethylene,

$\text{CO} \cdot \text{CCl}_2$   
 $\text{CO} \cdot \text{CHCl}$   
 $\text{CCl} \cdot \text{CO}$   
 $\text{CCl} \cdot \text{CO}$ 
 $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{CO} \cdot \text{CCl}_2 \\ \text{CO} \cdot \text{CHCl} \\ \text{CCl} \cdot \text{CO} \\ \text{CCl} \cdot \text{CO} \end{array} \right\} > \text{CO}$ , melting at  $125^\circ$  (B. 25, 848). Tetrachlordiketo-R-pentene,  
 $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{CO} \cdot \text{CCl}_2 \\ \text{CO} \cdot \text{CHCl} \\ \text{CCl} \cdot \text{CO} \\ \text{CCl} \cdot \text{CO} \end{array} \right\} > \text{CCl}_2$ , melting at  $75^\circ$  and boiling at  $148^\circ$  (27 mm.), results when resorcinol is  
 used (p. 46) (B. 24, 916; 25, 2225).

The primary decomposition products of the benzenes applied in these reactions are  
 mainly chlorinated ketonic acids—e. g., in the last instance we obtained from resorcinol  
 the acid,  $\text{CCl}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CCl} \cdot \text{CCl} \cdot \text{CCl}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , perchloracetyl crotonic acid, which, heated  
 with concentrated sulphuric acid, forms the ring of ketopentamethylene (B. 26,  
 513). Similarly,  $\beta, \delta$ -dibromolævulinic acid,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Br} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CHBr} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , when  
 treated with fuming sulphuric acid, is converted into two dibromdiketo-R-pentenenes,  
 $\text{CHBr} \cdot \text{CO}$   
 $\text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}$ 
 $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{CHBr} \cdot \text{CO} \\ \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO} \end{array} \right\} > \text{CHBr}$ , melting at  $99^\circ$ , and  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO} \\ \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO} \end{array} \right\} > \text{CBr}_2$ , melting at  $137^\circ$  (A. 294, 183).

Pentaketopentamethylene is *leuconic acid* (p. 25). It is produced by oxidizing  
*croconic acid*.

#### 4. Carboxylic Acids.—Cyclopentan-carboxylic Acid, $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \right\} > \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ ,

boiling at  $214^\circ$ , has a disagreeable, sweat-like odor. It has been prepared from the  
*α*-oxyacid (A. 275, 337). Cyclopentan-acetic Acid,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_9 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , is an oil  
 boiling at  $140^\circ$  (26 mm.). It is obtained from cyclopentanmalonic ester, the con-  
 densation product of pentamethylene iodide and sodium malonic ester (B. 29, 1997).

2-Methylcyclopentan-carboxylic Acid,  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CH}_3) \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \right\} > \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , boiling at  
 $219^\circ$ , is produced when potassium hydroxide acts upon the *α*-acetyl body (p. 28).

Both monocarboxylic acids may be obtained from the corresponding 1-dicarboxylic  
 acids:

#### Cyclopentan-1-dicarboxylic Acid, $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \right\} > \text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$ , melting at $177^\circ$ , and

2-Methylcyclopentan-1-dicarboxylic Acid, melting at  $174^\circ$ , whose esters have been  
 prepared according to method 4, p. 20 (B. 26, 2246; 27, 1228). The *cyclopentan-1,2-*  
*dicarboxylic acid* is known in two modifications. The *cis*-form yields an anhydride.  
 It is obtained by heating (B. 18, 3246) the *cyclopentan-1,2-tetracarboxylic acid*, prepared  
 according to method 5 (p. 21).

#### Cyclopentene Dicarboxylic Acid, $\text{CH}_2 \cdot \left\langle \begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C} \cdot \text{COOH} \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C} \cdot \text{COOH} \end{array} \right\rangle$ , melting at $178^\circ$ , re-

sults from the action of sodium alcoholate upon *α, α*-dibrompimelic acid, and by treating  
 1,2-dibromcyclopentan-1,2-dicarboxylic acid (produced in the bromination of cyclo-  
 pentan-dicarboxylic acid) with alcohol and potassium iodide. It takes up 2Br readily.  
 It forms adipic acid by fusion with caustic potash (B. 28, 655).

*Camphoric acid*, probably 2-dimethylcyclopentan-1,3-dicarboxylic acid, will be dis-  
 cussed together with camphor. An ethyl cyclopentene carboxylic acid has been de-  
 tected among the decomposition products of ecgonine (see this).

#### 5. Alcohol Carboxylic Acids.—

##### *α*-Oxycyclopentan-carboxylic Acid, $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \right\} > \text{C} \left\langle \begin{array}{l} \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{OH} \end{array} \right\rangle$ , melting at $103^\circ$ , is

obtained from cyclopentanone,  $\text{CNH}$ , and hydrochloric acid (A. 275, 333). It yields  
 pentamethylene carboxylic acid by reduction. Hexachlor-*α*-oxycyclopentene car-

boxylic Acid,  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{CCl}_2 \cdot \text{CCl}_2 \\ \text{CCl} = \text{CCl} \end{array} \right\} > \text{C} \left\langle \begin{array}{l} \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{OH} \end{array} \right\rangle$ , results from the action of sodium carbonate or

sodium acetate upon the chlorinated cyclohexene-*o*-diketone. When it is heated, it re-  
 arranges itself into an isomeric acid (B. 23, 824). Boiling water converts both acids

into *perchlorindone*,  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{CCl} = \text{CCl} \cdot \text{C} \cdot \text{CO} \\ \text{CCl} = \text{CCl} \cdot \text{C} \cdot \text{CCl} \end{array} \right\} > \text{CCl}$  (A. 272, 243). Trichlor-R-pentene

**Dioxy-carboxylic Acid**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{C(OH)-CCl}_2 \\ || \\ \text{CCl}-\text{CH}_2 \end{array} > \text{C} \begin{array}{l} \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{OH} \end{array}$ , is produced when chlorine acts upon an alkaline phenol solution (B. 22, 2827).

#### 6. Ketone Carboxylic Acids.—

**2-Ketopentamethylene-carboxylic Ester**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{array} > \text{CO} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , is obtained from adipic ester by method 5 (p. 21). It forms ketopentamethylene when it is saponified.

**1, 2-Methylacetyl-pentamethylene-carboxylic Ester**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CH}_3) \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{array} > \text{C} \begin{array}{l} \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \text{COCH}_3 \end{array}$ , is prepared from 1,2-dibrom-n-pentane according to method 4, p. 20 (B. 21, 742).

**Symmetrical Ketopentamethylene-carboxylic Acid**,  $\text{CO} < \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CHCO}_2\text{H} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CHCO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$ , melting at  $189^\circ$ , is obtained from aconitic ester and sodium malonic ester (B. 26, 373). Cyclo-

**pentan-2,3-dion-1,4-dicarboxylic Ester**,  $\text{CH}_2 < \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO} \\ | \\ \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO} \end{array} > \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , is produced according to method 3 (p. 20) from n-glutaric ester and oxalic ester (B. 27, 1353). Tri-

**ketocyclopentan-dicarboxylic Ester**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CO}-\text{CH} \\ | \\ \text{CO}-\text{CH} \end{array} > \text{CO} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , is formed from acetone dicarboxylic ester and oxalic ester (B. 29, R. 1117). **Diphenylketocyclopentene Acetic Acid**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C} \\ | \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C} \end{array} > \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , is obtained from benzil and lævulinic acid.

### D. HEPTACARBOCYCLIC COMPOUNDS.

The most important members of this series have been obtained from suberone. The ease with which the ring containing seven members passes into the "six-membered" ring is an argument in favor of the view that the ring-formation with carbon atoms reaches its limit with the "seven-membered" derivatives. Compare further A. 275, 363.

**Suberane, Heptamethylene, Cycloheptane**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{array} > \text{CH}_2$ , boiling at  $117^\circ$ , results from the reduction of suberyl iodide. Bromine and aluminium bromide change suberane to pentabromtoluene (see this), whereas when it is heated with hydriodic acid, it is converted into methylcyclohexane or hexahydrotoluene (B. 27, R. 47). **Suberylene, Cycloheptene**, boiling at  $114^\circ$ , is produced by the action of caustic potash upon suberyl iodide. Caustic potash converts its dibromide into cycloheptadiene, *heptamethylene terpene*,  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{10}$ , boiling at  $121^\circ$  (B. 29, R. 89). **Suberyl Alcohol**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12} \cdot \text{CH(OH)} \cdot \text{CH}_2$ , boiling at  $184^\circ$ , results from the reduction of suberone. Its chloride boils at  $174^\circ$ , and its amine at  $169^\circ$  (B. 26, R. 813).

**Suberone, Cycloheptanon**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{array} > \text{CO}$ , boiling at  $180^\circ$ , has an odor like that of peppermint. It is produced in the distillation of calcium suberinate. It yields pimelic acid when it is oxidized. It condenses with benzaldehyde (B. 29, 1600). Its oxime melts at  $23^\circ$  and boils at  $230^\circ$ .

**Suberan-carboxylic Acid**,  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{12}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , is a colorless liquid. It results when *suberonic acid*,  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{11}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $53^\circ$ , is reduced by sodium amalgam. This latter acid is produced when alcoholic potash acts upon the liquid *chlorsuberonic acid*. The ester of Suberane-1,1-dicarboxylic Acid may be synthesized from hexamethylene

bromide and sodium malonic ester. It loses  $\text{CO}_2$  and becomes suberanic acid (B. 27, R. 735).

**Oxy-suberanic Acid, Suberyl Glycollic Acid**,  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{12}(\text{OH})\text{CO}_2\text{H} + \frac{1}{2}\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melts, when anhydrous, at  $89^\circ$ . It is formed when prussic acid and hydrochloric acid act upon suberone. Concentrated hydrochloric acid converts it into chlorsuberonic acid (A. 211,

117). **1,2-Dimethyl-1,2-dihydroxyheptamethylene**,  $\text{CH}_2 \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{array}$ ,

is obtained from diacetyl pentane by method 2 (p. 20).

## II. HEXACARBOCYCLIC COMPOUNDS.

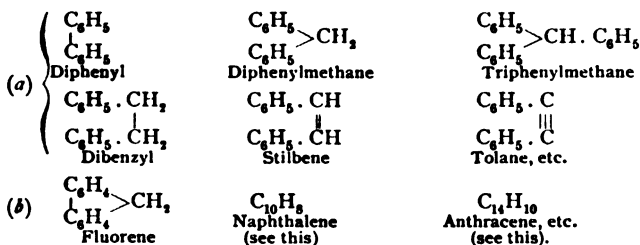
The chemistry of the hexacarbo-cyclic derivatives has been much more fully and richly developed than that of the ring-systems which have been discussed in the preceding section. The hexacarbo-cyclic compounds are classified as follows:

**A. Aromatic or Benzene derivatives containing a single nucleus.**

**B. Hydroaromatic substances containing a single nucleus.**

This class contains the *terpene* and the *camphor groups*.

**C. Aromatic substances containing several nuclei.** The parent hydrocarbons of this group contain (a) several benzene residues combined directly to each other, or by means of aliphatic hydrocarbon residues; or, (b) two (or more) nuclei so linked to one another that they have two carbon atoms in common (*twin nuclei, condensed nuclei*):



Numerous derivatives of almost every imaginable kind can be referred to each of these hydrocarbons,—a domain of immeasurable expansibility. Many of these bodies, particularly naphthalene and its derivatives, are likewise followed by a series of hydro-bodies, which will not, however, be discussed as a fourth class, but always directly after the non-hydrogenized compounds of the respective hydrocarbon.

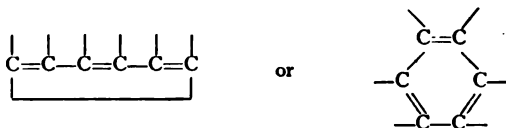
## A. AROMATIC COMPOUNDS OR BENZENE DERIVATIVES CONTAINING A SINGLE NUCLEUS.

The aromatic compounds are mostly obtained from aromatic oils and resins. They differ in various respects from the members of the fatty or marsh-gas series, but are principally distinguished from the latter by their greater carbon content. The theoretical representations upon their constitution are based chiefly on the views developed by Kekulé in 1865—Kekulé's *benzene theory*. The views of this investigator are in brief as follows (compare Kekulé, *Lehrbuch der org. Chemie*, 2, 493; A. 137, 129):

1. All aromatic compounds are derived from a nucleus consisting of six carbon atoms; its simplest compound is *benzene*,  $C_6H_6$ . All other aromatic derivatives may be obtained from the latter by substituting other atoms or atomic groups (side-chains) for its hydrogen atoms. The new derivatives are distinguished from the methane compounds by their specific benzene character, and are, therefore, called *benzene derivatives*.

2. Benzene has a *symmetrical* constitution. Each carbon atom is combined with one hydrogen atom. Differences between the individual C- and H-atoms have not been discovered (similar to the polymethylene derivatives). Isomerides are, therefore, only possible when two or more side-chains are present.

3. The structure of the benzene nucleus is such that the six carbon atoms, or CH-groups, form a *closed, ring-shaped chain*, the atoms being joined alternately by single and double bonds:



In benzene,  $C_6H_6$ , the fourth affinity of each C-atom is joined to hydrogen; in the benzene derivatives it is combined with other atomic groups.

### THE BENZENE DERIVATIVES.

The benzene derivatives can be obtained by the replacement of hydrogen in benzene, just as the aliphatic substances can be derived from methane. Those members containing carbon side-chains can be derived from benzene, and by their decomposition, or by the splitting-off of the side-chains, they revert to benzene. The stability of the benzene nucleus distinguishes the aromatic substances from the methane derivatives. Thus, oxidation, and also reduction, which leads finally to cyclohexane derivatives or hexahydrobenzene bodies, may be carried on, as a general thing, without tearing the ring asunder. Therefore, reduction unites the benzene bodies to the cyclohexane derivatives (p. 18).

Solid benzene bodies are distinguished at the ordinary temperature by their crystallizing power. This accelerates experimental work very materially.

The hydrogen of benzene can be very readily replaced by the *halogens* and the *nitro* ( $NO_2$ ) and *sulpho* ( $SO_3H$ ) groups:

Chlorbenzene . . . .	$C_6H_5Cl$	$C_6H_4Cl_2$	$C_6H_3Cl_3$ . . . .	$C_6Cl_6$
Nitrobenzene . . . .	$C_6H_5NO_2$	$C_6H_4(NO_2)_2$	$C_6H_3(NO_2)_3$	
Benzene-sulphonic acid	$C_6H_5SO_3H$	$C_6H_4(SO_3H)_2$	$C_6H_3(SO_3H)_3$	

*Mono-, di-, tri-, tetra-, penta-, and hexa-*derivatives of benzene result, depending upon whether one, two, three, four, or more of the hydrogen atoms of benzene are replaced. The production of *nitro compounds* by the direct action of nitric acid is particularly characteristic of the benzene derivatives, whereas the fatty compounds are generally oxidized and decomposed.

In the reduction of the nitro-derivatives we obtain the *amido-compounds* :

Amidobenzene $C_6H_5 \cdot NH_2$ Aniline	$C_6H_4(NH_2)_2$	$C_6H_3(NH_2)_3$
--	------------------	------------------

The so-called *azo-derivatives* appear as intermediate products of the reaction, whereas when nitrous acid acts on the amido-derivatives the *diazo-compounds* result. Both classes are of exceptional occurrence in the methane series (1, p. 172).

By introducing hydroxyl for hydrogen into benzene we obtain the *phenols*, which may be compared to the alcohols :

$C_6H_5 \cdot OH$ Phenol (Carbolic Acid)	$C_6H_4(OH)_2$ Dioxybenzene	$C_6H_3(OH)_3$ Trioxybenzene.
--	--------------------------------	----------------------------------

These resemble the tertiary alcohols in having the group  $C \cdot OH$  attached to the three carbon affinities (1, p. 110), hence on oxidation they cannot yield corresponding aldehydes, ketones, or acids.

The benzene residue diminishes the basic properties of the amido-group and increases the acid nature of the phenol hydroxyl. It has a more *negative* character than the residues of the aliphatic hydrocarbons.

The entrance of univalent paraffin, olefine, and acetylene residues into benzene produces *homologues* of the latter, both saturated and unsaturated :

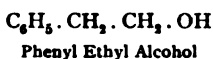
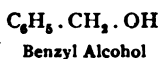
$C_6H_6$ Benzene	$C_6H_5CH_3$ Methyl Benzene (Toluene)	$C_6H_4(CH_3)_2$ Dimethyl Benzene (Xylene)	$C_6H_5CH_2 \cdot CH_3$ Ethyl Benzene	$C_6H_5C_2H_5$ , etc. Propyl Benzene, etc.
	$C_6H_5CH=CH_2$ Vinyl Benzene (Styrene)		$C_6H_5C \equiv CH$ , etc. Acetynyl Benzene.	

In these hydrocarbons the benzene residue preserves the specific properties of benzene ; its hydrogen can readily be replaced by halogens and the groups  $NO_2$  and  $SO_3H$ . On the other hand, the side-chains behave like the hydrocarbons of the fatty series ; their hydrogen can be replaced by halogens, but not by (by action of  $HNO_3$  or  $H_2SO_4$ ) the groups  $NO_2$  and  $SO_3H$ . Different isomeric derivatives are possible, depending upon whether the substitution of the halogens (or other groups) has occurred in the benzene residue or the side-chains—*e. g.* :

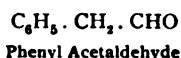
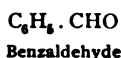
Dichlortoluene, Chlortoluene,	$C_6H_4Cl_2 \cdot CH_3$ , $C_6H_4Cl \cdot CH_3$ Benzal chloride, $C_6H_5 \cdot CHCl_2$ .	Chlorbenzyl chloride, Benzyl chloride,	$C_6H_4Cl \cdot CH_2Cl$ , $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2Cl$
----------------------------------	--	---	--

The halogen atoms in the benzene residue are very firmly combined and mostly incapable of double decomposition, while those in the side-chains react exactly as in the methane derivatives.

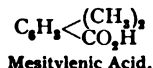
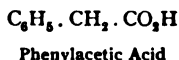
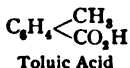
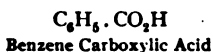
The substitution of hydroxyl for the hydrogen of the side-chains leads to the *true alcohols* of the benzene series:



The *primary* class is oxidized to *aldehydes* and *acids*:

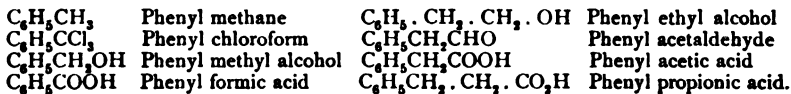


The acids in which the COOH group is joined to benzene can be formed by introducing carboxyl groups directly into benzene, or by oxidizing the homologues of the latter:



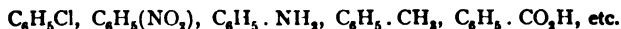
The hydrogen of the benzene residue in these acids, as well as in the alcohols and aldehydes, is replaceable by halogens, and the groups NO<sub>2</sub>, SO<sub>3</sub>H, OH, etc.

Benzene is the basis in the preceding explanation. The various benzene derivatives having aliphatic side-chains are all regarded as substitution products of benzene. It is plain, however, that this manner of presentation can be reversed. Then the derivatives of benzene with *one* side-chain would be, for example, phenyl substitution products of aliphatic bodies, as indicated in the following designations:



### ISOMERISM OF THE BENZENE DERIVATIVES.\*

**Proof of the Equivalence of the Six Hydrogen Atoms in Benzene.**—Let any one hydrogen atom in benzene be replaced by another atom, or atomic group, and every resulting compound can exist in but one modification; thus there is but *one* chlorobenzene, *one* nitrobenzene, *one* amidobenzene, *one* toluene, *one* benzoic acid, etc. The following compounds are known in but one modification:



\*Theorie der aromatischen Verbindungen v. A. Ladenburg, 1876.

The six hydrogen atoms of benzene are of *equal value*, just the same as the four hydrogen atoms of methane (I, p. 37). Benzene has a *symmetrical structure*.

This equivalence of the six hydrogen atoms is very important for the theory of the benzene derivatives, and was demonstrated beyond question by Ladenburg in 1874 (B. 7, 1684; 8, 1666).

1. If phenol be converted into brombenzene, and this in turn be changed by sodium and carbon dioxide into benzoic acid, the carboxyl group of the benzoic acid will take the place of that hydrogen atom in benzene which was held by the hydroxyl in phenol. Furthermore, *three* monoxybenzoic acids are known; of these the metaoxybenzoic acid is produced from benzoic acid, while the ortho- and para-oxybenzoic acids can be converted into benzoic acid (A. 132, 151, 309). The three oxybenzoic acids (the significance of the prefixes *ortho*-, *meta*-, and *para*- will be explained further on in connection with the benzene derivatives) yield the same phenol, which is therefore produced by the replacement of four different hydrogen atoms of benzene by the hydroxyl group. Consequently, *four* hydrogen atoms of benzene are equivalent:

	a	b	c	d	e	f	
C <sub>6</sub> (OH)		H	H	H	H	H	→ Phenol
C <sub>6</sub> Br		H	H	H	H	H	↓ Brombenzene
C <sub>6</sub> (CO <sub>2</sub> H)		H	H	H	H	H	↓ Benzoic Acid
C <sub>6</sub> (CO <sub>2</sub> H)		H	H	H	H	H	— Ortho-oxybenzoic Acid —
C <sub>6</sub> (CO <sub>2</sub> H)		H	H	H	H	H	↓ Meta-oxybenzoic Acid
C <sub>6</sub> (CO <sub>2</sub> H)		H	H	H	H	H	— Para-oxybenzoic Acid —

2. Two pairs of hydrogen atoms are symmetrically arranged with reference to one hydrogen atom in benzene—i. e., the replacement of each of the two hydrogen atoms of a pair by the same atom or atomic group will give rise to the same body. This statement in regard to the one pair, *b* and *f*, is evident from the formation of the same orthoamidobenzoic acid from the two different nitrobrombenzoic acids, which are obtained in the nitration of metabrombenzoic acid (Hübner and Petermann, A. 149, 129; 222, 111; B. 2, 140):

	a	b	c	d	e	f	
C <sub>6</sub> CO <sub>2</sub> H	H	Br	H	H	H	H	→ Metabrombenzoic Acid
C <sub>6</sub> CO <sub>2</sub> H	NO <sub>2</sub>	Br	H	H	H	H	→ adj.-Metabromorthonitrobenzoic Acid
C <sub>6</sub> CO <sub>2</sub> H	H	Br	H	H	NO <sub>2</sub>		→ unsym-Metabromorthonitrobenzoic Acid
C <sub>6</sub> CO <sub>2</sub> H	NH <sub>2</sub>	H	H	H	H	H	↓ Orthoamidobenzoic Acid
C <sub>6</sub> CO <sub>2</sub> H	H	H	H	H	NH <sub>2</sub>		↓ Orthoamidobenzoic Acid.

From this it follows that  $a b = a f$ .

The proof for the second pair is found in the preparation of metabromtoluene from two bromine derivatives (Wroblewsky, A. 192, 213; A. 234, 154), in which the bromine has replaced two different hydrogen atoms, which, therefore, are symmetrically arranged:  $a c = a e$ , with reference to the hydrogen replaced by the methyl group of toluene:



1. **Identify the problem.** The first step in the problem-solving process is to identify the problem. This involves recognizing the issue and understanding its scope and impact.

[REDACTED]



[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

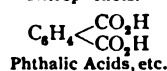
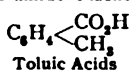
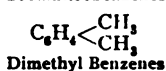
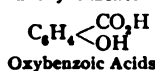
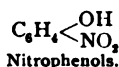
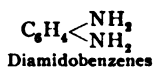
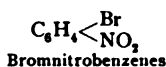
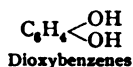
1. **Identify the problem.** The first step in the problem-solving process is to identify the problem. This involves recognizing the issue, gathering information, and defining the problem.

of benzene finds expression in the hexagon formula proposed for benzene.



In showing this the mutual linkage of carbon atoms in the benzene ring can remain in the background. It is very obvious that every diderivative,  $C_6H_4X_2$ , resulting from the replacement of two hydrogen atoms can exist in three distinct modifications. Their isomerism is dependent upon the relative position of the two groups entering the benzene. This kind of isomerism is designated isomerism of position or place (1, 43).

In fact, three modifications are known of most of the diderivatives. In no instance are more than three known. Thus there are three






The three modifications of each of these compounds may be transformed into the corresponding modifications of the other. Hence, if the relative position of the substituting atoms or atomic groups of the three modifications of one of these bodies has been determined, it is then known for all the others, which can be converted into the three modifications of the first body by easy reactions, *unaccompanied by intramolecular atomic rearrangements*.

It has been possible to ascertain the opposing position of the substituting groups,—e. g., for the three dibrombenzenes, the three diamidobenzenes, and for the three phthalic acids,—and thus a basis has been obtained for the arrangement of the other disubstitution products into three series, which have been distinguished as the *ortho*-, *meta*-, and *para*-series.

In the *ortho*-compounds two adjacent hydrogen atoms of benzene have been replaced. Indicating the six hydrogen atoms with numbers or letters, and arbitrarily making any one of them 1 or a, it will be obvious that two *ortho*-positions are present: a, b = a, f or 1, 2 = 1, 6 b (2) and f (6) are symmetrical with reference to a (1). The *meta*-bodies result from the substitution of the hydrogen atoms a, c = a, e or 1, 3 = 1, 5. The positions c (3) and e (5) are symmetrical to a (1). The *para*-compounds arise from the substitution of the hydrogen atoms a, d or 1, 4. The *ortho*- and *meta*-places have two positions of equal value, 5 and 6, also 3 and 5, while the *para*-position has only 4 to 1.

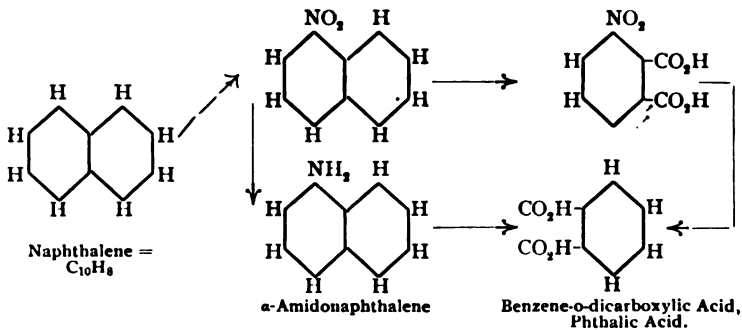
The position of the substituting groups in diderivatives is indicated by the prefixes *ortho*-, *meta*-, and *para*- before the names of the compounds. These are usually abbreviated to *o*-, *m*-, *p*-, or to numbers included in brackets and placed before the names: [1,2]-, [1,3]-, [1,5]-. The formula is usually written so that an hexagon expresses the benzene ring, and the combined atoms or atomic groups are attached to the six angles of the hexagon.\*

\* Dr. Siegfried Pfaff has suggested a simpler method of writing. He replaces the

 $=\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{matrix} [1]\text{OH} \\ [2]\text{OH} \end{matrix} \right.$	 $=\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{matrix} [1]\text{OH} \\ [3]\text{OH} \end{matrix} \right.$	 $=\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{matrix} [1]\text{OH} \\ [4]\text{OH} \end{matrix} \right.$
<b>Pyrocatechol</b> <b>o-Dioxybenzene</b> <b>[1, 2]-Dioxybenzene</b>	<b>Resorcinol</b> <b>m-Dioxybenzene</b> <b>[1, 3]-Dioxybenzene</b>	<b>Hydroquinone</b> <b>p-Dioxybenzene</b> <b>[1, 4]-Dioxybenzene.</b>

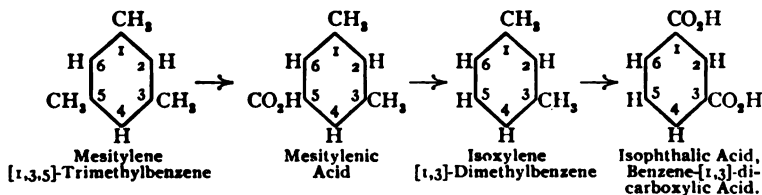
	<b>Ortho, [1,2].</b>	<b>Meta, [1,3].</b>	<b>Para, [1,4.]</b>
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{OH} \\ \diagdown \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$	Salicylic Acid.	Metaoxybenzoic Acid.	Paraoxybenzoic Acid.
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagdown \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$	Orthoxylene.	Isoxylene.	Paraxylene.
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \diagdown \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$	Phthalic Acid.	Isophthalic Acid.	Terephthalic Acid.

The oxidation of nitronaphthalene produces nitro-*o*-phthalic acid, which can be changed to phthalic acid. *o*-Phthalic acid results from the oxidation of amidonaphthalene, formed from nitronaphthalene. This is because the oxidation at one time destroys the one and then the other side of the naphthalene molecule. It shows, further, the constitution of naphthalene, and, again, the constitution of phthalic acid as the *o*-dicarboxylic acid of benzene:

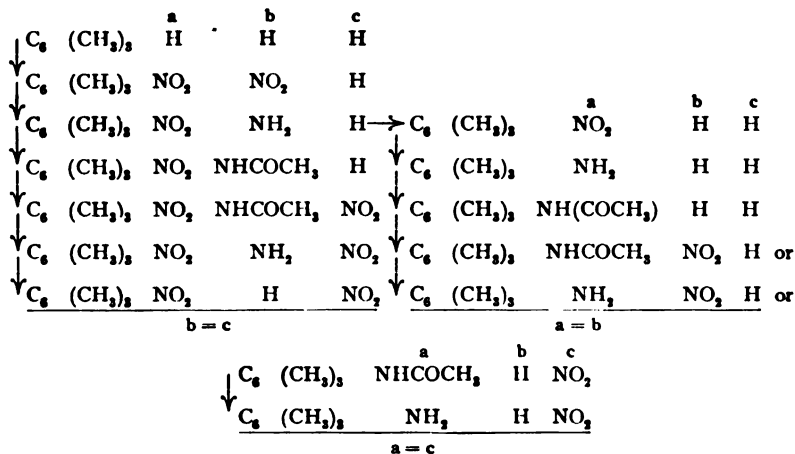

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{NO}_2 & \text{NO}_2 & \text{H} \\ | & | & | \\ \text{H} & \text{H} & \text{H} \end{array} \text{H}, \quad \begin{array}{ccc} \text{NH}_2 & \text{H} & \text{H} \\ | & | & | \\ \text{H} & \text{H} & \text{H} \end{array} \text{N} = \text{N} = \begin{array}{ccc} \text{H} & \text{H} & \text{H} \\ | & | & | \\ \text{H} & \text{H} & \text{H} \end{array} \text{H}$$

*o*-Dinitrobenzene                      p-Amidoazobenzene.

Isophthalic acid is benzene-*m*-dicarboxylic acid, as it can be obtained by the oxidation of isoxylene. The latter is *m*-dimethylbenzene. This is proved by its formation from mesitylenic acid, the first oxidation product of mesitylene, the [1,3,5] trimethylbenzene:



Ladenburg demonstrated that mesitylene was really [1,3,5]-trimethylbenzene, in that he proved the three non-substituted hydrogen atoms of the mesitylene to be of equal value (A. 179, 174):

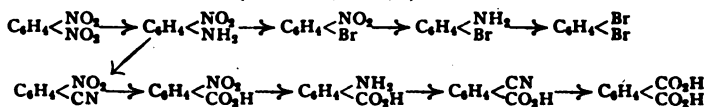


The course of the proof is evident from the preceding diagram. Mesitylene yields dinitromesitylene, the  $\text{NO}_2$  group of which may replace the hydrogen atoms *a* and *b*. From it we get nitroamido-, nitroacetamido-, dinitroacetamido-, dinitroamido-, and dinitromesitylene, identical with the starting-out substance; consequently *b* and *c* are of equal value. Nitroamidomesitylene, in which it is assumed that the  $\text{NH}_2$  group occupies the position *b*, yields mononitro-, monoamido-, monoacetamido-, monoacetamido-nitro-, monoamidonitromesitylene, identical with the first nitroamidomesitylene obtained by reduction of dinitromesitylene; hence *a* and *b*, or *a* and *c*, are of equal value, but, as *b* and *c* are considered as of equal value, the equivalence of the three nonsubstituted hydrogen atoms of mesitylene is proved. Mesitylene is symmetrical, therefore the three methyl groups in it must occupy the position [1, 3, 5].

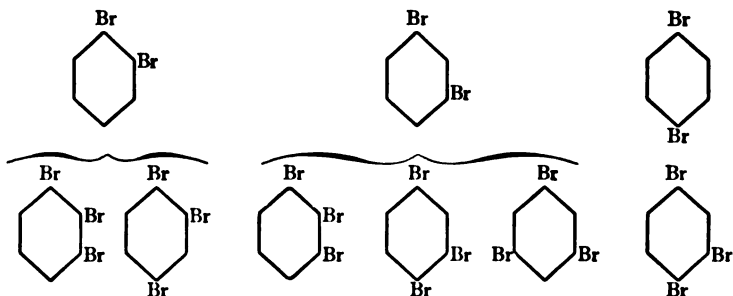
The position [1-4] is all that remains for the third benzene dicarboxylic acid, terephthalic acid. This can be proved in the following manner: Terephthalic acid is obtained from *p*-dimethyl benzene, and the latter from *p*-bromtoluene (by means of methyl iodide and sodium). By oxidation *p*-bromtoluene yields *p*-brombenzoic acid. *p*-Brombenzoic acid and *p*-oxybenzoic acid belong in the same series, as *p*-oxybenzoic acid can be made from the same *p*-amidobenzoic acid, by means of the diazo-compound, from which *p*-brombenzoic acid can be prepared. But it was shown in the preceding paragraphs, in regard to *p*-oxybenzoic acid (p. 34) that its hydroxyl group replaced an

hydrogen atom which was not arranged symmetrically with reference to any other hydrogen atom in benzene.

The three phthalic acids bear a genetic relationship to the derivatives of benzene, which do not contain carbon-containing radicals as substituents. The three dinitrobenzenes can be changed to nitroamido-, bromnitro-, bromamido-, and dibrombenzenes on the one hand, and, upon the other, into nitrocyan-, nitrocarboxyl-, amidocarboxyl-, cyancarboxyl-, and phthalic acids by reactions, in which intramolecular atomic rearrangements have not been observed (B. 18, 1492, 1496):

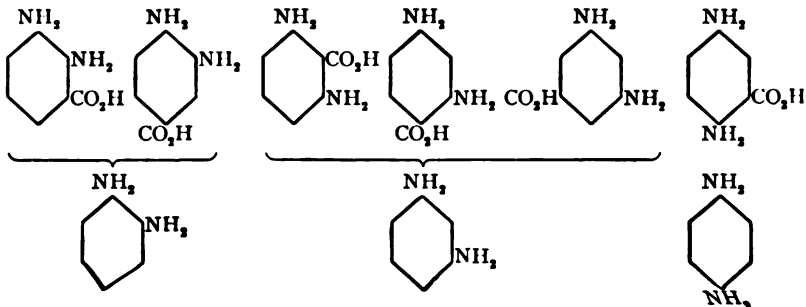


W. Körner, in 1874 (Gazz. chim. ital. 4, 305), proved the position of the substituents in the three dibrombenzenes in an entirely different way. This was also done for the three diamidobenzenes in 1872 by P. Griess (B. 5, 192; 7, 1223). The results are concordant among themselves, and agree with that obtained in previous demonstrations. Körner showed that by converting the three known dibrombenzenes into tribrombenzenes the first dibrombenzene would furnish *two* dibrombenzenes, the second *three* different tribrombenzenes, and the third but *one* tribrombenzene. Proceeding from the benzene hexagon, Körner concluded that the first dibrombenzene contained its bromine atoms in the ortho-position, the second in the meta-, and the third in the para-positions. This view is plainly seen in the subjoined diagram. The hydrogen atoms are omitted for the sake of clearness:



The reverse of this proof, if it may be so styled, is found in the idea which P. Griess carried out experimentally.

There are six isomeric diamidobenzoic acids. The diamidobenzene which results from two of these acids by the exit of carbon dioxide is the o-compound, that one which is formed from three of the acids is the m-body, and the product from the sixth acid is the para-derivative:



Further evidence is found in the derivatives of the three isomeric xylenes, thus:

Metaxylene yields 3 nitroxylenes, xylidines, and xyenols,  
 Orthoxylene yields 2 nitroxylenes, xylidines, and xyenols,  
 Paraxylene yields 1 nitroxylene,

from which it may be concluded that meta- or isoxylene and isophthalic acid have the position [1,3], orthoxylene and phthalic acid the position [1,2], and paraxylene and terephthalic acid the position [1,4] (B. 18, 2687).

That two adjacent carbon atoms of the benzene nucleus do indeed carry the side-groups in the ortho-compounds is further obvious from their ability to enter simple reactions, in which, by union of the side-chains, there result carbo- and, particularly, heterocyclic condensation products (compare o-phenylenediamine, o-amidophenol, o-amidothiophenol, o-amidobenzaldehyde, o-phthalic acid, o-oxycinnamic acid, etc.).

There are also crystallographic grounds favoring the idea that the meta-compounds stand between those of the ortho- and para-series (*Zeitschrift f. Kryst.*, 1879, 171; B. 18, R. 148).

The benzene hexagon not only expresses all the relations of isomerism of the benzene derivatives, but also abundantly illustrates their chemical and physical deportment.

### Isomerism of the Benzene Polysubstitution Products.—

If three or more hydrogen atoms of benzene be replaced, two cases arise: the substituting groups are like or unlike. In the first instance three isomerides of the tri-derivatives—*e. g.*,  $C_6H_3(CH_3)_3$ —are possible, and they occupy the positions:

(1, 2, 3) (1, 2, 4) and (1, 3, 5).

We call them *adjacent* (1, 2, 3) or (*v*) = vicinal, *unsymmetrical* (1, 2, 4) or (*as*) = asymmetrical, and *symmetrical* (1, 3, 5) or (*s*) tri-derivatives.

Three isomeric structural cases exist likewise for the tetra-derivatives, with four similar groups,  $C_6H_2X_4$  (analogous to the di-derivatives):

(1, 2, 3, 4)	(1, 2, 4, 5)	(1, 2, 3, 5)
Adjacent	Symmetrical	Unsymmetrical.

Only one modification is possible when there are five and six similar groups; thus there exists but one pentachlorobenzene,  $C_6HCl_5$ , and but one hexachloride,  $C_6Cl_6$ .

When the substituting groups are unlike, the number of possible isomerides is far greater; they can easily be derived from the hexagon scheme. Thus, six isomeric modifications correspond to the formula of dinitrobenzoic acid,  $C_6H_3(NO_2)_2 \cdot CO_2H$ :

(1, 2, 3) (1, 2, 4) (1, 2, 5) (1, 2, 6) (1, 3, 4) (1, 3, 5);

here the carboxyl group occupies position 1.

The constitution of the polysubstitution products of benzene is deduced from their genetic relations to the derivatives of benzene of known constitution.

See v. Meyer, B. 29, 2564, etc., upon the deportment of polyalkylic benzene derivatives when the acetyl group is introduced by means of acetyl chloride and aluminium chloride, as well as for the conclusions to be drawn from the same in regard to the position of the substituents.

### CONSTITUTION OF THE BENZENE NUCLEUS.

In Kekulé's formula, proposed in 1865, the six carbon atoms are attached to one another by alternating single and double bonds, forming a closed ring (p. 30). This

assumption gives a rather comprehensive view of the entire behavior of the benzene derivatives:

1. It illustrates in the clearest manner possible the methods which have been employed in the synthesis of benzene derivatives (p. 41), benzene condensations, naphthalene, phenanthrene, etc. This has all been verified by the most recent syntheses (that of  $\alpha$ -naphthol from phenylisocrotonic acid, etc.). Compare also B. 24, 3117.

2. It is in complete harmony with the decomposition reactions of the benzene nucleus (p. 44).

3. It gives a simple explanation of the fact that only ortho-derivatives (because their side-chains are adjacent) are capable of forming anhydrides, and explains many derivatives due to ortho-condensations. The accepted benzene formula is made quite evident from the manner in which the quinoline ring is formed (Marckwald, A. 280, 1).

4. The assumption of three double unions offers the simplest explanation (without new theories) for the power of benzene derivatives to yield additive products (p. 18). True, this addition does not occur as readily with the normal benzene compounds as it does with the methane compounds, in which there exist ethylene unions; however, aliphatic olefine derivatives also show gradual differences in this particular (see allyl alcohol, I, p. 130). Consult v. Baeyer, A. 269, 181, upon the assumption of para-additions in benzene.

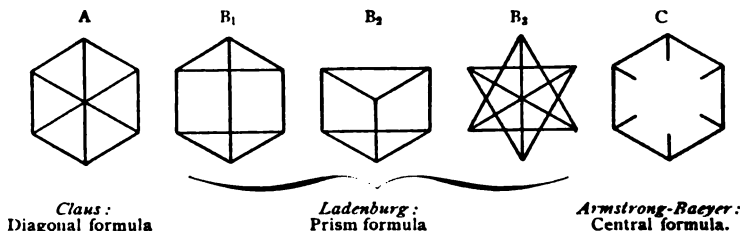
5. Various physical properties argue for the presence of double unions, like those of ethylene, in benzene. Thus, the specific refractive powers indicate the presence of three ethylene unions,  $\text{CH}=\text{CH}$ , in benzene compounds, and five in naphthalene (Brühl, B. 27, 1065). Compare Nasini, B. 23, R. 276. The specific volumes of the benzene derivatives appear to support the idea of three double unions (I, p. 60).

Kekulé's formula for benzene does not fully express the entire symmetry of the benzene nucleus. It would make the ortho-derivatives (1, 2) and (1, 6) different, and allow of four different derivatives, unless we admit Kekulé's idea of the oscillations of the adjacent carbon atoms (A. 162, 86; B. 5, 463; A. 279, 195).

Perhaps in the formation of an ortho-derivative there is a displacement of the double union if the substituting groups attach themselves to two singly-linked carbon atoms of the ring, so that that derivative will always be produced in which the substituting groups are joined to doubly-linked carbon atoms. The easier, more complete oxidation of the o-derivatives, as compared with the corresponding m- and p-derivatives, harmonizes with this conception.

It cannot be denied that the insufficiency of the Kekulé benzene formula is observable when predicting the existence of two instead of one modification of an ortho-disubstitution product. It may also be remarked that the many analogies predominating between the ortho- and meta-derivatives, as compared with the para-bodies, are not fully expressed by this formula. However, this formula, of all benzene formulas, is given the preference in this book, because it allows of a most complete view of the aromatic and aliphatic compounds.

Attention is also directed to other benzene formulas: The *diagonal formula* of Claus (A), the *prism formula* of Ladenburg ( $B_1, B_2, B_3$ ), and the *central formula* of Armstrong and v. Baeyer (C):



Formulas A and B do not regard double unions as being present in the normal benzene nucleus. The existence of nine single linkages was thought to have been definitely

proved by the specific volumes of the benzene compounds, and especially by their heats of combustion (Theorie der Bildungswärme von J. Thomsen, B. 13, 1808; 14, 2944). According to the most recent researches, the specific volumes argue strongly for the presence of three divalent unions in the benzene nucleus, while the conclusions drawn from the heat of combustion are, in the opinion of Brühl, unfounded (J. pr. Chemie [2], 49, 201).

Ladenburg's *prism formula* fully accounts for all the static relations of benzene, and explains its isomeric derivatives. It, however, ignores all the double unions, which are proved by the partially reduced benzene nuclei of the di- and tetra-hydro-additive products. It establishes a spacial orientation of the four affinities of the carbon atoms, which is without analogy in the paraffin series, and, in the opinion of its author, leaves to the formula of Kekulé the first place in explaining the various modes of formation and the decompositions of the benzene compounds (B. 23, 1010).

The *diagonal formula* of A. Claus, with its hexagonal ring and its diagonal or central linkages, explains all the isomeric relations of the derivatives of benzene fully as well as the hexagon formula. It has the advantage that it permits of the formation of either para- or ortho-additive products, because it grants the double carbon-linkages in both the di- and tetra-hydro-benzenes (B. 20, 1422; J. pr. Ch. [2], 49, 505). But it also presents an orientation of the four carbon affinities that is without analogy, and introduces a peculiar central valence, differing from that of the two ring valences.

Baeyer has very recently introduced a *central formula*, which is very similar to the diagonal formula, but, unlike the latter, does not admit the presence of central linkages. It does not attempt to account for the state or condition of the fourth valence of carbon, but maintains merely that it exerts a pressure directed toward the center. It thus reverts to the hexagonal formula of benzene (Kekulé), which makes no attempt to explain the manner in which the fourth valences are combined (B. 23, 1272; 24, 2689; A. 269, 145; B. 24, R. 728).

Certain constitutional formulas proposed for benzene—e. g., the octahedral formula of Thomsen (B. 19, 2944) and the very noteworthy benzene model of Sacchse (B. 21, 2530; Z. f. phys. Ch. 11, 214; 23, 2062)—are based on stereo-chemical considerations. The Ch. Ztg. (1894) 18, 155, contains a list of benzene formulas.

## BENZENE RING-FORMATIONS.

The nucleus-synthetic reactions of aliphatic bodies, in which the benzene ring is produced, are not especially numerous, but they are, however, very important, because they connect the aliphatic with the aromatic derivatives containing one nucleus. On this account they will be brought together before the individual classes of compounds are discussed, and will be arranged in the order according to which the starting-out bodies under the aliphatic compounds have been discussed:

1.  $\text{CH}_4$ , *Methane*, conducted through a tube heated to redness, yields *benzene*.

2.  $3\text{CH}\equiv\text{CH}$ , *Acetylene*, polymerizes at a red heat to *benzene* (1, p. 96).

3a.  $3\text{CH}\equiv\text{C}\cdot\text{CH}_3$ , *Allylene*, is polymerized by concentrated sulphuric acid to [1,3,5]-*trimethylbenzene* or *mesitylene* (1, p. 98).

3b.  $3\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{C}\equiv\text{C}\cdot\text{CH}_3$ , *Crotonylene*, polymerizes to *hexamethylbenzene*.

4.  $\text{CCl}_4$ , *Perchlormethane*, and  $\text{CCl}_2=\text{CCl}_2$ , *perchlorethylene*, yield *perchlorbenzene* when they are conducted through a tube heated to redness; compare *perbrombenzene*.

5.  $3\text{CH}\equiv\text{CBr}$ , *Monobromacetylene*, polymerizes to [1,3,5]-tribrombenzene (1, p. 106).

6.  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{I}$ , *Hexyl iodide*, when acted upon by iodine chloride, yields *hexachlorbenzene*; with bromine the product is *hexabrombenzene*.

# REACTANT INFORMATION

... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...

... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...

... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...

... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...

## REACTANT INFORMATION

... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...

... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...  
 ... OF THE BENZENE COMPOUND ...

43

acid  
t is  
nent

de-

ane  
den-  
nes,  
ark-

tion  
per-

g a  
hree  
of  
cety-  
lene  
er to

natic  
tain  
are

oxide  
flow-

other  
opyl-  
id to

ropyl-  
action  
times

[1,3,5]-

the oxy-  
sensations

sensation of  
- and duro-  
d (20).  
densation of

icated in the  
benzene ring  
unds, beariv

7a.  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CHO}$ , *Geranial*, or *citral*, yields [1,4]-*isopropyltoluene* or *cymene*, when it is acted upon with potassium bisulphate.

7b.  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , from methyl ethyl acrolein and acetone, yields *pseudo-cumene*.

7c.  $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5) \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5) \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , from two molecules of isovaleraldehyde and one molecule of acetone, yields *di-isopropyltoluene* (B. 28, R. 608).

8a.  $3\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , *Acetone*, under the influence of sulphuric acid, yields [1,3,5]-*trimethylbenzene* or *mesitylene* (I, p. 214).

8b.  $3\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , *Methylethylketone*, changes to [1,3,5]-*triethylbenzene*.

8c.  $3\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , *Methyl-n-propylketone*, yields [1,3,5]-*tri-n-propylbenzene*.

9.  $6\text{CO}$ , *Carbon monoxide*, combines at high temperatures with potassium to form *potassium hexaoxybenzene* (I, p. 236).

10.  $3\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COCl}$ , *Butyryl chloride*, is condensed by  $\text{Al}_2\text{Cl}_6$  to *triethylphloroglucin*.

11.  $3\text{CH} \equiv \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , *Propiolic acid*, polymerizes in sunlight to [1,3,5]-*benzenetricarboxylic acid* or *trimesic acid*.

12.  $3\text{NO}_2\text{CH}(\text{CHO})_2$ , *Nitromalonic aldehyde*, passes into sym. *trinitrobenzene*, when its sodium salt is decomposed.

13.  $\text{NO}_2 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CHO})_2$ , *Nitromalonic aldehyde*, and  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , *acetone*, yield *p-nitrophenol* (B. 28, 2597).

14.  $3\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH} = \text{CH} \cdot \text{OH}$ , *Oxymethylene acetone*, or *formyl acetone*, condenses very easily to [1,3,5]-*triacetylbenzene*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{COCH}_3)_3$  (I, p. 319).

15a.  $2\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , *Diacetyl*, is condensed by alkalis to *p-xyloquinone* or [2,5]-*dimethylquinone*.

15b.  $2\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , *Acetylpropionyl*, yields *duroquinone* or *tetramethylquinone*.

16.  $3\text{CH}(\text{OH}) = \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , *Oxymethylene acetic ester* or *formyl-acetic ester*, and its dimolecular condensation product, *coumalic acid*, condense quite readily to esters of [1,3,5]-*benzene tricarboxylic acid* or *trimesic acid*.

17a.  $2\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , *Pyroracemic acid*, and  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHO}$ , *acetaldehyde*, when heated with baryta water, condense to [1,3,5]-*methylisophthalic acid* or *uvitic acid*.

17b.  $2\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , *Pyroracemic acid*, and  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CHO}$ , *propionic aldehyde*, yield [1,3,5]-*ethylisophthalic acid*.

18.  $2\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CHNa} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , *Sodium acetoacetic ester*, and  $\text{CHCl}_3$ , *chloroform*, rearrange themselves to oxyuvitic ester or oxymethylisophthalic ester.

19.  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , *Dehydracetic acid*, yields *orcinol* or 3,5-dioxytoluene.

20.  $2\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , *Acetonoxalic ester*, condenses to *oxytoluic ester*.

It is very doubtful whether a synthesis occurs in the production of *mellitic acid* or *benzene hexacarboxylic acid*,  $C_6(CO_2H)_6$ , by the oxidation of coal or graphite. It is more probable that this reaction must be regarded as a transformation or rearrangement of a carbon molecule consisting of twelve carbon atoms.

Reviewing the aliphatic bodies which are converted into benzene derivatives by nucleus-synthetic reactions, it will be discovered that

1. Certain saturated bodies like methane (1) and tetrachlormethane (4) yield the benzene ring under the influence of heat,—by *pyrocondensation*. Many benzene derivatives, like benzene, the methyl benzenes, the simple amido- and oxybenzenes, are distinguished by their remarkable stability at high temperatures (see coal tar, p. 48).

2. Perchlorbenzene has been observed in the *exhaustive chlorination* of many aliphatic substances. Hexyl iodide (6) is converted into perchlor- and perbrom-benzene with especial ease.

3. A great number of aliphatic acetylene derivatives containing a trebly-linked pair of carbon atoms *polymerize*, and by the union of three similar molecules form benzene derivatives. The polymerization of acetylene to benzene (2) occurs with the greatest difficulty. Bromacetylene (5) polymerizes much more readily. Allylene (3a) and crotonylene (3b) require sulphuric acid, and propiolic acid (11) sunlight in order to bring about *aromatic polymerization*.

The other aliphatic compounds capable of condensing to aromatic substances, which, in other words, manifest *aromatic condensation*, contain carbon and oxygen linked doubly to each other. Many of them are ketones; others contain the oxymethylene group.

4. The production of potassium hexaoxybenzene from carbon monoxide and potassium (9) is based upon a direct *addition-reaction*. The following are *hydrolytic condensations*:

5. The ring-formation in the transition of citral or geranial and other high molecular keto-olefines into cymene, pseudocumene, and isopropyltoluene (7a, b, c), as well as the condensation of dehydracetic acid to orcinol (19). This proceeds with the exit of carbon dioxide.

6. The condensation of acetone, methyl-ethyl- and methyl-n-propylketone to [1,3,5]-trialkyl benzenes (8a, 8b, 8c). A similar reaction is that of butyryl chloride, which splits off hydrochloric acid three times and condenses to triethylphloroglucin (10).

7. The condensation of pyroracemic acid and aldehydes to [1,3,5]-alkylic isophthalic acids (17a, 17b).

8. The condensations of nitromalonic aldehyde and of the oxymethylene compounds (12, 13, 14, 16) are related to the condensations considered under 6 and 7.

9. Two aliphatic molecules take part in the hydrolytic condensation of  $\alpha$ -diketones—e. g., diacetyl and acetylpropionyl to p-xylo- and duroquinone (15a, 15b); (10) acetonoxalic acid to oxytoluic acid (20).

11. Three aliphatic molecules (18) participate in the condensation of chloroform and sodium acetoacetic ester.

Various other reactions attach themselves to those indicated in the preceding paragraphs, which lead to the formation of the benzene ring. They result in the production of hydroaromatic compounds, bearing

an intimate kinship to the derivatives of benzene. Some of them are:

1. Sodium malonic ester condenses to phloroglucin tricarboxylic ester, sodium acetone dicarboxylic ester to dioxyphenylaceto-dicarboxylic ester, while triketohexamethylene dicarboxylic ester is formed from acetone dicarboxylic ester and malonic ester (B. 29, R. 1117). All these condensation products are probably hexahydrobenzene derivatives.

2. Succinic ester is condensed by metallic sodium to succinylosuccinic ester.

3.  $\alpha$ -Diacetoglutaric ester changes readily to 3-methyl-4-ketohexamethylene. Condensations of  $\delta$ -diketo bodies, such as the preceding, are rather numerous. Thus,  $\gamma$ -acetobutyric ester,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$ , and sodium ethylate yield dihydroresorcinol, which conversely breaks down into  $\gamma$ -acetobutyric acid (compare decompositions of the benzene ring).

Other methods showing the synthesis of hydroaromatic compounds have already been given (pp. 20, 21).

#### DECOMPOSITIONS OF THE BENZENE RING.

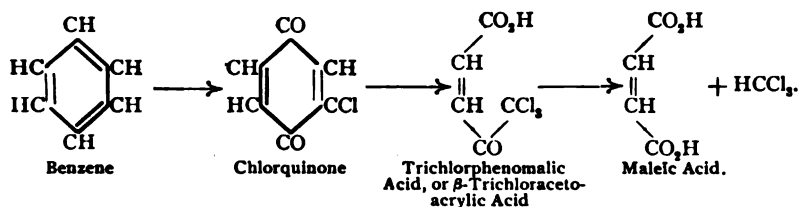
The benzene derivatives in general are characterized by the stability of the benzene ring. To break the latter down the proper benzene bodies are acted upon by reagents which open up the double union in part or entirely. Hence, the decomposition is invariably preceded by the formation of hydroaromatic intermediate products, which usually cannot be isolated. Often decomposition products result, which still contain the six carbon atoms in the molecule as an open chain, but usually they are fragments of the decomposition, and in some instances they are pentacarboxylic derivatives formed from hexacarboxylic  $\alpha$ -diketones.

The phenols, amidophenols, quinones, oxyquinones, and phenol carboxylic acids are most suitable for the ring decomposition.

1. **Decomposition by Moderated Oxidation.**—Although energetic oxidation decomposes the benzene nucleus of the aromatic substances referred to in such a manner that bodies containing two carbon atoms result,—*e. g.*, carbon dioxide, formic acid, and oxalic acid,—yet it has been possible, by means of nitrous acid, to oxidize pyrocatechol or [1,2]-dioxybenzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1,2](\text{OH})_2$ , and protocatechuic acid or [3,4]-dioxybenzoic acid,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}[1]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[3,4](\text{OH})_2$ , to dioxytartaric acid (Kekulé).

Phenol,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{OH}$ , has been converted by dilute potassium permanganate into mesotartaric acid (Döbner).

2. **Decomposition by Simultaneous Chlorination and Oxidation.**—When benzene is treated with potassium chlorate and sulphuric acid, trichlorphenomalic acid or  $\beta$ -trichloracetoacrylic acid (1, p. 382) is produced (chlorquinone is an intermediate product), which breaks down, under the influence of baryta water, into chloroform and maleic acid (Kekulé and Strecker):



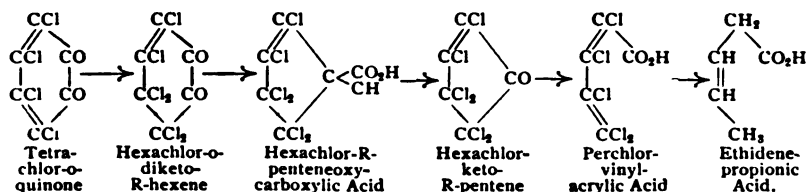
Potassium chlorate and hydrochloric acid change phenol, salicylic acid, or o-oxybenzoic acid,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}[\text{1}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[\text{2}]\text{OH}$ , and gallic acid,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}[\text{1}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[\text{2},\text{3},\text{4}](\text{OH})_3$ , into trichlorpyruracemic acid or isotrichlorglyceric acid,  $\text{CCl}_3\text{C}(\text{OH})_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$  (see 1, 370).

Bleaching lime converts picric acid or [1OH,2,4,6]-trinitrophenol into chlorpicrin (vol. 1), while bromine and lime-water change it to brompicrin (vol. 1).

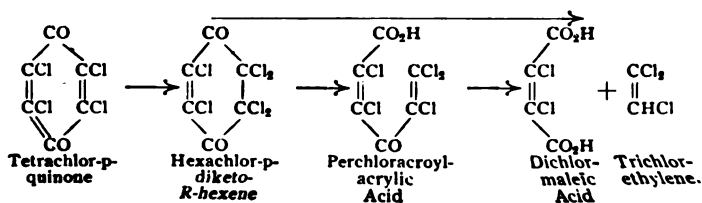
Zincke has given an interesting method for the decomposition of the benzene nucleus. It consists in preparing chlorinated R-hexene- and R-hexylene ketones from suitable aromatic bodies, and then decomposing the first.

Four examples may be given. The first three attach themselves to the three dioxybenzenes and the fourth to [1,3,5]-trioxybenzene or phloroglucin.

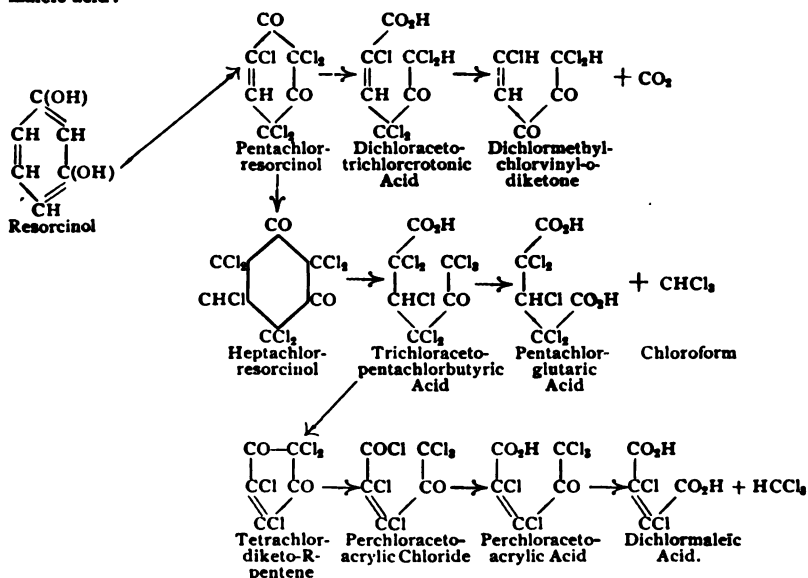
1. Chlorine converts pyrocatechol or o-dioxybenzene first into tetrachlororthoquinone, and this into hexachlor-o-diketo-R-hexene. The latter compound, when digested with water, sustains a rearrangement into hexachlor-R-penteneoxycarboxylic acid, which chromic acid oxidizes to hexachloro-R-pentene. Caustic soda resolves the R-pentene ketone into perchlorvinylacrylic acid, which becomes ethidenepropionic acid upon reduction (B. 27, 3364):



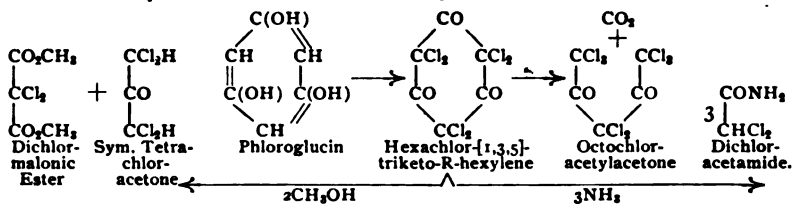
2. The decomposition of *hydroquinone* proceeds more simply. Tetrachlorparaquinone is readily formed by the action of chlorine upon hydroquinone or quinone, as well as by the action of potassium chlorate and hydrochloric acid upon phenol. The further addition of chlorine leads to hexachlorparadiketo-R-hexene, which is converted by alcoholic potash into perchloracroylacrylic acid. The latter, and also hexachlorparadiketo-R-hexene itself, are decomposed by aqueous caustic soda into dichlormaleic acid, trichlorethylene, and hydrochloric acid (A. 267, 1):



3. Chlorine converts *resorcinol*, in glacial acetic solution, into pentachlororesorcinol, and this into heptachlororesorcinol. Both m-diketochlorides are decomposed by cold water; the pentachlor-derivative yields dichloracetotrichlorcrotonic acid, while the hepta- body yields trichloracetopentachlorbutyric acid under the influence of chlorine and water. When dichloracetotrichlorcrotonic acid is boiled with water it becomes dichlormethylchlorvinyl o-diketone. Trichloracetopentachlorbutyric acid is decomposed by alkalis, the same as trichloracetoacrylic acid, into chloroform and pentachloroglutaric acid. If, however, it be treated with boiling water, it changes to tetrachlordiketo-R-pentene, which chlorine converts into the chloride of perchloracetoacrylic acid. Water changes the chloride to the acid, which alkalis decompose into chloroform and dichlormalefic acid:



4. Phloroglucin, or [1,3,5]-trioxybenzene, behaves just like resorcinol. Chlorine converts it into hexachlor-[1,3,5]-triketo-R-hexylene. Water and chlorine decompose the triketo into octochloracetylacetone; methyl alcohol changes it to the dimethyl ester of dichlormaleonic acid, and sym. tetrachloracetone; while with ammonia it yields three molecules of dichloracetamide (B. 23, 1706):

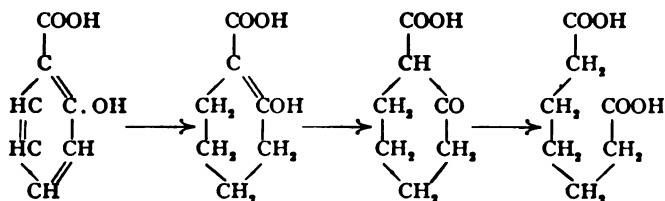


In the four preceding examples the decomposition occurs between a CO-group and a CCl<sub>2</sub>-group of a ketochloride. Zincke first elaborated these reactions in the naphthalene series, and used them to effect the decomposition of the one naphthalene nucleus, and for the transformation of naphthalene into indene derivatives. Later he extended them

to the phenols and other aromatic bodies which have been mentioned. Hantzsch, in like manner, effected the decomposition of phenol in an alkaline solution, and changed it to cyclopentene compounds (B. 22, 1238).

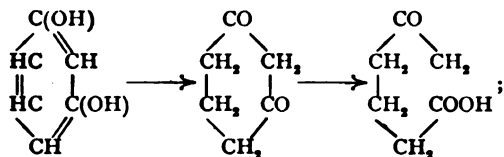
**3. Decomposition by Reduction in Alkaline Solution.**—This decomposition is shown by—

I. The *o*-phenolcarboxylic acids when they are reduced by metallic sodium in amyl alcoholic solution. It is very probable that the intermediate products of the reduction are tetrahydroacids and their products of rearrangement—the hydroaromatic *o*-ketone carboxylic acids. The latter absorb water and become pimelic acids. Salicylic acid is converted almost quantitatively into *n*-pimelic acid, while *o*-, *m*-, and *p*-cresotinic acids yield the three isomeric methyl pimelic acids (Einhorn and Willstätter, B. 28, R. 744):



This reaction has been carried out with equal success with the naphthalene-*o*-oxycarboxylic acids (see decompositions of the naphthalene ring).

II. Reduction changes resorcinol into dihydroresorcinol, which is converted into *n*-glutaric acid by oxidation with potassium permanganate (Merling, A. 278, 32). If dihydroresorcinol be heated for several hours with a concentrated baryta solution to 150–160°, it takes up water and decomposes into  $\gamma$ -acetobutyric acid (Vorländer, B. 28, 2348):



This reaction can be made retrogressive (compare p. 44).

## I. BENZENE HYDROCARBONS CONTAINING A SINGLE NUCLEUS.

**Benzene, Phene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6$** , melting at + 5.4° and boiling at 80.4° (760 mm.), is the parent hydrocarbon of the aromatic compounds. It is produced in the dry distillation of coal, and is accordingly present in coal tar, accompanied by thiophene,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{S}$  (a body which may be readily confounded with it in physical properties), and numerous other deriva-

tives. Pure benzene is obtained by heating benzoic acid or other benzene polycarboxylic acids with lime. It is prepared synthetically by heating acetylene to high temperatures (Berthelot, 1870).

Benzene is obtained from coal tar by fractional distillation. The presence of thiophene in it is readily determined by the indophenine or phenanthraquinone reaction (see thiophene). The thiophene can be removed from the benzene by shaking the latter with concentrated sulphuric acid, or by acting upon it with aluminium chloride (B. 29, R. 1000, 1152). It is finally purified by surrounding it with a freezing mixture, and the crystalline benzene is pressed out in the cold.

*History* (B. 23, 1271).—Faraday (1825) discovered benzene in an oil obtained by the compression of illuminating gas. In 1834 Mitscherlich obtained it by distilling benzoic acid with lime, and in 1845 Hofmann found it in coal tar.

*Properties*.—Benzene is a mobile, ethereal-smelling liquid, of specific gravity 0.899 at 0° (0.8799 at 20°). It burns with a luminous flame, mixes with absolute alcohol and ether, and readily dissolves resins, fats, and many carbon compounds, some of which crystallize out in combination with the benzene (see triphenylmethane). Sulphur, iodine, and phosphorus are also soluble in benzene.

*Deportment and Transformations*.—(1) When benzene is conducted through tubes heated to redness it loses hydrogen and changes partly into diphenyl,  $C_6H_5$ ,  $C_6H_6$ , diphenyl benzenes,  $C_6H_5(C_6H_5)_2$ , etc., and in part into acetylene. (2) If benzene be acted upon with manganese dioxide and sulphuric acid some benzoic acid is produced, due evidently to the diphenyl formed at first (A. 221, 234), and also o-phthalic acid. The benzene is, however, quite stable in the presence of oxidants; but when potassium chlorate and sulphuric acid act upon it, it is torn asunder and becomes trichlorphenomalic acid or  $\beta$ -trichloracetoacrylic acid (p. 45). Benzene exposed for a long period to the action of ozone changes to a white, amorphous mass—*oxobenzene*. This is a very explosive body. It has the formula  $C_6H_6O_6$ . Water slowly decomposes it (B. 28, R. 540, 1054). (3) Hydriodic acid reduces it to [cyclohexane] or hexahydrobenzene (see this) (A. 278, 88). (4) Chlorine and bromine not only add themselves to benzene, but also replace its hydrogen (p. 58). (5) Nitric acid converts it into nitrobenzene,  $C_6H_5NO_2$ . (6) Sulphuric acid changes it to benzene sulphonic acid,  $C_6H_5SO_3H$ . These last two compounds are made upon a technical scale. Alkyl residues can be introduced into benzene by the action of  $Al_2Cl_6$  and alkylgens (see formation (4) of benzene hydrocarbons, p. 50). (7) Benzene and aldehydes are condensed by sulphuric acid to higher aromatic hydrocarbons (see diphenylmethane and diphenylethane).

### COAL TAR.

Not only benzene, but also numerous methyl benzenes and many more highly condensed aromatic hydrocarbons, like *naphthalene*,  $C_{10}H_8$ , *acenaphthene*,  $C_{12}H_{10}$ , *fluorene*,  $C_{13}H_{10}$ , *anthracene* and *phenanthrene*,  $C_{14}H_{10}$ , *fluoranthene*,  $C_{15}H_{10}$ , *pyrene*,  $C_{16}H_{10}$ , *chrysene*,  $C_{18}H_{12}$ , etc., are obtained by the dry distillation of coal. They are present in coal tar, which is produced in great quantities in the manufacture of illuminating gas and in the coke industry. In addition to gas and tar, which are products of coal distillation, mention must also be made of the ammonia water. These are the volatile products. Coke remains in the retorts. It is a better fuel than coal; it is richer in carbon.

The rapid, brilliant development of the chemistry of the benzene de-

rivatives is largely due to the fact that the aromatic parent hydrocarbons are so largely present in coal tar, and are accessible in large amounts through various technical industries. The very nature of the paraffins renders them unsuitable for the preparation of the aliphatic bodies, whereas the benzene hydrocarbons, because of the readiness with which they enter into all kinds of reactions, constitute not only the systematic, but also the practical foundation for the upbuilding of the chemistry of the aromatic derivatives. Coal tar, which contains these hydrocarbons, is an inexhaustible source for the preparation of numerous benzene derivatives, not a few of which have found extensive application as dyes or medicines.

*The Working of Coal Tar for Aromatic Hydrocarbons.*—The tar contains not only aromatic hydrocarbons, but also paraffins, thiophene, methylated thiophenes, phenols, pyridine bases, and other derivatives. It is first distilled and then separated into three or four fractions:

1. *Light Oil* (3–5 per cent.), specifically lighter than water and boiling up to 150°.
2. *Middle Oil* (8–10 per cent.), having about the same specific gravity as water and boiling from 150–210°.
3. *Heavy Oil* (8–10 per cent.), heavier than water and boiling at 210–270°.
4. *Green Oil or Anthracene Oil* (16–20 per cent.), colored green, and boiling from 270–400°.
5. Residue: *pitch*.

It is only the light oil which is of value when the aromatic hydrocarbons are under consideration. It is freed from resins, olefines, pyridine bases, etc., by washing with sulphuric acid, and from phenols by treating it with caustic soda. After this it is subjected to careful, fractional distillation in a column apparatus like that employed in the purification of alcohol (I, p. 123).

Besides benzene, coal tar contains *toluene* or methyl benzene, the three isomeric *xylenes* or dimethyl benzenes, ethyl benzene, *vinyl benzene* or *styrene*, the three isomeric trimethyl benzenes; mesitylene, *pseudocumene*, hemimellitene and durene or tetramethyl benzene. Aromatic hydrocarbons also occur abundantly in the tar from peat, in small amount in the tar from wood, in that from bituminous shales, and in petroleum.

To properly understand the formation of the aromatic hydrocarbons by the dry distillation of coal we should take into consideration that they are produced with hydrogen evolution on passing simple, fatty bodies like methane, alcohol, ether, etc., through tubes heated to redness (B. 29, 2691). Such reactions are termed *pyrogenic syntheses* or *pyrocondensations*, in which acetylene and allylene particularly play an important rôle. Just as acetylene yields benzene, so acetylene and allylene form toluene, and benzene and acetylene yield naphthalene, etc. (A. 139, 281; B. 10, 853; 11, 1213; 18, 3032; 19, 2513; 20, 660). The glowing sides of the retort with which the volatile products resulting in the heating of coal come in contact give every opportunity for such pyrocondensations. However, the nature of the starting-substances should really be carefully considered (B. 28, 488).

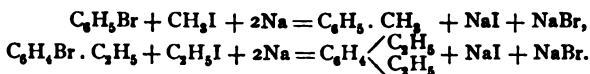
ALKYL BENZENES,  $C_nH_{2n-6}$ .

The *nucleus-synthetic reactions* (I, 85) stand first among the general methods of formation used in connection with the alkyl benzenes (it has been indicated in preceding paragraphs that the methyl benzenes occur in coal tar).

1. It has been repeatedly stated that various symmetric trialkylic benzenes have been obtained by the polymerization of alkyl acetylenes with sulphuric acid, similarly to the polymerization of acetylene to benzene (p. 41):

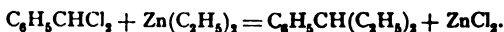
Allylene,  $3CH_2 \cdot C \equiv CH \xrightarrow{SO_4H_2} C_6H_5[1,3,5](CH_2)_3$ , Mesitylene. Ketones, such as acetone, ethylmethyl ketone, etc., can be treated with sulphuric acid, instead of the alkyl acetylenes (p. 42).

2. The reaction of Fittig, discovered in 1864, is more generally used. It consists of the action of sodium upon a mixture of brominated benzenes, and the bromides or the iodides of the alkyls in ethereal solution (A. 129, 369; 131, 303; B. 21, 3185):



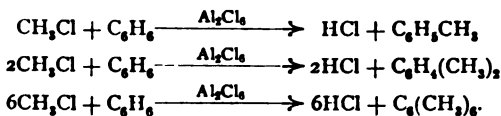
This reaction is a valuable generalization of the synthesis applied by Würtz to the paraffins, which consisted in acting on the alkylgens with sodium (I, 84). A few drops of acetic ether sometimes accelerate the reaction, which proceeds the more smoothly the greater the molecular weight of the alkyl iodide.

3. The synthesis of isopropyl benzene from benzal chloride and zinc methide (B. 13, 45), and that of the one amyl benzene from benzal chloride and zinc ethide, corresponds to that of tetramethyl methane from acetone chloride and zinc methide (I, 85);



4. The so-called aluminium chloride synthesis discovered by Friedel and Crafts in 1877, although restricted to the aromatic series, is there very generally applicable. It consists in the action of alkylgens upon benzene hydrocarbons in the presence of aluminium chloride.

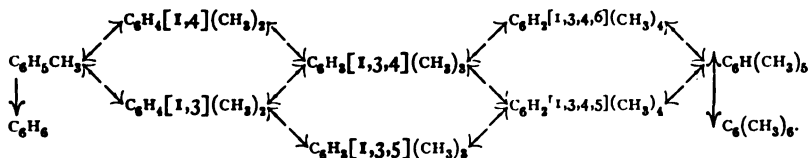
Zinc chloride and ferric chloride act similarly. It is very probable that metallo-organic bodies—*e.g.*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot Al_2Cl_6$ —are formed at first. These then react with the alkylgens. No difficulty is experienced in replacing all the hydrogen atoms of benzene by methyl or ethyl groups (B. 14, 2624; 16, 1745). Sometimes carbon disulphide acts favorably as a diluent (A. 235, 207; B. 29, 2884):



Various haloid compounds—*e.g.*, chloroform (see triphenylmethane)—and the acid radicals (see benzophenone and acetophenone) react similarly with benzene.

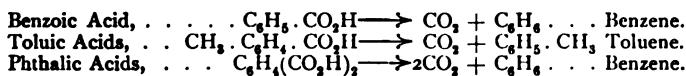
**Decomposition Reactions.**—5. It is rather singular that aluminium chloride lends itself as well to the breaking-down of alkyl benzenes as to their synthesis.

Thus, aluminium chloride acting alone, or more especially when HCl is conducted into polyalkylic benzenes mixed with aluminium chloride, causes the side-chains to split off in the form of alkyl chlorides (A. 235, 177). Under proper experimental conditions it is possible, with the aid of aluminium chloride, to remove the side-chains from one molecule of an hydrocarbon into another molecule of the same hydrocarbon. In so doing the aluminium chloride seems to prefer certain very definite positions of the alkyl groups both in the synthesis and in the decomposition. This is illustrated in the following diagram (Anschütz and Immendorff, B. 18, 657):



6. Concentrated sulphuric acid acts in the same decomposing way, building up new bodies at the same time (see durene, p. 55).

7. Dry distillation of a mixture of aromatic acids with lime or soda-lime (I, p. 81); iron filings are introduced to accelerate the conduction of heat. All the carboxyl groups are split off in the reaction and the original hydrocarbons set free:



8, 9, and 10. *The replacement of inorganic residues in substitution products of the aromatic hydrocarbons by hydrogen.*

8. Treatment of diazo-bodies with alcohol or an alkaline solution of stannous oxide (B. 22, 587). This reaction is of special value in the determination of questions of constitution. The diazo-bodies are obtained from amido-compounds, and these from nitro-derivatives, which result when nitric acid acts upon the hydrocarbons.

9. Treatment of sulpho-acids (see these) with superheated steam and sulphuric acid, concentrated hydrochloric acid or phosphoric acid at 180°.

10. Heating the oxygen derivatives—*e. g.*, phenols and ketones—with zinc dust (Baeyer, A. 140, 295), or with hydriodic acid and phosphorus. It is remarkable that benzophenone,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , for example, is readily reduced, while the opposite is true of diphenyl ether,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ .

**Properties.**—The hydrocarbons of the benzene series are chiefly volatile liquids; some polymethylbenzenes—durene, penta- and hexamethylbenzene—are solids at ordinary temperatures. They possess a peculiar, not disagreeable odor, and are insoluble in water. They dissolve readily in alcohol and in ether. They are excellent solvents for many organic substances, which can be precipitated from solution by petroleum ether.

**Department and Transformations.**—(1) Reducing agents, particularly hydriodic acid, convert the alkyl benzenes, and also benzene itself, into

hydroaromatic hydrocarbons (p. 18). (2) The behavior of the alkyl benzenes under oxidation is very important.

Acids are produced (aromatic acids) by oxidizing their side-chains with nitric acid, a chromic acid mixture, potassium permanganate, or ferricyanide of potassium.

The number and position of the resulting  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}$  groups with reference to each other afford evidence as to the number and position of the alcohol radicals contained in the oxidized hydrocarbon. When long side-chains are carefully oxidized, particularly with potassium permanganate, intermediate products can be obtained, since the oxidation occurs according to the rules which prevail with aliphatic compounds (compare aromatic acids).

(3) Chlorine and bromine replace the hydrogen of the benzene nucleus when they act upon it in the cold, whereas it is the hydrogen of the side-chains which is substituted in the heat (toluene, pp. 54, 61).

(4) Concentrated nitric acid produces nitro-bodies.

(5) Concentrated sulphuric acid, aided by heat, dissolves the alkyl benzenes with formation of sulphonic acids. The hydrocarbons can be recovered again from the latter (see method 9). This constitutes the basis of a method for the separation of the benzenes from the paraffins, as well as affords a means of obtaining the former in a state of purity.

(6) Chromyl chloride,  $\text{CrO}_2\text{Cl}_2$ , unites with the benzene homologues to form compounds which water converts into aromatic aldehydes and ketones (see these).

*Isomerism.*—*Toluene*, the first member of the series, is only known in one modification. More are not possible. The six hydrogen atoms of benzene are equal (p. 30).

*Xylene*, or *dimethyl benzene*, is a disubstitution product; therefore three isomerides are possible (p. 32):

o-Xylene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1] \\ [2] \end{smallmatrix} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{smallmatrix} \right.$  m-Xylene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1] \\ [3] \end{smallmatrix} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{smallmatrix} \right.$  p-Xylene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1] \\ [4] \end{smallmatrix} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{smallmatrix} \right.$

The three xylenes are known. *Ethyl benzene*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , is isomeric with them.

There are eight possible isomerides of the formula  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{12}$ ; all of them are known. They are—

1. Three trimethyl benzenes.
2. Three ethylmethyl benzenes.
3. Two propyl benzenes: n-propyl and isopropyl benzene.

The phenomena of isomerism are, therefore, influenced by the place or position, the number, the homology and isomerism of the alkyls, which have entered the benzene as substituents of the hydrogen.

*Constitution.*—Of all the syntheses of alkyl benzenes, the reaction of Fittig is most suitable for the deduction of conclusions in regard to constitution, because, so far as is known, intramolecular atomic rearrangements do not occur in it—that is, the alkyls assume the position previously held by the halogen atom. Further, the oxidation reaction is important in deciding upon the number and position of the side-chains (see above).

NAME.	FORMULA.	M. P.	B. P.	SPECIFIC GRAVITY.
Toluene, . . . . .	$C_6H_5 \cdot CH_3$ . . .	—	110.3°	0.8708 (13.1/4°)
Xylenes, Dimethyl Benzenes, .	$C_6H_4(CH_3)_2$ . . .			
o-Xylene, . . . . .		— 28°	142°	0.8932 (0°)
m-Xylene, Isoxylene, . . . . .		— 54°	139°	0.8812 (0°)
p-Xylene, . . . . .		+ 15°	138°	0.8801 (0°)
Ethyl Benzene, . . . . .	$C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3$ . . .	—	134°	0.8832 (0°)
Trimethyl Benzenes, . . . . .	$C_6H_3(CH_3)_3$ . . .			
[1,2,3]=Hemimellitene, . . . . .		—	175°	—
[1,2,4]=Pseudocumene, . . . . .		—	170°	—
[1,3,5]=Mesitylene, . . . . .		—	164.5°	0.8694 (9.8/4°)
Methylethyl Benzenes, . . . . .	$C_6H_4(CH_3)(C_2H_5)$ . . .			
o- or [1,2], . . . . .		—	159°	0.8731 (16°)
m- or [1,3], . . . . .		—	159°	0.8690 (20°)
p- or [1,4], . . . . .		—	162°	0.8652 (21°)
n-Propyl Benzene, . . . . .	$C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3$ . . .	—	158.5°	0.8810 (0°)
Isopropyl Benzene, Cumene, . . . . .	$C_6H_5 \cdot CH(CH_3)_2$ . . .	—	153°	0.8798 (0°)
Tetramethyl Benzene, . . . . .	$C_6H_2(CH_3)_4$ . . .			
[1,2,3,4]=Prehnitol, . . . . .		—4°	204°	—
[1,2,3,5]=Isodurene, . . . . .		—	196°	0.8961 (0/4°)
[1,2,4,5]=Durene, . . . . .		79°	190°	—
Cymene, [1,4]-Methylisopropyl Benzene, . . . . .	$C_6H_4(CH_3)(C_3H_7)$ . . .	—	175°	0.8723 (0°)
Pentamethyl Benzene, . . . . .	$C_6H(CH_3)_5$ . . .	53°	230°	—
Hexamethyl Benzene, . . . . .	$C_6(CH_3)_6$ . . .	164°	264°	—
Pentaethyl Benzene, . . . . .	$C_6H(C_2H_5)_5$ . . .	—	277°	0.8985 (19°)
Hexaethyl Benzene, . . . . .	$C_6(C_2H_5)_6$ . . .	129°	298°	—

It is apparent from this table that the position isomerides of the same formula—that is, the three xylenes—have almost the same boiling point. In the case of the dimethyl benzenes the o-modification has the highest-boiling point; then follows the meta-body, and finally the p-compound. However, the latter has the highest melting point. Durene of the tetramethyl benzenes is a solid at the ordinary temperature. This is also true of pentamethyl-, hexamethyl-, and hexaethyl-benzenes. The entrance of methyl into the side-chain raises the boiling point about 24°. See toluene, ethyl benzene, and n-propyl benzene.

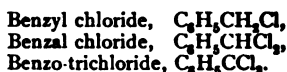
**Toluene**,  $C_6H_5CH_3$ , so called because it is produced in the dry distillation of tolu balsam, occurs in coal tar, accompanied by thiotolene or methyl thiophene (see this). It is very valuable from a commercial standpoint. It is produced by the usual methods:

1. From brombenzene, methyl iodide, and sodium.
2. From benzene, methyl chloride, and aluminium chloride.
3. From the polymethyl benzenes and aluminium chloride.
4. By distillation of the three toluic acids and the methyl polycarboxylic acids with lime, etc.

Reduction changes toluene to *hexahydrotoluene*; dilute nitric acid and chromic acid oxidize it to benzoic acid; chromyl chloride,  $CrO_2Cl_2$ , and water convert it into benzaldehyde.

It yields o- and p-nitrotoluene upon nitration, and when it is sulphonated much p-toluene sulphonic and little of the o-acid result.

The action of chlorine upon toluene deserves mention. At boiling temperatures it is exclusively the hydrogen of the side-group which is substituted, and the products are :



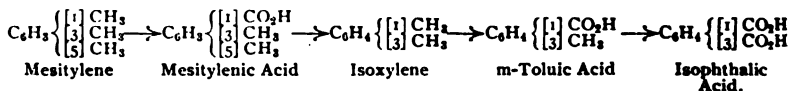
o- and p-Chlortoluene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{Cl} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , are produced in the cold. In the presence of iodine and  $\text{SbCl}_5$  the chlorine only enters the nucleus even in the cold (Beilstein and Geitner, A. 139, 311). Phosphorus pentachloride, however, renders the entrance of chlorine into the side-chain more easy (A. 272, 150).

*Hydrocarbons*,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{10}$ .—Ethyl benzene is isomeric with the three dimethyl benzenes. Iso- or m-xylene, of the three xylenes occurring in coal-tar, is present in the largest amount, and is of technical value.

When the mixture is boiled with dilute nitric acid, the ortho- and para- varieties are changed to their corresponding toluic acids, which are finally oxidized to o- and p-phthalic acids. Metaxylene is attacked with more difficulty. Potassium permanganate oxidizes the three xylenes to their corresponding toluic acids and these to phthalic acids. On shaking crude xylene with ordinary sulphuric acid, the ortho- and meta-xylenes dissolve to form sulphonic acids, which are separated through their salts and sulphamides (B. 10, 1013; 14, 2625). p-Xylene volatilizes first when crude xylene is distilled with steam.

o-Xylene is obtained from brom-toluene by means of  $\text{CH}_3\text{I}$  and sodium. Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to phthalic acid. Chromic acid decomposes it, like many other o-diderivatives, into carbon dioxide and water.

**m-Xylene, or Isoxylene.**—The production of mesitylene by the distillation of mesitylenic acid with lime is of great theoretical importance. This reaction genetically links m-xylene to mesitylene, in which the [1,3,5]-position of the three methyl groups may be demonstrated. This, then, would also prove the m-position for the toluic acid and phthalic acid resulting from the oxidation of m-xylene (p. 37).



p-Xylene is formed when camphor is distilled with  $\text{ZnCl}_2$ . It is obtained pure by the action of sodium and  $\text{CH}_3\text{I}$  upon p-bromtoluene and p-dibrombenzene (B. 10, 1355). Dilute nitric acid oxidizes it first to p-toluic acid and subsequently to terephthalic acid. Chromic acid converts it immediately into the latter acid. Paraxylene is soluble in fuming sulphuric acid only; its sulphonic acid forms large crystals, and is not very soluble.

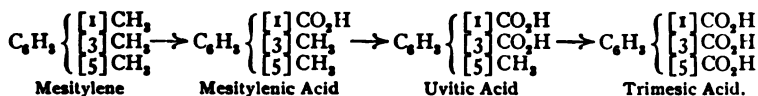
**Ethyl Benzene**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , also present in coal tar, is produced by the action of sodium upon  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Br}$  and  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$ , and hydriodic acid upon styrolene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_3$ , but best by the action of  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Br}$  and  $\text{AlCl}_3$  upon benzene (B. 22, 2662). Dilute nitric acid and chromic acid oxidize it to benzoic acid;  $\text{CrO}_2\text{Cl}_2$  converts it into phenyl acetaldehyde,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CHO}$ .

*Hydrocarbons*,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{12}$ .—The isomerism of the eight compounds of this formula has been mentioned (p. 52): three trimethyl benzenes, three

methyl ethyl benzenes, and two propyl benzenes. The physical constants of these eight hydrocarbons are given in the table exhibited on p. 53.

**Mesitylene**, *symmetrical trimethyl benzene*,  $C_6H_3(CH_3)_3$ , occurs in coal tar, and is produced by distilling acetone (Kane, 1837) or allylene with concentrated sulphuric acid (p. 42; compare B. 29, 958, 2884).

The proof of its symmetrical structure (p. 37) is of fundamental importance in determining the position of benzene substitution products. Dilute nitric acid converts mesitylene into mesitylenic acid, mesidic acid or uvitic acid, and trimesic acid:



**Pseudocumene**, [1,3,4]-*trimethyl benzene*, also occurs in coal tar. It is separated from mesitylene by means of its more difficultly soluble sulpho-acid (B. 9, 258), from which it is subsequently isolated (p. 51). It is formed from brom-p-xylene and 4-brom-m-xylene. This is evident from its constitution.

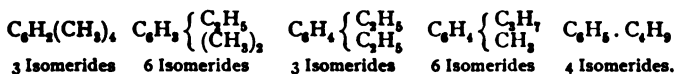
**Hemimellitene**, [1,2,3]-*trimethyl benzene*, occurs in coal tar (B. 19, 2517), and is obtained from isodurylic acid,  $C_6H_3(CH_3)_3 \cdot CO_2H$ . It may be synthesized by the action of metallic sodium and methyl iodide upon 2-brom-m-xylene.

The three **Ethyl Toluenes** have been prepared from the three brom-toluenes by means of ethyl bromide and sodium. The [1,4]-compound from p-brom-toluene, ethyl bromide, and sodium (B. 28, 2648), melts at 162°.

**n-Propyl Benzene** is obtained from  $C_6H_5Br$ , n-propyl iodide or bromide and sodium, or from benzyl chloride, by the action of zinc ethide. It can also be produced from benzene by the action of n-propyl bromide and  $Al_2Cl_6$  at -2° (B. 24, 768).

**Isopropyl Benzene**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C_3H_7$ , called **Cumene**, was first made by distilling cumic acid with lime. It can be synthesized by the action of  $AlCl_3$  upon a mixture of benzene with isopropyl bromide or chloride, and from benzal chloride,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CHCl_2$ , by means of zinc methide. As n-propyl bromide is rearranged when warm by  $Al_2Cl_6$  into isopropyl bromide, isopropyl benzene is produced in this synthesis with  $Al_2Cl_6$  if the experiment is not conducted in the cold. In the animal organism isopropyl benzene yields propyl phenol (B. 17, 2551).

Twenty-two isomerides are possible for the *hydrocarbons*,  $C_{10}H_{14}$ :



(a) **Tetramethyl Benzenes**,  $C_6H_2(CH_3)_4$ . The three bodies possible theoretically are known. **Symmetrical Durene** [1,2,4,5], present in coal tar (A. 18, 3034), is formed from 6-brom-pseudocumene and 4,6-dibrom-m-xylene, by means of  $CH_3I$  and sodium; and from toluene by  $CH_3Cl$  and  $AlCl_3$ , as well as from penta- and hexamethyl benzene, by means of  $Al_2Cl_6$ . Nitric acid oxidizes it to durylic and cumidic acids,  $C_6H_2(CH_3)_4 \cdot (CO_2H)_2$  (the symmetrical constitution of durene is concluded from this) (B. 11, 31). Durene is converted by concentrated sulphuric acid into hexamethyl benzene, and the sulphonic acids of prehnitol, pseudocumene, and isoxylene, which can be separated by means of their amides. Penta-methyl and penta-ethyl benzene undergo similar transpositions.

**Isodurene**, [1,2,3,5]- or unsymmetrical tetramethyl benzene, is obtained from brom-mesitylene with  $CH_3I$  and Na (its constitution follows from this (B. 27, 3441)); also from camphor by the action of  $ZnCl_2$  or iodine (B. 16, 2259). The oxidation of

isodurene with nitric acid yields 3-isodurylic acid,  $C_9H_7(CH_3)_3 \cdot CO_2H$  (B. 15, 1853), and at last mellophanic acid.

Prehnitol, [1,2,3,4]- or *v*-Tetramethyl Benzene, is produced by the action of methyl iodide and metallic sodium upon 2-brom-pseudocumene and 2,4-dibrom-metaxylene (B. 21, 2821). Its oxidation by nitric acid produces prehnitic acid,  $C_8H_7(CH_3)_4 \cdot CO_2H$  (B. 19, 1214) and prehnitic acid,  $C_8H_7(CO_2H)_4$ .

(b) 4-Dimethyl Ethyl Benzenes: [1,2,4], boiling at  $189^\circ$ , and [1,3,4] at  $184^\circ$ , and [1,4,3] at  $185^\circ$ , are obtained by the action of  $ZnCl_2$  or iodine upon camphor (B. 23, 988, 2349). The [1,3,5]-body, boiling at  $185^\circ$ , is produced when  $H_2SO_4$  acts upon acetone and methylethyl ketone (B. 18, 666; 25, 1533).

(c) The three diethyl benzenes yield, first, ethyl benzoic acids and then phthalic acids when they are oxidized.

(d) Methyl-*n*-propyl Benzenes: The ortho-body boils at  $181^\circ$ , the meta- at  $177^\circ$ , and the para- at  $183^\circ$ . They result from the action of  $C_3H_7I$  and Na upon o-, m-, and p-bromtoluene (B. 24, 443, 1649; 29, R. 417).

(e) Methyl-isopropyl Benzenes: Only the m- and p- bodies are known. The latter is the important cymene. m-Methyl-isopropyl benzene occurs in the light resin oil (A. 210, 10).

Cymene = [1,4]-Methyl-isopropyl Benzene (see table, p. 53) occurs in Roman caraway oil (from *Cuminum cyminum*), together with cumic aldehyde, and in the oil from the seeds of *Cicuta virosa*, in the oil of *Ptychotis ajowan*, in thyme oil, and in the oil from *Eucalyptus globulus*. It is produced on heating thymol, carvacrol,  $C_8H_7(OH) \cdot (CH_3) \cdot C_3H_7$ , and camphor, with  $P_2S_5$ , or with  $P_2O_5$  (A. 172, 307); also from turpentine oil and other terpenes,  $C_{10}H_{16}$ , by the withdrawal of two hydrogen atoms. This is effected by heating with  $SO_4H_2$ , or with iodine. The production of cymene on boiling cumic alcohol,  $C_8H_7(C_3H_7) \cdot CH_2 \cdot OH$  (having the isopropyl group), with zinc dust is especially interesting, as is its formation from geranial (p. 42). Cymene may be synthetically prepared from p-brom isopropyl benzene by means of methyl iodide and sodium. This last reaction explains its constitution (Widman, B. 24, 439, 970, 1362).

Cymene is a pleasantly smelling liquid. The barium cymene sulphonate,  $(C_{10}H_{14}SO_3)_2Ba + 3H_2O$ , crystallizing in shining leaflets is characteristic.

Dilute nitric acid or the chromic acid mixture oxidizes cymene to paratoluic acid,  $C_8H_7(CH_3) \cdot CO_2H$ , and terephthalic acid; whereas in the animal organism or upon shaking with caustic soda and air, it is converted into cumic acid,  $C_8H_7(C_3H_7) \cdot CO_2H$ .

When concentrated nitric acid acts upon cymene, the product is not nitrocymene, but p-tolylmethyl ketone (B. 19, 558; 20, R. 373).

(f) Butyl Benzenes: *n*-Butyl benzene boils at  $180^\circ$ ; isobutyl benzene at  $167^\circ$ ; secondary butyl benzene, at  $171^\circ$ .

Tertiary Butyl Benzene boils at  $167^\circ$ . Bromine does not attack it in the cold or when exposed to sunlight (B. 23, 2412; 27, 1610).

Higher toluene homologues:

Hydrocarbons,  $C_{11}H_{16}$ : Pentamethyl Benzene (see table, p. 53) is produced together with hexamethyl benzene when  $AlCl_3$  and methyl chloride act upon benzene, toluene, xylene, mesitylene, etc. (B. 20, 896). For its deportment toward concentrated sulphuric acid see durenene (p. 55).

[1,3,5]-Diethylmethyl Benzene, boiling at  $200^\circ$ , results from the action of sulphuric acid upon acetone and methylethyl ketone. [1,2,4,5]-Trimethylethyl Benzene, Ethyl Pseudocumene, boils at  $207^\circ$  (B. 25, 1530). Ethyl Mesitylene boils at  $208^\circ$  (B. 29, 2459). [1,3]-Methyl-tert.-butyl Benzene, boiling at  $185$ – $187^\circ$ , occurs in the essence of resin, the distillation product obtained from pine resin, and is

obtained from the interaction of toluene, isobutyl bromide, and  $\text{Al}_2\text{Cl}_6$ . Its trinitro-derivative is the artificial musk (B. 27, 1606).

**Hydrocarbons,  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{18}$ .—Hexamethyl Benzene** (see table, p. 53) is formed by the polymerization of crotonylene on shaking with sulphuric acid, and by heating xylidene hydrochloride and methyl alcohol to  $300^\circ$ . For additional methods of formation see durene and pentamethyl benzene. It does not dissolve in sulphuric acid, as it is incapable of forming a sulpho-acid. Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to benzene hexacarboxylic acid,  $\text{C}_6(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_6$  (*mellitic acid*).

**p-Di-n-propyl Benzene**, from p-dibrom-benzene, boils at  $219^\circ$ . **p-n-Propyl-iso-propyl Benzene**, from cumyl chloride and zinc ethyl, boils at  $212^\circ$ . Nitric acid oxidizes both to n-propyl benzoic acid, which is isomeric with cuminic acid.

**Propyl Mesitylene** boils at  $221^\circ$  (B. 29, 2459). **[1,3,5]-Triethyl Benzene**, from ethyl methyl ketone by the action of sulphuric acid, boils at  $218^\circ$ . **[1,2,3,4]-Tetraethyl Benzene** boils at  $251^\circ$ . **[1,2,4,5]-Tetraethyl Benzene** melts at  $+13^\circ$  and boils at  $250^\circ$ . **Pentaethyl Benzene** (see table, p. 53). **Hexaethyl Benzene** (see table, p. 53) is obtained from  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6$ ,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$ , and  $\text{Al}_2\text{Cl}_6$  (B. 16, 1745; 21, 2819).

The following mono- and dialkyl benzenes with long chains have been prepared by Fittig's reaction from brombenzene and bromtoluene:

**n-Octyl Benzene**, boiling at  $262^\circ$ ; **Cetyl Benzene**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}$ , melting at  $27^\circ$  and boiling at  $230^\circ$  (15 mm.); **o-Methyl Cetyl Benzene**, melting at  $8-9^\circ$  and boiling at  $239^\circ$  (15 mm.); **m-Methyl Cetyl Benzene**, melting at  $10-12^\circ$  and boiling at  $237^\circ$  (15 mm.); **p-Methyl Cetyl Benzene**, melting at  $27^\circ$  and boiling at  $240^\circ$  (15 mm.); **Octadecyl Benzene**, melting at  $36^\circ$  and boiling at  $249^\circ$  (15 mm.) (B. 21, 3182).

## 2. HALOGEN DERIVATIVES OF THE BENZENE HYDROCARBONS.

### A. BENZENE HALOGEN SUBSTITUTION PRODUCTS.

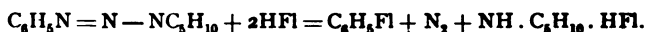
Benzene being a cyclic triolefine, it can take up six atoms of chlorine or bromine in the sunlight. The products are *benzene hexachloride* and *benzene hexabromide*. These bodies will be discussed later as cyclohexane derivatives, following hexahydro-benzene. The hydrogen atoms in the benzene nucleus, however, are very easily replaced by chlorine and bromine—in fact, more readily than the hydrogen of the paraffins.

**Properties and Deportment.**—The benzene halogen derivatives are in part colorless liquids, and partly colorless, crystalline bodies. They have a faint, but not disagreeable odor. They are insoluble in water, but dissolve readily in other solvents, and volatilize without decomposition. The para-bodies of the benzene dihaloids are solids at the ordinary temperature. Their melting points lie higher than those of the ortho- and meta-compounds, while their boiling points are lower.

The intimate union of the halogen atoms to the benzene nucleus is striking. They are not displaced, or, at least, with great difficulty, by caustic potash (B. 18, 335; 20, R. 712), by ammonia, cyanide of potassium, etc. (Compare the alkylogens, I, 139.) Metallic sodium withdraws the halogens particularly from brom- and iodobenzenes. This behavior is especially important in the synthesis of the benzene hydro-

carbons (p. 50). The reactivity of chlor-, brom-, and iodbenzene with piperidine, resulting in the formation of *phenyl piperidine* is peculiar (B. 21, 2279; compare also the nitrohalogen benzene derivatives, p. 67). Sodium amalgam in alcoholic solution or hydriodic acid and phosphorus reduce the halogen substitution products to benzene.

Fluorbenzenes result when hydrofluoric acid is poured upon benzene diazopiperidides (Wallach, A. 235, 258; 243, 221):



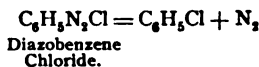
Fluorbenzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Fl}$ , boiling at  $85^\circ$ , specific gravity 1.0236 ( $20^\circ/4^\circ$ ), was obtained by heating fluorbenzoic acid with hydrochloric acid.

p-Difluorbenzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[\text{1,4}]\text{Fl}_2$ , boils at  $88^\circ$  and has the specific gravity 1.11.

**Chlorbenzenes.**—*Methods of Formation.*—1. Free chlorine acts sluggishly upon benzene. The action is accelerated by iodine, molybdenum chloride,  $\text{MoCl}_5$ , and ferric chloride, which is particularly well suited for this purpose.

2. The hydroxyl groups of the free phenols are replaced with difficulty by chlorine when phosphorus pentachloride is the reagent. This substitution occurs more readily in the case of the nitrophenols.

3. A very important method that is particularly adapted for the preparation of chlorbenzenes and aromatic halogen derivatives consists in the transformation of the diazo-compounds. The latter are obtained from the amido-bodies, which are the nitro-reduction products. Atomic rearrangement does not occur in these reactions. In the decomposition of the diazo-body the chlorine enters the position which the diazo-, the amido-, and the nitro-group previously held:



Knowing, therefore, when working with the di- and poly-substitution products, the constitution of one of the bodies thus changing, that of the other is necessarily established.

NAME.	FORMULA.	M. P.	B. P.	DENSITY.
Monochlorbenzene, . . . . .	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Cl}$	$-45^\circ$	$132^\circ$	1.128 ( $0^\circ$ )
[1,2]-(o)-Dichlorbenzene, . . . . .	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{Cl}_2$	—	$179^\circ$	
[1,3]-(m) Dichlorbenzene, . . . . .	—	—	$172^\circ$	
[1,4]-(p)-Dichlorbenzene, . . . . .	—	$+53^\circ$	$172^\circ$	
[1,2,3]-(v)-Trichlorbenzene, . . . . .	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{Cl}_3$	$16^\circ$	$218^\circ$	
[1,2,4]-unsym. Trichlorbenzene, . . . . .	—	$63^\circ$	$213^\circ$	
[1,3,5]-sym. Trichlorbenzene, . . . . .	—	$54^\circ$	$208^\circ$	
[1,2,3,4]-v-Tetrachlorbenzene, . . . . .	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{Cl}_4$	$46^\circ$	$254^\circ$	
[1,2,3,5]-unsym. Tetrachlorbenzene, . . . . .	—	$50^\circ$	$246^\circ$	
[1,2,4,5]-sym. Tetrachlorbenzene, . . . . .	—	$137^\circ$	$244^\circ$	
Pentachlorbenzene, . . . . .	$\text{C}_6\text{HCl}_5$	$86^\circ$	$276^\circ$	
Hexachlorbenzene, . . . . .	$\text{C}_6\text{Cl}_6$	$226^\circ$	$326^\circ$	

The predominating product in the chlorination of chlorbenzene is p-dichlorbenzene. Very little o-dichlorbenzene results (B. 29, R. 648). p-Dichlorbenzene also results from the action of phosphorus pentachloride upon p-quinone (see this). The behavior of the dichlorbenzenes, when nitrated, is characteristic:

o-Dichlorbenzene yields	[1,2]-dichlor-4-nitrobenzene, m. p. 43°
m-Dichlorbenzene "	[1,3]-dichlor-4- " m. p. 32°
p-Dichlorbenzene "	[1,4]-dichlor-3- " m. p. 55°

Hexachlorbenzene, Julin's chloride of carbon, has been prepared by the exhaustive chlorination of many alkyl benzenes and other derivatives of benzene (B. 29, 875). It is also produced when  $\text{CHCl}_3$  and  $\text{C}_2\text{Cl}_4$  are conducted through a tube heated to redness.

**Brombenzenes** are prepared just like the chlorine substitution products:

(1) By direct substitution by means of bromine carriers, such as aluminium bromide (B. 10, 971); (2) from phenols; (3) from diazo-derivatives (p. 58):

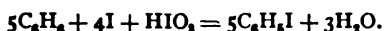
NAME.	FORMULA.	M. P.	B. P.	DENSITY.
Monobrombenzene, . . . . .	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Br}$	— 31°	155°	1.517 (0°)
[1,2]-o-Dibrombenzene, . . . . .	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{Br}_2$	— 1°	224°	2.003 (0°)
[1,3]-m-Dibrombenzene, . . . . .		+ 1°	219°	
[1,4]-p-Dibrombenzene, . . . . .		89°	219°	
[1,2,3]-v-Tribrombenzene, . . . . .	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{Br}_3$	87°	—	
[1,2,4]-unsym. Tribrombenzene, . . . . .		44°	275°	
[1,3,5]-sym. Tribrombenzene, . . . . .		119°	278°	
[1,2,3,4]-v-Tetrabrombenzene, . . . . .	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{Br}_4$	—	—	
[1,2,3,5]-unsym. Tetrabrombenzene, . . . . .		98°	329°	
[1,2,4,5]-sym. Tetrabrombenzene, . . . . .		175°	—	[B. 28, 191]
Pentabrombenzene, . . . . .	$\text{C}_6\text{HBr}_5$	260°	—	
Hexabrombenzene, . . . . .	$\text{C}_6\text{Br}_6$	ab. 315°	—	

In the bromination of hot benzene the chief product is the p-dibrom body, and very little of the o-derivative (B. 10, 1345). The nitration of these dibrombenzenes is characteristic for them:

o-Dibrombenzene yields	[1,2]-dibrom-4-nitrobenzene, m. p. 58°.
m-Dibrombenzene yields (1)	[1,3]-dibrom-4-nitrobenzene, m. p. 61° [chief product].
	(2) [1,3]-dibrom-2-nitrobenzene, m. p. 82° [secondary product].
p-Dibrombenzene yields	[1,4]-dibrom-2-nitrobenzene, m. p. 85°.

W. Körner utilizes the production of the tribrombenzenes from the three dibrombenzenes in deducing their constitution (p. 38). Hexabrombenzene is also formed upon heating  $\text{CBr}_4$  to 300°.

Kekulé heated (200°) benzene with iodine and iodic acid, and thus obtained the **iodbenzenes**. The reaction proceeded in the sense of the equation (A. 137, 161):



They have been obtained more frequently from the corresponding amido-bodies by aid of the diazo-derivatives (p. 58):

NAME.	FORMULA.	M. P.	B. P.
Iodobenzene, . . . . .	$C_6H_5I$	$-30^\circ$	$188^\circ$
[1,2]-(o)-Di-iodobenzene, . . . . .	$C_6H_4I_2$	$+27^\circ$	$286^\circ$
[1,3]-(m)-Di-iodobenzene, . . . . .	. . . . .	$40^\circ$	$285^\circ$
[1,4]-(p)-Di-iodobenzene, . . . . .	. . . . .	$129^\circ$	$285^\circ$

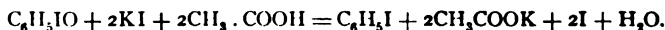
**Hexa-iodobenzene,  $C_6I_6$ ,** is formed in the exhaustive iodation of benzene carboxylic acids (benzoic acid, terephthalic acid) with iodine and fuming sulphuric acid. It consists of reddish-brown needles, which melt with decomposition from  $140-150^\circ$  (B. 29, 1631). See B. 29, 1405, for bromiodobenzenes.

**Iodoso-benzene. Iodobenzene. Diphenyliodonium Hydroxide.**—These remarkable bodies were obtained from *phenyliod-chloride* (Willgerodt, 1886), which contains two atoms of chlorine combined with iodine; it may be derived from iodine trichloride,  $ICl_3$  (see Inorganic Chemistry).

**Phenyliod-chloride,  $C_6H_5ICl_2$ ,** consists of yellow needles. It is produced when chlorine is conducted into a solution of iodobenzene in chloroform. When it is shaken with caustic alkali iodoso-benzene results:



**Iodosobenzene,  $C_6H_5IO$ ,** is an amorphous substance. It explodes at about  $210^\circ$ . When it is treated with an acidulated solution of potassium iodide it gives off its oxygen with the separation of an equivalent amount of iodine:



It has a basic character and forms salts, which are derived from the hypothetical hydrate  $C_6H_5I(OH)_2$ —*g.*,  $C_6H_5I(OOC.CH_3)_2$ ; hence  $C_6H_5ICl_2$  should be regarded as iodosobenzene hydrochloride.

**Iodobenzene,  $C_6H_5IO_2$ ,** is formed when iodosobenzene is heated alone or boiled with water:



or by the oxidation of iodosobenzene with hypochlorous acid, or upon treating phenyliod-chloride with a bleaching lime solution (B. 29, 1567). Iodobenzene explodes at  $227-230^\circ$ . Its deportment is like that of a superoxide.

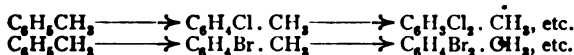
**Diphenyliodonium Hydroxide,  $(C_6H_5)_2IOH$ ,** is only known in aqueous solution. It is formed on shaking a mixture of iodoso- and iodobenzene with moist silver oxide:



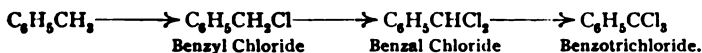
Its iodide results on boiling iodobenzene with a solution of potassium iodide (B. 29, 2008). Diphenyliodonium hydroxide has a strong alkaline reaction and forms salts:  $(C_6H_5)_2I.I$ ,  $(C_6H_5)_2ICl$ ,  $(C_6H_5)_2INO_3$ , which recall the salts of thallium (compare ammonium compounds, I, p. 168; metallo-organic derivatives, I, p. 182). The *carbonate* and *nitrate* are very soluble; the *chloride* and *bromide* form white precipitates. **Diphenyliodonium Iodide,  $(C_6H_5)_2I.I$ ,** is polymeric with iodobenzene. It consists of yellow needles, which dissolve with difficulty in alcohol, and melt, with production of iodobenzene, at  $175-176^\circ$  (V. Meyer, B. 27, 1592; 28, R. 80).

## B. HALOGEN DERIVATIVES OF THE ALKYL BENZENES.

Under the conditions observed with benzene itself—in the cold, in the presence of iodine, with molybdenum pentachloride, or ferric chloride—the atoms of chlorine or bromine enter the nucleus of the alkyl benzenes. The *aromatic* substitution products result. Thus, toluene affords:



In the case of boiling benzene homologues the substitution takes place almost exclusively in the hydrogen of the side-chain, and *aliphatic* substitution products result. Thus, toluene yields



These are compounds corresponding to:



and will be considered at the conclusion of the oxygen derivatives which correspond to them:



into which they can be easily transformed, and from which they can be obtained by the use of phosphorus pentachloride.

In sunlight chlorine and bromine also act substitutingly in the cold upon the aliphatic side-chains (B. 20, R. 530). Chlorine converts boiling isopropyl benzene into p-chlorisopropyl benzene (B. 26, R. 771). Phosphorus trichloride also attacks the alkyls of the alkyl benzenes at the boiling temperature.

The other two methods which may be considered in the production of halogen derivatives of benzene—the action of phosphorus halides upon oxybenzenes and the transformation of corresponding diazo-bodies—yield alkyl benzenes, with substitutions in the nucleus. Naturally, a substitution can occur both in the nucleus and in the aliphatic residue of the same alkyl benzene. The halogen atoms which have entered the side-chain are always reactive, and can readily be exchanged for radicals, whereas the halogen atoms which have entered the benzene nucleus are very intimately combined. The aromatic mono-halogen derivatives of the alkyl benzenes, especially the bromalkyl benzenes, have been largely used in the synthesis of higher alkyl benzenes, following the method discovered by Fittig (p. 50). The oxidation of the side-chains to carboxyl groups is very important for the determination of constitution. It is in this way that any halogen atoms present in the side-chains can be determined (p. 52).

Sodium amalgam in alcoholic solution will replace the halogen atoms with hydrogen. Hydriodic acid will do the same.

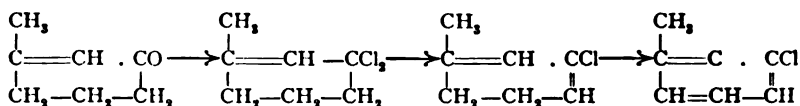
The aromatic halogen substitution products of the alkyl benzenes are exceedingly numerous. Their simplest representatives are the monohalogen toluenes, which are tabulated for more complete review :

NAME.	FORMULA.	M. P.	B. P.
[1,4], p-Fluortoluene, . . . . .	$\text{CH}_3 [1] \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 [4] \text{Fl}$	—	117°
[1,2], o-Chlortoluene, . . . . .	$\text{CH}_3 [1] \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 [2] \text{Cl}$	— 34°	156°
[1,3], m-Chlortoluene, . . . . .	$\text{CH}_3 [1] \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 [3] \text{Cl}$	— 48°	150°
[1,4], p-Chlortoluene, . . . . .	$\text{CH}_3 [1] \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 [4] \text{Cl}$	+ 7°	163°
[1,2], o-Bromtoluene, . . . . .	$\text{CH}_3 [1] \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 [2] \text{Br}$	— 26°	181°
[1,3], m-Bromtoluene, . . . . .	$\text{CH}_3 [1] \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 [3] \text{Br}$	— 40°	183°
[1,4], p-Bromtoluene, . . . . .	$\text{CH}_3 [1] \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 [4] \text{Br}$	+ 28°	184°
[1,2], o-Iodtoluene, . . . . .	$\text{CH}_3 [1] \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 [2] \text{I}$	—	204°
[1,3], m-Iodtoluene, . . . . .	$\text{CH}_3 [1] \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 [3] \text{I}$	—	204°
[1,4], p-Iodtoluene, . . . . .	$\text{CH}_3 [1] \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 [4] \text{I}$	35°	211°

p-Fluortoluene has been prepared by the method used for fluorbenzene. The chlorination and bromination of toluene in the cold, or in the presence of iodine or  $\text{Fe}_2\text{Cl}_6$ , results in the formation of para- and ortho-derivatives in almost equal quantities. p-Chlortoluene can be separated from its ortho-isomeride by heating with sulphuric acid to 150°, when the o-body passes into its sulpho-derivative.

All the monochlor-, monobrom-, and monoiod-toluenes are obtained pure by decomposing the diazo-compounds made from the three amido-toluenes or toluidines (p. 58). o- and p-Toluidines are easily obtainable from the corresponding nitrotoluenes (p. 68). m-Bromtoluene has been prepared by brominating acet-p-toluidine to m-brom-acet-p-toluidine, and then replacing the amido-group by hydrogen (p. 51).

m-Chlortoluene has also been prepared from 3-methyl- $\Delta_2$ -keto-R-hexene (1, p. 325), into which methylene diacetoacetic ester can be easily converted. This is accomplished by first preparing, with the aid of phosphorus pentachloride, tetrahydro-m-dichlortoluene, which decomposes into hydrogen chloride and dihydro-m-chlortoluene. Bromine withdraws two hydrogen atoms from this body and m-chlortoluene results (B. 27, 3019):



If we start with ethidene diacetoacetic ester, the product will be [1,3,5]-chlor-m-xylene (B. 29, 310). [1,3,6]-Chlorcymene has been similarly prepared from menthone or keto-hexahydrocymene (B. 29, 314).

The iodoso- and iodo-compounds corresponding to p-iodtoluene are known (B. 26, 358; 27, 1903).

The conversion of the halogen toluenes into solid nitrohalogen toluenes and their oxidation to halogen benzoic acids of known constitution are distinguishing characteristics. When heated with a chromic acid mixture (see aromatic acids) the p- and m-derivatives are oxidized to the corresponding substituted benzoic acids, whereas the o-derivatives are attacked with difficulty and completely destroyed. When boiled with dilute nitric acid, with potassium permanganate, or ferricyanide of potassium, all three isomerides (even the ortho) are oxidized to acids.

Six isomeric aromatic dihaloid toluenes, with similar halogen atoms, are possible. The six dichlortoluenes are known (B. 29, R. 867). They are isomeric with benzal chloride,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHCl}_2$ , and with the chlorbenzyl chlorides,  $\text{ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ . All of the six isomeric dibromtoluenes have also been prepared. Pentabromtoluene has been obtained from suberane and bromine (p. 28).

The appended table contains the easily accessible bromine derivatives of the polymethyl benzenes:

NAME.	M. P.	B. P.
[1,2,4]-Brom-o-xylene, . . . . .	— 2°	214°
[1,3,4]-Brom-m-xylene, . . . . .	—	203°
[1,4,2]-Brom p-xylene, . . . . .	+ 9°	200°
Tribromhemimellitene (p. 53), . . . . .	245°	—
[1,2,4,3]-Monobrompseudocumene (p. 53), . . . . .	—	237°
[1,2,4,3,6]-Dibrompseudocumene, . . . . .	64°	293°
Tribrompseudocumene, . . . . .	224°	—
Monobrom-mesitylene (p. 53), . . . . .	— 1°	225°
Dibrom-mesitylene, . . . . .	+ 60°	285°
Tribrom-mesitylene, . . . . .	224°	—
Monobromprehnitol (p. 53), . . . . .	30°	265°
Dibromprehnitol, . . . . .	210°	—
Monobromisodurene (p. 53), . . . . .	—	253°
Dibromisodurene, . . . . .	209°	—
Monobromdurene (p. 53), . . . . .	61°	262°
Dibromdurene, . . . . .	199°	317°
Brompentamethyl Benzene, . . . . .	160°	289°

It is also remarkable that concentrated sulphuric acid is even capable of carrying bromine atoms as it does alkyl groups (p. 51). Thus, concentrated sulphuric acid first converts monobromdurene into dibromdurene, and then into durene (B. 25, 1526).

### 3. NITROGEN DERIVATIVES OF THE BENZENE HYDROCARBONS,

In which the nitrogen-containing residue is joined to the benzene nucleus by means of or through nitrogen.

These compounds can be classified according to the number of nitrogen atoms contained in the residues. The first class embraces only those in which a single nitrogen atom is present. The *nitro*-compounds are placed at the head of this division. They are very important benzene derivatives. They constitute the starting-bodies for the preparation of the succeeding groups. The *amido*-compounds attach themselves to them. In this class belong the generators of numerous coal-tar dyes and aromatic derivatives having therapeutic value. The *nitroso*- and *β-hydroxylamine* bodies constitute the transition between these two groups.

In the second class are those compounds whose nitrogen residues contain two and more nitrogen atoms in union with each other. The *nitroamines*, the *nitroso-β-hydroxylamines*, the *nitrosamines*, the *azoxy-derivatives*, the *hydrazines*, the *diazo*- and the *azo-compounds* contain two nitrogen atoms. The *nitrosohydrazines*, the *diazoamido-bodies*, and the *azo-imido-compounds* contain three nitrogen atoms, while four nitrogen atoms

are present in the *diazohydrazido-* or *buzylene* derivatives, and the *tetrazones*, and five in the *disazoamido-compounds*.

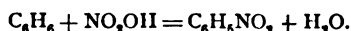
The study of some of these classes has also been of the greatest importance for the chemistry of inorganic nitrogen compounds. If we imagine these eighteen groups of aromatic nitrogen bodies derived from inorganic nitrogen-containing substances, whose formulas can be obtained by the substitution of hydrogen for the aromatic residues, it will be discovered that six of these eighteen forms occur free or in the form of inorganic derivatives of known bodies. In the following table they appear in black-face type:

1. Nitro-compounds, . . . . .	derived from	$\text{H. NO}_2$
2. Nitroso-compounds, . . . . .	"	$\text{H. NO}$
3. $\beta$ -Hydroxylamine compounds, . . . . .	"	$\text{H. NHOH}$
4. Amido-compounds, . . . . .	"	$\text{H. NH}_2$
5. Nitroamines, . . . . .	"	$\text{H. NH. NO}_2$
6. Nitroso- $\beta$ -hydroxylamines, . . . . .	"	$\text{H. N(OH). NO}$
7. Nitrosamines, . . . . .	"	$\text{H. NH. NO}$
8. Azoxy-compounds, . . . . .	"	$\text{H. N} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{O} \diagdown \end{array} \text{N. H}$
9. Hydrazines, . . . . .	"	$\text{H. NH. NH}_2$
10. Diazo-compounds, . . . . .	"	$\text{H. N} = \text{N. OH}$
11. Azo-compounds, . . . . .	"	$\text{H. N} = \text{N. H}$
12. Nitrosohydrazines, . . . . .	"	$\text{H. N(NO). NH}_2$
13. Diazoamido-compounds, . . . . .	"	$\text{H. N} = \text{N. NH}_2$
14. Diazo-oxyamido-compounds, . . . . .	"	$\text{HN} = \text{N} - \text{NHOH}$
15. Azoimido-compounds, . . . . .	"	$\text{H. N} < \begin{array}{c} \text{N} \\ \parallel \\ \text{N} \end{array}$
16. Diazohydrazo- or Buzylene compounds, . . . . .	"	$\text{H. N} = \text{N. NH. NH}_2$
17. Tetrazones, . . . . .	"	$\text{H. NH. N} = \text{N. NH. H}$
18. Disdiazamido derivatives, . . . . .	"	$\text{H. N} = \text{N. NH. N} = \text{N. H}$

The first three groups will be treated in the preceding order. The nitroso- $\beta$ -hydroxylamines (6) attach themselves to the  $\beta$ -hydroxylamines (3). Then follow the amido-derivatives (4), the nitrosamines (7), the nitroamines (5), the diazo-derivatives (10), the diazoamido-bodies (13), the disdiazamido- (18), the diazo-oxyamido- (14), and the azoimido-compounds (11). The next in order are the azoxy- (8) and the azo-bodies (11). The last to be considered are the hydrazines (9), the nitrosohydrazines (12), the tetrazones (17), and the diazohydrazo- or buzylene derivatives (16). This arrangement is justified by the genetic relations of the individual classes of bodies to one another, and they should have preference over the purely systematic arrangement.

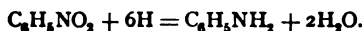
#### 1. NITRO-DERIVATIVES OF BENZENE AND THE ALKYL BENZENES.

Benzene and alkyl benzenes containing hydrogen in the nucleus readily yield nitro-derivatives by the action of nitric acid:



These compounds are more or less yellow in color; the nitrogen of

the nitro-group is in direct union with a carbon atom, as in nitro-methane. By reduction they yield amido-bodies:



In a preceding section mention was made that all of the hydrogen in benzene could be replaced by chlorine or bromine. The case is different on introducing nitro-groups. The first two nitro-groups can be introduced quite easily, the third with difficulty, and thus far not more than three nitro-groups have been introduced into one benzene residue.

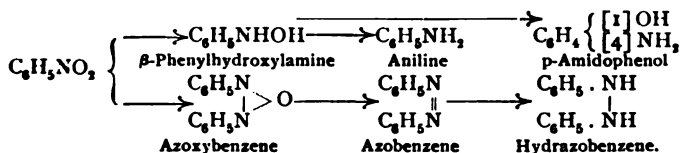
A mixture of nitric acid (1 part) and sulphuric acid (2 parts) acts more energetically than nitric acid alone, as the second acid combines with any water that may be formed in the reaction. Di- and tri-nitro-compounds are the chief products. The nitration is considerably moderated by previously dissolving the substance in glacial acetic acid. The more alkyl groups there are in a benzene hydrocarbon, the more readily will it be nitrated.

The production of nitrophenols in the nitration of benzene hydrocarbons may be explained by assuming an addition of nitric acid at the double union of the benzene ring, with the splitting-off of nitrous acid on the one side and water on the other (B. 24, R. 721). On heating alkyl benzenes with dilute nitric acid, the nitro-group enters the aliphatic side-chain. The resulting bodies will be more fully described after the corresponding alcohols (B. 27, R. 193). The aromatic amines, obtained by the reduction of nitro-compounds, can easily be changed to the latter through the diazo-derivatives, when nitrous acid salts yield *nitro-bodies* with cuprous oxide. Nitro-compounds have also been obtained by the direct oxidation of amines—*e. g.*, nitrobenzene, by the action of potassium permanganate upon aniline.

**Properties and Deportment.**—The nitrohydrocarbons are only slightly soluble in water, but they do dissolve in concentrated nitric acid, and are precipitated from this solution by water. They are very soluble in alcohol, ether, glacial acetic acid, etc. The melting points of the nitro-bodies are usually higher than those of the corresponding bromine derivatives. Their easy reduction is especially interesting.

The  $\beta$ -phenylhydroxylamines have been found to be intermediate products in their conversion into amido-derivatives. Just as two ketone molecules in their reduction combine to a pinacone molecule, so two nitrobenzene molecules, by reduction with alcoholic potash, give off oxygen and form azoxybenzene, which can easily be reduced to azo- and hydrazobenzene.

These relations are made evident in the following diagram:



In the electrolytic reduction of nitro-bodies dissolved in sulphuric acid amidophenols are formed together with the amidohydrocarbons. This is due to a rearrangement of the unstable  $\beta$ -phenylhydroxylamines, or rearrangement and decomposition of intermediate azoxy-derivatives (B.

29, R. 230). In hydrochloric acid solution it is very probable that *p*-chloranilines are similarly produced (B. 29, 1894).

Because of the ready reduction of the nitro-bodies to compounds, many of which meet with the most varied application in the coal tar color manufacture, there attaches to them the importance of the more valuable and indispensable intermediate products.

When the polynitrohydrocarbons are oxidized with an alkaline ferricyanide solution they are changed to polynitrophenols. The nitro-groups in many polynitrohydrocarbons are exchanged for chlorine when they are heated to 200–300° with hydrochloric acid. Sometimes further chlorination occurs to a certain degree (B. 29, R. 594).

**Nitrobenzenes.**—The following table contains the melting and boiling points of the six known nitrobenzenes:

NAME.	FORMULA.	M. P.	B. P.
Nitrobenzene, . . . . .	$C_6H_5NO_2$	+ 3°	205°
[1,2], o-Dinitrobenzene, . . . . .	$C_6H_4(NO_2)_2$	116°	319° (773 mm.)
[1,3], m-Dinitrobenzene, . . . . .	. . . . .	90°	303° (771 mm.)
[1,4], p-Dinitrobenzene, . . . . .	. . . . .	172°	299° (777 mm.)
[1,2,4], unsym. Trinitrobenzene, . . . . .	$C_6H_3(NO_2)_3$	57°	—
[1,3,5], sym. Trinitrobenzene, . . . . .	. . . . .	121°	—

**Nitrobenzene**,  $C_6H_5NO_2$ , was discovered in 1834 by Mitscherlich (Pogg. Ann. 31, 625) on treating benzene with nitric acid. It is also produced in the oxidation of aniline (p. 74). It is technically prepared on a large scale, and worked up into aniline and azobenzene. In making it commercially a mixture of nitric and sulphuric acids is allowed to run with constant stirring into benzene. The benzene is contained in cast-iron cylinders (G. Schultz, Chemie des Steinkohlentheers).

Nitrobenzene is a faintly yellow-colored, strongly refracting liquid, possessing an odor resembling that of benzaldehyde or oil of bitter almonds. Its dilute aqueous solution has a sweet taste (B. 27, 1817) and a specific gravity of 1.20 at 20°. It is poisonous in its action, particularly when its vapor is inhaled. Nitrobenzene is used not only in the preparation of colors, but also in perfumery, and to impart to soap the odor of bitter-almond oil (essence of mirbane). It is quite frequently employed in the laboratory as a solvent. Its behavior when reduced has already been referred to (p. 65); its most valuable technical product is *aniline* (p. 74). In many important reactions nitrobenzene serves as an oxidant (see *rosaniline* and *quinoline*).

**Dinitrobenzenes**,  $C_6H_4(NO_2)_2$ . — The melting and boiling points are given above. The three dinitrobenzenes are produced if in the nitration with fuming nitric acid the mixture be boiled a short time. On crystallizing from alcohol, the *m*-compound, formed in greatest quantity, separates first, whereas the *o*- and *p*-dinitro-derivatives remain in solution (B. 7, 1372). The meta-body is used in the color industry for the preparation of *m*-phenylenediamine.

p-Dinitrobenzene can also be obtained by oxidizing *p*-quinone dioxime (see this); the o-dinitrobenzene from the residues in the preparation of m-dinitrobenzene by solution in twice their weight of boiling nitric acid and pouring this into five to six times its volume of cold nitric acid, when the o-dinitrobenzene will separate in crystals (B. 26, 266).

By half reduction the dinitrobenzenes yield nitroanilines, which connect genetically the phenylenediamines with the dibrombenzenes and the benzene dicarboxylic acids, or phthalic acids (p. 38).

**Ortho-dinitrobenzene** crystallizes in plates, yields o-nitrophenol when boiled with caustic soda, and o-nitraniline when heated with alcoholic ammonia. Other aromatic o-dinitro-bodies behave similarly.

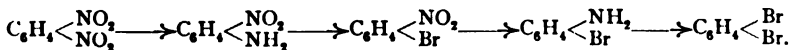
**Metadinitrobenzene**, when heated with potassium ferricyanide and caustic soda, forms  $\alpha$ - or [1,OH,2,4]-dinitrophenol and  $\beta$ - or [1,OH,2,6]-dinitrophenol. m-Dinitrobenzene, heated with alcoholic potash, has one of its nitro-groups replaced by ethoxyl, with the simultaneous entrance of a cyanogen group and the production of [2]-nitro-[6]-ethoxybenzonitrile (B. 17, R. 19). It unites with alkali bisulphite, with simultaneous reduction and sulphonation, to form m-nitraniline-p-sulphonic acid (B. 29, 2448).

**Paradinitrobenzene** forms colorless needles. m- and p-Dinitrobenzenes form additive compounds with naphthalene (B. 16, 234). When the dinitrobenzenes are heated with chlorine or bromine to 200°, the nitro-groups are wholly or partially replaced by halogens (B. 24, 3749).

**Trinitrobenzenes**.—Melting points, see above. [1,3,5]-, sym. Trinitrobenzene is obtained from m-dinitrobenzene, and synthetically on acidulating sodium nitromalonate aldehyde (B. 28, 2597). [1,2,4]-, unsym. Trinitrobenzene is produced by heating p-dinitrobenzene with nitric acid and pyrosulphuric acid to 180°. sym. Trinitrobenzene may be oxidized to picric acid, or [1,OH,2,4,6]-trinitrophenol. It forms additive compounds with aniline, naphthalene, etc. m- and p-Dinitrobenzene, trinitrotoluene, etc., yield similar combinations (B. 13, 2346; 16, 234). Aqueous alkalis impart orange-yellow colorations to sym. trinitrobenzene. These are probably due to the formation of unstable salts resulting from the replacement of benzene hydrogen by metals (B. 29, 848; R. 39).

#### Nitro-haloid Benzenes.

Formation: (1) Upon nitrating chlor-, brom-, and iod-benzene, p- and o-mononitro-products result; the first in larger quantity. (2) On heating the dinitrobenzenes with bromine or chlorine a nitro-group can be replaced by a halogen. (3) Or the dinitrobenzenes are changed to nitranilines and the amido-group replaced by halogens, effected by means of the diazo-compounds. (4)  $\text{PCl}_5$  also converts nitrophenols into chlornitro-derivatives. The nitro-haloid benzenes afford the transition from the dinitro-, nitroamido-, to the haloid-amido- and dihalogen benzenes. They are consequently especially important for the recognition of the connection of the various disubstitution products of benzene:



The isomeric mononitro-chlor-, brom-, and iod-benzenes have the following melting points:

	[1,2]	[1,3]	[1,4]
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Cl}(\text{NO}_2)$	32.5°	44.4°	83°
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Br}(\text{NO}_2)$	41.5°	56°	126° (B. 29, 788)
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{I}(\text{NO}_2)$	49°	33°	171° (B. 29, 1880).

**Meta-chlornitrobenzene** occurs in two physical modifications; if rapidly cooled after fusion, it melts at 23.7°, but in a short time reverts to the stable modification, melting at 44.2°.

Of the numerous nitro-haloid benzenes which have been prepared, mention may yet be made of [1,Cl,3,4]-Dinitro-chlorbenzene, which has been obtained, in three very

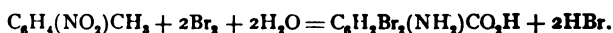
similar modifications, melting at  $36.3^\circ$ ,  $37^\circ$ , and  $38^\circ$  (B. 9, 760), and also of Trinitrochlorobenzene,  $C_6H_2Cl(NO_2)_3$  (1,3,5,4,Cl), Picryl Chloride, obtained from picric acid by the action of  $PCl_5$ . It melts at  $83^\circ$ . It is converted into picramide,  $C_6H_2(NH_2)(NO_2)_3$ , with ammonia, and into picric acid when boiled with soda.

The halogen atom in every monohaloid nitrobenzene is always more easily exchanged the more numerous the nitro-groups are. Picryl chloride, in its department, approaches the acid chlorides. Trichlorodinitrobenzene melts at  $130^\circ$  (B. 29, R. 1155).

**Nitrotoluenes.**—[1,2], o-Nitrotoluene,  $CH_3[1]C_6H_4[2]NO_2$ , melting at  $10.5^\circ$ , boiling at  $218^\circ$ , and [1,4]-, p-Nitrotoluene,  $CH_3[1]C_6H_4[4]NO_2$ , melting at  $54^\circ$  and boiling at  $230^\circ$ , are produced in the nitration of toluene. They are separated by fractional distillation, and when reduced, yield the technically important toluidines. If the nitration be carried on at  $-55^\circ$ , five and a half times as much p- as o-nitrotoluene (B. 26, R. 362) will be produced. At higher temperatures fuming nitric acid produces chiefly p nitrotoluene; whereas, nitric-sulphuric acid at lower temperature yields about 66 per cent. of o-nitrotoluene.

Further nitration of o- and p-nitrotoluene produces [2,4]-dinitrotoluene, melting at  $70^\circ$ ; [2,5]-dinitrotoluene, melting at  $48^\circ$  (B. 21, 433; 22, 2679), and [2,4,6]-trinitrotoluene, melting at  $82^\circ$ .

The conversion of o-nitrotoluene by bromine at  $170^\circ$  into *dibromanthranilic acid* is very remarkable:



*Metanitrotoluene* (1,3) is formed if acetparatoluidine,  $C_6H_4\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} CH_3 \\ NH_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\} C_2H_5O$ , is nitrated, and the amido-group replaced by hydrogen (B. 22, 831). It melts at  $16^\circ$  and boils at  $230^\circ$ . Further nitration of m-nitrotoluene produces [3,4]-dinitrotoluene, melting at  $61^\circ$ , and [3,5]-dinitrotoluene, melting at  $92^\circ$  (B. 27, 2209).

**Nitro-products of other Alkyl Benzenes.**—The ease with which aromatic nitro-derivatives are produced adapts many of them for the detection and recognition of their parent hydrocarbons. Some of them are:

[4]-Nitro-o-xylene,  $NO_2[4]C_6H_3[1,2](CH_3)_2$ , melting at  $29^\circ$  (B. 17, 160; 18, 2670).

[2,4]-Dinitro-m-xylene, melting at  $82^\circ$ . [2,6]-Dinitro-m-xylene, melting at  $93^\circ$ .

[2,4,6]-Trinitro-m-xylene, melting at  $182^\circ$  (B. 17, 2424).

[2]-Nitro-p-xylene, boiling at  $239^\circ$  (B. 18, 2680). [2,6]-Dinitro-p-xylene, melting at  $123^\circ$ , and [2,3]-dinitro-p-xylene, melting at  $93^\circ$ , form a double compound, melting at  $99^\circ$  (B. 15, 2304). [2,3,6]-Trinitro-p-xylene melts at  $137^\circ$  (B. 19, 145). sym.-Trinitrochlorxylene melts at  $218^\circ$  (B. 28, 2047).

Nitromesitylene,  $NO_2[2]C_6H_3[1,3,5](CH_3)_3$ , melts at  $44^\circ$ . Dinitromesitylene melts at  $86^\circ$ . Trinitromesitylene melts at  $232^\circ$  (compare B. 29, 2201).

[3,5,6]-Trinitropseudocumene,  $(NO_2)_3[3,5,6]C_6[1,2,4](CH_3)_3$ , melts at  $185^\circ$ .

[4,5,6]-Trinitro-v-trimethyl Benzene,  $(NO_2)_3[4,5,6]C_6[1,2,3](CH_3)_3$ , melts at  $209^\circ$  (B. 19, 2517).

Nitro-prehnitol,  $NO_2[5]C_6H[1,2,3,4](CH_3)_4$ , melts at  $61^\circ$  (B. 21, 905). Dinitro-prehnitol melts at  $178^\circ$ . Dinitro-isodurene,  $(NO_2)_2[4,6]C_6[1,2,3,5](CH_3)_4$ , melts at  $156^\circ$ . Dinitrodurene,  $(NO_2)_2[3,6]C_6[1,2,4,5](CH_3)_4$ , melts at  $205^\circ$ .

[2,4,6]-Trinitro-ψ-butyl Toluene,  $(NO_2)_3[2,4,6]C_6H[1]CH_2[3]C(CH_3)_3$ , melting at  $96-97^\circ$ , smells intensely like musk, and occurs in commerce as *artificial musk* (B. 24, 2832).

## REGULARITIES IN SUBSTITUTION.

**Formation of Diderivatives.**—In the chlorination and bromination of benzene and toluene, as well as in the nitration of monohaloid benzenes and toluene, the products are almost exclusively p- and o-diderivatives, whereas in the nitration of benzene m-dinitrobenzene is the predominating product. Phenol, aniline, etc., behave like toluene; the first products are p- and o-diderivatives. Benzene-sulphonic acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot SO_3H$ ; benzoic acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO_2H$ ; benzaldehyde,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CHO$ ; benzonitrile,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CN$ ; acetophenone,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$ , and some additional compounds with negative side-chains yield meta-derivatives chiefly. The substituents present in the mono-derivatives exert, therefore, a definite, directing influence upon the position in which further substitution is to occur. It is not, however, immaterial in what succession or order the substituents are introduced. When chlorobenzene is nitrated, the principal product is p-nitrochlorobenzene, while in the chlorination of nitrobenzene it is chiefly m-nitrochlorobenzene which results.

See B. 23, 130, upon the dependence of the processes of substitution upon the atomic and radical magnitude of the substituents.

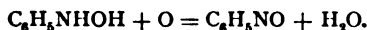
**Rule of Crum Brown and J. Gibson.**—If the hydrogen compound of the atom or radical, which in the mono-derivative has entered the benzene nucleus, cannot be directly (*i. e.*, in one operation) oxidized to the corresponding hydroxyl derivative, then in further substitutions o- and p-derivatives result, while in the opposite case m-derivatives predominate (B. 25, R. 672).

**Formation of Triderivatives.**—By the further substitution (chlorination, nitration) of the ortho- and para-di-derivatives, the replacing groups enter the para- or ortho-position, so that di-derivatives (1,2) and (1,4) yield the same triderivatives (1,2,4) (A. 192, 219). The meta-di-derivatives [1,3] yield [1,3,4]- and [1,2,3]-tri-derivatives. When both substituting groups are of a strongly acid character, as in m-dinitrobenzene, then [1,3,5]-derivatives result.

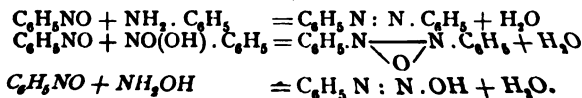
**Formation of Tetra-derivatives.**—If an unsymmetrical tri-derivative (1, 2, 4) be further substituted, unsymmetrical tetra-derivatives (1, 2, 4, 6) are generally produced. Thus, from aniline,  $C_6H_5 \cdot NH_2$ , phenol,  $C_6H_5 \cdot OH$ , etc., we obtain compounds like  $C_6H_2 \cdot Cl_3 \cdot NH_2$  and  $C_6H_2 \cdot (NO_2)_3 \cdot OH$  (1, 2, 4, 6)— $NH_2$  or OH in 1, in which the entering groups occupy the meta-position (2, 4, 6 = 1, 3, 5) with reference to each other. By the elimination of the OH and  $NH_2$  groups in them, we obtain symmetrical tri-derivatives,  $C_6H_3X_3$  (1, 3, 5).

## 2. NITROSO-DERIVATIVES OF BENZENE AND THE ALKYL BENZENES.

Mononitroso-derivatives of the benzene hydrocarbons are universally prepared by oxidizing the corresponding  $\beta$ -hydroxylamine derivatives (see below) in the cold with potassium bichromate and sulphuric acid:



They consist of colorless crystals, are very volatile, and in a fused or dissolved condition are green in color. They yield nitro-bodies upon oxidation, and amido-derivatives when they are reduced. They condense with aromatic amines with the exit of water, and yield azo-compounds, while with  $\beta$ -phenylhydroxylamines they form azoxy-bodies and with hydroxylamine the so-called isodiazobenzenes (Bamberger, B. 28, 245. 1218; 29, 102):



Nitrosobenzene,  $C_6H_5NO$ , melting at  $68^\circ$ , was first obtained in solution by the action of nitrosyl bromide upon mercury diphenyl (v. Baeyer, 1874; see B. 30, 506). It is made by oxidizing  $\beta$ -phenylhydroxylamine, and is produced in small amounts, together with other products, in the oxidation of diazobenzene chloride, and by the action of alkalis upon diazobenzene perbromide, as well as in the distillation of azoxybenzene (B. 27, 1182, 1273). In addition to the preceding reactions mention may be made of the union of nitrosobenzene with phenylhydrazine, forming diazo-oxyamido-benzene,  $C_6H_5N:N(OH) \cdot C_6H_5$  (B. 29, 103). Two molecules of nitric oxide and nitrosobenzene unite to form diazobenzene nitrate (B. 30, 512).

o-, m-, p-Nitrosotoluene,  $CH_3 \cdot C_6H_4NO$ , melt at  $72^\circ$ ,  $53^\circ$ ,  $48^\circ$ .

p-Chlor- and p-Brom-nitrosobenzene melt at  $87^\circ$  and  $92^\circ$ .

p-Dinitroso-derivatives result upon oxidizing p-quinodioximes with potassium ferricyanide in alkaline solution—e.g.:

p-Dinitrosotoluene,  $CH_3[1]C_6H_4[2,5](NO)_2$ , melting at  $133^\circ$ , from toluquinone-dioxime,  $CH_3C_6H_4(NOH)_2$ , consists of yellow needles, with an odor like that of quinone. Fuming nitric acid converts them into p-dinitrotoluene, and with hydroxylamine hydrochloride they form toluquinone dioxime (B. 21, 734, 3319).

### 3. $\beta$ -ALPHYLHYDROXYLAMINES.\*

These very reactive bodies have been obtained as intermediate products in the reduction of nitro- and nitroso-benzenes. They are very sensitive to alkalis, hence they are best prepared by aid of neutral reducing agents—for example, by the action of aluminium amalgam and water upon the ethereal solutions of the nitrobenzenes (B. 29, 494, 863, 2307). They reduce an ammoniacal silver solution, and also Fehling's solution.

$\beta$ -Phenylhydroxylamine,  $C_6H_5NHOH$ , melting at  $81^\circ$  (its *chlorhydrate* precipitated from ether is a white, crystalline mass), is rapidly oxidized in aqueous solution by the air to azoxybenzene,  $C_6H_5N \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup O \diagdown \end{smallmatrix} N \cdot C_6H_5$ , and by potassium bichromate and sulphuric

acid to nitrosobenzene. It combines to  $C_6H_5N \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup O \diagdown \end{smallmatrix} CH \cdot C_6H_5$  (B. 29, 3037) with

benzaldehyde, with diazobenzene to diazo-oxyamido-benzene, and with nitrous acid to nitrosophenylhydroxylamine. Mineral acids rearrange  $\beta$ -phenylhydroxylamine into p-amidophenol; compare similar rearrangements of the aromatic nitramines (diazobenzene acid), nitrosoamines, chloramines, into p-nitro-, p-nitroso-, and p-chloranilines (see these).

$\beta$ -o-Tolyhydroxylamine is an oil.  $\beta$ -m-Tolyhydroxylamine melts at  $68^\circ$ .  $\beta$ -p-Tolyhydroxylamine, melting at  $94^\circ$ , is converted by dilute sulphuric acid into p-toluhydroquinone (B. 28, 245, 1218, R. 156).

### 4. NITROSO- $\beta$ -ALPHYLHYDROXYLAMINES.

$\beta$ -Phenylnitrosohydroxylamine,  $C_6H_5N(OH) \cdot NO$ , melting at  $59^\circ$ , isomeric with diazobenzene acid (see this), is produced when a solution of sodium nitrite acts upon an ice-cold solution of  $\beta$ -phenylhydroxylamine hydrochloride (B. 27, 1548); further, by the action of hydroxylamine and sodium alcoholate upon nitrobenzene (B. 29, 1884). When methylated with diazomethane (I, 207) it yields a *methyl ether*,  $C_6H_5N_2O(OCH_3)$ , melting at  $38^\circ$  (B. 29, 2412). sym.-Dinitrophenylnitrosohydroxylamine,  $(NO_2)_2 \cdot C_6H_3N(OH)NO$ , melting at  $185^\circ$ , is obtained from sym.-trinitrobenzene and hydroxylamine (B. 29, 2287).

### 5. AMIDO-COMPOUNDS, OR ANILINES.

These are produced by the substitution of amido-groups for the hydrogen of benzene and alkyl benzenes:

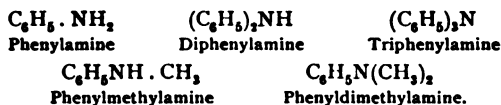
$C_6H_5NH_2$   
Aniline, Amidobenzene

$C_6H_4(NH_2)_2$   
Diamidobenzene

$C_6H_3(NH_2)_3$   
Triamidobenzene.

\* Alaryl is an abbreviation for alkylphenyl,  $C_3H_7 \cdot C_6H_4$  (Bamberger).

Or, they may be considered as ammonia derivatives, from which might be concluded the existence of primary, secondary, and tertiary amines of the benzene series (p. 77):

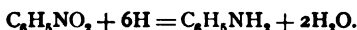


The true analogues of amines of the fatty series—*e. g.*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NH}_2$ , benzylamine—are obtained when the hydrogen of the side-chains is replaced by the amido-group. They will be considered after their corresponding alcohols.

#### A. PRIMARY PHENYLAMINES.

*Formation of primary phenylamines*, whose amido-groups are in union with the benzene nucleus:

I. *Reduction Reactions*.—1. These amido-derivatives are prepared almost exclusively by the reduction of the corresponding nitro-bodies:



Under suitable conditions the  $\beta$ -phenylhydroxylamines appear as intermediate products of the reduction (p. 65).

The most important methods of reduction are:

(a) The action of ammonium sulphide in alcoholic solution (Zinin, 1842):

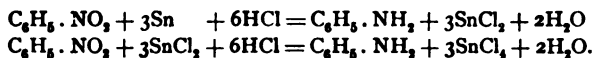


In using this reaction with polynitro-compounds only one nitro-group is reduced, and there result nitroamido-compounds.

In the case of chlornitrobenzenes the nitro-group is only reduced by ammonium sulphide when it is not *adjacent* to the chlorine or another nitro-group; in the reverse instance sulphur or SH will replace the chlorine or a nitro-group (B. 11, 1156, 2056).

(b) Action of zinc and hydrochloric acid upon the alcoholic solution of nitro-compounds (A. W. Hofmann); or iron filings and acetic or hydrochloric acid (Béchamp, 1852). The latter method (iron and hydrochloric acid) is applied technically in the manufacture of aniline and o- and p-toluidine. The explanation of the course of this reaction will be found under aniline (p. 74).

(c) Action of tin and hydrochloric acid (Roussin) or acetic acid (B. 15, 2105); or a solution of stannous chloride in hydrochloric acid:



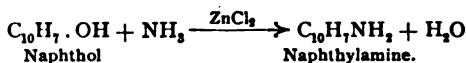
This method serves also for the quantitative determination of the nitro-groups. If the alcoholic solution of a polynitro-compound be mixed with an alcohol-hydrochloric acid solution of a calculated quantity of  $\text{SnCl}_2$ , it will be possible to effect reduction step by step. In the case of o-p-, [2,4]-dinitrotoluene the [4]- $\text{NO}_2$ -group will be reduced; whereas, with alcoholic ammonium sulphide it is the [2]- $\text{NO}_2$ -group which sustains reduction (B. 19, 2161).

2. The reduction of nitroso-compounds—see nitrosobenzene (p. 70) and nitrosodimethylaniline (p. 94).

3. Reduction of hydrazo-compounds and hydrazines (see these).

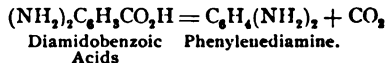
II. *Exchange Reactions*.—4. The replacement of an halogen atom or of a nitro-group, an hydroxyl or alkoxyl group by the amido-group. These reactions have special value in the preparation of substituted primary phenylamines, as the monohaloid derivatives, the mononitro-hydrocarbons and phenols only yield traces of the amido-derivatives when heated with ammonia. However, these bodies react the more easily, the greater the number of nitro-groups introduced. [1,2]-Chlor- and bromnitrobenzene, [1,2]-dinitrobenzene, [1,2]-nitrophenol and its alkyl esters, [1,4]-chlor- and bromnitrobenzene, [1,4]-nitrophenol and its esters yield nitroamido-derivatives when heated with ammonia. The [1,3]- or meta-derivatives do not react (B. 21, 1541; A. 174, 276).

Phenols can be directly transformed into primary (and secondary) amines by heating them to 300–350° with ammonia-zinc chloride ( $\text{ZnCl}_2 \cdot \text{NH}_3$ ) (B. 16, 2812; 17, 2635; 19, 2916; 20, 1254). The naphthols react even more readily:

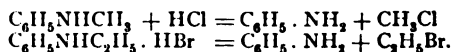


5. By heating the alkali sulphonates with sodamide,  $\text{NH}_2\text{Na}$  (B. 19, 902).

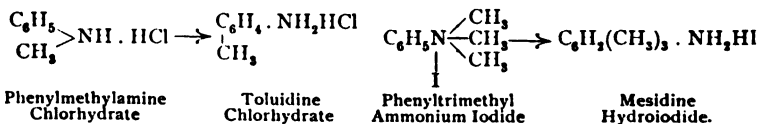
III. *Decomposition Reactions*.—6. By heating amido-carboxylic acids:



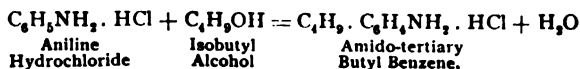
7. By heating secondary and tertiary amines with hydrochloric acid, and when ammonium bases alone are rapidly heated:



IV. *Nucleus-syntheses*.—8. When aniline and methyl chloride are heated some methyl aniline hydrochloride is produced; at higher temperatures this splits into methyl chloride and aniline (see above), and at a still higher temperature (340°) hydrogen in benzene is replaced by methyl and toluidine chlorhydrate is formed. Phenyltrimethyl ammonium iodide yields mesidine hydriodide:



Secondary and tertiary aromatic bases can be changed to isomeric primary bases in this manner. Instead of the hydrochlorides of the secondary and tertiary bases, salts of primary bases can be heated with suitable alcohols to 300° (B. 13, 1729):



Or, the free bases can be heated with normal alcohols and zinc chloride to  $250^{\circ}$  (B. 16, 105).

Such migrations in the nucleus of atomic groups, which replace an hydrogen of the amido-residue of aromatic amines are more frequently observed; compare phenyl-hydroxylamine, etc. (p. 70); also B. 29, R. 870.

*Properties and Transformations of the Phenylamines.*—The primary amines are colorless, and have a peculiar but not disagreeable odor. They can be distilled under the ordinary pressure without decomposition. They resemble the alkylamines in their ability to form salts (1, 159); they are, however, much less basic than the primary alkylamines. They do not react alkaline, and dissolve with difficulty in water, although they are volatile with steam.

When negative groups enter the primary phenylamines, they further diminish their basic character; the salts of disubstituted anilines, like  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{Cl}_2 \cdot \text{NH}_2$  and  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{NO}_2)_2 \cdot \text{NH}_2$ , are decomposed by water, or are not produced.

In chemical behavior they approach the acid amides, just as the oxy-compounds or phenols possess the character of acids.

Aniline, as the type of primary phenylamines, will be exhaustively studied.

The following are some of the ordinary reactions of the amido-group:

1. The alkali metals dissolve, when heated, with the evolution of hydrogen. Aniline affords *aniline-potassium*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NHK}$ , and *aniline-dipotassium*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NK}_2$  (p. 75).

2. The halogen alkyls combine with the anilines, forming secondary, tertiary, and finally *quaternary ammonium derivatives* (1, 160).

3. One or two molecules of a primary amine (B. 25, 2020) will unite with a molecule of an aldehyde. Furfural and all primary anilines yield intensely red-colored bodies.

4. The deportment of the free primary anilines and their salts toward nitrous acid is exceedingly important for the development of the chemistry of the aromatic bodies. The products are diazoamido-bodies and diazo-compounds. The latter are the intermediate steps in the conversion of the nitro- and amido-derivatives into the most varied substitution products.

5. Thionyl chloride converts primary anilines into *thionyl anilines*; this is similar to the behavior of the primary aliphatic amines (1, 165).

6. An hydrogen atom of the amido-group can be very easily replaced by acid residues; the products are acid anilides, corresponding to the acid amides (1, 164). The acet-derivatives crystallize well and are, therefore, very frequently prepared (p. 82).

7. The primary anilines, like the primary aliphatic amines (1, 166), yield *carbylamines* with chloroform and caustic potash.

8. The primary anilines and carbon disulphide unite to *dialphylsulphoureas* with liberation of hydrogen sulphide, whereas the primary aliphatic amines yield *alkyldithiocarbamic acids* (1, 166).

9. The synthesis of *quinoline* (see this) and other bases containing quinoline nuclei by heating aniline and other primary aromatic bases

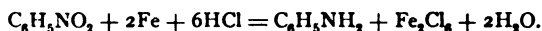
with glycerol, sulphuric acid, and nitrobenzene is very suggestive for the development of the chemistry of quinoline. Quinoline derivatives also result in the condensation of fatty aldehydes by means of hydrochloric or sulphuric acid (see quinoline syntheses).

10. *Indols* are produced on heating primary aromatic bases with  $\alpha$ -haloid keto-compounds; sometimes *dihydropyrazine derivatives* (see these) are also formed.

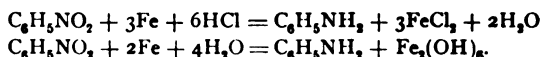
**Aniline, Phenylamine, [Aminophene], [Aminobenzene],**  $C_6H_5NH_2$ , melting at  $-8^\circ$ , boiling at  $184^\circ$ , with specific gravity 1.0361 at  $0^\circ$ , is an oil with a faint aromatic odor. It dissolves in 31 parts of water at  $12.5^\circ$  (B. 10, 709).

*History.*—Unverdorben first discovered (1826) aniline in the dry distillation of indigo and called it *crystallin*, because of the great crystallizing power of its salts. Runge (1834) found it in coal-tar, and named it *cyanole*, as it gave a blue coloration with a bleaching lime solution. Fritzsche (1841) prepared a base, upon distilling indigo with caustic potash, to which he gave the name aniline, from *Indigofera anil*, the name of the indigo plant. In the same year (1841) Zinin prepared "benzidam" by the reduction of nitrobenzene with ammonium sulphide. A. W. Hofmann (1843) proved the identity of the four bases (A. 47, 37).

Aniline is made upon a commercial basis by reducing nitrobenzene with iron and about  $\frac{1}{40}$  of the quantity of hydrochloric acid required by the following equation:



Probably ferrous chloride is the first product, and in its presence the nitrobenzene is reduced by the iron and water, in that the ferrous chloride acts as carrier. The finely divided metal is the immediate active reducing agent (B. 27, 1436, 1815):



The other means of reducing nitrobenzene have already been mentioned on p. 71. In the general methods used in the preparation of primary phenylamines, aniline is usually selected as the example. This is the case in the transformation reactions of the primary phenylamines: action of the alkali metals, halogen alkyls, aldehydes, nitrous acid, thionyl chloride, in the acid anilide formation, in the behavior with carbon disulphide, chloroform, and caustic alkali, glycerol, sulphuric acid, and nitrobenzene, etc. Aniline is quite accessible, and it has been drawn into reactions scarcely less frequently than ammonia itself; consequently we shall frequently encounter it as the parent substance, with numerous aromatic compounds. Despite its feeble basic properties, it will precipitate zinc, aluminium, and ferric salts, and on warming will expel ammonia from its salts. This is because of its slight volatility.

Aniline is poisonous. It is a solvent for many bodies—*e. g.*, indigo.

Aniline is very sensitive to oxidizing agents. In the air it gradually assumes a brown color and resinifies. Bleaching lime imparts a purple color to the solution (B. 27, 3263). On adding sulphuric acid and a few drops of potassium chromate to aniline, a red color appears; later it be-

comes an intense blue. If aniline be oxidized with bleaching lime, aided by heat, or with cold potassium permanganate, it will be changed through a series of intermediate products into *nitrobenzene* (B. 26, 496). Chromic acid converts it into *quinone* (see this), and chlorates in the presence of certain metallic salts change it to *aniline black*.

Aniline is used in the manufacture of numerous technical dyes or compounds with therapeutic value—*e. g.*, aniline black, fuchsine, and others, as well as of *antifebrine*, *antipyrine*, etc., etc.

**Aniline Salts.**—The *hydrochloride* is obtained perfectly pure and dry by conducting dry hydrogen chloride into an ethereal solution of aniline. It melts at 192°. In commerce it is known as aniline salt. It deliquesces with water. *Platinum Chloride Double Salt* yields yellow needles from alcohol. The *stannous* and *stannic salts*,  $\text{SnCl}_2 \cdot 2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{HCl} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and  $\text{SnCl}_4 \cdot 2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{HCl} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . The *sulphate*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}_2)_2\text{SO}_4 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$ . The *nitrate* crystallizes in large rhombic plates; the *oxalate* forms rhombic prisms. Not only the hydrochloride, but also free aniline combines with certain salts to form double salts. It forms an additive compound with trinitrobenzene (p. 67).

**Aniline-potassium**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NHK}$  and  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NK}$ . They are not known in a pure state. The formation of di- and triphenylamine in the action of brombenzene upon the reaction product resulting from aniline and potassium proves that the hydrogen of the amido-group has been replaced by potassium. Sodium first begins to act upon aniline at 200°; compare further acetanilide (p. 82) and monomethylaniline (p. 78).

**Amidomethyl Benzenes.**—Some representatives of this group are of the first importance in the color industry. This is particularly true of *o*- and *p*-toluidine. Most of the bases are liquids at the ordinary temperatures, but when boiled with glacial acetic acid, with acetyl chloride, or acetic anhydride they readily yield acet-derivatives (p. 82). These substituted acetamides crystallize well, have definite melting points, and are in every way well suited for the recognition of the bases, from which they can be obtained in a very simple way. Therefore, the melting point of the acet-derivative will, in the future, always be given with the boiling point and melting point of the base. The amidomethyl benzenes are made by the reduction of the corresponding nitro-bodies, and by heating under pressure at high temperatures the hydrochlorides of bases which have the methyl groups in union with nitrogen—*e. g.*, dimethylaniline,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ .

**Toluidines**,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{NH}_2$ . The three toluidines are isomeric with benzylamine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NH}_2$  (treated after benzyl alcohol), and with methylaniline,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH} \cdot \text{CH}_3$  (p. 78). They are made by the reduction of the three nitrotoluenes (p. 68). *m*-Toluidine is also formed by the reduction of *m*-nitrobenzal chloride, a transposition product of *m*-nitrobenzaldehyde (B. 15, 2009; 18, 3398). A. W. Hofmann and Muspratt discovered *p*-toluidine in 1845 (A. 54, 1).

***o*-Toluidine**, liquid, boils at 197°; *Acet-o-toluide* melts at 110° and boils at 296°.

***m*-Toluidine**, liquid, boils at 199°; *Acet-m-toluide* melts at 65° and boils at 303°.

***p*-Toluidine**, m. p. 45°, boils at 198°; *Acet-p-toluide* melts at 153° and boils at 307°.

*Separation of o- and p-Toluidine.*—The nitration of toluene produces o- and p-nitro-toluene; these, by reduction, yield the toluidines, very valuable in the technical way. o-Toluidine is separated from the p-toluidine by treating the mixture of bases with a quantity of sulphuric acid insufficient to fully neutralize them and then distilling. The stronger p-base remains as sulphate. Or, the greater solubility of the o-toluidine oxalate (J. pr. Ch. [2] 14, 449), as well as o-acet-toluide (B. 2, 433) is used for separation from the corresponding p-bodies. Aniline, ortho- and para-toluidine can also be separated by the varying behavior of their hydrochlorides toward monosodium phosphate (B. 19, 1718, 2728; B. 29, R. 434).

In the chemistry of aniline colors the following distinctions are made:

*Aniline Oil for Blue:* pure aniline;

*Aniline Oil for Red:* molecular quantities of aniline, o- and p-toluidine;

*Aniline Oil for Safranine:* aniline and o-toluidine, obtained from the distillate (échappés) of the fuchsine fusion.

The free toluidines are easily converted by oxidation into azo-compounds (B. 26, 2772). If the amido-group be protected from oxidation by the introduction of an acid radical,—e. g., the acetyl group,—the methyl group can be oxidized to carboxyl by means of potassium permanganate; thus, o-acet-toluide will yield o-acet-amidobenzoic acid (B. 14, 263). In the chlorination, bromination, or nitration of the acet-toluides, the negative substituent usually adds itself in the o-position to the acet-amido-group (compare m-nitrotoluene, p. 68).

Bleaching lime and hydrochloric acid color o-toluidine, like aniline, violet; p-toluidine is not thus affected. Ferric chloride precipitates a blue compound, *toluidine blue*, from the solution of o-toluidine hydrochloride.

**Xylidines**,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{NH}_2$ . The six possible isomerides are known:

v-o-Xylidine, liquid,	boils at 223°; corresponding	<i>Acetxylide</i> , m. p.	134°.
unsym.-o-Xylidine, melts at 49°,	“ “ 226°; “ “ “	“ “	99°.
v-m-Xylidine, liquid,	“ “ 216°; “ “ “	“ “	170°.
unsym.-m-Xylidine, “	“ “ 212°; “ “ “	“ “	120°.
sym.-m-Xylidine, “	“ “ 220°; “ “ “	“ “	144°.
p-Xylidine, melts at 15°,	“ “ 213°; “ “ “	“ “	180°.

The xylidine obtained from dimethyl aniline and serving in the manufacture of dyes consists mainly of unsym.-m-xylidine and p-xylidine (B. 18, 2664, 2919).

**Amidopolymethyl Benzenes**,  $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{NH}_2$ . The product obtained technically by heating xylidine hydrochloride with methyl alcohol to 250°, under pressure, consists principally of s-pseudocumidine and mesidine. It is used in preparing red azo-dyes (B. 15, 1011, 2895).

sym.-Pseudocumidine,  $[\text{5NH}_2, 1, 2, 4]$ , melts at 68° and boils at 235°; its *acet-derivative* melts at 164° (B. 18, 92, 2661).

Mesidine,  $[\text{2NH}_2, 1, 3, 5]$ , liquid, boils at 230°; *acet-derivative* melts at 216° (B. 18, 2229; 24, 3546).

Isoduridine,  $[\text{4NH}_2, 1, 2, 3, 5]$ , melts at 23° and boils at 255°; its *acet-derivative* melts at 215° (B. 18, 1149).

Prehnidine,  $[\text{5NH}_2, 1, 2, 3, 4]$ , melts at 64° and boils at 260°; its *acet-derivative* melts at 170° (B. 21, 644, 905).

Amidopentamethyl Benzene melts at 151° and boils at 277°; the *acet-derivative* melts at 213° (B. 18, 1825).

**Homologues of Aniline with Larger Alcohol Radicals.**—These have been prepared not only by reduction of the corresponding nitro-compounds, but also by a *nucleus-synthesis* from aniline itself, by heating aniline together with fatty alcohols and zinc chloride to 250–280° (p. 72). The alkyl assumes the p-position with reference to the amido-group. If isobutyl and isoamyl alcohol be used, then p-tertiary butyl- and p-tertiary

amyl aniline are produced (B. 28, 407). If phenol be substituted for aniline in this synthesis, the corresponding phenols (see these) will be produced.

*p*-Amidoethyl benzene,  $C_2H_5C_6H_4NH_2$ , melts at  $-5^\circ$  and boils at  $216^\circ$  (B. 22, 1847).

*p*-Amidopropyl benzene boils at  $225^\circ$ ; the acet-derivative melts at  $87^\circ$  (B. 17, 1221).

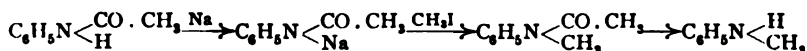
*p*-Amidoisopropyl benzene boils at  $225^\circ$ ; the acet-body melts at  $102^\circ$  (B. 21, 1159).

*p*-Amidotertiarybutyl benzene melts at  $17^\circ$  and boils at  $240^\circ$ ; the acet-body melts at  $172^\circ$  (B. 24, 2974).

*p*-Amido-octyl benzene melts at  $19^\circ$  and boils at  $310^\circ$ ; the acet-derivative melts at  $93^\circ$  (B. 18, 135).

## B. SECONDARY AND TERTIARY PHENYLAMINES. PHENYLAMMONIUM BASES.

**Phenylalkylamines.**—*Formation*: (1) The alkyl anilines and homologues of aniline are formed the same as the amines of the fatty series (1, 160) by the action of alkyl bromides and iodides upon primary bases. These reactions usually take place at the ordinary temperatures. They can also be obtained by heating aniline hydrochloride, or, better, aniline hydrobromide (B. 19, 1939), to  $250^\circ$  with alcohols. Alkyl chlorides or bromides are first produced, but they subsequently act upon aniline. (2) According to method (1) haloid salts of the mono- and dialkyl anilines are formed side by side. To prepare the monoalkyl anilines it is advisable to start with the acet-derivatives of the primary bases, which are dissolved in toluene or xylene, and the calculated amount of metallic sodium is then introduced into the solution. There is an evolution of hydrogen, and white, solid sodium acetanilide separates. This rearranges itself very readily with the alkyl iodides. Saponification of the alkyl acetanilide liberates the alkyl aniline:



*Separation of Primary, Secondary, and Tertiary Bases.*—Sodium nitrite precipitates the secondary bases as oily nitrosamines from an acid solution of a mixture of the same. The bases are regained by treating the nitrosamines with tin and hydrochloric acid. The ferrocyanide salts (A. 190, 184) or the metaphosphates will also answer for this purpose (B. 10, 795; 22, 1005; 26, 1020).

**Phenylalkylammonium Bases.**—Tertiary phenylalkylamines—e.g.,  $C_6H_5N(C_2H_5)_3$ —are capable of uniting with the alkylogens to ammonium derivatives, which moist silver oxide or lime converts into ammonium hydroxides:  $C_6H_5N(C_2H_5)_3I$  yields  $C_6H_5N(C_2H_5)_3OH$ .

*Properties and Transpositions.*—The most important bodies in this group are the methyl and ethyl anilines. When freshly prepared, they are colorless, strongly refracting liquids, which slowly turn brown on exposure to light. Their odor is similar to, but more agreeable than, that of aniline.

The secondary phenylalkylamines recall in their deportment the dialkylamines (1, 167). (1) They form salts and combine with alkylogens to haloid salts of the tertiary amines. (2) Acid chlorides and acid anhydrides substitute acid radicals for the imide hydrogen. The same compounds can also be obtained in the manner outlined in method 2. (3) Nitrous acid converts them into nitrosamines (1, 170).

The tertiary phenyldialkylamines, containing an aromatic hydro-

gen atom in the para-position with reference to the dialkylamido-group, show a remarkable mobility of this atom of hydrogen, permitting a series of reactions for which the primary and secondary anilines are not adapted, or at least not to so great a degree. The behavior of the phenyldialkylamines toward nitrous acid is particularly important, both theoretically and technically. It converts them into p-nitroso-derivatives.

The three classes of aromatic amines differ therefore from each other in their deportment toward nitrous acid, as follows:

1. Primary phenylamines yield *dialzo-derivatives* or *dialzoamido-compounds*.

2. Secondary phenylalkylamines yield *nitrosamines*.

3. Tertiary phenyldialkylamines yield *p-nitroso-compounds*.

Other reactions of the phenyldialkylamines will be mentioned after discussing dimethyl aniline.

The methyl- and ethyl-anilines have the following melting points and specific gravities:

**Monomethyl Aniline**, liquid, boils at  $192^{\circ}$ ; sp. gravity, 0.976 ( $15^{\circ}$ ).

**Dimethyl Aniline** melts at  $0.5^{\circ}$ , and boils at  $192^{\circ}$ ; sp. gravity, 0.9575 ( $20^{\circ}/4^{\circ}$ ).

**Ethyl Aniline**, liquid, boils at  $206^{\circ}$ ; sp. gravity, 0.954 ( $18^{\circ}$ ).

**Diethyl Aniline**, liquid, boils at  $213.5^{\circ}$ ; sp. gravity, 0.939 ( $18^{\circ}$ ).

The methylated anilines are technically applied in the production of aniline dye-stuffs. They are formed on heating aniline together with HCl-aniline and methyl alcohol to  $220^{\circ}$ . A better course is to conduct  $\text{CH}_3\text{Cl}$  into boiling aniline.

**Methyl Aniline**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{NH}(\text{CH}_3)$ , is obtained from phenyl carbylamine (p. 83). Its salts (with HCl and  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ) do not crystallize and dissolve in ether (distinction from the corresponding aniline salts, which are insoluble in this solvent). Bleaching lime imparts no color to it. When methyl aniline is heated to  $330^{\circ}$ , it is transformed into paratoluidine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_3) \cdot \text{NH}_2$ . Methylphenylnitrosamine, see p. 97. Methylacetanilide, see p. 82.

**Dimethyl Aniline**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ . Its salts do not crystallize. It forms an acetate; this decomposes again into its components on distillation. Hypochlorites do not color it. It forms trimethylphenylum iodide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{I}$ , with methyl iodide.

The action of nitrous acid or, better, sodium nitrite upon the HCl-salt produces **p-Nitroso-dimethyl Aniline**.

**p-Nitro-dimethyl Aniline** is obtained with nitric acid.

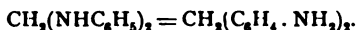
Benzoyl chloride and acetyl bromide convert it into benzoyl and acetyl monomethyl aniline, together with trimethylphenylum bromide (B. 19, 1947).

Dimethyl aniline has been introduced into a series of condensation reactions. It combines to *p-amidomandelic acid*,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{CH}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CCl}_3$ , with chloral. Phosgene converts it into *tetramethyl-p-diamidobenzophenone*,  $[(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]]_2\text{CO}$ , while with orthoformic ester and zinc chloride it yields *hexamethyl-p-leucaniline*,  $\text{CH}[\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2]_3$ , and with benzotrichloride *malachite green* (see this), etc.

The homologous mono- and dialkyl anilines behave similarly. Mention may also be made of **methylethyl aniline**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)$ , boiling at  $201^{\circ}$ . Its compound with  $\text{CH}_3\text{I}$  is identical with dimethyl-aniline-ethyl iodide; methyl-ethyl aniline-ethyl

iodide is also identical with diethyl aniline-methyl iodide; finally, methyl-propyl aniline-ethyl iodide is identical with ethyl-propyl aniline-methyl iodide—an additional proof that the five affinities of nitrogen have equal value (1, 169 and B. 19, 2785). The higher alkyl is set free from all these ammonium iodides when they are heated with caustic potash.

**Alkylen-dianilines:** Methylene-diphenyl-diamine,  $\text{CH}_2(\text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , melting at  $65^\circ$ , is formed from aniline and formaldehyde in alkaline solution, as well as upon heating anhydroformaldehyde-aniline (see below) to  $100^\circ$  with alcoholic aniline (B. 27, 1806). Hydrochloric acid or aniline hydrochloride rearranges it to diamido-diphenyl methane (compare the *bensidine rearrangement*):



**Ethylene Diphenyl-diamine**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{NH})_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_4$ , from aniline and ethylene bromide, melts at  $65^\circ$ .

**Ethylene Monophenyl-diamine**,  $\text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , boiling at  $263^\circ$ , has been prepared by means of potassium phthalimide (B. 24, 2191).

**Ethylene Isobutylidene-diphenyl-diamine**,  $\begin{matrix} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) \end{matrix} > \text{CH} \cdot \text{C}_3\text{H}_7$ , melting at  $95^\circ$ , results from ethylenediphenyldiamine and isobutylaldehyde. Diethylene-diphenyldiamine, *n*-diphenylpiperazine; see piperazine.

**Alkyldene Anilines.**—These are produced in energetic reactions by the union of fatty aldehydes and aniline. An exit of water occurs. The simple bodies are usually unstable oils, which immediately polymerize in part like formaldehyde-aniline, or partly condense in an aldol-like manner. The simple and polymeric alkyldene anilines readily absorb hydrocyanic acid and form nitriles of the  $\alpha$ -anilido-acids. Those having an aldol nature do not behave in this way; they readily condense, with exit of aniline, to quinoline derivatives (see *quinaldine* syntheses) (B. 25, 2020).

**Anhydroformaldehyde Aniline**,  $(\text{CH}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , melting at  $140^\circ$ , has been prepared by mixing a solution of well-cooled formaldehyde with aniline. It yields methyl aniline upon reduction, and anilido-acetonitrile with prussic acid.

**Ethidene Aniline**,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , is an oil. It absorbs hydrocyanic acid readily and condenses, without difficulty, to two modifications of  $\beta$ -anilidobutylidene-aniline,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $126^\circ$  and at  $85^\circ$ . The latter can be rearranged into the former or high melting body. When heated with hydrochloric or acetic acid they yield quinaldine, while nitrous acid changes them to two dinitroso-compounds, melting at  $161^\circ$  and  $120^\circ$  (B. 29, 2977). Aldol-aniline,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , from aldol and aniline, is a reddish-colored and easily decomposable oil. Ammonium sulphide changes it to thioaldol aniline,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} \begin{matrix} \diagup \\ \text{S} \end{matrix} \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $92^\circ$  (B. 29, 59).

**C. Polyphenylamines.**—The methods of producing these bodies and their behavior will be explained in connection with diphenylamine and triphenylamine.

**Diphenylamine**,  $\text{NH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , melts at  $54^\circ$  and boils at  $310^\circ$ .

1. This compound is very important from a technical standpoint. It was prepared by A. W. Hofmann (1864) on heating *aniline blue*, *rosaniline*, and similar dye-substances (A. 132, 160).

2. It is made by heating aniline hydrochloride and aniline to  $240^\circ$ :



The homologous *ditolylamines* have been similarly obtained.

3. It results also upon heating aniline with phenol and  $\text{ZnCl}_2$  to  $260^\circ$ .

4. It is, furthermore, formed when brombenzene and aniline are heated to  $350$ – $390^\circ$  together with soda-lime (B. 27, R. 74).

Diphenylamine is a pleasant-smelling, crystalline compound. It is almost insoluble in water, but readily soluble in alcohol and ether. It is a very weak base, whose salts are decomposed by water.

Potassium permanganate, in alkaline solution, oxidizes diphenylamine to *diphenyl-p-azophenylene* or *quinone-dianil*,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{matrix} [1]N \cdot C_6H_5 \\ [4]N \cdot C_6H_5 \end{matrix} \right.$ . Chlorine and bromine convert it into tetra- or hexa-halogen substitution products, and nitric acid changes it to the hexanitro-derivative (p. 93). Sulphuric acid dissolves diphenylamine; the solution has a dark-blue color when traces of nitric acid are present: test for nitric acid.

*Nitrodiphenylamines* (see p. 93).—*Nitrosodiphenylamine* (p. 94). On heating diphenylamine with sulphur it yields *thiodiphenylamine*,  $NH \left\langle \begin{matrix} C_6H_5 \\ C_6H_5 \end{matrix} \right\rangle S$  (see this), the parent substance of the *thionine* dyes. *Acridines*—e.g.,  $N \left\langle \begin{matrix} C_6H_5 \\ C_6H_5 \end{matrix} \right\rangle CH$ —are produced when it is heated to  $300^\circ$  with fatty acids. Diphenylamine is applied in the manufacture of *triphenylrosaniline* (see this) or *aniline blue*. *Methyl Diphenylamine*,  $CH_3N(C_6H_5)_2$ , boils at  $292^\circ$  (A. 235, 21).

**Triphenylamine**,  $(C_6H_5)_3N$ , is obtained on heating dipotassium aniline (p. 75) or sodium diphenylamine with brombenzene (B. 18, 2156). It crystallizes from ether in large plates, melts at  $127^\circ$  and distils undecomposed. It dissolves in sulphuric acid, forming a violet, then a dark-green color. It cannot form salts with acids. By nitration it yields a trinitro-product, which forms *triamidotriphenylamine*,  $N(C_6H_4 \cdot NH_2)_3$ , by reduction (B. 19, 759). Hexaphenylrosaniline is produced when phosgene acts upon triphenylamine.

#### ANILINE DERIVATIVES OF INORGANIC ACIDS.

**Aromatic Thionylamines** (Michaelis).—These bodies, corresponding to the alkylthionylamines (I, 165), are produced when thionyl chloride acts upon primary bases. This reaction is characteristic of these derivatives. The thionylamines are mostly yellow-colored liquids, boiling at the ordinary pressure without decomposition. They have a peculiar aromatic odor; at the same time the odor of sulphur chloride.

**Thionyl Aniline**,  $C_6H_5N : SO$ , boils at  $200^\circ$  and has the specific gravity 1.236 ( $15^\circ$ ). **Thionyl-o-chloraniline** boils at  $207^\circ$  under 46 mm. pressure; the m-body boils at  $233^\circ$ , and the p-compound melts at  $36^\circ$  and boils at  $237^\circ$ . **Thionyl-o-bromaniline** boils at  $210^\circ$  under 46 mm. pressure; the m-body melts at  $32^\circ$  and the para- at  $60^\circ$ . **Thionyl-o-nitraniline** melts at  $32^\circ$ .

**Thionyl-o-toluidine** boils at  $184^\circ$  under 100 mm. pressure; the m-compound boils at  $220^\circ$ , while the p-derivative melts at  $7^\circ$  and boils at  $224^\circ$  (A. 274, 201), etc.

**Phenylsulphamic Acid**,  $C_6H_5NHSO_3H$ , only known in the form of salts, is produced when  $SO_2$  or  $ClSO_3H$  acts upon aniline dissolved in chloroform (B. 24, 360), as well as by heating aniline with amidosulphonic acid (B. 27, 1244). **p-Tolylsulphamic Acid** is precipitated from its ammonium salt solution by acids (B. 28, 3161). **Sulphanilide**,  $SO_2(NHC_6H_5)_2$  (B. 24, 362).

The aromatic nitrosamines and nitroamines will be discussed later, before the diazo-derivatives.

**Phosphorphenylamines**.—**Phosphazobenzene Chloride**,  $C_6H_5N : PCl_2$ , melting at  $136$ – $137^\circ$ , was made by allowing  $PCl_3$  to act upon aniline hydrochloride. Phenol changes it to *Phenoxyphosphazobenzene*,  $C_6H_5N : P(O \cdot C_6H_5)$ , while with aniline it forms *phosphazobenzene anilide*,  $C_6H_5N : P \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_5$  (B. 27, 490). *Anilido-phosphoric Dichloride*,  $C_6H_5NH \cdot POCl_2$ , melting at  $84^\circ$ , can be prepared from  $POCl_3$  and aniline hydrochloride (B. 26, 2939). *Orthophosphor-anilide*,  $(C_6H_5NH)_2PO$ , melts at  $208^\circ$  (A. 229, 334). *Oxyphosphazobenzene anilide*,  $C_6H_5NH \cdot PO : N \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $357^\circ$ , is

the final product in the action of  $\text{POCl}_3$  upon aniline (B. 29, 716). *Trichlorophosphanil*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N} \cdot \text{PCl}_3$  (B. 28, 2212), is formed from aniline hydrochloride and phosphorus pentachloride.

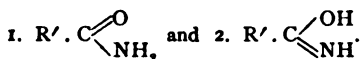
*Sulphophosphazobenzene chloride*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N} : \text{PSCl}_2$ , melting at  $149^\circ$  and boiling at  $280\text{--}290^\circ$ , is formed from  $\text{PSCl}_3$  and aniline hydrochloride (B. 28, 1239).

**Arsenphenylamines** are produced in the action of arsenious chloride or bromide upon aniline dissolved in ether or chloroform. **Arsenanilido-dichloride**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NHAsCl}_2$ , melts at  $87^\circ$ . **Arsenanilido-dibromide** melts at  $112^\circ$ . **Arsendianilido-monochloride**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH})_2\text{AsCl}$ , melts at  $127^\circ$ . **Arsenanilido-dimethyl Ether**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NHAs}(\text{OCH}_3)_2$ , boils at  $55^\circ$  under 12 mm. pressure (A. 261, 279).

**Silicotetraphenylamide**,  $\text{Si}(\text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5)_4$ , melts at  $137^\circ$  (B. 22, R. 746).

#### CARBONIC ACID DERIVATIVES OF THE AROMATIC PRIMARY AND SECONDARY AMINES.

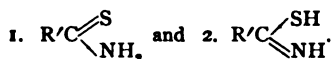
In the introduction to the fatty acids an example was given in connection with acetic acid to show what nitrogen-containing derivatives could be obtained by changes in the carboxyl group (I, 222). The first category contained the acid amides, which may be variously constructed, corresponding to the formulas—



The imidoethers are derived from the second formula.

Numerous fatty acid derivatives of these classes have been obtained from aniline and its primary homologues. With acid amides of secondary bases only, formula 1 comes into consideration. In a primary amine both hydrogen atoms are replaceable by acid radicals.

The *thiamides* and *isothiamides* correspond to the acid amides :



The *amide chlorides*, *imide chlorides*, and the *amidines* attach themselves to these classes.

**Anilides of Monobasic Fatty Acids.**—The anilides or phenylamides of the fatty acids are made by the methods given for the acid amides (I, 262):

(1) By heating the aniline salts of the fatty acids. (2) By the action of aniline upon esters, (3) upon acid chlorides, and (4) upon acid anhydrides.

The acid anilides are very stable derivatives; can usually be distilled without change, and also directly chlorinated, brominated, and nitrated (p. 77). They furnish a rapid and simple means of distinguishing the aromatic bases. They are resolved into their components by digesting them with alkalis or heating with hydrochloric acid. They yield benzothiazoles when they are heated with sulphur.

The secondary anilides, like secondary alkyl anilines (p. 97), yield *nitrosamines* by the action of nitrous acid.

These give the nitrosamine reaction with phenol and sulphuric acid; but are less stable than the nitrosamines of the secondary anilines. Reducing agents break off

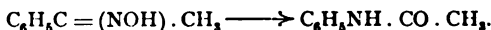
their nitroso-group. The anilides of formic and acetic acids will be described in the following paragraphs:

**Formanilide**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot NH \cdot CHO$ , is obtained on digesting aniline with formic acid, or by rapidly heating it together with oxalic acid.

It is readily soluble in water, alcohol, and ether. It melts at  $46^\circ$  and boils at  $284^\circ$ , with scarcely any decomposition.

**Salts and Alkyl Derivatives.**—Concentrated sodium hydroxide precipitates the crystalline compound,  $C_6H_5 \cdot NNa \cdot CHO$ , **Sodium Formanilide**, which methyl iodide changes to methyl formanilide, melting at  $12.5^\circ$  and boiling at  $253^\circ$ . The latter is resolved into acid and methyl aniline when it is digested with alcoholic potash or hydrochloric acid (B. 21, 1107). Silver nitrate added to the alcoholic solution of the sodium compound precipitates *silver formanilide*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot N : CH(OAg)$ . Methyl iodide converts the latter into *methyl isoformanilide*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot N : CH \cdot O \cdot CH_3$ , boiling at  $196^\circ$  (B. 23, 2274; R. 659). However, the silver salt and acid chlorides—e. g., benzoyl chloride—yield N-derivatives (B. 29, R. 1141). *Ethyl Isoformanilide*, *ethoxymethylene aniline*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot N : CHOC_2H_5$ , boiling at  $212^\circ$ , is obtained, together with diphenylformamidine, by the prolonged boiling of aniline with orthoformic ester (A. 287, 360). *Phenylimidoformylchloride-hydrochloride*,  $(C_6H_5 \cdot N = C < \begin{smallmatrix} H \\ Cl \end{smallmatrix})_2 \cdot HCl$ , is produced when dry hydrochloric acid gas is conducted into an ethereal solution of phenylisocyanide (p. 83) (A. 270, 303).

**Acetanilide**, *Antifebrine*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$ , melting at  $112^\circ$  and boiling at  $304^\circ$ , is produced on boiling aniline with glacial acetic acid (B. 15, 1977) (for the speed of the reaction consult J. pr. Ch. [2] 26, 208), or from aniline and acetyl chloride or acetic anhydride, as well as from malonanilic acid (p. 91). Its formation on heating isomeric acetophenone-oxime to  $100^\circ$  with sulphuric acid is especially noteworthy (B. 20, 2581):



Acetanilide crystallized from water, in which it is sparingly soluble in the cold, consists of small white leaflets. It is used as an antipyretic and antirheumatic. Consult A. 184, 86, for the action of  $PCl_5$ . Bisthiazole (see this) is formed when it is heated with sulphur.

**Salts.**—Its *hydrochloride* is decomposed by water. When it is heated it yields diphenyl ethenylamidine, flavaniline (see this), and dimethyl quinoline (B. 18, 1340). Ethylaniline, together with acetic acid, is the product on heating acetanilide with sodium alcoholate (B. 19, R. 680).

**Sodium Acetanilide**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot NNa \cdot COCH_3$ , obtained by the action of sodium upon acetanilide dissolved in xylene, is changed by alkyl iodides into monoalkylacetanilides (B. 10, 328), from which the monoalkylanilines can be obtained (B. 23, 2587). The same acetanilides are produced when acetic anhydride acts upon secondary bases. *Mercurio-acetanilide*,  $(C_6H_5 \cdot NCO \cdot CH_3)_2 \cdot Hg$  (B. 28, R. 113).

**Methyl Acetanilide**, *Exalgine*, melts at  $101^\circ$  and boils at  $253^\circ$  (antineuralgic). **Ethyl Acetanilide** melts at  $54^\circ$  and boils at  $258^\circ$ .

**n-Propyl Acetanilide** melts at  $47^\circ$  and boils at  $266^\circ$  (B. 21, 1108).

**Substituted Acetanilides.**—o- and p-Derivatives of acetanilide are obtained by the action of chlorine, bromine, and nitric acid (p. 92).

**Formyl Acetanilide**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot N(COH)(COCH_3)$ , from mercurio-formanilide and acetyl chloride, melts at  $56^\circ$  (B. 29, R. 1155).

**Diacetanilide**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot N(CO \cdot CH_3)_2$ , melting at  $37^\circ$  and boiling at  $142^\circ$  under 11 mm. pressure, results when acetanilide is heated to  $170$ – $180^\circ$  with acetyl chloride or with acetic anhydride to  $200^\circ$ , as well as upon boiling phenyl mustard oil with acetic anhydride (B. 27, 91; 28, 1665).

The acet-derivatives are characterized by their great power of crystallization. They serve as a means of detecting many primary and secondary aromatic bases. Therefore the melting points of many acet-bodies will be introduced in connection with their respective bases (p. 76).

**Nitroso-anilides**, see p. 97.

**Thioanilides** result upon treating the anilides with  $P_2S_5$ , and the amidines and isonitriles with  $H_2S$ .

**Thioformanilide**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot NH \cdot CHS$ , melts at  $137^\circ$  and decomposes at the same time into  $H_2S$  and phenyl isocyanide (B. 11, 338; A. 192, 85). Consult B. 18, 2292, upon homologous thioformanilides.

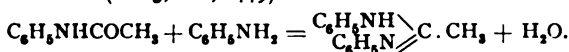
**Thioacetanilide** melts at  $75^\circ$ . An alkaline solution of potassium ferricyanide oxidizes it to ethenyl amido-thiophenol,  $C_6H_4 \cdot \begin{smallmatrix} N \\ \diagup \diagdown \\ S \end{smallmatrix} C \cdot CH_3$  (B. 19, 1072).

**Methyl-thioacetanilide** melts at  $58-59^\circ$  and boils at  $290^\circ$ .

**Methyl-isothioacetanilide**,  $C_6H_5N : C \begin{smallmatrix} CH_3 \\ \diagup \diagdown \\ SClH \end{smallmatrix}$ , boiling at  $245^\circ$ , and **Ethyl-isothioacetanilide**, boiling at  $250^\circ$ , are obtained by the action of sodium alcoholate and alkyl iodides upon thioacetanilide (similar to formation of phenyl-isothio-urethanes, p. 86, and of phenyl-isothio-ureas, p. 87).

They decompose into aniline hydrochloride and thioacetic ester,  $CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot SR$ , when shaken with hydrochloric acid (B. 12, 1061).

**Phenylated Amidines of Formic Acid and Acetic Acid**.—In addition to the methods proposed for the formation of amidines, the phenylated amidines are produced by the action of  $PCl_5$  or hydrochloric acid upon a mixture of aniline and anilide, when an exit of water occurs (B. 15, 208, 2449):



They are feeble bases, and form salts with one equivalent of hydrochloric acid. They break down into aniline and acid anilides when boiled with alcohol.

**Diphenyl-formamidine**, *Methenyl-diphenyl-diamine*,  $C_6H_5N : CH \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $135^\circ$ , results upon heating aniline with chloroform or formic acid to  $180^\circ$ , and by boiling phenyl-isocyanide,  $C_6H_5 \cdot NC$ , with aniline. It crystallizes from alcohol in long needles and distils at  $250^\circ$ , with partial decomposition, into benzonitrile and aniline.

**Diphenyl-ethenyl-amidine** melts at  $131^\circ$ .

**Phenyl-ethenyl-amidine**,  $C_6H_5N : C(NH_2) \cdot CH_3$ , from acetoneitrile and  $HCl$ -aniline (A. 184, 362; 192, 25) (1, 261), is a liquid.

**Phenylisurette**,  $C_6H_5NH \cdot CH : NOH$ , melting with decomposition at  $138^\circ$ , has been obtained from formylchloride-oxime (1, 233) and aniline (B. 27, R. 745).

**Phenylated Carbylamines** (1, 236).—**Phenyl isocyanide**, *Phenyl carbylamine*,  $C_6H_5N : C$ , boils under ordinary pressure at  $166^\circ$  (when polymerization occurs) and unaltered at  $64^\circ$  under a pressure of 20 mm. The colorless liquid soon acquires a clear blue, and finally a dark blue, color, when it resinifies. Its sp. gravity at  $15^\circ$  equals 0.977. Phenyl isocyanide is produced by the action of chloroform on aniline in an alcoholic solution of caustic potash, or by the distillation of thioformanilide (above). It has an exceedingly disagreeable and permanent odor, a bitter taste, and increases the flow of saliva and produces headache.

It behaves as follows: (1) When heated to  $220^\circ$  it is rearranged into *benzonitrile*,  $C_6H_5CN$ . (2) Nascent hydrogen converts it into *methyl aniline*. (3) Hydrochloric acid, in dry ether, changes it to *phenylimidoformyl chloride* (p. 82); with (4) glacial acetic acid it yields *formanilide*; with (5) hydrogen sulphide at  $100^\circ$ , *thioformanilide*; (6) with sulphur at  $130^\circ$ , *mustard oil*; (7) with aniline at  $170^\circ$ , *diphenyl formamidine*; (8) with chlorine, *isocyanphenyl chloride* or *phenylimidocarbonyl chloride* (p. 89); (9) with phosgene, *mesoxanilimide chloride*,  $C_6H_5N = CCl \cdot CO \cdot CCl = N \cdot C_6H_5$ ; (10) with acetyl chloride, *pyroracemic anilide chloride* (Nef, A. 270, 274). *o*-Tolylisocyanide boils at  $75^\circ$  (16 mm.); sp. gravity 0.968 at  $24^\circ$ . *p*-Tolylisocyanide boils at  $99^\circ$  (32 mm.) (B. 27, R. 792).

**Phenylamine Derivatives of Oxy-acids.**—These compounds are well adapted for certain condensations in which the benzene hydrogen holding the *ortho*-position with reference to nitrogen takes part, so that a heterocyclic derivative results. The acids are obtained by heating the corresponding haloid fatty acids with aniline. The nitriles are produced by adding prussic acid to the alkylidene anilines (p. 79), or by heating the aldehyde cyanhydrins with aniline.

**Anilido-acetic Acid, Phenyl glycolcol, Phenylglycin**, is obtained from chlor- or brom acetic acid by the action of aniline and water (B. 10, 2046; 21, R. 136). It melts at 127°.

Its alkyl esters are produced when aniline is heated with the diazo-acetic esters. Its *nitrile*, from anhydroformaldehyde aniline and absolute prussic acid, melts at 43°. If the free acid be heated to 150°, it passes into *diphenylglycin anhydride* or *diphenyl-diacypiperazine*, melting at 263° (B. 25, 2270).

In addition to phenylglycin, aniline and chloracetic acid yield *diglycolphenylamidic acid*,  $C_6H_5N(CH_2 \cdot CO_2H)_2$ , melting at 150–155° (B. 23, 1990). Its *anhydride*,  $C_6H_5N \langle \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \cdot CO \\ CH_2 \cdot CO \end{smallmatrix} \rangle O$ , melts at 148° (B. 25, 2272). The *imide*,  $C_6H_5N \langle \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \cdot CO \\ CH_2 \cdot CO \end{smallmatrix} \rangle NH$ , melts at 158° (B. 22, 1809). The *anil*,  $C_6H_5N \langle \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \cdot CO \\ CH_2 \cdot CO \end{smallmatrix} \rangle NC_6H_5$ , melts at 152° (B. 22, 1802). When phenylglycin and *bromacetanilide*,  $C_6H_5NH \cdot CO \cdot CH_2Br$ , melting at 131°, are fused with caustic potash in the air, *indigo* results. The distillation of a mixture of calcium anilido-acetate and formate produces *indol*,  $C_6H_5 \langle \begin{smallmatrix} CH \\ NH \end{smallmatrix} \rangle CH$  (see this).

**Diglycolanilic Acid**,  $O \langle \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \cdot CO \\ CH_2 \cdot CO \end{smallmatrix} \rangle NH \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at 118°, and isomeric with diglycolphenylamidic acid, results from diglycollic anhydride and aniline. Acetyl chloride changes it to *diglycolanil*,  $O \langle \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \cdot CO \\ CH_2 \cdot CO \end{smallmatrix} \rangle N \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at 116°, and isomeric with diglycolphenylamidic anhydride (A. 273, 66).

**Thiodiglycol-anilic Acid and Anilide** (A. 273, 70).

o **Nitrophenylglycin**,  $NO_2[2]C_6H_4[1]NH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$ , melts at 193° (see quinoxalines).

**$\alpha$ -Anilidopropionic Acid, Phenylalanine**,  $C_6H_5NHCH \langle \begin{smallmatrix} CO_2H \\ CH_3 \end{smallmatrix} \rangle$ , melting at 162°, has been prepared from its nitrile, the rearrangement product arising from ethidene cyanhydrin and aniline, as well as from ethidene aniline and prussic acid (B. 15, 2036; 23, 2010; 25, 2032).

**$\beta$ -Anilidopropionic Ester**, from  $\beta$ -iodopropionic ester, boils at 175° (18 mm.) (B. 29, 514).

**Aniline Derivatives of Ketone Carboxylic Acids.**—**Pyroracemic Anilide**,  $CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_5$ , melts at 104°. **Pyroracemic Anilide Chloride**,  $CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CCl : N \cdot C_6H_5$ , boiling at 136° (13 mm.), is prepared from phenyl carbylamine and acetyl chloride (A. 270, 299).

**Anil-pyroracemic Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot N : C(CH_3) \cdot CO_2H$ , melting, with decomposition, at 122°, is formed from pyroracemic acid and aniline dissolved in ether (A. 263, 126). It changes readily into anil-uvitonin acid, a derivative of quinoline.

By heating aniline and acetoacetic ester to 130° **Acetoacetanilide**,  $CH_3 \langle \begin{smallmatrix} CO \cdot CH_3 \\ CO \cdot NH \end{smallmatrix} \rangle$ ,  $C_6H_5$ , is produced. It melts at 85°. It condenses to  $\gamma$ -methyl carbostyryl.

When aniline and acetoacetic ester interact at the ordinary temperature, there is formed anil-acetoacetic ester, that may be considered as  $\beta$ -**Phenylimido-butyric Ester**,  $CH_3 \cdot C(NH \cdot C_6H_5) : CH \cdot CO_2R$ , or  $\beta$ -**Anilido-crotonic Ester**,  $C_6H_5N$ .

$\text{H} \cdot \text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagup \\ \text{CH} \end{smallmatrix} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{R}$ . This is a thick oil, boiling without decomposition under 12 mm. pressure. Acids and alkalis decompose it into its components. It condenses to  $\gamma$ -oxy-quinaldine (see this) and phenyl lutidon-carboxylic acid (B. 20, 947 and 1398; 22, 83). The tolylamido-derivatives behave similarly (B. 21, 523).

## ANILINE DERIVATIVES OF CARBONIC ACID.

The compounds belonging in this class are very numerous, and will be treated in the order observed with the amine and alkylamine derivatives of carbonic acid, with which they can thus be most satisfactorily compared (see vol. 1).

**Carbanilic Acid**, phenyl carbanic acid, is not known in a free state. Its esters, called phenyl urethanes, result (1) in the action of chlorcarbonic esters upon aniline (B. 18, 978); (2) from carbanile with alcohols and phenols (B. 3, 654); (3) from urea chlorides and alcohols (B. 24, 2108); and (4) from benzoylazide and alcohols (compare 1, 163, and B. 29, R. 181). The methyl ester,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ , melts at  $47^\circ$ , and is converted into amidosulphobenzoic ester when dissolved in sulphuric acid (B. 18, 980). The ethyl ester melts at  $52^\circ$ .

**Urea Chlorides** are produced by the action of secondary aromatic bases upon phosgene in benzene solution (B. 23, 424). Phenyl urea chloride and bromide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{COBr}$ , melt at  $67^\circ$ ; compare B. 28, R. 777.

**Methyl Phenyl Urea Chloride**,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2 \cdot (\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{N} \cdot \text{COCl}$ , melts at  $88^\circ$  and boils at  $280^\circ$ . **Diphenyl Urea Chloride**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{N} \cdot \text{COCl}$ , melts at  $85^\circ$ . When these urea chlorides act upon benzene in the presence of  $\text{AlCl}_3$  they form the amides of benzoic acid (synthesis of aromatic acids, B. 20, 2118; 24, 2108).

A tetrasubstituted oxamide (B. 25, 1819, 1825) is produced when sodium in ethereal solution acts upon di-p-tolyl-urea chloride, melting at  $102^\circ$ .

**Phenylated Ureas**.—Phenyl urea,  $\text{CO} < \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NH} \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , is prepared by evaporating the aqueous solution of aniline hydrochloride and potassium isocyanide (B. 9, 820), and by the action of ammonia upon carbanile. It melts at  $144^\circ$ .

sym.-Alkylphenyl Ureas are produced in the action of aniline upon isocyanic esters, or of phenyl isocyanide (p. 89) upon alkylamines. sym.-Ethylphenyl Urea,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{NHC}(\text{NH}_2)\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $99^\circ$ .

unsym.-Alkylphenyl Ureas are obtained from alkyl aniline hydrochloride and potassium isocyanide. unsym.-Ethylphenyl Urea melts at  $62^\circ$ .

sym.-Diphenyl urea,  $\text{CO} < \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NH} \\ \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , carbanilide, melting at  $235^\circ$  and boiling at  $260^\circ$ , is formed (1) by the action of phosgene gas on aniline (B. 16, 2301); (2) by the union of carbanile with aniline (A. 74, 15); (3) by the action of mercuric oxide or alcoholic potash upon s.-diphenyl thiourea (A. 70, 148), and (4) by heating aniline with urea to  $170^\circ$ . It is most readily obtained (5) by heating monophenyl urea with aniline to  $190^\circ$  (B. 9, 820), or (6) by heating diphenyl carbonate with aniline to  $170^\circ$  (B. 18, 516).

Carbanilide consists of silky needles, easily soluble in alcohol and ether, but sparingly soluble in water. Diphenyl urea chloride, heated to  $100^\circ$  with alcoholic ammonia, yields unsymmetrical diphenyl urea,  $\text{CO} < \begin{smallmatrix} \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2 \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $189^\circ$ , and when distilled yielding diphenylamine and cyanic acid. Triphenyl urea,  $\text{CO} < \begin{smallmatrix} \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3 \\ \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix}$ , melt-

ing at  $136^\circ$ , and tetraphenyl urea,  $\text{CO} < \begin{smallmatrix} \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_4 \\ \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $183^\circ$ , have also been obtained from diphenyl urea chloride (B. 9, 398).

**Cyclic Alkylphenyl Urea Derivatives** (compare vol. 1, Derivatives of Urea): Ethylene Phenyl Urea, see B. 24, 2192. Trimethylene Phenyl Urea (B. 23, 1173).

Ethylene Carbanilide,  $\text{CO} < \begin{smallmatrix} \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ , melts at  $183^\circ$  (B. 20, 784). Trimethylene Carbanilide melts at  $153^\circ$  (B. 20, 783).

**Ureides of the Phenylated Ureas of monocarboxylic acids.**

*Acetyl Phenyl Urea*,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CO} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $183^\circ$ . *Acetyl Carbanilide*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{N}(\text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3)\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $115^\circ$  (B. 17, 2882).

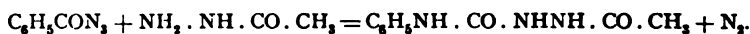
**Ureides of Oxy-acids, Glycolyl-phenylurea, phenyl-hydantoïn, is obtained on heating phenylglycin to  $160^\circ$  with urea. It melts at  $160^\circ$ .**

**Diphenyl Hydantoïn** melts at  $139^\circ$  (B. 25, 2274).

**Phenylated Pseudourea Derivatives.**—**Ethyl Isodiphenyl Urea, Anilido-phenyl-carbamic Ethyl Ether**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N} : \text{C}(\text{O} \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , is an oil. It results on heating carbodiphenylimide with alcohol to  $160$ – $190^\circ$ , or, better, with sodium alcoholate (B. 27, 926; 28, 573).

**Phenylated Ureides of Carbonic Acid.**—**Phenylallopphanic Ester**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $120^\circ$  (J. pr. Ch. [2] 32, 18). **Diphenylallopphanic Acid**, see B. 4, 246. **Diphenylbiuret**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $210^\circ$  (B. 4, 265). **Triphenylbiuret** melts at  $147^\circ$  (B. 4, 250). **Phenylhydroxyl Urea**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{OH}$ , melts with decomposition at  $140^\circ$ , and results from the action of hydroxylamine hydrochloride upon carbanile (A. 263, 264).

**Phenylsemicarbazide, Phenylcarbamic Hydrazide**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{NH}_2$ , melting at  $120^\circ$ , is isomeric with the phenylsemicarbazide or carbamic phenylhydrazide (see this), obtained from phenylhydrazine salts and potassium cyanate. It is also produced by carefully decomposing its *acetyl* derivative with acids. This is formed upon boiling benzazide with acethydrazide in acetone solution; nitrogen is evolved at the same time (B. 29, R. 982):



**Phenylated Derivatives of the Thiocarbamic Acids and of Thiourea.**—**Phenylcarbamic Thiomethyl Ester**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{SCH}_3$ , melting at  $83^\circ$ , and the **ethyl ester**, melting at  $74^\circ$ , are formed when diphenylamidine thioalkylens are heated with dilute sulphuric acid to  $180^\circ$  (B. 15, 339).

**Phenyl Sulphurethane, Xanthogen Anilide, Thiocarbanilic Ethyl Ester**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{NHCS} \cdot \text{OC}_2\text{H}_5$ , or  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N} : \text{C}(\text{SH})\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $71^\circ$ , is produced when alcohol at  $120^\circ$ , or alcoholic potash, acts upon phenyl mustard oil. It is rearranged by primary and secondary bases into phenyl sulpho-ureas. It breaks down upon distillation into phenyl mustard oil and alcohol (B. 15, 1307, 2164). Alkaline potassium ferricyanide oxidizes it to *ethoxy-mustard oil*, or ethoxybenzothiazole,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{N} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{N} \\ \diagup \text{S} \diagdown \end{smallmatrix} \text{C} \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5$  (see this). Like the phenylthioureas (see below), it dissolves in the alkalies, and forms metallic compounds with silver, mercury, and lead.

**Phenylimidothiocarbonic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N} : \text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{OH} \\ \diagup \text{SH} \diagdown \end{smallmatrix}$ , is not known.

When alkyl iodides act upon the metallic compounds of the phenylsulphurethanes or the free phenylsulphurethanes, we obtain the alkyl derivatives of *phenylimidothiocarbonic acid* (see above). The reaction is very probably analogous to that occurring with the thioacetanilides (p. 83) and the phenyl sulphoureas. The *oxyethylthio-methyl ester*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{N} : \text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{OC}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \diagup \text{SC}_2\text{H}_5 \diagdown \end{smallmatrix}$ , boils with partial decomposition at  $260^\circ$ . The *di-ethyl* compound melts at  $30^\circ$  (A. 207, 148).

**Phenyl Dithiocarbamic Acid Derivatives.**—When the acid is liberated from its salts it decomposes into aniline and  $\text{CS}_2$ . Its *potassium salt*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NHCS}_2\text{K}$ , is formed when potassium xanthate is boiled with aniline. It consists of golden-yellow needles (B. 24, 3022). The *methyl ester* melts at  $87$ – $88^\circ$ ; the *ethyl* (Phenyl dithio-urethane) at  $60^\circ$ . They are produced by warming phenyl mustard oil with mercaptans.

When these dithio-urethanes are heated, they decompose into their generators. They dissolve in alkalies.

**Ethyl Phenyl dithiourethane**,  $\text{CS} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) \\ \diagup \text{S} \diagdown \end{smallmatrix} \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $68^\circ$  and boils at  $310^\circ$ . It is formed by heating alkylized ethyl diphenyl-amidine thioethyl (p. 87) to  $160^\circ$  with  $\text{CS}_2$ . These compounds are very stable, no longer soluble in alkalies, and are not desulphurized by mercuric oxide or an alkaline lead solution. They form so-called ad-

dition products (B. 15, 568, 1308) with methyl iodide. Phenyl sulphurethane and diphenyl-thio-urea do the same.

Phenyl thiuramsulphide,  $S(CSNHC_6H_5)_2$ , melts at  $137^\circ$  (B. 24, 3023).

Methyl phenyl thiocarbamin chloride,  $(CH_3)_2C_6H_5N \cdot CSCI$ , melting at  $35^\circ$ , is obtained from methyl aniline and thiophosgene (B. 20, 1631).

Phenyl sulphoureas (compare vol. I: sulphoureas).

Phenylthiurea,  $CS < \begin{smallmatrix} NH \\ NH_2 \end{smallmatrix} \cdot C_6H_5$ , *Sulphocarbamilamide*, melting at  $154^\circ$ , is formed by the union of phenyl-mustard oil with ammonia.

S is replaced by O and phenylurea formed on boiling with silver nitrate. Mercuric oxide converts it into phenylcyanamide. (For the action of methyl iodide see B. 25, 48.)

s-Diphenyl-thiurea,  $CS < \begin{smallmatrix} NH \\ NH \end{smallmatrix} \cdot C_6H_5$ , *Sulphocarbamilide*, consists of colorless, shining leaflets, melting at  $151^\circ$  (B. 19, 1821), and readily soluble in alcohol. It is produced (1) by the union of phenyl-mustard oil with aniline in an alcoholic solution; (2) by boiling aniline with  $CS_2$  and alcoholic potash with the removal of hydrogen sulphide.

Numerous reactions of sulphocarbamilide are known: (1) Iodine converts it into sulphocarbamilide and  $\alpha$ -triphenyl-guanidine. (2) When boiled with concentrated hydrochloric acid it decomposes into phenyl-mustard oil and aniline; the mixed symmetrical thiureas,  $C_6H_5NH \cdot CS \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_5$ , undergo, under like treatment, a decomposition into two mustard oils and two anilines (B. 16, 2016). (3) S is replaced by O, and the product is sym.-diphenylurea, if diphenylthiurea be boiled with mercuric oxide (p. 85). (4) In a benzene solution mercuric oxide produces carbodiphenylimide (p. 90). (5) In the action of ammonia and lead oxide diphenyl-guanidine is produced, while with aniline triphenyl-guanidine is formed.

Phenyl- and sym.-diphenyl-thiureas are soluble in alkalis, forming salts in which the metal is combined with sulphur (as in the case of thioacetanilide, p. 83).

See B. 17, 2088; 23, 815; 26, 1686, upon the alkyl phenyl thiureas.

unsym.-Diphenylthiurea, melting at  $198^\circ$ , has been prepared from diphenylamine-sulphocyanide (B. 26, R. 607).

Triphenylthiurea melts at  $152^\circ$  (B. 17, 2092).

Tetraphenylthiurea,  $CS < \begin{smallmatrix} N(C_6H_5)_2 \\ N(C_6H_5)_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ , is obtained by heating triphenylguanidine (p. 88) with carbon disulphide. It melts at  $195^\circ$  (B. 15, 1530).

Phenylthio-hydantoins.—Although the product formerly regarded as thio- or sulph-hydantoin has proved to be pseudothiohydantoin (compare vol. I), there are still aromatic phenylsulphydantoins known.

Phenyl- $\alpha$ -methylsulphydantoin,  $C_6H_5 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{---} N-CO \\ \diagdown \quad | \\ CS \quad NH \cdot CH \cdot CH_3 \end{smallmatrix}$  or  $C_6H_5 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{---} N-CO \\ \diagdown \quad | \\ HS \cdot C \quad \diagup \\ \quad \quad N-CH \cdot CH_3 \end{smallmatrix}$ ,

melting at  $184^\circ$ , is produced on melting together phenyl-mustard oil and alanine (B. 24, 3278).

**Phenylated Pseudosulphourea Derivatives.**—Such compounds are obtained, for example, from phenyl and sym.-diphenyl thiourea by the action of alkyl iodides and caustic alkali, or, better, upon digesting them with alkyl iodides or bromides in alcoholic solution (B. 25, 48). In the second case the iodohydrate of a base is produced. The latter is liberated on treating the former with a sodium carbonate solution, and is capable of taking up additional alkylogen. When digested with alcoholic potash, the imidophenyl-carbamic thio-esters split off mercaptans.

Imidophenylcarbamic-thiomethyl Ester,  $C_6H_5NH \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \\ NH \end{smallmatrix} > CS \cdot CH_3$ , melts at  $71^\circ$ .

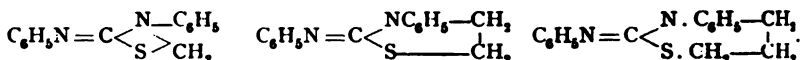
*Diphenylamidine-Thiomethyl*, Phenylimidophenylcarbamic-thiomethyl Ester,  $C_6H_5 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \\ NH \end{smallmatrix} > C \cdot S \cdot CH_3$ .

$NH \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \\ N \end{smallmatrix} > C \cdot S \cdot CH_3$ , melts at  $110^\circ$ , from which would follow that the methyl-group is attached to sulphur. Both these compounds, when heated with dilute sulphuric acid, decompose into thiomethyl phenylcarbaminate.

When heated to  $120^\circ$  with alcoholic ammonia, phenyl-guanidine and mercaptan are obtained.

If heated with carbon disulphide, the products are phenyl-mustard oil, and phenyl-dithiocarbamic esters (B. 15, 343).

With  $\text{CH}_3\text{I}$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{Br}$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{Br}$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{Br}$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{Br}$ , diphenylthiourea affords cyclic derivatives of pseudothiourea (B. 21, 1872):



The ethylene derivative contains the so-called thiazole ring, while the trimethylene compound contains the pentathiazole ring—the next higher ring, homologous with the thiazole ring.

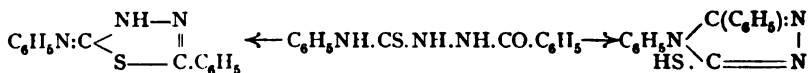
**Pseudo-phenylthiohydantoic acid**,  $\text{HN}:\text{C}<\text{S}-\text{CH}_2-\text{N}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_5>\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $150^\circ$ , and **Pseudo-diphenylthiohydantoic acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}:\text{C}<\text{S}-\text{CH}_2-\text{N}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_5>\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , are obtained from phenyl- and diphenylthiourea by the action of chloroacetic acid. By the elimination of water both of these compounds pass into **pseudo-phenylthiohydantoin**,  $\text{HN}:\text{C}<\text{S}-\text{CH}_2-\text{N}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_5>\text{CO}$ , melting at  $178^\circ$ , and **pseudo-diphenylthiohydantoin**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}:\text{C}<\text{S}-\text{CH}_2-\text{N}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_5>\text{CO}$ , melting at  $176^\circ$ . Boiling dilute hydrochloric acid converts both compounds, by water absorption, into **phenyl-mustard oil acetic acid**,  $\text{OC}<\text{S}-\text{CH}_2-\text{N}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_5>\text{CO}$ , (A. 207, 128; B. 14, 1660); ammonia and aniline are liberated simultaneously.

**Phenylhydroxy-thio-urea**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}\cdot\text{CS}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{OH}$ , melting at  $106^\circ$ , is obtained from hydroxylamine and phenyl mustard oil. It decomposes very readily into water, sulphur, and phenylcyanamide (B. 24, 378).

**Phenylthiosemicarbazide**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}\cdot\text{CS}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{NH}_2$ , melts with decomposition at  $140^\circ$ . It is formed from phenyl mustard oil and hydrazine hydrate. It is rearranged by aldehydes with the production of hydrazones. Its acetyl derivatives readily part with water and form thiolbiazolines (see these). The benzoyl derivative manifests a peculiar behavior in that when it is treated with acetyl chloride it parts with water and a phenyl-imido-phenylthiobiazoline results; with benzoyl chloride, however, a diphenyl triazole mercaptan (see triazoles) is produced (B. 29, 2914):

**Phenylthiosemicarbazide**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}\cdot\text{CS}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{NH}_2$ , melts with decomposition at  $140^\circ$ . It is formed from phenyl mustard oil and hydrazine hydrate. It is rearranged by aldehydes with the production of hydrazones. Its acetyl derivatives readily part with water and form thiolbiazolines (see these). The benzoyl derivative manifests a peculiar behavior in that when it is treated with acetyl chloride it parts with water and a phenyl-imido-phenylthiobiazoline results; with benzoyl chloride, however, a diphenyl triazole mercaptan (see triazoles) is produced (B. 29, 2914):

**Phenylthiosemicarbazide**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}\cdot\text{CS}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{NH}_2$ , melts with decomposition at  $140^\circ$ . It is formed from phenyl mustard oil and hydrazine hydrate. It is rearranged by aldehydes with the production of hydrazones. Its acetyl derivatives readily part with water and form thiolbiazolines (see these). The benzoyl derivative manifests a peculiar behavior in that when it is treated with acetyl chloride it parts with water and a phenyl-imido-phenylthiobiazoline results; with benzoyl chloride, however, a diphenyl triazole mercaptan (see triazoles) is produced (B. 29, 2914):



#### Phenylated Guanidine Derivatives (see vol. I, Guanidines).

**Diphenyl-guanidine**,  $\text{HN}:\text{C}<\text{NH}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_5>\text{NH}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$  (Melaniline), melting at  $147^\circ$ , is produced by the action of cyanogen chloride upon dry aniline, and by digesting cyananilide (p. 90) with aniline hydrochloride. It is, like guanidine, a mono-acid base. Carbon disulphide transforms it into sulpho-carbanilide and sulphocyanic acid.

**$\alpha$ -Triphenyl-guanidine**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}:\text{C}<\text{NH}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_5>\text{NH}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $143^\circ$ , is obtained on heating diphenyl-urea or diphenyl-thiourea, alone or with reduced copper, to  $140^\circ$ . It is most readily prepared by digesting an alcoholic solution of diphenyl-thiourea and aniline, with litharge or mercuric oxide (or by boiling with an iodine solution). Heated with  $\text{CS}_2$ , it reverts again to diphenyl-thiourea and phenyl mustard oil.

**$\beta$ -Triphenyl-guanidine**,  $\text{C}=\text{NH}<\text{NH}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_5>\text{NH}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $131^\circ$ , is obtained by heating cyananilide with  $\text{HCl}$ -diphenylamine. It decomposes into diphenylamine, phenyl mustard oil, and sulphocyanic acid when heated with carbon disulphide.

**sym.-Tetraphenyl-guanidine**,  $\text{NH} : \text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2 \\ \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $130^\circ$ , is produced by the action of  $\text{CNCl}$  upon diphenylamine at  $170^\circ$ .

**Phenylated Nitriles and Imides of Carbonic Acid** (compare vol. 1).

**Phenyl Isocyanate, Carbanile**,  $\text{CO} : \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , is a mobile liquid, boiling at  $163^\circ$ , and has a pungent odor, provoking tears. It is produced in the distillation of oxanilide, or, better, carbanilic esters with  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  (B. 25, 2578 Anm.), also from diazobenzene salts, by the action of potassium cyanate and copper (B. 25, 1086). It may be most readily obtained by leading  $\text{COCl}_2$  into fused aniline hydrochloride (B. 17, 1284), or by heating phenyl mustard oil to  $170^\circ$  with  $\text{HgO}$  (B. 23, 1536). Carbanile is perfectly analogous to the isocyanic esters in chemical deportment. It yields diphenylurea with water. It combines with alcohols and phenols to form carbanilic esters; this is a reaction which may be employed in determining *alcoholic hydroxyls* (B. 18, 2428; 2606). It reacts similarly with the  $\text{SH}$ -group, as well as with the hydroxyl groups of the aldoximes and ketoximes. It does not react with the groups  $\text{C} : \text{O}$  and  $\text{C} : \text{S}$  (B. 25, 2578). With ammonia carbanilamide,  $\text{CO} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ , is formed.

**Diazo-amido-compounds**—e. g.,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{N}_2 \cdot \text{NHR}$ —react with phenylisocyanate. In so doing the hydrogen of the amido-group is replaced (B. 22, 3109).

The preceding reactions, occurring in the absence of water (thus avoiding electrolytic dissociation), proceed in the normal way. Rearrangements do not take place, hence they are well adapted for the *determination of constitution* (Goldschmidt, B. 23, 2179).

On heating phenylisocyanate with benzene and  $\text{AlCl}_3$ , we get benzoylanilides (see syntheses of benzoic acid and its homologues).

**Triphenylisocyanurate**,  $(\text{CON})_3(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3$ , melting at  $275^\circ$ , is produced (1) by the polymerization of phenylisocyanate upon heating it with potassium acetate (B. 15, 3225); (2) by heating triphenylisomelamine (p. 90) with concentrated hydrochloric acid to  $150^\circ \text{C}$ . Its isomeride is

**Triphenylcyanurate**,  $\text{C}_3\text{N}_3(\text{O} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3$ . This is produced by the action of cyanogen chloride or cyanuric chloride upon sodium phenate. It melts at  $224^\circ$ .

**Isocyanphenyl Chloride, Phenylimidocarbonyl Chloride**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N} : \text{CCl}_2$ , boiling at  $209^\circ$  (corr.), is a colorless oil with a penetrating odor. It is produced when chlorine acts upon phenylisocyanide in chloroform solution, and also from phenyl mustard oil and chlorine (B. 26, 2870). Aniline changes it to  $\alpha$ -triphenyl guanidine (A. 270, 282).

**Phenyl-sulphocyanate**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{S} \cdot \text{CN}$ , boiling at  $131^\circ$ , is isomeric with phenyl mustard oil, and with *Methenyl-amido Thiophenyl*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{S} \\ \text{N} \end{smallmatrix} \text{CH}$  (see amido-thiophenols). It is formed (1) when hydrosulphocyanic acid acts upon diazobenzene sulphate (see this), and (2) cyanogen chloride upon the lead salt of thiophenol. In its reactions it is analogous to the sulphocyanic esters.

**Phenyl Mustard Oil, Sulpho-carbanile, Phenyl-isothiocyany Ester**,  $\text{CS} : \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , is a colorless liquid, with an odor resembling that of mustard oil, and boils at  $222^\circ$ . It is obtained by boiling diphenyl thio-urea with sulphuric or concentrated hydrochloric acid, or, what would be best, with a concentrated phosphoric acid solution (B. 15, 986), and by the action of an alcoholic iodine solution (with triphenyl guanidine), or  $\text{CSCl}_2$ , upon aniline. It is converted into benzonitrile when heated with reduced copper or zinc-dust.

On this reaction is founded a procedure to replace the group  $\text{NH}_2$  by  $\text{COOH}$ —that is, to convert the anilines successively into thio-ureas, mustard oils, nitriles, and acids. (See synthetic methods of producing the benzoic acids and their homologues.)

If heated with anhydrous alcohols to  $120^\circ$ , or by the action of alcoholic potash, it is converted into phenyl-thio-urethanes (p. 86).

It forms phenyl-thio-ureas with ammonia, the amines, aniline hydrazine, and hydroxylamine. Chlorine converts it into isocyanphenylchloride (see above).

*Phenyl mustard oil, under the influence of aluminium chloride, combines with aromatic*

hydrocarbons, phenol ethers, and thiophenol ethers, to produce the thioanilides of carboxylic acids (B. 27, 1733).

**Phenylated Cyanamide Derivatives** (compare cyanamide, vol. 1).

**Phenyl Cyanamide, Cyananilide**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot NH \cdot CN + \frac{1}{2}H_2O$ , melts at  $47^\circ$ . When allowed to stand in a desiccator it loses water, becomes liquid, and in moist air reverts to the hydrate. On long standing or when heated it polymerizes to *Triphenyl-isomelamine*. It is formed on conducting  $CNCl$  into a cooled ethereal solution of aniline, and by digesting phenyl-thiurea with litharge, or by heating it with lead acetate and alkali (B. 18, 3220). It is readily soluble in alcohol and ether. It forms phenyl-thiurea with  $H_2S$ .

**Diphenylcyanamide**,  $(C_6H_5)_2N \cdot CN$ , melting at  $73^\circ$ , is formed when an ammoniacal silver solution (B. 26, R. 607) acts upon unsym.-diphenyl thio-urea (p. 87).

**Carbodiphenylimide**,  $C_6H_5N : C : NC_6H_5$ , is a thick liquid, which suffers decomposition when distilled at the ordinary pressure, but unaltered at  $218^\circ$  under 30 mm. pressure. Distilled at the ordinary pressure it polymerizes in part to a modification melting at  $161^\circ$ ; this has the trebled molecular formula (B. 28, 1004; compare B. 29, 270).

Carbodiphenylimide is produced by the action of mercuric oxide upon sym.-diphenyl-thiurea in benzene solution, or by the distillation of  $\alpha$ -triphenyl-guanidine. When it absorbs water it yields sym.-diphenyl urea. It combines with  $H_2S$  to sym.-diphenyl thiurea, and with aniline to  $\alpha$ -triphenyl-guanidine. Compare also *o*-phenylenediamine.

The compounds  $C_6H_5N : CCl \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_5$  and  $C_6H_5NH \cdot CCl_2 \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_5$  (B. 28, R. 778) are formed when hydrochloric acid gas is conducted into the benzene solution of carbodiphenylimide.

**Triphenylmelamine, Triphenylcyanurtriarnide**,  $C_3N_3(NH \cdot C_6H_5)_3$ , melting at  $228^\circ$ , is produced in the action of cyanuric chloride on aniline, or by heating ethyl trithiocyanuric ester with aniline to  $250$ – $300^\circ$  (B. 18, 3218).

**Hexaphenylmelamine**,  $C_3N_3[N(C_6H_5)_2]_3$ , melts at  $300^\circ$ , and is formed by letting cyanuric chloride act upon diphenylamine.

**Triphenylisomelamine**,  $C_3N_3(C_6H_5)_3(NH)_3$ , melts at  $185^\circ$ . On long standing phenylcyanamide polymerizes to this compound. Or, it is produced when cyanogen bromide acts on aniline. On warming with hydrochloric acid it successively loses its  $NH_2$ -groups, oxygen entering, and the sole product is the triphenyl ester of isocyanuric acid (p. 89) (B. 18, 3225). In addition to the normal triphenylmelamine and triphenylisomelamine, asymmetrical triphenylamines are known (B. 18, 228).

**Anilides of Dicarboxylic Acids.**—Oxalic acid and its homologues, as well as the unsaturated dicarboxylic acids, form anilic acids and dianilides, corresponding to the amino acids and the diamides. Those dicarboxylic acids capable of forming anhydrides yield also anils or phenylimides, corresponding to the imides.

The anilic acids are obtained (1) by partial decomposition of the dianilides; (2) on mixing the ethereal or chloroform solutions of the anhydrides with aniline (B. 20, 3214); (3) by the breaking down of the anils. The latter are reformed from the anilides by treatment with  $PCl_5$  (B. 21, 957), or with acetyl chloride. They also appear on heating the acids or anhydrides with aniline. A large number of these derivatives have been mentioned in the first volume in connection with their respective acids.

**Phenylamine Derivatives of Oxalic Acid.**—**Oxanilic Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $150^\circ$  (see A. 270, 295, for an isomeric acid melting at  $210^\circ$ ), is formed by heating oxalic acid and aniline to  $140^\circ$  (B. 23, 1820), by the action of alcoholic potash upon oxanilide, and when citraconanilic acid is oxidized with potassium perman-

ganate (B. 23, 747). Its *methyl ester* melts at  $114^{\circ}$  (A. 254, 10), the *ethyl ester* at  $66^{\circ}$ , and the *chloride* at  $82^{\circ}$  (B. 23, 1823).

**Oxanilide**,  $(\text{CONHC}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , melts at  $245^{\circ}$ . **Tetra-p-tolyloxamide**,  $[\text{CON}[\text{4}-(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{CH}_3)]_2]$ , from p-ditolyurea chloride, melts at  $127^{\circ}$  (p. 85). **Oxanildioxime**,  $[\text{C}:(\text{NOH})(\text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5)]_2$ , formed from *dibromglyoxime peroxide*, melts with decomposition at  $215^{\circ}$ . *Half-ortho-oxalic-dianilido-methyl Ester*,  $\text{CO}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C}(\text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2 \cdot \text{OCH}_3$ , and *Dimethyl Phenylimido-oxalic Ester*,  $\text{CO}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C}:\text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{OCH}_3)_2$ , melting at  $111^{\circ}$ , are obtained from dichlor-oxalic ester and aniline (B. 28, 60).

**Phenyloxamic-diphenyl-amidine**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NHCO} \cdot \text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $134^{\circ}$ , is prepared from half-ortho-oxalic ester and oxanildichloride acid ethyl ester (A. 184, 268).

**o-Nitro-oxanilic Acid** melts at  $112^{\circ}$ . **o-Dinitro-oxanilide** (A. 209, 369).

**Malonanilic Acid**,  $\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $132^{\circ}$  and decomposes into  $\text{CO}_2$  and acetanilide. It is produced by a peculiar transposition of acetylphenyl carbamate of sodium when heated to  $140^{\circ}$  (B. 18, 1359).  $\text{PCl}_5$  converts it into trichlorquinoline (B. 18, 2975).

**Malonanilide**,  $\text{CH}_2(\text{CONHC}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , melts at  $223^{\circ}$  (B. 17, 135, 235).

**Succinanilic Acid and Succinilide** (see vol. I, Succinimide).

For fumaranilic acid, fumaranilic chloride, fumaridianilide, maleinanilic acid, maleinanil, dichlormaleinanil, dichlormaleinanil dichloride, dimethyl dichlormaleinanilic ester, dichlormaleinimide anil, dichlormaleinindianil, citraconanilic acid, citraconanil, itaconanilic acid, consult the corresponding acids described in vol. I.

**Anilido-dicarboxylic Acids**.—Compare phenylasparagine anilic acid, phenylasparagin anil; for  $\beta$ -anilidopyrotartaric acid and pseudoitaconanilic acid, see amidosuccinic acids, vol. I.

**Phenylated Ureides of Dicarboxylic Acids**.—**Phenylparabanic Acid**,  $\text{CO} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) \cdot \text{CO} \\ \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $208^{\circ}$ , and **Diphenylparabanic Acid**, melting at  $204^{\circ}$ , are formed, for example, by the action of ethoxalic chloride upon the corresponding carbamides (J. pr. Ch. [2] 32, 20).

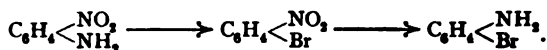
**Aniline Substitution Products**.—It is only the aniline derivatives, among the substitution products of the primary phenylmines, which deserve particular consideration, for it was with them that the regularities of substitution obtaining among the aromatic amido-bodies were observed, and they were the intermediate stages in numerous instances where constitution was to be determined.

**Aniline Haloids**.—*Formation*.—(1) Aniline, like phenol, is more readily substituted than benzene. When chlorine or bromine acts upon the aqueous solutions of aniline salts, the halogen atoms enter the [2,4,6] position. Starting with acetanilide (p. 82) chlorine and bromine produce first p- and o-monosubstitution products; these are immediately converted into o-p-disubstitution derivatives. If, however, chlorine or bromine be allowed to act upon aniline, in the presence of concentrated sulphuric or hydrochloric acid, m-compounds will be produced. The fact that the amido-group combines with strong acids demonstrates its negative character (B. 22, 2903). The anilines substituted in the meta-position yield tetra- and penta-substitution products (B. 15, 1328).

Iodine can substitute the anilines directly; the resulting hydriodic acid combines with the excess of base:  $2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}_2 + \text{I}_2 = \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{I} \cdot \text{NH}_2 + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{HI}$ .

2. The nonhalogen anilines can be readily obtained from the monohalogen nitro-

benzenes, which in turn are derived from the nitro-amido-derivatives. The change is effected through the diazo-bodies (p. 99)—*e. g.* :



p-Chloraniline is a stronger base than the o- and m-bodies (B. 10, 974). It has also been obtained by the electrolytic reduction of nitrobenzene in concentrated hydrochloric acid solution. It is very probable that  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}(\text{NH}_2)\text{NHCl}$  is formed at first, but subsequently rearranges itself into p-chloraniline (p. 65 and B. 29, 1895).

	[1,2]-, o-		[1,3]-, m-		[1,4]-, p-		
	M. P.	B. P.	M. P.	B. P.	M. P.	B. P.	
$\text{FC}_6\text{H}_4\text{NH}_2$ , . . .	—	—	—	—	liquid	188°	(A. 243, 222)
$\text{ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{NH}_2$ , . . .	liquid	207°	liquid	230°	70°	230°	(A. 176, 27)
$\text{BrC}_6\text{H}_4\text{NH}_2$ , . . .	31°	229°	18°	251°	63°	decom- poses	(B. 8, 364)
$\text{IC}_6\text{H}_4\text{NH}_2$ , . . .	56°	—	27°	—	63°	—	(G. 17, 487)

Mention may be made of the following higher aniline substitution products. Acetanilide yields :

$\alpha$ -[1NH<sub>2</sub>, 2,4]-Dichloraniline, melting at 63° and boiling at 245° (B. 7, 1602).

$\alpha$ -[1NH<sub>2</sub>, 2,4]-Dibromaniline, melting at 79° (A. 121, 266).

$\beta$ -[1,4,2NH<sub>2</sub>]-Dichloraniline, melting at 54° and boiling at 250° (A. 196, 215) and

$\beta$ -[1,4,2NH<sub>2</sub>]-Dibromaniline, melting at 51° (A. 165, 180), have been obtained from the corresponding nitro-compounds.

Aniline, acted upon by chlorine and bromine, yields :

[1NH<sub>2</sub>, 2,4,6]-Trichloraniline, melting at 77° and boiling at 262° (J. pr. Ch. [2] 16, 449; B. 27, 3151).

[1NH<sub>2</sub>, 2,4,6]-Tribromaniline, melting at 119° (B. 16, 635).

The five benzene hydrogen atoms in aniline can be substituted by chlorine or bromine :

Pentachloraniline melts at 232°. Pentabromaniline melts at 222°. Halogen benzenes are produced by eliminating the amido-group by means of the diazo-compounds (see these).

Nitranilines,  $\text{NO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{NH}_2$ , are isomeric with diazobenzene acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NHNHNO}_2$  (p. 99). Nitric acid attacks aniline energetically, and resinifies it with ease.

(1) In order to get mono- and disubstitution products acetanilide is nitrated (p. 82). The amido-group is *protected* by the acetyl group; the immediate products are p- and o-nitracetanilide. When aniline is nitrated in the presence of concentrated sulphuric acid and in the cold, not only p- and o-bodies result, but also metanitraniline (B. 10, 1716; 17, 261). The quantity of the latter is greater the more sulphuric acid there is present (p. 91).

The union of the amid-group and the transposition into an acid group occur simultaneously, giving rise to a meta-substitution product (p. 69).

The three isomerides are separated by means of their varying basicity. When their acid solution is neutralized, the m-body is first precipitated, then follow the p- and the o-nitranilines (B. 28, 1954).

(2) The nitranilines can be prepared by heating haloid nitrobenzenes to 150–180° with alcoholic ammonia; or by heating the ethers of the nitrophenols—*e. g.*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NO}_2)_2$ —O.  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , with aqueous ammonia. In both instances the para- and ortho-compounds, and not the meta-, react.

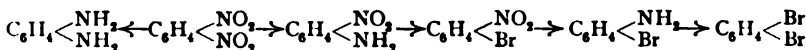
(3) By the partial reduction of polynitro-derivatives (p. 70).

(4) Upon heating nitroamido-benzene sulphonic acids with hydrochloric acid to 170° (B. 18, 294).

(5) *o*- and *p*-Nitrilanines are formed in the rearrangement of diazobenzene acid (p. 99):

[1,2]-	<i>o</i> -Nitraniline	melts at	71°;	acet-derivative	melts at	92°.
[1,3]-	<i>m</i> -Nitraniline	"	114°;	"	"	142°.
[1,4]-	<i>p</i> -Nitraniline	"	147°;	"	"	207°.

The nitro-anilines link the diamido- and dinitro-benzenes to the nitro-haloid-, amido-haloid-, and dihaloid benzenes:



When ortho- and para-nitrilanines (not meta) are boiled with alkalis, they part with  $\text{NH}_3$ , and are converted into their corresponding nitrophenols,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NO}_2)\cdot\text{OH}$ ; the di- and tri-nitrilanines react even more readily.

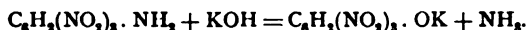
The nitrilanines approach in character the acid amides as the number of nitro-groups in them increases.

Ammonia converts the corresponding dinitrophenols or polynitrohaloid benzenes into:

$\alpha$ -[1NH<sub>2</sub>,2,4]-Dinitraniline, melting at 182°.

$\beta$ -[1NH<sub>2</sub>,2,6]-Dinitraniline, melting at 138°.

[1NH<sub>2</sub>,2,4,6]-Trinitraniline,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{NO}_2)_3\cdot\text{NH}_2$ , *Picramide*, is obtained from picric acid through its ether, or by means of picryl chloride (p. 68). The latter reacts with ammonia, even in the cold. It forms orange-red needles, and melts at 186°. It forms picric acid when heated with alkalis:



*sym*-Trinitroxyldine, melting at 206°, is obtained from trinitrochlorxylene and ammonia (B. 28, 2047).

**Nitrodiphenylamines.**—Chlor- and brom-benzene do not react with aniline, but *o*-bromnitrobenzene and polynitrohaloid benzenes are changed by it into nitrodiphenylamine (together with an aniline halogen hydride). It is also possible to introduce an acid radical—*e. g.*, benzoyl—into the imido-group, and then nitrate. Hexanitrodiphenylamine is produced in the direct nitration of diphenylamine.

*o*-Nitrodiphenylamine melts at 75° (B. 22, 903).

*p*-Nitrodiphenylamine melts at 132° (B. 15, 826).

*p*-Dinitrodiphenylamine melts at 214° (B. 15, 826).

[2,4,6]-Trinitrophenyl-phenylamine, from picryl chloride, melts at 175° (B. 3, 126). Trinitroxy-phenylamine melts at 175° (B. 28, 2047).

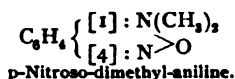
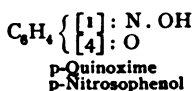
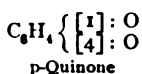
Hexanitro-diphenylamine is an acid, melting at 238°. It dissolves with a purple-red color, in the alkalis, forming salts. Its ammonium salt occurs in commerce as a brick-red powder. It was employed under the name *Aurantia* before the introduction of the azo-dyes, to color wool and silk a beautiful orange.

#### NITROSO-DERIVATIVES OF THE PRIMARY, SECONDARY AND TERTIARY AROMATIC AMINES.

**Formation.**—(1) When the nitrosamines of monomethylaniline or diphenylamine (p. 97) are treated with alcoholic hydrochloric acid, they rearrange themselves into *p*-nitroso-compounds (B. 19, 2991). (2) The *p*-nitroso-bodies are also produced when nitrous acid acts upon the tertiary dialkylanilines, or sodium nitrite upon their hydrochlorides (Baeyer and Caro, B. 7, 963). (3) When the nitroso-phenols are fused with ammonium acetate and ammonium chloride, they yield *p*-nitroso-anilines (B. 21, 729).

**Deportment.**—When the *p*-nitroso-derivatives of the secondary and tertiary aromatic amines are heated with caustic soda, they break down into sodium nitrosophenate and alkylamines (1, 163). Most chemists consider the nitroso-phenols to be the monoximes of the paraquinones. And in connection with this mode of formulation of the nitroso-

phenols many are also disposed to view the p-nitroso-derivatives of the secondary and tertiary aromatic amines as quinone derivatives:



p-Nitroso-aniline,  $\text{NO}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{NH}_2$ , melting at  $174^\circ$ , crystallizes in steel-blue needles (B. 21, 729; 28, R. 735).

p-Nitrosomethylamine,  $\text{NO}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{NHCH}_3$ . The free base forms crystals with metallic lustre and melts at  $118^\circ \text{C}$ . It is soluble in dilute sodium hydroxide, and is again liberated from its solution by carbon dioxide.

When heated with sodium hydroxide, p-nitrosomethyl aniline is decomposed into sodium nitrosophenolate and methylaniline.

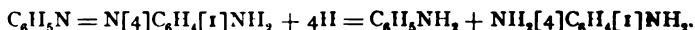
p-Nitroso-mono-ethyl-aniline melts at  $78^\circ$ .

p-Nitroso-dimethyl-aniline,  $\text{NO}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , melting at  $85^\circ$ , consists of large, green leaflets. Potassium permanganate and ferrocyanide of potassium oxidize it to p-nitrodimethylaniline. Upon reduction it yields p-amidodimethylaniline, which is so important in the dye manufacture. Sodium hydroxide resolves it into nitroso-phenol and dimethylaniline. Its hydrochloride dissolves with difficulty in cold water. p-Nitroso-diethyl-aniline melts at  $84^\circ$ .

p-Nitroso-diphenylamine, melting at  $143^\circ$ , consists of green plates, and is produced when hydrochloric acid gas acts upon diphenylnitrosamine (B. 20, 1252; 21, R. 227).

### C. DIAMINES.

*Formation.*—The aromatic diamines, whose amido-groups are attached to the benzene nucleus, are formed (1) by the reduction of the three dinitrobenzenes or nitroanilines with tin and hydrochloric acid; (2) the monamines can be converted into the diamines by first changing them to amido-azo-compounds, and then decomposing the latter by reduction:

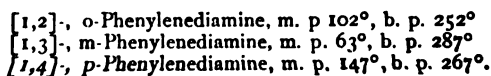


(3) they can be obtained, also, from the diamidobenzoic acids by the loss of carbon dioxide when they are treated with baryta. This reaction has become of particular importance in ascertaining the constitution of the three phenylenediamines.

(4) Diphenylated diamidobenzenes,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , are produced when dioxybenzenes—e. g., *resorcinol* and *hydroquinone* (see these)—are treated with aniline and  $\text{CaCl}_2$  or  $\text{ZnCl}_2$ .

*Properties.*—The diamines are colorless solids volatilizing without decomposition, but on exposure to the air they become colored. They are di-acid bases, forming well-defined salts. Ferric chloride imparts an intense red color to their solution. The amide hydrogen atoms can be replaced in the same manner as in the monamines.

**Diamidobenzenes, or phenylenediamines,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NH}_2)_2$ .** The o-body is derived from o-nitraniline by reduction with caustic soda and zinc-dust (B. 28, 2947). The m-derivative is most easily accessible through m-dinitrobenzene (p. 67). The p-compound is obtained by the decomposition of amido-azo-benzene (Z. f. Ch. (1866) 136).



**o-Phenylenediamine** is colored red, in hydrochloric acid solution, by ferric chloride, with the production of diamidophenazine hydrochloride (B. 27, 2782). In the table, see below, showing the numerous o-condensations of which the o-diamines are capable, it is o-phenylenediamine which appears most frequently as the example. o-Amido-phenylurethane melts at 86°.

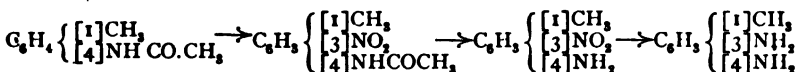
m-Phenylenediamine is converted by nitrous acid into triamido-azobenzene (see this), or Bismarck brown. Hence, it imparts an intense yellow color to a dilute solution of nitrous acid, and can therefore be employed for the quantitative estimation of the latter in water (B. 14, 1015). Consult B. 7, 1263; 21, R. 521; 24, 2113, for the action of  $\text{COCl}_2$ ,  $\text{CS}_2$ , and oxalic ester.

p-Phenylenediamine is oxidized by the oxygen of the air to dark garnet-red crystals of Tetra-amidodiphenyl-p-azophenylene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]\text{N}[1]\text{C}_6\text{H}_5[2,5](\text{NH}_2)_2 \\ [4]\text{N}[1]\text{C}_6\text{H}_5[2,5](\text{NH}_2)_2 \end{array} \right\}$ , melting with decomposition at 230–231° (B. 27, 480). Manganese dioxide and sulphuric acid convert it into quinone (see this), while bleaching lime changes it to quinonedichloride (see this). p-Amido-dimethyl aniline,  $\text{NH}_2[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , melting at 41° and boiling at 257°, is prepared by the reduction of p-nitroso- or p-nitrodimethyl aniline (p. 94), and by decomposing *helianthine* (p. 138), or p-dimethylamido-azobenzene (B. 16, 2235). Hydrogen sulphide and ferric chloride, in acid solution, impart a dark-blue coloration to its acid solution: *methylene blue* (see this). It is, therefore, a delicate reagent for the detection of hydrogen sulphide. Formyl-p-amido-dimethyl aniline, see B. 27, 602. Nitro-p-phenylenediamine, melting at 135°, consists of green, vitreous needles, and is obtained from [1,2,4]-dinitraniline (B. 28, 1707; 29, 2284).

**Diamidotoluenes, Toluylen Diamines.**—The six bodies possible theoretically are known:

1. [1 $\text{CH}_3$ , 2,3]-Toluylen diamine melts at 61° and boils at 255° (A. 228, 243).
2. [1 $\text{CH}_3$ , 3,4]-Toluylen diamine melts at 88° and boils at 265°.
3. [1 $\text{CH}_3$ , 2,4]-Toluylen diamine melts at 99° and boils at 280° (compare toluylene red).
4. [1 $\text{CH}_3$ , 2,6]-Toluylen diamine melts at 103° and boils at (B. 17, 1959).
5. [1 $\text{CH}_3$ , 3,5]-Toluylen diamine is a liquid and boils at 284° (A. 217, 200).
6. [1 $\text{CH}_3$ , 2,5]-Toluylen diamine melts at 64°; boils at 273°.

[1,3,4]-Toluylen diamine is the most easily accessible o-diamine. It is prepared from p-acetotoluidine:



[1,2,4]-Toluylen diamine is used as the starting-out substance in the preparation of *toluylene red* (see this).

**Xylylene Diamines.**—[1,3,2,4]-Diamido-m-xylene melts at 64° (B. 17, 2426). [1,3,4,6]-Diamido-m-xylene melts at 104°. [1,2,3,5]-o-Diamido-m-xylene melts at 77°.

[1,2,3,5,6]-o-Diamidopseudocumene melts at 90°. [1,4,3,5,6]-p-Diamidopseudocumene melts at 78° (B. 24, 1647). Diamidomesitylene melts at 90° (A. 141, 134; 179, 176), etc.

See p. 116 for the di- and tetra-alkylized phenylene diamines. *Phenylated phenylene diamines* or o- and p-amidodiphenylamine derivatives are formed in the so-called o- or p-semidine rearrangement of suitable hydrazobenzenes (p. 117).

#### THE CONDENSATIONS OF THE o-DIAMINES.

The o-diamines possess the power in a remarkable degree of forming condensation products. These usually consist of ring-systems containing five or six atoms, and will be discussed in connection with the *heterocyclic* carbon derivatives. The m- and p-diamines do not possess this power. The condensation occurs in that hydrogen atoms of both amido-groups of an o-diamine are replaced by polyvalent atomic groups. Fre-

quently, when this occurs, the nitrogen atoms occupying the o-position unite with one another.

1. Sulphur dioxide and selenium dioxide convert the o-diamines into *piathioles* (see these) and *piasselenoles* (see these).

2. Nitrous acid produces *asimides* (see these).

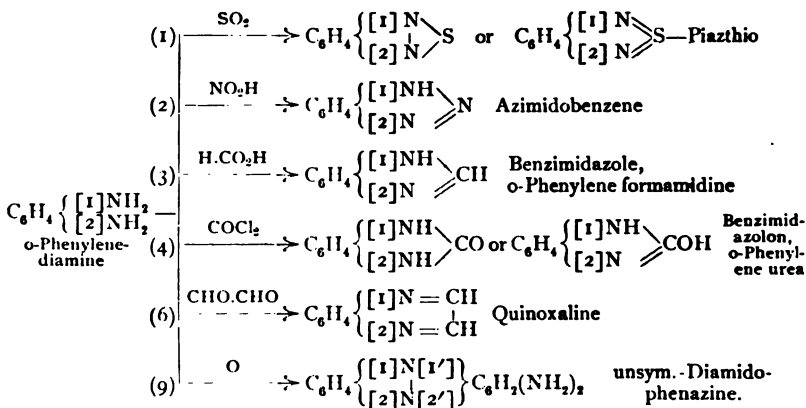
3. The *cyclic amidines* are directly produced from the o-diamines on heating them with acids, their chlorides and anhydrides, as well as with aldehydes: *anhydroses* or *aldehydines* (Ladenburg). These are substances nearly related to the *glyoxalines* (I, 322) or *imidazoles*, and will be treated later in connection with these. Such condensations have been observed also in the reduction of acidylated o-nitro-amido-compounds (Hobbecker).

4. *Cyclic ureas* and *thiurea derivatives* are formed from  $\text{COCl}_2$  and  $\text{SCCl}_2$  or  $\text{CS}_2$ , also by condensation with urea and thiurea, as well as with ammonium sulphocyanide (p. 97).

5. *Cyclic guanidine derivatives* are obtained by means of carbodiimides (p. 90) and phenyl mustard oils (p. 89).

6. A very interesting condensation of the o-diamines is that with glyoxal and other  $\alpha$ -dicarbonyl derivatives, as well as with grape-sugar, when *quinoxalines* result, with the exit of water (Hinsberg) (I, 321).

Related six-membered rings are produced (7) when o-diamines condense with cyanogen. (8) By condensation with o-dioxybenzene. (9) unsym. *Diamidophenazine* is produced by the oxidation of o-phenylenediamine. (10) Dibenzene sulphone-derivatives of o-phenylenediamine condense with alkylene dihaloids—*e. g.*, methylene iodide, ethylene bromide, trimethylene bromide. The products are cyclic diamines, from which the corresponding *phenylene alkylene diamines* are obtained by the splitting off of the benzene sulphone groups (B. 28, R. 756).



The o-amidophenols and the o-amidothiophenols show condensations similar to those observed with the o-diamines.

#### DIFFERENCES BETWEEN THE o-, m-, AND p-DIAMINES.

1. The para-diamines are capable of yielding various dyestuffs. Mixed with primary amines (or phenols) and oxidized at the ordinary temperature, they are converted into *indamine* and *indophenol* dyestuffs; at higher temperatures the so-called *safranines* are produced. When oxidized with ferric chloride in the presence of  $\text{H}_2\text{S}$ , the para-diamines, containing a free  $\text{NH}_2$ -group, yield sulphurized dyes of thio-diphenylamine (Lauth's Dyestuffs). Manganese dioxide and sulphuric acid oxidize the p-diamines to quinones, recognizable by their odor. Ferric chloride (B. 17, R. 431) imparts color to the diamines. See above, o-phenylenediamine.

2. The ortho-diamines, when acted upon by nitrous acid, yield *asimido*-compounds, e. g., *Azimidobenzene*. The meta-diamines, on the contrary, yield yellow-brown azo-dyes, of the type of phenylene brown. Test for nitrous acid, B. 11, 624, 627. In very acid solution, and when there is a constant excess of acid (nitrous), the meta-diamines form bisdiazio-derivatives. Nitrous acid (or  $\text{NaNO}_2$ ) converts the para-diamines (their salts) into bisdiazio-compounds.

3. When the hydrochlorides of the three isomerides are digested with ammonium sulphocyanide, disulphocyanides, like  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\langle\text{NH}_2\cdot\text{HSCN}\rangle$ , are produced. On heating these to  $120^\circ$  we discover that the orthodiamines are changed to *cyclic sulphureas*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\langle\text{NH}\rangle\text{CS}$ . These are not altered by digestion with an alkaline lead-solution (not desulphurized); while the derivatives, obtained from the meta- and para-diamines, are immediately blackened by the alkaline lead-solution (Reaction of Lellmann, B. 18, R. 326).

4. The diamines unite in a similar manner with the *mustard oils*. If these products be fused, those from the ortho-diamines decompose into cyclic phenylenesulphurea and dialkylsulphureas; the fused mass instantly becomes crystalline. The meta-diamine derivatives melt without decomposition, while those of the para-, after fusion, are completely broken up (B. 18, R. 327, and 19, 808).

5. The o-diamines show a series of other condensation reactions, which have been tabulated above, and as the m- and p-diamines behave differently in these transpositions, they will answer for the distinction of the o-derivatives from the other two classes. The behavior toward *phenanthraquinone* is used for the detection of the o-diamines. A more delicate test is that with *croconic acid* (B. 19, 2727). Both tests are based upon the formation of quinoxaline derivatives.

**Triamines.**—The three triamidobenzenes possible theoretically are known, although the symmetrical body only in the form of its salts.

The *adjacent* (1,2,3) is obtained from triamidobenzoic acid (from chrysanic acid). When pure it melts at  $103^\circ$  and boils at  $330^\circ$  (A. 163, 23). The *unsymmetrical* (1,2,4), melting at  $132^\circ$  and boiling at  $340^\circ$ , is obtained by the decomposition of chrysoldine (B. 10, 659; 15, 2196), or diamidoazobenzene (p. 116), and from compounding nitroamido-derivatives (B. 19, 1253). When oxidized by air it changes to a euhodine dyestuff (B. 22, 856).  $[\text{ICH}_3, 2, 3, 4]$ -Triamidotoluene (B. 14, 2657).  $\alpha$ -Diamidodimethyl Aniline boils at  $178^\circ$  (22 mm.); see B. 29, 1053.

**Tetramines.**— $v$ ,  $[1, 2, 3, 4]$ -Tetra-amidobenzene is obtained by the reduction of diquinoxyl tetroxime (B. 22, 1649). The *symmetrical* (1,2,4,5) variety is formed by the reduction of dinitro-m-phenylenediamine. It exhibits all the reactions of the ortho- and para-diamines (B. 22, 440).

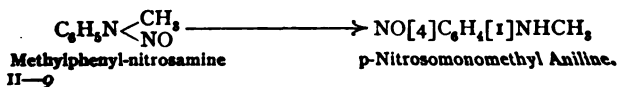
**Pentamines.**—Penta-amidobenzene, from trinitro-m-phenylenediamine, is very unstable on exposure to the air.

Penta-amidotoluene,  $\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{C}_6(\text{NH}_2)_5$ , is formed from trinitro-s-toluylene diamine (B. 26, 2304).

As the number of amido-groups increases the polyamines become more unstable.

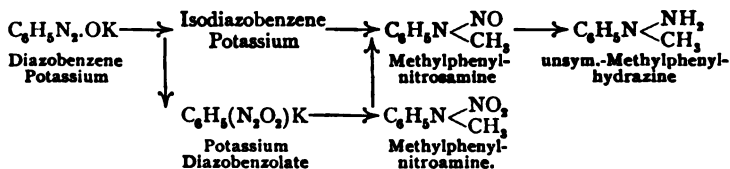
## 6. PHENYL-NITROSAMINES.

Nitroso-compounds are obtained when potassium nitrite acts upon the hydrochlorides of secondary aromatic bases. This procedure is similar to that employed with the aliphatic nitrosamines. It is a reaction which can be used to distinguish and separate secondary from primary and tertiary bases, as the nitrosamines are precipitated as oils from the acid solution of a mixture of bases. The phenyl-nitrosamines in alcoholic or ethereal solution, when treated with hydrochloric acid gas, pass into p-nitroso-anilines (p. 94):



They change into hydrazines upon reduction, or break down into ammonia and the original secondary bases. They are volatile with steam (B. 10, 329; 22, 1006; A. 190, 151) and decompose upon distillation.

The nitrosamines are not only intimately related to the secondary amines and hydrazines, but also to the diazo-compounds. Diazobenzene potassium may be readily rearranged into isodiazobenzene potassium, which yields phenylmethyl-nitrosamine with methyl iodide. unsym.-Phenylmethyl-hydrazine results from the reduction of phenylmethyl-nitrosamine. Potassium diazobenzolate is formed by the oxidation of isodiazobenzene potassium. The latter and methyl iodide combine to methyl  $\alpha$ -diazobenzolate, the phenylmethyl-nitramine, which can be reduced to phenylmethyl-nitrosamine and unsym.-phenylmethyl-hydrazine. These relations are indicated in the following diagram:



Phenylmethyl-nitrosamine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)\text{NO}$ , melts at  $12-15^\circ$  (B. 27, 365 Anm.). The methyl group is replaced by potassium when the substance is fused with caustic potash; potassium isodiazobenzene results.

Phenylethyl-nitrosamine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{NO}$ , is a yellow oil with an odor like that of bitter almond oil (B. 7, 218).

Diphenyl-nitrosamine,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{NNO}$ , melting at  $66^\circ$ , consists of pale yellow plates. It dissolves in concentrated sulphuric acid with a dark-blue color.

Nitrosoanilides.—Nitrosoformanilide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}(\text{NO})\text{CHO}$ , melting at  $39^\circ$ , is produced when nitrous acid acts upon formanilide dissolved in glacial acetic acid. Nitroso-acetanilide, melting at  $40^\circ$ , recalls in its deportment the diazo-compounds. It is saponified by alkali to potassium diazobenzene. It yields diphenyl, with liberation of nitrogen, when it is treated with benzene. Potassium sulphite changes it to benzene diazosulphonic acid and phenylhydrazine disulphonic acid (p. 103) (B. 30, 366).

## 7. PHENYLNITRAMINES.

Diazobenzene Acid, *Nitranilide*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}\cdot\text{NO}_2$ , or  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}:\text{N}\cdot\text{OOH}$ , colorless crystals melting at  $46^\circ$ , is formed:

(1) On oxidizing diazo- and isodiazobenzene potassium with potassium ferricyanide (B. 27, 2602), or with potassium permanganate (B. 28, R. 82); (2) by the nitration of aniline with nitrogen pentoxide (B. 27, 584; compare 29, 1015); (3) by decomposing diazobenzene perbromide with alkalis (B. 28, R. 31), together with nitrosobenzene (B. 27, 1273); (4) from nitryl chloride and aniline (B. 27, 668); (5) from aniline nitrate and acetic anhydride through the loss of water, just as in the case of acetanilide and aniline acetate. A series of other diazobenzene acids has been prepared by methods (2) and (5).

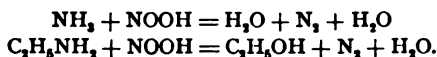
*Properties and Behavior.*—Diazobenzene acid is rearranged by light, by heat, and by contact with mineral acids into a mixture of *o*- and *p*-nitraniline (p. 93), with which it is isomeric. Sodium amalgam reduces it to isodiazobenzene sodium, and the latter with ease to phenylhydrazine (B. 27, 1181). Zinc and acetic acid convert it into diazobenzene. It forms salts. The potassium salt,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_2\text{O}_2\text{K}$ , and sodium salt, consist of white, glistening leaflets. Methyl iodide converts the sodium salt into the  $\alpha$ -methyl ester, Phenylmethylnitramine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{NO}_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $39^\circ$ . The latter is changed by sulphuric acid to *o*- and *p*-nitromethyl aniline. It is converted into methyl aniline when heated with caustic potash. It can be reduced to methylphenyl-nitrosamine, unsym.-methylphenyl-hydrazine and monomethyl aniline. Methyl iodide converts the silver salt into  $\beta$ -diazobenzene methyl ester,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}:\text{NO}\cdot\text{O}\cdot\text{CH}_3$ , a yellow-brown oil with an odor like heliotrope (B. 27, 359).

**Homologous Diazobenzene Acids.**—o-Diazotoluene Acid is a colorless oil. p-Diazotoluene Acid melts at 52°. Diazopseudocumene Acid melts at 87°. o-, m-, and p-Nitrodiazobenzene Acids melt at 65°, 86°, and 111° (B. 28, 399). Dinitro-p-tolylmethylnitramine,  $(\text{NO}_2)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{CH}_3) \cdot \text{N}(\text{CH}_3)\text{NO}_2$ , melting at 138°, has been prepared by the action of nitric acid upon dimethyl-p-toluidine (B. 29, 1015).

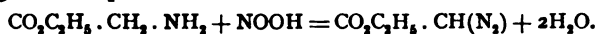
### 8. DIAZO-COMPOUNDS.

The aromatic diazo-derivatives, because of their ready conversion into the most varied substitution products of the aromatic hydrocarbons, and as intermediate steps in the formation of azo-dyes, are equally important both from a scientific and technical standpoint.

The behavior of the primary aliphatic amines toward nitrous acid was particularly emphasized in connection with them. As is known, the amido-group can, by this means, be replaced by hydroxyl; it is a change corresponding to that of ammonia itself by nitrous acid into nitrogen and water:



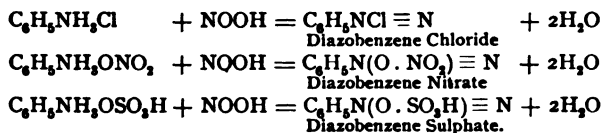
Among the nitrogen-containing derivatives of the aldehydo-acids we observed a body, in the reaction-product, resulting from nitrous acid and glycoll ester, in which the group  $\text{—N=N—}$  had joined itself to carbon. This substance has been termed *diazoacetic ester*, produced according to the equation:



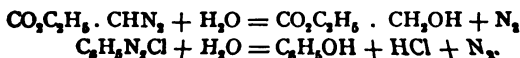
The moderated action of nitrous acid upon the salts of aromatic primary amines is analogous to its action upon aliphatic  $\alpha$ -amido-acid esters. It was, however, observed long before the latter. When nitrous acid acts upon the aqueous solution of salts of primary aromatic amines without taking care to cool the mixture, there follows, as in the case of the aliphatic amines, a replacement of the amido-group by hydroxyl:



Upon cooling the solution, however, the three hydrogen atoms will be replaced by a nitrogen atom, thus:



These aromatic diazo-bodies differ from the aliphatic in that the bivalent group  $\text{N}_2$  is linked not with *both*, but only with one affinity to the carbon atom. The second affinity is joined to another univalent radical. Bodies of this class, when boiled with water, yield oxy-compounds:

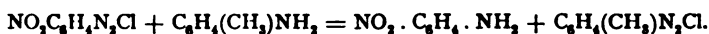


**Formation of Diazobenzenes.**—(1*a*) Gaseous nitrous acid, made by digesting arsenious acid with nitric acid, is conducted into a paste of the salt to be diazotized. The mixture is cooled all the while with ice. The solution of the diazo-compound is precipitated by a mixture of alcohol and ether. (1*b*) Add acid to the cooled solution of the salt to be diazotized sufficient (B. 8, 1073; 25, 1974 Anm.; 29, R. 1158) to liberate the nitrous acid from sodium or potassium nitrite, the well-cooled solution of which is gradually introduced into the acidified liquid:

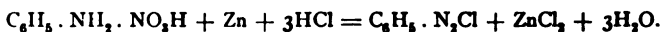


(2) As the diazobenzene salts are more freely soluble in water than in alcohol, in order to obtain solid diazo-salts the diazotizing, where practicable, should be made with alkyl nitrites (I, 144) dissolved in alcohol (15 parts of aniline, 150 parts of absolute alcohol, 20 parts of sulphuric acid, and 20 parts of amyl nitrite; B. 23, 2994; 28, 2048).

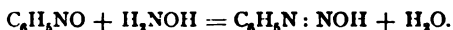
Sometimes a peculiar migration of the diazo-groups takes place on mixing the solution of an aniline salt with a diazo-salt solution. Thus, toluene diazo-chlorides and nitranilines (B. 29, 287) arise from nitrodiazobenzene chlorides and toluidines:



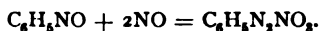
(3) Another procedure, occasionally applicable in diazotizing, consists in letting zinc-dust and hydrochloric acid act upon the nitrate of the diazo-derivative (B. 16, 3080):



(4) By the action of hydroxylamine upon the nitrosobenzenes:



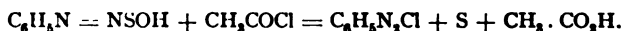
(5) Diazobenzene nitrate is precipitated upon conducting nitric oxide into a chloroform solution of nitrosobenzene (B. 30, 512):



(6) By the saponification of nitrosoacetanilide with caustic alkali (p. 98).

(7) By the action of mercuric oxide upon the phenylhydrazines (p. 120).

(8) By allowing thionyl chloride, acetyl chloride, and other acid chlorides to act upon thionyl phenylhydrazone. The latter reacts in the form of diazobenzene-sulphoxyl,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N} = \text{NS}(\text{OH})$  (B. 270, 116):



**Properties.**—The acid salts of the diazo-compounds are mostly crystalline, colorless bodies, which speedily brown on exposure to the air. They are readily soluble in water, slightly in alcohol, and are precipitated from the latter solution by ether. Consult B. 28, 1734, 2020, for their electric conductivity and cryoscopic behavior. They are generally very unstable (B. 24, 324) and decompose with a violent explosion when they are heated or struck a blow.

The diazo-derivatives are very reactive, and enter numerous, readily occurring reactions, in which nitrogen is liberated, and the diazo-group in the benzene nucleus directly replaced by halogens, hydrogen, hydroxyl, and other groups.

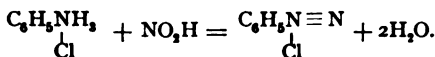
*History and Constitution.*—The diazo-compounds were discovered at the close of the '50s by Peter Griess (A. 137, 39), who regarded their salts as additions of  $C_6H_5N_2$  and acids, *e. g.*, HCl. Kekulé demonstrated that the azo-group only replaced one hydrogen of benzene, and held on the opposite side the radical of the acid, *e. g.*,  $C_6H_5-N=N.Cl$  (Z. f. Ch. N. F. (1866) 2, 308; Chemie der Benzolderivate I, 223). Blomstrand, A. Strecker, and E. Erlenmeyer, Sr., however, viewed the diazo-salts as ammonium salts, *e. g.*,  $C_6H_5N(Cl) \equiv N$ .

Proof of the fact that the azo-group  $N_2$  replaces *one* benzene hydrogen atom is supposed to be found in the existence of such bodies as tetrabrombenzene-sulphanil-diazie,  $C_6Br_4 \langle \overset{N_2}{SO_2} \rangle$  (B. 10, 1537). The relations of the *diazobenzene* salts to the *hydrazines*, (E. Fischer, A. 190, 100), and to the mixed azo-compounds argued in favor of Kekulé's representation.

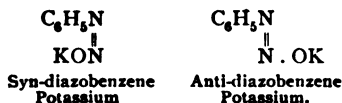
In recent years Blomstrand's formula has been accepted for the acid salts of the diazo-bodies (B. 29, R. 93, 783). Comparative studies of the cryoscopic behavior and the electric conductivity of diazo-salt solutions on the one side, and ammonium and alkali salts on the other (B. 28, 1734, 2020), have contributed to this assumption. The diazo-salts are compared to the quaternary ammonium salts:



and therefore are termed diazonium salts. From a chemical standpoint this view would indicate, among other things, the power of the diazonium haloids to form additive compounds with the halogens (p. 102)—a property which they would hold in common with quaternary ammonium halides (1, 168), as well as with certain alkali metals—*e. g.*, caesium, rubidium. This formula also permits of the easy conversion of the aniline salts by means of nitrous acid into diazo-salts, without being compelled to assume, as is necessary in the Kekulé formula, the migration of the acid residue from the aniline nitrogen to the nitrogen atom which has but recently entered:



The hydrates corresponding to the diazonium salts are very unstable; they, however, yield metallic salts,  $C_6H_5N_2OMe$ , which can be handled. The *diazotalkali* salts are partially rearranged at the ordinary temperature, and partly on heating (B. 29, 455) into *isodiazotalkali* salts. The latter differ from the former in that they do not combine, or at least with difficulty, with aromatic amines or phenols to form dyes (Schraube and Schmidt, B. 27, 514). Inasmuch as these isodiazotalkali salts yield phenylmethyl-nitrosamines with methyl iodide (p. 98), while the normal diazo-salts form normal diazo-methyl esters with methyl alcohol, the nitrosamine formula—*e. g.*,  $C_6H_5NK \cdot NO$ —was ascribed to the former. This view has not held true (B. 27, 1707), because, in acidulating, for example, with acid chlorides or anhydrides and sodium hydroxide, it is exactly the normal salts which afford nitroso-acid anilides, while the iso-salts are but slightly attacked by these reagents, and are in part reconverted into the normal salts (B. 30, 211). Bamberger viewed the normal diazo-bodies as derivatives of the real diazonium hydroxide,  $C_6H_5N(OH) : N$ , and left the Kekulé formula,  $C_6H_5N:NOH$ , for the iso-derivatives, as they were directly produced from nitrosobenzenes and hydroxylamine (p. 100). In the opinion of Hantzsch the isomerism of the diazobenzene alkali salts, in case of structural identity, is influenced by stereoisomerism (see benzaldoximes), corresponding to the following representations:



This last view allows of three classes of diazo-compounds: diazonium salts, syn- and

anti-diazo-compounds. The second and third are formed from and by a rearrangement of the first.

Isomeric series of diazobenzene sulphonic acids and diazocyanides have also been discovered.

**1. Diazonium Salts.**—Diazobenzene Chloride,  $C_6H_5NCl \equiv N$ , colorless needles (B. 23, 2996; 28, 2053). The *platinum salt*,  $[C_6H_5N_2Cl]_2PtCl_6$ , consists of yellow prisms. The *gold salt*,  $C_6H_5N_2Cl \cdot AuCl_3$  (A. 137, 52). *Mercury salt*,  $C_6H_5N_2Cl \cdot HgCl_2$ , consists of white needles, decomposing at  $122^\circ$ . *Diazobenzene Bromide*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot N_2Br$ , separates in white laminæ, if bromine be added to the ethereal solution of diazo-amido-benzene. Tribrom-aniline remains in solution. *Diazobenzene Bromide Cuprous Bromide*,  $C_6H_5N_2Br \cdot Cu_2Br_2$ , consisting of reddish-yellow needles, is decomposed by water into cuprous bromide, nitrogen, and brombenzene (p. 105) (B. 28, 1741).

*Diazoperhalides.*—The diazonium halides readily add two halogen atoms. The tri-chloride of the ten combinations possible with the halogens, chlorine, bromine, and iodine, is the only one that has not been prepared. It may be remarked that the compound  $C_6H_5N_2BrCl$  can be both prepared as well from the chloride and  $BrI$  as from the bromide and  $ClI$  (B. 28, 2754).

*Diazobenzene Perbromide*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot N_2Br_3$ , is precipitated from the aqueous solution of diazobenzene nitrate or sulphate, by bromine in  $HBr$ -acid or  $NaBr$ . It is a dark-brown oil, which quickly becomes crystalline. It is insoluble in water and ether, and crystallizes from cold alcohol in yellow laminæ. Continued washing with ether converts it into diazobenzene bromide. It is changed by aqueous ammonia to diazobenzene imide (p. 111). Alkalies decompose it into nitrosobenzene and potassium diazobenzene (p. 98). Boiling alcohol converts it into brombenzene (p. 105).

*Diazobenzene Nitrate*,  $C_6H_5N_2O \cdot NO_3$ , consists of long, colorless needles which explode with greater violence than fulminating mercury or nitrogen iodide when they are gently heated, struck, or subjected to pressure.

*Diazobenzene Sulphate*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot N_2 \cdot SO_4H$ , consists of colorless needles or prisms, which dissolve readily in water. It explodes at  $100^\circ$ . It is prepared either by diazotizing aniline sulphate or by allowing sulphuric acid to act upon diazobenzene nitrate (B. 28, 2049).

*Oxalate* (B. 28, 2059).

*Carbonate, Nitrite, Acetate* (B. 28, 1741).

*Diazobenzene Sulphocyanide*,  $C_6H_5N_2 \cdot SCN$ , is a yellow, very explosive mass, obtained from diazobenzene chloride and potassium sulphocyanide. *p-Chlorodiazo-benzene Sulphocyanide*,  $Cl[C_6H_4N_2] \cdot SCN$ , rearranges itself with ease into *p*-sulphocyan-diazobenzene chloride,  $CNS[C_6H_4N_2Cl]$  (B. 29, 947).

*p-Phenylenebisdiazo-chloride*,  $C_6H_4(N_2Cl)_2$ , consists of yellow-colored, very explosive needles (B. 30, 92).

**2. Normal Diazohydrates** are not known in a free state. In attempting to separate them by acids from their potassium salts, yellow-colored, exceedingly explosive and unstable precipitates are obtained under certain conditions. These appear not to be hydrates, but *anhydrides*—e. g., *diazobenzene anhydride*,  $[C_6H_5N_2]_2O$ ; *p-chlorodiazo-benzene anhydride*,  $[ClC_6H_4N_2]_2O$ . These bodies redissolve in acids to diazonium salts, in alkalies to diazometallic salts, in ammonia to bisdiazamido-bodies, and in anilines to diazoamido-compounds (B. 29, 451).

Normal *Diazobenzene Potassium*,  $C_6H_5N_2OK$ , is produced on introducing a saturated aqueous solution of diazobenzene chloride into excessive and highly concentrated caustic potash (B. 29, 461). It forms white, pearly leaflets which can be quantitatively reconverted into diazobenzene chloride. It yields diazo-esters in the cold with alcohols (B. 29, 488): see B. 30, 339 for the reduction of potassium diazobenzene to phenylhydrazine. When alkaline diazobenzene solutions are oxidized with potassium ferricyanide or potassium permanganate the principal product is *diazobenzene acid* (p. 98), together with a little nitrosobenzene (p. 66), nitrobenzene (p. 70), azobenzene (p. 112), and diphenyl. Benzoyl chloride and sodium hydroxide change normal potassium diazobenzene into nitrosobenzanilide,  $C_6H_5N(NO) \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5$  (B. 30, 214). Salts of the heavy metals with diazobenzene are obtained by the precipitation of solutions of potassium diazobenzene with metallic salts (B. 23, 3035; 28, 226).

*Diazobenzene Methyl Ether*,  $C_6H_5N_2 \cdot OCH_3$ , isomeric with methylphenyl-nitrosamine

(p. 98), is obtained from normal or iso-diazobenzene silver and methyl iodide, as well as from diazobenzene potassium and methyl alcohol. It is a yellow, volatile oil, rapidly turning dark in color, possessing a penetrating, stupefying odor, and decomposing shortly after its liberation. Boiling dilute sulphuric acid decomposes it into nitrogen, methyl alcohol, and phenol (B. 28, 227). *o*- and *p*-Nitrodiazobenzene Methyl Ether,  $\text{NO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}_2 \cdot \text{OCH}_3$  (B. 28, 236). *Di-p*-nitrophenyldiazo-sulphide,  $[\text{NO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}_2]_2\text{S}$ , is precipitated as an egg-yellow, very explosive mass, on adding hydrogen sulphide to a neutral solution of the diazo-chloride. With benzene it forms nitrodiphenyl, nitrogen, and sulphur; *di-p*-nitrodiphenyl disulphide is formed simultaneously. In an acid solution with an excess of hydrogen sulphide there is produced, along with the diazosulphide, *p*-nitrophenyldiazo-mercaptan hydrosulphide,  $\text{NO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}_2\text{SH} \cdot \text{SH}_2$ , consisting of red, brilliant, metallic-looking needles, which dissolve with a deep-red color in the alkalis. They decompose, when fused, with the formation of nitrophenylhydrazine, nitraniline, sulphur, and dinitrophenyl disulphide. Non-explosive *Di-p*-nitrophenyldiazo-disulphide,  $[\text{NO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}_2]_2\text{S}_2$ , is finally the third product in the action of hydrogen sulphide. It is insoluble in alkali. It consists of sulphur-yellow needles, soluble in acetone (B. 29, 272). See thiophenol for diazobenzene thiophenyl ether.

3. Isodiazohydrates are liberated from their potassium salts by acetic acid. They are very easily decomposed. Those of benzene and toluene are colorless oils. *p*-Nitroisodiazobenzene hydrate,  $\text{NO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}_2\text{OH}$  (B. 29, 1383), has been analyzed.

Potassium Isodiazobenzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_2\text{OK}$ , is formed on digesting potassium diazobenzene for a brief period at  $130$ – $135^\circ$  with concentrated caustic potash, and when fused, caustic potash acts upon phenylmethyl-nitrosamine (p. 98), into which it returns upon treatment with methyl iodide (B. 27, 514, 672, 680). Sodium amalgam reduces it with ease to phenylhydrazine (B. 29, 473; 30, 339). Potassium Iso-*p*-diazotoluene results when its isomeride lies exposed to the air (B. 29, 1385). Iso-*p*-nitrodiazobenzene sodium,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NO}_2)\text{N}_2\text{ONa} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , yields nitrophenylmethyl-nitrosamine with methyl iodide, whereas the silver salt forms the corresponding diazo-ester (B. 29, 1384).

Diazobenzene Sulphonic Acid, *Benzene-asosulphonic Acid*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_2\text{SO}_3\text{H}$ , is very decomposable (B. 30, 75). Its potassium salt is produced upon introducing diazobenzene nitrate into a cold, neutral, or feebly alkaline solution of dipotassium sulphite; the liquid solidifies to a yellow, crystalline mass. Under other conditions a more easily decomposable, orange-colored salt is formed (B. 27, 1715, 2930). For the sensitivity of the diazobenzene sulphonates to light and their application in photography consult B. 23, 3131. Monopotassium sulphite reduces diazobenzene nitrate to potassium phenylhydrazine sulphonate (p. 119), which mercuric oxide oxidizes to potassium diazobenzene sulphonate (B. 27, 1245).

*p*-Nitrodiazobenzene nitrate and one molecule of  $\text{K}_2\text{SO}_3$  yield potassium *p*-nitrodiazobenzene sulphonate, which also appears to exist in two forms. The acid crystallizes with four molecules of water in ruby-red prisms (B. 30, 90). On using two molecules of potassium sulphite the product is potassium *p*-Nitrophenylhydrazine disulphonate,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NO}_2)\text{N}(\text{SO}_3\text{K})\text{NH} \cdot \text{SO}_3\text{K}$  (p. 125) (B. 29, 1829). *p*-Chlor- and *p*-Bromobenzene Diazosulphonic Acid (B. 30, 75).

The diazonium salts and benzene sulphinic acid combine to *Benzene diazosulphones*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_2\text{SO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , which are resolved by hydrochloric acid into diazonium chlorides and sulphinic acids (B. 30, 312).

Diazobenzene Cyanide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_2\text{CN}$ , appears as an unstable oil, on adding a potassium cyanide solution to the solution of a diazobenzene salt. If, however, the reverse be done—the diazo-salt be added to the potassium cyanide solution—a prussic acid additive product,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_2\text{CN} \cdot \text{HCN}$ , will separate as a yellow precipitate, melting at  $70^\circ$ . *Benzenediazocarbonamide*, phenylazocarbonamide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N} : \text{NCONH}_2$ , results from the oxidation of phenylsemicarbazide (p. 127) (J. ch. Soc., 1895, 1, p. 1067; B. 28, 1925, 2599). It consists of reddish-yellow needles, melting at  $114^\circ$ . The anilide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_2\text{CONHC}_6\text{H}_5$ , from diphenylsemicarbazide (B. 29, 1691), melts at  $122^\circ$ .

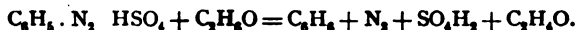
Two isomerides have been obtained from *p*-chlor- and *p*-nitrodiazobenzene cyanide, and in each instance the one body is unstable and the other stable. The unstable, low-melting modifications only form at lower temperatures, decompose easily, especially in contact with copper powder (p. 105), give up nitrogen with the formation of benzene cyanides, form azo-dyes with aromatic amines or phenols, and change rapidly, particu-

larly in alcoholic solution, into the stable isomerides. Unstable *p-chlor-* and *p-nitro-diazobenzene cyanide*, melt at  $28^{\circ}$  and  $29^{\circ}$ ; stable *p-chlor-* and *p-nitrodiazobenzene cyanide* melt at  $106^{\circ}$  and  $86^{\circ}$ . The stable cyanides unite to diazocarbonamides with water, and with alcohols to *imido ethers*, from which the potassium salts of the corresponding diazobenzene carboxylic acids can be obtained by saponification. The acids themselves are very decomposable (B. 28, 670, 2072). *Tribromphenylazocarboxylic Acid*,  $C_6H_2Br_3 \cdot N_2 \cdot COOH$ , has been obtained from its amide, the oxidation product of tribromphenylsemicarbazide (B. 28, 1929).

**The Most Important Decompositions of the Diazobenzene Salts.**—The decompositions of the diazo-salts in which nitrogen is evolved and atoms of other non-metals or atomic groups enter and take its place are of the greatest importance for the genetic relations of very many of the most varied di- and polysubstitution products of benzene and its homologues (p. 38).

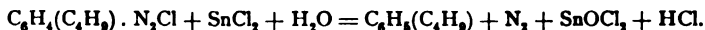
(1) *Replacement of the Diazo-group by Hydrogen :*

(a) If the salts be boiled with strong alcohol, then hydrogen will enter for the diazo-group, and hydrocarbons result. The alcohol is oxidized to aldehyde (A. 137, 69; 217, 189; B. 9, 899):



It has occurred upon boiling with alcohol that the diazo-group was not replaced by hydrogen, but by oxy-ethyl ( $O \cdot C_2H_5$ ), with the production of phenol ethers (B. 17, 1917; 18, 65; 26, R. 547). If the dry diazo-salt be decomposed with alcohol, phenol ethers are the chief products (B. 21, R. 99; 22, R. 657).

(b) The replacement of the diazo-group by hydrogen is sometimes effected by its conversion into the hydrazine derivative and then boiling this with copper sulphate or ferric chloride (see phenylhydrazine). The reaction taking place on boiling the diazo-chlorides with a stannous chloride solution is, in all probability, dependent upon the intermediate formation of hydrazines (B. 22, R. 741):

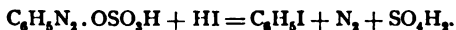


(c) An analogous procedure for the replacement of the diazo-group by hydrogen consists in dissolving the diazo-compound in caustic soda and adding a solution of stannous oxide in sodium hydroxide (B. 22, 587). Diphenyl derivatives frequently appear as secondary products.

(d) The diazides of sulphonic acids can be boiled with copper powder and formic acid (B. 23, 1632).

(2) *Replacement of the Diazo-group by Halogens :*

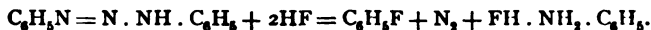
(a) The diazobenzene salts are treated with haloid acids. Hydriodic acid of the four acids of this class reacts most readily :



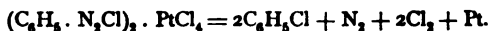
The haloid acids are frequently applied in glacial acetic acid solution.

The hydrobromides or hydroiodides of the bases can also be treated with nitric acid.

(b) Concentrated haloid acids are allowed to act upon the diazo-amido-derivatives (p. 109). This reaction is especially recommended for the preparation of fluor- or chlor-derivatives (B. 21, R. 97):



(c) Chlor- and brom-derivatives are formed, if the  $\text{PtCl}_4$ - and  $\text{PtBr}_4$ -double salts are heated alone; or, what is better, with dry soda or salt:

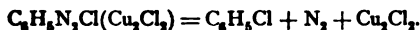


(d) When the diazo-perbromides are boiled with alcohol (the latter is oxidized to aldehyde), brombenzenes are formed:



The reactions indicated under *a*, *b*, *c*, and *d* were all observed by P. Griess. Another reaction belongs in this group: it was discovered by Sandmeyer (B. 17, 2650; 23, 1880), and is capable of far greater generalization. It is based upon the fact that diazo-salts are decomposed by cuprous salts:

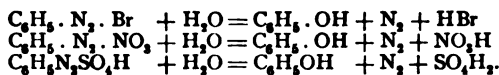
(e) When cuprous chloride is added to an aqueous solution of diazobenzene chloride, an additive product,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_2\text{Cl} \cdot \text{Cu}_2\text{Cl}_2$ , is formed at first, but upon the application of heat this decomposes into  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Cl}$  (B. 19, 810; 23, 1628; A. 272, 141):



Cuprous bromide and cuprous iodide act similarly upon the corresponding diazobenzene salts.

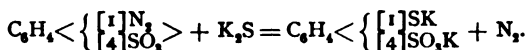
A modification of the method consists in treating the diazo-derivatives in the presence of hydrochloric, hydrobromic, or hydriodic acid with copper powder (B. 23, 1218; 25, 1091 Anm.).

(3) *Replacement of the Diazo-group by Hydroxyl*.—When the salts (sulphates are best) are boiled with water, the diazo-group will be replaced by hydroxyl:

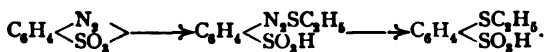


Nitro-phenols appear as side products in the decomposition of the diazonitrates. It was mentioned upon p. 104 that in the action of alcohol upon diazo-salts alkyl phenol ethers are formed, together with the hydrocarbons; similar products are observed when phenol (B. 23, 3705), glacial acetic acid (B. 21, R. 889), and acetic anhydride (A. 235, 234) are used.

(4) *Replacement of the Diazo-group by the Sulphydrate Group*.—On digesting the diazide of sulphanilic acid (see this), a cyclic diazo-salt, with alcoholic potassium sulphide, the potassium salt of p-thiophenolsulphonic acid will be produced (B. 20, 350):



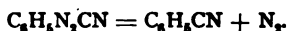
In the same manner, when mercaptan acts upon diazobenzenesulphonic acid, a compound results which, upon standing or warming, decomposes into thiophenoethyl-ether-p-sulphonic acid:



The xanthates yield aromatic xanthogenic esters, —e. g.,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{S} \cdot \text{CSOC}_2\text{H}_5$ ,—which, upon saponification, yield thiophenols (J. pr. Ch. [2] 41, 184). The formation of di-p-nitrophenyldisulphide by the decomposition of the corresponding diazosulphide and mercaptan has already received mention (p. 103).

(5) *Replacement of the Diazo-group by the Nitro-group.*—This may be accomplished by adding the diazobenzene nitrite solution to freshly precipitated cuprous oxide (B. 20, 1495; 23, 1630).

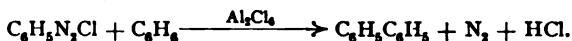
(6) *Replacement of the Diazo-group by the Cyanogen Group.*—This reaction connects by easy stages the nitroamidobenzenes with the nitrobenzoic acids, and the latter with the phthalic acids. The importance of this fact has received mention (p. 38). Add the diazobenzene chloride solution to a copper sulphate solution mixed with potassium cyanide (B. 20, 1495; 23, 1630) (compare p. 103):



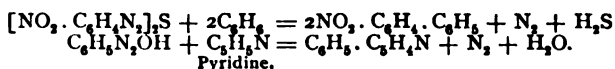
(7) Sulphocyanides (*Rhodanides*) result when the diazo-salts are boiled with potassium and cuprous sulphocyanides (B. 23, 770).

(8) When a solution of diazobenzene sulphate is mixed with potassium cyanate and reduced copper is then added (B. 25, 1086), phenylisocyanide or *carbanile* will result (p. 89).

(9) *Formation of Diphenyl Compounds from Diazo-derivatives.*—Diphenyl derivatives frequently appear as side products in the treatment of diazo-bodies with reducing agents—*e. g.*, stannous chloride (B. 18, 965), alcohol, and reduced copper (B. 23, 1226), alcohol alone or sodium ethylate (B. 28, R. 389)—as well as in the action of water, of phenol (B. 23, 3705), and of potassium ferricyanide (B. 26, 471). Into aromatic hydrocarbons and heterocyclic compounds—*e. g.*, thiophene, pyridine, and quinoline—diazobenzene chloride introduces the phenyl group. This occurs very easily in the presence of aluminium chloride (B. 26, 1994):



The diazo-residue in the diazo-oxides, diazo-sulphides, and isodiazohydrates is readily replaced by cyclic residues (B. 28, 404; 29, 165, 274, 452):



*Other Reactions of Diazo-derivatives*, in which nitrogen is not set free.

1. Phenylhydrazines are produced in the reduction of diazo-salts (p. 119).

2. When diazo-compounds are oxidized in alkaline solution, they are converted into nitrosobenzene (p. 70) and phenylnitroamine or diazobenzene acid (p. 98).

3. The behavior of diazo-bodies toward ammonia, alkylamines, aniline, and related bases, when diazoimido- (p. 110), diazoamido- (p. 107), and mixed azo-derivatives arise, is worthy of special note. These very important reactions will be given in detail, with the individual classes.

4. Hydrazones result when diazobenzene in alkaline solution acts upon bodies containing the group  $\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}$  (p. 121). The primarily formed hydrazones often rearrange themselves with additional quantities of the diazobenzene salt into *formazyl* derivatives, which belong to the class of amidines (1, 270) (B. 27, 147, 320, 1679; 29, 1386).

#### 9. DIAZOAMIDO-COMPOUNDS. 10. DISDIAZOAMIDO-COMPOUNDS.

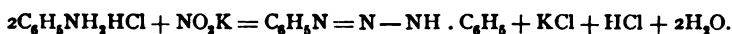
The *diazoamido-compounds* are derived from the unknown hydride  $\text{NH} = \text{N} - \text{NH}_2$ , in which the hydrogen of the imide group is replaced by an

aromatic residue—*e. g.*, phenyl, tolyl, etc.—and the hydrogen of the amido-group by aliphatic or aromatic residues: *mixed and true aromatic diazoamido-compounds*. The *disdiazamido-bodies* are also derivatives of an unknown nitrogen hydride,  $\text{NH}=\text{N}-\text{NH}-\text{N}=\text{NH}$ .

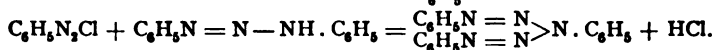
*Formation of Diazoamido-derivatives.*—They result from the transposition of primary and secondary amines with diazo-salts: (1*a*) Primary aromatic amines yield diazoamido- or disdiazamido-bodies, depending upon the conditions of experiment. Diazoamido-compounds are formed when equimolecular quantities of diazo-salt and primary amine interact:



They are also produced when an alkali nitrite, in the absence of mineral acids, acts upon the salts of primary amines:

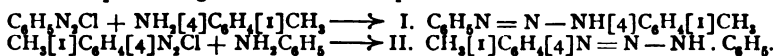


(1*b*) A disdiazo-compound results if a molecule of aniline be allowed to act in alkaline, alcoholic solution upon two molecules of a diazobenzene salt. It can also be obtained by transposing diazobenzene chloride with diazoamidobenzene (B. 27, 703):



When a diazobenzene salt solution is allowed to flow into cold, concentrated ammonia, *disdiazobenzeneamide*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}:\text{N} \cdot \text{NH}:\text{N}:\text{NC}_6\text{H}_5$  (B. 28, 171), will be produced.

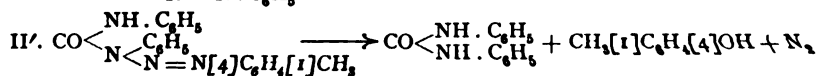
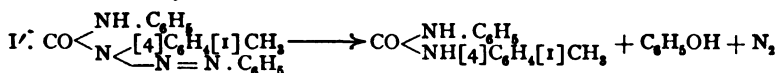
*Course of the Reaction in the Formation (1*a*) of Diazoamido-derivatives.*—It is an interesting fact that the same diazobenzene-*p*-amidotoluene is formed, *e. g.*, from diazobenzene chloride and *p*-toluidine, as from diazo-*p*-toluene chloride and aniline, although different compounds might well have been expected:



This behavior would justify the assumption that the same intermediate product is formed in both instances by the addition of the primary base with simultaneous breaking down of the double nitrogen union:



The same compound can then result if hydrochloric acid be eliminated, it being immaterial from which bodies the synthesis began (B. 14, 2447; 21, 3004). Hence, the decomposition of a diazoamido-body by an haloid acid cannot be used in ascertaining its constitution, because the haloid acid would first form an addition product. For this purpose phenylisocyanide seems better adapted. Thus, diazobenzene-*p*-amidotoluene forms a urea with this reagent, and this new compound will have either formula I', corresponding to I, or II', corresponding to formula II, depending upon the constitution of the diazoamido-body:

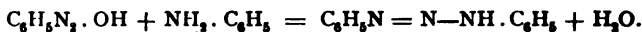


On decomposing the urea with dilute sulphuric acid the products will be phenyl-p-tolyl urea, phenol, and nitrogen; whereas, according to formula II', they should be sym. diphenylurea, p-cresol, and nitrogen. Therefore, diazobenzene-amido-p-toluene is constituted according to formula I. The imide group apparently combines with the more negative radical (H. Goldschmidt, B. 21, 2578). Granting the diazonium formula for the diazo-salts, it will of course be necessary to alter the preceding explanation somewhat.

The normal diazo-alkali salts (p. 102) also yield diazoamido-derivatives. Consult B. 29, 289, for the occurring changes. The isodiazo-salts, resulting from rearrangement of the normal salts, are not reactive.

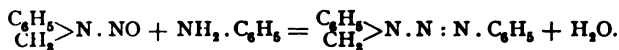
(1b) Primary aliphatic amines also yield diazoamido- and disdiazoamido-bodies (B. 22, 934). (1c) Secondary aliphatic amines form mixed fatty-aromatic diazo-amido-derivatives (B. 8, 148, 843).

2. Diazoamido-compounds are also formed in the action of free nitrous acid upon the alcoholic solutions of free primary amines; the free diazobenzene hydrate or anhydride produced at first (p. 102) is transposed by aniline:

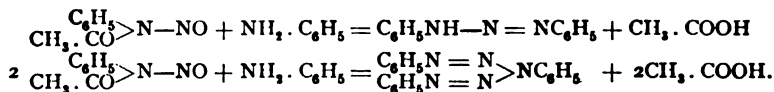


The action of nitrites—*e. g.*, silver nitrite upon free aniline—produces salts of diazo-amido-bodies,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_2 \cdot \text{NaAgC}_6\text{H}_5$  (B. 29, R. 1158).

3. They can also be obtained by the action of the nitrosoamines upon the primary amido-bodies. Phenylmethylnitrosamine and aniline yield diazoamidobenzene:



Nitrosoacetanilide (p. 98) and aniline also react, the products being diazoamidobenzene and acetic acid. When one molecule of aniline is used with two molecules of nitrosoacetanilide, and these bodies are allowed to react in alkaline solution, an aromatic disdiazoamido-compound is produced:



*Diazoamido-compounds from primary, aromatic bases.*

**Diazo-amido-benzene**, *Benzenediazoanilide*, *Diazobenzeneanilide* (B. 14, 2443 Anm.),  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{N}_2 \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $96^\circ$  and explodes when it is heated to higher temperatures. It is obtained by the action of nitrous acid on the cold alcoholic solution of aniline (Griess, A. 121, 258); by mixing diazobenzene nitrate with aniline (B. 7, 1619); and by pouring a slightly alkaline sodium nitrite solution upon aniline hydrochloride (B. 8, 1074) or sulphate (B. 17, 641; 19, 1953; 20, 1581).

Diazoamidobenzene consists of golden-yellow, shining laminæ or prisms. It is insoluble in water, sparingly soluble in cold, but readily in hot alcohol, ether, and benzene. Its transpositions will be discussed later; the most remarkable one is its rearrangement into isomeric *amidoazobenzene* (p. 115).

Its salts are very unstable, although it forms a double salt  $(\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{11}\text{N}_3 \cdot \text{HCl})_2 \cdot \text{PtCl}_4$ , with hydrochloric acid and  $\text{PtCl}_4$ . It crystallizes in reddish needles. When the alco-

holic solution is mixed with silver nitrate, the compound,  $C_6H_5.N_2.NaCl . C_6H_5$ , separates in reddish needles.

Sodium in ethereal solution converts it into  $C_6H_5.N.Na.N = N . C_6H_5$ , which is decomposed by water (B. 27, 2315).

*Benzene diazoacetanilide*,  $C_6H_5.N = N - N(COCH_3)C_6H_5$ , melts with decomposition at  $130^\circ$ , and is formed when diazo-amido benzene stands with acetic anhydride in toluene solution (B. 24, 4156).

The para-variety of the three *diazo-amido toluenes* is alone stable. The ortho- and meta-forms (from ortho- and meta-toluidine) immediately pass into isomeric amido-azo-derivatives.

Diazo-amido-compounds containing two different aromatic residues: Mixed diazo-amido-compounds, like *diazobenzene-p-amidobrombenzene*, melting at  $91^\circ$  (B. 20, 3012), o-, m-, p-*Dinitrodiazoamido-benzene*, melting at  $196^\circ$ ,  $194^\circ$ ,  $228^\circ$  (B. 27, 2201; 28, R. 303), *diazobenzene-p-amidotoluene*, can be obtained from the diazo-derivatives of the two components with the free amido-derivatives—e. g., diazobenzene-p-amidotoluene equally well from the diazobenzene salt with p-toluidine, as from p-diazotoluene salt and aniline. The explanation of this peculiar behavior is given on page 107.

*Disdiazobenzene Amide*,  $(C_6H_5.N : N)_2NH$  (B. 27, 899), is extremely decomposable. *Disdiazobenzene Anilide*,  $C_6H_5.N = N - N(C_6H_5) - N = NC_6H_5$ , consists of shining yellow leaflets, which explode at  $80-81^\circ$  in a capillary tube (B. 27, 703).

*Mixed fatty-aromatic Diazoamido-compounds.*

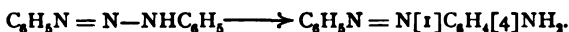
*Diazobenzene-ethylamine*,  $C_6H_5.N = N - NH . C_2H_5(?)$ , is a yellow oil. *Diazobenzene-dimethylamine*,  $C_6H_5.N = N - N(CH_3)_2$ , is a yellow oil (B. 8, 148).

*Diazobenzene-piperidine*,  $C_6H_5.N = N - NC_4H_9$ , melts at  $43^\circ$ . The diazopiperidines are of practical value in the preparation of fluorine derivatives (p. 58) which result upon acting with concentrated hydrofluoric acid upon them (A. 235, 242; 243, 223).

*Disdiazobenzene-methylamine*,  $(C_6H_5.N = N)_2NCH_3$ , consists of bright yellow needles, melting at  $112^\circ$ . *Disdiazobenzene-ethylamine* melts at  $70^\circ$  (B. 22, 934).

### The Rearrangements of the Diazoamido-compounds.—(1)

The most remarkable property of the diazoamido-compounds containing a replaceable hydrogen atom in the p-position with reference to the NH-group, is their ability to rearrange themselves into isomeric p-amidoazo-derivatives. *In the amidoazo-body the amido-group holds the p-position with reference to the point of union* (p. 115):

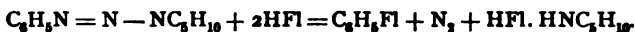


This rearrangement completes itself in the course of a few days, when a small quantity of an aniline salt is present. It may be assumed that in the conversion a quantity of aniline, equal to that actually needed for the change, is produced; consequently a comparatively small amount of the aniline salt will be sufficient to rearrange a large quantity of diazo-amido-benzene into amido-azobenzene (Kekulé, Z. f. Ch. (1866), 689; B. 25, 1376). The rapidity of the conversion is proportional to the strength of the acid, whose aniline salt is employed (B. 29, 1899). A *strong base*, such as amidoazobenzene, is obtained from a body indifferent to acids—e. g., diazoamidobenzene. *Various intramolecular atom-rearrangements, such as the preceding, in which indifferent compounds are rearranged to strong bases or strong acids are known—e. g., the rearrangement of hydrazobenzene into benzidine, of benzil into benzoic acid, etc.* (1, 54; 11, 116, 118).

(2) The imide hydrogen of the diazoamidobenzene can be replaced by acid radicals through the action of acid anhydrides (see benzene diazoacetanilide).

(3) The diazoamido-compounds and phenylisocyanate combine to urea derivatives. Consult p. 108 upon the importance of this reaction.

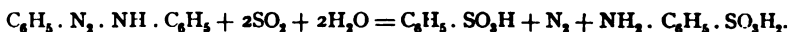
In the preceding reactions the diazoamido-bodies are not decomposed. This occurs very readily (4) on treating them with concentrated haloid acids; the diazoamido-derivatives, like the diazobenzene salts, then change to haloid benzenes; the side products are salts of the bases previously in combination with the diazo-residue. Therefore, the diazoamido-compounds, *in the presence of acids*, are fully converted by nitrous acid into diazobenzene salts. The deportment of the diazo-amido-bodies toward concentrated hydrofluoric acid with the addition of diazopiperidines, proved itself particularly well adapted for the preparation of fluorobenzenes (A. 243, 220):



(5) Boiling water converts the diazoamido-compounds into phenols and bases.

(6) The reduction of the diazoamido-bodies has not led to hydrazo-amido-derivatives—*e. g.*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}-\text{NH} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ ; a decomposition into phenylhydrazine and aniline has been the usual result.

(7) On boiling the alcoholic solution with sulphurous acid, the diazo-group is replaced by the sulpho-group:



#### 11. DIAZO-OXYAMIDO-COMPOUNDS.

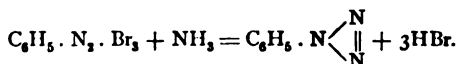
These compounds result from the interaction of diazo-bodies with alkyl- and aliphyl-hydroxylamines.

Diazo-oxyamido-benzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_2 \cdot \text{N}(\text{OH})\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $127^\circ$ , consists of yellow, silky needles. It is formed as well from nitrosobenzene and phenylhydrazine, as from diazobenzene and phenylhydroxylamine. *p-Nitrobenzene-diazoxyamido-methane*,  $\text{NO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}_2\text{N}(\text{OH})\text{CH}_3$ , melts at  $228^\circ$  (B. 29, 103).

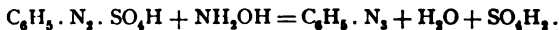
#### 12. DIAZOIMIDO-COMPOUNDS.

The diazoimido-compounds are ethers of *hydronitric acid—hydrazoic acid*. They are produced:

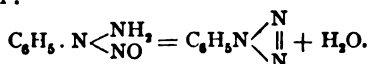
(1) By the action of aqueous ammonia upon diazobenzene perbromides:

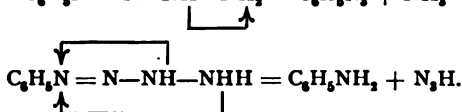


(2) By the action of hydroxylamine upon diazobenzene sulphate (B. 25, 372; 26, 1271):



(3) By the action of sodium nitrite upon the hydrochloric acid solution of phenylhydrazine, when the nitrosophenylhydrazine first produced sustains decomposition:



$$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{N}:\text{N}.\text{NH}.\text{NH}.\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 = \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{NH}_2 + \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{N}_3.$$
$$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}=\text{N}-\text{NH}-\text{NH}_2 = \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_2 + \text{NH}_3$$


(3) The diazobenzene imide compounds, nitrated in the o- and p-positions, decompose in part when boiled with alcoholic potash into nitrophenols and hydrazoic acid (B. 25, 3328).

$$4\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NO}_2 + 3\text{HCH}_2\text{ONa} = 2(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N})_2\text{O} + 3\text{HCO}_2\text{Na} + 3\text{H}_2\text{O}.$$

**Department.**—1. When reduced by heating with iron filings they yield azo-compounds, with ammonium sulphide hydrazo-derivatives, and with acid reducing agents amido-bodies, resulting from the decomposition and rearrangement of the hydrazo-compounds first produced. 2. Their rearrangement into oxy-azo-compounds, on digesting them with concentrated sulphuric acid, is interesting (Wallach and Belli, B. 13, 525).

**Azoxybenzene, Azoxybenzide,**  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{-N}\begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{O} \diagdown \\ \text{---} \end{array}\text{N-C}_6\text{H}_5$ , forms long, yellow needles, easily soluble in alcohol and ether, but not in water. It melts at  $36^\circ$ , and decomposes into azobenzene and aniline when distilled.

It is converted into p-oxyazobenzene by digestion with concentrated sulphuric acid.

sym.-m-Dinitroazoxybenzene, from m-dinitrobenzene (B. 25, 608), melts at 141°.

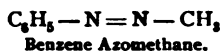
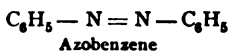
sym.-m-Diamidoazobenzene, Azoxyaniline, melts at 147° (B. 29, R. 137).

p-Tetramethyldiamido-azoxybenzene, from nitrosodimethyl aniline, melts at 243°. Tri-nitroazoxybenzenes are obtained from azoxybenzene (B. 23, R. 104).

o-Azoxytoluene melts at 59°. m-Azoxytoluene melts at 38°. p-Azoxytoluene melts at 70°.

#### 14. AZO-COMPOUNDS.

Like the diazo-derivatives, these contain a group, consisting of two nitrogen atoms; in the former the  $N_2$ -group is combined with only one benzene nucleus and an inorganic residue; here it is attached on either side to benzene nuclei, or to a benzene nucleus and an aliphatic radical:



In consequence, they are far more stable than the former, and do not react with the elimination of nitrogen.

*Classification and Nomenclature.*—The true aromatic azo-bodies are distinguished as *symmetrical*, those in which the two residues are the same, and *unsymmetrical*, those in which the two residues are dissimilar. *Mixed azo-bodies* are those in which the azo-group joins an aromatic to an aliphatic radical.

The names of the unsymmetrical azo-bodies are derived from the names of the two bodies in which the azo-group has replaced an atom of hydrogen each, separated by the word azo,—thus:  $C_6H_5 - N = N - C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2$ , benzene-azo-dimethyl aniline;  $C_6H_5 - N = N - CH_3$ , benzene azomethane. Should the benzene residues contain substituents, the positions in the one residue are indicated with numbers 1 to 6, and in the second residue by numbers 1' to 6', with the understanding that the azo-group occupies the 1, 1'-position.

Disazo- and trisazo-compounds, containing two or three azo-groups, are known (B. 15, 2812).

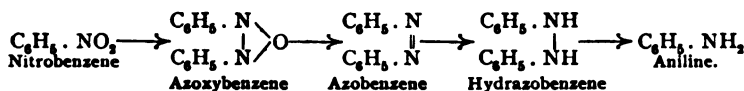
*Formation.*—1. By the moderated reduction of nitro-bodies in *alkaline* solution, because in *acid* solution the final reduction products of nitro-bodies, the amido-derivatives, are almost invariably produced. Azoxy-compounds are first formed, but by further reduction they pass into azo-derivatives. The reducing agents are:

(a) Zinc-dust in alcoholic potash or soda (B. 21, 3139), or in ammonia;

(b) Sodium amalgam and alcohol;

(c) Stannous chloride in sodium hydroxide (B. 18, 2912).

By more complete reduction hydrazo-bodies are formed, along with the azo-derivatives; these can eventually be decomposed into amido-compounds. Azobenzene is the middle member in the series of reduction products obtained from nitrobenzene, if  $\beta$ -phenylhydroxylamine is not taken into consideration:



2. By reduction of azoxy-compounds on heating them with iron filings.

3. By the oxidation (*a*) of hydrazo-bodies (p. 116), and (*b*) of primary amido-derivatives in alkaline solution with potassium permanganate (A. 142, 364) or with potassium ferricyanide.

4. By the action of nitrosobenzene (p. 70) upon aniline.

5. By the rearrangement of certain diazoamido-bodies into amido-azo-derivatives (p. 114).

6. By action of diazo-salts (*a*) upon tertiary anilines, and (*b*) upon m diamines.

The last two methods lead to amido-derivatives of the azo-hydrocarbons, some of which have become very important for the coal-tar color industry.

Mixed azo-derivatives are frequently obtained by combining diazo-salts with suitable fatty bodies—*i. e.*, such as contain easily replaceable hydrogen atoms in union with carbon, or with heterocyclic compounds like pyrrol, pyrazole, etc.

**Properties.**—The azo-bodies are more intensely colored than the pale-yellow azoxy-derivatives. They do not unite with acids, if they do not contain an additional basic amido-group. They can be directly chlorinated, nitrated, and sulphonated. Reducing agents convert them into hydrazo-compounds (p. 116), or decompose them at the point of double union with the production of amido-compounds. The latter reaction serves to determine the constitution of the amidoazo-derivatives.

**Indifferent, Symmetrical Azo-compounds.**—**Azobenzene**, *Azobenzide*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}=\text{NC}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $68^\circ$  and boiling at  $293^\circ$ , was discovered by Mitscherlich in 1834. It forms orange-red, rhombic crystals, readily soluble in alcohol and ether, but sparingly soluble in water. It is produced by the methods outlined above from nitrobenzene, aniline, and hydrazobenzene. Azoxybenzene yields it on distillation with iron filings (B. 207, 329). It has also been obtained from potassium aniline by action of air, and from aniline and sodium (B. 10, 1802). It is converted into benzidine by tin and hydrochloric acid; this is due to a transposition of the hydrazobenzene first formed.

*o*-Nitroazobenzene melts at  $127^\circ$  (B. 19, 2157; R. 441). *p*-Nitroazobenzene melts at  $137^\circ$ . sym.-m-Dinitroazobenzene is an oil (B. 18, R. 627). *p*-Dinitroazobenzene melts at  $206^\circ$ . Dinitrobenzene-azobenzene melts at  $117^\circ$  (B. 21, R. 400; 22, R. 744).

**Azotoluenes.**—*o*-Azotoluene melts at  $157^\circ$ . m-Azotoluene melts at  $55^\circ$ . *p*-Azotoluene melts at  $143^\circ$  (B. 17, 463; 18, 2551). Azoxylenes and asotrimethyl benzenes are known.

**Mixed Azo-compounds.**—*Benzene-azomethane*, azophenylmethane,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}=\text{NC}_6\text{H}_5$ , boiling at about  $150^\circ$ , and *Benzene-azoethane*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{N}=\text{NCH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , boiling at about  $180^\circ$ , are liquids with a peculiar odor. They are obtained by oxidizing the corresponding hydrazines with mercuric oxide. Sulphuric acid transposes benzene-azoethane into the isomeric acetaldehyde-phenylhydrazine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH} \cdot \text{N}:\text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_3$  (B. 29, 794). Ben-

*zene azo-nitroethane*,  $C_6H_5N=NCH(NO_2) \cdot CH_3$ , melting at  $137^\circ$ , formed from diazobenzene nitrate and sodium nitroethane, consists of orange-colored laminæ, and forms salts with two equivalents of alkali (B. 8, 1076; 9, 384).

Other compounds which can be regarded as mixed azo-derivatives are the *benzenediazocarboxylic acids* and their derivatives, the *diasocyanides* (p. 103), *diphenylsulphocarbazon*e and *-carbdiazon*e (p. 128), the *formasyl* compounds (p. 129), *benzoyl-diazobenzene* (see this), as well as numerous azo-bodies resulting from the combination of diazo-salts with suitable heterocyclic derivatives—*e. g.*, pyrrol, pyrazole, etc.

**Amidoazo-compounds.**—The indifferent azo-derivatives are all orange-yellow to orange-red in color, but they are not dyes. By the introduction of a salt-forming group the resulting bodies, like amido-azo-compounds, oxyazo-compounds, and especially amidoazobenzene sulphonic acids, do become colors applicable in the dyeing of wool and silk. The number of azo-dyes is very great. Some of the simplest will be discussed in the following paragraphs, while the most important representatives of the class, technically speaking, will be considered in other portions of this book, particularly in connection with the naphthalene group. The sulphonic acids of the amidoazo-bodies are of greater importance than the parent substances.

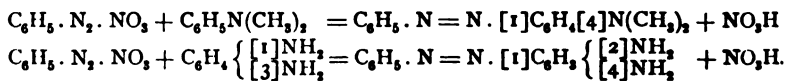
**Formation.**—(1) From diazoamido-compounds: *p*-amidoazobenzene is obtained from diazoamidobenzene. In the case of diazoamidobenzene this transposition occurs on standing with alcohol, but more readily by the action of a slight quantity of aniline hydrochloride.

This reaction only occurs readily if in the reacting diazoamido-compound the position in the benzene nucleus adjacent to the amido-group in the para place be unoccupied.

However, compounds, like diazoamido-*p*-toluene,  $CH_3[4]C_6H_4[1]N=N-NH[1']C_6H_4[4']CH_3$ , in which the *p*-position with reference to the imido-group is occupied by  $CH_3$ , also suffer this transposition. It occurs on heating diazoamido-*p*-toluene, dissolved in fused *p*-toluidine, to  $65^\circ$  with *p*-toluidine.

The amido-group of the resulting amido-azo-toluene occupies the *o*-position with reference to the diazo-group. It is *o*-amidoazotoluene or [4] *Methyl-benzene-azo-[4']-methyl-[2']-amidobenzene*,  $CH_3[4]C_6H_4[1]N=N[1']C_6H_3[4']CH_3[2']NH_2$  (B. 17, 77).

(2) By the action of the diazo-compounds (*a*) upon the tertiary aromatic amines, or (*b*) upon *m*-diamines in neutral or feebly acid solution (B. 10, 389, 654):



The first products with primary and secondary monamines, especially in neutral or acetic acid solution (B. 24, 2077), are diazoamido-compounds, which under the previously mentioned conditions are capable of rearranging themselves into amidoazo-derivatives.

The phenols act like the tertiary amines upon diazo-salts with the formation of oxyazo-derivatives, which will be discussed later after the amidophenols.

**Properties and Department.**—The amido-azo-compounds are usually crystalline, and generally dissolve readily in alcohol. They are yellow, red, or brown in color. Their salts with acids are the valuable technical amido-azo-dyes. (1) Their decomposition upon reduction and the great importance of this reaction have been previously dwelt upon (p. 113) (B. 21, 3471). Occasionally, decomposition such as this takes place on heating the bodies with hydrochloric acid (B. 17, 395). (2) Amido-azo-compounds may be changed to diazo-azo-derivatives with nitrous acid. *Isodihydrophen-tetrazines* may be obtained by reducing the diazo-salts of o-amido-azo-derivatives. (3) *Indulines* (see these) are produced on heating p-amido-azo-compounds with aniline hydrochloride, and *eurohodines* when o-amido-azo-bodies are employed. (4) When the o-amidoazo-compounds are oxidized they become *pseudoazimido*-derivatives. (5) The o-amido-azo-compounds combine with aldehydes. Condensation products result, which are derived from *dihydrophenotriazine* (see this).

Many chemists consider the o-amido-azo-compounds to be *quinon-imides*:  $C_6H_5NHN = C_6H_4 = NH$  or  $C_6H_5NHN - C_6H_4 - NH$  (B. 23, 497); compare o-azophenols.

**p-Amido-azobenzene**,  $C_6H_5 - N = N[1]C_6H_4[4]NH_2$ , consists of yellow leaflets or needles, melting at  $123^\circ$  and boiling undecomposed above  $360^\circ$ , but at  $225^\circ$  under 12 mm. It can be obtained from p-nitroazobenzene (p. 113), and is made technically by the rearrangement of diazoamidobenzene (p. 109) (B. 19, 1953; 21, 1633), which does not need to be isolated for this purpose. Manganese dioxide and sulphuric acid oxidize it to quinone. It breaks down into aniline and p-phenylenediamine upon reduction (p. 95). Its hydrochloride forms steel-blue needles and, like the oxalate, has been applied as a yellow dye. It is prepared in the coal-tar industry upon a large scale, and serves as the starting-out material for the manufacture of disazo-dyes and *indulines*. Although the salts of amidoazobenzene have not any importance as dyes, yet the sulphonic acids, *acid yellow* or *pure yellow* (p. 138), possess more valuable and desirable dyeing properties. p-Acetamido-azo-benzene melts at  $143^\circ$ .

m-Amidoazobenzene,  $C_6H_5N_2[1]C_6H_4[3]NH_2$ , melts at  $57^\circ$ ; its acet-derivative, melting at  $131^\circ$ , has been obtained from nitrosobenzene and acet-m-phenylenediamine (B. 28, R. 982).

**Benzene-azo-p-dimethylaniline**,  $C_6H_5N = N[1]C_6H_4[4]N(CH_3)_2$ , melts at  $116^\circ$ . **Benzene-azo-diphenylamine**, p-phenylamido- or p-anilido-azobenzene, melts at  $82^\circ$ . o-Amidoazotoluene,  $CH_3[2]C_6H_4[1]N = N[1']C_6H_5 - \{ \begin{smallmatrix} [3']CH_3 \\ [4']NH_2 \end{smallmatrix} \}$ , melting at  $100^\circ$ , is obtained from o-toluidine. m-Amido-azo-toluene,  $CH_3[3]C_6H_4[1]N = N[1']C_6H_5 - \{ \begin{smallmatrix} [2']CH_3 \\ [4']NH_2 \end{smallmatrix} \}$ , melts at  $80^\circ$ . m-Nitrobenzene-azo-p-amidobenzene melts at  $213^\circ$  (B. 29, R. 661).

2,4-Diamido-azo-benzene,  $C_6H_5 \cdot N_2 \cdot C_6H_4(NH_2)_2$ , is produced by the action of diazobenzene-nitrate upon meta-phenylenediamine, and consists of yellow needles melting at  $117^\circ$ . Its hydrochloric acid salt

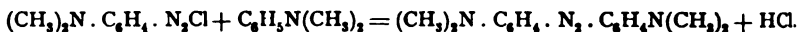
occurs in trade under the name *chrysoidine*, and dyes orange-red. Reduction changes it to aniline and unsymmetrical triamido-benzene,  $C_6H_7(NH_2)_3$  (p. 97).

Symmetrical p-Diamido-azo-benzene,  $H_2N \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot N_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot NH_2$ , has been prepared by reducing nitroacetanilide,  $NO_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot NH \cdot C_2H_5O$ , with zinc dust and alkali; also, from diazo-phenylenediamine, etc. (B. 18, 1145), and by the reduction of p-dinitro-azobenzene (see above) (B. 18, R. 628). It crystallizes from alcohol in yellow needles, melting at  $241^\circ$ .

Its tetra-alkylic derivatives are the so-called *Azylines*. They are formed when nitric oxide acts upon the tertiary anilines (B. 16, 2768):



and in the action of the diazo-compounds of dimethyl-p-phenylenediamine (p. 95) upon tertiary anilines (B. 18, 1143):



The azylines are red, basic dyes, which dissolve in hydrochloric acid with a purple-red and in acetic acid with an emerald-green color. By reduction (stannous chloride, tin, and hydrochloric acid) they yield two molecules of dialkyl p-phenylenediamine. They are decomposed when heated to  $100^\circ$  with alkyl iodides (4 molecules); the products in this case are tetra-alkylic para-phenylenediamines.

Triamido-azo-benzene,  $C_{12}H_{13}N_5 = H_2N \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot N_2 \cdot C_6H_3 \begin{smallmatrix} NH_2 \\ \diagup \\ NH_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ , is formed when nitrous acid acts upon metaphenylene-diamine. At first, by transformation of an amido-group, we obtain a diazo-compound, which further reacts on a second molecule of the diamine. It forms salts with one, two, and three equivalents of the acids; of these the diacid are the most stable, while water decomposes the triacid. Its hydrochloric acid salt, mixed with *Tetraamidophenylene-bis-azobenzene*,  $C_6H_5[N_2C_6H_3(NH_2)_2]_2$ , is commercial *Phenylene Brown* (Manchester-brown, Bismarck-brown), which is applied in dyeing cotton and coloring leather.

## 15. HYDRAZINE COMPOUNDS.

The simplest aromatic hydrazine derivatives are: *Phenylhydrazine*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot NH \cdot NH_2$ ; unsym.-*Diphenylhydrazine*,  $(C_6H_5)_2N \cdot NH_2$ , and sym.-*Diphenylhydrazine*,  $C_6H_5NH \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_5$ , or *hydrazobenzene*.

Phenylhydrazine and unsym.-diphenylhydrazine both contain an  $NH_2$ -group. They show similar reactions in many respects, whereas the symmetrical diphenylhydrazine departs itself rather peculiarly. In the following paragraphs sym.-diphenylhydrazine and its homologues, the *hydrazo-compounds*, the hydrazine derivatives longest known, will be placed at the head of the aromatic hydrazines. The hydrazo-compounds arrange themselves with the previously discussed azo-bodies, with which they possess many intimate connections. Then will follow the mono-phenyl- and the unsym.-diphenylhydrazine group.

**Hydrazo-compounds.**—Symmetrical diphenylhydrazine was discovered in 1863 by A. W. Hofmann upon reducing azobenzene with care, and inasmuch as it differed from the last compound in containing two hydrogen atoms more, it was called *hydrazobenzene*, a name which has adhered to symmetrical diphenylhydrazine.

**Formation.**—Azobenzene and allied compounds yield hydrazobenzene upon reducing them with alcoholic ammonium sulphide, with zinc dust, and with potassium or sodium amalgam. It is not necessary to isolate the azo-body; the proper nitro- and azoxy-derivatives can be treated with zinc dust and sodium hydroxide. Nitro-compounds can also be converted in alkaline solution into hydrazo-derivatives by electrolytic reduction (Ch. Ztg. 17, 129, 209).

**Hydrazo-benzene**, sym.-*Diphenylhydrazine*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot NH \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $131^\circ$ , decomposes at higher temperatures into azo-benzene and aniline. It is readily soluble in alcohol and ether, and crystallizes in colorless plates or leaflets, insoluble in water. It has an odor resembling that of camphor. When its alcoholic solution is exposed to the air, it oxidizes to azo-benzene.

It is an indifferent body, and does not form salts with acids, but concentrated mineral acids occasion in it an interesting transposition. See below, *benzidine* and *semidine* rearrangement.

Powerful reducing agents decompose hydrazobenzene into two molecules of aniline.

Hydrazobenzene yields urea-derivatives with phenylisocyanate (B. 23, 490) and with phenyl mustard oil (B. 25, 3115); with benzaldehyde it forms *diphenylhydrazibenzylene* or *benzhydrazoln*,  $C_6H_5CH \begin{smallmatrix} N \cdot C_6H_5 \\ N \cdot C_6H_5 \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $55^\circ$  (B. 19, 2239).

*Monacetyl-hydrazobenzene* melts at  $159^\circ$ . *Diacetyl-hydrazobenzene* melts at  $105^\circ$  (B. 17, 379; A. 207, 327).

o-, m-, and p-*Methyl-hydrazobenzene* or sym. o-, m-, and p-*Tolylphenylhydrazine* melt at  $101^\circ$ ,  $60^\circ$ , and  $86^\circ$ .

sym.-*Hydrazotoluenes*,  $CH_3 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot NH \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_3$ .

The *ortho*-compound melts at  $165^\circ$ ; the *meta* is liquid (A. 207, 116), and the *para* melts at  $124^\circ$  (B. 9, 829).

**Hydrazoxylenes** (B. 21, 3141).

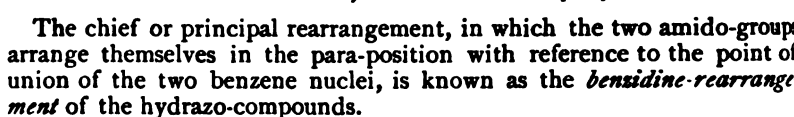
sym.-*Dihalogen hydrazobenzenes* have been obtained from the corresponding azo-bodies. p-Diamidohydrazobenzene, *diphenine*,  $NH_2[4]C_6H_4[1]NH \cdot NH[1']C_6H_4[4']NH_2$ , melting at  $145^\circ$ , results from the action of ammonium sulphide upon para-dinitro-azo-benzene (B. 18, 1136).

Unsymmetrical *nitrohydrazobenzenes* have been obtained from chlordinitro- and chlortrinitrobenzene by the action of phenylhydrazine (A. 190, 132; 253, 2; J. p. Ch. [2] 37, 345; 44, 67). Compare further asymmetrical polynitrodiphenylamines (p. 93).

**Tetraphenylhydrazine**,  $(C_6H_5)_2N - N(C_6H_5)_2$ , melting at  $147^\circ$ , results from the action of iodine upon diphenylamine sodium,  $(C_6H_5)_2NNa$  (B. 29, R. 87).

#### THE BENZIDINE AND SEMIDINE REARRANGEMENT OR TRANSPOSITION OF THE HYDRAZO-COMPOUNDS.

Hydrazobenzene sustains a very remarkable rearrangement into an isomeric compound when it is treated with acids. When azobenzene is reduced in acid solution, the hydrazobenzene which is produced does not form salts, but even in the cold is changed by mere contact with acids into a diamine, a diacid base: *benzidine* (see this) or p-*diamidodiphenyl*. Benzidine, a starting-out substance for the preparation of substantive cotton dyes, is prepared technically in the wet way. Diphenylene (see

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 \text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4]\text{NH}_2 & & \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH} & & \text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4]\text{NH}_2 \\
 | & \longleftarrow & | & \longrightarrow & | \\
 \text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4]\text{NH}_2 & & \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH} & & \text{C}_6\text{H}_4[2]\text{NH}_2 \\
 \text{Benzidine} & & \text{Hydrazobenzene} & & \text{Diphenylene.}
 \end{array}$$


Mineral acids convert sym.-o- and m-ditolyl hydrazine or o- and m-hydrazotoluenes and other hydrazo-compounds, in which the p-hydrogen atoms referred to the imide groups in both aromatic residues are free, into the corresponding *p*-diamido ditolyls or tolidines.

[illegible]

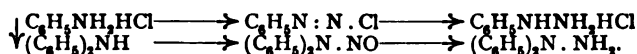
This is the *semidine rearrangement*; it is so called because only the one NH-group is converted into an NH<sub>2</sub>-group, and not both NH-groups, as in the *bensidine rearrangement*. In simple p-substituted hydrazobenzenes the amido-group can enter the o- or p-position with reference to the imido-group. Hence it is necessary to distinguish between an o- and p-*semidine* transposition.

Attention may here be directed to such transpositions in which anilines substituted at the nitrogen are converted, by the migration of the substituents, into anilines substituted in the nucleus. Usually, in these changes, compounds with feebly pronounced or neutral character yield more basic bodies. They are:

- $$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 \text{(1) } \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)\text{NO} & \text{(2) } \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}\cdot\text{NO}_2 & \text{(3) } \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}(\text{OH}) & \text{(4) } \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}(\text{NH}_2) & & & \\
 \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow & & & \\
 \text{NO}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{NH}(\text{CH}_3) & \text{NO}_2\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{NH}_2 & (\text{OH})\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{NH}_2 & \text{NH}_2\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{NH}_2 & & & \\
 \text{(5) } \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NHCl} & \text{(6) } \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}(\text{N}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) & \text{(7) } \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 & & & & \\
 \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow & & & & \\
 \text{Cl}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{NH}_2 & (\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{N})\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{NH}_2 & \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{NH}_2 & \text{NH}_2\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{NH}_2 & & & 
 \end{array}$$

Those instances in which carbon groups wander from nitrogen to the nucleus—*e. g.*, the rearrangement of the phenyl alkylamines into homologous anilines (p. 78), etc.—might also be included here. Compare also the transpositions of phenylsulphuric acid and phenylcarbonic acid into phenolsulphonic acid and salicylic acid (p. 147).

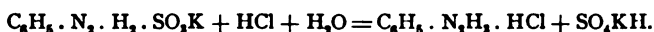
**Phenylhydrazine Group.**—Phenylhydrazine and unsym.-diphenylhydrazine are formed in the reduction of diazobenzene salts and diphenylnitrosamine, as well as from the reaction products produced when nitrous acid acts upon primary and secondary anilines :



**Formation.**—1. *By the reduction of diazo-salts :* (a) By the action of acid alkaline sulphites upon the diazo-derivatives. On allowing neutral potassium sulphite to act upon the yellow-colored potassium salt of diazobenzene-sulphonic acid, when colorless potassium benzene hydrazine-sulphonate will be formed immediately :



When the sulphonate is heated with hydrochloric acid, phenylhydrazine hydrochloride is produced, together with primary potassium sulphate :



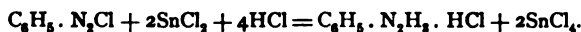
The *sulphazides*—*e. g.*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5.\text{NH}.\text{NH}.\text{SO}_2.\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , *phenyl-benzene sulphazide*—are prepared by the action of free sulphurous acid upon the acid solution of diazobenzene salts.

p-Nitrodiazobenzene nitrate and two molecules of potassium sulphite yield potassium p-nitrophenylhydrazine disulphonate,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NO}_2)\text{N}(\text{SO}_3\text{K})\text{NH}(\text{SO}_3\text{K})$ , which hydrochloric acid decomposes quantitatively into p-nitrophenylhydrazine.

In the same manner dipotassium sulphite changes potassium benzene diazosulphonate into potassium phenylhydrazine disulphonate,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}(\text{SO}_3\text{K})\text{NH}(\text{SO}_3\text{K})$ , which can be more easily obtained from nitrosoacetanilide and dipotassium sulphite (p. 98). It is resolved by hydrochloric acid into phenylhydrazine and sulphuric acid, and decomposed by alkali into potassium benzene diazosulphonate (B. 30, 374).

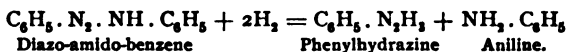
(b) Potassium diazobenzene sulphonate can be reduced with acetic acid and zinc dust.

(c) By the action of stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid upon the diazo-chlorides (B. 16, 2976 ; 17, 572) :



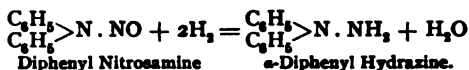
Diazobenzene alkali salts (p. 102), when reduced with sodium amalgam furnish a good yield of phenylhydrazine (B. 30, 339).

2. By the reduction of diazo-amido-compounds in alcoholic solution with zinc dust and acetic acid, when they decompose into anilines and hydrazines :



3. By the reduction of the nitroso-amines (pp. 97 and 120) with zinc dust and acetic

acid, unsym.-alkylphenyl- or diphenyl-hydrazines are then formed, and the aliphatic hydrazines are obtained in a similar manner (I, 171):



*Historical.*—A. Strecker and Römer, in 1871, obtained potassium phenylhydrazine sulphonate by the interaction of diazobenzene nitrate and acid potassium sulphite, and when the same reagent was allowed to act upon the diazide of sulphanilic acid (p. 137) they got a soluble potassium salt, which, boiled with hydrochloric acid, yielded crystalline phenylhydrazine-p-sulphonic acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{c} [1] \text{NH} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \\ [4] \text{SO}_3\text{H} \end{array} \right.$ , the first primary aromatic hydra-

zine compound, which must be viewed as a cyclic ammonium salt:  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{c} [1] \text{NH}-\text{NH}_2 \\ [4] \text{SO}_3- \end{array} \right.$ . Emil Fischer, in 1875, demonstrated that potassium phenylhydrazine sulphonate was converted, on boiling with hydrochloric acid, into phenylhydrazine hydrochloride, from which sodium hydroxide liberated phenylhydrazine, an exceedingly reactive substance (B. 8, 589).

*Properties.*—The aromatic hydrazines are monacid bases, dissolving with difficulty in water, but easily in alcohol and in ether. At the ordinary pressure they boil with slight decomposition and without decomposition under diminished pressure. In the air they oxidize very readily, taking on a brown color. They reduce Fehling's solution.

**Phenylhydrazine**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH} \cdot \text{NH}_2$ , forms plate-like crystals melting at  $23^\circ$ . It boils under 760 mm. at  $241-242^\circ$  with slight decomposition, and under 12 mm. pressure at  $120^\circ$  without decomposition. Its specific gravity at  $21^\circ$  equals 1.091. It is made, as already described under general methods of formation, by the reduction of diazobenzene chloride. Its transpositions are given below. It has, as a generator of *antipyrine*, met with wide application. It serves as an important reagent for the detection of aldehydes and ketones. The latter observation has become of particular importance in the development of the chemistry of the carbohydrates.

Its *hydrochloride*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{HCl}$ , consists of brilliant, white leaflets, dissolving with difficulty in concentrated hydrochloric acid. When it is heated to  $200^\circ$  with hydrochloric acid it yields p-phenylenediamine. For its salts with carboxylic acids consult B. 27, 1521.

Metallic sodium dissolves in phenylhydrazine, forming the sodium derivative,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{NNa} \cdot \text{NH}_2$ . This is a yellowish red, amorphous mass.

Alkyls and acid residues can replace the sodium, thus producing  $\alpha$ -phenylhydrazine derivatives (p. 127) (B. 19, 2448; 22, R. 604). *Potassium phenylhydrazine* (B. 20, 47).

*Substituted Phenylhydrazines* (A. 248, 94; B. 22, 2801, 2809).—p-*Chlorphenylhydrazine* melts at  $83^\circ$ . p-*Bromphenylhydrazine* melts at  $106^\circ$ . p-*Iodphenylhydrazine* melts at  $103^\circ$ . o-*Nitrophenylhydrazine* forms brilliant red needles, melting at  $90^\circ$  (B. 27, 2549).

o-*Nitro-s-formylphenylhydrazide* melts at  $177^\circ$  (B. 22, 2804). For the formation of hetero-rings from these nitro-bodies, see p. 122. p-*Nitrophenylhydrazine* melts at  $157^\circ$  (B. 29, 1831).

**Homologous Phenylhydrazines.**—o-Tolyl-hydrazine melts at  $59^\circ$ . m-Tolyl-hydrazine is liquid. p-Tolyl-hydrazine melts at  $61^\circ$ . Pseudocumyl-hydrazine (A. 212, 338; B. 18, 91, 3175; 22, 834).

Unsymmetrical diphenylhydrazine,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{N} \cdot \text{NH}_2$ , melting at  $34^\circ$  and boiling at

220° (50 mm.), is made by reducing diphenyl nitrosamine (p. 98). It forms sparingly soluble diphenylhydrazones with glucoses. Ferric chloride oxidizes it to tetraphenyltetrazone (p. 131).

*Behavior of the Phenylhydrazines.*—(1) While the phenylhydrazines are pretty stable toward reducing agents, they may be readily reconverted into diazo-compounds by moderated oxidation; this is effected by the action of mercuric oxide upon their sulphates or sulphonates.

When boiled with copper sulphate or ferric chloride, the phenylhydrazines throw off nitrogen and become benzenes—this reaction will also serve for the replacement of the diazo-group by hydrogen and by the halogens if the free phenylhydrazine be replaced by chlorine, bromine, or iodine (B. 18, 90, 786; 25, 1074). The liberated nitrogen also answers for the quantitative estimation of the hydrazines.

The phenylhydrazines also reduce Fehling's solution (B. 26, R. 234). Consult B. 28, R. 996; 29, R. 977, for additional reduction reactions with phenylhydrazine.

(2) Sodium liberates hydrogen, and  $\alpha$ -sodium phenylhydrazines result.

(3) Nitrous acid converts the phenylhydrazines into nitrosohydrazines (p. 131).

(4) The alkylogens replace imido- and amido-hydrogen in the phenylhydrazines, finally forming phenylhydrazonium compounds.

(5) The aldehydes and ketones combine with the phenylhydrazines, usually with the immediate separation of water and formation of *phenylhydrazones*. This reaction, like the oxime formation, is characteristic of the aldehydes and ketones.

(6) Acid radicals can also be readily introduced into the phenylhydrazines.

(7) When the phenylhydrazines are heated to 200° with fuming hydrochloric acid, they are transposed into paraphenylenediamines (see p. 118, and B. 28, 1538).

*Phenylalkyl Hydrazines.*—The  $\alpha$ -derivatives are termed *symmetrical*, the  $\beta$ -compounds *unsymmetrical* alkylphenylhydrazines. *Formation*: (1) Both isomerides are produced by the action of alkyl bromides upon phenylhydrazine (A. 199, 325; B. 17, 2844). (2) The  $\beta$ -class is also obtained by the reduction of the corresponding mixed azo-bodies (p. 112). (3) The  $\alpha$ -derivatives are obtained by the action of ethyl bromide upon sodium phenylhydrazine (B. 19, 2450, 22, R. 664; (4) by reduction of the corresponding nitrosamines (p. 97) with zinc dust; (5) by treating  $\beta$ -acetphenylhydrazine,  $C_6H_5NH.NH.CO.CH_3$ , with halogen compounds, and saponifying with boiling, dilute acids (B. 26, 946).

$\alpha$ -Methyl-phenylhydrazine,  $C_6H_5.N(CH_3).NH_2$ , melting at 131° (35 mm.), rearranges itself to methyl-p-phenylenediamine.

$\alpha$ -Ethyl-phenyl hydrazine,  $C_6H_5.NH.NH(C_2H_5)$ , boils at 231°. Both compounds are oxidized to *tetrazones* (p. 131).

The  $\alpha$ -ethyl compound unites with ethyl bromide to form  $C_6H_5.N(C_2H_5)_2.Br.NH_2$ , which by reduction yields diethyl-aniline.

$\alpha$ -Ethylene Phenylhydrazine,  $C_6H_5N < \begin{smallmatrix} NH_2 & NH_2 \\ CH_2 & -CH_2 \end{smallmatrix} N.C_6H_5$ , melts at 90° (B. 21, 3203).

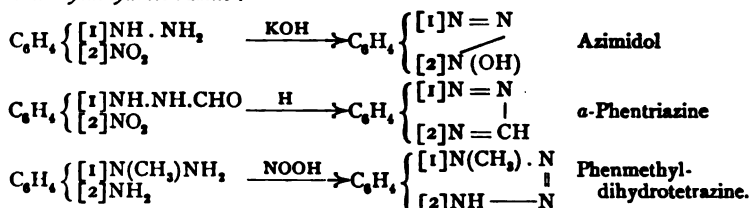
$\beta$ -Methyl-phenyl hydrazine and  $\beta$ -Ethyl-phenyl hydrazine are colorless oils, oxidizing on exposure to air to benzene-azo-methane and -ethane (p. 113), from which they can be obtained by reduction. The  $\beta$ -body can also be produced from *antipyrine* by boiling it with alcoholic potash (B. 25, 771).

*β-Allyl-phenyl hydrazine* boils at 177° (110 mm.) (B. 22, 2233).

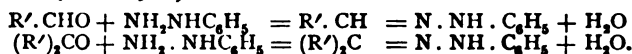
The *di-* and *tri-alkyl phenylhydrazines* are formed by letting alkyl iodides act upon the sodium derivative of *α-methyl-phenyl-formyl hydrazine*,  $C_6H_5N(CH_3)NNa \cdot CHO$ , and then splitting off the formyl group with fuming hydrochloric acid.

Dialkyl phenylhydrazines, by the action of alkyl iodides, are converted into quaternary *azonium* derivatives—*e. g.*,  $C_6H_5N(CH_3)_2I \cdot NH \cdot CH_3$ —together with trialkyl phenylhydrazines. *αβ-Dimethyl-phenyl hydrazine*,  $C_6H_5N(CH_3)_2NH \cdot CH_3$ , boils at 93° (7 mm.); *phenyl-trimethyl hydrazine* boils at 93° (8 mm.) (B. 27, 696). *unsym.-o-Amido-phenyl-methyl hydrazine*,  $NH_2[2]C_6H_4[1]N(CH_3)NH_2$ , is an oil which rapidly changes to a resin. It is produced upon reducing *o*-nitro-nitrosomethylaniline with alcoholic ammonium sulphide.

*Hetero-ring Formations from o-substitution derivatives of phenylhydrazine.* *Azimidol* results on boiling *o*-nitrophenylhydrazine with caustic alkali. *α-Phentriazine* is produced by reducing the formyl derivative of *o*-nitrophenylhydrazine with sodium amalgam and acetic acid. *unsym.-o-Amido-phenyl-methyl hydrazine* is converted by nitrous acid into *phen-methyldihydrotetrazine*:

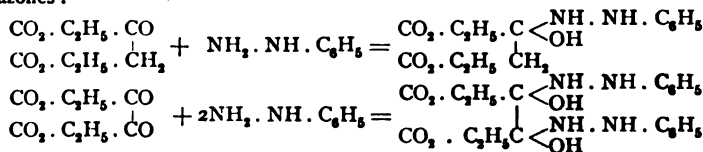


**Phenylhydrazones.**—Just as the aldehydes and ketones form oximes with hydroxylamine, so they combine to *phenylhydrazones* with phenylhydrazine. The compounds derived from the aldehydes are termed *aldehydehydrazones* (A. 247, 194 Anm.), and those from the ketones are the *ketohydrazones*, while the dihydrazones of the *α*-dicarbonyl-derivatives are the *osazones* (B. 21, 984):



The osazone formation has become very important for the chemistry of the sugars (see I, 546).

The phenylhydrazone formation is usually supposed to consist first in the production of an addition product, corresponding in its constitution to aldehyde ammonia. In a few instances—*e. g.*, with oxaloacetic ester and dioxosuccinic ester—it has been possible to isolate the addition products, which split off water with ease and pass into phenylhydrazones:

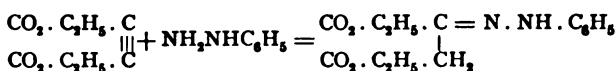


That dioxosuccinic ester yields an addition product argues for the aldehyde-ammonia constitution, and against the view possible with oxaloacetic ester, that it is an ammonium salt corresponding to the formula  $CO_2 \cdot C_2H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH(NH_2 \cdot NHC_6H_5) \cdot CO_2 \cdot C_2H_5$  (A. 295, 339).

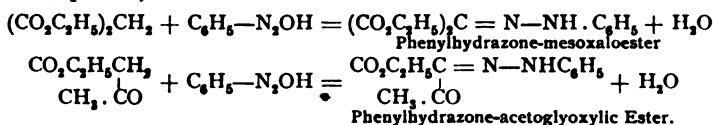
As the phenylhydrazones are characteristic for bodies containing the aldehyde and ketone groups, it was but natural that they should have been frequently mentioned in connection with the aliphatic derivatives, and will also be again met with later in con-

nection with the aromatic compounds in which aldehyde and ketone groups are present. It seems, however, advisable to refer briefly to the aliphatic phenylhydrazone derivatives. The following have received mention in the first volume of this work: Phenylhydrazones of the simple aldehydes; of the simple ketones; of the diketones; of glyoxylic acid; of pyroracemic acid; of acetoacetic ester; of lævulinic acid; of mesoxal-aldehyde; of acetone oxalic ester; of mesoxalic acid; of oxalacetic ester; of acetone dicarboxylic ester; of acetone diacetic acid; of tetroses; of oxalyldiacetone; of dioxosuccinic acid; of oxalosuccinic ester; of arabinose; of rhamnose; of the glucoses; of milk sugar; of maltose and isomaltose.

*Formation of the Phenylhydrazones.*—(1) By the action of phenylhydrazine and unsym.-alkylphenyl or unsym.-diphenyl-hydrazine upon aldehydes and ketones (see above). (2) By the addition of phenylhydrazine to trebly linked carbon atoms; the phenylhydrazone of oxalo-acetic ester is also produced by the addition of phenylhydrazine to acetylene dicarboxylic ester:

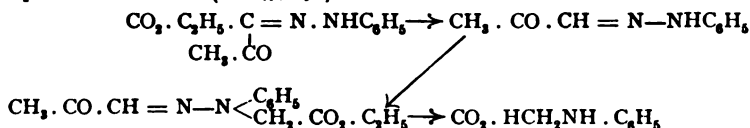


(3) By the interaction of diazobenzene salts and many aliphatic bodies, containing hydrogen atoms readily replaceable by alkali metals—*e. g.*, malonic ester and acetoacetic ester in alkaline solution (potassium diazobenzene, p. 102):

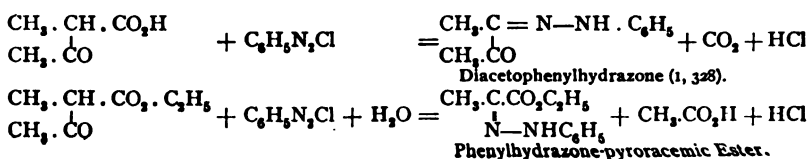


The body obtained from diazobenzene and malonic ester is identical with that derived from mesoxalic ester and phenylhydrazine. The idea that these bodies are hydrazones has been proved, among other ways, in the following manner:

(1) Dilute caustic alkali saponifies the phenylhydrazone of acetoglyoxylic ester, and breaks down the acid into carbon dioxide and pyroracemic aldehyde-hydrazone. (2) The latter compound, acted upon with chloracetic ester and sodium ethylate, yields an ester from which anilidoacetic acid is obtained by reduction. This could only be possible if the chloracetic acid residue was joined to the same N-atom, with which the phenyl group had been attached (A. 247, 190):



The tendency to phenylhydrazone formation is so great that diazobenzene chloride expels carbon dioxide from alkylacetoacetic esters and the acetyl group from alkylic acetoacetic esters, with the production of the phenylhydrazone of an  $\alpha$ -diketone and phenylhydrazones of  $\alpha$ -ketone carboxylic esters respectively:



Nitrous acid acts similarly with formation of oximes (vol. 1). (3) Phenylhydrazine converts the monoximes of  $\alpha$ -aldehyde ketones and  $\alpha$ -diketones into *hydrazoximes*: thus, methylglyoxaloxime yields *methylglyoxalphenylhydrazoxime*,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} = (\text{N} - \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5) \cdot \text{CH} = \text{NOH}$ , melting at  $134^\circ$  (A. 262, 278).

*Transpositions of the Phenylhydrazones*.—The phenylhydrazones are resolved into their original components on digesting them with dilute mineral acids. By carefully moderated reduction many phenylhydrazones have been converted into phenylhydrazides (see phenylhydrazido-acetic acid, p. 126; B. 28, 1223); consult B. 30, 736, upon the oxidation of phenylhydrazones.

Very few classes of organic compounds are capable of entering into the formation of heterocyclic bodies to the extent manifested by the hydrazine derivatives, whose intramolecular condensation reactions are, therefore, of the utmost importance in the development of the chemistry of ring-systems containing nitrogen. Some of the most important condensations have been met in connection with the phenylhydrazones of the fatty compounds, and will be again given in condensed form, while others will receive mention at the conclusion of the acid hydrazides.

(1) *Indols* result upon heating the phenylhydrazones of aldehydes, ketones, and ketonic acids with zinc chloride, stannous chloride, or mineral acids.

(2) *Osoetrazones* are produced when the osazones or  $\alpha$ -diphenylhydrazones of  $\alpha$ -dialdehydes,  $\alpha$ -aldehyde-ketones, and  $\alpha$ -diketones are oxidized.

(3) Boiling acids change the  $\alpha$ -osazones and osotetrazones to *osotriazoles*.

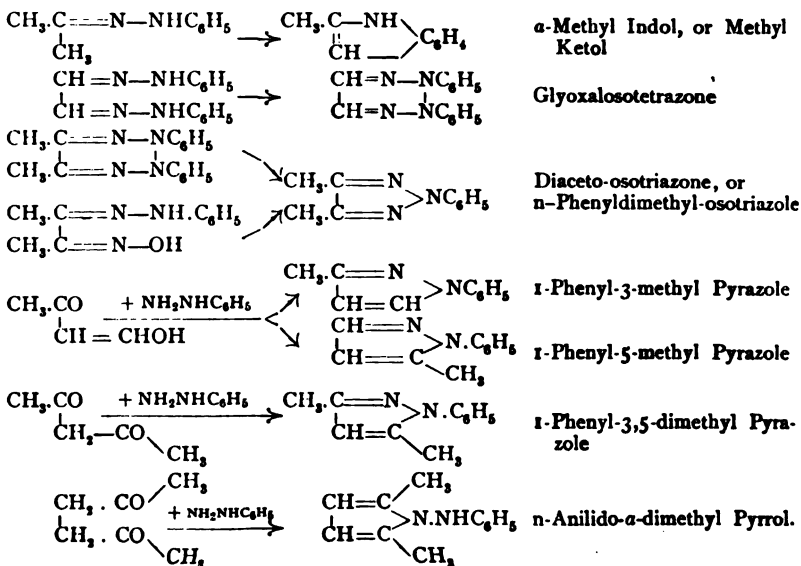
(4) Dehydrating agents convert  $\alpha$ -hydrazoximes into *osotriazoles*.

(5) *Pyrazoles* result from the phenylhydrazones of the 1,3-oxymethylene ketones and  $\beta$ -diketones by the exit of water; they are ring-shaped, nitrogen derivatives of the 1,3-olefine ketones.

(6) The phenylhydrazones of 1,4-diketones rearrange themselves into *n-anilidopyrrols*.

In preparing ring-shaped condensation products of the hydrazones the latter have frequently not been isolated, but simply worked over.

The following scheme represents the hetero-ring-formations possible with the phenylhydrazones:



PHENYLHYDRAZINE DERIVATIVES OF INORGANIC ACIDS.

**Thionyl Phenylhydrazone**,  $C_6H_5NH \cdot N = SO$ , melting at  $105^\circ$ , consists of sulphur-yellow colored prisms. It is obtained, like the *thionyl alkylamines* (I, p. 170) and *thionyl anilines* (p. 80), by the interaction of thionyl chloride and phenylhydrazine. All phenylhydrazines having a free amido-group yield thionyl phenylhydrazones when acted upon with thionyl chloride (B. 27, 2549). Thionyl phenylhydrazone is more easily produced when thionyl aniline acts upon phenylhydrazine. Further, it results upon gently digesting *phenylhydrazine sulphinic acid*,  $C_6H_5NH \cdot NH \cdot SOOH$ , obtained from sulphur dioxide and phenylhydrazine (B. 23, 474). Thionyl chloride, acetyl chloride, and other acid chlorides rearrange thionyl phenylhydrazine into *diazobenzene chloride*, in that it reacts as if it were *diazobenzene sulphoxide* (p. 100),  $C_6H_5N = N \cdot S(OH)$  (A. 270, 114).

**Phenylhydrazine Sulphonic Acid**,  $C_6H_5NH \cdot NH \cdot SO_3H$ .—The potassium salt is formed in the reduction of potassium benzene-diazosulphonate with sulphurous acid or monalkali sulphites. Consult p. 120 for the behavior of the potassium salt toward mineral acids, and the rôle it plays in the history of the discovery of phenylhydrazine.

**p-Nitrophenylhydrazine Disulphonic Acid**,  $C_6H_4(NO_2)N(SO_3H)NH(SO_3H)$ .—Its *dipotassium salt* consists of sulphur-yellow needles, formed on adding an excess of a sulphite solution to nitro-diazo-benzene ester, nitrate, or isodiazobenzene potassium. Hydrochloric acid resolves it into p-nitrophenylhydrazine, and it dissolves in an excess of potash to a red *tripotassium salt*,  $C_6H_4(NO_2)N(SO_3K)NK(SO_3K)$  (B. 29, 1830).

**Phenylbenzene Sulphazide**,  $C_6H_5NH \cdot NH \cdot SO_2C_6H_5$ , melts with decomposition at  $148-150^\circ$ . It is formed from phenylhydrazine and benzene sulphochloride in ethereal solution, as well as from a diazobenzene salt solution by the action of sulphur dioxide (p. 120) (B. 20, 1238). See A. 270, 123, for the action of  $PCl_5$ ,  $POCl_3$ ,  $PSCl_5$ ,  $AsCl_3$ ,  $BCl_3$ ,  $SiCl_4$  upon phenylhydrazine.

**Carboxylic Acid Derivatives of Phenylhydrazine**.—Acid residues of the most varied character can be as readily introduced into phenylhydrazine, and generally by the same methods, as into aniline. The domain of the bodies thus won from phenylhydrazine is scarcely less extensive than that of the acid derivatives of aniline, and in the multiplicity of phenomena really surpasses it.

The acid hydrazides and the hydrazido-acids have shown themselves to be as well adapted as the phenylhydrazones for the formation of heterocyclic derivatives. Each group of carboxylic derivatives of phenylhydrazine will be followed by the most important hetero-ring formations, arranged in tabular form, which will later be discussed in a different connection in the section devoted to "heterocyclic compounds."

The *amidrazones* and *formazyl derivatives* will receive attention at the conclusion of the simpler carboxylic derivatives of phenylhydrazine.

**Fatty Acid Derivatives**.—The fatty acid residues enter the amido-group of phenylhydrazine very readily with the production of sym.- or  $\beta$ -acydyl compounds. The unsym.- or  $\alpha$ -acydyl-compounds are made (1) by the action of acid chlorides or anhydrides upon sodium phenylhydrazine (B. 22, R. 664); (2) by action of suitable haloid derivatives upon  $\beta$ -acetylphenylhydrazine, and subsequent splitting-off of the  $\beta$ -acet-group on boiling with dilute sulphuric acid, when the group occupying the  $\alpha$ -position will not be attacked (B. 26, 945).

The sym.-phenylhydrazides, treated with ferric chloride and concentrated sulphuric acid, yield reddish to bluish violet colors, whereas the unsym.-bodies are not colored (B. 27, 2965, Bülow's reaction).

sym.-*Formylphenylhydrazide*,  $C_6H_5NH \cdot NH \cdot CHO$ , from formic acid and phenylhydrazine, melts at  $145^\circ$  (B. 27, 1522; 28, R. 764).

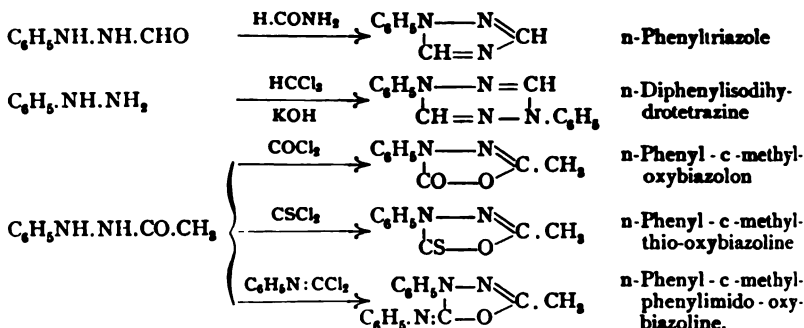
unsym.- or  $\alpha$ -*Acetylphenylhydrazide*,  $C_6H_5N(COCH_3)NH_2$ , from  $\alpha\beta$ -diacetylphenyl-

hydrazine on heating with dilute sulphuric acid, melts at  $124^{\circ}$  (B. 27, 2964). sym.- or  $\beta$ -Acetphenylhydrazide,  $C_6H_5NH \cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$ , melting at  $128^{\circ}$ , is obtained from phenylhydrazine with acetic anhydride, or upon boiling with glacial acetic acid (A. 190, 129).  $\alpha\beta$ -Diacetphenylhydrazide,  $C_6H_5N(CO \cdot CH_3)NH \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$ , melting at  $106^{\circ}$ , results when acetyl chloride acts upon potassium phenylhydrazine in ethereal solution (B. 20, 47).

*Hetero-ring Formations of the Fatty Acid Phenylhydrazide Derivatives :*

n-Phenyltriazole results when formylphenylhydrazide is heated with formamide (B. 27, R. 801). n-Diphenylisodihydrotetrazine is also a formic acid derivative of phenylhydrazine: It results from the action of chloroform and caustic potash upon phenylhydrazine (compare action of chloroform and caustic potash upon primary amines: I, 236, and II, 84, isonitriles or carbylamines).

The sym.- or  $\beta$ -acydylphenylhydrazides, treated with phosgene, thiophosgene, and isocyanphenyl chloride, yield heterocyclic compounds—the oxybiazoline derivatives (B. 26, 2870), which can also be regarded as derivatives of carbonic acid :



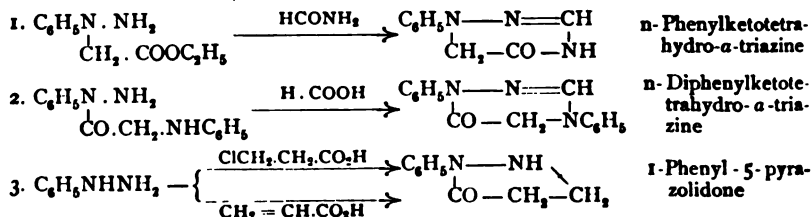
**Alcohol Acid Derivatives of Phenylhydrazine.**—sym.-Phenylhydrazidoacetic acid,  $C_6H_5NH \cdot NH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$ , melts at  $158^{\circ}$ ; see vol. I, 360. unsym.-Phenylhydrazidoacetic acid,  $C_6H_5N(NH_2)CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $167^{\circ}$ , is obtained by the careful saponification of its liquid ethyl ester, the reduction product from nitrosophenylglycin ester,  $C_6H_5N(NO) \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2 \cdot C_2H_5$  (B. 28, 1223); its phenylhydrazide, melting at  $178^{\circ}$ , is formed from chloracetamide and phenylhydrazine (B. 29, 622).

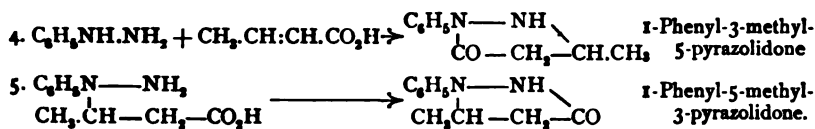
$\beta$ -Phenylhydrazido- $\beta$ -propionic Ester,  $C_6H_5N(NH_2)CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2 \cdot C_2H_5$ , boiling at  $175^{\circ}$  (9 mm.), is obtained from nitroso- $\beta$ -anilidopropionic ester (B. 29, 515).

$\beta$ -Phenylhydrazido- $\beta$ -butyric Acid,  $C_6H_5N(NH_2) \cdot CH(CH_3)CH_2COOH$ , from  $\beta$ -chlorbutyric ester and phenylhydrazine, melts at  $111^{\circ}$  (J. pr. Ch. 45, 87).

**Hetero-ring Formations of the Phenylhydrazido-acids.**—(1) Unsymmetrical phenylhydrazido-acetic ester condenses with formamide to phenylketodihydro-a-triazine. (2) n-Diphenylketodihydro-a-triazine (see below) is similarly obtained from unsym.-anilido-acetic acid-a-phenylhydrazide,  $C_6H_5N(NH_2)CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot NHC_6H_5$ .

The phenylhydrazido-carboxylic acids (3, 4, 5) corresponding to the  $\beta$ -oxyacids show such readiness to anhydride (pyrazolidone- or lactasam-) formation that frequently it is impossible to isolate them :

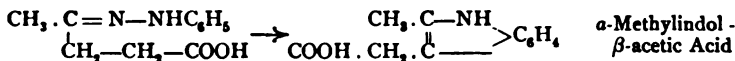




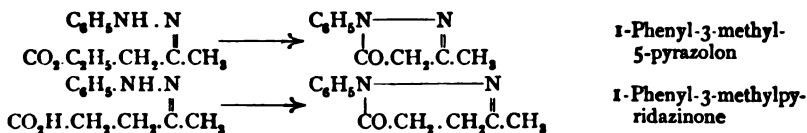
**Phenylhydrazine Derivatives of the Mono-ketonic Acids.**—The  $\alpha$ -,  $\beta$ -, and  $\gamma$ -ketone carboxylic esters react with phenylhydrazine, forming phenylhydrazones, just as the ketones do. The phenylhydrazones of  $\alpha$ - and  $\gamma$ -ketone carboxylic acids are known. Zinc chloride or concentrated sulphuric acid rearranges the phenylhydrazones of the  $\alpha$ -,  $\beta$ -, and  $\gamma$ -ketone carboxylic acids into indol derivatives (compare indol formation of the ketone phenylhydrazones, p. 124). The phenylhydrazones of the  $\beta$ - and  $\gamma$ -ketone carboxylic esters and of the free  $\gamma$ -ketone carboxylic esters manifest great tendency to the lactazam formation. *Lavulinic-phenylhydrazone* (1, 360) yields *1-phenyl-3-methylpyridazinone* (see this), and under other conditions  *$\alpha$ -methylindol- $\beta$ -acetic acid*. *Acetoacetic Ester Phenylhydrazone*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH.N}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $50^\circ$ , is formed on adding acetoacetic ester to phenylhydrazine (B. 27, R. 793), and spontaneously forms *1-phenyl-3-methylpyrazolon* (see this); whereas with acetyl chloride or excessive hydrochloric acid it yields *1-phenyl-3-methyl-5-ethoxypyrazole* (see this).

#### Hetero-ring Formations of the Phenylhydrazone-ketonic Acids.

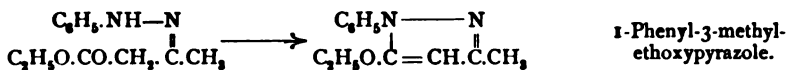
1. *Indol condensation* (see p. 124):



2. *Lactazam formation*:



3. *Pyrazole formation*:



**Phenylhydrazine Derivatives of Carbonic Acid.**—*Phenylhydrazine Phenylcarbazinate*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH.NH.COONH}_2\text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5$ , is produced on saturating an aqueous emulsion of phenylhydrazine with carbonic acid. It is a white crystalline mass (B. 190, 123). *Ethyl Phenylcarbazinate*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NHNHCOOC}_2\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $86^\circ$ , is produced when chlorcarbonic ester acts upon an ethereal phenylhydrazine solution. When it is heated to  $240^\circ$  it loses alcohol and becomes *diphenylurazine* (A. 263, 278; B. 26, R. 20). *unsym.-Phenylhydrasido-formic Ester*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}(\text{NH}_2)\text{CO} \cdot \text{OC}_2\text{H}_5$ , is an oil, obtained from its *acet*-derivative, which results from the interaction of acetphenylhydrazine and chlorformic ester (B. 29, 829).

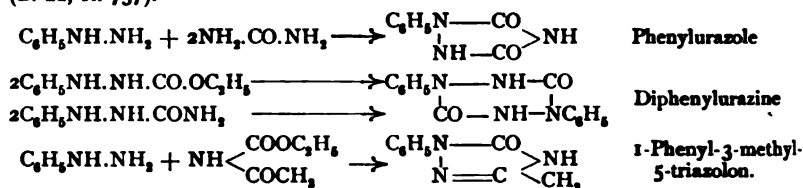
*Phenylsemicarbaside*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH.NH.CONH}_2$ , melting at  $172^\circ$ , is obtained from phenylhydrazine salts and potassium cyanate (A. 190, 113), or upon heating phenylhydrazine with urea or urethane. When heated it becomes phenylurazole and diphenylurazine, with the formation of  $\text{CO}$ ,  $\text{CO}_2$ ,  $\text{NH}_3$ , and benzene (B. 21, 1224). Phenylsemicarbaside, like *sym.-acetphenylhydrazine* (p. 125), is transposed by  $\text{COCl}_2$ ,  $\text{CSCl}_2$ , and  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{NCCl}_2$  into *oxybisazolon*-derivatives (B. 26, 2870). It forms benzeneazocarbonamide when its *nitroso*-compound (p. 131) is oxidized.

*Diphenylcarbaside*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH.NH})_2\text{CO}$ , melting at  $151^\circ$ , results upon heating urethane with phenylhydrazine (B. 20, 3372) (compare B. 29, R. 982). A dicarbox-

ethylidiphenylcarbazide,  $(C_6H_5NCO, C_6H_5 \cdot NH)_2CO$ , melting at  $19^\circ$ , results from the action of  $COCl_2$  upon unsym.-phenylhydrazidoformic ester (B. 29, 829).

**Cyclic Urea and Carbamic Acid Derivatives:** Phenylurazole is produced on heating phenylsemicarbazide, or phenylhydrazine hydrochloride with urea, or biuret with phenylhydrazine. Diphenylurazine results upon heating ethylphenylcarbazinate and phenylsemicarbazide (A. 263, 582).

1-Phenyl-3-methyl-5-triazolon is obtained from acetyl urethane and phenylhydrazine (B. 22, R. 737).



**Phenylhydrazine Derivatives of Thiocarbamic Acid.**—On mixing an ethereal solution of phenylhydrazine with carbon disulphide, Phenylhydrazine Phenylsulphocarbazine,  $C_6H_5NH \cdot NH \cdot CSSNH_2.NHC_6H_5$ , results. It melts at  $96^\circ$ . Mineral acids liberate the acid from solutions of salts of phenylsulphocarbazine. It separates in delicate, shining leaflets, which readily oxidize to the corresponding disulphide (A. 190, 114). When the potassium salt of the acid is treated with  $COCl_2$ ,  $CS_2$ , and ethylene bromide, the products are: n-phenylthiobiazolonsulphydrate, n-phenyldithiobiazoline sulphydrate, and n-phenylthiopentahydrodiazthine (B. 27, 2516).

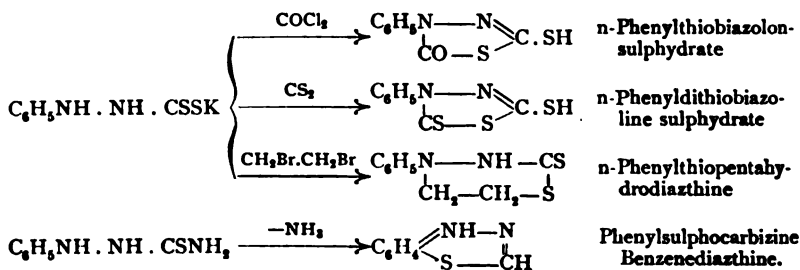
Phenylsulphosemicarbazide,  $C_6H_5NH \cdot NH \cdot CSNH_2$ , melting at  $200^\circ$ , is obtained from phenylhydrazine rhodanate at  $160-170^\circ$ . When heated to  $130^\circ$  with hydrochloric acid, it becomes sulphocarbazine or benzodiazthine (see this) (B. 27, 871). Diphenylsulphosemicarbazide,  $C_6H_5NH \cdot NH \cdot CS.NHC_6H_5$ , from diphenylcarbazinic acid and aniline (B. 29, 1686), is converted by nitrous acid into diphenylisotetrazolon (see this).

Diphenylsulphocarbazine,  $(C_6H_5NH \cdot NH)_2CS$ , melting at  $150^\circ$ , is formed when phenylhydrazine phenylsulphocarbazine is heated to  $100-110^\circ$ .

Diphenylsulphocarbazon,  $C_6H_5N=N \cdot CSNH \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_5$ , consists of bluish-black crystals, and is formed by brief boiling of diphenylsulphocarbazine with moderately concentrated alcoholic potash.

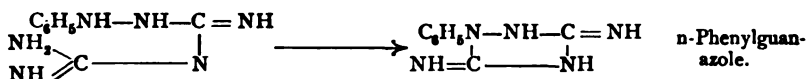
Diphenylsulphocarbodiazon,  $(C_6H_5N=N)_2CS$ , from diphenylsulphocarbazon by oxidation with hydrated manganese peroxide, consists of red needles (A. 212, 316).

**Hetero-ring Formations of the Phenylhydrazine Thiocarbamic Acid Derivatives:**



**Phenylhydrazine Derivatives of Guanidine.**—Anil Guanidine,  $NH : C(NH_2) \cdot NHNH.C_6H_5$ , and Amidophenyl guanidine,  $NH : C(NH_2) \cdot N(C_6H_5)NH_2$ , are formed together from cyanamide and phenylhydrazine (B. 29, R. 1109); under other conditions the product is a phenylhydrazine derivative of biguanide—the easily decomposable Anilbiguanide,  $C_6H_5NH \cdot NH \cdot C : (NH) \cdot NH \cdot C : (NH) \cdot NH_2$ . On digesting anil-

biguanide with cyanamide it changes to *phenylguanazole* (see this), which is obtained from *dicyandiamide* and phenylhydrazine (B. 24, R. 649):



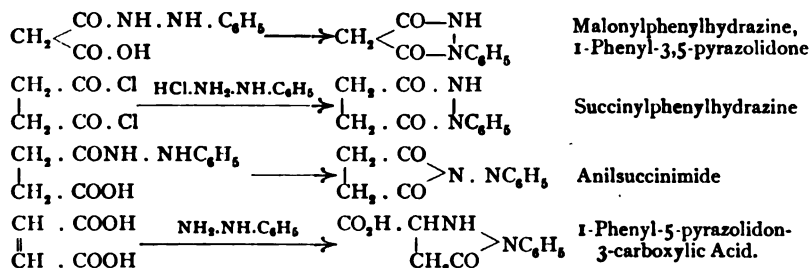
**Phenylhydrazine Derivatives of the Dicarboxylic Acids.**—*Oxalphenylhydrazilic Acid*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $110^\circ$  (A. 236, 197), and *Oxalphenylhydrazide*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO})_2$ , melting at  $278^\circ$ , correspond to *oxanilic acid* and *oxanilide*.

*Malonic acid* has given the following phenylhydrazine derivatives: *Malonic Ester Phenylhydrazide*, Malonphenylhydrazilic ester,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $90^\circ$ , is produced when phenylhydrazine acts upon the chloride of malonic ester. It dissolves quite readily in caustic potash and from this solution hydrochloric acid precipitates *malonylphenylhydrazide*, 1-phenyl-3,5-pyrazolidone (formula below).

*Malonylphenylhydrazide*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO})_2\text{CH}_2$ , melting at  $187^\circ$ , results from the interaction of malonamide and phenylhydrazine at  $200^\circ$  (B. 25, 1505). *Ethylene succinic acid* has yielded the compounds corresponding to those from malonic acid. *Succinic phenylhydrazilic ester* melts at  $107^\circ$ . *Succinylphenylhydrazine* results from the interaction of phenylhydrazine hydrochloride and succinyl chloride (B. 26, 2181). *Succinylidiphenylhydrazide*,  $(\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , melts at  $209^\circ$  (B. 21, 2462). *Anilsuccinimide*,  $(\text{CH}_2\text{CO})_2\text{NNHC}_6\text{H}_5$ , belongs in this category.

**Phenylhydrazine Derivatives of Olefine Dicarboxylic Acids and Oxydicarboxylic Acids.**—Maleic anhydride and phenylhydrazine yield *maleinphenylhydrazil*. On boiling maleic or fumaric acid, dissolved in water, with an excess of phenylhydrazine, it adds itself as in the case of acrylic or crotonic acid (p. 126), and after the addition lactazam-formation ensues (B. 26, 117), and 1-phenyl-5-pyrazolidon-3-carboxylic acid results (see this).

**Hetero-ring Formations of the Phenylhydrazine Derivatives of the Dicarboxylic Acids:**



#### HYDRAZIDINES OR AMIDRAZONES. FORMAZYL COMPOUNDS.

Two classes of compounds belonging to the amidines remain to be discussed at the conclusion of the phenylhydrazine derivatives of the carboxylic acids. The hydrazidines are amidines whose imido-group is replaced by the phenylhydrazone group, while in the formazyl compounds the amido-group is in addition replaced by the azophenyl group:



**A. Hydrazidines or Amidrazones.** *Ethenylphenylhydrazidine*,  $\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C} \begin{array}{l} \text{N} \cdot \text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{array}$ .

The hydrochloride of this base is produced by the action of phenylhydrazine upon the

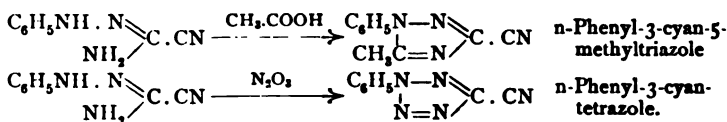
hydrochloride of acetimidoether (B. 17, 2002). *Cyanamidrazone* or *Dicyanphenylhydrazine*,  $\text{NC}-\text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{N} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \diagdown \text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting with decomposition at  $160^\circ$ , and *Diamidrazone*

(B. 26, 2783 Anm.), or *Cyanphenylhydrazine*,  $\left( \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH} \cdot \text{N} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{C} \\ \diagdown \text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right)_2$ , melting at  $225^\circ$ , are produced when cyanogen acts upon phenylhydrazine. Dicyanphenylhydrazine is formed by the reduction of the HCN addition product of diazobenzene cyanide (p. 103), which probably, therefore, has the following formula:  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N} : \text{NC} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{NH} \\ \diagdown \text{CN} \end{smallmatrix}$  (B. 28, 2082).

The constitution of cyanamidrazone is evident from its formation through the action of phenylhydrazine upon *Flaveanhydride*,  $\text{NC}-\text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{S} \\ \diagdown \text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ , and the constitution of diamidrazone from its formation in the action of phenylhydrazine upon *Rubeanhydride*,  $\text{S}=\text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{C} \\ \diagdown \text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{S} \\ \diagdown \text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}$  (1, 437), and upon oxaldiamidoxime,  $\text{HON}=\text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{C} \\ \diagdown \text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{NOH} \\ \diagdown \text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}$  (B. 26, 2385).

*Acetylamidrazone*, pyroracemic acid phenylhydrazidine,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CO} \cdot \text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{N} \cdot \text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \diagdown \text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $182^\circ$ , is produced by reducing formazyl methylketone with ammonium sulphide (B. 26, 2783).

*Hetero-ring Formations with the Amidrazones.*—The amidrazones condense with carboxylic acids, their anhydrides or chlorides to hetero-cyclic derivatives of the triazole-group (see this). Nitrous acid converts the amidrazones into *tetrazole*-derivatives (see these). Cyanamidrazone is changed by acetic anhydride to *n-phenyl-3-cyan-5-methyl-triazole*; by nitrous acid to *n-phenyl-3-cyan-tetrazole*:

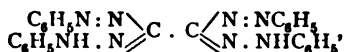


**B. Formazyl compounds** are obtained (1) from phenylhydrazones and normal diazobenzene usually in alkaline solution; (2) from phenylhydrazine and phenylhydrazides; the hydrazone-hydrazide produced at first oxidizes, under the influence of phenylhydrazine, with the loss of two hydrogen atoms; (3) from the phenylhydrazone chlorides, corresponding to the imide chlorides, by action of phenylhydrazine (B. 27, 320; 29, 1386).

*Formazyl Hydride*,  $\text{HC} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{N} : \text{NC}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \diagdown \text{N} \cdot \text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5 \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $116^\circ$  (1, 233), has been obtained from formazyl carboxylic acid by fusing it alone, or by boiling it with alcoholic potash.

*Formazyl Methyl Ketone*,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{N} : \text{NC}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \diagdown \text{N} \cdot \text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5 \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $134^\circ$ , results from the action of diazobenzene upon acetone, acetoacetic ester, pyroracemic aldehyde hydrazone, and benzene-azo-acetyl acetone (B. 25, 3211).

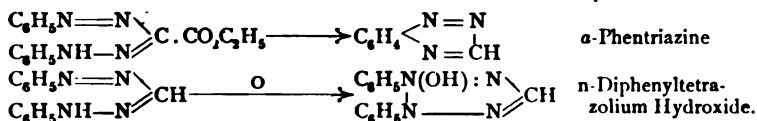
*Formazyl Carboxylic Acid*,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H} \cdot \text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{N} : \text{N}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \diagdown \text{N} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $162^\circ$ , is made by saponifying the ethyl formazyl carboxylic ester, melting at  $117^\circ$ . The latter is produced when diazobenzene chloride acts upon acetoacetic ester, oxaloacetic ester (B. 25, 3456), or upon phenylhydrazone-mesoxalic ester acid. *Diformazyl*,



greenish-brown, brilliant leaflets, melting at  $226^\circ$ . It results from the action of diazobenzene chloride upon laevalinic acid, hydrochelidonic acid, or acetone diacetic acid, and from dioxytartrosazone.

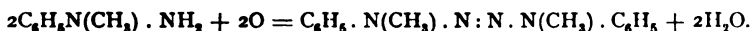
*Formazylazobenzene*, Phenylazoformazyl,  $(C_6H_5N=N)_2C=N.NHC_6H_5$ , melting at  $162^\circ$ , results from the interaction of formazyl carboxylic acid or glyoxylic acid phenylhydrazone and diazobenzene in alkaline solution (B. 25, 3457).

*Hetero-ring Formations with the Formazyl Derivatives*.—When concentrated mineral acids act upon the formazyl compounds, they split off aniline and *phenotriazone* derivatives result; formazyl carboxylic ester yields *a-Phentriazine* (see this). By oxidation the formazyl-compounds change to *tetrazolium* derivatives; formazyl hydride yields *n-Diphenyl-tetrazolium hydroxide*:



16. *Phenylnitrosohydrazine*,  $C_6H_5N \begin{smallmatrix} NO \\ NH_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ , or  $C_6H_5NHNHNO$ , yellowish-brown crystalline flakes, which readily change to diazobenzene imide (p. 110) (A. 190, 89), and are produced by action of nitrous acid upon phenylhydrazine. An excess of nitrous acid oxidizes phenylhydrazine to a diazobenzene salt (Ch. C. 1897, I, 381). *Nitroso-phenylsemicarbazide*,  $C_6H_5N(NO)NHCONH_2$ , melting with decomposition at  $127^\circ$ , is obtained by the action of  $NO_2Na$  and acetic acid upon phenylsemicarbazide. It decomposes gradually at the ordinary temperature, more rapidly upon heating, with the production of phenylazocarbazide (p. 103). Diazobenzeneimide is obtained when it is boiled with caustic potash (B. 28, 1925).

16a. *Tetrazones*, derived from the hypothetical nitrogen hydride,  $NH_2-N-N-NH_2$ , result upon oxidizing the unsym.-alkylphenyl- or diphenyl-hydrazines with mercuric oxide in alcoholic or ethereal solution, or by means of a dilute ferric chloride solution:



They are solids, decomposed by fusion or upon boiling with dilute acids. *Dimethyl diphenyl Tetrazone*,  $C_6H_5.N(CH_3)_2.N(CH_3)_2C_6H_5$ , melts at  $133^\circ$ . *Diethyldiphenyl Tetrazone* melts at  $108^\circ$  (A. 252, 281). *Tetraphenyl Tetrazone*,  $(C_6H_5)_2N.N_2.N(C_6H_5)_2$ , from *a*-diphenylhydrazine, melts at  $123^\circ$ , and is colored blue by concentrated acids. The tetrazones recall the osotetrazones (I, 328).

16b. *Hydrotetrazones*, derived from the hypothetical hydride,  $NH_2.NH.NH.NH_2$ , result upon oxidizing the aldehyde phenylhydrazones (B. 26, R. 55; 27, 2920)—e. g., benzal phenylhydrazone yields the compound,  $C_6H_5.CH:N.N.N(C_6H_5)_2$ , *dibenzal diphenyldihydrotetrazone*, melting at  $181^\circ$  (B. 29, R. 591).

17. *Buzylene or Diazohydrazo-compounds*.—*Hippurylphenylbuzylene*,  $C_6H_5N-N-NH-NHCO.CH_2.NH.CO.C_6H_5$ , melting at  $84^\circ$ , is an hippuric acid derivative of the unknown hydride, *Buzylene*,  $NH=N-NH-NH_2$  (B. 26, 1268). It is formed from hippurylhydrazine and diazobenzene sulphate.

#### 4. AROMATIC COMPOUNDS OF PHOSPHORUS, ARSENIC, ANTIMONY, BISMUTH, BORON, SILICON, AND TIN (I, 173-181).

The phenyl-derivatives of the elements just mentioned attach themselves to the aromatic nitrogen compounds. Their chlorides are most suitable for the preparation of these bodies. (1) They react with benzene at a red heat, hydrochloric acid being eliminated; (2) with benzene and aluminium chloride; (3) with mercury diphenyl; (4) with sodium and benzene chloride, or benzene bromide. This class of derivatives is produced also (5) from alloys of the elements with alkali metals and benzene haloids.

**Phenyl Phosphorus Compounds.**—Michaelis in 1876 succeeded, by the preparation of phosphenyl chloride, the starting-out substance for the obtaining of phosphenyl derivatives, in setting aside the experimental difficulties which opposed the union of the phenyl residue with phosphorus (A. 181, 265; 293, 193, 325; 294, 1). Some phosphenyl compounds in composition correspond to known aromatic nitrogen-containing substances; the names of the respective phosphenyl bodies recall these:

Aniline,	$C_6H_5NH_2$	$C_6H_5PH_2$ ,	Phenylphosphine
Nitrobenzene,	$C_6H_5NO_2$	$C_6H_5PO_2$ ,	Phosphino-benzene
Azobenzene,	$C_6H_5N : NC_6H_5$	$C_6H_5P : PC_6H_5$ ,	Phospho-benzene.

**Phenylphosphine**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot PH_2$ , *phosphaniline*, boiling at  $160^\circ$ , is obtained by the action of hydriodic acid and then alcohol upon phosphenyl-chloride,  $C_6H_5 \cdot PCl_2$ . It is a liquid possessing an extremely disagreeable odor. When exposed to the air, it oxidizes to phosphenyl oxide,  $C_6H_5 \cdot PH_2O$ ,—a crystalline mass easily soluble in water. Phenylphosphine combines with HI to the iodide,  $C_6H_5 \cdot PH_2I$ , out of which water again separates phenylphosphine.

**Phosphenyl Chloride**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot PCl_2$ , boiling at  $225^\circ$  (corr.) with sp. gr. 1.319 ( $29^\circ$ ), is a strongly refracting liquid which fumes in the air. It is formed (1) by conducting a mixture of benzene and  $PCl_3$  vapors through tubes heated to redness (A. 181, 280); (2) by heating mercury diphenyl with  $PCl_3$ , and (3) by the action of  $AlCl_3$  upon benzene and  $PCl_3$ . Aided by this last reaction the chlorophosphin-residue has also been introduced into *dimethylaniline* (B. 21, 1497), and into *phenolalkyl ether* (B. 27, 2559). It forms the *tetrachloride*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot PCl_4$ , with chlorine; this melts at  $73^\circ$ . With oxygen it yields the *oxychloride*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot PCl_2O$ , boiling at  $260^\circ$ , and with sulphur *phosphenyl sulphochloride*, boiling at  $205^\circ$  (130 mm.). When the dichloride is heated with water, we obtain phenyl-hypophosphorous acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot PHO \cdot OH$ , melting at  $70^\circ$ , while the tetrachloride forms phenylphosphinic acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot PO \cdot (OH)_2$ , which melts at  $150^\circ$ .

*p-Tolylphosphorochloride*,  $CH_3[4]C_6H_4 \cdot PCl_2$ , forms a tetrachloride, which forms with aniline *tolyltrianilidophosphonium chloride*,  $CH_3[4]C_6H_4 \cdot P(NHC_6H_5)_3Cl$ , melting at  $245^\circ$ . Sodium hydroxide converts the latter into the *hydroxide*,  $CH_3[4]C_6H_4 \cdot P(NHC_6H_5)_3OH$ , melting at  $240^\circ$  (B. 28, 2214).

**Phosphino-benzene**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot PO_2$ , melting at  $100^\circ$ , is obtained from phosphenyl oxychloride and phenylhypophosphorous acid (B. 25, 1747).

Phosphenyl chloride converts phenylphosphine into **Phospho-benzene**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot P : P \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $150^\circ$  (B. 10, 812).

**Diphenylphosphine Chloride**,  $(C_6H_5)_2PCl$ , boiling at  $320^\circ$ , is obtained from phosphenyl chloride alone at  $280^\circ$ , or with mercury diphenyl at  $220^\circ$  (B. 21, 1505). With phenol it yields *Phenoxyldiphenylphosphine*,  $(C_6H_5)_2POC_6H_5$ , boiling at  $265-270^\circ$  (62 mm.) (B. 18, 2118), and with dilute sodium hydroxide: *diphenylphosphine*,  $(C_6H_5)_2PH$ , boiling at  $280^\circ$ , and *diphenylphosphinic acid*,  $(C_6H_5)_2PO \cdot OH$ , melting at  $190^\circ$  (B. 15, 801).

**Triphenylphosphine**,  $(C_6H_5)_3P$ , melting at  $75^\circ$  and boiling about  $360^\circ$ , is produced from  $C_6H_5 \cdot PCl_2$  and brombenzene, or from  $PCl_3$  and brombenzene by the action of sodium (B. 18, R. 562). It forms with bromine the dibromide,  $(C_6H_5)_3PBr_2$ , which is converted by water or alkalis into the dihydroxide,  $(C_6H_5)_3P(OH)_2$ . At  $100^\circ$  this passes into the oxide,  $(C_6H_5)_3PO$ . The latter melts at  $143^\circ$  and boils above  $360^\circ$ . Triphenylphosphin-oxide,  $(C_6H_5)_3PO$ , is isomeric with *phenoxyldiphenylphosphine*,  $(C_6H_5)_2POC_6H_5$ . Both compounds, in vapor density determinations made with reduced pressure (1, 29), yield values according with the simple molecular formulas. Phosphorus, therefore, in the first body is quinquivalent, and in the second it is trivalent (Michaelis and La Coste, B. 18, 2118).

**Phenyl Arsenic Compounds.**—Reactions similar to those used in obtaining the phenyl substitution products of phosphorus chloride have been used with arsenic, and the following bodies have been obtained: *Phenyl arsenious chloride*,  $C_6H_5AsCl_2$ ; *Diphenyl arsenious chloride*,  $(C_6H_5)_2AsCl$ ; *Triphenyl Arsine*,  $(C_6H_5)_3As$ ; *Arsenobenzene*,  $C_6H_5As : As \cdot C_6H_5$ . (A. 201, 191; 207, 195; 270, 139; B. 19, 1031; 25, 1521; 27, 263).

**Triphenyl Stibine**,  $(C_6H_5)_3Sb$ , melting at  $48^\circ$ , is produced on introducing sodium

into a solution of 40 grams of chlorbenzene and 40 grams of antimonious chloride in benzene (A. 233, 43).

**Bismuth Triphenyl**,  $(C_6H_5)_3Bi$ , melting at  $78^\circ$ , is prepared by heating brombenzene and bismuth sodium (A. 251, 324).

**Phenyl Boron Compounds.**—*Phenyl boron chloride*,  $C_6H_5BCl_2$ , melting at  $0^\circ$  and boiling at  $175^\circ$ , and *diphenylboron-chloride*,  $(C_6H_5)_2BCl$ , boiling at  $271^\circ$  (B. 27, 244), result from the interaction of mercury diphenyl and boron chloride.

**Phenyl Silicon Compounds.**—*Phenyl-silico-chloride*,  $C_6H_5SiCl_3$ , is prepared by heating mercury diphenyl and  $SiCl_4$  to  $300^\circ$ . It boils at  $197^\circ$  (Ladenburg, A. 173, 151). Water decomposes it into silico-benzoic acid,  $C_6H_5SiO.OH$ , melting at  $92^\circ$ . Alcohol forms the triethyl ether,  $C_6H_5Si(O.C_2H_5)_3$ , boiling at  $137^\circ$ . Zinc ethyl converts the chloride into *triethyl-phenyl-silicide*,  $C_6H_5Si.(C_2H_5)_3$ , boiling at  $230^\circ$ .

**Tetraphenyl Silicon**,  $Si(C_6H_5)_4$ , is produced by the action of sodium upon a mixture of  $SiCl_4$ , chlorbenzene, and ether (B. 19, 1012). It melts at  $228^\circ$  and distils beyond  $300^\circ$ .

**Phenyl Tin Compounds.**—Mercury diphenyl and stannic chloride interact to form **Tin Diphenyl Chloride**,  $(C_6H_5)_2SnCl_2$ , melting at  $42^\circ$  (A. 194, 145).

**Tin Tetraphenyl**,  $Sn(C_6H_5)_4$ , is produced by the action of tin sodium upon brombenzene. It melts at  $226^\circ$  and boils above  $420^\circ$  (B. 22, 2917).

## 5. PHENYL METAL DERIVATIVES (I, 182).

The phenyl group has been combined with magnesium, mercury, and lead.

**Magnesium Diphenyl**,  $(C_6H_5)_2Mg$ , is a light, yellowish-white powder, dissolving readily in a mixture of benzene and ether. It is produced on heating mercury diphenyl with magnesium powder and some acetic ester to  $180-185^\circ$  (A. 282, 320).

**Mercury-phenyl**,  $(C_6H_5)_2Hg$ , melting at  $120^\circ$ , is formed by treating brombenzene in benzene solution for some time with liquid sodium amalgam (Otto and Dreher, A. 154, 93); the addition of some acetic ether facilitates the reaction. It crystallizes in colorless, rhombic prisms, and can be sublimed. It assumes a yellow color in sunlight. It dissolves readily in benzene and carbon disulphide, but with more difficulty in ether and alcohol; in water it is insoluble. When distilled it decomposes for the most part into diphenyl, benzene, and mercury. Acids decompose it with formation of benzene and mercury salts. Haloid compounds are produced by the action of the halogens—e.g., *Mercury-phenyl chloride*,  $C_6H_5HgCl$ , melting at  $250^\circ$ ; *mercury-phenyl bromide*,  $C_6H_5HgBr$ , melting at  $275^\circ$ ; *mercury-phenyl iodide*,  $C_6H_5HgI$ , melting at  $265^\circ$ . *Mercury-phenyl hydroxide*,  $C_6H_5HgOH$ , is produced when silver oxide and alcohol act upon the chloride (J. pr. Ch. [2] 1, 186).

*Mercury Dialphyls*: See A. 173, 162; B. 14, 2112; 17, 2374; 20, 1719; 22, 1220, etc.

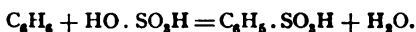
**Lead Tetraphenyl**,  $(C_6H_5)_4Pb$ , is formed by heating brombenzene with lead sodium and acetic ether. It melts at  $224^\circ$  (B. 20, 3331).

## 6. SULPHO-ACIDS.

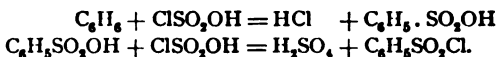
The ease with which sulpho-acids are produced distinguishes the aromatic hydrocarbons from the aliphatic bodies to the same degree that marks their easy nitration. The introduction of a sulpho-group in the place of aromatic hydrogen atoms is termed "sulphonation."

**Formation.**—(1) The *sulphonic acids* of the benzene hydrocarbons (as well as of other benzene derivatives) are very easily obtained by mixing (or digesting) the latter with concentrated or fuming sulphuric acid. In

this manner it is possible to combine three sulpho-groups with one benzene nucleus :



(2) In the action of an excess of chlorosulphonic acid,  $\text{Cl} \cdot \text{SO}_3\text{OH}$ , the principal products, with careful cooling, are the chlorides of the sulpho-acids (B. 12, 1848; 28, 2172). The reaction then proceeds in the following way (B. 22, R. 739) :



Sulphones are secondary products (p. 139).

(3) Further, sulphonic acids can be obtained from the diazo-amido-derivatives by boiling with sulphurous acid (p. 110).

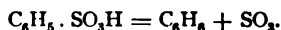
(4) By the oxidation of thiophenols (p. 156). This reaction proves that the sulphur atom of the sulpho-group is in union with the aromatic nucleus (compare mercaptans) (1, 148).

(5) By the oxidation of sulphinic acids (p. 138).

**Properties and Transformations.**—Many aromatic sulpho-acids are very soluble in water and crystallize with difficulty. They can be separated from aqueous solution in the form of their sodium salts by means of sodium chloride: *salting out* (B. 28, 91). The ready solubility of the sulpho-acids, in conjunction with their easy production, meets with an important technical application in the conversion of aromatic dyes insoluble in water into their sulpho-acids, which dissolve in water with ease.

(1) The chlorides of the acids are made by acting upon the alkali salts with  $\text{POCl}_3$  and  $\text{PCl}_5$ , and from the acids themselves by the action of  $\text{PCl}_5$ . The chlorides are converted into amides, esters, etc., as indicated under the alkyl sulphonic acids (1, 152). The esters of the sulpho-acids are transposed by alcohol at  $140\text{--}150^\circ$ , with the production of ethers (1, 133). The sulphonamides are stable and crystallize well; they are frequently prepared for the characterization of a sulpho-acid.

(2) Hydrocarbons (together with phenyl sulphones) are formed when the free acids are subjected to distillation :

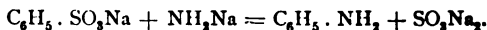


This rupture is more easily accomplished by heating the acids with concentrated  $\text{HCl}$  to  $150^\circ$ , or by distilling the ammonium salt of the sulphonic acid, or a mixture of the lead salt with ammonium chloride (B. 16, 1468). The decomposition results with least difficulty by conducting steam into the dry sulpho-acid, or its solution in concentrated sulphuric acid; superheated steam is most effective (B. 19, 92).

(3) The  $\text{SO}_2\text{Cl}$  group in the sulpho-chlorides can be replaced by chlorine through the action of  $\text{PCl}_5$ . In some sulphonic acids free chlorine and bromine are capable of eliminating the sulpho-group and introducing the halogens (B. 16, 617).

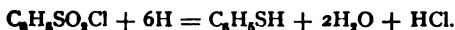
(4) The sulpho-group in many sulphonic acids is often replaced by  $\text{NO}_2$  upon treating them with concentrated nitric acid.

(5) Anilines result from the action of sodamide,  $\text{NH}_2\text{Na}$ , upon benzene sulphonates (B. 19, 903) :



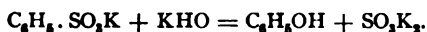
(6) The sulphonic acids of the alkyl benzenes, more frequently applied in the form of their sulphamides, yield sulphocarboxylic acids upon oxidation. The oxidation of o-toluene sulphamide to the sulphinide of o-sulphobenzoic acid (see this), called *saccharin*, is technically important.

(7) The chlorides of the aromatic sulpho-acids become thiophenols upon reduction :

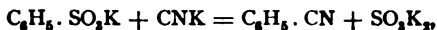


This reaction, like that of the oxidation of thiophenols to sulphonic acids, demonstrates that in the sulpho-acids the sulphur is in immediate union with the benzene nucleus

(8) The sulphonic acids are not decomposed upon boiling them with aqueous alkalis. Phenols are formed when they are fused with alkalis. This reaction serves for the technical preparation of resorcinol (p. 160) and other phenols :



(9) When distilled with potassium cyanide (or dry yellow prussiate of potash) nitriles result :



and these may be readily saponified to carboxylic acids. This reaction answers for the synthesis of aromatic acids from the hydrocarbons.

(10) Carboxylates are also obtained on fusing the alkali sulphonates with sodium formate.

**Monosulphonic Acids.**—**Benzene Sulphonic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SO}_3\text{H}$ , melting at  $50^\circ$ , crystallizes from water, in which it is exceedingly soluble, in plates containing water of crystallization.

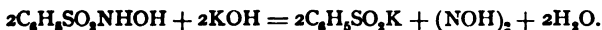
The *barium salt*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SO}_3)_2\text{Ba} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ , forms pearly leaflets, and is sparingly soluble in alcohol.

The *chloride*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SO}_2\text{Cl}$ , melts at  $14.5^\circ$ , boils at  $116^\circ$  (B. 25, 2257), and has specific gravity of 1.378 at  $23^\circ$ . It slowly reverts to the acid upon boiling with water. The *ethyl ester*, boiling at  $156^\circ$  (15 mm.), obtained by the action of ethyl alcohol on the chloride, is decomposed into benzene sulphonic acid and ethyl ether (1, 133) when it is heated to  $150^\circ$  with ethyl alcohol.

**Benzenesulphamide**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SO}_2\text{NH}_2$ , melts at  $150^\circ$ .

**Benzene Sulpho-nitramide**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SO}_2\text{NHNHNO}_2$ , consists of colorless plates, readily soluble in water. It decomposes at  $100^\circ$  into benzene sulphonic acid and nitrous oxide. It is formed when a mixture of nitric and sulphuric acids acts upon benzenesulphamide. Its *potassium salt*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SO}_2\text{NK} \cdot \text{NO}_2$ , melts at  $275^\circ$ , and when reduced by glacial acetic acid and zinc dust becomes *benzene sulphon-hydraside*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SO}_2\text{NH} \cdot \text{NH}_2$ . The sulphamide and nitrous acid yield *dibenzene sulphon-hydroxylamine*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SO}_2)_2\text{NOH}$ , which can also be made by the interaction of benzene sulphonic acid and sodium nitrite; with diazobenzene chloride the product is *benzene-sulpho-diazobenzene amide*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SO}_2\text{NH} - \text{N} = \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting with decomposition at  $101^\circ$  (B. 27, 598).

**Benzsulph-hydroxamic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SO}_2 \cdot \text{NHOH}$ , melting at  $126^\circ$ , is obtained from benzene sulphonylchloride and hydroxylamine. Alkalies decompose it into benzene sulphonic acid and hyponitrous acid (B. 29, 1559, 2324) :



**Toluene Sulphonic Acids.**—In sulphonating toluene *o*- and *p*-acids are the chief products. The *o*-acid can be obtained from *p*-tolylhydrazine-*o*-sulphonic acid free from the *p*-acid. The *m*-acid is obtained from *p*-toluidine-*m*-sulphonic acid. *o*-Toluene Sulphonylchloride is a liquid. *o*-Toluene-sulphamide melts at  $155^\circ$  (see *o*-sulphobenzoic acid). *m*-Toluene-sulphonic Acid,  $\text{CH}_3[\text{I}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[\text{3}]\text{SO}_3\text{H} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; its *chloride* is a liquid; its *amide* melts at  $107^\circ$ . *p*-Toluene-sulphonic Acid,  $\text{CH}_3[\text{1}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[\text{4}]\text{SO}_3\text{H} + 4\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melts at  $92^\circ$ ; its *chloride* melts at  $69^\circ$  and boils at  $145^\circ$  (15 mm.); its *bromide* melts at  $96^\circ$ , its *iodide* at  $84^\circ$ , and its *amide* at  $137^\circ$ . *Disulpho* sulph-hydroxamic acid,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{SO}_2)_2\text{NOH}$ , melts with decomposition at  $148^\circ$ . It results from the action of

sodium nitrite upon toluene-sulphonic acid. It combines with an additional molecule of the sulphonic acid to *Tritoluene Sulphonamide*,  $(C_6H_4 \cdot SO_3)_3N$ , melting at  $190^\circ$  (J. pr. Ch. [2] 54, 95).

**Xylene Sulphonic Acids.**—*1,2-Xylene-4-sulphonic Acid*; its *chloride* melts at  $51^\circ$ , its *amide* at  $144^\circ$ . *1,3-Xylene-4-sulphonic Acid*; its *chloride* melts at  $34^\circ$  and its *amide* at  $137^\circ$ . *1,3-Xylene-2-sulphonic Acid*: its *amide* melts at  $95^\circ$ . *1,4-Xylene-3-sulphonic Acid*: its *chloride* melts at  $25^\circ$  and its *amide* at  $247^\circ$ . They result upon sulphonating the various xylenes.

[*1,2,4*]-*Pseudocumene-5-sulphonic Acid*,  $(CH_3)_3C_6H_2SO_3H + 2H_2O$ , melts at  $111^\circ$ . Its *chloride* melts at  $61^\circ$  and the *amide* at  $181^\circ$ . *Mesitylene Sulphonic Acid*,  $C_6H_3SO_3H + 2H_2O$ , melts at  $77^\circ$ , its *chloride* at  $57^\circ$ , and its *amide* at  $141^\circ$ .

**Polysulphonic Acids.**—**Benzene-disulphonic Acids**,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} SO_3H \\ SO_3H \end{smallmatrix}$ . On heating benzene with fuming sulphuric acid to  $200^\circ C.$ , we get *meta*- and *para*-benzene disulphonic acids, with the former in predominating quantity, but by prolonged heating it passes into the *para*-variety (B. 9, 550). *Meta*-disulphonic acid (1,3) is produced from disulphanilic acid (p. 137) by means of the diazo-compound.

Orthobenzene disulphonic acid is formed from *meta*-amidobenzene sulphonic acid by further introduction of the sulpho-group, and replacement of  $NH_2$  by hydrogen. The melting points of the sulpho-chlorides and sulphamides of the three isomeric disulphonic acids are:

	Ortho.	Meta.	Para.
$C_6H_4(SO_2Cl)_2$	$105^\circ$	$63^\circ$	$132^\circ$
$C_6H_4(SO_2NH_2)_2$	$233^\circ$	$228^\circ$	$288^\circ$

The corresponding *dicyanides*,  $C_6H_4(CN)_2$ , the nitriles of the three phthalic acids, are obtained by distillation with potassium cyanide or potassium ferrocyanide. When fused with potassium hydroxide, both *meta* and *para* acids yield resorcinol (*metadioxybenzene*); at lower temperatures *metaphenol-sulphonic acid*,  $C_6H_4(OH)SO_3H$ , results at first from both acids.

**Benzene-trisulphonic Acid**,  $C_6H_3(SO_3H)_3$  (1,3,6), is easily made by heating potassium *m*-benzene disulphonate with common sulphuric acid (B. 21, R. 49). The free acid (from the lead salt) crystallizes in long needles with  $3H_2O$ ; its *chloride* melts at  $184^\circ$ , its *amide* at  $306^\circ$ . Fused with caustic potash it yields *phloroglucin*,  $C_6H_3(OH)_3$ , and upon heating with potassium cyanide it forms the nitrile, which upon saponification becomes *trimesic acid*,  $C_6H_2(CO_2H)_3$ .

**Toluene Disulphonic Acids.**—The six possible isomerides are known (B. 20, 350; 29, R. 868). *Xylene Disulphonic Acids* (B. 25, R. 790).

**Chlor-, Brom-, Iod-, Iodoso-, Nitro-, Nitroso-, and Amido-benzene Sulphonic Acids.**—The chlor-, brom-, and iod-benzene sulphonic acids are prepared from the three amidobenzene sulphonic acids by means of the diazo-reactions (B. 28, 90). *p*-Compounds are the principal products in the sulphonation of chlor- and brom-benzenes. In nitrating benzene-sulphonic acid and sulphonating nitro-benzene the three isomeric nitro-benzene-sulphonic acids are produced with the *m*-derivatives in predominating quantity (A. 177, 60).

The following table contains the melting points of the chlorides and amides of the acids:

	ORTHO.		META.		PARA.	
	Chloride.	Amide.	Chloride.	Amide.	Chloride.	Amide.
Chlorsulpho- . . . .	$28^\circ$	$188^\circ$	Oil	$148^\circ$	$53^\circ$	$143^\circ$
Bromsulpho- . . . .	$51^\circ$	$186^\circ$	Oil	$154^\circ$	$75^\circ$	$166^\circ$
Iodsulpho- . . . .	$51^\circ$	$170^\circ$	$23^\circ$	$152^\circ$	$84^\circ$	$183^\circ$
Nitrosulpho- . . . .	$67^\circ$	$186^\circ$	$60^\circ$	$161^\circ$	Oil	$181^\circ$

*o*-Iod-chloride-benzene sulphochloride,  $\text{ICl}_2[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{SO}_2\text{Cl}$ , melting at  $60^\circ$ , is converted by sodium hydroxide into *iodoso-benzene-sulphonic acid* (B. 28, 95).

The compounds resulting from the action of hydriodic acid upon the nitrobenzene-sulpho-chlorides,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NO}_2)\text{SO}_2\text{Cl}$ , and formerly regarded as *sulphimido-benzenes*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\langle\text{NH}\text{SO}_2\rangle$ , represent *nitrodiphenyldisulphides*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{NO}_2)_2\text{S}_2$  (B. 21, 1099).

*m*-Nitrosobenzene-sulphonic Acid (B. 25, 75).

**Amidobenzene-sulphonic Acids.**—The three acids are produced by the reduction of the three nitrobenzene sulphonic acids. On sulphonating aniline at  $180^\circ$  with fuming sulphuric acid (8-10 per cent.  $\text{SO}_3$ ), the *p*-derivative constitutes the chief product. It is *sulphanilic acid*, important in the technology of dyes, and was discovered in 1845 by Gerhardt. The second sulpho-group enters the *o*-position with the formation of *1-aniline-2,4-disulphonic acid* or *disulphanilic acid*; a trisulphonic acid has not been produced (B. 23, 2143). The amidobenzene-sulphonic acids, like *glycecoll* (1, 354) and *taurine*

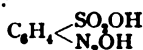
(1, 306) can be regarded as cyclic ammonium salts:  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\langle\text{SO}_2\text{O}\text{NH}_2\rangle$ .

The three amido-benzene sulphonic acids dissolve with difficulty in water, alcohol, and ether. The (*ortho*)-acid either crystallizes in anhydrous rhombohedra or in four-sided prisms containing  $\frac{1}{2}\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; these do not effloresce. It is best prepared by the reduction of *p*-brom-aniline-*o*-sulphonic acid (B. 28, R. 751; 29, 1075). The (1,3)-acid, called *metanilic acid*, and also important in the technology of dyes, crystallizes in delicate needles or in prisms with  $1\frac{1}{2}\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , which effloresce.

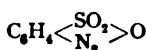
**Sulphanilic Acid** crystallizes from hot water in rhombic plates with 1 molecule  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; these effloresce in the air. They are soluble in 112 parts  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  at  $15^\circ$  (B. 14, 1933). It yields a considerable quantity of quinone when oxidized with  $\text{MnO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  or chromic acid. It yields aniline and not amidophenol when fused with caustic potash; unlike its isomerides it is readily converted by bromine water into tribromaniline (B. 29, R. 309).

The sodium amido-benzene-sulphonates yield acetyl derivatives with acetic anhydride (B. 17, 708), whereas the free acids are not in condition to do this. This fact argues for the ammonium salt formula of the three acids.

**Diazobenzene-sulphonic Acid Anhydrides, Cyclic Diazides.**—Nitrous acid transforms the three amido-benzene-sulphonic acids into the anhydrides of the *diazobenzene-sulphonic acids*:



Diazobenzene-sulphonic Acid



Anhydride.

The hydrated sulpho-acids are not known; they pass at once into anhydrides. The *di-potassium* and the *di-sodium salts* of the *o*- and *p*-diazobenzene sulphonic acids,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{SO}_2\text{Me})(\text{N}_2\text{OMe})$ , exist each in two forms, one of which belongs to the normal and the other to the *isodiazo-series* (p. 101). The *iso-salts* are produced on digesting the normal salts; they give up nitrogen less readily and do not combine, or at least with difficulty, with aromatic amines or phenols, to yield *azo-dyes* (B. 29, 1059, 1388). *Primary Potassium Isodiazo-sulphonate*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{SO}_2\text{K})\text{N}_2\text{OH} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ , results on treating the corresponding dipotassium salt with acetic acid (B. 28, 1386). A bleaching lime solution oxidizes the diazide of sulphanilic acid to the compound  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{SO}_2\text{H})\text{N}_2\text{O}_2\text{H}$ , which must probably be regarded as an *oxynitramine*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{SO}_2\text{H})\text{N}(\text{OH})\text{NO}_2$  (B. 29, 2948).

It is rather remarkable that, while otherwise it is only the *ortho*-compounds of the benzene *di-derivatives* which form inner anhydrides, *all three of the diazobenzene sulpho-acids are capable of anhydride formation*. They exhibit all of the reactions of the diazo-compounds.

The *diazide of sulphanilic acid*, *p*-diazobenzene-sulphonic acid, consists of sparingly soluble, white needles; heated with absolute alcohol, it forms benzene-sulphonic acid; with water the diazo-acid becomes *p*-phenol-sulphonic acid; while with potassium sulphide the di-potassium salt of *p*-thiophenolsulphonic acid results.

**Amido-azo-benzene-sulphonic Acids.**—The diazides of sulphanilic acid and *metanilic acid* are used in the manufacture of *sulphurized azo-dyes*: The first group of

this great class of dyes has received mention (p. 114); it comprises the amido-azo-compounds, which are insoluble or dissolve with difficulty in water. Upon introducing the sulpho-group into the amido-azo-derivatives it will be discovered that the solubility in general increases with the number of sulpho-groups. The alkali salts of the amido-azobenzene-sulphonic acids constitute the dyes soluble in water. We shall meet with other groups of azo-dyes when we study the phenols: *oxyazo-compounds*. The *naphthalene-azo-compounds* and the *benzidine-dyes*, containing the diphenyl residue, are especially important.

Arbitrary names are assigned these *dyes*, with the addition of the letters Y (yellow), O (orange), and R (red), whose number approximately expresses the intensity of the color. They color wool and silk directly, cotton after it has been mordanted.

*Formation*.—(1) The amido-azo-bodies are sulphurized. (2) The diazides of sulphonic acids are combined with bases.

Upon sulphonating amido-azobenzene there results a mixture of amido-azobenzene mono- and di-sulphonic acids, known in commerce under the names *acid yellow* or *pure yellow*:  $\text{SO}_3\text{H}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{N}=\text{N}[1']\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4']\text{NH}_2$  and  $\text{SO}_3\text{H}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[1]\text{N}=\text{N}[1']\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[4']\text{NH}_2[3']\text{SO}_3\text{H}$  (B. 22, 847). Being amido-bodies the sulpho-acids are themselves capable again of diazotizing and combination, whereby very valuable dyes have been obtained (compare *Biebrich scarlet*).

The following azo-dyes have been made by combining the diazide of sulphanilic acid with dimethylaniline and diphenylamine, and the diazide of metanilic acid with diphenylamine:

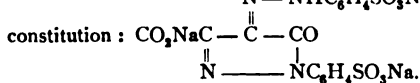
[4']-*Dimethylamido-azo-benzene*-[4]-*sulphonic acid*,  $\text{SO}_3\text{H}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{N}=\text{N}[1]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4']\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , melting at  $112^\circ$ , consists of golden-yellow leaflets (B. 10, 528; 12, 1490). Its sodium salt, as a dye, bears the names *tropæoline O*, *orange III*, and *helianthine*. It serves as a delicate indicator in alkalimetry; mineral acids convert the alkaline orange-colored solution into a rose-red.  $\text{CO}_2$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{S}$ , and acetic acid do not act on it in the cold (Ch. Z., VI, 1249; B. 18, 3290). By reduction *helianthine* yields sulphanilic acid and para-amido-dimethyl aniline (p. 95).

[4']-*Phenylamido-azobenzene*-[4]-*sulphonic Acid*,  $\text{SO}_3\text{H}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{N}=\text{N}[1]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4']\text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5$ . Its sodium salt dyes wool and silk a beautiful orange, and as a dye is known by the names *tropæoline OO*, *orange IV*. It is used as an indicator in alkalimetry (B. 16, 1989). By decomposition it yields sulphanilic acid and p-amido-diphenylamine.

[4']-*Phenylamido-azobenzene*-[3]-*sulphonic Acid* is formed from metanilic acid and bears the name *metanil yellow*.

**Phenylhydrazine Sulphonic Acids** are produced upon reducing the diazides of aniline sulphonic acids with sodium sulphite or stannous chloride (B. 22, R. 216), and by the direct action of concentrated sulphuric acid upon phenylhydrazines (B. 18, 3172).

**Phenylhydrazine-p-sulphonic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot (\text{NH} \cdot \text{NH}_2)\text{SO}_3\text{H}$ , is not readily soluble in water. It is used in the preparation of tartrazine (vol. 1), having the following



*Hydrazobenzene-m-disulphonic Acid*,  $\text{SO}_3\text{H}[3]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{NH} - \text{NH}[1]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[3']\text{SO}_3\text{H}$ , has been prepared by the reduction of m-nitrobenzene sulphonic acid, and is converted into benzidine disulphonic acid by hydrochloric acid (B. 21, R. 323; 23, 1053).

**Sulphinic Acids** (compare I, 153).—*Formation*: (1) By the action of zinc dust upon the ethereal solution of the sulphonic acid chlorides; (2) from the latter and thio-phenol salts:



(3) from  $\text{SO}_2$  and benzene in the presence of aluminium chloride (B. 20, 195); (4) by the action of sodium upon the sulphones (B. 26, 2813); (5) by the decomposition of the benzene sulph-hydroxamic acids (p. 135).

*Deportment*.—The *sulphinic acids* are not very stable, and when heated with water, split up into sulphonic acids and *disulphoxides*.

The air and oxidizing agents (especially  $\text{BaO}_3$ ) convert them into sulphonic acids. Their salts unite with sulphur, forming thiosulphonates. When fused with alkalis, they decompose into benzenes and alkaline sulphites.

Benzene sulphinic acid and quinone unite to unsym.-*p*-diaryldiphenylsulphone,  $(\text{HO})_2\text{[2,5]C}_6\text{H}_3\text{[1]SO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$  (B. 27, 3259); it also reacts with a number of other substances containing quinoid linkages (compare B. 29, 2019).

Their alkali salts and alkyl iodides yield mixed sulphones, and with chlorcarbonic esters they form the real sulphinic esters (B. 26, 308, 430):



**Benzene Sulphinic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{.SO.OH}$ , melts at  $83^\circ$ . *Zinc Salt*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SO}_2)_2\text{.Zn} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . *Ethyl Ester*, sp. gr. 1.141 ( $20^\circ$ ), decomposes when it is heated.

*o*-Toluene Sulphinic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{[1](CH}_3\text{)[2]SOOH}$ , melts at  $80^\circ$  (J. pr. Ch. 54, 517).

**Benzene Thiosulphonic Acid**.—Its salts result from the chloride of benzene sulphonic acid and alkali sulphides, as well as from the interaction of benzene sulphinates and sulphur (B. 25, 1477).

**Disulphoxides or Esters of the Thiosulphonic Acids**.—*Alkyl esters* and *alkylen esters* of benzene thiosulphonic acid result from the interaction of the potassium salt with the corresponding bromides (B. 25, 1477).

*Phenyl esters*—e. g.,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{.SO}_2\text{.S.C}_6\text{H}_5$ —are obtained (1) by oxidizing the thio-phenols with nitric acid, and (2) by heating the sulphinic acids with water to  $130^\circ$ .

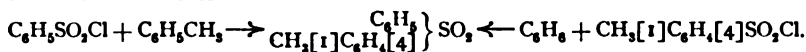
**Benzene Disulphoxide**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{.SO}_2\text{.S.C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $45^\circ$ , is insoluble in water, but dissolves readily in alcohol and ether (B. 20, 2090).

**Sulphobenzene Sulphide**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SO}_2)_2\text{S}$ , melting at  $133^\circ$ , and **Sulphobenzene Disulphide**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SO}_2)_2\text{S}_2$ , melting at  $76^\circ$ , result from the action of iodine and of chlorine upon potassium benzene thiosulphonate (B. 24, 1141).

**Diphenylsulphoxide**, *Thionyl Benzene*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{SO}$ , melting at  $70^\circ$ , is produced by the action of  $\text{SO}_2$  or  $\text{SO}_2\text{Cl}_2$  upon benzenes in the presence of  $\text{AlCl}_3$  (B. 20, 195; 27, 2547). Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to diphenyl sulphone.

**Diphenylselenium Oxide**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{SeO}$ , has been prepared by oxidizing diphenylselenide (see this), or from the dibromide of the latter (B. 29, 424).

**Sulphones**.—The *alkylaliphyl sulphones* are isomeric with the esters of the alkyl sulphinic acids. They result from the sodium sulphinates and the alkylogens. The purely aromatic sulphones are obtained (1) by the action of  $\text{SO}_2$  or chlorosulphonic acid upon benzenes (together with sulphonic acids),  $2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 + \text{SO}_2 = (\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{SO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; (2) by the distillation of sulphonic acids (together with benzenes); (3) by the oxidation of the phenyl sulphides; (4) on heating benzene-sulphonic acids with benzenes and  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$ ; (5) by the action of zinc dust or aluminium chloride upon a mixture of the sulphonic chlorides and benzenes:



The same phenyl *p*-tolyl-sulphone results from benzene sulphonic acid and toluene as from *p*-toluene-sulphonic acid chloride and benzene, which would prove that both groups are in union with sulphur and that the latter is *sextivalent* (B. 11, 2181); (6) oxy- and amido-substituted sulphones result from the union of sulphinic acids with quinone- and quinone-imide derivatives (B. 29, 2024).

**Phenylethyl Sulphone**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $42^\circ$  and boils above  $300^\circ$ . *Phenylethyl Sulphone Alcohol*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{.SO}_2\text{.CH}_2\text{.CH}_2\text{OH}$ , is a syrup formed from ethylene chlorhydrin and sodium benzene sulphinate, as well as by the action of concentrated sodium hydroxide upon *ethylene diphenyl disulphone*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SO}_2\text{.CH}_2\text{.CH}_2\text{.SO}_2\text{.C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $180^\circ$ . Phenyl sulphone ethyl alcohol upon oxidation yields *phenyl sulphone acetic acid*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{.CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $112^\circ$ ; caustic potash resolves this into  $\text{CO}_2$  and *phenyl methyl sulphone*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{.SO}_2\text{.CH}_3$ , melting at  $88^\circ$ . The hydrogen of the  $\text{CH}_2$ -group in the esters of phenyl-sulphone acetic acid is, indeed, replaceable by sodium, but not by alkyls (B. 22, 1447; 23, 1647). *Phenyl Allyl Sulphone*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{.SO}_2\text{.C}_3\text{H}_5$ , is an oil (A. 283, 185).

The  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -phenyl-sulphone propionic acids, melting at  $115^{\circ}$  and  $123^{\circ}$  (B. 21, 89), as well as numerous other mixed fatty-aromatic sulphones of the greatest variety, have also been prepared. The phenyl groups have also been replaced by tolyl groups.

Diphenylsulphone,  $(C_6H_5)_2SO_2$ , *Benzene Sulphone*, *Sulphobenzide*, melting at  $128^{\circ}$  and boiling at  $276^{\circ}$ , is formed by the distillation of benzene sulphonic acid, and by the oxidation of phenyl sulphide,  $(C_6H_5)_2S$ , and *diphenylsulphazide* (see above); further, from benzene sulphonic chloride,  $C_6H_5 \cdot SO_2Cl$ , and mercury diphenyl, as well as from benzene and benzene sulphonic chloride or sulphuryl chloride with aluminium chloride (B. 26, 2940). It is also obtained by the action of fuming sulphuric acid or  $SO_3$  upon benzene. It is converted into benzene-sulphonic acid when digested with concentrated sulphuric acid. When heated with  $PCl_5$ , or in a current of chlorine gas, it is decomposed into chlorobenzene and the chloride of benzene sulphonic acid.

With sulphur or selenium it forms the diphenylsulphone: *Diphenylsulphide* or *diphenylselenide* (B. 27, 1761). Sodium converts it into sodium benzene sulphinate and diphenyl (B. 26, 2813). *Diphenyl Selenone*,  $(C_6H_5)_2SeO_2$ , melting at  $155^{\circ}$  and boiling at  $271^{\circ}$ , results on oxidizing diphenyl selenium oxide with potassium permanganate (B. 29, 424).

## 7. PHENOLS.

The phenols are derived from the aromatic hydrocarbons by the replacement of hydrogen of the benzene residue by hydroxyl. The phenols, like the alcohols, are distinguished as mono-, di-, and trihydric, according to the number of hydroxyl groups which have entered. All of the six hydrogen atoms in benzene can be substituted by hydroxyl groups. The phenols correspond to the tertiary alcohols, as they yield neither acids nor ketones upon oxidation. Their acid nature, distinguishing them from alcohols, is governed by the more negative nature of the phenyl group, and is enhanced by the entrance of more negative groups (see picric acid, p. 150). In contrast to the phenols the aromatic alcohols, which are their isomerides, and have hydrogen of the side-chains replaced by hydroxyl, approach the aliphatic alcohols in their deportment.

Various representatives of the phenols have been found in the vegetable kingdom.

Some of them occur already formed as phenol-sulphonic acids in the urine of mammals. In the organism of the latter many organic bodies are oxidized to phenols: benzene to phenol, brombenzene to bromphenol, aniline to amidophenol, phenol to hydroquinone. In the decay of albumin the presence of phenols has also been established.

Phenols are produced in the dry distillation of wood, particularly beech-wood, turf, bituminous coal (B. 26, R. 151), and anthracite coal.

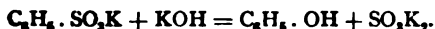
To isolate the phenols from coal tar shake the latter with caustic alkali in which they are soluble. Acids liberate them from this solution, and then they can be purified by fractional distillation.

### MONOHYDRIC PHENOLS.

In addition to the methods of formation just given, the following are worthy of note:

(1) The decomposition of the diazo-derivatives, especially their sulphates, with boiling water (p. 105).

(2) Fusion of the sulphonic acids with potassium or sodium hydroxide. This reaction was discovered in 1867 by Kekulé, Würtz, and Dusart, independently of each other:

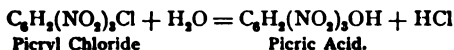


In practice this method is used to obtain phenols from sulphoacids, the operation being carried out in iron vessels.

The experiment in the laboratory is executed in a silver or nickel dish, the fusion supersaturated with sulphuric acid, and the phenol extracted by shaking with ether.

In fusing sulphonic acids or phenols containing halogens, the latter are also replaced with formation of polyhydric phenols. Occasionally the sulpho-group splits off as sulphate and is replaced by hydrogen; thus, cresolsulphonic acid yields cresol.

(3) The halogen benzene substitution products do not react with alkalis; but if nitro-groups are present at the same time, the halogens are replaced even by digesting with aqueous alkalis—this will occur the more readily if the nitro-groups be multiplied. In this respect they approach the acid chlorides:

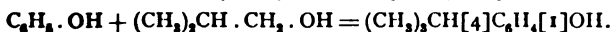


(4) The amide-group in the nitroamido-derivatives can also be replaced by hydroxyl on boiling with aqueous alkalis; ortho- and para-nitranilines,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NO}_2) \cdot \text{NH}_2$  (not meta), yield their corresponding nitrophenols. The ortho-dinitro-products react similarly (p. 67).

(5) Small quantities of phenol can be obtained from benzene by the action of ozone, hydrogen peroxide (palladium hydride and water), and by shaking with sodium hydroxide and air (B. 14, 1144). By the addition of oxygen to benzene through the instrumentality of aluminium chloride.

(6) By the *breaking down* of phenol carboxylic acids, when their salts are subjected to dry distillation with lime.

(7) The *synthesis* of the higher phenols by introduction of alkyls into the benzene nucleus takes place readily on heating the phenols with alcohols and  $\text{ZnCl}_2$  to  $200^\circ$  (B. 14, 1842; 17, 669; 27, 1614; 28, 407):



Alkyl ethers of the phenols are simultaneously produced; methyl alcohol yields methyl-phenol  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ . Magnesium chloride (B. 16, 792) and primary alkali sulphates (B. 16, 2541) possess the same condensing power as  $\text{ZnCl}_2$ .

(8) Phenols, under the influence of concentrated sulphuric acid, take up unsaturated hydrocarbons—*e. g.*, isomylene—and form alkyl phenols (B. 25, 2649).

*Deportment: Replacement of the Hydrogen Atoms.*—(1) The character of the phenols, recalling the acids, expresses itself in the ease with which they form salts, particularly with the alkalis. The hydrogen of the hydroxyl group is also readily replaced (2) by alcohol radicals and (3) by acid radicals. (4) The presence of an hydroxyl group in the place of an aromatic hydrogen atom renders more easy the substitution of other hydrogen atoms by chlorine, bromine, and the nitro-group.

(5) The phenols unite with the diazo-compounds, forming azo- and diazo-dyes: oxy-azo-derivatives (p. 155).

(6) *Color Reactions of the Phenols.*—On adding phenols (mono- or polyhydric) to a solution of  $\text{KNO}_3$  (6 per cent.) in concentrated sulphuric acid, intense colorations arise; with common phenol we get first a brown, then green, and finally a royal-blue color (Reaction of Liebermann) (see B. 17, 1875). Dyes are produced in this manner; their character is as yet unexplained. They have been called dichroines (B. 21, 249).

The phenols afford similar colors in the presence of sulphuric acid, with diazo-compounds, and nitroso-derivatives. Ferric chloride imparts color to the solutions of most phenols. Mercury nitrate, containing nitrous acid, colors nearly all the phenols red (reaction of Plugge) (B. 23, R. 202).

*Replacement of the Hydroxyl Group.*—(7) When heated with zinc dust the phenols are reduced to hydrocarbons.

(8) The oxygen of the simple phenols is not very easily replaced by chlorine when phosphorus pentachloride acts upon them. Phenol itself has given the body,  $C_6H_5OPCl_4$  (p. 147). The pentachloride acts with greater ease upon the nitrophenols, forming nitro-chlorobenzenes.

(9) Phosphorus sulphide converts the phenols into thio-phenols.

(10a) The anilines result on heating with zinc ammonium chloride (compare p. 72).

(10b) In the alcohol-ethers of the nitro-phenols (as with the acid esters) we can replace the OH by  $NH_2$ , on heating with alcoholic ammonia.

(11) For the oxidation of the alkyl residues of homologous phenols see p. 143.

*Nucleus-syntheses.*—(1) Compare methods 7 and 8 (p. 141), upon the replacement of the aromatic hydrogen atoms of the phenols by alkyl groups.

(2) The alkali salts of the phenols are converted by carbon dioxide, at higher temperatures, into the alkali salts of oxy-acids—*phenol carboxylic acids* (compare salicylic acid).

(3) The phenols also yield *phenol carboxylic acids* with carbon tetrachloride and sodium hydroxide.

(4) Oxyaldehydes or phenol aldehydes (see salicylaldehyde) are produced from phenols, chloroform (1, 235), and caustic soda.

(5) The phenols condense with formaldehyde to *phenol alcohols* (see saligenine). (6) *Coumarines* (see these) are formed on heating phenols with malic acid and sulphuric acid. (7) Dyestuffs belonging to the *aurine* series, and derived from triphenylmethane,  $CH(C_6H_5)_3$  (see this), are obtained from the phenols by their action upon benzotrichloride,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CCl_3$ . (8) The so-called *phthaleins* are combinations of phthalic acid and o-sulphobenzoic anhydride with the phenols.

*Breaking-down of the Benzene Nucleus of the Phenols* (pp. 44, 45).

(1) By oxidation of phenol (see this).

(2) By treating the phenols with chlorine, and then decomposing the chlorine addition products with alkalies.

**Benzophenol, Phenol, Carboic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot OH$ ,** melts at  $43^\circ$  and boils at  $183^\circ$ ; its specific gravity is 1.084 ( $0^\circ$ ). It is obtained from amidobenzene, from benzene-sulphonic acid, from the three oxy-benzoic acids, etc., by the methods previously described. It occurs already formed in *Castoreum* and in the urine of the herbivoræ.

Commercial phenol is a colorless, crystalline mass, which gradually acquires a reddish color on exposure to the air (B. 27, R. 790). Pure phenol crystallizes in long, colorless prisms. It possesses a characteristic odor, burning taste, and poisonous and antiseptic properties. It dissolves in 15 parts water at  $20^\circ$ , and very readily in alcohol, ether, and glacial acetic acid. It is volatile with steam. Ferric salts impart a violet color to its neutral solutions. Bromine water precipitates [2,4,6]-tribromphenol from even very dilute solutions.

Diphenols,  $C_{12}H_{10}(OH)_2$ , derivatives of diphenyl (see this), are produced on fusing phenol with caustic potash.

*Diphenylene oxide* is produced when phenol is distilled over lead oxide. *Aurine* results when it is heated with oxalic or formic acid and dehydrating agents (see this). Potassium permanganate oxidizes phenol to inactive or mesotartaric acid (vol. 1). Chlorine finally changes phenol to keto-chlorides, which are derived from di- and tetrahydrobenzene (B. 27, 537). Chlorine and caustic soda convert phenol into trichlor-R-pentene dioxycarboxylic acid (p. 27). The most important reactions of phenol have been previously described.

*History*.—Kunge discovered (1834) phenol in coal tar and called it carbon-oil acid, or carboic acid. He also observed the physiological properties it possessed in common with creosote. Laurent, in 1841, first obtained it pure and gave it the names *hydrate de phényle* or *acide phénique*, from *phaîveiv*, to illuminate, probably because it occurs in the tar produced in the manufacture of illuminating gas. Gerhardt, who prepared it from salicylic acid, introduced the name phenol, indicating thereby that it was an alcohol. In 1867 Lister, of Glasgow, showed its great importance in surgery as a disinfectant.

**Phenolates.**—*Phenates*, *Potassium Phenate*,  $C_6H_5OK$ , and *Sodium Phenate*,  $C_6H_5ONa$ , are obtained by dissolving phenol in caustic potash or soda, evaporating the solution and sharply drying the residue. Both salts dissolve readily in water (B. 26, R. 150). Carbon dioxide sets phenol free from them; it is, therefore, not soluble in the alkali carbonates.

*Calcium Phenate*,  $(C_6H_5O)_2Ca$ , and *Mercury Phenate*,  $(C_6H_5O)_2Hg$ . (See B. 29, R. 178, for the compounds of the phenols with aluminium chloride.)

**Homologous Phenols.**—It is strange that the *cresols*, as well as other higher phenols, can not be oxidized by the chromic acid mixture; *the OH-group prevents the oxidation of the alkyl groups by chromic acid*. If, however, the phenol hydrogen is replaced by alkyls or acid radicals (in the phenol ethers and esters), then the oxidation of the alkyl does take place with the production of ether acids or ester acids.

The readily prepared sulphuric or phosphoric acid esters of the homologous phenols are best adapted for oxidation with an alkaline permanganate solution (B. 19, 3304), whereas the free phenols are completely destroyed by this reagent (compare oxidation of phenol, above).

The oxidation of the alkyls in the sulpho-acids of the homologous phenols is similarly influenced by the sulpho-group. In general *negative atoms or groups prevent the oxidation of alkyls in the ortho-position by acid oxidants*, whereas alkaline oxidants—e. g.,  $KMnO_4$ —do precisely the reverse in that they first oxidize the alkyl group holding the ortho-position (A. 220, 16). The methyl groups of the methyl phenols, such as the cresols and xylenols, are converted by molten alkalies into carboxyl groups, and there result oxybenzoic acids, oxytoluic acids, oxyphthalic acids, etc. (compare the like behavior of the homologous *pyrrols* and *indols*).

Other rearrangement reactions are given on p. 142. The liquid homologous phenols are particularly characterized by the melting points of their benzoyl esters; therefore these will be given in connection with the various members.

1. **Cresols, Oxytoluenes**,  $CH_3 \cdot C_6H_4OH$ .—The three isomerides occur in coal-tar and beech-wood tar.

They are obtained from the toluidines by method 1, and from the toluene-sulphonic acids by method 2 (p. 141). They have a similar odor, but it is more disagreeable than that of phenol. They are less poisonous, and are disinfectants. They are changed to toluene when heated with zinc dust. Sodium and carbon dioxide produce the corresponding cresotinic acids.

See above for their behavior toward molten caustic potash and other oxidizing

agents. *o*-Cresol is obtained from carvacrol (p. 145) and the *m*-body from thymol (see below). The latter is also prepared from the dibromide of synthetic  $\beta$ -methylketo-*R*-hexene (see this) by the elimination of hydrogen bromide (A. 281, 98).

<i>o</i> -Cresol, [1,2]- <i>Oxytoluene</i> ,	melts at 31° and boils at 188°.
<i>m</i> -Cresol, [1,3]- <i>Oxytoluene</i> ,	" 4° " 201°.
<i>p</i> -Cresol, [1,4]- <i>Oxytoluene</i> ,	" 36° " 198°.

Ferric chloride colors *o*-cresol blue. The crude cresols are used as disinfectants: *creolin* is a solution of the crude cresols in alkalis; *cresolin* is a solution of the same in resin soaps, while *lysene* or *lysol* is a solution of crude cresols in olive soaps. See B. 14, 687, for the behavior of the cresols in the animal organism.

2. Phenols,  $C_6H_5(OH)_2$ .—Oxydimethyl benzenes and oxyethyl benzenes. The six possible *xyleneols*,  $C_6H_3(CH_3)_2.OH$ , have been prepared.

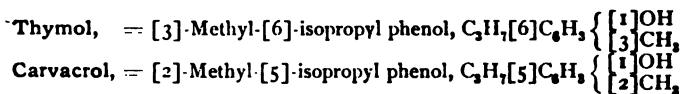
*Ethyl Phenols*,  $C_6H_4(C_2H_5)_2.OH$ .—From the ethyl-benzene-sulphonic acids (B. 27, R. 189). The *ortho*-compound is a liquid, boiling at 203°; its benzoyl derivative melts at 39°. The *meta* boils at 214°; its benzoyl derivative melts at 52°. The *para* is a solid, melts at 45°, and boils at 215°; its benzoyl compound melts at 59°.

3. Phenols,  $C_8H_{11}.OH$ .—*Mesitol*,  $C_6H_3(CH_3)_3.OH$ , from amido-mesitylene and mesitylene-sulphonic acid, melts at 68° and boils at 220°. [1]OH[2,4,5]-*Pseudocumenol*,  $C_6H_2(CH_3)_3.OH$ , from pseudocumene-sulphonic acid, melts at 73° and boils at 232° (B. 17, 2976).

*m-n-Propyl Phenol*, from isosafrol, melts at 26° and boils at 228° (B. 23, 1162). *p-n-Propyl Phenol* boils at 232°. *p-Isopropyl Phenol* melts at 61° and boils at 229°. It is also produced along with hydroquinone (p. 162) on decomposing diphenol- $\beta$ -propane,  $(CH_3)_2C(C_6H_4OH)_2$  (from the action of fuming hydrochloric acid on acetone and phenol), with molten caustic potash (B. 25, R. 334).

4. Phenols,  $C_{10}H_{13}.OH$ .—There are twenty possible isomerides. Thymol and carvacrol merit notice. They occur in vegetable oils. Both are derivatives of ordinary *p*-cymene (p. 56), and contain the isopropyl group.

Thymol, when heated with  $P_2O_5$ , breaks down into propylene and *m*-cresol, while carvacrol, under similar treatment, yields propylene and *o*-cresol.



**Thymol**, melting at 44° and boiling at 230°, crystallizes in large, colorless plates. It exists with cymene,  $C_{10}H_{14}$ , and thymene,  $C_{10}H_{16}$ , in oil of thyme (from *Thymus vulgaris*), and in the oils of *Ptychotis ajowan* and *Monarda punctata*. To obtain the thymol shake these oils with potassium hydroxide, and from the filtered solution precipitate thymol with hydrochloric acid. It is artificially prepared from nitrocuminaldehyde (see this), as well as from dibrom-menthone, by the splitting-off of hydrogen bromide (B. 29, 420). It has a thyme-like odor and answers as an antiseptic.

Ordinary cymene is obtained by distilling it with  $P_2S_5$ . Thymoquinone (see this) is produced in its oxidation.

Iodine and caustic potash convert thymol into *di-iodthymol*, a diphenyl derivative which has been substituted for iodoform under the names *aristol* and *annidalin*. Compare: Die Arzneimittel der organischen Chemie von Thoms.

**Carvacrol, Cymphenol**, melting at  $0^{\circ}$  and boiling at  $236^{\circ}$ , isomeric with thymol, occurs already formed in the oil of certain varieties of *satureja*, also in *Briganum hirtum*, and is obtained from an isomeric *carvol*, a dihydrocymene derivative (see this) contained in the oil of *Carvum carvi*, and certain other oils, when it is heated with glacial phosphoric acid (B. 19, 12). It is further prepared by heating with iodine ( $\frac{1}{3}$  part), using a return condenser. It is made artificially from cymene-sulphonic acid (B. 11, 1060).

Distilled with  $P_2S_5$  it yields cymene and thiocymene, *cymothiophenol*,  $C_{10}H_{12}.SH$ , boiling at  $235^{\circ}$ .

**s-Carvacrol**,  $(CH_3)[3](CH_2)_2CH[5]C_6H_3[1]OH$ , melts at  $54^{\circ}$  and boils at  $241^{\circ}$  (B. 27, 2347). **Methyl-p-norm.-propyl phenol**,  $(CH_3)[2]C_6H_7[5]C_6H_3OII$ , from the corresponding sulpho-acid, boils at  $246^{\circ}$  (B. 29, R. 417).

**p-Tertiary Butyl Phenol**,  $(CH_3)_3C[4]C_6H_4[1]OH$ , melting at  $98^{\circ}$  and boiling at  $237^{\circ}$ , is obtained from isobutyl alcohol, phenol, and zinc chloride (B. 24, 2974).

**p-Tertiary Amyl Phenol**,  $(CH_3)_3C[4]C_6H_4[1]OH$ , melting at  $93^{\circ}$  and boiling at  $266^{\circ}$ , results from the action of  $ZnCl_2$  upon isoamyl alcohol or tertiary amyl alcohol, and from isoamylene, phenol, acetic acid, and sulphuric acid (B. 28, 407).

**Diethyl Phenols** (B. 22, 317).

**Tetramethyl Phenols** (B. 15, 1854; 17, 1916; 18, 2842; 21, 645, 907).

**Pentamethyl Phenol** melts at  $125^{\circ}$  and boils at  $267^{\circ}$  (B. 18, 1826).

#### DERIVATIVES OF THE MONOHYDRIC PHENOLS.

The behavior of the phenols was given under the example selected—ordinary phenol. Because this can be obtained with comparative ease, more derivatives of it, than of its homologues, have been prepared. In the following pages the derivatives of the homologues will only be brought forward and discussed in case they possess theoretical or practical value, and then in connection with the compounds of the corresponding phenol.

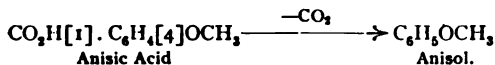
**Phenol Alcohol-ethers.**—(1) Like the ethers of the aliphatic alcohols (1, 132), they result from the interaction of alkyl iodides and phenates. The phenol is digested with caustic potash and the alkyl iodide or methyl chloride is conducted over sodium phenate heated to  $200^{\circ}$  (B. 16, 2513).

(2) By heating a mixture of the alkali salts of the phenols with an excess of alkyl sulphates, in aqueous or alcoholic solution (B. 19, R. 139).

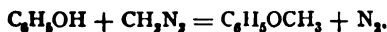
(3) Upon heating the benzene-sulphonic esters with phenols (B. 27, R. 955).

(4) Together with hydrocarbons on decomposing benzene diazo-compounds with alcohols (B. 25, 1973) (p. 104).

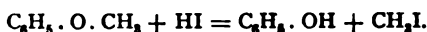
(5) By the dry distillation of the phenol ethers of the oxy-acids with lime or baryta :



(6) The phenols are converted at the ordinary temperature by diazo-methane, with evolution of nitrogen, into their methyl ethers (B. 28, 857):



Boiling alkalis do not alter the alcohol ethers. When, however, they are heated with hydriodic or hydrochloric acid, they split up into their components :



$\text{Al}_2\text{Cl}_6$  also decomposes them (B. 25, 3531). They behave like the aromatic hydrocarbons with Cl, Br, I,  $\text{NO}_2\text{H}$ , and  $\text{SO}_3\text{H}_2$ .

**Anisol, Methyl Phenyl Ether**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , is produced by distilling anisic or p-methyl salicylic acid. It boils at  $152^\circ$ ; its specific gravity at  $15^\circ$  is 0.991. It is not reduced by zinc dust.

**Phenetol, Ethyl Phenyl Ether**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , boils at  $172^\circ$ , and has the specific gravity 0.9822 ( $0^\circ$ ). The *isoamyl ether* boils at  $225^\circ$ .

**Bromethyl Phenyl Ether**,  $\text{BrCH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $39^\circ$  (J. pr. Ch. [2] 24, 242).

**Phenol-ethylene Ether, Glycol-diphenyl Ether**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{OCH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OC}_6\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $95^\circ$ . **Glycol-monophenyl Ether** boils at  $165^\circ$  (80 mm.) (B. 29, R. 289). **Phenyl Glycerol Ether** (B. 24, 2146).

**Phenoxyalkylamines** (1, 311).— $\beta$ -**Phenoxyethylamine**,  $\text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , boils at  $228^\circ$  (B. 24, 189).  $\gamma$ -**Phenoxypropylamine**,  $\text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , boils at  $241^\circ$  (B. 24, 2637). [ $\delta$ -**Amidobutylphenyl Ether**]  $\text{NH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OC}_6\text{H}_5$ , boils at  $225^\circ$  (B. 24, 3232).

**Phenol ethers of aldehyde alcohols, ketone alcohols, and alcohol acids** have been obtained from the corresponding chlorinated aldehydes, ketones, and carboxylic acids by the action of sodium phenate :

**Phenoxyacetaldehyde**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CHO}$ , boils at  $119^\circ$  (30 mm.) (B. 28, R. 295).

**Phenoxyacetone**, **Phenacetol**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , boiling at  $230^\circ$ , is condensed by concentrated sulphuric acid to **methyl cumarone** (see this) (B. 28, 1253). **Phenoxyacetic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , melting at  $96^\circ$ , is isomeric with mandelic acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{COOH}$ . It results from monochloroacetic acid and potassium phenate at  $150^\circ$ , as well as by the oxidation of phenoxyacetaldehyde. It is a strong antiseptic (B. 19, 1296; 27, 2796). **Diphenoxyacetic Acid**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{CHCO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at  $91^\circ$  (B. 27, 2796).  $\alpha$ - and  $\gamma$ -**Phenoxybutyric Acid** melt at  $99^\circ$  and  $60^\circ$  (B. 29, 1421).  $\alpha$ -**Phenoxyacetoacetic Ester**,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OC}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , from sodium phenate and  $\alpha$ -chloroacetoacetic ester, is a thick oil. Concentrated sulphuric acid condenses it to **methyl cumarilic ester**.

**Phenol Ethers**.—**Phenyl Ether**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{O}$ , **Diphenyl Oxide**, melting at  $28^\circ$  and boiling at  $252^\circ$ , is produced by distilling copper benzoate (together with benzoic phenyl ether) and digesting diazobenzene sulphate with phenol (B. 25, 1973); also by heating phenol with zinc chloride to  $350^\circ$ , or, better, with aluminium chloride (B. 14, 189). It crystallizes in long needles, and possesses an odor resembling that of geraniums. It dissolves readily in alcohol and ether. It is not reduced on heating with zinc dust or hydriodic acid.

Nitrated phenyl ethers have been obtained by the interaction of the corresponding nitrohaloid benzenes and the potassium salts of phenols: *o*-**Nitrophenyl Ether**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{NO}_2$ , boils at  $235^\circ$  (60 mm.). *o, o'*-**Dinitrophenol Ether**,  $(\text{NO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{O}$ , melts at  $114^\circ$  (B. 29, 1880, 2084).

**Acid Esters of Phenol**.—The *acid esters* are obtained by acting with acid chlorides or anhydrides upon the phenols or their salts; also by digesting the phenols with acids and  $\text{POCl}_3$ . To effect the substitution of all the hydroxyl-hydrogen atoms in the polyhydric phenols by acetyl groups, it is recommended to heat them with acetic anhydride and sodium acetate. On boiling with alkalis, or even with water, they, like all esters, break down into their components.

**Esters of Inorganic Acids**.—**Phenyl Sulphonic Ester** is not known in

a free state. Its *sodium salt*,  $\text{NaSO}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_5$ , results from the action of  $\text{SO}_2$  upon sodium phenate. Methyl iodide converts it into *methyl sulphonic phenyl ester*,  $\text{CH}_3\text{SO}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_5$  (compare B. 25, 1875).

*Phenylsulphuric Acid*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{SO}_3\text{H}$ , is not known in a free state; when liberated from its salts by concentrated hydrochloric acid, it immediately breaks down into phenol and sulphuric acid. Its *potassium salt*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{SO}_3\text{K}$ , forms leaflets, not very soluble in cold water, and occurs in the urine of herbivorous animals, and also in that of man and the dog after the ingestion of phenol. It is synthetically prepared, like other phenols, on heating potassium phenoxide with an aqueous solution of potassium pyrosulphate (Baumann, 9, 1715).

The phenyl sulphuric acids are very stable in aqueous and alkaline solution; upon digesting with mineral acids, however, they are very rapidly decomposed. When potassium phenylsulphate is heated in a tube, it passes quietly into potassium p-phenol-sulphonate.

*Phenyl Esters of the Phosphoric Acids*.—These arise in the action of  $\text{PCl}_3$  and  $\text{POCl}_3$  (A. 239, 310; 253, 120):

Phenylphosphorous Chloride, . . . . .	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O} \cdot \text{PCl}_2$	boils at $90^\circ$ (11 mm.)
Diphenylphosphorous Chloride, . . . . .	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{PCl}$	" $172^\circ$ "
Triphenylphosphite, . . . . .	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O})_3\text{P}$	" $220^\circ$ "
Phenylphosphoric Chloride, . . . . .	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O})\text{POCl}_2$	" $121^\circ$ "
Diphenylphosphoric Chloride, . . . . .	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{POCl}$	" $195^\circ$ (14 mm.)
Triphenylphosphate, m. p. $45^\circ$ , . . . . .	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O})_3\text{PO}$	" $245^\circ$ (11 mm.)

(B. 18, 1700).

The two phenylphosphorous chlorides take up chlorine:

Phenylphosphoric Tetrachloride, . . . . .	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O} \cdot \text{OPCl}_4$
Diphenylphosphoric Trichloride, . . . . .	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{PCl}_3$

*Phenyl Silicates* (B. 18, 1679).

*Phenyl Esters of Monocarboxylic Acids*.—*Phenyl Formate* (J. pr. Ch. [2] 31, 467). *Phenyl-ortho-formic-ester*,  $\text{CH}(\text{O} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , is formed by boiling phenol with sodium hydroxide and chloroform. It melts at  $71^\circ$  and distils at  $265^\circ$ , under 50 mm. pressure (B. 18, 2656).

*Phenyl Acetate*,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{COOC}_6\text{H}_5$ , boils at  $195^\circ$  (B. 18, 1716). *Orthoacetic Phenyl Ester*,  $\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{OC}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , melts at  $98^\circ$  (B. 24, 3678).

*Phenyl Carbonates*.—The free phenyl-carbonic acid is not known. The opposite is true of *Sodium Phenyl Carbonate*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{OCOC}_2\text{Na}$ . It is produced when  $\text{CO}_2$  acts upon sodium phenoxide (under pressure).

It is a white hygroscopic powder, decomposed again by water. When heated under pressure to  $120$ – $130^\circ$ , *sodium salicylate*,  $\text{HOC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CO}_2\text{Na}$ , results, just as phenolsulphonic acid is obtained from phenylsulphuric acid (see above). When heated to  $190^\circ$  with sodium phenate, sodium phenyl carbonate yields *disodium salicylate* and phenol.

*Phenyl Carbonate*.—The carbonic acid ester,  $\text{CO}(\text{O} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , is produced on heating phenol and phosgene gas,  $\text{COCl}_2$ , to  $150^\circ$ . It is readily obtained by leading phosgene gas into the aqueous solution of sodium phenylate (J. pr. Ch. 17, 139; B. 17, 287). It crystallizes from alcohol in shining needles, and melts at  $78^\circ$ . It yields *sodium salicylate* (see this) when heated to  $200^\circ$  with sodium hydroxide. Urea results if it be heated with ammonia (B. 23, 694).

*Mixed carbonates* containing phenol and alkyls—e. g., *phenyl-ethyl carbonate*,  $\text{CO}_2(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)$ —are produced by the action of chloroformic esters upon the sodium salts of the phenols.

*Diphenylthiocarbonic Ester*,  $C_6H_5OCSOC_6H_5$  (B. 27, 3410). *Phenyl Carbaminat*,  $NH_2COOC_6H_5$ , melts at  $141^\circ$  (A. 244, 43). *Phenylcarbamic Phenyl Ester*,  $C_6H_5NHCO_2C_6H_5$ , from carbanile (p. 89) and phenol, melts at  $124^\circ$  (B. 18, 875; 27, 1370).

*Phenylthiocarbamic Phenyl Ester*,  $C_6H_5O.CSNHC_6H_5$ , melting at  $148^\circ$ , is produced on heating phenyl mustard oil with phenol to  $280^\circ$  (B. 29, R. 177). *Phenylimido-carbonic Phenyl Ester*,  $C_6H_5N:C(OC_6H_5)_2$ , melting at  $136^\circ$ , is obtained from isocyan-phenyl chloride (p. 89) and sodium phenate (B. 28, 977).

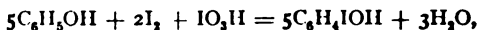
*Phenyl-allophanic Ester*,  $CO<\begin{smallmatrix} NH_2 \\ NH \end{smallmatrix}.CO_2.C_6H_5$ , is produced by conducting cyanic acid vapors into anhydrous phenol. A crystalline mass.

*Phenyl Esters of Dicarboxylic Acids.*—*Phenyl Oxalic Ester*,  $(COOC_6H_5)_2$ , melts with decomposition at  $130^\circ$  (J. pr. Ch. [2] 25, 282). *Ethyl Phenyl Oxalic Ester*,  $COOC_6H_5.COOC_2H_5$ , boiling at  $236^\circ$ , is obtained from ethyl oxalic chloride (vol. 1). The *succinic ester* melts at  $118^\circ$  and boils at  $330^\circ$ . *Phenyl Fumaric Ester*, melting at  $161^\circ$ , decomposes when distilled slowly into  $CO_2$ , phenyl cinnamic ester (see this) and stilbene (see this) (B. 18, 1948).

#### PHENOL SUBSTITUTION PRODUCTS.

**Phenol Haloids.**—*Formation.* (1) Chlorine and bromine react readily with phenols; this is exemplified in bromine precipitating phenol quantitatively from its aqueous solutions as [1OH,2,4,6]-tribromphenol. Chlorine and bromine enter the ortho- and para-positions; there result at first the [1,2]- and [1,4]-mono-, then the [1,2,4]-di-, and finally the [1,2,4,6]-trisubstitution products. At  $150$ – $180^\circ$ , by action of chlorine or bromine vapors, abundant quantities of o-chlor- and o-bromphenol (B. 27, R. 957) are produced.

The iod-derivatives are formed by adding iodine and iodic acid to a dilute potassium hydroxide solution of phenol:



or by the action of iodine and mercuric oxide. Di-iod-phenol is the chief production in the latter case.

(2) From substituted anilines by the replacement of  $NH_2$  by OH, which may be brought about by the diazo-compounds; this reaction leads to pure mono-haloid phenols. (3) From the nitrophenols by replacing the nitro-group with halogens (effected through the amido- and diazo-derivatives). (4) By distilling substituted oxyacids with lime or baryta.

*Deportment.*—(1) The introduction of halogen atoms considerably increases the acid character of phenol; thus, trichlorphenol readily decomposes the alkaline carbonates. (2) When fused with potassium hydroxide, the halogen is replaced by the hydroxyl group (p. 141).

In this reaction it frequently occurs, especially at high temperatures, that not the corresponding isomerides, but rather the more stable derivative results; for example, all the bromphenols yield resorcinol. The caustic potash fusion is, therefore, not applicable in determining constitution.

(3) Sodium amalgam causes the replacement of the halogen atoms by hydrogen.

**Monohaloid Phenols.**—The monochlorphenols in particular are characterized by a disagreeable, very adherent odor. The brom- and iod-phenols being attacked at a lower temperature than the chlor-derivatives, are changed on fusing with potash into the corresponding dioxybenzenes. The higher the temperature rises in the fusion of the o- and p-compounds, the greater will be the yield of resorcinol or m-dioxybenzene; the three isomeric monochlorphenols yield resorcinol:

	Ortho-		Meta-		Para-	
	M. P.	B. P.	M. P.	B. P.	M. P.	B. P.
Chlorphenol,	7°	176°	28°	212°	41°	217°
Bromphenol,	liquid	195°	32°	236°	66°	238°
Iodphenol,	43°	—	40°	—	94°	— (B. 20, 3019).

See B. 29, 997, 1409, 2595, for the iodanisols and phenetols.

**Polyhaloid Phenols.**—In the direct substitution the [2,4]-di- and [2,4,6]-trihaloids are produced quite readily:

	M. P.	B. P.		M. P.	B. P.
[2,4]-Dichlorphenol,	43°	210°	[2,4,6]-Trichlorphenol,	68°	244°
[2,4]-Dibromphenol,	40°	—	[2,4,6]-Tribromphenol,	92°	—
[2,4]-Di-iodphenol,	72°	—	[2,4,6]-Tri-iodphenol,	156°	—

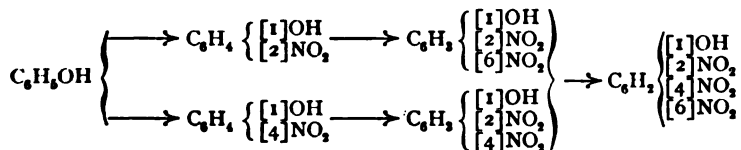
[2,3,4,6]-Tetrachlorphenol, 65° (B. 27, 549). Pentachlorphenol, 186° (B. 28, R. 150).  
[2,3,4,6]-Tetrabromphenol, 120° (A. 137, 209). Pentabromphenol, 225°.

The tri-, tetra-, and penta-chlor- and -bromphenols take up chlorine and bromine, becoming chlorinated and brominated *oxodi-* and *oxotetrahydrobenzenes* (see also B. 28, R. 1012). 2,4,5-Pseudocumenol yields, when brominated under suitable conditions, a *tribrompseudo-cumenol*, insoluble in alkali. It is distinguished by the great reactivity of one of its bromine atoms. Its peculiar behavior renders it very probable that it is really a derivative of *keto-dihydrobenzene* (B. 29, 2329; 30, 744, 753). 2,5-Xylenol yields a very similar tribrom-derivative (B. 29, 2348).

### NITROPHENOLS.

The phenols, like the anilines, are very readily nitrated. The entrance of the nitro-groups increases their acid character very considerably. All nitrophenols decompose alkaline carbonates. Trinitrophenol is a perfect acid in its behavior; its chloranhydride,  $C_6H_2(NO_2)_3Cl$ , reacts quite readily with water, re-forming trinitrophenol (p. 68). The benzene nucleus of the nitrophenols is capable of ready substitution with the halogens; whereas the nitrohydrocarbons are chlorinated with difficulty.

The nitro-groups replace the o- and p-hydrogen atoms referred to hydroxyl, and with reference to one another in the m-position:



**Mononitrophenols,  $NO_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot OH$ .**—Dilute nitric acid converts phenol into o- and p-mononitrophenol (in the cold it is chiefly the p-compound which is formed). At  $-67^\circ$ , with use of the electric spark, there is five times as much of the p-body as at  $-40^\circ$  (B. 26, R. 362). The o- and p-compounds are separated by distillation with steam, in which the

latter is not volatile. Phenol in presence of sulphuric acid is also nitrated by nitrogen dioxide (B. 24, R. 722).

o- and p-Nitrophenols are obtained by heating the corresponding chlor- and brom-nitrobenzenes with caustic potash to 120°, whereas m-brom-nitrobenzene does not react under similar circumstances (p. 67). Ortho- and para-nitrophenols are likewise produced from the corresponding nitranilines by heating with alkalis (p. 93). m-Nitrophenol is formed from m-nitraniline (from ordinary dinitrobenzene) by boiling the diazo-compound with water. p-Nitrophenol has also been obtained synthetically from nitromalonic aldehyde with acetone.

o-Nitrophenol melts at 45° and boils at 214°; its methyl ether melts at + 9° and boils at 265°.

m-Nitrophenol melts at 96°; its methyl ether melts at 38° and boils at 254°.

p-Nitrophenol melts at 114°; its methyl ether melts at 48° and boils at 260°.

o- and m-Nitrophenols form yellow crystals; the latter is rather soluble in water. The o-body has a peculiar odor and sweet taste. Its sodium salt forms dark-red prisms.

p-Nitrophenol crystallizes from hot water in long, colorless needles. The potassium salt crystallizes in yellow needles with two molecules of water.

Bromine converts p-nitrophenol into dibrom-p-nitrophenol (1,4,2,6,OH in 1), melting at 141°.

PCl<sub>5</sub> converts o- and p-nitrophenols into o- and p-chloronitrobenzenes (p. 67).

Dinitrophenols, (NO<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub>OH.—α- or [1OH, 2,4]-Dinitrophenol, melting at 114°, and β- or [1OH, 2,6]-Dinitrophenol, melting at 64°, are produced in the nitration of phenol and of o-nitrophenol. The α-compound can also be obtained from p-nitrophenol, as well as from m-dinitrobenzene, by means of alkaline potassium ferricyanide. The α-methyl ether melts at 86°. It is transformed into [1NH<sub>2</sub>, 2,4]-dinitraniline by heating with ammonia.

The nitration of [1,3]-nitrophenol produces three isomeric dinitrophenols, melting at 104°, 134°, and 141°. Further nitration produces trinitrophenols and trinitroresorcinol (p. 161).

**Trinitrophenols.—Picric Acid**, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>2</sub>(NO<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>.OH, melting at 122°, is obtained by the nitration of phenol, of [1,2]- and [1,4]-nitrophenol, and of the two dinitrophenols; also, by the oxidation of symmetrical trinitrobenzene with potassium ferricyanide. Its structure is therefore 1,2,4,6 (OH in 1).

Picric acid is produced in the action of concentrated nitric acid upon various organic substances, like indigo, aniline, resins, silk, leather, and wool.

*History.*—Welter, in 1799, first prepared pure picric acid by nitrating silk. It was named Welter's bitter. Liebig called it carbon-nitric acid, carbasotic acid. Dumas analyzed it and called it *picric acid*, from πικρὸς, bitter. Laurent, in 1842, discovered it to be a derivative of phenol.

*Properties.*—Picric acid crystallizes from hot water and alcohol in yellow leaflets or prisms which possess a very bitter taste. It dissolves in 160 parts of cold water and rather readily in hot water. Its solution imparts a beautiful yellow color to silk and wool. It sublimes undecomposed when carefully heated.

*Department.*—With many hydrocarbons, like benzene, naphthalene, and anthracene, picric acid forms beautiful, crystalline derivatives, well adapted for the recognition and separation of the higher aromatic hydrocarbons.

Phosphorus pentachloride converts picric acid into trinitro-chlorobenzene, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>2</sub>(NO<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>.Cl (p. 68).

Prussic acid is produced on boiling a solution of barium picrate with baryta water.

Picric acid is converted by potassium cyanide into the potassium salt of *isopurpuric* or *picrocyaninic acid*,  $C_7H_4N_6O_6K$ . It crystallizes in brown leaflets with green-gold lustre, and formerly appeared in commerce under the name *Grnat soluble*. It is no longer used. The free acid is not known.

*Salts and Ethers.*—The *potassium salt*,  $C_6H_2(NO_2)_3 \cdot OK$ , crystallizes in yellow needles, soluble in 260 parts of water at  $15^\circ$ .

The *sodium salt* is soluble in 10 parts water at  $15^\circ$ , and is separated from its solution by sodium carbonate. The *ammonium salt* consists of beautiful, large needles, and is applied in explosive mixtures. All the picrates explode very violently when heated or struck.

The *methyl ester* of picric acid is produced in the nitration of anisol. It melts at  $65^\circ$ . The *ethyl ester* melts at  $78^\circ$ .

$\beta$ -*Trinitrophenol*, melting at  $96^\circ$ , and  $\gamma$ -*Trinitrophenol*, melting at  $117^\circ$ , have been obtained from the dinitrophenols resulting from the nitration of m-nitrophenol.

*Tetranitrophenol*, melting at  $130^\circ$ , consists of golden yellow needles. It is produced in the oxidation of diquinoyltrioxime (see this). It is very explosive (B. 30, 184).

*Nitrocresols.*—o- and p-Cresol are easily converted into dinitro-derivatives (B. 15, 1864; 17, 270). The [2,6]-dinitro-p-cresol, melting at  $84^\circ$ , has been introduced into trade in the form of its sodium salt, bearing the name *Victoria orange*, or *Safran surrogate*. It is an orange-yellow dye. It is not extensively applied as yet. When m-cresol is nitrated, it yields a *trinitrocresol*,  $(NO_2)_3C_6H(CH_3)OH$ , melting at  $106^\circ$ . This has also been formed from nitrocresic acid (see this).

*Haloid Nitrophenols.*—Numerous representatives of this class have been obtained by the action of the halogens upon the nitrophenols or by the nitration of the haloid phenols.

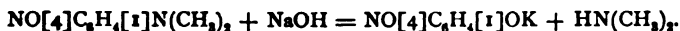
It is interesting to note that p-Nitro-o-iodanisol,  $C_6H_3[4]NO_2[2]I[1]OCH_3$ , has been prepared both in the nitration of o- as well as in that of p-iodanisol. In the latter case, therefore, a migration or wandering of the iodine atom in the nucleus has occurred (B. 29, 997).

#### NITROSO-COMPOUNDS OF THE PHENOLS.

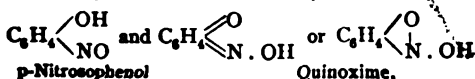
The nitroso-phenols are made: (1) by the action of nitrous acid upon phenols (Baeyer, B. 7, 964), when the monohydric phenols yield only mononitroso-compounds; whereas dinitroso-derivatives are obtained from the dihydric meta-dioxybenzenes, like resorcinol.

(a) Nitrous acid, from alkali nitrite and dilute sulphuric acid or acetic acid, is allowed to act upon the phenols (B. 7, 967; 8, 614); (b) by means of the nitrites of heavy metals, which are decomposed by the phenols themselves (B. 16, 3080); (c) from nitrosyl sulphuric acid,  $HO \cdot SO_2 \cdot NO$ , and phenols (A. 188, 353; B. 21, 429); (d) from amyl nitrite and sodium phenolates (B. 17, 803).

(2) Upon boiling p-nitroso-alkylamines, like nitroso-dimethylaniline (I, 163; II, 94) with alkalis:



(3) By the action of HCl-hydroxylamine upon quinones in aqueous or alcoholic solution. Free hydroxylamine reduces the quinones to hydroquinones (B. 17, 2061). This method favors the idea that the nitroso-phenols are quinone monoximes (Goldschmidt, B. 17, 801). Hence, three constitutional formulas have been brought forward for p-nitrosophenol or quinone monoxime (Quinones, see these):

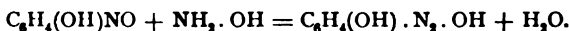


**p-Nitrosophenol, Quinoxime**, crystallizes from hot water in colorless, delicate needles, which readily brown on exposure, and from ether it separates in large, greenish-brown leaflets. It is soluble in water, alcohol, and ether, and imparts to them a bright green color. When heated, it melts with decomposition, and deflagrates at 110–120°. The *sodium salt* crystallizes in red needles, containing two molecules of water of crystallization.

The methods of producing nitrosophenol from phenol with nitrous acid, and from nitroso-dialkyl anilines, argue for the nitroso-formula of the nitrosophenols; as does their oxidation to p-nitrophenol with nitric acid or with an alkaline potassium ferricyanide solution.

The quinoxime formula is supported by their formation from quinone with hydroxylamine-hydrochloride and the conversion into quinodioxime, as well as by the formation of hypochlorous esters,  $C_6H_4(O) \cdot NOCl$ , when acted upon by bleaching lime (B. 19, 280). Further, the behavior of the related nitrosonaphthols (see these), and finally the feeble basic character of the nitrosophenols (B. 18, 3198). The reduction to p-amidophenol is in harmony with both formulas.

The nitrosophenols can be changed to nitrosoanilines (p. 94). Hydrochloric acid converts nitrosophenol into dichloramido-phenol. With nitrous acid and with hydroxylamine it yields p-diazophenol:



In a similar manner it forms azo-compounds with the amines (p. 155). Phenylhydrazine reduces it very readily to amidophenol (B. 29, R. 294). On adding a little concentrated sulphuric acid to a mixture of nitrosophenol and phenol, we obtain a dark red coloration, which changes to dark blue upon adding caustic potash (p. 141).

Quinon-dioxime will be described together with quinone (see this). *Nitroso-o-cresol*, from o-cresol and toluquinone (see this) (B. 21, 729), melts at 134°. *Nitrosothymol* melts at 160° (B. 17, 2061).

#### AMIDOPHENOLS.

They result from the reduction of nitrophenols, and amidophenol-derivatives, in a similar manner, from the corresponding nitrophenol-derivatives. In the case of the poly-nitrated phenols, ammonium sulphide occasions but a partial, tin and hydrochloric acid, however, a complete, reduction of the nitro-groups (p. 71). For special methods of formation, see m- and p-Amidophenol.

*Deportment.*—The free amidophenols decompose quite easily, especially in moist air on exposure to light.

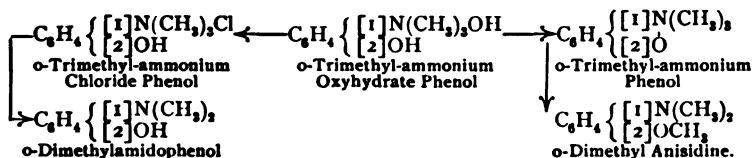
The amido-group considerably diminishes the acid character of the phenols. This class of derivatives no longer forms salts with alkalis, and only yields such compounds with the acids.

Like the o-phenylenediamines (p. 96), the o-amidophenols form heterocyclic derivatives with ease. These are anhydro-bases, the *benzoxazoles*, corresponding to the *benzimidazole* azoles (see these). The *benzothiazoles* (see these) are similar bodies obtained from the o-amidothiophenols.

**o-Amidophenol**,  $NH_2[2]C_6H_4[1]OH$ , melting at 170°, dissolves with difficulty in water. **o-Anisidine**,  $NH_2[2]C_6H_4[1]OCH_3$ , boils at 218°. *Oxethyl-o-amidophenol*,  $HOCH_2 \cdot CH_2NH[2]C_6H_4[1]OCH_3$ , boils at 290–310°.

*Methylation of the Amido-group of o-Amidophenol* (B. 23, 246).—When o-amidophenol in methyl alcohol is treated with methyl iodide and caustic potash, and later with hydrogen iodide, there results the iodide of an ammonium base, which moist silver oxide

changes to the ammonium hydroxide. The latter loses water at  $105^\circ$  and changes to a cyclic ammonium derivative similar to betaine: o-Trimethyl-ammonium Phenol, which, heated to higher temperatures, rearranges itself into o-dimethylanisidine. The hydrochloride of the ammonium base breaks down upon distillation into methyl chloride and o-dimethylamidophenol, melting at  $45^\circ$ .



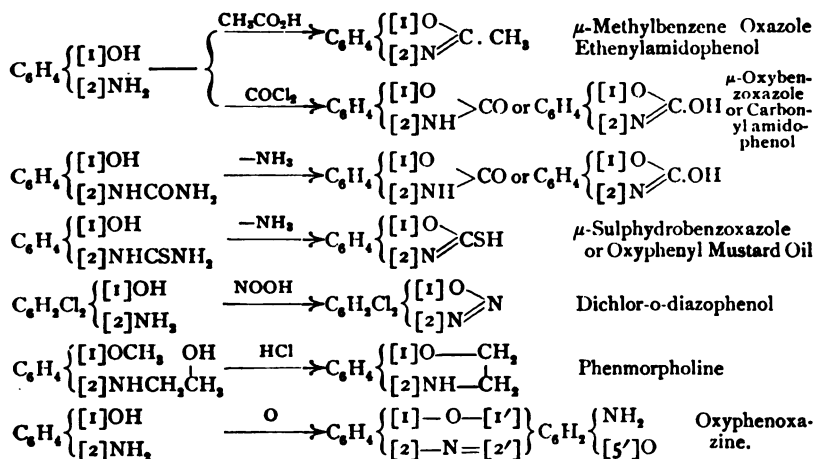
**o-Imidodiphenyl Oxide, Phenoxazine**,  $\text{O} \langle \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \rangle \text{NH}$ , will be described together with thiodiphenylamine, hydrophenazine and phenazine (p. 96) under the heterocyclic compounds. (Compare also Pyrocatechol, p. 159.)

**o-Oxyethylanisidine**,  $\text{HO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NH} [2] \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 [1] \text{OCH}_3$ , from o-anisidine and ethylene chlorhydrin (1, 301) (compare Condensations of the o-Amidophenols), boils at  $305^\circ$ .

**o-Oxyphenyl Urea**,  $\text{NH}_2\text{CONH} [2] \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 [1] \text{OH}$ , melts at  $154^\circ$ . **o-Oxyphenylthiurea**,  $\text{NH}_2\text{CSNH} [2] \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 [1] \text{OH}$ , melts at  $161^\circ$ . (Compare Condensations of the o-Amidophenols.)

**The Condensations of the o-Amidophenols.**—Like the o-diamines (p. 95) and o-amidothiophenols (p. 157), the o-amidophenols are highly suitable for the formation of o-condensation products:

(1) *Benzoxazoles* result by the union of o-amidophenol with carboxylic acids; thus, with acetic acid the product is  $\mu$ -methylbenzoxazole. (2) With phosgene it is  $\mu$ -oxybenzoxazole, or *carbonyl amidophenol*. (3) The latter body is also produced upon heating o-oxyphenyl urea (see above), and in like manner (4) o-oxyphenylthiurea yields *o-oxyphenyl mustard oil*. (5) Nitrous acid converts several substituted o-amidophenols into rather stable *diazides*; thus, *dichlor-o-amidophenol* becomes *dichlor-o-diazophenol*. (6) o-Oxyethylanisidine, when heated with hydrochloric acid, becomes *phenmorpholine* (see this). (7) Oxidants convert o-amidophenol into *oxyphenoxazine* (see this). (8) o-Amidophenol and pyrocatechol condense to phenoxazine (see this):



**m-Amidophenol**, melting at  $122^\circ$ , is obtained from m-nitrophenol (B. 11, 2101),

from the oxamic acid derivative of *m*-phenylenediamine (B. 28, R. 30), and by heating resorcinol to 200° with ammonium chloride and aqueous ammonia. In this way the alkylamines yield the alkyl-*m*-amido-phenols. The latter can also be obtained from the dialkyl-aniline-*m*-sulphonic acids (B. 22, 622).

*Monoalkyl m-amidophenols* (B. 27, R. 953).—*Dimethyl-m-amidophenol* melts at 87°; *diethyl-m-amidophenol* boils at 280°. *m*-Amidophenol and its alkyl derivatives are employed in the preparation of *rhodamine dyes*.

Consult B. 29, 501, for the action of phosgene upon the alkyl *m*-amidophenols. *Trimethyl-m-amidophenol*,  $C_6H_4[1]OH[3]N(CH_3)_3.OH$ —see B. 29, 1533.

*p*-Amidophenol melts at 184° with decomposition and sublimes. It results (1) from *p*-nitrophenol; (2) from 3 phenylhydroxylamine (p. 70); (3) by the action of the electric current upon nitrobenzene in strong sulphuric acid solution; its formation here is due to the rearrangement of the  $\beta$ -phenylhydroxylamine produced at first; (4) from [5]-amido-salicylic acid. It is oxidized to quinone by chromic acid, or by  $PbO_2$  and sulphuric acid. Bleaching lime converts it, as well as its substitution-products, into quinone chlorimides. *p*-Amidophenol acts the same and just as readily as phenylhydrazine upon aldehydes and ketones in dilute acetic acid (B. 27, 3005).

*p-Amidophenetol*, *p-Phenetidine*,  $NH_2[4]C_6H_4[1]OC_2H_5$ , is the ethyl ether. It boils at 242°. Boiling glacial acetic acid converts it into *p-Acetamidophenetol*,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{O} \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{smallmatrix}$ , phenacetin, melting at 135°, which has been applied as an antipyretic. Also *p-Ethoxyphenylsuccinimide*, *Pyranthin*,  $(CH_3CO)_2NC_6H_4OC_2H_5$ , melting at 155°, which, it is claimed, does not have the unpleasant action or after-effects peculiar to phenacetin (B. 29, 84). *p-Phenetolcarbamide*,  $NH_2.CO.NH[4]C_6H_4[1]OC_2H_5$  (B. 28, R. 78, 83), has a very sweet taste. See p. 158 for Diamido-diphenylsulphides.

*m-Oxydiphenylamine*,  $C_6H_5NH[3]C_6H_4[1]OH$ , melting at 82° and boiling at 340°, and *p-Oxydiphenylamine*, melting at 70° and boiling at 330°, are formed on heating resorcinol (p. 160) and hydroquinone with aniline and zinc chloride (B. 22, 2909). The oxydiphenylamines are intimately related to the indophenol-dyes. (See Quinones.)

**Diamidophenols.**—[2,4]-*Diamidophenol*,  $(NH_2)_2[2,4]C_6H_3[1]OH$ , is obtained from [2,4]-dinitrophenol, and by the electrolytic reduction of *m*-dinitrobenzene or *m*-nitroaniline in sulphuric acid (B. 26, 1848). The free base is very unstable, and its salts have been used as developers in photography under the name *amidol*. *m-Amidop-phenitidine*,  $C_6H_5NH[3]C_6H_3 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]OC_2H_5 \\ [4]NH_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right.$ , see p. 155, under *Hydrazine Phenols*, for its formation.

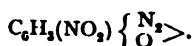
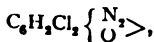
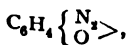
*Picramic Acid*, [2]-*Amido*-[3,4]-*dinitrophenol*,  $C_6H_3(NH_2).(NO_2)_2.OH$ , is obtained by evaporating ammonium picrate in alcoholic solution with ammonium sulphide. It forms red needles, which melt at 165°.

[2,4,6]-*Triamidophenol*,  $C_6H_3(NH_2)_3.OH$ , is obtained from picric acid by the action of phosphorus iodide, or by tin and hydrochloric acid (B. 16, 2400). When set free from its salts, it decomposes very quickly. Its salts, with three equivalents of acids, crystallize well. The  $HI$ -salt,  $C_6H_3O(NH_2)_3 \cdot 3HI$ , crystallizes in colorless needles. These salts color water which is faintly alkaline, and even spring water, a beautiful blue. If ferric chloride be added to the solution of the hydrochloride, it will become deep blue in color, and brown-blue needles with metallic lustre will separate; they are *HCl-amido-di-imido-phenol*, or diamidoquinone-imide (see this), which dissolves in water with a beautiful blue color.

An isomeric triamidophenol has been prepared by reducing diquinoxyltrioxime (B. 30, 183).

[3,3,4,5]-*Tetramidoanisol*,  $(NH_2)_4C_6HOCH_3$  (B. 25, 282).

**Diazophenols.**—*Phenoldiazochlorides*,  $HO.C_6H_4N_2Cl$ , result from the action of nitrous acid upon the hydrochlorides of the amidophenols. The free diazohydrates of the *o*- and *p*-amidophenols seem to become anhydrides, in that the second affinity of the diazo-groups joins itself to the phenol hydrogen (B. 29, 1522):

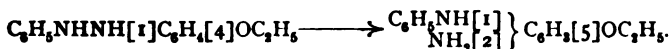


*p-Diazophenol Cyanide*,  $\text{HO}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}_2\cdot\text{CN}$ , from the action of potassium cyanide on the chloride, consists of yellow needles. Caustic potash saponifies it to the potassium salt of *diazophenolcarboxylic acid*,  $\text{HO}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}_2\text{COOH}$ . *Dibromphenoldiazo-sulphonic Acid*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{Br}_2(\text{OH})\text{N}_2\text{SO}_3\text{H} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , can be isolated from its potassium salt produced from the interaction of potassium sulphite and dibromphenoldiazo-chloride.

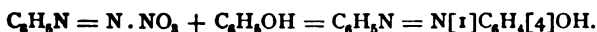
*p-Phenoldiazomercaptan Hydrosulphide*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{OH})\cdot\text{N}_2\text{SH}\cdot\text{SH}_2$ , from the action of hydrogen sulphide upon diazophenol solutions, consists of red needles melting at  $75^\circ$  with decomposition (B. 28, 3250).

**Hydrazine Phenols.**—The free bodies are exceedingly unstable.

*o-Hydrazine Anisol*,  $\text{NH}_2\text{NH}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{OCH}_3$ , melts at  $43^\circ$  and boils at  $240^\circ$  (A. 221, 314). Benzene-*p*-hydrazine phenol ethers result from the reduction of the alkyl ethers of the oxyazobenzenes or azophenols; they show the semidine rearrangement when acted upon with stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid (p. 117). Thus, *benzene p-hydrazophenetol* changes to *m*-ethoxy-*o*-amidodiphenylamine (B. 27, 2700; 28, R. 753; 29, 2680):



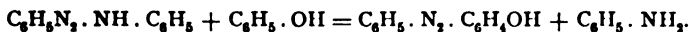
**Azophenols, Oxyazobenzenes.**—*Formation.* (1) From diazo-salts and monohydric phenols, *m*-dioxibenzenes, *m*-amidophenols, and *m*-phenolsulphonic acids:



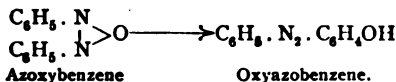
The solution of the diazo-salt is allowed to run into the alkaline phenol solution while cooling and stirring. Phenoldisazobenzene is produced together with phenolazobenzene.

As with the amidoazo-compounds, the entering diazo-group arranges itself in the phenols in the *p*-position, and when this is already occupied it takes the *o*-position with reference to the hydroxyl group (B. 17, 876; 21, R. 814).

(2) By heating the diazoamidobenzenes with monohydric phenols, and also with resorcinol (B. 20, 372, 904, 1577):



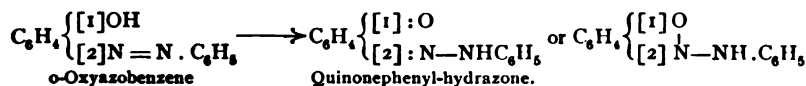
(3) By the molecular rearrangement induced by heating azoxybenzenes with sulphuric acid (B. 14, 2617):



(4) By reduction of the nitrophenols in alcoholic potassium hydroxide solution.

(5) By the action of anilines upon nitrosophenols.

**Constitution.**—The oxyazo-compounds, containing hydroxyl in the ortho-position to the azo-group, are probably quinone-hydrazones:



This seems to be evident both from their cryoscopic and chemical behavior (B. 28, 2415; 29, 2361); compare also naphthoquinonehydrazones.

*p*-Oxyazobenzene, Benzene-*p*-azophenol,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N} = \text{N}[1]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4]\text{OH}$ , melting at  $148^\circ$ , crystallizes in orange-yellow needles. It is produced by the methods mentioned in connection with oxyazo-derivatives; treated with phosphorus pentachloride, and then with water, it is converted into the phosphoric ester,  $\text{PO}(\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3$ , melting at  $148^\circ$  (B. 24, 365). Benzene-*p*-azophenetol melts at  $77^\circ$  (B. 25, 994). *p*-Azophenol,  $\text{HO}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{N}_2[1]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4]\text{OH}$ , melting at  $204^\circ$ , consists of light-brown crystals. It is produced:

(1) By fusing *p*-nitro- and nitroso-phenol with caustic alkali.

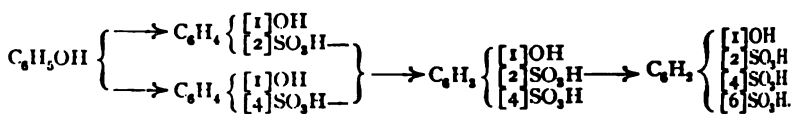
(2) By the pairing of diazobenzene nitrate with phenol.

(3) From p-oxyazobenzene-sulphonic acid (B. 15, 3037).

See B. 17, 351, for the azo- and diazo-derivatives of the cresols.

The sulpho-acids of the oxyazobenzenes are *dyes*—*e. g.*, p-Sulpho-benzene-*p*-azo-phenol,  $\text{SO}_3\text{H}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{N}=\text{N}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4]\text{OH}$ , from p-oxyazobenzene and sulphuric acid, and from p-diazobenzene-sulphonic acid by means of sodium phenate, is *tropaeolin* Y (from yellow) of commerce (B. 11, 2192). Also compare resorcinol.

**Sulphonic Acids of Phenol.**—The sulphonation of phenol proceeds with the replacement of the o- and p-hydrogen atoms, just as in the nitration process (the sulpho-groups enter the meta-position with reference to one another):



o- and p-Phenolsulphonic Acids are formed when phenol dissolves in concentrated sulphuric acid; at medium temperatures the former is the more abundant, but readily passes into the *para*- on the application of heat, or even upon boiling with water. o-Phenetolsulphonic acid is just as easily changed to the p-acid by heating it to 100° (B. 27, R. 591).

The acids are separated through their potassium salts. On allowing to crystallize the potassium salt of the *para*-acid first separates in hexagonal plates; later the ortho-salt,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{SO}_3\text{K} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , crystallizes out in prisms, which soon effloresce on exposure (A. 205, 64).

The free acids can be obtained in crystalline form by the slow evaporation of their aqueous solution. The aqueous solution of the ortho-acid is applied as an antiseptic under the name of *aseptol* (B. 18, R. 506). The para-acid yields quinone if its sodium salts be oxidized with  $\text{MnO}_2$  and sulphuric acid. When the ortho-acid is fused with KOH at 310° it yields pyrocatechin—o-dioxybenzene; the para-acid does not react at 320°, and at higher temperatures yields diphenols. (See Diphenyl.)

The iodation of the para-acid produces [2,6]-*Di-iod-phenolsulphonic Acid*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{I}_2 \cdot (\text{OH}) \cdot \text{SO}_3\text{H}$ . This is applied as an antiseptic, bearing the name *sozo-iodol* (B. 21, R. 250).

**Meta-phenolsulphonic Acid** [1,3] is produced when meta-benzene-disulphonic acid (p. 135) is heated to 170–180° with aqueous potassium hydroxide (B. 9, 969). The free acid contains two molecules of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Fusion with potassium hydroxide at 250° converts it into resorcinol [1,3]. When para-benzene-disulphonic acid is heated with caustic alkali, meta-phenol-sulphonic acid is also produced at first, but it yields resorcinol later.

**Phenol** [2,4]-disulphonic Acid results from the action of an excess of sulphuric acid upon phenol, also upon [1,2]- and [1,4]-phenol-sulphonic acid. The solutions of the acid and its salts are colored a dark red by ferric chloride.

**Phenol** [2,4,6] trisulphonic Acid is obtained when concentrated sulphuric acid and  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  act upon phenol. It crystallizes in thick prisms with  $3\frac{1}{2}\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

See B. 28, R. 378, 399, for the *amidophenol-sulphonic acids*.

#### THIO-DERIVATIVES OF PHENOL.

**Mercaptans.**—Thiophenol, *Phenylmercaptan* [*Phenthiof*],  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SH}$ , boiling at 168°, with sp. gravity 1.078 (14°), is a mobile, ill-smelling liquid. It is made (1) by letting  $\text{P}_2\text{S}_5$  act upon phenol (Z. f. Ch. 1867, 193); (2) by distilling sodium benzene sulphonate with potassium sulphhydrate (B. 17, 2080); (3) from phenyldithiocarbonic

ters (see below). It manifests great tendency to throw off hydrogen and become benyldisulphide; hence it often acts as a reducing agent (compare B. 29, R. 979). *Mercury Thiophenate*,  $(C_6H_5S)_2Hg$ . *Thiophenyl Acetal*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot S \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH(OC_2H_5)_2$ , oils at  $273^\circ$  (B. 24, 160). *Thiophenylacetone* melts at  $34^\circ$  and boils at  $266^\circ$  (B. 24, 63). Consult B. 24, 234; 28, 1120; A. 253, 161, for mercaptal (1, 204) and mercaptol derivatives of thiophenol. *Phenyl Orthothioformic Ester*,  $C_6H_5S \cdot CO_2 \cdot C_2H_5$ , boils at  $260^\circ$  (B. 19, 1228). *Phenyldithiocarbonic Ester*,  $C_6H_5S \cdot CSOR$ , is formed from liazobenzene chloride and represents a common reaction. It yields thiophenol when saponified. This is the most convenient way of preparing thiophenols (B. 21, R. 915). *Diazobenzene Thiophenyl Ester*,  $C_6H_5N_2 \cdot SC_6H_5$ , an oil, is produced from diazobenzene chloride and phenylmercaptan (B. 28, 3237).

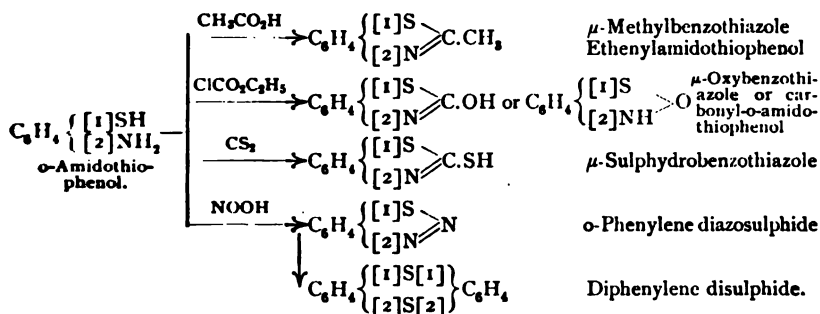
*o*-Thiocresol melts at  $15^\circ$  and boils at  $188^\circ$ ; the *m*-body is a liquid boiling at  $195$ – $205^\circ$ , while the *p*-compound melts at  $43^\circ$  and boils at  $194^\circ$ . *Thiocymene*,  $(CH_3)(C_2H_5)C_6H_4SH$  (see carvacrol, p. 145).

Mention should be made of *o*-amidothiophenol, one of the numerous substitution products of thiophenol, because of its heterocyclic condensation products.

*o*-Amido-thiophenol,  $NH_2[2]C_6H_4[1]SH$ , is obtained from ortho-nitro-benzene-sulphonic chloride by reduction with tin and hydrochloric acid. A better method to pursue is to fuse benzenyl-*o*-amidothiophenol with caustic potash (B. 20, 2259). It melts at  $26^\circ$  and boils at  $234^\circ$ .

*m*-Amidothiophenol (B. 27, 2816).

The condensations of the *o*-Amidothiophenols (compare *o*-diamines, p. 95 and *o*-amidophenols (p. 153)). (1) *Benzothiazoles* are formed on heating *o*-amidothiophenol with carboxylic acids, acid chlorides, or acid anhydrides. (2) *o*-Amidothiophenol, by the action of chlorcarbonic esters, forms *μ*-oxybenzothiazole or carbonylamidothiophenol. (3) Carbon disulphide produces *μ*-sulphydrobenzothiazole (see this). (4) Nitrous acid converts *o*-amidothiophenol into *o*-phenylene diazosulphide (see this); at  $200$ – $220^\circ$  this becomes *diphenylene disulphide*:



*Phenylsulphocarbazine* (p. 127) is also a heterocyclic derivative of *o*-amidothiophenol. See p. 160 for the condensation of *o*-amidothiophenol with pyrocatechol to *thiodiphenylamine*.

**Sulphides.**—*Phenyl Disulphide*,  $(C_6H_5)_2S_2$ , melting at  $61^\circ$  and boiling at  $310^\circ$ , results from the oxidation of thiophenol with a chromic acid mixture or in ammoniacal solution by the oxygen of the air; by the action of iodine upon aqueous potassium thiophenate; by heating thiophenol with benzene sulphinic acid; by heating thiophenol or phenylsulphide with sulphur, etc. Reducing agents decompose it into two molecules of thiophenol, and alcoholic potash breaks it down into potassium thiophenate and potassium benzene sulphinate.

**Phenyl Sulphide**,  $(C_6H_5)_2S$ , Benzene sulphide, a colorless liquid with an odor resembling that of leeks, boils at  $292^\circ$  and has a specific gravity of 1.12. It is formed (1) by distilling phenol with  $P_2S_5$  (along with thiophenol); (2) in the distillation of sodium benzene sulphinate, as well as in the action of benzene diazochloride upon sodium thiophenate with  $P_2S_5$  (B. 23, 2471); (3) on heating sulphur with diphenyl-

sulphone (method of preparation), into which it is also converted by oxidants (B. 26, 2816); (4) upon heating mercury diphenyl with sulphur (B. 27, 1771); (5) phenyl sulphide and its homologues are also readily prepared by heating aromatic lead mercaptides with haloid benzenes (the bromides are the best adapted for this purpose) (B. 28, 2322). *Diphenylene sulphide* or *dibenzothiophene* (see this) is produced on conducting the vapors of phenylsulphide through a tube heated to redness.

**Amidophenyl Sulphides or Thioanilines.**—*Formation*: (1) These compounds result when nitrothiophenyls are reduced (comp. B. 29, 2362); (2) from anilines by boiling the latter with sulphur and lead oxide (B. 4, 384). Sulphur chloride converts the dialkylanilines into sym.-p-tetra-alkyl-diamidophenyl sulphides. Silver nitrate and ammonia desulphurize the tetra-alkyl compounds, with the formation of sym.-p-tetra-alkyl-diamidodiphenylene oxides—e. g.,  $\text{O}[\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4] \cdot \text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2]_2$  (B. 21, 2056). Upon heating methyl-thio-anilines—e. g., thio-p-toluidine—with sulphur to higher temperatures, thiazole derivatives, like *dehydrotiolotuidine* (see benzothiazole), are produced.

*p-Diamidodiphenyl Sulphide*,  $\text{S} \langle \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{NH}_2 \rangle_2$ , *Thioaniline*, melts at  $105^\circ$ . *o-Diamidodiphenyl Sulphide* melts at  $93^\circ$  (B. 27, 2807). See B. 29, 2774 for isomeric thioanilines, melting at  $80^\circ$  and  $86^\circ$ .

*Thio-p-toluidine*,  $\text{S} \langle \text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{CH}_3) \cdot \text{NH}_2 \rangle_2$ , *Diamidoditolyl Sulphide*, melts at  $103^\circ$ . The sodium salts of thio- and dithio-toluidine sulphonic acids dye unmordanted cotton (B. 21, R. 877). They are, therefore, so-called substantive cotton dyes.

The bis-diazo salts of thio-p-toluidine combine with naphthylamine-sulphonic acids and yield diazo dyes of a brown-red color (B. 20, 664).

**Thiodiphenylimides.**—*Thiodiphenylamine*,  $\text{S} \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} \right\} \text{NH}$ , is the simplest of these heterocyclic bodies. *Methylene blue*, a most valuable dye, is derived from it. The thiophenylamine group will be discussed later with the hetero six-ring compounds.

*Thioanisole*,  $\text{S}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{OCH}_3)_2$ , melting at  $46^\circ$ , and allied bodies are formed when thionyl chloride or sulphur chloride with aluminium chloride acts upon the phenol-ethers (A. 27, 2540).

*Phenylselenides* and *tellurides* are quite readily obtained from the mercury diphenyl compounds by the action of selenium and tellurium.

*Diphenylselenide*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{Se}$ , also results upon heating selenium with diphenylsulphone. Sulphur dioxide escapes at the same time. It boils at  $163^\circ$  (14 mm.). Further action of selenium produces *diphenyldiselenide*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{Se}_2$ , melting at  $63^\circ$  and boiling at  $203^\circ$  (11 mm.). Reduction changes it to two molecules of *phenylselenium hydride*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SeH}$ , melting at  $183^\circ$ . *Diphenyltelluride*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{Te}$ , boils at  $174^\circ$  (10 mm.)—see B. 28, 1670; 29, 428.

## DIHYDRIC PHENOLS.

Several representatives of this family occur in plants, or have been obtained as decomposition products of plant substances. *Resorcinol*, m-dioxybenzene is especially important from a technical standpoint.

The *general methods of formation* are like those of the cortico-dioxyphenols. *Monohydric phenols*—(1) by fusing monohalogen phenols, halo-phenols, zenesulphonic acids, phenolsulphonic acids, and benzenedisulphonic acids with potassium hydroxide (pp. 135, 136); (2) by the dry distillation of amido-phenols; and (3) by the dry distillation of amido-phenols alone or with lime or baryta.

(4) o- and p-Dioxybenzenes are obtained by the reduction of their corresponding quinones.

*Deposition.*—Their

of the two hydroxyl groups with reference to one another. The three simplest dioxybenzenes:

*Pyrocatechol* [1,2], *Resorcinol* [1,3], *Hydroquinone* [1,4], are, therefore, typical representatives of the three groups of dihydric phenols. The deportment of such bodies can be fully illustrated through them. The dihydric phenols can be changed by chlorine to *hydroaromatic ketochlorides*, whose carbon ring may be readily ruptured (see p. 44). Chloroform and caustic potash convert them into dioxyaldehydes, while they yield dioxycarboxylic acids with carbon tetrachloride and caustic potash.

*Pyrocatechin Group*.—All o-dioxybenzenes are colored green by ferric chloride. They are further distinguished from the m- and p-compounds by their ability to readily exchange their hydroxyl hydrogen atoms and thus form cyclic esters.

**Pyrocatechin, Pyrocatechol.** o-Dioxybenzene, [1,2-Phendiol]  $C_6H_4[1,2](OH)_2$ , melting at  $104^\circ$  and boiling at  $245^\circ$ , was first (Reinsch, 1839) obtained in the distillation of catechine (the juice of *Mimosa catechu*), and also from *Moringa tannic acid*.

It is produced in fusing many resins with caustic potash. It occurs in *kino*, the dried juice of different kinds of *Pterocarpus*, *Butea*, and *Eucalyptus*, in beechwood tar, and has been obtained as a by-product in the manufacture of paraffin from bituminous shales at the Messel mine, near Darmstadt, etc. *Pyrocatechol-sulphuric Acid* occurs in the urine of the horse and in that of man. It is artificially made (1) by oxidizing phenol with hydrogen peroxide; (2) by the distillation of protocatechuic acid, or  $[1CO_2H, 3,4]$ -dioxybenzoic acid; (3) by fusing [1,2]-chlorphenol, [1,2]-bromphenol (B. 27, R. 957, D. P. 76,597), [1,2]-benzene disulphonic acid, and [1,2]-phenolsulphonic acid with caustic potash; (4) by heating guaiacol pyrocatechol monomethyl ether (see this) to  $200^\circ$  with hydriodic acid.

On exposure to the air its alkaline solutions assume a green, then brown, and finally a black color. Lead acetate throws out a white precipitate,  $PbC_6H_4O_2$ , from its aqueous solution. Neither resorcinol nor hydroquinone shows this reaction. Pyrocatechin reduces cold silver solutions and alkaline copper solutions. The application of heat is required in the latter case. Pyrocatechin in glacial acetic acid solution is converted by chlorine into tetrachlorpyrocatechin, tetrachlor-o-quinone (p. 169), and *hexachlor-o-diketo-R-hexene* (p. 45). In nitrous acid to *dioxytartaric acid*. Consult p. 160 for the heterocyclic formations obtainable from pyrocatechol. Heated with phthalic anhydride and sulphuric acid, it yields *alisarine* (see this) and *hystazarine* (see this). Compare protocatechuic aldehyde and protocatechuic acid.

**Ethers**.—The *monomethyl ether*,  $HO[1]C_6H_4[2]OCH_3$ , melting at  $28^\circ$  and boiling at  $250^\circ$ , Guaiacol, occurs in the creosote from beechwood tar (B. 28, R. 156). It is produced on heating pyrocatechin with potassium hydroxide and potassium methyl sulphate to  $180^\circ$ , as well as by heating calcium vanillate, and from veratrol (B. 28, R. 362). Ferric chloride gives its alcoholic solution an emerald-green color (see vanillin).

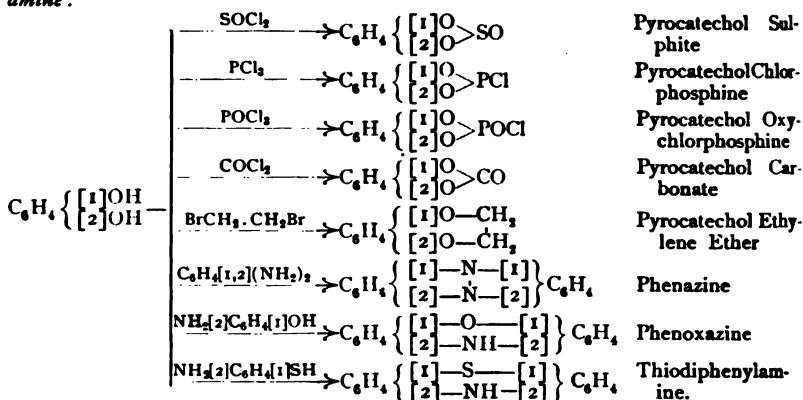
**Dimethyl ether, Veratrol**,  $C_6H_4[1,2](OCH_3)_2$ , melting at  $15^\circ$  and boiling at  $205^\circ$ , is prepared by treating the potassium salt of the monomethyl ether with  $CH_3I$ , and by distilling veratric acid with lime. The *ethylene ester* boils at  $216^\circ$  (A. 280, 205).

*Pyrocatechin sulphite* boils at  $210$ – $211^\circ$  (B. 27, 2752); *pyrocatechin chlorphosphine* melts at  $130^\circ$ ; *pyrocatechin oxychlorphosphine* melts at  $35^\circ$  (B. 27, 2569) (see below). *Diacetyl ester*,  $C_6H_4[1,2](OCOCH_3)_2$ .

The *carbonic ester*,  $C_6H_4\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\} O > CO$ , results from the action of chlorcarbonic ester upon pyrocatechin, melts at  $118^\circ$  and boils at  $227^\circ$  (B. 13, 697; A. 226, 84). *Monobenzoylester* melts at  $130^\circ$  (B. 26, 1076). *Dibenzoyl ester* melts at  $84^\circ$  (A. 210, 261).

**Hetero-ring Formations from Pyrocatechol**.—By the replacement of both

hydroxyl hydrogen atoms of pyrocatechol *cyclic esters* are formed with  $\text{SOCl}_2$ ,  $\text{PCl}_5$ ,  $\text{POCl}_3$ ,  $\text{COCl}_2$ , and ethylene bromide. o-Phenylenediamine, o-amidophenol, and o-amidothiophenol condense with pyrocatechin, forming *phenazine*, *phenoxazine*, and *thiodiphenylamine* :



**Homologous Pyrocatechols.**—*Isohomopyrocatechol*,  $\text{CH}_3[\text{1}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[\text{2,3}](\text{OH})_2$ , melts at  $47^\circ$  (B. 24, 4137). *Homopyrocatechol*,  $\text{CH}_3[\text{1}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[\text{3,4}](\text{OH})_2$ , melting at  $51^\circ$  and boiling at  $251^\circ$ , occurs in the form of its 3-methyl ether as *creosol*,  $\text{CH}_3[\text{1}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[\text{3}](\text{OCH}_3)[4]\text{OH}$ , boiling at  $221^\circ$ , in beechwood tar, together with phloral (B. 14, 2005).

Creosol is also formed together with guaiacol (see above) in the distillation of guaiacol resin. Higher homologues of pyrocatechol have been obtained by treating pyrocatechol with aliphatic alcohols and zinc chloride (B. 28, R. 312; D. P. 78,882).

*Monothiopyrocatechol*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1,2](\text{SH})(\text{OH})$ , melting at  $+5^\circ$  and boiling at  $217^\circ$ , results from the reduction of *diphenoldisulphide*,  $[\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{OH}]_2\text{S}_2$ , produced on heating sodium phenoxide with sulphur.

*Diphenylene Disulphide*, or *Thianthrene*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]\text{S}[1] \\ [2]\text{S}[2] \end{smallmatrix} \right\} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ , melting at  $158^\circ$  and boiling at  $360^\circ$ , should be regarded as a derivative of dithiopyrocatechol,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{SH})_2$ . It is made by boiling phenylsulphide with sulphur, also from benzene,  $\text{SCl}_2$ , and aluminium chloride, as well as by heating phenylene diazosulphide (p. 157). Oxidation converts it into a *disulphone*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{SO}_2)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ . When the latter is heated with selenium *Diphenylene Diselenide*, selenanthrene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4:(\text{Se}_2):\text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ , melting at  $181^\circ$  and boiling at  $223^\circ$  (11 mm.), results (B. 29, 435, 443).

**Resorcinol Group.**—Resorcinol and many of its homologues combine with phthalic anhydride, the products being the *fluoresceins* (see these). The aqueous solutions of the m-dioxybenzenes are colored *dark violet* by ferric chloride.

**Resorcinol**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1,3](\text{OH})_2$ , melting at  $118^\circ$  and boiling at  $276^\circ$ , is produced from *Galbanum*, *Asafetida*, and other resins upon heating them with potash, as well as by distilling the extract of Brazil-wood. It can also be obtained from many m-disubstitution-products of benzene, such as [1,3]-chlor- and iodphenol, [1,3]-phenolsulphonic acid, [1,3]-benzene-disulphonic acid, etc., on fusing them with potash or soda at  $230$ – $280^\circ$ ; by the same method from *umbelliferone*.

Even o- and p-compounds (B. 7, 1175; 8, 365), especially when fused at high temperatures with caustic alkali, yield resorcinol; hence the potash fusion is not available in the determination of position (p. 149). Resor-

cinol is made on a technical scale from m-benzene-disulphonic acid (J. pr. Ch. [2] 20, 319).

**Properties and Deportment.**—Resorcinol crystallizes in rhombic prisms or plates. It dissolves readily in water, alcohol, and ether, but not in chloroform and carbon disulphide. It possesses a sweet taste. Lead acetate does not precipitate its aqueous solution (distinction from pyrocatechin).

Sodium amalgam reduces resorcinol to dihydroresorcin (A. 278, 20), or m-diketohexamethylene (B. 27, 2129). Bromine precipitates it from aqueous solution as tribromoresorcinol, melting at 111°, while chlorine converts it in glacial acetic acid solution finally into heptachlor-resorcinol (p. 46) (B. 26, 498), which can be easily decomposed. Fusion with caustic soda produces phloroglucin, pyrocatechol, and diresorcinol,  $(\text{HO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 - \text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{OH})_2$  (B. 26, R. 233). The chlorhydrate of a triresorcinol,  $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_8$  (A. 289, 61), is formed when resorcinol is heated with hydrochloric acid.

Fluorescein is produced when resorcinol is heated with phthalic anhydride.

If resorcinol be heated with sodium nitrite, it forms a deep-blue dye, soluble in water. Acids turn this red (B. 17, 2617). It is used as an indicator under the name of *lactmoid* (B. 18, R. 126). Nitric acid, containing nitrous acid, converts resorcin into two dyes,—*resorufin* and *resazurin*,—derivatives of phenoxazine (see this) (B. 23, 718).

When diazo-salts act upon aqueous or alkaline resorcinol solutions, azodyes and diazodyes are produced; thus, with diazobenzene nitrate or chloride the products are:

*Benzeneazoresorcinol*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_2)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{OH})_2$ ,  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -*diazobenzene-disazoresorcinol*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_2)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{OH})_2$  (B. 15, 2816; 16, 2858; 17, 880); while with the diazochloride of amidoazobenzene there results *azobenzene-azo-resorcinol*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{OH})_2$  (B. 15, 2817).

**Ethers and Esters.**—The monomethyl ether boils at 243° (B. 16, 151). The dimethyl ether boils at 214° (B. 10, 868). The diacetyl ester boils at 278° (B. 16, 552). The dicarbonic ester,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_2(\text{OCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ , boils at 300° (B. 13, 697). The dibenzoate melts at 117° (A. 210, 256). Resorcinol combines with the various sugars under the influence of hydrochloric acid (B. 27, 1356).

Dinitroso-resorcinol, diquinoxylidioxime,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_2[1,3](\text{OH})_2[4,6](\text{NO})_2$  or  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_2(\text{O})_2(\text{N} \cdot \text{OH})_2[1,3,2,4]$ , crystallizes in yellow-brown leaflets, which detonate on heating to 115° C. (B. 20, 3133). It occurs in commerce under the names *solid green*, or *chlorine*.

Nitric acid vapors oxidize resorcinol to  $\nu$ -dinitroresorcin,  $(\text{NO}_2)_2[2,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2[1,3](\text{CH})_2$ , melting at 115°. Isodinitroresorcin, Styphnic Acid, Oxypicric Acid,  $(\text{NO}_2)_2[4,6]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2[1,3](\text{OH})_2$ , melts at 212°.

When cold nitric acid acts on resorcinol and various gum-resins (galbanum, etc.), or by nitrating metanitrophenol and various dinitrophenols, we get *Trinitroresorcinol*,  $(\text{NO}_2)_3[2,4,6]\text{C}_6\text{H}[\text{1,3}](\text{OH})_2$ . It melts at 175°. Ferrous sulphate and lime-water color it green (picric acid colors it blood-red). The diethyl ester melts at 120°.

Thioresorcinol,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1,3](\text{SH})_2$ , melts at 27°, and boils at 243°. It results from the reduction of benzene-m-disulphonic chloride, and when heated with phenylisocyanate, becomes *bisphenylcarbamate*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{SCNHC}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , melting at 179° (B. 29, R. 177).

**Homologous Resorcinols.**—Orcinol is by far the most important body among those which follow:

		M.P.	B.P.
Orcinol, . . . . .	$\text{CH}_3[1]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[3,5](\text{OH})_2$	107°	289°
Cresorcin, . . . . .	$\text{CH}_3[1]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[2,4](\text{OH})_2$	104°	269° (B. 19, 136).
2,6-Dioxytoluene, . . . . .	$\text{CH}_3[1]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[2,6](\text{OH})_2$	64°	— (B. 17, 1963).
2,4-Dioxy-m-xylene, . . . . .	$(\text{CH}_3)_2[1,3]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2[2,4](\text{OH})_2$	147°	149° (B. 23, 3114).
m-Xylorcin, . . . . .	$(\text{CH}_3)_2[1,3]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2[4,6](\text{OH})_2$	125°	277° } (B. 19,
$\beta$ -Orcin, . . . . .	$(\text{CH}_3)_2[1,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2[3,5](\text{OH})_2$	163°	275° } 2318).
Mesorcin, . . . . .	$(\text{CH}_3)_2[1,3,5]\text{C}_6\text{H}(\text{OH})_2$	149°	275° (A. 215, 100).
Ditertiary-amylresorcinol, . . . . .	$(\text{C}_5\text{H}_{11})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_2[1,3](\text{OH})_2$	89°	— (B. 25, 2653).

**Orcin**, *Orcinol*,  $\text{CH}_3[1]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[3,5](\text{OH})_2$ , is the most important of the six theoretically possible and known dioxytoluenes (B. 15, 2995). It is found in many lichens of the variety *Rocella* and *Lecanora*, partly free and partly as orsellic acid, or partly as erythrine or diorsellie erythric ester. It is obtained from orsellic acid either by dry distillation or by boiling with lime.

It is obtained by fusing the extract of aloes with caustic potash. It can be prepared synthetically from 3,5-dinitro-p-toluidine and various other toluene-derivatives by the replacement of their side groups by hydroxyl groups (B. 15, 2990).

Orcin is produced in the distillation of o-dioxyphenylacetate of silver,  $(\text{HO})_2[3,5]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[1]\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{Ag}$  (B. 19, 1451), and upon heating dehydracetic acid (see vol. I) with concentrated caustic potash (B. 26, R. 316). Orcin crystallizes in colorless, six-sided prisms containing one molecule of water. It dissolves easily in water, alcohol, and ether, and has a sweet taste. It melts at  $56^\circ$ , when it contains water, but gradually loses this, and melts (dried in the desiccator) at  $107^\circ$ . It boils at  $290^\circ$ . Lead acetate precipitates its aqueous solution; ferric chloride colors it a *blue violet*. Bleaching lime causes a rapidly disappearing dark-violet coloration. It yields azo-coloring substances with diazo-compounds, and therefore has the  $2\text{OH}$ -groups in the meta-position (p. 154). It does not form a fluorescein with phthalic anhydride (p. 160). Chlorine changes it, when dissolved in glacial acetic acid, into trichlororcin, melting at  $127^\circ$ . Dissolved in chloroform it is converted by the same reagent into *pentachlororcin*, or  $[1,3,5]$ -*dihydroxymethylpentachlor-R-hexene* (B. 26, 317) (p. 46).

*Nitroso-orcin*,  $\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{OH})_2(\text{NO})$ , consists of two modifications—dark-red crystals and bright-yellow needles; the first change to the second when heated to  $100$ – $110^\circ$  (B. 29, 989).

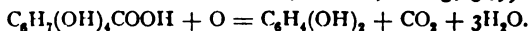
On allowing its ammoniacal solution to stand exposed to the air, orcinol changes to orcein,  $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{14}\text{N}_2\text{O}_7$  (B. 23, R. 647), which separates out in the form of a reddish-brown amorphous powder. It dissolves in alcohol and alkalis with a dark-red color, and is reprecipitated by acids. Orcein forms red lac-dyes with metallic oxides. It is the chief constituent of the coloring-matter *archil* (called also *persio*, cudbear, and purpur—French) which originates from the same lichens as orcinol through the action of ammonia and air. *Litmus* is produced from the lichens *Rocella* and *Lecanora* by the action of ammonia and potassium carbonate. The concentrated blue solution of the potassium salt, when mixed with chalk or gypsum, constitutes the commercial litmus.

**Iso-orcin** (Cresorcin,  $\gamma$ -orcin), is obtained by fusing 2,4-toluene disulphonic acid with KOH.

p-Xylorcin, or  $\beta$ -Orcin, from m-dinitro-p-xylene, rapidly acquires a red color on exposure to air containing ammonia. It has been obtained by distillation from various lichen acids—e. g., *usnic acid*. Mesorcin, or dioxymesitylene, is made from dinitromesitylene.

**Hydroquinone Group.**—The p-dioxybenzenes are usually called hydroquinones, because they are easily obtained by the reduction of the p-quinones, and just as readily reconverted into the latter by ferric chloride.

**Hydroquinone**, p-Dioxybenzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1,4](\text{OH})_2$ , melting at  $169^\circ$ , was first obtained by the dry distillation of quinic acid and by digesting its aqueous solution with lead dioxide (Wöhler, A. 65, 349):



It results also, together with glucose, on boiling the glucoside arbutin with dilute sulphuric acid, and occurs in *Protea mellifera* (B. 29, R. 416).

It is further formed by the electrolytic oxidation of an alcoholic benzene solution acidulated with sulphuric acid (B. 27, 1942), and by fusing [1,4]-iodphenol with potassium hydroxide at 180°; or from [2,5]-oxy-salicylic acid, and from para-amidophenol; also in small quantities in the distillation of succinates. The most convenient method of preparing it consists in reducing quinone with sulphurous acid:

Extract the hydroquinone from the aqueous solution by shaking with ether, and purify the product by recrystallization from hot water that has passed through animal charcoal (B. 19, 1467) and contains sulphur dioxide.

Hydroquinone is dimorphous and crystallizes in monoclinic leaflets and hexagonal prisms. It decomposes when quickly heated. It dissolves readily in water (in 17 parts at 15°), alcohol, and ether. It forms crystalline compounds with H<sub>2</sub>S and SO<sub>2</sub>; these are decomposed by water. Ammonia colors the aqueous solution reddish-brown. It is only in the presence of ammonia that lead acetate produces a precipitate in the solution of hydroquinone. Oxidizing agents (like ferric chloride) convert hydroquinone into quinone; quinhydrone is an intermediate product.

Hydroquinone, like quinone, forms quinone-dioxime (p. 172) (B. 22, 1283) with hydroxylamine hydrochloride.

Hydroquinone is used as a "developer" in photography, and in therapeutics as an antifermentative and antipyretic agent.

**Ethers.**—Methylhydroquinone, CH<sub>3</sub>·O[C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>[1]OH], is formed from methyl arbutin; and from hydroquinone by heating it with caustic potash, and methyl iodide or potassium methyl sulphate (B. 14, 1989). It melts at 53° and boils at 247°. The dimethyl ether melts at 56° and boils at 205°. The ethyl ether melts at 66° and boils at 246°. The diethyl ether melts at 71°.

Hydroquinone bischlorphosphine, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>(OPCl<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, melts at 65° and boils at 200° (65 mm.), while hydroquinone bisoxychlorphosphine, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>(OPOCl<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, melts at 123° and boils at 270° (70 mm.) (B. 27, 2568).

Hydroquinone Diacetate, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>(O·COCH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, melts at 123°.

Hydroquinone Dibenzoate, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>(O·COC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, melts at 199°.

Homologous Hydroquinones are usually prepared by action of sulphur dioxide upon the homologous quinones. Toluhydroquinone results from the action of hot dilute sulphuric acid upon p-tolylhydroxylamine (p. 70). Hydro-p-xyloquinone bears the name *hydrophlorone*. Dimethylhydrothymoquinone, boiling at 249°, occurs in the ethereal oil of *Arnica montana* (A. 170, 363). Ditertiary-amylohydroquinone results from hydroquinone and isocamylene with glacial acetic acid and sulphuric acid (B. 25, 2650).

Hydrotoluquinone (B. 15, 2981),	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> [1]C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>3</sub> [2,5](OH) <sub>2</sub>	M. P.
Hydro-o-xyloquinone, . . . . .	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> [1,2]C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>3</sub> [3,6](OH) <sub>2</sub>	124° (A. 215, 159).
Hydro-m-xyloquinone, . . . . .	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> [1,3]C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>3</sub> [2,5](OH) <sub>2</sub>	121° (B. 18, 2673).
Hydro-p-xyloquinone, . . . . .	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> [1,4]C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>3</sub> [2,5](OH) <sub>2</sub>	150° (B. 18, 1151).
Hydrocumoquinone, . . . . .	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> [1,2,4]C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>2</sub> [3,6](OH) <sub>2</sub>	212° (A. 215, 169).
Hydrothymoquinone, . . . . .	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> [1,2,4]C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>2</sub> [3,6](OH) <sub>2</sub>	169° (B. 18, 1152).
Hydrothymoquinone, . . . . .	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> [1,4]C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>3</sub> [2,5](OH) <sub>2</sub>	139° B. P. 290°.
Ditert. Amylhydroquinone, . .	(C <sub>5</sub> H <sub>11</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>2</sub> [1,4](OH) <sub>2</sub>	185°.

**Substituted Hydroquinones.**—Monochlor- and monobrom-hydroquinones have been obtained by the action of concentrated hydrochloric or hydrobromic acid upon p-quinone (B. 12, 1504). Monochlorquinone gave dichlorquinone, etc. (A. 210, 153). Di-, tri-, and tetrachlorhydroquinones result from the corresponding chlorinated quinone by the action of SO<sub>2</sub>.

Monochlorquinone	melts at 104°;	Monobromquinone	melts at 110°.
[2,5]-Dichlorquinone	" 166°;	[2,5]-Dibromquinone	" 186°.
[2,6]-Dichlorquinone	" 158°;	[2,6]-Dibromquinone	" 163°.
Trichlorquinone	" 134°;	Tribromquinone	" 136°.
Tetrachlorquinone	" 232°;	Tetrabromquinone	" 244°.

[1,3]-Dinitro- and [2,5]-dinitrodiethylhydroquinone, melting at 233° and 176° (A. 215, 149), result from the nitration of hydroquinone diethylate and diacetate. They change into the same trinitrodiethylhydroquinone, melting at 130°, and [2,5]-dinitrohydroquinone diacetate, melting at 96°. The latter compound exchanges an NO<sub>2</sub> group very readily for NH. C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub> (B. 24, 3824).

Nitrohydroquinone, melting at 133°, is formed in the action of ammonium persulphate upon nitrophenol (J. pr. Ch. [2] 48, 179). Dinitrohydroquinone results from dinitroarbutin and dinitrohydroquinone diacetate. Reduction changes these compounds to amidohydroquinones (B. 22, 1656; 23, 1211). 1,4-Diamidohydroquinone is obtained from the dioxime of 2,5-dioxyquinone (p. 170).

When tetrachloroquinone is digested with a diluted solution of primary sodium sulphite (A. 114, 324) we get dichlorhydroquinone disulphonic acid, C<sub>6</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> { (OH)<sub>2</sub> (SO<sub>3</sub>H)<sub>2</sub> }. Its aqueous solution is colored indigo-blue by ferric chloride. When its alkaline solution is boiled it oxidizes to potassium euthiochronate (p. 170).

Monthiohydroquinone, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>[1,4](OH)(SH), melting at 30° and boiling at 167° (45 mm.), results from p-diazophenol chloride and potassium xanthogenate. Dithiohydroquinone, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>[1,4](SH)<sub>2</sub>, melting at 98°, is obtained from p-benzene disulphonic chloride or diazophenyl disulphide. In the air it gradually oxidizes to p-phenylene disulphide, [C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>S<sub>2</sub>]<sub>x</sub>.

### TRIHYDRIC PHENOLS.

The three isomeric trioxybenzenes are known in the compounds pyrogallol, phloroglucin, and oxyhydroquinone.

**Pyrogallol**, *Pyrogalllic Acid*, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub>[1,2,3](OH)<sub>3</sub>, melting at 132°, is produced by the elimination of CO<sub>2</sub> from gallic acid or pyrogalllocarboxylic acid, CO<sub>2</sub>H[1]C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>2</sub>[3,4,5](OH)<sub>3</sub>, when heated alone, as was first observed by Scheele (1786), or, better, with water to 210°; also by fusing the two p-chlorophenol-disulphonic acids and hæmatoxylin with potassium hydroxide. It forms white leaflets or needles. It dissolves readily in water, with more difficulty in alcohol and ether. Its alkaline solution absorbs oxygen very energetically (B. 14, 2666), turns brown and decomposes into carbon dioxide, acetic acid, and brown substances. It is used in gas analysis for the determination of oxygen. Pyrogallol quickly reduces salts of mercury, silver, and gold with precipitation of the metals, while it is oxidized to acetic and oxalic acids.

Ferrous sulphate containing ferric oxide colors its solution blue, ferric chloride red. Lead acetate precipitates white, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub>O<sub>3</sub>. PbO. An iodine solution imparts a purple-red color to an aqueous or alcoholic pyrogallol solution. Gallic and tannic acids react similarly.

The *dimethyl ether* is found in beechwood creosote. It melts at 51–52° and boils at 252° (B. 11, 333). Different oxidizing agents convert it into *cærulignone*, a diphenyl derivative. The *trimethyl ether* melts at 47° and boils at 235° (B. 21, 607, 2020). Bromine converts it into *xanthogallol*, C<sub>18</sub>H<sub>14</sub>Br<sub>14</sub>O<sub>6</sub> (B. 21, R. 626).

The *ethyl*, *diethyl*, and *triethyl ethers* melt at 95°, 79°, and 39°. The syrupy *dimethyl acetate* yields a quinone, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>2</sub>(OCH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>, with chromic acid; the *triacetate* crystallizes.

Trichlorpyrogallol, C<sub>6</sub>Cl<sub>3</sub>(OH)<sub>3</sub>, melts with decomposition at 177° (B. 20, 2035).

*Tribrompyrogallol*, C<sub>6</sub>Br<sub>3</sub>(OH)<sub>3</sub>, from pyrogallol and bromine, when digested with bromine yields *xanthogallol*, C<sub>18</sub>H<sub>14</sub>Br<sub>14</sub>O<sub>6</sub>, melting at 122° (A. 245, 335). *Methylpyrogalloldimethyl ether*, CH<sub>3</sub>.C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>2</sub>(OH)(OCH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, melting at 36° and boiling at 265°, occurs in beechwood creosote (B. 12, 1371). *Methyl-[3,4,5]-pyrogallol-[4,5]-dimethyl Ether*, *Iridol*, melting at 57° and boiling at 249°, is formed on distilling *iridic acid*, CO<sub>2</sub>H.CH<sub>2</sub>.C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>2</sub>(OH)(OCH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub> (B. 26, 2018).

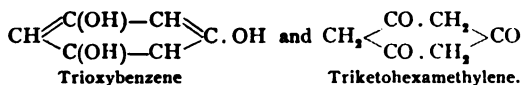
*Propylpyrogallol-dimethyl Ether, Picamar*,  $C_8H_7 \cdot C_6H_2(OH)(OCH_3)_2$ , boiling at  $245^\circ$ , was discovered in beechwood creosote by Reichenbach (B. 11, 329).

**Phloroglucin**,  $C_6H_3[1,3,5](OH)_3$ , melts at  $218^\circ$  when it is rapidly heated. Hlasiwetz first obtained it (1855) in the decomposition of *phloreline* (see this). It can also be prepared from *quercetine*, *hesperidine*, and other *glucosides* (see these). It is formed from different resins (catechu, kino, dragon's blood, and others), on fusion with caustic potash. It is most easily made by fusing resorcinol with caustic soda (B. 14, 954; 18, 1323); by the fusion of orcin and benzene trisulphonic acid with sodium hydroxide; also by the saponification and decomposition of synthetically prepared phloroglucin-tricarboxylic ester, which gives up  $3CO_2$  (B. 18, 3454).

It crystallizes in large, colorless prisms with  $2H_2O$ ; these effloresce in the air. It loses all its water of crystallization at  $110^\circ$ , melts at  $218^\circ$ , and sublimes without decomposition. It has a sweetish taste, and dissolves readily in water, alcohol, and ether. Lead acetate does precipitate it; ferric chloride colors its solution a *dark violet*.

Chlorine oxidizes phloroglucin to dichloroacetic acid and tetrachloroacetone (p. 46). One of the first intermediate products is *hexachlor-triketo-R-hexylene* (p. 46). For the action of bromine see B. 23, 1706. It is converted by reduction into *phloroglucite* or *sym.-trioxylhexamethylene* (B. 27, 357).

Phloroglucin, in most of its reactions,—for example, with phenylcyanate (see B. 23, 269),—conducts itself like a trihydric phenol,  $C_6H_3(OH)_3$ ; on the other hand it unites with three molecules of hydroxylamine to form a *trioxime* (see below), hence it may be considered a triketone— $[1,3,5]$ -*triketo-hexamethylene* (B. 19, 159):



In order to explain the trioxime formation it might be assumed that the  $[1,3,5]$ -trioxylbenzene formula is the unstable pseudo-form (1, 54) of phloroglucin. This assumption is, however, not necessary. It might be imagined, too, that hydroxylamine first attaches itself to the double union of the trioxylbenzene ring, and then the splitting of the three molecules of water took place.

**Normal Phloroglucin Ethers.**—The *trimethyl ether*, melting at  $52^\circ$  and boiling at  $255^\circ$ , and the *triethyl ether*, melting at  $43^\circ$ , are formed upon heating the alcoholic solutions of phloroglucin with HCl, and then with methyl iodide and caustic potash (B. 21, 603). The trimethyl ether also results from the action of caustic potash upon *methyl hydrocotoine* (B. 26, 784). *Phloroglucintriacetate* melts at  $105^\circ$ . See B. 28, 24; 29, R. 990, for the action of phloroglucin upon the sugars. *Nitrosophloroglucindiethyl Ethers: diethoxyquinoxime*,  $C_8H_7(OC_2H_5)_2(NO)(OH)$ ,  $\alpha$ -body melting at  $117^\circ$ ,  $\beta$ -variety at  $192$ – $195^\circ$  with decomposition—see B. 29, R. 849. *Trinitrosophloroglucin*,  $C_6(NO)_3(OH)_3$  (B. 11, 1375). *Trinitrophloroglucin*,  $C_6(NO_3)_3(OH)_3$ . *Triamidophloroglucin*,  $C_6(NH_2)_3(OH)_3$ , yields *croconic acid* when boiled with  $MnO_2$  and soda (B. 26, 2185).

When phloroglucin is treated with methyl iodide and alcoholic potash the final product is *Hexamethylphloroglucin* or *hexamethyltriketo-hexamethylene*,  $C_6(CH_3)_6O_3$ , melting at  $80^\circ$  and boiling at  $248^\circ$ . Fuming hydrochloric acid decomposes it into di-isopropyl ketone and isobutyric acid (B. 23, R. 462).

**Phloroglucin Trioxime**,  $C_6H_3(NO)_3$ , is a crystalline powder exploding at  $155^\circ$ . Phenyl hydrazine adds itself to phloroglucin just as it does to oxalo-acetic ester and dioxysuccinic ester (p. 123).

*Oxyhydroquinones* result from the reduction of oxyquinones.

**Oxyhydroquinone**,  $C_6H_3[1,2,4](OH)_3$ , is produced on fusing hydroquinone with KOH (together with tetra- and hexaoxy-diphenyl (B. 18, R. 24)). It is crystalline, very soluble in water and ether, and in aqueous solution soon acquires a dark color. It melts at  $140.5^\circ$ . Ferric chloride colors it a dark greenish-brown. Its tri-ethyl ether,  $C_6H_3(O \cdot C_2H_5)_3$ , is obtained from trioxethyl benzoic acid (from æsculetin). It can also

be prepared by ethylating ethoxy-hydroquinone. It melts at  $34^{\circ}$  (B. 20, 1133). The trimethyl ether,  $C_6H_3(O \cdot CH_3)_3$ , from methoxy-quinone (p. 170), boils at  $247^{\circ}$ .

### TETRAHYDRIC PHENOLS.

There are three possible isomerides; the symmetrical and unsymmetrical varieties are known in a free state, while the third member has been liberated in the form of simple ethers from various plant substances.

(1) Apionol, *v*-Tetraoxybenzene, [*Phentetrol*], has been obtained as Dimethyl Apionol,  $C_6H_2[1,2,3,4](O \cdot CH_3)_2(OH)_2$ , by heating apiolic acid with caustic potash. It melts at  $106^{\circ}$  and boils at  $298^{\circ}$ . Tetramethyl Apionol,  $C_6H_2(O \cdot CH_3)_4$ , melts at  $81^{\circ}$ . [1,2]-Methylene-3,4-dimethyl Apionol,  $C_6H_2(O_2 \cdot CH_2)(O \cdot CH_3)_2$ , Apione, is formed when apiolic acid is heated with dilute sulphuric acid. It melts at  $69^{\circ}$  (B. 24, 2608; 29, 1806).

1-n-Propyl-2,3,4,5-tetraoxybenzene is obtained as methylene dimethyl ether, dihydroapiol, melting at  $25^{\circ}$  and boiling at  $292^{\circ}$ , in the reduction of *isapiol*.

(2) Unsym.-Tetraoxybenzene,  $C_6H_2[1,2,3,5](OH)_4$ , is an amorphous, glassy mass obtained from iretol by the action of hydrochloric acid at  $150^{\circ}$ . The 1,3-dimethyl ether is prepared by reducing 1,3-dimethoxy-2,5-quinone. It melts at  $158^{\circ}$ . The tetramethyl ether melts at  $47^{\circ}$  and boils at  $271^{\circ}$  (B. 23, 2291).

Iretol,  $CH_3O \cdot C_6H_2(OH)_3$ , melting at  $186^{\circ}$ , is one of its monomethyl ethers. It is formed together with iridic acid on fusing *irigenin* with potash (B. 26, 2015).

(3) Symmetrical Tetraoxy-benzene,  $C_6H_2[1,2,4,5](OH)_4$ , is obtained by reducing 1,4-dioxy-2,5-quinone with stannous chloride. It melts at  $215-220^{\circ}$ . Its tetra-acetyl-ester melts at  $217^{\circ}$  (B. 21, 3374).

Dichlortetraoxy-benzene, hydrochloranilic acid,  $C_6Cl_2(OH)_4$ , results in the reduction of chloranilic acid (p. 170) with sulphurous acid (A. 146, 32).

Amido-s-Tetraoxybenzene results from the action of stannous chloride upon nitrodioxy-quinone, and also Nitroamido-s-tetra-oxybenzene and Diamido-s-tetraoxy-benzene (B. 18, 502), by the reduction of nitranilic acid. Croconic acid (p. 171) and ammonia are produced on boiling the diamido-body with potash; oxidizing agents convert it into diamido-dioxy-quinone.

Hydroeuthiochronic alkali salts—see euthiochronic acid, p. 170.

Pentahydric Phenols are not known. Quercite, which will be discussed in connection with the cyclohexane derivatives, is *pentoxyhexahydrobenzene*.

Hexahydric Phenols.—In describing the benzene-ring formations (p. 42) mention was made of the remarkable isolation of *potassium hexaoxybenzene* or *potassium carbon monoxide* (discovered by Liebig in 1834), which results upon conducting carbon monoxide over heated potassium (confirmed by Nietzki and Benkiser in 1885). Dilute hydrochloric acid, acting upon the fresh mass, yields hexaoxybenzene.

Hexaoxybenzene,  $C_6(OH)_6$ , is obtained from triquinoyl (p. 171) by reduction with stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid. It separates in the form of small, grayish-white needles, which acquire a reddish-violet color on exposure to the air. They are not fusible, but decompose at about  $200^{\circ}$ . Concentrated nitric acid oxidizes it to triquinoyl.

It forms the hexacetyl derivative,  $C_6(O \cdot C_2H_5O)_6$ , when heated with acetic acid and sodium acetate. It is a crystalline mass, melting at  $203^{\circ}$  (B. 18, 506).

### 8. QUINONES.

This is the designation ascribed to all derivatives of benzene in which 2H-atoms are replaced by 2O-atoms. The replacement is either in the o- or the p-position. We distinguish ortho-quinones and para-quinones. The latter are especially characteristic of the mono-nucleus aromatic hydrocarbons. Metaquinones are not known.

## ORTHOQUINONES.

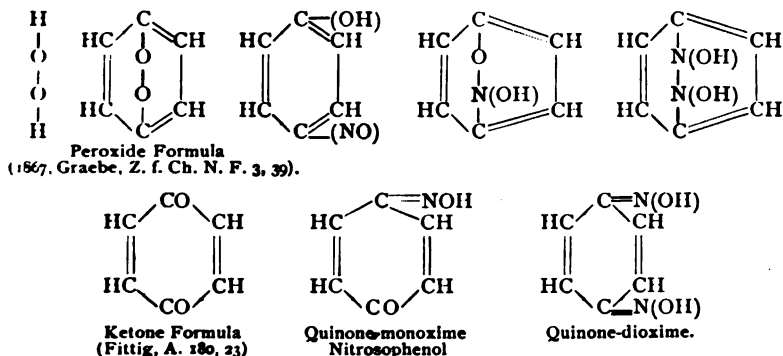
In this series belong the tetrahaloid substitution products of *o*-benzoquinone, not known in the free condition: *Tetrachlor-o-benzoquinone*,  $C_6Cl_4[1,2]O_2$ , melting at  $131^\circ$ , and *Tetrabrom-o-benzoquinone*,  $C_6Br_4[1,2]O_2$ , melting at  $150^\circ$ . They are produced when chlorine or bromine acts upon pyrocatechin dissolved in glacial acetic acid (Zincke, B. 20, 1776).

Homologous orthoquinones are produced by the action of chlorine upon the corresponding orthodiamine hydrochlorides. The *o*-diketochlorides are the first products, but they can be reduced to chlorinated *o*-dioxybenzenes, which yield the chlorinated *o*-quinones upon oxidation (B. 27, 560).

## PARAQUINONES.

The constitution of the *true quinones* or *paraquinones* of the aromatic hydrocarbons having one nucleus is not fully established. They are considered either as benzene derivatives, the oxygen atoms being assumed to be linked to one another, or as *p*-dihydrobenzene derivatives, containing two ketone-groups.

The first view compares the paraquinones to peroxides; they are indeed powerful oxidizing agents. Upon reduction they do not become the *p*-diglycols of the *p*-dihydrobenzenes, but *p*-dioxybenzenes, so-called hydroquinones, which are true benzene derivatives. Further, each oxygen atom, by the action of  $PCl_5$ , is replaced by *one* chlorine atom. In opposition to the peroxide formula of the paraquinones we have the *p*-diketone formula, in support of which we can bring forward the formation of a monoxime and a dioxime, as well as the absorption of 2Br and 4Br by paraquinone (J. pr. Ch. [2] 42, 61; B. 23, 3141). Nitrosophenol is considered by most chemists to be quinone-monoxime. Phenylhydrazones of the *p*-quinones have not been obtained, because the latter bodies oxidize phenylhydrazine (p. 173). The various formulas for ordinary quinone and its oximes are:



**Quinone**, *Benzoquinone*,  $C_6H_4O_2$ , melting at  $116^\circ$ , was first obtained in 1838 by Woskresensky upon oxidizing quinic acid, a hexahydrotetra-oxybenzoic acid, with manganese peroxide and sulphuric acid. Woskresensky named the new body *Quinoyl*, while Berzelius (Berz. Jahresb. 19, 407) proposed the name *Quinone*.

Quinone is made from hydroquinone or *p*-dioxybenzene (p. 162) by

the action of ferric chloride, and from many p-derivatives of benzene by oxidation, mostly with potassium bichromate and sulphuric acid; thus, from p-phenylenediamine, sulphanilic acid, p-amidoazobenzene, p-amidophenol, p-phenolsulphonic acid, p-diamidodiphenyl, or benzinidine. It is usually prepared by oxidizing aniline with sodium bichromate and sulphuric acid (Nietzki, B. 20, 2283). It has also been obtained by oxidizing *quinile* (see this).

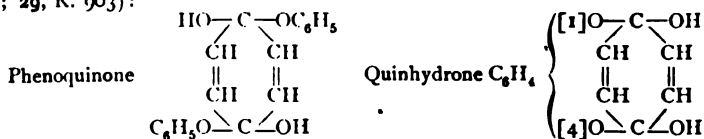
Quinone crystallizes in golden-yellow prisms. It possesses a peculiar, penetrating odor. It attacks the skin. It distils readily with steam, and dissolves easily in hot water, alcohol, and ether. It turns brown on exposure to sunlight. In the presence of the latter it combines to *dioxybenzophenones* with benzaldehyde (1, 75). Reducing agents ( $\text{SO}_2$ , Zn, and HCl) convert it first into quinhydrone, an addition-product of quinone and hydroquinone, which nascent hydrogen changes into hydroquinone.

Other phenols readily add themselves to quinone (below). Concentrated nitric acid dissolves it in the cold, but when the acid is hot it is decomposed, oxalic and prussic acids being formed. Bromine converts quinone into quinone di- and tetrabromides, melting at  $80^\circ$  and at  $170$ – $175^\circ$ . p-Diketohexamethylene, the hydride corresponding to quinone tetrabromide, has been obtained by starting with succino-succinic ester.

Phosphorus pentachloride converts quinone into p-dichlorobenzene (p. 59), hydroxylamine chloride changes it to *quinone-oxime* or *nitrosophenol* (p. 152), and *quinone-dioxime*. Phenylhydrazine reduces it to hydroquinone;  $\alpha$ -alkylphenylhydrazines show a similar reducing power, changing simultaneously with tetrazones (p. 131).  $\alpha$ -Acidylphenylhydrazines, on the other hand, yield *monohydrazines* of the quinones (p. 172). Aniline combines with quinone, forming *dianilidoquinone*, *dianilidoquinone-anil*, and *dianilidoquinone-dianil*. For the condensations of quinones with acetoacetic ester to form *cumarones*, see the latter.

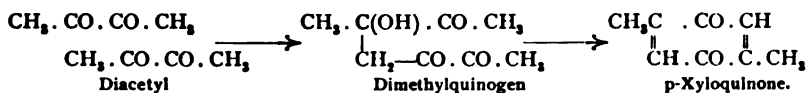
**Quinone Phenol Addition-Products** (A. 215, 134).—*Phenoquinone*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{O}_3$ · $2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{OH}$ , melting at  $71^\circ$ , is formed on adding quinone to phenol. It is very volatile. It crystallizes in red needles, which are turned blue by caustic potash, and green by barium hydroxide.

**Quinhydrone**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}_2$ · $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{OH})_2$ .—This is produced by the direct union of quinone with hydroquinone. It appears as an intermediate product in the reduction of quinone or in the oxidation of hydroquinone,—e. g., in electrolysis (B. 29, R. 1122),—and is changed by continued oxidation into quinone, and by reduction into hydroquinone. It consists of green prisms or leaflets with metallic lustre, has a quinone-like odor, melts readily, and dissolves in hot water with a brown, in alcohol and ether with a green, color. When it is boiled with water it decomposes into hydroquinone and quinone. The constitution of these compounds probably corresponds to the following formulas (B. 28, 1615; 29, R. 903):



**Homologous p-Quinones.**—They are produced (1) by the oxidation of the corresponding p-dioxybenzenes or hydroquinones (even with ferric chloride), of the corresponding p-diamines, p-amidophenols, such as amidothymol and many other disubstitution-products belonging to the p-series, with ferric chloride, chromic acid, and manganese dioxide and sulphuric acid. (2) Even mono-substituted alkyl benzenes yield p-quinones, especially when they are oxidized with chromic acid. This is particularly true of amido- and oxyalkyl benzenes or alkyl phenols. Thus, o-toluidine yields *toluquinone*, while

thymol and carvacrol yield *thymoquinone*, or thymoql. Frequently an alkyl-group will be displaced, favoring the p-quinone formation, and be substituted by oxygen—*e. g.*, in the oxidation of amidomesitylene (B. 18, 1150)—to *m-xyloquinone* and of pseudocumidine to p-xyloquinone. (3) p-*Xyloquinone* and *duroquinone* have been synthesized by the action of caustic potash upon the aliphatic  $\alpha$ -diketones—*diacetyl* and *acetyl propionyl* (1, 322; 11, 42). In this reaction *quinogens* are first produced, afterward follow the p-quinones:



p-*Xyloquinone* or *phlorone* occurs in the tar of beechwood.

**Properties.**—The homologous p-quinones are very similar to their prototype—benzoquinone. They are also yellow-colored, possess an odor similar to that of quinone, sublime readily, and behave chemically like p-benzoquinone. They form quinhydrone (p. 168), are easily reduced by sulphurous acid to p-hydroquinones (p. 162), and combine to nitrosophenols (p. 152) and quinone-dioximes (p. 172) with hydroxylamine.

		M. P.
Toluquinone, . . . . .	$\text{CH}_3[\text{1}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_5[\text{2,5}]\text{O}_2$	67°
o-Xyloquinone, . . . . .	$(\text{CH}_3)_2[\text{1,2}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[\text{3,6}]\text{O}_2$	55°
m-Xyloquinone, . . . . .	$(\text{CH}_3)_2[\text{1,3}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[\text{2,5}]\text{O}_2$	102°
p-Xyloquinone, . . . . .	$(\text{CH}_3)_2[\text{1,4}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[\text{2,5}]\text{O}_2$	123°
o-Ethylbenzoquinone, . . . . .	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)[\text{2}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[\text{1,4}]\text{O}_2$	38° (B. 28, R. 471).
Pseudocumquinone, . . . . .	$(\text{CH}_3)_3[\text{1,2,4}]\text{C}_6\text{H}[\text{3,6}]\text{O}_2$	11° (B. 27, 1430).
Duroquinone, . . . . .	$(\text{CH}_3)_4[\text{1,2,4,5}]\text{C}_6[\text{3,6}]\text{O}_2$	111° (B. 29, 2171).
Thymoquinone, . . . . .	$(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)[\text{1,4}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2[\text{2,5}]\text{O}_2$	45°; B. P., 232°.

When an ethereal solution of thymoquinone is allowed to stand in sunlight for some time, *polythymoquinone*, melting at 200°, separates (B. 18, 3195). See B. 29, 2176 for *diduroquinone*.

Quinone Haloids are obtained by the substitution of quinones or by the oxidation of substituted hydroquinones (p. 162).

A mixture of *tri-* and *tetrachlorquinone*, called *chloranil*, consists of bright-yellow leaflets. It is obtained from many benzene compounds (aniline, phenol, isatin) by the action of chlorine or potassium chlorate and hydrochloric acid (B. 29, R. 236). It oxidizes and serves as an oxidizing agent in the manufacture of coloring-matters.

Trichlor- and tetrachlorquinone are separated from one another by the insolubility of the latter in water. The chlorquinones are obtained from chlorhydroquinones by oxidation with nitric acid (A. 146, 9; 210, 145; 234, 14):

	M. P.		M. P.
Monochlorquinone, . . . . .	57°;	Monobromquinone, . . . . .	55°.
[2,5]-Dichlorquinone, . . . . .	159°;	[2,5]-Dibromquinone, . . . . .	188°.
[2,6]-Dichlorquinone, . . . . .	120°;	[2,6]-Dibromquinone, . . . . .	122°.
Trichlorquinone, . . . . .	166°;	Tribromquinone, . . . . .	147°.
Tetrachlorquinone sublimes.		Tetrabromquinone sublimes.	

$\text{PCl}_5$  converts tetrachlorquinone into phosphorus-containing derivatives,  $\text{C}_6\text{Cl}_5 \cdot \text{OPO} \cdot \text{Cl}$  (?), and then into hexachlorbenzene (p. 59) (B. 24, 927). It absorbs two atoms of chlorine and becomes *hexachlor-p-diketo-R-hexene* (p. 45), which caustic soda resolves into dichlormaleic acid and trichlorethylene. Potassium hydroxide converts trichlorquinone and tetrachlorquinone into potassium chloranilate (p. 170), and tribrom- and tetrabromquinone into potassium bromanilate.

Nitroquinone,  $\text{NO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{O}_2$ , decomposing at 206°, consists of yellow glistening crystals, and is formed by oxidizing 2-nitro-p-amidophenol,  $\text{NO}_2[\text{2}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[\text{4}]\text{NH}_2[\text{1}]\text{OH}$ , with potassium dichromate and sulphuric acid. It is very sparingly soluble in water, not volatile with aqueous vapor, and dissolves with difficulty in ether, and very readily in alcohol and in chloroform. It imparts a black color to the skin (B. 28, 1386).

**Amidoquinones.**—*Chloranilamide*,  $C_6Cl_2(NH_2)_2O_2$ , is obtained from chloranilic acid. Aniline, acting upon a hot alcoholic solution of quinone, produces not only hydroquinone, but also *dianilidoquinone*, *dianilidoquinone-anil*, and *-dianil* (p. 173), as well as 2,5-dioxy-1,4-quinone (below).

### OXYQUINONES AND POLYQUINOYLS.

**Benzene Oxyquinones.**—Methoxyquinone,  $CH_3O[2]C_6H_3:O_2$ , melting at  $140^\circ$ , is produced by oxidizing o-amidoanisole,  $C_6H_4(NH_2) \cdot O \cdot CH_3$ , with chromic acid.

*Chloranilamic Acid*,  $C_6Cl_2(NH_2)(OH)O_2$ , is obtained from chloranil.

2,6-Dimethoxyquinone,  $(CH_3O)_2[2,6]C_6H_2O_2$ , melting at  $249^\circ$ , results from the oxidation of triethylpyrogallol and trimethylphloroglucin (p. 165) (B. 26, 784).

2,5-Dioxyquinone,  $(HO)_2[2,5]C_6H_2O_2$ , is obtained from dioxyquinone dicarboxylic acid (see this) by boiling with hydrochloric acid, by the oxidation of diamido-resorcin (B. 21, 2374; 22, 1285), and by the action of dilute sulphuric acid upon dianilidoquinone (B. 23, 904). It separates in small blackish-brown crystals, which sublime above  $185^\circ$ . Stannous chloride reduces it to symmetrical tetraoxybenzene (p. 166), and dianilidoquinone is produced when it is heated with aniline. Substitution-products of 2,5-dioxyquinone have been obtained from tetrachlor- and tetrabromquinone as starting-out substances. Two of their halogen atoms are exchanged with extreme ease.

*Chloranilic Acid*,  $C_6Cl_2(OH)_2O_2$ , reddish, shining scales, is separated by acids from potassium chloranilate,  $C_6Cl_2(OK)_2O_2 + H_2O$ , which crystallizes in dark-red needles, dissolving with difficulty in water. Potassium chloranilate is produced as well from tri- as from tetrachlorquinone by the action of caustic potash. Hypochlorous acid or chlorine acting upon chloranilic acid, produces tri- or tetrachlorotetraketohexamethylene, which change quite readily with the intermediate production of unstable oxyacids into trichlor- and tetrachlorotriketopentamethylene (B. 25, 827, 842).

*Bromanilic Acid*,  $C_6Br_2(OH)_2O_2$ , corresponds to chloranilic acid and with bromine yields similar transposition-products to those obtained from it by the action of chlorine.

*Nitrilanilic Acid*,  $C_6(NO_2)_2(OH)_2O_2$ .—It crystallizes with water in golden-yellow needles or plates, melts in its water of crystallization, becomes anhydrous at  $100^\circ$ , and detonates at  $170^\circ$  without melting. It is formed from quinone and hydroquinone with nitrous acid, and from terephthalic and dioxyquinone-terephthalic acids by the action of fuming nitric acid. When nitrilanilic acid is reduced, it yields diamidotetraoxybenzene (p. 166), which renders possible the transition from chloranil to triquinoyl (see below), and potassium hexaoxybenzene.

*Amidoanilic Acid*, Diamidodioxyquinone,  $C_6(NH_2)_2(OH)_2O_2$ , reddish-blue needles, formed from diamidotetraoxybenzene by oxidation in the air or by nitrous acid.

*Potassium Euthiochroate*,  $C_6(SO_3K)_2(OH)_2O_2$ , see dichlorhydroquinone-disulphonic acid (p. 164).

**Tetraoxyquinone**,  $C_6(O_2)(OH)_4$ , formerly called dihydrocarboxylic acid, is obtained by oxidizing the aqueous solution of hexaoxybenzene by exposure to the air (B. 18, 507, 1837). It may also be obtained from diamido-dioxyquinone by boiling with hydrochloric acid, as well as by the action of concentrated nitric acid upon inosite. Metallic black needles, with a green, metallic reflex. It is a strong dibasic acid.

*Homologous Oxyquinones* result upon treating haloid quinone homologues with caustic potash, and on heating amido- or anilidoquinones with alcoholic hydrochloric acid or sulphuric acid. *Dianilidotoluquinone*, melting at  $232^\circ$ , yields anilido-oxytoluquinone, decomposing at  $250^\circ$ , and dioxytoluquinone,  $CH_3 \cdot C_6H(OH)_2O_2$ , melting at  $177^\circ$  (B. 16, 1559). *Oxythymoquinone*,  $(C_6H_7)(CH_3)C_6H(OH)O_2$ , melting at  $166^\circ$ , is obtained from brom- or methylamidothymoquinone. *Dioxythymoquinone* melts at  $213^\circ$  (B. 14, 95).

It is also very probable that *pipitzaholic acid*,  $C_{15}H_{18}(OH):O_2$ , found in the root of *Trixis pipitzahuac* and melting at  $103^\circ$ , belongs to the oxyquinones, containing but one nucleus. It recalls, by its behavior, oxythymoquinone. *Oxypipitzaholic Acid*,  $C_{15}H_{18}:C_6(OH)_2:O_2$  (?), melts at  $138^\circ$  (A. 237, 90).

**Polyquinoyl Compounds.**—As mentioned under benzoquinone (p. 167), Woskresensky originally called this compound *quinoyl*. Nietzki and Benckiser introduced this

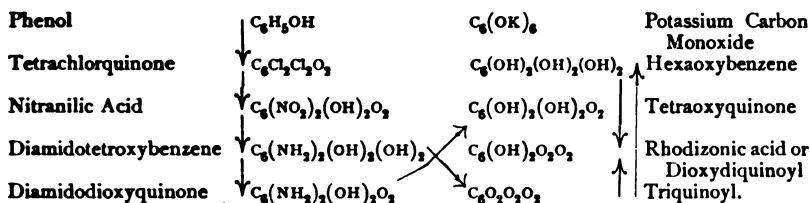
ame in a different sense. They applied it to the quinone-group  $O_2$ , when they discovered dioxidyquinoylbenzene and triquinoylbenzene to be bodies containing more than one quinone-group  $O_2$ . For simplicity's sake they abridged these names to *dioxidyquinoyl* and *triquinoyl*.

**Dioxidyquinoyl**,  $C_6(O_2)(O_2)(OH)_2$ , called *rhodizonic acid*, is prepared by reducing triquinoyl with aqueous sulphurous acid (B. 18, 513). It consists of colorless leaflets, very readily soluble in water. It decomposes quite rapidly in aqueous solution. The *potassium salt*,  $C_6O_4(OK)_2$ , may be obtained by treating the acid with potashes, and also by washing potassium-hexaoxybenzene (potassium carbon monoxide, p. 166) with alcohol. It forms dark-blue needles, dissolving in water with an intense yellow color (B. 18, 1838).

Consult B. 23, 3140, for the constitution of rhodizonic acid.

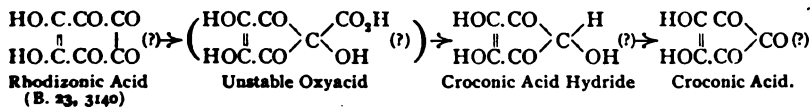
**Triquinoyl**,  $C_6O_6 + 8H_2O$ , is probably hexaketo-hexamethylene (B. 20, 322). It results upon oxidizing dioxidyquinoyl and diamidotetraoxybenzene (p. 166) with nitric acid. It is a white, micro-crystalline powder (B. 18, 504). It melts about  $95^\circ$ , giving up water and  $CO_2$ . It is likewise decomposed by warming it with water to  $90^\circ$ . Stannous chloride reduces it to hexaoxybenzene, which is oxidized in alkaline solution to tetraoxyquinone,  $C_6(O_2)(OH)_4$  (see above).

Nietzki and Benckiser (1885) discovered the relations existing between potassium carbon monoxide and phenol. Compare the following :

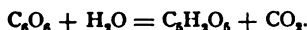


*Addendum.*—Pentacarbocyclic compounds are readily formed from triquinoyl and dioxidyquinoyl, as well as from some hexa-substitution derivatives of benzene, from which these polyquinoyl bodies arise—*e. g.*, hexaoxybenzene, diamidotetraoxybenzene, etc. They will accordingly be discussed after the polyquinoyls (pp. 25, 26).

**Croconic Acid Hydride**,  $C_5H_5O_6$ , is formed upon treating rhodizonic acid with excessive alkali, or croconic acid with hydriodic acid. It is distinguished by its *barium salt*,  $C_5H_2BaO_6 + 2H_2O$ . Its formation is probably due to the breaking down of an unstable oxyacid, produced by the action of the caustic alkali upon two of the combined  $CO$ -groups of the rhodizonic acid (see the rearrangement of benzilic acid, 1, 54):



**Croconic Acid**,  $C_5O_3(OH)_2 + 3H_2O$ , consists of sulphur-yellow leaflets; it loses its water of crystallization at  $100^\circ$ . It dissolves very readily in water and alcohol, and is produced by the alkaline oxidation of most of the hexa-substituted benzene-derivatives—*e. g.*, hexaoxybenzene, dioxidyquinoyl, diamidotetraoxybenzene, etc. The hydride of croconic acid is an intermediate product, which changes quite readily to the acid. Triquinoyl, when boiled with water, decomposes into carbon dioxide and croconic acid :



Its *potassium salt*,  $C_5O_3K_2 + 3H_2O$ , crystallizes in orange-yellow needles; hence the name from *κρόκος*, safran (Gmelin, 1825). When oxidized with nitric acid or chlorine the product is—

**Leuconic Acid**,  $C_5O_6 + 4H_2O$ , Pentaketocyclopentane, which is reconverted into croconic acid by sulphur dioxide. This acid bears the same relation to croconic acid

that rhodizonic acid sustains to triquinoyl. It is very soluble in water, but dissolves with difficulty in alcohol and ether. It crystallizes in small colorless needles. The pentaoxime,  $C_3(:N.OH)_5$ , decomposing at  $172^\circ$ , is isomeric with fulminic acid, cyanic acid, cyanuric acid, and by reduction yields penta-amido-pentol,  $C_5H(NH_2)_5$ , penta-amido-cyclopentadien (see p. 25) (B. 22, 916).

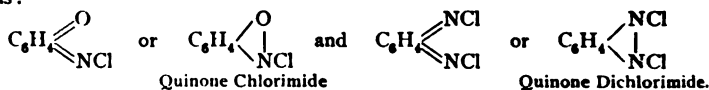
### QUINONE NITROGEN DERIVATIVES.

The quinone oxygen atoms can be replaced by  $N(OH)$ ,  $NCl$ ,  $NH$ ,  $NC_6H_5$ , and similar groups.

**Quinone Dioximes.**—In connection with the p-nitrosophenols (p. 152), and in the explanation of Fittig's diketone formula for p-quinone, it was indicated that many chemists regarded the p-nitrosophenols, resulting from the action of hydroxylamine hydrochloride upon the p-quinones, as *monoximes* of the latter. Indeed, the p-nitrosophenols, by action of hydroxylamine hydrochloride, change to p-*quinonedioximes*. It is true these two classes can be viewed as constituted according to the peroxide formula of the p-quinones. Their dioximes unite with acetic anhydride to diacetyl compounds. p-Dinitrosobenzenes are produced by the oxidation of their alkaline solutions (also on exposure to the air). Nitric acid oxidizes them to p-dinitrobenzenes (B. 21, 428).

p-*Quinone Dioxime*,  $C_6H_4(N.OH)_2$ , consists of colorless or yellow needles, which decompose at  $240^\circ$ . *Toluquinone Dioxime* explodes at  $220^\circ$  (B. 21, 679). p-*Xyloquinone Dioxime* melts about  $272^\circ$  (B. 20, 978). Dinitroresorcinol and hydroxylamine yield *diquinoyltrioxime*,  $C_6H_3O(NOH)_3$ , and *diquinoyltetroxime*,  $C_6H_2(NOH)_4$  (B. 30, 181).

**Quinone-chlorimides.**—We must regard them either as diketones or peroxides, in which oxygen is replaced by the group  $NCl$ . The latter view corresponds to the formulas:



They are produced from p-amidophenols and p-phenylenediamines (their  $HCl$ -salts) by oxidation with an aqueous solution of bleaching lime. They revert to p-amidophenols or p-phenylenediamines upon reduction. The monochlorimides form the indophenol dyestuffs (p. 173) with phenols and tertiary anilines.

**Quinone-chlorimide**,  $O[1]C_6H_4[4]NCl$ , forms golden-yellow crystals, which melt at  $85^\circ$ , volatilize readily with steam and smell like quinone. It is easily soluble in hot water, alcohol, and ether. When boiled with water it decomposes into  $NH_4Cl$  and quinone (J. pr. Ch. [2] 23, 435).

**Quinone-dichlorimide**,  $C_6H_4[1,4](N_2Cl_2)$ , crystallizes in needles which deflagrate at  $124^\circ$  (B. 12, 47).

Trichlor-quinone-chlorimide melts at  $118^\circ$  (J. pr. Ch. [2] 24, 429).

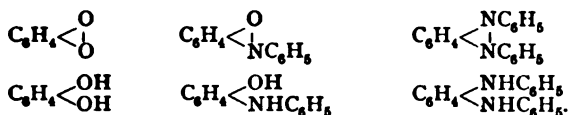
Dibrom-quinone-chlorimide melts at  $80^\circ$  (B. 16, 2845).

**Quinone Phenylhydrazones.**—While phenylhydrazine and alkylic phenylhydrazines are oxidized by quinone,  $\alpha$ -benzoylphenylhydrazine and quinone yield *Quinone-benzoyl-phenylhydrazone*,  $C_6H_4(O):NN(CO.C_6H_5)_2$ , melting at  $171^\circ$ . Alkali or sulphuric acid readily decomposes it into benzoic acid and p-oxazobenzene, which yields the isomeric p-benzoxazobenzene,  $C_6H_5CO.OC_6H_4N_2C_6H_5$ , upon introducing the benzoyl group. The o-*azophenols* are very probably hydrazones of o-quinones (p. 156 and B. 28, 2415).

**Quinone-imides.**—*Quinoanils*: *Diamidoquinone-imide*,  $(NH_2)_2C_6H_2(O)(NH)$ , or *amidodiimidophenol*,  $(HO)(NH_2)C_6H_2(NH)_2$ , is made from triamidophenol (A. 215, 351).

**Quinone Phenylimide**, **Quinone Monanil**,  $C_6H_4 \begin{array}{c} \diagup O \\ | \\ \diagdown NC_6H_5 \end{array}$  or  $C_6H_2 \begin{array}{c} \diagup O \\ \diagdown N.C_6H_5 \end{array}$ , melting at  $97^\circ$ , consists of fiery-red crystals. It is formed upon oxidizing p-oxydiphenylamine in benzene solution with mercuric oxide, and upon reduction reverts to the same (B. 21, R. 434).

*Diphenyl-p-azophenylene, Quinone Dianil*,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup N \cdot C_6H_5 \\ \diagdown N \cdot C_6H_5 \end{smallmatrix}$  or  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup N \cdot C_6H_5 \\ \diagdown N \cdot C_6H_5 \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $176^\circ$ – $180^\circ$ , results from the oxidation of diphenylamine (p. 80), and diphenyl-p-phenylenediamine (B. 21, R. 656). Reduction converts quinonedianil into diphenyl-p-phenylenediamine. Both anils sustain the same relation to the corresponding diphenylamine-derivatives that quinone bears to hydroquinone:



Two phenylamido-groups can be as readily introduced into the benzene residue of quinone-anil and quinone-dianil as into quinone itself, from which, on boiling its alcoholic solution with aniline, *dianilidoquinone* (together with hydroquinone) results. In the presence of acetic acid the product is *dianilidoquinone-anil*,  $(C_6H_5NH)_2C_6H_2(O)(NC_6H_5)$ , melting at  $202^\circ$ ; brown-red needles. It is also formed upon digesting quinone-monanil (together with p-oxydiphenylamine, B. 21, R. 656) with aniline, and when aniline is oxidized with hydrogen peroxide in a feebly acid solution (B. 25, 3574).

*Dianilidoquinone-dianil, Azophenine*,  $(C_6H_5NH)_2C_6H_2(NC_6H_5)_2$ , melting at  $241^\circ$ , consists of garnet-red leaflets. It is produced (1) by digesting quinone-dianil with aniline (diphenyl-p-phenylenediamine is formed at the same time, B. 21, R. 656); (2) by fusing quinone with aniline and aniline hydrochloride (B. 21, R. 683); (3) by the action of aniline upon amidoazobenzene, p-nitrosophenol, and p-nitrosodiphenylamine (B. 20, 2480). It changes to *fluorindin* when heated (B. 23, 2791).

The quinone-anils are important intermediate products in the formation of the *induline* dyes (see these) (B. 25, 2731; A. 262, 247).

**Indophenols and Indoanilines.**—These compounds are obtained from quinone-monanil or quinone-phenylimide by replacing the p-hydrogen atom of the anil-group by an OH- or an  $NH_2$ -group. They are dyes. Like many members of this class, they are decolorized by the addition of hydrogen. The resulting bodies are leuco-compounds, p-disubstituted diphenylamines. (Nomenclature, B. 29, R. 94.)

**Indophenols** are produced (1) by allowing the quinone-chlorimides to act upon phenols; (2) by oxidizing a mixture of a p-amidophenol and phenol. They dissolve in alcohol with a red color, and possess a phenol-like character. Their salts with the alkalis and ammonia dissolve in water with a *blue* color.

**Quinone-phenolimide**,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup N \cdot C_6H_4OH \\ \diagdown O \end{smallmatrix}$ , also results upon heating phenol-blue with soda-lye (B. 18, 2916), but owing to its instability, cannot be obtained in a free condition. By reduction it changes to colorless p-dioxydiphenylamine. **Dibromquinone-phenolimide**,  $C_6H_2Br_2 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup N \cdot C_6H_4OH \\ \diagdown O \end{smallmatrix}$ , from dibromquinone-chlorimide, is more stable than quinone-phenolimide. Free dibromphenolimide crystallizes in dark-red prisms having a metallic lustre; they dissolve in alcohol and ether with a fuchsine-red color. Strong mineral acids decompose it into dibromphenol and quinone.

**The Indoanilines** are produced (1) by the action of quinone chlorimide upon dimethyl aniline in alcoholic solution; (2) by the action of nitroso- and nitro-dimethylaniline upon phenol in alkaline solution, especially in the presence of reducing agents (Witt, 1879); (3) by the oxidation in *alkaline* solution (with sodium hypochlorite) of a mixture of a p-phenylenediamine with a phenol, or of a p-amidophenol with a primary monamine.

The indoanilines are feeble bases. They are rather stable toward the alkalis; acids quickly decompose them into quinones and the p-phenylenediamines. They are changed to the leuco-compounds: amido-oxy-diphenylamines, by reduction (absorption of two hydrogen atoms); these dissolve readily in alkalis, and are readily reconverted (oxidized) into indoanilines (by exposure of their alkaline solution to the air). The free indoanilines have a deep-blue color, and can be applied as dyestuffs. For this purpose

they are converted into their alkaline leuco-derivatives, which are soluble, and the material is impregnated or printed with these. Oxidation (by exposure to the air or with  $K_2Cr_2O_7$ ) develops the color. The simplest aniline is Quinone Anilininimide,

$C_6H_4 \cdot \underset{\text{O}}{\underset{|}{\text{N}}} \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot NH_2$ , a violet dye, formed by the oxidation of p-phenylene diamine,  $C_6H_4(NH_2)_2$ , with phenol. Quinone-dimethyl-anilininimide (phenol blue),  $C_6H_4 \cdot \underset{\text{O}}{\underset{|}{\text{N}}} \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot N(CH_3)_2$ , results from unsym.-dimethyl-p-phenylenediamine and

phenol. It has a greenish-blue color and dissolves in acids with a blue color. When boiled with soda-lye it splits off dimethylamine and becomes quinone-phenol-imide. Sulphuric acid decomposes it into quinone and dimethyl-p-phenylenediamine. This is a general reaction, hence can be used opportunely for the preparation of quinones (B. 28, R. 471; 29, R. 24).

**Indamines.**—These are derived from the indoanilines by the replacement of the quinone-oxygen atom by the imido- or alkylimido-group. They are therefore derivatives of the unknown quinone diimide, and bear an intimate relation to p-diamidodiphenylamine, which is formed by the reduction of the simplest indamine and is the leuco-derivative of the latter.

The *Indamines* arise (1) by oxidation, in neutral solution and in the cold, of a mixture of a p-phenylenediamine with an aniline (Nietzki), or (2) by the action of nitrosodimethyl aniline upon anilines or m-diamines (Witt). They are feeble bases, forming blue- or green-colored salts with acids, but with an excess of the latter are very easily split up into quinone and the diamine. Because of their instability they find no application, and are only important as intermediate products in the manufacture of thionine and safranin dyestuffs (into which they can be readily transposed). For the relations of the indophenols, indanilines, and indamines to the dyes of the *oxazine*-, *thiazine*-, and *diazine*-series—e. g., resorufin, methylene blue—the indulines and safranines, see the latter. The simplest indamine is—

**Phenylene Blue**,  $C_6H_4 \cdot \underset{\text{NH}}{\underset{|}{\text{N}}} \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot NH_2$  or  $N \leq C_6H_4 \cdot NH_2$  or  $N \leq C_6H_4 = NH$ . This is produced by

the oxidation of p-phenylenediamine with aniline. Its salts are greenish-blue in color. It yields diamido-diphenylamine by reduction. Its tetramethyl-derivative is—

**Dimethylphenylene Green**,  $N \leq \underset{|}{\underset{|}{C_6H_4}} \cdot N(CH_3)_2$  or  $N \leq C_6H_4 \cdot N(CH_3)_2 \cdot Cl$  (Bindschedler's green). This

is obtained by oxidizing dimethyl paraphenylenediamine with dimethyl aniline. Its salts dissolve in water with a beautiful green color. Its reduction yields tetramethyl-diamido-diphenylamine. Digestion with dilute acids resolves it into quinone and dimethylamine (B. 16, 865; 17, 223). On standing with soda-lye, dimethylamine splits off and phenol blue is produced; this further separates into quinone phenol-imide (p. 173) (B. 18, 2915).

**Toluylene Blue**,  $N \leq \underset{|}{\underset{|}{C_6H_4}} \cdot N(CH_3)_2$  or  $N \leq C_7H_5(NH_2) \cdot NH$ , results from ordinary toluylene diamine

(p. 95) by oxidizing it mixed with dimethyl-p-phenylenediamine, or by the action of HCl-nitroso-dimethylaniline. Its salts with one equivalent of acid are of a beautiful blue color, and are decolorized by an excess of mineral acids with formation of the diacid salts. It is converted into toluylene red (see this) on boiling with water.

The genetic connection of the indamines with the indoanilines and indophenol is shown in the possibility of converting the simplest indamine into quinone aniline imide, and the latter into quinone-phenol-imide (Möhlau, B. 16, 2843; 18, 2915).

Representatives of the indophenols, indoanilines, and indamines, containing the naphthaline residue are also known in great numbers, and many, like *Naphthol Blue* (see this) or "*Indophenol*," have been applied technically (B. 18, 2916).

## 9. PHENYL-PARAFFIN ALCOHOLS AND THEIR OXIDATION PRODUCTS.

In the preceding sections those classes of aromatic hydrocarbons containing one nucleus were described, which resulted from the substitution of the hydrogen atoms of benzene or the benzene residue of the alkylbenzenes by atoms of other elements or by atomic groups: the *halogen* substitution products (pp. 57-63), the *nitrogen-containing* derivatives of the benzene hydrocarbons (p. 63), the aromatic *phosphorus*, *arsenic*, *antimony*, *bismuth*, *boron*, *silicon*, and *tin* derivatives (pp. 131-133), the *phenyl metal* compounds (p. 133), the *sulpho-acids* and their relatives (pp. 133-140), the *phenols* (p. 140), and the *quinones*.

Attached to these are those classes of bodies formed by the replacement of hydrogen atoms in the side-groups of the alkylbenzenes. As in the aliphatic series, the oxygen-containing products are considered the most important. Each class of these derivatives is followed by the corresponding halogen, sulphur, and nitrogen compounds, in which all, or at least a part, of the carbon valences, saturated in the principal compounds by oxygen, are taken up with the elements just named. Prominent among these, as with the aliphatic derivatives, are those bodies in which *one* carbon atom of an alkyl side-chain is combined with oxygen:

(1a) *The monohydric phenyl-paraffin alcohols and their oxidation products: aldehydes, ketones, carboxylic acids.*

Naturally these compounds, as far as the reactivity of the aliphatic residue is concerned, manifest great similarity to the monohydric aliphatic alcohols and their oxidation products (1, 109). This is recalled by their nomenclature and the view that they are phenylsubstitution products of aliphatic substances (p. 32).

Each of these alkyl-benzene derivatives constitutes a starting-out substance from which, by the replacement of hydrogen atoms of the phenyl residue, as with benzene itself, numerous derivatives can be deduced. In general the benzene substitution products of the *phenyl fatty* bodies, so far as they are worth mention, will be introduced after the corresponding principal bodies. Only the derivatives of monohydric aromatic alcohols, having hydroxyl in their benzene residue, and their oxidation products, which manifest at the same time a phenol character, will be grouped together as—

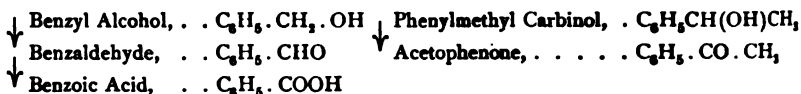
(1b) *Monohydric oxyphenyl-paraffin alcohols and their oxidation products.*

Then will follow (2) *polyhydric phenyl-paraffin alcohols, in which but one hydroxyl group is joined to a side-chain, and their oxidation products.* The conclusion of this section will be (3) *polyhydric phenyl-paraffin alcohols, in which more than one hydroxyl group is attached to a side-chain, and their oxidation products.*

## (1a) MONOHYDRIC PHENYL-PARAFFIN ALCOHOLS AND THEIR OXIDATION PRODUCTS.

## 1. MONOHYDRIC PHENYL-PARAFFIN ALCOHOLS.

The *true alcohols* of the benzene series are produced by the entrance of an hydroxyl group into the side-chain of an alkylbenzene: *primary*, *secondary*, and *tertiary*. The primary alcohols, upon oxidation, yield *aldehydes* and *acids*, the secondary change to *ketones*:



*Formations.*—The similarity of benzyl alcohol and its homologues to ethyl alcohol finds expression at the very outset in the methods of producing both classes: (1) by saponification of alkyl benzenes containing an halogen atom in the side-chain—the haloid acid esters of the benzyl alcohols—*e. g.*, benzyl chloride with water alone (A. 196, 353), with water and lead oxide (A. 143, 81), or with potashes. Benzyl alcohols are also produced by converting the chlorides into acetates and saponifying the latter.

(2) By the action of nitrous acid upon primary amines, the reduction products of aromatic acid nitriles—*e. g.*, cumo- and hemimellibenzy alcohol.

(3) By the action of nascent hydrogen on the corresponding aldehydes and ketones.

(4) By heating the aldehydes, or letting them stand with alcoholic or aqueous potash (B. 14, 2394), whereby acids are formed at the same time:



This reaction we do not observe with the monohydric paraffin alcohols.

(5) By reducing amides of aromatic carboxylic acids, containing the carboxyl group attached to the benzene nucleus, with sodium amalgam in acid solution (B. 24, 173).

(6) By the reduction of unsaturated alcohols: cinnamyl alcohol,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , becomes hydrocinnamyl alcohol,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH}$  (see allyl alcohol, I, 130).

(7) They are formed in the nucleus-synthetic way when zinc methide acts upon acid chlorides: phenylacetyl chloride and zinc methide yield *benzyl dimethyl carbinol* (I, 114).

**Benzyl Alcohol, Phenyl Carbinol, [Phenmethylo],**  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , boiling at  $206^\circ$ , with sp. gravity 1.062 ( $0^\circ$ ), is isomeric with the cresols (p. 144). It occurs as benzyl-benzoic ester and benzyl-cinnamic ester in the balsams of Peru and Tolu, and in storax (A. 169, 289). It is produced by the methods (1), (2), (3), (4), given above, from benzaldehyde, benzyl chloride, and benzamide. Reactions (1) and (3) are used as methods of preparation. It is a colorless liquid, with a faint aromatic odor. It dissolves with difficulty in water, but readily in alcohol and ether. It yields benzaldehyde and benzoic acid when oxidized. Heated with hydrochloric acid or hydrobromic acid, the OH-group is replaced by halogens. Benzoic acid and toluene result on distilling it with concentrated potash.

*History.*—As early as 1832 Liebig and Wöhler, in the course of their celebrated investigation upon the radical benzoyl, had this alcohol in hand as the result of the interaction of alcoholic potash and benzaldehyde (A. 3, 254, 261). Cannizzaro (1853) was the first to discover the alcohol in studying this reaction.

**Homologous Benzyl Alcohols.**—The primary alcohols are chiefly made by methods (1), (2), (3), (4); hydrocinnamyl alcohol by method (6); the secondary alcohols by method (1), or by the reduction of the ketones according to method (3), and the tertiary alcohols, like benzyldimethyl carbinol, by method (7).

**Nucleus Homologous Benzyl Alcohols:**

	M. P.	B. P.	
o-Tolyl Carbinol, . . . $\text{CH}_3[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	34°	223°	(B. 24, 174).
m-Tolyl Carbinol, . . . $\text{CH}_3[3]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	liquid	217°	(B. 18, R. 66).
p-Tolyl Carbinol, . . . $\text{CH}_3[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	59°	217°	(A. 124, 255).
2,4-Dimethyl Benzyl Alcohol, . . . . . $(\text{CH}_3)_2[2,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[1]\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	22°	232°	(B. 21, 3085).
3,5-Mesityl Alcohol, . . . . . $(\text{CH}_3)_2[3,5]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[1]\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	liquid	220°	(B. 16, 1577).
2,4,5-Cumobenzyl Alcohol, $(\text{CH}_3)_3[2,4,5]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2[1]\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	168°	—	(B. 24, 2411).
3,4,5-Hemimellibenzy Alcohol, . . . . . $(\text{CH}_3)_3[3,4,5]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2[1]\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	78°	—	
Melliethyl Alcohol, . . . . . $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	160°	—	(B. 22, 1217).
p-Cumin Alcohol, . . . . . $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	—	246°.	

Other homologues are the *phenyl ethyl alcohols*:

*Benzyl Carbinol*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , boils at 212° (B. 9, 373).

*Phenyl Methyl Carbinol*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CH}_3$ , boils at 103° (B. 7, 141).

*Phenyl Propyl Alcohols*: *Hydrocinnamyl Alcohol*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , boils at 235°. It is obtained from its cinnamic acid ester, which is present in *storax* (A. 188, 202). *Benzyl Methyl Carbinol*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CH}_3$ , boils at 215°. *Phenyl-ethyl Carbinol*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$ , boils at 221°. *Benzyldimethyl Carbinol*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{OH})(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , melts at 21° and boils at 225°.

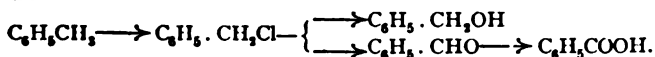
**Derivatives of the Phenyl-Paraffin Alcohols.**—*Haloid Esters.* Benzyl chloride and benzyl bromide are produced when chlorine or bromine (p. 61) acts upon boiling toluene (Beilstein, A. 143, 369). Benzyl chloride, bromide, and iodide are also formed from benzyl alcohol and the haloid acids, and benzyl iodide by the action of potassium iodide upon benzyl chloride (A. 224, 126):

*Benzyl Chloride*, . . .  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$  liquid B. P. 176°.

*Benzyl Bromide*, . . .  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$  " " 210°.

*Benzyl Iodide*, . . .  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{I}$  melts at 24° and decomposes.

**Benzyl Chloride**, isomeric with the three chlortoluenes (p. 61), is an important reagent, by means of which numerous derivatives of benzyl alcohol have been prepared, as its chlorine atom is readily exchanged. It passes into benzyl alcohol when boiled with water. Heated with water and lead nitrate it yields benzaldehyde, and by oxidation benzoic acid:



The following *ethers* have been made by the action of sodium alcoholates upon benzyl chloride: *Benzyl Methyl Ether* boils at 168°. The *ethyl ether* boils at 185°. The *benzyl ether* (A. 241, 374),  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2)_2\text{O}$ , boiling at 296°, results from the action of boron trioxide upon benzyl alcohol. *Methylene Dibenzyl Ether*,  $\text{CH}_2(\text{OCH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2$  (A. 240, 200). *Benzylarabioside*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melts at 172° (B. 27, 2482). *Benzylphenyl Ether* melts at 39° and boils at 287°.

**Homologous Benzyl Chlorides.** *α-Chlorethyl Benzene*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHClCH}_3$ , boils at 194°. (*ω*)-*β-Chlorethyl Benzene*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ , boils at 93° (17 mm.). *o*-, *m*-, *p*-*Methyl Benzyl Chloride*,  $\text{CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ , boil at 198°, 195°, and 192° respectively. *α-Chlorpropyl Benzene*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHClCH}_2\text{CH}_3$ , and *β-Chlorpropyl Benzene*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CHClCH}_3$ ,

$\text{CH}_3\text{CHClCH}_3$ , boil about  $203\text{--}207^\circ$  with the splitting off of hydrochloric acid and the production of  $\alpha$ -phenylpropylene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{CH}:\text{CH}\cdot\text{CH}_3$ , and allyl benzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ .

**Benzyl Phosphates:** The *mono*- melts at  $78^\circ$ , the *di*- is liquid, and the *tri*- melts at  $64^\circ$  (A. 262, 211).

**Esters of Carbonic Acid.** *Benzyl Acetate*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{O}\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}_3$ , boils at  $106^\circ$ . *Dibenzyl Oxalate*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{O}\cdot\text{CO})_2$ , melts at  $80^\circ$ .

**Sulphur Derivatives of Benzyl Alcohol** are formed just like the sulphur compounds of the fat-alcohols (I, 147).

**Benzyl Sulphydrate**, *Benzyl Mercaptan*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{SH}$ . It is a liquid with a leek-like odor; boils at  $194^\circ$ , and at  $20^\circ$  has a specific gravity = 1.058 (A. 140, 86).

**Benzyl Sulphide**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{CH}_2)_2\text{S}$ , melting at  $49^\circ$ , when subjected to dry distillation yields *stilbene* (see this), *stilbene sulphide*, *dibenzyl* (see this), *thiomessal* or *tetraphenylthiophene* (see this), and toluene. The *sulphone*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{CH}_2)_2\text{SO}_2$ , melts at  $150^\circ$ . It results when the sulphoxide in glacial acetic acid is acted upon by  $\text{KMnO}_4$  (B. 13, 1284).

**Benzyl Disulphide**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2)_2\text{S}_2$ , melting at  $71^\circ$  (B. 20, 15), results from the oxidation of benzyl sulphydrate in the air (A. 136, 86).

**Benzyl Dimethyl Sulphine Iodide**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{S}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{I}$ , is an orange-red colored compound (B. 7, 1274).

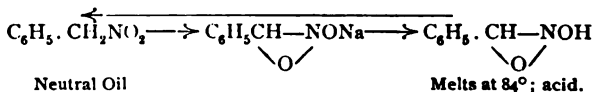
**Benzyl Sulphoxide**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2)_2\text{SO}$ , melting at  $133^\circ$ , is formed by oxidizing benzyl sulphide with nitric acid (B. 13, 1284).

**Benzyl Sulphonic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{SO}_3\text{H}$ , is a deliquescent crystalline mass; it is isomeric with toluene-sulphonic acid. The *potassium salt* is formed on boiling benzyl chloride with potassium sulphite. The *chloride* melts at  $92^\circ$  (B. 13, 1287).

**Benzyl Hyposulphurous Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{SSO}_3\text{H}$ , melts at  $74^\circ$  (B. 23, R. 284).

**Nitrogen Derivatives of the Phenyl-Paraffin Alcohols.**

**Phenyl Nitro-paraffins:** When the homologous benzenes are heated in sealed tubes with dilute nitric acid the nitro-groups usually enter the side-chains with the formation of phenylnitroparaffins (see I, 154; Konowaloff, B. 28, 1850, R. 235; 29, 2199). By this treatment toluene yields *Phenylnitromethane*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{NO}_2$ . This body has also been prepared from nitrobenzaldehyde, as well as from benzyl haloids, but best from the iodide (B. 29, 700) by the action of silver nitrite. It is an oil boiling with decomposition at  $226^\circ$ . It dissolves, like the nitro-paraffins, in sodium hydroxide, forming a sodium salt, from which the oily phenylnitromethane is again regained by the action of  $\text{CO}_2$  or acetic acid. If, however, the sodium salt be precipitated with mineral acids, a crystalline substance, melting at  $84^\circ$ , is obtained. This is isomeric with the oily body and is distinguished from it by the red coloration it yields with ferric chloride, as well as by its electric conductivity. It quickly changes both in solution and when in a free state into the oily isomeride. Its constitution certainly corresponds to the formula adopted for the sodium salts of the nitro-paraffins (I, 155), from which, however, the corresponding free bodies in the fatty series have not been successfully isolated (Hantzsch and O. W. Schultze, B. 29, 2251):



Similar stable and unstable isomerides have also been obtained from the nucleus homologues and substituted phenyl nitro-paraffins.

**Phenyl-Paraffin Amines, Benzylamines.**—(1) Alcoholic ammonia converts benzyl chloride into mono-, di-, and tri-benzylamines (B. 23, 2971):

Benzylamine,	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$ ,	boils at $187^\circ$ .
Dibenzylamine,	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2)_2\text{NH}$ ,	" " $300^\circ$ .
Tribenzylamine,	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2)_3\text{N}$ ,	melts " $91^\circ$ .

Most of the other methods of producing benzylamine are reactions,

which have been fully discussed in connection with the primary alkylamines.

**Benzylamine** is formed (2) by the reduction of phenylnitromethane, benzaldehyde, and benzylidene phenylhydrazine (B. 19, 1928, 3232); (3) and (4) by heating benzaldehyde with ammonium formate or formamide (B. 19, 2128; 20, 104), together with di- and tribenzylamine; (5) by the reduction of benzonitrile (B. 20, 1709) and (6) of benzothiamide (B. 21, 51); (7) by saponifying benzylisocyanide or benzyl carbonimide,  $C_6H_5CH_2NCO$  (B. 5, 692), and (8) benzyl acetamide,  $C_6H_5CH_2NHCOCH_3$  (B. 12, 1297); (9) by the distillation of phenylamidoacetic acid,  $C_6H_5CH(NH_2)CO_2H$  (B. 14, 1969); and (10) by the action of caustic alkali and bromine upon  $\alpha$ -toluamide. Benzylamine is a liquid, dissolving readily in water. It differs from its isomeric toluidine in being a strong base, which attracts  $CO_2$  from the air.

**Homologous Benzylamines** are isomeric with corresponding aliphylamines (p. 164). They are mostly formed by reducing nitriles with alcohol and sodium; some by the reduction of oximes or nitro-compounds, while others are obtained by the methods indicated under benzylamine.

$\beta$ -Phenylethylamine, . . . . .	$C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2NH_2$ ,	B. P. 197° (B. 26, 1904).
$\alpha$ -Phenylethylamine, . . . . .	$C_6H_5CH(NH_2)CH_3$ ,	187° (B. 27, 2306).
<i>o</i> -Tolubenzylamine, . . . . .	$CH_3[2]C_6H_4[1]CH_2NH_2$ ,	201° (B. 23, 1026).
<i>m</i> -Xylamine, . . . . .	$CH_3[3]C_6H_4[1]CH_2NH_2$ ,	201° (B. 23, 3165).
[1'-Amino-1,4-dimethylphenyl], . . . . .	$CH_3[4]C_6H_3[1]CH_2 \cdot NH_2$ ,	195° (B. 20, 1710).
$\gamma$ -Phenyl-propylamine, . . . . .	$C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH_2$ ,	221° (B. 27, 2309).
$\beta$ -Phenyl-propylamine, . . . . .	$CH_3 \cdot CH(C_6H_5) \cdot CH_2NH_2$ ,	210° (B. 26, 2875).
$\alpha$ -Phenyl-propylamine, . . . . .	$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH(C_6H_5) \cdot NH_2$ ,	205°.
$\beta$ -Phenyl-isopropylamine, . . . . .	$C_6H_5CH_2 \cdot CH(NH_2)CH_3$ ,	203° (B. 20, 618).
[1'-Amino-1,2,4-trimethylphenyl], . . . . .	$(CH_3)_2[2,4]C_6H_3[1]CH_2 \cdot NH_2$ ,	218° (B. 21, 3083).
$\omega$ -Mesitylamine, . . . . .	$(CH_3)_2[3,5]C_6H_3[1]CH_2 \cdot NH_2$ ,	218° (B. 25, 3013).
Cumylamine, . . . . .	$(CH_3)_2CH[4]C_6H_4[1]CH_2NH_2$ ,	226° (B. 20, 2414).
M. P.		
Cumobenzylamine, . . . . .	$(CH_3)_2[2,4,5]C_6H_3[1]CH_2NH_2$ ,	64° (B. 24, 2409).
Hemimellibenzylamine, . . . . .	$(CH_3)_2[3,4,5]C_6H_3[1]CH_2NH_2$ ,	123° (B. 24, 2411).

An optically active, lævrotatory base (B. 29, 2313) has been isolated by means of its bitartrate from  $\alpha$ -phenylethylamine,  $C_6H_5CH(NH_2)CH_3$ , containing an asymmetric C-atom.

Benzylalkyl- and benzylaliphylamines, as well as benzylalkylammonium compounds, attach themselves to the true benzylamines.

**Benzylaniline**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_5$ , melts at 32°, and is formed from aniline and benzyl chloride (A. 138, 225), or by the reduction of benzylidene aniline with sodium in alcoholic solution (A. 241, 330). When heated to 220° with sulphur it yields *thiobenzanilide*, and *benzenylamidothiophenol* at 250° (A. 259, 300).

**Dibenzylaniline**,  $(C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2)_2 \cdot N \cdot C_6H_5$ , melts at 67° (B. 20, 1611).

**Benzyl Chloramine** (B. 26, R. 188). **Dibenzyl Nitrosamine**,  $(C_6H_5CH_2)_2N \cdot NO$ , melts at 61° (B. 19, 3288). **Benzyl Methyl Nitramine**,  $C_6H_5CH_2N(CH_3)NO_2$  (B. 29, R. 95).

**Benzyl Oxethylamine**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2OH$ , *picrate*, melting at 136°, results from the rupture of the phenyloxazoline ring,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C \begin{smallmatrix} O-CH_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ N-CH_2 \end{smallmatrix}$  (see this), by sodium and alcohol (B. 29, 2382).

The following representatives of the numerous benzylated acid amides and benzylated nitrogen derivatives of carbonic acid may be mentioned :

*Benzylacetamide*,  $C_6H_5CH_2NHCOCH_3$ , melts at  $60^\circ$  (B. 19, 1286).

*Dibenzyl Urea Chloride*,  $(C_6H_5CH_2)_2NCOCl$ , is an oil (B. 25, 1819).

*Benzyl Urea*,  $C_6H_5CH_2NHCONH_2$ , melts at  $147^\circ$ . Sym. and unsym. *dibenzyl urea* melt at  $167^\circ$  and  $124^\circ$  (B. 9, 81). *Tri- and tetra-benzyl urea* melt at  $119^\circ$  and  $85^\circ$  (B. 25, 1826).

*Benzylthiourea* melts at  $164^\circ$  (B. 24, 2727; 25, 817).

*Dibenzyl Guanidine*,  $(C_6H_5CH_2NH)_2C:NH$ , melts at  $100^\circ$  (B. 5, 695).

*Benzylisocyanate*, Benzyl carbonimide,  $C_6H_5CH_2N:CO$ , is a liquid with penetrating odor. *Benzilyanurate* melts at  $157^\circ$  (B. 5, 692). *Benzyl Mustard Oil*,  $C_6H_5CH_2N:CS$ , boils at  $243^\circ$  (B. 1, 201). *Dibenzylhydrazine*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH \cdot NH \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $65^\circ$ , is formed when benzalazine (p. 185) is reduced. It yields  $(C_6H_5)_2N_2$  on oxidation. Concentrated acids resolve the latter into benzalazine and dibenzylhydrazine (B. 28, 2345).

**Benzylhydroxylamines.**—Liquid *o-benzylhydroxylamine*,  $C_6H_5CH_2O \cdot NH_2$ , boiling at  $123^\circ$  (50 mm.), results upon decomposing benzyl benzaldoxime with hydrochloric acid. Benzyl chloride changes this liquid substance to

*o*-*Dibenzylhydroxylamine*,  $C_6H_5CH_2 \cdot O \cdot NH \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , liquid, and  
*Tribenzylhydroxylamine*,  $C_6H_5CH_2 \cdot O \cdot N(CH_2 \cdot C_6H_5)_2$ .

*β-Benzylhydroxylamine* is obtained by decomposing *αβ*-dibenzylhydroxylamine with hydrochloric acid. It melts at  $57^\circ$ . Benzyl chloride converts it into *β-dibenzylhydroxylamine*,  $(C_6H_5CH_2)_2N \cdot OH$ , melting at  $123^\circ$  (A. 275, 133); compare also the benzaldoximes, p. 185.

*β-Bis-o-nitrobenzylhydroxylamine*,  $(NO_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_2)_2N \cdot OH$ , melting at  $24^\circ$ , is obtained from *o*-nitrobenzyl chloride and hydroxylamine. Nitrobenzylisonitrobenzaldoxime is formed by its oxidation (p. 187) (B. 30, 58).

Substituted benzyl alcohols are derived from substituted benzyl chlorides when they are heated with aqueous potash (B. 25, 3290), or by means of acetic esters. Many, like *m*-nitrobenzyl alcohol, are also obtained by the action of alcoholic potash upon the corresponding aldehydes.

- o*-, *m*-, *p*-Brombenzyl Alcohol: *o*- melts at  $80^\circ$ ; *m*- is liquid; *p*- melts at  $72^\circ$ .
- o*-, *m*-, *p*-Brombenzyl Bromide, melt at  $30^\circ$ ,  $41^\circ$ ,  $61^\circ$ .
- o*-, *m*-, *p*-Nitrobenzyl Alcohol, " "  $74^\circ$ ,  $27^\circ$ ,  $93^\circ$ .
- o*-, *m*-, *p*-Nitrobenzyl Chloride, " "  $47^\circ$ ,  $46^\circ$ ,  $71^\circ$ .

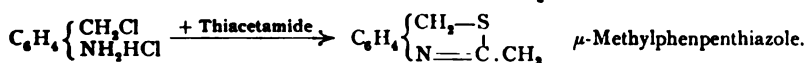
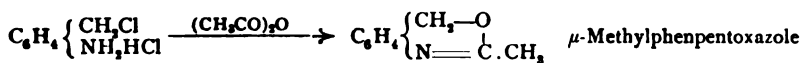
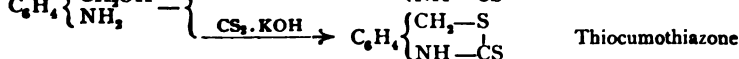
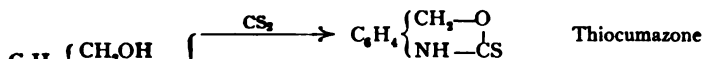
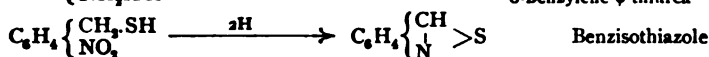
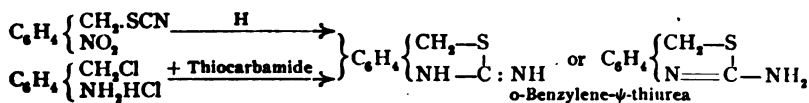
**Formation of Hetero-rings from Derivatives of *o*-Amidobenzyl Alcohol.**—Just like the *o*-diamines (p. 95), *o*-amidophenols (p. 152), and *o*-amidothiophenols (p. 157), many *o*-amidobenzyl alcohol derivatives, and also those of *o*-nitrobenzyl alcohol, so far as they yield *o*-amidobenzyl alcohol compounds upon reduction, show ability to form hetero-rings. Some of the derivatives of these two alcohols capable of yielding hetero-rings are the following:

*o*-Nitrobenzyl Sulphocyanide,  $NO_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_2 \cdot S \cdot CN$ , melting at  $75^\circ$  (B. 25, 3028), yields *o*-benzylene- $\psi$ -thiourea. Sulphuric acid reduces it to *o*-nitrobenzylcarbamine-thiolic ester,  $NO_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_2 \cdot SCONH_2$ , melting at  $116^\circ$ . Hydrochloric acid saponifies this to *o*-nitrobenzyl mercaptan,  $NO_2[2]C_6H_4[1]CH_2SH$ , melting at  $43^\circ$ . Both bodies yield *benzothiazole* upon reduction (B. 28, 1027; 29, 160).

*o*-Amidobenzyl Alcohol,  $C_6H_4(NH_2) \cdot CH_2 \cdot OH$ , melting at  $82^\circ$  and boiling at  $160^\circ$ , is formed by the reduction of anthranil and *o*-nitrobenzyl alcohol with zinc-dust and hydrochloric acid (B. 25, 2968; 27, 3513). It becomes thiocumazone (B. 27, 1866) when it is boiled with alcoholic  $CS_2$ , and thiocumothiazone (B. 27, 2427) when the  $CS_2$  and alcoholic potash are used. The urea derivatives of *o*-amidobenzyl alcohol lead to similar rings (B. 27, 2413).

*o*-Amidobenzyl Chloride Hydrochloride,  $HCl \cdot NH_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_2Cl$ , is formed by the action of concentrated hydrochloric acid upon *o*-amidobenzyl alcohol. With caustic potash this salt yields poly-*o*-benzylene-imide,  $(C_6H_4N)_x$  (B. 19, 1611; 28, 918, 1651); with acetic anhydride,  $\mu$ -methylphenpentoxazole, with thiacetamide  $\mu$ -methylphenpentthiazole (B. 27, 3515), and with thiurea, *o*-benzylene- $\psi$ -thiurea (B. 28, 1039); compare *o*-nitrobenzylrhodanide.

An anhydride of an *o*-benzylalcohol sulphonic acid,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]SO_2 \\ [2]CH_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\} >O$ , melting with decomposition at  $288^\circ$ , has been obtained by reduction of *o*-sulphobenzoyl chloride, just as phthalide has been formed from phthalyl chloride (B. 27, R. 790).



*o*-Nitrobenzylamine,  $C_6H_4(NO_2) \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH_2$ , obtained from *o*-nitrobenzylchloride by the saponification of its phthalimide-derivative, is a strong, oily base (B. 20, 2227).

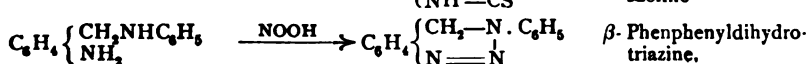
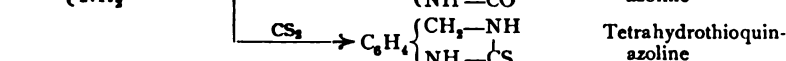
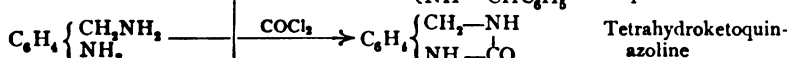
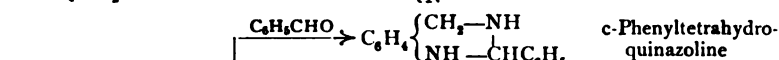
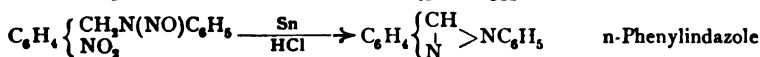
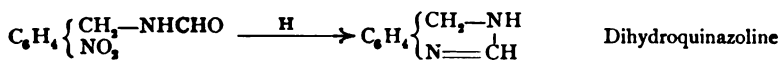
*o*-Nitrobenzylformamide,  $NO_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH \cdot CHO$ , melting at  $89^\circ$ , is reduced to dihydroquinazoline (see this) (B. 25, 3031).

*p*-Nitrobenzylamine—see B. 30, 61.

*o*-Nitrobenzyl Aniline,  $NO_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_2 \cdot NHC_6H_5$ , melts at  $44^\circ$  (B. 19, 1607).

*o*-Nitrobenzylphenylnitrosamine,  $NO_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_2 \cdot N(NO)C_6H_5$ , is converted by tin and hydrochloric acid into *n*-phenylindazole (B. 27, 2899).

*o*-Amidobenzylamine, *o*-benzylenediamine,  $NH_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH_2$ , is a radiating crystalline mass, obtained from *o*-nitrobenzylamine. With aldehydes like benzaldehyde it forms phenyltetrahydroketoquinazoline; with phosgene, tetrahydroketoquinazoline; with carbon disulphide, tetrahydrothioquinazoline (B. 28, R. 238). *o*-Amidobenzyl Aniline,  $NH_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $86^\circ$ , forms  $\beta$ -phenphenyldihydrotriazine with nitrous acid (B. 25, 448):



## 2. AROMATIC MONALDEHYDES.

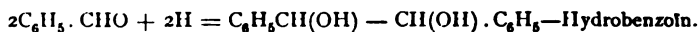
The aromatic monaldehydes are the first oxidation products, and correspond to the primary aromatic monohydric alcohols. They are very similar to the fatty aldehydes so far as their rearrangements, dependent upon the reactivity of the aldehyde group, are concerned.

**Formation.**—(1) By the oxidation of the primary monohydric, aromatic alcohols. (2) By the distillation of the calcium salts of the aromatic acids with calcium formate. (3) From their halogen derivatives,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CHCl_2$ , with water, especially in the presence of sodium carbonate, lime, or lead oxide, or by heating with anhydrous oxalic acid. (4) Technically by oxidizing benzyl chloride with lead nitrate. (5) A very interesting and direct conversion of homologous benzenes into aldehydes is that occurring in the action of chromyl chloride,  $CrO_2Cl_2$ . The first products are pulverulent, brown addition-compounds,  $C_6H_5CH_2(CrO_2Cl_2)_n$ , which decompose into aldehydes when they are introduced into water (B. 17, 1462; 21, R. 714).

**Properties.**—Benzaldehyde and its homologues are mostly liquid bodies, which possess an aromatic odor and reduce ammoniacal silver solutions with the production of a metallic mirror. (1) They are readily oxidized to carboxylic acids. (2) They differ from the fatty aldehydes in that they are, as a general thing, readily oxidized to alcohols and acids by alcoholic or aqueous alkalies (p. 176); it appears that this reaction is, however, only peculiar to those aldehydes in which the CHO-group is in direct union with the benzene nucleus. (3) Nascent hydrogen reduces them to alcohols when they are in part, through the union of two aldehyde residues, converted into *hydrobenzoin*s. (4) They combine with acid alkaline sulphites. (5) With hydroxylamine they yield *aldoximes*, which manifest rather remarkable isomeric relations. (6) They form *phenylhydrazones* with phenylhydrazine. (7) Phosphorus pentachloride replaces their aldehyde oxygen by two atoms of chlorine. (8) Chlorine substitutes aldehyde hydrogen.

They do not polymerize, as do the first members of the group of fatty aldehydes.

**Nucleus Syntheses.**—(1) In the reduction of aromatic aldehydes—*e. g.*, in the electrolytic reduction (B. 29, R. 229)—there occurs, along with alcohol formation, a production of hydrobenzoin analogous to the pinacone formation (1, 212):



(2) A very interesting reaction of the aldehydes is their conversion into benzoin through the agency of alcoholic potassium cyanide. Two aldehyde molecules combine to a polymeric body:



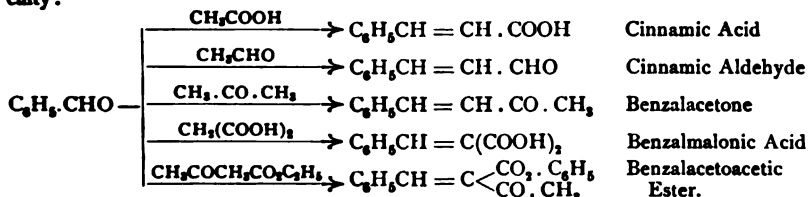
See B. 29, 1729, for the condensations of benzylidene aniline and benzaldehyde by potassium cyanide.

(3) The aromatic aldehydes combine with the most heterogeneous

bodies,—*e. g.*, aldehydes, ketones, monocarboxylic acids, dicarboxylic acids, etc.,—water always disappearing.

These so-called *condensation-reactions* proceed similarly to the *aldol*-condensation, only there is generally an elimination of water, as in the conversion of aldol into *crotonaldehyde*. The condensation agents are HCl-gas, zinc chloride, sulphuric acid, glacial acetic acid, acetic anhydride, dilute sodium hydroxide, baryta-water, a solution of potassium acetate, and potassium cyanide.

In this manner benzaldehyde can undergo the following rearrangements without difficulty:



*Pyrones*,  $CO[C(CH_3):C(C_6H_5)]_2O$  (B. 29, 1352), result when two molecules of benzaldehyde condense with ketones like diethylketone. *Pyridine* derivatives result when benzaldehyde and acetoacetic ester condense with ammonia and aniline; whereas benzylidene diacetoacetic esters are formed under the influence of aliphatic amines (B. 29, R. 841).

The benzaldehydes also condense with phenols and anilines, forming derivatives of triphenylmethane.

The conditions under which these bodies are formed will be more fully explained in connection with their description.

**Benzaldehyde, Bitter Almond Oil, Benzyl Hydride**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CHO$ , boiling at  $179^\circ$ , with sp. gravity 1.050 ( $15^\circ$ ), is a colorless liquid with high refractive power. Formerly it was prepared exclusively from its glucoside amygdalin (see below). At present it is only the official bitter-almond oil water, *aqua amygdalarum amararum*, in which hydrocyanic acid is the active ingredient, that is made from the amygdalin. It has the characteristic agreeable "bitter-almond oil" odor. It is soluble in 30 parts water, and is miscible with alcohol and ether. Benzaldehyde does not occur already formed in the bitter almonds, but is produced, as demonstrated by Wöhler and Liebig in 1831, from the glucoside *amygdalin*, contained in the oil. This is easily converted by boiling with dilute acids or upon standing in contact with the unorganized ferment *emulsin*, also present in bitter almonds, into benzaldehyde, glucose, and hydrocyanic acid. Amygdalin:



In the general methods common to the formation of all aldehydes reactions were indicated which would lead to the production of benzaldehyde. Thus it is formed (1) from benzyl alcohol; (2) from calcium benzoate and formate; (3) from benzal chloride; (4) from benzyl chloride, from which it is prepared technically by oxidation with lead nitrate; and (5) from toluene and chromyl chloride,  $CrO_2Cl_2$ .

In describing the transformations of the aldehydes, benzaldehyde was

chosen as the example. It even absorbs oxygen from the air and becomes benzoic acid, and when mixed with acetic anhydride and sand it not only yields benzoic acid, but also *benzoyl peroxide* ( $C_6H_5COO$ )<sub>2</sub> (see this) (B. 27, 1959). Sodium amalgam reduces it to benzyl alcohol and hydrobenzoin, while  $PCl_5$  changes it to benzal chloride. It shows both oxime and phenylhydrazone formation, etc.

**Homologous Benzaldehydes.**—o-, m-, and p-*Toluic Aldehydes* boil at 200°, 199°, and 204°. The o- and m-bodies smell like benzaldehyde, while the p-compound has an odor like that of pepper.

**α-Toluic Aldehyde, Phenylacetaldehyde,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CHO$ ,** boiling at 206° and isomeric with the three toluic aldehydes, is produced (1) by distillation of α-toluate of calcium and calcium formate; (2) when chromyl chloride and water act upon ethyl benzene; (3) by acting with water on β-bromostyrene; (4) by heating phenyl-lactic acid or phenyl-glycidic acid with dilute sulphuric acid; (5) from phenyl-α-chlor-lactic acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CHCl \cdot CO_2H$ , by the action of alkalis (B. 16, 1286; A. 219, 179); and (6) from phenyl-glyceric acid at 160°.

**Phenyl-propyl Aldehyde, hydrocinnamic aldehyde,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CHO$ ,** boils at 208°.

**Cumic Aldehyde, Cuminol, p-isopropyl-benzaldehyde,  $(CH_3)_2CH \cdot [4]C_6H_4[1]CHO$ ,** boiling at 235°, with specific gravity 0.973 (13°), occurs, together with cymene, in Roman caraway oil, and in oil of *Cicula virosa*, or water hemlock (B. 26, R. 684). Cuminol possesses an aromatic odor. Dilute nitric acid oxidizes it to cumic acid; chromic acid converts it into terephthalic acid. *Cumic acid* (see this) and *cumyl alcohol* (p. 177) are produced when it is digested with alcoholic potash. When distilled with zinc-dust, cymene results.

#### Derivatives of Benzaldehyde.

**Haloid Derivatives.**—The halogen compounds corresponding to benzaldehyde are obtained by the action of  $PCl_5$  or  $PBr_5$  upon it.

**Benzal Chloride, Benzylidene Chloride, Chlorobenzene, Chloride of Bitter-almond Oil,  $C_6H_5CHCl_2$ ,** boiling at 213°, with sp. gravity 1.295 (16°), results from the action of chlorine upon boiling toluene, from toluene (A. 139, 318; 146, 322) and  $PCl_5$  at 170–200°, as well as from benzaldehyde and  $COCl_2$  (Z. f. Ch. [2] 7, 79). It changes to benzaldehyde when it is heated to 140–160° with water, or to 60–70° with anhydrous oxalic acid. *Benzal Bromide* boils at 130–140° (20 mm.).

**Ethers and Esters of Benzaldehyde.**—*Benzal dimethyl and diethyl ether*, boiling at 208° and 222°, *benzal diacetyl ester*, melting at 44° and boiling at 220° (A. 102, 368; 146, 323), are produced when sodium methylate, sodium ethylate, and silver acetate act upon benzal chloride. The diethyl ether is also formed from benzaldehyde and orthoformic ester (1, 233; B. 29, 247), as well as from benzylideneimine hydrochloride with alcohol.

**Sulphur Derivatives of Benzaldehyde.**—Compare the thioacetaldehydes (1, 203): α- and β-trithiobenzaldehyde melt at 167° and 225° (B. 29, 159). Polymeric *thiobenzaldehyde* melts at 83° (B. 24, 1428). When heated with finely divided copper they yield *stilbene*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH = CH \cdot C_6H_5$  (see this). *Potassium Oxybenzylsulphonate*,  $C_6H_5CH(OH)SO_3K + \frac{1}{2}H_2O$  (Bertagnini, A. 85, 186).

**Benzaldehyde Nitrogen Derivatives.**—In its deportment toward ammonia benzaldehyde approaches formaldehyde more closely than it does acetaldehyde, in that it forms—

**Hydrobenzamide, tribenzal-diamine,  $(C_6H_5CH)_3N_2$ ,** melting at 110°. When this body is heated it is transposed to *amarine* or *triphenyldihydroglyoxaline* (see this). When hydrochloric acid gas is conducted into the alcoholic-benzene solution of hydrobenzamide, *benzylidene imide*,  $C_6H_5CH:NH \cdot HCl$ , melting with decomposition at 180°, separates. Water immediately resolves this body into benzaldehyde and ammonium chloride (B. 29, 2144).

**Benzal Ethylamine**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : N \cdot C_2H_5$ , boils at  $195^\circ$ . **Benzal Aniline**, *Benzylidene Aniline*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : N \cdot C_6H_5$ , melts at  $45^\circ$ .

When the *o*-phenylenediamines and benzaldehyde interact the bodies resulting at first are: *Benzylidene-o-phenylenediamine*,  $NH_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot N : CH \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $61^\circ$ , and *dibenzylidene-o-phenylenediamine*,  $C_6H_4[N : CH \cdot C_6H_5]_2$ . However, they readily rearrange themselves into isomeric, ring-shaped imidazole derivatives or aldehydines (p. 96) (B. 29, 1497).

**Benzylidenè-hydrazine**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : NNH_2$ , melting at  $16^\circ$  and boiling at  $140^\circ$  (14 mm.), and obtained from hydrazine hydrate with benzaldehyde and barium oxide (J. pr. Ch. [2] 44, 539), passes through a number of reactions, splitting off hydrazine, liberating nitrogen, etc., until it finally becomes—

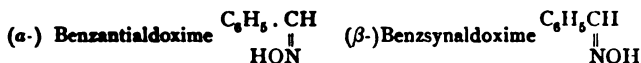
*Benzalazine*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : N_2$ , melting at  $93^\circ$ . When this compound is heated it breaks down into nitrogen and *stilbene* (see this). It yields dibenzyl hydrazine (p. 180) upon reduction, and combines with bromine to a *tetrabromide*, which decomposes very readily, with evolution of nitrogen (B. 28, 2345).

*Benzal-phenylhydrazone*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : NNHC_6H_5$ , melting at  $152^\circ$  (A. 190, 134), becomes dibenzaldiphenylhydrotetrazone when it is oxidized (p. 128).

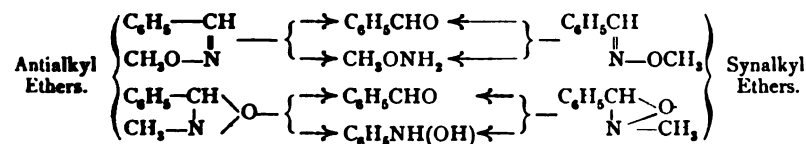
Numerous benzal-compounds of hydrazine derivatives have been prepared; they serve to characterize the latter.

*Benzhydrazoln*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup N \cdot C_6H_5 \\ \diagdown N \cdot C_6H_5 \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $55^\circ$ , is formed from benzaldehyde and hydrazobenzene (p. 117), at  $120^\circ$ – $150^\circ$  (B. 19, 2239).

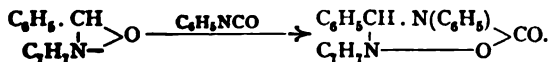
**Benzaldoximes.**—The interaction of hydroxylamine and benzaldehyde produces *α-Benzaldoxime*, benzantialdoxime, melting at  $35^\circ$  and boiling at  $117^\circ$  (14 mm.). Hydrochloric acid, sulphuric acid, or bromine changes it, with the simultaneous production of unstable salts (B. 27, R. 599), into *β-Benzaldoxime*, isobenzaldoxime, benzsynaldoxime, melting at  $125^\circ$ . When this body is distilled under reduced pressure it passes into the *α*-derivative. Each of these isomerides gives rise to two structurally isomeric series of *alkyl ethers*, in one of which the alkyl is joined to oxygen, in the other to nitrogen, as the first, upon decomposition, yield *α*-, and the second *β*-alkyl hydroxylamines. Hantzsch and Werner attribute the isomerism of the *α*- and *β*-aldoximes to the spacial arrangement of the hydroxyl group with reference to nitrogen. The oximes are distinguished as benzanti- and benzsynaldoxime (B. 24, 3481). The syn-configuration would fall to the *β*-aldoxime, because in a series of reactions—*e. g.*, treatment of the acid ester with alkalis—it changes more readily and completely to *benzonitrile* than the *α*-body:



The following formulas would then correspond to the N- and O-alkyl ethers of these compounds:



The benzaldoximes and phenylcyanate combine to isomeric phenylurethane derivatives,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : NOCONHC_6H_5$ . The N-alkyl ethers also unite with phenylcyanate, forming azoxazole- (furo-ab/-diazole-) derivatives (B. 27, 1957):



*Antibenzaldoxime-o-methyl Ether* is an oil, boiling at  $191^\circ$ . It results from the interaction of *α*-benzaldoxime with sodium alcoholate and methyl iodide. Hydrochloric acid

resolves it into benzaldehyde and  $\alpha$ -methylhydroxylamine. *N-Methyl Ether* melts at 45-49°. Its hydrobromide is formed on heating  $\alpha$ -benzaldoxime, methyl bromide and methyl alcohol in a sealed tube to 85°. On exposure it rearranges itself into the synform (B. 29, R. 866). *Synbenzaldoxime-N-methyl Ether*, melting at 82°, is formed, together with the isomeric *o*-ether (which appears not to have been isolated), from synbenzaldoxime, methyl iodide, and sodium ethylate (B. 24, 2812).

*N-Phenylbenzaldoxime*,  $C_6H_5CH \leq \overset{O}{N}C_6H_5$ , melting at 109°, results from the union of benzaldehyde with  $\beta$ -phenylhydroxylamine (p. 70) (B. 27, 1958).

*Benzantialdoxime Acetate*,  $C_6H_5CHNO(OC \cdot CH_3)$ , melts at 15° (B. 27, R. 599).

*Benzaloxime-O-acetic Acid*,  $C_6H_5CHN(OCH_2COOH)$ , melts at 98°, the *N-derivative*,  $C_6H_5CH \leq \overset{N \cdot CH_2 \cdot COOH}{O}$ , at 183° with decomposition. They are formed when chloracetic acid acts upon potassium benzaldoxime. When decomposed the first yields glycollic acid and the second amidoxylacetic acid,  $HO \cdot NH \cdot CH_2 \cdot COOH$  (I, 350) (B. 29, R. 169).

*Benzalamido-sulphonic acid*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : NSO_3H$ , results from benzaldehyde and amido-sulphonic acid (B. 25, 472).

Many substituted benzaldoximes, ketoximes, the benzildioximes, etc., show isomeric relations similar to those exhibited by the benzaldoximes.

Substituted Benzaldehydes deport themselves toward oxidizing and condensing agents the same as benzaldehyde itself. The formation of heterocyclic bodies from *o*-nitro- and *o*-amidobenzaldehyde is especially worthy of notice.

*Haloid Benzaldehydes* are formed when oxalic acid or sulphuric acid (A. 272, 148) acts upon the halogen benzal chlorides; or by oxidizing cinnamic acids containing halogens in the nucleus:

<i>o</i> -Chlorbenzaldehyde	melts at -4°; boils at 213°; the <i>oxime</i> melts at 75°.
<i>m</i> -Chlorbenzaldehyde	" 17°; " 213°; " " 70°.
<i>p</i> -Chlorbenzaldehyde	" 47°; " 213°; " " 106°.
<i>o</i> -Brombenzaldehyde	" 21°; <i>o</i> -Iodobenzaldehyde " 37°.
<i>p</i> -Brombenzaldehyde	" 57°; <i>p</i> -Iodobenzaldehyde " 73°.

See B. 29, 875, for the *di*- and *tetrachlorbenzaldehydes*.

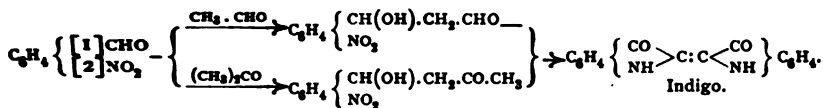
*o*-, *m*-, *p*-Iodobenzaldehydes,  $C_6H_4(IO)CHO$ , and *o*-, *m*-, and *p*-Iodobenzaldehydes,  $C_6H_4(IO_2)(CHO)$ , have been obtained from the corresponding iodide-chlorides (B. 29, R. 774).

*Nitrobenzaldehydes*,  $NO_2C_6H_4CHO$ . On dissolving benzaldehyde in nitric-sulphuric acid, the chief product is meta-nitrobenzaldehyde. *o*-Nitrobenzaldehyde is formed simultaneously (B. 14, 2803). *o*-Nitrobenzaldehyde is obtained pure from *o*-nitrocinnamic acid by oxidizing the alkaline solution with potassium permanganate in the presence of benzene (B. 17, 121), or from *o*-nitrocinnamic ester through the action of nitric acid and sodium nitrite.

*Para-nitrobenzaldehyde* results (1) by the oxidation of *p*-nitrocinnamic acid (B. 14, 2577); (2) by allowing  $CrO_3Cl_2$  and water to act upon *p*-nitrotoluene in carbon disulphide (I. 19, 1061); (3) when *p*-nitrobenzyl chloride is boiled with water and lead nitrate, or when sulphuric acid acts upon *p*-nitrobenzal chloride:

	M. P.	M. P.	M. P.
<i>o</i> -Nitrobenzaldehyde,	46°;	<i>oxime</i> , 97° ( $\alpha$ ), 136° ( $\beta$ );	<i>hydrazone</i> , 153°.
<i>m</i> -Nitrobenzaldehyde,	58°;	" 117° ( $\alpha$ ), 118° ( $\beta$ );	" 121°.
<i>p</i> -Nitrobenzaldehyde,	107°;	" 129° ( $\alpha$ ), 174° ( $\beta$ );	" 155°.

Compare B. 25, 2457, for the deportment of the nitrobenzaldehydes in the animal organism. *o*-Nitrobenzaldehyde condenses with aldehyde and acetone through the action of dilute caustic soda to *o*-nitrophenyllactic acid aldehyde and *o*-nitrophenyllactic methyl ketone, which caustic soda converts into *indigo*:



When the nitrobenzaldehydes are reduced electrolytically the first products are *aldehydophenylhydroxylamines*,  $\text{CHO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{NHOH}$ , which, however, immediately combine with the unaltered nitrobenzaldehyde to *N-aldehydophenyl-nitrobenzaldoxime*,

$\text{NO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{N} \\ \diagup \\ \text{O} \end{smallmatrix} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CHO}$  (p. 185) (B. 29, 3037; 28, 250). Ferric chloride oxidizes this condensation-product to *nitrosobenzaldehyde*,  $\text{NO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CHO}$ .

*N-o-Nitrobenzyl-o-nitrobenzaldoxime*,  $\text{NO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{N} \\ \diagup \\ \text{O} \end{smallmatrix} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{NO}_2$ , melting at  $142^\circ$ , results upon oxidizing bis-o-nitrobenzylhydroxylamine (p. 180) (B. 30, 58).

*5-Nitro-2-chlorobenzaldehyde*,  $\text{NO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{Cl} \cdot \text{CHO}$ , melts at  $80^\circ$ ; its *oxime* at  $147^\circ$ . The latter is readily converted by boiling alkali into nitrosalicylic acid (B. 26, 1253). *3-Nitro-4-bromobenzaldehyde*,  $\text{NO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{Br} \cdot \text{CHO}$ , melts at  $103^\circ$ ; its *oxime* at  $145^\circ$  (B. 24, 3775).

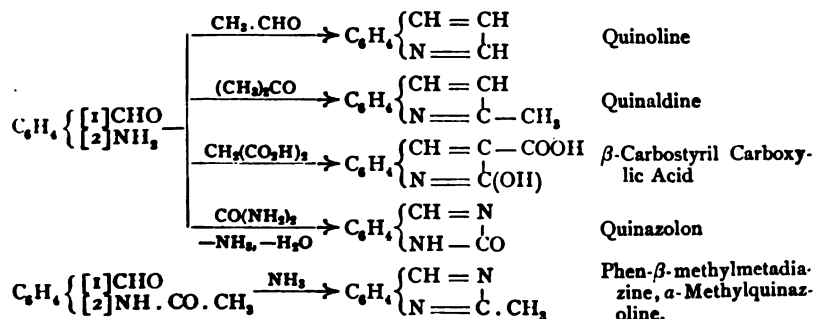
**Amidobenzaldehydes**,  $\text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CHO}$ . The o- and p- bodies are obtained in the action of ferric chloride upon their oximes, which are formed by the reduction of o- and p-nitrobenzaldoximes with ammonium sulphide (B. 15, 2004; 16, 1998).

o-Amidobenzaldehyde is also obtained by reducing o-nitrobenzaldehyde and *anthranil* (see this) with ferrous sulphate and ammonia (B. 17, 456). m-Amidobenzaldehyde is formed when m-nitrobenzaldehyde is reduced with tin and glacial acetic acid.

o-Amidobenzaldehyde . . . . . melts at  $39^\circ$ ; its *oxime* at  $132^\circ$ ; its *acet-derivative* at  $70^\circ$ .  
m-Amidobenzaldehyde is yellow and amorphous; " 88°; " " "  
p-Amidobenzaldehyde . . . . . melts at  $70^\circ$ ; " 124°; " " 155°.

p-Dimethyl- and p-Diethylamidobenzaldehydes, melting at  $73^\circ$  and  $81^\circ$ , are obtained when the condensation-products from chloral and dialkyl aniline—e. g., p-dimethylamidophenyl-trichlorethyl alcohol,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH(OH)CCl}_3$ —are acted upon with alcoholic potash (B. 19, 365). p-Dimethylamidobenzaldehyde condenses to *hexamethyl-leucaniline* (see triphenylmethane dyes) with dimethylaniline.

**The Hetero-ring Formations of o-Amidobenzaldehyde.**—o-Amidobenzaldehyde combines especially readily with compounds containing a  $\text{CH}_2\text{CO}$  group, in the presence of dilute caustic soda. The products resulting at first are of an aldol nature, for they immediately split off water and yield quinoline or its derivatives. o-Amidobenzaldehyde combines with acetaldehyde to *quinoline*, with acetone to *quinaldine*, with malonic acid to *β-carbostyryl carboxylic acid* (B. 25, 1752), and with urea to *quinazolon* (B. 28, 1037). Alcoholic ammonia transposes the acetyl-o-amidobenzaldehydes into quinazolines or benzmetadiazines (B. 27, 280, 443):



*Benzaldehyde-m-Sulphonic Acid*,  $\text{SO}_3\text{H} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CHO}$ , white, deliquescent crystals (B. 24, 791).

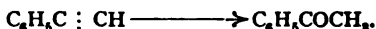
### 3. AROMATIC MONO-KETONES.

The oxidation products of the secondary phenyl-paraffin alcohols are *mixed ketones*, in which an aromatic and an aliphatic hydrocarbon residue are joined by the CO-group. The ketones containing two benzene residues linked by carbonyl, such as benzophenone or diphenylketone, will be discussed later in connection with the corresponding hydrocarbons, like diphenylmethane.

*Formation*.—Mixed aromatic-aliphatic ketones are usually produced by reactions similar to those employed with the aliphatic ketones (1, 209):

(1) By the oxidation of secondary alcohols, like phenylmethyl carbinol.

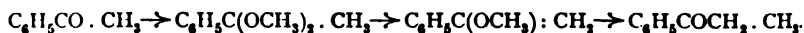
(2) When sulphuric acid acts upon phenyl acetylene:



*Nucleus-synthesis*: (3) By the distillation of a mixture of calcium salts of an aromatic and a fatty acid. (4) By the action of zinc alkyls on acid chlorides (A. 118, 20). (5) From benzenes by action of fatty acid chlorides and aluminium chloride, carbon disulphide being used as a diluent.

(6) By decomposing  $\beta$ -ketone carboxylic acids—*e.g.*, mono- and dialkyl benzoyl-acetic acids (B. 16, 2131)—with alcoholic potash.

(7) Acidylated benzenes finally result as a consequence of intramolecular rearrangement upon heating the alkyl ethers of phenylolefine alcohols, which are prepared by the distillation of ortho-ethers of acetophenone. In this way the acidyl benzenes can be built up from acetophenone (Claisen, B. 29, 2931):



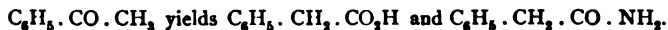
*Properties and Deportment*.—The mixed aromatic-aliphatic ketones are colorless liquids, insoluble in water, and possess an odor which is not disagreeable.

(1) Nascent hydrogen converts them into secondary alcohols.

(2) Chromic acid transforms the ketones  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{COR}$  into benzoic acid and the alkyl, which is further oxidized.

(3) Potassium permanganate converts them into  $\alpha$ -ketonic acids (B. 23, R. 640; 24, 3543; 26, R. 191).

(4) Acids and acid amides, strangely enough, are formed when phenylmethyl ketones are heated with yellow ammonium sulphide:



(5) On heating benzene ketones with sulphuric acid the acetyl-group splits off and benzene sulphonic acids result (B. 19, 2623).

(6) Those ketones in which the CO-group is attached to the benzene nucleus *do not* unite with alkaline bisulphites.

(7) The phenyl-alkyl ketones apparently form but *one* acetoxime with hydroxylamine; the opposite is true of benzaldehyde.

(8) They form *hydrazones* with phenylhydrazine.

**Acetophenone, Phenylmethyl Ketone, Acetyl Benzene,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$ ,** melting at  $20^\circ$  and boiling at  $202^\circ$ , crystallizes in large plates. It is applied as a hypnotic under the name of *hypnone*. It is formed (1) from phenylmethyl carbinol; (2) from phenylacetylene; (3) by distilling benzoate of calcium with calcium acetate; (4) by the action of zinc methyl upon benzoyl chloride; (5) from benzene, acetyl chloride, and  $AlCl_3$ ; (6) from benzoyl acetoacetic ester,  $C_6H_5CO \cdot CH(COCH_3) \cdot COOC_2H_5$ , and benzoyl acetic ester. The methods 3 and 5 are employed in its preparation.

Nascent hydrogen converts it into phenylmethyl carbinol. Chromic acid oxidizes it to benzoic acid, and potassium permanganate to phenylglyoxylic acid.

Acetophenone, like acetone, has been introduced into numerous nucleus-synthetic reactions. Some of the simplest of these will be given. It may be condensed to *dynnone* (see this) and to [1,3,5]-*triphenylbenzene*, two bodies bearing the same relation to acetophenone that mesityl oxide and mesitylene sustain to acetone.

Acetophenone also condenses in the most varied proportions with benzaldehyde, forming benzalacetophenone, benzaldiacetophenone, and dibenzal-triacetophenone (B. 29, 1488). It yields the nitrile of  $\alpha$ -phenyllactic acid with hydrocyanic acid. At higher temperatures chlorine enters the methyl group;  $PCl_5$  substitutes the ketone-oxygen-producing *acetophenone chloride* (A. 217, 105). Amyl nitrite and sodium ethylate convert acetophenone into *isonitrosoacetophenone*, which will be described under *Phenylglyoxal*.

*Ortho-ethers of Acetophenone*, like **Acetophenone Ortho-ethyl Ether,  $C_6H_5C(OC_2H_5)_2CH_3$ ,** boiling at  $107^\circ$  (17 mm.), are prepared from acetophenone and ortho-formic ethers (1, 233) (B. 29, 2932). When heated under ordinary pressure they lose alcohol and pass into alkyl ethers of phenylolefine alcohols. They yield anils with aniline: *Acetophenone-anil*,  $C_6H_5C:(NC_6H_5)CH_3$ , melts at  $41^\circ$  and boils at  $310^\circ$ .

**Acetophenone Oxime,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C:(N \cdot OH) \cdot CH_3$ ,** melts at  $59^\circ$ . It is only known in one modification (B. 24, 3482). By the action of concentrated sulphuric acid, or of HCl in glacial acetic acid, it is converted into acetanilide,  $C_6H_5 \cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$  (p. 82). This remarkable intramolecular atomic rearrangement was discovered by Beckmann (Beckmann's Transposition, B. 20, 2580; 23, 2746).

Other ketoximes behave in an analogous manner. The reaction has been applied in determining the point of double union in the higher olefine monocarboxylic acids (1, 284), and for the decomposition or rupture of ring ketones.

*Acetophenone Phenylhydrazone* melts at  $105^\circ$ .

**Acetophenone Homologues.**—These are numerous and can be arranged in two groups: A. Ketones whose CO-group is attached to the benzene ring: *acydylated benzenes*. B. Ketones whose CO-group is not in immediate union with the benzene ring: *phenylated fatty ketones*.

A. *Acidylated benzenes* have been made especially by the general methods 3, 5, 6, and 7 (p. 188). At first some of the ketones were considered as *benzoyl-paraffins* and *cyclo-paraffins*, and others as *homobenzoyleated paraffins*:

*Propiophenone*, Propionyl Benzene, boils at  $210^\circ$ ; its *oxime* melts at  $53^\circ$  and boils at  $165^\circ$  (38 mm.) (B. 26, 1427).

*Butyrophenone*, Benzoyl Propane, . . . . . boils at  $222^\circ$ .

*Butyl Phenyl Ketone*, Benzoyl Butane, . . . . . "  $237^\circ$ .

*Isobutylphenyl Ketone*, . . . . . "  $230^\circ$ .

*Isoamylphenyl Ketone*, . . . . . "  $240^\circ$ .

*Diethyl Acetophenone*,  $C_6H_5CO \cdot CH(C_2H_5)_2$ , . . . . . "  $230^\circ$ .

*Hexyl Phenyl Ketone*, . . . . . melts at  $17^\circ$  and "  $155^\circ$  (15 mm)

*Laurobenzene*,  $C_8H_7CO \cdot C_{11}H_{23}$ , melts at  $47^\circ$  (B. 28, R. 648).

*Palmityl Benzene*,  $C_8H_7 \cdot CO \cdot C_{15}H_{31}$ , melts at  $59^\circ$  and boils at  $251^\circ$  (15 mm.).

*Benzoyl Trimethylene*,  $C_8H_7CO \cdot CH < \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \\ CH_2 \end{smallmatrix} CH_2$ , formed on heating trimethylene benzoyl acetic acid to  $200^\circ$ , boils at  $239^\circ$ . Its *oxime* melts at  $88^\circ$ .

*Benzoyl Tetramethylene*,  $C_8H_7COCH < \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \\ CH_2 \end{smallmatrix} > CH_2$ , from the chloride of tetramethylene carboxylic acid, boils at  $258^\circ$  (B. 25, R. 372).

*Nucleus-acidylated Alkyl Benzenes, homobenzoylated Paraffins.*—*p*-Acetyl toluene is produced when concentrated nitric acid acts upon cymene (p. 56), and acetyl-3,4-(*o*)-xylene is formed from camphor by the action of concentrated sulphuric acid (B. 26, R. 415):

<i>p</i> -Acetyl Toluene, $CH_3CO[4] \cdot C_6H_4[1] \cdot CH_3$ , boils at $224^\circ$ .	
1-Acetyl-3,4-( <i>o</i> )-xylene, . . . . .	" 246°.
1-Acetyl-2,4-( <i>m</i> )-xylene, . . . . .	" 247°.
Acetyl- <i>p</i> -xylene, . . . . .	" 224°.
Acetyl-mesitylene, . . . . .	" 235° (B. 24, 3542).
1-Acetyl-2,4,5,6-durene, . . . . .	melts at $73^\circ$ and " 260° (B. 29, 847).

B. Phenylated Fatty Ketones have been prepared by methods 3, 4, and 6 (p. 188):

*Phenyl Acetone*, Benzyl Methyl Ketone,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$ , boils at  $215^\circ$ .

*Benzyl Ethyl Ketone*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3$ , . . . . . " 226°.

*Benzyl Acetone*,  $C_6H_5CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$ , . . . . . " 235° (B. 14, 889).

**Substituted Acetophenones:** *Haloid acetophenones.* Acetophenones containing halogens in the methyl group will be discussed after the corresponding oxygen derivatives: *benzoyl carbinol* (see this), *phenyl glyoxal* (see this), and *phenylglyoxylic acid* (see this). *p*-Haloid acetophenones, like  $Cl \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$ , have been obtained from haloid benzenes, acetyl chloride, and aluminium chloride (compare haloid thiophene ketones) (B. 24, 997, 3766):

*p*-Chloroacetophenone, Acetyl-*p*-chlorobenzene, melts at  $20^\circ$  and boils at  $230^\circ$  (B. 18, R. 502).

*p*-Bromoacetophenone, Acetyl-*p*-bromobenzene, melts at  $51^\circ$ .

*p*-Iodoacetophenone, Acetyl-*p*-iodobenzene, melts at  $83^\circ$ .

*Nitro-acetophenones.*—The meta-body is the chief product (just as in the case of benzaldehyde) when acetophenone is dissolved in fuming nitric acid; at  $30$ – $40^\circ$  *o*-nitroacetophenone predominates (B. 18, 2238). The three isomerides can be prepared from the three nitrobenzoyl-acetoacetic esters (see these) (A. 221, 323).

*p*-Nitroacetophenone is formed when concentrated sulphuric acid acts upon *p*-nitrophenylpropionic acid (see this), through the rearrangement of the nitrophenylacetylene, formed at first, by water (A. 212, 160) (see method of formation 2, p. 188).

*o*-Nitro-acetophenone is an oil of peculiar odor.

*m*-Nitro-acetophenone melts at  $93^\circ$ , and its *oxime* at  $131^\circ$  (B. 15, 3063).

*p*-Nitro-acetophenone melts at  $80^\circ$ .

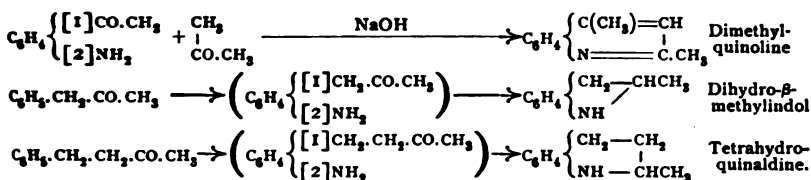
*Amido-acetophenones*,  $C_6H_4(NH_2) \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$ .

*o*-, *m*-, and *p*-Amido-acetophenone are obtained: By reducing *o*-nitroacetophenone (A. 221, 326); from *o*-amido-phenyl acetylene,  $C_6H_4(NH_2)C \equiv CH$ , by the action of sulphuric acid (B. 17, 964); by boiling *o*-amidophenyl-propionic acid with water (B. 15, 2153); and a slight quantity on heating aniline with acetic anhydride (B. 18, 2688). *o*-Amidoacetophenone is a thick, yellow oil, which boils at  $242$ – $252^\circ$ , and possesses a characteristic sweetish odor. *m*-Amido-acetophenone melts at  $93^\circ$ . *p*-Amido-acetophenone melts at  $106^\circ$ ; its *oxime* melts at  $147^\circ$  (B. 20, 512). A pine splinter dipped into the aqueous solution of *o*-amidoacetophenonehydrochloride is colored an intense orange-red.

**Hetero-ring Formations of the Aromatic *o*-Amido-Ketones.**

Dimethyl quinoline is produced (B. 19, 1037) when *o*-amidoacetophenone is digested with acetone and sodium hydroxide. Oily nitro-compounds are formed in the nitration

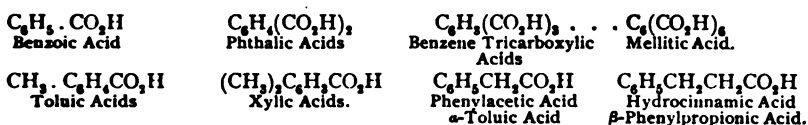
of phenylacetone (p. 190) and benzylacetone. They yield, by reduction,  $\beta$ -methyl-di-hydro-ketol and tetrahydroquinaldine (B. 14, 889), as the *o*-amido-bodies (probably the *o*-amido-alcohols) produced at first sustain an intramolecular anhydride formation :



Acetophenone Sulphonic Acid,  $\text{SO}_3\text{H} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$  (B. 19, 2626).

#### 4. AROMATIC MONOCARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

The aromatic carboxylic acids result upon replacing the hydrogen in benzene or its homologues by the carboxyl group. This group in these new derivatives is directly linked, as in the benzene carboxylic acids, to the benzene ring or it replaces the hydrogen of a side-chain :



Only the mono-carboxylic acids will be now discussed, after the mono-hydric aromatic alcohols.

*General Methods of Formation.*—(1) While the aliphatic monocarboxylic acids or the paraffin carboxylic acids could not be obtained by the oxidation of the paraffins, the aromatic acids can be readily obtained from the benzene homologues by oxidizing the side-chains to carboxyl groups. The importance of this reaction in establishing constitution has been previously alluded to (p. 52). The most suitable oxidants are chromic acid, dilute nitric acid, potassium permanganate, and potassium ferricyanide.

(a) *Oxidation with Chromic Acid.*—Only the *para*- and *meta*-derivatives (the former more readily than the latter) of benzenes, carrying two side-chains, are oxidized to acids by chromic acid, while the *ortho*- are either not attacked at all or are completely destroyed.

In substituted alkyl benzenes the alkyl-group is prevented from being oxidized by chromic acid, if a negative group occupying the *o*-position with reference to the alkyl-group is present (B. 15, 1021). The oxidations are conducted either with free chromic acid in glacial acetic acid, or with a mixture of potassium bichromate (3 parts) and sulphuric acid (3 parts), diluted with 2-3 volumes of water.

(b) *Oxidation with Nitric Acid.*—When oxidizing with nitric acid use acid diluted with 3 parts of water and boil for some time, in connection with a return condenser (2-3 days). Konowaloff (p. 178) contends that phenylnitroparaffins are first produced; these then are further oxidized to carboxylic acids. To remove the nitro-acids which are invariably formed, the crude product is digested with tin and concentrated hydrochloric acid; this converts the nitro- into amido-acids, which dissolve in hydrochloric acid.

In the derivatives with two different alkyls the higher alkyl is usually attacked first, by nitric acid or chromic acid; sometimes ketones are present in the intermediates (see Cymene, p. 56).

(c) Potassium permanganate often effects the oxidation at ordinary

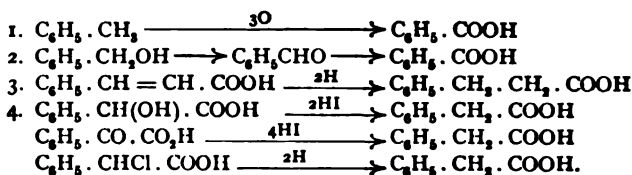
Ortho diderivatives may also be subjected to oxidation, without having the complete destruction of the benzene nucleus follow as a consequence.

(d) Potassium ferricyanide oxidizes methyl to carboxyl, if the nitro-group occupies the ortho-position relatively to the methyl-group. This does not occur if the nitro-group holds the meta-position (B. 22, R. 501).

(2) Oxidation of the corresponding aromatic alcohols and aldehydes.

(3) By the addition of hydrogen to the unsaturated monocarboxylic acids. Cinnamic acid becomes hydrocinnamic acid.

(4) By the reduction of phenylated oxyfatty acids, haloid aromatic acids, and ketone carboxylic acids.



#### *Nucleus-synthetic Reactions :*

(5) Action of sodium and  $\text{CO}_2$  upon monobrombenzenes (Kekulé).

(6) A similar reaction is that of sodium and esters of chlorcarbonic acid upon phenols and bromhydrocarbons (Würtz).

(7) Fusion of salts of the sulphonic acids with sodium formate.

(8) The action of phosgene gas upon benzenes in the presence of aluminium chloride; at first acid chlorides are produced.

(9) Urea chlorides, in the presence of  $\text{AlCl}_3$ , act in an analogous manner upon the benzenes. Acid amides are the first products. The urea chlorides can be replaced by cyanuric acid, by nascent cyanic acid, and by carbanile.

(10) By the synthesis of the acid nitriles—

(a) upon fusing the sulphonates with potassium cyanide;

(b) by action of potassium cyanide upon the phenylalkyl chlorides;

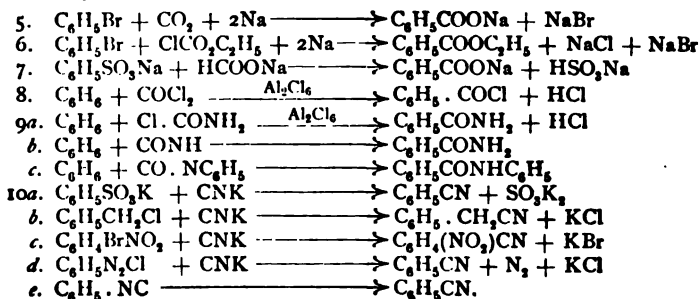
(c) when the bromnitrobenzenes are heated with potassium cyanide; sulphate;

(d) when diazo salts are treated with potassium cyanide and copper

(e) by heating the isonitriles alone.

The nitriles are changed to carboxylic acids when they are heated with mineral acids or alkalies.

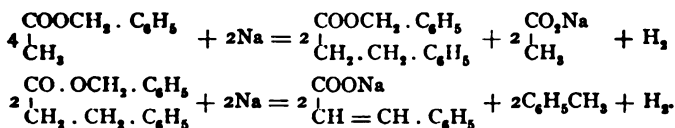
#### *Nucleus Syntheses :*



(11) Action of benzyl chloride upon sodium acetoacetic ester, and the decomposition of the ketonic esters—*e. g.*, benzyl acetoacetic ester—by alkalies.

(12) The decomposition of phenyl substitution products of the malonic acid series—*e. g.*, benzylmalonic acid—by heat.

(13) Action of metallic sodium upon the acetates, propionates, etc., of the phenyl carbinols: benzyl acetate yields phenylpropionic benzyl ester and phenylacrylic acid, while benzyl phenyl-butyric ester and phenylcrotonic acid are obtained from benzylpropionate (A. 193, 321; 204, 200):



*Occurrence, Properties, and Deportment.*—The aromatic acids occur naturally, partly in a free state, partly in many resins and balsams, and in the animal organism (see benzoic acid). They arise also in the decay of albuminoid bodies (see hydrocinnamic acid) (B. 16, 2313).

The aromatic acids are crystalline solids, which generally sublime undecomposed. Most of them dissolve with difficulty in water, hence are precipitated from their salt solutions by mineral acids. Sodium amalgam or zinc-dust will reduce some to aldehydes, and heating with concentrated hydriodic acid or phosphonium iodide converts them into hydrocarbons. When heated with lime or soda-lime, their carboxyl-groups are eliminated and hydrocarbons result (compare methane, 1, 80).

From the polycarboxylic acids we obtain, as intermediate products, acids having fewer carboxyl groups—*e. g.*, phthalic acid first yields benzoic acid and then benzene.

The hydrogen of the benzene nucleus in the acids can sustain substitutions similar to those observed with the hydrocarbons and phenols by the halogens, and the groups NO<sub>2</sub>, SO<sub>3</sub>H, NH<sub>2</sub>, OH, etc. In other respects they are very similar to the fatty acids, and afford corresponding derivatives by the alterations of the carboxyl group.

**Benzoic Acid, Phenyl Formic Acid,** C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>.COOH, melting at 120° and boiling at 250°, occurs free in some resins, especially in gum benzoin (from *Styrax benzoin*), in dragon's blood (from *Demonorops Draco*), also in Peru and tolu balsams, where it exists in the form of its benzyl ester. It is found as hippuric acid in the urine of herbivoræ.

It is produced by the general methods 1 and 2 (pp. 191, 192) from toluene, benzyl alcohol, and benzaldehyde upon oxidation, as well as from all hydrocarbons, alcohols, aldehydes, ketones, and carboxylic acids and their derivatives, which are obtainable from benzene by the replacement of *one* hydrogen atom by a univalent side-chain. Benzoic acid can also be prepared by the oxidation of pure benzene; this is very probably due to the oxidation of diphenyl, which is formed at first (A. 221, 234). Toluene can also be changed to benzyl chloride, and this then be oxidized (see preparation) to benzoic acid, or benzotrichloride may be heated with water, concentrated sulphuric acid, or anhydrous oxalic acid, and the product will be benzoic acid. It can also be obtained, by the nucleus-synthetic reactions 5 and 10, from benzene,

brombenzene, sodium benzene sulphonate, and from aniline through diazobenzene chloride or phenylcarbylamine (p. 193). Finally,  $\text{CO}_2$  can be added to benzene by means of aluminium chloride, and benzoic acid will result.

*History.*—Benzoic acid was obtained from gum benzoin by sublimation, in the beginning of the 17th century. In 1775 Scheele showed how the acid could be extracted from the gum with lime-water, and then be precipitated from the solution of its calcium salt. In 1832 Liebig and Wöhler, in the course of their classic research upon the radical benzoyl, determined the elementary composition of the acid and illustrated its connection with benzaldehyde, as well as pointed out the simplest transformation products of the acid. This investigation produced such a profound impression upon the great master, Berzelius, that he proposed as a substitute for the name benzoyl—the name of the new radical containing more than two elements—that of *proïn* or *orthrin*, from the Greek words, *πρῶτα*, the beginning of day, or *δρῶρος*, morning dawn, because a new day was now breaking for organic chemistry. In 1834 Mitscherlich distilled benzoic acid with lime and got benzene, which led him to regard the acid as a derivative of this hydrocarbon. From that day, and especially since the establishment of the benzene theory by Aug. Kekulé, benzoic acid has been serving in constantly increasing amount as the starting out material for the preparation of innumerable products. It is the acid which has been most exhaustively investigated. The study of its derivatives has been greatly facilitated by the fact that the great crystallizing power of the acid has been transferred to most of its compounds (1, 271).

*Preparation.*—Gum benzoin is sublimed or the resin is boiled with milk of lime, and the benzoic acid precipitated with hydrochloric acid. A more advantageous method is the production of the acid from hippuric acid. To accomplish this, boil the latter with concentrated hydrochloric acid. It is also produced when benzyl chloride is boiled with dilute nitric acid (B. 10, 1275). Benzoic acid results from phthalic acid by heating its calcium salt to  $350^\circ$  with calcium hydroxide.

*Properties and Deportment.*—Benzoic acid crystallizes from hot water, in which it is very soluble, in white, shining leaflets. It sublimes readily, and is carried over with steam. It dissolves with difficulty in cold water (1 part in 600 parts at  $0^\circ$ ). Its vapors possess a peculiar odor, which produces coughing and sneezing. The officinal benzoic acid is obtained by the sublimation of Siam gum benzoin.

The acid yields benzene and carbon dioxide when heated with lime. Benzoic acid, upon reduction, can yield *tetra-* and *hexa-hydrobenzoic acids* (see these).

*Salts.*—The *benzoates* are mostly quite readily soluble in water. Ferric chloride throws out a reddish precipitate of ferric benzoate from their neutral solutions.

The *potassium salt*,  $2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{KO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ , crystallizes in concentrically grouped needles. The *calcium salt*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}_2)_2\text{Ca} + 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , consists of shining prisms or needles. The *silver salt*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{AgO}_2$ , crystallizes from hot water in bright leaflets.

*Homologues of Benzoic Acid.*—These compounds, like the homologues of benzaldehyde and acetophenone, can be arranged into two groups: *alkyl benzoic acids*, in which the  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ -group is attached to the benzene nucleus, as in benzoic acid itself, and *phenyl fatty acids*, in which the carboxyl group occurs in an aliphatic side-chain of an alkyl benzene. The first group or class is naturally more nearly related to benzoic acid than the second group.

*Alkyl Benzoic Acids.*—*Toluic acids* or *monomethyl benzoic acids*,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , are isomeric with *o-toluic acid* or *phenylacetic acid* (p. 196). They are produced when the three xylenes are boiled for some time with dilute nitric acid, and from brom- and

iod-toluene, by the nucleus-synthetic methods 5 and 6, as well as from the three toluenes according to method 10.

o-Toluic acid can also be obtained by the reduction of phthalide with hydriodic acid (B. 20, R. 378), as well as by rupturing the ring of 1,3-naphthalene derivatives, like 1,3-dioxynaphthalene, 1,3-naphthalene disulphonic acid, 1,3-naphthol sulphonic acid upon fusing them with caustic alkali (B. 29, 1611). p-Toluic acid is formed on boiling cymene (p. 56) with dilute nitric acid.

o-Toluic acid melts at 102°.

m-Toluic acid " " 110° and boils at 263°.

p-Toluic acid " " 180° " " 275°.

**Ethyl Benzoic Acids,  $C_2H_5 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CO \cdot OH$ .**—The three isomerides are known. The o-acid results in the reduction of o-acetophenone carboxylic acid, of methyl phthalide

(B. 29, 2533), and of phthalyl acetic acid,  $C_6H_4 \begin{Bmatrix} C=CHCO_2H \\ \diagup \diagdown \\ CO \end{Bmatrix}$ , with hydriodic acid (B. 10, 2206), and in that of the chlorvinylbenzoic acids with sodium amalgam (B. 27, 2761).

o-, m-, and p-Ethyl Benzoic Acids melt at 68°, 47°, and 112° (B. 21, 2830; A. 216, 218) respectively.

**Dimethyl Benzoic Acids,  $(CH_3)_2C_6H_3CO_2H$ .**—Mesitylenic acid is the most important member of this group. It is formed when mesitylene, symmetrical or [1,3,5]-trimethyl benzene (p. 55), is oxidized with dilute nitric acid. Isoxylene or m-xylene is obtained when this acid is distilled with lime. These reactions are the basis of the evidence that isoxylene (p. 54) and its oxidation products, m-toluic acid and isophthalic acid, are m-disubstitution products of benzene (p. 37). Further oxidation of mesitylenic acid leads to *uvitic acid* and *trimesic acid*.

1,2-Dimethyl-3-benzoic Acid, *α*-Hemellitic Acid, melts at 144° (B. 19, 2518).

1,2-Dimethyl-4-benzoic Acid, p-Xylic Acid, . . . " 163° (B. 17, 2374).

1,3-Dimethyl-2-benzoic Acid, . . . . . " 98° (B. 11, 21).

1,3-Dimethyl-4-benzoic Acid, . . . . . " 126° (B. 12, 1968).

1,3-Dimethyl-5-benzoic Acid, **Mesitylenic Acid**, " 166° (A. 141, 144).

1,4-Dimethyl-2-benzoic Acid, Isoxylic Acid, . . . " 132°; boils at 268° (A. 244, 54).

**Propyl Benzoic Acids,  $C_3H_7 \cdot C_6H_4CO_2H$ .**—o- and p-n-Propyl and p-isopropyl benzoic acids are known. p-Isopropyl benzoic acid, or *cumic acid*, the oxidation product of cuminic alcohol (p. 184) (B. 11, 1790), is deserving of the most note. Cumic acid is further produced by the oxidation of cymene (p. 56) in the animal organism, as well as by the rearrangement of *nopic acid* which results from the oxidation of turpentine oil (B. 29, 1927). Chromic acid oxidizes cumic acid to terephthalic acid, and potassium permanganate converts it into p-oxyisopropyl benzoic acid and p-acetyl benzoic acid:

o,n-Propylbenzoic acid melts at 58° (B. 11, 1014).

p,n-Propylbenzoic acid melts at 138° (B. 21, 2231).

o-Isopropylbenzoic acid melts at 51° (A. 248, 63).

**Cumic Acid, p-Isopropyl Benzoic Acid**, melts at 117° (A. 219, 279; B. 20, 860).

**Trimethyl Benzoic Acids.**—Five are known. Durylic acid is obtained from durenene, and *α*-, *β*-, and *γ*-isodurylic acids from isodurenene (B. 27, 3446), upon oxidation with

dilute nitric acid.  $\beta$ -Isodurylic acid or mesitylene carboxylic acid can also be formed from acetyl mesitylene (p. 190) (B. 25, 503):

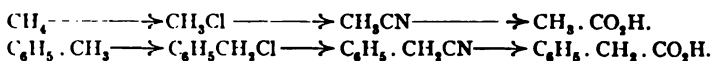
1,2,3-Trimethyl-4-benzoic Acid,	Prehnitylic Acid,	melts at 167°.
1,2,3-Trimethyl-5-benzoic Acid,	$\alpha$ -Isodurylic Acid,	" 215°.
1,2,4-Trimethyl-5-benzoic Acid,	Durylic Acid,	" 150°.
1,2,4-Trimethyl-6-benzoic Acid,	$\gamma$ -Isodurylic Acid,	" 127°.
1,3,5-Mesitylene Carboxylic Acid,	$\beta$ -Isodurylic Acid,	" 152°.

**Tetramethyl Benzoic Acids.**—Several are known: 1,2,3,4-Tetramethyl-5-benzoic acid, melting at 165°, is the oxidation product of pentamethyl benzene (B. 20, 3287); 1,2,3,5-Tetramethyl-6-benzoic acid, durene carboxylic acid (B. 29, 2569); 2,3,5,6-Tetramethyl Benzoic Acid melts at 127° (B. 29, R. 233).

**Pentamethyl Benzoic Acid**,  $(\text{CH}_3)_5\text{C}_6\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at 210°, is made according to method 8 (B. 22, 1221).

**Phenyl Fatty Acids.**—The most important representatives of this group are phenylacetic acid or  $\alpha$ -toluic acid,  $\beta$ -phenylpropionic acid or hydrocinnamic acid, and  $\alpha$ -phenylpropionic acid or hydratropic acid. The synthesis and decomposition of the phenyl fatty acids can be realized in the same manner as the synthesis and decompositions of the fatty acids (I, 251). The general methods of formation 2, 3, 4, 10b, 11, 12, and 13 (pp. 191, 192) are particularly prominent in the formation of the phenyl fatty acids.

**Phenyl-acetic Acid, Alphetoluic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at 76° and boils at 262°. This acid is formed from toluene just as acetic acid is obtained from methane. Toluene is converted into benzyl chloride, and this into benzyl cyanide (method 10b, p. 192), which is then digested with sulphuric acid (B. 19, 1950; 20, 592):



It can also be obtained from phenyl chloroacetic acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{CHCl}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}$  (B. 14, 240), from phenyl glycollic acid or mandelic acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{OH})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , and phenylglyoxylic acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , by reduction.

It is produced when phenylmalonic acid is heated (see method 12, p. 193), and it appears in the decay of albuminates (B. 12, 649). It may be prepared, furthermore, from brombenzene, chloroacetic ester, and copper (B. 2, 738), and by heating acetophenone with yellow ammonium sulphide (B. 21, 534). Chromic acid oxidizes it to benzoic acid. Chlorine, in the heat, converts it into phenylchloroacetic acid, while in the cold the halogens replace the aromatic hydrogen.

**Tolyl-acetic Acids, Alpha-xylic Acids**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\langle\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\rangle\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ .—The three isomeric acids have been obtained from the three xylene bromides. The *ortho*-acid melts at 89°, the *meta* at 61°, and the *para* at 91° (B. 20, 2051; 24, 3965).

The esters of two acids, isomeric with phenyl- and tolyl-acetic acids, result from the action of diazo-acetic ester (I, 365) upon benzene and toluene. These acids have been called *pseudophenyl-acetic acid* (the *amide* melts at 141°) and *pseudotolyl-acetic acid*. The only product formed in any appreciable amount by the oxidation of pseudophenyl-acetic acid is terephthalic acid. The constitution of this body has never been explained. It has been assumed that it contains the residue  $=\text{CH}\cdot\text{COOH}$ , attached to two carbon atoms of the nucleus (B. 29, 106, 632).

**Hydrocinnamic Acid,  $\beta$ -Phenylpropionic Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $47^\circ$  and boiling at  $280^\circ$ , is isomeric with  $\alpha$ -phenylpropionic acid, the three aliphatic acids, the three ethylbenzoic acids, and the six dimethylbenzoic acids. It is obtained : by the action of sodium amalgam upon cinnamic acid, or  $\beta$ -phenylacrylic acid, or hydriodic acid (B. 13, 1680); from phenylethyl cyanide (A. 156, 249); from benzyl acetoacetic ester (B. 10, 758) and benzyl malonic ester (A. 204, 176); also from benzyl acetic ester with sodium (A. 193, 300) (see, further, methods 11, 12, and 13); and in the decay of albuminoid substances (B. 12, 649). Chromic acid oxidizes it to benzoic acid.

The aliphatic haloid hydrocinnamic acids, readily obtained by the addition of haloid acids and halogens to cinnamic acid, will be described after phenyllactic and phenylglyceric acids.

**Hydratropic Acid,  $\alpha$ -Phenyl-propionic Acid**,  $C_6H_5CH(CH_3) \cdot CO_2H$ , boiling at  $265^\circ$ , is an oil, volatile in aqueous vapor. It results from the reduction of atropic acid or  $\alpha$ -phenylacrylic acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C(=CH_3) \cdot CO_2H$ , and in the action of hydriodic acid upon the prussic acid addition product of acetophenone—the nitrile of atrolactic acid (A. 250, 135).

*Higher homologues* of these acids are usually made according to the following reactions : (1) By reduction of homologous cinnamic acids (see these), which can be readily prepared by Perkins' reaction from the aromatic aldehydes. (2) By the reduction of homologous mandelic acids, obtained from homologous phenylglyoxylic acids. The latter result upon oxidizing homologous acetyl benzenes with potassium permanganate. (3) From alkylized benzyl cyanides, which are produced by the action of alkylagens upon sodium benzyl cyanide.

*$\gamma$ -Phenyl-butyric Acid*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot COOH$ , melting at  $51.7^\circ$ , is formed by the reduction of phenylbutyrolactone.  *$\delta$ -Phenyl-valeric Acid*,  $C_6H_5(CH_2)_4COOH$ , melting at  $59^\circ$ , results from the reduction of phenyl coumalin (see this) with hydriodic acid (B. 29, 1675, R. 14).

#### DERIVATIVES OF THE AROMATIC MONOCARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

The derivatives of benzoic acid and its homologues arrange themselves into two groups. The first group comprises those compounds resulting from the alteration of the carboxyl group (see Acetic Acid, I, 222, 223), and the second group the aromatic substitution products with the exception of the phenol monocarboxylic acids. The first group divides itself into A, the benzoyl compounds; B, the benzenyl compounds and the derivatives of orthobenzoic acid. The chemistry of no single carboxylic acid has been so richly developed as that of benzoic acid.

#### A. BENZOYL COMPOUNDS.

1. *Esters of the Monobasic Aromatic Acids* (I, 254).—The benzoic esters of the alcohols and phenols can be prepared like the acetic esters. Like the latter, they are frequently employed in determining the number of alcoholic hydroxyl groups present in a compound. They are made (1) by the action of hydrochloric acid upon an alcoholic solution of benzoic acid; (2) by the action of benzoyl chloride or benzoic anhydride upon alcohols, alcoholates, phenols, and phenolates; (3) by the action of alkylagens upon salts,

usually the silver salts. In carrying out the second reaction it is advisable to gradually add sodium hydroxide, and shake the alkaline, aqueous solution of the alcohols with benzoyl chloride until there is a permanent alkaline reaction (Baumann, B. 19, 3218). In this manner, also, the benzoyl ethers of the polyalcohols, the polyoxyaldehydes,—e. g., of the glucoses,—have been obtained, and nearly all have been completely benzoylated (B. 22, R. 668).

*Methyl Benzoic Ester* boils at 199°. The *ethyl ester* boils at 213°; the *n-propyl ester* at 229°; the *n-butyl ester* at 247°. *Glycol Dibenzoate* melts at 73° (B. 23, 2498). *Glycerol Tribenzoate* melts at 76° (B. 24, 779). *Erythrol Tetrabenzoate* melts at 187°. *Mannitol Hexabenzoate* melts at 124°. *Glucose Pentabenzoate* melts at 179°.

*Benzoyl Glycollic Acid*,  $C_6H_5CO \cdot OCH_2 \cdot CO_2H$ , consists of large prisms. It results when nitrous acid acts upon hippuric acid. *Phenyl Benzoic Ester* melts at 71° and boils at 314° (A. 210, 255; B. 24, 3685). The *benzyl ester* melts at 20° and boils at 323° (B. 20, 647). It occurs in Peru balsam (A. 152, 130). See pp. 147, 160, and 163 for the benzoyl compounds of the homologous phenols.

The 2,6- and 2,4,6-substituted benzoic acids, like mesitylene carboxylic acid, 2,6-dibrom-, and 2,4,6-tribrom-, 2,4,6 trinitrobenzoic acids, etc., are not converted into esters when treated with alcohol and hydrochloric acid. The acids not esterified in this way are quite readily changed to esters by the interaction of alkylogens and the silver salts (B. 28, 1468; 29, 1399; compare 29, 2301).

**2. Aromatic Acid Haloids or Haloid Anhydrides of the Aromatic Acids** (1, 257).—The methods pursued in the preparation of these bodies are similar to those employed for the corresponding fatty derivatives (1, 257).

**Benzoyl Chloride**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot COCl$ , melting at  $-1^\circ$  and boiling at 198°, is isomeric with the chlorinated benzaldehydes,  $Cl \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CHO$ . It is a liquid with penetrating odor. It is formed from benzoic acid, phosphorus pentoxide, and hydrochloric acid (B. 2, 80); from benzaldehyde and chlorine; from sodium benzoate and phosphorus oxychloride; and from benzoic acid and phosphorus pentachloride. The action of phosphorus and aluminium chloride upon benzene hydrocarbons, and of anhydrous oxalic acid upon benzotrichloride (A. 226, 20), are only applicable in the preparation of the chlorides of benzene carboxylic acids.

The history of benzoyl chloride, the first discovered chloride of a carboxylic acid, was given in connection with the fatty acid chlorides (1, 257). Benzoyl chloride is readily accessible and very reactive; it is therefore one of the most frequently used compounds in various reactions.

*o*- and *m*-*Toluyyl Chlorides* boil at 211° and 218° respectively. *Phenyl Acetyl Chloride*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot COCl$ , boils at 102° (17 mm.) (B. 20, 1389).

*Benzoyl Bromide*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot COBr$ , melting about 0° and boiling at 218°, results from the action of phosphorus tribromide upon benzoic acid (B. 14, 2473). *Benzoyl iodide*, consisting of crystalline leaflets, is produced when potassium iodide acts upon benzoyl chloride (B. 3, 266). *Benzoyl fluoride*, from benzoyl chloride and  $AgF$ , boils at 145°.

So far as concerns properties, *benzoyl azimide* or *benzoyl nitride*, to be treated later in connection with benzoyl hydrazine, attaches itself to the halogen anhydrides of benzoic acid.

**3. Acid Anhydrides** (1, 259).—*Benzoic Anhydride*,  $(C_6H_5 \cdot CO)_2O$ , melting at 42° and boiling at 360°, is obtained from benzoyl chloride and sodium benzoate or silver benzoate; from benzoyl chloride and benzotrichloride upon digesting them with anhydrous oxalic acid; from benzoyl chloride by means of lead nitrate (B. 17, 1282) or sodium nitrite (B. 24, R. 371), and by the action of concentrated sulphuric acid upon benzotrichloride (B. 12, 1495).

*Aceto-benzoic Anhydride* breaks down, when heated, into acetic anhydride and benzoic anhydride (B. 20, 3189).

*o*-*Toluic Anhydride* melts at 37°. *Phenyl-acetic anhydride*,  $(C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO)_2O$ , melts at 72° (B. 20, 1391).

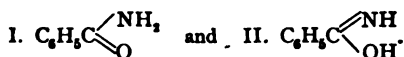
**4. Acid Peroxides** (1, 261).—*Benzoyl Peroxide*,  $(C_6H_5CO)_2O_2$ , melts at 103° and deflagrates when heated. It is formed from benzoyl chloride and barium peroxide, or from benzoyl chloride, hydrogen peroxide, and sodium hydrate (B. 27, 1511; 29, 1727), as well as from benzaldehyde, acetic anhydride, and sand, upon exposure to the air (B. 27, 1960).

5. **Thioacids** (1, 261).—Thiobenzoic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot SH$ , melts at  $24^\circ$ , and results when benzoyl chloride acts upon alcoholic potassium sulphide. When the ethereal solution of thiobenzoic acid is exposed to the air (A. 115, 27) the acid rapidly changes to *Benzoyl disulphide*,  $(C_6H_5O)_2S_2$ , melting at  $138^\circ$ . *Benzoyl sulphide*,  $(C_6H_5O)_2S$ , melts at  $48^\circ$ , and is obtained when benzoyl chloride acts upon thiobenzoic acid (Z. f. Ch. (1868), 357).

*Thionbenzoic Acid*,  $C_6H_5CSOH$  (A. 140, 236).

*Dithiobenzoic Acid*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CS \cdot SH$ , a heavy, dark violet-red oil, is obtained when  $C_6H_5 \cdot CCl_2$  is boiled with alcoholic potassium sulphide (A. 140, 240).

6. **Acid Amides** (1, 262).—The methods of formation and the deportment of the acid amides have been sufficiently considered in connection with the fatty acid amides. Attention was also called to the fact that the amides of the carboxylic acids could have two constitution formulas. Thus, benzamide has two formulas:



The imido-ethers are derived from the second formula (see silver benzamide). In addition to the methods mentioned under the amides of the fatty acids must be added, in connection with the amides of the benzene carboxylic acids, their formation through the action of aluminium chloride upon aromatic hydrocarbons and urea chlorides (p. 192).

**Benzamide**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot NH_2$ , melting at  $130^\circ$  and boiling at  $288^\circ$ , results (1) when benzoyl chloride is acted upon by gaseous or aqueous ammonia, or by ammonium carbonate (see tribenzamide); (2) from benzoic ester and ammonia; (3) by heating benzoic acid and ammonium thiocyanate to  $170^\circ$  (A. 244, 50). It crystallizes in pearly leaflets, melts at  $130^\circ$ , and boils near  $288^\circ$ . It is readily soluble in hot water, alcohol, and ether.

*Sodium Benzamide*,  $C_6H_5CONHNa$  or  $C_6H_5C(:NH)ONa$ , results from the action of metallic sodium upon benzamide dissolved in benzene (B. 23, 3038).

*Silver Benzamide*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot NHAg$  or  $C_6H_5 \cdot C(:NH) \cdot O \cdot Ag$ , obtained by precipitating the aqueous solution of benzamide and silver nitrate with a calculated amount of sodium hydroxide, is a white crystalline powder. When digested with ethyl iodide it yields benzimido-ethyl ether (B. 23, 1550); a behavior arguing for the II-formula for the silver salt.

**Dibenzamide**,  $(C_6H_5CO)_2NH$ , melting at  $148^\circ$ , is obtained from benzonitrile with concentrated sulphuric acid, or from benzoyl chloride and benzonitrile with aluminium chloride. When distilled under a pressure of 15 mm. dibenzamide breaks down into benzonitrile and benzoic acid (B. 21, 2389). *Sodium dibenzamide*,  $(C_6H_5CO)_2NNa$ , is a shining, white powder. It is formed when sodium acts upon dibenzamide dissolved in xylene.

**Tribenzamide**,  $(C_6H_5CO)_3N$ , melting at  $202^\circ$ , results in the action of benzoyl chloride in ethereal solution upon sodium dibenzamide, and together with benzamide and dibenzamide when benzoyl chloride acts upon ammonium carbonate (B. 25, 3120).

*Benzoyl Chlorimide*,  $C_6H_5CONHCl$ , melts at  $113^\circ$ . *Benzoyl Bromimide*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CONHBr$ , melts with decomposition at  $170^\circ$ . *Methyl and Dimethyl Benzamide*,  $C_6H_5CON(CH_3)_2$ , melt at  $78^\circ$  and  $41^\circ$ .

We get **Benzanilide**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_5$ , **Phenyl-benzamide**, on mixing aniline and benzoyl chloride. It can also be made by the action of aluminium chloride (p. 192) upon benzene and carbanile, and upon heating benzophenoxime,  $(C_6H_5)_2C : N \cdot OH$ , with concentrated sulphuric acid, acetyl chloride, or glacial acetic acid containing hydrochloric acid, to  $100^\circ$ , or with glacial acetic acid alone to  $180^\circ$  (B. 20, 2581).

When benzanilide is boiled with sulphur it becomes *benzenylamidothiophenol* or *μ-phenylbenzothiazole* (p. 153). *o*-, *m*-, and *p*-*Benzoyl Toluides*,  $C_6H_5CONH \cdot C_6H_4CH_3$ , melt at  $131^\circ$ ,  $125^\circ$ , and  $158^\circ$ .

*Diphenylbenzamide*,  $C_6H_5CO \cdot N(C_6H_5)_2$ , melting at  $177^\circ$ , results from diphenylamine and benzoyl chloride, as well as from diphenylurea chloride, benzene and aluminium chloride (B. 20, 2119).

*Benzoyl Benzylamine*,  $C_6H_5CO \cdot NH \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , melts at  $105^\circ$  (B. 26, 2273).

*Methylene-dibenzamide, hipparaffin*,  $CH_2(NH \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5)_2$ , melting at  $221^\circ$ , is obtained in the oxidation of hippuric acid with  $PbO_2$  and dilute sulphuric or dilute nitric acid, and results from formaldehyde, benzonitrile, and hydrochloric acid (B. 25, 311).

*Ethidene Dibenzamide*,  $CH_2 \cdot CH(NHCOC_6H_5)_2$ , melts at  $204^\circ$  (B. 7, 159).

*Ethylene Dibenzamide*,  $C_6H_5CO \cdot NH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $249^\circ$ , when heated alone or with hydrochloric acid yields ethylene benzenylamidine, benzoyl acid splitting off at the same time (B. 21, 2334).

*Hippuric Aldehyde*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot CH_2 \cdot COH$  (B. 27, 3093). Its acetal is formed from amido-acetal (I, 316).

**Hippuric Acid, Benzoyl glycoll,  $CH_2 \begin{smallmatrix} NH \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5 \\ CO_2H \end{smallmatrix}$** , melting at  $187^\circ$ , decomposes at  $240^\circ$  into benzoic acid, benzonitrile, and prussic acid. It occurs in considerable amount in the urine of herbivorous animals, in that of the cow and horse (*προς*, horse, *ούρον*, urine), and in minute quantities in that of man. Benzoic acid, cinnamic acid, toluene, and other aromatic substances, when taken internally, are eliminated as hippuric acid. It can be obtained artificially (1) by heating benzamide with monochloroacetic acid; (2) by the action of benzoyl chloride on silver glycollide (B. 15, 2740), or (3) by adding sodium hydroxide to glycoll and shaking with benzoyl chloride (B. 19, R. 307), and (4) by heating benzoic anhydride with glycoll (B. 17, 1662).

*History*.—Liebig, in 1829, recognized that hippuric acid was a different body from benzoic acid, and to indicate its origin named it hippuric acid. In 1839 he established its constitution. Dessaignes (1846) showed how upon boiling with strong alkalis or acids it was resolved into glycoll and benzoic acid (J. pr. Ch. [1] 37, 244). In 1848 Strecker converted the acid by means of nitrous acid into benzoyl glycollic acid (A. 68, 54), and in 1853 Dessaignes synthesized hippuric acid from benzoyl chloride and zinc glycollide (A. 87, 325).

Hippuric acid crystallizes in rhombic prisms, and dissolves in 600 parts cold, and readily in hot water and alcohol. Boiling acids or alkalis decompose hippuric acid into benzoic acid and glycoll.

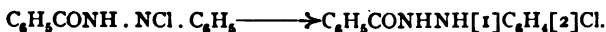
Compare *hipparaffin* (above), *benzoylglycollic acid* (p. 198), for other transformations of hippuric acid. Hippuric acid condenses with benzaldehyde, sodium acetate and acetic anhydride to benzoylamidocinnamic lactimide (A. 275, 3).

*Silver salt*,  $C_6H_5AgNO_3$ . The *ethyl ester* melts at  $60^\circ$  (J. pr. Ch. [2] 15, 247). It is converted by  $PCl_5$  (2 mols.) into *hippuroflavin*,  $C_6H_5CON \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup CO \\ \diagdown CO \end{smallmatrix} NCOC_6H_5(?)$ , consisting of citron yellow crystals (B. 21, 3321; 26, 2324). Benzaldehyde and sodium acetate change it to *benzoylamidocinnamic ester* (A. 275, 12). The *phenyl ester* melts at  $104^\circ$ . When boiled with  $POCl_3$  it passes into *anhydrohippuric phenyl ester*,  $C_6H_5CO \cdot N \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup CH \\ \diagdown C \end{smallmatrix} \cdot OC_6H_5$ , melting at  $42^\circ$  (B. 26, 2641).

*Hippuryl-hydrazine*,  $C_6H_5CO \cdot NH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot NH_2$ , melting at  $162^\circ$ , is formed from ethyl hippuric ester and hydrazine. Compare *hippuryl-phenyl-benzylene* (p. 131) and *hippurazide* (p. 201) (B. 29, R. 181).

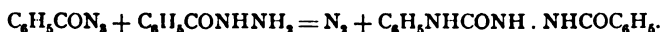
7. Acid Hydrazides (I, 228, 405; II, 125). *Benzoyl Hydrazine*,  $C_6H_5CO \cdot NHNH_2$ ,

melting at  $112^{\circ}$ , is obtained from benzoic ester and hydrazine. When there is an excess of the ester, sym. *Dibenzoyl Hydrazine*,  $(C_6H_5CO \cdot NH)_2$ , is formed. This melts at  $233^{\circ}$  (B. 27, R. 899) (see also benzoylazine, below). *Benzoyl Phenylhydrazine*, melting at  $168^{\circ}$  (B. 19, 1203), is converted by mercuric oxide into *benzoyl diazobenzene*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CON_2C_6H_5$ . This yields an addition product with hydrochloric acid, but it rearranges itself to *o-chlorphenylbenzoylhydrazine* (B. 30, 319):



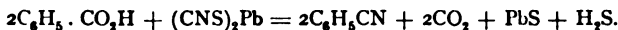
Unsym. *Benzoyl-phenylhydrazine* melts at  $70^{\circ}$  (B. 26, 945, R. 816). *Dibenzoyl-phenylhydrazine*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot N(C_6H_5) \cdot NHCO \cdot C_6H_5$ , melts at  $177^{\circ}$ .

8. **Acidylazides.**—*Benzoylazine*, *benzoyl nitride*, *azimide*,  $C_6H_5CON < \begin{smallmatrix} N \\ // \\ N \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $20^{\circ}$ , is formed when sodium nitrite and acetic acid act upon benzoyl hydrazine (B. 23, 3023). Its odor is intensely like that of benzoyl chloride; it volatilizes in part with aqueous vapor without decomposition, and explodes with slight detonation upon the application of heat. It is insoluble in water, very soluble in ether, and rather readily soluble in alcohol. It reacts neutral. It breaks down, on boiling with alkalis, into benzoic acid and potassium azoimide (B. 23, 3029). Boiling alcohol changes it to phenylurethane,  $C_6H_5NH \cdot CO \cdot OC_6H_5$ , and nitrogen. Carbanilide and nitrogen result when it is boiled with water. Bromine converts it into nitrogen and a carbanile brom-addition product (J. pr. Ch. [2] 52, 215). The substituted benzoylazides behave similarly. *o*-, *m*-, and *p*-*Nitrobenzazides* melt at  $36^{\circ}$ ,  $68^{\circ}$ , and  $69^{\circ}$ . The azides can also be obtained by the action of salts of diazo-benzene upon the acid hydrazides. Acidylated semicarbazides are produced on boiling the acid azides with the acid hydrazides (B. 29, R. 981) (p. 86):



*Hippurazide*,  $C_6H_5CO \cdot NH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot N_3$ , melting at  $98^{\circ}$ , results when sodium nitrite and acetic acid act upon hippuryl hydrazine. It is decomposed by mineral acids, alkalies, ammonia, and amines, with the elimination of *hydrazoic acid*. When boiled with alcohols and with water  $N_2$  is evolved, and there result *Hippenyl urethane*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CONHCH_2NHCOOR$ , and *Dihippenylurea*,  $(C_6H_5CONHCH_2NH)_2CO$  (B. 29, R. 183).

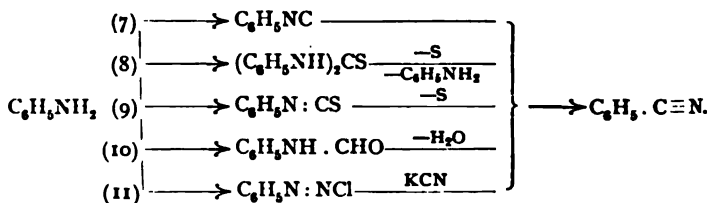
9. **Nitriles of the Aromatic Monocarboxylic Acids.**—The aromatic nitriles are connected by numerous reactions with the principal classes of the aromatic derivatives. They are produced, like the nitriles of the fatty acids (I, 266), (1) from the corresponding ammonium salts; (2) from the corresponding acid amides by the withdrawal of water with  $P_2O_5$ ,  $PCl_5$ , and  $SOCl_2$  (B. 26, R. 401); (3) by the action of bromine and caustic alkali upon the primary phenylalkylamines; (4) from the aldoximes by the action of acetyl chloride or acetic anhydride. There is also (5) the method of distilling aromatic monocarboxylic acids with potassium sulphocyanide, or, better, with lead sulphocyanide (B. 17, 1766):



*Nucleus-synthetic Methods.*—(6) The direct replacement of the halogens in the benzene hydrocarbons by the cyanogen group is of exceptional occurrence—*e. g.*, when chlor- and brom-benzene are conducted over strongly ignited potassium ferrocyanide, or when benzene iodide is heated to  $300^{\circ}$  with silver cyanide, the product being cyan-benzene.

However, the phenyl carbinol chlorides—*e. g.*,  $C_6H_5CH_2Cl$ —are as readily transposed as the alkylogens into nitriles of the phenyl-fatty acids by means of potassium cyanide.

The nitriles are also intimately related to the anilines, sulphonic acids, and phenols. Thus, aniline yields (7) phenylcarbylamine, which, upon the application of heat, is rearranged into the isomeric nitrile. They are also produced (8) on heating the diphenyl thiureas with zinc-dust; (9) by desulphurizing the phenyl mustard oils with copper; (10) by distilling the formanilides with concentrated hydrochloric acid or with zinc-dust (B. 17, 73); (11) by decomposing diazobenzene chloride with potassium cyanide and copper sulphate.



See p. 38 for the theoretical value of method 11.

(12) By distilling the alkali benzene sulphonates with potassium cyanide or yellow prussiate of potash; (13) the distillation of the triphenyl phosphates with potassium cyanide or ferrocyanide; (14) alkyl benzylcyanides are formed by the interaction of sodium benzyl cyanide and alkylgens,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CHNa} \cdot \text{CN} + \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I} = \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CN}$  (p. 203); (15) the hydrogen atoms of the benzenes are directly replaced by the cyanogen group, if cyanogen gas be conducted into the boiling hydrocarbon mixed with aluminium chloride (B. 29, R. 185). Certain nitriles of phenyl-fatty acids occur in the different cresses.

*Properties and Deportment.*—The benzonitriles are indifferent, agreeably smelling liquids, or solids with low melting points. Their reactions are very numerous, but mention may be made that boiling alkalis or acids convert them into the corresponding aromatic acids, while nascent hydrogen, best from alcohol and sodium, changes them to primary amines. They yield *amide iodides* with hydriodic acid.

They combine with alcohols and HCl to form imido-ethers, with anilines to *amidines*, and with hydroxylamine to *amidoximes*.

**Benzonitrile, Cyanbenzene,**  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CN}$ , boiling at  $191^\circ$ , with sp. gr. 1.023 ( $0^\circ$ ), is isomeric with phenyl carbylamine (p. 83), and is best obtained from benzene sulphonic acid by method 12, or from benzoic acid by method 5. It is an oil with an odor resembling that of oil of bitter almonds.

When it is dissolved in fuming sulphuric acid or boiled with sodium, benzonitrile polymerizes to *cyanphenine* (see this),  $\text{C}_3\text{N}_3(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3$ . Upon nitration the product is almost exclusively m-nitrobenzonitrile (p. 69). For other transpositions see benzimido-ethers and thiobenzamide.

*Alphylcyanides:* o-, m-, and p-Tolunitriles, cyanotoluenes,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CN}$ , boil at  $203^\circ$ ,  $213^\circ$ , and,  $218^\circ$ . The p-body melts at  $29^\circ$ . p-Xylonitrile boils at  $231^\circ$  (B. 18, 1712). 1,3-Xylo-4-nitrile melts at  $24^\circ$  and boils at  $222^\circ$  (B. 21, 3082). Cumonitrile,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2 \cdot \text{CH}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{CN}$ , boils at  $244^\circ$ .

**Nitriles of Phenyl-fatty Acids :** Benzyl Cyanide, Phenylacetonitrile,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2CN$ , boiling at  $232^\circ$ , with sp. gr. 1.014 ( $18^\circ$ ), is isomeric with the three tolunitriles. It occurs in the ethereal oil of several cresses (*Tropaolum majus* and *Lepidium sativum* (B. 7, 1293). It is artificially prepared from benzyl chloride with potassium cyanide. It yields toluic acid by saponification; by reduction  $\beta$ -phenylethylamine (p. 179) is the product, and upon nitration it is chiefly p-nitrobenzyl cyanide which results.

As in acetoacetic ester and malonic ester, the hydrogen of the  $CH_2$  group, combined with the negative groups  $C_6H_5$  and  $CN$ , is very readily replaced. Thus, sodium ethylate produces the mono-sodium derivative, which may be transposed by alkylgens to alkyl benzyl cyanides (see method 14, p. 202) (B. 21, 1291, R. 197; 22, 1238; 23, 2070). Nitrous acid, acting upon a sodium ethylate solution of benzyl cyanide, produces isonitrosobenzyl cyanide (see phenylglyoxalic acid). Sodium ethylate, acting upon benzyl cyanide and benzaldehyde, produces  $\alpha$ -phenyl-cinnamic nitrile,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C(CN) : CH \cdot C_6H_5$  (B. 22, R. 199).

**Methyl Benzyl Cyanides**, Tolyacetonitriles,  $CH_3 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CN$ . The o-body boils at  $244^\circ$ , the meta-body at  $241^\circ$ , while the p-compound melts at  $18^\circ$  and boils at  $243^\circ$  (B. 18, 1281; 21, 1331).

$\beta$ -Phenylpropionitrile, hydrocinnamic nitrile,  $C_6H_5CH_2CH_2CN$ , boiling at  $261^\circ$  (corr.), occurs in the ethereal oil of spring-cress, *Nasturtium officinale* (B. 7, 520; B. 26, 1971).

$\alpha$ -Phenylpropionitrile, hydratropic nitrile,  $C_6H_5CH(CH_3)CN$ , boils at  $231^\circ$  (A. 250, 123, 137).

## B. BENZENYL COMPOUNDS.

In addition to the benzonitriles, the classes of bodies from 10 to 26 (p. 209) arrange themselves with the benzenyl derivatives.

10. Amid-haloids. 11. Imide Chlorides. 12. Phenylhydrazide Imide Chlorides (1, 268).

**Benzamide Chloride**,  $C_6H_5CCl_2 \cdot NH_2$  (?), results when hydrochloric acid gas is conducted into an ethereal solution of benzonitrile (B. 10, 1891). **Benzamide Bromide**, phenyldibromformamide,  $C_6H_5CBr_2NH_2$ , melts at  $70^\circ$  (A. 149, 307). **Benzamide Iodide**, phenyldi-iod-formamide,  $C_6H_5CI_2NH_2$ , melts with decomposition (B. 25, 2536) at  $140^\circ$ . It is produced when benzonitrile is poured into concentrated aqueous hydriodic acid. Ammonia bases reconvert it into benzoic acid.

**Dimethyl Benzamide Chloride**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CCl_2 \cdot N(CH_3)_2$ , from the amide and phosgene, melts at  $36^\circ$ .

**Benzanilid-imide Chloride**,  $C_6H_5CCl_2 \cdot N \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $40^\circ$  and boiling at  $310^\circ$ , is produced when  $PCl_5$  acts upon benzanilide (Wallach, A. 184, 79), or upon benzophenone oxime,  $(C_6H_5)_2C=N \cdot OH$ , by an intramolecular atomic rearrangement of the chloride,  $(C_6H_5)_2C=NCl$ . Water or alcohol will decompose it into hydrochloric acid and benzanilide. For other transpositions of benzanilide-imide chloride, compare thiobenzanilide, etc.

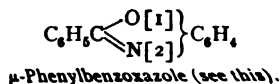
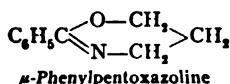
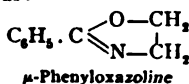
When benzanilide-imide chloride acts upon sodium acetoacetic ester the products are anil-benzenyl-compounds,  $\beta$ -ketonic acid derivatives, which change to phenyl-quinoline carboxylic acids upon the application of heat.

**Benzophenylhydrazid-imide chloride**,  $C_6H_5CCl_2 \cdot N \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $131^\circ$ , is formed when alcohol acts upon the reaction product of  $PCl_5$  and sym. benzoylphenylhydrazine,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CCl_2 \cdot N \cdot N(C_6H_5)POCl_2$  (B. 27, 2122).

13. Imido-ethers of the Aromatic Acids (1, 269). The imido-ethers (their HCl-salts) result from the action of HCl upon a mixture of a nitrile with an alcohol (Pinner, B. 16, 1654; 21, 2650; 23, 2917).

Water decomposes the HCl-imido-ethers into acid esters and ammonium chloride.

The following bodies should be viewed as imido-ethers of aromatic carboxylic acids:



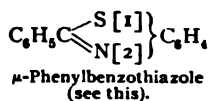
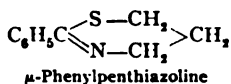
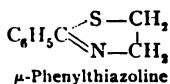
**Benzimido-ethyl Ether**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C(NH) \cdot O \cdot C_2H_5$ , is a thick oil, formed by the action of ethyl iodide upon silver benzamide. Its hydrochloric acid salt decomposes at  $120^\circ$  into benzamide and ethyl chloride. The free ether decomposes when heated or upon standing into alcohol and cyanphenine. Ammonia converts it into *benzamidine* (see this), hydroxylamine into *benzamidoxime* (see this), and hydrazine into *benzenylhydrazidine*.

**14. Thiamides of the Aromatic Acids.**—*Thiobenzamide*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CSNH_2$  or  $C_6H_5 \cdot C(SH)NH_2$ , melting at  $116^\circ$ , results on conducting hydrogen sulphide into an alcoholic solution of benzonitrile mixed with ammonia (B. 23, 158), and when benzylamine is heated to  $280^\circ$  with sulphur (A. 259, 304). Zinc and hydrochloric acid convert it into benzylamine (p. 179), iodine into dibenzylazosulphime (see this),  $C_6H_5 \cdot C \begin{smallmatrix} N-S \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ N \end{smallmatrix} \cdot C_6H_5$

(B. 25, 1588), ethylene bromide into  $\mu$ -phenylthiazoline (see below), trimethylene bromide into  $\mu$ -phenylpenthiazoline (see imido-ethers), and ethylene-diamine into benzenylethylene diamine (see this),  $C_6H_5 \cdot C \begin{smallmatrix} NH-CH_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ N-CH_2 \end{smallmatrix}$  (B. 25, 2134).

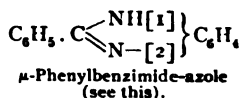
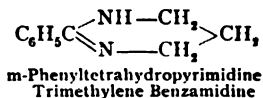
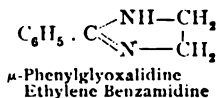
*Thiobenzanilide*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CSNH \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $98^\circ$ , consists of yellow plates or prisms. It is formed (1) when  $H_2S$  acts upon benzenylphenylamidine at  $100^\circ$ ; (2) by the action of  $CS_2$  at  $110^\circ$ , hydrosulphocyanic acid being simultaneously produced (A. 192, 29); (3) when  $H_2S$  acts upon benzanilide chloride; (4) when  $P_2S_5$  acts upon benzamide; (5) from the interaction of phenyl mustard oil, benzene, and aluminium chloride (B. 25, 3525). It is changed to benzenylamidothiophenol (p. 157) by heat or oxidation.

**15. Imidothio-ethers of the Aromatic Carboxylic Acids** are obtained as hydrochlorides from nitriles, mercaptans, and hydrochloric acid (compare imido-ethers). The following compounds must be considered as cyclic imidothio-ethers of benzoic acid:



*Benzimidiothio-ethyl Ether*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C(NH)S \cdot C_2H_5$ , is an oil. It readily resolves itself into benzonitrile and mercaptan (A. 197, 348).

**16. Amidines of aromatic monocarboxylic acids** (I, 270) are obtained from nitriles, imido-ethers, imide chlorides, and thioamides by means of ammonia and ammonium bases. The cyclic amidines correspond to the cyclic imido-ethers and imidothio-ethers:



**Benzamidine,\* Benzenylamidine**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C \begin{smallmatrix} NH \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ NH_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $75-80^\circ$ , is formed from its hydrochloride,  $C_7H_8N_2 \cdot HCl + 2H_2O$ , consisting of vitreous crystals, melting at  $72^\circ$ , which anhydrous become liquid at  $169^\circ$  (A. 265, 130).

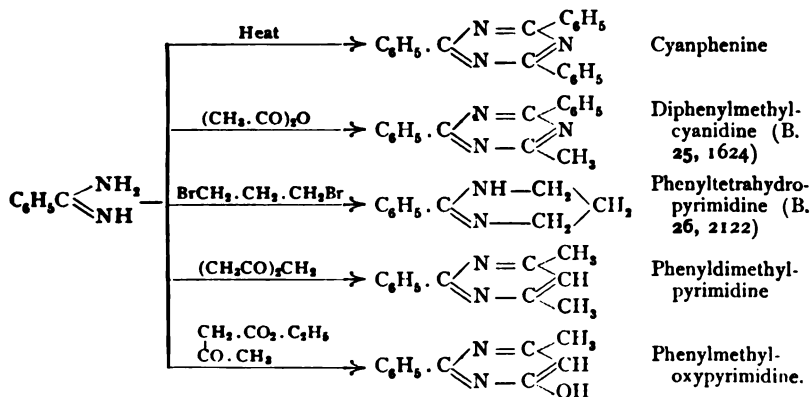
*Silver salt*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C(=NAg)NH_2$ . Benzamidine is a stronger base than ammonia. Hydroxylamine converts it, by an exchange of the  $NH$ -group for the  $N(OH)$ -group, into an amidoxime. Benzamidine gives with diazobenzene: *benzamidinediazobenzene* (see below); with benzaldehyde: *benzalbenzamidine*, melting at  $175^\circ$ ; with phenylisocyanide: *benzenyldiphenyldiureide*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C(:N \cdot CONHC_6H_5) \cdot NHCO \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $172^\circ$ ; with phenyl mustard oil: *benzamidine phenylthiurea*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C(:NH) \cdot NH \cdot CS \cdot$

\* "Die Imidoäther und ihre Derivate," Pinner, 1892, p. 152.

$\text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $125^\circ$ ; with chlorcarbonic ester: *benzamidine urethane*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C}(\text{NH}) \cdot \text{NHCO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $58^\circ$ ; heat converts it into *diphenyloxycyanidine*; with phosgene: *dibenzamidine urea*:  $\text{CO}(\text{NH} \cdot \text{C}(\text{NH}) \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , melting at  $289^\circ$ , and *diphenyloxycyanidine*.

The action of nitrous acid upon benzamidine is very remarkable. The product is *benzenyldioxytetrazotic acid* (see below).

**Benzamidine Hetero-ring Formations.**—Benzamidine heated alone becomes *cyanphenine*; heated with acetic anhydride the product is *diphenylmethylcyanidine*; with trimethylene bromide: *trimethylenbenzamidine*, or  $\mu$ -*phenyltetrahydropyrimidine*; with acetyl acetone: *phenyldimethylpyrimidine*; with acetoacetic ester: *phenylmethyloxyppyrimidine*.



Many other amidines besides benzamidine are known; also numerous alkyl-, phenyl-, and benzyl substitution products of the simple amidines. As may be gathered from the description of benzamidine, the amidines are unusually reactive bodies, whose investigation has contributed much to the chemistry of the nitrogen-carbon ring systems. *Furfuramidine* (see this) deports itself very much the same as benzamidine.

**17. Dioxytetrazotic Acids.**—Free *benzenyldioxytetrazotic acid*,

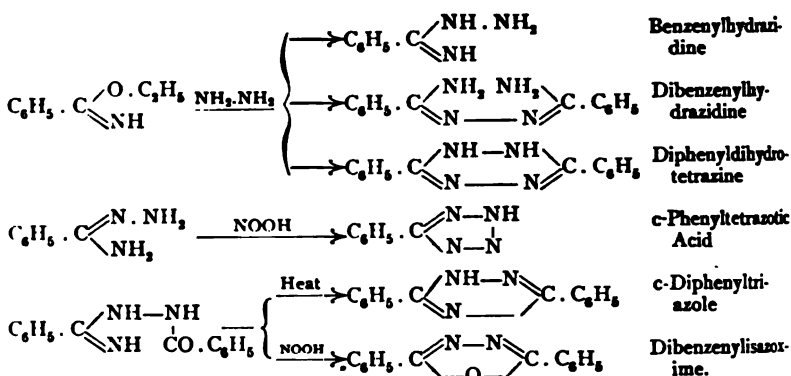
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{N} = \text{N} \cdot \text{OH} \\ \text{N} - \text{NO} \end{smallmatrix}$  (?), is not known. Its benzamidine salt, melting at  $178^\circ$ , is produced when nitrous acid acts upon benzamidine. Sodium amalgam reduces the potassium salt to *benzenyloxytetrazotic acid*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_4\text{O} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melting in anhydrous form at  $175^\circ$  with explosion, and *benzenyltetrazotic acid* (Lossen, A. 263, 73; 265, 129). These bodies belong to the class of heterocyclic tetrazoles or pyrrotriazoles.

**18. Hydrazidines or Amidrazones** of aromatic monocarboxylic acids. Several representatives of the aliphatic phenylhydrazidines were discussed in connection with phenylhydrazine. The simple aromatic hydrazidines result from the action of hydrazine upon the imido-ethers. The most thoroughly investigated is—

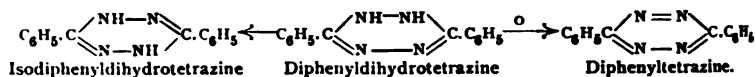
**Benzenylhydrazidine**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NH} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix}$  or  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{N} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ . This compound cannot be obtained from its salts in a pure condition. Its *benzoyl* derivative,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{NH})\text{NH} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $188^\circ$ . It slowly parts with water, even at  $120^\circ$ , changing into *c*-diphenyltriazole, whereas nitrous acid converts it into *dibenzenyloxime* (see this).

In addition to benzenylhydrazidine, produced in the interaction of hydrazine and benzimido-ether, there also result:

*Dibenzenylhydrazidine*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C}(\text{NH}) \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{NH}(\text{NH}) \cdot \text{C} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$  or  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{NH}_2) \cdot \text{N} = \text{N} : (\text{NH}_2)\text{C} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $202^\circ$ , and *diphenyldihydrotriazine* (see this). Nitrous acid changes benzenylhydrazidine into *phenyltetrazotic acid* (see this).

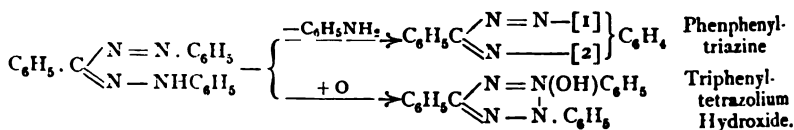


Diphenyldihydro-tetrazine is readily rearranged by acids into *isodiphenyldihydro-tetrazine*. It oxidizes on exposure to the air to diphenyltetrazine (Pinner, B. 27, 3273; 28, 465):



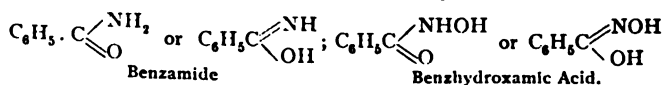
### 19. Formazyl Derivatives of the Aromatic Monocarboxylic Acids (compare p. 129).

*Formazyl-benzene*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{N} \text{---} \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \diagdown \text{N} \text{---} \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \end{array}$ , melting at  $173^\circ$ , consists of red leaflets with greenish metallic reflex. It is produced (1) when diazobenzene (p. 129) in alkaline solution (B. 27, 1690) acts upon benzaldehyde-phenyl hydrazone; (2) from benzenyl amidoxime (p. 208) and phenylhydrazine (B. 27, 160); (3) when phenylhydrazine and benzophenylhydrazid-imide chloride (p. 203) interact. The hetero-ring formations of the formazyl compounds have been described (p. 130). A glacial acetic acid solution of sulphuric acid converts formazyl benzene into *phenphenyltriazine* (see this). It yields *triphenyltetrazolium hydroxide* upon oxidation:



**Guanazyl Benzene**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{N} \cdot \text{NHC}(\text{NH}_2) : \text{NH} \\ \diagdown \text{N} : \text{NC}_6\text{H}_5 \end{array}$ , orange-yellow prisms, melting at  $199^\circ$ . It is formed when diazobenzene chloride acts upon benzalamido guanidine, the condensation product derived from benzaldehyde and amidoguanidine (I, 415). Nitric acid oxidizes guanazyl benzene to *diphenyl tetrazole* (B. 30, 444).

**20. Hydroxamic Acids, their Ethers and Esters.**—Under benzamide mention was made of the two structural formulas which were theoretically possible for benzamide: the *benzamid*-formula and the *benzimid*-acid formula. If we suppose in these formulas an hydrogen atom in union with nitrogen to be replaced by the hydroxyl group, we arrive at the two formulas theoretically possible for an hydroxamic acid:

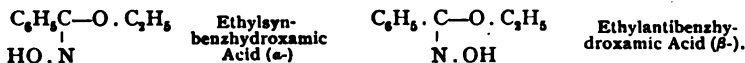


The amid-formula is preferred for the amides of the carboxylic acids; the imido-ethers are derived from the imido-acid formula. The oximido-acid formula is, however,

more probable for the benzhydroxamic acids. *Hydroxime-acid chlorides* correspond to the imide-chlorides, and *amidoximes* to the amidines.

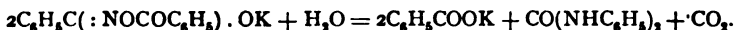
Numerous ethers and esters can be obtained from an hydroxamic acid. This is accomplished by replacing one or both hydrogen atoms of the  $\text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NOH} \\ \text{OH} \end{smallmatrix}$  group by alkyl- or acidyl-groups. Although hydroxamic acid and its homologues are known in but one form each, many ethereal derivatives of the hydroxamic acids occur in several similarly constituted modifications, whose demonstrated difference can in no satisfactory way be attributed to structural difference (W. Lossen, A. 281, 169). Just as in the case of the oximes, so here the isomeric phenomena of benzhydroxamic acid ethers are referred to the stereochemistry of nitrogen.

$\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Ethylbenzhydroxamic acids differ from each other by the following space-formulas (Werner, B. 25, 33):



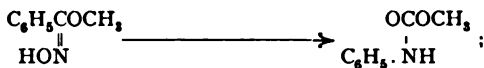
Crystallographic studies have shown that many classes of amide-like derivatives of hydroxylamine appear in polymorphous modifications.

**Benzhydroxamic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C}(\text{NOH}) \cdot \text{OH}$ , melting at  $124^\circ$ , and *Dibenzhydroxamic Acid* or *Benzoylbenzhydroxamic Ester*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{NO} \cdot \text{COC}_6\text{H}_5)\text{OH}$ , melting at  $161^\circ$ , are produced by the interaction of benzoyl chloride and hydroxylamine. The potassium salt of the dibenzhydroxamic acid is decomposed by water, especially on heating, into potassium benzoate, *s-diphenylurea*, and  $\text{CO}_2$ :



The rearrangement occurring here recalls that of the ketoximes (Beckmann, p. 189) to alkylized acid amides. As *s*-diphenylurea can be resolved by hydrochloric acid into aniline and  $\text{CO}_2$ , it is possible, aided by these reactions, capable of greater generalization, to change benzoic acid to aniline—that is, to replace the  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ -group by the  $\text{NH}_2$ -group (A. 175, 313; compare benzoyl azide, p. 201). The alkyl ethers of dihydroxamic acid are known in two modifications:  $\alpha$ -(syn.)-*Methyl Ether*, melting at  $53^\circ$ ;  $\beta$ -(anti)-*Methyl Ether*, melting at  $55^\circ$ ;  $\alpha$ -(syn.)-*Ethyl Ether*, melting at  $58^\circ$ ;  $\beta$ -(anti)-*Ethyl Ether*, melting at  $63^\circ$  (A. 205, 281; 281, 235). The  $\alpha$ -bodies result from the action of alkyl iodides upon the silver salts; the  $\beta$ -compounds through the action of benzoyl chloride and caustic potash upon the alkylhydroximic acids.

**Benzhydroximic Acid Alkyl Ethers or Alkyl Benzhydroximic Acids**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C}(\text{NOH})\text{OR}'$ , are obtained from benzimido-ethers and hydroxylamine hydrochloride, and from dibenzhydroxamic acid alkyl ethers (A. 252, 211). They occur in two modifications, which can be distinguished by the fact that the  $\alpha$ - or syn.-modifications yield in treatment with  $\text{PCl}_5$  (by Beckmann's transposition) phenylcarbamic acid ethers or their transposition products:



whereas the  $\beta$ - or anti-forms become phosphoric ethers of the alkylbenzhydroximic acids (B. 29, 1146).  $\alpha$ -(syn.)-*Methyl Ether*, melting at  $64^\circ$ , readily changes to a physical isomeride; this is also true of the syn.-modification, melting at  $101^\circ$  (B. 29, 1150).  $\beta$ -(anti)-*Methyl Ether* melts at  $44^\circ$ ,  $\alpha$ -(syn.)-*Ethyl Ether* melts at  $53^\circ$ , and  $\beta$ -(anti)-*Ethyl Ether* at  $68^\circ$ .

The alkylbenzhydroximic acids also form alkyl and acidyl ethers. **Tribenzoyl Hydroxylamine**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C}(\text{NOCOC}_6\text{H}_5)\text{O} \cdot \text{COC}_6\text{H}_5$ , is produced in three forms when benzoyl chloride acts upon hydroxylamine hydrochloride:  $\alpha$ -modification, melting at  $100^\circ$ ;  $\beta$ -modification, melting at  $141^\circ$ ; and the  $\gamma$ -modification, melting at  $112^\circ$ . Hydrochloric acid changes the  $\alpha$ - and  $\gamma$ -modifications to the  $\beta$ -form (A. 281, 276).

**21. Haloids of Benzhydroximic Acid.**—The free chlorides, as well as the ethers of the *fluorides*, *chlorides*, and *bromides*, are known. The free chlorides result from the

corresponding benzaldoximes upon treatment with chlorine in chloroform solution. The ethers are produced when the amidoxime ethers are treated with haloid acids and an alkaline nitrite; also when  $\text{PCl}_5$  acts upon the alkyl ethers of hydroxamic acid (A. 252, 217).

**Benzhydroxamic Acid Chloride**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{NOH})\text{Cl}$ , melting at  $48^\circ$ , from benzaldoxime, is converted by ammonia into benzenylamidoxime (B. 27, 2193, 2846). **Benzenyl-methoxime Chloride**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{NOCH}_3)\text{Cl}$ , boils at  $225^\circ$ . **Benzenyl-methoxime Bromide**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{NOCH}_3)\text{Br}$ , boils at  $239^\circ$  (B. 24, 3454).

**Benzenylhydroxylamine-acetic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{NOCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H})\text{OH}$ , melting at  $135^\circ$  to  $138^\circ$ , is formed when caustic potash acts upon *benzenylhydroxylamine-acetic acid*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{NO}\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H})\text{ONO}$ , melting at  $95^\circ$ . The latter is produced through the action of sulphuric acid and potassium nitrite upon benzenylamidoxime-acetic acid (see below). *Benzenylfluor-, chlor-, and bromoxime-acetic Acids* all melt at  $135^\circ$ . They are obtained when haloid acids and an alkaline nitrite are allowed to act upon benzenylamidoxime-acetic acid (B. 26, 1570).

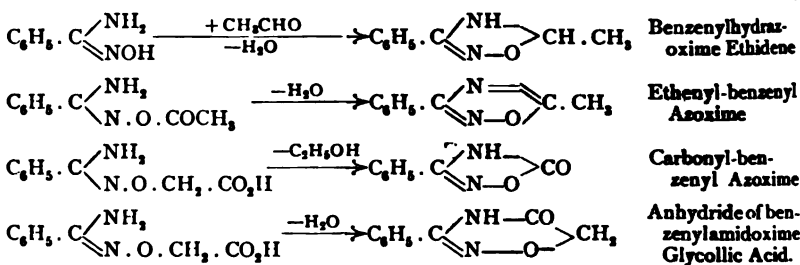
22. The Amidoximes are produced by the action of hydroxylamine upon thioamides, nitriles, imido-ethers (p. 203), and amidines (p. 204). Ferric chloride imparts a deep red color to the alcoholic solution of the amidoximes.

**Benzenylamidoxime**, Amide of Benzhydroxamic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{N}(\text{OH})\text{NH}_2)$ , melts at  $79^\circ$ . It gives the isonitrile reaction with chloroform and potassium hydroxide. Nitrous acid changes it to benzamide. With acids and caustic alkalies it yields salts—e. g.,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{N}(\text{OH})\text{NH}_2)\text{HCl}$  and  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{NH}_2):\text{N}.\text{OK}$ . Alkyl iodides convert the latter into amidoxime-ethers.

*Methyl Ether*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{NH}_2):\text{NOCH}_3$ , melts at  $57^\circ$ ; the *ethyl ether* melts at  $67^\circ$  (A. 281, 280).

*Acetylbenzenylamidoxime*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{NOCOCH}_3):\text{NH}_2$ , melts at  $16^\circ$  (B. 18, 1082). *Benzenyloximidocarbonic Ester*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{NH}_2):\text{NOCO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $127^\circ$ . *Benzenyloximidoglycollic acid*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{NH}_2):\text{NO}\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at  $123^\circ$ . *Benzenylamidoxime-butyric acid*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{NH}_2):\text{NOCH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{COOH}$ , melts at  $82^\circ$  (B. 29, 2655).

**Hetero-ring Formations of the Amidoximes.**—(1) The amidoximes condense with the aldehydes of the fatty series to *hydrasoximes*. The amidoxime acid derivatives, alluded to above, throw off, on heating above their melting points, water or alcohol, and become *azoximes*:



23. Aromatic Nitrolic Acids, like  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{N}(\text{OH})\text{NO})$ , are not yet known (B. 27, 2193).

**Derivatives of Orthobenzoic Acid** (compare 1. 233).

24. Ethyl Orthobenzoic Ester, *Ethyl Orthobenzoate*, *Benzenylethyl Ether*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{O.C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ , from phenyl chloroform and sodium ethylate, boils at  $220\text{--}225^\circ$ .

25. Benzoetrichloride, *Phenylchloroform*, *Benzoic Acid Trichloride*, *Benzenyl Trichloride*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CCl}_3$ , melting at  $-22.5^\circ$  (B. 26, 1053), boiling at  $213^\circ$ , with sp. gravity 1.38 ( $14^\circ$ ), is isomeric with the chlorbenzalchlorides, dichlorbenzylchlorides, and the trichlorotoluenes. Phenyl chloroform bears the same relation to benzoic acid or phenyl formic acid that methyl chloroform sustains to acetic acid or methyl formic acid (1, 256).

It results (1) upon conducting chlorine into boiling toluene, until there is no further increase in weight (A. 146, 330); (2) by the action of phosphorus pentachloride upon benzoyl chloride (A. 139, 326). It changes to benzoic acid when heated to 100° with water. It yields benzoyl chloride and benzoic anhydride on being digested with anhydrous oxalic acid. It readily condenses to triphenyl methane derivatives with the anilines and phenols (B. 15, 232; A. 217, 223).

26. Orthobenzoic Acid Piperidide,  $C_6H_5C(N \cdot C_4H_9)_2$ , melting at 80°, is produced on warming benzotrichloride and piperidine.

The *benzamide haloids* also belong to the derivatives of orthobenzoic acid (p. 203).

#### SUBSTITUTED AROMATIC MONOCARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

Only those will be given in connection with the monocarboxylic acids in which the substitution has occurred with the hydrogen atoms of the benzene nucleus. Certain ortho-products show the power, by water elimination, of yielding inner anhydrides or heterocyclic compounds.

See p. 197 for the behavior of 2,6-substituted carboxylic acids in their esterification with alcohol and hydrochloric acid.

##### 1. Halogen Benzoic Acids are formed :

(1) By the substitution of benzoic acids or nitriles; the halogen atom entering first prefers the meta-position with reference to carboxyl (p. 69).

(2) By oxidizing p- and m-halogen toluenes and higher homologues with chromic acid, and o-haloid hydrocarbons with dilute nitric acid or potassium permanganate.

(3) From the amido-acids (*a*) by means of the diazo-sulphates, or (*b*) the diazoamido-acids; both classes when boiled with haloid acids yield haloid carboxylic acids. Thus, the fluor-benzoic acids have been obtained from the diazoamidobenzoic acids (B. 15, 1197).

(4) By the action of phosphorus pentachloride upon the oxy-acids (compare salicylic acid).

(5) Nucleus synthesis : heating the halogen nitrobenzenes to 200–230° with potassium cyanide and alcohol. In this reaction the cyanogen-group replaces the nitro-group; it does not, however, take the same position in the benzene residue (B. 8, 1418). At the temperature of the reaction the nitrile changes to the acid. m-Chlornitrobenzene yields o-chlorbenzoic acid; and p-chlornitrobenzene, m-chlorbenzoic acid.

(6) From the haloid anilines through the diazo-compounds, etc.

*Properties and Deportment.*—In the following tabulation of the melting points of the mono-haloid benzoic acids it will be observed that the ortho-bodies melt at the lowest temperatures and the para-compounds at the highest. The melting point rises with the atomic mass of the substituting halogen. The ortho-derivatives are rather readily soluble in water, and yield easily soluble barium salts, whereby they can usually be quite readily separated from the meta- and para-derivatives. When they are fused with caustic potash oxy-benzoic acids result.

*Fluorbenzoic Acid*: o-: melts at 118°; m-: melts at 124°; p-: melts at 181°.

*Chlorbenzoic Acid*: o-: " " 137°; m-: " " 153°; p-: " " 240°.

*Brombenzoic Acid*: o-: " " 147°; m-: " " 155°; p-: " " 251°.

*Iodobenzoic Acid*: o-: " " 162°; m-: " " 187°; p-: " " 265°.

Numerous polychlor- and polybrom-benzoic acids are known. The five hydrogen atoms of the phenyl of benzoic acid can be replaced by chlorine or bromine.

2. *Iodoso- and Iodo-benzoic Acids* (p. 60).—Upon chlorinating the three

iodobenzoic acids in chloroform three iodide-chloridebenzoic acids are produced. Sodium hydroxide changes these to the iodoso-benzoic acids (B. 27, 2326). *o*-Iodosobenzoic Acid,  $C_6H_4(IO)CO_2H$ , consists of brilliant leaflets, which explode at  $244^\circ$ . This acid is also produced in the oxidation of *o*-iodobenzoic acid with fuming nitric acid (B. 28, 83), and together with *o*-iodobenzoic acid,  $C_6H_4(IO_3)CO_2H$ , exploding at  $230^\circ$  with violence, when *o*-iodobenzoic acid is oxidized with potassium permanganate. The formula  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]I(OH) \\ [2]CO \end{smallmatrix} \right\} >O$  has also been suggested for the *o*-iodosobenzoic acid, as it yields, like levulinic acid, when heated with acetic anhydride, an acetyl derivative: *acetylido-benzoic acid*,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]I(OCOCH_3) \\ [2]CO \end{smallmatrix} \right\} >O$ , melting at  $166^\circ$  (B. 26, 1364).

**3. Nitromonocarboxylic Acids.**—Not more than three nitro-groups have been introduced into the benzene residue of an aromatic carboxylic acid.

**Nitrobenzoic Acids.**—(1) Metanitrobenzoic acid is the principal product in the nitration of benzoic acid. The quantity of the ortho (20 per cent.) and para (1.8 per cent.) acids is less (A. 193, 202). (2) By oxidizing the three nitrotoluenes; the ortho with potassium permanganate (B. 12, 443), and the meta and para with a chromic acid mixture (A. 155, 25). *o*- and *p*-Nitrobenzoic acids are also produced by oxidizing *o*- and *p*-nitrobenzyl chloride with potassium permanganate (B. 17, 385), as well as by oxidizing *o*- and *p*-nitrocinnamic acids. (3) By converting the three isomeric nitranilines into the three nitrobenzonitriles (B. 28, 150; constitution, pp. 38, 105). The nitration of *o*-benzonitrile yields *m*-nitrobenzonitrile almost exclusively. *o*-Nitrobenzonitrile has been obtained from *o*-nitraniline (B. 28, 151). Nitro-acids result upon saponifying the nitro-nitriles with caustic soda:

*o*-Nitrobenzoic Acid melts at  $147^\circ$ ; *o*-Nitrobenzonitrile melts at  $109^\circ$ .  
*m*-Nitrobenzoic Acid " "  $141^\circ$ ; *m*-Nitrobenzonitrile " "  $116^\circ$ .  
*p*-Nitrobenzoic Acid " "  $238^\circ$ ; *p*-Nitrobenzonitrile " "  $147^\circ$ .

*o*-Nitrobenzoic Acid possesses a sweet taste and dissolves in 164 parts of water at  $16^\circ$ . Its nitration produces 2,6-, 2,5-, 2,4-dinitrobenzoic acids, and styphnic acid (p. 161). *m*-Nitrobenzoic acid dissolves in 425 parts of water ( $16^\circ$ ). Its barium salt dissolves with difficulty. Upon nitration it yields 2,5-dinitrobenzoic acid. *p*-Nitrobenzoic acid, called also *nitroacrylic acid*, because it is formed in the action of nitric acid upon dragon's blood (p. 193) (A. 48, 344), is very sparingly soluble in water. Nitration converts it into 2,4- and 3,4-dinitrobenzoic acids. The electrolysis of its warm sulphuric acid solution produces *p*-amidophenolsulphonic acid (B. 28, R. 378; compare also B. 28, R. 126). 2,4-, 3,4-Dinitro- and 2,4,6-trinitrobenzoic acids are obtained by the oxidation of the corresponding nitrotoluenes (p. 68). The dinitrotoluenes are oxidized by a chromic acid mixture (B. 27, 2209), or by potassium permanganate. Trinitrotoluene is oxidized by a nitric-sulphuric acid mixture at  $150$ – $200^\circ$ .

2,4-Dinitrobenzoic Acid melts at  $179^\circ$ ; the 2,5-acid melts at  $177^\circ$ ; 2,6-acid at  $202^\circ$ ; the 3,4-acid at  $165^\circ$ ; the 3,5-, or ordinary dinitrobenzoic acid melts at  $204^\circ$ . 2,4,6-Trinitrobenzoic Acid,  $(NO_2)_3C_6H_2CO_2H$ , melts at  $210^\circ$  with the elimination of  $CO_2$  (B. 27, 3154; 28, 2564, 3005; R. 125).

**Nitro-haloid Benzoic Acids.**—*o,o*-Fluornitrobenzoic Acid,  $C_6H_3F(NO_2)COOH$ , melting at  $127^\circ$ , has been prepared by oxidizing fluornitrotoluene. In contrast with the other *o,o*-disubstituted benzoic acids it can be quite readily esterified (see p. 197; B. 29, 842). The nitration of *m*-brombenzoic acid yields two *o*-nitro-acids, both of which yield anthranilic acid upon reduction: 3-brom-2-nitrobenzoic acid, melting at  $250^\circ$ , and 3-brom-6-nitrobenzoic acid, melting at  $139^\circ$  (compare equivalence of the six hydrogen atoms of benzene, p. 33). The halogen atom in the nitrohaloid benzoic acids is reactive, like that in the nitrohaloid benzenes (B. 22, 3282).

**Nitrophenyl-acetic Acids**,  $NO_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$ , are produced by saponifying the nitrobenzylcyanides with caustic alkali. The latter bodies constitute the product resulting from the action of potassium cyanide upon the nitrobenzyl chlorides (p. 180),

(B. 16, 2064; 19, 2635). The nitration of phenyl-acetic acid produces mainly the *p*-nitro-body, with little of the *o*-nitro-acid and *o,p*-dinitrophenyl acetic acid, melting at 166°.

*o*-, *m*-, *p*-Nitrophenylacetic Acids melt at 141°, 120°, 152°.

*o*-, *m*-, *p*-Nitrobenzyl Cyanides " " 84°, 61°, 116°.

**Nitrohydrocinnamic Acids**,  $\text{NO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ .—*p*-Nitro- and *o*-nitrohydrocinnamic acids result from the nitration of hydrocinnamic acid. Both in turn yield the *o,p*-dinitro-acid. The *o*-nitro-acid is also prepared from *o*-nitro-*p*-amidohydrocinnamic acid, the first reduction-product of the *o,p*-dinitro-acid, as well as from *o*-nitrobenzyl-malonic ester (see this). The *m*-nitro-acid is obtained from *p*-acetamido-*m*-nitrohydrocinnamic acid (B. 15, 846; 29, 635; compare also *m*-nitrotoluene, p. 68).

*o*-, *m*-, *p*-Nitrohydrocinnamic Acids melt at 115°, 118°, 163°.

*o,p*-Dinitrohydrocinnamic Acid melts at 123° (B. 13, 1680).

*o*- and *p*-Nitrohydratropic Acids,  $\text{NO}_2\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at 110° and 87°, are produced upon introducing hydratropic acid into strongly cooled, fuming nitric acid (A. 227, 262).

**4. Nitrosomonocarboxylic Acids.**—*o*-Nitrosobenzoic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{NO}[2]\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting with decomposition at 210°, results from the oxidation of the phenyl-oxyindols obtained from benzoinoxime (B. 29, 2064).

#### 4. AROMATIC AMIDOMONOCARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

These are obtained by reducing the corresponding nitrobenzoic acids. Like glycocoll, the amidobenzoic acids yield crystalline salts both with acids and bases. They do not combine with acetic acid, hence are precipitated by it from their alkali salts.

Like glycocoll, these acids can be considered as cyclic ammonium salts (1, 354). The hydrogen atoms of the amido-group are replaceable by alkyl and acidyl residues. Dimethylated amido-acids are produced by the action of phosgene and aluminium chloride upon the dimethylanilines. Acetamidobenzoic acids are formed by the oxidation of the acetyl toluidines.

The *o*-amido-acids (of which *o*-amidobenzoic acid and *o*-amidophenylacetic acid are closely related to indigo, and *o*-amidohydrocinnamic acid to quinoline) form hetero-rings, and yield rather remarkable ortho-condensation products.

**Anthranilic Acid**, *o*-Amidobenzoic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\left\{\begin{smallmatrix} [1]\text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ [2]\text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}\right.$ , or

$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\left\{\begin{smallmatrix} [1]\text{CO}_2 \\ [2]\text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}\right.$ , melts at 145°, and breaks down, upon heating, into aniline and carbonic acid. Its aqueous solution has a sweet taste. It was first obtained from *indigo* (see this) by the action of caustic potash (Fritzsche, 1841). The oxidation can be accelerated by the addition of manganese dioxide (A. 234, 146). The acid results from the reduction of *o*-nitrobenzoic acid and the two *m*-brom-*o*-nitrobenzoic acids (p. 210) with tin and hydrochloric acid; also from phthalimide upon treatment with bromine and caustic potash (B. 24, R. 966), as well as from anthranil, acet-anthranilic acid, and isatoic acid (see below).

Nitrous acid converts anthranilic acid in aqueous solution into sali-

cyclic acid, and sodium in amyl alcohol solution into hexahydroanthranilic acid, hexahydrobenzoic acid (see this), and *n*-pimelic acid (I, 444) (B. 27, 2466).

The *ethyl ether* boils at 260°. It is formed when alcohol and hydrochloric acid act upon isatoic acid. Its *amide*, from isatoic acid and ammonia, melts at 108° (B. 18, R. 273). *Phenylanthranilic acid*,  $C_6H_5NH[2]C_6H_4[1]CO_2H$ , melts at 181° (B. 25, 1734) (below).

*Formylanthranilic acid*,  $CHO \cdot NH[2]C_6H_4[1]CO_2H$ , melting at 168°, is produced in boiling isatoic acid with formic acid.

**Acetylthranilic Acid**,  $CH_3CO \cdot NH[2]C_6H_4[1]CO_2H$ , results when *o*-acetyl-toluidine is oxidized, when *o*-amidobenzoic acid and anthranil are acted upon with acetic anhydride, and in the oxidation of methyl ketol and quinaldine with potassium permanganate. It melts at 185°. The *ethyl ester*, melting at 61°, and the *amide*, melting at 170°, are produced from the corresponding anthranilic acid derivatives by the action of acetic anhydride.

**Benzoylethranilic Acid** melts at 183° (B. 26, 1304).

**Anthranil, o-Amidobenzoic Acid Lactam**,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CO \\ [2]NH \end{array} \right\}$  or  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CH \\ [1]N \end{array} \right\} > O$ , is an

oil which volatilizes readily with aqueous vapor, possesses a peculiar odor, and boils with decomposition at about 210°. This inner anhydride of *o*-amidobenzoic acid has never been obtained from the acid itself, but (1) by the reduction of *o*-nitrobenzaldehyde with ferrous sulphate (theoretical quantity) and ammonia (B. 15, 2105, 2572), or with tin and glacial acetic acid (B. 16, 2227; 28, 1382). It also results (2) when *o*-nitrophenyloxy-acrylic acid is boiled with water (B. 16, 2222); anthroxanaldehyde is produced at the same time. It dissolves in alkalis, forming salts of anthranilic acid. *o*-Amidobenzaldehyde and *o*-amidobenzylalcohol are produced when it is reduced.

*Methylcarboxyanthranilic Ester*,  $CO_2H \cdot NH[2]C_6H_4[1]CO_2CH_3$ , melting at 176°, is formed, together with anthranilic ester, when methyl alcohol at 130° acts upon isatoic acid (B. 20, R. 813).

*Carboxyethylanthranilamide*,  $CO_2C_2H_5 \cdot NH[2]C_6H_4[1]CONH_2$ , melting at 152°, results when  $ClCO_2C_2H_5$  acts upon anthranilamide.

*o-Uranidobenzoic Acid*,  $NH_2CONH[2]C_6H_4[1]CO_2H$ , melting at 152°, is formed in the interaction of the chlorhydrate of anthranilic acid and potassium cyanate.

**Isatoic Acid, Anthranilcarbonic Acid**,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CO \\ [2]N \cdot CO_2H \end{array} \right\}$  or  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} CO \cdot O \\ NH \cdot CO \end{array} \right\} (?)$ ,

melts about 233–240°, decomposing at the same time into carbon dioxide and anthranil. It was first obtained by oxidizing a glacial acetic acid solution of indigo with chromic acid (H. Kolbe, 1885), and later from anthranil and anthranilic acid by the action of chlorcarbonic esters (B. 22, 1672). It is very sparingly soluble in water. Digested with alkalis or boiled with acids, it decomposes into carbon dioxide and anthranilic acid. Ammonia, hydrazine, phenylhydrazine, and hydroxylamine change it into the corresponding amide derivatives of anthranilic acid (B. 19, R. 65; 26, R. 585).

**Kynuric Acid, Oxalylanthranilic Acid, Carbostyrylic Acid**,  $CO_2H \cdot CONH[2]C_6H_4[1]CO_2H + H_2O$ , becomes anhydrous at 100° and melts at 180° with decomposition. It is formed from the quinoline derivatives—kynurine (see this), kynurenic acid (see this), *a*-phenylquinoline (see this), carbostyryl (see this), acetetetrahydroquinoline, and indoxyllic acid (see this)—by oxidation. It is prepared synthetically by heating anthranilic acid with oxalic acid to 130° (B. 17, 401; R. 110). Its *ethyl ester*,  $CO_2 \cdot C_2H_5 \cdot NH[2]C_6H_4[1]CO_2H$ , is formed in the oxidation of the ester of indoxyllic acid (B. 15, 778). It melts at 180°.

**Dicyanaminobenzoyl**,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CO \cdot N \\ [2]NH \cdot \overset{\parallel}{C} \cdot CN \end{array} \right\}$ , melts with decomposition. It results from cyanogen and *o*-amidobenzoic acid in aqueous solution (B. 11, 1986). *Ethoxy-*

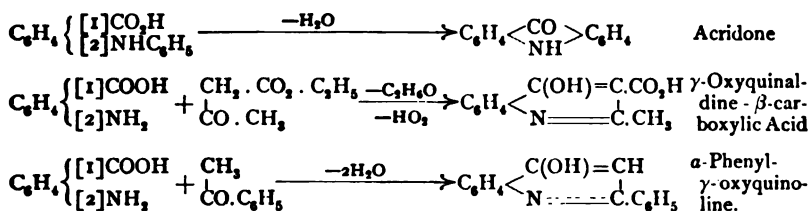
*cyanaminobenzoyl*,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CO \cdot N \\ [2]NH \cdot \overset{\parallel}{C} \cdot OC_2H_5 \end{array} \right\}$ , melting at 173°, is formed from cyanogen

and o-amidobenzoic acid in alcoholic solution (B. 2, 415). Ammonia changes it to o-benzglycocyamidine, *bensoylenguandine*,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CO \cdot NH \\ [2]NH \cdot \dot{C} : NH \end{array} \right.$  which  $CH_3I$  in strong alkaline solution converts into  $\alpha$ -o-benzcreatinine,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CO-NH \\ [2]N(CH_3)-\dot{C} : NH \end{array} \right.$  (B. 13, 977). Further derivatives of anthranilic acid have been obtained from o-amidobenzonitrile,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]NH_2[2]CN \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $47^\circ$ ; this results in the reduction of o-nitronitrile (B. 29, 624).

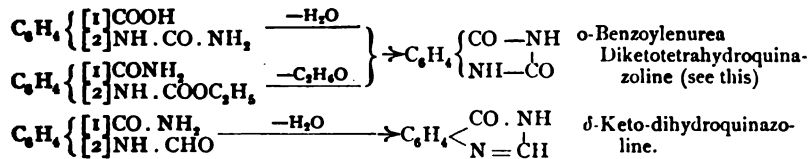
*Dibromanthranilic Acid* is produced when bromine acts upon o-nitrotoluene (p. 68).

*Hetero-ring Formations of Anthranilic Acid and its Derivatives.*—Anthranil and isatoic acid, whose constitution has not yet been definitely determined, are derivatives of anthranilic acid which certainly contain a hetero-ring, but both are not formed from anthranilic acid. However, numerous reactions of the latter acid lead to hetero-rings, which contain one, two, and three nitrogen atoms in the new ring (compare o-amidobenzylalcohol, p. 180; o-amidobenzylamine, p. 181; o-amidobenzaldehyde, p. 187, and o-amidoacetophenone, p. 190).

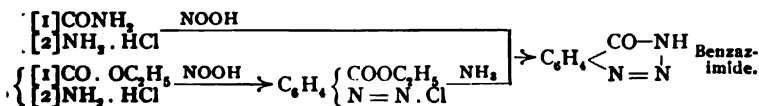
Acetylanthranilic acid and phenol condense on heating to *acridone*, which also results on digesting phenylanthranilic acid (p. 212) with concentrated sulphuric acid (B. 25, 2740). Anthranilic acid condenses with acetophenone and acetoacetic ester to *quinoline* derivatives (B. 27, 1396) :



*o-Benzoylenurea* is formed on heating anthranilic acid and anthranilamide with urea. It also results upon heating carboxethyl-o-amidobenzamide (B. 2, 416; 22, R. 196), as well as by the action of mineral acids upon uramidobenzoic acid (B. 27, 976). *Ketodihydroquinazolines* are produced on heating formyl-, acetyl-, and benzoyl-o-amidobenzamide. The  $\beta$ -methyl compound is formed in the action of acetamide upon anthranilic acid, and ammonia upon ethylacetamidobenzoic ester (B. 20, R. 630; 22, R. 196; 27, R. 516). The condensation products of o-amidobenzoic acid and cyanogen gas have been described and formulated (p. 212) :



Nitrous acid converts anthranilamide directly into benzazimide, whereas the o-diazo-benzoyl ester first resulting from anthranilic acid must be treated with ammonia to this change (B. 21, 1538; R. 571) :



m- and p-*Amidobenzoic Acids* melt at 173° and at 186°.

*Chrysanisic Acid*, 3,5-Dinitro-4-amidobenzoic acid,  $(\text{NO}_2)_2(\text{NH}_2) \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at 259°, consists of golden yellow leaflets, and is produced when 3,5-dinitro-4-methoxybenzoic acid is heated with aqueous ammonia.

*Diamidobenzoic Acids*,  $(\text{NH}_2)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , are prepared by reducing the dinitro- and the nitroamidobenzoic acids. They break down in dry distillation into carbon dioxide and phenylenediamines (p. 94). Like the o-phenylenediamines (p. 95), the diamidobenzoic acids, containing two amido-groups in the ortho-position with reference to each other, readily yield hetero-cyclic derivatives—*e. g.*, nitrous acid converts 3,4-diamidobenzoic acid into 3,4-*azimidobenzoic acid* (B. 15, 1880) (p. 96). The m,p- and the p,m-amidouramidobenzoic acids yield two different uramidazimidobenzoic acids, which afford the same azimidobenzoic acid by saponification (B. 29, R. 586).

3,4,5-*Triamidobenzoic Acid*,  $(\text{NH}_2)_3 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , from chrysanisic acid by reduction, breaks down, when heated, into  $\text{CO}_2$  and 1,2,3-triamidobenzene (A. 163, 12). 2,3,5-*Triamidobenzoic Acid* (B. 15, 2199).

Many amido-acids, derived from alkyl-benzoic acids, are known; also haloid amido-acids, nitro-amido-acids, etc.

**Amidophenyl-fatty Acids** are obtained from the nitrophenyl-fatty acids. Certain o-amidophenyl-fatty acids are particularly noteworthy because of their tendency to form inner anhydrides:  $\gamma$ - or  $\delta$ -*lactams* (I, 359), which is so great that the corresponding free o-amido-acids are not capable of existing—*e. g.*, o-amidophenyl-acetic acid and o-amidophenylhydrocinnamic acid.

m- and p-*Amidophenyl-acetic Acids* melt at 149° and 200°.

m- and p-*Amidohydrocinnamic Acids* “ “ 84° “ 131°.

4-*Amido-3-nitrohydrocinnamic Acid*, from p-acetamidohydrocinnamic acid, melts at 145°.

p-*Amidohydratropic Acid*, melting at 128°, is converted into phloretic acid (A. 227 267) by nitrous acid.

$\gamma$ - and  $\delta$ -**Lactams of the o-Amidophenyl-fatty Acids**.—Anthranil can be regarded as the simplest o-amido-acid lactam. However, its constitution has not been satisfactorily established, and it has not been obtained from anthranilic acid. The next higher homologues are:

Oxindol, the lactam of o-*Amidophenyl-acetic Acid*,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1] \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \\ [2] \text{NH} \end{array} \right.$ , melting at 120°, is obtained by the reduction of o-nitrophenyl-acetic acid with tin and hydrochloric acid, and from dioxindol with sodium amalgam. If heated to 150° with baryta-water it is converted into the barium salt of o-amidophenyl-acetic acid, from which oxindol is separated by acids (B. 16, 1704). Nitrous acid converts it into isatoxime (see this).

Oxindol boiled with acetic anhydride yields *Aceto-oxindol*,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1] \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \\ [2] \text{N} < \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \end{array} \right.$ , melting at 126°. It dissolves to *aceto-o-amidophenyl-acetic acid*,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at 142°. Heated with alkalis or acids it breaks down into oxindol and acetic acid.

p-*Amido-oxindol*,  $\text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{NO}$ , melting about 200°, is formed by the reduction of 2,4-dinitrophenyl-acetic acid (p. 211) with tin and hydrochloric acid. If ammonium sulphide be used as the reducing agent, the product will be 4-*Amido-2-nitrophenyl-acetic acid*, melting at 185° (B. 14, 824); compare o-nitrophenylisonitroso-acetic acid.

*Atroxindol*, lactam of o-amidohydratropic acid,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1] \text{CH}(\text{CH}_3) \cdot \text{CO} \\ [2] \text{NH} \end{array} \right.$ , melts at 119°.

**Hydrocarbostyryl, lactam of Amidohydrocinnamic Acid**, melting at 163°, is formed by the reduction of o-nitrohydrocinnamic acid with tin and hydrochloric acid (Glaser and Buchanan, 1869) (B. 15, 2103), and by heating hydrocarbostyryl-carboxylic acid, result-

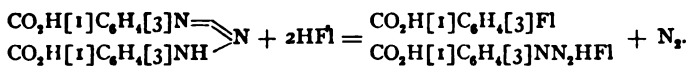
ing from the reduction of o-nitrobenzylmalonic acid (B. 29, 667). Hydrocarbostyryl sustains the same relation to quinoline that oxindol bears to indol:



p-Amidohydrocarbostyryl,  $\text{NH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{NO}$ , melting at  $211^\circ$ , is formed, together with 4-amido-2-nitrohydrocinnamic acid, melting at  $139^\circ$ , from 2,4-dinitrohydrocinnamic acid.

5. Diazobenzoic Acids (p. 98) are produced from the mineral acid salts of the amidobenzoic acids with nitrous acid, just as the ordinary diazo-bodies are obtained from the aniline salts. Nitrous acid converts the amide of o-amidobenzoic acid into benzazimide (p. 213). Nitrates of the three diazobenzoic acids are produced from the nitrates of the three amidobenzoic acids. They explode violently on the application of heat. The perbromides of the three diazobenzoic acids are also known. When the nitrates are boiled with water they yield oxybenzoic acids; the sulphates are converted by haloid acids into haloid benzoic acids (B. 18, 960). The free diazobenzoic acids are very unstable. The diaside of anthranilic acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\left\{\begin{array}{l} [1]\text{CO} \\ [2]\text{N}_2 \end{array}\right.\text{O}$ , consists of white, glistening needles. It is obtained when the chloride is acted upon with silver oxide (B. 29, 1535).

6. Diazoamidobenzoic Acids (p. 106) are formed when nitrous acid is conducted into the alcoholic solution of the amidobenzoic acids. Diazo-m-amidobenzoic Acid,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}[1]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[3]\text{N}=\text{N}-\text{NH}[3']\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1']\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , is an orange-red powder. Hydrofluoric acid converts it into m-fluorbenzoic acid (p. 114):



7. Diazoimidobenzoic Acids,  $\text{N} \begin{array}{c} \text{N} \\ | \\ \text{I} \end{array} > \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CO}_2\text{H}$  (p. 110), result upon letting ammonia act upon the perbromides of diazobenzoic acids, or when hydrazine-benzoic acids are treated with nitrous acid. The o-body melts about  $70^\circ$ ; the meta at  $160^\circ$ , and the p-compound at  $185^\circ$  (B. 9, 1658).

8. Azoxybenzoic Acids,  $\text{O} < \begin{array}{c} \text{N} \\ | \\ \text{N} \end{array} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , are formed in the reduction of the nitrobenzoic acids with alcoholic potash (p. 111). The o-derivative is also produced when n-oxyindolcarboxylic acid (see this) is oxidized with alkaline potassium permanganate (B. 17, 1904; 24, R. 666; 29, 656).

9. Azobenzoic Acids,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ | \\ \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$ . The action of sodium amalgam upon the mononitrobenzoic acids produces these acids.

Azobenzene-p-monocarboxylic acid has been obtained from amidoazobenzene (B. 19, 3022). o-, m-, and p-Azobenzoic acids are decomposed on fusion. Azophenylene or phenazine is formed when the calcium salts are distilled.

10. Hydrazine-benzoic Acids.—The symmetrical hydrazobenzoic acids result when the azobenzoic acids are reduced with sodium amalgam, or with ferrous sulphate and sodium hydroxide. o-Hydrazobenzoic Acid melts at  $205^\circ$ . m-Hydrazobenzoic Acid,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}[3]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{NH}\cdot\text{NH}[1']\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[3']\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ . These two acids, when boiled with hydrochloric acid, rearrange themselves to diamidodiphenyldicarboxylic acids (see these). The rearrangement of the m-acid into p-diamidodiphenic acid is of importance for the proof of the constitution of diphenic acid (see this), and consequently that of phenanthrene.

o-, m-, and p-Hydrazine-benzoic Acids,  $\text{NH}_2\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , re-

sult when the hydrochlorides or nitrates of diazobenzoic acids are reduced. Thionyl aniline converts them into o-, m-, and p-*benzoic-acid thionyl hydrazones*, melting at 155°, 231°, and 258° (B. 27, 2555).

o-Hydrazine-benzoic acid, when heated, changes to a *lactam of o-hydrazine-benzoic acid*,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]CO \\ [2]NH \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > NH$ , melting at 242° with decomposition (A. 212, 333).

11. *Sulphobenzoic Acids*.—On conducting the vapors of  $SO_2$  into benzoic acid, we obtain as chief product m-*Sulphobenzoic Acid*, and in smaller amount p-*Sulphobenzoic Acid* (A. 178, 279).

The three isomerides can be obtained by oxidizing the three toluene sulphonic acids with an alkaline solution of potassium permanganate (p. 192).

If the toluene sulphamides, instead of the free acids, be subjected to similar oxidation, the m- and p-toluene sulphamides yield m- and p-sulphamine-benzoic acids; whereas the o-toluene sulphamide changes to benzoic sulphinide, or anhydrosulphamine-benzoic acid, called *saccharin* (B. 12, 469). Hydrochloric acid reconverts this at 150° into o-sulphobenzoic acid.

o-*Sulphobenzoic Acid* when anhydrous melts at 250°. In deportment it recalls phthalic acid (see this). It forms, for example, phthaleins, an anhydride and an imide.  $PCl_5$  produces two dichlorides, melting at 22° and 76°, which probably have the formulas  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} COCl \\ SO_2Cl \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$  and  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} CCl_2 \\ SO_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > O$  (B. 29, R. 355). o-*Sulphobenzoic Anhydride*,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]CO \\ [2]SO_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > O$ , melting at 118°, is obtained from the acid by the action of acetyl chloride. The *nitrile*, o-cyanbenzene-sulphonic acid,  $C_6H_4(CN)SO_3H$ , is obtained from the o-aniline sulphonic acid (p. 137) through the diazo-compound (B. 28, R. 751).

o-*Sulphamine-benzoic Acid*,  $SO_2NH_2[2]C_6H_4[1]CO_2H$ , melts at 153–155°, changing at the same time into the sulphinide. It is produced by oxidizing o-toluene sulphamide with potassium ferricyanide (B. 19, R. 689), and from its inner anhydride by digesting with caustic soda. Isomeric o-*Benzamide-sulphonic acid*,  $C_6H_4(CONH_2)SO_3H$  (B. 29, R. 102), is formed when sulphobenzoic acid is fused with ammonium sulphocyanide (B. 29, R. 102).

o-Anhydrosulphamine-benzoic Acid, *Benzoic Sulphinide*,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]CO \\ [2]SO_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > NH$ , called *saccharin*, melts at 220°. It was discovered in 1879 by Ira Kemslen and C. Fahlberg. Its preparation was given above. This compound is now made technically in very large quantities. It is used for sweetening purposes. It is 500 times sweeter than cane-sugar. It dissolves with difficulty in cold water, and, like succinimide and phthalimide, behaves like a strong acid, forming imide-salts. The sodium salt,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]CO \\ [2]SO_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > NNa$ , is very readily soluble in water, and is 400 times sweeter than cane-sugar. It is readily transposed by such haloid derivatives as benzyl chloride and acetyl chloride to N-derivatives of saccharin (B. 25, 1737; 29, 1048).

o-*Sulphobenzoic-anil*,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} SO_2 \\ CO \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > N \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at 190°, results from the action of aniline upon the chlorides of sulphobenzoic acid (B. 29, R. 353). Phosphorus pentachloride converts saccharin into *pseudosaccharin-chloride*,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]CCl \\ [2]SO_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > N$ , melting at 149° (B. 29, 2995).

All sulpho-acids containing the sulpho-group in the o-position with reference to the carboxyl group of an alkylbenzoic acid are capable of forming *sulphinides* or *sulpho-carbonimides* (B. 25, 1737).

3,5-*Disulphobenzoic Acid* is produced by sulphonating benzoic acid with  $H_2SO_4$  and  $P_2O_5$  (B. 27, R. 118). 2,4-*Disulphobenzoic Acid* is obtained from 2,4-toluene-disulphonic acid (B. 14, 1205).

## (1 b). MONOHYDRIC OXYPHENYL-PARAFFIN ALCOHOLS AND THEIR OXIDATION PRODUCTS.

## 1. MONOHYDRIC OXYPHENYL-PARAFFIN ALCOHOLS, OR PHENOL ALCOHOLS.

These alcohols contain, in addition to the alcoholic hydroxyl, other hydroxyl groups joined to the benzene nucleus, which impart to them the character of phenols. Some of the alcohols of this group are simple transposition products of long-known plant substances.

**Formation.**—Some of the methods described under the benzyl alcohols also lead to phenol alcohols:

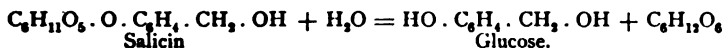
- (1) The reduction of corresponding aldehydes and ketones.
- (2) The treatment of aldehydes with caustic alkali.
- (3) The action of sodium amalgam upon amides (B. 24, 175).
- (4) They are linked to the benzyl alcohols through the amidophenyl-paraffin alcohols, which nitrous acid converts into oxyphenyl-paraffin alcohols.

(5) *Nucleus-synthesis*: Methylene chlorides (B. 13, 435) or formaldehyde and sodium hydroxide (B. 27, 2411; J. pr. Ch. [2] 50, 225) change phenols into phenyl alcohols.

**Monoxybenzyl Alcohols**,  $\text{HOC}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ .—The three theoretically possible isomerides have been prepared. They result when the corresponding aldehydes are reduced with sodium amalgam. *Saligenin*, or o-Oxybenzyl alcohol, is the best-known member of the group:

o-Oxybenzyl Alcohol	melts at 82°.
m-Oxybenzyl	“ “ 67°.
p-Oxybenzyl	“ “ 110°.

**Saligenin**, or o-Oxybenzyl Alcohol, was first obtained in the decomposition of the glucoside *salicin* (see this) by means of emulsin, ptyaline, or dilute acids (Piria, 1845; A. 56, 37):



Saligenin has also been prepared by the common methods from salicylaldehyde, salicylamide, o-amidobenzyl alcohol, and phenol. It is soluble in hot water, alcohol, and ether. Ferric chloride produces a deep blue color in its solutions. Acids resinify it, forming *saliretin* (βητιν, resin). Ethers and substitution products of saligenin are known. These have been made in part from the corresponding salicyl-derivatives.

*o-Oxybenzylamine*, Salicylamine, melts at 121° (B. 23, 2744).

*p-Oxyphenylethylamine*, see tyrosine (see this).

**Anisyl Alcohol**, p-Methoxybenzyl Alcohol,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1] \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{OH}$ , is obtained from anisic aldehyde by alcoholic potassium hydroxide. It melts at 45° and boils at 259°. It forms anisic aldehyde when oxidized.

*p-Homosaligenin*,  $\text{CH}_3[5]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[2](\text{OH})\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{OH}$ , melts at 105°.

**Hydrocumarone**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1] \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ [2] \text{O} \end{array} \right.$ , boiling at 188°, is the inner anhydride of o-oxyphenyl-ethyl alcohol, not known in the free state. It is formed when sodium in alco-

hol acts upon cumarone (B. 25, 2409). *p*-Thymotin Alcohol,  $\text{CH}_3[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_7[5]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4]\text{OH}[1]\text{CH}_3$ , OH, melts at  $120^\circ$  (B. 27, 2412).

Dioxybenzyl Alcohols are not known in a free condition, but derivatives of 2,5-dioxy- and of 3,4-dioxybenzyl alcohol have been obtained in the reduction of certain aldehyde-ethers with sodium amalgam. *Dimethyl-gentisin Alcohol*,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2[2,5]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[1]\text{CH}_2$ , OH, boils at  $278^\circ$ .

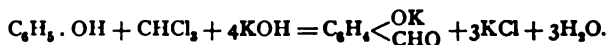
*Vanillyl Alcohol*,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}[3]\text{HO}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[1]\text{CH}_2$ , OH, from vanillin, melts at  $115^\circ$ .

*Piperonyl Alcohol*,  $\text{CH}_3\text{C}(\text{O})[3,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[1]\text{CH}_2$ , OH, from piperonal, melts at  $51^\circ$ .

*o*-Dioxybenzylamine melts at  $168^\circ$  (B. 27, 1799).

## 2. AROMATIC OXYMON-ALDEHYDES, PHENOL ALDEHYDES.

The phenol aldehydes are obtained (1) by oxidizing the phenol alcohols with chromic acid; (2) by an important nucleus-synthetic method, consisting in letting chloroform and an alkaline hydroxide act upon phenols (reaction of Reimer) when the chloroform enters the *o*- and *p*-position with reference to the phenol hydroxyl, and is then converted into the aldehyde group (B. 9, 1268):



**Behavior.**—All the phenol aldehydes show the same reactions of the aldehyde group as the benzaldehydes. Oxidizing agents convert them with difficulty into oxyacids; this is most easily accomplished by fusion with caustic alkalis. They reduce an ammoniacal silver solution, but not the Fehling solution. They dissolve in alkalis, forming salts—*e. g.*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CHO})\text{ONa}$ ; the alkyl iodides convert the latter into alkyl ethers.

**a. Monoxybenzaldehydes**,  $\text{HO}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{CHO}$ .—Three are possible according to theory; all of them are known. Anisic aldehyde, the methyl ether of *p*-oxybenzaldehyde, has been known for the longest period.

**Salicylic Aldehyde**, *o*-Oxybenzaldehyde, formerly called *salicylous* or *spiroylous* acid, boils at  $196^\circ$ . Its sp. gravity equals 1.172 ( $15^\circ$ ). It occurs in the volatile oils of the different varieties of *Spiraea*—*e. g.*, *Spiraea ulmaria*. It is obtained by the oxidation of saligenin and salicin (Piria, 1839) and by the decomposition of *helicin*, an oxidation product of salicin (see this). It is most readily prepared (together with *p*-oxybenzaldehyde) by the action of chloroform and caustic potash upon phenol. It is separated from the *p*-body by distillation in steam, in which salicylic aldehyde is very volatile. It is rather easily soluble in water; the solution is colored a deep violet by ferric chloride (compare saligenin, p. 217, and salicylic acid, p. 222). Like all ortho-oxyaldehydes, it colors the skin an intense yellow. Sodium amalgam transforms it into saligenin; oxidizing agents change it to salicylic acid.

*Potassium salicylic aldehyde*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{OK})\text{CHO} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ , consists of yellow plates. The methyl ether,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{O}\cdot\text{CH}_3)\cdot\text{CHO}$ , melts at  $35^\circ$  and boils at  $238^\circ$ ; the ethyl ether boils at  $248^\circ$ . The acet-derivative,  $\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{O}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{CHO}$ , melts at  $37^\circ$  and boils at  $253^\circ$ . Glucose-derivative, see *Helicin*. *o*-Aldehydophenoxy-acetic acid,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{O}\cdot[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[1]\text{CHO}$ , melting at  $132^\circ$ , splits off water and becomes coumarilic acid (see this). *Salicyl aldoxime* melts at  $57^\circ$ ; comp. B. 22, 3320. *o*-Anisalaldoxime,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}\cdot[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot$

[1]CH : N(OH); melts at 92° (B. 23, 2741). The *phenylhydrazone* melts at 142° (B. 18, 1660).

Consult B. 22, 2339, upon the nitrosalicylaldehydes.

m-Oxybenzaldehyde results in the reduction of m-oxybenzoic acid with sodium amalgam (B. 14, 969) and from m-nitrobenzaldehyde (B. 15, 2045). It melts at 104° and boils at 240°. Its *oxime* melts at 87°. Its *hydrazone* melts at 130° (B. 24, 826). Its nitration produces three mononitro-compounds. See B. 18, 2572, for the nitro-m-methoxybenzaldehydes.

p-Oxybenzaldehyde is formed from phenol, chloroform, and caustic alkali, together with salicylic aldehyde. It melts at 116°, and sublimes. Its *aldoxime* melts at 65°; its *hydrazone* at 178°. Consult B. 29, 2302, 2355, for the haloid p-oxybenzaldehydes. Its methyl ether, readily accessible, is the so-called—

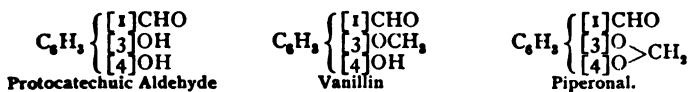
**Anisic Aldehyde**, p-Methoxybenzaldehyde,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}[\text{4}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[\text{1}]\text{CHO}$ , boiling at 248°, with sp. gr. 1.123 (15°). It results in oxidizing anethol (see this), present in various essential oils (anise, fennel, etc.), with dilute nitric acid or a chromic acid mixture.

**Homologous Monoxybenzaldehydes** have been prepared from various phenols by Reimer's method (p. 218). Thus :

		M. P.	B. P.	
o-Cresol . . . gave	o-Homosalicylic Aldehyde,	17°	208°	} (B. 24, 3667).
	o-Homo-p-oxybenzaldehyde,	115°		
m-Cresol . . . "	m-Homosalicylic Aldehyde,	54°	222°.	
	m-Homo-p-oxybenzaldehyde,	110°		
p-Cresol . . . "	p-Homosalicylic Aldehyde,	56°	217°.	
Pseudocumenol " [3,5,6]	Trimethyl Salicylic Aldehyde,	105°		(B. 18, 2656).
Thymol . . . "	p-Thymotin Aldehyde,	133°		(B. 16, 2097).
Carvacrol, . . . "	p-Carvacrocin Aldehyde,	liquid		(B. 19, 14).
p-Isobutylphenol "	p-Isobutyl Salicylic Aldehyde,	"	252°	(B. 28, R. 468).

The o-oxybenzaldehydes are more readily soluble in water and more sparingly soluble in chloroform than the p-oxybenzaldehydes. The o-bodies are volatile in steam, form sparingly soluble sodium bisulphite derivatives, and are colored yellow by ammonia (B. 11, 770); compare coumarines.

**b. Dioxybenzaldehydes.**—Some of the dioxybenzaldehydes which have been prepared by the chloroform-potash reaction are ethereal derivatives of protocatechuic aldehyde, and are characterized by an agreeable odor. This is especially true of *vanillin* and *piperalonal*, or *heliotropine*. Both substances are prepared on a technical scale :



**Protocatechuic Aldehyde**, 3,4-Dioxybenzaldehyde, melting at 153° (B. 26, R. 701), was first obtained from piperonal (Fittig and Remsen, 1871); also from vanillin, iso-vanillin, and opianic acid with dilute hydrochloric acid. It is prepared in the nucleus-synthetic way from pyrocatechin by the chloroform reaction. It dissolves readily in water. Ferric chloride colors its aqueous solution a deep green (p. 159). It reduces ammoniacal silver solutions. Molten caustic potash converts protocatechuic aldehyde into protocatechuic acid. Its *phenylhydrazone* exists in two modifications:  $\alpha$ - (stable), melting at 176°, and  $\beta$ - (unstable), melting at 121–128°. Its *oxime* melts at 150° (B. 29, R. 670).

**Vanillin**, m-Methoxy-p-oxybenzaldehyde, melting at 80°, sublimes readily, and is the active constituent of the vanilla bean pod (*Vanilla*

*planifolia*), which contains about two per cent. (B. 9, 1287) of it. Vanillin also occurs in the orchid *Nigritella suaveolens* (B. 27, 3049). It was first prepared artificially from the glucoside coniferine (see this) by its oxidation with chromic acid (Tiemann and Haarmann, 1874; B. 7, 613). Glycovanillin (see this) was obtained as an intermediate product in the oxidation of coniferine; acids or emulsin split it up into glucoses and vanillin (B. 18, 1595, 1657). Vanillin is also produced by oxidizing eugenol (see this) (B. 9, 273). In the nucleus-synthetic way it has also been formed, together with *m*-methoxyl-salicylic aldehyde, boiling at 266°, from guaiacol, chloroform, and caustic potash (B. 14, 2023).

Heated with HCl it decomposes into  $\text{CH}_3\text{Cl}$  and protocatechuic aldehyde. It behaves like a *p*-oxybenzaldehyde, and protocatechuic acid results on fusion with potassium hydroxide—two facts from which its constitution may be concluded. Nascent hydrogen converts vanillin into vanillyl alcohol, hydrovanillinoln, corresponding to hydrobenzola.

*Vanillin-oxime* melts at 117° (B. 24, 3654).

*Trithiovanillin*,  $[\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{OH})(\text{OCH}_3)\text{CSH}]_3$ , melts at 236° (B. 29, 143).

*Isovanillin*, *p*-Methoxy-*m*-oxybenzaldehyde, melting at 116°, smells, when heated, like vanilla and anise oil. It is obtained by oxidizing hesperitinic acid or by heating opianic acid with hydrochloric acid.

*Dimethylprotocatechuic Aldehyde*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{O} \cdot \text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHO}$ , melts at about 42° and boils near 283° (B. 11, 662).

*Piperonal*, *Protocatechuic Aldehyde-methylene Ether*, *Heliotropine*,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CHO}$ , melting at 37° and boiling at 263°, was obtained by the oxidation of piperic acid (see this). It is also formed by treating protocatechuic aldehyde with alkali and methylene iodide. Its odor is pleasant, like that of heliotrope. Piperonylic acid results from its oxidation and piperonyl alcohol from its reduction (p. 218). Its *oxime* melts at 110°. Its *phenylhydrazone* melts at 100°.  $\text{PCl}_5$  converts it into *piperonal chloride*,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CHCl}_2$ , and *dichloropiperonal chloride*,  $(\text{CCl}_2\text{O})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CHCl}_2$ , which is changed by cold water into *dichloropiperonal*,  $(\text{CCl}_2\text{O})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CHO}$ , and with warm water it yields  $\text{CO}_2$ , HCl and protocatechuic aldehyde (A. 159, 144; B. 26, R. 701). *Brompiperonal*,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{Br} \cdot \text{CHO}$  (B. 24, 2592). *o*-Nitro-piperonal yields bidioxymethylene indigo (B. 24, 617). The following bodies have been prepared from resorcinol and hydroquinone by the action of chloroform and caustic alkali, just as protocatechuic aldehyde was made from pyrocatechin.

*$\beta$ -Resorcyraldehyde*,  $(\text{HO})_2[2,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[1]\text{CHO}$ , melts at 135°.

*Gentisin-aldehyde*,  $(\text{HO})_2[2,5]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[1]\text{CHO}$ , melts at 99°.

Dioxyaldehydes are also produced in dilute solutions when much chloroform and caustic potash are used. The monomethyl ethers of resorcinol and hydroquinone, like guaiacol, each yield, upon treatment with chloroform and potash, two aldehydes—one, comparable in deportment with salicylaldehyde, contains the aldehyde group in the *o*-position with reference to phenol hydroxyl; while the other contains the aldehyde group in the *p*-position, referred to the free phenol hydroxyl (B. 14, 2024).

c. *Tri- and Tetraoxybenzaldehydes*.—Alkyl ethers of these bodies have been formed by oxidizing aromatic plant derivatives, containing unsaturated aliphatic side-chains (B. 16, 2112; 17, 1086; 24, 3818).

Glycosyringaldehyde, an oxidation-product of *syringine* (see this), when treated with emulsin yields a trioxybenzaldehyde ether (B. 22, R. 107).

### 3. PHENOL KETONES.

They have been obtained (1) from amidoketones (B. 18, 2691) and (2) from aromatic  $\beta$ -ketone-carboxylic acids (B. 25, 1308). The nucleus-synthetic methods, consisting in the introduction of acid radicals into phenols and phenol ethers, are better adapted for

the purpose; (3) the condensation of phenols with glacial acetic acid and other fatty acids by zinc chloride or tin tetrachloride (B. 14, 1566; 23, R. 43; 24, R. 770); better still, by phosphorus oxychloride (B. 27, 1983); (4) from phenols by means of acid chlorides (B. 22, R. 746); (5) from phenol alkyl ethers and acid chlorides in the presence of aluminium chloride (B. 23, 1199).

*o*-Oxyacetophenone, boiling at  $213^{\circ}$ , is formed by method 2. *p*-Oxyacetophenone, melting at  $107^{\circ}$ , is produced by method 1. *p*-Acetylanisole, *p*-methoxyacetophenone, melting at  $38^{\circ}$  and boiling at  $258^{\circ}$ , is formed by method 3. *Propionylphenol*,  $\text{HOC}_6\text{H}_4\text{COC}_2\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $148^{\circ}$ , is produced by method 4.

*Acetopyrocatechol*,  $(\text{HO})_2[\text{3,4}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2[\text{1}]\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}_3$ , melts at  $116^{\circ}$  (B. 27, 1989). *Acet-vanillon*,  $\text{HO}[\text{4}](\text{CH}_2\text{O})[\text{3}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2[\text{1}]\text{COCH}_3$ , melting at  $115^{\circ}$ , is produced in the oxidation of acetegenol, and synthetically from guaiacol by method 5 (B. 24, 2855, 2869). *Acetoveratrol*,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2[\text{3,4}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}_3$ , melts at  $48^{\circ}$  (B. 27, 1989). *Acetopiperone*,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2[\text{3,4}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2[\text{1}]\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}_3$ , melting at  $87^{\circ}$ , results on oxidizing protocotoin with potassium permanganate (B. 24, 2989; 25, 1127; 26, 2348).

*Resacetophenone*,  $(\text{HO})_2[\text{2,4}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2[\text{1}]\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}_3$ , melting at  $142^{\circ}$ , is produced by method 3, and from  $\beta$ -methylumbelliferone upon fusion with caustic potash (B. 16, 2123). Its *p*-methyl ether—

*Paeonol*,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}[\text{4}](\text{HO})[\text{2}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}_3$ , melting at  $45^{\circ}$ , occurs in the root-bark of *Paeonia Moutan*, a ranunculus from Japan (B. 25, 1292). When resorcinol diethyl ether is acetylated with the aid of aluminium chloride the products are 1,2,4-*Resacetophenone Diethyl Ether*, melting at  $69^{\circ}$ , and an *isomeric* resacetophenone with the melting point  $178^{\circ}$  (B. 29, R. 386). Consult B. 29, R. 674, for haloid resacetophenones.

*Quina-acetophenone*,  $(\text{HO})_2[\text{2,5}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2[\text{1}]\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}_3$ , melting at  $202^{\circ}$ , is produced by method 2. *Valerohydroquinone*,  $(\text{HO})_2[\text{2,5}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{C}_4\text{H}_9$ , melts at  $115^{\circ}$ . Its quinhydrone results when sunlight acts upon benzoquinone and valeric aldehyde (B. 24, 1344).

*Gall-acetophenone*  $(\text{HO})_2[\text{2,3,4}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2[\text{1}]\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}_3$ , melting at  $168^{\circ}$ , is formed by method 3 (B. 27, 2737).

#### 4. PHENOL MONOCARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

The aromatic oxy-acids containing hydroxyl united to the benzene nucleus combine the character of acids and phenols, hence are designated *phenol acids*. Should the hydroxyl groups enter the aliphatic side-chains, we would obtain aromatic alcohol acids, showing in their deportment very great similarity to the oxy-fatty acids.

*Formation*.—A. *From substituted carboxylic acids, as in the case of the phenols*: (1) Through the conversion of the amido-acids, by means of nitrous acid, into diazo-compounds and then boiling the latter with water. (2) By fusing the sulphobenzoic acids with alkalis. The haloid benzene carboxylic acids react like the sulpho-acids when subjected to similar treatment.

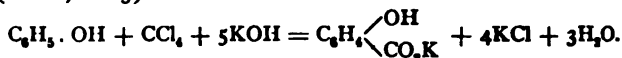
B. From compounds in which the phenol hydroxyl is always present.

(3) By fusing homologous phenols with alkalis, when the methyl group, linked to the nucleus, will be oxidized to the carboxyl group. (4) By oxidizing the sulphuric or phosphoric acid esters of homologous phenols and then saponifying the resulting phenol-carboxylic esters. (5) By fusing the phenol aldehydes, difficult to oxidize, with alkalis. (6) By converting the phenol aldoximes into oxy-acid nitriles and then saponifying the latter.

*Nucleus-synthesis*: (7) By the action of carbon dioxide upon the dry sodium salts of the phenols at elevated temperatures, when the carbonic acid generally enters the *ortho*-position with reference to the hydroxyl

group. This reaction will be more exhaustively discussed in connection with salicylic acid.

(8) By boiling the phenols with carbon tetrachloride (1, 387) and caustic potash (B. 10, 2185):

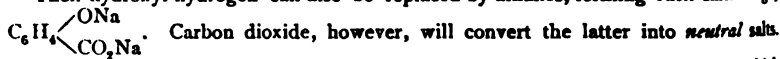


This reaction is perfectly analogous to that of the formation of oxaldehydes by means of chloroform and caustic alkali. As a general thing the carboxyl group enters the para-position with reference to phenol hydroxyl. o-Oxy-acids are produced in smaller amounts.

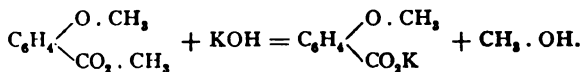
(9) When urea chloride, phenylisocyanate, and phenyl mustard oil, together with aluminium chloride, act upon phenol ethers (or thiophenol ethers) in carbon disulphide solution (A. 244, 61; B. 27, 1733), the products are amides, anilides, and thioanilides of alkyl oxy-acids.

*Behavior.*—They are monobasic acids. The hydrogen of the carboxyl group is alone replaced by metals when they are acted upon with alkaline carbonates.

Their hydroxyl hydrogen can also be replaced by alkalis, forming *basic salts*—e.g.,



The ether esters manifest a like deportment, inasmuch as it is only the alkyl ester which is eliminated, with the production of a salt of an alkyl-ether acid:



The o-oxy-acids, unlike the m- and p-derivatives, volatilize in aqueous vapor, are colored violet by ferric chloride, and dissolve in chloroform. The m-oxy-acids are colored reddish-brown when heated with concentrated sulphuric acid, with the formation of oxyanthraquinones (B. 18, 2142). They are usually more stable than the o- and p-acids. Boiling concentrated hydrochloric acid decomposes the p-acids into carbon dioxide and phenols. All the oxy-acids decompose into carbon dioxide and phenols when distilled with lime.

A. *Monoxy-mono-carboxylic Acids.*—Salicylic acid or o-oxybenzoic acid is by far the most important representative of this class. It is extensively applied both in therapeutics and in the color industry.

**Monoxybenzoic Acids.**—The three isomerides theoretically possible are known.

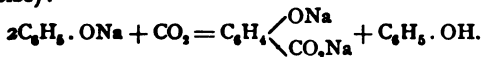
**Salicylic Acid, o-Oxybenzoic Acid,**  $\text{HO}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $155^\circ$ , occurs in a free condition in the buds of *Spiraea ulmaria*, as the methyl ester in oil of *Gaultheria procumbens* (oil of wintergreen), a species of Ericaceæ. It is produced, by the general methods of formation, (1) from anthranilic acid; (2) from o-sulpho-, o-chlor-, and o-brombenzoic acids; (3) from o-cresol; (4) from saligenin and salicylaldehyde; (5) from phenolates with  $\text{CO}_2$ ; and (6) with carbon tetrachloride.

It is also formed upon fusing *coumarin* (see this) and *indigo* (see this) with caustic potash, and in the distillation of copper benzoate.

*Technical Preparation.*—Two methods of bringing sodium phenolate and  $\text{CO}_2$  in reaction are applicable for this purpose:

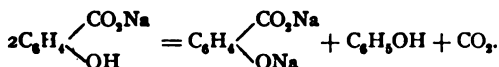
(a) Sodium phenoxide is heated in a current of carbon dioxide at  $180$ – $220^\circ$ , when the

latter is absorbed. Half of the phenol distils over, and the residue consists of disodium salicylate (H. Kolbe):



The behavior of potassium phenolate in this reaction is remarkable. At  $150^\circ$  dipotassium salicylate is produced. At a more elevated temperature, however, there is formed with the dipotassium salicylate its isomeride, dipotassium paraoxybenzoate. The latter is more abundant in proportion to the increased temperature, until at  $220^\circ$  it is the sole product. The primary alkali salicylates, when heated, show the following deportment:

Monosodium salicylate at  $220^\circ$  yields disodium salicylate, phenol, and  $\text{CO}_2$ :



Primary potassium salicylate at  $220^\circ$  yields phenol, dipotassium paraoxybenzoate, and  $\text{CO}_2$ .

Primary sodium paraoxybenzoate at  $280^\circ$  yields phenol,  $\text{CO}_2$ , and disodium salicylate (J. pr. Ch. [2] 16, 425).

(*b*) Sodium phenoxide is saturated under pressure, in closed vessels, with carbon dioxide, when it is converted into sodium phenocarbonate,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{O}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{Na}$ . By continuing the pressure and applying a heat of  $120$ – $130^\circ$ , this salt is changed to sodium salicylate:  $\text{HO}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{CO}_2\text{Na}$ . The second method shows a complete transformation of the phenol.

*History*.—Piria first obtained salicylic acid in 1838, when he oxidized its aldehyde with molten caustic potash (A. 30, 165). In 1843 Cahours proved that wintergreen oil consisted almost entirely of methyl salicylic ester (A. 53, 332). Gerland in 1853 showed that anthranilic acid, as suspected by A. W. Hofmann, could be converted by nitrous acid into salicylic acid (A. 86, 147). In 1860 H. Kolbe and Lautemann prepared it synthetically from phenol, sodium, and carbonic acid (A. 115, 201). It was Kolbe who first correctly interpreted salicylic acid to be a monobasic oxyacid, and in 1874 discovered that the acid could readily be formed upon conducting carbon dioxide over dry and heated sodium phenate. It was in this way that he ascertained the conditions serving for the production of the acid upon a technical scale. R. Schmidt discovered the conversion of sodium phenocarbonate under pressure at  $120$ – $130^\circ$  into monosodium salicylate (B. 17, R. 624).

*Properties and Behavior*.—Salicylic acid crystallizes from alcohol in colorless prisms; from hot water in long needles. It has a sweet, acid taste. It dissolves in 400 parts of water at  $15^\circ$ , and in 12 parts at  $100^\circ$ ; it is very soluble in chloroform. When it is heated alone, *salol*, or phenylsalicylic ester, and *xanthone* (see this) are produced (A. 269, 323). Sodium in amyl alcohol solution reduces it to normal pimelic acid. In this reaction the ring is ruptured and ketohexamethylene carboxylic acid appears as an intermediate product (B. 27, 331).

Its aqueous solution acquires a violet coloration upon the addition of ferric chloride. It is a powerful antiseptic, arrests decay and fermentation (Kolbe, J. pr. Ch. [2] 10, 9), and is applied therapeutically both as the free acid and in the form of its sodium salt (in rheumatism of the joints).

*Salicylates*.—*Sodium Salicylate*,  $\text{HO}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{Na}$ , is a crystalline powder with an unpleasant sweet taste. *Basic Calcium Salicylate*,  $(\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{CO}_2)_2\text{Ca} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ , dissolves with great difficulty, and is precipitated upon boiling salicylic acid with lime-water. It serves for the separation of salicylic acid from *m*- and *p*-oxybenzoic acids.

**Esters, Ethers, and Ether Esters.**—*Methyl Ester*,  $\text{HO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , boiling at  $224^\circ$ , with sp. gr. 1.197 ( $0^\circ$ ), is the chief ingredient of wintergreen oil (from *Gaultheria procumbens*). It occurs in many different plants in the form of a glucoside (B. 29, R. 511).

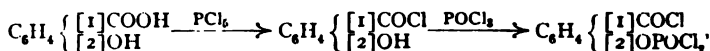
When the methyl ester is digested with an alcoholic solution of potassium hydroxide and methyl iodide, we get the *dimethyl ester*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \begin{matrix} \text{OCH}_3 \\ \text{CO}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3 \end{matrix}$ , boiling at  $245^\circ$ . Boiled with potassium hydroxide it is saponified, yielding methyl alcohol and methyl salicylic acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \begin{matrix} \text{O} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{matrix}$ , melting at  $98^\circ$ . It decomposes into carbon dioxide and anisol when heated to  $200^\circ$ .

**Phenol Salicylic Ester, Salol**,  $\text{HO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $43^\circ$  and boiling at  $172^\circ$  (12 mm.), results on heating salicylic acid alone to  $200$ – $220^\circ$ , with the elimination of water and carbon dioxide; from salicylic acid, phenol, and  $\text{POCl}_3$ ; from polysalicylide on heating with phenol, or when phosgene acts upon the sodium salts of salicylic acid and phenol. It is applied as an antiseptic. It changes to *xanthone* (see this), or diphenylene ketone oxide, when it is heated. When *sodium salol*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{ONa}) \cdot \text{CO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$  (from salol and sodium), is heated to  $280$ – $300^\circ$ , it changes to the isomeric sodium salt of *phenylsalicylic acid*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{O} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5) \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , which melts at  $113^\circ$ , and is not colored by ferric chloride.

*Thiosalol*,  $\text{HO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{COSC}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $54^\circ$ , results upon heating salicylic acid and thiophenol with  $\text{PCl}_5$  or  $\text{POCl}_3$ . *Phenylthiosalicylic Acid*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at  $166^\circ$  (A. 263, 2). See Thioxanthone.

*Aceto-salicylic Acid*,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CO} \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at  $118^\circ$ .

*Salicyl Chloride*,  $\text{HO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{COCl}$ , is not known. It is true that  $\text{PCl}_5$  acts very energetically upon salicylic acid, but the resulting phosphorylchloride is transposed by the phenol hydroxyl, with evolution of hydrochloric acid:



and there results:

*o*-Chlorcarbonylphenyl-orthophosphoric acid dichloride, melting at  $168^\circ$  (11 mm.). If the  $\text{PCl}_5$  continues to act, this compound will exchange an oxygen atom for two chlorine atoms, and *o*-Trichlormethylphenyl-orthophosphoric acid dichloride,  $(\text{Cl}_2\text{PO})\text{O}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot [1]\text{CCl}_3$ , boiling at  $178^\circ$  (11 mm.) will be formed. When this is heated with  $\text{PCl}_5$  in a sealed tube to  $180^\circ$ , there results:

*o*-Chlorbenzotrichloride,  $\text{Cl}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{CCl}_3$ , melting at  $30^\circ$  and boiling at  $130^\circ$  (11 mm.) (A. 239, 314). *m*- and *p*-Oxybenzoic acids, as well as *m*- and *p*-cresotinic acids, behave similarly.

If, however, the hydrogen atom of the phenol hydroxyl is replaced by the methyl or acetyl group, then  $\text{PCl}_5$  produces the chlorides:

*Methyl Salicyl Chloride*,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{COCl}$ , boiling at  $254^\circ$ , and *Acetyl Salicyl Chloride*,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{COCl}$ , melting at  $43^\circ$  and boiling at  $135^\circ$  (12 mm.).

When halogen atoms, nitro groups, or methyl groups are introduced into salicylic acid, and then occupy the *o*-position with reference to the phenol hydroxyl, the latter will be protected by them from the attack of the phosphorus oxychloride. Consequently, in the action of  $\text{PCl}_5$  *free oxychlorides* will be produced:

*o*-Cresotinic Chloride,  $\text{HO}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[3]\text{CH}_3[1]\text{COCl}$ , melting at  $28^\circ$ ; *3*-Chlorsalicyl Chloride, melting at  $63^\circ$ ; *[3,5]-Dichlorsalicyl Chloride*, melting at  $79^\circ$ , and *[3,5]-Dichlornitrosalicyl Chloride*, melting at  $70^\circ$  (B. 30, 221).

The influence of substituents in the vicinity of the phenol hydroxyl group is manifested in other ways, as in that of the esterification of *[2,6]*-substituted benzoic acids with alcohol and hydrochloric acid (p. 197).

*Salicylo-phosphorous Chloride*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{matrix} [1]\text{COO} \\ [2]\text{O} \end{matrix} \right\} \text{—} \text{PCl}$ , melting at  $30^\circ$  and boiling at  $167^\circ$  (11 mm.), is readily formed when  $\text{PCl}_5$  acts upon salicylic acid at  $70^\circ$  (A. 239, 301). All substituted salicylic acids react similarly (B. 30, 221).

*Salicylide* or *Tetrasalicylide*,  $O.C_6H_4.CO.O.C_6H_4.CO$   
 $CO.C_6H_4O.CO.C_6H_4O$ , melting at  $260^\circ$ , and *Poly-*  
*salicylide*,  $(C_7H_4O_2)_x$ , melting at  $322-325^\circ$ , are produced when  $POCl_3$  acts upon salicylic acid in xylene solution. The two compounds are separated by means of boiling chloroform, with which the tetrasalicylide forms a compound, *Salicylide Chloroform*,  $(C_7H_4O_2)_4 \cdot 2CHCl_3$ , crystallizing in beautiful quadratic octahedra, which contain 33 per cent. of chloroform loosely combined as chloroform of crystallization. This body has been used technically in the preparation of pure chloroform (Anschütz, A. 273, 94). *o*-Cresotinic acid and the *o*-haloid salicylic acids behave similarly.

*Salicylamide*,  $HO.C_6H_4.CONH_2$ , melts at  $138^\circ$  (B. 24, 138). *Salicylanilide*,  $C_6H_4(OH)CONHC_6H_5$ , changes, when heated in dry condition, to *acridone*,  $C_6H_4 < \begin{smallmatrix} CO \\ NH \end{smallmatrix} > C_6H_4$ . It is very probable that it is at first rearranged into phenyl anthranilic acid (p. 213) (B. 29, 1189). *Salicylo-nitrile*,  $HO.C_6H_4.CN$ , melting at  $98^\circ$ , is obtained from salicylaldehyde and acetic anhydride (B. 26, 2621; 27, R. 134).

*Substituted Salicylic Acids*.—The 5-derivatives of the mono-substitution products are the most readily prepared. 3-Derivatives are formed simultaneously. Of the disubstituted salicylic acids the 3,5-derivatives are made with the most ease. In them the substituents enter the *op*-position, referred to phenolhydroxyl. 5-*Chlor*-, 5-*brom*-, 5-*iod*-, and 5-*nitro*-salicylic acids melt at  $172^\circ$ ,  $164^\circ$ ,  $196^\circ$ , and  $228^\circ$ . 3-*Chlor*-, 3-*brom*-, 3-*iod*-, and 3-*nitrosalicylic acids* melt at  $178^\circ$ ,  $220^\circ$ ,  $193^\circ$ , and  $125^\circ$ . 3,5-*Dichlor*-, 3,5-*dibrom*-, 3,5-*diiod*-, and 3,5-*dinitrosalicylic acids* melt at  $214^\circ$ ,  $223^\circ$ ,  $220-230^\circ$  with decomposition, and at  $173^\circ$ . An *anhydride*, melting at  $187^\circ$  (B. 30, 223), has been prepared by the action of the chloride of 3,5-dichlorosalicylic acid upon the silver salt.

*m*-Oxybenzoic Acid,  $HO[1]C_6H_4[1]CO_2H$ , melts at  $200^\circ$  and sublimes without decomposition. *p*-Oxybenzoic Acid,  $HO[4]C_6H_4[1]CO_2H$ , melts when anhydrous at  $210^\circ$  with partial decomposition into carbon dioxide and phenol. Its *methyl ester* melts at  $131^\circ$  and boils at  $270-280^\circ$  (B. 27, R. 570). The two acids are obtained from their corresponding amido- and haloid benzoic acids by methods 1 and 2 (p. 221). See p. 223 for the production of *p*-oxybenzoic acid, together with salicylic acid, by methods 7 and 8. *p*-Oxybenzoic acid is also obtained from many resins by fusing them with caustic potash. For the behavior of *m*- and *p*-oxybenzoic acids with  $PCl_5$ , consult p. 224. Compare A. 261, 236, for the action of chlorine upon the three oxybenzoic acids.

**Anisic Acid**, *p*-Methoxybenzoic Acid,  $CH_3O[4]C_6H_4[1]CO_2H$ , melting at  $185^\circ$  and boiling at  $280^\circ$ , is like benzoic and salicylic acids, one of the acids which has been long known. It is isomeric with methyl salicylic ester, and the other monomethyl derivatives of the oxybenzoic acids in general, as well as with the oxyphenylacetic acids. Anisic acid is easily obtained, hence numerous transposition-products of it are known. It is prepared by oxidizing *anethol*, the chief ingredient of anise oil, and other ethereal oils containing anethol (see this), with dilute nitric acid or with a chromic acid mixture.

*History*.—Cahours (1839) discovered anisic acid when he oxidized anise oil (A. 41, 66). Kolbe at first considered it methoxybenzoic acid, because when it was distilled with caustic baryta it broke down into  $CO_2$  and *anisol* (p. 146). Saytzev (1863) found that when anisic acid was heated with hydriodic acid it yielded an acid different from salicylic acid, yet isomeric with the latter (A. 127, 129). This was subsequently found to be *p*-oxybenzoic acid. In 1867 Ladenburg showed that anisic acid could be prepared by saponifying the dimethyl ether-ester of *p*-oxybenzoic acid (A. 141, 241).

**Oxytoluic Acids or Cresotinic Acids**,  $CH_3.C_6H_3(OH).CO_2H$ .—The ten possible isomerides are known (B. 16, 1966). They are isomeric with the three oxyphenylacetic acids (p. 226), the three oxymethylbenzoic acids or benzyl alcohol carboxylic acids, and phenyl glycollic acid or mandelic acid. They have been prepared from the toluic acids by methods 1 and 2, from the oxyaldehydes by method 5, and from the cresols by methods 7 and 8 (p. 222).

3-, 4-, 5-, and 6-Methylhomosalicylic Acids melt at 163°, 177°, 151°, and 168°. 2-, 4-, 5-, and 6-Methylhomo-m-oxybenzoic Acids melt at 183°, 206°, 208°, and 172°. 2- and 3-Methylhomo-p-oxybenzoic Acids melt at 177° and 172°.

Those isomerides containing the hydroxyl-group in the ortho-position with reference to carboxyl, are colored violet by ferric chloride, just like salicylic acid. They dissolve easily in cold chloroform and are volatile with steam. See p. 224 for their behavior toward  $\text{PCl}_5$ ,  $\text{PCl}_3$ ,  $\text{POCl}_3$ , etc. 3-Methylhomosalicylic acid yields an *o*-homosalicylide- or *o*-cresotide-chloroform (A. 273, 88) similar to salicylide-chloroform. 5-Methyl-m-oxybenzoic acid, prepared synthetically by the action of baryta-water upon acetone oxalic ester (B. 22, 3271), yields by nitration nitrococcic acid or 2,4,6-trinitro-m-oxym-toluic acid, melting at 180°, which is also formed when carminic acid (see this), the dye of red cochineal, is oxidized (B. 26, 2648). When the three isomeric cresotinic acids, or, better, their dibrom-substitution products are reduced with sodium and amyl alcohol, the ring is ruptured and  $\alpha$ -,  $\beta$ -, and  $\gamma$ -methylpimelic acids are produced (A. 295, 173; compare p. 47).

*o*- and *p*-Oxymesitylenic Acids,  $\text{HO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_2(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melt at 179° and 23° (A. 206, 197).

*Di*- and *tri*-methyloxybenzoic acids (B. 21, 884), as well as ethylmethyloxybenzoic acids (A. 195, 284), are also known. The corresponding isopropoxybenzoic acids—*Thymo*- and *iso*-oxycumic acids, melting at 142° and 94° (B. 19, 3307)—result upon fusing carvacrol and thymol (p. 144) with caustic potash.

Different isomeric *p*-methylisopropoxybenzoic acids,  $(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{OH})\text{COOH}$ : *thymotic* and *carvacrotinic* acids have been made by introducing the  $\text{CO}_2$ -group into thymol and carvacrol. See B. 28, 2795 for the derivatives of thymotic acid.

The *oxyphenyl-fatty acids* attach themselves to the alkyl-substituted oxybenzoic acids. They are produced (1) by diazotizing the corresponding amidophenyl-fatty acids and then decomposing the diazo-derivatives with boiling water; (2) by saponifying the oxybenzyl cyanides.

The *o*-oxyacids, in which the phenol hydroxyl-group occupies the  $\gamma$ - or  $\delta$ -position with reference to the carboxyl-group, are, in contrast to the corresponding *o*-amido-fatty acids (p. 214), capable of existing, but when heated they part with water and yield  $\gamma$ - and  $\delta$ -lactones (I, 334, 345, 346).

The *oxyphenylacetic acids*,  $\text{HO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , are isomeric with the ten oxytoluic acids (see these), with the three oxymethylbenzoic acids, and with the mandelic acids. *o*-Oxyphenylacetic acid, bearing close relationship to oxindol (p. 214) and isatin (see this), is also obtained from *o*-oxymandelic acid by reduction with hydriodic acid. Ferric chloride colors it violet. It passes into its lactone (see below) when it is heated. *p*-Oxyphenylacetic Acid occurs in urine, and arises from the decomposition of albuminous bodies as well as in that of *sinabin*, occurring in the seeds of white mustard (B. 22, 2137).

*o*-, *m*-, and *p*-Oxyphenylacetic Acids melt at 137°, 129°, and 148°. *m*- and *p*-Oxyphenylacetoneitrile melt at 52° and 69° (B. 22, 2139).

Oxyphenylpropionic Acids.—Four of the six theoretically possible acids are known.

**Phloretic Acid**, *p*-Oxyhydratropic Acid,  $\text{HO}[\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{CH}]<\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at 129°, is formed, together with phloroglucin, when phloretine (the phloroglucin ester of phloretic acid) is digested with potassium hydroxide. It has been prepared synthetically from *p*-amidohydrocinnamic acid (p. 214). Ferric chloride colors its solution green. Baryta decomposes it into ethyl phenol; fusion with potassium hydroxide produces paraoxybenzoic acid.

**Phloretine**, *Monophloreticphloroglucin Ester*,  $(\text{HO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{O} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{OH}$ , melts at 254° (B. 27, 1631, 2686). See *phlorisine*.

**Hydrocoumaric Acids**, or  $\beta$ -Phenolpropionic Acids,  $\text{HO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , result when the corresponding coumaric acids, the oxycinnamic acids, or  $\beta$ -oxyphenylacrylic acids are reduced with sodium amalgam.

***o*-Hydrocoumaric Acid**, or *Melilotic Acid*, melting at 81°, occurs free and in combination with coumarin, the lactone of *o*-oxycinnamic acid, in the yellow melilot (*Melilotus*

*officinalis*). It is produced by the action of sodium amalgam upon coumarin. Ferric chloride imparts a bluish color to the solution. When distilled, it passes into its lactone—hydrocoumarin. It yields salicylic acid when it is fused with caustic potash.

m- and p-Hydrocoumaric Acids melt at 111° and 128°. p-Hydrocoumaric acid is also produced in the decay of tyrosine.

γ- and δ-Lactones of o-oxyphenyl-fatty acids are produced when these acids are distilled. They correspond to the γ- and δ-lactams described on p. 214.

o-Oxyphenylacetic Acid Lactone,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]CH_2 \cdot CO \\ [2]O \end{smallmatrix} \right.$ , melts at 49° and boils at 236° (B. 17, 975).

Hydrocoumarin, β-o-Oxyphenylpropionic Acid Lactone,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \\ [2]O \end{smallmatrix} \right.$ , melts at 25° and boils at 272°. When boiled with water it regenerates the acid from which it was produced by distillation.

**B. Dioxymonocarboxylic Acids** are obtained by the same methods which were used in the preparation of the aromatic monocarboxylic acids. The carboxyl group is more readily introduced into the dioxybenzenes than into the monoxybenzenes. This occurs upon heating the bodies with a solution of ammonium or sodium carbonate to 100° or 130° (B. 18, 3202; 19, 2318). The dioxybenzoic acids break down, when heated, into carbon dioxide and dioxybenzenes.

**Dioxybenzoic Acids.**—The six possible isomerides are known. The most important member of this class is—

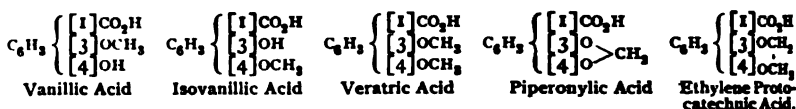
**Protocatechuic Acid, 3,4-Dioxybenzoic Acid**,  $(HO)_2[3,4]C_6H_3[1] \cdot CO_2H + H_2O$ , melts when anhydrous at 190°, and decomposes into pyrocatechin and carbonic acid. It occurs in the fruit of *Illicium religiosum*. It has been obtained from many triderivatives of benzene, containing substituents in the 3,4-position with reference to a side-chain, by fusing them with caustic potash—*e. g.*, from the corresponding brom- and iod-p-oxybenzoic acids, bromanisic acid, p- and m-cresolsulphonic acid; sulpho-p-, and sulpho-m-oxybenzoic acids, from eugenol, piperic acid (compare also piperonylic acid, p. 228), etc., as well as from various resins (benzoïn, asafoetida, myrrh, and particularly kino) on fusion with potassium or sodium hydroxide. The latter resin readily yields large quantities of the acid (A. 177, 188). Compare further phloroglucin ethers of protocatechuic acid. It is also produced by the action of bromine upon quinic acid in aqueous solution.

The two possible pyrocatechuic monocarboxylic acids are produced when pyrocatechin is heated to 140° with a solution of ammonium carbonate.

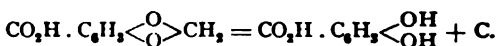
Ferric chloride colors the solution green; after the addition of a very dilute soda solution it becomes blue, later red (all derivatives containing the protocatechuic residue,  $(OH)_2C_6H_3 \cdot C=$  B. 14, 958, react similarly). Ferrous salts color its salt solutions violet. It reduces an ammoniacal silver solution, but not an alkaline copper solution. *Diprotocatechuic Acid*,  $C_{14}H_{10}O_7$ , is a tannic acid which results on boiling protocatechuic acid with aqueous arsenic acid. It is very similar to common tannic acid, but is colored green by ferric oxide. It forms a compound with p-oxybenzoic acid by the union of equimolecular quantities (A. 134, 276; 280, 18).

See naphthalene ring formations for the conversion of substituted protocatechuic acids, by oxidation with nitric acid, into derivatives of β-naphthoquinone.

The phenol ethers of protocatechuic acid are :



These alkyl- and alkylene-ether acids are formed when protocatechuic acid is treated with  $\text{CH}_3\text{I}$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{I}_2$ , and  $\text{CH}_3\text{Br}$ .  $\text{CH}_3\text{Br}$  and caustic potash, as well as by oxidizing the corresponding ethers of protocatechuic aldehyde. The protocatechuic acid can be regained from them upon heating with hydrochloric acid to  $150^\circ$ , when the dimethyl ether acid will yield at first the two monomethyl ether acids; whereas the methylene ether, piperonylic acid, separates carbon in addition to protocatechuic acid:



The alkyl ether-acids break down into carbon dioxide and alkyl pyrocatechuic ethers when they are heated with lime or baryta.

**Vanillic Acid**, *m*-Methylprotocatechuic Acid, melting at  $211^\circ$ , sublimes. It is obtained by the energetic oxidation of its aldehyde, vanillin (p. 219), also from coniferine, as well as by the decomposition of *acetovanillic acid*, melting at  $142^\circ$ , the oxidation product of acetegenol, acetferulic acid, and acetomovanillic acid, when they are treated with potassium permanganate. Its *nitrile* melts at  $87^\circ$  (B. 24, 3654).

**Isovanillic Acid**, *p*-Methylprotocatechuic Acid, melts at  $250^\circ$ , and was first obtained from hemipinic acid (see this), or 4,5-dimethoxy-*o*-phthalic acid upon heating with hydrochloric acid.

**Veratric Acid**, 3,4-Dimethoxybenzoic Acid, melting at  $179.5^\circ$ , occurs, together with *veratrin* (see the alkaloids), in the *sabadilla* seeds (from *Veratrum Sabadilla*).

*Diethylprotocatechuic acid* melts at  $149^\circ$ .

**Piperonylic Acid**, Methylene-protocatechuic acid, melting at  $228^\circ$ , is also formed by oxidizing a homopiperonylic acid, obtained from saffrol, as well as from piperonal and protocatechuic acid (see this). It breaks down when heated with hydrochloric acid (see above). Its *nitrile* melts at  $95^\circ$  (B. 24, 3656).

*Ethylene protocatechuic acid* melts at  $133^\circ$ .

The *phloroglucin ethers of protocatechuic acid* are probably certain vegetable substances which, upon fusion with caustic potash, break down into phloroglucin (p. 165) and protocatechuic acid. They are:

**Luteolin**,  $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_6$  (B. 29, R. 647, 848), occurs in *Reseda luteola* and crystallizes in yellow needles. Ferric chloride colors it green.

**Catechin**,  $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_6$  (?), from catechu, and **Maclurin** or **Moringa Tannic Acid**,  $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_6 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ , from yellow wood, *Morus tinctoria*, are generally included among the tannic acids. *Proteaic Acid*,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_4$ , appears to be a homologue of protocatechuic acid. It is present in *Protea mellifera* (B. 29, R. 415).

**Pyrocatechin-*o*-carboxylic Acid**, 2,3-Dioxybenzoic Acid,  $(\text{HO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melts at  $199^\circ$  when anhydrous. It readily breaks down into  $\text{CO}_2$  and pyrocatechin, from which it is formed, together with protocatechuic acid, by the action of ammonium carbonate (A. 220, 116). It also results when 3-iodosalicylic acid is fused with caustic potash.

**Resorcinol Monocarboxylic Acids**.—There are three. Sym.-dioxybenzoic acid results on heating sym.-disulphobenzoic acid (p. 216) with caustic potash, and the other two acids are produced when resorcinol is treated with ammonium dicarbonate or potassium dicarbonate solution (B. 18, 1985; 13, 2379).

The  $\alpha$ -compound is not colored by ferric chloride; whereas the  $\beta$ -body is colored a dark red and the  $\gamma$ -modification blue-violet by the same reagent.

**$\alpha$ -Resorcylic Acid**, 3,5-Dioxybenzoic Acid,  $(\text{HO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H} + 1\frac{1}{2}\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melts at  $233^\circ$ . It yields *anthrachryson* (see this) when it is heated with sulphuric acid.

**$\beta$ -Resorcylic Acid**, 2,4-Dioxybenzoic Acid  $+ 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melts in the anhydrous state at  $213^\circ$ . See B. 28, R. 1051; 29, R. 30, for the ethers and esters of the acid.

It is converted in glacial acetic acid solution by chlorine into hexachlor-*m*-diketo-*R*-hexene (B. 25, 2687). The *nitrile* melts at  $175^\circ$ .

*γ-Resorcylic Acid*, 2,6-Dioxybenzoic acid, melts at 148–167° and breaks down into CO<sub>2</sub> and resorcinol.

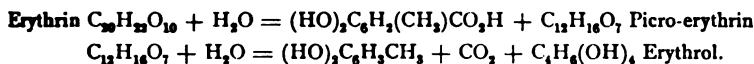
*Gentisinic Acid*, Hydroquinone Carboxylic Acid, 2,5-Dioxybenzoic Acid, melts at 300°, and at 215° breaks down into carbon dioxide and hydroquinone. It was first prepared from gentisin (see this), a xanthone derivative, together with phloroglucin, on fusing it with caustic potash. It is obtained from 5-brom-, 5-iod-, and 5-amidosalicylic acids; also from hydroquinone and from gentisinic aldehyde (B. 14, 1988). Ferric chloride colors it a deep blue and is decomposed into CO<sub>2</sub> and quinone (B. 18, 3499).

The Dioxytoluic Acids, (HO)<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>3</sub>)CO<sub>2</sub>H, are isomeric with the dioxyphenyl-acetic acids. The most important of the known acids of this class is *Orsellinic Acid*, 2,6-dioxy-p-toluic acid, which melts at 176° and breaks down into CO<sub>2</sub> and orcinol (p. 162). It is obtained from orsellinic acid upon boiling the latter with water, or erythrin with baryta-water. It is colored violet by ferric chloride.

*Orsellic Acid*, diorsellinic acid or lecanoric acid, C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>14</sub>O<sub>7</sub>, melting at 153°, is an ether-like anhydride of orsellinic acid, (HO)<sub>2</sub>·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>3</sub>)·CO·OC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub>(OH)(CH<sub>3</sub>)·CO<sub>2</sub>H (?). It is found in different mosses of the varieties *Rocella* and *Lecanora*. Boiling water converts it into orsellinic acid.

*Erythrin*, C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>22</sub>O<sub>10</sub> + 1½H<sub>2</sub>O, Erythrinic Acid, is an ether-derivative of di-orsellinic acid and erythrite. It occurs in the lichen *Rocella fuciformis*, which is applied in the manufacture of archil, and is extracted from it by means of milk of lime. When it is boiled with water it breaks up into orsellinic acid and—

*Picro-erythrin*, C<sub>12</sub>H<sub>16</sub>O<sub>7</sub> + H<sub>2</sub>O, which, boiled with baryta-water, yields erythrite, acin, and carbon dioxide:

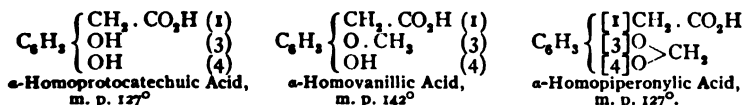


*Evernic Acid*, C<sub>9</sub>H<sub>10</sub>O<sub>4</sub> = (HO)<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H (?), is produced, together with orsellinic acid, on boiling *evernic acid* (from *Evernia prunastris*) with baryta. It melts at 157°, and is colored violet by ferric chloride.

*Dioxydurylic Acid*, pseudocumene hydroquinone carboxylic acid, (HO)<sub>2</sub>[2,5]C<sub>6</sub>[3,4,6](CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H, melts at 210° when rapidly heated, and results from the reduction of *Durylic Acid Quinone*, pseudocumene quinone carboxylic acid, O<sub>2</sub>[2,5]C<sub>6</sub>[3,4,6](CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H, which decomposes at 130°, and is obtained by the action of ferric chloride upon a hydrochloric acid solution of diamidodurylic acid (A. 237, 11).

**Dioxyphenyl-fatty Acids.**—Certain dioxyphenylacetic acids and dioxyphenylpropionic acids in this group are interesting.

*α-Homoprotocatechuic Acid* and its ether-acids have their side-groups occupying the same positions as those of protocatechuic acid and its ether-acids:

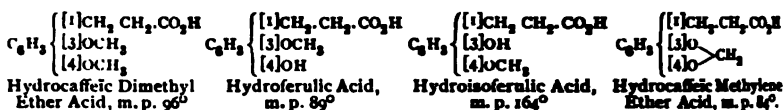


The acet-*α*-homovanillic acid and *α*-homopiperonylic acid result in the moderated oxidation of acetugenol (see this) and safrol (see this) with KMnO<sub>4</sub>. The former melts at 140° and is converted by caustic soda into *α*-homovanillic acid, which hydrochloric acid, at 180°, changes to *α*-homoprotocatechuic acid (B. 10, 207; 24, 2882).

**Symmetrical Dioxyphenyl-acetic Acid**, (HO)<sub>2</sub>[3,5]C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub>[1]CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H + H<sub>2</sub>O, melts at 54°.

The triethyl ester, obtained from the dicarboxylic acid derived from this acid, is produced by the condensation of acetone dicarboxylic ester with sodium. It melts at 98° and yields dioxyphenyl-acetic acid upon saponification. It yields orcin when its silver salt is heated.

**Hydrocaffelic Acid**, or *β*-3,4-dioxyphenylpropionic acid, corresponds, like *α*-homoprotocatechuic acid, with the same arrangement of the substituting groups as in protocatechuic acid, to—



Hydrocaffeic acid itself and its ether-acids are formed from the corresponding [3,4]-dioxycinnamic or caffeic acid, and their derivatives, ferulic and isoferulic acids, by reduction with sodium amalgam (B. 11, 650; 13, 758). The methylene ether-acid is also produced by oxidizing  $\beta$ -hydropiperic acid (see this) (B. 20, 421). Ferric chloride colors hydrocaffeic acid the same as it does protocatechuic acid (p. 227).

Hydro-umbelllic Acid,  $\beta$ -2,4-dioxyphenylpropionic acid,  $(\text{HO})_2[2,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , decomposes at  $110^\circ$ . It is obtained from umbelliferon, the  $\delta$ -lactone of [2,4]-dioxycinnamic acid, by the action of sodium amalgam. Ferric chloride colors it green.

Trioxybenzoic acids,  $(\text{HO})_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ . Three of the six possible isomerides are known. The most important is—

**Gallic Acid**,  $(\text{HO})_3[3,4,5]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ . It melts and decomposes about  $220^\circ$  into  $\text{CO}_2$  and pyrogallol. It occurs free in tea, in the fruit of *Cesalpina coriaria* (Divi-divi), in mangoes, and in various other plants. It is obtained from the ordinary tannic acid (tannin) by boiling it with dilute acids. It is prepared artificially from brom- $\beta$ -m-dioxybenzoic acid and brom-protocatechuic acid when fused with potassium hydroxide.

Gallic acid crystallizes in fine, silky needles. It dissolves with difficulty in cold water, but readily in hot water, alcohol, and ether. It has a faintly acid, astringent taste. It reduces both gold and silver salts (hence its application in photography). Ferric chloride throws down a blackish-blue precipitate in its solutions.

The solutions of its alkali salts absorb oxygen when exposed to the air, and, in consequence, become brown in color.

*Rufgallic Acid*, a derivative of anthracene (see this), is obtained by heating gallic acid with sulphuric acid.

Oxidizing agents, such as arsenic acid and iodine, convert gallic into *Ellagic Acid*, probably a fluorene derivative.

In alkaline solution gallic acid is converted into *galloflavin* (see this), a yellow dye of the xanthone group. Hydrochloric acid and potassium chlorate decompose the acid into isotrichlorglyceric acid or trichlorpyroracemic acid (II, 45).

*Basic Bismuth Gallate*,  $(\text{HO})_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{Bi}(\text{OH})_3$ , under the name *dermatol*, is applied as an odorless drying antiseptic.

*Ethyl Gallic Ester*,  $(\text{HO})_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $141^\circ$ , when anhydrous. *Tri-methyl- and triethyl gallic ether-acids*,  $(\text{R}'\text{O})_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melt at  $168^\circ$  and  $112^\circ$ . *Methylene methyl gallic ether-acid*, *myristicinic acid*,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})(\text{CH}_2\text{O})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at  $130$ – $135^\circ$  (B. 24, 3821) when it is anhydrous. *Triacetyl Gallic Acid* melts with decomposition at  $170^\circ$ . *Gallic Acid Anilide*, Gallanol, has been used in medicine. This is true also of *dibromgallic acid*, or *gallobromol*, melting at  $140^\circ$ .

**Pyrogallol-carboxylic Acid**,  $(\text{HO})_3[2,3,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H} + \frac{1}{2}\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , is prepared by heating pyrogallol with potassium bicarbonate (B. 18, 3205). It decomposes at  $195$ – $200^\circ$ , but sublimes without decomposition in a current of carbon dioxide. Ferric chloride colors it violet. *Triethyl-pyrogallol-carboxylic Acid*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{O} \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$  melts at  $105^\circ$ . It results in the oxidation of triethyldaphnetic acid (see this).

**Phloroglucin Carboxylic Acid**,  $(\text{HO})_3[2,4,6]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ , decompose even at  $100^\circ$ , also when boiled with water, into carbon dioxide and phloroglucin, from which it is obtained by boiling with a potassium carbonate solution (B. 18, 1323).

*Triethyloxyhydroquinone Ether-acid*,  $(C_2H_5O)_3[2,4,5]C_6H_2CO_2H$ , melting at  $134^\circ$ , results upon treating  $\alpha$ - or  $\beta$ -æsculetine triethyl ether-acid with potassium permanganate (B. 16, 2113).

*Asaronic Acid* and *Syringic Acid* (p. 220) are methyl ether-acids, derived from tri-oxybenzoic acids.

*Iridic Acid*,  $\alpha$ -homodimethyl gallic ether-acid,  $(CH_3O)_3(HO)[3,4,5]C_6H_2CH_2CO_2H$ , melting at  $118^\circ$ , is produced along with formic acid and iretol when irigenine is decomposed with baryta-water (B. 26, 2015).

**Addendum: Tannic Acids.**—The tannins or tannic acids are substances widely disseminated in the vegetable kingdom. They are soluble in water, possess an acid, astringent taste, are colored dark blue or green (ink) by ferrous salts, precipitate gelatine, and enter into combination (leather) with animal hides (gelatine). Hence they are employed in the manufacture of leather, and for the preparation of ink. They are precipitated from their aqueous solutions by neutral acetate of lead.

Some tannic acids appear to be glucosides of gallic acid—*i. e.*, ethereal compounds of the same with various sugars. They decompose into gallic acid and grape sugar upon boiling with dilute acids. Others contain phloroglucin instead of grape sugar. Common tannic acid, tannin, appears to be, at least in a pure state, not a glucoside but a digallic acid.

When the tannic acids are fused with potassium hydroxide they yield mostly protocatechuic acid and phloroglucin.

**Tannic Acid, Tannin, Digallic Acid**,  $C_{14}H_{10}O_9 + 2H_2O$ , occurs in large quantity (upward of 50 per cent.), in gall-nuts (pathological concretions upon the different oak species, *Quercus infectoria*, produced by the sting of insects); in sumach (*Rhus coriaria*), in tea, and in other plants. It is prepared artificially by heating gallic acid with phosphorus oxychloride to  $130^\circ$ , or by boiling with dilute arsenic acid. Conversely, it passes, on boiling with dilute acids or alkalis, into gallic acid:



Pure tannin must, therefore, be considered a digallic acid (B. 17, 1478).

Tannin is best obtained from gall-nuts. The latter are finely divided and extracted with ether and alcohol. The solution separates into two layers, the lower of which is aqueous and contains tannin chiefly, and this is obtained by evaporation.

Pure tannic acid is a colorless, shining, amorphous mass, very soluble in water, slightly in alcohol, and almost insoluble in ether. Many salts—*e. g.*, sodium chloride—precipitate it from its aqueous solutions, and it can also be removed from the latter by shaking with acetic ether. It reacts acid and is colored dark blue by ferric chloride (ink); gelatine precipitates it. Quantitative methods of estimating tannin are based on this behavior.

The *penta-acetate*,  $C_{11}O_5(C_2H_3O)_5O_9$ , heated to  $210^\circ$ , decomposes with formation of pyrogallol (p. 164).

*Gallyl-gallic Acid*,  $C_{14}H_{10}O_9$ , a keto-tannic acid, forms an oxime and phenylhydrazone. See B. 22, R. 754; 23, R. 24.

The other tannic acids found in plants have been but little investigated; we may mention—

**Kino-tannin**, which constitutes the chief ingredient of kino, the dried juice of *Pterocarpus erinaceus* and *Coccoloba uvifera*. Its solution is colored green by ferric salts. It yields phloroglucin on fusion with potassium hydroxide.

**Catechu-Tannin** occurs in catechin, the extract of *Mimosa Catechu*. Ferric salts color it a dirty green (p. 227). **Catechin** or **Catechinic Acid**,  $C_{15}H_{10}O_6 + 5H_2O$ , is also present in catechu. It crystallizes in shining needles.

**Moringa-Tannin**,  $C_{13}H_{10}O_8 + H_2O$ , **Maclurin**, is found in yellow wood (*Morus tinctoria*), from which it may be extracted (along with morin) with hot water. When the solution cools morin separates out; maclurin is precipitated from the concentrated liquid by hydrochloric acid, in the form of a yellow crystalline powder, soluble in water and alcohol. Ferric salts impart a greenish-black color to its solutions. When fused with caustic potash it yields protocatechuic acid and phloroglucin. It forms pentacydil derivatives (Ch. C. 1897, 466).

**Morin**,  $C_{15}H_{10}O_6 + 2H_2O$ , decomposes into phloroglucin and resorcin. Nitric acid oxidizes it to  $\beta$ -resorcylic acid. Consult B. 29, R. 646, for its constitution.

The **Tannin of Coffee**,  $C_{20}H_{18}O_{11}$ , occurs in coffee beans and Paraguay tea. Gelatine does not precipitate its solutions. Ferric chloride gives them a green color. It decomposes into caffeic acid (see this) and sugar when boiled with potassium hydroxide. Protocatechuic acid is produced when it is fused with potassium hydroxide.

The **Tannin of Oak** is found in the bark (together with gallic acid, ellagic acid, quercite). It has the formula  $C_{19}H_{16}O_{10}$ , and is a red powder, not very soluble in cold water, but more readily in acetic ether. Ferric chloride colors its solution dark blue. Boiling, dilute sulphuric acid converts it into the so-called *oak-red* (phlobaphene),  $C_{17}H_{12}O_8$  (?).

The **Tannin** found in the quinine barks is combined with the quinia-alkaloids. It closely resembles ordinary tannic acid, but is colored green by ferric salts. When boiled with dilute acids it breaks up into sugar and *quina-red*, an amorphous brown substance, yielding protocatechuic acid and acetic acid on fusion with potassium hydroxide.

## 2. POLYHYDRIC AROMATIC ALCOHOLS, IN WHICH ONLY ONE HYDROXYL IS PRESENT IN EACH SIDE-CHAIN, AND THEIR OXIDATION PRODUCTS.

### 1. DI- AND TRIHYDRIC AROMATIC ALCOHOLS.

**Xylylene Alcohols**,  $C_6H_4(CH_2OH)_2$ .—The three isomerides are obtained from the three corresponding xylylene chlorides or bromides by boiling with a soda solution. The *ortho* (1,2), called **Phthalyl alcohol**, is obtained also from phthalic acid chloride by reduction in glacial acetic acid with a large excess of sodium amalgam (B. 12, 646).

1,2-**Phthalyl Alcohol** melts at 62°; dichloride melts at 55°; the dibromide melts at 95°.

1,3-**Xylylene Alcohol** melts at 46°; dichloride melts at 34°; the dibromide melts at 77°.

1,4-**Xylylene Alcohol** melts at 112°; dichloride melts at 100°; the dibromide melts at 143°.

The three chlorides are formed when the xylenes are heated to 150° with  $PCl_5$  (B. 19, R. 24). The bromides are produced when bromine acts upon boiling xylenes (B. 18, 1281), or upon the latter in sunlight (B. 18, 1278). **Tetrachlorxylylene Oxide**,  $C_6Cl_4(CH_2)_2O$ , melts at 218° (A. 238, 331). **o-Xylylene Sulphide**,  $C_6H_4(CH_2)_2S$  (B. 17, 1824).

**o-Xylylendiamine**,  $C_6H_4[1,2](CH_2NH_2)_2$ , is a liquid. It results when potassium phthalimide acts upon o-xylylene bromide (B. 21, 578), as well as by the reduction of phthalazine (p. 233). Upon heating, its chloride yields:

**o-Xylylenimine**, dihydroisindol,  $C_8H_8(CH_2)_2NH$ , boiling at 213°. It also results in the reduction of chlorophthalazine (B. 26, 2212).

**Pseudocumenyl Glycol**,  $CH_3[1]C_6H_3[2,4](CH_2OH)_2$ , melts at 77° (B. 19, 867).

**Mesitylene Glycol**,  $CH_3[1]C_6H_3[3,5](CH_2OH)_2$ , boils at 190° (20 mm.).

$\omega$ -**Diamidomesitylene**,  $CH_3 \cdot C_6H_2(CH_2NH_2)_2$ , boils at 268° (B. 25, 3017).

*Mesitylene Glycerol*, *Mesicerine*,  $C_6H_3[1,3,5](CH_2OH)_3$ , is a thick liquid (B. 16, 2509).

*p-Di- $\alpha$ -oxethyl Benzene*,  $C_6H_4[CH(OH)CH_3]_2$ , is a liquid obtained from *p*-diacetyl benzene (B. 27, 2527).

The dihydric aromatic alcohols with the hydroxyl groups attached to two side-chains give rise to nine classes of oxidation-products, just as in the case of the aliphatic glycols (1, 290).

### 2. ALDEHYDE ALCOHOLS.

In this connection mention may be made of *hydrophthalide*,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]CH_2 \\ [2]CH \end{smallmatrix} \right\} \begin{smallmatrix} \overline{O} \\ \overline{OH} \end{smallmatrix}$ , the reduction product of phthalide. It is a syrup, soluble in water. *Dimethylhydrophthalide*,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]C(CH_3) \\ [2]CH(OH) \end{smallmatrix} \right\} >O$ , the reduction-product of dimethylphthalide, melts at  $89^\circ$  (A. 248, 61).

### 3. AROMATIC DIALDEHYDES.

*Phthalic Acid Aldehydes*,  $C_6H_4(CHO)_2$ , corresponding to the three phthalic acids are obtained, like benzaldehyde from benzal chloride, by heating the xylene tetrachlorides with water. *o*-Xylylene tetrachloride, or, better, *o*-xylylene tetrabromide and hydrazine yield *phthalazine*,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} CH : N \\ CH : N \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$  (B. 28, 1830).

*o*-Phthalaldehyde melts at  $52^\circ$ ; the *dioxime* melts at  $245^\circ$  (B. 20, 509).

*Isophthalaldehyde* melts at  $89^\circ$ ; the *dioxime* melts at  $180^\circ$  (B. 20, 2005).

*Terephthalaldehyde* melts at  $114^\circ$ ; the *dioxime* melts at  $200^\circ$  (B. 16, 2995).

The *o*-, *m*-, and *p*-xylylene tetrachlorides,  $C_6H_4(CHCl_2)_2$ , corresponding to the aldehydes, are prepared by heating the three xylenes with  $PCl_5$  to  $150$ – $190^\circ$ .

The *o*-body melts at  $89^\circ$  and boils at  $273^\circ$ .

The *m*-body boils at  $273^\circ$ , and the *p*-compound melts at  $93^\circ$ .

*o*-Tetrabrom-*o*-xylene melts at  $116^\circ$  (B. 28, 1830).

Oxydialdehydes are produced together with and from the oxymonaldehydes by means of Reimer's reaction (p. 218).

*Thymodialdehyde*,  $HO \cdot C_6H(CH_3)(C_6H_7)(CHO)_2$ , melts at  $79^\circ$  (B. 16, 2104).

*Resorcindialdehyde*,  $(HO)_2 \cdot C_6H_3(CHO)_2$ , melts at  $127^\circ$  (B. 10, 2212).

*$\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Orcendialdehydes*,  $(HO)_2 \cdot C_6H(CH_3)(CHO)_2$ , melt at  $118^\circ$  and  $168^\circ$  (B. 12, 1003).

*$\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Oxyisophthalaldehyde*,  $(HO)[4]C_6H_3(CHO)_2$  and  $HO[2]C_6H_3(CHO)_2$ , melt at  $108^\circ$  and  $88^\circ$  (B. 15, 2022).

### 4. DI- AND TRIKETONES.

Only one acidyl group can be introduced into benzene even by means of the aluminium chloride synthesis.

*p*-Diacetylbenzene,  $C_6H_4[1,4](COCH_3)_2$ , melting at  $114^\circ$ , is formed by the action of dilute sulphuric acid upon terephthalyl dimalonate ester (B. 27, 2527). *Diethyl Terephthalyl*,  $C_6H_4(COC_2H_5)_2$  (B. 19, 1850). *Triacetyl Benzene*,  $C_6H_3[1,3,5](COCH_3)_3$ , melting at  $163^\circ$ , is formed by the benzene ring formation from formyl acetone (1, 319; 11, 42). In the benzene homologues containing methyl-groups in the meta-positions it is an easy matter, aided by  $Al_2Cl_6$ , to introduce acetyl residues between every two such methyl-groups. Thus, mesitylene, durene, and isodurene have given:

*Diacetyl Mesitylene*,  $C_6H(CH_3)_3(COCH_3)_2$ , melting at  $46^\circ$  and boiling at  $310^\circ$ ; *diacetyl durene*, melting at  $178^\circ$  and boiling at  $323$ – $326^\circ$ , and *diacetyl isodurene*, melting at  $121^\circ$  and boiling at  $312$ – $317^\circ$  (B. 28, 3213; 29, 1413).

### 5. ALCOHOL CARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

**Oxymethylbenzoic Acids, Carbinolbenzoic Acids.**—There are three possible isomerides, and all of them have been prepared. They are *isomeric with mandelic acid* and the oxytoluic acids. *o*-Oxymethyl-

benzoic acid passes quite readily into the corresponding  $\gamma$ -lactone, *phthalide*. Phthalide and meconine are the first lactones with which organic chemistry was enriched.

**o-Oxymethylbenzoic Acid, Benzylalcohol-o-carboxylic acid,**

$C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CO_2H \\ [2]CH_2OH \end{array} \right.$ , melts at  $120^\circ$ , loses water and becomes phthalide, from which it is obtained by dissolving in caustic alkali and then precipitating with mineral acids.

**Phthalide, o-Oxymethylbenzoic Acid Lactone,**  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CO \\ [2]CH_2 \end{array} \right. >O$ , melting at  $83^\circ$  and boiling at  $290^\circ$ , was first made from o-phthalic acid. It is formed (1) by heating o-oxymethylbenzoic acid or by allowing it to stand in contact with water (B. 25, 524); (2) by the reduction of phthalide chloride with zinc and hydrochloric acid (B. 10, 1445); (3) by the reduction of phthalic anhydride in acetic acid solution with zinc-dust (B. 17, 2178); (4) by the action of bromine vapor upon orthotoluic acid at  $130$ – $140^\circ$ ; (5) from xylylene dichloride upon boiling with water and lead nitrate; (6) by decomposing nitrosophthalimidine obtained from phthalimide with caustic potash (A. 247, 291); or (7) by treating o-cyanbenzyl chloride in glacial acetic acid with hydrochloric acid at  $100^\circ$  (B. 25, 3021).

It is reduced to orthotoluic acid on boiling with hydriodic acid. Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to phthalic acid. See also phthalaldehydic acid (p. 236), phthalic acid and o-cyan-o-toluic acid (p. 244). Phenylhydrazine adds itself to phthalide (B. 26, 1273).

Numerous derivatives have been obtained from o-oxymethylbenzoic acid, some of which, like the acid itself, change over to heterocyclic compounds.

**o-Chlormethylbenzoic Acid,**  $Cl \cdot CH_2[2]C_6H_4CO_2H$ . The free acid is not known. Its *ethyl ester* results from the action of alcohol upon its chloride.

It boils at  $141^\circ$  (12 mm.), and also without decomposition at  $245^\circ$  (760 mm.).

**o-Chlormethyl Benzoyl Chloride, Phthalide Chloride,**  $ClCH_2[2]C_6H_4 \cdot COCl$ , boiling at  $135^\circ$  (12 mm.), results when  $PCl_5$  acts upon phthalide at  $55$ – $60^\circ$ .

**o-Chlormethylbenzamide,**  $ClCH_2[2]C_6H_4 \cdot CONH_2$ , melts with decomposition at  $190^\circ$  (see pseudophthalimidine). It is produced on conducting dry ammonia into an ethereal solution of phthalide chloride solution, and by the action of sulphuric acid upon its nitrile.

**o-Chlormethyl Benzanilide,**  $Cl \cdot CH_2[2]C_6H_4CONHC_6H_5$ , melts at  $115^\circ$ .

**o-Chlormethyl Benzonitrile, o-Cyanbenzyl Chloride,**  $Cl \cdot CH_2[2]C_6H_4CN$ , melting at  $252^\circ$ , is formed upon conducting chlorine into boiling o-tolunitrile (p. 203) (B. 20, 2222). The corresponding *o-Cyanbenzyl alcohol* is known only in its ethers (B. 25, 3018).

Phthalide yields the base **Phthalimidine**,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CO \\ [2]CH_2 \end{array} \right. >NH$ , when it is heated in an atmosphere of ammonia. It can also be very readily obtained by reducing phthalimide with tin and hydrochloric acid (A. 247, 291); from o-cyanbenzylamine with nitrous acid, and from phthalide chloride by the action of alcohol and ammonia. It melts at  $150^\circ$  and boils at  $337^\circ$ .

**Nitrosophthalimidine,**  $C_6H_4ON \cdot NO$ , melts at  $156^\circ$ . **Pseudophthalimidine,**  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]C \text{---} NH \\ [2]CH_2 \text{---} O \end{array} \right.$ , is an oil. In contact with water it is resolved into phthalide and ammonia. Its hydrochloride is formed when o-chlormethyl-benzamide is heated to  $130$ – $140^\circ$ .

**Phthalide Anil, Phenylphthalimidine,**  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CO \\ [2]CH_2 \end{array} \right. >NC_6H_5$ , melting at  $160^\circ$ ,

results on heating phthalide and aniline to 200–220°, upon reducing phthalanil with tin and hydrochloric acid, and by distilling o-chlormethylbenzanilide under diminished pressure. o-Cyanbenzylamine,  $\text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CN}$ , is a colorless oil, which becomes crystalline. It is formed when o-cyanbenzyl chloride acts upon potassium phthalimide (B. 20, 2233).

**Thiophthalide**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]\text{CO} \\ [2]\text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > \text{S}$ , melts at 60° (A. 257, 298), and—

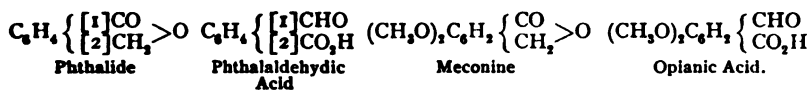
**Selenophthalide**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]\text{CO} \\ [2]\text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > \text{Se}$ , melts at 58° (B. 24, 2596). Phthalides, substituted in the benzene nucleus, are also known; they have been mostly obtained from substituted o-phthalic acids. Mention may be made of:

**p-Nitrophthalide**,  $\text{NO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]\text{CO} \\ [2]\text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > \text{O}$ , melting at 135°. It is produced when chromic acid and glacial acetic acid act upon o-nitronaphthalene (A. 202, 219).

**p-Oxyphthalide**,  $\text{HO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]\text{CO} \\ [2]\text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > \text{O}$ , melting at 222° (A. 233, 235), is obtained from p-oxy-o-phthalic acid.

**Meconine**, 5,6-Dimethoxyphthalide,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2[5,6]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]\text{CO} \\ [2]\text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > \text{O}$ , melting at 102°, is the lactone of meconinic acid, which is only stable in the form of its salts. Its name is derived from the Greek word *μηκων*, signifying *poppy*.

Meconine occurs already formed in opium, where Couerbe discovered it in 1832, and is obtained on boiling narcotine with water (Wöhler and Liebig, 1832). It may be formed from opianic acid (p. 237), the corresponding aldehyde acid, just like phthalide from phthalaldehydic acid, by reduction with sodium amalgam and precipitation with acids. It was the first lactone known to chemistry. It dissolves in the alkalis, yielding salts of meconinic acid. In the same manner that phthalimide yields phthalide (p. 234), hemipinimide furnishes  $\psi$ -meconine, and not meconine (B. 20, 883).



**$\psi$ -Meconine**, 3,4-Dimethoxyphthalide,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2[3,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]\text{CO} \\ [2]\text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > \text{O}$ , melts at 132°. It is made from hemipinimide, just as phthalide is formed from phthalimide (B. 20, 884).

**o- $\alpha$ -Oxyethylbenzoic Acid Lactone**, *o-Methylphthalide*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]\text{CO} \\ [2]\text{CH} \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > \text{O}$ , boils at 275°. It is formed in the reduction of acetophenone-o-carboxylic acid (p. 238) with sodium amalgam. Hydriodic acid and phosphorus reduce it to o-ethylbenzoic acid (B. 29, 2533).

**Dimethyl Phthalide**, *o- $\beta$ -oxyisopropylbenzoic acid lactone*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]\text{CO} > \text{O} \\ [2]\text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagdown \text{CH}_3 \end{smallmatrix} \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$ , melting at 67° and boiling at 270°, was made by the action of zinc-dust and methyl iodide upon phthalic anhydride (A. 248, 57).

**m-Oxymethylbenzoic Acid** is only known in the form of its alcohol anhydride,  $\text{O}(\text{CH}_2[3]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{COOH})_2$ , melting at 180°, which is formed from m-cyanbenzyl chloride,  $\text{Cl} \cdot \text{CH}_2[3]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CN}$ , melting at 67° and boiling at 259°, the reaction-product of chlorine upon m-tolunitrile (p. 203).  *$\omega$ -Chlor-m-toluic Acid* melts at 135°, and *m-Benzylamine Carboxylic Acid*,  $\text{NH}_2\text{CH}_2[3]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at 216°.

**p-Oxymethylbenzoic Acid**,  $\text{HO} \cdot \text{CH}_2[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at 181°, is obtained (1) from p-carbinol bromide benzoic acid,  $\text{Br} \cdot \text{CH}_2[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$  (A. 162, 342); (2) by the action of concentrated sodium hydroxide upon terephthalaldehyde (A. 231, 372).

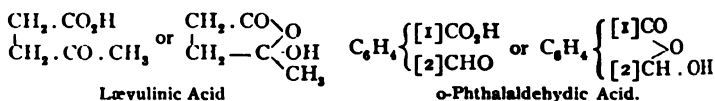
**p-Cyanbenzyl Alcohol**,  $\text{HOCH}_2[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CN}$ , melting at 133°, is prepared from p-cyanbenzyl chloride, melting at 79° and boiling at 263°, by the action of potassium

carbonate. *p*-Chlormethylbenzamide,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CONH}_2$ , melts at  $173^\circ$ . *p*-Chlormethylbenzoic Acid,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at  $199^\circ$  (B. 24, 2416).

*m*- and *p*-Oxyisopropylbenzoic Acids,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $123^\circ$  and  $155^\circ$ , result when *m*-isocymene (A. 275, 159), and cymene, from cumic acid, are oxidized with potassium permanganate. The 3-amido-4-oxyisopropylbenzoic acid, derived from the *p*-acid, changes under the influence of carboxylic anhydrides into *meso-zonic acids* (see these).

## 6. ALDEHYDE ACIDS.

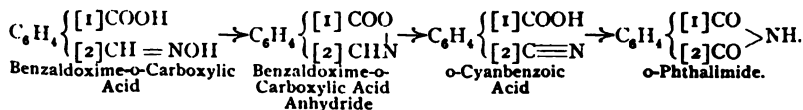
*o*-Phthalaldehydic acid and 5,6-dimethoxy-*o*-phthalaldehydic acid, or *opianic acid*, are the most important representatives of this class. In the phthalaldehyde acids the aldehyde group occupies the  $\gamma$ -position with reference to the carboxyl group. Like the aliphatic  $\gamma$ -ketonic acids (the lævulinic acids, 1, 379), the phthalaldehyde acids form monoacetyl derivatives, whose existence and deportment argue more strongly for the  $\gamma$ -oxylactone formula (Liebermann, B. 19, 765, 2288) than the carboxylic acid formula of such acids:



Opianic acid forms two series of esters. Their difference is due to the fact that the one series represents carboxylic esters, while the other series consists of  $\gamma$ -oxylactone esters.

The deportment of the oxime anhydrides of phthalaldehydic acid and opianic acid is worthy of note. They change to the corresponding phthalimides with an appreciable evolution of heat, when they are gently heated. The phthalaldehydoxime anhydridic acid first changes to *o*-cyanbenzoic acid, which yields phthalimide upon fusion. The determination of the heat of combustion of opian-oximic acid anhydride and hemipinimide has shown that in the conversion of the former into the latter the quantity of heat set free (52.6 Cal. for the gram-molecule) was tenfold greater than the molecular rearrangement-energy of allocinnamic into cinnamic acid, and eight times that observed in the conversion of maleic into fumaric acid (B. 25, 89).

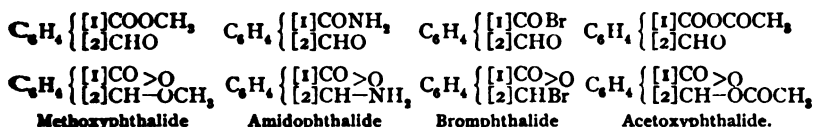
*o*-Phthalaldehydic Acid (formulas above), melting at  $97^\circ$ , is formed (1) upon heating bromphthalide (see below) with water; (2) by heating *o*-pentachlor-*o*-xylene and (3) *o*-cyanbenzal chloride with hydrochloric acid (B. 30, 3197). Hydrazine converts the acid into *phthalazone* (see this)  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]\text{CO} - \text{NH} \\ [2]\text{CH} = \text{N} \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $183^\circ$ ; phenylhydrazine changes it to *phenylphthalazone*, melting at  $105^\circ$  (B. 26, 531), and hydroxylamine, in aqueous solution, into *benzaldoxime-o-carboxylic acid*, melting at  $120^\circ$ ; while in alcoholic solution the product is *benzaldoxime-o-carbonic anhydride*, *benzo-ortho-oxazinone*, melting at  $145^\circ$ . The latter at  $145^\circ$  rearranges itself with evolution of much heat into *o*-cyanbenzoic acid, which at more elevated temperatures becomes *phthalimide* (B. 26, 3264):



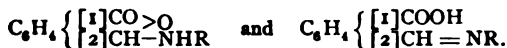
*Methoxyphthalide*, *phthalaldehydic methyl ether*, melting at  $44^\circ$ ; *ethoxyphthalide* melting at  $66^\circ$ , and *amidophthalide*, *amide of phthalaldehydic acid*, are produced by the action of methyl and ethyl alcohol, and of ammonia upon bromphthalide, or the

bromide of phthalaldehydic acid, melting at  $85^{\circ}$ , produced when bromine vapor acts upon phthalide at  $140^{\circ}$ . Aceto-phthalaldehydic acid, *acetoxyphthalide*, is formed by the interaction of acetic anhydride and phthalaldehydic acid.

**Diphthalide Ether**,  $C_8H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{c} [1]CO \\ [2]CH \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{c} \diagup O \\ \diagdown O \end{array} \begin{array}{c} CO[1] \\ CH[2] \end{array}$ , melting at  $221^{\circ}$ , is formed from o-phthalaldehydic acid and bromphthalide. In accordance with the double formulation of phthalaldehydic acid (see above) two views may be held in regard to its various derivatives:



The idea that acetoxyphthalide and the diphthalide ethers are anhydrides of carboxylic acids is very improbable. Phthalaldehydic acid and opianic acid react especially readily, even in the cold, with amines. Water is eliminated. The resulting bodies dissolve in part very easily in soda, and in part with difficulty, hence are in part derived from the amidophthalide and partly from the imidoaldehydic acid formula (B. 29, 174, 2030).



**Phthalaldehyde Chlorides:** Penta-chloride of o-Phthalaldehydic Acid, *n-Pentachlor-o-xylene*,  $CHCl_2[2]C_6H_4CCl_3$ , melting at  $53^{\circ}$ , results when  $PCl_5$  acts upon o-xylene at  $140^{\circ}$ . o-Cyanbenzal Chloride, nitrile of o-phthalaldehyde-chloride acid,  $CHCl_2[2]C_6H_4CN$ , boiling at  $260^{\circ}$ , is formed by the action of chlorine upon boiling o-cyan-toluene (B. 30, 3197).

**Noropianic Acid**, 5,6-dioxyphthalaldehydic acid,  $(HO)_2C_6H_4(CHO)COOH$ , melting at  $171^{\circ}$ , is obtained from opianic acid, together with isovanillin and carbon dioxide, upon heating with hydriodic acid. It is colored bluish-green by ferric chloride.

**Opianic Acid**, 5,6-dimethoxyphthalaldehydic acid,  $(CH_3O)_2[5,6]C_6H_2[2]CHO$ , melting at  $150^{\circ}$ , is produced on oxidizing narcotine with dilute sulphuric acid and  $MnO_2$  (1842, Wöhler and Liebig, A. 44, 126). Meconine is formed in its reduction. When it is evaporated with caustic potash it changes in part to meconine and partly to hemipinic acid, just as benzaldehyde yields benzyl alcohol and benzoic acid. It is oxidized to hemipinic acid (p. 241). Upon heating with hydrochloric acid there results at first: 5-Methoxy-6-oxyphthalaldehydic acid, *methyl noropianic acid*,  $(CH_3O)[5](HO)[6]C_6H_2(CHO)CO_2H$ , melting at  $154^{\circ}$  (B. 30, 691), while under more intense heat isovanillin and  $CO_2$  are the products. Concentrated sulphuric acid converts opianic acid into *rufopin* (see this), a tetraoxyanthraquinone derivative.

Opianic acid behaves toward hydrazine, phenylhydrazine, and hydroxylamine just like phthalaldehydic acid (p. 236). Dimethoxyphthalazone, *opiazone*, melts at  $162^{\circ}$ , when it is anhydrous (B. 27, 1418). Phenylopiazone melts at  $175^{\circ}$  (B. 19, 2518). Opianoximic Acid, melting at  $82^{\circ}$ , becomes, on boiling its aqueous solution, the anhydride of opianoximic acid, melting at  $114^{\circ}$ . When this is heated alone, or when its alcoholic solution is boiled, hemipinimide results as a consequence of rearrangement (B. 24, 3264).

**Esters.**—Opianic acid forms two series of alkyl esters, corresponding to the carboxylic and to the  $\gamma$ -oxylactone formulas of the acid (p. 236). The one series, the true carboxylic esters, are stable in the presence of water. They are formed by the action of alkyl iodides upon the silver salt or of alcohols upon the chloride of opianic acid.

They manifest the typical aldehyde reactions (B. 29, R. 507). The second series, the  $\gamma$ -oxylactones or  $\psi$ -esters, are formed on boiling opianic acid with alcohols: **Methyl Opianic Ester**,  $(CH_3O)_2C_6H_2(CHO)CO_2CH_3$ , melts at  $82^{\circ}$  and boils at  $233^{\circ}$

(51 mm.). The ethyl ester melts at 64°.  $\psi$ -Methyl Opianic Ester,

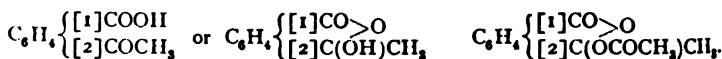
$(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{CH} \\ \text{CO} - \text{OCH}_3 \end{array} \right. \text{O}$ , melts at 103° and boils at 238° (52 mm.). The  $\psi$ -ethyl ester melts at 92° (B. 25, R. 907; 26, R. 700). Acetyl-opianic Acid melts at 120° (B. 19, 2288). [3]-Nitro-opianic Acid, melting at 166°, yields by reduction dimethoxyanthranilcarboxylic acid, *azoopianic acid*, which upon treatment with acetone and sodium hydroxide forms an indigo derivative (compare anthranil, p. 212). Pseudo-opianic Acid,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2[3,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[2](\text{CHO})\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at 121°, is formed from berberal, an oxidation product of the alkaloid *berberine* (see this), when it is boiled with dilute sulphuric acid. Amidoethylpiperonylcarboxylic anhydride (B. 24, R. 158) is formed simultaneously. The *oxime*, melting at 124°, is rearranged upon heating into hemipinimide (B. 24, 3266).

m-Aldehyde-benzoic Acid, *Isophthalaldehydic acid*,  $\text{CHO}[3]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at 165°. m-Cyanbenzaldehyde melts at 80°. m-Cyanbenzal Chloride boils at 274° (B. 24, 2416). p-Aldehyde-benzoic Acid, *Terephthalaldehydic Acid*,  $\text{CHO}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at 285°. p-Cyanbenzaldehyde melts at 97°. p-Cyanbenzal Chloride boils at 275° (B. 24, 2422).

Mono- and dioxyaldehyde-acids have been obtained from mono- and dioxyarboxylic acids by means of chloroform and caustic alkali (B. 12, 1334; 16, 2182).

#### 7. KETONE CARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

o-Acetophenone carboxylic acid is the most important of the aromatic monocarboxylic acids with keto- and carboxyl-groups in different side-chains. In it the  $\gamma$ -position imparts to the keto- and carboxyl groups reactions similar to those manifested by o-phthalaldehydic acid (p. 236). Hence in addition to the carboxylic acid formula we must also consider the  $\gamma$ -oxylactone formula for o-acetophenone carboxylic acid. Its acetyl compound must be viewed as acetyl- $\gamma$ -oxylactone:

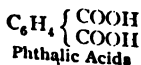


o-Acetophenone Carboxylic Acid, *o-Acetobenzoic Acid*, melting at 115°, is isomeric with benzoyl acetic acid (see this) and tolylglyoxylic acid (see this). It has a sweet taste, and is formed on boiling benzoyl aceto-o-carboxylic acid with water (B. 26, 705; 29, 2533). The *acetyl compound* melts at 70° (B. 14, 921). Hydrazine converts it into *methylphthalazone*, melting at 222° and boiling at 247° (B. 26, 705). With phenylhydrazine it yields *methyl-n-phenylphthalazone*, melting at 102° (B. 18, 803). Its ethyl ester and hydroxylamine form an *oxime anhydride*, melting at 158° (B. 16, 1995).

Various homologous o-acidylbenzoic acids have been obtained by digesting their anhydrides, the alkylidene phthalides, with potassium hydroxide. These anhydrides are produced in the condensation of phthalic anhydride and fatty acids, when water and carbon dioxide are eliminated: o-butyrophenone carboxylic acid and o-isovalerophenone carboxylic acid melt at 89° and 88° (B. 29, 1437).

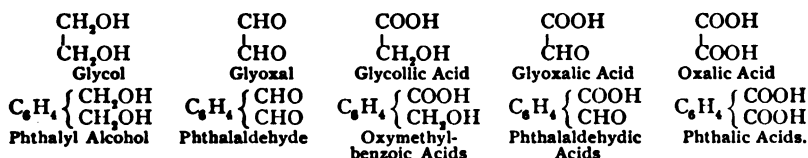
p-Acetophenone Carboxylic Acid melts at 200°. It results from the oxidation of p- $\beta$ -oxyisopropylbenzoic acid (A. 219, 260). p-Cyanacetophenone, melting at 60°, is made from p-amido-acetophenone (B. 20, 2955).

**Polycarboxylic Acids.**—Three varieties are to be distinguished in each group of these acids: those in which all the carboxyl groups are directly joined to the benzene nucleus; those in which these groups are in part joined to the nucleus and are in part present in the side-chains; and, lastly, those in which all of the carboxyl groups are contained in the side-chains—*e. g.*:



8. DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

(a) **Phthalic Acids** are the final oxidation products of all benzene derivatives in which two hydrogen atoms of the benzene nucleus have been replaced by side-chains. Hence, they are of importance in determining the position of these two side-groups in the benzene nucleus (p. 35). Their hydrogen addition products, the *hydrophthalic acids*, are also very important compounds from a theoretical standpoint. Again, o-phthalic acid is distinguished from the m- and p-bodies by its ability to form an anhydride and other cyclic derivatives. In addition to the dicarboxyl formula, the  $\gamma$ -dioxylactone formula has been taken into consideration for this acid. It is applied technically in the manufacture of phthalein dye-substances, which are of great value. The phthalic acids bear the same relation to the phthalyl alcohols, the phthalaldehydes, oxymethylbenzoic acids, and phthalaldehydic acids that oxalic acid sustains to ethylene glycol, glyoxal, glycollic acid, and glyoxalic acid:



**Phthalic Acid, Benzene - o - dicarboxylic Acid,**  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]\text{COOH} \\ [2]\text{COOH} \end{array} \right.$   
 $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{C(OH)}_2 \\ \text{CO} \end{array} \right. \xrightarrow{\text{O}}$  (A. 269, 155), melts, when rapidly heated, at  $213^\circ$ , decomposing at the same time into the anhydride and water. It is obtained by oxidizing naphthalene and tetrachloronaphthalene with nitric acid. It is made technically in large amounts. It also results on oxidizing o-xylene and o-toluic acid with potassium permanganate, alizarin and purpurin with nitric acid, or with manganese dioxide and sulphuric acid; and in slight amount in the oxidation of benzene and benzoic acid. It cannot be prepared by using chromic acid as an oxidizing agent, since the latter burns it at once to carbon dioxide. It can be synthetically obtained from o-nitrobenzoic acid by converting the latter into o-cyanbenzoic acid and then boiling this with alkalies (p. 241).

**History.**—Laurent first obtained the acid, in 1836, by oxidizing naphthalene tetrachloride. He considered it a naphthalene derivative and named it naphthalinic acid (A. 19, 38). After Marignac had deduced the correct formula,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}_4$  (A. 38, 13), and demonstrated that the acid was not a derivative of naphthalene, Laurent gave it the name phthalic acid (A. 41, 107).

When heated with an excess of calcium hydroxide it yields benzene and  $2\text{CO}_2$ . Only  $1\text{CO}_2$  is split off and calcium benzoate produced if its lime salt be heated to  $330\text{--}350^\circ$  with one molecule of  $\text{Ca(OH)}_2$ .

Sodium amalgam converts phthalic acid into di-, tetra-, and hexa-hydrophthalic acids.

**Esters.**—As the investigation of phthalyl chloride seemed to assign a lactone formula to this body, in which the two chlorine atoms were attached to the same carbon atom, search was made for two series of esters. However, the action of alkyl iodides upon the silver salt, and that of alcohols upon the chloride, produced the same esters (A. 238, 318).

If we disregard intramolecular atom-rearrangement, this behavior would argue for corresponding formulas for the chloride and silver salt. The *methyl ester* boils at 280°, and the *ethyl ester* at 288° (B. 16, 860). These esters condense with acetic ester, acetone, and similar bodies in the presence of sodium ethylate, forming *diketohydrindene* derivatives. The *phenyl ester* melts at 70° (B. 7, 705; 28, 108). The *ethyl ester acid* is a heavy oil.

**Chlorides.**—The chloride of the ethyl ester-acid is a decomposable oil, produced when  $\text{PCl}_5$  acts upon the ethyl ester-acid (B. 20, 1011).

**Phthalyl Chloride**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1] \text{COCl} \\ [2] \text{COCl} \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$  or  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1] \text{CO} \\ [2] \text{CCl}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > \text{O}$ , solidifies at 0° and boils at 275°. It results upon heating the anhydride for several hours with an equimolecular quantity of  $\text{PCl}_5$  at 200° (A. 238, 329). The conversion of phthalyl chloride with glacial acetic acid and sodium amalgam into o-phthalyl alcohol is an argument favoring the sym. formula (p. 232). The unsym. formula is evident from conversion of the chloride by zinc and acetic acid into phthalide (p. 233), diphtalyl,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CO} > \text{O} & \text{O} < \text{CO} \\ \text{C} = & = & \text{C} \end{smallmatrix} \right\} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ , and hydrodiphtalyl, and with benzene and aluminium chloride into phthalophenone or diphenylphthalide.

**Phthalylene Tetrachlorides.**— $\text{PCl}_5$  converts phthalyl chloride into phthalylene tetrachloride, melting at 88°, and phthalylene tetrachloride, melting at 47°. These cannot be changed into one another. Their crystals have been measured. Both yield phthalic acid and have been assigned the formulas  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CCl}_2 \\ \text{COCl} \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$  and  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CCl}_2 \\ \text{CCl}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > \text{O}$ . The formation of the two chlorides is only comprehensible from the unsymmetrical phthalyl chloride formula (B. 19, 1188). The chloride, melting at 88°, is also obtained in the action of  $\text{PCl}_5$  upon phthalide chloride (p. 234). This reaction argues for the unsymmetrical formula, just as well as the conversion into diphenylanthrone (see this) by condensation with benzene by means of  $\text{Al}_2\text{Cl}_6$  or concentrated sulphuric acid (B. 28, R. 772).

**Phthalic Anhydride**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1] \text{CO} \\ [2] \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > \text{O}$ , melting at 128° and boiling at 284°, sublimes readily in long needles. It results upon fusing phthalic acid or digesting it with acetyl chloride (B. 10, 326). Phthalic anhydride yields condensation products as readily as benzaldehyde:

Thus, phthalyl acetic acid is formed on boiling the anhydride with acetic anhydride. It reacts in like manner with malonic ester and acetoacetic ester. At more elevated temperatures it combines with homologous fatty acids, with the elimination of  $\text{CO}_2$ , and the formation of alkylidene phthalides. It condenses with phthalide to diphtalyl (see this). With the phenols it yields the important phthalein dyes (see these), a group of triphenylmethane dyes, comprising certain beautifully fluorescent compounds. Thio-phthalic Anhydride,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CO})_2\text{S}$ , melts at 114° and boils at 284° (B. 17, 1176). Phthalyl Superoxide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CO}_2)_2$ , melts at 133°, giving gas evolution. When heated rapidly to 136° it explodes. It is formed when phthalyl chloride is acted upon with a sodium peroxide solution (B. 27, 1511).

**Phthalamic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1] \text{COOH} \\ [2] \text{CONH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$  or  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1] \text{C}(\text{NH}_2)(\text{OH}) \\ [2] \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > \text{O}$ , melting at 148°, is formed from the anhydride and ammonia, or when baryta-water acts upon phthalimide (B. 19, 1402). **Anilic Acid** melts at 192°. **Phthalic Diamide**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1] \text{CONH}_2 \\ [2] \text{CONH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$  or  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1] \text{C}(\text{NH}_2)_2 \\ [2] \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > \text{O}$ , melts at 140–160°, changing at the same time to phthalimide. It is produced when ammonia acts upon the ester (B. 19, 1399; 21, R. 612; 24, R. 320; 25, R. 911).

**Phthalimide**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1] \text{CO} \\ [2] \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > \text{NH}$  or  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1] \text{C}(=\text{NH}) \\ [2] \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > \text{O}$ , melting at 238°, is obtained:

- By heating phthalic anhydride or chloride in ammonia gas;
- By heating phthalic acid with ammonium sulphocyanide (B. 19, 2283); from phthalamide, and

By the molecular rearrangement of the isomeric o-cyanbenzoic acid (p. 236).

It forms *potassium phthalimide*,  $C_6H_4(CO)_2NK$ , by the action of alcoholic potash.

Salts of the heavy metals can be obtained from it by double decomposition. Potassium phthalimide is readily rearranged or transposed with organic halogen derivatives, consequently it is frequently employed in the preparation of numerous amines (p. 162). While by this means alkylgens yield symmetrical alkylimides of the formula  $C_6H_4(CO)_2NR$ ,—*e. g.*, *s*-methyl- and benzylphthalimide, melting at  $132^\circ$  and  $115^\circ$ ,—unsymmetrical alkylimides of the formula  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} C:(NR) \\ CO \end{smallmatrix} \right\} > O$  are obtained from the interaction of phthalalkylamic acids and acetyl chloride: unsym. *methyl-* and *benzylphthalimide* melt at  $78^\circ$  and  $81^\circ$  (B. 27, R. 737).

Reduction changes phthalimide to phthalimidine (p. 234), while bromine and caustic potash convert it into anthranilic acid (p. 211).

**Phthalanil**,  $C_6H_4(CO)_2NC_6H_5$ , melts at  $203^\circ$ . It is obtained from phthalic acid and aniline; also upon boiling *o*-benzoylbenzoic acid with aniline hydrochloride (B. 26, 1261). **Phthalylphenylhydrazide**,  $C_6H_4(CO)_2(NHNHC_6H_5)_2$ , melts at  $161^\circ$ . **Phthalylhydrazine**,  $C_6H_4(CO)_2(NH)_2$ , from phthalic anhydride and hydrazine hydrate, sublimes at  $200^\circ$ . Phthalimide and hydrazine yield an isomeric phthalhydrazine (B. 28, R. 429; 29, R. 987).

*α*-Phthalylphenylhydrazine,  $C_6H_4(CO)_2N \cdot NHC_6H_5$ , melts at  $178^\circ$ .

*β*-Phthalylphenylhydrazine,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} CONH \\ CONC_6H_5 \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$ , melts at  $210^\circ$  (B. 19, R. 303; 20, R. 255). **Phthalylhydroxamic Acid**,  $C_6H_4C_2O_2NOH$ , melts at  $230^\circ$  (B. 16, 1781; 28, R. 998).

**Nitriles of Phthalic Acid**: *o*-Cyanbenzoic Acid is produced when anthranilic acid is treated with nitrous acid and cuprous cyanide. It rearranges itself, upon the application of heat, into phthalimide (B. 18, 1496; 19, 2283; 25, R. 910). *o*-Cyanbenzoic Acid Ester melts at  $70^\circ$  (B. 19, 1491). *o*-Cyanbenzotrichloride,  $CN[2]C_6H_4CCl_3$ , melting at  $94^\circ$  and boiling at  $280^\circ$ , is obtained from *o*-tolunitrile (B. 20, 3199). *o*-Phthalonitrile,  $C_6H_4[1,2](CN)_2$ , melting at  $141^\circ$ , is obtained from *o*-amidobenzonitrile through the diazo-compound (B. 29, 630).

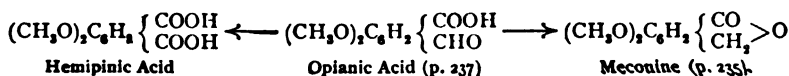
**Substituted *o*-Phthalic Acids**.—Substituted naphthalenes and substituted toluic acids yield substituted phthalic acids when they are oxidized. Tetrachlorophthalic Acid,  $C_6Cl_4(CO_2H)_2$ , melts with anhydride formation at  $250^\circ$ . It is obtained from pentachloronaphthalene (A. 149, 18). Once different ethyl esters were obtained on the one hand from the chloride, and on the other from the silver salt (A. 238, 326); the ordinary ester melting at  $60^\circ$ , and another melting at  $124^\circ$ .

**3- and 4-Iod-*o*-phthalic Acids** melt at  $206^\circ$  and at  $182^\circ$  (B. 29, 1575, R. 792). **Tetraiod-*o*-phthalic Acid** melts at  $324$ – $327^\circ$  (B. 29, 1634). **3- and 4-Nitro-*o*-phthalic Acids** melt at  $219^\circ$  and  $161^\circ$ . **3- and 4-Amido-*o*-phthalic Acids** (A. 208, 245). **Sulpho-*o*-phthalic Acid** is obtained by heating naphthols, naphthylamines, and naphthalene sulphonic acids with concentrated sulphuric acid and mercury to  $220$ – $300^\circ$  (B. 29, 2806).

**Oxy-*o*-phthalic Acids**.—They are recognized by the melting points of their anhydrides, into which they change upon the application of heat.

**3-Oxy-*o*-phthalic Acid Anhydride** melts at  $147^\circ$  (B. 16, 1965). **Dinitro-3-oxy-*o*-phthalic Acid** is *juglonic acid*, which can also be obtained by the action of nitric acid upon juglone, a naphthalene derivative (B. 19, 168). **4-Oxy-*o*-phthalic Acid Anhydride** melts at  $165^\circ$  (A. 233, 232).

**Norhemipinic Acid**, 3,4-Dioxyphthalic Acid Anhydride, melting at  $238^\circ$ , is produced when 3,4-dichloromethoxyphthalic acid anhydride,  $(ClCH_2O)_2C_6H_2(CO)_2O$ , melting at  $156^\circ$ ,—the reaction product of  $PCl_5$  and hemipinic acid at  $180^\circ$ ,—is digested with water. **Hemipinic Anhydride**, 3,4-dimethoxyphthalic anhydride, melts at  $167^\circ$ . The acid is formed, together with opianic acid and meconine, in the oxidation of *marcotine*; also with meconine on fusing opianic acid with caustic potash:



Hemipinic Acid

Opianic Acid (p. 237)

Meconine (p. 235)

Consult B. 29, R. 96, for the hemipinamido-acids and the hemipinimides.

6-Amidohepimipinic Acid is produced on boiling its anhydride with baryta-water. The anhydride is azo-opianic acid or 2,3-dimethoxy-5,6-anthranilcarboxylic acid,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}(\text{CO}_2\text{H}) \begin{Bmatrix} \text{CO} \\ \text{NH} \end{Bmatrix}$  (p. 238).

Normetahemipinic Anhydride melts at 247°. Metahemipinic Anhydride melts at 175°. Metahemipinic Acid or 4,5-Dimethoxy-o-phthalic Acid was obtained in the decomposition of *papaverine* (B. 24, R. 902). *Methylene Metahemipinic Ether Acid*,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_2(\text{COOH})_2$ , is hydrastic acid, formed in the oxidation of *hydrastinine*. The oxidation of *cotarnine* yields cotarnic acid or *methylene methyl-ether-3,4,5-trioxy-o-phthalic acid*,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_3\text{C}_6\text{H}(\text{COOH})_2$ .

### Isophthalic Acid, Benzene-m-dicarboxylic Acid,

$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{Bmatrix} [1]\text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ [3]\text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{Bmatrix}$  melts above 300° and sublimes. It is formed by oxidizing m-xylene (p. 54) and m-toluic acid with a chromic acid mixture; by the further oxidation of m-phthalyl alcohol ethyl ether, obtained from m-xylylene bromide and alcoholic potash (B. 21, 47), and from m-dicyanbenzene and m-cyanbenzoic acid (p. 242). The last two methods permit of nucleus-syntheses from the corresponding amido-compounds, m-phenylenediamine and m-amidobenzoic acid.

The acid is also formed when potassium m-sulpho-benzoate, m-brombenzoate, and benzoate are fused with potassium formate (terephthalic acid is also formed in the last two cases); by the action of the ester of chlorcarbonic acid and sodium amalgam upon m-dibrombenzene; also by heating hydro-pyromellitic and hydro-prehnitic acids (p. 246).

Isophthalic acid is soluble in 460 parts boiling and 7800 parts cold water. It does not yield an anhydride. Reduction changes it to tetrahydroisophthalic acid. The *barium salt*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CO}_2)_2\text{Ba} + 6\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (A. 260, 30), is very soluble in water (distinction between phthalic and terephthalic acids).

The *Dimethyl-isophthalate* melts at 64°.

*Isophthalyl dichloride* melts at 41° and boils at 276°. The *dihydrazide* melts at 220°. Nitrous acid converts it into isophthalazide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CON}_3)_2$ , melting at 56°. Boiling alcohol converts it into m-phenylene-urethane,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NHCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$  (B. 29, R. 987).

m-Cyanbenzoic Acid melts at 217° (B. 20, 524).

m-Dicyanbenzene melts at 158° (B. 17, 1430).

### Substituted Isophthalic Acids.

The 5-chlor-, 5-iod-, and 5-amidophthalic acids can be prepared from 5-nitroisophthalic acid. The nitration and sulphonation of isophthalic acid produce 5-nitroisophthalic acid and 5-sulpho-isophthalic acid (see benzoic acid, pp. 210, 216). The 4-brom-, 4-iod-, 4-amido-, and 4-sulpho-isophthalic acids are obtained by the oxidation of the corresponding toluic acids (B. 24, 3778; 28, 84; 25, 2795; 14, 2278). Tetrachlor-, tetrabrom-, and tetraiod-phthalic acids melt at 181°, 290°, and 310° (B. 29, 1632).

**Homologous Isophthalic Acids.**—There are four theoretically possible methylisophthalic acids, of which *uvitic acid* may be mentioned.

**Uvitic Acid, Mesidic Acid, 5-Methyl Isophthalic Acid**,  $\text{CH}_3[5]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[1,3](\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$ , melting at 287°, is obtained by oxidizing mesitylene with dilute nitric acid. It is formed synthetically by boiling pyroracemic acid with baryta-water (p. 42). This synthesis of uvitic acid from pyroracemic acid is due to the *condensation* of two molecules of pyroracemic acid with one molecule of acetaldehyde. In this reaction a portion of the pyroracemic acid is decomposed. If a mixture of pyroracemic acid and higher fatty aldehydes be used, *homologous alkylisophthalic acids*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{R})(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$ , will result. Thus propyl aldehyde produces 5-ethylisophthalic acid, isobutyric aldehyde yields 5-isopropyl isophthalic acid, etc. (Doebner, B. 23, 377). Chromic acid oxidizes these acids to

trimelic acid (p. 245); distilled with lime, uvic acid at first yields metatoluic acid, then toluene.

**Xylic Acid, 4-Methylisophthalic Acid**,  $\text{CH}_3[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[1,3](\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$ , melting at  $282^\circ$ , is obtained by oxidizing pseudocumene, xylic acid, and isoxylic acid with dilute nitric acid. Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to trimellitic acid.

**2-Mesitylisophthalic Acid**, melting at  $235^\circ$ , results from the reduction of 2,6-dicarboxyphenylglyoxylic acid with phosphorus and HI (B. 29, R. 283).

**Oxyisophthalic Acids** are obtained by the same methods from oxybenzoic acids and aldehyde oxybenzoic acids as the latter are got from phenols and phenol aldehydes. **Amido-** and **sulphocarboxylic acids** also serve as starting-out material (B. 16, 1966; 25, R. 9).

**2-Oxy-, 4-Oxy-, and 5-Oxy-isophthalic Acids** melt at  $243^\circ$ ,  $305^\circ$ , and  $288^\circ$ .

**Oxyuvitic Acids.**—Mention may be made of **4-Oxyuvitic Acid**,  $(\text{CH}_2)_5[5](\text{HO})[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2[1,3](\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$ , produced by the action of chloroform, chloral, or trichloroacetic ester upon sodium acetoacetic ester (A. 222, 249).

**Terephthalic Acid, Benzene-p-dicarboxylic acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1,4](\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$ , sublimes without melting. Isophthalic acid was obtained from m-derivatives of benzene; in a similar manner terephthalic acid is formed from p-derivatives: p-xylene, p-toluic acid, p-dicyanbenzene, p-cyanbenzoic acid, p-dibrombenzene, etc. The best course to pursue in forming terephthalic acid is to oxidize caraway oil (a mixture of cymene and cuminol) with chromic acid, or it may be prepared from p-toluidine (B. 22, 2178).

Terephthalic acid is almost perfectly insoluble in water, alcohol, and ether. When reduced it yields di-, tetra-, and hexahydro-terephthalic acids.

The **barium salt**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}_4\text{Ba} + 4\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , is very sparingly soluble in water. The **methyl ester** melts at  $140^\circ$ .

The **chloride** melts at  $78^\circ$  and boils at  $259^\circ$ . The **amic acid** melts at  $214^\circ$ . The **dihydrazone** melts above  $300^\circ$ . The **diaside**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1,4](\text{CON}_2)_2$ , melts at  $110^\circ$  (B. 29, R. 987).

**p-Cyanbenzoic Acid**,  $\text{CN}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , from p-amidobenzoic acid (pp. 38, 214), melts at  $214^\circ$ .

**p-Dicyanbenzene**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1,4](\text{CN})_2$ , melts at  $215^\circ$ .

**Mononitroterephthalic Acid** melts at  $259^\circ$ .

It and **sulphoterephthalic acid** are produced in the nitration and sulphonation of terephthalic acid. 2,3-, 2,6-, and 2,5-Dinitrophthalic Acids are also known (B. 28, 81). Consult B. 29, 1625, 2833, for tetrachlor-, tetrabrom-, and tetraiodoterephthalic acids.

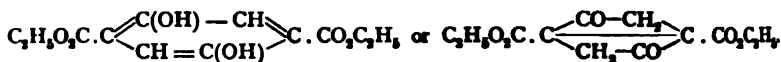
**Alkyl Terephthalic Acids.**—The oxidation of pseudocumene and durene gives rise to 4-methylterephthalic acid, *a-xylic acid*, melting at  $282^\circ$ , and to 2,5-dimethylterephthalic acid,  *$\beta$ -cumidic acid* (B. 19, 2510).

**Oxyterephthalic Acids.**—**Oxyterephthalic acid** has been obtained from nitroterephthalic acid. It sublimes without melting. 2,5-Dioxyterephthalic acid is the most interesting of the three possible dioxyterephthalic acids. Mention is made of it because of its connection with succino-succinic ester. Its **diethyl ester** may be prepared by withdrawing two hydrogen atoms from succino-succinic ester by means of bromine or  $\text{PCl}_5$  (B. 22, 2107), or by the action of sodium ethylate upon dibromacetoacetic ester (A. 219, 78).

**2,5-Dioxyterephthalic Acid**,  $(\text{HO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , crystallizes from alcohol in yellow leaflets. Ferric chloride imparts a deep blue coloration to its solution. When rapidly distilled it decomposes into two molecules of carbon dioxide and hydroquinone.

**2,5-Dioxyterephthalic Ethyl Ester** crystallizes in two distinct forms: at the ordinary temperature in *yellowish-green prisms* or plates; at higher temperatures in *colorless leaflets*. It also sublimes in the latter form. It melts at  $133^\circ$ . In most of its reactions the ester conducts itself like an hydroxyl derivative. It does not combine with hydroxylamine or

phenylhydrazine, and with sodium and alkyl iodides yields dialkyl esters. It, however, does not react with phenylcyanate (p. 89) (B. 23, 259), and shows some analogies with succino-succinic ester. Hence, it is considered a quinone- or diketo-derivative.



Dioxyterephthalic ester, by reduction (boiling with zinc and hydrochloric acid in alcoholic solution), is again changed to succino-succinic ester (B. 19, 432; 22, 2169). A dihydroxamic acid is formed with hydroxylamine hydrochloride; tetrahydroxyterephthalic acid is produced at the same time (B. 22, 1280). The different physical modifications of the ester and analogous compounds, according to Hantzsch, correspond to two desmotropic conditions—the colored variety agreeing with the quinone formula, while the colorless corresponds to the hydroxyl formula (B. 22, 1294). However, the color cannot be regarded as a certain criterion for the distinction of the ketone from the hydroxyl form. Even chemical reactions do not prove that desmotropic forms can be accepted (Nef, B. 23, R. 585; Goldschmidt, B. 23, R. 260).

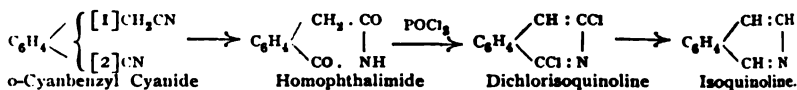
Succino-succinic Acid, whose ester by the removal of hydrogen yields 2,5-dioxyterephthalic ester, will be discussed in connection with the hydro-aromatic compounds.

*Trioxycarboxylic Acids.*—Gallicarboxylic Acid, *Trioxy-o-phthalic Acid*,  $(\text{HO})_3[3,4,5]\text{C}_6\text{H}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$ , melts at  $270^\circ$ , with decomposition. It may be prepared from pyrogallol by heating it to  $130^\circ$  with ammonium carbonate. Pyrogallo-carboxylic acid is formed at the same time (B. 13, 1876).

(b) *Aromatic Dicarboxylic Acids containing  $1\text{CO}_2\text{H}$  in the nucleus and  $1\text{CO}_2\text{H}$  in the side-chain.* The three *o*-homophthalic acids, or phenylacetic carboxylic acids, are known. The *o*-acid readily forms heterocyclic derivatives.

Phenylaceto-*o*-carboxylic Acid, *o-o-homophthalic acid*,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $175^\circ$ , with the elimination of water, may be obtained by fusing gamlodge with caustic potash (B. 19, 1654), and by saponifying cyan-*o*-toluic acid. Its *anhydride* melts at  $141^\circ$ .

*o*-Homophthalimide, melting at  $233^\circ$ , is produced when the ammonium salt is heated, and when acids act upon the dinitrile. In the latter case *o*-cyanphenylacetic acid, produced at first, rearranges itself into homophthalimide, just as *o*-cyanbenzoic acid yields phthalimide (p. 240) (B. 23, 2478). It is rather remarkable that *o*-homophthalimide, when heated with phosphorus oxychloride, yields *dichlorisoquinoline*, which becomes *isoquinoline* when further heated with hydriodic acid (B. 27, 2232, 2492):



Homophthalimide is directly converted into isoquinoline when it is heated with zinc dust.

The hydrogen atoms of the  $\text{CH}_2$ -groups are replaced by two alkyls when homophthalimide is heated with caustic potash and alkyl iodides. *Mono*-alkyl-*o*-benzylcyanides yield monoalkyl homophthalimides, which rearrange themselves in the same manner as homophthalimide into *alkyl isoquinolines* (B. 20, 2499).

*o*-Cyan-*o*-toluic Acid,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$ , melts with decomposition at  $116^\circ$ . Its potassium salt is obtained from phthalide (p. 234) and potassium cyanide (A. 233, 102).

*o*-Cyanbenzyl Cyanide, *o-o-Homophthalonitrile*,  $\text{CN}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$ , melting at  $81^\circ$ , is obtained from *o*-cyanbenzyl chloride (p. 234). Caustic potash and alkylgenes effect the replacement of an hydrogen atom in the methylene group by an alcohol radical (see homophthalimide). Acetyl chloride converts it into  $\psi$ -diacetyl-*o*-cyanbenzyl cyanide,  $\text{CN} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{C}(\text{CN}) : \text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{OCOCH}_3$ , which may be rearranged into 3-methyl-isoquinoline (B. 27, 2232).

Homoisophthalic Acid and homoterephthalic acid melt at  $237^\circ$ . Both sublime. *m*- and *p*-Cyanbenzyl Cyanides melt at  $88^\circ$  and  $100^\circ$  (B. 24, 2416). The *dinitrile*,

the two *nitrilo-* and *amic* acids, the two possible *amido-nitriles*, and the *diamide* of homoterephthalic acid have been prepared (B. 22, 3207; 26, R. 89, 602).

**o-Hydrocinnamic Carboxylic Acid**,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at  $165^\circ$ . It is formed by oxidizing *tetrahydro-β-naphthylamine* with potassium permanganate, and by the reduction of dihydroisocoumarin carboxylic acid (B. 26, 1841), as well as from o-carbonphenyl glyceric acid-δ-lactone (B. 25, 888). It yields α-hydrindone (B. 26, 708) upon dry distillation.

**o-Cyanbenzyl Acetic Ester, Cyanhydrocinnamic Ester**,  $\text{CN}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $98^\circ$ , is produced by the rearrangement of the product resulting from the action of acetoacetic ester or malonic ester and sodium ethylate upon cyanbenzyl chloride (B. 22, 2017). Concentrated hydrochloric acid converts it into α-hydrindone (see this):  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$ .

**Phenylbutyric-o-carboxylic Acid**,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at  $138^\circ$  (B. 18, 3118).

(c) **Aromatic Dicarboxylic Acids**, having both carboxyls in different side-groups.

**o-, m-, and p-Phenylene Diacetic Acids**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$ , melting at  $150^\circ$ ,  $170^\circ$ , and  $244^\circ$ , have been obtained from the xylene cyanides (B. 26, R. 941). o-Phenylene diacetic acid has also been prepared by oxidizing dihydronaphthalene (see this). Its calcium salt yields β-hydrindone upon distillation (see this) (B. 26, 1833).

**o-Phenyleneaceto-propionic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2\text{COOH})[2](\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COOH})$ , melting at  $139^\circ$ , is obtained from β-oxy-α-naphthoic acid by rupture of the ring, effected by sodium and amyl alcohol, just as pimelic acid is formed from salicylic acid (pp. 47, 222). It reverts to β-ketotetrahydronaphthalene when its calcium salt is distilled (B. 28, R. 745).

**o-, m-, and p-Phenylene Dipropionic Acids**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$ , melting at  $161^\circ$ ,  $146^\circ$ , and  $223^\circ$ , are formed from xylene dimalonic acids (B. 19, 436; 21, 37).

### 9. ALDEHYDO-DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

**2-Aldehydo-isophthalic Acid**, melting at  $175^\circ$  to  $176^\circ$ , results from heating 2,6-dicarboxyphenylglyoxylic acid (B. 26, 1767; 30, 695).

**5-Aldehydo-4-oxy- and 5-aldehydo-3-oxyisophthalic acids** are formed from the corresponding oxyisophthalic acids by means of chloroform and caustic potash (B. 11, 793).

### 10. TRICARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

The three isomeric benzene tricarboxylic acids,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_3$ , are known. **Trimelic Acid**, (1,3,5)-*Benzenetricarboxylic Acid*, melts about  $300^\circ$ , and sublimes near  $200^\circ$ . It is formed (1) when mesitylenic and uvitic acids are oxidized with a chromic acid mixture; (2) by heating mellitic acid with glycerol, or hydro- and isohydromellitic acid with sulphuric acid. A synthetic method for its production consists in (3) heating benzene-1,3,5-trisulphonic acid with potassium cyanide and saponifying the resulting cyanide. By the condensation of certain aliphatic substances the acid and its esters have been obtained (1) by polymerizing propiolic acid; (2) by the production of its monomethyl ester through the action of caustic potash upon coumalic acid (B. 24, R. 750); (3) its triethyl ester from formyl acetic ester. Its trimethyl ester melts at  $143^\circ$ . Its triethyl ester melts at  $133^\circ$ .

**Trimellitic Acid**, (1,2,4)-*Benzene tricarboxylic Acid*. This is obtained (together with isophthalic acid) by heating hydropyro-mellitic acid with sulphuric acid, or upon oxidizing xylydic acid with potassium permanganate, also from amidoterephthalic acid (B. 19, 1635). It is prepared most readily (along with isophthalic acid) by oxidizing colophony with nitric acid (A. 172, 97). It melts at  $216^\circ$ , decomposing into water and the anhydride,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{H})(\text{CO})_2\text{O}$ . The latter melts at  $158^\circ$ .

**Hemimellitic Acid**, (1,2,3)-*Benzene tricarboxylic Acid*. This is formed on heating hydromellophanic acid (below) with sulphuric acid, as well as in the oxidation of phenyl-

glyoxyldicarboxylic acid, formed from naphthalic acid by action of  $\text{KMnO}_4$  (B. 29, 283). It melts at  $185^\circ$  and decomposes into phthalic anhydride.

Oxytricarboxylic Acids have been obtained from the sulphotricarboxylic acids: oxytrimelic acid (A. 206, 204); oxytrimellitic acid—see B. 16, 192.

Phloroglucin-tricarboxylic ester and dioxyphenylaceto-dicarboxylic ester, condensation products of sodium malonic ester and sodium acetone dicarboxylic ester, are probably hydroaromatic compounds.

### 11. AROMATIC TETRACARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

The three isomerides are known. Reduction converts them into tetrahydrobenzene tetracarboxylic acids (see these).

**Pyromellitic Acid, 1,2,4,5-Benzene Tetracarboxylic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_4 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ,** melts when anhydrous at  $264^\circ$  and decomposes into water and its anhydride, which is produced when mellitic acid is distilled, or, better, when the sodium salt is subjected to the same treatment with sulphuric acid. The acid is also produced by oxidizing duren and durylic acid with potassium permanganate.

The dianhydride,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\left(\begin{smallmatrix} \text{CO} \\ \text{CO} > \text{O} \end{smallmatrix}\right)_2$ , melts at  $286^\circ$ . The ethyl ester,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_4$ , melts at  $53^\circ$ .

Dinitro- and diamidohydromellitic tetraethyl esters melt at  $130^\circ$  and  $134^\circ$ . Nitric acid oxidizes the diamido-ether to:

**Quinone Tetracarboxylic Ester,  $\text{C}_6(\text{O})_2(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_4$ ,** crystallizing in quinone-yellow needles, melting at  $149^\circ$ . It is odorless, but sublimes quite readily. Zinc reduces it in glacial acetic acid solution to—

**Hydroquinone Tetracarboxylic Ester,  $\text{C}_6(\text{OH})_2(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_4$ ,** crystallizing in bright yellow needles, melting at  $127^\circ$ . In alcoholic solution it is reduced by zinc-dust and hydrochloric acid to p-diketohexamethylene-tetracarboxylic ester (A. 237, 25).

**Prehnitic Acid, (1,2,3,4)-benzene tetracarboxylic acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_4 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ,** melts when anhydrous at  $237^\circ$ , with the formation of an anhydride. It results (together with mellophanic acid and trimesic acid) upon heating hydro- and isohydro-mellitic acid with sulphuric acid, also by oxidizing prehnitol with potassium permanganate (B. 21, 907).

**Mellophanic Acid (1,2,3,5)-benzene tetracarboxylic acid,** melts at  $238^\circ$ , with anhydride formation. It is formed by the oxidation of isodurene with  $\text{KMnO}_4$ ; see prehnitic acid.

### 12. AROMATIC PENTACARBOXYLIC ACID.

**Benzene Pentacarboxylic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_5 + 6\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ,** decomposes when it is melted. It is produced by oxidizing penta-methylbenzene with permanganate (B. 17, K. 376).

### 13. AROMATIC HEXACARBOXYLIC ACID.

**Mellitic Acid,  $\text{C}_6(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_6$ .** When heated it melts and decomposes into water, carbon dioxide, and pyromellitic anhydride.

Honey-stone, found in some lignite beds, is an aluminium salt of mellitic acid, crystallizing in large quadratic pyramids of bright yellow color (B. 10, 566).

An interesting formation of mellitic acid is that whereby pure carbon (graphite, charcoal, etc.) is oxidized with an alkaline solution of potassium permanganate. Another is when the carbon is applied as positive electrode in electrolysis (B. 16, 1209), and also the oxidation of hexamethyl benzene with  $\text{KMnO}_4$ .

As hexamethyl benzene can be synthesized, this latter method of formation would be a synthesis of mellitic acid.

Mellitic acid crystallizes in fine, silky needles, readily soluble in water and alcohol. It is very stable, and is not decomposed by acids, by chlorine, or bromine, even upon boiling. It yields benzene when distilled with lime.

*History.*—Klaproth (1799) discovered mellitic acid by boiling honey-stone for a long period with water, and named it honey-stone acid. In 1870 Baeyer proved that mellitic acid was nothing more than benzene hexacarboxylic acid, in that by heating with lime he obtained benzene and by reduction found hexahydromellitic acid (A. suppl., 7, 1).

*Salts and Esters.*—The barium salt,  $C_6Ba_2O_{12} + 3H_2O$ , is insoluble in water. The methyl ester melts at  $187^\circ$ ; the ethyl ester melts at  $73^\circ$ .

The chloride,  $C_6(COCl)_6$ , melts at  $190^\circ$ .

*Mellimide, Paramide*,  $C_6\left(\begin{smallmatrix} CO \\ CO \end{smallmatrix}\right)NH$ , is formed in the dry distillation of the ammonium salt. It is a white, amorphous powder, insoluble in water and alcohol. Heated to  $200^\circ$  with water, it is converted into the tri-ammonium salt of mellitic acid. The alkalis convert paramide into euchroic acid.

*Euchroic Acid*,  $C_6[(CO)_2NH]_2\left\{\begin{smallmatrix} CO.OH \\ CO.OH \end{smallmatrix}\right.$ , crystallizes in colorless prisms. Heated with water to  $200^\circ$ , it yields mellitic acid. Nascent hydrogen changes euchroic acid to *euchrone*, a dark blue precipitate, which reverts to colorless euchroic acid upon exposure. Euchrone dissolves with a dark red color in alkalis.

### 3. AROMATIC POLYALCOHOLS, CONTAINING MORE THAN ONE HYDROXYL GROUP IN THE SAME SIDE-CHAIN, AND THEIR OXIDATION PRODUCTS.

Of the aromatic polyalcohols, having the hydroxyl groups attached to different carbon atoms of the same side-chain, it is only the glycols and their oxidation products which have been studied in any sense completely. A more detailed classification of the polyhydric alcohols and their oxidation products is therefore unnecessary; the compounds belonging here will, for practical considerations, be included with the glycols and their oxidation products.

The methods of formation as they were applied in the preparation of aliphatic glycols and their oxidation products (1, 289) are more extensively and fully used for the phenyl glycols and their oxidation products than they have been in connection with any of the previously discussed aromatic derivatives.

#### 1. PHENYL GLYCOLS AND PHENYL GLYCEROL.

**Styrolene Alcohol**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CH_2 \cdot OH$ , *Phenyl glycol*, melts at  $67^\circ$ , boils at  $273^\circ$ , and is obtained from styrolene dibromide by the action of a potash solution. Dilute nitric acid oxidizes it to benzoyl carbinol and benzoyl formic acid (A. 216, 293). Two molecules are condensed by dilute sulphuric acid to  $\beta$ -phenyl naphthalene (see this). **Styrolene Dichloride**,  $\alpha, \beta$ -dichlorethyl benzene,  $C_6H_5CHCl \cdot CH_2Cl$ , is liquid, while the dibromide melts at  $60^\circ$ . They result from the addition of halogens to styrene (see this) or phenylethylene.

**Phenyl Methyl Glycol**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CH_3$ , exists in two modifica-

tions,  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , like hydrobenzoin. These are obtained from phenyl dibromopropene (from *n*-propyl benzene). The  $\alpha$ -body melts at  $53^\circ$ , the  $\beta$ - at  $93^\circ$  (B. 17, 709).

**Phenyl Butylene Glycol**,  $C_6H_5CH(OH)CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2(OH)$ , melting at  $75^\circ$ , is obtained by reduction from benzoylpropionic aldehyde (p. 250) and benzoylpropyl alcohol.

**Phenylisopropyl Ethylene Glycol**,  $C_6H_5CH(OH)CH(OH)CH(CH_3)_2$ , melting at  $81^\circ$  and boiling at  $286^\circ$ , results from the reduction of benzaldehyde and isobutylaldehyde.

**Methylene-m,p-dioxybenzyl Glycol**,  $[CH_2O_2][3,4]C_6H_3CH_2CH(OH)CH_2(OH)$ , melting at  $82^\circ$ , and **Methylene-m,p-dioxyphenylethylenemethyl Glycol**,  $(CH_2O_2)[3,4]C_6H_3 \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CH_3$ , melting at  $101^\circ$ , result from the action of  $KMnO_4$  (l. 24, 3488) upon *safrol* and *isosafrol*. The corresponding glycols, melting at  $68^\circ$  and  $88^\circ$ , are obtained from *eugenol* and *isoeugenol* (see these).

**Styricine**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CH_2 \cdot OH$ , a gummy mass, is obtained from styrene bromide and cinnamic alcohol,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CHBr \cdot CHBr \cdot CH_2 \cdot OH$ , with potassium permanganate (B. 24, 3491).

### 2. PHENYLALCOHOL ALDEHYDES.

Just as two molecules of acetaldehyde condense to aldol, so the nitrobenzaldehydes combine with acetaldehyde, under the influence of very dilute sodium hydroxide (2 per cent.) to the corresponding aldols, the nitrophenyl-lactic acid aldehydes,  $NO_2C_6H_4 \cdot CH(OH)CH_2CHO$ , which unite with an additional molecule of acetaldehyde. Dehydrating agents, like acetic anhydride, convert them into the corresponding nitrocinnamic aldehydes (B. 18, 719).

**Phenyltetrose**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(OH)CH \cdot OH \cdot CH(OH) \cdot COH$ , is a colorless syrup resulting from the reduction of phenyltrioxybutyric acid lactone (see this). Its *phenylhydrazone* melts at  $154^\circ$ .

### 3. PHENYL KETOLS.

**Acetophenone Alcohol**, *Benzoyl Carbinol*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot OH$ , crystallizes from water and dilute alcohol in large, brilliant leaflets, which contain water of crystallization, and melt at  $73-74^\circ$ . It crystallizes from ether in shining anhydrous plates, and melts at  $85^\circ$ . It is produced in the oxidation of phenyl glycol, and from its chloride,  $\omega$ -chloracetophenone, by its conversion into acetate and saponification with potassium carbonate (B. 16, 1290).

When distilled it decomposes, with formation of bitter-almond oil. Being a ketone, it forms crystalline compounds with primary alkaline sulphites. Like acetyl carbinol, it reduces a cold ammoniacal silver or copper solution (forming benzaldehyde and benzoic acid), and is oxidized to mandelic acid (p. 251) (B. 14, 2100). Nitric acid oxidizes it to phenylglyoxylic acid. It yields cyanhydrin with  $CNH$ , which then forms  $\alpha$ -phenylglyceric acid, or atroglyceric acid (see this).

**Bismethylbenzoyl Carbinol**,  $C_6H_5C(O \cdot CH_3) \cdot O \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot O \cdot C(OCH_3)C_6H_5$  (?), melting at  $192^\circ$ , is formed from benzoyl carbinol with methyl alcohol and hydrochloric acid (B. 28, 1161).

**Benzoyl Carbinol Acetate**,  $C_6H_5CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot O \cdot COCH_3$ , melts at  $49^\circ$  and boils at  $270^\circ$ . The *benzoate* melts at  $117^\circ$ . The *phenyl-ether* melts at  $72^\circ$ .

**$\omega$ -Chloracetophenone**, *Phenacyl Chloride*, *Benzoyl Carbinol Chloride*,  $C_6H_5CO \cdot CH_2Cl$ , melting at  $59^\circ$  and boiling at  $245^\circ$ , results from the chlorination of boiling acetophenone (B. 10, 1830), as well as from benzene, chloracetyl chloride, and aluminium chloride.

**$\omega$ -Bromacetophenone**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2Br$ , melting at  $50^\circ$ , attacks the mucous membrane quite powerfully. It is obtained from acetophenone and bromine, also by heating dibromatrolactic acid with water (B. 14, 1238). An excess of alcoholic ammonia changes it to *isoindol*—a hydrazine derivative. The acid amides and thiamides change the  $\omega$ -haloid acetophenones into *oxazole* and *thiazole* derivatives (see these).

Gallo-chlor-acetophenone,  $C_6H_4(OH)_2COCH_2Cl$ , and  $\omega$ -bromresacetophenone, containing the hydroxyl group in the ortho-position, part with halogen hydrides, and become *ketocumaran*- or *ketodihydrocumarone* derivatives (B. 30, 299).

$\omega$ -Amidoacetophenone,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH_2$ , is very unstable in a free condition. Separated from its hydrochloride by means of sodium hydroxide, it changes to the base  $C_{10}H_{14}N_2O$ , melting at  $118^\circ$ , which yields *isoindol* in the presence of ammonia. The *hydrochloride*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH_2 \cdot HCl$ , melting at  $183^\circ$ , is formed when the isonitrosoacetophenone is reduced with tin and hydrochloric acid (B. 28, 254). For the action of nitrous acid upon the hydrochloride see B. 26, 1717; 29, R. 298. Potassium cyanate (B. 28, 252) produces phenylacetylene monourein, or phenylimidazolone (see this).  $\omega$ -Acetophenone-anilide, *phenacyl anilide*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot NHC_6H_5$ , melting at  $93^\circ$ , is formed from  $\omega$ -bromacetophenone and aniline (B. 15, 2467), and may be condensed to  $\alpha$ -phenylindol (B. 21, 1071, 2196, 2595).

Benzoylcarbinoloxime melts at  $70^\circ$ . The *phenylhydrazone*, melting at  $112^\circ$ , is converted by phenylhydrazine into an osazone of phenylglyoxal (B. 20, 822).

*o*- and *m*-Nitro- $\omega$ -bromacetophenones melt at  $55^\circ$  and  $96^\circ$  (A. 221, 327).

$\alpha$ -Amidopropiophenone,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CHNH_2 \cdot CH_3$  (B. 22, 3250).

Corresponding to the nitrophenyllactic acid aldehydes we have *o*- and *p*-Nitrophenyllactic acid ketones, melting at  $69^\circ$  and  $58^\circ$ ; these are the condensation products of *o*- and *p*-nitrobenzaldehyde and acetone in the presence of very dilute sodium hydroxide. Boiling water or an excess of sodium hydrate causes the *o*-nitroketone to give up acetic acid and water, changing thereby into *indigo* (B. 16, 1968). See the nitrobenzylidene acetones.

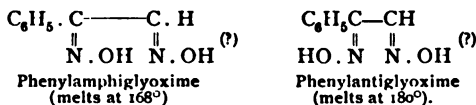
Benzoylbutylcarbinol,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot [CH_2]_3 \cdot CH_2OH$ , melts at  $40^\circ$  (B. 23, R. 500).

#### 4. PHENYLALDEHYDE KETONES.

*$\alpha$ -Ketone Aldehydes.*—Phenyl Glyoxal, *Benzoyl formaldehyde*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH(OH)_2$ , melts at  $73^\circ$ . The anhydrous aldehyde boils at  $142^\circ$  (125 mm.). It has a penetrating odor. It is obtained from its aldolxime, isonitrosoacetophenone, upon boiling the sodium sulphite derivative with dilute sulphuric acid (B. 22, 2557). Alkalies convert it into mandelic acid (p. 251); potassium cyanide condenses it to benzoylformoin, just as it changes benzaldehyde to benzoin. It yields quinoxalines with *o*-diamines.

$\omega$ -Dichloracetophenone,  $C_6H_4 \cdot CO \cdot CHCl_2$ , boils at  $253^\circ$  (B. 10, 531).  $\omega$ -Dibromacetophenone,  $C_6H_4 \cdot CO \cdot CHBr_2$ , melts at  $36^\circ$  (B. 10, 2010; A. 195, 161).  $\omega$ -Dibrom-*p*-iodacetophenone (B. 24, 997).  $\omega$ -Dichlor-*o*-nitroacetophenone melts at  $73^\circ$  (A. 221, 328).  $\omega$ -Dibrom-*o*-, *m*-, and *p*-nitroacetophenones melt at  $85^\circ$ ,  $59^\circ$ , and  $98^\circ$  (B. 20, 2203; 18, 2240; 22, 204).

Isonitrosoacetophenone, *Benzoylformoxime*,  $C_6H_5CO \cdot CH(N.OH)$ , melting at  $127^\circ$ , is obtained from acetophenone (p. 189) (B. 24, 1382; 25, 3459). It forms isoindol (p. 248) by reduction. Phenyl Glyoxime,  $C_6H_5C(NO) \cdot CH(NO)$ , is known in two modifications (compare benzildioximes):



Phenylamphiglyoxime is produced when hydroxylamine acts upon  $\omega$ -dibromacetophenone and isonitrosoacetophenone. When treated in absolute ether with hydrochloric acid gas, it changes to the anti-modification, which reverts to the amphi-modification by recrystallization from indifferent solvents (B. 24, 3497).

$\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Phenylglyoxalphenylhydrazones melt at  $142^\circ$  and  $129^\circ$  (B. 22, 2557).

Phenylglyoxalphenylosazone,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C : (N.NH.C_6H_5) \cdot CH : (N.NHC_6H_5)$ , melts at  $152^\circ$ . (See benzoylcarbinolphenylhydrazone) (B. 22, 2558). Phenylglyoxal-methylphenylosazone melts at  $152^\circ$  (B. 21, 2597).

*p*-Toluic formaldehyde,  $CH_3C_6H_4CO \cdot CH(OH)_2$ , melts at  $101^\circ$  (B. 22, 2560).

**Anthroxanaldehyde**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1] C-CHO \\ [2] N > O \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $72^\circ$ , is formed from *o*-nitrophenylglycidic acid (p. 256) (B. 16, 2222) (compare anthranil, p. 212).

**$\beta$ -Ketone-aldehydes.**—**Formylacetophenone**, or **benzoylacetalddehyde**, was formerly regarded as  $\beta$ -ketone-aldehyde, in which, as in formylacetone, an unsaturated ketol, oxymethyleneacetophenone, is present. This will, therefore, be discussed later in connection with the compounds containing an unsaturated side-chain. The sodium salt of oxymethyleneacetophenone and hydroxylamine hydrochloride yield benzoylacetaldoxime,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH : N \cdot OH$ , melting at  $86^\circ$ , which acetic anhydride converts into cyanacetophenone (p. 260), and acetyl chloride into the isomeric phenylisoxazole.

**$\gamma$ -Ketone-aldehydes.**—**Benzoylpropionaldehyde**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CHO$ , boils at  $245^\circ$ .

### 5. PHENYL PARAFFIN DIKETONES.

**$\alpha$ -Diketones**, or **orthodiketones**, are produced from their monoximes, the phenylnitrosoketones (compare phenylglyoxal) by distillation with dilute acids (1, 326), or by digesting with amyl nitrite (B. 21, 2177). **Benzoyl Acetyl**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$ , boiling at  $214^\circ$ , is a yellow oil with a peculiar odor (B. 21, 2119, 2176).

**$\alpha$ -Oximidopropiophenone**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot C : (NOH) \cdot CH_3$ , melting at  $113^\circ$ , results from the action of nitrous acid upon methylbenzoylacetic ester.

**Di-isonitrosoanethol Peroxide**,  $CH_3O[4]C_6H_4 \cdot \overset{NO-ON}{\underset{\parallel}{C}} - \overset{\parallel}{C} \cdot CH_3$ , melting at  $97^\circ$ , results from the action of sodium nitrite upon anethol in glacial acetic acid solution (B. 26, R. 891).

The  $\beta$ - or *meta*-diketones result, together with acetophenone, (1) from the decomposition of the benzoylacetacetic esters (B. 16, 2239); further, by (2) a remarkable condensation induced by sodium alcoholate (Claisen, B. 20, 2178).

The  $\beta$ -diketones behave like the  $\beta$ -diketones of the fatty series. They dissolve in alkalis. This distinguishes them from the other diketones. They are colored an intense red by ferric chloride. They condense to *isoxazoles* with hydroxylamine (B. 21, 1150). They form pyrazole compounds with phenylhydrazine, just like the oxymethylene- $\beta$ -ketones.

**Benzoyl Acetone**, **acetyl acetophenone**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$ , melts at  $60-61^\circ$ , boils at  $260-262^\circ$ , and readily volatilizes with steam. It is formed from benzoylacetacetic ester, from ethyl benzoate and acetone or ethyl acetate and acetophenone with sodium ethylate, free from alcohol. See B. 27, 1571, for the addition of CNH to benzoyl acetone. See J. pr. Ch. [2] 48, 489, for the action of urea and guanidine. *o*-Nitrobenzoyl Acetone melts at  $55^\circ$  (A. 221, 332).

**Propionyl-, butyryl-, isobutyryl-, and valerylacetophenones** boil at  $172^\circ$  (30 mm.),  $174^\circ$  (24 mm.),  $170^\circ$  (26 mm.), and  $183^\circ$  (30 mm.) (B. 20, 2181).

**Phenyl-acetyl-acetone**,  $C_{11}H_{12}O_2 = C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$ , boiling at  $266^\circ$ , results from the decomposition of phenyl acetyl-acetoacetic ester (B. 18, 2137).

The following is a  $\gamma$ -diketone:

**Acetophenone-acetone**, **phenacylacetone**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$ , is obtained from acetophenone acetoacetic ester. It is a yellow oil, boiling with decomposition (B. 17, 2756).

Being a  $\gamma$ -diketone, it can split off water and yield phenylmethylfurfurane, phenylmethylthiophene, and phenylmethyl pyrrol.

**Triketones.**—**Isonitrosobenzoyl Acetone**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot C(NO) \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$ , melting at  $24^\circ$ , is the monoxime of a triketone (B. 17, 815).

### 6. PHENYL PARAFFIN ALCOHOL ACIDS.

**A. Monoxyalcohol Acids.**—Phenylalcohol carboxylic acids, like the aliphatic alcohol acids, are produced (1) by the reduction of the corresponding ketonic acids; (2) from aldehydes and ketones (B. 12

815) by the addition of hydrocyanic acid and the saponification of the  $\alpha$ -oxy-acid nitrile; (3) from the corresponding monohalogen acids; (4) from unsaturated monocarboxylic acids, etc.

$\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Oxy-acids.—Mandelic Acid, Phenylglycollic Acid,

$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , is isomeric with the cresotinic acids (p. 225) and the oxymethylbenzoic acids (p. 234) or carbinol benzoic acids. It contains an asymmetric carbon atom, and therefore, like lactic acid of fermentation (1, 335), appears in one inactive, decomposable and two optically active modifications.

**Paramandelic Acid**, *inactive mandelic acid*, melting at  $118^\circ$ , is formed (1) from benzaldehyde, prussic acid, and hydrochloric acid (B. 14, 239, 1965); (2) from benzoylformic acid (p. 257), by reduction with sodium amalgam; and (3) from phenylchloroacetic acid by boiling it with alkalis (B. 14, 239), (4) as well as from  $\omega$ -dibromacetophenone (p. 249) or phenyl glyoxal (p. 249) by the action of alkalis:  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CHO} \rightarrow \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ .

The production of alcohol and carboxylic acid, which completes itself extramolecularly in the action of caustic alkali upon benzaldehyde, in the case of the conversion of phenyl glyoxal into mandelic acid proceeds intramolecularly (1, 321). See further on for the formation of paramandelic acid from *lævo*- and dextromandelic acids.

One hundred parts water at  $20^\circ$  dissolve 15.9 parts of paramandelic acid. Dilute nitric acid converts it first into benzoyl-formic acid, then into benzoic acid. When heated with hydriodic acid it forms phenyl-acetic acid; with hydrobromic and hydrochloric acids, chlorophenyl or bromphenyl acetic acids.

**Lævo- and dextromandelic Acids** melt at  $133^\circ$ . They have equal, but opposite, molecular rotatory power. Toward reagents they behave like paramandelic acid. *Lævo*-mandelic acid, *natural mandelic acid*, results upon digesting amygdalin (see this) with fuming hydrochloric acid (1848—Wöhler, A. 66, 240). Fermentation of ammonium paramandelate with *Penicillium glaucum* destroys the *lævo*- and there remains the dextro-acid. Schizomycetes first destroys the dextro-mandelic acid in paramandelic acid; the *lævo*-acid remains (Lewkowitsch, B. 17, 2723). The direct splitting up of paramandelic acid into the dextro- and *lævo*-acids can be brought about by the crystallization of the cinchonine salt. The mixing together of the dextro- and *lævo*-acids (molecular quantities) results in the formation of inactive paramandelic acid. When the dextro- or *lævo*-acid is heated in a tube to  $160^\circ$ , it is converted into the inactive mandelic acid.

**Derivatives of Paramandelic Acid.**—The methyl and ethyl esters melt at  $52^\circ$  and  $34^\circ$  (B. 28, 259). The methyl ether-acid melts at  $71^\circ$ . The dimethyl ether-acid boils at  $246^\circ$  (A. 220, 40). Acetyl Ethyl Ester melts at  $74^\circ$ . Mandelic Chloralide (1, 340) melts at  $82^\circ$  (A. 193, 40). The amide melts at  $131^\circ$  (B. 25, 2212).

**Mandelic Acid Nitrile**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CN}$ , is a colorless oil, solidifying at  $-10^\circ$ . At  $170^\circ$  it breaks down into prussic acid and benzaldehyde. On standing with fuming hydrochloric acid it passes into the amide; and, when heated, into phenylchloroacetic acid (B. 14, 1967). It condenses with benzaldehyde to *diphenyloxazole* (B. 29, 207; R. 791).

*p*-Brom- and *p*-iod-mandelic acids melt at  $117^\circ$  and  $133^\circ$  (B. 24, 997; 23, 3467). *o*-, *m*-, and *p*-Nitromandelic Acids melt at  $140^\circ$ ,  $119^\circ$ , and  $126^\circ$  (B. 20, 2203; 22, 208).

***o*-Amido-mandelic Acid, Hydrindic Acid**,  $\text{NH}_2[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , is not stable in a free condition. Its sodium salt,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NO}_2\text{Na} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ , is formed in the reduction of isatin with sodium amalgam. From concentrated solutions of the sodium salt acids separate

**Dioxindol, *o*-Amidomandelic acid lactam**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1] \text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CO} \\ [2] \text{NH} \end{array} \right.$ . This is also produced when isatin and zinc-dust, water, and some hydrochloric acid are boiled.

**Acetyldioxindol**, melting at  $127^{\circ}$ , is converted by baryta-water into *o*-acetamidomandelic acid,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CONH}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $142^{\circ}$ , which also results from the reduction of oxyisatinic acid. Hydriodic acid or sodium amalgam changes it to oxindol (p. 224).

**p-Dimethylamidophenyl-trichlorethyl alcohol** (p. 187) is a derivative of *p*-amidomandelic acid.

**o-Oxymandelic Acid**, obtained from salicylaldehyde, prussic acid, and also from *o*-oxyphenyl glyoxylic acid, is a syrupy mass. Its *lactone* melts at  $49^{\circ}$  and boils at  $237^{\circ}$  (B. 14, 1317; 17, 974). **p-Methoxymandelic Acid**, from anisaldehyde, melts at  $93^{\circ}$  (B. 14, 1976).

**Phenylchloroacetic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CHCl} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $78^{\circ}$ , is produced when mandelic acid is heated with concentrated hydrochloric acid to  $140^{\circ}$ , and by action of water upon its chloride. Its *chloride*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CHCl} \cdot \text{COCl}$ , formed by the action of  $\text{PCl}_5$  upon mandelic acid, boils at  $125^{\circ}$  (45 mm.) (A. 279, 122).

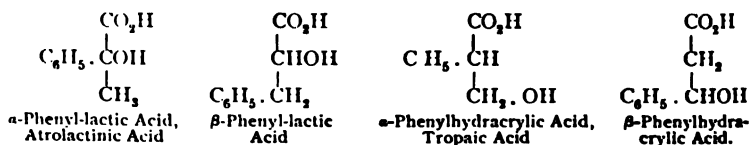
**Phenylbromoacetic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CHBr} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at  $83^{\circ}$ . Its *ethyl ester*, boiling at  $145^{\circ}$  (10 mm.) (B. 24, 1877), when heated with potassium cyanide becomes diphenylsuccinic ester. Its *nitrile*, from benzyl cyanide and bromine, when heated alone becomes stilbene; when heated with potassium cyanide it yields stilbene or dicyandibenzyl (see this); while with alcoholic potash, stilbene dicarboxylic acid or diphenyl maleic acid is produced.

**Phenylamido-acetic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{NH}_2) \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at  $256^{\circ}$ . It yields  $\text{CO}_2$  and benzylamine when it is distilled. It results (1) on treating phenylbromoacetic acid with aqueous ammonia (B. 11, 2002); (2) on boiling its nitrile with dilute sulphuric acid (B. 13, 383), and (3) by the reduction of its oxime or the phenylhydrazone of benzoyl formic acid (A. 227, 344). Its *methyl ester* melts at  $32^{\circ}$ . **Cyclic Double-acid Amide** (1, 357),  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CO-NH} \\ \text{NH-CO} \end{smallmatrix} \text{CH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melts with decomposition at  $274^{\circ}$  (B. 24, 4149). Its *nitrile* is a yellow oil, which gradually solidifies to a crystalline mass. It is very decomposable. It results from the action of ammonia upon mandelic nitrile.

Alkyl and phenylated phenylamido-acetic acids are obtained as the result of the action of methylamine, aniline, and similar bases upon phenylbromo-acetic acid (B. 15, 2031).

Of the aliphylglycollic acids, mention may yet be made of *p*-Isopropyl-mandelic Acid, prepared from cumin aldehyde, prussic acid, and hydrochloric acid. It, too, has been resolved by means of quinine into its active isomerides (B. 26, R. 89).

**Phenyloxypropionic Acids, Phenyl-lactic Acids**.—There are four possible structural isomerides. All are known and contain an asymmetric carbon atom:

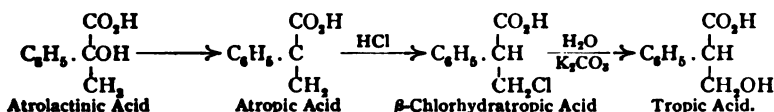


1. **Atrolactic Acid, *α*-Phenyl-lactic Acid**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_3 + 1\frac{1}{2}\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melts when in the hydrous state at  $90^{\circ}$ , and when anhydrous at  $94^{\circ}$ . It is obtained from *α*-bromhydratropic acid when the latter is boiled with a soda solution, and by oxidizing hydroatropic acid with potassium permanganate. It is prepared synthetically from acetophenone,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , by means of prussic acid and sulphuric acid or dilute hydrochloric acid (B. 14, 1980). When boiled with concentrated hydrochloric acid it decomposes into water and atropic acid.

Corresponding to atrolactic acid are *α*-chlor- and *α*-bromhydratropic acids, melting at  $73^{\circ}$  and  $93^{\circ}$ , which are produced when it stands in contact with concentrated haloid acids (A. 209, 3). ***α*-Amidohydratropic Acid** sublimes, without melting, at  $260^{\circ}$  (B. 14, 1981).

2. **Tropic Acid, *α*-Phenylhydracrylic Acid**, is known in an inactive, decomposable and two optically active modifications.

Inactive tropic acid, melting at 117°, is obtained, together with tropine (see this) (A. 138, 233; B. 13, 254), on digesting (60°) the alkaloids atropine and hyoscyamine with baryta-water. It was made synthetically from atropic acid, the decomposition product of atrolactic acid, by changing it with concentrated hydrochloric acid into  $\beta$ -chlorhydratropic acid, which boiling potassium carbonate converts into inactive tropic acid:



Lævo- and dextro-tropic acids, melting at 128° and 123°, can be separated by the fractional crystallization of their quinine salts. The dextro-quinine salt, more sparingly soluble in dilute alcohol, melts at 186°, and the lævo-salt at 178° (B. 22, 2591).

$\beta$ -Chlor- and  $\beta$ -Bromhydratropic Acids melt at 87° and 93°.

$\beta$ -Amidohydratropic Acid melts at 119° (A. 209, 3).

3.  $\beta$ -Phenyl-lactic Acid, *Benzylglycollic acid*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at 97°, is derived from phenylacetaldehyde with prussic acid and hydrochloric acid, and from benzyltartronic acid upon heating it to 180°. Heated with dilute sulphuric acid, it decomposes into phenylacetaldehyde and formic acid.

Phenylalanine,  $\beta$ -Phenyl- $\alpha$ -amidopropionic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{NH}_2) \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , sublimes without decomposition when it is slowly heated. Upon rapid heating it yields phenylethylamine and a cyclic double-acid amide,

$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH} \\ \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at 290° (I, 357; II, 252) (A. 219, 188; 271, 169). It is found, along with asparagine (I, 490), in the sprouts of *Lupinus luteus*, and is formed in the decay or by the chemical decomposition of albumen (B. 16, 1711). It is prepared from its nitrile, the product of the action of ammonia upon the nitrile of  $\beta$ -phenyllactic acid, with hydrochloric acid; further, by the reduction of  $\alpha$ -amidocinnamic acid (B. 17, 1623), and of  $\alpha$ -isonitroso- $\beta$ -phenylpropionic acid (A. 271, 169). Benzoyl Phenyl-alanine, from benzoylamidocinnamic acid by reduction, melts at 182° (A. 275, 15).

o- and p-Nitrophenyl-lactic Acids are produced in the nitration of phenyl-lactic acid. When reduced the o-acid yields oxyhydrocarbostyryl (pp. 214, 255),

$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1] \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH} \cdot \text{OH} \\ [2] \text{NH} - \text{CO} \end{array} \right.$ , melting at 197°, and the p-acid, p-amido- $\beta$ -phenyl-lactic acid,  $\text{NH}_2[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting with decomposition at 188°.

o-Oxyphenyl-lactic Acid, *Salicyl-lactic acid*,  $\text{HO}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , is a syrup-like mass. It results from the action of sodium amalgam upon o-oxyphenyl pyro-racemic acid (p. 259) (B. 18, 1188). Its inner phenol alcohol-anhydride is hydrocoumarilic acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1] \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ [2] \text{O} - \end{array} \right.$ , melting at 118°. This is the reduction product of coumarilic acid (A. 216, 166). p-Oxyphenyl-lactic Acid melts at 144° in the anhydrous condition. It is formed when an excess of nitrous acid acts upon p-amidophenylalanine (A. 219, 226).

p-Nitrophenylalanine,  $\text{NO}_2[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{NH}_2)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , decomposes at 240°. It is formed in the nitration of phenylalanine.

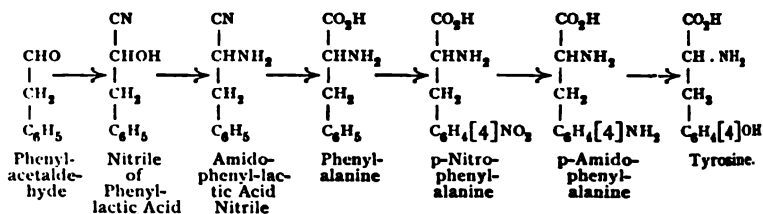
p-Amidophenylalanine,  $\text{NH}_2[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{NH}_2) \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , is produced in the reduction of p-nitrophenylalanine and p-nitrophenyl- $\alpha$ -nitroacrylic acid.

**Tyrosine**, p-Oxyphenyl-alanine,  $\text{HO}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{NH}_2)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at 235°. It occurs in the liver when its functions are disturbed, the spleen, the pancreas, and in stale cheese (*τυρός*), and is formed from animal substances (urea, horn, hair, albumen) on boiling them with hydrochloric or sulphuric acid; by fusion with alkalis or by putrefaction (together with leucine, aspartic acid, etc.). It may be prepared synthetic-

ally from p-amidophenylalanine by the action of one molecule of potassium nitrite upon the hydrochloric acid salt.

*History.*—Liebig discovered tyrosine upon fusing freshly prepared cheese with caustic potash (1846) (A. 57, 127; 62, 269). E. Erlenmeyer, Sr., and Lipp (A. 219, 161) succeeded in synthesizing tyrosine, beginning with phenylacetaldehyde.

*Synthesis of Tyrosine.*—Phenylacetaldehyde (p. 189) and prussic acid yield the nitrile of phenyl-lactic acid. Ammonia changes the latter to the nitrile of phenylalanine, which hydrochloric acid converts into phenylalanine. The latter by nitration yields p-nitrophenylalanine, whose reduction product, p-amidophenylalanine hydrochloride, is changed by an equimolecular quantity of nitrous acid into tyrosine:



*Properties and Department.*—It dissolves in 150 parts of boiling water, and crystallizes in delicate, silky needles. It dissolves in alcohol with difficulty, and is insoluble in ether.

Mercuric nitrate produces a yellow precipitate, which becomes dark red in color if it be boiled with fuming nitric acid to which considerable water has been added (delicate reaction). Being an amido acid, tyrosine unites with acids and bases, forming salts. If it be heated to 270° it decomposes into carbon dioxide and oxyphenylethylamine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NH}_2$ . When fused with caustic potash it yields paraoxybenzoic acid, ammonia and acetic acid. Putrefaction causes the formation of hydroparacoumaric acid, and nitrous acid converts the tyrosine into para-oxyphenyl-lactic acid (A. 219, 226).

4.  $\beta$ -Phenyl-hydracrylic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , commonly called *phenyl lactic acid*, results on boiling  $\beta$ -bromohydrocinnamic acid with water (A. 195, 138), and in the reduction of benzoyl acetic ester, as well as by the addition of hypochlorous acid to cinnamic acid, and then reducing the resulting chlor-acid with sodium amalgam. The acid melts at 93°. When heated with dilute sulphuric acid it decomposes (like the aliphatic  $\beta$ -oxy-acids) at 190° into water and cinnamic acid (together with a little styrolene) (B. 13, 304). When digested with the haloid acids it forms phenyl- $\beta$ -haloid-propionic acids.

o-, m-, and p-Nitrophenyl-lactic Acids, or *-hydracrylic Acids*,  $\text{NO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melt at 126°, 105°, and 132°. The three isomerides result upon treating the three nitro- $\beta$ -bromohydrocinnamic acids with sodium carbonate, when (in the cold) the o-, m-, and p-nitrophenyl-lactic acid lactones,  $\text{O} = \text{CO} \cdot \text{NO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2$ , melting at 124°, 98°, and 92°, are also produced. These are the only  $\beta$ -lactones known (B. 17, 595).

The ortho-nitro-acid results, further, by oxidizing the aldehyde first produced with silver oxide (B. 16, 2206). When heated to 190° with dilute sulphuric acid it yields o-nitrocinnamic acid. Its lactone decomposes on boiling with water into carbon dioxide and o-nitrostyrolene; it yields  $\beta$ -oxyhydrocarbostyryl when reduced.

When the three nitro-acids are heated with alcoholic zinc chloride, we do *not* get their lactones, but their esters (B. 17, 1659).

$\beta$ -Chlor-, brom-, and iodhydrocinnamic acids,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CHX \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$ , melt at  $126^\circ$ ,  $137^\circ$ , and  $120^\circ$ . They are obtained from cinnamic acid or  $\beta$ -phenylacrylic acid by the addition of halogen hydrides in aqueous or glacial acetic acid solution (B. 22, 1221), and from  $\beta$ -phenylhydracrylic acid (see this). When heated or boiled with water the free acids decompose, with previous formation of  $\beta$ -oxyacids, into halogen hydride and cinnamic acid. When neutralized, even in the cold, with alkali carbonates they break down into haloid acid, carbon dioxide, and styrolene,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : CH_2$ .

*o*-, *m*-, and *p*-Nitro- $\beta$ -bromhydrocinnamic Acids,  $NO_2C_6H_4CHBr \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$ , are produced by the addition of hydrogen bromide in glacial acetic acid to the three nitrocinnamic acids (B. 17, 596, 1494) (see also nitrophenyl-lactic acid lactone).

$\beta$ -Amidohydrocinnamic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(NH_2)CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$ , melts at  $120^\circ$  (B. 27, 1498; A. 200, 97).

$\gamma$ - and  $\delta$ -Oxyacids.— $\gamma$ -Oxyacids, beginning with the phenyloxybutyric acids, are known. They pass readily into their lactones.  $\gamma$ -Phenyl- $\gamma$ -oxybutyric Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$ , melts at  $75^\circ$ , and slowly decomposes even from  $65$ – $70^\circ$  into water and its lactone—phenyl-butyrolactone,  $C_{10}H_{10}O_2$ . The latter melts at  $37^\circ$  and boils at  $306^\circ$ .

It is obtained from  $\beta$ -benzoyl propionic acid (p. 261) (B. 15, 889) and from phenyl-brombutyric acid. Its lactone is formed on boiling phenylisocrotonic acid and phenyl-parsenic acid with dilute sulphuric acid (A. 228, 178; B. 29, R. 14).

$\alpha$ -Phenyl- $\gamma$ -oxyvaleric Acid, only stable in the form of liquid lactone (B. 17, 73).

$\delta$ -Benzyl- $\gamma$ -oxyvaleric Acid melts at  $101^\circ$  and its lactone at  $33^\circ$  (A. 268, 94).

$\beta$ -Benzyl- $\gamma$ -oxyvaleric Acid melts at  $75^\circ$  and its lactone at  $86^\circ$  (A. 254, 215). It is obtained from benzal-lævulinic acid.

$\alpha$ -Benzyl- $\delta$ -oxyvaleric Acid (B. 24, 2447).

B. Dioxyalcohol Acids are chiefly obtained by oxidizing the phenyl-olefine-carboxylic acids with potassium permanganate (A. 268, 44; 283, 338). The two possible phenyl glyceric acids are known.

Atroglyceric Acid,  $\alpha$ -Phenylglyceric Acid,  $CH_2OH \cdot C(C_6H_5)OH \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $146^\circ$ , results on boiling  $\alpha, \beta$ -dibromhydroatropic acid with excess of alkalis, and from benzoyl carbinol by means of prussic acid and hydrochloric acid (B. 16, 1292). It breaks down into  $CO_2$  and phenylacetaldehyde upon heating.

Dibromhydroatropic Acid,  $CH_2Br \cdot C(C_6H_5)Br \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $115^\circ$ , is produced when bromine acts upon atropic acid. It decomposes on boiling with water into acetophenone,  $CO_2$ , and  $HBr$ .

Styeric Acid,  $\beta$ -Phenylglyceric Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CHOH \cdot CHOH \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $141^\circ$  with decomposition (A. 268, 37), is obtained by first getting the dibenzoyl ester and saponifying it, or by boiling phenyl- $\alpha$ -chlorlactic acid with water; also by oxidizing cinnamic acid with potassium permanganate. Heated above its melting point, it decomposes into phenylacetaldehyde, carbon dioxide, and water. Hydrobromic acid converts it into phenyl- $\beta$ -brom-lactic acid (B. 16, 1289). The dibenzoyl-acid melts at  $187^\circ$ .

The dibenzoyl methyl ester melts at  $113^\circ$ .

The dibenzoyl ethyl ester melts at  $109^\circ$  (B. 12, 538).

*p*-Nitrophenylglyceric Acid, melting at  $167^\circ$ , is obtained from *p*-nitrophenylglycidic acid.

$\alpha$ -Amidophenylglyceric Acid melts at  $218^\circ$ .

Phenyl- $\alpha$ -chlorlactic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(OH)CH \cdot Cl \cdot CO_2H + H_2O$ , melts at  $56^\circ$ , and when anhydrous at  $86^\circ$ . It results from the action of hypochlorous acid upon cinnamic acid. Sodium amalgam reduces it to phenyl-lactic acid, alkalis change it to phenylglycidic acid and phenylglyceric acid, while with fuming hydrochloric acid it yields phenyldichlorpropionic acid (B. 22, 3140).

Phenyl- $\alpha$ -bromlactic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CHBr \cdot CO_2H + H_2O$ , melts at  $125^\circ$  when anhydrous. It is formed on boiling phenyldibrompropionic acid with water (B. 13, 310). It has been separated by means of cinchonine into two optically active components (B. 24, 2831).

Phenyl- $\alpha$ -iodlactic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CHI \cdot CO_2H$ , melts at  $137^\circ$  with decomposition. It results from the action of an aqueous chloriodine solution upon cinnamic

and B. 19, 2644. *o*- and *p*-Nitrophenyl- $\alpha$ -chlorolactic Acids melt at  $119^{\circ}$  and  $165^{\circ}$ . The  $\alpha$ -lactol is converted by sodium amalgam into indol (B. 13, 2261; 19, 2646).

*p*-Nitrophenyl- $\alpha$ -bromolactic Acid melts at  $145^{\circ}$  (B. 17, 219).

**Phenyl- $\alpha$ -amidolactic Acid, *Picramidin*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CH(NH_2)CO_2H + H_2O$ , decomposes, when anhydrous, at  $119^{\circ}$ . It results from the action of acids upon the body formed when sodium hydride acts upon benzaldehyde and glycol (A. 284, 46).**

**Phenyl- $\beta$ -chlorolactic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CHCl \cdot CH(OH)CO_2H$ , melting at  $141^{\circ}$ , and Phenyl- $\beta$ -bromolactic Acid are produced when fuming haloid acids act upon phenylglyceric acid (B. 16, 1200). *o*- and *p*-Nitrophenyl- $\beta$ -chlorolactic Acids, melting at  $135^{\circ}$  and  $167^{\circ}$ , are obtained by the action of fuming hydrochloric acid upon the corresponding glycidic acids (B. 19, 2646).**

*o*-Nitrophenyl- $\beta$ -bromolactic Acid melts at  $135^{\circ}$  (B. 17, 221).

**Cinnamic Acid Dichloride,  $\alpha, \beta$ -Dichlorohydrocinnamic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CHCl \cdot CHCl \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $103^{\circ}$ , results when chlorine acts upon cinnamic acid in carbon disulfide solution and on treating phenyl- $\alpha$ -chlorolactic acid with fuming hydrochloric acid (B. 14, 1867).**

**Allocinnamic Acid Dichloride is an oil decomposable by strychnine into two optically active components (B. 27, 2041).**

**Cinnamic Acid Dibromide,  $\alpha, \beta$ -Dibromohydrocinnamic Acid, melting at  $195^{\circ}$ , yields  $CO_2$ , phenylacetaldehyde, cinnamic acid, and phenyl- $\alpha$ -bromolactic acid on boiling with water. Strychnine resolves it into two optically active components (B. 26, 1664). The *racemic ester* melts at  $117^{\circ}$ . The *ethyl ester* melts at  $60^{\circ}$  (B. 22, 1181).**

**Allocinnamic Acid Dichloride melts at  $91-93^{\circ}$ . It is separated into two optically active components by cinchonine (B. 27, 2039). The *methyl ester* melts at  $52-53^{\circ}$ .**

*o*- and *p*-Nitro- $\alpha, \beta$ -dibromohydrocinnamic Acids melt at  $180^{\circ}$  and  $227^{\circ}$ . The *o*- and *p*-*ethyl esters* melt at  $71^{\circ}$  and  $110^{\circ}$  (A. 212, 151).

**Phenylglycidic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot \overset{O}{\underset{\text{O}}{\text{C}}} \text{---} \text{CH} \text{---} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2H$ , separated from the sodium salt, is an oil solidifying at  $2^{\circ}$ . It results from the action of alkalis upon  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -chlorphenyl-lactic acids, as well as by the condensation of benzaldehyde with chloroacetic ester (A. 271, 137). Phenylglycidic acid is very unstable. It readily decomposes into  $CO_2$  and phenylacetaldehyde. On boiling with water phenylglyceric acid is also produced. The optically active phenylglycidic acids are obtained in the form of sodium salts from the optically active phenyl- $\alpha$ -bromolactic acids.**

*o*-Nitrophenyl-glycidic Acid,  $NO_2 \cdot [2]C_6H_4 \cdot \overset{O}{\underset{\text{O}}{\text{C}}} \text{---} \text{CH} \text{---} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2H + H_2O$ , melts at  $64^{\circ}$ , and at  $125^{\circ}$  when anhydrous. It is produced when alcoholic potash acts upon *o*-nitrophenyl-lactic acid, or by the action of sodium hypochlorite upon *o*-nitrophenyl-lactic acid ketone (A. 284, 135). It breaks down, on heating, into  $CO_2$  and *indigo*. It yields anthranil and anthroxanaldehyde on boiling with water (p. 249) (B. 19, 2649).

*p*-Nitrophenyl-glycidic Acid melts with decomposition at  $186^{\circ}$  (B. 19, 2644).

**$\gamma$ -Trioxylalcohol Acids.— $\gamma$ -Phenyltrioxybutyric Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot [CH(OH)]_3CO_2H$ , passes readily into the *lactone*, melting at  $115-117^{\circ}$ ; by reduction this yields phenyltetrol (p. 248).  $\gamma$ -Phenyltrioxybutyric acid is prepared by starting with the dibromide of cinnamic aldehyde cyanhydrin (B. 25, 2556).**

## 7. PHENYLPARAFFIN-ALDEHYDE CARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

As explained under the aliphatic unsaturated ketols, oxyolefine carboxylic acids and oxyketone carboxylic acids (I, 318), the oxymethylene derivatives are produced by the condensation of acetone, acetic ester, acetoacetic ester, and other bodies with formic ester in the presence of sodium ethylate. As these compounds conduct themselves in many respects like aldehydes, it was originally supposed that they contained the aldehyde group, and it was only their very pronounced acid character which led to considering them as *oxymethylene* compounds. It is rather remarkable that two isomeric esters are formed in the condensation of phenylacetic ester and formic ester by means of sodium ethylate. Both bodies yield the same derivatives with phenylhydrazine. The one is a liquid and the other a solid. The latter is distinguished from the former by its stronger

acid character. It changes to the liquid modification on being heated. Carbonic acid precipitates from alkaline solutions of the esters the liquid, more feebly acid modification, whereas when an excess of mineral acid is added it is the solid, more acid modification which separates (see nitrophenyl methane, p. 178). W. Wislicenus believes that it is the solid modification which corresponds to the real phenyl formylacetic ester (B. 29, 742).

**Oxymethylenephénylacetic Ethyl Ester**,  $\text{CH}(\text{OH}) : \text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , is a liquid boiling at  $144^\circ$  (16 mm.). Ferric chloride imparts a violet color to it.

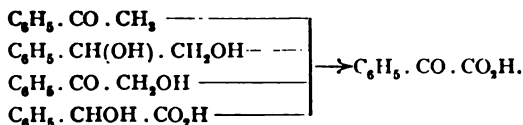
**Phenylformylacetic Ethyl Ester**,  $\text{CHO} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $70^\circ$ , passing at the same time into the liquid isomeric ester.

### 8. PHENYLPARAFFIN-KETONE CARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

The acids belonging in this group can be arranged, like the aliphatic ketone-carboxylic acids, into  $\alpha$ -,  $\beta$ -, and  $\gamma$ -ketone-carboxylic acids, and in each of these groups we can have sub-groups, depending upon whether the ketone group is in direct union with the benzene nucleus or not.

**A.  $\alpha$ -Ketone-carboxylic Acids** result from (1) the oxidation of ketones; (2) of glycols; (3) of ketone alcohols; (4) of alcohol carboxylic acids; (5) (nucleus-synthetic) from cyanides of the acid radicals by saponification with cold, concentrated hydrochloric acid; (6) from benzenes by the action of chloroxalic esters in the presence of aluminium chloride (B. 20, 2045).

**Phenylglyoxylic Acid**, *Benzoyl Formic Acid*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $65^\circ$  and isomeric with the phthalaldehydic acids, is obtained by oxidizing acetophenone with potassium ferricyanide (B. 20, 389), as well as by oxidizing phenyl glycol, benzoyl carbinol, and mandelic acid with dilute nitric acid:



The acid was first prepared (in a nucleus-synthesis way) by saponifying benzoyl cyanide, its nitrile, obtained from benzoyl chloride and mercury, or silver cyanide (Claisen). Its ethyl ester is formed when ethyl chloroxalic ester acts upon mercury diphenyl, or upon benzene in the presence of  $\text{AlCl}_3$ .

The acid is very soluble in water, and when distilled decomposes into  $\text{CO}_2$  and benzaldehyde. When mixed with benzene containing thiophene and sulphuric acid, it is colored deep red, afterward blue-violet; all its derivatives, and also isatin, react similarly.

Being a ketonic acid it unites with sodium bisulphite and with  $\text{CNH}$  (see phenyl tartronic acid). Sodium amalgam converts it into mandelic acid, and hydriodic acid into  $\alpha$ -toluic acid.

Its methyl ester boils at  $247^\circ$ . Its ethyl ester boils at  $257^\circ$ . The  $\alpha$ -amide melts at  $90^\circ$ . The  $\beta$ -amide hydrate,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CONH}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melts at  $64^\circ$ . The  $\gamma$ -amide melts at  $134^\circ$  (B. 12, 633; 20, 397). The anilide, from  $\gamma$ -benzil monoxime (see this) and  $\text{PCl}_5$ , melts at  $63^\circ$ .

**Benzoyl Cyanide**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CN}$ , melting at  $32^\circ$  and boiling at  $207^\circ$ , is obtained in the distillation of benzoyl chloride with mercuric cyanide, and by the action of acetyl chloride (B. 20, 2196) upon isonitrosoacetophenone. Sodium in absolute alcohol con-

verts it into polybenzoyl cyanide,  $(C_6H_5NO_2)_x$ , melting at  $95^\circ$  (J. pr. Ch. [2], 39, 260). Alkalies change benzoyl cyanide to benzoic acid and potassium cyanide, while concentrated hydrochloric acid converts it into benzoyl-formic acid. Chlorisisonitrosoacetophenone, *benzoylformoximic acid chloride*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot C(:NOH)Cl$ , melting at  $131^\circ$ , is produced in the chlorination of isonitrosoacetophenone (p. 249) (B. 26, R. 313).

**Phenylhydrazimethylene Carboxylic Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C(\begin{smallmatrix} NH \\ | \\ NH \end{smallmatrix}) \cdot CO_2H$ . The hydrazine salt melts at  $119^\circ$ . **Diphenylglyoxylic Acid Hydrazone**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C(:N)CO_2H$

$C_6H_5 \cdot C(:N)CO_2H$ . Its diethyl ester melts at  $138^\circ$  (J. pr. Ch. [2], 44, 567).

**Phenylglyoxylic Acid Phenylhydrazone** melts at  $153^\circ$  (A. 227, 341).

( $\beta$ -), **Syn-phenylglyoxylic Acid Oxime** melts at  $147^\circ$ . ( $\alpha$ -), **Anti-phenylglyoxylic Acid Oxime**, **Isonitrosophenylacetic Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C(:NOH)CO_2H$ , melts at  $128^\circ$  (B. 24, 42). The *methyl ester* melts at  $138^\circ$ . The *dimethyl ester* melts at  $56^\circ$  (B. 16, 519). **Benzoyl Cyanide Oxime**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C(:NOH)CN$ , melting at  $129^\circ$  (B. 24, 3504), is obtained from benzyl cyanide by means of amyl nitrite and sodium or nitrous acid and sodium ethylate (A. 250, 163; B. 28, 1797).

**Substituted Benzoyl Formic Acids**.—*o*- and *p*-**Brombenzoyl Formic Acids** melt at  $93^\circ$ – $103^\circ$  and  $108^\circ$  (B. 25, 3298, and 28, 259).

***o*-Nitrobenzoyl Formic Acid**,  $NO_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CO \cdot CO_2H + H_2O$ , melts at  $47^\circ$  and when anhydrous at  $122^\circ$ . The *amide* melts at  $199^\circ$ . The *nitrile* melts at  $54^\circ$  (B. 23, 1577). The *oxime* when acted upon with water yields  $CO_2$  and *o*-nitrobenzonitrile. Salicylic acid is produced when it is boiled with alkalies (B. 26, 1252). It forms two isomeric *phenylhydrazones* (B. 23, 2080).

***m*-Nitrobenzoyl Formic Acid** melts at  $77^\circ$ . The *amide* melts at  $151^\circ$ . The *nitrile* melts at  $230^\circ$  (145 mm.) (B. 14, 1186).

***o*-Amidobenzoyl-formic Acid**, *Isatinic acid*, is produced on reducing *o*-nitrobenzoyl formic acid with ferrous sulphate and sodium hydrate, and in the action of alkalies on isatin. If it be separated from its lead salt by means of hydrogen sulphide, and evaporated under greatly reduced pressure at low temperature, it is obtained as a white powder. Digestion of its solution converts it at once into its lactam or lactime—

**Isatin**, *lactam of isatinic acid*,  $C_6H_4 \cdot \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]CO \cdot CO \\ [2]NH- \end{smallmatrix} \right.$ , or *lactime of isatinic acid*,  $C_6H_4 \cdot \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} CO \\ N \end{smallmatrix} \right. \geq C \cdot OH$  (?), melting at  $201^\circ$ . It was first obtained by oxidizing indigo. It consists of orange-red prisms. It dissolves in the caustic alkalies with the formation of salts. The solution, violet at first, soon becomes yellow, owing to the production of isatinates. Isatin acts at the same time like a ketone.

Its other methods of formation and its derivatives will be discussed later in connection with the hydroindol derivatives. The isatin derivatives referable to the lactam formula are designated pseudo- or  $\psi$ -derivatives, or *n*-derivatives,—*i. e.*, those in which the recently entered group is attached to nitrogen,—whereas the true isatin derivatives are referred to the lactime formula, because the latter appears to belong to free isatin.

**Aceto-isatinic Acid**,  $CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot NH[2]C_6H_4 \cdot CO \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $160^\circ$ , results upon treating acetyl- $\psi$ -isatin (see this) with alkalies, and then with acids. **Benzoyl-isatinic Acid**, melting at  $188^\circ$ , is produced when benzoyltetrahydroquinoline is oxidized with  $KMnO_4$  (B. 24, 772).

**Acetyl-isatin**,  $C_6H_4 \cdot \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]CO \cdot CO \\ [2]N- \end{smallmatrix} \right. < CO \cdot CH_3$ , melts at  $141^\circ$ . **Benzoyl Isatin** melts at  $206^\circ$ .

**Anthroxanic Acid**,  $C_8H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]C \text{---} CO_2H \\ [2]N > O \end{array} \right.$  (?), melting at  $190^\circ$ , results upon oxidizing anthroxan aldehyde (p. 250) with potassium permanganate (B. 16, 2222).

**p-Dimethylamidophenylglyoxylic Ester**,  $(CH_3)_2N \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CO \cdot CO_2C_2H_5$ , melting at  $187^\circ$ , is obtained from dimethyl aniline and ethyl oxalic acid chloride (B. 10, 2081).

**o-Oxyphenylglyoxylic Acid**, from isatinic acid (B. 26, 221), melts at  $43^\circ$ .  
**p-Methoxyphenylglyoxylic Acid** melts at  $89^\circ$ .

**Veratroyl-carboxylic Acid**,  $(CH_3O)_3[3,4]C_6H_2 \cdot CO \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $138^\circ$ , and **Piperonoyl-carboxylic Acid**,  $(CH_3O)_2[3,4]C_6H_2 \cdot CO \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $148^\circ$ , have been produced by the oxidation of anethol, of isoeugenol methyl ether, and of isosafrol (B. 24, 3488).

**Homologous Phenylglyoxylic Acids**. — **m-Tolylglyoxylic Acid** yields so-called **Methyl Isatin**,  $CH_3[5]C_6H_3 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CO \cdot CO \\ [2]NH \text{---} \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $184^\circ$ . This is obtained by boiling p-methylisatin-p-tolylimide, melting at  $259^\circ$ , the product of the action of dichloroacetic acid upon p-toluidine, with hydrochloric acid (B. 16, 2262; 18, 198).

	M. P.
p-Tolyl-glyoxylic Acid, . . . . .	$96^\circ$ (B. 14, 1750; 20, 2049).
(p-)[2,5]-Xyl-yl-glyoxylic Acid, . . . . .	$70\text{--}80^\circ$ (J. pr. Ch. [2], 43, 144).
(m-)[2,4]-Xyl-yl-glyoxylic Acid, . . . . .	$85^\circ$ (J. pr. Ch. [2], 41, 485).
(o-)[2,3]-Xyl-yl-glyoxylic Acid, . . . . .	$92^\circ$ (B. 20, 1766).
Mesityl-glyoxylic Acid, . . . . .	$112\text{--}116^\circ$
[2,4,5]-Pseudocumylglyoxylic Acid, . . . . .	$75^\circ$
2,3,4,6 and 2,3,5,6-Tetramethylphenylglyoxylic Acid, . . . . .	(B. 24, R. 741).
	(B. 19, 233; 20, 3099).

**Phenylpyraccemic Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CO_2H$ , melts at  $154^\circ$  with evolution of carbon dioxide. It is formed when  $\alpha$ -benzoylamidocinnamic acid (A. 275, 8) is boiled with caustic alkali or hydrochloric acid, as well as by boiling phenylloxalacetic ester with dilute sulphuric acid (A. 271, 163).

**o-Oxyphenylpyraccemic Acid**,  $HO \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CO_2H$ , is produced, like phenylpyraccemic acid, from  $\alpha$ -benzoylamido-o-oxy-cinnamic acid and sodium hydroxide.

Its lactone, ***o*-Oxohydrocumarin**,  $C_8H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CH_2 \cdot CO \\ [2]O \text{---} \end{array} \right.$  (?), melting at  $152^\circ$ , is produced when it is boiled with acids (B. 18, 1187).

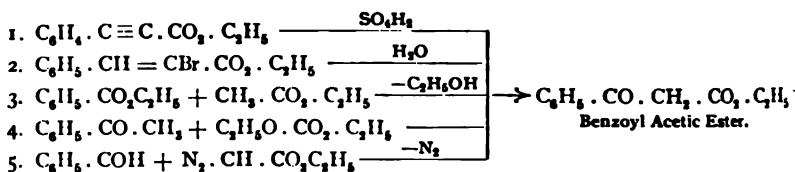
**B. Phenylparaffin- $\beta$ -Ketone Carboxylic Acids** are produced (1) by a condensation, similar to the acetoacetic ester formation, from benzoic and fatty acid esters, acetophenone and carbonic acid esters, with alcohol elimination, in the presence of sodium alcoholate (see benzoyl acetic ester); (2) by the introduction of aliphyl residues, by means of chlorides,—e. g., benzyl chloride,—into acetoacetic ester (see benzyl-acetoacetic ester); (3) by action of benzaldehydes upon diazoacetic ester (see benzoyl acetic ester).

With hydroxylamine they yield oxime anhydrides, lactoximes or isoxazolons; and with hydrazine and phenylhydrazine, hydrazine anhydrides, lactazams or pyrazolons (1, 362).

**Benzoyl Acetic Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$ , melts at  $103^\circ$  with decomposition into  $CO_2$  and acetophenone. It breaks down in the same manner when it is boiled with dilute acids. It is obtained by saponifying its ethyl ester with caustic potash at the ordinary temperature. Ferric chloride imparts a violet-red coloration to its solution.

**Benzoyl Acetic Ester**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5$ , boils at  $148^\circ$  (11 mm.). (1) It was first prepared by dissolving phenyl-propionic ester in sulphuric acid and then diluting with water (B. 17, 66). (2) By

the action of sulphuric acid and water upon  $\alpha$ -bromcinnamic ester (B. 19, 1392). (3) It is most conveniently made by the action of dry sodium ethylate or sodium upon ethyl benzoate and acetic ester (B. 20, 653, 2179). (4) Small quantities of the ester are produced when esters of carbonic acid act upon acetophenone together with sodium ethylate. (5) It is also formed when benzaldehyde is heated with diazo-acetic ester:



Benzoyl-acetic ester volatilizes with steam without decomposition (A. 282, 155). Its odor resembles that of acetoacetic ester.

It forms (1) with ammonia an addition product like that of aldehyde-ammonia; with amines it splits off water and yields imides—*e.g.*,  $\beta$ -methylimidohydrocinnamic ester,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{NCH}_3)\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5$  (B. 29, 105); with (2) hydrazine it yields 3-phenylpyrazolon; (3) with phenylhydrazine, diphenylpyrazolon; (4) with hydroxylamine, phenylisoxazon; (5) with urea, phenyluracil; (6) with guanidine, imidophenyluracil; (7) with nitrous acid, the oxime; (8) with diazobenzene chloride, the phenylhydrazone of benzoyl glyoxylic ester (p. 261); (9) with  $\text{PCl}_5$ ,  $\beta$ -chlorcinnamic chloride. Iodine converts its sodium compound into dibenzylsuccinic ester, while with the alkylgens homologous benzoyl-acetic esters result. The hydrogen atoms of the  $\text{CH}_2$ -group are also replaceable, step by step, by acid radicals. It yields  $\beta$ -ethoxycinnamic esters when acted upon with orthoformic esters. The *amide* melts at  $112^\circ$  (A. 266, 332), and the *anilide* at  $107^\circ$  (A. 245, 374).

**Benzoyl Acetonitrile**,  $\omega$ -Cyanacetophenone,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CN}$ , melting at  $80^\circ$ , is produced on boiling benzoylcyanacetic ester (p. 263) with water, on acting upon sodium oxymethylene acetophenone with hydroxylamine hydrochloride and sodium hydroxide (B. 24, 133), and upon treating imidobenzoylacetonitrile or imidobenzoyl methyl cyanide with hydrochloric acid.

**Imidobenzoyl Cyan-methane**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C}(\text{:NH})\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$ , melting at  $86^\circ$ , results when sodium acts upon a dry ethereal solution of benzonitrile and methyl cyanide or acetonitrile (B. 22, R. 327). When treated with hydroxylamine hydrochloride, the imidogroup is replaced by the oximido-group, and the latter adds itself to cyanogen with the

production of phenylisoxazononimide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C} \begin{array}{c} \text{N} \text{---} \text{O} \\ \parallel \quad | \\ \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C} \cdot \text{NH} \end{array}$ , melting at  $111^\circ$  (B. 26, R. 272).

**p-Nitrobenzoyl-acetic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NO}_2) \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at  $135^\circ$ , and is produced by heating p-nitrophenyl propiolic ester with sulphuric acid. It breaks down, on melting, into  $\text{CO}_2$  and p-nitroacetophenone. o-Nitrophenyl propiolic ester is readily transposed into the isomeric isatogenic ester (B. 17, 326).

**Methylbenzoyl-acetic Ester**, boiling at  $226^\circ$  (225 mm.), when treated with nitrous acid forms  $\alpha$ -isonitrosopropiophenone (B. 21, 2119). Ethyl- and diethylbenzoyl-acetic ester boil at  $210^\circ$  (90 mm.) and  $223^\circ$  (150 mm.).

**Allyl-benzoyl-acetic Ester** boils at  $220^\circ$  (100 mm.). **Benzoyltrimethylene Carboxylic Acid**, melting at  $148^\circ$ , decomposes at higher temperatures into  $\text{CO}_2$  and benzoyl-trimethylene (pp. 23, 190) (B. 16, 2128, 2136).

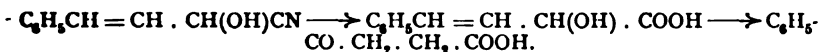
**2,5-Dinitrophenyl- and 2,4,6-Trinitrophenyl acetoacetic Ester**, melting at  $94^\circ$  and  $98^\circ$ , result from the action of 2,5-dinitrobenzene and 2,4,6-trinitrochlorobenzene (p. 68) upon sodium acetoacetic ester (A. 220, 131; B. 22, 990; 23, 2720).

**Benzylacetoacetic Ester**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} < \begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3 \end{array}$ , is derived from sodium

acetoacetic ester and benzyl chloride (A. 204, 179). It boils at 276° and by the ketone decomposition yields benzyl acetone (B. 15, 1875) (p. 190); by the acid decomposition it forms phenylpropionic acid (p. 197).

**D.  $\gamma$ - and  $\delta$ -Ketone Carboxylic Acids.**

**$\beta$ -Benzoylpropionic Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at 116°, is obtained (1) by the condensation of benzene and succinic anhydride by means of  $AlCl_3$  (B. 20, 1376); (2) by reducing  $\beta$ -benzoyl acrylic acid; (3) by the elimination of carbon dioxide from benzoylisosuccinic acid (p. 262), and (4) from phenacyl-benzoylacetate ester by the acid decomposition; (5) by boiling the HCN-addition-product of cinnamic aldehyde with dilute hydrochloric acid, and carefully saponifying the phenyloxycrotonic acid produced at first in the cold, which in the heat rearranges itself (B. 29, 2582):



It dissolves with difficulty in hot water. Sodium amalgam reduces it to  $\gamma$ -phenylbutyrolactone.

Phosphorus pentasulphide converts the acid into phenyloxythiophene (B. 19, 553). It yields two isomeric *oximes*, melting at 129° and 92° (B. 25, 1932).

**$\alpha$ -Phenyl-lævulinic Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH < \begin{smallmatrix} CO_2H \\ CH_2 \end{smallmatrix} \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$ , melting at 126°, is derived from phenylacetosuccinic ester (B. 17, 72; 18, 790).  **$\beta$ -Benzyl-lævulinic Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH < \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \\ CO \cdot CH_3 \end{smallmatrix}$ , from  $\beta$ -benzal-lævulinic acid (A. 254, 202), melts at 98°. See benzalangelicalactone.  **$\beta$ -Phenyl- $\gamma$ -acetobutyric Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH < \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \\ CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 \end{smallmatrix}$ , melts at 83°. It is obtained from phenyldihydroresorcinol by the action of alkalis or acids (B. 26, 2057; A. 294, 322). Phenyldihydroresorcinol is again formed when its esters are condensed with sodium alcoholate.

**9. PHENYL-ALCOHOL-KETONE CARBOXYLIC ACIDS.**

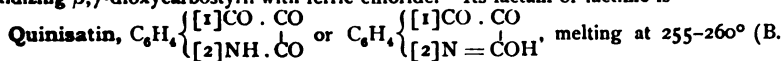
**Benzoyl Glycollic Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH(OH)CO_2H$ , melts at 125° (B. 16, 2133). **Phenyl- $\gamma$ -keto- $\alpha$ -oxybutyric Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH(OH)CO_2H$ , melting at 125°, is obtained from its trichloride, chloral acetophenone,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH(OH)CCl_3$ , melting at 76° (B. 26, 557).

**10. DIKETONE CARBOXYLIC ACIDS.**

**Benzoyl Glyoxylic Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CO \cdot CO_2H$ . The  $\alpha$ -oxime and  $\alpha$ -phenylhydrazone of the ethyl ester of this acid have been prepared by the action of nitrous acid and diazobenzene chloride (B. 21, 2120) upon benzoyl-acetic ester (p. 259).

**Benzoyl-isonitroso-acetic Ester**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot C(:NOH)CO_2C_2H_5$ , melts at 121°. **Benzoyl- $\alpha$ -phenylhydrazone-glyoxylic Ester**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot C(:N \cdot NHC_6H_5)CO_2C_2H_5$ , melts at 65°.

**Quinisinic Acid**,  **$\alpha$ -Amidobenzoyl Glyoxylic Acid**,  $NH_2[2]C_6H_4CO \cdot CO \cdot CO_2H$ , at 120° breaks down into water and its lactam or lactime. It is obtained by oxidizing  $\beta$ , $\gamma$ -dioxycarbostyryl with ferric chloride. Its lactam or lactime is—



**Benzoyl Pyroracemic Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at 157°, is prepared from its *ethyl ester* (melting at 43°), produced in the condensation of acetophenone and oxalic ester (B. 21, 1131). Ferric chloride imparts a blood-red color to the alcoholic solution of the ester.

When benzoyl chloride acts upon acetoacetic ester it produces benzoyl acetoacetic ester,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH \cdot (CO \cdot CH_3) \cdot CO_2C_2H_5$ . This decomposes into acetophenone and benzoyl acetone (B. 18, 2131).

*o*-Nitrobenzoyl-aceto-acetic Ester (A. 221, 323).

Acetophenone-acetoacetic Ester,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH \cdot \begin{smallmatrix} CO_2H \\ CO \cdot CH_3 \end{smallmatrix}$ , melts at  $130^\circ$ – $140^\circ$ , with decomposition into  $CO_2$  and acetophenone-acetone (p. 249). Its *ethyl ester* is produced by the action of *o*-bromacetophenone upon sodium acetoacetic ester (B. 16, 2866). Like acetophenone-acetone, the ester readily forms a furfuran derivative.

## 11. PHENYLPARAFFIN DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

The phenylparaffin dicarboxylic acids, like the aliphatic, saturated dicarboxylic acids, can be arranged into malonic acids, ethylene succinic acids, etc.

*Phenylmalonic Acids*.—Phenyl Malonic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(CO_2H)_2$ , melts at  $152^\circ$ , splitting off  $CO_2$  and forming phenyl acetic acid. Its *ester*, boiling at  $171^\circ$  (14 mm.), is formed from phenylloxalacetic ester by the elimination of carbon monoxide (B. 27, 1091). Dinitrophenylmalonic Ester,  $(NO_2)_2 \cdot C_6H_3 \cdot CH(CO_2C_6H_5)_2$ , melting at  $51^\circ$ , is obtained by the action of bromdinitrobenzene upon sodium malonic ester (B. 21, 2472; 22, 1232; 23, R. 460; 26, R. 10).

2,4,6-Trinitrophenylmalonic Ester, *Picrylmalonic Ester*,  $(NO_2)_3 \cdot C_6H_2 \cdot CH(CO_2C_6H_5)_2$ , exists in two modifications, melting at  $58^\circ$  and  $64^\circ$  (B. 28, 3066; 29, R. 997).

Benzyl Malonic Acid,  *$\beta$ -Phenylisosuccinic Acid*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH(CO_2H)_2$ , melting at  $117^\circ$ , is obtained from its ester, produced in the action of benzyl chloride upon sodium malonic ester, as well as by the reduction of benzal malonic acid (p. 288) (A. 218, 139).

*o*- and *p*-Nitrobenzyl-malonic Ester (B. 20, 434).—The *o*-acid is condensed by sodium hydroxide to *n*-oxy-*a*-indol-carboxylic acid (B. 29, 639). Methylbenzyl Malonic Acid (A. 204, 177).

*Phenylsuccinic Acids*.—Phenyl-succinic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH \cdot CO_2H \cdot \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \\ CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $167^\circ$ , results from *o*-chlorstyrene,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : CHCl$ , as well as from benzal malonic ester, by means of potassium cyanide (A. 293, 338); by the decomposition of phenyl-acetsuccinic ester, by means of very concentrated caustic potash; from phenyl-ethane-tricarboxylic acid (p. 264), and from the so-called hydro-cornicularic acid,  $C_{17}H_{18}O_4$ . Its *anhydride* melts at  $54^\circ$  (B. 23, R. 573).

*o*-Oxyphenylsuccinic Acid melts with decomposition at  $150^\circ$ . It is obtained from coumarin and potassium cyanide (A. 293, 366).

Phenyl-methyl-succinic Acids,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH \cdot CO_2H \cdot \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \cdot CHCO_2H \\ CH_2 \cdot CHCO_2H \end{smallmatrix}$ , have been obtained in two modifications, melting at  $170^\circ$  and  $192^\circ$  (B. 24, 1876).

Benzylsuccinic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH \cdot CO_2H \cdot \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \\ CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \end{smallmatrix}$ , melts at  $161^\circ$ , and results from sodium ethan-tricarboxylic ester, or sodium ethan-tetracarboxylic ester by the action of benzyl chloride, etc. (B. 17, 449), as well as by the reduction of phenyl-itaconic acid (B. 23, R. 237). It forms an *anhydride*, melting at  $102^\circ$ .

## 12. PHENYL-ALCOHOL-DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

Benzyl Tartronic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C(OH)(CO_2H)_2$ , melts at  $143^\circ$ , with decomposition into  $CO_2$  and  *$\beta$* -phenyl-lactic acid (p. 252). It results from the action of caustic potash on *benzylchloromalonic ester*, the product obtained from the interaction of benzyl chloride and sodium chloromalonic ester (A. 209, 243). *a*-Anilido-, *Phenyl-hydrasido-benzylmalonic Ester*, etc., are produced by the addition of the respective bases to benzal-malonic ester (B. 28, 1451; 29, 813).

*$\beta$* -Methoxybenzyl Malonic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(OCH_3) \cdot CH(CO_2H)_2$ , melts at  $115^\circ$  with decomposition into methyl alcohol and benzal malonic acid, from whose ester the  *$\beta$* -methoxybenzylmalonic ester is produced by addition of sodium methylate (B. 27, 289).

*Phenylmalic Acids.*— $\alpha$ -Phenyl- $\alpha$ -oxysuccinic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C}(\text{OH})\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $187^\circ$ , is produced by the action of bromine, phosphorus and water upon phenylsuccinic acid.

$\alpha$ -Phenyl- $\beta$ -oxysuccinic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $150$ – $160^\circ$ , results from the interaction of phenylformylacetic ester, prussic acid, and hydrochloric acid (B. 23, R. 573).

Phenyl-itamalic Acid may be obtained in the form of its lactone acid, Phenyl-paraconic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $109^\circ$ , by heating benzaldehyde with sodium succinate and acetic anhydride (I, 492) (A. 256, 63). When phenyl-paraconic acid is boiled with alkalis it yields the salts of phenyl-itamalic acid. The latter, when in a free condition, immediately reverts to phenyl-paraconic acid. This, upon distillation, breaks down into carbon dioxide, phenylbutyrolactone (p. 254) and phenylisocrotonic acid. A further product is  $\alpha$ -naphthol (see this).

Phenyl-itaconic acid is produced when metallic sodium or sodium ethylate acts upon phenylparaconic esters (p. 289). Hydriodic acid reduces it to benzyl succinic acid and phenyl-butyric acid (B. 29, 15).

$\alpha$ -, m-, p-Chlorphenyl-paraconic Acids result from the condensation of monochlorbenzaldehydes with sodium succinate, and yield three chlorinated naphthols (B. 21, R. 733). 1,3,4-Dichlorphenylparaconic Acid, melting at  $138^\circ$ , forms two dichloronaphthols (B. 29, R. 224).

$\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Methylphenyl-paraconic Acids are produced in the condensation of benzaldehyde with pyrotartaric acid, and yield methyl- $\alpha$ -naphthols (A. 255, 257).

$\alpha$ -Phenyl- $\gamma$ -valerolactone Carboxylic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $167^\circ$ , is produced in the reduction of phenylaceto-succinic ester (B. 18, 791).

### 13. PHENYLKETONE DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

**Benzoyl Malonic Ester**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ , and  **$\alpha$ -Nitrobenzoylmalonic Ester**, are produced by the action of benzoyl chloride and  $\alpha$ -nitrobenzoyl chloride upon sodium malonic ester (B. 20, R. 381). The latter yields quinoline derivatives upon reduction (B. 22, 386).

**Benzoyl Cyanacetic Methyl Ester**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , melting at  $74^\circ$ , is formed from cyanacetic methyl ester (I, 440) and benzoyl chloride. Its *ethyl ester*, melting at  $41^\circ$ , from benzoyl acetic ester and cyanogen chloride, yields cyanacetophenone on boiling with water (p. 258).

**Benzoyl-Isosuccinic Ester**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ , is obtained from  $\omega$ -bromacetophenone and sodium malonic ester (B. 18, 3324).

**Phenyl-oxalacetic Ester**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , is formed from oxalic ester, phenylacetic ester, and sodium (B. 20, 592). See phenyl-malonic acid, p. 262.

**Phenylcyanpyrrocemic Ester**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , is obtained from oxalic ester, benzyl cyanide, and sodium (A. 271, 172). See phenylpyrrocemic acid, p. 259.

**Phenyl-acetosuccinic Ester**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , is formed from sodium acetacetic ester and phenylbromacetic ester (B. 17, 71).

**Benzyl-aceto-succinic Ester**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , results from the interaction of sodium acetosuccinic ester and benzyl chloride (B. 11, 1058).

## 14. PHENYL-OXYKETONE DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

Ketophenylparaconic Ester,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH} \begin{matrix} \text{CO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \text{CO} \end{matrix}$ , (B. 26, 2144).

## 15. PHENYLPARAFFIN TRICARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

Phenylcarboxyl-succinic Acid, Phenyl-ethane-tricarboxylic Acid.—Its ester is formed when phenylchloroacetic ester acts upon sodium malonic ester (A. 219, 31). The acid breaks down, on heating, into  $\text{CO}_2$  and phenylsuccinic acid (B. 23, R. 573).

## 16. PHENYLKETO-TRICARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

$\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Benzoyltricarballic Acids,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{COOH})\text{CH}(\text{COOH})\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$  and  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COC}(\text{COOH})(\text{CH}_2\text{COOH})_2$ . Their esters are formed from chlorosuccinic ester and benzoylacetate ester, or from benzoylacetate ester with bromoacetic ester and sodium ethylate (B. 29, R. 788).

Addendum.—A number of compounds attach themselves to the phenylpolyalcohols and their oxidation products. They may be regarded as derived from the various classes of bodies which have just been described, by assuming, in addition to the one aliphatic side-chain, a second or more groups (mostly carboxyl groups) attached to the benzene ring. Most of the bodies belonging here are *o*-di-derivatives of benzene, *o*-phenylene derivatives, obtained in part from *o*-phthalic acid, and in part by the oxidation of derivatives of ortho-condensed hydrocarbons—*e. g.*, indene and naphthalene. Mention may be made of the subjoined compounds. Some of them are intimately related to the dicarboxylic acids, which have been discussed, carrying the one carboxyl group in the nucleus and the other in the side-chain.

## 17. PHENYLENE-OXYDICARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

*o*-Carbomandelic Acid,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , decomposes readily into water and a lactone carboxylic acid:

Phthalid-carboxylic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{Bmatrix} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CO} > \text{O} \end{Bmatrix}$ , melting at  $149^\circ$ , and beyond  $180^\circ$  decomposing into carbon dioxide and phthalide. It is produced by reducing phenylglyoxyl-*o*-carboxylic acid (B. 18, 381). It is quite soluble in water and crystallizes in leaflets.

Phthalid-acetic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{Bmatrix} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CO} > \text{O} \end{Bmatrix}$ , melting at  $150^\circ$ , is derived from phthalylacetic acid by reduction (p. 289) (B. 10, 1558, 2200).

Normeconine-acetic Acid,  $(\text{HO})_2[5,6]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \begin{Bmatrix} [1]\text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ [2]\text{CO} > \text{O} \end{Bmatrix}$ , melting at  $228^\circ$ , results from the action of hydriodic acid upon meconine-acetic acid,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2[5,6]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \begin{Bmatrix} [1]\text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ [2]\text{CO} > \text{O} \end{Bmatrix}$ . The latter is formed in the condensation of opianic acid with malonic acid, glacial acetic acid, and sodium acetate (B. 19, 2295).

Dihydroisocoumarin-carboxylic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{Bmatrix} [1]\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ [2]\text{CO} - \text{O} \end{Bmatrix}$ , melting at  $153^\circ$ , is isomeric with phthalid-acetic acid. It is produced in the oxidation of dihydronaphthol (see this) with potassium permanganate (B. 26, 1841).

Phthalid-propionic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{Bmatrix} [1]\text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ [2]\text{CO} > \text{O} \end{Bmatrix}$ , melting at  $140^\circ$ , results from the reduction of phthalylpropionic acid (B. 11, 1681).

o-Phenylene-aceto-glycol-lactone Acid,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CH(CO_2H)O \\ [2]CH_2- \end{array} \right. \text{CO} + 1\frac{1}{2}H_2O$ , melting at  $85^\circ$ , is obtained from phenylene diacetic acid, bromine, phosphorus, and water (B. 26, 223).

o-Carboxyphenylglyceric Acid Lactone,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CH(OH) \cdot CH \cdot CO_2H \\ [2]CO- \end{array} \right. \text{O}$ , melting at  $202^\circ$ , is produced when  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone is oxidized with a bleaching lime solution. When the lactone acid is heated with hydrochloric acid it loses water and becomes o-carbon-o-oxycinnamic acid lactone (B. 27, 198).

## 18. PHENYLENE KETONE DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

o-Carboxyphenylglyoxylic Acid, *Phthalonic Acid*,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CO \cdot CO_2H \\ [2]CO_2H \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $138-140^\circ$ , is formed in the oxidation of o-hydrindene carboxylic acid (see this), naphthalene,  $\alpha$ -naphthol,  $\beta$ -naphthol, and the oxy-quinone of  $\beta$ -phenylnaphthalene with potassium permanganate (A. 240, 142). It yields o-carbo-mandelic acid upon reduction (p. 264).

Trichloroaceto-benzoic Acid,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CO \cdot CCl_3 \\ [2]CO_2H \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $144^\circ$ , and Tribromoaceto-benzoic Acid, melting at  $160^\circ$ , result when chlorine or bromine, in glacial acetic acid, acts upon phthalylacetic acid (B. 10, 1556).

o-Carboxybenzoyl Acetic Acid,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \\ [2]CO_2H \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $90^\circ$ , with decomposition into carbon dioxide and acetophenone-o-carboxylic acid (p. 238), is formed when phthalyl acetic acid is dissolved in an excess of caustic soda and precipitated with acids (B. 10, 1553).

Cyanacetophenone-o-carboxylic Acid melts at  $136^\circ$  (B. 26, R. 371).

Benzoyl-cyanacetoester-o-carboxylic Acid,  $CO_2H[2]C_6H_4 \cdot CO \cdot CH < \begin{array}{l} CO_2C_2H_5 \\ CN \end{array}$ , melting at  $121^\circ$ , is produced by the action of soda upon phthalylcyanacetic ester (B. 26, R. 370).

o-Carboxybenzoyl-propionic Acid,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \\ [2]CO_2H \end{array} \right.$ , melts at  $137^\circ$ .

The double lactone,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} O \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ C-CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ CO_2 > O \end{array} \right.$ , corresponding to this acid, is produced on heating succinic anhydride and phthalic anhydride with sodium acetate (B. 11, 1680; 18, 3119).

## 19. TRI- AND TETRA-CARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

Benzylmalon-o-carboxylic Acid, o-Carboxybenzylmalonic Acid,

$C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} CH_2 \cdot CH(CO_2H)_2 \\ CO_2H \end{array} \right.$  breaks down at  $190^\circ$  into hydrocinnam-o-carboxylic acid and  $CO_2$ . Its diethyl ester results from the reduction of phthalylmalonic ester (A. 242, 37).

o-, m-, p-Xylylene-dimalonic Tetra-ethyl Esters,  $C_6H_4[CH_2 \cdot CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2]_2$ , are produced in the reduction of the three corresponding xylylenedichlor-dimalonic esters,  $C_6H_4[CH_2CCl(CO_2C_2H_5)_2]_2$ , which are the products of the action of sodium chloromalonate upon the  $\omega$ -xylylene dibromides (B. 21, 31). The xylylene dimalonic acids break down, on heating, into phenylene dipropionic acids and  $2CO_2$ .

## 20. OXYTRI- AND PENTACARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

Phthalyl Diacetic Acid,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} C[CH_2 \cdot CO_2H]_2 \\ \diagdown \\ COO \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $158^\circ$ , is obtained from

phthalyl dimalonic acid,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} C(CH)(CO_2H)_2 \\ \diagdown \\ COO \end{array} \right.$  (A. 242, 80).

## 21. KETONE TRICARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

**2,6-Dicarbophenylglyoxylic Acid**,  $(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2[\text{2,6}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{CO} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $238^\circ$ , is formed when naphthalic acid is oxidized with  $\text{KMnO}_4$  (B. 26, 1798). Hydriodic acid and phosphorus reduce it to 2-methylisophthalic acid (p. 242), and when heated it becomes 2-aldehydoisophthalic acid (p. 245), while more complete oxidation converts it into hemimellitic acid (B. 29, R. 282).

**Iregenone Di- and Tri-carboxylic Acids**,  $\text{CH}_3[\text{4}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ [2]\text{CO} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} \right.$  and  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}[\text{4}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ [2]\text{CO} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} \right.$  (B. 26, 2684).

## MONO-NUCLEUS, AROMATIC SUBSTANCES, WITH UNSATURATED SIDE-CHAINS.

The benzene derivatives thus far considered contained saturated side-chains having carbon present in them. To these are attached the compounds having *unsaturated side-chains*—*e. g.* :

Phenylethylene, Styrolene, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH}_2$	Phenyl Acetylene, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C} : \text{CH}$
Cinnamyl Alcohol, Styrene, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	—
Cinnamyl Aldehyde, . . . $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CHO}$	—
Cinnamic Acid, . . . . $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$	Phenyl Propiolic Acid, . . . } $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C} : \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ .

They can, like the unsaturated aliphatic bodies, be converted by numerous additive reactions into saturated compounds, as has frequently been shown in the preceding sections.

## 1a. OLEFINE BENZENES.

**Phenyl Ethylene, Styrolene, Vinylbenzene**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH}_2$ , boiling at  $144^\circ$ , occurs in storax (1–5 per cent.), from which it is obtained upon distillation with water. It also accompanies crude xylene in coal-tar (B. 23, 3169, 3269). It is prepared (1) by the action of zinc-dust and glacial acetic acid upon phenylacetylene. Sodium and methyl alcohol will produce the same result (two hydrogen atoms are added) (B. 21, 1184). (2) By heating cinnamic acid with lime (B. 23, 3269) or with water to  $200^\circ$ . (3) By the action of alcoholic potash upon bromethyl benzene, and (4) by the condensation of acetylene,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_2$ , upon application of heat. (5) From vinyl bromide, benzene and aluminium chloride (A. 235, 331). (6) It is best obtained from  $\beta$ -brom-hydrocinnamic acid, which is immediately decomposed by a soda solution into styrolene, carbon dioxide and hydrobromic acid (B. 15, 1983). It is a mobile, strongly refracting liquid, with an agreeable odor. Pure styrolene is optically inactive; its sp. gr. = 0.925 at  $0^\circ$ .

Hydriodic acid converts styrolene into ethyl benzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ ; hydrochloric and hydrobromic acids change it to  $\alpha$ -haloid ethyl benzenes (B. 26, 1709), while with chlorine and bromine it yields  $\alpha, \beta$ -dihaloid ethyl benzenes; chromic acid or nitric acid oxidizes it to benzoic acid.

With xylene and sulphuric acid, styrolene forms  $\beta$ -phenyl- $\alpha$ -tolyl propane; and with phenol, oxydiphenylethane (B. 24, 3889). Nitrous acid converts it into styrolene nitrosites,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C_2H_3 \cdot (N_2O_3)$  (B. 29, 356).

A. *Styrolenes containing the substituents in the side-group.*—The derivatives of styrolene substituted in the vinyl residue will be discussed immediately after styrolene itself.

Two series of monosubstituted styrolenes result from the replacement of vinyl hydrogen. They are known as  $\alpha$ - and  $\omega$ -substitution products:

$\alpha$ -Bromstyrolene,  $C_6H_5CBr : CH_2$ .

$\omega$ -Bromstyrolene,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : CHBr$ .

The  $\alpha$ -products result on heating styrolene chloride (-bromide) alone, with lime, or with alcoholic potash. They possess a penetrating odor, causing tears. They yield acetophenone (B. 14, 323) when they are heated with water (to  $180^\circ$ ) or with sulphuric acid.  $\alpha$ -Chlor-styrolene also results from acetophenone chloride (p. 189) when it is digested with alcoholic potash.

$\alpha$ -Chlorstyrolene boils at  $190^\circ$ .

$\alpha$ -Bromstyrolene " "  $150$ – $160^\circ$  (75 mm.)

The  $\omega$ -products are derived (along with phenylacetaldehyde) from the  $\beta$ -phenyl- $\alpha$ -chlor (brom-) lactic acids (p. 255), upon heating with water.  $\omega$ -Chlorstyrolene is obtained also from  $\omega$ -dichlor-ethyl-benzene with alcoholic potash.  $\omega$ -Bromstyrolene is formed from dibrom-hydrocinnamic acid (p. 255) by boiling with water. When they are heated with water, phenylacetaldehyde results. They are oils having a hyacinth-like odor.

See, further, phenylacetylene (p. 268) and phenylpropionic acid (p. 284).

Dichlorstyrolene,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CCl : CHCl$ , boils at  $221^\circ$  (B. 10, 533). Dibromstyrolene boils at  $253^\circ$  (B. 17, R. 22). Di-iodstyrolene, *phenylacetylene di-iodide*, melting at  $76^\circ$ , is obtained from phenylacetylene and iodine (B. 26, R. 18). Tri-iodstyrolene, *Phenyl tri-iod-ethylene*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CI : CI_2$ , melting at  $108^\circ$ , is obtained from phenyl iod-acetylene and iodine dissolved in  $CS_2$  (B. 26, R. 19).

$\omega$ -Nitro-styrolene, phenylnitro-ethylene,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : CH(NO_2)$ , melting at  $58^\circ$ , is obtained by boiling styrolene with fuming nitric acid, by heating benzaldehyde with nitromethane,  $CH_3(NO_2)$ , and  $ZnCl_2$  to  $190^\circ$  (B. 17, 527), and by the action of fuming nitric acid upon phenyl-isocrotonic acid (B. 17, 413), as well as by the action of  $NO_2$  upon cinnamic acid, when the dinitro-compound,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C_2H_2(NO_2)_2 \cdot CO_2H$ , formed at first, decomposes (B. 18, 2438; 29, 357). It possesses a peculiar odor, provoking tears, is readily volatilized in aqueous vapor, and forms yellow needles. Dilute sulphuric acid decomposes it into benzaldehyde, carbon monoxide, and hydroxylamine.

Phenylnitropropylene,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : C(NO_2)CH_3$ , melting at  $63^\circ$ , is obtained by the action of  $N_2O_5$  upon phenylmethyl acrylic acid (B. 24, 2773).

Phenylvinylamine,  $\omega$ -Amidostyrolene,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : CHNH_2$ , is very unstable. It is obtained by heating  $\alpha$ -amidocinnamic acid (p. 276) (B. 17, 1622), and from  $\omega$ -nitrostyrolene (B. 26, R. 677).

B. *Styrolenes substituted in the benzene nucleus.*—The three nitrostyrolenes are produced by the action of a cold soda solution upon the nitrophenylbrom-lactic acids (p. 255) or by boiling the  $\beta$ -lactones of the phenylbrom-lactic acids with water (B. 16, 2213; 17, 595).

o-, m-, p-Nitrostyrolenes,  $NO_2C_6H_4CH : CH_2$ , melt at  $+13^\circ$ ,  $-5^\circ$  and  $+29^\circ$ . o-Amidostyrolene is a very unstable, oily body. m-Amidostyrolene, boiling at  $112$ – $115^\circ$  (12 mm.), is an oil, which polymerizes with ease. m-Azostyrolene melts at  $38^\circ$  (B. 26, R. 677). p-Amidostyrolene, melting at  $81^\circ$ , is formed on heating p-amidocinnamic acid, and together with p-amidocinnamic acid in the reduction of p-nitrocinnamic ester (B. 15, 1984).

C. *Styrolenes substituted both in the benzene nucleus and in the side-chain.*— $PCl_5$  converts o- and p-nitroacetophenones into liquid ortho- and

*p*-nitro-*a*-chlorstyrolene,  $\text{NO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CCl} : \text{CH}_2$ , melting at  $63^\circ$  (A. 221, 329).

*o*-Nitro-*o*-chlorstyrolene,  $\text{NO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CHCl}$ , melting at  $58^\circ$ , is obtained from *o*-nitrocinnamic acid and hypochlorous acid (B. 17, 1070).

*o*-Amido-chlorstyrolene, melting at  $56^\circ$ , yields indol when it is heated to  $170^\circ$  with sodium alcoholate; see also *o*-oxy-*o*-chlorstyrolene (p. 269). *p*,*o*-Dinitrostyrolene melts at  $199^\circ$  (B. 17, R. 528).

Mention may be made of the following *homologues of styrolene*: *m*- and *p*-Methyl Styrolenes,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH} : \text{CH}_2$ , boil at  $164^\circ$  and at  $170$ – $175^\circ$  (B. 24, 1332).

Allyl Benzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , boiling at  $174^\circ$ , is formed when styrene is reduced with hydriodic acid (B. 11, 670). Isoallylbenzene, Propenyl Benzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH}_2$ , boiling at  $155^\circ$ , is obtained from benzene, allyl iodide, and zinc-dust (A. 172, 132).

**I b. Acetylene Benzenes: Phenylacetylene, Acetenyl Benzene,**  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C} : \text{CH}$ , boiling at  $139^\circ$ , is produced (1) when *a*-brom-styrolene and (2) acetophenone chloride are heated to  $130^\circ$  with alcoholic potash; (3) also from phenyl-propionic acid (p. 284), on heating it with water to  $120^\circ$ , or upon distilling the barium or aniline salt (B. 29, R. 797).

It is a pleasant-smelling liquid. It forms metallic compounds, like acetylene, with ammoniacal silver and copper solutions:  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C} : \text{C})_2\text{Cu}$ , is bright yellow,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{C} \cdot \text{Ag}$  is white (B. 25, 1096). The sodium compound,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Na}$ , inflames in the air, and with carbon dioxide it yields phenyl propionic acid. When phenyl-acetylene is dissolved in sulphuric acid and diluted with water, it yields acetophenone, while styrolene is produced on boiling it with acetic acid and zinc-dust (B. 22, 1184).

Phenylid-acetylene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C} : \text{Cl}$ , boils at  $136^\circ$  (22 mm.) (B. 26, R. 20).

*o*-Nitrophenyl Acetylene and *p*-Nitrophenyl Acetylene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{C} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{NO}_2$ , melting at  $81$ – $82^\circ$  and  $152^\circ$ , are produced on boiling *o*-nitrophenylpropionic acid and *p*-nitrophenylpropionic acid with water.

*o*-Amidophenyl Acetylene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NH}_2)\text{C} : \text{CH}$ , is an oil with an odor resembling that of the indigo vat. It is produced in the reduction of *o*-nitrophenyl-acetylene with zinc-dust and ammonia, or with ferrous sulphate and potassium hydroxide, and in the decomposition of *o*-amidophenylpropionic acid.

Phenylmethylacetylene, Phenylallylene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C} : \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , boiling at  $185^\circ$ , is produced on boiling phenylbrompropylene with alcoholic potash (B. 21, 276). Phenyl-ethylacetylene, boiling at  $201^\circ$ , is obtained from sodium phenylacetylide and ethyl iodide, as well as from phenyliodacetylene and zinc ethide.

**I c. Diolefine Benzenes.**—*p*-Divinylbenzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH} : \text{CH}_2)_2$ , is a liquid with an odor like that of petroleum. It is produced when *p*-di-*a*-bromethylbenzene is heated with quinoline (B. 27, 2528).

## II a. OLEFINE PHENOLS.

Various representatives of this class occur in the vegetable kingdom: chavicol, chavibetol, estragol, anethol, eugenol, safrol, asarone, apiol, etc. All are phenol-like derivatives of allyl- and isoallyl- or propenylbenzene. The allyl fatty derivatives occurring in the vegetable kingdom were mustard oil (1, 423) and oil of garlic (1, 150).

A. Olefine Monoxybenzenes.—m-Vinylphenol,  $\text{CH}_2:\text{CH}.\text{C}_6\text{H}_4.\text{OH}$ , boiling at  $115^\circ$  (16 mm.), is obtained from m-amidostyrolene (p. 267). o- and p-Vinyl anisols,  $\text{CH}_2:\text{CH}.\text{C}_6\text{H}_4.\text{O}.\text{CH}_3$ , boiling at  $198^\circ$  and  $204^\circ$ , have been obtained from the corresponding methoxycinnamic acids (B. 11, 515).

o-Oxy- $\omega$ -chlorstyrolene,  $\text{HO}.[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4.\text{CH}:\text{CHCl}$ , melting at  $54^\circ$ , is obtained from o-amido- $\omega$ -chlorstyrolene. Caustic potash converts it into cumarone (see this). o-Thio- $\omega$ -chlorstyrolene,  $\text{HS}.\text{C}_6\text{H}_4.\text{CH}:\text{CHCl}$ ; see benzothiophene.

Allyl- and Propenyl Phenols.—A very common property of the allyl phenols is their rearrangement, induced by hot alcoholic potash, into isomeric propenyl compounds:

Methyl-  
chavicol,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}.\text{C}_6\text{H}_4.\text{CH}_2.\text{CH}:\text{CH}_2 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{O}.\text{C}_6\text{H}_4.\text{CH}:\text{CH}.\text{CH}_3$  Anethol.

Methyl  
Eugenol,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3.\text{CH}_2.\text{CH}:\text{CH}_2 \rightarrow (\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3.\text{CH}:\text{CH}.\text{CH}_3$  Isoeugenol

Safrol, . .  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3.\text{CH}_2.\text{CH}:\text{CH}_2 \rightarrow (\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3.\text{CH}:\text{CH}.\text{CH}_3$  Isosafrol

Apiol, . .  $\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} (\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2 \\ (\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\}.\text{C}_6\text{H}_3.\text{CH}_2.\text{CH}:\text{CH}_2 \rightarrow \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} (\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2 \\ (\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\}.\text{C}_6\text{H}_3.\text{CH}:\text{CH}.\text{CH}_3$  Isoapiol.

The propenyl derivatives are distinguished from the allyl derivatives by higher specific gravities, higher melting points, and greater refractive power (B. 22, 2747; 23, 862). When the propenyl compounds are acted upon with nitrous acid, in glacial acetic acid, they yield *di-isonitrososuperoxides*, derivatives of  $\alpha$ -diketones (see anethol). The allyl- and propenyl-phenols, when carefully oxidized with potassium permanganate, yield *phenol glycols* (p. 248) and *phenol-glyoxylic acids* (p. 259). See B. 29, 676, etc., for the action of bromine and alkalis.

Chavicol, p-Allyl Phenol,  $\text{CH}_2:\text{CH}.\text{CH}_2.[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4.\text{OH}$ , boils at  $237^\circ$  and occurs in the oil obtained from the leaves of *Chavica Belle*. It is a colorless oil with peculiar odor and its aqueous solution is colored blue by a drop of ferric chloride. Methyl Chavicol boils at  $226^\circ$ , and Ethyl Chavicol boils at  $232^\circ$  (B. 23, 862).

Estragol occurs in estragonal oil (B. 27, R. 46). It is isomeric with methyl chavicol. It boils at  $215^\circ$  (compare B. 29, 344). Both bodies change to anethol when heated with alcoholic potash. The cause of the isomerism of these two compounds has not yet been explained.

p-Anol, p-Propenyl Phenol,  $\text{CH}_2:\text{CH}:[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4.\text{OH}$ , melting at  $92^\circ$ , is prepared by heating anethol with caustic alkali (A. Suppl. 8, 88).

Anethol, p-Propenyl Anisol,  $\text{CH}_2:\text{CH}:[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4.\text{O}.\text{CH}_3$ , melting at  $21^\circ$  and boiling at  $232^\circ$ , occurs in anise oil, from the seed of *Pimpinella Anisum*, in that from the seed of *Illicium anisatum*, in the fruit of *Anethum feniculum*, and in estragonal oil. It is also formed from estragol and methyl chavicol (see above). It has been obtained synthetically from  $\beta$ -p-methoxyphenylmethacrylic acid; this would prove that its constitution is that of p-propenyl anisol (B. 10, 1604). Chromic acid oxidizes it to anisic and acetic acids, while dilute nitric acid changes it to anisic aldehyde (p. 219). Methoxyphenylglyoxylic acid is produced on treating it with potassium permanganate (p. 259). See also di-isonitroso-anethol peroxide, p. 250. o- and p-Propenyl Anisols boil at  $222^\circ$  and  $227^\circ$  (B. 29, R. 644).

B. Olefine Dioxybenzenes.—Of this group it is the olefine-3,4-dioxybenzenes which are almost exclusively known. They usually occur as ethers in plants, or are obtained by the breaking down of plant acids.

Hesperetol, Vinyl-3,4-guaiacol,  $\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{HO}[3] \\ \text{CH}_3\text{O}[4] \end{smallmatrix} \right\}.\text{C}_6\text{H}_3.\text{CH}:\text{CH}_2$ , melting at  $57^\circ$ , is produced in the dry distillation of calcium isoferulate (p. 283) (B. 14, 967).

Allyl-3,4-pyrocatechine is not known in a free condition. However, its three methyl ethers and its methylene ether have been found in ethereal oils.

Eugenol, Allyl-4,3-guaiacol, Eugenic Acid,  $\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{HO}[4] \\ \text{CH}_3\text{O}[3] \end{smallmatrix} \right\}.\text{C}_6\text{H}_3.\text{CH}_2.\text{CH}:\text{CH}_2$ , is

an aromatic oil boiling at 247°. It is colored blue by ferric chloride. It occurs in the oil from *Eugenia caryophyllata*, in that from *Eugenia pimenta*, etc. Sodium amalgam reduces coniferyl alcohol to eugenol (p. 272) (B. 9, 418). Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to homovanillin, vanillin, and vanillic acid. It breaks down into acetic acid and protocatechuic acid when fused with potassium hydroxide (p. 227). See B. 27, 2455; 28, 2082, for the derivatives of eugenol.

**Chavibetol**, *Betel-phenol*, *Allyl-3,4-guaiacol*,  $\text{HO} \begin{Bmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{Bmatrix} \text{CH}_2\text{O} \begin{Bmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{Bmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH}_2$ , boiling at 254° (760 mm.), 131° (12 mm.), occurs in the ethereal oil obtained from the leaves of *Piper Betle* (J. pr. Ch. [2], 39, 349; B. 23, 862).

**Eugenol Methyl Ether**, *Allyl-3,4-veratrol*,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2 \begin{Bmatrix} 3,4 \end{Bmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH}_2$ , boiling at 244°, is present in paracoto-oil (A. 271, 304), in the ethereal oil from *Asarum europaeum* (B. 21, 1060), and in *baye-oil*. It has been synthetically prepared from pyrocatechol dimethyl ether, allyl iodide, and zinc-dust (B. 28, R. 1055). Chromic acid oxidizes it to dimethyl protocatechuic acid or vetraric acid (p. 228). It forms isoeugenol methyl ether when heated with alcoholic potash. It also results when sodium eugenol or potassium chavibetol is treated with methyl iodide (J. pr. Ch. [2], 39, 353).

**Safrol**, **Shikimol**, *Allyl-3,4-pyrocatechol methyleneether*,  $\text{CH}_2 \begin{Bmatrix} \text{O} 3 \\ \text{O} 4 \end{Bmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH}_2$ , melting at 8° and boiling at 232°, is present in the oil of *Sassafras officinalis*, and in that of *Illicium religiosum* or *Shikimino-Ki*. Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to methylene-p,m-dioxybenzylglycol (p. 248), homopiperonylic acid (p. 229), and piperonoyl carboxylic acid (p. 259), which are further oxidized to piperonal and piperonylic acid (p. 229) (B. 24, 3488; 28, 2088). Nitrosites (see B. 28, R. 1004).

**Propenyl-3,4-pyrocatechol**, isomeric with allyl-3,4-pyrocatechol, is not known in a free state. The propenyl pyrocatechol ethers: *isoeugenol*, *isoeugenol methyl ether*, and *isosafrol*, isomeric with the previously described allyl pyrocatechol ethers, are derived from it.

**Isoeugenol**,  $\text{HO} \begin{Bmatrix} 4 \\ 3 \end{Bmatrix} \text{CH}_2\text{O} \begin{Bmatrix} 4 \\ 3 \end{Bmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2$ , boiling at 260°, is formed when homoferrulic acid (p. 283) is distilled with lime and upon heating eugenol with caustic potash or sodium alcoholate in amyl alcohol (B. 27, 2580; Ch. C. 1897, 1, 384).

**Isoeugenol Methyl Ether**, *Propenyl-3,4-veratrol*, boiling at 263°, results upon heating eugenol methyl ether with alcoholic potash (B. 23, 1165). Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to veratroyl carboxylic acid (p. 259) and vetraric acid (B. 24, 2877). It yields a glycol, melting at 88°, when it is carefully oxidized (p. 248).

**Isosafrol**,  $\text{CH}_2 \begin{Bmatrix} \text{O} 3 \\ \text{O} 4 \end{Bmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2$ , boiling at 249°, is obtained from safrol by heating it with alcoholic potash, or with dry sodium ethylate. Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to a glycol (p. 248), melting at 101°, and piperonoyl carboxylic acid (p. 259). Chromic acid changes it to piperonal, artificial heliotropine (p. 220), from which it can be again reformed by condensation with propionic acid, and the splitting-off of CO<sub>2</sub> from the methylene-homo-caffeic acid, which is first produced (p. 283) (B. 29, R. 382). Sodium and alcohol reduce it to dihydrosafrol and m-propyl phenol (B. 23, 1160).

**C. Olefine Trioxybenzenes.**—**Asarone**, *Propenyl-2,4,5(?)-trimethoxybenzene*,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_3 \begin{Bmatrix} 2,4,5 \end{Bmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2$ , melting at 67° and boiling at 296°, separates from the ethereal oil of the root of *Asarum europaeum*, in which it is present together with terpenes and eugenol. Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to trimethoxybenzaldehyde and a trimethoxybenzoic acid (p. 231), which breaks down into CO<sub>2</sub> and oxyhydroquinone methyl ether when it is distilled with lime (B. 23, 2294).

**Myristicine**, *Butenyl-3,4,5-trioxybenzene methyl methylene ether*,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_3 \begin{Bmatrix} 3,4,5 \end{Bmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{C}_4\text{H}_7$ , melting at 30°, results upon treating the high-boiling portions of muscat nut oil and maci oil with metallic sodium. It can be oxidized to ethers of a trioxybenzaldehyde and a trioxybenzoic acid (B. 24, 3818).

**D. Olefine Tetraoxybenzenes.**—**Apiol**, *Allylapionoldimethylmethylene ether*,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_4 \begin{Bmatrix} 3,4,5,6 \end{Bmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH}_2$ , melting at 30° and boiling at 294°, occurs in pars-

key seeds and in *Petroselinum sativum*. Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to ethers of a tetraoxybenzaldehyde and a tetraoxybenzoic acid. See also *apionol*, p. 166. Boiling potash changes it to the isomeride isapiol, melting at  $56^{\circ}$  and boiling at  $304^{\circ}$  (B. 25, R. 908). An apiol, boiling at  $162^{\circ}$  (11 mm.), differing from the preceding only in the relative position of the methylene and methyl groups, occurs in the oil from *Anethum graveolens* (B. 29, 1800).

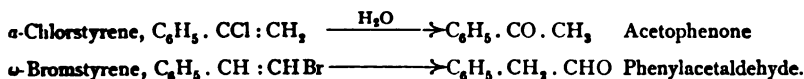
II b. Acetylene phenetol,  $\text{CH} : \text{C} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O} \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5$  (A. 269, 13).

### III. PHENYLOLEFINE ALCOHOLS WITH THEIR OXIDATION PRODUCTS.

The chemistry of the phenylolefine alcohols, aldehydes, and ketones has not been fully developed. Their phenol-like derivatives will be discussed in immediate connection with the most important representatives of the class. The division in detail of the material into polyalcohols and their oxidation products, as was carried out with uni-nucleus benzene derivatives having oxygen-containing side-chains, is not feasible with uni-nucleus benzene derivatives having unsaturated oxygen-containing side-chains, because at present no representatives have been prepared for many classes of compounds which can be deduced theoretically. The bodies belonging here will, therefore, be introduced at the proper places in connection with the simple phenylolefine alcohols and their oxidation products.

#### 1 (a). Phenylolefine Alcohols.

The two phenylvinyl alcohols possible theoretically are not known, and apparently are incapable of existence. The  $\alpha$ -haloid styrenes become acetophenone upon replacing their halogen atom by hydroxyl, while the  $\beta$ -haloid styrenes yield phenyl acetaldehyde:



However, the corresponding ethyl ethers have been prepared:

$\beta$ -Phenylvinyl-ethyl Ether,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , boiling at  $217^{\circ}$ , is formed from  $\omega$ -chlorstyrene (p. 267) and sodium ethylate (B. 14, 1868).  $\alpha$ -Phenylvinylethyl Ether,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5) : \text{CH}_2$ , boiling at  $209^{\circ}$ , is obtained by splitting off alcohol from acetophenone acetal (p. 189) with heat, and is rearranged by heating under pressure into isomeric phenyl ethyl ketone (p. 189) (B. 29, 2931).

Styrone, Cinnamyl Alcohol,  $\gamma$ -Phenyl-allyl Alcohol,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , melting at  $33^{\circ}$  and boiling at  $250^{\circ}$ , occurs as cinnamic ester in liquid *Storax*, the sap of the *Liquidambar orientalis* tree, found in the southwestern portion of Asia Minor. When oxidized it becomes cinnamic aldehyde, cinnamic acid, and benzoic acid; see also stycerine, p. 248. Styrylamine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$ , boils at  $236^{\circ}$  (B. 26, 1858).

#### 1 (b). Oxyphenylolefine Alcohols.

Oxyphenylvinyl alcohols are not known, but *cumarone*,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_6 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1] \text{CH} : \text{CH} \\ [2] \text{O} \end{array} \right.$ , an inner anhydride, the cyclic ether of *o*-oxyphenylvinyl alcohol, has been made. It will be described later under the heterocyclic compounds.

Glyco-*o*-cumar-Alcohol,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{11}\text{O}_5 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , melting at  $115^{\circ}$ , has been formed from glyco-*o*-cumaraldehyde (see below).

Sec. Methyl-*o*-cumar-Alcohol,  $\text{HO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CH}_3$ , melts at  $47^{\circ}$ . See methyl-*o*-cumar-ketone, p. 272.

**Coniferyl Alcohol**, *m*-Methoxy-*p*-oxystyrene,  $\left. \begin{matrix} \text{HO[4]} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{O[3]} \end{matrix} \right\} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , melting at  $73^\circ$ , is formed from coniferine (see this), which emulsin decomposes into glucoses and coniferyl alcohol. Vanilline results from its oxidation (p. 219) and eugenol from its reduction (p. 270).

**Cubebene**,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{O} \left[ \begin{matrix} \text{4} \\ \text{3} \end{matrix} \right] \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , melting at  $125^\circ$ , is found in cubeb, the fruit of *Piper cubeba*.

#### 2 (2). Phenylolefine Aldehydes.

**Cinnamic Aldehyde**, 3-Phenylacrolein,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CHO}$ , boiling at  $247^\circ$ , forms the chief constituent of cinnamon oil from *Persea cinnamomum*, and the oil from *Persea Cassia*, from which it can be extracted with acid sodium sulphite. The first product is the double derivative,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{SO}_3\text{K}$ , which combines with a second molecule of mono-potassium sulphite to yield  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CHSO}_3\text{K} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{NO}_2\text{K} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , which dissolves with difficulty (B. 24, 1805). The aldehyde results from the oxidation of cinnamyl alcohol, in the dry distillation of a mixture of the lime salts of cinnamic and formic acids, and by the action of hydrochloric acid gas or sodium hydrate (B. 17, 2117), or sodium ethylate (B. 20, 657) upon a mixture of benzaldehyde and acetaldehyde.

Cinnamic aldehyde is a colorless, aromatic oil, which distils readily in aqueous vapor. When exposed to the air it oxidizes to cinnamic acid. It adds chlorine and bromine very readily. The dihaloid addition products change with ease into  $\alpha$ -Mono-chlor- and  $\alpha$ -Monobromcinnamic Aldehydes,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CX} \cdot \text{CHO}$ , melting at  $35^\circ$  and  $72^\circ$  (B. 24, 246).

$\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Trithiocinnamic Aldehyde melt at  $167^\circ$  and  $213^\circ$  (B. 24, 1452).

**Hydro-cinnamide**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{N}_2$ , melts at  $106^\circ$ .

Its phenylhydrazine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{N}_2\text{H} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5)$ , melts at  $168^\circ$ . The oxime melts at  $138.5^\circ$ .

The anti-oxime, melting at  $64^\circ$ , is converted by hydrochloric acid gas in ethereal solution into the syn-oxime (B. 27, 3428). Isoquinoline is produced when the latter is heated with  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  (B. 27, 2795).

**Nitrocinnamic Aldehydes** are obtained from the aldehydes of the nitrophenyl-lactic acids (p. 248). *o*-, *m*-, and *p*-Nitrocinnamic aldehydes melt at  $127^\circ$ ,  $116^\circ$ , and  $141^\circ$  (li. 18, 2335).

**$\alpha$ -Methylcinnamic Aldehyde**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CHO}$  (B. 19, 526, 1248).

2 (b). Oxyphenylolefine Aldehydes.

***o*-Cumaric Aldehyde**,  $\text{HO[2]C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CHO}$ , melting at  $133^\circ$ , is produced by the action of emulsin upon *Glyco-o-cumaric aldehyde*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{O}_5 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CHO}$ , melting at  $190^\circ$ , the condensation product of helicine (see this) and acetaldehyde (B. 20, 1931). It occurs as methyl ether in the oil of cassia (B. 28, R. 386). *m*- and *p*-Acrylaldehydophenoxy-acetic Acid,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{O} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CHO}$  (B. 19, 3049).

**Piperonyl Acrolein**,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2[3,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CHO}$ , melting at  $70^\circ$ , is obtained from piperonal, acetaldehyde, and sodium hydroxide (B. 27, 2958); see piperic acid.

3. Phenylidiolefine Aldehydes.

***o*-Nitrocinnamyl Acrolein**,  $\text{NO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CHO}$ , melts at  $153^\circ$  (B. 17, 2026).

#### 4 (a). Phenylolefine Ketones.

The phenylolefine ketones are readily obtained from the corresponding aldehydes and methyl ketones by means of sodium hydroxide.

**Benzal Acetone**, *Benzylidene Acetone*, *Cinnamyl Methyl Ketone*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , melting at  $41^\circ$  and boiling at  $262^\circ$ , is produced in the distillation of calcium cinnamate and acetate, as well as in the condensation of benzaldehyde and acetone with dilute sodium hydroxide (A. 223, 139).

It dissolves with an orange-red color in sulphuric acid. Its *phenylhydrazone*, melting at  $156^{\circ}$ , readily rearranges itself to 1,6-diphenyl-3-methylpyrazoline and 1,5-diphenyl-3-pyrazole (see this) (B. 20, 1099). Its *oxime* melts at  $115^{\circ}$  (B. 20, 923). Boiling sodium hypochlorite converts benzalacetone into cinnamic acid. Chloroform is eliminated at the same time. The nitration of benzalacetone produces the *o*- and *p*-nitro-derivatives. Benzalacetone and sodium malonic ester condense to phenyldihydro-resorcylic ester (B. 27, 2054, 2199).

*o*- and *p*-Nitrobenzal Acetone melt at  $60^{\circ}$  and  $110^{\circ}$ , respectively (p. 249). The *o*-body passes readily into indigo. *o*-Methyl-quinoline results from it by reduction. Water is simultaneously liberated.

Piperonylidene Acetone,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CH}:\text{CH}.\text{CO}.\text{CH}_3$ , melts at  $96^{\circ}$  (B. 28, R. 1009).

Cuminol Acetone (A. 223, 147). Allyl Acetophenone,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5.\text{CO}.\text{CH}_2.-\text{CH}_2.\text{CH}:\text{CH}_2$ , from allyl benzoyl acetic acid (B. 16, 2132), boils at  $236^{\circ}$ .

#### 4 (b). Oxyphenylolefine Ketones.

*o*-Oxybenzal Acetone, *Methyl-o-cumar-ketone*,  $\text{HO}.\text{C}_6\text{H}_4.\text{CH}:\text{CH}.\text{CO}.\text{CH}_3$ , melting at  $139^{\circ}$ , is obtained from salicylaldehyde, and also by the action of emulsin upon *glucosomethyl-o-cumar-ketone*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}_5.\text{O}.\text{C}_6\text{H}_4.\text{CH}:\text{CH}.\text{COCCH}_3$ , melting at  $192^{\circ}$ . The latter compound is a condensation product of helicene (see this) and acetone (B. 24, 3180). *o*-, *m*-, and *p*-Phenoxyacetic acid-acryl methyl ketones melt at  $108^{\circ}$ ,  $122^{\circ}$ , and  $177^{\circ}$  (B. 19, 3056).

#### 5. Phenyldiolefine Ketones.

Cinnamenyl Acetone,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5.\text{CH}:\text{CH}.\text{CH}:\text{CH}.\text{CO}.\text{CH}_3$ , melting at  $68^{\circ}$ , results from the condensation of cinnamic aldehyde and acetone. Its *oxime* yields a pyridine derivative upon dry distillation (B. 29, 613). Benzalmesityl Oxide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5.\text{CH}:\text{CH}.\text{CO}.\text{CH}:\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , boils at  $178^{\circ}$  (14 mm.) (B. 14, 351). Piperonylene Acetone,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3.\text{CH}:\text{CH}.\text{CH}:\text{CH}.\text{CO}.\text{CH}_3$ , melts at  $89^{\circ}$  (B. 28, 1193).

### 6. Phenylolefine Carboxylic Acids.

These acids arrange themselves into two distinct classes. The one class is derived from a saturated acid by substituting an unsaturated side-chain for hydrogen attached to the benzene nucleus—*e. g.*, *vinyl benzoic acid*. The second class comprises the phenylated *olefine monocarboxylic acids*.

A. Phenylolefine Carboxylic Acids having their  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}$  group attached to the nucleus.

*o*-Vinyl Benzoic Acid,  $\text{CH}_2:\text{CH}[\text{2}]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4.\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ . *o*-Vinyl benzoic acids, chlorinated in the vinyl residue and also in the benzene residue, have been obtained by the decomposition of chlorinated hydrindene and naphthoquinone derivatives (B. 27, 2761; A. 275, 347). *m*-Vinyl Benzoic Acid, melting at  $95^{\circ}$ , is formed from *m*-amidostyrolene (B. 26, R. 677). *o*-, *m*-, and *p*-Propenylbenzoic Acids,  $\text{CH}_2:\text{C}(\text{CH}_3).\text{C}_6\text{H}_4.\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melt at  $60^{\circ}$ ,  $99^{\circ}$ , and  $161^{\circ}$  (A. 219, 270; 248, 64; 275, 160).

*o*-Vinylphenyl Acetic Acid,  $\text{CH}_2:\text{CH}.\text{C}_6\text{H}_4.\text{CH}_2.\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ . Derivatives of this acid, chlorinated in the vinyl residue, have also been obtained by the breaking-down of chlorinated ketohydronaphthalenes (B. 21, 3555).

B. Phenylolefine Carboxylic Acids with the carboxyl group in the unsaturated aliphatic side-chain.

The true phenylolefine monocarboxylic acids may be obtained by the oxidation of corresponding alcohols and aldehydes, as well as by similar methods from the phenylparaffin monocarboxylic acids or fatty acids (I, 277). The nucleus-synthetic method, however, is far more important; it consists in the action of the sodium salt and the anhydride of a fatty acid upon an aromatic aldehyde (Perkin's reaction).

**History.**—As early as the year 1856 Bertagnini found that cinnamic acid was formed upon heating benzaldehyde with acetyl chloride. In 1865 W. H. Perkin, Sr., synthesized coumarin, the lactone of o-oxy-cinnamic acid (p. 281), by heating sodium salicylaldehyde with acetic anhydride. In 1875 Perkin gave this reaction an entirely different aspect by allowing sodium acetate and acetic anhydride to act upon salicylaldehyde. In this modified form the reaction acquired more general application.

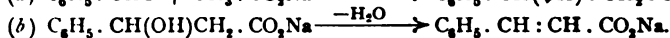
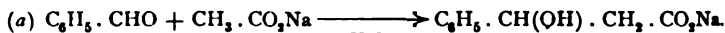
Many chemists have assisted in the amplification of the Perkin reaction, which in consequence has become one of the most fruitful synthetic methods.

The course of the reaction has been made clear by the researches of v. Baeyer and O. R. Jackson, Conrad and Bischoff, Ogialoro, and especially by those of Fittig and his students, Jayne and Slocum (A. 215, 97, 116; 227, 48):

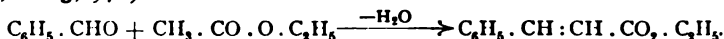
(1) In the condensation of aromatic aldehydes and fatty acids the carbon atom, combined with the carboxyl group, unites with the carbon of the aldehyde group.

(2) The reaction takes place with the aldehyde and the sodium salt of the fatty acid. The anhydride of the latter acts as a dehydrating agent.

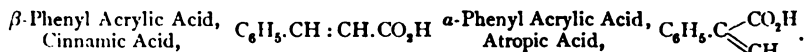
(3) The condensation proceeds in two stages: (a) the union of the aldehyde and the sodium salt, as in the formation of aldol, with the production of the sodium salt of a  $\beta$ -oxyacid; (b) the exit of water from the  $\beta$ -oxyacid, resulting in the formation of the olefine carboxylic acid. In many instances the reaction was arrested in the first stage:



A second nucleus-synthetic method for the preparation of phenyl-olefine carboxylic acids consists in the condensation of benzaldehydes with fatty acid esters by means of sodium ethylate or metallic sodium (Claisen, B. 23, 976):



**Phenyl Acrylic Acids.**—According to the structural theory, there are two possible isomerides, the  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -acids, which are known in cinnamic and atropic acids:



From what was learned in connection with the alkyl acrylic acids we might well expect the existence of *one* unstable (labile) modification of cinnamic acid. However, not less than *three* unstable (labile) forms of the ordinary cinnamic acid (p. 276) have been observed: two among the alkaloids occurring in the synthesis of cocaine—*natural isocinnamic acid* and *allo-cinnamic acid* (Liebermann). The third variety is the artificial *isocinnamic acid* (Erlenmeyer, Sr., A. 287, 1) formed in the reduction from alcoholic solution of the unstable (labile)  $\alpha$ -bromcinnamic acid (the  $\beta$ -bromcinnamic acid of Glaser) with zinc-dust.

**Cinnamic Acid,  $\beta$ -Phenyl Acrylic Acid, Acidum cinnamylicum,**  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $133^\circ$  and boiling at  $300^\circ$ , occurs in Peru and tolu balsams, in storax, and in some benzoïn resins; also, together with  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -truxillic acids, the natural isocinnamic and allo-cinnamic acids, in the decomposition products of the associated alkaloids of cocaine.

**Formation.**—It is produced (1) by the oxidation of its alcohol and its aldehyde; (2) by the reduction of phenylpropionic acid with zinc-dust and glacial acetic acid (B. 22, 1181); (3) *nucleus-synthesis*—from benzaldehyde: (a) with sodium acetate and acetic anhydride, (b) with acetic

ester and sodium ethylate (see above); (4) upon heating benzal chloride with sodium acetate. The latter reaction serves for the technical preparation of cinnamic acid (B. 15, 969); (5) by heating benzalmalonic acid (p. 288); (6) its phenyl ester is produced when phenyl fumaric ester is heated (p. 148).

**Properties and Deportment.**—Cinnamic acid crystallizes from hot water in fine needles, from alcohol in thick prisms. It is soluble in 3500 parts of water of 17°, and readily in hot water. It may be purified by distillation under greatly reduced pressure, or by crystallization from petroleum benzene (A. 188, 194).

Ferric chloride produces a yellow precipitate in solutions of the cinnamates.

Nitric acid and chromic acid oxidize it to benzaldehyde and benzoic acid. It is converted into phenylglyceric acid by potassium permanganate (p. 255). Fusion with caustic potash decomposes it into benzoic and acetic acids.

Being an unsaturated acid, cinnamic acid can readily take up hydrogen, hydrogen bromide, hydrogen iodide, bromine, chlorine, and hypochlorous acid, with the production of hydrocinnamic acid (p. 197),  $\beta$ -brom-,  $\beta$ -iodhydrocinnamic acid (p. 255), phenyl- $\alpha$ , $\beta$ -dichlor-,  $\alpha$ , $\beta$ -dibrompropionic acid or cinnamic acid dichloride, cinnamic acid dibromide, and  $\beta$ -phenyl- $\alpha$ -chlorlactic acid (p. 255).

**Cinnamic Acid Derivatives.**—*Methyl Ester* melts at 33° and boils at 263°. *Ethyl Ester* boils at 271°. *Phenyl Ester* melts at 72° and boils at 206° (15 mm.); see cinnamic acid. *Pyrocatechol Ester* melts at 129° (B. 11, 1220; 18, 1945; 25, 3533). *Styryl Ester*, *Styracine*, melts at 14°. The *chloride* melts at 35° and boils at 154° (25 mm.). The *anhydride* melts at 130° (B. 27, 284). The *amide* melts at 141°. The *anilide* melts at 151°. The *nitrile* melts at 11° and boils at 254° (B. 15, 2544; 27, R. 262).

**Haloid Cinnamic Acids Substituted in the Side-chain.**—(a) *Phenyl-monohaloid Acrylic Acids*. The structural theory provides for two isomeric monochlor-acrylic acids, but there are really two modifications for each of these structural isomerides. It is customary to distinguish them as  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -chlorcinnamic acid and allo- $\alpha$ - and allo- $\beta$ -chlorcinnamic acid (B. 22, R. 741; A. 287, 1).

$\alpha$ -Chlorcinnamic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH:CCl \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at 137°, is formed (1) by the action of alcoholic potash on phenyl- $\alpha$ , $\beta$ -dichlorpropionic acid; (2) from benzaldehyde, sodium monochloracetate, and acetic anhydride; (3) from phenyl- $\alpha$ -chlorlactic acid by means of acetic anhydride and sodium acetate; (4) by the action of  $CrO_3$  upon aldehyde (B. 24, 249).

Allo- $\alpha$ -chlorcinnamic Acid, melting at 111°, is produced, together with  $\alpha$ -chlorcinnamic acid, according to method 1.

$\beta$ -Chlorcinnamic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CCl:CH \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at 132.5°, and Allo- $\beta$ -chlorcinnamic Acid, melting at 142°, are formed by the addition of hydrochloric acid to phenylpropionic acid.

$\alpha$ -Brom-cinnamic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH:CBBr \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at 130°, and Allo- $\alpha$ -brom-cinnamic Acid, melting at 120° (Glaser's  $\beta$ -brom-cinnamic acid), result when phenyl- $\alpha$ , $\beta$ -dibrompropionic acid is acted upon with alcoholic potash. The latter, when heated, changes to the higher-melting  $\alpha$ -brom-cinnamic acid. When it is treated with zinc dust in alcoholic solution it yields "artificial isocinnamic acid," together with allo-cinnamic acid. The latter, very probably, is the primary product of the reaction, and is converted by the zinc bromide into the artificial isocinnamic acid. Both yield benzaldehyde upon oxidation.

$\beta$ -Brom-cinnamic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CBr:CH \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at 133°, and Allo- $\beta$ -brom-cinnamic Acid, melting at 158.5°, are formed simultaneously upon the addition of hydrogen bromide to phenylpropionic acid. The second acid, upon heating, changes to the lower-melting  $\beta$ -brom-cinnamic acid, and upon reduction yields not only cinnamic acid, but also "artificial isocinnamic acid."

(b) *Phenyldihaloid Acrylic Acids* result from the addition of halogens to phenylpropionic acid. Dichlorcinnamic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CCl:CCl \cdot CO_2H$ , melts at 120° (B. 25, 2665).  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Dibrom-cinnamic Acids melt at 139° and 100° (B. 25, 2665). Di-iodcinnamic Acid melts at 121° (B. 24, 4113).

The unstable (*labile*) modifications of Cinnamic Acid (p. 274):

*Natural Isocinnamic Acid* melts at 45–47° (57°), monoclinic (B. 23, 147).

*Allo-cinnamic Acid* melts at 66°, monoclinic (B. 27, 2048).

*Artificial Isocinnamic Acid* melts at 43.5–46°, monoclinic (A. 287, 7).

All the varieties crystallize in monoclinic forms, which show no relationship to one another. The ratio of axes and the magnitude of angles are entirely different. The crystals of the artificial isocinnamic acid are characterized by their remarkable decomposability, which disappears with the other (*labile*) modifications.

Cinnamic acid cannot be converted into any of its unstable (*labile*) modifications. Allo-cinnamic acid forms an aniline salt, melting at 83° and dissolving with difficulty in ligroïne. It can also be easily obtained from the natural and the artificial isocinnamic acid.

Thus far "natural isocinnamic acid," has only been found in the decomposition acids of the alkaloids associated with cocaine, where it occurs together with ordinary and allo-cinnamic acids. The *allo-cinnamic acid*, however, has also been obtained with much cinnamic acid from benzalmalonic acid, and together with "artificial isocinnamic acid" by reducing allo- $\alpha$ - and allo- $\beta$ -brom-cinnamic acid in alcoholic solution, as well as from both isocinnamic acids by means of aniline. When allo-cinnamic acid is treated with zinc and bromine in alcoholic solution it yields artificial isocinnamic acid. Chlorine and bromine convert it into allo-cinnamic acid dichloride and allo-cinnamic acid dibromide (p. 255), addition products, differing from cinnamic acid dichloride and cinnamic acid dibromide. Concentrated sulphuric acid converts the three unstable (*labile*) modifications into ordinary cinnamic acid.

When a benzene solution of allo-cinnamic acid is exposed to sunlight the allo-acid gradually changes to the ordinary cinnamic acid. The addition of a trace of iodine accelerates this transposition very materially (B. 28, 1446).

The "natural isocinnamic acid" also changes to the ordinary cinnamic acid under the influence of small quantities of iodine, by exposure to sunlight, or upon boiling and by heating with water to 260° (B. 23, 516).

Four polymeric dicinnamic acids have been discovered in the isomeric truxillic acids. It is very probable that they are diphenyltetramethylene dicarboxylic acids.

$\alpha$ -Amidocinnamic Acid,  $C_9H_7$ . CH: C(NH<sub>2</sub>). CO<sub>2</sub>H, decomposes, when rapidly heated, at 240–250°, with the production of phenylvinylamine. Its hydrochloride is produced upon heating its benzoyl-lactimide with hydrochloric acid to 120°. The acid itself may be liberated from the hydrochloride by means of sodium acetate or soda.

$\alpha$ -Acetamido-cinnamic Acid,  $C_9H_7$ . CH: C(NHCO . CH<sub>3</sub>). CO<sub>2</sub>H + 2H<sub>2</sub>O, melts, when anhydrous, at 190° with decomposition. It is formed when sodium hydroxide acts upon acetilactimide. The amide of an isomeric (?)  $\alpha$ -amidocinnamic acid, melting at 160°, results when ammonia acts upon phenyldibrompropionic acid ester or  $\alpha$ -brom-cinnamic acid ester (B. 29, R. 795).

$\alpha$ -Acetamido-cinnam-lactimide,  $C_9H_7$ . CH:  $\overset{\text{CO}}{\underset{\text{CO}}{\text{C}}} > \text{NCOCH}_3$ , melting at 146°, results from the action of acetic anhydride upon  $\alpha$ -amidophenyl-lactic acid, and from glycolcol, benzaldehyde, sodium acetate, and acetic anhydride.

$\alpha$ -Benzoylamido-cinnam-lactimide,  $C_{11}H_9$ . CH:  $\overset{\text{CO}}{\underset{\text{CO}}{\text{C}}} > \text{N} . \text{CO} . C_6H_5$ , melts at 165°. It is produced in the condensation of hippuric acid and benzaldehyde with acetic anhydride and sodium acetate. See phenylpyroracemic acid (p. 259). When heated with dilute alkalis the lactimide changes to  $\alpha$ -benzoyl-amido-cinnamic acid, which decomposes at 275° with the formation of phenylacetaldehyde (A. 275, 1; 284, 36).

Cinnamic Acids substituted in the benzene nucleus are isomeric with the corresponding monocinnamic acid derivatives, having side-chain substitutions.

1. *Monohaloid-cinnamic acids* have been made from the three nitro-cinnamic acids as starting-out substances (B. 16, 2040; 18, 961; 25, 2109).

$\alpha$ -,  $m$ -, and  $p$ -Chlor-cinnamic Acids melt at 200°, 176°, and 241°.

$\alpha$ - and  $m$ -Brom-cinnamic Acids melt at 212° and 178°.

$\alpha$ -,  $m$ -, and  $p$ -Iod-cinnamic Acids melt at 213°, 181°, and 255°.

2. **Nitro-cinnamic Acids.**—The introduction of cinnamic acid into nitric acid of specific gravity 1.5 leads to the formation of the ortho- (60 per cent.) and para-nitro acids. To separate them, cover the acid mixture with 8–10 parts of absolute alcohol, and conduct hydrochloric acid gas rapidly into the liquid, until complete solution ensues. On cooling, the para-ester separates. The pure esters are saponified with sodium carbonate or with dilute sulphuric acid, when the pure acids result (A. 212, 122, 150; 221, 265).

The three isomeric acids can be prepared from the corresponding nitro-benzaldehydes by means of the Perkin's reaction :

o-, m-, and p-Nitro-cinnamic Acids melt at 240°, 197°, and 286°.

o-, m-, and p-Nitro-cinnamic Ethyl Esters melt at 44°, 78°, and 138°.

Oxidation converts the three nitro-cinnamic acids into the three nitrobenzaldehydes (p. 186) and nitrobenzoic acids (p. 210). Bromine unites with o- and p-nitrocinnamic acids and their esters; see p. 255 and nitrophenylpropionic acids.

3. **Amido-cinnamic Acids** can be prepared by reducing the three mononitrocinnamic acids with tin and hydrochloric acid. The reduction is better effected with ferrous sulphate in an alkaline solution (B. 15, 2294; A. 221, 266).

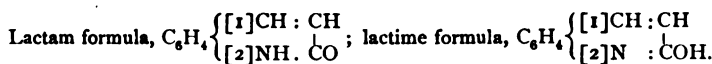
o-, m-, and p-Amido-cinnamic Acids melt at 158°, 181°, and 176°. When the diazo-bodies are boiled with haloid acids the haloid cinnamic acids, described above, are produced; but when they are acted upon with boiling water, the products are o-, m-, and p-coumaric acids (pp. 280, 282).

**Derivatives of o-Amido-cinnamic Acid.**—The ethyl ester is obtained by reducing o-nitro-cinnamic ester with tin and hydrochloric acid in alcoholic solution (B. 15, 1422). It separates in fine yellow needles, melting at 77°.

**o-Ethyl Amido-cinnamic Acid**,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} CH : CH \cdot CO_2H \\ NH \cdot C_2H_5 \end{smallmatrix}$ , is obtained when ethyl iodide and potassium hydroxide act upon o-amido-cinnamic acid (B. 15, 1423). It melts at 125°.

**Benzoyl-o-amido-cinnamic Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH : CH \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at 192°, results from the oxidation of N-benzoyltetrahydroquinoline (B. 25, 1263).

**Carbostyryl Formation.**—Free o-amido-cinnamic acid differs from o-amidohydrocinnamic acid in deportment, in that when heated alone it does not give rise to an inner anhydride formation; it behaves like o-coumaric acid. The anhydride formation occurs, however, when o-amidocinnamic acid is heated with hydrochloric acid (B. 13, 2070), or with 50 per cent. sulphuric acid (B. 18, 2395). The resulting anhydride is carbostyryl, discovered in 1852 by Chiozza, when he reduced o-nitrocinnamic acid with ammonium sulphide. It can be viewed both as a lactime and a lactam :



According to the second formula, carbostyryl is nothing more than *α*-oxyquinoline; hence it will be discussed later, in conjunction with quinoline. This will also be done with the alkyl compounds derived from both formulas.

4. **o-Nitrosoethylamido-cinnamic Acid**,  $NO \cdot N(C_2H_5) \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH : CH \cdot CO_2H$ , melts at 150°, with decomposition. It is obtained from o-ethyl-amido-cinnamic acid. When reduced it condenses to ethylisindazole-acetic acid (see this).

5. **o-Hydrazine-cinnamic Acid**,  $NH_2 \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH : CH \cdot CO_2H$ , melts at 171°, with decomposition into indazole,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} CH \cdot NH \\ N \end{smallmatrix}$  (see this), and acetic acid.

**o-Sulphohydrazine-cinnamic acid**,  $SO_3H \cdot NH \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH : CH \cdot CO_2H$ , is formed when sodium sulphite acts upon the hydrochloride of o-diazocinnamic acid. Hot hydrochloric acid breaks it down into o-hydrazine-cinnamic acid and the lactam of this acid,  $C_6H_4 \begin{Bmatrix} [1]CH : CH \cdot CO \\ [2]N(NH_2) \end{Bmatrix}$ , melting at 127° (A. 221, 274).

6. *Sulpho-cinnamic acids* are produced when fuming sulphuric acid acts upon cinnamic acid (A. 173, 8). The m-derivative has been obtained by a nucleus-synthesis from m-benzaldehyde-sulphonic acid (p. 187).

*Cinnamic Acids Substituted both in the Side-chain and in the Benzene Nucleus.*— $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Nitro-o-amido-cinnamic Acids, melting at  $240^\circ$  and  $254^\circ$ , have been prepared from o-amido-cinnamic acid.  $\alpha$ ,m-Dinitro-cinnamic Acid,  $\text{NO}_2[3]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{C}(\text{NO}_2)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , is formed when a mixture of nitric and sulphuric acids acts upon m-nitro-cinnamic ester (A. 229, 224).

$\alpha$ ,p-Dinitro-cinnamic Acid, p-Nitrophenyl- $\alpha$ -nitroacrylic acid, has been obtained from p-nitro cinnamic acid (A. 229, 224). Also consult  $\omega$ ,p-dinitrophenyl-ethylene (p. 267) and p-amidophenylalanine (p. 254).

**Homologous Cinnamic Acids.**—Cinnamic acids containing alkyl groups in the benzene residue are produced when alkylized benzaldehydes are condensed with sodium acetate and acetic anhydride. The three tolyl aldehydes yield o-, m-, and p-methyl-cinnamic acids,  $\beta$ ,o-, m-, and p-tolyl acrylic acids, melting at  $169^\circ$ ,  $115^\circ$ , and  $196^\circ$ . Cuminol yields p-cumenyl-acrylic acid,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $158^\circ$ . When the latter is nitrated it yields not only the p-nitro-acid, but also o-nitro-cumenylacrylic acid, which manifests the same reaction transpositions as o-nitro-cinnamic acid (B. 19, 255).

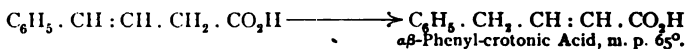
$\alpha$ -Alkyl substituted cinnamic acids are produced in the condensation of benzaldehyde with sodium propionate or butyrate and acetic anhydride (A. 227, 57).

$\alpha$ -Methyl Cinnamic Acid,  $\alpha$ -Benzal-propionic Acid,  $\beta$ -Phenylmethacrylic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $78^\circ$  and boiling at  $288^\circ$ , is also formed from benzyl propionic ester and metallic sodium (see p. 192 and B. 20, 617). Phenyl-angelic Acid,  $\alpha$ -Ethyl Cinnamic Acid,  $\alpha$ -Benzal-n-butyric Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at  $104^\circ$  (B. 23, 978).

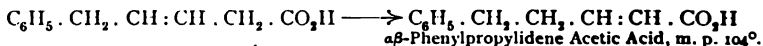
Higher  $\omega$ -phenyl-n-olefine carboxylic acids are produced by heating the lactone carboxylic acids, when carbon dioxide is expelled, and in the reduction of phenyl diolefine dicarboxylic acids.

Phenyl-iso-crotonic Acid,  $\beta$ -Benzal-propionic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at  $86^\circ$  and boils at  $302^\circ$  with partial decomposition into water and  $\alpha$ -naphthol. It is formed also by expelling  $\text{CO}_2$  and rearranging phenylparaconic acid, as well as from phenyltrimethylene tricarboxylic acid (B. 25, 1155) upon the application of heat. It unites with hydrogen bromide, forming  $\gamma$ -phenyl- $\gamma$ -brombutyric acid, which yields phenyl-butyro-lactone with a soda solution. Boiling dilute sulphuric acid converts it directly into phenylbutyrolactone (p. 254).

$\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Methylphenyl-iso crotonic Acids melt at  $110^\circ$  and  $112^\circ$  (A. 255, 262). Hydrocinnamenyl Acrylic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $31^\circ$ , is formed when sodium amalgam acts upon cinnamenyl acrylic acid (p. 285). The conversion of phenyl iso-crotonic acid and hydrocinnamenyl acrylic acid into isomeric acids by displacement of the double linkage, upon boiling them with sodium hydroxide (A. 283, 309), is worthy of note :



$\alpha\beta$ -Phenyl-crotonic Acid, m. p.  $65^\circ$ .



$\alpha\beta$ -Phenylpropylidene Acetic Acid, m. p.  $104^\circ$ .

Atropic Acid,  $\alpha$ -Phenylacrylic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \nearrow \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \searrow \text{CH}_3 \end{smallmatrix}$ , melts at  $106^\circ$ . This acid,

structurally isomeric with ordinary cinnamic acid, results from tropic acid and atrolactic acid (p. 252) when they are heated with concentrated hydrochloric acid or with baryta-water. It is sparingly soluble in cold water, easily in ether, carbon disulphide, and benzene, and distills with aqueous vapor. Chromic acid oxidizes it to benzoic acid; when fused with caustic alkali it yields formic and  $\alpha$ -toluic acids; sodium amalgam converts it into hydro-atropic acid, and hydrochloric and hydrobromic acids change it to  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -halogen hydro-atropic acids (p. 252).

Protracted fusion, or heating with water or hydrochloric acid, converts atropic acid into two polymeric isotropic acids, diatropic acids,  $(\text{C}_9\text{H}_8\text{O}_2)_n$  (melting at  $237^\circ$  and  $206^\circ$ ),

which bear the same relation to atropic acid that the truxillic acids sustain to cinnamic acid (B. 28, 137).

**Methyl Atropic Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C \begin{matrix} \diagup CH \cdot CH_3 \\ \diagdown CO_2H \end{matrix}$ , melts at  $135^\circ$ , and is obtained from phenyl-acetic acid and paraldehyde by the action of acetic anhydride (B. 19, R. 251).

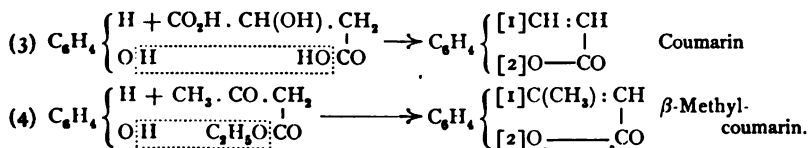
***α*-Phenyl-allyl-acetic Acid**,  $C_9H_9O_2$ ,  $CH(CH_3) \cdot CH : CH_2 \cdot COOH$ , boiling at  $200^\circ$ , has been obtained from phenyl-allyl-malonic acid, and its *nitrile* from benzyl cyanide, allyl iodide, and caustic soda (B. 29, 2601).

## 7. Oxyphenyl-olefine Carboxylic Acids.

**A. Monoxyphenyl-olefine Carboxylic Acids.**—*Formation*: They are obtained (1) from the corresponding amidophenyl-olefine carboxylic acids upon boiling the diazo-compounds with water (B. 14, 479); (2) by a nucleus-synthesis, when the phenol aldehydes are heated with the sodium salts and anhydrides of the fatty acids (Perkin's reaction, pp. 274, 278).

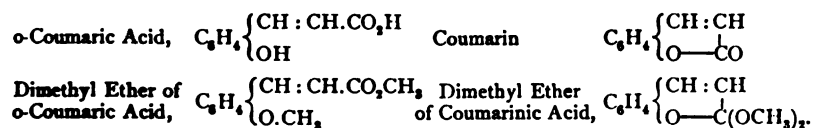
The following nucleus-syntheses (v. Pechmann) lead to the inner anhydrides or  $\delta$ -lactones of the o-oxycinnamic acids, the so-called coumarins: (3) the action of sulphuric acid upon phenol and malic acid, when it is very probable that the first product is the half-aldehyde of malonic acid, which condenses with the phenol.

(4) When sulphuric acid is allowed to act upon phenol and acetoacetic ester or mono-alkyl acetoacetic esters:



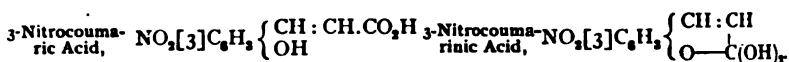
The first members of this series are the monooxy-cinnamic acids, obtained by method 1 from the three amido-cinnamic acids. o-Oxy-cinnamic acid or o-coumaric acid particularly is especially important. The  $\delta$ -lactone *coumarin* corresponds to it. When coumarin is acted upon with bases, salts are formed which are isomeric with the o-coumarates. Isomeric dialkyl ethers are obtained from these isomeric salts.

The salts and ethers of coumarin are also designated as  $\alpha$ -coumarates, and those of o-coumaric acid as the  $\beta$ -coumarates—salts and ethers. The cause of this isomerism is very probably dependent upon the fact that the lactone ring is still present in the salts and ethers of coumaric acid.



When the hydrogen atom in coumarin, occupying the o-position with reference to phenol-oxygen, is replaced by the nitro-group, free nitrocoumarinic acid may be liberated from the salts.

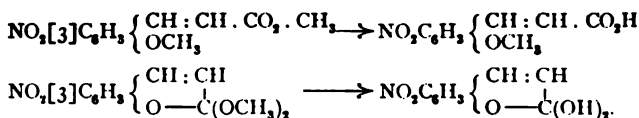
This acid is distinguished from free 3-nitro-coumaric acid in that by the exit of water it reverts to 3-nitrocoumarin. Both acids have corresponding dialkyl esters:



The cause of the difference in the ethers of o-coumaric and coumarinic acids whenever their structure was similar, has also been attributed to the different position of the atom groups in space:



This latter hypothesis, however, does not explain the varying deportment of the isomeric dimethyl ethers of 3-nitro-coumaric acid and 3-nitro-coumarinic acid. When 3-nitro-coumaric dimethyl ether is saponified with a soda solution the methyl ether-acid results; whereas 3-nitro-coumarinic dimethyl ether, under like treatment, yields 3-nitro-coumarinic acid. If the difference, with similar linkage relations, of the isomeric dimethyl ethers were solely due to spacial arrangement, then the varying behavior of the o-nitro-coumarinic dimethyl ester could be neither anticipated nor explained; whereas it would be obvious if the o-nitro-coumarinic dimethyl ester were regarded as a kind of carbonic acid ester (A. 254, 181):



Coumarin, its homologues and derivatives, will be arranged and treated as a group after o-coumaric acid.

**o-Oxycinnamic Acid, o-Coumaric Acid**,  $\text{HO}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $208^\circ$ , and isomeric with hydrocoumarilic acid, phenylpyrroacemic acid, etc., occurs in *Melilotus officinalis*, together with o-hydro-coumaric acid, and in the leaves of *Angrecum fragans*. Nitrous acid converts o-amido-cinnamic acid into coumaric acid. It is most readily prepared by boiling coumarin for some time with concentrated potassium hydroxide, or, better, with sodium ethylate (B. 18, R. 28; 22, 1714). Its acetyl derivative is obtained from salicylic aldehyde and sodium acetate.

Ortho-coumaric acid is very easily soluble in hot water and in alcohol. It does not volatilize with steam. The free coumaric acid heated alone does not yield coumarin, but only when treated with acetic chloride or anhydride. Sodium amalgam converts it into melilotic acid, and fusion with potassium hydroxide into salicylic and acetic acids.

**2-Methoxy-cinnamic Acid ( $\beta$ )**,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $182^\circ$ , is produced by the action of sodium acetate and acetic anhydride upon salicylaldehyde methyl ether, and by the rearrangement of methyl coumarinic acid (see this). Sodium amalgam reduces it to melilotic acid methyl ether, while bromine changes it to methyl-ether-dibrom-melilotic acid. **o-Coumaric Dimethyl Ether ( $\beta$ )**,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[1]\text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$ , boiling at  $293^\circ$ , is obtained from the previously described acid chloride by means of methyl alcohol. **Acet-o-coumaric Acid**,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{O}[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot$

CH : CH . CO<sub>2</sub>H, melting at 149°, is obtained from salicylaldehyde, acetic anhydride, and sodium acetate (B. 20, 284); see coumarin.

3-Nitro-coumaric Acid (β), NO<sub>2</sub>[3]C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub>[2](OH)CH : CH . CO<sub>2</sub>H, is formed by the protracted heating of the dimethyl ether with sodium hydroxide. It suffers no change when heated with water, alcohol, or hydrogen bromide (distinction from 3-nitro-coumarinic acid). The methyl ether-acid, melting at 193°, is formed from 3-nitro-salicylaldehyde methyl ether, and from the dimethyl ether, melting at 88°, by the action of soda (see above). This latter ether is produced when methyl iodide acts upon the silver salt of the methyl ether-acid (B. 22, 1710).

**Coumarin**, C<sub>9</sub>H<sub>6</sub> {  $\begin{matrix} [1]CH : CH \\ [2]O \text{---} \text{C} \end{matrix}$ , melting at 67° and boiling at 290°,

occurs in *Asperula odorata*, in the Tonka beans (from *Dipterix odorata*), and in *Melilotus officinalis*. It is artificially prepared by heating aceto-o-coumaric acid (B. 10, 287), the reaction-product, resulting from acetic anhydride and sodium salicylaldehyde (A. 147, 230), or from the action of acetic anhydride and sodium acetate upon salicylaldehyde (Perkin, Sr., B. 8, 1599). It has the agreeable odor of *Asperula*, and is applied in perfumery for the preparation of the *Asperula* essence.

Coumarin dissolves rather easily in hot water, and very readily in alcohol and in ether. It dissolves in caustic potash with a yellow color, the first product being potassium coumarinate, from which carbon dioxide separates coumarin. Boiling, concentrated caustic potash changes it to potassium coumarate. In aqueous solution it is reduced by sodium amalgam to melilotic acid (p. 226). When it is digested with an aqueous-alcoholic solution of potassium cyanide, hydrocyanic acid is added, and upon subsequent saponification o-oxyphenylsuccinic acid is formed (A. 293, 366).

**Coumarin Monomethyl Ester-acid**, melting at 88°, and **Coumarinic Dimethyl Ester**, boiling at 275° (Constitution, p. 280), result when sodium coumarin is heated to 150° with methyl iodide. When heated both compounds change to the corresponding o-coumaric acid derivatives. The methyl ether-acid when exposed in alcoholic solution to sunlight also passes into the isomeric 2-methoxy-cinnamic acid. **Coumaroxime**, melting at 131° (B. 19, 1662), is produced when hydroxylamine acts upon thiocoumarin.

**Coumarin Bromide**, C<sub>9</sub>H<sub>4</sub>O<sub>2</sub>Br<sub>2</sub>, melting at 105°, is produced when bromine acts upon coumarin in carbon disulphide solution. Alcoholic potash converts it into α-brom-

**coumarin**, C<sub>9</sub>H<sub>4</sub> {  $\begin{matrix} [1]CH : CBr \\ [2]O \text{---} \text{C} \end{matrix}$ . Boiling alcoholic potash changes both of these bodies

into *coumarilic acid* (see this). **Thio-coumarin**, C<sub>9</sub>H<sub>6</sub> {  $\begin{matrix} [1]CH : CH \\ [2]O \text{---} \text{CS} \end{matrix}$ , melting at 101°, consists of golden-yellow needles. It is obtained from coumarin or o-coumaric acid by the action of P<sub>2</sub>S<sub>5</sub> (B. 19, 1661).

3-Nitro-coumarinic Acid, NO<sub>2</sub>[3]C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub> {  $\begin{matrix} [1]CH : CH \\ [2]O \text{---} \text{C} \end{matrix}$  (OH), (?) melts when rapidly heated, with the exit of water, at 150°, and passes on gentle warming with water or alcohol into the anhydride 3-nitro-coumarin, from which it is obtained upon boiling with soda. It forms long, yellow prisms. The silver salt and methyl iodide yield 3-nitro-coumarinic dimethyl ether, NO<sub>2</sub>[3]C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub> {  $\begin{matrix} [1]CH : CH \\ [2]O \text{---} \text{C} \end{matrix}$  (OCH<sub>3</sub>), (?) (Constitution, see p. 280).

**Coumarin Homologues.**—Following method 2, and using propionic, butyric and isovaleric anhydrides, with their sodium salts, the products are α-alkyl coumarins. The β-alkyl coumarins are produced from phenols, acetoacetic ester, and sulphuric acid (B. 17, 2188) by method 4 (p. 279). P<sub>2</sub>S<sub>5</sub> converts the α-alkyl coumarins into α-alkyl thio-coumarins (p. 281), which hydroxylamine changes to α-alkyl coumarin oximes

(p. 281) (B. 24, 3459). The melting points of the latter are given with those of the  $\alpha$ -alkyl coumarins:

		M. P.
<i><math>\alpha</math>-Methyl Coumarin,</i>	$C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} CH:C(CH_3) \\ O-\text{CO} \end{array} \right.$	$90^\circ$ (Th. $122^\circ$ ; Ox. $166^\circ$ ).
<i><math>\beta</math>-Methyl Coumarin,</i>	$C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} C(CH_3):CH \\ O-\text{CO} \end{array} \right.$	$125^\circ$
<i><math>\alpha</math>-Ethyl Coumarin,</i>	$C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} CH:C(C_2H_5) \\ O-\text{CO} \end{array} \right.$	$71^\circ$ (Th. $93^\circ$ ; Ox. $157^\circ$ ).
<i>p-<math>\beta</math>-Dimethyl Coumarin,</i>	$CH_3 \cdot [4]C_6H_3 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} C(CH_3):CH \\ O-\text{CO} \end{array} \right.$	$148^\circ$ .
<i><math>\alpha</math>-Isopropyl Coumarin,</i>	$C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} CH:C \cdot CH(CH_3)_2 \\ O-\text{CO} \end{array} \right.$	$54^\circ$ (Th. $81^\circ$ ; Ox. $171^\circ$ ).

**Dimethylamido- $\beta$ -methyl Coumarin**, melting at  $143^\circ$ , is obtained from dimethylamidophenol and acetoacetic ester (B. 30, 277).

**m-Coumaric Acid**,  $HO[3]C_6H_4 \cdot CH:CH \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $191^\circ$ , has been formed from m-amido-cinnamic acid and from m-oxybenzaldehyde (B. 15, 2049, 2297).

**Nitro-m-coumaric Acids**, see B. 22, 292.

**6-Amido-m-coumaric Acid** has been obtained electrolytically from o-nitro-cinnamic acid (B. 27, 1936).

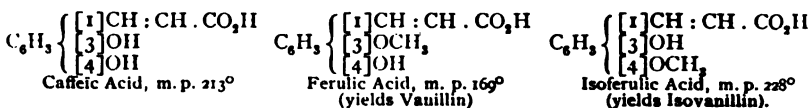
**p-Coumaric Acid**,  $HO[4]C_6H_4 \cdot CH:CH \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $206^\circ$ , is obtained from p-amido-cinnamic acid, and from p-oxybenzaldehyde; also on boiling the extract of aloes with sulphuric acid (Preparation, B. 20, 2528), and by the decomposition of the glucoside naringine (see this).

**Methyl p-coumaric Acid**, from anisic aldehyde, melts at  $154^\circ$ . The phenol alkyl-ethers of the coumaric acids yield ethers of unsaturated phenols (see o- and p-vinyl-anisol, p. 266), just as styrolene is obtained from  $\beta$ -bromhydrocinnamic acid, by the action of hydrogen bromide, and then a soda solution, when carbon dioxide is eliminated.

**$\beta$ -p-Methoxyphenylmethacrylic Acid**,  $CH_3O[4]C_6H_4 \cdot CH:C(CH_3) \cdot COOH$ , melting at  $154^\circ$ , is obtained from anisic aldehyde and propionic acid. It breaks down, when heated, into carbon dioxide and anethol (p. 269).

**B. Dioxxyphenyl-olefine Carboxylic Acids.**—Caffeic acid, or 3,4-dioxycinnamic acid, corresponding to protocatechuic acid (p. 227), and umbellic acid, or 2,4-dioxycinnamic acid, are the most important of the known dioxycinnamic acids, because they themselves, or their simple derivatives, occur in plants or appear as decomposition products of vegetable substances, and 3-methyl caffeic acid, or ferulic acid, can be changed to the valuable vanillin (p. 219).

**Caffeic Acid**,  $\beta$ -3,4-Dioxxyphenylacrylic Acid, 3,4-Dioxycinnamic Acid, and its methyl- and methylene ether-acids, when reduced, become hydrocaffeic acid and its ether-acids (p. 242). Oxidation yields protocatechuic acid and its ethers. When the acet-derivatives of the two methyl caffeic acids are oxidized with potassium permanganate the first products are the acet-derivatives of the two methyl-ether protocatechuic aldehydes. The caffeic acids and their ether-acids can be synthesized from protocatechuic aldehyde and its ethers with the aid of the Perkin reaction (p. 274). When fused with caustic potash caffeic acid and its ether-acids yield protocatechuic acid and acetic acid:



Caffeic acid is produced when coffee tannic acid is boiled with potassium hydroxide. It occurs in *Cicuta virosa* (B. 17, 1922). Ferric chloride produces a green coloration in its solutions, which sodium carbonate changes to a dark red color.

**Ferulic Acid, m-Methoxy-p-oxycinnamic Acid**, occurs in the resin of *Asafetida*, and has been obtained from vanillin, as well as from m-methoxy-p-nitro-cinnamic acid, the product resulting from the action of nitric acid upon m-methoxycinnamic acid ether (B. 18, R. 682). Its *acet-compound* melts at 196°.

**Isoferulic Acid, m-Oxy-p-methoxycinnamic Acid, Hesperitinic Acid**, was first obtained from the glucoside hesperidine (see this). Both methyl ethers can also be prepared by a partial methylation of caffeic acid, when the chief product will be isoferulic acid. Its *acet-derivative* melts at 199°.

**Dimethyl Caffeic Acid**,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2[3,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at 181° (B. 14, 959).

**Piperonyl Acrylic Acid**,  $(\text{CH}_2\text{O})_2[3,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at 232° (B. 13, 757).

**Diacetcaffeic Acid**,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2)_2[3,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at 190° (B. 11, 686).

**α-Homo-caffeic Acid, 3,4-Dioxy-α-methyl Cinnamic Acid**, melts at 193°. Its monomethyl ether-acid, **Homoferulic Acid**,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})(\text{OH})[3,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) \cdot \text{COOH}$ , melting at 168°, yields isoeugenol when it is heated with lime (p. 270) (B. 15, 2063).

**α-Hydropiperic Acid**,  $(\text{CH}_2\text{O})_2[3,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at 78°, is formed when sodium amalgam acts upon piperic acid. When boiled with caustic soda it changes to β-Hydropiperic Acid,  $(\text{CH}_2\text{O})_2[3,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at 131°. Sodium amalgam converts the β-acid into *piperhydronic acid*,  $(\text{CH}_2\text{O})_2[3,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[\text{CH}_2]\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at 98°.

**Umbellic Acid, 2,4-Dioxycinnamic Acid**,  $(\text{HO})_2[2,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , decomposes about 240°. It is produced on boiling—

**Umbelliferone, 4-Oxycoumarin**,  $\text{HO}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]\text{CH} : \text{CH} \\ [2]\text{O} \text{---} \text{CO} \end{array} \right.$ , melting at 240°, with

caustic soda. It is found in the bark of *Daphne genkwa*, and is obtained by distilling different resins, such as galbanum and asafoetida. It is obtained synthetically from β-resorcylic aldehyde by method 2; and also by the condensation of resorcinol with malic acid according to method 3. It has an odor resembling that of coumarin, and behaves similarly with caustic potash. Its alkyl ethers show isomeric phenomena analogous to those developed under o-coumaric acid and coumarin (p. 281) (B. 19, 1778).

**β-Methyl Umbelliferone, 4-Oxy-β-methylcoumarin, Resocyanine**,

$\text{HO}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]\text{C}(\text{CH}_3) : \text{CH} \\ [2]\text{O} \text{---} \text{CO} \end{array} \right.$ , melting at 185°, is formed when sulphuric acid acts upon resorcinol and acetoacetic ester or acetylcyanacetic ester (B. 26, R. 314). See resacetophenone p. 221. α,β-Dimethyl Umbelliferone melts at 256° (B. 16, 2127).

The corresponding bodies have been prepared from orcinol according to methods 3 and 4 (p. 279) (B. 17, 1649, 2188).

**3-Oxycoumarin**, melting at 280–285° with decomposition, and **5-Oxycoumarin**, melting at 249°, are produced when pyrocatechol and hydroquinone are treated with malic acid and sulphuric acid (B. 18, R. 333).

**C. Trioxycinnamic Acids**.—Inner anhydrides, δ-lactones of trioxycinnamic acids, are **Daphnetin, 3,4-Dioxycoumarin**, melting at 255°, and **Æsculetin, 4,5-Dioxycoumarin**, the aromatic decomposition products of the isomeric glucosides daphnin and æsculin. Æsculetinic and daphnetic acids are the trioxycinnamic acids corresponding to these dioxycoumarins. They are only known as ether-acids and ether-esters. Potassium permanganate oxidizes the triethyl ethers to triethoxybenzoic acids, which become triethoxybenzenes through the loss of carbon dioxide (B. 15, 2082; 17, 1086; 20, 1119).

**D. Tetra-oxycinnamic Acids**.—**Fraxetin**, melting at 227°, the aromatic decomposition product of the glucoside of fraxin (see this), contains the monomethyl ether of a trioxycoumarin. Isomerides of fraxetin have been prepared synthetically (B. 27, R. 130; 29, R. 293).

### 8. Phenylacetylene Carboxylic Acids.

Phenyl-propionic acid, corresponding to propiolic acid, is important because of its intimate connection with indigo and isatine.

**Phenyl-propionic Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C : C \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $136^\circ$ , is obtained by boiling  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -brom-cinnamic acids with alcoholic potash, by acting upon sodium phenyl-acetylene with carbon dioxide (1870, Glaser, A. 154, 140), and when the latter and sodium act upon  $\omega$ -brom-styrolene. It is prepared by boiling the dibromide of ethyl cinnamate (p. 255) with alcoholic potash. When heated to  $120^\circ$  with water it decomposes into carbon dioxide and phenyl acetylene. It yields hydro-cinnamic acid with sodium amalgam. Zinc-dust and glacial acetic acid, or sodium and methyl alcohol, convert it into cinnamic acid (B. 22, 1181).

Hydrogen chloride and bromide convert it into  $\beta$ -haloid- and allo- $\beta$ -haloid cinnamic acids (p. 276). It combines with the halogens to phenyl-dihaloid acrylic acids, with hydrazine and phenylhydrazine to 3-phenyl-pyrazolon (see this) and 1,3-diphenylpyrazolon (B. 27, 783), and with sodium malonic ester to a tricarboxylic ester, which splits off carbon dioxide and becomes phenylglutaconic acid (p. 289) (B. 27, R. 163).

**Ethyl Phenylpropionic Ester**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C : C \cdot CO_2C_2H_5$ , boiling at  $260$ – $270^\circ$ , readily absorbs water and becomes benzoyl acetic ester (p. 259). Its *chloride* boils at  $131^\circ$  (25 mm.). Its *amide* melts at  $102^\circ$  (B. 25, 3537; 29, R. 795).

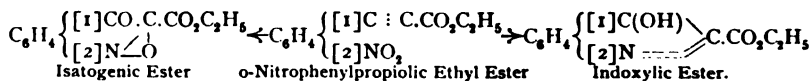
**o-Nitro-phenyl Propiolic Acid** decomposes at  $156^\circ$ . It is obtained when alcoholic potash acts upon the dibromide of o-nitro-cinnamic acid (Baeyer, A. 212, 140). When boiled with water it decomposes into carbon dioxide and o-nitro-phenyl acetylene. When boiled with alkalis it yields isatin.

It dissolves in concentrated sulphuric acid, with conversion into the isomeric *isatogenic acid*, which at once forms carbon dioxide and isatin. Its *silver salt* explodes with great violence when it is heated.

*If digested with alkaline reducing agents* (grape-sugar and potassium hydroxide, ferrous sulphate, hydrogen sulphide, potassium xanthate) *it readily changes to indigo blue* (Baeyer, 1880; B. 13, 2259).

Despite its comparatively high price, therefore, nitrophenyl propiolic acid is prepared technically, and serves as a substitute for natural indigo, especially in calico printing.

The *ethyl ester* of the acid is obtained by conducting hydrochloric acid gas into the mixture of the acid and alcohol. It melts at  $60$ – $61^\circ$ . When it is dissolved in sulphuric acid it changes to the isomeric isatogenic ester. Ammonium sulphide reduces it to the indoxyl ester (B. 14, 1741):

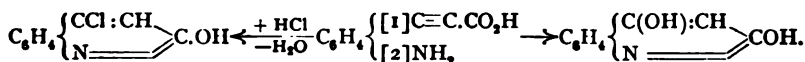


**p-Nitro-phenyl Propiolic Acid**, melting at  $198^\circ$ , is formed from the p-nitro-cinnamic ester after the same manner as the ortho-acid. When boiled with water it breaks up into carbon dioxide and p-nitrophenylacetylene. It yields p-nitroacetophenone if digested at  $100^\circ$  with sulphuric acid.

The *ethyl ester*, melting at  $126^\circ$ , when digested with sulphuric acid at  $35^\circ$ , forms p-nitrobenzoyl acetic acid (p. 260).

**o-Amido-phenyl Propiolic Acid** melts at  $129^{\circ}$  with decomposition into  $\text{CO}_2$  and o-amido-phenyl acetylene (p. 268). It is obtained by reducing o-nitrophenyl propiolic acid with ferrous sulphate and ammonia (B. 16, 679). It separates as a yellow, crystalline powder. When boiled with water it yields o-amido-acetophenone (p. 190).

$\gamma$ -Chlorcarbostyril results when the acid is boiled with hydrochloric acid, and  $\gamma$ -oxycarbostyril upon heating it with sulphuric acid (B. 15, 2147):



Sodium nitrite converts the hydrochloride into the diazo-chloride, which at  $70^{\circ}$  yields cinnoline-oxy-carboxylic acid.

**m-Methylphenyl Propiolic Acid**,  $\text{CH}_3[3]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{C}:\text{C.CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at  $109^{\circ}$  (B. 20, 1215).

**9. Phenyldiolefine Carboxylic Acids** have been prepared from cinnamic aldehyde by means of the Perkin reaction (p. 274). **Cinnamenyl Acrylic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{.CH}:\text{CH.CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at  $165^{\circ}$ . The *nitrile*, boiling at  $285^{\circ}$ , is obtained from cinnamenyl cyanacrylic acid (p. 289). The o- and p-nitro-acids, melting at  $217^{\circ}$  and  $271^{\circ}$ , were obtained from o- and p-nitrocinnamenyl acetone (p. 273) by the action of  $\text{NaClO}$  (A. 253, 356). The o-amido-acid melts with decomposition at  $176^{\circ}$  (B. 18, 2332). **Cinnamenyl Crotonic Acid** and **Cinnamenyl Angelic Acid** melt at  $157^{\circ}$  and  $126^{\circ}$ .

**Piperic Acid**, 3,4-Methylenedioxy-cinnamenyl Acrylic Acid,  $(\text{CH}_2\text{O})[3,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{.CH}:\text{CH.CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $217^{\circ}$ , is produced, together with piperidine, when piperine is boiled with alcoholic potassium hydroxide. It can be synthesized by aid of the Perkin reaction from piperonylacrolein, and from piperonylene malonic acid (p. 289) (B. 28, 1190). Sodium amalgam converts it into two isomeric hydropiperic acids,  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ . It combines with four atoms of bromine. It is oxidized in dilute solution by potassium permanganate, at  $0^{\circ}$ , to piperonal and racemic acid (B. 23, 2372). When fused with potassium hydroxide it breaks down into acetic, oxalic, and protocatechuic acids. Its chloride and piperidine form piperine (see this).

*History*.—Fittig and Mielck (1874) determined the constitution of piperic acid. Ladenburg and Scholtz (1894) effected its synthesis (B. 27, 2958).

$\alpha$ -Methyl- and  $\alpha$ -Ethyl Piperic Acids, melting at  $208^{\circ}$  and  $179^{\circ}$ , were synthesized just like piperic acid (B. 28, 1187).

#### IV. COMPOUNDS WHICH MAY BE VIEWED AS OXIDATION PRODUCTS OF MONO-NUCLEUS, AROMATIC POLYALCOHOLS WITH UNSATURATED SIDE-CHAINS.

The domain of the aromatic polyalcohols having unsaturated side-chains has been even less completely and even more irregularly developed than that of the polyhydric, aromatic paraffin alcohols and their oxidation products. At present the alcohols and aldehydes are wholly lacking; from them the carboxylic acids and their derivatives belonging here can be theoretically deduced. Consequently the material in this section will not be sharply differentiated, although in the main the classification is the same as that observed with the oxidation products of the aromatic polyparaffin alcohols (pp. 232–266).

**1. Phenylene Oxyolefine Carboxylic Acids**.—*Methylene phthalide* and *isocoumarin* are inner anhydrides or lactones of the possible o-vinyl alcohol benzoic acids, not known in a free state. Coumarin is isomeric with them.

**Methylene Phthalide**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]\text{C}=\text{CH}_2 \\ [2]\text{COO} \end{array} \right\}$ , melting at  $59^{\circ}$ , is formed in the distillation of phthalyl acetic acid (p. 290). Its *dibromide* melts at  $98^{\circ}$ . *Monobrom-methyl-*

*ene phthalide*,  $C_8H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]C = CHBr \\ [2]CO \cdot O \end{array} \right.$ , is produced by the action of bromine upon *o*-acetophenone-carboxylic acid. *Dichlor-methylene phthalide*,  $C_8H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]C = CCl_2 \\ [2]COO \end{array} \right.$ , melts at  $128^\circ$ . It is formed, together with *Tetrachlormethyl phthalide*,  $C_8H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} CCl_2 \cdot CCl_2 \\ COO \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $93^\circ$ , upon conducting chlorine into a mixture of glacial acetic acid and phthalyl chlor-acetic acid (A. 255, 383; 268, 294). Derivatives of *methylene phthalimidine*,  $C_8H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]C = CH_2 \\ [2]CO \cdot NR \end{array} \right.$ , have been prepared by the action of amines and amin-acids upon *o*-acetophenone carboxylic acid (B. 29, 2518). *Ethidene phthalide*,  $C_8H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]C = CH \cdot CH_3 \\ [2]COO \end{array} \right.$ , melts at  $64^\circ$  (B. 19, 838).

*Propidene- and Isobutylidene Phthalides*, boiling at  $170^\circ$  (12 mm.) and melting at  $97^\circ$ , are obtained by condensing phthalic anhydride with the sodium salts and anhydrides of propionic, butyric, and isovaleric acids. Water and carbon dioxide are eliminated (B. 29, 1436).

*Isocoumarin*,  $C_8H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CH = CH \\ [2]CO - O \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $47^\circ$  and boiling at  $285^\circ$ , is formed in the distillation of silver isocoumarin-carboxylate. It readily volatilizes with steam. When digested with soda it becomes—

*Anhydro-o-oxyvinyl Benzoic Acid*,  $O(CH:CH[2]C_6H_4 \cdot CO_2H)_2$ , melting at  $183^\circ$ . When this body is heated with hydrochloric acid to  $160^\circ$  the *anhydride*,  $O(CH:CH[2]C_6H_4 \cdot CO)_2O$ , melting at  $234^\circ$ , results. The *imide*,  $O(CH:CH[2]C_6H_4CO)_2NH$ , melting at  $285^\circ$ , is produced when alcoholic ammonia acts upon the anhydride at  $170^\circ$  (B. 27, 207).

*Isocarbostyryl*,  $C_8H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CH = CH \\ [2]CO - NH \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $208^\circ$ , is isomeric with carbostyryl (p. 277), the lactam corresponding to isocoumarin. It is formed when isocoumarin is heated to  $130^\circ$  with alcoholic ammonia, and upon heating isocarbostyryl-carboxylic acid (p. 290) or its silver salt. It yields isoquinoline when distilled with zinc-dust (B. 27, 208).

*3-Methyl-isocoumarin*,  $C_8H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CH = C \cdot CH_3 \\ [2]CO - O \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $118^\circ$ , is formed when  $\psi$ -diacetylcyanbenzylcyanide,  $C_8H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]C = C(O_2CCH_3)_2 \\ [2]CN \cdot CN \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $135^\circ$ , is heated to  $180^\circ$  with hydrochloric acid. This latter body results from the action of sodium acetate and acetic anhydride upon *o*-cyanbenzyl cyanide (B. 27, 831). Similarly *o*-cyanbenzyl cyanide furnishes an additional series of homologues of isocoumarin, all of which are characterized by their ready transposition into isocarbostyryls (see B. 29, 2543, etc.).

Ammonia converts 3-methyl-isocoumarin into the corresponding *3-Methylisocarbostyryl*, melting at  $211^\circ$  (B. 25, 3563).

*Bergapten*,  $\begin{array}{c} CH = CH \\ | \\ O \end{array} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} CH = CH \\ O - CO \end{array} \right. C_6H(OCH_3)_2$  (?), melting at  $188^\circ$ , appears to be a derivative of oxyvinylcoumarin. It separates, on standing, from red bergamot oil, which is obtained by pressing out the fresh hulls of *Citrus Bergamia Risso* (B. 26, R. 234).

2. *Phenylene Aldehyde-carboxylic Acids*.—*p*-Aldehyde-cinnamic Acid,  $CHO \cdot [4]C_6H_4 \cdot CH:CH \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $247^\circ$ , is obtained from terephthal-aldehyde by the Perkin reaction (p. 274) (A. 231, 375).

3. *Phenylene Dicarboxylic Acids*.—*o*-Cinnamyl Carboxylic Acid,  $CO_2H[2]C_6H_4 \cdot$

CH:CH.CO<sub>2</sub>H, melts at 174°, and reverts again to phthalidacetic acid. It is produced when phthalidacetic acid is digested with alkalis and by carefully oxidizing β-naphthol with potassium permanganate (B. 21, R. 654). More energetic oxidation produces carbophenyl glyoxylic acid (p. 265).

**o-Cyan-cinnamic Acid**, CN[2]C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>CH:CH.CO<sub>2</sub>H, melting at 252°, is produced when sodium acetate and acetic anhydride act upon *o*-cyanbenzal chloride, and also from *o*-amido-cinnamic acid (B. 24, 2574; 27, R. 262).

**p-Cinnamyl Carboxylic Acid** is obtained from terephthal-aldehydic acid and sodium acetate. It is an insoluble, infusible powder (A. 231, 369).

**o-Phenylenediacyrylic Acid**, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>[1,2](CH:CH.CO<sub>2</sub>H)<sub>2</sub>, melts above 300°. It is produced when alcoholic potash acts upon *o*-xylene dichloridimalonic ester (B. 19, 435).

**p-Phenylenediacyrylic Acid** is obtained from *p*-aldehyde-cinnamic ester with sodium acetate and acetic anhydride (A. 231, 377), and from *p*-xylene dibromdimalonic ester.

4. **Phenylolefine Ketols**.—**Oxymethylene Acetophenone**, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>.CO.CH:CH.OH, when separated from its sodium compound, is a very unstable oil. Its sodium derivative is formed when sodium ethylate acts upon formic ester and acetophenone. Formerly, oxymethylene acetophenone was considered to be *benzoyl acetaldehyde* (p. 250). Constitution of the oxymethylene compounds—see 1, 319. Phenylhydrazine converts it into diphenylpyrazole (see this); hydroxylamine unites with it to form benzoylacetaldoxime (p. 250).

5, 6. **Phenyl-oxylefine and Diolefine Carboxylic Acids**.—**Oxymethylene-phenyl-acetic Ester**, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>C(CO<sub>2</sub>C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>):CHOH—see formyl phenylacetic ester, p. 256.

**β-Ethoxycinnamic Ester**, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>C(OC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>):CH.CO<sub>2</sub>C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>, boiling at 171–173°, is obtained from benzoyl acetic ester and orthoformic ester. The corresponding acid melts at 162° with evolution of carbon dioxide and the formation of β-phenylvinylethyl ether (p. 271) (B. 29, 1005).

**Phenyl-*α*-oxy-crotonic Acid**, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>CH:CH.CH(OH)COOH, melting at 137°, is prepared by saponifying its nitrile, *cinnamyl-aldehyde cyanhydrin*, melting at 80°, with cold concentrated hydrochloric acid. On boiling with hydrochloric acid the acid is readily rearranged to benzoyl propionic acid (p. 261) (B. 29, 2582).

**β-Benzylangelic Lactone**, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>.CH<sub>2</sub>C $\begin{matrix} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COO} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \quad \text{CH}_2 \end{matrix}$ , is obtained in the distillation of benzyl-lævulinic acid (p. 261).

**δ-Oxycinnamylidene Acetic Acid**.

Its lactone is *phenylcoumalin*, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>.C:CH.CH:CH.CO $\begin{matrix} \diagup \\ \text{O} \end{matrix}$ , melting at 68°, and found in *coto-bark* (B. 29, 2659; R. 1116).

7, 8. **Phenyl-olefine- and diolefine-*α*-keto-carboxylic acids** result from the condensation of aromatic aldehydes with pyroracemic acid.

**Cinnamyl Formic Acid**, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>.CH:CH.CO.CO<sub>2</sub>H, a bright yellow gummy mass, is obtained from its nitrile, *cinnamyl cyanide*, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>.CH:CH.CO.CN (B. 14, 2472), melting at 140°.

The *ortho-nitro derivative* is similarly formed from *o*-nitrobenzaldehyde and pyroracemic acid. It melts at 135°, and is changed by alkalis, even in the cold, with elimination of oxalic acid, into indigo.

3,4-Methylene-dioxycinnamyl Formic Acid, (CH<sub>2</sub>O)<sub>2</sub>[3,4]C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub>.CH:CH.CO.CO<sub>2</sub>H, melting at 148–150°, and piperonylene-pyroracemic acid, (CH<sub>2</sub>O)<sub>2</sub>[3,4]C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub>CH:CH.CH.CO.CO<sub>2</sub>H, melting at 165–167°, are formed from piperonal and piperonyl acrolein (p. 272).

9. **Phenyl-olefine-β-keton Carboxylic Acids** result from the condensation of acetoacetic ester and aromatic aldehydes with hydrochloric acid gas, or, better, primary or secondary amines in the cold (B. 29, 172). **Benzal Acetoacetic Ester**, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>.CH:C $\begin{matrix} \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{COCH}_3 \end{matrix}$ , melting at 59° and boiling at 181° (17 mm.) (A. 281, 63). The *m-nitro-ester* melts at 112° (B. 26, R. 448). **Allyl Benzoyl Acetic Ester**, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>.CO.CH $\begin{matrix} \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{matrix}$ , melts at 122° (B. 16, 2132).

**Benzal Diethyl Acetoacetic Ester**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : CH \cdot COC(C_2H_5)_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5$ , melts at  $101^\circ$ .

10. *Phenyl-olefine- $\gamma$ -ketone Carboxylic Acids* result by the condensation (1) of aldehydes and ketone-carboxylic acids with acids or alkalies; (2) of olefine dicarboxylic anhydrides—*e.g.*, maleic acid anhydride, citraconic anhydride, and benzenes with aluminium chloride.

$\beta$ -Benzoyl Acrylic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH : CH \cdot CO_2H$ , melts at  $96^\circ$  when anhydrous. It results from the action of sulphuric acid upon maleic anhydride (see above), as well as from phenyl- $\gamma$ -keto- $\alpha$ -oxybutyric acid (p. 261). Trichlorethidene Acetophenone,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH : CH \cdot CCl_3$ , melting at  $102^\circ$ , is produced when sulphuric acid acts upon chloral-acetophenone (p. 261).  $\beta$ -Benzoyl Crotonic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot C(CH_3) : CH \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $113^\circ$ , is obtained from citraconic anhydride (B. 15, 891).

$\beta$ -Benzal-lævulinic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : C \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CO} \cdot CH_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot CO_2H \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $125^\circ$ , is produced by the condensation of benzaldehyde and lævulinic acid in *acid solution*. It parts with water upon distillation and forms 3-aceto-1-naphthol. Phenyllitaconic acid is formed by its oxidation, and  $\beta$ -benzyl-lævulinic acid by its reduction. Hydroxylamine produces the neutral *lactoxime*, *Benzal-lævoxime*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : C \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2CO \\ CH_2 \cdot C : N \cdot O \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $94^\circ$ .

When benzaldehyde and lævulinic acid condense in *alkaline solution* the product is— $\delta$ -Benzal-lævulinic Acid,  $C_6H_5CH : CH \cdot CO \cdot C_2H_5 \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $120^\circ$ . It yields *benzal-angelic lactone*, melting at  $90^\circ$  (B. 24, 3202), upon distillation.

11, 12. *Phenyl-olefine- and diolefine Dicarboxylic Acids*.—**Benzal Malonic Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : C(CO_2H)_2$ , melts with production of cinnamic acid and allocinnamic acid (p. 274). It is formed in the condensation of benzaldehyde, malonic acid, and glacial acetic acid. Its *ethyl ester*, boiling at  $198^\circ$  (13 mm.), is obtained from benzaldehyde, malonic ester, and hydrochloric acid. It adds to itself more readily than the free acid. Aniline as well as phenylhydrazine converts the methyl ester into  $\beta$ -Anilido- and  $\beta$ -Phenylhydrazido-benzyl-malonic Methyl Ester, melting at  $117^\circ$  and  $94^\circ$  (B. 29, 813). When substituted benzaldehydes are used, substituted benzal-malonic acids result—*e.g.*, nitrobenzal malonic acid, which is reduced by ferrous sulphate and ammonia to  $\beta$ -carbostyryl carboxylic acid (B. 21, R. 253).

$\alpha$ -Cyan-cinnamic Acid, *Half-nitrile of Benzal Malonic Acid*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : C \begin{smallmatrix} CO_2H \\ CN \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $180^\circ$ , is obtained by the action of cyan-acetic acid in the heat upon benzaldehyde, or when it is boiled with cyanacetyl chloride. When heated it passes into the nitrile of cinnamic acid (p. 274). The *methyl and ethyl esters* melt at  $70^\circ$  and  $50^\circ$ . A large number of half-nitriles of unsaturated, aromatic malonic acids of related constitution have been obtained by the union of readily accessible, aromatic aldehydes with cyan acetic acid (B. 27, R. 262). *Nitrile Acid Amide*, *dinitrile*, and *diamide* of benzal malonic acid, melting at  $123^\circ$ ,  $87^\circ$ , and  $190^\circ$ , have also been synthesized by the condensation of benzaldehyde with cyanacetamide, malonitrile, and malonamide (B. 28, 2251).

$\beta$ -Carbostyryl Carboxylic Acid,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]CH : C \cdot CO_2H \\ [2]NH \cdot CO \end{smallmatrix} \right.$ , is formed from *o*-amido-benzaldehyde upon heating it with malonic acid to  $120^\circ$ , and also from *o*-nitrobenzal malonic acid (B. 21, R. 353). Its silver salt, when heated, yields carbostyryl.

**Coumarin Carboxylic Acid**,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]CH : C \cdot CO_2H \\ [2]O \text{---} CO \end{smallmatrix} \right.$ , melting at  $187^\circ$ , breaks down at  $290^\circ$  into carbon dioxide and coumarin (p. 281). It is obtained from salicylaldehyde, malonic acid, and glacial acetic acid, as well as from—

**Cyan-coumarin**,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]CH : C \cdot CN \\ [2]O \text{---} CO \end{smallmatrix} \right.$ , melting at  $182^\circ$ . This latter body may be prepared by the action of dilute sulphuric acid upon *o*-oxybenzaldicyanacetic ester,  $HO[2]C_6H_4CH[CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5]_2 + \frac{1}{2}H_2O$ , melting at  $140^\circ$ . This is a condensation product of salicylaldehyde and cyanacetic ester (B. 27, R. 576).

**Piperonylene Malonic Acid**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{O}_5)[3,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH} : \text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$ , melts at  $205^\circ$  with decomposition into  $\text{CO}_2$  and piperic acid (p. 285) (B. 28, 1190). **Phenyl Allyl Malonic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH}_2)(\text{COOH})_2$ , melts with decomposition at  $145^\circ$ . Its ester is formed when allyl iodide acts upon phenyl-malonic ester (B. 29, 2600).

melting at 119°, which is produced when bromine and PBr<sub>3</sub> act upon phenylsuccinic acid, and the reaction product is treated with water. Phenylmalic acid is formed simultaneously (B. 23, R. 573).

from succinic ester, benzaldehyde, and sodium ethylate; (2) from phenyl paraconic ester and sodium ethylate. When fused, particularly under reduced pressure, it separates into water and its *anhydride*, melting at 163–166°, which in every fusion changes in a slight degree to isomeric *phenylcitraconic anhydride*, melting at 60°. Water changes the latter to *phenylcitraconic acid*, melting at 103–106°. If phenylcitraconic acid in chloroform solution, to which a little bromine is added, be exposed to sunlight, it becomes *phenyl-mesaconic acid*, melting at 210°.

is formed, together with o-oxyphenyl methylisocrotonic acid, from salicylaldehyde, sodium pyruvate, and acetic anhydride. It passes into  $\alpha$ -ethyl coumarin when it is distilled (A. 255, 285).

**Methyl Phenyl Itaconic Acid**,  $C_6H_5C(CH_3)=C(CO_2H)CH_3$ ,  $CO_2H$ , melts with decomposition at 161–163°. It is obtained from succinic ethyl ester, acetophenone, and sodium ethylate in ether (A. 282, 288).

**Phenyl Glutaconic Acid**,  $C_9H_8O_4$ .  $C(CH_3 \cdot COOH) : CH \cdot COOH$ , melting at  $154^\circ$ , has been obtained from the condensation product formed in the union of phenylpropionic ester with sodium malonic ester (B. 27, R. 163).

**Benzal Glutaric Acid,  $C_9H_6O_4$ .  $CH:C(CO_2H)CH_2.CH_2.COOH$  (A. 282, 338).**

**Benzyl Glutaconic Ester**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH(COOH)CH : CH \cdot COOH$ , melts at  $145^\circ$  (A. 222, 261). Its *ethyl ester*, boiling at  $203^\circ$  (10 mm.), when treated with ammonia at  $100^\circ$ , forms *dihydroxybenzyl pyridine*, melting at  $184^\circ$  (B. 26, R. 318). (Compare constitution of pyridine.)

13. **Phenylene Oxylefine Dicarboxylic Acids.**—Phthalyl acetic acid and isocoumarin carboxylic acid have the same relation to each other that methylene phthalide sustains to isocoumarin. Phthalyl acetic acid and its homologues have been obtained by applying the Perkin reaction to phthalic anhydride:

260°. When distilled under greatly diminished pressure it breaks down into carbon dioxide and methylene phthalide (p. 285). Salts of benzoylacetocarboxylic acid (p. 263) are obtained by dissolving it in alkalis. When it is heated with water to 200° it breaks down into carbon dioxide and o-acetylbenzoic acid. When heated with ammonia it forms *Phthalimide Acetic Acid*. The alkylamines react analogously.

Sodium ethylate converts phthalylacetic acid into the sodium salt of diketohydrindene carboxylic acid (see this) (B. 26, 953).

**Isocoumarin Carboxylic Acid**,  $C_8H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CH = C - CO_2H \\ [2]CO - O \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $237^\circ$ , is formed when o-carbophenyl glyceric acid lactone (p. 265) is heated to  $160^\circ$  with hydrochloric acid. See isocoumarin. Ammonia converts it quite readily into *isocarboxyryl carboxylic acid*,  $C_8H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CH = C \cdot CO_2H \\ [2]CO - NH \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $320^\circ$  (B. 25, 1138). Boiling caustic potash decomposes it into o-toluic acid and oxalic acid (B. 28, R. 770).

14. *Phenylene Oxylofine Tricarboxylic Acids*. — **Phthalyl Malonic Ester**,  $C_8H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]C = C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 \\ [2]COO \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $74^\circ$ , is formed, together with phthalyl dimalonic ester (p. 265), from phthalyl chloride and sodium malonic ester (A. 242, 46). **Phthalyl Cyanacetic Ester**,  $C_8H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]C = C \begin{array}{l} \nearrow CO_2C_2H_5 \\ \searrow CN \end{array} \\ [2]COO \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $175^\circ$ , is made from phthalyl chloride and sodium cyanacetic ester (B. 26, R. 370).

## B. HYDROAROMATIC SUBSTANCES WITH SINGLE-NUCLEUS, HYDROBENZENE DERIVATIVES.

It was shown in the introduction to the carbocyclic compounds that the treatment of the hydroaromatic derivatives presupposed a knowledge of the aromatic bodies (p. 18). Indeed, numerous reactions which led to the hydroaromatic compounds, especially the additions, were described in connection with the aromatic substances. Many bodies discussed under the aromatic derivatives—*e. g.*, the quinones—are rather to be viewed as derived from the hydroaromatic hydrocarbons. And reactions were also learned in the discussion of the fatty bodies which will again be encountered, and through which mono-nucleus, hydroaromatic substances are produced. The *terpenes* and *camphor* will be included in the hydroaromatic derivatives.

### 1. HYDROAROMATIC HYDROCARBONS.

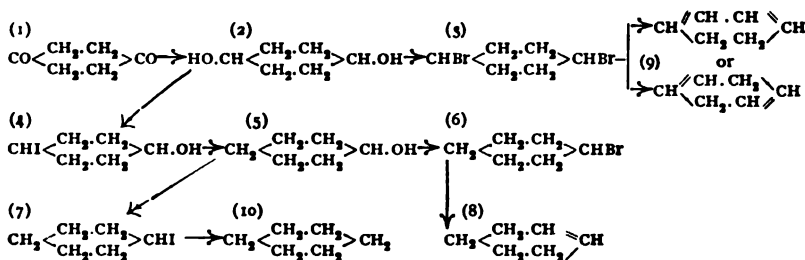
Hexahydrobenzene is the parent hydrocarbon of the hydroaromatic substances. Tetra- and di-hydrobenzene bear the same relation to it that an olefine and a diolefine show to the paraffin, having the same number of carbon atoms.

The hexahydrobenzenes, which are isomerides of olefines with a like number of carbon atoms, resemble the paraffins in chemical deportment; they belong to the cycloparaffins (compare I, 89; II, 17), while the tetrahydrobenzenes belong to the cyclo-olefines, the dihydrobenzenes to the cyclodiolefines, and benzene is the simplest imaginable cyclotriolefine, if we accept the formula proposed for it by Aug. Kekulé.

Berthelot (1867) first effected the reduction of benzene to hexahydrobenzene. It was obtained pure by Baeyer (1894) in the course of an investigation in which he demonstrated how the simplest representatives of the hydroaromatic bodies—hexahydrobenzene, *tetrahydrobenzene*, and *dihydrobenzene*—could be prepared from p-diketohexamethyl-

ene, a decomposition product of succino-succinic ester (p. 305). Before beginning a detailed description of the hydroaromatic hydrocarbons it may be well to briefly present the steps of this research in a diagram. The inclosed numbers following the names refer to the formulas of the diagram.

p-Diketohexamethylene (1) yields quinite (2) by reduction, which hydrogen bromide changes to p-dibromhexamethylene, and hydrogen iodide into the moniodhydrin (4) of quinite, along with p-diiodhexamethylene. Quinite moniodhydrin, when reduced, yields oxyhexamethylene (5). Hydrogen bromide and iodide convert oxyhexamethylene (6) into brom- and iod-hexamethylene (6, 7). When p-dibromhexamethylene and monobromhexamethylene are heated with quinoline the latter yields *tetrahydrobenzene* (8), and the former dihydrobenzene (9); whereas mono-iod-hexamethylene is reduced by zinc-dust and glacial acetic acid to *hexahydrobenzene* (10):



Compare the tetrahydrobenzenes (p. 293) for additional methods for the preparation of hydrobenzene derivatives.

The following values (V) and differences (D) were observed by Stohmann in determining the heats of combustion and the boiling points of benzene, the three hydrobenzenes, and hexane:

$\text{C}_6\text{H}_8$ (V) = 779.8	D = 68.2 Cal.	B. P. 80.4°	Approximately
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_8$ " = 848.0	" = 44.0 "	" 84-86°	} D = + 5°
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_{10}$ " = 892.0	" = 41.2 "	" 82-84°	} " = - 2°
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}$ " = 933.2	" = 58.0 "	" 79-79.5°	} " = - 3°
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_{14}$ " = 991.2		" 69°	} " = - 10°.

The differences calculated from these numbers would have to be equal if the changes were of like character. The magnitude of these differences expresses, therefore, the magnitude of the changes involved in the reduction (A. 278, 115). Consult Brühl, B. 27, 1065, upon the value of molecular refraction in the determination of structural differences.

## 1 a. HEXAHYDROBENZENES, NAPHTHENES [CYCLOHEXANES].

Hydroaromatic hydrocarbons constitute the chief portion of Caucasian petroleum (1, 88) (Beilstein and Kurbatow, B. 13, 1818). Markownikow has, therefore, designated them naphthenes. Hexahydrobenzenes have also been discovered in the tar from bituminous coal and in that from certain shales, as well as in the *resin-oils* obtained from the distillation of colophonium. They have been made artificially by reducing aromatic hydrocarbons with hydriodic acid at high temperatures. Hexahydrobenzene resists decomposition by means of hydrogen very strongly

(A. 278, 88). The hexahydrobenzenes are more easily obtained by reducing their halogen substitution products.

When hydriodic acid is used as a reducing agent, under certain circumstances alkylpentamethylenes appear to form by a process of isomerization; these are isomeric with the hexamethylenes. Thus, methylpentamethylene is formed together with hexamethylene (B. 30, 1214).

The hexahydrobenzenes are distinguished from the olefines isomeric with them by their higher specific gravity and their inability to take up bromine. Like the paraffins, they are first changed by chlorine into mono-chlor substitution products, from which esters of monacid alcohols, amines, and tetrahydrobenzenes can be prepared by well-known methods. Substituted aromatic hydrocarbons are obtained from the hexahydrobenzenes by the action of bromine and aluminium bromide, as well as by the action (although with difficulty) of nitric acid and sulphuric acid. However, nitrohydrobenzenes have been obtained by the use of dilute nitric acid (B. 25, R. 107; 28, 577).

Hexahydrobenzene . . .	boils at 79°; sp. gr. 0.7473 (0°)
Hexahydrotoluene . . .	" " 100°; " " 0.7778 (0°)
Hexahydro-m-xylene . .	" " 118°; " " 0.7814 (0°)
Hexahydrocumene . . .	" " 148°; " " 0.7870 (20°)
Hexahydromesitylene . .	" " 137°; " " —
1,3,4-Hexahydropseudocumene	" " 135°; " " 0.7812 (12°)
Hexahydrocymene, see Terpenes,	p. 307, and B. 29, 317.

Hexahydrobenzene (B. 28, 1234), hexahydrotoluene, hexahydro-m-xylene, and hexahydropseudocumene have been found in the naphtha of Caucasian petroleum, while hexahydrotoluene, hexahydro-m-xylene, hexahydrocumene, and hexahydrocymene are present in resin-oil.

**Hexahydrobenzene, Naphthene, Hexamethylene, Ring-hexene, Cyclohexane,**  $\text{CH}_2 < \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 & \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 & \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} > \text{CH}_2$ , results from the reduction of iodhexamethylene (p. 291, and B. 28, 1022; 30, 391), and by the action of sodium upon synthetic hexamethylene bromide. It is a liquid with an odor like that of petroleum (A. 278, 110; B. 27, 216).

**Hexahydrotoluene, Heptanaphthene, Methylcyclohexane,** has also been made from suberyl alcohol (p. 28) by the action of HI at 140° (B. 25, R. 858), and from perselte (see i.) as well as from synthetic methyl hexamethylene ketone by means of the corresponding alcohol (B. 29, 731). Bromine and aluminium bromide convert it into pentabromtoluene, melting at 282°.

**Hexahydro-m-xylene, Octonaphthene, [1,3-Dimethylcyclohexane],** is obtained from camphoric acid, from heptanaphthene carboxylic acid by means of HI (A. 225, 110; B. 24, 2718; 25, 920), and from hexahydro-2,6-dimethyl phenol (p. 294).

**Hexahydro-p-xylene** is obtained from brom-camphor by means of  $\text{ZnCl}_2$  at 160° (B. 13, 1407).

**Hexahydropseudocumene, Nonaphthene, 1,3,4-Trimethylhexamethylene,** from hexahydrotrimethyl phenol (B. 29, 215), when acted upon with bromine and aluminium bromide, yields tribrompseudocumene. **1,3-Methylisopropylcyclohexane, sym. menthane,** boiling at 167°, is formed by the reduction of its iodine substitution product.

**[1,3]-Diethylhexahydrobenzene,** boiling at 170°, sp. gr. 0.7957 (22°/4°),  $n_D = 1.4388$  (20°), is isomeric with hexahydrocymene. It is obtained from hexahydro-2,6-diethyl phenol (p. 294).

**Halogen Substitution Products of the Hexahydrobenzenes.—Formation:** (1) From the hexahydrobenzenes by the introduction of chlorine. (2) By the addition of halogens and halogen hydrides to di- and tetrahydrobenzenes. (3) By the addition of halogens to benzenes and halogen benzenes (p. 57). (4) From the oxyhexahydrobenzenes through the exchange of hydroxyl groups for halogens.

The third method has brought to light peculiar isomeric phenomena. Two isomeric benzene hexachlorides, two isomeric chlorbenzene hexachlorides and benzene hexabromides have been found. The disposition on the part of chemists is to ascribe the cause of this isomerism to the different positions of the attached chlorine atoms with

reference to the plane of the carbon ring, as in the case of the isomeric trithioaldehydes (1, 203), and the isomeric tri-, tetra-, and pentamethylene dicarboxylic acids (pp. 23, 24, 27). At the conclusion of the hexahydrobenzenes only those addition products obtained according to method 3 will be discussed, which eventually, by loss of halogen hydride, pass into benzene halogen substitution products.

$\alpha$ - or *trans*-Benzene Hexachloride,  $C_6H_5Cl_6$ , melting at  $157^\circ$  and boiling at  $218^\circ$  (345 mm.), decomposes into  $3HCl$  and unsym. trichlorobenzene (p. 58).  $\beta$ - or *cis*-Benzene Hexachloride melts and sublimes near  $310^\circ$ .  $\alpha$ -Benzene hexachloride was made by the action of chlorine upon benzene in sunlight (1825, Faraday; 1835, Mitscherlich, Pogg. A. 35, 370).  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Benzene hexachlorides are produced when chlorine is conducted into boiling benzene (1884, Meunier; B. 18, R. 149; 19, R. 348), or, better, into a mixture of benzene and 1 per cent. sodium hydroxide. The  $\alpha$ -body is separated by distillation in steam from the less volatile  $\beta$ -derivative (B. 24, R. 632), or by means of chloroform from the more sparingly soluble  $\beta$ -compound. The latter is the more resistant of the two modifications. When heated with alcoholic potash it is converted with greater difficulty than the  $\alpha$ -body into unsym. trichlorobenzene. It is not affected by alcoholic potassium cyanide, but when boiled with this reagent the  $\alpha$ -variety is converted into unsym. trichlorobenzene. Zinc in alcoholic solution changes the  $\alpha$ -modification into benzene (Z. f. Ch., 1871, N. F. 7, 284, 293).

$\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Chlorobenzene Hexachloride,  $C_6H_5Cl_7$ , melting at  $146^\circ$  and  $260^\circ$ , yield 1,2,3,5-tetrachlorobenzene with alcoholic potash (A. 141, 101; B. 25, 373). 1,2,4-Trichlorobenzene Hexachloride,  $C_6H_5Cl_8$ , melts at  $95^\circ$ .

$\alpha$ -Benzene Hexabromide,  $C_6H_5Br_6$ , melting at  $212^\circ$ , results from the action of bromine upon benzene in sunlight, and when bromine acts upon boiling benzene. When it splits off  $HBr$ , 1,2,4-tribromobenzene is formed (Pogg. A. 35, 374). It is isomorphic with  $\alpha$ -benzene hexachloride (B. 18, R. 553). When bromine acts upon benzene in the presence of dilute caustic soda, a second compound— $\beta$ -Benzene Hexabromide, melting at  $253^\circ$  (B. 29, R. 1138)—is formed together with the first body.

#### 1 b. TETRAHYDROBENZENES, NAPHTHYLENES [CYCLOHEXENES].

Tetrahydrotoluene has been discussed together with hexahydrotoluenes and allied hydrocarbons found in the essence of resin. The hexahydrobenzenes yield tetrahydrobenzenes by the introduction of chlorine and the exit of  $HCl$ . The hydrocarbons—*e. g.*, *Carvomenthene* and *Menthene* (see these)—obtained from terpenes and their derivatives belong to the tetrahydrobenzenes.

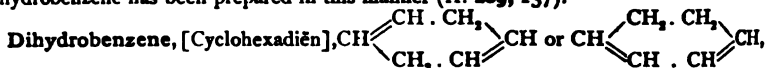
Tetrahydrobenzene,  $CH_2 \begin{array}{c} \diagup CH \\ \diagdown CH_2 \end{array} \diagup CH$ , boiling at  $82-84^\circ$  (p. 291), is produced on distilling monobromhexamethylene (p. 294) with quinoline. It is a colorless liquid, resembling petroleum. It has less of the leek odor than dihydrobenzene. It is colored yellow by concentrated sulphuric acid. The *dibromide* is a liquid. The *nitroschloride* melts at  $152^\circ$ . The *nitrosate*,  $NO \cdot C_6H_{10} \cdot O \cdot NO_2$ , melts at  $150^\circ$  with decomposition (A. 278, 107). *Tetrahydrotoluene* is obtained from pulegone (A. 289, 343).

Different homologous tetrahydrobenzenes have been obtained from hexahydrophenols (p. 294) by the removal of water with  $P_2O_5$ . Methyl-, dimethyl-, Methyl-isopropyl-tetrahydrobenzenes boil at  $105^\circ$ ,  $124^\circ$ , and  $109^\circ$  (communicated by E. Knövenagel).

#### 1 c. DIHYDROBENZENES [CYCLOHEXADIÈNES].

Very probably some of the naturally occurring terpenes belong to the dihydrobenzenes. The artificially prepared representatives of the dihydrobenzenes are very similar in deportment to them. The method of preparing the simplest of the hydrocarbons in this class—dihydrobenzene—from succino-succinic ester has already been discussed (p. 291). Mono-alkyl and di-*p*-alkyl-dihydrobenzenes were made in like manner from mono- and di-alkylsuccinosuccinic esters (B. 26, 232).

A second method for the preparation of dihydrobenzenes is based upon the rearrangement of the dihydroresorcinol derivatives obtained in the condensation of  $\delta$ -ketonic esters (p. 297). The dihydroresorcinols yield dihydric alcohols upon reduction; these, by the exit of two molecules of water, become dihydrobenzenes. Thus far only one phenyl-dihydrobenzene has been prepared in this manner (A. 289, 137).



boiling at  $84-86^\circ$ , results when p-dibromhexamethylene is heated with quinoline (p. 291). It is a leek-like liquid, resembling benzene. It resinifies, like the terpenes (p. 291), on exposure to the air. It decolorizes a solution of  $\text{KMnO}_4$  instantaneously, and takes on a blue color when treated with concentrated sulphuric acid (see sylvestrene, p. 308). Its tetrabromide melts at  $185^\circ$  (B. 25, 1840).

Dihydrotoluene,  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{10}$ , boiling at  $105-108^\circ$ , is obtained from toluene by the action of  $\text{PH}_4\text{I}$  (A. 155, 271).

Dihydro-o-xylene, *Cantharene*, boiling at  $135^\circ$ , is produced when cantharic acid,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}\text{O}_4$ , a rearrangement product of cantharadine, is distilled with caustic lime. Its odor is like that of a terpene, and it resinifies on exposure to the air (Piccard, 1878; B. 25, 2453).

Dihydro-m-xylene, boiling at  $133^\circ$ , sp. gr. 0.8275 ( $20^\circ$ ), is obtained when methyl heptenone,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH} \cdot \text{CH} = \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{COCH}_3$ , is condensed with  $\text{ZnCl}_2$  (A. 258, 326).

Dihydro-p-xylene boils at  $134^\circ$ . Dihydro-p-diethyl Benzene boils at  $180-185^\circ$ . Dihydro-p-methylisopropyl Benzene, *Dihydro-p-cymene*, boils at  $174^\circ$ .

## 2. RING-ALCOHOLS OF THE HYDROAROMATIC HYDROCARBONS.

In this group are included quercite and inosite, formerly classed with the sugars, as well as the ring alcohols of the terpane or menthane group among the terpenes (p. 313), while other members have been obtained by the reduction of aromatic or hydroaromatic compounds, but chiefly from the corresponding ketones.

Hexahydrophenol, [Cyclohexanol],  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11}(\text{OH})$ , melting at  $+15^\circ$  and boiling at  $158^\circ$  (720 mm.), is formed by the action of zinc-dust and glacial acetic acid upon p-iodhexahydrophenol, the reaction product obtained from quinite and hydriodic acid. Its odor is like that of fusel oil. It is more readily soluble in water than the aliphatic alcohols containing six C-atoms (B. 26, 229). Its acetyl derivative melts at  $104^\circ$ . Hydrobromic acid converts it into *bromcyclohexane*, boiling at  $162^\circ$  (720 mm.). See tetrahydrobenzene.

Hexahydro-2,6-dimethyl Phenol, boiling at  $174^\circ$ , and Hexahydro-2,6-diethyl Phenol, melting at  $77^\circ$  and boiling at  $210^\circ$ , along with a series of additional homologues, have been prepared by the reduction of the corresponding ketones (p. 296).

Hexahydrophenols have also been obtained from the synthetic keto-R-hexenes (p. 298). This has been accomplished by treating the latter with sodium and alcohol. The hexahydrophenols appear to occur in two probably stereoisomeric forms. A chromic acid mixture oxidizes them to *keto-R-hexanes*. Their hydriodic esters are reduced by zinc-dust and glacial acetic ester to *cyclohexanes*, and when they lose water through the action of  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$ , *cyclohexenes* result (privately communicated by E. Knövenagel).

Quinite, [Cyclohexane-1,4-diol],  $\text{HOCH} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagdown \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{CHOH}$ , melting at  $144^\circ$ , is formed from p-diketohexamethylene (p. 296) when treated with sodium amalgam in the presence of carbon dioxide. This was demonstrated by A. v. Baeyer in 1892. It tastes sweet at first, then bitter, and is readily soluble in water and in alcohol. Chromic

acid oxidizes it to quinone (B. 25, 1038). Quinite serves for the preparation of the simple hydride derivatives of benzene (B. 26, 229). Hydriodic acid converts it into p-iodocyclohexanol and p-di-iodocyclohexane. By reduction the first yields hexahydrophenol, the second cyclohexane (p. 293). p-Dibromocyclohexane passes readily into dihydrobenzene (p. 294) (B. 26, 230). 2,5-Dimethyl Quinite is formed from the corresponding diketone (B. 25, 2122).

Phloroglucite, *s-Trioxycyclohexamethylene*, [Cyclohexane-1,3,5-triol],  $\text{HOCH} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \end{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melts when anhydrous at  $184^\circ$ . It is formed when phloroglucin is reduced in an approximately neutral solution with sodium amalgam (B. 27, 357).

Quercite, [Cyclohexanpentol],  $\text{CH}_2 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}(\text{OH}) - \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \\ \text{CH}(\text{OH}) - \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \end{smallmatrix} \text{CH}(\text{OH})$ , melting at  $235^\circ$ ,  $[\alpha]_D = +24.16^\circ$ , occurs in acorns. The aqueous extract of the latter can be freed of glucoses by fermentation with beer-yeast. Quercite does not ferment with yeast. Hydriodic acid converts it into benzene, hexane, phenol, quinone, and hydroquinone (Prunier). Nitric acid oxidizes it to mucic acid and trioxylglutaric acid (see vol. 1). A solution of potassium permanganate converts it chiefly into malonic acid, although oxalic acid and carbonic acid are formed simultaneously (B. 29, 1762).

Inosite, *Hexahydrohexaoxybenzene*, [Cyclohexanhexene],  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6(\text{OH})_6$ , is known in one optically inactive and two optically active modifications.

i-Inosite, *Phaseomannite*, *Dambose*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6(\text{OH})_6 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melts at  $225^\circ$  when anhydrous. It occurs in the muscles of the heart and in the urine when there has been an excessive consumption of water; also in unripe beans (*Phaseolus vulgaris*) and peas. If heated to  $170^\circ$  with hydriodic acid, it yields phenol, di-iodphenol, and traces of benzene (Maquenne). Concentrated nitric acid oxidizes it to di- and tetra-oxyquinones (p. 170), and to rhodizonic acid (p. 171) (B. 20, R. 478; 23, R. 26).

Dambonite,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6(\text{OH})_6(\text{OCH}_3)_2 + 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , is the dimethyl ether of i-inosite. It occurs in the caoutchouc from Gabon. i-Inosite Hexaacetate melts at  $211^\circ$ .

d-Inosite, melting at  $247^\circ$ ,  $[\alpha]_D = +65^\circ$ , from pinite by the action of hydriodic acid, behaves like i-inosite with nitric acid. Pinite, *Matexite*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6(\text{OH})_6(\text{OCH}_3)_2$ , melting at  $186^\circ$ ,  $[\alpha]_D = +65.51^\circ$ , is present in the juice of *Pinus lambertina*, also in the caoutchouc from *Matexa roritina* of Madagascar.

l-Inosite, melting at  $238^\circ$ ,  $[\alpha]_D = -55^\circ$ , from quebrachite by means of hydriodic acid, behaves toward nitric acid just like i-inosite. Quebrachite,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6(\text{OH})_6\text{OCH}_3$ , melting at  $186^\circ$ ,  $[\alpha]_D = -80^\circ$ , occurs in the quebracho-bark.

Phenose,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6(\text{OH})_6$  (?), is an amorphous, readily soluble substance, deliquescing in the air. It has a sweet taste and reduces Fehling's solution, but is not capable of fermentation. It has been obtained by the action of a soda solution (A. 136, 323) upon the addition product of benzene with three molecules of hypochlorous acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{Cl} \\ \text{OH} \end{smallmatrix} \right\}_3$ .

*Ring-alcohols of Tetrahydrobenzene*: Tetrahydrophenol,  $[\Delta_3\text{-Cyclohexenol}]$ ,\*

$\text{CH} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH} - \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \text{CHOH}$ , boiling at  $163^\circ$ , is formed when p-iodocyclohexanol (p. 291) is distilled with quinoline.

### 3. RING-AMINES OF THE HYDROAROMATIC HYDROCARBONS

have been obtained by the reduction of the corresponding oximes with sodium in alcoholic solution. The ring-amines of the terpane and menthane groups, discussed under the terpenes, belong in this class. Amidoexamethylene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{NH}_2$ , is isomeric with the methyl piperidines. It boils at  $133^\circ$ , smells like coniline, and dissolves sparingly in

\*  $\Delta$  Indicates a double union; the added number (in this case  $\beta$ ) that this carbon atom 3 is doubly linked to the carbon atom 4.

water. Its *acet-derivative* melts at  $104^{\circ}$ . The *benzoyl compound* melts at  $147^{\circ}$ . The *phenylurea derivative* melts at  $180^{\circ}$ . The *phenyllithiurea* body melts at  $147^{\circ}$ .

*o*-Diamidohexamethylene,  $C_6H_{10}[1,2](NH_2)_2$ , is an oil, boiling at  $183$ – $185^{\circ}$ . It results when the amide of hexahydroanthranilic acid (p. 300) is treated with sodium hypobromite and then with hydrochloric acid. Like the aromatic *o*-diamines, it unites with benzaldehydes, forming aldehydines (p. 95) (A. 295, 187).

*m*-Diamidohexamethylene, boiling at  $193^{\circ}$ , smells like ethylenediamine. It is soluble in water. Nitrous acid decomposes it into nitrogen and dihydrobenzene (A. 228, 39). The *diacet-compound* melts at  $256^{\circ}$ .

*p*-Diamidohexamethylene,  $C_6H_{10}[1,4](NH_2)_2$ , is a liquid (B. 27, 1449).

#### 4. RING-KETONES OF THE HYDROAROMATIC HYDROCARBONS.

(a) Ring-ketones of Hexahydrobenzenes.—Pimelin Ketone, [Cyclohexanon], *Ketohexamethylene*,  $CH_2<\begin{smallmatrix} CH_2-CH_2 \\ CH_2-CH_2 \end{smallmatrix}>CO$ , boiling at  $155^{\circ}$ , is an oil with an odor like peppermint. It results (1) by the oxidation of hexahydrophenol (p. 294); (2) in the reduction of phenol with alternating currents; (3) in the distillation of calcium *n*-pimelinate (1, 455). Upon reduction it yields [cyclohexanol] (p. 294), while nitric acid oxidizes it to *adipic acid* (1, 455). Its *oxime* melts at  $88^{\circ}$ . Its *phenylhydrazone*, melting at  $74$ – $77^{\circ}$ , when acted upon by mineral acids loses ammonia and passes into tetrahydrocarbazole (see this) (A. 278, 100).

A series of alkylic keto-hexamethylenes has been obtained from the alkylic pimelic acids:

2-, 3-, 4-Methylketohexamethylenes boil at  $166^{\circ}$ ,  $164^{\circ}$ , and  $163$ – $165^{\circ}$ ; 2,6-Dimethyl- and 2,6-Diethylketohexamethylenes boil at  $163^{\circ}$  and  $206^{\circ}$ ; 2,4,5-Trimethylketohexamethylene boils at  $191^{\circ}$  (B. 28, 1341, 2944; 29, 731; A. 295, 186). 3-Methylketohexamethylene has also been prepared in other ways. It results from the oxidation of 3-methylketohexahydrophenol with a chromic acid mixture; the latter body is produced in the reduction of synthetic 3-methylcycloketohexene (p. 298). It also appears in an optically active, dextro-rotating modification by the decomposition of pulegon (see this), and, finally, in the decomposition of isopulegon (see this) (B. 30, 23). A 3,5,5-Trimethylketohexamethylene, boiling at  $189^{\circ}$ , is *Dihydroacetophorone*. It is formed when chromic acid oxidizes dihydroisoacetophorol, a reduction product derived from isoacetophorone.

Similarly, 3,5-Methylisopropylketohexamethylene, sym. *Menthone*, boiling at  $222^{\circ}$ , is obtained by the oxidation of the corresponding alcohol.

#### *Diketohexamethylenes, Cyclohexandiones.*

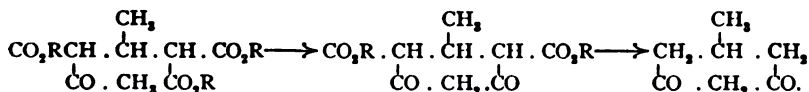
Theory predicts three isomeric diketohexamethylenes, two of which—dihydroresorcinol and tetrahydroquinone—are known. Dihydroresorcinol possesses the character of a feeble base, and is therefore to be viewed probably as a ring-shaped, unsaturated ketone alcohol.

Dihydroresorcinol, 1,3-Cyclohexandion, *m*-Diketohexamethylene,

$CH_2<\begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \cdot CO \\ CH_2 \cdot CO \end{smallmatrix}>CH_2$  or  $CH_2<\begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \cdot CO- \\ CH_2 \cdot C(OH) \end{smallmatrix}>CH$ , melts with decomposition at  $104$ – $106^{\circ}$ . It is produced upon introducing pure sodium amalgam into a boiling aqueous resorcinol solution while carbon dioxide is being conducted into it. It may be synthesized by the condensation of  $\gamma$ -acetylbutyric ester with sodium ethylate (p. 44). Dihydroresorcinol dissolves readily in water, alcohol, and chloroform, but with difficulty in ether. When heated to  $150$ – $160^{\circ}$  with baryta-water it is decomposed so as to form  $\gamma$ -acetylbutyric acid, and when oxidized it yields glutaric acid and carbon dioxide (A. 294, 269). It reacts acid and decomposes the alkali and alkaline earth carbonates. It also forms a *dioxime*,  $C_6H_8(NO_2)_2 + 2H_2O$ . This melts at  $154$ – $157^{\circ}$  when it is anhydrous; when

reduced it becomes *m*-diamidohexamethylene. *m*-Dioxyhexahydroisophthalo-nitrile (p. 304) (A. 278, 20) is formed by adding prussic acid to dihydroresorcinol.

Homologues of dihydroresorcinol are similarly formed in the condensation of like  $\delta$ -ketone-carboxylic esters, as, for example, in the addition of malonic esters to alkylidene-acetoacetic ester. When the latter is condensed with malonic ester through the agency of sodium ethylate, and the product then saponified, carbon dioxide is eliminated and there results methyl dihydroresorcinol, melting at 126° (A. 289, 137; 294, 253):



Phenyl dihydroresorcinol melts at 184° with decomposition. Dimethyl dihydroresorcinol,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C} : [\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}]_2 : \text{CH}_2$ , melts at 150°.

The homologous dihydroresorcinols react like simple dihydroresorcinol, both as diketones and as unsaturated oxyketones.

**Tetrahydroquinone**, [*1,4-Cyclohexandion*], *p*-*Diketohexamethylene*,

$\text{CO} < \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{array} > \text{CO}$ , melting at 78°, results upon saponifying succino-succinic ester with concentrated sulphuric acid, when it loses carbon dioxide (Baeyer, see p. 291), or when the same body is boiled with aqueous-alcoholic hydrochloric acid (private communication from R. Stollé). It unites with sodium bisulphite to a *dioxime*, melting at 192°; compare *p*-diamidohexamethylene. It forms *quinite* (p. 294) upon reduction; see also  $\alpha$ -dioxyhexahydroterephthalic acid (p. 304).

*p*-Dimethyl-*p*-diketohexamethylene, [*2,5-Dimethyl-1,4-cyclohexandion*], melting at 93°, is obtained from *p*-dimethylsuccino-succinic ester (B. 25, 2122).

[*Cyclohexantriones*.] Phloroglucin yields derivatives which can be deduced from the formula of 1,3,5-trioxybenzene, and others which can be obtained from the formula of 1,3,5-triketohexamethylene. It was discussed at the conclusion of pyrogallol and oxyhydroquinone (pp. 164, 165), as were the hexa-alkyl derivatives of phloroglucin.

*Triquinyl*,  $\text{C}_6\text{O}_6 + 8\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (p. 171), described with the quinones, is probably hexa-ketohexamethylene.

**Halogen Substitution Products of the Ring-ketones of Hexahydrobenzene.**—These are formed in the continuous action of chlorine and bromine upon phenols, quinones and oxyquinones. Several of the keto-chlorides can be readily rearranged into halogen ketopentene derivatives, and be decomposed into highly chlorinated fatty bodies: ketones, ketonic acids, and fatty acids (pp. 44-47).

**Heptachlor-resorcinol**, [*Heptachlor-1,3-cyclohexandion*],

$\text{HCl} < \begin{array}{c} \text{CCl}_2 - \text{CO} \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CCl}_2 - \text{CO} \end{array} > \text{CCl}_2$ , melting at 50° and boiling at 170° (25 mm.), is produced in the action of chlorine upon resorcinol in chloroform (B. 24, 912). Decomposition, p. 45.

**Quinone Tetrabromide**, [*2,3,5,6-Tetrabromcyclohexandion*],

$\text{CO} < \begin{array}{c} \text{CHBr} \cdot \text{CHBr} \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CHBr} \cdot \text{CHBr} \end{array} > \text{CO}$  (p. 168). **Hexachlorotriketo-R-hexylene**, [*Hexachlor-1,3,5-cyclohexantrion*],  $\text{CCl}_2 < \begin{array}{c} \text{CO} - \text{CCl}_2 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CO} - \text{CCl}_2 \end{array} > \text{CO}$ , melting at 48° and boiling at 268° (760 mm.), 150° (19 mm.), results from the action of chlorine upon phloroglucin in chloroform solution (B. 22, 1473). Decomposition—see p. 44.

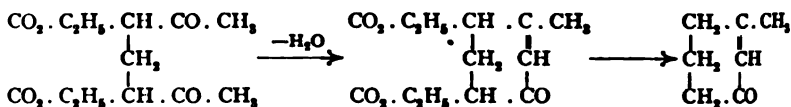
**Pentabromdiketo-oxy-R-hexene Hydrate**,  $\text{CBr}_2 < \begin{array}{c} \text{CO} - \text{CBr}_2 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CO} - \text{CBr} \end{array} > \text{C} \cdot \text{OH} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melts at 110° with decomposition. It is produced when bromine in water acts upon phloroglucin. It forms amber-yellow-colored crystals. It is a strong acid.

**Hexabromtriketo-R-hexylene**,  $\text{C}_6\text{Br}_6\text{O}_6$ , melts at 147° (B. 23, 1729).

**Tri- and Tetrachlortetraketohexamethylene**,  $\text{CCl}_2 < \begin{array}{c} \text{CO} - \text{CO} \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CO} - \text{CO} \end{array} > \text{CCl}_2$ , melt at 150° with decomposition, and at 60°. They are obtained from chloranilic acid and

chlorine. The corresponding bromine derivatives are made from bromanilic acid (B. 25, 845).

b. Ring-ketones from the Tetrahydrobenzenes can be synthesized by condensing acetoacetic ester, acetone dicarboxylic ester, and analogous compounds with aldehyde iodides, like methylene iodide, or with aldehydes in the presence of small quantities of bases, such as diethylamine or piperidine, to 1,5-diketone-carboxylic esters—*e. g.*, methylene-, ethidene-, isobutylidenediacetoacetic ester and methylenebisacetonedicarboxylic ester. When the latter are treated with hydrochloric acid in ether, they first form a ring and become carboxylic esters of  $\Delta_2$ -keto-R-hexenes, and then, when acted upon with alkalis or dilute acids, are saponified, split off  $\text{CO}_2$ , and change to the ketones themselves (A. 289, 131):



3-Methyl- $\Delta_2$ -keto-R-hexene, boiling at  $200^\circ$ , is a mobile liquid with an agreeable odor. Its bromine addition product decomposes spontaneously into HBr and m-cresol. Its oxime melts at  $63^\circ$  and boils at  $130^\circ$  (18 mm.) (A. 288, 355).

3,5-Dimethyl- $\Delta_2$ -keto-R-hexene boils at  $211^\circ$ . Its dibromide changes quite readily into sym. xylene (p. 144) (A. 281, 121).

3,5,5-Trimethyl- $\Delta_2$ -keto-R-hexene, Isoacetophorone, *Isophorone*,

$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} \\ \text{CH} \end{array} \text{CH}_3$ , boiling at  $89^\circ$  (10 mm.), is produced in the condensation of mesityl oxide with acetoacetic ester, saponification, and elimination of carbon dioxide from the carboxylic ester formed at first. It also results from the condensation of acetone by means of lime or sodium ethylate. It is isomeric with phorone (I, 221), camphorophorone (see this), and isocamphorone (see this). Upon reduction with sodium and alcohol it forms *dihydroisophorol*,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{17}(\text{OH})$ , which by loss of water becomes *trimethylcyclohexene*, and by the reduction of its iodide yields *trimethylcyclohexane*. When oxidized with potassium permanganate the ring is ruptured and various acids result:  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_6$ ,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_8$ , and finally  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_4$ , unsym. dimethylsuccinic acid (private communication from J. Brecht and Rübél, and E. Knövenagel; compare A. 290, 123).

3-Methyl-5-isopropyl- $\Delta_2$ -keto-R-hexene,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{17} \cdot \text{CH} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) \end{array} \text{CH}$ , boils at  $244^\circ$ . Its dibromide passes readily into sym. carvacrol (p. 145) (B. 26, 1089; 27, 2347; A. 288, 357).

3-Methyl-5-isobutyl- and 3-methyl-5-hexyl- $\Delta_2$ -keto-R-hexene boil at  $147^\circ$  and at  $167^\circ$  (22 mm.) (B. 288, 336, 344).

Those chemists who consider the quinones to be ketones regard *rhodizonic acid* (p. 171) as a tetraketotetrahydrobenzene derivative.

*Halogen substitution products of ring-ketones of tetrahydrobenzenes* result when chlorine acts upon phenols, anilines, oxybenzoic acids, etc. They can be very readily torn asunder (pp. 44-47).

Heptachlorketotetrahydrobenzenes,  $\text{CCl}_2 \begin{array}{c} \text{CCl} = \text{CCl} \\ \text{CHCl} \cdot \text{CCl}_2 \end{array} \text{CO}$  and

$\text{CCl} \begin{array}{c} \text{CCl} - \text{CCl}_2 \\ \text{CHCl} - \text{CCl}_2 \end{array} \text{CO}$ , the  $\alpha$ -body melting at  $98^\circ$  and the  $\beta$ -modification at  $80^\circ$ , result from the action of chlorine upon m-chloraniline (B. 27, 547).

Octochlorketotetrahydrobenzene,  $\text{CCl}_2 \begin{array}{c} \text{CCl} = \text{CCl} \\ \text{CCl}_2 - \text{CCl}_2 \end{array} \text{CO}$ , or

$\text{CCl} \begin{array}{c} \text{CCl} - \text{CCl}_2 \\ \text{CCl}_2 - \text{CCl}_2 \end{array} \text{CO}$ , melting at  $103^\circ$ , result from the action of chlorine upon pentachlorophenol in glacial acetic acid, and from perchlor-m-oxybenzoic acid. Reducing agents change it into pentachlorophenol (B. 27, 550).

**Hexachlor-o-diketo-R-hexene**,  $\text{CCl}_2 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CCl}_2 - \text{CO} \\ \text{CCl} = \text{CCl} \end{smallmatrix} \text{CO} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melts at  $93^\circ$  with decomposition. It is formed when chlorine acts upon pyrocatechol and o-amidophenol chlorhydrate dissolved in acetic acid. Stannous chloride reduces it to cyclobenzoquinone (p. 167). See p. 44 for its decomposition and conversion into a cyclopentene derivative. Homologous o-diketochlorides have been obtained from o-diamidomethyl benzenes (B. 27, 560).

**Pentachlor-m-diketo-R-hexene**,  $\text{CCl} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CO} - \text{CCl}_2 \\ \text{CH} = \text{CCl}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \text{CO}$ , melting at  $92^\circ$  and boiling at  $160^\circ$  (25 mm.), results when chlorine acts upon resorcinol in chloroform (B. 23, 3777). See p. 45 for its decomposition.

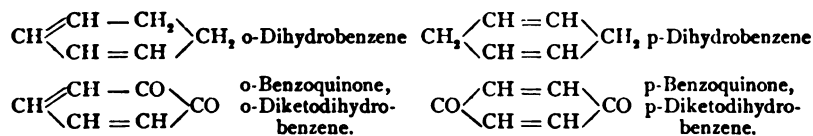
**Hexachlor-m-diketo-R-hexene**,  $\text{CCl}_2 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CO} - \text{CCl}_2 \\ \text{CH} = \text{CCl} \end{smallmatrix} \text{CO}$ , melting at  $115^\circ$  and boiling at  $159^\circ$  (14 mm.), is produced when chlorine acts upon 3,5-dioxybenzoic acid dissolved in glacial acetic acid (B. 25, 2688).

**Hexachlor-p-diketo-R-hexene**,  $\text{CO} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CCl}_2 - \text{CCl}_2 \\ \text{CCl} = \text{CCl} \end{smallmatrix} \text{CO}$ , melting at  $89^\circ$  and boiling at  $184^\circ$  (45 mm.), is formed when chlorine acts upon p-amidophenol hydrochloride in glacial acetic acid (A. 267, 16). See p. 45 for its decomposition.

**c. Ring-ketones of the Dihydrobenzenes.**—There are two possible dihydrobenzenes, and from each one mono-ketone can be obtained. Both bodies are not yet known, but in *tetrachlorketodihydrobenzene*,  $\text{CCl} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH} - \text{CCl}_2 \\ \text{CH} = \text{CCl} \end{smallmatrix} \text{CO}$ , or  $\text{CCl}_2 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH} = \text{CCl} \\ \text{CH} = \text{CCl} \end{smallmatrix} \text{CO}$ , melting at  $122^\circ$ , and in *hexachlorketodihydrobenzene*,  $\text{CCl} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CCl} = \text{CCl} \\ \text{CCl} - \text{CCl}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \text{CO}$ , melting at  $106^\circ$ , we have chlorine derivatives of one or of both ketodihydrobenzenes. The first body is formed from trichlorophenol and chlorine, and the second, most conveniently, by heating (B. 27, 546) the heptachlorketotetrahydrobenzene, melting at  $98^\circ$ , and by treating phenol, anisol, and pentachloraniline with chlorine (B. 28, R. 63).

Carvone, described after the terpenes, is very probably a ketodihydro-p-cymene.

Each of the possible dihydrobenzenes also yields a diketone:



If the diketone formula is preferred for the benzoquinones, previously discussed with the phenols (pp. 166–175), then p-benzoquinone is p-diketodihydrobenzene, and its numerous derivatives are also deducible from the latter compound. o-Benzoquinone would be o-diketodihydrobenzene. It is only known in its tetrahaloid substitution products, which were discussed under the benzoquinones before the para-quinones.

## 5. HYDROAROMATIC CARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

Attached to the hydroaromatic hydrocarbons, ring-alcohols, ring-amines, and ring-ketones are numerous hydroaromatic carboxylic acids, their corresponding hydroaromatic alcohols, aldehydes, and ketones, which, however, have only been prepared in very special cases. In addition to the simple carboxylic acids, oxy- and keto-carboxylic acids are also known. *Shikimic* and *quinic acids* belong to the first class (p. 301), while in the second class we find succino-succinic ester (p. 305) and

other important ketone-carboxylic esters, which are of great value in the synthesis of the simple hydroaromatic derivatives (p. 302).

## 1. HYDROAROMATIC MONOCARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

A (1). Hexahydrobenzoic Acids, Hexamethylene Carboxylic Acids, *Naphthenic Acids*, have been obtained by the reduction of boiling amyl or capryl alcohol solutions of benzoic acid and its homologues with metallic sodium, or by reducing the solution of sodium benzoate with sodium in an atmosphere of  $\text{CO}_2$  (B. 24, 1865; 25, 3355). So far as present experience warrants they are isomeric and not identical (B. 27, R. 195, 197) with the "natural naphthenic acids" occurring in the oil which issues from the earth in and about Baku. Just as fatty acids have been prepared from malonic acid, so hexamethylene monocarboxylic acids have been obtained by heating hexamethylene-1,1-dicarboxylic acids (p. 302). The latter bodies have been prepared synthetically.

The hexamethylenecarboxylic acids are weak acids. They are reduced, when heated with hydriodic acid, to hexahydroaromatic hydrocarbons—*naphthenes*, containing a like number of C-atoms in the molecule. Hence they are also designated as *naphthenic acids*.

Hexahydrobenzoic Acid, *Naphthenic Acid*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $28^\circ$  and boiling at  $232^\circ$ , results from the reduction of benzoic acid (see this),  $\Delta_4$ -tetrahydrobenzoic acid (A. 271, 261), p-dimethylamidobenzoic acid (B. 27, 2829), and cyclohexanol-1-carboxylic acid (B. 27, 1231); also by heating hexamethylene-1,1-dicarboxylic acid. The calcium salt,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{O}_2)_2\text{Ca} + 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . The methyl ester boils at  $182^\circ$ . The ethyl ester boils at  $194^\circ$ , and the amide melts at  $185^\circ$ .

*Hexahydro-o-toluic Acid* melts at  $51^\circ$  and boils at  $241^\circ$ .

*Hexahydro-m-toluic Acid* is a liquid, boiling at  $245^\circ$ .

$\alpha$ -Hexahydro-p-toluic Acid melts at  $110^\circ$  and boils at  $246^\circ$ .

$\beta$ -Hexahydro-p-toluic Acid is a liquid.

These four acids have been obtained by the reduction of the three toluic acids (J. pr. Ch. [2], 49, 65; B. 27, R. 195). The last acid was also obtained by reducing  $\Delta_7$ -dibromotetrahydrotoluic acid, the addition product of  $2\text{HBr}$  to p-methylenedihydrobenzoic acid (see this) (A. 280, 156), and hexahydro-o-toluic acid also from 2-methylhexamethylene-1,1-dicarboxylic acid (p. 302), and from 2-methyl-1-acetylhexamethylene-carboxylic ester (p. 302).

$\alpha$ -Monobromhexahydrobenzoic Acid, melting at  $63^\circ$ , and  $\alpha$ -Monobromhexahydro-p-toluic Acid, melting at  $71^\circ$ , are produced by acting with bromine upon the chlorides of the corresponding hexahydro-acids.

Hexahydroanthranilic Acid, o-Amidohexahydrobenzoic Acid,  $\text{NH}_2[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_9\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts with decomposition at  $274^\circ$ . It is formed along with pimelic and hexahydrobenzoic acids in the reduction of anthranilic acid (B. 27, 2470; A. 295, 187). Hexahydro-p-dimethylamidobenzoic Acid (B. 27, 2831).

Derivatives of o-amidohexahydrophenylacetic acid and propionic acid result in oxidizing dekahydroquinoline compounds with potassium permanganate.

Octahydrocarbostyryl,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{10}\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CH}_2 \\ \text{NH}\cdot\text{CO} \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $151^\circ$ , is poisonous (B. 27, 1472).

A (2). Tetrahydrobenzoic Acids can be obtained from the  $\alpha$ -monobromhexahydroacids (see above) by splitting off  $\text{HBr}$  with alkalis, or by means of quinoline (A. 271, 207; 280, 163), and also by the reduction of the benzoic acids and dihydrobenzoic acids (B. 26, 457).

$\Delta_1$ -Tetrahydrobenzoic Acid,  $\text{CH}_2\left\langle \begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CH}_2 \end{array} \right\rangle \text{C}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , is formed from  $\alpha$ -bromhexahydrobenzoic acid and from  $\Delta_4$ ,6-dihydrobenzoic acid.

$\Delta_4$ -Tetrahydrobenzoic Acid, *Benzoleic Acid*,  $\text{CH}_2\left\langle \begin{array}{l} \text{CH}=\text{CH} \\ \text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2 \end{array} \right\rangle \text{CH}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , is a liquid boiling at  $234^\circ$  (A. 271, 234; B. 27, 2471). It is formed from benzoic acid.

**$\Delta_1$ -Tetrahydro-p-toluic Acid** melts at 132°.

**Isogermanic Acid**,  $\text{CH} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{CH} - \text{CH}(\text{CH}_3) \\ \diagdown \text{CH}_2 - \text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \end{array} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$  (?), melting at 103° and boiling at 138° (11 mm.), results when geranic acid (I, 289; II, 310) is acted upon with concentrated sulphuric acid (B. 27, R. 768).

**A (3). Dihydrobenzoic Acids.**— **$\Delta_4,6$ -Dihydrobenzoic Acid**,

$\text{CH} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{CH} \\ \diagdown \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at 94°, is produced in the oxidation of *dihydrobenzaldehyde*, boiling at 121–122°, with silver oxide. The latter body is formed by decomposing anhydroecgonine-dibromide with sodium carbonate (B. 26, 454). A different dihydrobenzoic acid, melting at 73°, is obtained from  $\Delta_2$ -tetrahydrobenzoic acid dibromide (B. 24, 2622). **Dihydrocummic Acid**, *p*-*Isopropylidihydrobenzoic Acid*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{COOH}$ , melting at 130–133°, is formed when nopic acid, an oxidation product of turpentine oil (see this), is boiled with sulphuric acid (B. 29, 1926).

**B. Hexahydro-oxybenzoic Acids.**— **$\alpha$ -Oxyhexamethylene Carboxylic Acid**,  **$\alpha$ -Oxyhexahydrobenzoic Acid**, **Cyclohexanol-1-carboxylic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagdown \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{C} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \diagdown \text{OH} \end{array}$ , melting at 106°, is formed when cyclohexanon (p. 296) in ether is treated with prussic and hydrochloric acids; see also hexahydrobenzoic acid.

**Hexahydrosalicylic Acid**, ( $\beta$ -) **Hexahydro-o-oxybenzoic Acid**,

$\text{CH}_2 \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \\ \diagdown \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at 111°, results when nitrous acid acts upon hexahydroanthranilic acid and by reducing  $\beta$ -ketohexamethylene-carboxylic ester (B. 27, 2472, 2476).

**Hexahydro-m-oxybenzoic Acid**, melting at 132°, is obtained by the reduction of *m*-oxybenzoic acid with sodium in ethyl alcohol (B. 29, R. 549).

**Hexahydro-dioxybenzoic Acid** is obtained from  $\Delta_1$ -bromhexahydrobenzoic acid (A. 271, 280).

**Dihydroshikimic Acid**, **Hexahydrotrioxybenzoic Acid**,  $(\text{HO})_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_8 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at 175°, results when shikimic acid is reduced with sodium amalgam. Corresponding to it is **Dibromshikimic Acid**,  $(\text{HO})_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_8\text{Br}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , which upon evaporation with water changes to a *brom-lactone*,  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_9\text{BrO}_5$ , melting at 235°.

**Quinic Acid**, **Hexahydro-tetraoxybenzoic Acid**,  $(\text{HO})_4 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_7 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at 162°, optically active, is present in the cinchona barks, in coffee beans, in bilberry, and in many other plants. It is obtained as a secondary product in the preparation of quinine by extracting the quinia bark. When its calcium salt has been purified by recrystallization the acid is liberated by oxalic acid. Upon distillation the acid breaks down into phenol, hydroquinone, benzoic acid, and salicylaldehyde. When boiled with water and lead peroxide it changes to hydroquinone, while manganese peroxide and sulphuric acid convert it into quinone (p. 167). **Protocatechuic acid** is formed when it is melted with caustic potash or soda (p. 227). Ferments decompose calcium quinate into protocatechuic acid. If the fermentation takes place with air exclusion the products are formic acid, acetic acid, and propionic acid. Quinic acid is reduced by hydriodic acid to benzoic acid. The calcium salt has the formula  $(\text{C}_7\text{H}_{11}\text{O}_5)_2\text{Ca} + 10\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . The *tetracetyl-ethyl ester*,  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{21}(\text{O} \cdot \text{COCH}_3)_4 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , melts at 135° (B. 22, 1462).

**Inactive Quinic Acid** is produced when its lactone, quinine, is boiled with milk of lime. **Calcium salt**,  $(\text{C}_7\text{H}_9\text{O}_5)_2\text{Ca} + 4\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

**Quinide**,  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_5$ , melting at 198°, optically inactive, results upon heating ordinary optically active quinic acid to 220–240° (B. 24, 1296).

**Dioxydihydroshikimic Acid**, **Hexahydro-pentaoxybenzoic Acid**,  $(\text{HO})_5\text{C}_6\text{H}_6 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts at 156° with the elimination of water. It is optically inactive and is obtained from the brom-lactone, melting at 235°, which is formed in the action of baryta-water (B. 24, 1294) upon dibromshikimic acid (see above).

**Shikimic Acid**, **Trioxytetrahydrobenzoic Acid**,  $(\text{HO})_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_6 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at 184°, occurs in the fruit of *Illicium religiosum* (see shikimol, p. 270). Its transposition products, dihydro- and dioxydihydroshikimic acids, have been previously described.

**C. Ketohydromonocarboxylic Acids.**—( $\alpha$ -)  **$\beta$ -Ketohexamethylene Carboxylic**

Ester,  $\text{CH}_2 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} > \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{R}$ , is formed when pimelic acid ester is heated with sodium and alcohol (B. 27, 103).

(m-)  $\gamma$ -Keto-hexamethylene Carboxylic Acid,  $\text{CH}_2 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} > \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , is produced when tetrahydro-oxyterephthalic acid is heated to  $115^\circ$ , or boiled with water, or when m-oxyhexahydrobenzoic acid, in the form of its ester, is oxidized with sodium bichromate (B. 29, R. 550).

2-Methyl-1-acetylhexamethylene Carboxylic Ester,  $\text{CH}_2 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}(\text{CH}_3) \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} > \text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \end{smallmatrix}$ , is obtained from methylpentamethylene dibromide and sodium acetoacetic ester. On boiling with alcoholic potash it breaks down into 2-methylhexamethylene carboxylic acid, or hexahydro-o-toluic acid (p. 300) and methylhexamethylenemethyl ketone, 2-Methylhexahydroacetophenone, boiling at  $197-200^\circ$  (B. 21, 737).

3-Methyl- $\Delta_2$ -keto-R-hexene-6-carboxylic Ester,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH} - \text{CO} \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} > \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$  [ $\text{CH}_2 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH} \cdot \text{C}(\text{OH}) \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} > \text{CCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ ], boiling at  $151^\circ$  (22 mm.), is produced from the interaction of methylene iodide and acetoacetic ester in a form soluble in alkali and a form insoluble in alkali (keto- and hydroxyl?). The neutral ester is changed by treatment with sodium ethylate in ether into the sodium salt of the ester soluble in alkali. Both esters, when treated with sodium alcoholate and isopropyl iodide, yield—

3,6-Methylisopropyl- $\Delta_2$ -keto-R-hexene-6-carboxylic ester, boiling at  $158^\circ$  (18 mm.). The corresponding keto-R-hexene (p. 298) (B. 30, 639) is obtained from this ester by saponification and the splitting-off of carbon dioxide.

## 2. HYDROAROMATIC DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

**A. Hexahydrodicarboxylic Acids.**—These acids, depending upon the position of the carboxyl groups with reference to one another, show the deportment of dialkyl malonic acids, sym. dialkylsuccinic acids, sym.  $\alpha$ -dialkylglutaric acids, and sym.  $\alpha$ -dialkylaliphatic acids.

Hexamethylene-1,1-dicarboxylic ester and 2-Methylhexamethylene-1,1-dicarboxylic ester have been made by the action of sodium malonic ester upon pentamethylene bromide and methyl-pentamethylene bromide. The free acids, when heated, split off  $\text{CO}_2$  and become hexahydrobenzoic acid and hexahydro-o-toluic acid. 2-Methylhexamethylene-1,1-dicarboxylic Acid,  $\text{CH}_2 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CH}_3) \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} > \text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$ , melts at  $147^\circ$ . Hexamethylene dicarboxylic acid and its esters appear not to have been isolated as yet (B. 21, 735; 26, 2246).

**Hexahydrophthalic Acids.**—A. Baeyer's theory (B. 23, R. 577), based upon the spacial representations of van t'Hoff as to the union of the C-atoms, predicts the possibility of geometrically isomeric hexahydrophthalic acids. The latter isomerism is due to the different positions occupied by the carboxyls relatively to the plane of the hexamethylene ring; hence the isomerides are termed *cis* and *trans* forms.

**cis-Hexahydro-o-phthalic Acid**, 1,2-Hexamethylenedicarboxylic Acid,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{10}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$ , melts at  $192^\circ$  and its *anhydride* melts at  $32^\circ$  and boils at  $145^\circ$  (18 mm.); the *trans*-Hexahydro-o-phthalic Acid melts at  $215^\circ$  and its *anhydride* at  $140^\circ$ . They are produced together when  $\Delta_1$ -tetrahydro-o-phthalic acid is reduced. The *cis*-acid is more soluble in water than the *trans*-acid. The *anhydride* of the latter is converted by continuous heating at  $210-220^\circ$  into the *anhydride* of the *cis*-acid (A. 258, 214).

**Hexahydro-isophthalic Acids** are produced in the reduction of isophthalic acid and when 1,1,3,3-hexamethylenetetra-carboxylic acid is heated to  $200-220^\circ$ . The calcium salt of the *cis*-acid is more sparingly soluble. The *cis*-acid, melting at  $162^\circ$ , when heated to  $180^\circ$  with hydrochloric acid, changes in part to the *trans*-acid, melting at  $188^\circ$ . Both acids, with acetyl chloride, yield the *acid anhydride*, melting at  $119^\circ$  (B. 26, R. 721).

**Hexahydroterephthalic Acids** result on reducing the hydrobromides of the tetrahydroterephthalic acids in glacial acetic acid with zinc-dust, as well as upon heating hexamethylene-1,1,4,4-tetracarboxylic acid to 200–220°. In the latter case the trans-acid, melting at 200°, predominates. The cis-acid, melting at 161°, is also converted into it when heated with hydrochloric acid to 180°. As far as concerns solubility, these three pairs of hexahydrophthalic acids reduce fumaric and maleic acids. They are also convertible one into the other in like manner. They have also been distinguished, one from the other, as *malcinoic* and *fumaroid* modifications.

$\alpha$ -Brom-substitution products of these acids have also been prepared from the acid chlorides by treatment with bromine. Brom-substituted hexahydrocarboxylic acids have also been obtained by the addition of hydrogen bromide and bromine to the corresponding tetra- and dihydrodicarboxylic acids.

**B. Tetrahydrodicarboxylic Acids, Tetrahydro-o-phthalic Acids.**—Depending upon the point of double union there are, theoretically speaking, four structurally isomeric bodies. The two modifications in which neither of the two CO<sub>2</sub>H-groups are attached to a doubly combined C-atom permit of a stereoisomeric modification each.

$\Delta_1$ -Tetrahydro-o-phthalic Acid,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$ , melting at 120° and its anhydride at 74°, is formed when hypopyromellitic acid is distilled (p. 307). Potassium permanganate decomposes it into adipic acid (A. 166, 346; 258, 203).

$\Delta_2$ -Tetrahydro-o-phthalic Acid,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} = \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$ , melting at 215° and its anhydride at 78°, has been obtained by the decomposition of *sedanonic acid* (B. 30, 503). It is also formed on boiling the  $\Delta_1$ -acid with caustic potash, when the double union is shifted, and by the reduction of phthalic acid or  $\Delta_{1,6}$ -dihydrophthalic acid together with trans- $\Delta_4$ -Tetrahydro-o-phthalic Acid,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH} - \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ | \\ \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$ , melting at 216° and its anhydride at 140°. Acetyl chloride separates it from the  $\Delta_1$ -acid. This reagent converts it alone into its corresponding anhydride (A. 258, 211).

cis- $\Delta_4$ -Tetrahydro-o-phthalic Acid melts at 174°. It is produced when the  $\Delta_{1,6}$ -dihydro-acid is reduced, as well as from its anhydride, melting at 58°. The latter anhydride is formed when the anhydride of the trans- $\Delta_4$ -acid is heated (A. 269, 202).

*Tetrahydro-terephthalic Acids* are theoretically possible in two structurally isomeric forms, depending upon the position of the double union; one of these can occur in two stereoisomeric modifications.

$\Delta_2$ -Tetrahydro-terephthalic Acid,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H} \cdot \text{CH} < \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} = \text{CH} \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{array} > \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , is produced in two isomeric modifications by the reduction of  $\Delta_{1,6}$ - and  $\Delta_{1,8}$ -dihydroterephthalic acids. The trans-acid melts at about 300°. The cis-acid melts at 150°. The latter is much more readily soluble in water than the former. Potassium permanganate oxidizes them to succinic acid. Boiling sodium hydrate changes the two acids, like  $\beta\gamma$ -hydromuconic acid, into  $\alpha\beta$ -hydromuconic acid (I, 467).

$\Delta_1$ -Tetrahydro-terephthalic Acid,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H} \cdot \text{CH} < \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH} \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{array} > \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts beyond 300° and sublimes (A. 258, 7).

**C. Dihydrocarboxylic Acids.**—*Dihydro-o-phthalic Acids* are possible, according to the position of the double union, in six structurally isomeric forms, one of which can occur in two stereoisomeric modifications.

$\Delta_{1,6}$ -Dihydro-o-phthalic Acid,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ | \\ \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$ , melting at 153° (its anhydride at 134°), is produced on boiling  $\Delta_{1,6}$ -dihydrophthalic acid with acetic anhydride (A. 269, 204).

$\Delta_{1,8}$ -Dihydro-o-phthalic Acid,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ | \\ \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$ , melting at 179° (its anhydride at 103°), is produced when the acid is acted upon in the cold with acetic anhy-

dride. The acid is produced, further, on boiling  $\Delta_{2,3}$ -dihydro-o-phthalic acid dihydrobromide with methyl alcoholic potash.

$\Delta_{2,3}$ -Dihydro-o-phthalic Acid,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$ , melts at  $215^\circ$  and its *anhydride* at  $83^\circ$ . The acid results by reducing phthalic anhydride with sodium amalgam in alkaline solution, and by boiling the  $\Delta_{2,4}$ - and  $\Delta_{3,4}$ -acid with sodium hydrate (see also B. 27, 3185).

trans- $\Delta_{3,5}$ -Dihydrophthalic Acid,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$ , melting at  $210^\circ$ , is produced by reducing phthalic anhydride with sodium amalgam in acetic acid solution.

cis- $\Delta_{3,5}$ -Dihydrophthalic Acid melts at  $174^\circ$ . Its *anhydride*, melting at  $99^\circ$ , is formed when the trans- $\Delta_{3,5}$ -acid is acted upon with acetic anhydride.

*Dihydroterephthalic Acids*.—Depending upon the points of double union, there are four possible structural isomerides. One of these, the  $\Delta_{1,2}$ -acid, appears in two stereoisomeric forms. All the modifications are known.

$\Delta_{1,2}$ -Dihydroterephthalic Acid,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H} \cdot \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH} \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \cdot \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , is produced on digesting  $\alpha, \alpha$ -dibromhexahydroterephthalic acid and  $\Delta_2$  tetrahydroterephthalic acid dibromide with alcoholic potash (A. 258, 23). The *dimethyl ester* melts at  $85^\circ$ .

$\Delta_{1,4}$ -Dihydroterephthalic Acid,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H} \cdot \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} \end{array} \cdot \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , is formed by reducing terephthalic acid with sodium amalgam, by boiling the isomeric dihydroterephthalic acids with sodium hydrate (A. 251, 272), and by reducing p dichlor- $\Delta_{1,4}$ -dihydroterephthalic acid with sodium amalgam (B. 22, 2112).

The *dimethyl ester* melts at  $130^\circ$ .

p Dichlor- $\Delta_{1,4}$ -dihydroterephthalic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{Cl}_2\text{O}_4$ , melts at  $272-275^\circ$  with decomposition. It results upon treating succino-succinic ester with  $\text{PCl}_5$  (B. 22, 2106).

$\Delta_{1,5}$ -Dihydroterephthalic Acid results on boiling trans- $\Delta_{2,5}$ -dihydroterephthalic acid with sodium hydroxide; the *dimethyl ester* resinifies on exposure to the air (A. 258, 18).

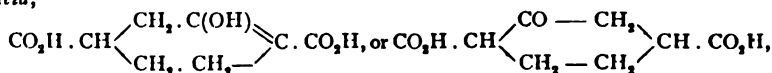
$\Delta_{2,5}$ -Dihydroterephthalic Acids,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H} \cdot \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} : \text{CH} \\ \text{CH} : \text{CH} \end{array} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , cis-acid and trans-acid, are formed in the reduction of terephthalic acid. See also  $\Delta_{1,5}$ -dihydroterephthalic acid. The *trans-diphenyl ester* melts at  $146^\circ$ . The *cis-dimethyl ester* melts at  $77^\circ$  (A. 258, 17).

D. and E. Oxy- and Ketohydrobenzene Dicarboxylic Acids.— $\alpha$ -Oxy-hexahydroisophthalic Acid,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CO}_2\text{H} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \cdot \text{C} \cdot \begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{OH} \end{array}$ , is obtained from m-keto-hexahydrobenzoic acid by the action of prussic acid and hydrochloric acid (B. 22, 2186).

m-Dioxyhexahydroisophthalic Acid,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melts with decomposition at  $217^\circ$ . Its *anhydride* melts at  $175^\circ$ . The acid is obtained from its nitrile, the product of the addition of prussic acid to dihydroresorcinol (p. 297) (A. 278, 49).

$\alpha, \alpha_1$ -Dioxyhexahydroterephthalic Acid,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_2\text{H} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{HO} \cdot \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$ , is formed when its cyanide, melting with decomposition at  $180^\circ$ , is boiled. This cyanide results by adding prussic acid to p-diketohexamethylene with hydrochloric acid (B. 22, 2176).

$\Delta_1$ -Tetrahydro-2-oxyterephthalic Acid, or 2-Ketohexamethylene-1,4-dicarboxylic Acid,



results from the reduction of oxyterephthalic acid (p. 243). When heated to  $60^\circ$  with water, it splits off carbon dioxide and becomes m-ketohexahydrobenzoic acid (p. 304),

the oxime of which is obtained from tetrahydro-oxyterephthalic acid by means of hydroxylamine hydrochloride (B. 22, 2178).

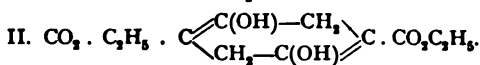
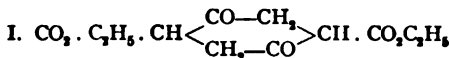
*Tetrahydro-dioxyterephthalic Acid*—p. 243.

*Ketotetrahydrobenzene polycarboxylic esters* and *m-diketohexahydrobenzene carboxylic esters* or *hydro-resorcylic esters* have been prepared synthetically in great numbers from 1,5-diketone- and  $\delta$ -ketone carboxylic esters respectively by the elimination of water or of alcohol. A series of keto-R-hexenes, dihydroresorcinols, tetrahydrobenzenes, dihydrobenzenes, etc., has been built up from these bodies as the starting-out substances (pp. 297, 298).

**Succino-succinic Acid**,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H} \cdot \text{CH} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , results upon saponifying its diethyl ester with a calculated amount of normal sodium hydroxide, and by treating 2,5-dioxyterephthalic ester with sodium amalgam. The dry acid breaks down into two molecules of carbon dioxide and p-diketohexamethylene when heated to  $200^\circ$  (B. 22, 2168).

**Succino-succinic Diethyl Ester**, melting at  $126^\circ$ , is produced by the condensation of two molecules of succinic ester through the agency of potassium, sodium, or sodium ethylate upon succinic ester (A. 211, 306) or bromacetoacetic ester (A. 245, 74), as well as by the interaction of silver cyanide and iod-acetoacetic ester (A. 253, 182), and by the reduction of 2,5-dioxyterephthalic ester with zinc and hydrochloric acid (B. 19, 432).

Succino-succinic ester behaves like phloroglucin. It also manifests many reactions of a ketone, corresponding to formula I of 2,5-diketohexamethylene carboxylic ester; whereas it also conducts itself like a phenol, corresponding then to formula II of 2,5-dioxydihydroterephthalic ester (B. 24, 2692):



The ester crystallizes in bright green triclinic prisms or colorless needles. It is insoluble in water, dissolves with difficulty in ether, very readily in alcohol; its solution shows a bright blue fluorescence. Ferric chloride imparts a cherry-red color to it. It dissolves in alkalis with a yellow color, yielding metallic derivatives by the replacement of two hydrogen atoms. It does not unite with phenylisocyanate.

With hydroxylamine (in alkaline or acid solution) succino-succinic ester splits off  $\text{CO}_2$  and yields *quinone-dioxime carboxylic ester*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{N} \cdot \text{OH})_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{R}$ , melting at  $174^\circ$  (B. 22, 1283).

With phenylhydrazine it forms a phenylhydrazine derivative of dihydroterephthalic acid (B. 24, 2687; 26, R. 590), while with hydrazine it yields hexahydrobenzo-3,4-dipyrazolon (see this) (B. 27, 472). Also consult dichlordihydroterephthalic acid.

If succino-succinic ester be saponified by dilute alkalis, with exclusion of air, it yields free

**Succino-succinic Dimethyl Ester**, melting at  $152^\circ$ .

The following compounds are produced as the result of the interaction of sodium succino-succinic diethyl ester and alkyl iodides (B. 26, 232):

**Diethyl Succino-succinic Ester**: cis-body is liquid; trans-body melts at  $65^\circ$ .

**Di-n-propyl Succino-succinic Ester**: cis-body is liquid; trans-body melts at  $86^\circ$ .

**Di-isopropyl Succino-succinic Ester**: cis-body is liquid; trans-body melts at  $116^\circ$ .

**Methyl-n- and Methylisopropyl Succino-succinic Ester** boil at  $195\text{--}200^\circ$  (25 mm.); see dihydro-p-cymene, p. 294.

**p-Dichloroquinone Dicarboxylic Ester**,  $\text{C}_6\text{Cl}_2\text{O}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ , melting at  $195^\circ$ , consists of yellowish-green crystals (B. 21, 1761). When reduced with zinc-dust and glacial acetic acid it becomes p-Dichlorohydroquinone-dicarboxylic Ester,  $\text{C}_6\text{Cl}_2\text{H}_2\text{O}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ , crystallizing in two different forms—colorless needles and yellow-green

plates (B. 20, 2796; 21, 1759; 23, 260). Compare the two forms of 2,5-dioxyterephthalic ester, p. 243.

**p-Dloxy-quinone-dicarboxylic Ester**,  $C_6O_3(OH)_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ , melting at  $151^\circ$ , may be prepared by shaking dichlorhydroquinone-dicarboxylic ester with sodium hydroxide, and by the action of nitrous acid upon dioxy-terephthalic ester (B. 19, 2385). It crystallizes in pale yellow leaflets and intense greenish-yellow prisms (B. 20, 1307). Note above, p-dichlorhydroquinone-dicarboxylic ester, and see p. 243. It reacts acid, and forms salts with two equivalents of the metals. It does not form a dioxime with hydroxylamine, but an oxyammonium salt, and with phenylhydrazine a phenylhydrazine salt (B. 22, 1290). Furthermore, it does not react with phenylcyanate (B. 23, 265). Boiling hydrochloric acid decomposes the ester into carbon dioxide and dioxy-quinone (p. 170). By the absorption of two atoms of hydrogen (by reduction with sulphurous acid) the ester becomes—

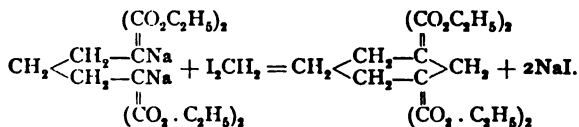
**Tetroxy-terephthalic Ester**,  $C_6(OH)_4(CO_2R)_2$ , or **Dioxy-quinone-dihydrocarboxylic Ester**,  $C_6H_2(O_2)(OH)_2(CO_2R)_2$ . It crystallizes in golden yellow leaflets and melts at  $178^\circ$  (B. 20, 2798). Its alkaline solution oxidizes on exposure to the air (giving up two hydrogen atoms) to dioxy-quinone-dicarboxylic ester; hence it yields the same products with hydroxylamine and phenylhydrazine (B. 22, 1291). It forms a tetracarbanilido-derivative (B. 23, 267) with four molecules of phenylcyanate.

**1,3,5-Triketohexamethylene Dicarboxylic Ester**,  $C_6H_3O_3(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ , melting at  $101^\circ$ , results from the condensation of acetone dicarboxylic ester and malonic ester with sodium ethylate (B. 29, R. 1117).

**3. Hydrobenzene Tricarboxylic Acids.**—This group probably includes dioxy-phenylacetic dicarboxylic triethyl ester,  $CH_2 \begin{matrix} \text{CO-CH(CO}_2C_2H_5) \\ \text{CO-C(CO}_2C_2H_5) \end{matrix} \cdot C \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5$ , or  $CO_2C_2H_5CH \begin{matrix} \text{CO-CH}_2 \\ \text{CO-C(CO}_2C_2H_5) \end{matrix} \cdot C \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5$  (pp. 44, 229), and a similarly prepared body—

**Phloroglucin Tricarboxylic Ester**,  $CO_2 \cdot C_2H_5 \cdot CH \begin{matrix} \text{CO-CH(CO}_2C_2H_5) \\ \text{CO-CH(CO}_2C_2H_5) \end{matrix} > CO$ , melting at  $104^\circ$ . It may be formed by the condensation of malonic ester upon heating its sodium compound to  $120-145^\circ$ , or by the action of zinc ethyl. It deports itself quite like succino-succinic ester, dissolves unchanged in alkalies, and is colored a cherry-red by ferric chloride. Acetic anhydride converts it into a *triacetyl derivative*, and with hydroxylamine it yields a *trioxime* (B. 21, 1766); with phenyl cyanate it forms a tricarbanilido derivative (B. 23, 270). Fused with alkalies it forms phloroglucin.

**4. Hydrobenzene-tetracarboxylic Acids.**—Acids having two carboxyl groups attached to the same carbon atom have been obtained synthetically in the action of trimethylene bromide upon the disodium compound of methylene dimalonic ester, as well as from the interaction of methylene iodide and disodiumtrimethylene dimalonic ester: hexamethylene-1,1,3,3-tetracarboxylic ester, and from n-butanetetracarboxylic ester with ethylene bromide: hexamethylene-1,1,4,4-tetracarboxylic ester (Perkin, Jr.; see p. 20):



**1,1,3,3-Hexamethylenetetracarboxylic Acid** decomposes at  $220^\circ$  with the elimination of  $2CO_2$  into hexahydroisophthalic acid (B. 25, R. 159, 274).

**1,1,4,4-Hexamethylenetetracarboxylic Acid**, melting at  $152-153^\circ$ , yields, at more elevated temperatures, both hexahydroterephthalic acids; the *trans*-acid predominates (p. 302).

**Tetra-hydro- and iso-tetra-hydro-pyro-mellitic Acids**,  $C_6H_2(H_4)(CO_2H)_4$ , are obtained by the continued action of sodium amalgam upon the aqueous solution of ammonium pyromellitate. The first results as a gummy mass upon evaporating the ethereal

solution; it is very soluble in water. The second crystallizes with  $2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , loses the same about  $120^\circ$ , melts near  $200^\circ$ , and decomposes into water, carbon dioxide, and  $\Delta_1$ -tetrahydro-o-phthalic anhydride (p. 303) (A. 258, 205). When heated with sulphuric acid both evolve  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{SO}_2$  and form trimellitic and isophthalic acids.

**Quinone-tetrahydro-tetracarboxylic Ester**, or **p-Diketohexamethylene-tetracarboxylic Ester**,  $\text{CO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} = \text{CO} - \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $142-144^\circ$ , when it is anhydrous. It is formed in the reduction of hydroquinone-tetracarboxylic ester (p. 246), the reduction product arising from quinone-tetracarboxylic ester (p. 246), zinc-dust, and hydrochloric acid in alcoholic solution. It crystallizes from alcohol in *colorless* needles or prisms. Its deportment is perfectly analogous to that of succino-succinic ester. Ferric chloride imparts a cherry-red color to its alcoholic solution. Bromine changes it again to hydroquinone-tetracarboxylic ester (B. 22, R. 289).

**Tetrahydroprehnitic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_4$ , is formed when sodium amalgam acts upon an ammoniacal solution of prehnitic acid (p. 246). It is an amorphous mass, very readily soluble in water. It yields prehnitic and isophthalic acids when it is heated with sulphuric acid.

5. **Hexahydrobenzene-hexacarboxylic Acids**.—**Hexahydromellitic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6(\text{COOH})_6$ , is produced when sodium amalgam acts upon ammonium mellitate. It is very soluble in water and crystallizes with difficulty. It melts with decomposition when it is heated. Its calcium salt is more easily soluble in cold than in hot water. When heated to  $180^\circ$  with concentrated hydrochloric acid, and also when it is preserved, it passes into isomeric—

**Isobexahydromellitic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_6$ , which crystallizes in large hexagonal prisms. It is precipitated from its salt solutions by hydrochloric acid.

**Ring-formation of Hydroaromatic Compounds from Aliphatic Compounds**.—The following hydroaromatic bodies have been synthetically prepared from aliphatic compounds:

1. Hexahydrobenzene (p. 292).
2. m-Dihydroisoxylene (p. 294).
3. Pimelin-ketone, Ketohexamethylene, and homologues (p. 296).
4. Trimethylketo-R-hexene or Isoacetophorone (p. 298).
5. Dihydroresorcinol and homologues (p. 296).
6.  $\beta$ -Ketohexamethylenecarboxylic Ester (p. 301).
7. 2-Methyl-1-acetylhexamethylenecarboxylic Ester (p. 301).
8. 3-Methyl- $\Delta_1$ -keto-R-hexene-6-carboxylic Ester and homologues (pp. 298, 302, 305).
9. Hexamethylene-1,1-dicarboxylic Ester and homologues (p. 302).
10. m-Diketohexahydrobenzene-carboxylic Ester (p. 305).
11. Succino-succinic Ester (p. 305).
12. Dioxyphenylaceto-dicarboxylic Ester (p. 306).
13. Phloroglucin Tricarboxylic Ester (p. 306).
14. Hexamethylene-1,1,3,3-tetracarboxylic Ester (p. 306).
15. Hexamethylene-1,1,4,4-tetracarboxylic Ester (p. 306).

## TERPENES.\*

The *volatile* or *etheral oils*, obtained mostly by the distillation of various plants (chiefly Coniferæ and Citrus species) with steam, more rarely by pressing them out, contain, along with different compounds, certain hydrocarbons having the formula  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}$ , which are called *Terpenes*. *Isoprene*,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_8$ , obtained by the distillation of caoutchouc, has the same percentage composition; it is a *hemiterpene*. There are also hydrocarbons

\* Fr. Hensler, "Die Terpene." 1896. Verlag von F. Vieweg u. Sohn, Braunschweig.

known having the formula  $C_{15}H_{24}$ ; these are the *sesquiterpenes*, and there are also higher polymerides,  $(C_5H_8)_x$ , the *polyterpenes*.

The "*true terpenes*,"  $C_{10}H_{16}$ , the important and often the chief components of many ethereal oils of great value in perfumery, demand particular attention. They contain one, and some of them probably two carbon rings. They are more or less closely related to cymene or p-isopropyl methyl benzene (p. 56). In recent years terpenes have also come to light which do not have a closed carbon chain; they are distinguished from the true terpenes as *olefine terpenes*.

Their classification and the possibility of distinguishing the individual *true terpenes* are mainly due to the painstaking researches of O. Wallach, who has brought order and system out of this chaotic mass of hydrocarbons of the most varying origin.

The question as to the constitution of the true terpenes has not yet been entirely settled as to any representative of this group of bodies. They can, however, be arranged into two sub-groups.

Camphene, obtained from bornyl chloride, is a terpene. It probably continues to hold the carbon skeleton of camphor (p. 327). *Fenchone* and *pinene* are related to it. These are three cyclic terpenes. They are only capable of adding two univalent atoms or atomic groups. The cyclic terpenes of the *limonene* and *pinene* group are distinguished from the preceding bodies chiefly by their power of adding four univalent atoms. In this class we find hydrocarbons similar to the synthetically prepared p-dihydrocymene (p. 294). These cyclic hydrocarbons of the formula  $C_{10}H_{16}$  may be called *hydroaromatic terpenes* in contradistinction to the *camphenes*,  $C_{10}H_{16}$ . Individual members of both groups are genetically allied to one another by certain transition-reactions. All of the true terpenes are unsaturated hydrocarbons; by the addition of hydrogen they become *hydroterpenes*.

The hydroterpenes give rise to a great number of alcohols and ketones, comprised under the general name *camphor*. In this class are included *menthone*, *mentha camphor*, and *common* or *japan camphor*, a ketone of dihydrocamphene. The *terpene alcohols* and *terpene ketones*, with their transposition products, attach themselves naturally to the terpenes and their addition products.

*Properties*.—The true terpenes, when pure, are colorless, strongly refracting liquids. Camphene alone is a solid.

They boil without decomposition at  $155-180^\circ$ . They are very volatile with steam and have a pleasant odor. Many are optically active. Some, indeed, exist in two optically active forms with equal but opposite rotatory power. Dipentene is a racemic terpene.

*Deportment*.—(1) Some terpenes polymerize very readily. (2) Boiling dilute alcoholic sulphuric acid has rearranged various terpenes into isomeric terpenes. (3) Many are oxidized by the oxygen of the air; they then manifest a tendency to resinify (see B. 29, R. 658). The formation of benzene derivatives by oxidizing terpenes is very important. Thus, turpentine oil with iodine yields cymene; with nitric acid, p-toluic acid and terephthalic acid. (4) The addition-reactions have already been pointed to as a means of classifying the terpenes. The terpenes capable of adding four hydrogen atoms are in all probability dihydrocymenes (see above). For the constitution of the camphene adding but two hydrogen atoms consult p. 327. (5) The addition of chlorine and bromine, as well as hydrogen halides, in glacial acetic acid at low temperatures gives rise to haloid hydroterpenes. Conversely, when the hydrogen halide addition-products are heated with sodium acetate in glacial acetic acid, or when heated with bases like aniline, the *terpenes are regenerated*. It is by means of these haloid bodies that the transition from

the terpenes into camphor alcohols can be realized. (6) Nitrosyl chloride, NOCl (Tilden), or an alkyl nitrite, glacial acetic acid, and hydrochloric acid acting upon terpenes give rise to well-defined terpene nitroso-chlorides. These form terpene nitrolamines with primary and secondary bases, or, by splitting off hydrochloric acid, they become nitroso-terpenes. v. Baeyer (B. 28, 648; 29, 10) contends that these nitroso-chlorides are frequently to be regarded as bimolecular, and better as bisnitrosochlorides. (7 a) Several terpenes unite with  $N_2O_4$ , forming nitrosates,  $C_{10}H_{16}(NO) \cdot O \cdot NO_2$ , (b) and with  $N_2O_3$ , yield nitrosites,  $C_{10}H_{16}(NO) \cdot O \cdot NO$ . See B. 29, 695, for the addition of trichloroacetic acid to the terpenes.

*Nomenclature.*—Baeyer, observing the "Geneva nomenclature," suggested that the cyclic terpenes containing the same carbon skeleton as p-cymene, the dihydro-p-cymenes, be called *Terpadienes*; then the tetrahydrocymenes would be *terpenes* and hexahydrocymene *terpan*. Camphene would retain its name, but dihydrocamphene would receive the name *camphan*; consequently, the terpenes can be divided into the *terpan* and *camphan* groups. To obtain names for the terpenes which would be designated, according to this suggestion, as terpadienes, Wagner calls hexahydrocymene *menthan*, the tetrahydrocymenes *menthenes*, and the dihydrocymenes or terpenes *menthadienes* (B. 27, 1636 Ann.).

The terpenes will, therefore, be discussed in three groups:

A. Olefinic Terpene- or Terpenogen Group.

B. Terpan or Menthane Group.

C. Camphan Group.

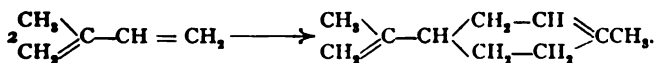
The alcohols and ketones, the so-called *camphors*, attach themselves to the hydrocarbons of each group.

## A. OLEFINIC TERPENE- OR TERPENOGEN GROUP.

Many olefine hydrocarbons, alcohols, aldehydes, and acids with open carbon chain are included under this designation. They occur in ethereal oils, or in the transposition products obtained from the latter. They are distinguished chiefly by the fact that they, as a rule, are easily converted into hydroaromatic, terpene-like, or aromatic substances.

1. *Olefinic Terpenes*: *Myrcene*,  $C_{10}H_{16}$ , boiling at  $67^\circ$  (20 mm.), sp. gravity 0.8025 ( $15^\circ$ ),  $n_D = 1.4673$ , occurs with l-phellandrene and the aromatic phenols of the cinnamic series in bay-oil. It can take up six atoms of bromine, and by the addition of hydrogen becomes linalool. *Anhydrogeraniol*,  $C_{10}H_{16}$ , boiling at  $172-176^\circ$ , sp. gr. 0.8232 ( $20^\circ$ ),  $n_D = 1.4835$ , and obtained by heating geraniol with potassium sulphate to  $170^\circ$ , can also take up six bromine atoms (B. 24, 682). *Linaloolene*,  $C_{10}H_{18}$ , boils at  $165-168^\circ$ . Its sp. gravity is 0.7882 ( $20^\circ$ ),  $n_D = 1.455$ . It is formed in the reduction of linalool (B. 27, 2520).

*Isoprene*,  $C_5H_8$ , boiling at  $37^\circ$ , must be considered under the olefinic terpenes or terpenogens. It is a distillation product from caoutchouc (p. 311). It very probably consists in the main of *methyldivinyl*,  $\begin{matrix} CH_3 \\ | \\ CH_2=C-CH=CH_2 \end{matrix}$ . It can take up two molecules of hydrogen bromide, forming dimethyl-trimethylene bromide. It polymerizes very readily to dipentene (p. 311) (J. pr. Ch. [2], 55, 1):



2. *Olefinic Terpene Alcohols*: *Rhodinol*,  $C_{10}H_{20}O$ , boiling at  $113-114^\circ$  (15 mm.), occurs, together with geraniol, in different rose, geranium, and pelargonium oils. Very probably it must be viewed as the optically active levorotatory alcohol, corresponding to citronellal: 1-citronellol,  $(CH_3)_2C:CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C(CH_3)H \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2OH$  (B. 29, 923 ff.; 30, 33; compare B. 29, R. 785).

**Geraniol**,  $C_{15}H_{26}O = (CH_3)_2C : CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C(CH_3) : CH \cdot CH_2OH$ , boiling at  $120-122^\circ$  (17 mm.) constitutes the alcoholic constituent of geranium oil, rose oil, pelargonium oil, etc. (B. 29, 785). It is optically inactive, and bears the same relation to rhodinol that citral sustains to citronellal.

**l-Linalool**,  $C_{10}H_{18}O = (CH_3)_2C : CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C(CH_3)OH \cdot CH : CH_2$ , boiling at  $197-199^\circ$ , sp. gr. 0.8702 ( $20^\circ$ ),  $n_D = 1.4695$ , is found in oil of lavender, bergamot, limet, and origanum. **d-Linalool**, *coriandrol*, occurs in the oil of coriander. Dilute sulphuric acid converts the linalool with ease into inactive *terpine hydrate* (p. 314); this conversion is made with greater difficulty with geraniol (B. 28, 2137).

The constitution of these bodies, as well as that of the corresponding aldehydes and acids, has been mainly deduced from their conversion into *methyl heptenone*,  $(CH_3)_2C : CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$ , which has been previously described. Again, this methyl heptenone has been employed in the synthesis of certain bodies belonging in this group. Thus, by condensation with zinc and allyl iodide it yields *homolinalool*,  $(CH_3)_2C : CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2C(CH_3)OH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH : CH_3$ , boiling at  $102-104^\circ$  (14 mm.) (B. 29, 693).

Another series of olefinic terpene alcohols—*e. g.*, *licarcol*, *rtuniol*, *ylangol*—has been prepared from various ethereal oils. Their constitution has not yet been determined; probably they are identical with the compounds just described, or they are closely related to them (B. 27, R. 505, 751; 28, R. 67).

3. **Olefinic Terpene Aldehydes : Citronellal** (Rhodinol?) (B. 29, R. 352),  $C_{10}H_{18}O = (CH_3)_2C : CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C(CH_3)H \cdot CH_2 \cdot CHO$ , boiling at  $103-105^\circ$  (25 mm.), is optically dextrorotatory. It is found in citronella oil, in the oil from *Eucalyptus maculata*, *var. citriodora*, etc. (B. 29, 904). Acetic anhydride condenses it to *isopulegol*, a terpene alcohol very similar to, yet not identical with, pulegol, a reduction product obtained from pulegon (p. 320) (B. 30, 22). It changes to d-citronellol (see this) upon reduction.

**Citral**, *Geraniol*,  $C_{10}H_{16}O = (CH_3)_2C : CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C(CH_3) : CH \cdot CHO$ , boiling at  $224-228^\circ$ , is formed in the oxidation of geraniol. It is also present in the oil of lemons. When condensed by potassium bisulphate, III, acetic acid, etc., the double linking is displaced and cymene results. When citral is condensed with acetone it yields **Pseudoionone**,  $(CH_3)_2C : CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2C(CH_3) : CHCH : CHCOCH_3$ , boiling at  $143-145^\circ$ . On heating this with dilute sulphuric acid it changes to **ionone**, an hydroaromatic ketone (B. 27, R. 768).

4. **Olefinic Terpene Acids : Citronellic Acid** (*Rhodinic Acid*?) (B. 29, R. 352),  $(CH_3)_2C : CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2C(CH_3)H : CH_2 \cdot COOH$ , boiling at  $143.5^\circ$  (10 mm.), is obtained from its nitrile, formed in the dehydration of citronella aldoxime, or by oxidizing citronellal (B. 29, 905).

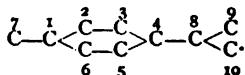
**Geranic Acid**,  $(CH_3)_2C : CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2C(CH_3) : CH \cdot COOH$ , boiling at  $153^\circ$  (13 mm.), is also obtained from citral. It has also been synthetically prepared from methyl heptenone (see above) and iodacetic ester (B. 29, R. 222). Sulphuric acid converts it into isomeric hydroaromatic *isogeranic acid* (p. 301).

## B. TERPAN OR MENTHAN GROUP.

### 1. Hydrocarbons. (a) Limonene or Dipentene Group.

The terpenes of this group combine with four atoms of bromine or with two molecules of halogen hydride, but not with  $N_2O_5$ . They very probably are dihydrocymenes. One of the dihydro-p-cymenes has been synthesized (p. 294), but as yet has been too imperfectly studied to compare it with the appended terpenes.

To indicate the constitution of the dihydrocymenes the carbon atoms are provided with numbers :



The dihydrocymene of the formula  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} - \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{C} = \text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , would then be termed  $\Delta_{1,34}(8)$ -Terpadiène; and dihydrocymene,

$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} - \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH} \end{array} \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , would be  $\Delta_{1,14}$ -terpadiène (B. 27, 436).

Limonene,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}$ , is known in three modifications—d-limonene, l-limonene, and  $[\text{d} + \text{l}]$ -limonene or dipentene.

d-Limonene, *Citrene*, *Hesperidene*, *Carvene*, together with pinene, is among the most widely distributed terpenes. It is present in the oil obtained from the shell of *Citrus aurantium*, in citrone oil, in the oil of bergamot, in oil of dill, in oil of celery, etc. It boils at  $175^\circ$ ,  $[\alpha]_D = +106.8^\circ$ . l-Limonene occurs in the oil of pine-needles, in oil of fir, and in oil of peppermint. It boils at  $175^\circ$ ;  $[\alpha]_D = -105^\circ$ .

Both limonenes are liquids with an agreeable lemon-like odor. Their sp. gravity equals 0.846 ( $20^\circ$ ). They differ from each other, as do their derivatives, almost entirely by their opposite rotatory power (A. 252, 144). The two active limonenes combine with dry bromine to *tetrabromides*, melting at  $104^\circ$ , and having equally large but opposite rotatory power of about  $[\alpha]_D = 73^\circ$ . Dry hydrochloric acid gas converts them into optically active *limonene hydrochlorides*, while the moist haloid acids change the optically active limonenes to addition products of  $[\text{d} + \text{l}]$ -limonene or dipentene. When the optically active limonenes are exposed to elevated temperatures they become dipentenenes.

The nitroso-chlorides of the limonenes deserve particular attention (B. 28, 1308; compare also B. 29, 10). d-Limonene forms two chemically identical nitrosochlorides, with, however, different physical properties:

$\alpha$ -d-Limonene-nitroso-chloride melts at  $103^\circ$ ;  $[\alpha]_D = +313.4^\circ$ .

$\beta$ -d-Limonene-nitroso-chloride " "  $105^\circ$ ;  $[\alpha]_D = +204.3^\circ$ .

d-Carvoxime (p. 320) is formed when these bodies are heated with alcoholic potash. d-Limonene, upon oxidation, yields limonetrile (p. 316).

l-Limonene also forms two differently rotating nitroso-chlorides, which, by loss of hydrochloric acid, rearrange themselves into l-carvoxime.

### $[\text{d} + \text{l}]$ -Limonene, Dipentene, Cinene,

$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} - \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{CH} \cdot \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array} (?)$  (p. 315) (B. 28, 2145; 29, 4), boils at  $175^\circ$ . It is associated with cineol in *Oleum cinæ*. It is produced by heating d-limonene, l-limonene, pinene, and camphene to  $250$ – $300^\circ$ ; it is, therefore, present in the Russian and Swedish turpentine oil, obtained by application of great heat. It is derived further by the distillation of caoutchouc, and the polymerization of the isoprene,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_8$ , formed simultaneously (A. 227, 295). It is also produced on mixing equally large quantities of d- and l-limonenes, as well as when pinene is boiled with alcoholic sulphuric acid. It forms, too, on withdrawing water from linalool, terpine hydrate, terpineol, and cineol. It may be prepared pure by heating its hydrochloride with aniline or sodium acetate in glacial acetic acid solution (A. 245, 197; B. 26, R. 319).

Pure dipentene is a liquid with an agreeable lemon-like odor. Its sp. gr. is 0.853, and it is optically inactive.

Although more stable than most of the other terpenes, it can yet be changed into the isomeric terpinene by alcoholic sulphuric acid, or hydrochloric acid. It is oxidized to p-cymene by concentrated sulphuric acid or phosphorus pentasulphide.

The derivatives of dipentene can be obtained not only from the dipentenenes, but also by mixing the corresponding derivatives of dextro- and lævo-limonene.

*Dipentene Dihydrochloride*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{18} \cdot 2\text{HCl}$ , boils at  $119^\circ$  (10 mm.) and melts at  $56^\circ$ .

The *trans-dipentene dihydrobromide*,  $C_{10}H_{18} \cdot 2HBr$ , from d-limonene, dipentene, terpene, and cineol with hydrobromic acid, melts at  $64^\circ$ .

*cis-Dipentene dihydro-bromide*,  $C_{10}H_{18} \cdot 2HBr$ , melting at  $37^\circ$ , results from the action of  $HI$  Br upon a well-cooled solution of cineol in glacial acetic acid; see also *cis-terpine* (B. 26, 2864).

**Tetrahydro-dipentene Tribromide**, *Tribromterpan*,  $C_{10}H_{17}Br_3$ , is derived from *trans-dipentenedihydrobromide* by the action of bromine upon the glacial acetic acid solution (A. 264, 25).

**Dipentene Tetrabromide**,  $C_{10}H_{16} \cdot Br_4$ , melts at  $124^\circ$  (A. 281, 140).

**Dipentene Dihydro-iodide**,  $C_{10}H_{16} \cdot 2HI$ , melts at  $77-79^\circ$  (A. 239, 13).

**Dipentene Nitrosochloride**,  $C_{10}H_{16}(NO)Cl$ , melts at  $102^\circ$ ; see *carvoxime*, p. 321 (A. 270, 175).

**Terpinolene**,  $CH_3 \cdot \begin{array}{c} \diagup CH-CH_2 \\ \diagdown CH_2-CH_2 \end{array} \cdot C = C \begin{array}{c} \diagup CH_3 \\ \diagdown CH_3 \end{array} (?)$ , melting at  $75^\circ$  (14 mm.), has

not yet been observed in ethereal oils. It is produced when terpene hydrate, terpineol, and cineol are boiled with dilute sulphuric acid, and by heating pinene with the concentrated acid. Boiling oxalic acid also liberates it from the terpineol melting at  $35^\circ$  (A. 275, 106). The *dibromide*,  $C_{10}H_{16}Br_2$ , melts at  $70^\circ$  (B. 27, 447). The *tetrabromide*,  $C_{10}H_{16}Br_4$ , is a solid, melting at  $116^\circ$ .

**Sylvestrene**,  $C_{10}H_{16}$ , boiling at  $176^\circ$ , occurs in Swedish and Russian turpentine oil. It is optically dextro-rotatory;  $[\alpha]_D = +66.32^\circ$  (A. 252, 149). Sulphuric acid imparts an intense blue color to its solutions in anhydrous acetic acid (or in acetic anhydride). Carvestrene and dihydrobenzene show a like behavior (p. 294), while other terpenes under similar conditions exhibit a red to reddish-yellow coloration. It is one of the most stable terpenes. The *tetrabromide*,  $C_{10}H_{16}Br_4$ , melts at  $135^\circ$ . The *dihydrochloride*,  $C_{10}H_{14}Cl_2$ , melts at  $72^\circ$ , the *dihydrobromide* at  $72^\circ$ , and the *dihydroiodide* at  $67^\circ$ . The *nitrosochloride*,  $C_{10}H_{16}(NO)Cl$ , melts at  $107^\circ$  (A. 252, 150).

**Carvestrene**,  $C_{10}H_{16}$ , boiling at  $178^\circ$ , results from the distillation of carylamine hydrochloride. It is probably the optically inactive isomeride corresponding to sylvestrene (B. 27, 3485). Blue coloration, see sylvestrene. The *dihydrochloride* melts at  $52^\circ$ , and the *dihydrobromide* at  $48-50^\circ$ .

**Thujen**, *Tanacetene*,  $C_{10}H_{16}$ , from thujonamine hydrochloride, boils at  $172-175^\circ$  (760 mm.),  $60-63^\circ$  (14 mm.); sp. gr. 0.840,  $n_D = +1.476$  ( $20^\circ$ ) (A. 286, 99).

(b) **Terpinenes** and **Phellandrene**,  $C_{10}H_{16}$ .—Both are distinguished from the terpenes of the limonene or dipentene groups by the fact that they do not yield tangible derivatives either with bromine or the haloid acids. However, they do form nitrosites with  $N_2O_3$ .

**Terpinene**,  $C_{10}H_{16}$ , boiling at  $179-181^\circ$ , occurs in cardamom oil. It results on boiling dipentene, terpene, phellandrene, cineol, terpineol, or dihydrocarveol with dilute alcoholic sulphuric acid, and when pinene is shaken with a little concentrated sulphuric acid. It is characterized by its stability toward dilute mineral acids. Its production together with dipentene, when formic acid acts upon linalool, is very noteworthy. It is the most stable of all the terpenes, and is not changed into any other terpene (A. 239, 38). Terpinene is optically inactive; it has an odor like that of cymene. Nitrous acid converts it into **Terpinene Nitrosite**,  $C_{10}H_{16}(NO)O \cdot NO$  or  $C_{10}H_{15}(N \cdot OH) \cdot O \cdot NO$ , melting at  $155^\circ$ , and yielding nitrolamines with bases. Ammonia converts it into *terpinene nitrolamine*,  $C_{10}H_{15}(N \cdot OH) \cdot NII_3$ , melting at  $118^\circ$  (A. 241, 320).

**Phellandrene**,  $C_{10}H_{16}$ , is known in two optically active forms. Both boil at  $170^\circ$ , and have not yet been obtained in a pure condition. They may be classed with the most unstable terpenes. d-*Phellandrene* occurs in the oil of water fennel, *Phellandrium aquaticum*, etc. (A. 246, 233). l-*Phellandrene* is found in Australian eucalyptus oil from *Eucalyptus amygdalina*, etc.

d-*Phellandrene Nitrosite* and l-*Phellandrene Nitrosite*,  $C_{10}H_{16}(NO)O \cdot NO$ , melt at  $105^\circ$ . The d-nitrosite is levorotatory,  $[\alpha]_D = -183.20^\circ$ , while the l-nitrosite is dextro-rotatory. Metallic sodium and alcohol reduce these nitrosites to ketones,  $C_{10}H_{18}O$ , which have proved to be d- and l-tetrahydrocarbons, inasmuch as they form by their union a racemic tetrahydrocarvone identical with the one prepared in another manner (p. 318) (A. 287, 371).

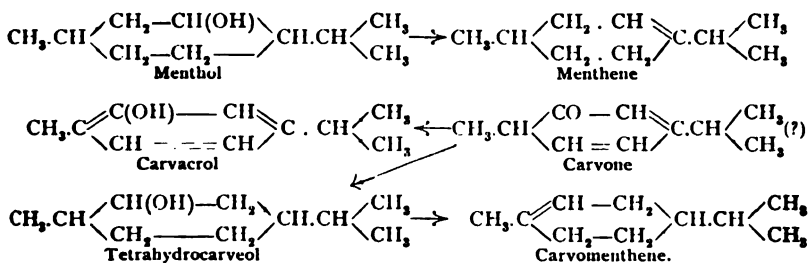
(c) **Hydroterpenes.**—Hydrocarbons derived from menthol and tetrahydrocarveol as starting-out substances, and containing two to four atoms more of hydrogen than the preceding bodies, bear close kinship to the latter. The two alcohols just mentioned are derived in such a manner from hexahydro-p-cymene that in both of them there are present secondary ring-alcohols of this hydrocarbon. When they lose water, menthene and carvomenthene are produced. By reducing menthol with HI, or menthyl chloride with sodium and alcohol (B. 29, 317), a hydrocarbon was obtained, which probably is—

**Hexahydrocymene, Menthonaphthene,**  $\text{CH}_3 > \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH} < \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 & \cdot & \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 & \cdot & \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} > \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2$ , boiling at 169°. Its specific gravity equals 0.8066 (0°). The hexahydrocymene obtained in the reduction of terpine hydrate (B. 23, R. 433) and from resin oil is identical with this hydrocarbon.

Tetrahydro-p-cymenes are the two hydrocarbons—

**Carvomenthene, C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>18</sub>**, boiling at 175°, and **Menthene, Menthomenthene, C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>18</sub>**, boiling at 167°, with sp. gr. 0.806 (20°) or 0.814 (20°). The latter is best made by acting with potassium phenolate upon menthyl chloride (B. 29, 1843). See B. 29, 11, for the *nitroso-chlorides*.

The constitution of the two hydrocarbons follows from their relation to carvacrol and menthol. Carvacrol (p. 145) readily results from a rearrangement of carvone (constitution, compare p. 320), which upon reduction yields tetrahydrocarveol (p. 314), with which menthol is isomeric. The constitution of menthol, on the other hand, is proved by conversion of the corresponding ketone, menthone (p. 318), into 3-chlorcymene and thymol. By removing water from these alcohols, or hydrogen chloride from their chlorides, two different tetrahydrocymenes were formed:



When oxidized with potassium permanganate menthene yields (1) menthene glycol (p. 315), (2) a keto-alcohol boiling at 105° (13.5 mm.), and (3) the fatty acids arising from menthone (B. 27, 1636).

## 2. ALCOHOLS OF THE TERPAN OR MENTHAN GROUP.

I (a) **Monacid Menthan Alcohols.**—Hexahydro-p-cymene yields the isomeric menthols.

**Secondary Menthols.**—1-Menthol, *Mentha Camphor, Oxyhexahydrocymene, 5-Methyl-2-isopropylhexahydrophenol*,

$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH} < \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} > \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$  (see above), melting at 42° and boiling at 212°. It is the chief constituent of peppermint oil (from *Mentha piperita*). It is formed in the reduction of menthone (J. pr. Ch. [2], 55, 14) and is oxidized by chromic acid to 1-menthone (p. 318). By the exit of water it yields menthene (see above), and by reduction hexahydrocymene results (above). Potassium permanganate converts it into

*oxomenthylic acid*,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot (\text{CH}_3)_2$ , boiling at  $174^\circ$  (15 mm.) (A. 289, 362), and  *$\beta$ -pimelic acid* or  *$\beta$ -methyl adipic acid*,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $89^\circ$  (B. 27, 1818). The speed of ester formation would indicate menthol to be a secondary alcohol.

*Menthyl Chloride*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{19}\text{Cl}$ , boils at  $204^\circ$ . The *ethyl ether* boils at  $212^\circ$ , and the *benzoyl ester* melts at  $54^\circ$ .

**Tetrahydrocarveol**,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}(\text{OH}) - \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , isomeric with menthol, is a thick oil, volatile without decomposition. It is formed when tetrahydrocarvone and carvenone (p. 319) are reduced in moist ethereal solution with metallic sodium. Its genetic connection with carvacrol (see above) would indicate its constitution.

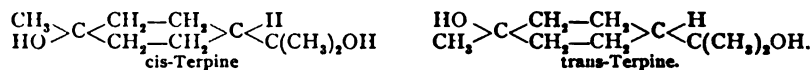
**Thujamenthol**, *Bihydroisothujol*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{19} \cdot \text{OH}$ , boiling at  $211\text{--}212^\circ$ , with sp. gr. 0.9015,  $n_D^{20} = 1.4636$  ( $20^\circ$ ) (B. 28, 1953), results from the reduction of isothujone. Although carvenone and isothujone both yield carvacrol with ferric chloride, they yet form different hexahydromonoxycymenes, in which the OH-group should occupy the same position.

*Tertiary menthols* are produced when their hydriodic acid esters, addition products of III and menthene by means of carvomenthene, are treated with silver acetate, and the resulting acetates then saponified (see also B. 29, 1844).

**Tertiary Menthol**,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \text{C}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , boiling at  $100^\circ$  (20 mm.), has a faint peppermint-like odor.

**Tertiary Carvomenthol**,  $\text{CH}_3\text{C}(\text{OH}) \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , boils at  $96\text{--}100^\circ$  (17 mm.).

(b) **Diacid Alcohols**.—In this group are the two terpinenes, *cis*-terpine and *trans*-terpine, corresponding to the *cis*- and *trans*-dipentenedihydrobromides, with which they are intimately related. At present the following formulas are assigned them (see B. 29, 5):



These are in harmony with the oxidation of terpene hydrate to terebic acid (p. 324), as well as with its formation from linalool (p. 310). Cineol is to be regarded as the oxide corresponding to the *cis*-terpine.

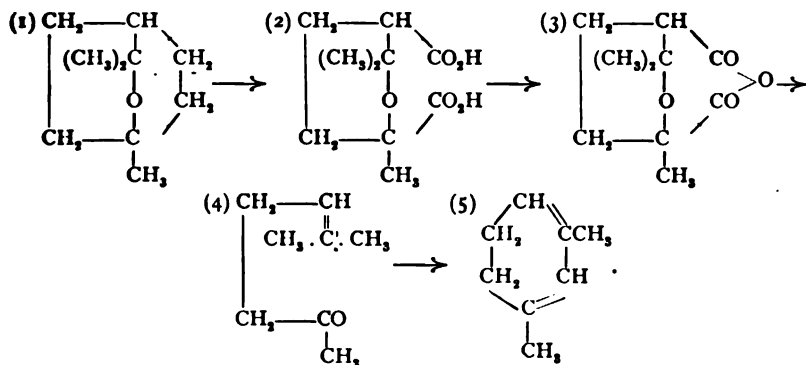
**Terpine**, *cis-Terpene*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{18}(\text{OH})_2$ , melting at  $104^\circ$  and boiling at  $258^\circ$ , readily parts with water and becomes *terpine hydrate*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{18}(\text{OH})_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melting at  $117^\circ$ , from which it is prepared by protracted heating to  $100^\circ$ . Terpene corresponds to *cis*-dipentenedihydrobromide (p. 311), from which it can be obtained by treatment with silver acetate in glacial acetic acid, and saponifying the resulting diacetyl derivative with alcoholic potash. Terpene hydrate is also produced if turpentine oil is allowed to stand with dilute nitric acid and alcohol (A. 227, 284), as well as from pinene (p. 322), dipentene, and d-limonene with dilute acids. It forms, furthermore, on bringing dipentene and d-limonene dihydrochloride in contact with water, and when terpineol (p. 316) and cineol are acted upon with dilute acids.

The haloid acids convert terpene hydrate into the *cis*- and *trans*-dihydrohalides of dipentene. When boiled with dilute acids it passes into terpineols (B. 27, 443, 815), cineol, dipentene, terpinenes, and terpinolenes.

*trans-Terpene*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{18}(\text{OH})_2$ , melting at  $156\text{--}158^\circ$  and boiling at  $263\text{--}265^\circ$ , is formed

from trans-dipentenedi-hydrobromide (see cis-terpine), into which it finally reverts upon treatment with hydrogen bromide. It does not combine with water of crystallization.

Cineol,  $C_{10}H_{18}O$ , boiling at  $176^{\circ}$ , with sp. gr. 0.923 ( $16^{\circ}$ ),  $n_D = 1.4559$ , is a liquid with a camphor-like odor. It occurs in many ethereal oils, in *Oleum cinæ*, the worm-seed oil of *Artemisia cinæ*, cajepout oil, eucalyptus oil, rosemary oil, etc. Hydrochloric acid gas conducted into a petroleum ether solution of cineol precipitates an unstable addition product,  $C_{10}H_{18}O \cdot HCl$  (?), which water resolves into its components, and which serves for the separation of cineol. In glacial acetic acid solution the haloid acids change cineol into dipentene dihydro-halides. At low temperatures hydrogen bromide produces cis-dipentenedi-hydrobromide (p. 312).  $P_2S_5$  converts cineol into cymene. Potassium permanganate oxidizes cineol (1) into cineolic acid (2), the anhydride (3) of which yields, upon distillation, methylhexylene ketone or methyl heptenone (4) (constitution, p. 310), while the latter may be arranged to m-dihydroisoxylene (5) (p. 294). This series of reactions is shown in the following diagram:

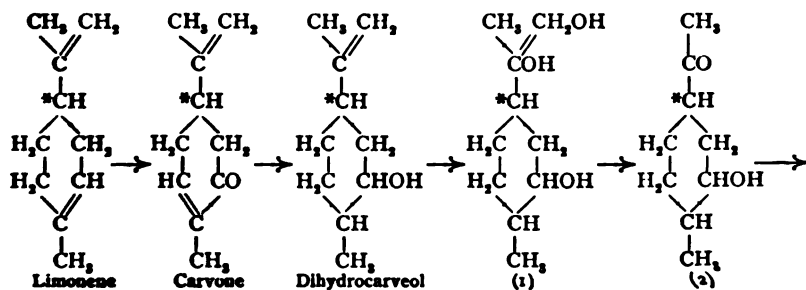


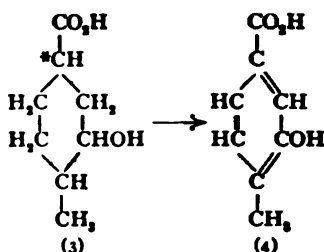
Cineolic Acid melts at  $196-197^{\circ}$  with decomposition; its anhydride melts at  $78^{\circ}$  and boils at  $157^{\circ}$  (13 mm.).

Menthene Glycol,  $C_{10}H_{18}(OH)_2$ , melting at  $77^{\circ}$  and boiling at  $130^{\circ}$  (13 mm.), results when menthene is oxidized with potassium permanganate (B. 27, 1636).

(c) Triacid Menthane Alcohols have been obtained by oxidizing menthene alcohols with potassium permanganate.

1. Trioxyhexahydrocymene,  $C_{10}H_{17}[2,8,9](OH)_3$  (1), from dihydrocarveol (see below), is a syrup, and with dilute sulphuric acid yields an indifferent oxide,  $C_{10}H_{16}(O)$ , boiling at  $196-199^{\circ}$  (A. 277, 152), while upon oxidation with chromic acid it forms a ketone-alcohol: 5-acetylhexahydro-o-cresol, melting at  $58^{\circ}$  (2), which upon further oxidation changes to hexahydro-m-oxy-p-toluic acid, melting at  $153^{\circ}$  (3). The constitution of this last acid is evident from its conversion by bromine into m-oxy-p-toluic acid, melting at  $203^{\circ}$  (4). These experiments give rise to the constitution formulas (B. 28, 2141):





2. **Trioxyhexahydrocymene, Dioxyterpineol**,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{17}(\text{OH})_2$ , melting at  $121^\circ$ , formed from the terpeneol melting at  $35^\circ$ , passes into carvenone (p. 319) when it is acted upon with dilute sulphuric acid (A. 277, 122).

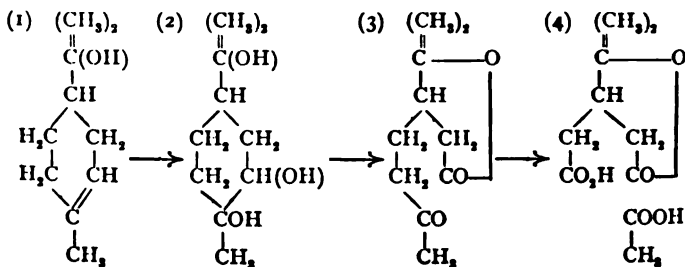
3. **Trioxyhexahydrocymene**,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{17}[\text{1,4,8}](\text{OH})_3 + 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melts in the anhydrous state at  $110\text{--}112^\circ$  and boils at  $200^\circ$  (20 mm.). It is formed from  $\Delta_{4,8}$ -terpineol (B. 28, 2296).

(d) **Tetracid Menthan Alcohols**.—When d-limonene is oxidized it yields Limonetririte,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}(\text{OH})_4$ , melting at  $192^\circ$  (B. 23, 2315). This is a sweet-tasting body belonging to this class of compounds. Its constitution is variously considered, depending upon the views held in regard to the point of double union in limonene (B. 28, 2149).

11. **Menthene Alcohols**,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{17}\text{OH}$ , when oxidized with potassium permanganate, yield triacid alcohols.

The reduction of the ketones, carvone, eucarvone (p. 321), and thujone (p. 319), or tanacetone, gives rise to three different alcohols:  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{17}\text{OH}$ : (1) Dihydrocarveol, boiling at  $224^\circ$  (760 mm.),  $112^\circ$  (14 mm.), with sp. gr. 0.927 ( $27^\circ$ )  $n_D = 1.48168$ , is optically active, and has an agreeable odor, recalling that of the terpeneols; (2) Dihydroeucarveol boils at  $109^\circ$  (21 mm.); (3) Thujyl Alcohol, *Tanacetyl Alcohol*, boils at  $92.5^\circ$  (13 mm.). Its sp. gr. equals 0.9249, with  $n_D = 1.4635$ .

**Terpineols**: **Terpineol**,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} \begin{array}{l} \text{CH} - \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{C}(\text{OH})(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , melting at  $35^\circ$ , is formed from terpine hydrate (p. 314) by the withdrawal of two molecules of water (A. 275, 104). It combines very readily with nitrosyl chloride. When hydrogen chloride is withdrawn from this body an *oxyoxime*, melting at  $134^\circ$ , is produced. Boiling dilute acids change it to carvacrol and carvone (B. 29, R. 587). Hence it follows that in terpineol and carvone the carbon atoms are similarly grouped. Terpineol nitrosochloride and limonene nitrosochloride are correspondingly constituted (p. 311) (B. 29, 9). Potassium permanganate oxidizes terpineol (1) into trioxyhexahydrocymene, melting at  $121^\circ$  (2), while with chromic acid it yields a ketone-lactone, homoterpenylic acid methyl ketone,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}\text{O}_3$  (3), which, under the influence of potassium permanganate, breaks down into acetic acid and terpenylic acid (4) (p. 324). Therefore, in terpineol melting at  $35^\circ$ , the OH-group probably is in union with carbon atom 8 (B. 28, 1773, 1779):



When terpineol is heated with potassium bisulphate it changes to *dipentene*, and when boiled with oxalic acid to *terpinolene* (p. 312) (A. 275, 104).

The same constitution has been recently assigned to an optically active *terpineol* boiling at 215°, which has been made from d-limonene hydrochloride; it has the odor both of the mayflower and of lilac (B. 28, 2189).

Terpineol,  $\text{CH}_3\text{C}(\text{OH})\langle\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2\rangle\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , melts at 69°. Its acetate results on treating tribromterpan or tetrahydrodipentene tribromide (p. 311) with glacial acetic acid and zinc-dust. HBr converts it into dipentene dihydrobromide, and with NOCl a blue nitrosochloride, just as tetramethylethylene does. Consequently it probably also contains a tertiary-tertiary double union. In addition, its OH-group must be in such a position that dipentenedihydrobromide can be produced with hydrogen bromide.

III. Menthadiene Alcohols.—Carveol Methyl Ether,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}\text{OCH}_3$ , boiling at 208–212°, with sp. gr. 0.9065,  $n_D = 1.47586$  (18°), represents the methyl ether of such an alcohol. It is formed in the action of sodium upon the alcoholic solution of limonene tetrabromide. Chromic acid oxidizes it to inactive carvone (A. 281, 140). Isocarveol,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}\text{OH}$ , is obtained from pinyllamine (A. 279, 387).

### 3. BASES OF THE TERPAN OR MENTHAN GROUP.

Menthan bases have been obtained by the reduction of the oximes of the menthan ketones with sodium and alcohol, or upon heating the ketones with ammonium carbonate.

R-Menthylamine and L-Menthylamine,

$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH} \langle \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH} \rangle \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , boiling at 205°, have an unpleasant odor and attract  $\text{CO}_2$  from the air. The bases have opposite, but *unequal*, rotatory power; the same is true of their derivatives (A. 276, 299). They can be separated by means of their formyl compounds, both of which are formed on heating menthene with ammonium formate. R-Formylmenthylamine, melting at 117°, dissolves with more difficulty. L-Formylmenthylamine melts at 102°. L-menthylamine can also be obtained from l-menthoxime.

Tetrahydrocarvylamine, Carvomenthylamine,

$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH} \langle \text{CH}(\text{NH}_2) - \text{CH}_2 \rangle \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , boils at 212° (A. 277, 137).

Tert. Menthylamine,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH} \langle \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \rangle \text{C}(\text{NH}_2)\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , and Tert.

Carvomenthylamine,  $\text{CH}_3(\text{NH}_2)\text{C} \langle \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \rangle \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , have been obtained by the interaction of menthene hydrobromide, carvomenthene hydrobromide, and silver cyanate, with subsequent saponification (B. 26, 2270, 2562).

Menthene bases have been prepared by the reduction of the oximes of menthene ketones.

Dihydrocarvylamine,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{17}\text{NH}_2$ , boiling at 219°, with sp. gr. 0.889 (20°),  $n_D = 1.48294$ , is optically active, and is obtained from carvonoxime,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{14} \cdot \text{NOH}$ . Its hydrochloride breaks down completely at 200° into ammonium chloride and terpinene, which in so doing passes partly into cymene (A. 275, 120; B. 24, 3984). Caryllamine,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{17}\text{NH}_2$ , from caronoxime, is stable in the presence of potassium permanganate, but is rearranged by hydrochloric acid into isomeric *vestryllamine*, the hydrochloride of which yields carvestrene upon the application of heat. Dihydroeucarvylamine,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{17} \cdot \text{NH}_2$ , is formed from eucarvonoxime (B. 27, 3487).  $\alpha$ -Thujonamine,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{17}\text{NH}_2$ , is obtained from the thujone oxime melting at 52°. Its hydrochloride, when heated, yields *thujene* or *tanacetene* (p. 312). The thujonoxime, melting at 90°, yields an isomeric  $\beta$ -thujonamine. A third isothujonamine results from isothujonoxime (A. 286, 96), melting at 119°. Pulegonamine (A. 262, 13; B. 29, R. 173).

Nitrolamines have been obtained from nitroso-chlorides—e. g., limonene—by transposition with primary and secondary bases.

## 4. THE RING-KETONES OF THE TERPAN OR MENTHAN GROUP.

Ketones like these are found in the vegetable kingdom. They are produced by the oxidation of the corresponding secondary alcohols, and by continued oxidation they change to cyclic and aliphatic carboxylic acids,—decomposition products,—the constitution of which furnish insight into the constitution of the ring-ketones and their derivatives. The ring-ketones of the terpan-group, like other ketones, are characterized by their oximes and the sparing solubility of their semicarbazones.

(a) Ketomenthans, Keto-hexahydro-p-cymene,  $C_{10}H_{18}O$ .

**Menthone**,  $CH_3 \cdot CH \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \cdot CO \\ CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \end{smallmatrix} > CH \cdot CH(CH_3)_2$ , boiling at  $206^\circ$ , sustains the same relation to menthol that camphor bears to borneol (p. 324). It occurs in American and Russian peppermint oils, together with menthol, esters of menthol, menthene, and limonene. Menthone is known in two optically active modifications. l-Menthone is obtained upon oxidizing menthol with potassium bichromate and sulphuric acid at a temperature not exceeding  $50^\circ$  (A. 250, 322). Its sp. gravity equals 0.896 ( $20^\circ$ ),  $[\alpha]_D = -28^\circ$ . Concentrated sulphuric acid, in the cold, rearranges l-menthone to d-menthone,  $[\alpha]_D = +28^\circ$ .

The constitution of menthone (see p. 313) is demonstrated (1) by its conversion into 3-chlorocymene;  $PCl_5$  changes menthone to *dichlorhexahydrocymene*, which splits off hydrogen chloride and becomes *tetrahydrochlorocymene*; this in turn, by the action of bromine and quinoline, loses hydrogen and 3-chlorocymene results (B. 29, 314). (2) By the formation of *thymol* (p. 144) through the elimination of  $2HBr$  from *Dibrom-menthone*,  $C_{10}H_{16}Br_2O$ , melting at  $80^\circ$ , which is produced in the bromination of menthone in chloroform solution (B. 29, 418).

When l-menthone is reduced by sodium it forms l-*menthol*, while with ammonium formate the product is L-menthylamine (p. 317). Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to *oxomenthylic acid*,  $CH_3 \cdot CH \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \\ CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \end{smallmatrix} / CO \cdot CH(CH_3)_2$ , and  $\beta$ -methyl adipic acid (1, 454; B. 27, 1820). Amylnitrite and hydrochloric acid convert menthone into nitrosomenthone and *menthoximic acid*, melting at  $98^\circ$ . This is the oxime of oxomenthylic acid (B. 29, 27). Sodium and amyl formate change menthone to *oxymethylene menthone*, boiling at  $121^\circ$  (12 mm.). See B. 29, 1599, for the condensation of menthone with aldehydes.

l-Menthoxime melts at  $59^\circ$  and boils at  $250^\circ$ ;  $[\alpha]_D = -42^\circ$ . When it is treated with  $PCl_5$  in chloroform, or with acetic anhydride, or concentrated sulphuric acid, it becomes iso-l-menthoxime, melting at  $119^\circ$  and boiling at  $295^\circ$ ;  $[\alpha]_D = -52.25^\circ$ .  $P_2O_5$  converts both oximes into menthonitrile,  $C_9H_{17}CN$ , boiling at  $225^\circ$ , which boiling sodium alcoholate changes to menthoamide,  $C_9H_{17}CO \cdot NH_2$ , melting at  $105^\circ$ , and liquid menthoic acid,  $C_9H_{17} \cdot CO_2H$ .

**Tetrahydrocarvone**,  $CH_3 \cdot CH \cdot \begin{smallmatrix} CO \cdot CH_2 \\ CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \end{smallmatrix} > CH \cdot CH(CH_3)_2$  (constitution, see *carvomenthene*, p. 313), with sp. gr. 0.904 ( $20^\circ$ ),  $n_D = 1.45539$ , is produced in the oxidation of tetrahydrocarveol (p. 314). The oxime melts at  $104^\circ$ , the *a-isoxime* at  $51^\circ$ .  $\beta$ -Isoxime melts at  $104^\circ$ . The semicarbazone melts at  $174^\circ$  (A. 277, 133; 286, 107; B. 26, 822). When oxidized with potassium permanganate or treated with amyl nitrite and hydrochloric acid, tetrahydrocarvone is decomposed like menthone with the production of an acid,  $CH_3 \cdot CO \begin{smallmatrix} HOOC-CH_2 \\ CH_2-CH_2 \end{smallmatrix} > CH \cdot C_2H_5$ ,  $\beta$ -isopropyl- $\delta$ -acetyl valeric acid,

isomeric with oxomenthyllic acid. Energetic oxidation produces isopropyl succinic acid (B. 29, 27).

Thujamenthone, boiling at 208°, with sp. gr. 0.891,  $n_D = 1.44708$  (20°), results from the oxidation of thujamenthol (B. 28, 1959).

(6) Ketomenthenes,  $C_{10}H_{16}O$ , occur to a certain extent in nature, others are produced by the oxidation of the corresponding alcohols. They contain one double union.

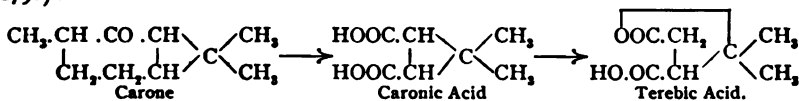
d- and l-Dihydrocarvone,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagup \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{C} = \text{CH} \begin{array}{c} \diagdown \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CO} \\ \diagup \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$ , boiling at 221°,

with sp. gr. 0.928 (19°),  $n_D = 1.47174$ , are obtained from the corresponding dihydrocarveols. The oximes melt at 88°, and unite to the inactive [d + l]-oxime, melting at 115°. Boiling ferric chloride converts dihydrocarvone into carvacrol—compare carvenone and carone. Oxidation with potassium permanganate and afterward with chromic acid changes it to 2,5-methyl acetyl cyclohexanone (p. 316 and B. 28, 2147, 2704).

Carvenone, Carveol, boiling at 232°, with sp. gr. 0.927,  $n_D = 1.4822$ , is produced together with cymene when dioxyterpineol, melting at 121°, is digested with dilute sulphuric acid; also from dihydrocarvone with sulphuric acid (A. 286, 129). Its oxime melts at 91°, the semicarbazone at 202°. It resembles isothujone very much (B. 28, 1955).

Dihydroeucarvone, boiling at 87° (14 mm.), is obtained from dihydroeucarveol (p. 316) (B. 28, 646). The following ketones, carone and thujone, isomeric with the ketomenthenes, show the behavior of saturated ketones; hence it is assumed that double rings are present in them as in camphene and pinene.

Carone boils at 210°, being at the same time rearranged into carvenone. It results on treating dihydrocarvone hydrobromide with alcoholic potash. It reverts to dihydrocarvone hydrobromide again through the action of hydrobromic acid; whereas sulphuric acid changes it to oxytetrahydrocarvone. Carone is relatively stable toward potassium permanganate, which first attacks it at the water-bath temperature, forming caronic acid,  $C_7H_{10}O_4$ , cis- melting at 175° (the anhydride melting at 55°), and trans- melting at 212°. We thus have a cis- and trans- modification of the acid, which would prove caronic acid to be an analogue of the trimethylenedicarboxylic acids. It is very probably dimethyl trimethylene-1,2-dicarboxylic acid; then in carone there would be a combined tri- and hexamethylene ring. Caronic acid is very stable; hydrobromic acid alone decomposes it readily and converts it into the isomeric terebic acid (p. 324) (B. 29, 2796):

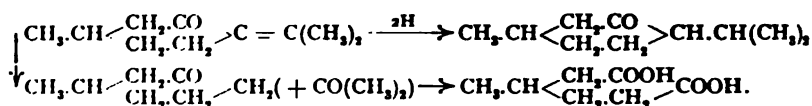


Thujone, Tanacetone,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}$  (?) (compare the camphor formulas, p. 328), boiling at 200°, with sp. gr. 0.917 and  $n_D = 1.4511$ , occurs in the oil from *Tanacetum vulgare*, in that of worm-wood, in thuja-oil, oil of absinthe, and in that of *Artemisia Barbellieri*. Potassium permanganate oxidizes thujone to  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -thujaketone carboxylic acids, melting at 74° and 78°. Upon the application of heat the  $\alpha$ -acid is changed to the  $\beta$ -form, which probably has the constitution  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C}[\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2] \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{COOH}$ , because upon oxidation it first passes into a diketone,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , and then into  $\omega$ -dimethyl levulinic acid; compare upon this point, as well as in regard to the constitution of thujone, isothujone and carvotanacetone (B. 30, 423, 429; 29, 885). Alcoholic sulphuric acid converts thujone into isothujone. When heated to 280° it is converted into carvotanacetone (B. 28, 1959). Its oxime, melting at 54°, is changed to carvacrylamine (B. 30, 325) by alcoholic sulphuric acid.

Isothujone boils at 231°; sp. gr. 0.927, with  $n_D = 1.4822$ . Formation—see thujone. Its oxime melts at 119°. The  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -semicarbazones melt at 208° and 148° (B. 28, 1955).

Carvotanacetone boils at 228°; sp. gr. 0.932 (21°), with  $n_D = 1.47926$ . Formation—see thujone. Its oxime melts at 119°. The semicarbazone melts at 177° (B. 28, 1959).

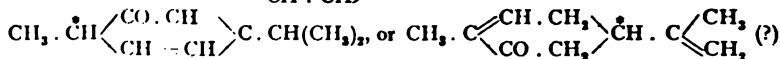
**Pulegone**,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} > \text{C} = \text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , boils at  $221^\circ$ ; sp. gr. 0.936, with  $n_D = 1.4846$ . It is present in the ethereal oils from *Mentha pulegium* and *Hedeoma pulegoides*, which occur in commerce under the name *polei-oils*. The addition of hydrogen to pulegone produces menthene.  $\beta$ -Methyl adipic acid and acetone are produced by its oxidation, while it splits, upon heating with anhydrous formic acid, into acetone and 3-methyl hexanone, which is also oxidized to  $\beta$ -methyl adipic acid (A. 289, 337):



When citronellal is condensed with acetic anhydride it yields a secondary cyclic alcohol—**isopulegone**—which is very similar to pulegone, and by hydrolytic decomposition yields 3-methyl-cyclohexanone (B. 30, 22). Isopulegone is reconverted into pulegone by long shaking with a baryta solution.

(c) **Menthadiën Ketones, Ketodihydro-p-cymenes**,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}\text{O}$ .—The most important member of this group is **carvone**, formerly called *carvol*. Its importance is due to its intimate relationship to carvacrol and limonene, which are isomeric with it. Carvone is known in three modifications, the d-, l-, and [d + l]-.

**d-Carvone**,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix} > \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$  (B. 28, 31), or



(B. 28, 2145),  $[\alpha]_D = +62^\circ$ , boiling at  $225^\circ$ , occurs in oil of cumin and in dill-oil. When heated with potassium hydroxide or phosphoric acid it changes to isomeric carvacrol or 2-methyl-5-isopropyl-oxybenzene; hence it is assumed that in carvone the CO-group, like the OH-group in carvacrol, is in the ortho-position with reference to the methyl group. Reduction changes it to dihydrocarveol (p. 316), while ammonium formate converts it into dihydrocarvylamine (p. 317). Potassium permanganate oxidizes carvone to *oxyterpenylic acid*,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6$ , which easily changes to a dilactone,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_4$ , melting at  $129^\circ$  (B. 27, 3333; 28, 2148). The carvones combine with hydrogen sulphide, hydrogen chloride, hydrogen bromide, and bromine (B. 28, R. 548).

**l-Carvone**,  $[\alpha]_D = -62^\circ$ , boiling at  $225^\circ$ , occurs in curomoji oil (B. 24, 81). It is obtained pure by distilling its hydrogen sulphide compound, melting at  $187^\circ$ , with caustic potash.

**[d + l]-Carvone**, boiling at  $225^\circ$ , is formed on mixing d- and l-carvone, as well as by oxidizing carveol methyl ether (p. 317). Formation from terpineol, B. 29, R. 587.

The three carvones are linked through the three carvoximes to the three corresponding limonenes. The carvoximes are prepared not only by the action of hydroxylamine upon the carvones, but also upon boiling the limonene nitrosochlorides with alcoholic potash. d-Carvone and l-limonene correspond on the one side to each other, while on the other l-carvone and d-limonene correspond, inasmuch as l-limonene nitrosochloride yields d-carvoxime, and d-limonene nitrosochloride l-carvoxime.

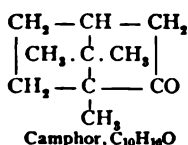
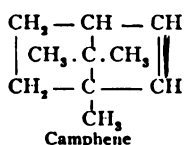
**d-Carvoxime**,  $[\alpha]_D = +39.71^\circ$ , and **l-Carvoxime**,  $[\alpha]_D = -39.34^\circ$ , melt at  $72^\circ$ . **[d + l]-Carvoxime** melts at  $33^\circ$  and is obtained from dipentene nitroschloride (p. 312). Concentrated sulphuric acid rearranges carvoxime to p-amidothymol (compare p. 70, rearrangement of  $\beta$ -phenylhydroxylamine to p-amidophenol, A. 279, 366).

**Eucarvone**,  $C_{10}H_{16}O$ , boiling at  $104^\circ$  (25 mm.), with sp. gr. 0.948 ( $20^\circ$ ), results on treating carvone hydrobromide with alcoholic potash, and with methyl alcoholic potash at a definite temperature forms a deep-blue, unstable color. The *oxime* melts at  $106^\circ$ . The *semicarbazone*,  $C_{10}H_{14} : N \cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot NH_2$ , melts at  $184^\circ$ . The reduction of eucarvone produces dihydroeucarveol (p. 316); see B. 29, 18, for its oxidation.

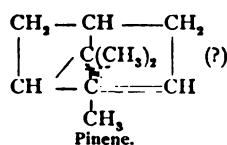
**Isocarvone**,  $C_{10}H_{16}O$ , boiling at  $222-224^\circ$ , with sp. gr. 0.989 ( $19^\circ$ ),  $n_D = 1.5067$ , results from the oxidation of isocarveol (p. 317). Its *oxime* melts at  $98^\circ$ .

### C. CAMPHAN GROUP.

Camphor is the most important derivative of this group. Brecht considers it to be the ketone of a hexahydrobenzene in which two carbon atoms, occupying the p-position, are linked to each other by the group  $CH_2 \cdot \dot{C} \cdot CH_3$ . To one of these carbon atoms there is also attached a methyl group. It would, therefore, be necessary to assume that in the hydrocarbons closely allied to camphor there was probably a similar carbon skeleton present:

Camphor,  $C_{10}H_{16}O$ 

Camphene



Pinene.

Fenchone is very much like camphor. Hence, fenchene, derived from fenchone, will be classed with camphene and pinene.

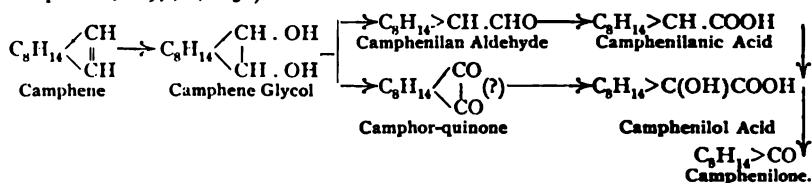
### 1. HYDROCARBONS.

**Camphene**,  $C_{10}H_{16}$  (Constitution, see above), melting at  $48^\circ$  ( $53^\circ$ ) and boiling at  $160^\circ$ ,  $n_D = 1.45514$  ( $54^\circ$ ), is the only known *solid* terpene. It is known in a d-, l-, and an optically inactive modification; these are similar in chemical deportment. Camphene has been found, by a rearrangement, in isoborneol, in the oil from *Andropogon nardus*, and in camphor oil (B. 27, R. 163). It is obtained (1) from borneol by the action of potassium bisulphate at  $200^\circ$ ; (2) by the action of  $ZnCl_2$  or dilute sulphuric acid upon isoborneol; (3) when sodium acetate and glacial acetic acid at  $200^\circ$  act upon pinene hydrochloride; and (4) on digesting bornyl chloride (p. 325) with aniline.

**Camphene Hydrochloride**,  $C_{10}H_{17}Cl$ , melting at  $149-151^\circ$ , is produced when HCl is conducted into an alcoholic camphene solution. It is identical with the isobornyl chloride obtained from isoborneol (p. 325).

**Camphene Dibromide**,  $C_{10}H_{16}Br_2$ , melting at  $89^\circ$ , together with liquid bromcamphene,  $C_{10}H_{16}Br$  (B. 29, 544, 697, 900), is formed when bromine in petroleum ether acts upon camphene. Camphene, treated with glacial acetic acid and concentrated sulphuric acid, yields *isoborneol acetate*.

Chromyl chloride in carbon bisulphide solution changes camphene to the compound  $C_{10}H_{16} \cdot 2CrO_2Cl_2$ . Water decomposes this body, with the formation of an aldehyde—*camphenilan aldehyde*,  $C_{10}H_{14}O$ , melting at  $70^\circ$  and boiling at  $96^\circ$  (14 mm.). The oxidation of this aldehyde gives rise to two isomeric *camphenilanic acids*,  $C_{10}H_{14}O_2$ , melting at  $65^\circ$  and  $118^\circ$ , which can be changed through the corresponding  *$\alpha$ -brom-acid* into *oxycamphenilanic acid*, camphenilol acid,  $C_{10}H_{14}O_3$ , melting at  $171^\circ$ . This latter acid is also formed when camphene is oxidized with potassium permanganate. Its further oxidation causes the elimination of carbon dioxide and the formation of a ketone, **Camphenilon**,  $C_{10}H_{14}O$ , melting at  $35^\circ$  and boiling at  $81^\circ$  (12 mm.). This is the lower ring-homologue of camphor (p. 326); it resembles the latter in odor and in chemical behavior. The camphenilan aldehyde and camphenilol-acid very probably owe their production to a camphene glycol (p. 325) and camphorquinone, formed at the first, but which sustain rearrangements like those of pinacone and benzilic acid. This change is represented in the following formulas (privately communicated by J. Bredt and Jagelki; compare C., 1897; 1, 1056):



Dilute nitric acid converts camphene into tribasic **Carboxyl-spocamphoric Acid**, *Campho-acid*,  $C_7H_{11}(CO_2H)_3$ , melting at  $196^\circ$ ; when heated this becomes dibasic spocamphoric acid (p. 322). Chromic acid oxidizes camphene to camphor.

**Dihydrocamphene**,  $C_{10}H_{16}$ , melting at  $155^\circ$  and boiling at  $159^\circ$ , is formed when sodium and alcohol act upon l-pinene hydrochloride and d-bornyl chloride. It is optically inactive, and sublimes with ease (v. Rosenberg, private communication).

**Pinene**,  $C_{10}H_{16}$  (see above for constitution), boiling at  $155^\circ$ , with sp. gr. 0.858 ( $20^\circ$ ),  $n_D = 1.46553$  ( $21^\circ$ ), is the chief ingredient of the turpentine oils obtained from the different varieties of pine. It also occurs in many other ethereal oils—eucalyptus, juniper-berry, sage, etc.

**Turpentine Oil.**—Turpentine, the resinous juice exuding from various *Coniferae*, consists of a solution of resins in turpentine oil which distills with steam, while the resin (colophony) remains behind. Turpentine oil is a colorless liquid, boiling at  $158$ – $160^\circ$ , with sp. gr. equaling 0.856–0.87. Its peculiar odor is due to the aldehyde-like oxidation products (B. 29, R. 871) produced by the action of sunlight.

It is almost insoluble in water, but is miscible with absolute alcohol and ether. It dissolves sulphur, phosphorus, and caoutchouc, and serves for the preparation of varnishes and oil-colors.

The turpentine oils, according to their origin, are distinguished by different rotatory power.

When turpentine is conducted through tubes heated to redness, isoprene (p. 309), toluene, m-xylene, naphthalene, anthracene, methyl anthracene, phenanthrene, etc., are produced. Heated with iodine, turpentine oil yields m-xylene, little p-xylene and cymene, pseudocumene, mesitylene, durene, and polyterpenes.

d-Pinene is obtained by the fractional distillation of American oil of turpentine, and l-Pinene from French oil of turpentine. They are, however, not chemically pure. If pinene nitrosocchloride, easily obtained pure, be prepared from these modifications, and be then transposed with aniline, chemically pure *inactive pinene* will be obtained. Its properties will be similar to those above indicated.

Pinene contains *one* double linkage. It unites with 2Cl or 2Br, forming compounds, which change on heating to p-cymene and halogen hydrides.

The *dibromide* crystallizes and melts at 170°. Zinc-dust converts it into a terpene, melting at 65°, and isomeric with pinene and camphene; it apparently does not contain a double linkage (C. 1897, 1, 1055). Pinene can be changed to camphene by means of concentrated sulphuric acid, or through its haloid acid addition products. It becomes dipentene when heated to 250–270°. Moist haloid acids convert pinene into dipentene dihydrohaloids (p. 311). Terpene hydrate is probably an intermediate product; it is formed when dilute nitric acid or sulphuric acid acts upon pinene.

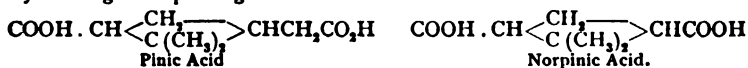
**d-Pinene Hydrochloride**, *Artificial Camphor*,  $C_{10}H_{17}Cl$ , melting at 125° and boiling at 208°, is formed on conducting dry hydrochloric acid gas into well-cooled pinene. It is a white crystalline mass, with an odor like that of camphor. The hydrochloride from d-pinene is optically inactive, while the l-pinene hydrochloride is lævo-rotatory  $[\alpha]_D = -30^\circ$ . **Pinene Hydrobromide** melts at 40° (A. 227, 282). Camphene results from the splitting-off of hydrogen chloride or bromide.

**Pinene Nitrosochloride**, melting at 103°, is obtained by means of nitrosyl chloride, or amyl nitrite, glacial acetic acid, and hydrochloric acid. Hydrogen chloride in ether, when allowed to stand in contact with it, produces, just like limonene nitrosochloride (p. 311), hydrochlorcarboxime (B. 29, 12). **Pinene Nitrosobromide** melts at 92°. The bases readily change the pinene nitrosobromides into inactive nitrolamines. Sodium and alcohol reduce pinene nitrosochloride to Nitrosopinene,  $C_{10}H_{14} : N.OH$ , melting at 132° (B. 28, 646), which yields pinylamine,  $C_{10}H_{15} \cdot NH_2$ , by the action of zinc-dust and acetic acid.

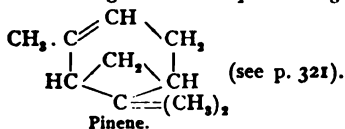
The oxidation products of pinene have been studied quite thoroughly. Turpentine exposed to the air absorbs oxygen gradually, with the production of ozone. It resinifies at the same time with the formation of formic acid, acetic acid, and cymene in slight amount. See p. 325 for the production of pinol hydrate with the assistance of sunlight. Energetic oxidants, like nitric acid, produce *terebic acid* (p. 324), p-toluic acid, terephthalic acid, etc. *Terpenylic acid* is the chief product when the chromic acid mixture is the oxidant.

When pinene is carefully oxidized with potassium permanganate, pinene glycol is the immediate result, but the chief product resulting therefrom is **Pinonic Acid**,  $C_{10}H_{16}O_3$ , melting at 104° and boiling at 187° (15 mm.). It is a ketone-carboxylic acid. Other products are pinoyl formic acid,  $C_{10}H_{14}O_4$ , melting at 79°, a ketone-dicarboxylic acid, and nopic acid,  $C_{10}H_{16}O_3$ , melting at 127°, which sulphuric acid converts into dihydrocuminic acid (B. 29, 1923).

Pinonic acid is readily attacked. Bromine and alkali, or dilute nitric acid, oxidize it to the very stable pinic acid,  $C_9H_{14}O_4$ , melting at 102°. The latter acid, by means of the  $\alpha$ -brom- and  $\alpha$ -oxypinic acids, and oxidation of the last, give rise to norpinic acid,  $C_{10}H_{14}O_4$ , melting at 174°. The last two very stable acids very probably contain a tetramethylene ring corresponding to the formulas:



Baeyer, therefore, concurring with Wagner, assumes that in pinonic acid and pinene there is present a four-membered ring—a so-called *picean ring* (B. 29, 2776):



The breaking-down of pinonic acid and pinoyl formic acid has also been attained in two other ways:

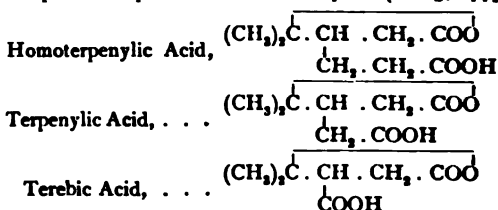
(1) Chromic acid changes pinonic acid to ketoisocamphoric acid,  $C_{10}H_{14}O_5$ , which is produced by the oxidation of campholenic acid (p. 328). Keto-isocamphoric acid can be broken down into isocamphoronic acid,  $C_9H_{16}O_6$ , and further into dimethyltricarballic acid,  $\text{COOH} \cdot \text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}(\text{COOH})\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$ . The constitution of the latter has been proved by the decomposition of the corresponding oxy-acid into dimethyl succinic acid and oxalic acid when it is fused with caustic potash (compare oxycamphoronic acid, p. 333). The constitutional formulas of ketoisocamphoric acid, isocamphoronic

acid, and, therefore, that of pinonic acid, are at present subjects of controversy (see B. 29, 2779, 3027).

(2) When pinonic acid is heated with acids there occurs an intermediate hydrolytic decomposition, followed by a rearrangement into Homoterpenylic Methyl Ketone,

[*Methoethylheptanonolide*], 
$$\begin{array}{c} (\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COO} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$$
, a substance which we have already learned was a decomposition product of terpinol (p. 316). Pinoylformic acid is

similarly rearranged to Homoterpenoylformic Acid, 
$$\begin{array}{c} (\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COO} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{COOH} \end{array}$$
. These rearrangement products upon further oxidation yield (B. 29, 2775):



**Terebic Acid**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{16}\text{O}_4$ , melting at  $175^\circ$ , was first obtained by oxidizing turpentine oil with nitric acid; it is also produced in the oxidation of terpenylic acid with potassium permanganate (B. 29, 933). It behaves analogously to the paraconic acids. When heated it loses carbon dioxide and becomes *pyroterebic acid*,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C} : \text{CHCH}_2\text{COOH}$ , together with isocapro lactone and teraconic acid,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C} : \text{C}(\text{COOH})\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , from which it can be re-formed by digestion with mineral acids. Baryta-water converts terebic acid into the crystallizing barium salt of diaterbic acid or oxyisopropyl-succinic acid. See p. 319 for the formation of terebic acid from caronic acid.

**Terpenylic Acid**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{16}\text{O}_4$ , melts at  $90^\circ$  when anhydrous. It is obtained by oxidizing turpentine oil with a chromic acid mixture and homoterpenylic acid with nitric acid (B. 29, 2789). Upon distillation it yields **Teracrylic Acid**,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C} : \text{CH}(\text{CH}_2) \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$ . Terpenylic acid, by reduction, becomes  *$\beta$ -isopropylglutaric acid* (see B. 29, 920, 2621). See p. 320 for *oxyterpenylic acid*.

**Homoterpenylic Acid**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{16}\text{O}_4$ , melting at  $102^\circ$ , results when homoterpenylformic acid is oxidized with nitric acid or with lead oxide (B. 29, 1916).

The oxidation of pinene to pinonic acid and the hydrolytic rearrangement of the latter to homoterpenylic methyl ketone is certainly to be regarded as the reverse of the processes which take place in the hydrolytic rearrangement of pinene into terpine hydrate, terpineol (p. 316), and the oxidizing decomposition of the latter into homoterpenylic methyl ketone (above).

**Fenchene**,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}$ , boiling at  $158\text{--}160^\circ$ , with sp. gr. 0.864,  $n_D = 1.469$ , is optically inactive, and is formed on digesting fenchyl alcohol with potassium sulphate, or fenchyl chloride with aniline (A. 284, 333). Fenchene can take up two bromine atoms. It is only attacked by nitric acid when heat is applied.

**Tetrahydrofenchene**,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{20}$ , boiling at  $160\text{--}165^\circ$ , with sp. gr. 0.7945 ( $22^\circ$ ),  $n_D = 1.4370$ , is produced when fenchone and fenchyl alcohol are heated with hydriodic acid.

**Dihydrofencholene**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{18}$ —see fencholenic acid, p. 334.

2. **Alcohols**.—A. *Monacid Alcohols*: **Borneo Camphor**, **Borneol**, **Camphol**,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{17}\text{OH}$ , melting at  $203^\circ$  and boiling at  $212^\circ$ , occurs in three modifications in nature. d-Borneol is found in *Dryobalanops camphora*, a tree growing in Borneo and Sumatra, also in rosemary oil. l-Borneol and inactive borneol are present in the so-called baldrianic camphor. Many wood-spines contain it in the form of a fatty acid ester, more especially the acetic ester.

Borneol is very similar to Japan camphor, but has an odor at the same time resembling that of pepper. It sublimes very readily. d- and l-Borneol are formed simultaneously from camphor by reduction with sodium and alcohol (A. 230, 225). Nitric acid oxidizes them to camphor. When borneol is heated with potassium bisulphate it breaks down into water and camphene (p. 321).

The *methyl ether* boils at 194° and the *ethyl ether* at 204° (B. 24, 3713). The *acetyl ester* melts at 29°. It consists of rhombic, hemihedral forms. It boils at 98° (10 mm.),  $n_D = 1.46635$ ,  $[\alpha]_D = +38^\circ 20'$ .

**Bornyl Chloride** melts at 148°. It results on treating borneol with  $\text{PCl}_5$ . Camphene is formed when it splits off hydrochloric acid.

**Isoborneol**,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{17}\text{OH}$ , melting at 212°, is even more volatile than borneol. It is produced when its acetate is saponified with alcoholic potash.

Its *acetate*, boiling at 107° (13 mm.), results upon digesting camphene and glacial acetic acid with concentrated sulphuric acid at 50–60° (D. R. P., 67255) (B. 27, R. 102).

**Camphol Alcohol**,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}\text{OH}$ , boiling at 203°, is produced when campholamine hydrochloride (p. 326) is acted upon with silver nitrite (B. 27, R. 126).

**Camphel Alcohol**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{17}\text{OH}$ , melting at 25° and boiling at 179°, results from the interaction of camphelamine hydrochloride (p. 326) and silver nitrite. It is a tertiary alcohol. It readily decomposes into water and the hydrocarbon,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{16}$  (B. 27, R. 126).

**Fenchyl Alcohol**,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{17}\text{OH}$ , melting at 45° and boiling at 201°, with sp. gr. 0.933, is produced in two modifications: by the reduction of d- and l-fenchone (p. 333). It has a penetrating and very disagreeable odor. d-Fenchyl alcohol,  $[\alpha]_D = +10^\circ 36'$ , is obtained from l-fenchone, and l-fenchyl alcohol,  $[\alpha]_D = -10^\circ 35'$ , from d-fenchone (A. 284, 331). See also tetrahydrofenchol.

**Fenchyl Chloride**,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{17}\text{Cl}$ , boiling at 85° (14 mm.), is produced when phosphorus pentachloride acts upon fenchyl alcohol. See fenchene.

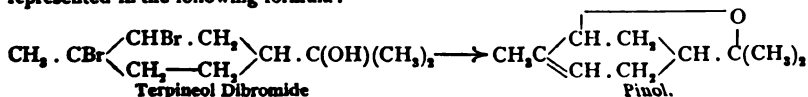
**Isfencholen Alcohol**,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{17}\text{OH}$ , boiling at 218°, with sp. gr. 0.927 (20°),  $n_D = 1.476$ , is produced when alcohol and sodium act upon fencholen amide (p. 333) (A. 284, 337). It is readily attacked by potassium permanganate. When heated with dilute sulphuric acid it changes to Fencholenol,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}\text{O}$ , boiling at 183°, with sp. gr. 0.925 (20°),  $n_D = 1.46108$ . This compound, with the exception of the boiling point, can not be distinguished from cineol.

**B. Polyacid Alcohols:** **Camphene Glycol**,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}(\text{OH})_2$ , melting at 192° and obtained from camphene by action of  $\text{KMnO}_4$  (B. 23, 2311), is converted by  $\text{HI}$  into an oxide isomeric with camphor (probably camphenilaldehyde, p. 322).

**Pinene Glycol**,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}(\text{OH})_2$ , boiling at 145–147° (14 mm.), and obtained from pinene with  $\text{KMnO}_4$  by the addition of hydroxyl groups to the unsaturated union, is converted by hydrochloric acid into pinol (B. 27, 2270).

**Pinol Hydrate**, *Sobrerol*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}(\text{OH})_2$ , is known in three modifications. d-Pinol Hydrate, melting at 150°,  $[\alpha]_D = +150^\circ$ , and l-Pinol Hydrate, melting at 150°,  $[\alpha]_D = -150^\circ$ , are produced when dextro- and lævo-turpentine oil are oxidized in the air on exposure to sunlight. [d + l]-Pinol hydrate results on treating pinol with hydrobromic acid and alkali, as well as upon mixing equimolecular quantities of d- and l-pinol hydrates. Pinol hydrate is an unsaturated compound. Bromine converts it into a *dibromide*, melting at 131°. Potassium permanganate changes it to a tetra-acid alcohol, *Sobreritrite*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{14}(\text{OH})_4$ , melting at 156° (B. 29, 1195, R. 587).

**Pinol**, [d + l]-*Sobrerone*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}\text{O}$ , boiling at 183°, with sp. gr. 0.953 (20°),  $n_D = 1.46949$ , is optically inactive. It is formed when the three pinol hydrates are treated with dilute sulphuric acid, and from the dibromide of terpineol (p. 316) by the splitting-off of  $2\text{HBr}$ . It is as indifferent as cineol (p. 315) toward hydroxylamine, phenylhydrazine, and acid chlorides. This, as well as its formation from terpineol dibromide, is represented in the following formula:



Pinol hydrate is a hydrate corresponding to this oxide, an oxyterpineol, which results from pinene by the rupture of the picean ring (p. 323).

Pinol Dibromide,  $C_{10}H_{16}Br_2O$ , melting at  $94^\circ$  and boiling at  $143^\circ$  (11 mm.), is converted by sodium or alcoholic potash into pinol. Formic acid reduces it to cymene (A. 268, 225). Pinol nitroschloride,  $C_{10}H_{16}O \cdot NOCl$ , melting at  $103^\circ$ , forms nitrolamines with bases. Pinol Glycol,  $C_{10}H_{18}O(OH)_2$ , melting at  $125^\circ$ , is obtained from pinol dibromide with silver oxide or lead hydroxide, or from its diacetate, melting at  $97^\circ$  (A. 268, 223). An apparently isomeric glycol is produced in the oxidation of pinol with  $KMnO_4$  (B. 28, 2710).

Camphor Pinacone,  $C_{10}H_{16}O_2$ , melting at  $176^\circ$ , is formed, along with borneol, in the reduction of camphor (B. 27, 2348; see also B. 29, R. 675).

3. Amines have been obtained by the reduction of nitrosopinenes, oximes, and nitriles, as well as ketones with ammonium formate.

Bornylamine,  $C_{10}H_{17} \cdot NH_2$ , melts at  $159^\circ$  and boils at  $199^\circ$ . The formyl compound is produced when camphor is heated with ammonium formate, and the base itself by the reduction of camphoroxime with alcohol and sodium. Bornylamine possesses an odor like that of camphor and piperidine. Formyl- and Acetyl-bornylamine melt at  $61^\circ$  and  $141^\circ$ . When heated to  $200$ – $210^\circ$  with acetic anhydride they break down, with the production of camphene (A. 269, 347). Camphylamine,  $C_9H_{11} \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH_2$ , boiling at  $194$ – $196^\circ$ , is produced when the nitrile of campholenic acid is reduced. The benzoyl compound melts at  $77^\circ$  (B. 20, 485; 21, 1128).

Campholamine,  $C_{10}H_{19} \cdot NH_2$ , and Camphelamine,  $C_9H_{11}NH_2$ ,—see campholic acid (p. 328).

Fenchylamine and fencholenamine sustain the same relation to each other that we observed in bornylamine and camphylamine.

Fenchylamine,  $C_{10}H_{17}NH_2$ , boiling at  $195^\circ$ , with sp. gr. 0.9095 ( $22^\circ$ ), is known in three modifications, produced from the corresponding fenchones on heating them with ammonium carbonate, or by reducing the fenchone oximes. d-Fenchylamine,  $[a]_D^{20} = -24.89^\circ$ , is obtained from d-fenchone. The optical rotatory power of a series of derivatives has been studied:

Formyl-, Acetyl-, Propionyl-, Butyryl Fenchylamines,  $[a]_D = -36.56^\circ$ ,  $-46.62^\circ$ ,  $-53.16^\circ$ ,  $53.11^\circ$  (A. 276, 317).

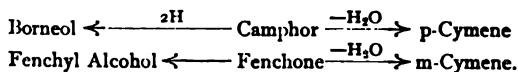
Fencholenamine,  $C_9H_{15} \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH_2$ , boiling at  $110$ – $115^\circ$  (21–24 mm.), results from the reduction of the nitrile of fencholenic acid (A. 263, 138).

Pinyllamine,  $C_{10}H_{15} \cdot NH_2$ , boiling at  $207^\circ$  (760 mm.),  $98^\circ$  (20 mm.), with 0.943, is produced in the reduction of nitrosopinene (p. 323) (A. 268, 197). Nitrous acid converts pinyllamine into isocarveol (p. 317), a secondary alcohol.

Amidoterebenthene,  $C_{10}H_{15} \cdot NH_2$ , boiling at  $197$ – $200^\circ$  (760 mm.), is formed in the reduction of the decomposable nitroterebenthene, the product obtained when nitrous acid acts upon oil of turpentine. Its hydrochloride,  $[a]_D = -48.5^\circ$ , is laevo-rotatory, it being immaterial whether we proceed from the dextro- or laevo-rotatory turpentine oil (B. 22, R. 108; 24, R. 204).

4. Ketones.—Various transformation products of the ketones,  $C_{10}H_{16}O$ , camphor and fenchone, have been treated in the preceding sections. These ketones are similar in their chemical behavior, but are apparently different in constitution. By reduction they yield borneol and fenchyl alcohol, from which they are conversely again obtained by oxidation.

Phosphoric anhydride dehydrates them, and thus camphor yields p-cymene; and fenchone, m-cymene:



Camphor is known in two optically active and one optically inactive modification, while fenchone is known in two optically active forms.

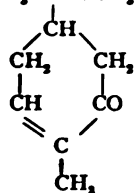
**d-Camphor, Common Camphor, Japan Camphor**,  $C_{10}H_{16}O$ , melting at  $175^\circ$  and boiling at  $204^\circ$ , with  $[\alpha]_D = +44.22^\circ$  in alcohol (A. 250, 352), is found in the camphor tree (*Laurus camphora*). It is obtained by distillation with steam and sublimation. It is prepared artificially by oxidizing borneol with nitric acid and camphene with chromic acid. It is a colorless, transparent mass, crystallizes from alcohol, and sublimes in shining prisms of sp. gr. 0.985. It is very volatile, and is applied therapeutically. Its alcoholic solution is dextro-rotatory. Camphor yields pure cymene (p. 56) if distilled with  $P_2O_5$ , and on boiling with iodine forms carvacrol,  $C_{10}H_{14}O$  (p. 145). When boiled with nitric acid it yields different acids, chiefly camphoric and camphoronic acids. Upon reduction it passes into borneol (p. 324).

**l-Camphor, Matricaria Camphor**, is contained in the oil of *Matricaria Parthenium*. It resembles d-camphor even to the rotatory power  $[\alpha]_D = -44.22^\circ$ . It yields l-camphoric acid upon oxidation.

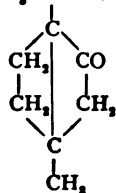
(d + l)-Camphor, melting at  $178.6^\circ$ , is produced on mixing d- and l-camphors, and by the oxidation of i-borneol and i-camphene with chromic acid (B. 12, 1756).

**Constitution of Camphor.**—The camphor formula (1) proposed by Kekulé (1873) satisfactorily accounted for the change of camphor into p-cymene and carvacrol. However, the ready anhydride formation of camphoric acid, which had led to a seven-membered ring, could not be brought by it into accord with the known experiences relating to the anhydride formation of aliphatic dicarboxylic acids. The lack of additive power also remained unexplained. The formulas of Kanonnikoff and Bredt explained these relations far better. In them the p-carbon atoms of the hexagon of camphor were brought in direct union. The anhydride formation of camphoric acid, thus made parallel with ethylene succinic acid, could be understood on the basis of this formula. Baeyer (1893) showed that as camphoric anhydride melted *higher* than its hydrate, it probably contained an  $\alpha$ -glutaric acid anhydride ring (A. 276, 265).

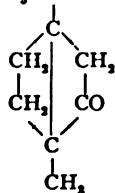
Camphoric acid is not the only oxidation product of camphor, for when it is further oxidized camphanic acid and camphoronic acid are produced. In the latter acid J. Bredt recognized  $\alpha,\beta$ -trimethyltricarballic acid, inasmuch as it decomposed, upon the application of heat, into trimethyl succinic anhydride, isobutyric acid, carbonic acid, water and carbon; whereas when camphoronic acid, the lactone of oxycamphoronic acid, obtained from it, is fused with caustic potash, trimethyl succinic acid and oxalic acid are produced very readily. Bredt concludes from this deportment that the carbon grouping of camphoronic acid, as well as that of trimethyl succinic acid, must be present in camphanic acid, camphoric acid, and camphor. The formula of Bredt (1893) may be imagined (B. 26, 3047) to have been evolved from that of Kekulé by rotating the isopropyl group about  $180^\circ$ , until it lies within the hexagon, and then its middle carbon atom is allowed to unite the two p-carbon atoms of the hexagon by the migration of an H atom and the dissolution of the double union:



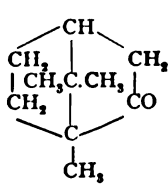
(Kekulé, 1873)



(Kanonnikoff, 1883)



(Bredt, 1884)

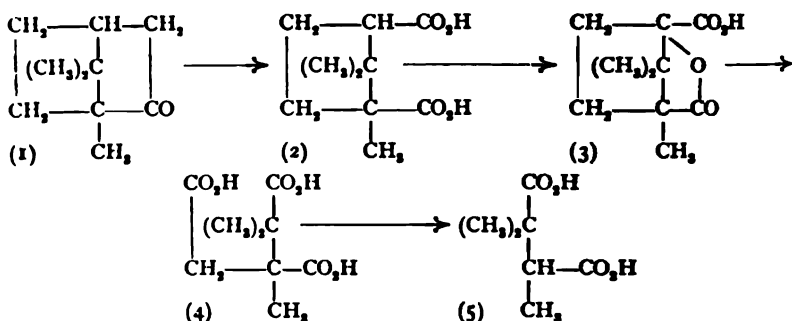


(Bredt, 1893).

The position of the CO-group is proved by the conversion of camphor into carvacrol (above).

The oxidation of camphor (1) to camphoric acid (2), camphanic acid (3), and campho-

ronic acid (4), as well as the decomposition of the latter into trimethyl succinic acid (5), also found among the oxidation products of camphor (B. 26, 2337), is represented in the following diagram :



The partial synthesis of camphor by the distillation of calcium homocamphorate harmonizes with this conception of the constitution of camphor (Ch. Z., 1895, 19, 1755).

New formulas for borneol, camphene, and many other derivatives closely related to camphor, can be deduced from the camphor formula.

**Transformation Products of Camphor.**—Chlorine and bromine convert camphor into mono- and disubstitution products. *α*- and *β*,*δ*-*Chlor-camphor* melt at 92° and 100°. *α*- and *β*-*Dichlor-camphor* melt at 93° and 77°, while *α*- and *β*-*Brom-camphor* melt at 70° and 61°. Consult C., 1897, 1, 601, for the action of sodium upon brom-camphor: Dicumphor, (C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>15</sub>O)<sub>2</sub>, etc.

PCl<sub>5</sub> converts camphor into **Camphor-dichloride** (A. 19, 259), melting at 155°.

Two *Chlornitrocumphors* (*α* and *β*) are produced when chlorkamphor is digested with nitric acid; the copper and zinc couple reduces them to *α*- and *β*-*nitrocumphor* (B. 22, R. 266; 23, R. 115; 29, R. 270).

See B. 28, R. 643; 29, R. 512, for the camphor-sulphonic acids and their transformation products.

**Camphoroxime**, C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>16</sub>:NOH, melts at 118° and boils at 240° (A. 259, 331). Its odor resembles that of camphor. See B. 29, R. 1107, for its preparation. Bornylamine is formed in its reduction (p. 326). *Camphorsemicarbazone*, C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>16</sub>:N.NH.CO.NH<sub>2</sub>, melts at 237° (B. 28, 2191).

**Camphorimine**, C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>16</sub>:NH,—see B. 29, 2807; C., 1897, 1, 814.

**Campholic Acid**, C<sub>9</sub>H<sub>17</sub>.CO<sub>2</sub>H, melting at 95°, is formed when camphor is heated with sodium in xylene (B. 28, R. 376), or from sodium-camphor at 288°. Boiling nitric acid oxidizes it to camphoric and camphoronic acids (B. 27, R. 752). The amide melts at 79°. The *nitrile* melts at 72° and boils at 218°. It yields *campholamine*, C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>19</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, melting at 210°, upon reduction. Bromine and caustic alkali change the amide to *Camphelylisocyanate*, boiling at 201°, from which *Camphelamine*, C<sub>9</sub>N<sub>11</sub>.NH<sub>2</sub>, melting at 43° and boiling at 175°, is obtained (B. 26, R. 21; 27, R. 126). **Isocampholic Acid**, B. 29, R. 356. The camphor-ring in camphoroxime can be very easily ruptured by mineral acids, the products being *α*- and *β*-campholene nitrile, isoamino-camphor, and dihydrocampholene lactone.

***α*-Campholenic Acid**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3-\text{CH}-\text{CH}_3 \\ | \qquad | \\ \text{CH} = \text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \\ | \qquad | \\ \text{C}-\text{CH}_2-\text{COOH} \end{array}$ , boils at 256°. Its sp. gr.

equals 0.992 (19°). It is optically active, *n*<sub>D</sub> = 1.47125. The *nitrile*, b. p. 226°, of this acid is produced with water exit when dilute sulphuric acid acts upon camphoroxime. The reduction of the nitrile produces *α*-*Camphylamine*, C<sub>9</sub>H<sub>17</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, boiling at 195°. Alcoholic potash saponifies it to *α*-*campholamide*, melting at 130°, and finally to the acid. The latter is oxidized by potassium permanganate to:

***α*-Dioxyhydrocampholenic Acid**, C<sub>9</sub>H<sub>15</sub>(OH)<sub>2</sub>.CO<sub>2</sub>H, melting at 144°, and a ketonic acid, **1-Pinonic Acid**, which affords decomposition products similar to those of

the like-named oxidation product of pinene (p. 324). Chromic acid oxidizes  $\alpha$ -campholen- or dihydrodioxy-campholenic acid to Isoketocamphoric Acid,  $C_{10}H_{16}O_5 = CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot C(CH_3)_2 \cdot CH(CH_2COOH)_2$  (?), and eventually to Isocamphoronic Acid,  $CO_2HC \cdot (CH_3)_2 \cdot CH(CH_2COOH)_2$  (?), m. p.  $167^\circ$ . Concentrated sulphuric acid, when warmed with the latter body, sets free  $CO_2$ , and terpenylic acid results (B. 29, 3006).

$\beta$ -Campholenic Acid, melting at  $52^\circ$  and boiling at  $245^\circ$ , is optically inactive. Its *nitrile*, boiling at  $220$ – $230^\circ$ , is produced in the action of stronger acids (concentrated HI) upon camphoroxime. It is reduced to  $\beta$ -camphylamine, melting at  $197^\circ$ , which may be saponified to an *amide*, melting at  $86^\circ$ . Potassium permanganate oxidizes  $\beta$ -campholenic acid to a dihydroxy-acid, melting at  $146^\circ$ , and with it an oily acid which readily changes to *isocamphorone*,  $C_{10}H_{14}O$ , boiling at  $217^\circ$ . Chromic acid oxidizes the  $\beta$ -acid to  $\gamma$ -acetylisocaproic acid,  $CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot C(CH_3)_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot COOH$ , melting at  $48^\circ$ . Further oxidation leads to a decomposition into  $\alpha$ -dimethylglutaric acid and  $\alpha$ -dimethylsuccinic acid. The same decomposition products are obtained from isocamphorone (B. 30, 242). The conversion of  $\beta$ -campholenic acid, when heated with bromine, into 1,3,4-xylyl-acetic acid (B. 29, R. 643) is peculiar.

**Dihydrocampholene Lactone**,  $\begin{array}{c} CH_2-CH=CH_2 \\ | \quad \quad \quad | \\ CH_2-C(CH_3)_2-O-CO \end{array}$ , melting at  $30^\circ$  and boiling at  $256^\circ$ , appears as the principal or the by-product in the decompositions of camphoroxime by strong acids, and may be obtained by acids from the two campholenic acids, as well as from isoaminocamphor. Chromic acid oxidizes it to oxydihydrocampholene lactone, melting at  $144^\circ$  (B. 30, 404).

**Isoamino-camphor**,  $C_{10}H_{17}ON$ , boiling at  $254^\circ$  (760 mm.),  $152^\circ$  (65 mm.), is formed along with the preceding bodies when stronger acids act upon camphoroxime, campholenamides, and nitriles. It apparently contains a primary amine group, and is very similar to the isomeric amido-camphor (p. 330). It changes quite readily to dihydrocampholenolactone. Compare B. 30, 324, for its constitution.

**Campholene**,  $\begin{array}{c} CH-CH(CH_3) \\ | \quad \quad \quad | \\ CH-CH(CH_3) \end{array} > C(CH_3)_2$  or  $\begin{array}{c} CH=CH(CH_3) \\ | \quad \quad \quad | \\ CH_2-CH(CH_3) \end{array} > C(CH_3)_2$  (?), boiling at  $134^\circ$ , is produced when  $\alpha$ - or, better,  $\beta$ -campholenic acid has been heated. Carbon dioxide is eliminated. It is, further, formed when  $P_2O_5$  acts upon the chloride of campholic acid. The *dibromide* melts at  $97^\circ$ . Campholene, heated with HI-acid to  $280^\circ$ , becomes hexahydro-pseudocumene, just as  $\beta$ -campholenic acid changes to xylyl-acetic acid (B. 30, 594), and camphoric acid to tetrahydroisoxylene (B. 26, 3053).

An apparently isomeric **Campholene**,  $C_9H_{16}$ , boiling at  $137^\circ$ , has been obtained together with carvacrol from chlor-camphor by the action of zinc chloride (B. 26, R. 492).

Nitrous acid, or sodium bisulphite and boiling dilute sulphuric acid, act upon isonitriso-camphor, and the product is *camphor-quinone*, which is also formed in the oxidation of camphocarboxylic acid (B. 27, 1447). **Camphor-quinone**,  $C_9H_{14} \begin{array}{c} \diagup CO \\ \diagdown CO \end{array}$ , resembles quinone and the  $\alpha$ -diketones. Its odor is peculiarly sweet. It volatilizes with aqueous vapor and sublimes at  $60^\circ$  in golden yellow needles that melt at  $198^\circ$  (A. 274, 71).

Zinc-dust and hydrochloric acid or aluminium amalgam reduce it to  $\alpha$ -Oxycamphor,  $C_9H_{14} \begin{array}{c} \diagup CH.OH \\ \diagdown CO \end{array}$ , melting at  $203$ – $205^\circ$ , which may be reoxidized to camphor-quinone. The latter, under the influence of various reagents, changes to derivatives of camphoric acid (compare B. 30, 657, 659).

**Isonitroso-camphor**,  $C_9H_{14} \begin{array}{c} \diagup CO \\ \diagdown C:N.OH \end{array}$ , is obtained by the action of amyl nitrite and sodium ethylate upon camphor. The compound melts at  $153^\circ$ . Concentrated sulphuric acid converts it into the imide of camphoric acid (B. 26, 241), while acetyl chloride,  $PCl_5$ , or soda and acetic anhydride change it to the mono-nitrile of camphoric acid (B. 29, R. 651). Zinc and dilute acids reduce it to amido-camphor (A. 274, 71).

**Camphor-dioximes**— $\alpha$ -dioxime, m. p.  $181^\circ$ ;  $\beta$ -dioxime, m. p.  $220^\circ$ —result on treat-

ing isonitroso-camphor with hydroxylamine acetate.  $\gamma$ -*Dioxime*, m. p.  $131^\circ$ , is made by treating isonitroso-camphor with free hydroxylamine (B. 26, 243). An isomeride of the camphor dioxime is—

**Pernitroso-camphor**,  $C_{10}H_{16}N_2O_3$ , melting at  $43^\circ$ , which results from the interaction of nitrous acid and camphoroxime, and changes, upon treatment with concentrated sulphuric acid, to **Isocamphor**,  $C_{10}H_{16}O$  (B. 29, R. 1106).

**Amido-camphor**,  $C_8H_{14}$   $\begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \\ \text{CH} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \\ \diagdown \\ \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix}$ , boiling at  $244^\circ$ , is produced when isonitroso-camphor is reduced. It is a paraffin-like mass; it has a fishy odor. Its *hydrochloride*, melting at  $224^\circ$ , acts similarly to, although not so powerfully as, curare. Its *acetyl derivative* melts at  $108^\circ$  (A. 274, 91).

**Azocamphor**, *Monoketazocamphor-quinone*,  $C_8H_{14}$   $\begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \\ \text{C} \\ \diagdown \\ \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix}$   $\begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \\ \text{N} \\ \diagdown \\ \text{N} \end{smallmatrix}$ , melts at  $74^\circ$ . It forms

yellow-colored crystals. It is produced when nitrous acid acts upon the hydrochloride of amido-camphor (B. 26, 1718). Potassium sulphite changes it to a hydrazine-sulphonate, which concentrated hydrochloric acid decomposes into hydrazine and camphor-quinone (B. 29, R. 1115).

**Camphenone**,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_3 - \text{C} = \text{CH} \\ | \quad \quad | \\ (\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C} \quad \text{CO} \\ | \quad \quad | \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{C} (\text{CH}_3) \end{smallmatrix}$  (?), melting at  $168-170^\circ$ , is formed, together with

azocamphenone, when azocamphor is heated. It has an odor like that of camphor. Its *oxime* melts at  $132^\circ$  (B. 27, R. 590). Consult B. 29, R. 1108, for the action of bromine and hydrogen bromide.

**Azocamphenone**,  $C_8H_{14}$   $\begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \\ \text{CNN} : \text{C} \\ \diagdown \\ \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix}$   $\begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \\ \text{OC} \\ \diagdown \end{smallmatrix}$   $C_8H_{14}$ , melts at  $222^\circ$  (B. 27, R. 892).

**Oxymethylene-camphor**,  $C_8H_{14}$   $\begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \\ \text{C} = \text{CH} \cdot \text{OH} \\ \diagdown \\ \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $77^\circ$ , is produced when sodium or sodium ethylate and formic ester act upon camphor (A. 281, 306). Hydroxylamine changes oxymethylene camphor into the oxime of formylcamphor and cyancamphor.

**Chlormethylene-camphor**,  $C_8H_{14}$   $\begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \\ \text{C} = \text{CHCl} \\ \diagdown \\ \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix}$ , boiling at  $119^\circ$  (16 mm.), is produced when  $\text{PCl}_3$  acts upon oxymethylene-camphor.

**Oxymethylene-camphor Anhydride**,  $[(C_8H_{14}CO) = CH]_2O$ , melting at  $188^\circ$ , is obtained from the sodium salt of oxymethylene-camphor and chlormethylene-camphor.

The *methyl ether*,  $(C_{10}H_{14}O) = \text{CH} \cdot \text{OCH}_3$ , melting at  $40^\circ$  and boiling at  $262^\circ$ , is obtained (1) from oxymethylene-camphor, sodium ethylate, and methyl iodide, (2) from chlormethylene-camphor and sodium methylate, and (3) from oxymethylene-camphor, methyl alcohol, and hydrochloric acid. The *acetate*,  $(C_{10}H_{14}O) = \text{CH} \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , melting at  $63^\circ$  and boiling at  $290-293^\circ$ , is obtained from oxymethylene-camphor and acetic anhydride.

**Oxymethylene-camphor Cyanhydrin**,  $C_8H_{14}$   $\begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \\ \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CN} \\ \diagdown \\ \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $122^\circ$ , is formed from oxymethylene-camphor, glacial acetic acid, and potassium cyanide. When boiled with acetic anhydride it yields—

**Cyanmethylene-camphor**,  $C_8H_{14}$   $\begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \\ \text{C} = \text{CH} \cdot \text{CN} \\ \diagdown \\ \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $46^\circ$  and boiling at  $280^\circ$ . Hydrochloric acid converts it, when heated to  $120^\circ$  in glacial acetic acid solution, into

**Camphor-methylene Carboxylic Acid**,  $C_8H_{14}$   $\begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \\ \text{C} = \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \diagdown \\ \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $101^\circ$ .

*d*-**Camphor-carboxylic Acid**,  $C_8H_{14}$   $\begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \\ \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \diagdown \\ \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix}$ , melts, with carbon dioxide evo-

lution, at 128°. It is obtained from sodium camphor and carbonic acid (B. 24, 3382). Its esters yield sodium compounds, which, heated with alkylgens, produce *alkyl-camphor-carboxylic esters*, whose acids, when heated, evolve carbon dioxide and break down into *alkyl-camphor*.

**d-Cyan-camphor**,  $C_8H_{14} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup CH \cdot CN \\ \diagdown CO \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at 127°, is produced when cyanogen is conducted into sodium camphor, and by digesting a solution of sodium oxymethylene-camphor with hydroxylamine hydrochloride (A. 281, 349). Alkalies and alkylgens convert it into *alkyl-cyan-camphor*.

**Camphoric Acid**.—There are four optically active and two inactive camphoric acids.

**d-Camphoric Acid**, *ordinary camphoric acid* (Constitution, p. 328),  $C_8H_{14}(CO_2H)_2$ , m. p. 187°,  $[\alpha]_D = +49.7^\circ$  in alcohol, is obtained by heating d-camphor or campholic acid with nitric acid (A. 163, 323), and because it can be made without great trouble, has been exhaustively studied. When it is heated above the melting point, or when treated with acetyl chloride (A. 226, 1), it changes to its **anhydride**, melting at 221° and boiling at 270°. The acid is dextro-rotatory.

By fusion with caustic potash, camphoric acid changes to isopropyl succinic acid and l-iso-camphoric acid; by oxidation with nitric acid, camphoronic acid and dinitrocapronic acid,  $(CH_3)_2C \cdot CO_2H$ , are produced, while with chromic acid the products are camphoronic

and trimethyl succinic acids. Water and bromine change it to camphanic acid (B. 28, 2151). Compare B. 30, 289, for the oxidation of camphoric acid with potassium permanganate. The distillation of calcium camphorate yields Camphorophorone,  $CH_3-C \equiv C(CH_3)_2$ , boiling at 195–200°. It is oxidized by potassium permanganate to  $\alpha$ -methylglutaric acid (B. 26, 3053). Tetrahydro- and hexahydroisoxylene are produced when camphoric acid is heated with hydriodic acid.

The d-camphoric acid forms two series of acid esters: the *allo-esters*, produced by the partial saponification of the neutral esters, and the *ortho-esters*, resulting from the partial esterification of the acids (B. 26, 289).

See B. 26, 600, R. 87, 614, 688, for the electrolysis of the ester acids.

The **dichloride**,  $C_8H_{14} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup CCl_2 \\ \diagdown CO \end{smallmatrix} O$ , boils at 140° (15 mm.) (B. 23, R. 229).

The **diamide**,  $C_8H_{14}C_2O_2(NH_2)_2$ , melting at 197°, is converted by potassium hypobromite into  $C_{10}H_{16}N_2O_2$ , melting at 235°. This is probably the ureide of an oxyacid (B. 27, R. 894) corresponding to campholactone. Two isomeric **Camphor-amino-acids**, melting at 177° and 180°, have been obtained from the anhydride with ammonia, and from the imide with sodium hydroxide (B. 29, R. 96).

The **imide**,  $C_8H_{14}C_2O_2NH$ , melting at 248° and boiling at 300°, is also formed from isonitrosocamphor (B. 26, 58, 242; A. 257, 308).

The **methyl imide**,  $C_8H_{14} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup CO \\ \diagdown CO \end{smallmatrix} NCH_3$ , melting at 40–42°, is obtained from silver camphoronimide and methyl iodide, as well as by heating *methyl isoimide* above its melting point (B. 29, R. 96).

**Methyl Isoimide**,  $C_8H_{14} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup C \equiv N \cdot CH_3 \\ \diagdown CO \end{smallmatrix} O$ , melting at 134°, results when camphor-methyl-amino-acid is treated with acetyl chloride or  $PCl_5$  (B. 26, R. 688).

**Camphoryl Hydroxylamine**,  $C_8H_{14} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup CO \\ \diagdown CO \end{smallmatrix} N \cdot OH$ , melts at 225° (B. 27, R. 893).

**Camphor-nitrilo-acid**, cyanlauronic acid,  $C_8H_{14}(CN)COOH$ , melting at 152°, is formed when camphor-amino-acid is treated with acetyl chloride and subsequently with ammonia.

or by the interaction of acetyl chloride and isonitrosocamphor (p. 329 and B. 29, R. 651, 779).

**l-Camphoric Acid** results from the oxidation of *matricaria* camphor. It resembles the d-variety in every particular, even to the rotatory power.

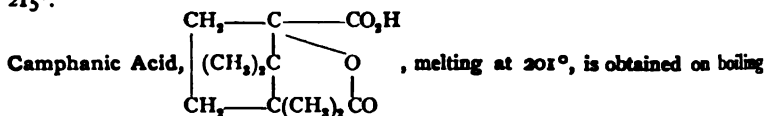
**[d + l]-Camphoric Acid, Paracamphoric Acid**, melting at  $204^{\circ}$ , is formed upon mixing alcoholic solutions of equimolecular quantities of d- and l-camphoric acids (B. 23, R. 229).

**d-Isocamphoric Acid, d-cis-trans-camphoric acid**, melting at  $171^{\circ}$ , with  $[\alpha]_D = +48^{\circ}$ , may be prepared by heating l-camphoric acid with water, or, better, with a mixture of glacial acetic acid and hydrochloric acid. It does not form a real anhydride, hence can be easily separated by means of acetyl chloride from the l-camphoric acid.

**l-Isocamphoric Acid**,  $[\alpha]_D = -48^{\circ}$ , is obtained from both d-camphoric acid and its chloride.

**[d + l]-Isocamphoric Acid**, melting at  $191^{\circ}$ , results from the union of d- and l-isocamphoric acids. When they are heated the corresponding camphoric anhydrides are produced (B. 27, 2001). Compare B. 29, 1700, for the crystal forms of the camphoric acids.

**Brom-camphoric Anhydride** (Constitution; see camphanic acid),  $C_{10}H_{11}BrO_2$ , melts at  $215^{\circ}$ .



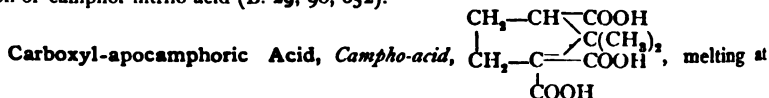
brom-camphoric anhydride with water. Nitric acid oxidizes it to camphoronic acid. By distillation camphanic acid loses carbon dioxide, and becomes campholactone and lauronolic acid (A. 227, 1). Compare B. 29, R. 772, 861, for additional brom- and oxy-camphoric acids.

**Lauronolic Acid**,  $C_8H_{13} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , is a colorless oil. It is formed when soda acts on brom-camphoric anhydride. Upon standing, or by boiling in hydrochloric acid solution, it rearranges itself to **Campholactone**,  $C_8H_{14} \begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ , melting at  $50^{\circ}$  (A. 227, 5).

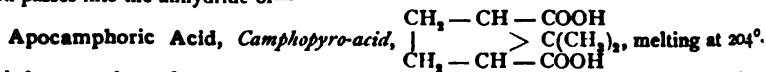
**Isolauronolic Acid**,  $C_8H_{13} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $134^{\circ}$ , is obtained from sulphocamphylic acid heated to  $200^{\circ}$ , as well as by the action of  $\text{Al}_2\text{Cl}_6$  upon camphoric anhydride (C., 1897, 1, 763).

**Sulphocamphylic Acid, Sulphocamphoric Acid**,  $C_9H_{16}\text{SO}_6 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melting at  $160-165^{\circ}$ , is produced in the action of sulphuric acid upon camphoric acid. Upon heating it changes to isolauronolic acid, and upon oxidation with nitric acid yields sulphoisopropyl-succinic acid and dimethylmalonic acid (B. 26, 2044).

**Campholide**,  $C_8H_{14} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CO} \end{array} \text{O}$ , melting at  $211^{\circ}$ , is formed in the reduction of camphoric anhydride with alcohol and sodium amalgam, just as phthalide is obtained from phthalic anhydride (B. 29, R. 221, 288). The lactam,  $C_8H_{14} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CO} \end{array} \text{NH}$ , melting at  $229^{\circ}$ , being analogous to the phthalimides, may be designated *campholimidine*. It results upon heating the hydrochloride of the corresponding amido-acid, produced in the reduction of camphor-nitrilo-acid (B. 29, 98, 652).



$196-200^{\circ}$ , is produced in the oxidation of camphene with dilute nitric acid. It forms an *anhydride acid* when it is heated. This melts at  $205^{\circ}$ . It subsequently splits off  $\text{CO}_2$ , and passes into the anhydride of—



It behaves analogously to camphoric acid (B. 29, R. 175, 773; Ch. Zt., 1896, p. 840).

**d-Homocamphoric Acid, Hydroxycamphocarboxylic Acid**,  $C_8H_{14} \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \\ \diagup \\ CO_2H \end{smallmatrix} COOH$ , melting at  $234^\circ$ , is produced when cyan-camphor is boiled with aqueous caustic potash. Its *mononitrile* is formed on heating campholide (see this) with potassium cyanide (B. 29, R. 288). d-Camphor is obtained on heating calcium homocamphorate in a current of carbon dioxide.

**d-Hydro-camphorylacetic Acid**,  $C_8H_{14} \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \\ \diagup \\ CO_2H \end{smallmatrix} CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $142^\circ$ , is produced when hydrocamphorylmalonic acid is heated (A. 257, 303).

**d-Hydrocamphorylmalonic Acid**,  $C_8H_{14} \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \\ \diagup \\ CO_2H \end{smallmatrix} CH(CO_2H)_2$ , melting at  $178^\circ$ , is obtained by the reduction of camphorylmalonic ester (A. 257, 301).

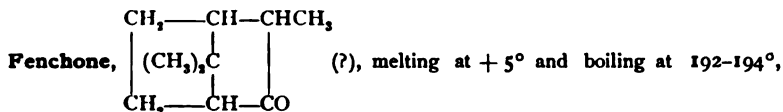
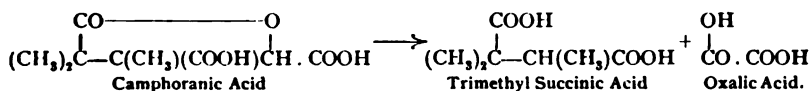
**d-Camphorylmalonic Ester**,  $C_8H_{14} \begin{smallmatrix} C=C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 \\ \diagup \\ CO \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $82^\circ$  and boiling at  $274^\circ$  (40 mm.), results from the action of sodium malonic ester upon the chloride of camphoric acid.

**Camphoronic Acid,  $\alpha,\beta$ -Trimethyltricarballic Acid**,  $(CH_3)_2C \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \\ COOH \end{smallmatrix} C(CH_3) \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \\ COOH \end{smallmatrix} CH_2 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \\ COOH \end{smallmatrix}$ , is produced in the oxidation of camphoric acid, camphanic acid, and campholic acid with nitric acid.

It has been synthesized in the following manner: acetoacetic ester and  $\alpha$ -bromoisobutyric ester are condensed by zinc to  $\beta$ -oxy- $\alpha,\beta$ -trimethylglutaric ester,  $COOR \cdot CH_2 \cdot C(OH)(CH_3)C \cdot (CH_3)_2COOR$ , which  $PCl_5$  converts into the ester of the  $\beta$ -chlor-acid, and the latter is then changed by potassium cyanide to the ester of  $\beta$ -cyan- $\alpha,\beta$ -trimethylglutaric acid, the mononitrile of camphoronic acid, which is then saponified to camphoronic acid (C., 1897, 1, 813).

The importance of camphoronic acid in the determination of the constitution of camphor has been explained (p. 328). Camphoronic acid melts at  $135^\circ$ , changing at the same time into *camphoro-anhydridic acid*, melting at  $135^\circ$  and boiling at  $205^\circ$  (12 mm.). The *chloride* of the latter acid is converted by bromine into two isomeric *bromcamphoro-anhydridic acid chlorides*; one of these, when boiled with water, forms the lactone of unstable oxycamphoronic acid, *camphoranic acid*, while the other, under similar treatment, yields a stable *oxycamphoronic acid*, melting at  $248^\circ$ . Camphoronic acid, upon distillation, breaks down into trimethyl succinic anhydride, iso utyric acid,  $CO_2$ ,  $H_2O$ , and carbon.

**Camphoranic Acid**,  $C_9H_{12}O_4 + H_2O$ , melting at  $209^\circ$ , is a lactonic acid which resists decomposition by alkalis very strongly. When fused with caustic potash it is readily split into trimethyl succinic acid and oxalic acid (privately communicated by J. Brecht):



with sp. gr. 0.9465 ( $19^\circ$ ),  $n_D = 1.46306$ , is known in two isomeric modifications. It is the ketone of all known ketone derivatives of the terpenes which is most like camphor in its behavior.

d-Fenchone,  $[a]_D = +71.70^\circ$ , was discovered in 1890 by Wallach and Hartmann, while l-Fenchone,  $[a]_D = -66.94^\circ$ , was found in 1892 by Wallach, together with pinene and thujone or tanacetone, in the oil of thuja. It is very stable toward concentrated nitric acid. Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to dimethylmalonic acid. acetic

acid, and oxalic acid. When reduced it passes into d- and l-fenchyl alcohol (p. 325) and tetrahydrofenchene (p. 324). With conditions analogous to those under which camphor yields p-cymene, fenchene will yield m-cymene—*ε*. *g.*, upon heating with  $P_2O_5$ . Fenchone does not form an oxymethylene derivative.

**Fenchonoxime**,  $C_{10}H_{16}$ : NOH, melts at  $161^\circ$  and boils at  $240^\circ$ ;  $[\alpha]_D = +65.94^\circ$  (see B. 29, 2818).

**Fencholenic Acid**,  $C_9H_{15}$ :  $CO_2H$ , boiling at  $260^\circ$ , with sp. gr. 1.0045,  $n_D = 1.4766$ , is obtained from its amide (*α-isofenchonoxime*) and its nitrile (fenchonoxime anhydride) by saponification with alcoholic potash. Hydriodic acid reduces it to *dihydrofencholenic*,  $C_9H_{18}$ , boiling at  $140^\circ$ , with sp. gr. 0.79 ( $20^\circ$ ),  $n_D = 1.43146$ . The *amide* (*α-isofenchonoxime*), melting at  $113^\circ$ , results when the nitrile is acted upon with alcoholic potash. The *nitrile* (*fenchonoxime anhydride*), boiling at  $217^\circ$ , with sp. gr. 0.898 ( $20^\circ$ ),  $n_D = 1.46108$ ,  $[\alpha]_D = +43.31^\circ$ , is produced on gently heating fenchonoxime with dilute sulphuric acid.

**β-Isfenchonoxime**,  $C_{10}H_{17}NO$ , melting at  $137^\circ$ , is formed when *α-isofenchonoxime* is boiled with dilute sulphuric acid. It is a monobasic body, probably a lactam (B. 28, R. 456).

#### RESINS.

The resins are closely related to the terpenes, and occur with them in plants, and are also produced by their oxidation in the air. Their natural, thick solutions in the essential oils and turpentine are called *balsams*; whereas the true *gum resins* are amorphous, mostly vitreous bodies. Their solutions in alcohol, ether, or turpentine oils constitute the commercial *varnishes*.

Most natural resins appear to consist of a mixture of different, peculiar acids, the resin acids. The alkalis dissolve them, forming *resin soaps*, from which acids again precipitate the *resin acids*. By their fusion with alkalis we obtain different benzene derivatives (resorcinol, phloroglucin, protocatechuic acid); and when they are distilled with zinc-dust they yield benzenes, naphthalenes, etc.

*Colophony* is found in turpentine (p. 322) and, in the distillation of the latter, remains as a fused mass. It consists principally of **Abietic Acid**,  $C_{19}H_{29}O_2$  (Sylvic acid), which can be extracted by hot alcohol, crystallizes in leaflets, and melts at  $139^\circ$  ( $147^\circ$ ). When oxidized it yields trimellitic, isophthalic, and terebic acids.

*Gallipot Resin*, from *Pinus maritima*, contains **pimaric acid**,  $C_{20}H_{30}O_2$ , which is very similar to sylvic acid and passes into the latter when distilled in *vacuo*. It melts at  $210^\circ$ . The latest investigations show that pimaric acid consists of three isomerides (B. 19, 2167).

*Gum lac*, obtained from East India fig trees, constitutes what is known as shellac when fused. This is employed in the preparation of sealing-wax and varnishes.

*Amber* is a fossil resin, found in peat-bogs. It consists of succinic acid, two resin acids, and a volatile oil. After fusion it dissolves easily in alcohol and turpentine oil, and serves for the preparation of varnishes.

To the *gum resins*, occurring mixed with vegetable gums, and gum in the juice of plants, belong gamboge, euphorbium, asafetida, caoutchouc, and gutta percha.

**Caoutchouc**, because of its wide applicability, is especially important. It has been obtained from tropical Euphorbiaceæ, Apocinaceæ, etc. In Brazil it is made from *Siphonia elastica*, in India from *Ficus elastica*, as well as other varieties of *Ficus*. Purified caoutchouc has the formula  $(C_5H_8)_x$ . When distilled it yields isoprene,  $C_5H_8$  (see this), which polymerizes spontaneously to caoutchouc and also to dipentene. Caoutchouc takes up sulphur when it is thoroughly kneaded with it, or when it is treated with a mixture of  $S_2Cl_2$  and  $CS_2$  (B. 27, R. 204, 521, 601, 609, 701, 816; 29, R. 136).

The product is a vulcanized caoutchouc, which continues elastic within a considerable range of temperature.

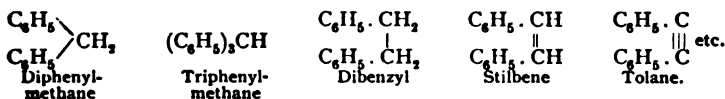
## AROMATIC HYDROCARBONS CONTAINING SEVERAL NUCLEI.

### A. PHENYLBENZENES AND POLYPHENYL-FATTY HYDROCARBONS.

Just as alkyl groups are joined to one another, or as they are introduced into benzene and its homologues, so the benzene hydrogen atoms can be replaced by phenyl-, tolyl-, benzyl-, and other hydrocarbon residues. The products are: (1) The phenylbenzenes, in which the benzene nuclei are in immediate union:



(2) The polyphenyl paraffins, olefines, and acetylenes, in which the benzene residues are held together by fatty hydrocarbons:



In addition to these groups we have: B. *The aromatic hydrocarbons with condensed nuclei.*

#### I. PHENYLBENZENE GROUP.

**I A. Diphenyl Group.**—The first or parent hydrocarbon of this group is diphenyl or phenylbenzene.

**Diphenyl, Phenylbenzene, Biphenyl,**  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $71^\circ$  and boiling at  $254^\circ$ , is present in slight amount in coal tar. It is formed (1) upon conducting benzene vapors through tubes heated to redness (Berthelot, Z. f. Ch., 1866, 707; B. 9, 547; A. 230, 5); (2) in the action of sodium upon the solution of brombenzene in ether or benzene—higher, condensed hydrocarbons being produced at the same time (Fittig, A. 121, 363; B. 29, 115); (3) from diazobenzene chloride (a) by action of benzene and aluminium chloride, (b) with stannous chloride, (c) when alcohol and Cu-powder act upon diazobenzene sulphate, (d) from the latter salt and warm benzene (B. 23, 1226; 26, 1997).

If dissolved in glacial acetic acid and oxidized with chromic anhydride it yields benzoic acid. Metallic sodium reduces diphenyl, dissolved in amyl alcohol, to *tetra-hydro-diphenyl*,  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{14}$ , boiling at  $245^\circ$ . The latter readily forms a dibromide which alcoholic potash converts into *dihydro-diphenyl*,  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{12}$ , boiling at  $248^\circ$  (B. 21, 846). A dihydro-diphenyl of melting point  $66^\circ$  has been obtained from phenyldihydroresorcinol (p. 297) by converting this diketone into the corresponding dihydric alcohol, and removing two molecules of water from the latter by means of phosphorus pentoxide (A. 289, 168). Fluorene (B. 19, R. 672) is formed when methylene chloride and aluminium chloride act upon diphenyl.

Alkyl Diphenyls have been obtained: (1) by the action of nitrous acid upon the alcoholic solution of their amido-compounds (B. 17, 468; 21, 1096; 22, 1096); (2) from the action of sodium upon the brominated alkylbenzenes (B. 4, 396); (3) from diphenyl, chlor-alkyl,

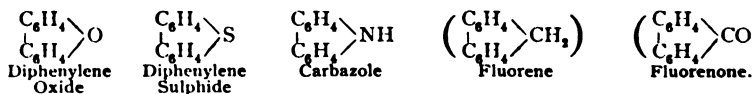
or ethylene and aluminium chloride (B. 20, R. 218); (4) from aromatic diazochole containing one nucleus (see p. 106). The position of the alkyl-groups is determined by oxidation, if it has not been made evident by the components.

m-Phenyltolyl, m-Methyl Diphenyl, . . . . .	boils at 272–277°.
p-Phenyltolyl (B. 26, 1996) (m. p. +3°), . . . . .	" 263–267°.
m-Ethyl Diphenyl, . . . . .	" 283°.
m <sub>2</sub> -Ditolyl, m,m-Dimethyl Diphenyl (B. 25, 1032), . . . . .	" 286°.
o,m-Ditolyl, . . . . .	" 286°.
p <sub>2</sub> -Ditolyl (B. 29, 114), m. p. 121°, is volatile without decomposition.	

**Diphenyl Substitution Products.**—Each monosubstitution product of diphenyl exist theoretically in three isomeric forms. Chlorine, bromine, the NO<sub>2</sub>-group, an sulpho-group prefer the p-position with reference to the point of union of the benzene residues. o- and o,p-Derivatives are formed together with the p- and p derivatives. The p<sub>2</sub>-derivatives, having two different substituents,—e. g., p-brom-p<sub>1</sub>-diphenyl,—yield both p-brom- and p-nitrobenzoic acids when they are oxidized (benzidine). The amidodiphenylenes, particularly benzidine, or p<sub>2</sub>-diamidodiphenyl the diphenyl sulphonic acids, afford, as in the case of the corresponding benzene derivatives, numerous derivatives of diphenyl.

It is interesting to note that o<sub>2</sub>-disubstitution products are known in which a bivalent atom, O and S, or a bivalent group, NH, (CH<sub>2</sub>, CO), replaces two hydrogen atoms at the ortho-position with reference to the point of union of the two benzene nuclei.

The principal representatives of such diphenylene compounds are:



The first three will be treated in connection with the heterocyclic derivatives furfuran, thiophene, and pyrrol, from which they can also be derived. They are also by pyro-reactions from phenyl ether, phenyl sulphide, and diphenylamine.

**Halogen Diphenyls.**—o- and p-Chlordiphenyl melt at 34° and boil at 267°, an 75° and at 282°. o- and p-Bromdiphenyls, liquid, boil at 297° and melts at 89°, boils at 310°. p<sub>2</sub>-Dichlor-, p<sub>2</sub>-Dibrom-, and p<sub>2</sub>-Di-ioddiphenyls melt at 148° boil at 315°, at 164° and 357°, and melt at 202° (A. 207, 333).

Perchlordiphenyl, C<sub>12</sub>Cl<sub>10</sub>, does not melt at 270°. It is often produced in exhaustive chlorinations (B. 16, 2881).

**Nitro-diphenyls.**—The nitration of diphenyl gives rise to o- and p-nitro-, as well as p<sub>2</sub>- and o,p-dinitrodiphenyls. o<sub>2</sub>- and m<sub>2</sub>-Dinitro-diphenyls are obtained from benzene (B. 20, 1028). o- and p-Nitro-diphenyls melt at 37° and boil at 320°; at 113° at 340°.

o<sub>2</sub>-, m<sub>2</sub>-, p<sub>2</sub>-, and o,p-Dinitro-diphenyls melt at 124°, 197°, 233°, and 93°. p<sub>2</sub>-o,p-Dinitro-diphenyl have also been obtained from sodium isodiazonitrobenzene and n-benzene (B. 29, 165). p-Brom-p-nitro-diphenyl melts at 173° (A. 174, 218).

**Amido-diphenyls and Amido-ditolyls** can be prepared by reduction of the corresponding nitro-compounds. The formation of p<sub>2</sub>-diamido-diphenyl by the rearrangement of its isomeride hydrazolone (p. 117) is of great technical importance, because p<sub>2</sub>-diamidodiphenyl or benzidine is a starting-out substance for the preparation of substantive cotton dyes—dyes which unite directly with the cotton fibre without the aid of mordants.

o-Amido-diphenyl, melting at 45°, is also obtained from o-phenylbenzamide means of bromine and caustic soda (A. 279, 266; B. 25, 1974). When condensed over heated lime it forms *carbazole*. p-Amido-diphenyl, *Xenylamine*, melts at

and boils at 322° (A. 260, 233). *p*<sub>2</sub>-Nitroamido-diphenyl, from *p*<sub>2</sub>-dinitro-diphenyl, melts at 198°.

*o*<sub>2</sub>-Diamido-diphenyl, melting at 81°, and *m*<sub>2</sub>-Diamido-diphenyl have been obtained by reducing *o*<sub>2</sub>- and *m*<sub>2</sub>-dinitro-diphenyl. When *o*<sub>2</sub>-diamido-diphenyl is heated with concentrated sulphuric acid it yields *carbazole*. Its tetrazochloride is changed by potassium sulphhydrate to *carbazole*, and when its aqueous solution is heated *diphenylene oxide* is produced (B. 26, 1703). The reduction of the *tetrazo*-compound of *o*<sub>2</sub>-di-

amido-diphenyl gives rise to Diphenylene *o*<sub>2</sub> dihydrazine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[2]\text{NHNH}_2$ , melting at 110° (B. 29, 2270). When heated with hydrochloric acid at 150° it breaks down easily into ammonium chloride and an *o*<sub>2</sub>-azodiphenylene, so called **phenazone**,

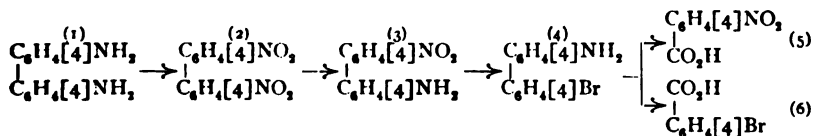
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \text{N} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{N} \end{array} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ , which can also be directly obtained by the reduction of *o*<sub>2</sub>-dinitro-diphenyl with sodium amalgam and methyl alcohol.

Phenazone will be treated at the conclusion of the ortho-diazines under the heterocyclic compounds.

**Benzidine**, *p*<sub>2</sub>-Diamido-diphenyl, melting at 122° (Zinin, 1845), is obtained by the reduction of *p*<sub>2</sub>-dinitro-diphenyl and *p*<sub>2</sub>-nitroamido-diphenyl. It is technically prepared by the reduction of azobenzene in acid solution; the hydrazobenzene, formed at first, rearranges itself to benzidine and diphenyl, or *o*,*p*-diamido-diphenyl. This is a remarkable reaction, to which attention has already been called in connection with hydrazobenzene (p. 117) (A. 207, 330).

The great insolubility of the sulphate in water affords a means of separating benzidine from diphenylene. When treated with concentrated sulphuric acid and nitric acid, one or two NO<sub>2</sub>-groups enter in the *m*-position with reference to the amido-groups of benzidine. The products are *o*-nitro-*p*<sub>2</sub>-diamido-diphenyl and *o*<sub>2</sub>-dinitro-*p*<sub>2</sub>-diamido-diphenyl (B. 23, 794). *m*<sub>2</sub>-Dinitro-*p*<sub>2</sub>-diacetamido-diphenyl results on nitrating diacetbenzidine. The two nitro-compounds by removal of the amido-groups yield *o*<sub>2</sub>- and *m*<sub>2</sub>-dinitrodiphenyls (see these).

**Constitution.**—The *p*-position of the two amido-groups of benzidine (1) is evident from the oxidation of *p*<sub>2</sub>-bromnitro-diphenyl to *p*-brom- and *p*-nitrobenzoic acids (5, 6), because benzidine (1) is formed from *p*<sub>2</sub>-dinitro-diphenyl (2), which may be rearranged to *p*<sub>2</sub>-amidonitro-diphenyl (3), and *p*<sub>2</sub>-bromnitro-diphenyl (4) (Gustav Schultz, A. 174, 227):



The constitution of benzidine forms the basis for one of the proofs of the constitution of diphenic acid (p. 340); also for that of phenanthrene isomeric with anthracene.

**Benzidine Disulphate** consists of small scales with a silvery luster; preparation, B. 26, R. 321. Concentrated sulphuric acid converts it into benzidine sulphone (B. 22, 2467).

**Diacetbenzidine** melts at 317°. **Thionylbenzidine**, (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>.NSO)<sub>2</sub> (B. 24, 753). **Di-(*o*-nitrobenzyl)-benzidine** melts at 227° with decomposition (B. 29, 1450).

***o*-Nitro-*p*<sub>2</sub>-diamido-diphenyl**, ***m*-Nitrobenzidine**, melts at 143° (B. 23, 796)—see benzidine.

***o*<sub>2</sub>-Dinitro-*p*<sub>2</sub>-diamido-diphenyl**, ***m*-Dinitrobenzidine**, melts at 214° (B. 23, 795). ***3*<sub>2</sub>-Dinitro-4<sub>2</sub>-diacetdiamido-diphenyl** melts above 300° and is converted by caustic potash into ***3*<sub>2</sub>-dinitro-4<sub>2</sub>-diamido-diphenyl**, ***o*-dinitrobenzidine**, melting at 220° (B. 5, 237; 20, 1024). ***5*<sub>2</sub>-Dinitro-2<sub>2</sub>-diamido-diphenyl** (B. 25, 128).

*o,p*-Diamido-diphenyl, *Diphenylene*, melts at 45° and boils at 362°. Preparation, see benzidine (A. 207, 348; B. 22, 3011). *o,p*-Triamido-diphenyl, *m-Amidobenzidine*, (B. 23, 797). *o,p*-Tetramido-diphenyl, *m<sub>2</sub>-diamidobenzidine*, melting at 165°, is obtained from *o*,*p*-dinitro-*p*-diamido-diphenyl (see benzidine), and by loss of ammonia becomes *p*-diamido-carbazole.

*Di-p*-phenylenediamine,  $(\text{NH}_2)_2[2,5]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3[2,5](\text{NH}_2)_2$ , melting at 168°, is converted by hydrochloric acid at 180° into 5,5-diamido-carbazole (B. 25, 131).

**Benzidine Homologues**, *p*-Diamidophenyl-tolyl, *o*-Methyl Benzidine,  $\text{H}_2\text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{CH}_3) \cdot \text{NH}_2$ , is formed upon reducing a mixture of nitrobenzene and *o*-nitrotoluene. It melts at 90° (B. 23, 3222).

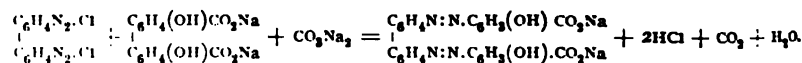
*o*-Tolidine, *p*-Diamido-*m<sub>2</sub>*-dimethyldiphenyl, from *o*-hydrazotoluene, melts at 128° (B. 20, 2017; 23, 3252).

*m*-Tolidine, *p*-Diamido-*o*-dimethyldiphenyl, from *m*-hydrazotoluene (p. 117), melts at 109°. Isomeric *ditolylin* (B. 23, 3252) is produced at the same time.

*o*- and *m*-Hydrazotoluenes suffer under the influence of acids the *benzidine rearrangement*. *p*-Hydrazotoluene under like conditions follows the *semidine rearrangement* (p. 118).

**Benzidine Dyes.**—Benzidine yields azo-dyes, transposition products of the diazo-chloride from benzidine and amidosulphonic acids, phenol carboxylic acids, and phenol-sulphonic acids, which unite directly with cotton fiber (Griess, B. 22, 2469). These dyes are obtained as sodium salts, which are prepared by adding the aqueous solution of the tetrazochloride to the aqueous solution of two molecules of the sodium salt of the other component.

Sodium acetate, sodium carbonate, or ammonia is added to the solution of the sodium salt to combine the hydrochloric acid which is liberated:



The sodium salts of two different components can be, step by step, brought into reaction with the tetrazochloride, and *mixed* tetrazo-dyes (B. 19, 1697, 1755; 20, R. 273; 21, R. 71) result.

Representatives of the class of benzidine dyes are:

**Chrysamine, Flavophenine**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{N}:\text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{Na} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{N}:\text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{Na} \end{array}$ , which is made from diphenyltetrazochloride and sodium salicylate (equation above) (B. 22, 2459).

**Congo Yellow**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{N}:\text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{NH}_2) \cdot \text{SO}_3\text{Na} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{N}:\text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{OH} \end{array}$ , is obtained from diphenyltetrazochloride, phenol, and sulphanilic acid.

The preceding dyes color cotton fiber **yellow**.

The first red dye brought into commerce was *Congo red*, which is formed from the interaction of diphenyltetrazochloride and sodium naphthionate. It will be brought forward again under the naphthalene azo-dyes. The  $\beta$ -naphthylamine sulphonic acids are particularly valuable in the preparation of substantive dyes.

Substantive dyes, similar to those from benzidine, have been obtained from *p*-amido-methyldiphenyl, *o*-methylbenzidine, *o*- and *m*-tolidines, dianisidine (p. 337), *thiobenzidine*, *thiotolidine* (B. 20, R. 272), *p*-diamido-benzophenone (p. 347), *p*-diamido-stilbene (p. 370) (B. 21, R. 383).

It may be said that, as a rule, those substituted benzidines (nitro and sulphobenzidines, toolidines, etc.) having the substituent in the meta-position (relative to the amido-group) yield *inactive* or *feeble substantive* azo-dyes. Diamido-diphenylene oxide, benzidine sulphone (see this), and diamido carbazole (see this) constitute exceptions. They contain a third ring-shaped chain (B. 23, 3252, 3268; 24, 1958).

It is interesting to observe that benzidine hydrochloride itself unites with cotton. It mordants the cotton. Hence it is possible to produce the benzidine upon the fiber (B. 19, 2014).

The "*one-sided diazotizing*" of benzidine is attained through the action of a *p*-tetrazodiphenyl salt upon the aqueous solution of a benzidine salt (B. 27, 2627); compare

migrations of the diazo-group, p. 100. When the bisdiazocompound of benzidine is allowed to act upon acetoacetic ester there result, with one molecule of the ester: **Cycloformazylcarboxylic Ester**,  $\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C} \begin{matrix} \text{N} \cdot \text{NH} - \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \\ \text{N} : \text{N} - \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \end{matrix}$ , a reddish-brown powder, fusing with difficulty (see formazyl carboxylic acid, p. 130); and with two molecules of the ester:

**Bisacetylgyloxylic Ester Phenylhydrazone**,  $[\text{CH}_3\text{COC}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5) : \text{NNHC}_6\text{H}_4-]_2$ , yellow needles, melting at  $198^\circ$  (A. 295, 332).

**p-Hydrazinodiphenyl**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4]\text{NH} \cdot \text{NH}_2$  (B. 27, 3105).

**Biphenylsulphonic Acids**.—On digesting biphenyl with sulphuric acid the first product is biphenyl-*p*-sulphonic acid (its *chloride* melting at  $115^\circ$  and its *amide* at  $229^\circ$ ), and later biphenyl-*p*<sub>2</sub>-disulphonic acid, melting at  $72^\circ$ , and its *chloride* at  $203^\circ$  (B. 13, 288). When potassium biphenyl-*p*-sulphonate is heated it changes to biphenyl and potassium biphenyl-*p*<sub>2</sub>-disulphonate. **Biphenyl-*o*<sub>2</sub>-disulphonic Acid** is obtained from benzidine-*o*<sub>2</sub>-disulphonic acid (A. 261, 310).

**Benzidine Sulphonic Acids**: **4<sub>2</sub>-Diamido-biphenyl-2<sub>2</sub>-disulphonic Acid** is formed from *m*-hydrazobenzene sulphonic acid (A. 261, 310; 268, 130), and when fused with caustic potash yields 4<sub>2</sub>-diamido-diphenylene oxide.

**4<sub>2</sub>-Diamido-biphenyl-3<sub>2</sub>-disulphonic Acid** is produced on heating benzidine with ordinary sulphuric acid to  $210^\circ$  (B. 22, 2466).

**o-Tolidine Disulphonic Acid**, **4<sub>2</sub>-Diamido-5<sub>2</sub>-dimethylbiphenyl-2<sub>2</sub>-disulphonic Acid** (A. 270, 359).

**4<sub>2</sub>-Dihydrazino-biphenyl-2<sub>2</sub>-disulphonic Acid**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \cdot \text{SO}_3\text{H})_2$ . See A. 261, 323.

**Oxybiphenyls** are obtained from the biphenyl derivatives by methods similar to those by which the phenols themselves are prepared from the benzene derivatives, and also in the oxidation of phenols containing a single nucleus, when they are fused with caustic potash (B. 27, 2107).

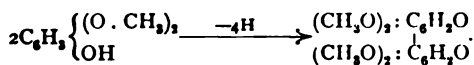
**Minoxybiphenyls**.—**p-Oxybiphenyl**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4]\text{OH}$ , melting at  $165^\circ$  and boiling at  $306^\circ$ , is obtained from diazobenzene chloride and phenol (B. 23, 3708).

**Dioxybiphenyls**.—**o<sub>2</sub>-Dioxybiphenyl**, **o<sub>2</sub>-Biphenol**, melting at  $98^\circ$ , is made on fusing fluorene (see this) with caustic potash at  $400^\circ$ , and from biphenyl-*o*<sub>2</sub>-disulphonic acid (A. 261, 362). **m-Biphenol**, melting at  $123.5^\circ$ , is obtained from *o*-dianisidine and *m*-diamidobiphenyl (B. 27, 2107). **p<sub>2</sub>-Biphenol**, melting at  $272^\circ$ , is prepared from benzidine, biphenyl-*p*<sub>2</sub>-disulphonic acid, and from phenol by the action of  $\text{KMnO}_4$  (B. 25, R. 335). **o,p-Biphenol**, from diphenylene, melts at  $160^\circ$ .

**Tetraoxybiphenyls**.—**Bipyrocatechine**,  $(\text{HO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{OH})_2$ , melting at  $84^\circ$ , **Biresorcinol**, melting at  $310^\circ$ , and **bihydroquinone**, melting at  $237^\circ$ , result when the three dioxybenzenes are fused with sodium hydroxide (B. 11, 1336; 12, 503; 18, R. 23).

**Hexaoxybiphenyls**.—**Hydrocoerulignone** is a derivative of hexaoxybiphenyl. **Coerulignone**, or **cedrret**, bears the same relation to it as quinone to hydroquinone.

**Coerulignone**,  $\text{O}_2 : \text{C}_{12}\text{H}_8(\text{OCH}_3)_4$ , separates as a violet powder when crude wood-spirit is purified on a large scale by means of potassium chromate. It is further formed on oxidizing dimethyl-pyrogallol (p. 164) with potassium chromate or ferric chloride:



**Coerulignone** is insoluble in the ordinary solvents, and is precipitated in fine, steel-blue needles, from its phenol solution, by alcohol or ether. It dissolves in concentrated sulphuric acid with a beautiful blue color. Large quantities of water color the solution red at first. Reducing agents (tin and hydrochloric acid) convert coerulignone into colorless hydrocoerulignone, which changes again to the first by oxidation. **Coerulignone** is, therefore, a quinone body, and may be called a *double-nuclei quinone*.

It unites with primary aromatic amines, forming blue dyes. It is very probable that in doing this two methoxyl groups are replaced by amino-residues (B. 30, 235).

**Hydrocoerulignone**,  $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_6$ , melts at  $190^\circ$ , and distils with almost no decompo-

sition. When heated with concentrated hydrochloric acid it breaks down into methyl chloride and Hexaoxydiphenyl,  $C_{12}H_{10}O_6$  (B. 11, 797).

*Amido-oxybiphenyls* are obtained from oxybiphenyls (B. 22, 335), and from the alkyl ethers of oxyazoderivatives, having free p-positions, by the benzidine rearrangement (B. 23, 3256). In the coal-tar industry o-dianisidine or 4,4'-diamido-3,3'-dimethoxybiphenyl and ethoxybenzidine, from o-nitroanisol, are of great value. They yield violet, blue, and black substantive cotton dyes with amidonaphthalene sulphonic acid, naphthol sulphonic acid, and amidonaphthol sulphonic acids: *azoviolet*, *benzazurine*, *diamine black*, etc. (B. 22, R. 372; 24, R. 55, 56, etc.).

**Biphenyl Carboxylic Acids** are obtained from diphenyl derivatives by reactions similar to those by which the benzene carboxylic acids are prepared from the derivatives of benzene. They are of just as much importance in determining the constitution of diphenyl bodies as the benzene-carboxylic acids for the benzene compounds.

*Biphenyl Monocarboxylic Acids.*—There are three possible acids: o-Phenyl-benzoic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C_6H_4[2]CO_2H$ , melting at  $111^\circ$ , is produced by fusing diphenylene ketone with caustic potash (A. 166, 374); by the distillation of sodium salicylate with triphenyl phosphate (J. pr. Ch. [2], 28, 305); and from o-amido- and o-methyl-diphenyl. If the acid be treated with  $PCl_5$ , or if it be heated with sulphuric acid to  $100^\circ$ , or with lime to more elevated temperatures, diphenylene ketone will be formed (A. 266, 142; 279, 259). m-Phenyl-benzoic Acid, melting at  $160^\circ$ , results from the oxidation of m-methylbiphenyl, of isodiphenylbenzene (see this), and in the reduction of brom-m-phenylbenzoic acid (B. 27, 3390).

p-Phenyl-benzoic Acid, melting at  $218^\circ$ , is obtained from p-methylbiphenyl, from p-diphenylbenzene, from sodium biphenylsulphonate (A. 282, 143), from p-amidodiphenyl, and by fusing benzoic acid with caustic potash. It is reduced to p-phenylhexahydrobenzoic acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C_6H_{10}[4]CO_2H$ , melting at  $202^\circ$ , which upon heating to  $100^\circ$  with hydrochloric acid is rearranged to phenylisohexahydrobenzoic acid, melting at  $113^\circ$  (A. 282, 130). p<sub>2</sub>-Nitrophenylbenzoic Acid, melting at  $222-225^\circ$ , results from the oxidation of p<sub>2</sub>-nitrophenyl tolyl. It yields the corresponding amido-acid (B. 29, 166) on reduction.

*Oxybiphenyl Carboxylic Acids.*—The following acids are all derivatives of o-phenylbenzoic acid.

o-Phenyl-salicylic Acid,  $C_6H_5[6]C_6H_4[2](OH)CO_2H$ , melting at  $159^\circ$ , results upon fusing 3-oxydiphenylene ketone and potassium hydroxide (B. 28, 112).

2-Phenyl m-oxybenzoic Acid,  $C_6H_5[2]C_6H_3[3]OH \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $154^\circ$ , is obtained, together with [biphenylmethylolid], as the principal product in the fusion of 6-oxydiphenylene ketone with potassium hydroxide (A. 284, 307).

o-Oxyphenyl-o-benzoic Acid is only known in the form of its lactone, [biphenyl-methylolid],  $\begin{matrix} C_6H_4[2]CO \\ | \\ C_6H_4[2]O \end{matrix}$ , melting at  $92.5^\circ$ , which is formed as a by-product on fusing 6-oxydiphenylene ketone or o-oxyfluorenone with caustic potash, in small quantities by the action of  $POCl_3$  upon sodium salicylate, and when phenol acts upon the sulphate of o-diazobenzene (A. 284, 316). It corresponds in composition to phenanthridone,  $\begin{matrix} C_6H_4[2]CO \\ | \\ C_6H_4[2]NH \end{matrix}$ , melting at  $293^\circ$  (see this), which is produced when bromine and caustic potash act upon diphenamic acid (A. 276, 245).

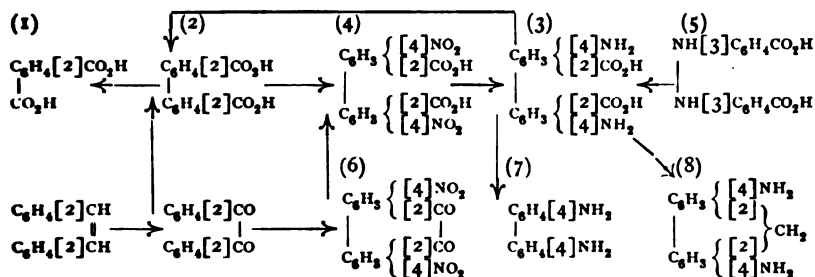
o-Oxyphenyl-o-benzoic Acid,  $HO[4]C_6H_4[1]C_6H_4[2]CO_2H$ , melting at  $206^\circ$ , is produced, together with [biphenylmethylolid] and phenyl-ether salicylic acid, by the action of phenol upon the sulphate of o-diazobenzoic acid (A. 286, 323).

**Biphenyl Dicarboxylic Acids** contain the two  $CO_2H$ -groups, either linked to the same or to different benzene residues. *Diphenic acid* is the most important biphenyl dicarboxylic acid.

[5]-Phenylisophthalic Acid,  $C_6H_5[5]C_6H_3[1,3](CO_2H)_2$ , melts above  $310^\circ$ , and is formed on boiling benzaldehyde and pyrrolic acid with baryta-water (B. 24, 1750).

**Diphenic Acid**, o<sub>2</sub>-Biphenyldicarboxylic Acid,  $CO_2H[2]C_6H_4 \cdot C_6H_4[2]CO_2H$ , melts at  $229^\circ$ . It is produced in the oxidation of phenanthraquinone with a chromic acid mixture, or by boiling it with alcoholic potash. The constitution of phenanthrene

follows from its constitution. That of diphenic acid (2) is evident from its oxidation to o-phthalic acid (1) (Anschütz and Japp, B. 11, 211) by potassium permanganate, and its formation by the deamidation of p<sub>2</sub>-diamido-diphenyl-o<sub>2</sub>-dicarboxylic acid (3), which is obtained on the one hand from p<sub>2</sub>-dinitrodiphenic acid (4), and on the other by the rearrangement of m-hydrazobenzoic acid (5) (G. Schultz, A. 204, 95):



In this circle of reactions there should also be included the formation of p<sub>2</sub>-dinitrodiphenic acid by the oxidation of p<sub>2</sub>-dinitrophenanthraquinone (6) and the transposition of diamidodiphenic acid to benzidine (7), the constitution of which was previously deduced (p. 337), and to p<sub>2</sub>-diamido-fluorene (8).

Concentrated sulphuric acid changes diphenic acid to diphenylene-ketone carboxylic acid (see this). When it is digested with acetyl chloride or acetic anhydride it yields

**Diphenic Anhydride**,  $\begin{matrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CO} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CO} \end{matrix} \text{O}$ , melting at 213° (A. 226, 1). This is a remarkable compound, inasmuch as it can be viewed as adipic anhydride and contains a

"seven-membered" ring. **Diphenic Chloride**,  $\begin{matrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{COCl} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{COCl} \end{matrix}$ , melting at 93°, is reduced in ethereal solution by zinc and hydrochloric acid to phenanthrene hydroquinone,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{C}(\text{OH})$  (A. 247, 268). **Diphenamino-acid**,  $\begin{matrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{C}(\text{OH}) \end{matrix}$ , melting at 193°, is converted by a hypobromite or hypochlorite, in alkaline solution, into phenanthridone

(see this) (A. 276, 248). **Diphenimide**,  $\begin{matrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CO} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CO} \end{matrix} \text{NH}$ , melts at 219° (A. 247, 271).

**p<sub>2</sub>-Dinitrodiphenic Acid**,  $\begin{matrix} \text{NO}_2[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[2]\text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{NO}_2[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3[2]\text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{matrix}$ , melts at 253°. See diphenic acid for its formation.

**p<sub>2</sub>-Diamidodiphenic Acid**—for its formation and decomposition see diphenic acid.

**Isodiphenic Acid** (o,m')  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}[3]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4[2]\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at 216°, is produced when diphenyleneketone carboxylic acid (see this) is fused with caustic potash.

**o,p'-Biphenyldicarboxylic Acid**,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4[2]\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at 251°, is obtained from diphenylene (p. 338) (B. 22, 3019).

**p<sub>2</sub>-Biphenyldicarboxylic Acid** decomposes at a more elevated temperature. It is obtained from diphenyl-p<sub>2</sub>-dicyanide and by oxidizing p<sub>2</sub>-ditolyl.

**p<sub>2</sub>-Diamidodiphenyl-m<sub>2</sub>-dicarboxylic Acid** is obtained from o-nitrobenzoic acid, just as p<sub>2</sub>-diamidodiphenic acid is prepared from m-nitrobenzoic acid (B. 25, 2797).

**m<sub>2</sub>-Dimethyl-biphenyl-p<sub>2</sub>-dicarboxylic Acid** melts above 300°, is formed from o-tolidine (p. 338) and is oxidized to diphtalic acid, **biphenyl-m<sub>2</sub>-p<sub>2</sub>-dicarboxylic acid**,  $(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2[3,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3[3,4](\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$  (B. 26, 2486).

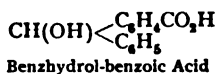
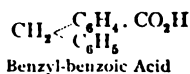
**I B. Diphenylbenzenes, Diphenylphenylenes**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ .—Two such bodies are known: **m-Diphenylbenzene, Isodiphenylbenzene**, melting at 85° and boiling at 369°, and **p-Diphenylbenzene**, melting at 205° and boiling at 383°. They are formed simultaneously on conducting benzene through a tube heated to redness, and by the action of diazobenzene chloride upon diphenyl and  $\text{Al}_2\text{Cl}_6$  (B. 26, 1998). The p-body is also

produced in the action of sodium upon a mixture of *p*-dibromobenzene and bromobenzene (A. 164, 168). Isodiphenylbenzene is also prepared from *m*-dichlorobenzene and chlorobenzene by the action of sodium in xylene (B. 29, R. 773).

**I C. Triphenyl Benzenes,  $C_6H_5(C_6H_5)_3$ .**—The symmetrical or [1,3,5] modification is formed from acetophenone when heated with  $P_2O_5$ , or by conducting hydrochloric acid gas into it, just as mesitylene is obtained from acetone (p. 214). It melts at  $169^\circ$  (B. 23, 2533). [1,2,3] (?) Triphenyl Benzene melts at  $157^\circ$  (B. 26, 69).

## II. BENZYL BENZENE GROUP.

Benzylbenzene or diphenyl methane is the simplest hydrocarbon of this group. The alkyl diphenylmethanes, and the compounds substituted in the benzene residues by the  $NO_2$ ,  $NH_2$ , or  $OH$ -groups, are derived from it. If we suppose an hydrogen atom of the  $CH_2$ -group to be replaced by  $OH$ , we obtain the formula of benzhydrol or diphenylcarbinol, which changes by oxidation to benzophenone or diphenylketone. Diphenylmethane,  $CH_2(C_6H_5)_2$ , benzhydrol,  $HOCH(C_6H_5)_2$ , and benzophenone,  $CO(C_6H_5)_2$ , are the simplest representatives of the hydrocarbons, the secondary alcohols and the ketones of this group. Attached to them are the corresponding carboxylic acids—*e. g.* :



### 1. HYDROCARBONS (DIPHENYL METHANES).

**Formation.**—(1) From benzyl chloride, benzene and zinc-dust (Zincke, A. 159, 374), or aluminium chloride (Friedel and Crafts). (2) From formaldehyde, methylal, or methylene diacetate with benzene and sulphuric acid (Baeyer, B. 6, 963). Both reactions are capable of wide generalization. Thus, by use of the second reaction, substituting other aldehydes for formaldehyde, numerous hydrocarbons have been obtained in which two benzene residues are attached to the same carbon atom (see unsym. diphenyl-ethane, p. 368).

Both reactions, upon substituting phenol ethers or dialkyl anilines for benzene, lead to  $RO$ - and  $R_2N$ -substitution products.

(3) Aromatic alcohols condense with aromatic hydrocarbons to benzyl benzenes—*e. g.*, benzyl alcohol and benzene yield diphenyl methane (B. 6, 963).

(4) By the reduction of ketones, into which the benzyl benzenes are oxidized.

**Diphenyl Methane,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , *Benzyl Benzene*,** is obtained (1) from benzyl chloride and benzene with zinc-dust or  $AlCl_3$ ; (2) from  $CH_2Cl_2$  with benzene and  $AlCl_3$ ; (3) from methylal, or (4) from benzyl alcohol, benzene, and sulphuric acid; (5) by the reduction of benzophenone with zinc-dust, or zinc and sulphuric acid, or hydriodic acid and phosphorus, and (6) upon distilling diphenylacetic acid (p. 368) with soda-lime (A. 155, 86).

Diphenyl methane possesses the odor of oranges. It melts at  $26.5^{\circ}$  and boils at  $261^{\circ}$ . When conducted through ignited tubes it yields diphenylene methane or fluorene; a chromic acid mixture oxidizes it to benzophenone, whereas concentrated nitric acid changes it to  $p_1$ -,  $o$ , $p$ -dinitro- and tetranitrodiphenylmethane (A. 283, 154).

**Benzyl Toluenes, Phenyl Tolyl Methanes**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_3$ .—A liquid mixture of  $o$ - and  $p$ -benzyl toluene, which cannot be separated, is obtained by the action of zinc-dust on a mixture of benzyl chloride and toluene. Anthracene is formed at the same time. The pure *para*-body has been formed by heating *para*-phenyl tolyl ketone with zinc-dust, and is a liquid, boiling at  $285^{\circ}$ . It appears also to be produced in the action of sodium upon  $p$ -bromtoluene along with  $p$ -ditolyl (p. 336). Brommesitylene and sodium yield, together with dimesityl, a *pentamethyldiphenyl methane* (B. 29, 111).

**Benzyl- $p$ -xylene** boils at  $294^{\circ}$ . **Benzyl Mesitylene** melts at  $36^{\circ}$  and boils at  $301^{\circ}$ . The benzyl durennes melt at  $60^{\circ}$  and boil at  $310^{\circ}$ ; and at  $145^{\circ}$  and  $326^{\circ}$ . **Benzyl Pentaethyl Benzene** melts at  $88^{\circ}$  (B. 26, R. 58).  $p_1$ -**Ditolylmethane** melts at  $22^{\circ}$  and boils at  $286^{\circ}$ . **Dimesityl Methane** melts at  $139^{\circ}$ . The unsym. hydrocarbons were obtained according to methods 1 and 4, and the sym. according to method 1.

**Nitrodiphenyl Methanes**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot NO_2$  (A. 283, 157).—The *ortho*-compound, prepared from  $o$ -nitrobenzyl chloride and benzene with  $AlCl_3$ , is liquid (B. 18, 2402; 29, 1303). The *meta*- and *para*-bodies are derived from *meta*- and *para*-nitrobenzyl alcohol by means of benzene and sulphuric acid. The first is an oil; the second melts at  $31^{\circ}$  (B. 16, 2716).

$m_1$ -**Dinitrodiphenyl Methane**, melting at  $174^{\circ}$ , is formed from  $m$ -nitrobenzyl alcohol with nitrobenzene, or from formaldehyde, nitrobenzene and concentrated sulphuric acid (B. 27, 2293, 2321).  $m$ , $p$ -**Dinitrodiphenyl Methane**,  $p$ -**Nitrobenzyl- $m$ -nitrobenzene**, melts at  $103^{\circ}$ .  $p_1$ -**Dinitrodiphenyl Methane** melts at  $183^{\circ}$ . It is obtained from diphenyl methane along with  $o$ , $p$ -dinitrodiphenyl methane, melting at  $118^{\circ}$  (B. 27, 2110; A. 194, 363).

**Tetranitrodiphenyl Methane**, melting at  $172^{\circ}$ , forms dark blue colored salts with alcoholic potash (B. 21, 2475).

**Amido-diphenyl Methanes**.— $o$ -**Amido-diphenyl Methane** is a liquid. When its vapors are conducted over ignited lead oxide, acridine (see this) results. Nitrous acid converts it into fluorene (B. 27, 2786).  $m$ - and  $p$ -**Amido-diphenyl Methane** melt at  $46^{\circ}$  and  $34^{\circ}$  respectively (B. 16, 2718).

$p_1$ -**Diamido-diphenyl Methane**, melting at  $85^{\circ}$ , is also produced from methylene diphenylimide in the presence of hydrochloric acid or aniline hydrochloride by an intramolecular atomic displacement, which recalls the benzidine transposition and the formation of aniline homologues from the phenylalkylamines (p. 73). It changes completely to *para*-rosaniline or rosaniline when heated with aniline or  $o$ -toluidine in the presence of an oxidizing agent (B. 25, 303).

Its *tetramethyl derivative* results from dimethyl aniline by means of  $C_2H_5I_2$ ,  $CCl_3I$ , (or  $CCl_4$ ), or with methylal, or by the action of  $CS_2$  and zinc upon dimethyl aniline. It melts at  $90^{\circ}$ .

The hydrogen of the group  $CH_2$  attached to *basic* radicals is *very readily replaced by sulphur*; see  $p_1$ -tetramethyl-diamidothiobenzophenone (p. 348). See A. 283, 149, for isomeric *diamidodiphenyl methanes*.

**Oxybenzyl Benzenes**.— $p$ -**Benzyl Phenol**, melting at  $84^{\circ}$  and boiling at  $325^{\circ}$  (in  $CO_2$ ), is produced (1) from benzyl chloride, phenol, and zinc; (2) from benzyl alcohol, phenol with concentrated sulphuric acid, or zinc chloride; (3) from  $p$ -amido-diphenyl methane.

$o_1$ -**Dioxydiphenyl Methane** is only known in the form of its anhydride, xanthene (see this).

$p_1$ -**Dioxydiphenyl Methane** is produced on fusing diphenyl methane disulphonic acid with KOH (A. 194, 318). It melts at  $158^{\circ}$ . Its *dimethyl ether* is formed from anisol and methylal by the action of concentrated sulphuric acid (B. 7, 1200), and melts at  $52^{\circ}$ .

**Methylene Dipyrocatechol**,  $CH_2[C_6H_3(OH)_2]_2$ , melting with decomposition at  $220^{\circ}$ , is produced on boiling a solution of pyrocatechin and formaldehyde with hydrochloric acid or sulphuric acid (B. 26, 254).

## 2. ALCOHOLS (BENZHYDROLS).

**Diphenyl Carbinol**, *Benzhydrol*,  $(C_6H_5)_2CH.OH$ , melts at  $68^\circ$  and boils at  $298^\circ$  with partial decomposition into water and *benzhydrol ether*,  $[(C_6H_5)_2CH]_2O$ , melting at  $199^\circ$ . It is produced on heating diphenyl brom-methane with water to  $150^\circ$ ; more readily from benzophenone with sodium amalgam, or by heating with alcoholic potassium hydroxide and zinc-dust (together with benzpinacolone) (A. 184, 174).

**Phenyl-p-tolyl Carbinol** melts at  $52^\circ$  (A. 194, 265).

**Diphenyl Carbinol Chloride**, *Diphenyl Chloromethane*, melting at  $14^\circ$ , is obtained from benzhydrol and  $HI$ . When heated it breaks down into  $HCl$  and tetraphenyl ethylene (p. 378) (B. 7, 1128). *Diphenylbrom-methane*, from diphenylmethane and bromine, melts at  $45^\circ$ .

**Benzhydrylamine**,  $NH_2.CH(C_6H_5)_2$ , boiling at  $288^\circ$ , is obtained from diphenyl-brommethane and from benzophenonoxime (B. 19, 3233). The latter method has afforded the homologous *alkylbenzhydroxylamines* (B. 24, 2797). The *formyl derivative*, from benzophenone and ammonium formate at  $200-250^\circ$  (B. 19, 2129), melts at  $132^\circ$ . The *thionyl compound* boils at  $88^\circ$  (35 mm.) (B. 26, 2189). *Dibenzhydrylamine* melts at  $136^\circ$ .

$\beta$ -**Benzhydrylhydroxylamine**, [Diphenylaminol Methane],  $HO.NH.CH(C_6H_5)_2$ , melting at  $78^\circ$ , is formed on boiling a solution of diphenyl brom-methane and acetoxime with glacial acetic acid and water (A. 278, 364).

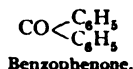
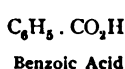
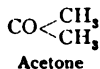
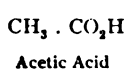
**o-Amidobenzhydrol**,  $C_6H_4<\underset{NH_2}{CH(OH)}C_6H_5$ , melting at  $120^\circ$ , is formed in the reduction of o-amidobenzophenone. It is capable, like o-amidobenzyl alcohol (p. 180), of producing heterocyclic compounds (B. 29, 1304).

In the *aldol condensation* of benzaldehyde or p-nitrobenzaldehyde and dimethyl aniline with hydrochloric acid (by  $ZnCl_2$  or oxalic acid the products are triphenylmethane derivatives) there arise:

p-**Dimethyl Amidobenzhydrol**,  $C_6H_5CH(OH).C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2$ , melting at  $69^\circ$ , and p-**Dimethylamido-p-nitrobenzhydrol**, melting at  $96^\circ$  (B. 21, 3292). By reduction the latter compound yields p-*dimethyl-amido-p-amido-diphenylmethane*, melting at  $165^\circ$ . p-**Tetramethyl-diamido-benzhydrol**, melting at  $96^\circ$ , has been obtained by the reduction of p<sub>2</sub>-tetramethyldiamidobenzophenone (B. 22, 1879). On boiling the former with dilute mineral acids until the blue color has disappeared, it breaks down into dimethylaniline and dimethylamidobenzaldehyde (B. 27, 3316). In the solid condition p<sub>2</sub>-tetramethyldiamidobenzhydrol is white, while its solution is blue in color (B. 20, 1733 Ann.).

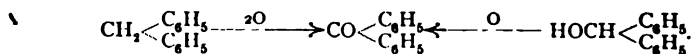
## 3. KETONES (BENZOPHENONES).

The ketones of the benzylbenzene group bear the same relation to the benzoic acids that the acetones bear to the fatty acids:



This analogy is shown in the various methods of formation.

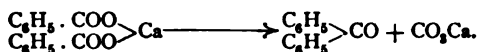
**Methods of Formation.**—(1) By oxidizing (a) the benzyl benzenes and (b) the benzhydrols with chromic acid:



If the  $CH_2$ -group contains alkyls or carboxyl, these groups will be split off by the oxidation, with the production of ketones. If the benzene residues contain alkyl groups these are converted into carboxyl groups.

(2) By the action of hot water upon the ketone chlorides (see benzophenone chloride, below).

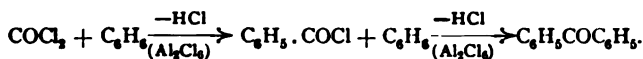
**Nucleus Syntheses.**—(3) By the distillation of the calcium salts of mononucleus, aromatic monocarboxylic acids, the  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ -groups of which are in direct union with the benzene residue:



(4) By the condensation of benzoic acid or its anhydride on heating with benzene and  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$ .

(5) By the action of benzoyl chloride on benzene, in the presence of aluminium chloride.

Phosgene reacts in the same manner, and acid chlorides are the first products. These then change into ketones (B. 10, 1854):



(6) By the action of mercury diphenyl upon the acid chlorides—*e. g.*, benzoyl chloride.

**Behavior.**—(1) On heating with zinc-dust or hydriodic acid and amorphous phosphorus, the ketones sustain a reduction of the CO group and revert to the hydrocarbons; for example, diphenyl ketone yields diphenyl methane. (2) Sodium amalgam changes them to secondary alcohols (benzhydrols) and pinacones.

**Benzophenone, Diphenyl Ketone,  $\text{CO}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ ,** is known in two modifications, the unstable (*labile*), melting at  $26^\circ$ , and produced on boiling the stable form, melting at  $46^\circ$ . The unstable modification slowly reverts to the more stable variety. This takes place rapidly, and with a very perceptible evolution of heat, upon touching it with a trace of the stable variety (B. 26, R. 380). Benzophenone has an aromatic odor. It boils at  $307^\circ$  (760 mm.) and at  $162^\circ$  (12 mm.). It is produced according to the general methods: (1) by oxidizing diphenyl methane, unsymmetrical diphenyl ethane (p. 368), benzhydrol, diphenylacetic acid (p. 368), etc.; (2) from benzophenone chloride; (3) by the distillation of calcium benzoate; (4) by the action of  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  upon benzoic acid and benzene; (5) from phosgene or benzoyl chloride, benzene and aluminium chloride, and (6) from benzoyl chloride and mercury diphenyl. When fused with caustic potash it breaks down into benzoic acid and benzene. It is converted into diphenylmethane, benzhydrol, and benzpinacone by reduction (p. 378).

**Benzophenone Homologues.**—*o*-Phenyltolyl Ketone, boiling at  $315^\circ$ , when conducted over heated lead oxide, passes into anthraquinone (see this), while it yields anthracene when heated with zinc-dust (B. 6, 754). *m*-Phenyltolyl Ketone boils at  $314^\circ$ .

*p*-Tolylphenyl Ketone is known in two modifications: the unstable (*labile*) form melts at  $55^\circ$ ; it is hexagonal. The stable form, melting at  $59^\circ$ , is monoclinic (A. 189, 84; B. 12, 2299).

*p*-Ditolyl Ketone melts at  $92^\circ$  and boils at  $333^\circ$ . Benzoyl Xylene melts at  $36^\circ$  and boils at  $317^\circ$  (B. 17, 2847). Benzoyl Mesitylene melts at  $36^\circ$  and boils at  $317^\circ$  (J. pr. Ch. [2], 35, 486), etc. All these are most conveniently prepared by method 5.

**Derivatives of Benzophenone Obtained by the Replacement of Oxygen.**—Benzophenone Chloride, Diphenyldichlormethane,  $\text{CCl}_2(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , boiling at  $193^\circ$  (30 mm.),

is produced when  $\text{PCl}_5$  acts upon benzophenone. When heated with water it re-benzophenone, while with silver it yields tetraphenylethylene (p. 378), and with dust tetraphenylethylene,  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -benzopinacoline (B. 29, 1790). **Benzophenone Bromide**,  $\text{CBr}_2(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , is produced on dropping bromine into diphenylmethane to  $150^\circ$ .

*Acetals* of benzophenone are obtained from benzophenone chloride with sodium holates, as well as from benzophenone and ortho-formic ethers (see p. 189). **Dimer** and **diethoxydiphenyl methane** melt at  $107^\circ$  and  $52^\circ$ , and boil at  $289^\circ$  and  $292^\circ$ ; R. 774).

**Thiobenzophenone**,  $\text{CS}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , is derived from benzene by means of thiophenol,  $\text{CS}_2$ , and aluminium chloride. In this reaction the phenol ethers react more than the hydrocarbons (B. 28, 2869). Thiobenzophenone is further produced by action of phosphorus sulphide upon benzophenone, but best of all when an alcoholic solution of potassium sulphide reacts with benzophenone chloride. It is an intensely colored oil, which congeals at lower temperatures to blue needles, and under a pressure of 14 mm. distils at  $174^\circ$ . The thiobenzophenones, when acted upon with zinc and copper, yield tetraphenylethylene and its substitution products (B. 29, 2944).

**Diphenyldinitromethane**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{NO}_2)_2$ , melting at  $78^\circ$ , results upon saturation of benzophenone-oxime in ether with nitrogen tetroxide. It is changed to benzophenone-oxime with zinc-dust and glacial acetic acid. Benzhydramine is formed (B. 23, 3490).

**Imidobenzophenone**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}=\text{NH}$ , is a colorless oil, obtained in the acid dry ammonia upon a chloroform solution of *amido-benzophenone chlorhydrate*. chlorhydrate results when benzophenone chloride is heated with urethane to  $130^\circ$ . water readily decomposes it into benzophenone and ammonium chloride. **Phenyl**

**zalsultime**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{SO}_2\text{N})\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , melting at  $164^\circ$ , should be viewed as a derivative of imidobenzophenone, produced in the condensation of pseudosaccharin chloride (I) with benzene and aluminium chloride (B. 29, 2296).

**Phenylimidobenzophenone**, *Diphenylmethyle Aniline*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}=\text{N}$ , melting at  $109^\circ$ , is formed from benzophenone chloride and aniline (A. 187, 199).

**Benzophenone-oxime**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}:\text{N}.\text{OH}$ , melting at  $140^\circ$ , is known in only one modification (for the possible existence of an unstable (*labile*) form consult B. : 1008), while unsymmetrical benzophenones—e. g., brombenzophenone and phenyl ketone—each form two oximes (B. 23, 2776). It is also formed in the interaction of benzophenone and hydroxylamine.

Benzophenone-oxime, when digested at  $100^\circ$  with sulphuric acid, with hydrochloric acid and glacial acetic acid, etc., sustains a peculiar molecular rearrangement into benzilide. The isomeric benzanilide imide-chloride is produced in like manner from benzilide chloride formed by  $\text{PCl}_5$  (p. 199) (B. 22, R. 591). The *phenylhydrazone*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}:\text{N}_2.\text{H}.\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $137^\circ$  (B. 19, R. 302).

**Benzophenone Halogen Derivatives** are mostly produced by method 5 (p. 1008). **o-Brombenzophenone**, melting at  $42^\circ$ , is noteworthy because of the mobility of the bromine atom. If *o*-brombenzophenone oxime, melting at  $132^\circ$ , be acted upon with caustic alkali it splits off hydrogen bromide and becomes *phenylindoxazene*,

$$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{N}=\text{O}$$
 (see this) (B. 27, 1452), while *m*- and *p*-brombenzophenone, on the other hand, yield with *o*-brombenzophenone two isomeric oximes (B. 25, 3293; A. 264, 171).

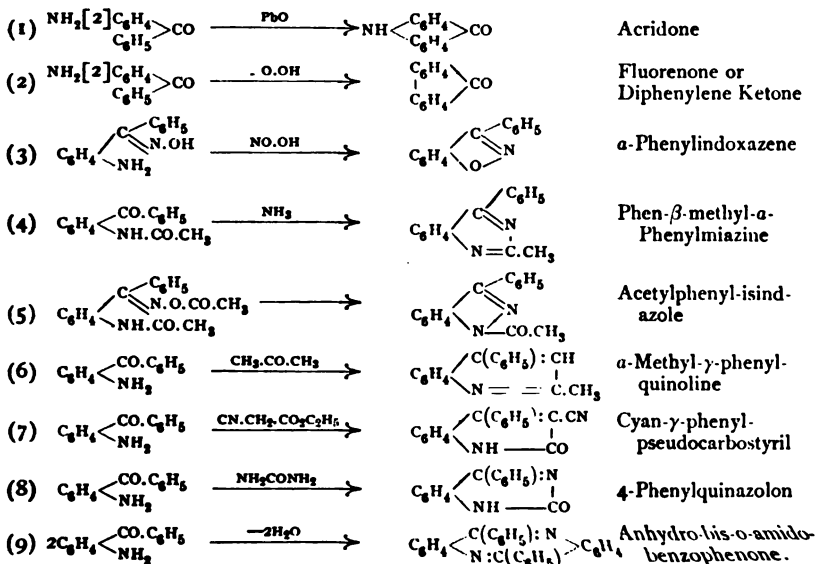
The sym. *m*-, *p*-**Dibrombenzophenones**,  $(\text{BrC}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{CO}$ , melting at  $142^\circ$  and  $140^\circ$  yield but one oxime (A. 264, 160). *o*-, *p*-**Dibrombenzophenone**, melting at  $140^\circ$  and  $141^\circ$  yields one oxime, melting at  $141^\circ$ ; this can be readily rearranged to *p*-bromphenylindoxazene (B. 27, 1453).

**o-Chlorbenzophenone Oxime** shows less readily and *o*-iodbenzophenone oxime more readily than *o*-brombenzophenone oxime the formation of phenylindoxazene (E. 1250).

**Nitrobenzophenones.**—*o*-, *m*-, and *p*-Nitrobenzophenone melt at 195°, 94°, and 138° (B. 16, 2717; 18, 2401). Phenylindoxazene is produced when the oxime of the *o*-body is boiled with caustic soda (B. 26, 1250). *o*-, *m*-, *p*-.Dinitrobenzophenone melt at 188° ( $\gamma$ ), 148° ( $\beta$ ), and 189° ( $\alpha$ ). *o*-, *m*-, *o*-, *p*-, *m*-, *p*-.Dinitrobenzophenone, (NO<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CO, melt at 126° ( $\epsilon$ ), 196° ( $\delta$ ), and 172°. *o*-, and *o*-, *m*-.Dinitrobenzophenones are formed in the nitration of benzophenone (A. 283, 164; B. 27, 2111). *o*-, *p*-.Tetra-nitrobenzophenone melts at 225° (B. 27, 2318). Other substituted benzophenones are described in the A. 286, 306, etc.

**Amidobenzophenones** are obtained from nitrobenzophenones, from benzoic acid, dimethyl aniline and P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>, benzoyl chloride, phthalanil and ZnCl<sub>2</sub> (B. 14, 1838), etc. *p*-, *m*-, *p*-.Amidobenzophenone melt at 106°, 87°, and 124°. *o*-.Amidobenzophenone is made from the amide of *o*-.benzoyl benzoic acid by the action of sodium hypobromite (B. 27, 3483; A. 291, 8). *o*-.Amidobenzophenone Oxime, melting at 156°, is re-arranged at high temperatures by hydrochloric acid into phenyl benzimide azole or *o*-.phenylenebenzamidine (B. 24, 2385). Acetyl *o*-.amidobenzophenone melts at 89°. *p*-.Dimethylamidobenzophenone, *p*-.Benzoyldimethyl Aniline, melting at 90°, is also formed on heating malachite green with concentrated hydrochloric acid at 180° (A. 217, 257; B. 21, 3293).

**Ring-formations of *o*-.Amidobenzophenone.**—(1) Acridone is produced when *o*-.amido-benzophenone is heated with lead oxide (B. 27, 3484). (2) Nitrous acid converts this *o*-.body into fluorenone or diphenylene ketone (B. 27, 3484). (3) *a*-.Phenylindoxazene is readily obtained from *o*-.amidobenzophenone and nitrous acid (B. 26, 1667). (4) When acetyl-*o*-.amidobenzophenone is heated with alcoholic ammonia it condenses to phen- $\beta$ -methyl-*a*-.phenylmiazine or *a*-.phenyl- $\beta$ -methyl quinazoline (B. 25, 3082). (5) Acetyl-phenylisindazole (B. 24, 2383; 29, 1255) results when acetyl-*o*-.amidobenzophenone oxime is rearranged by contact with Beckmann's mixture. (6) *o*-.Amidobenzophenone condenses with acetone and sodium hydroxide to a methyl-3-phenylquinoline (B. 18, 2405). (7) When heated to 200° with cyanacetic ester the product is  $\beta$ -.cyan- $\gamma$ -.phenyl-pseudocarbostyryl (B. 27, R. 589). (8) With urea it yields 4-phenylquinazolin (B. 29, 1310). (9) When the hydrochloride of *o*-.amidobenzophenone is heated water is eliminated and there results an anhydro-*bis*-.*o*-.amidobenzophenone, which probably contains an "8-membered" ring (B. 29, 1272):



*Diamidobenzophenones.*— $\alpha$ -,  $m$ -,  $p$ -Diamidobenzophenones melt at  $134^\circ$ ,  $173^\circ$ , and  $239^\circ$ . Nitrous acid converts the  $o$ -body into xanthone (see this) and  $o$ -oxyfluorene (B. 28, 111).  $p$ -Diamidobenzophenone yields substantive cotton dyes (B. 22, 988).

**Tetramethyl- $p$ -diamidobenzophenone**,  $\text{CO} < \begin{smallmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ , results upon heating hexamethyl violet with hydrochloric acid (B. 19, 109). It is technically prepared by the action of  $\text{COCl}_2$  upon dimethyl aniline in the presence of  $\text{AlCl}_3$ . It melts at  $173^\circ$ . Nitrous acid converts it into nitrosotrimethyldiamidobenzophenone (B. 24, 3198). Dimethylaniline and  $\text{PCl}_5$  convert it into methyl violet, while it yields *Victoria blue* with phenylnaphthylamine. Its *oxime* melts at  $233^\circ$  (B. 19, 1852). Its *hydrazone* melts at  $174^\circ$  (B. 20, 1112).

**Tetramethyl- $p$ -diamido-thiobenzophenone**,  $\text{CS}[\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2]_2$ , results from the action of hydrogen sulphide upon an alcoholic auramine solution heated to  $60^\circ$ , or it can be prepared from dimethylaniline and  $\text{CSCl}_2$ . It consists of ruby-red crystalline leaflets with a blue lustre or a cantharides-green crystalline powder, melting at  $202^\circ$  (B. 20, 3266, 3290).

**Auramine, Tetramethyl- $p$ -diamido-imidobenzophenone Hydrochloride**,

$[(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4]_2\text{C} = \text{NH} \cdot \text{HCl}$ , or  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{Cl}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N} = \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \\ (\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N} = \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \end{smallmatrix} \text{C} = \text{NH}_2$  (B. 26, R. 406),

results when tetramethyldiamidobenzophenone is heated with ammonium chloride and zinc chloride, as well as from  $p$ -dimethylamidobenzamide by the action of dimethylaniline and zinc chloride (B. 28, R. 86). Perfectly analogous dyestuffs are obtained from the primary anilines and diamines (B. 20, 2844; 28, R. 65). **Auramine**, golden-yellow leaflets, is important as a cotton dye. Cotton mordanted with tannin is colored a beautiful yellow by this salt.

Potassium cyanide changes it to the nitrile of the corresponding tetramethyldiamidodiphenylacetic acid (B. 27, 3294).

( $\alpha$ ) $o$ -, ( $\beta$ ) $o$ -, ( $\gamma$ ) $m$ -, ( $\delta$ ) $p$ -Diamidobenzophenones melt at  $80^\circ$ ,  $128^\circ$ , and  $126^\circ$  (A. 283, 149; B. 28, 111).

**Oxybenzophenones** are formed: (1) From amidobenzophenones; in this change the  $o$ -amidobenzophenones (p. 347) pass chiefly into fluorenes. (2) By decomposing the xanthenes, which may be viewed as cyclic phenyl ethers of  $\alpha$ -,  $\beta$ -dioxybenzophenones, with caustic potash. (3) By the condensation of benzoic acids or oxybenzoic acids and phenols with zinc chloride or phosphorus oxychloride (B. 26, R. 587), sulphuric acid or tin tetrachloride (B. 23, R. 43, 188; 24, 967). (4) From phenols by means of benzoyl chloride, zinc dust, or zinc chloride, or aluminium chloride (B. 12, 261). (5) By the action of benzotrichloride and zinc oxide (B. 10, 1969) upon phenols or their benzoyl esters. (6) By the action of alkalis upon benzotrichloride and phenols (B. 24, 3677).

*Oxybenzophenones containing but one hydroxyl-group in one benzene residue.*— **$o$ -Oxybenzophenone**, *o-Benzoylphenol*, melting at  $41^\circ$ , is produced, together with the phenyl ester of benzoic acid, by the 6th method of formation; also from phenylindoxazone (see this) upon heating it with hydriodic acid and phosphorus (B. 29, R. 350). The best method, however, consists in treating methyl salicylic chloride with benzene and aluminium chloride (B. 29, 824).  **$m$ -Oxybenzophenone**, melting at  $116^\circ$ , is produced according to method 1 (B. 24, 4044).  **$p$ -Oxybenzophenone**, melting at  $134^\circ$ , is produced by methods 1, 4, and 5 (B. 25, 3533). ( $\gamma$ ) $\alpha$ -, ( $\beta$ ) $m$ -, ( $\alpha$ ) $p$ -Dioxybenzophenones melt at  $173^\circ$ ,  $162^\circ$ , and  $210^\circ$ , and ( $\epsilon$ ) $o$ -, ( $\delta$ ) $o$ -, ( $\delta$ ) $p$ -Dioxybenzophenones melt at  $126^\circ$  and  $142^\circ$ . They are obtained from the corresponding diamidobenzophenones.

**$\alpha$ -, Dioxybenzophenone** is also made from its anhydride, xanthone or diphenylene ketone oxide, by careful fusion with potassium hydrate (B. 19, 2609).  $o$ -,  $p$ - and  $p$ -Dioxybenzophenones are also produced in the condensation of salicylic acid and phenol with tin tetrachloride (A. 283, 175).  **$p$ -Dioxybenzophenone** appears also in the decomposition of aurine, benzaurine, phenolphthalein, and rosaniline upon heating them with water or caustic potash (B. 16, 1931).

*Oxybenzophenones containing more than one hydroxyl attached to one Benzene-nucleus.*—These are prepared mainly by method 3 (p. 345). Mention must be made of the ketones obtained from pyrogalllic acid and gallic acid, for they, like alizarine, are dyes.

The dyestuff prepared from benzoic acid and pyrogallol melts at 140°. It bears the name *alizarine yellow A* in trade (A. 269, 295).

**Benzoyl-2,5-dioxybenzene**,  $C_6H_5COC_6H_3[2,5](OH)_2$ , melting at 125°, is obtained from benzaldehyde and quinone, exposed to sunlight (B. 24, 1340; p. 167).

The barks of coto and paracoto, found in Bolivia, and possessing therapeutic value, contain a series of benzophenone derivatives. They are:

**Cotoin**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_4(OH)_2(OCH_3)_2$ , melting at 130°;

**Hydrocotoin**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_4(OH)(OCH_3)_2$ , melting at 98°;

**Methyl Hydrocotoin**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_4(OCH_3)_3$ , melting at 113° (B. 25, 1119; 26, 2340; 27, 419), which are methyl ethers of benzoyl phloroglucin; and **Protocotoin**,  $(CH_3O)_2(HO) \cdot C_6H_2 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_4(O_2CH_3)_2$ , melting at 141°, as well as **Methyl Protocotoin**,  $(CH_3O)_3 \cdot C_6H_2 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_4(O_2CH_3)_2$ , melting at 134°, derivatives of 1,3,5-trioxybenzoprotocatechone.

#### 4. CARBOXYLIC ACIDS OF THE DIPHENYLMETHANE GROUP.

There are three classes of these acids: A. *Diphenylmethane Carboxylic Acids*; B. *Benzhydryl Carboxylic Acids*; C. *Benzophenone Carboxylic Acids*.

A. *Diphenylmethane Carboxylic Acids*.—o-, m-, p-Benzyl-benzoic Acids,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CO_2H$ , melt at 117°, 107°, and 154°. When the o-acid is digested with sulphuric acid, anthranol (see this) is produced (B. 25, 3022; 27, 2789; A. 291, 17) (B. 9, 633). o-Cyandiphenyl Methane, melting at 19° and boiling at 313°, is obtained from o-cyanbenzyl chloride by means of benzene and aluminium chloride, as well as from o-amidodiphenylmethane.

**Benzyliso- and -terephthalic Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_4(CO_2H)_2$ —see B. 9, 1765.

**Diphenylmethane-o<sub>2</sub>-dicarboxylic Acid**,  $CH_2(C_6H_4[2]CO_2H)_2$ , melting at 254°, results from the reduction of the lactone of benzhydryl-o<sub>2</sub>-dicarboxylic acid, and that of the dilactone of benzophenone-o<sub>2</sub>-dicarboxylic acid. Concentrated sulphuric acid changes it to anthranolcarboxylic acid (A. 242, 253).

**Diphenylmethane-m<sub>2</sub>-dicarboxylic Acid** melts at 220–225°. **Diphenylmethane-p-dicarboxylic Acid** melts at 290° (B. 27, 2324).

B. *Benzhydryl Carboxylic Acids*.—o-Benzhydrylbenzoic Acid Lactone, *Phenylphthalide*,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CH - C_6H_5 \\ [2]COO \end{array} \right.$ , melting at 115°, is formed by the reduction of o-benzoyl benzoic acid, and by the breaking down of benzhydryl-o<sub>2</sub>-carboxylic acid on the application of heat. The acid corresponding to the lactone is not capable of existing as such; its salts, however, are known.  $PCl_5$  converts the lactone into anthraquinone (B. 21, 2005). o-Cyanbenzhydryl,  $C_6H_5(CHOH)C_6H_4[2]CN$ , has been prepared from o-cyandiphenylchloromethane,  $C_6H_5CHCl \cdot C_6H_4CN$ , the reaction product from chlorine and cyandiphenylmethane (B. 29, 1315). m- and p-Benzhydrylbenzoic Acid melt at 121° and at 164° (A. 220, 242). p-Tolylphthalide melts at 129°; for its homologues see A. 234, 237.

**Oxyphenylphthalide**,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} CH \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot OH \\ COO \end{array} \right.$ , melting at 180°, is obtained from phthalaldehydic acid (p. 236), phenol, and sulphuric acid (73 per cent.) (B. 27, 2632).

**Benzhydryl-o<sub>2</sub>-lactone Carboxylic Acid**,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} CH - C_6H_4CO_2H \\ COO \end{array} \right.$ , melting at 202°,

is produced on heating benzhydryltricarboxylic acid mono-lactone,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} CO_2H \\ C \\ COO \end{array} \right. \begin{array}{l} CO_2H \\ C_6H_4 \\ CO_2H \end{array}$ , the reaction-product of alkalis upon diphtalic acid (A. 242, 233).

C. *Benzophenone Carboxylic Acids* are formed (1) in the oxidation of the alkyl-diphenylmethanes, alkylbenzophenones, diphenylmethane carboxylic acids, and benzhydryl carboxylic acids; (2) from benzoyl chloride and benzoic anhydride with zinc

malachite-green and rosaniline groups, as the *leuco-derivatives* of which they are frequently designated; (3) by the condensation of benzhydrol or benzaldehyde and hydrochloride, or dimethyl aniline hydrochloride with  $P_2O_5$  or  $ZnCl_2$ . When  $\alpha$  with chloranil, or  $l^{10}O_2$  and hydrochloric acid, etc., their salts change to those color-bases to which malachite-green and rosaniline belong; they are derived from phenyl carbinol.

**m-Amidotriphenyl Methane**,  $(C_6H_5)_3CHCl_3[3]NH_2$ , melting at  $120^\circ$ , is obtained from m-nitrotriphenylmethane (B. 21, 189).

**p-Amidotriphenyl Methane**, melting at  $84^\circ$ , is formed (1) from p-nitrotriphenylmethane (B. 23, 1623), and (2) from benzhydrol, aniline hydrochloride, and zinc (A. 206, 155).

**p-Dimethylamidotriphenyl Methane**,  $(C_6H_5)_3CH \cdot C_6H_4[4]N(CH_3)_2$ , melting at  $132^\circ$ , is formed from benzophenone chloride and dimethyl aniline, as well as from benzhydrol and dimethyl aniline with  $P_2O_5$  (A. 206, 113), as well as from benzophenone dimethyl aniline, and zinc chloride (A. 242, 341). **p-Acetamidotriphenyl Methane**, melting at  $176^\circ$  (B. 24, 728).

**p-Diamido-triphenyl Methane**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(C_6H_4[4]NH_2)_2$ , melting at  $106^\circ$ , the parent substance of *malachite-green*, is obtained (1) from benzophenone chloride and aniline with zinc-dust; (2) from benzaldehyde with aniline hydrochloride on heating with zinc chloride to  $120^\circ$  (B. 15, 676), or by boiling benzaldehyde with aniline and hydrochloric acid (B. 18, R. 334); (3) by reducing diamidotriphenylmethane hydrochloride with zinc-dust.

**p-Tetramethyl-diamido-triphenyl Methane**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH[C_6H_4[4]N(CH_3)_2]_2$ , *leucomalachite-green*, is dimorphous, and crystallizes in leaflets, melting at  $93-94^\circ$ , or in needles, which melt at  $102^\circ$ . The modification is obtained pure by crystallization from alcohol, the other from benzene. It is obtained by methylating p-diamido-triphenylmethane, as well as by the action of benzaldehyde upon dimethyl aniline. Technically, it is made by the condensation of benzaldehyde with dimethyl aniline with hydrochloric or sulphuric acid (formerly phosphoric chloride or oxalic acid). By oxidation it becomes p-tetramethyl-diamido-triphenyl carbinol, the basis of malachite-green.

**o- and m-Nitro-p<sub>2</sub>-diamido-triphenyl Methane** are produced in the condensation of o- and m-nitrobenzaldehyde with aniline sulphate by means of zinc chloride. The o-body melts at  $136^\circ$  (B. 13, 671; 16, 1305).

**p-Nitro p<sub>2</sub>-diamido-triphenyl Methane** is obtained from p-nitrobenzaldehyde and aniline. See p-leucaniline (B. 25, 676).

Benzaldehyde and the nitrobenzaldehydes condense with o- and p-toluidine, just as they do with aniline and dimethyl aniline (B. 18, 2094), whereas m-toluidine and its derivatives of aniline only react readily if the amido-group is methylated (B. 1563).

**Triamidotriphenyl Methanes** result from the reduction of o-, m-, and nitroamidotriphenyl methanes and of the triamidotriphenyl carbinols. The latter are the rosaniline bases if the three amido-groups occur in the p-position with reference to the  $C(OH)$  group. Their reduction products are also called leucanilines. These are white crystalline substances, and when oxidized yield the carbinols:

o, p<sub>2</sub>-Triamidotriphenyl Methane, or o-*Leucaniline*,  
and m, p<sub>2</sub>-Triamidotriphenyl Methane, or *Pseudoleucaniline*,  
and p<sub>3</sub>-Triamidotriphenyl Methane, or *Paraleucaniline*,

which, upon oxidation, yield dyestuffs. That from the o-body is brown in color, that from the m-body is violet, while that from the p-compound is blue.

is *pararosaniline* (p. 356). p-Triamidotriphenylmethane is also produced in the condensation of p-amidobenzaldehyde and aniline with zinc chloride; its tridiazochloride,  $\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{N}_2\text{Cl})_3$ , when boiled with alcohol, forms triphenylmethane.

**p-Triamido-diphenyl-m-tolyl Methane, Leucaniline**,  $(\text{NH}_2[4]\text{-C}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{CH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3[4](\text{CH}_3) \cdot \text{NH}_2[3]$ , is the leuco-compound corresponding to the chief constituent of rosaniline obtained by the reduction of trinitro-diphenyl meta-tolyl methane, and is also made by digesting the fuchsine salts with ammonium sulphide, or zinc-dust and hydrochloric acid. By diazotizing and replacing the diazo-groups by hydrogen (best by dissolving in concentrated sulphuric acid, conducting nitrous acid into the same, and boiling with alcohol) leucaniline is changed into diphenyl-m-tolyl methane.

**2. Carbinols** are formed by oxidizing the triphenyl methane hydrocarbons, their nitro- and amido-compounds.

**Triphenyl Carbinol**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{C} \cdot \text{OH}$ , melting at  $159^\circ$ , boils without decomposition above  $360^\circ$ , and is produced by oxidizing triphenylmethane with chromic acid in glacial acetic acid (B. 14, 1944), on boiling triphenyl-brom-methane or triphenylchloromethane with water (B. 7, 1206), or with a soda solution, as well as from pararosaniline (B. 26, 2125), and from oxalic ester, or benzaldehyde, or benzophenone with sodium and brombenzene in ether (B. 28, 2514). The *methyl ether* melts at  $82^\circ$ , and the *acetate* at  $99^\circ$  (A. 227, 116).

**Diphenyl-m-tolyl-carbinol**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2 \cdot \text{C}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3[3]\text{CH}_3$ , melting at  $150^\circ$ , is prepared from diphenyl-m-tolyl methane in the same manner as with triphenyl carbinol (A. 194, 283).

**Triphenylchloromethane, Triphenyl Carbinol Chloride**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{CCl}$ , melting at  $105\text{--}115^\circ$ , results upon treating triphenyl carbinol with  $\text{PCl}_5$ , and by the action of aluminium chloride upon carbon tetrachloride in benzene solution. When heated above  $250^\circ$  it breaks down into diphenylene phenyl methane,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \end{smallmatrix}$ , and hydrochloric acid.

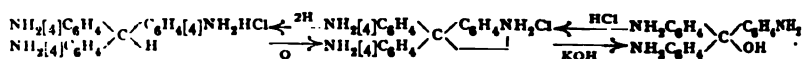
**Triphenyl-brom-methane**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{CBr}$ , melting at  $152^\circ$ , is produced when bromine acts in sunlight upon triphenylmethane dissolved in carbon disulphide (A. 227, 110). Above  $200^\circ$  it breaks down like the chloride. Potassium cyanide transposes it into triphenylacetonitrile (p. 370).

**Triphenyl-methylamine, Triphenylcarbinolamine**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{C} \cdot \text{NH}_2$ , melting at  $103^\circ$ , is produced on conducting dry ammonia gas into a benzene solution of triphenylcarbinol bromide or chloride (B. 17, 442, 741). Triphenylcarbinolphenylamine,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{C} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $144^\circ$  (B. 17, 703, 746).

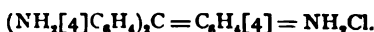
**Diphenylbenzylsultam**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2 \\ [2]\text{SO}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right\} \text{NH}_2$ , melting at  $210^\circ$ , may be viewed as a derivative of triphenylmethylamine. It is formed, together with phenylbenzalsultime (p. 346), in the condensation of pseudosaccharin chloride with benzene and  $\text{Al}_2\text{Cl}_6$  (B. 29, 2296). m- and p-Nitrotriphenyl-carbinol,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{OH})\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{NO}_2$ , melt at  $75^\circ$  and at  $136^\circ$  (B. 21, 190; 23, 1623).

**p-Trinitrotriphenyl Carbinol**,  $(\text{NO}_2[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)_3 \cdot \text{C} \cdot \text{OH}$ , melting at  $171^\circ$ , is prepared from p-trinitrotriphenyl methane by the action of chromic acid in glacial acetic acid. It yields p-roosaniline upon reduction.

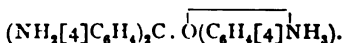
**Amidotriphenyl Carbinols.**—*p*<sub>2</sub>-Diamidotriphenyl-carbinol and *p*<sub>3</sub>-triamido-carbinols, of this class, deserve especial consideration. *p*<sub>2</sub>-Tetramethyldiamidotriphenyl-carbinol is the basis of malachite-green and *p*<sub>3</sub>-triamidotriphenyl-carbinol that of *p*-rosaniline. The free amidocarbinols are colorless. In contact with acids water is eliminated and color-salts result. These are also formed by the direct oxidation of the salts of the leuco-compounds, and pass into the latter upon reduction. Thus, *p*-leucaniline hydrochloride (1) yields, upon oxidation, *p*-rosaniline chloride, from which colorless *p*<sub>3</sub>-triamidotriphenyl-carbinol is separated by bases; hydrochloric acid converts this compound again into *p*-rosaniline chloride:



The formula of *p*-rosaniline chloride can be more conveniently written than shown in the diagram by assuming it to be derived rather from the diketo formula than from the superoxide formula of quinone-imide (*p* 172), and the valence of the nitrogen still be considered as five:



As the triamidotriphenyl-carbinols are considerably stronger bases than the corresponding triamidotriphenyl-methanes, and as two amido-groups behave differently than the third, the following constitutional formula has been suggested for *p*-triamidotriphenyl carbinol (B. 28, 207):



*m*- and *p*-**Amidotriphenyl Carbinol**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{OH})\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{NH}_2$ , melt at 155° and 116° (B. 21, 190; 23, 1625). The salts of these carbinols do not possess color-power.

*p*<sub>2</sub>-**Diamidotriphenyl Carbinol**.—The chloride of this dye, soluble with a reddish-violet color, is produced on heating aniline hydrochloride, nitrobenzene, and benzotrichloride with iron filings (A. 217, 242).

*p*<sub>2</sub>-**Tetramethyl-diamido-triphenyl Carbinol**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C}(\text{OH})[\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[\text{4}]\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2]_2$ , melting at 132°, crystallizes from benzene in colorless forms. It is obtained from its salts (malachite-green) by precipitation with the alkalis and by oxidizing an alcoholic solution of *p*<sub>2</sub>-tetramethyldiamido-triphenylmethane with chloranil (A. 206, 130).

The free base yields almost colorless solutions with acids in the cold; upon standing, more rapidly on heating, the solution acquires a green color and then contains the green salts—*malachite-greens*—of the anhydro-base of the carbinol (B. 12, 2348).

**Malachite Green, Bitter Almond Oil Green**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C} \begin{array}{c} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \end{array} \text{Cl}$ ,

the hydrochloride of the anhydro-base, is produced when zinc chloride acts upon a mixture of benzotrichloride and dimethylaniline, or upon a mixture of benzoyl chloride and dimethyl aniline (A. 206, 137).

Technically, leucomalachite green is first prepared and its hydrochloride then oxidized with lead peroxide. Upon heating to  $200^{\circ}$  with concentrated hydrochloric acid it breaks down into dimethyl aniline and p-benzoyldimethyl aniline (p. 347). The *iodmethylete*,  $C_8H_5C(ONH_2)[C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2]_2 + 2H_2O$ , is obtained on heating p<sub>2</sub>-diamido-triphenyl-carbinol and p<sub>2</sub>-tetramethyldiamido-triphenyl-carbinol with methyl iodide and methyl alcohol.

Malachite green, characterized by its strong coloring power, usually appears in trade in the form of its *sinc chloride* double salt,  $(C_{23}H_{25}N_3Cl)_2 \cdot 2ZnCl_2 + 2H_2O$ , or its *oxalate*,  $(C_{23}H_{25}N_3)_2 \cdot 3C_2O_4H_2$ .

*History*.—Malachite green, or *bitter almond oil green*, was obtained in 1877 by O. Fischer in the oxidation of p<sub>2</sub>-tetramethyldiamido-triphenyl methane. He obtained the latter compound by condensing benzaldehyde with dimethylaniline. Doebner (1878) showed how malachite green could be prepared from benzotrichloride and dimethyl aniline.

Brilliant Green, Solid Green, New Victoria Green, is the tetra-ethyl derivative, corresponding to malachite green, which is made from diethylaniline and benzaldehyde (B. 14, 2521). The color is more yellow-tinted than that of malachite green.

Acid Green is a dye obtained from benzaldehyde and benzyl-ethyl aniline by condensation, oxidation, and sulphonation. The sulpho-groups are in the benzyl residue (B. 22, 588).

Nitromalachite Greens have been prepared with o-, m-, and p-nitrobenzaldehydes and dimethyl aniline as the starting-out substances (B. 15, 682).

**Triamidotriphenyl Carbinols**.—p<sub>2</sub>-Triamidotriphenyl carbinol, p<sub>2</sub>-triamidodiphenyl-m-tolyl carbinol, and their methyl, ethyl, benzyl, and phenyl derivatives, are of the highest importance for the coal-tar color industry. Their salts with one equivalent of acid, hydrochloric or acetic, constitute the group of rosaniline dyes in the more restricted sense. Like malachite green, the rosaniline dye-substances are free from carbinol oxygen, as the salt formation is accompanied by an intramolecular anhydride formation. The carbinols separated from these salts by alkalies are colorless, but turn red, however, on exposure to the air.

Fuchsine is the dyestuff produced in the oxidation of a mixture of aniline, o-toluidine, and p-toluidine. It is the so-called *red oil* (p. 76). Rosaniline is the chief ingredient of fuchsine. It is the hydrochloride or acetate of anhydro-p<sub>2</sub>-triamidodiphenyl-m-tolyl carbinol,  $C_{20}H_{19}N_3 \cdot HCl + 4H_2O$  or  $C_{20}H_{19}N_3 \cdot C_2H_3O_2$ . The monacid salts combine with two additional equivalents of acid, forming yellowish-brown colored salts, which water decomposes into the stable, *monacid* salts with intense colors. These are applied as dyes. They are mostly readily soluble in water and alcohol, and crystallize in metallic, greenish crystals. Their solutions are carmine-red in color, and stain animal tissue directly violet-red, while vegetable fiber (cotton) must first be mordanted (tannin). Fuchsine combines with sulphurous acid, forming the readily soluble, colorless *fuchsine-sulphurous acid*.

Aldehydes impart a red color to this solution, which serves as a reagent for them.

Oxidants used with *red oil* (p. 76) are stannic chloride (Verguin, 1859), mercurous and mercuric nitrates, arsenic acid at  $180$ – $200^{\circ}$  (Medloc, Nicholson, Girard and de Laire, 1860); nitrobenzene with a little ferrous chloride or ammonium vanadate at  $180$ – $190^{\circ}$ , when the half of the red oil is applied as hydrochloride (Coupiér, 1869; compare B. 6, 25, 423, 1072).

In the *arsenic acid method* the fuchsine is obtained in the form of arsenites, which are then converted into the chlorhydrate or acetate, and obtained free from arsenious acid by recrystallization.

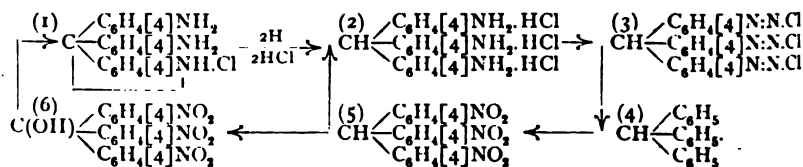
The *nitrobenzene method* yields immediately a fuchsine which is not poisonous. The nitrobenzene only acts as an oxidant, without entering into the fuchsine formation at all.

Fuchsine is not formed either from aniline or from p-toluidine, or from o-toluidine alone. Even a mixture of aniline with o-toluidine is not oxidized to fuchsine. However, not only a mixture of aniline with o- and p-toluidine yields fuchsine, but in the oxidation of a mixture of aniline and p-toluidine a dye, with the properties of fuchsine, called *pararosaniline*, is produced. This is also present in small amount in the fuchsine made from aniline and o- and p-toluidines; whereas the principal constituent of ordinary fuchsine consists of the next higher homologue of pararosaniline, namely, *rosaniline* (B. 13, 2204).

*By-products in the Formation of Fuchsine.*—The fuchsine melt contains, in addition to 34 per cent. of fuchsine, other violet and brown dyes: *marvaniline*, *violamiline*, substances belonging probably to the indulines, and other less thoroughly investigated substances, as well as slight amounts of a yellow acridine dye, known as *phosphin* or *chrysanilin* (see this).

*History of the Recognition of the Constitution of Rosaniline and Pararosaniline.*—A. W. Hofmann was the first person to engage in a scientific study of fuchsine. He began his investigations in the sixties, and was led, as a consequence, to present a formula for fuchsine and its fundamental dye-base. He became acquainted with numerous derivatives of fuchsine, especially the methyl and ethyl violet fuchsines. He assumed that the nitrogen atoms held together the radicals in the fuchsine molecule. However, Kekulé (1867) argued for the possibility that the methyl groups of the toluidine molecules, necessary for the production of fuchsine, afforded the connection. K. Zulkowsky (1869) assumed the presence of three amido-groups in fuchsine, and considered it a derivative of a hydrocarbon with the formula  $C_{18}H_{14}$ . Gradually, however, the conviction grew that fuchsine sprang from a higher aromatic hydrocarbon. This idea had its basis or origin in the experiments of Wanklyn, Caro, Graebe, Dale, Schorlemmer, and others, which, in the main, established the relationship of fuchsine to rosolic acid. The "keystone to that extended series of experimental and speculative investigations" was the conversion (1878) of pararosaniline, prepared by the oxidation of aniline and p-toluidine, into triphenylmethane. This was the work of Emil and Otto Fischer. The hydrocarbon prepared by them from rosaniline, the chief constituent of fuchsine, proved to be diphenyl-m-tolylmethane.

Triphenylmethane (4) is formed in the decomposition of the tridiazosulphate of paraleucaniline with alcohol. In the diagram the formula of the tridiazochloride (3) of paraleucaniline (2) is used for the sake of simplicity. Concentrated nitric acid converts triphenylmethane into p<sub>3</sub>-trinitrotriphenylmethane (5), which, upon reduction, yields p<sub>3</sub>-triamidotriphenylmethane, or paraleucaniline (2). The latter, by oxidation, is converted into p<sub>3</sub>-trinitrotriphenyl carbinol (6). On oxidizing paraleucaniline with arsenic acid, or by reducing p<sub>3</sub>-trinitrotriphenyl carbinol with acetic acid and zinc-dust, pararosaniline (1) results. The following diagram illustrates this series of reactions, which were carried out, beginning with rosaniline itself (A. 194, 242):



**Pararosaniline** is produced by oxidizing a mixture of aniline and p-toluidine according to the arsenic acid or nitrobenzene method (p. 355). The reaction may be imagined to proceed in that a molecule of p-toluidine is oxidized to p-amidobenzaldehyde, the latter then condenses with two molecules of aniline to paraleucaniline or p<sub>3</sub>-triamidotriphenylmethane (p. 355), from which, finally, pararosaniline results by oxidation.

When working with small quantities the most convenient way of oxidizing aniline and p-toluidine to pararosaniline consists in using mercuric chloride (B. 24, 3552). An interesting formation of pararosaniline is that of heating aniline with carbon tetrachloride to 230°, when the latter furnishes the linking carbon atom. The hydroiodide of pararosaniline results by using iodoform,  $\text{CHI}_3$ .

Pararosaniline is further formed by the reduction of p<sub>3</sub>-trinitrotriphenyl carbinol (see above); by heating p<sub>3</sub>-nitrodiamido-triphenyl methane with ferrous chloride (B. 15, 678); triamidotriphenyl carbinol is also formed by moderated reduction of p-nitrodiamido-triphenylmethane, inasmuch as the diamido-diphenylmethane-phenylhydroxylamine,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{NH}_2)_2\text{CH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{NHOH}$ , formed at first, rearranges itself (B. 29, R. 32); further, by heating p-diamido-diphenylmethane with aniline and some oxidizing agent (B. 25, 302); by heating p-nitro-benzal chloride with aniline (B. 18, 997), and by heating aurine to 120° with aqueous ammonia (B. 10, 1016, 1123).

Nitrous acid converts it into aurine. Triphenyl carbinol results when pararosaniline diazo-chloride is decomposed with finely divided copper (B. 26, 2225). At 180–200° pararosaniline is converted by concentrated hydriodic acid into aniline and p-toluidine. Evidence favoring the p-position of the two amido-groups is found in the conversion of p-rosaniline by boiling hydrochloric acid into p<sub>2</sub>-diamido-benzophenone, which is also obtained from p diamido-triphenylmethane, the condensation product of benzaldehyde with aniline. Paraleucaniline, the reduction product from pararosaniline, is also formed by the reduction of p<sub>3</sub>-nitrodiamido-triphenyl methane. The p-position of the three groups in the latter compound follows from the fact that it is produced by the same condensation reaction from p-nitrobenzaldehyde and aniline by which p-diamido-triphenylmethane is made from benzaldehyde and aniline.

In addition to the two constitution formulas (I and II) already given for the hydrochloride of pararosaniline, a third (III) may be offered; this would represent it as p<sub>3</sub>-tri-amido triphenyl carbinol chloride:

- I.  $\text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 > \text{C} < \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{HCl}$  (E. and O. Fischer).
- II.  $\text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 > \text{C} = \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 = \text{NH} \cdot \text{HCl}$  (Nietzki).
- III.  $(\text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4)_3\text{C} \cdot \text{Cl}$  . . . . . (Rosenstiehl, V. v. Richter).

Also compare B. 29, 2677, R. 346, in regard to the constitution of the rosaniline bases.

The rosaniline salts give a deeper blue shade than the salts of para-roosaniline (B. 15, 680).

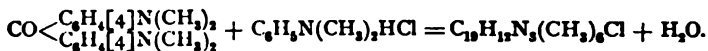
*Homologous Rosanilines* have been prepared by the oxidation of a mixture of aniline and unsym. metaxyline (B. 15, 1453), by condensation of p-nitrobenzaldehyde with o-toluidine, reduction and oxidation of the resulting condensation product (B. 15, 679), and by the condensation of p-nitrodimethylamidobenzhydrol with m-toluidine, etc. (B. 24, 553).

**Rosaniline Sulphonic Acid**, *Acid Fuchsine*, *Fuchsine S*, is produced in the action of sulphuric acid at 120° upon rosaniline.

**Alkyllic Rosanilines.**—The introduction of methyl residues into the amido-groups of rosaniline produces violet dyes—*methyl violet*. The violet color assumes a deeper blue tint with the increase of methyl groups. These dyes are made by methylating pararosaniline and by oxidizing dimethyl aniline. The methyl violets are reduced to leuco-compounds when they are heated with ammonium sulphide to 120°. Boiling hydrochloric acid resolves them into dimethyl aniline and methylated p-diamido-benzophenones (B. 19, 108).

**Hexamethyl Pararosaniline**, *Crystal Violet*,  $[(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4]_3 \cdot \text{C} = \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 = \text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{Cl}$ , is distinguished from the lower methyl derivatives

by great power of crystallization. It forms one of the principal constituents of methyl violet, and is produced (1) by the condensation of *p*-tetramethyldiamido-benzophenone and dimethyl aniline with dehydrating agents :



(2) By heating dimethylaniline with  $\text{COCl}_2$  and  $\text{AlCl}_3$  or  $\text{ZnCl}_2$  (B. 18, 767; R. 7). Formic acid, formic ester, chlorcarbonic ester, perchlormethyl mercaptan,  $\text{CSCl}_2$ , etc., act the same as phosgene (B. 19, 109); (3) by oxidation of *p*-tetramethyldiamidodiphenyl methane with dimethyl aniline; (4) by heating its methyl chloride or iodide to  $110-120^\circ$ ; (5) by oxidizing its leuco-base.

*p*-Hexamethyl Triamidotriphenyl Carbinol, *Crystal Violet Base*,  $\text{C}(\text{OH})[\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4]\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2]_3$ , melts at  $195^\circ$ .

*p*-Hexamethyl Triamidotriphenyl Methane, *Leuco-crystal Violet*,  $\text{CH}[\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4]\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2]_3$ , melting at  $173^\circ$ , results by the reduction of *crystal violet*, by the condensation of ortho-formic ester and dimethyl aniline with  $\text{ZnCl}_2$ , and by the condensation of *p*-tetramethyldiamido-benzhydrol with dimethyl aniline.

**Methyl Violet** is a mixture of hexamethylpararosanine with lower methylated derivatives (B. 19, 107). It is produced in oxidizing dimethyl aniline, alone or when mixed with monomethyl aniline, with iodine or chloranil, copper sulphate or chloride. When copper chloride is used it is advisable to add acetic acid or phenol.

**Pentamethyl Violet**,  $\text{C}_{19}\text{H}_{17}\text{N}_3(\text{CH}_3)_5\text{HCl}$ , is formed by oxidizing *p*-pentamethyltriamidotriphenylmethane,  $[(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4]_2\text{CH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4]\text{NH} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , melting at  $116^\circ$ . The latter can be isolated from the reduction-product of commercial methyl violet, a mixture of penta- and hexamethyl violet, by means of the acetyl derivative. This, when oxidized with acetylpentamethyl rosaniline, yields a *green* dyestuff (B. 16, 2906).

**Tetramethyl Violet** is formed by oxidizing *p*-amidotetramethyldiamidotriphenylmethane, melting at  $152^\circ$ . The latter is a tetramethylparaleucaniline,  $\text{NH}_2[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}[\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4]\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2]_2$ , produced in the reduction of *p*-nitromalachite-green. Its acetyl derivative, like that of pentamethyl-leucaniline, yields a *green* dye upon oxidation.

**Methyl Green**, *Methyl Chloride of Hexamethyl-pararosanine Chloride*,

$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{C} < \begin{array}{c} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4]\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4]\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{Cl} \end{array}$  is produced when methyl chloride acts upon

an alcoholic solution of methyl violet heated to  $40^\circ$ , sodium hydrate being gradually added.

### Alkylc Rosanilines.

When rosaniline is heated with methyl iodide, methyl chloride, ethyl iodide, or chloride, and methyl or ethyl alcohol, three amide hydrogen atoms are replaced by methyl or ethyl radicals. The methyl base yields reddish-violet-colored salts (*Hofmann's Violet*, *Dahlia*); these dissolve with difficulty in water, but dissolve easily in alcohol.

The violet dyes, by the addition of more methyl or ethyl groups, yield tetra-alkylic rosaniline iodides, which are capable of adding another molecule of methyl or ethyl iodide and forming *iodine greens*—*e. g.*, *iodmethylate of tetramethyl rosaniline iodide*,  $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{18}(\text{CH}_3)_4\text{N}_3\text{I} \cdot \text{CH}_3\text{I} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ , which has been displaced in the dye industry by methyl green (see B. 28, 1008).

**Aldehyde Green** (Usèbe, J. pr. Ch. 92, 337), another green rosaniline dye, has been prepared by heating rosaniline with aldehyde and sulphuric acid, and by further action of sodium hyposulphite. The most recent opinion is that in this reaction an aniline group has been changed to quinaldine, while the other two groups have occasioned the formation of aldol aniline residues, which latter then add sulphur, just as is done by aldol aniline itself (p. 79) (compare B. 24, 1700; 29, 60).

**Phenylated Pararosanilines.**—Just as methyl violet is prepared from dimethyl aniline by means of  $\text{COCl}_2$ , etc., so

**Diphenylamine Blue** can be obtained by heating diphenylamine with carbon hexachloride,  $\text{C}_6\text{Cl}_6$ , or oxalic acid, to  $120^\circ$ . It is identical with *triphenylpararosaniline*,  $\text{C}(\text{OH})(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3 \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$  (B. 23, 1964), obtained by the action of aniline upon pararosaniline. At present it is only the sodium salts of its mono- and disulpho-acids which are applied as *Alkali Blue* and *Water Blue* in dyeing.

Perchloroform ester,  $\text{CClO}_4\text{CCl}_3$ , in a similar manner converts diphenyl methylamine,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{N} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , into trimethyl-triphenyl-pararosaniline,

$\text{C}(\text{OH})(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3 \cdot \text{N} \left( \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \end{smallmatrix} \right)_3$  (B. 19, 278). Phosgene converts triphenylamine into the hydrochloride of hexaphenyl-pararosaniline,  $\text{C}(\text{OH})[\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2]_3$  (B. 19, 758). Tricarbazole Carbinol,  $\text{C}(\text{OH})(\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{NH})_3$  (B. 20, 1904), is produced by heating together carbazole and oxalic acid. It is analogous to the triphenylamine derivative.

**Phenylated Rosanilines** are obtained by heating rosaniline hydrochloride with aniline or toluidines, or the free base with aniline and some benzoic acid. The triphenylrosaniline hydrochloride,  $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{16}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{N}_3 \cdot \text{HCl}$ , appeared in commerce as *aniline blue*, a bluish-brown crystalline powder with copper luster, soluble in alcohol but not in water. To dissolve it in the latter, sulpho-salts are prepared, which exhibit different shades of blue (*soluble blue*) corresponding to the number of sulpho-groups in them. At present diphenylamine blue and other dyes have taken its place. Diphenylamine results on distilling triphenylrosaniline.

By converting rosaniline, by means of the tridiazocompound into the trihydrazine derivative, there results *Roshydrasine*,  $\text{C}(\text{OH})(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3 \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{NH}_2$ ; this, by condensation with aldehydes and ketones, yields red and blue dyestuffs (B. 20, 1557).

**3. Phenol Derivatives of the Triphenylmethanes.**—The phenol derivatives of the triphenylmethanes are produced (1) from the corresponding amido-compounds through the diazo-derivatives; (2) by condensations similar to those of the amido-compounds if phenols be substituted for the anilines; (3) by the reduction of the phenol carbinols, into which they are changed by oxidation.

**Monoxytriphenyl Methanes.**—In this class may be included *o*-Diphenyl Cresol, *o*-Oxytriphenyl Methane,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4[2]\text{OH}$ , melting at  $118^\circ$ . It is obtained from *o*-amidotriphenyl methane (A. 241, 367). *Oxydiamidotriphenyl Methanes* (B. 14, 2522; 16, 1307) are produced by the condensation of salicylaldehyde and anisaldehyde with aniline sulphate or dimethyl aniline and zinc chloride.

The di- and tri-oxytriphenyl methanes yield, on oxidation, di- and triphenol carbinols, which, as a rule, possess the character of dyestuffs. Carbinols in which two benzene nuclei are hydroxylated, and which correspond to the malachite-green compounds, are termed *benzeines*; whereas the derivatives with three hydroxylated benzene nuclei are called *aurines* or *rosolic acids*, while corresponding trioxytriphenylmethanes are designated as *leucaurines* or *leuco-rosolic acids*.

**p-Dioxy-triphenyl Methane**, *Leucobenzaine*, leucobenzaurine,  $\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_8 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4]\text{OH})_2$ , is obtained (1) from *p*-diamidotriphenyl methane (p. 352) (A. 206, 153)

(2) by reducing benzaurine (A. 217, 230), as well as (3) by the condensation of benzaldehyde and phenol with sulphuric acid (B. 22, 1944). It melts at 161°.

Dioxydimethyl Triphenyl Methane,  $C_6H_5CH[C_6H_5(OH)CH_3]_2$ , melts at 170° (A. 257, 70). Phenylidithymol Methane melts at 166°.

See B. 24, R. 562, for the condensation of m-nitrobenzaldehyde with phenols.

*p*-Trioxy-triphenyl Methane, Leucaurine, [*Triphenylol Methane*],  $CH[C_6H_5[4]OH]_3$ , is obtained in the reduction of aurine, its carbinol anhydride, by means of zinc-dust and sodium hydrate or acetic acid. It crystallizes in colorless needles, which become colored on exposure to the air (A. 166, 286; 194, 136; 202, 198). The *triacetate* melts at 138° (B. 11, 1117).

Leuco-rosolic Acid,  $(HO[4]C_6H_4)_2 \cdot CH \cdot C_6H_5[4]OH[3]CH_3$ , results from the reduction of rosolic acid. Its *triacetate* melts at 148° (A. 179, 198).

4. Phenol Derivatives of Triphenyl Carbinol.—A. Benzefnes (see above) are produced by the condensation of benzotrichloride with mono- and polyhydric phenols, in which the para-position with reference to a hydroxyl group is not substituted—*e.g.*, o- and m-cresol, resorcinol, and pyrocatechin (but not p-cresol, hydroquinone, etc.) (B. 23, R. 340). They are also formed when their leuco-compounds, the corresponding oxytriphenyl methanes, are oxidized.

The benzefnes are generally red-colored compounds with metallic luster. They dissolve on boiling with sodium bisulphite; acids reprecipitate them. Alkalies dissolve them with the formation of red or violet-colored salts. The carbon dioxide of the air decomposes the latter.

*p*-Dioxy-triphenyl Carbinol, *Phenol Benzefne*, *Benzaurine*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C \begin{array}{c} \nearrow C_6H_5 \cdot OH \\ \searrow C_6H_5 \cdot O \end{array}$

or  $C_6H_5 \cdot C \begin{array}{c} \nearrow C_6H_5 \cdot OH \\ \searrow C_6H_5 \cdot O \end{array}$ , is produced in the condensation of benzotrichloride and phenol (similar to the formation of malachite-green) (A. 217, 223), and by the oxidation of *p*-dioxytriphenylmethane, into which it passes upon reduction. It is a brick-red, crystalline powder. It breaks down, when fused with alkalis, into benzene and dioxybenzophenone, and this latter decomposes further into paraoxybenzoic acid and phenol. Its *diacetate* melts at 119°.

*p*-Dioxy-*m*,*m*-dimethyl Triphenylmethane, o-Cresol Benzefne,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C(OH) \cdot [C_6H_5[3]CH_3[4]OH]_2$ , melts at 220–225° (A. 257, 69).



Resorcinol Benzefne,  $C_{28}H_{20}O_9 = \begin{array}{c} O \\ | \\ C_6H_5C[C_6H_5(OH)_2]_2 \end{array}$ , is formed when water

acts upon the reaction product of resorcinol and benzotrichloride (A. 217, 234), and when  $ZnCl_2$  acts upon benzoic acid and resorcin (J. pr. Ch. [2], 48, 387). See B. 26, 2064, for dinitroresorcinol benzefne.

Rosamines.—These are derivatives of diamido-benzefnes. They are formed when mono-alkylic and dialkyl o-amidophenols act upon benzotrichloride. While the benzefnes, from phenols, are very feeble dyes, whose alkali salts are even decomposed by carbon dioxide, the hydrochlorides of the rosamines are red and violet dyes, having great similarity to the rhodamines (p. 366), but possessing a blue tint and redder fluorescence (B. 22, 3001). They also result on heating resorcinol benzefne with dimethyl and diethyl aniline.

Rosamine Chloride,  $C_6H_5C \begin{array}{c} \nearrow C_6H_5 \left\{ \begin{array}{c} [4]N(CH_3)_2 \\ [2] \\ [2] \end{array} \right\} > O \\ \searrow C_6H_5 \left\{ \begin{array}{c} [4]N(CH_3)_2Cl \end{array} \right\} \end{array}$ , may be obtained from benzo-

trichloride and dimethyl aniline. It forms reddish-black needles with a steel-blue reflex.

B. Aurines and Rosolic Acids.—These compounds correspond perfectly to the rosanilines. The free *p*-trioxy-triphenyl carbinols are not known. When freed from their salts they sustain an intramolecular anhydride formation.

These carbinol anhydrides are yellow in color; their alkali salts dissolve in water,

with a red color. They are incompletely fixed by the fiber of the material, and are only applied in the form of lakes in the paper industry.

**Aurine, Para-rosolic Acid, Yellow Corallin,**  $\text{HO}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{C}(\text{HO}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[4])\text{O}$ , is produced (1) on boiling the diazohydrochloride of pararosaniline with water (A. 194, 301); (2) by the condensation of p-dioxybenzophenone chloride with phenol (B. 11, 1350); (3) by the condensation of phenol with formic acid on heating with zinc chloride (J. pr. Ch. [2], 23, 549); and (4) by heating phenol (1 part) with oxalic ( $\frac{2}{3}$  part) and sulphuric ( $\frac{1}{2}$  part) acids to 130–150° (A. 202, 185). For the by-products arising when aurine is prepared by method 4, and for its separation from the same, see A. 194, 123; 196, 77; B. 28, R. 743.

Aurine dissolves in glacial acetic acid and alcohol, crystallizes in dark red needles or prisms with metallic luster, and decomposes when heated above 220°. It dissolves in alkalis with a fuchsine-red color. With the primary alkaline sulphites it readily yields colorless, crystalline derivatives, decomposable by acids and alkalis. Aurine forms crystalline compounds with hydrochloric acid. Water decomposes them. Digested with zinc-dust and hydrochloric acid or acetic acid, aurine is reduced to leucaurine or p<sub>3</sub>-trioxytriphenylmethane. Heated to 250° with water, it breaks up into p<sub>2</sub>-dioxybenzophenone and phenol.

Aurine is changed to pararosaniline when it is heated with aqueous ammonia to 150°. An intermediate product (having 1 or 2 amide groups) is the so-called *Peonine* (red corallin). With aniline we obtain triphenyl-rosaniline, and the intermediate product is *Azuline*. Consult B. 29, R. 510, for isomeric *acetyl-aurines*.

**Rosolic Acid**,  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{16}\text{O}_8$ , is the inner anhydride of p<sub>3</sub>-trioxydiphenyl-m-tolylcarbinol. Rosolic acid, like aurine, is obtained by boiling the diazochloride of rosaniline with water (A. 179, 192) and by oxidizing a mixture of phenol and cresol,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_3)\text{OH}$ , with arsenic acid and sulphuric acid, whereby the linking methane carbon is furnished by the methyl group. When rosolic acid is digested with alcohol and zinc-dust, it is reduced to leucorosolic acid, from which it is obtained by oxidation (B. 26, 254).

**Trioxy-aurine**,  $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_6$ , results from the interaction of  $\text{ZnCl}_2$ , pyrocatechine, and formic acid (B. 26, 255). **Resaurine**,  $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_6$ , is similarly prepared with resorcinol (J. pr. Ch. [2], 23, 547). **Orcin-aurine**,  $\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{18}\text{O}_5$  (J. pr. Ch. [2], 25, 277; B. 13, 546).

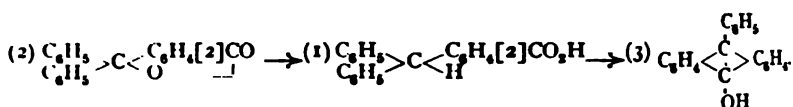
**Eupittonic Acid, Eupitton, Hexamethoxy-aurine**,  $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_8(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_6\text{O}_3$ , is produced by oxidizing a mixture of the dimethyl ester of pyrogallic acid and methyl pyrogallic acid. It is, therefore, an aurine in which six methoxyl groups are present. It forms orange-yellow crystals, melting with decomposition at 200°. It dissolves with a deep blue color in alkalis, yielding salts which are precipitated by excess of alkali (B. 12, 2216). Reichenbach (1835) observed the formation of a blue-colored barium salt when fractions of beechwood-tar were allowed to stand with baryta-water, and named it *pittical* (from *πίττα*, tar, and *καλλος*, beautiful). When heated with ammonia, eupittonic acid, just like aurine, affords an *hexamethoxy-rosaniline*.

**5 and 6. Alcohols and Aldehydes of Triphenylmethane.**—Few of them are known: Phenolphthalol,  $(\text{HO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{CHC}_6\text{H}_4[2]\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , melting at 190°, was prepared by the action of sodium amalgam upon phenolphthalein (A. 202, 87).

**p-Diphenylmethyl-benzaldehyde**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CH}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{CHO}$ , boiling at 190–195° (46 mm.), results from the condensation of terephthalaldehyde and benzene with concentrated sulphuric acid (B. 19, 2029).

**7. Carboxyl Derivatives of Triphenylmethane.**—Triphenylmethane Carboxylic Acids are produced (1) by reduction of triphenyl carbinol carboxylic acids, and (2) from their nitriles. The latter are prepared by the action of aluminium chloride upon the cyanbenzal chlorides (p. 238) and benzene.

**Triphenylmethane-o-carboxylic Acid, Benzene Phthalin** (see phthaleins, p. 363),  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CH}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4[2]\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at 162°, is isomeric with triphenyl acetic acid (p. 369), and is produced by the reduction of diphenylphthalide (2), the lactone of triphenyl-carbinol-o-carboxylic acid (A. 202, 52), and from its nitrile. Chromic acid oxidizes it to diphenylphthalide, while it breaks down into carbon dioxide and triphenylmethane when it is heated with barium hydroxide. Sulphuric acid rearranges it to phenylanthranol (3):



**o-Cyantriphenylmethane**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{CH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5[2]\text{CN}$ , melts at  $89^\circ$  and boils at  $270-285^\circ$  (70–85 mm.). Preparation, see above (B. 24, 2572).

**p-Tetramethyldiamidotriphenylmethane-o-carboxylic Acid**,  $[(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4]_2\text{CH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5[2]\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , from tetramethyldiamidodiphenylphthalide (p. 363) (A. 206, 101), melts at  $200^\circ$ .

**Triphenylmethane-p-carboxylic Acid** melts at  $161^\circ$ , and its *nitrile* at  $91^\circ$  (B. 26, 3079). **Methyltriphenylmethane Carboxylic Acids**—see B. 16, 2364; 19, 3064; A. 234, 242.

*Oxytriphenylmethane Carboxylic Acids* are formed in the reduction of the oxytriphenylcarbinol carboxylic acids. **p-Oxytriphenylmethane-o carboxylic Acid**,

$\text{HO}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 > \text{CH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5[2]\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $210^\circ$  (B. 13, 1616), and **p-Dioxytriphenylmethane-o-Carboxylic Acid**, *Phthalin*,  $[\text{HO}[4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4]_2\text{CH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5[2]\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $225^\circ$  (A. 202, 36, 153), were obtained from the corresponding oxytriphenylcarbinol-o-carboxylic acids (p. 363). Concentrated sulphuric acid converts them into the corresponding oxyphenylanthranols.

**Hydrofluoranic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]\text{CH} < \begin{array}{c} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5[2] \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5[2] \end{array} \\ [2]\text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} \right\} \text{O}$ , melting at  $226-228^\circ$ , results

from the reduction of fluorane and tribromfluorane (p. 365). When the acid is distilled over lime *xanthone* (see this) and benzene result, while diphenylenephenylmethane (B. 25, 3586) is produced in its distillation over baryta or soda-lime.

**Fluoresceine**, **p-Dioxyhydrofluorane Carboxylic Acid**, is the reduction product of fluorescein (p. 365).

## 8. Carboxyl Derivatives of Triphenylcarbinol, Phthalides.

—The o-carboxyl derivatives of this class are especially noteworthy. They cannot exist free; they lose water and form lactones, which can be regarded as diphenylated phthalides (pp. 234, 349).

**Diphenylphthalide**, *Triphenylcarbinol-o-carboxylic Acid Lactone*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]\text{C} < (\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2 \\ [2]\text{COO} \end{array} \right\}$ , melting at  $115^\circ$ , is formed (1) by the oxidation of

triphenylmethane-o-carboxylic acid, (2) in slight amount by the action of mercury diphenyl upon phthalylchloride, (3) from phthalylchloride and benzene with aluminium chloride. The third method of formation serves for the preparation of diphenylphthalide, formerly considered to be o-phthalophenone (p. 351), until it was discovered to contain a lactone, the basis of the phthalides.

In the third method of producing diphenylphthalide the phthalyl chloride may be replaced by phthalic anhydride. In this case o-benzoylbenzoic acid will be the first product, which by the further action of benzene and aluminium chloride changes to diphenylphthalide. The acetyl derivative of o-benzoylbenzoic acid is better adapted for the formation of diphenylphthalide than the free acid (p. 350) (B. 14, 1865).

Diphenylphthalide, when boiled with alkalis, forms salts of triphenylcarbinol-o-carboxylic acid, from the solution of which acids re-precipitate diphenylphthalide. Zinc-o-carboxylic acid.

The anilide,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]C = (C_6H_5)_2 \\ [2]CO.NH.C_6H_5 \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $189^\circ$ , and the *hydrazide*,

$C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]C = (C_6H_5)_2 \\ [2]CON_2HC_6H_5 \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $230^\circ$ , are produced on boiling diphenylphthalide and aniline hydrochloride (B. 27, 2793) and with phenylhydrazine (B. 26, 1273).

The nitration of diphenylphthalide produces two *dinitrodiphenylphthalides*, from which two *diamidodiphenylphthalides* have been obtained (A. 202, 66).

*p*,*p*-Tetramethyldiamidodiphenylphthalide,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]C = [C_6H_4[4]N(CH_3)_2]_2 \\ [2]COO \end{array} \right.$ ,

melting at  $190^\circ$ , is obtained in the condensation of phthalic anhydride and dimethyl-aniline with  $ZnCl_2$ . If phthalic anhydride be substituted for phthalyl chloride in this reaction there is an isomeric body, *phthalyl-green*, produced. This is probably an anthracene derivative (A. 206, 93).

Triphenylcarbinol-*m*-carboxylic Acid, melting at  $161^\circ$ , and Triphenylcarbinol-*p*-carboxylic Acid, melting at  $200^\circ$ , are formed when diphenyl-*m*-tolylmethane and diphenyl-*o*-tolylmethane are oxidized with chromic acid in glacial acetic acid solution. The latter also appears in the oxidation of *p*-diphenylmethyl-benzaldehyde (p. 361), and of triphenylmethane-*p*-carboxylic acid (p. 362) (B. 16, 2369; 26, 3081).

Phenyl-*p*-tolylphthalide is made from acetyl-*o*-benzoylbenzoic acid, toluene, benzoyl-*o*-benzoic acid chloride and toluene, toluic-*o*-benzoic acid chloride and benzene with aluminium chloride (B. 14, 1867; 29, R. 995). Isomeric *methylated diphenylphthalides* are produced in the oxidation of diphenyl-*m*- and *p*-xylylmethanes (p. 351). Ditolyl-phthalide melts at  $116^\circ$ . See B. 28, 513, for diphenyl-*o*-phthalide,

$C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]CO.O \\ [2]C = (C_6H_4.C_6H_5)_2 \end{array} \right.$

### Carboxyl Derivatives of the Oxytriphenyl Carbinols.

The Phthaleïns, the derivatives of phthalide containing two phenol residues, are particularly important, and are dyes which are of great technical value. A. v. Baeyer discovered them in 1871. The transition from them to diphenylphthalide is found in—

Benzene Phenolphthalide,  $C_6H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]C \begin{array}{c} \nearrow C_6H_4OH \\ \searrow C_6H_5 \end{array} \\ [2]COO \end{array} \right.$ , melting at  $155^\circ$ .

It is prepared from *o*-benzoylbenzoic acid, phenol, and stannic chloride (B. 13, 1608). *Benzene Resorcinolphthalide* melts at  $175^\circ$ , and *Benzene Pyrogallolphthalide* melts at  $189^\circ$  (B. 14, 1859).

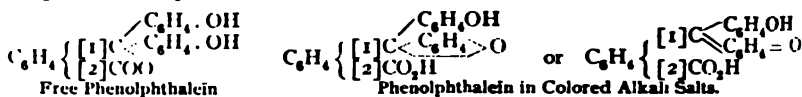
The Phthaleïns result from the condensation of phthalic anhydride (1 mol.) with phenols (2 mols.) on heating with sulphuric acid, or, better, with  $ZnCl_2$  to  $120^\circ$  (or with oxalic acid at  $115^\circ$ ).

The phthaleïns derived from di- and polyhydric phenols are all anhydrides, formed by the elimination of water from two phenol hydroxyls (A. 212, 347), in union with different benzene nuclei. In the condensation of phthalic anhydride and phenol *p*,*p*-dioxydiphenylphthalide, or phenolphthaleïn, is not the only product; fluorane, the anhydride of *o*,*o*-dioxydiphenylphthalide is also formed. It is the simplest representative of the phthaleïn anhydrides, which contain a ring similar to the xanthone ring.

The free phthaleïns are generally colorless, crystalline bodies. They dissolve in the alkalis with intense colorations, and are again separated from their solutions by acids (even  $CO_2$ ). The addition of concen-

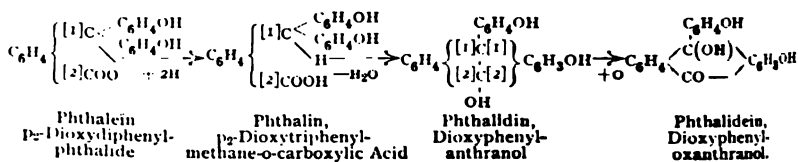
trated caustic alkali causes the colors to disappear. On diluting with water, the colors reappear.

To show the similarity of the phthaleins to the aurines or rosanilines in the formula, it is assumed that the free, colorless phthaleins contain the lactone ring; in their colored alkali salt solutions this ring is absent, and the methane carbon atom and an oxygen atom form a quinone-like union with a benzene nucleus. This idea is apparently supported by the preparation of phthaleinnoxime:



It should also be added that lactone esters and ethers have also been obtained by acylation and alkylization of phenolphthalein in alkaline solution (B. 28, 3258; 29, 131; compare B. 29, R. 552).

The phenolphthaleins, by reduction, yield oxytriphenylmethane carboxylic acids—the *phthalins* (p. 361). The latter are changed by concentrated sulphuric acid into oxyphenylanthranol derivatives, called *phthalidines*. The oxidation of the latter produces the *phthalideines*, or oxyphenyloxanthranol derivatives. The following diagram represents these changes, with phenolphthalein as the example:



Phenolphthalein, *p*<sub>2</sub>-Phthalein, *Dioxydiphenyl phthalide*, C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>14</sub>O<sub>4</sub>, is a yellow powder, crystallizing from alcohol in colorless crusts, and melting at 250°. It dissolves in the alkalis with a red color. It is used as an indicator in alkalimetry, especially in determining carbon dioxide with baryta (B. 17, 1907). It is formed from phthalophenone when nitrous acid acts on the p-diamido-compound; by oxidizing an alkaline solution of the corresponding phthalin with air, or with potassium ferricyanide or potassium permanganate, and is also obtained on heating phthalic anhydride with phenol and tin chloride, or with sulphuric acid to 115–120° for eight hours. α<sub>2</sub>-Dioxydiphenylphthalide anhydride, insoluble in caustic potash, is a by-product. Boiling caustic potash and zinc-dust reduce phthalein to phthalin (p. 361), and it is decomposed into p<sub>2</sub>-dioxybenzophenone and benzoic acid by fusion with caustic potash (A. 202, 68).

**Lactone Derivatives of Phenolphthalein:** Diacetophenolphthalein melts at 143°. Dibenzoylphenolphthalein melts at 169° (B. 29, 131). Dimethyl Phenolphthalein, melting at 98° (B. 29, 138, R. 848), has also been obtained synthetically from phthalic anhydride, anisol, and Al<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>6</sub> (B. 29, R. 550). Phenolphthalein Anilide, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub> { [1]C (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub> · OH)<sub>2</sub> [2]CONC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub> }, melts at 279° (B. 26, 3077). Tetrabromophenolphthalein, C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>10</sub>Br<sub>4</sub>O<sub>4</sub>, melts with decomposition at 220–230°.

The colored alkali salts are *quinoid derivatives of phenolphthalein*.

In this class is also—

**Phenolphthalein Oxime**, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub> { [1]C C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub> · OH [2]CO<sub>2</sub>H = N · OH }, a yellow crystalline pow.

der, melting with decomposition at 221°, and produced by the action of hydroxylamine upon an alkaline phenolphthalein solution. Boiling, dilute sulphuric acid decomposes the oxime into p-oxy-o-benzoylbenzoic acid and p-amidophenol (B. 26, 172). **Tetrabromphthalein Oxime** (B. 26, 2260). See B. 30, 176, upon the quinoid tetrabromphenolphthaleinmono- and -diethyl ethers.

**Fluorane**, *o*,-**Phenolphthalein Anhydride**,  $C_8H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]C \begin{array}{c} \swarrow C_6H_4[2] \\ \searrow C_6H_4[2] \end{array} \\ [2]COO \end{array} \right\} O$ , melting at

173–175°, is produced, together with p,-phenolphthalein, by the condensation of phthalic anhydride and phenol. Fluorane yields hydrofluoric acid by reduction (p. 362), and diphenylenephenylmethane when it is distilled over zinc-dust (B. 25, 3586). The *anil*,

$C_8H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]C = (C_6H_4)_2O \\ [2]CON \cdot C_6H_5 \end{array} \right.$ , melts at 242° (B. 27, 2793). **Tribromfluorane**,  $C_{20}H_3Br_3$ ,  $Br_2O_3$ , melting at 298–300°, is produced by the action of  $PBr_5$  upon fluorescein, and is reduced by alcoholic caustic soda and zinc-dust to hydrofluoric acid (B. 25, 1388).

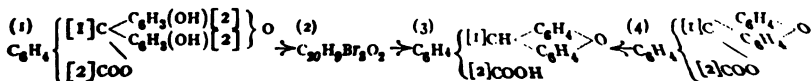
The **fluoresceins** are the o-phthalic anhydrides produced by the condensation of phthalic anhydrides with resorcinol. They are characterized by a beautiful fluorescence; this is especially true of their alkaline solutions (Baeyer, A. 183, 1).

Phthalic anhydride may also be replaced by the anhydrides of aliphatic dicarboxylic acids. When succinic, maleic, and citraconic anhydrides are condensed with resorcinol, the corresponding fluoresceins are produced. See also naphthalic acid (B. 15, 883; 18, 2864; 24, R. 763; 26, R. 542; 29, 2824).

**Resorcinol-phthalein, Fluorescein**,  $C_{20}H_{12}O_6$ , is prepared by heating phthalic anhydride (2 parts) with resorcinol (7 parts) to 200°, or with anhydrous oxalic acid (B. 17, 1079) to 110–117°. When precipitated from its salts it is a yellowish-red powder,  $C_{20}H_{12}O_6$ , which quickly loses water and becomes  $C_{20}H_{10}O_6$ , which dissolves in alcohol with a yellow-red color and green fluorescence. Its concentrated alkali solution is dark red, but on dilution it gradually becomes yellow, and then exhibits a magnificent yellowish-green fluorescence. Upon reduction fluorescein yields fluoresceine (p. 362), and  $PCl_5$  converts it into fluorescein chloride, p,-dichlorfluorane (see rhodamines, p. 366 (A. 183, 18).

Baeyer ascribes the formula  $C_8H_4 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]C = (C_6H_3OH)_2O \\ [2]COO \end{array} \right.$  to fluorescein. As there

was a disposition to assume that the phthalic acid residue replaced both m-hydrogen atoms (5) in the resorcinol molecules, R. Meyer showed that fluorescein is a dioxo-derivative of o-phenolphthalein anhydride, for which reason he gave it the name **fluorane** (above); that, therefore, the phthalic acid residue occupied the o-position with reference at least to each of the hydroxyl groups of the resorcinol molecule, and between these hydroxyl groups the anhydride formation occurred. R. Meyer converted fluorescein (1) by means of  $PBr_5$  into tribromfluorane (2), which, like fluorane (4) itself, yields hydrofluoric acid (3) upon reduction. Fluorescein and fluorane contain a ring closely related to the xanthone ring; indeed, hydrofluoric acid (p. 362) may be decomposed into xanthone and benzene:



The intense color of fluorescein led Bernthsen and others to ascribe a quinoid constitution to free fluorescein and its colored derivatives (see phenolphthalein). The colorless derivatives were supposed to have their origin in the lactone formula of fluorescein. This view of fluorescein and its colored derivatives with the aurines and rosanilines.

When fluorescein is fused with caustic soda it breaks down into resorcinol and mono- and di-phthalic anhydrides, or dioxybenzoylbenzoic acid. Bromine in glacial acetic acid changes the latter to dibromodioxybenzoylbenzoic acid, which fuming sulphuric acid changes to 1,2-bisoxantho-purpurine; it is also obtained from eosin. Hence it follows that the precursor of phthalic acid is 2,4-dioxy-o-benzoylbenzoic acid, because if it were 2,6-dioxybenzoylbenzoic acid it would be impossible for an anthraquinone condensation to occur (Ber. B. 28, 314; B. 29, 2623).

**Fluorescein Anilide,  $C_{20}H_{17}NO_4$ .**—The anilide is colorless, melts at  $207^\circ$ , and when boiled with sulphuric acid changes to fluorescein. **Fluorescein dimethyl ether**, melting at  $198^\circ$  (B. 28, 396).

**Fluorescein ethyl ether,  $C_{22}H_{19}NO_4$ .**—Fluorescein Carboxyl Ethyl Ether, melting at  $225^\circ$ , is produced by the oxidation of fluorescein ethyl ether, melting at  $196^\circ$  (p. 362). The melting of crystals with a green luster. An alcoholate and ethyl bromide convert fluorescein carboxyl ethyl ether into the colored diethyl ether, melting at  $159^\circ$ . This ether forms large yellow needles. The dimethyl ether, melting at  $208^\circ$ , is made from fluorescein by the action of methyl alcoholic potash and methyl iodide (B. 28, 396; B. 29, R. 548).

**Substituted Fluorescins.**—Although fluorescein itself is not applicable as a dye, by introducing halogens and nitro-groups into it dyestuffs of remarkable beauty can be obtained. If we start with fluorescein, then the substitution will occur in the resorcinol nucleus.

If bromine be allowed to act on fluorescein suspended in glacial acetic acid, Eosin, Tetrabromfluorescein,  $C_{20}H_4Br_4O_5$ , is produced. Crystallized from alcohol it forms colorless crystals. The *potassium* and *sodium salts* constitute the eosin of commerce, soluble in water, and imparting to wool and silk a beautiful rose-color. In the case of the sodium salt there is a yellowish-red fluorescence (Caro, 1873).

**Erythrosine,  $C_{20}H_4I_4O_5$ .**

**Safrosine,  $C_{20}H_4N_2O_5$ .** Dibromodinitrofluorescein,  $C_{20}H_2Br_2(NO_2)_2O_5$ , is formed when fuming acid acts upon dinitrofluorescein, or when nitric acid acts upon di- or tetrabromfluorescein (A. 202, 68). See B. 30, 333, for the dinitrofluorescein yellow from dinitrofluorescein and ammonia.

To obtain the fluorescins substituted in the phthalic acid residue, condense the chlorinated phthalic anhydrides with resorcinol (Noelting). The brom- and iodfluorescins, with the substituents in the resorcinol residues, are at the same time prepared from the chlorinated bodies:

**Phlorine,  $C_{20}H_4Cl_4O_5$ .** and **Tetrabromtetrachlorfluorescein,  $C_{20}H_4Cl_4Br_4O_5$ .**  
**Rose Bengal,  $C_{20}H_4I_4O_5$ .**

Phthalic anhydride has also been condensed with pyrocatechol (B. 22, 2197), *hydroquinones*, *orins*, and *phloroglucin*.

**Pyrogallol-phthalein, Gallein,  $C_{20}H_{10}O_7$ ,** is obtained on heating pyrogallol with phthalic anhydride to  $200^\circ$ . It forms crystals with green color, dissolving with a dark red color in alcohol and with a beautiful blue color in the alkalis.

It is converted by concentrated sulphuric acid into *Caerulein* (see A. 209, 249).

The **rhodamines**, the phthaleins of m-amidophenol and its derivatives, are of special importance. They are violet-red, magnificently fluorescent dyestuffs. In constitution they are perfectly analogous to the fluorescins.

The *simplest* rhodamine is formed when m-amidophenol hydrochloride and phthalic anhydride are heated to  $100^\circ$  with concentrated sulphuric acid (B. 21, R. 682).

The *alkylic rhodamines* possess more intense colors. They are produced when rhodamine hydrochloride is heated with alkyl iodides. A better course to pursue is the condensation of alkyl m-amidophenols and phenyl-m-amidophenol with phthalic anhydride (B. 21, R. 682, 620; 22, R. 788). Still another procedure consists in rearranging fluorescein chloride, melting at  $252^\circ$  (the product of the action of  $PCl_5$  upon fluorescein), by heating it with dialkylamines (B. 22, R. 625, 789).

**Aminorhodes**, alkyl ethers of the rhodamines ( $^2$ )—see B. 25, R. 806.

Succino-rhodamine has been obtained from succinic anhydride and m-amidophenol (B. 23, R. 532).

All that has been said relative to the constitution of the fluoresceins applies to the rhodamines. The nomenclature of the fluoresceins can be greatly simplified if the bodies having the atomic group  $\begin{array}{c} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \quad \text{C} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_3=\text{O} \end{array}$  are designated fluorones, and those

with the atomic group  $\begin{array}{c} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \quad \text{C} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_3=\text{NH} \end{array}$  fluorimes (B. 27, 2987).

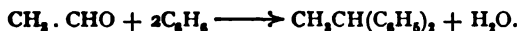
Consult B. 28, 2959, for the orcin phthaleins and hydroquinone phthaleins. Hydroquinone phthalein does not behave like fluorescein, hence probably does not contain the fluorane residue which is present in the latter compound. The condensation of phthalic anhydride with orcinol and sulphuric acid or  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  gives rise to three orcinol phthaleins. It is only that orcinol phthalein, however, which contains the two hydroxyl groups in the p-position with reference to the phthalic acid residue which is the perfect analogue of fluorescein (B. 29, 2630).

#### IV. DIPHENYL ETHANE GROUP.

Homologous series are derived from diphenylmethane. Dismissing the substitutions in the benzene residues, this is attained by replacing the H-atoms of the methylene residue by alkyl groups: diphenylmethyl-, diphenyldimethyl-, diphenylethyl-, diphenylpropylmethane, etc.; and, again, it can be done by inserting new C-atoms between the two benzene residues:  $\omega,\omega$ -diphenyl ethane or dibenzyl,  $\omega,\omega$ -diphenyl propane,  $\omega,\omega$ -diphenyl butane,  $\omega,\omega$ -diphenyl pentane, etc. A sharp division is impossible, because of the unequal experimental investigation of the material. The group of unsym. diphenylethane or diphenylmethylethane will receive first attention in the following paragraphs; its members attach themselves in their deportment to diphenylmethane and its derivatives; at the same time they show in many ways their genetic relationship to the dibenzyl group. Compare benzoic acid, diphenylacetaldehyde, stilbene, tolane.

After these there will follow the important dibenzyl or sym. diphenylethane group, and then the  $\omega,\omega$ -diphenyl-, propane-, butane-, pentane-, and hexane-groups. The derivatives alkylized or phenylated in the benzene nuclei, or in the side-chains connecting these, are included with the parent hydrocarbons of the individual groups; the saturated are followed by the unsaturated hydrocarbons.

A. Unsym. Diphenyl Ethane Derivatives are, as a rule, formed by the condensation of aldehyde, chlorinated aldehydes, glyoxylic acid, etc., with benzene hydrocarbons, phenols, or tertiary anilines, just as the diphenylmethanes (p. 342) are produced by means of methylal, methylene iodide, etc.:



All the substances included in this class yield *benzophenone* or its derivatives when they are oxidized.

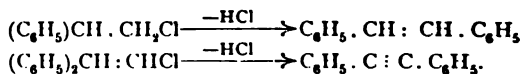
Unsym. Diphenyl Ethane,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHCH}_3$ , boiling at  $209^\circ$  ( $145^\circ$  at 13 mm.), is made from benzene and paraldehyde with cold sulphuric acid; also from ethidene chloride,  $\text{CH}_2\text{CHCl}_2$ , sym. brom-ethyl benzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CHBr} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , or styrene with benzene and  $\text{Al}_2\text{Cl}_6$ . Chromic acid oxidizes it to benzophenone, with the elimination of the methyl group. Consult B. 27, 3238. Nitric acid nitrates the side-chains and not the

benzene residues of unsym. diphenyl-ethane. The products are: Diphenylethylene glycol mononitrite,  $(C_6H_5)_2C(OH) \cdot CH_2(ONO)$ , melting at  $100^\circ$ , diphenylvinyl nitrite,  $(C_6H_5)_2C=CH(ONO)$ , melting at  $86^\circ$ , and a dinitrite melting at  $148-149^\circ$ . The latter is probably a diphenyl-ethylene derivative. These three compounds have great crystallizing power. They form yellow crystals, and when oxidized yield benzophenone (A. 233, 330).

Unsym. Phenol Phenylethane,  $C_6H_5CH(CH_3)C_6H_4 \cdot OH$ , melting at  $58^\circ$ , is produced when sulphuric acid acts upon phenol and styrene; the homologous phenols, naphthols, etc., behave similarly toward styrol (B. 24, 3891). Unsym. diphenolethane,  $((C_6H_4OH)_2)CHCH_3$ , melting at  $122^\circ$ , can be obtained from aldehyde and phenol (B. 19, 309).

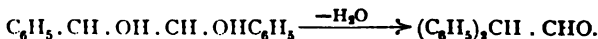
Unsym. Diphenyl Monochlor-ethane,  $(C_6H_5)_2CH \cdot CH_2Cl$ , is an oil. Diphenyl Dichlor-ethane,  $(C_6H_5)_2CH \cdot CHCl_2$ , melting at  $80^\circ$ , and Diphenyl Trichlor-ethane,  $(C_6H_5)_2CH \cdot CCl_3$ , melting at  $64^\circ$ , are obtained from mono-, di-, and trichlor-acetaldehyde (chloral) with benzene and sulphuric acid. Alkali, acting upon these substances, splits off hydrogen chloride, and the products are:

Unsym. Diphenyl Ethylene,  $(C_6H_5)_2CH : CH_2$ , melting at  $44^\circ$  and boiling at  $277^\circ$ , which can also be formed from unsym. dibromethylene,  $CBBr_2 : CH_2$ , with benzene and  $Al_2Cl_6$ ; diphenylmonochlor-ethylene,  $(C_6H_5)_2C : CHCl$ , melting at  $42^\circ$  and boiling at  $298^\circ$ , and diphenyldichlorethylene,  $(C_6H_5)_2C : CCl_2$ , melting at  $80^\circ$  and boiling at  $316^\circ$ , which is also found in the condensation products of chloral with benzene and aluminium chloride (B. 26, 1955). If diphenylmonochlor-ethane be heated alone it splits off hydrochloric acid and is rearranged to stilbene (p. 369). The latter is similarly produced by the reduction and rearrangement of diphenyltrichloroethane with zinc-dust and alcohol. When diphenylmonochlor-ethylene is heated with a sodium ethylate solution it is transformed into tolane (p. 370). Diphenylvinyl Ethyl Ether,  $(C_6H_5)_2C : CHOC_2H_5$ , is formed simultaneously:



These transposition reactions have been extended to a series of substituted diphenyl-mono- and trichlor-ethanes and to diphenylmonochlorethylene (A. 279, 319; B. 26, R. 270).

When diphenylvinyl ether is saponified with glacial acetic acid and hydrochloric acid it does not yield diphenylvinyl alcohol, but diphenylacetaldehyde,  $(C_6H_5)_2CH \cdot CHO$ , boiling at  $168-172^\circ$  (28 mm.). The oxime melts at  $120^\circ$ . The aldehyde in many respects deports itself analogously to the oxymethylene derivatives—*e. g.*, when it is oxidized it does not change to the acid, but splits off the  $CHO$ -group and becomes benzophenone (B. 24, 1780; 25, 1781). Diphenylacetaldehyde is also formed from the hydrobenzoinis by dehydrating agents. Anhydrides of the hydrobenzoinis are formed at the same time:



This is due to an atomic rearrangement opposite to that of the transpositions of the unsym. diphenylchlor-ethanes and ethylenes just indicated. It reminds one of the pinacolone rearrangement of the pinacones.

Diphenyl Acetic Acid,  $(C_6H_5)_2CH \cdot CO_2H$ , is formed from its cyanide; and by reducing benzoic acid with hydriodic acid and phosphorus in glacial acetic acid (A. 275, 84). The acid melts at  $146^\circ$ . When oxidized with a chromic acid mixture it yields benzophenone; and when heated with soda lime we get diphenyl methane. Its ethyl ester melts at  $58^\circ$ ; the methyl ester at  $60^\circ$ .

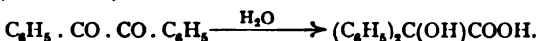
Diphenylacetoneitrile,  $(C_6H_5)_2CH \cdot CN$ , results when diphenylbrommethane is heated with  $Hg(CN)_2$ , or by the condensation of mandelic nitrile,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(OH)CN$ , and benzene with tin tetrachloride (B. 25, 1615). It melts at  $72^\circ$  and boils at  $184^\circ$  (at 12 mm.). The hydrogen of its  $CH$ -group is readily replaced by the benzene residue, but not by alkyls (A. 275, 87). Iodine, acting upon its sodium derivatives, produces tetraphenyl-succino-nitrile.

**Tetranitro-diphenyl Acetic Acid,**  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{NO}_2)_2 > \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ .

The *ethyl ester* is derived from dinitro-phenyl-acetoacetic ester and dinitro-phenyl-malonic ester (pp. 258, 259) by the action of o,p-dinitrobrombenzene; the group  $\text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$  (and  $\text{CO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ ) being replaced. It may be similarly prepared from dinitro-phenyl-acetic ester by the introduction of the dinitro-phenyl residue. It melts at  $154^\circ$ . Alcoholic potash or soda converts the ester, by the substitution of the hydrogen of the  $\text{CH}$ -group, into brilliant metallic salts, dissolving in alcohol and water, with a *dark blue color*. Compare tetranitro-phenylmethane,  $[(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{NO}_2)_2]\text{CH}_2$  (p. 343) and trinitrotri-phenyl methane  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{NO}_2)_3\text{CH}$  (p. 352) (B. 22, 2476).

The lactone of a tetraoxydiphenylacetic acid,  $\text{COOH} \cdot \text{CH}[\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{OH})_2]_2$ , has been obtained by the condensation of chloral with resorcinol by means of potassium bisulphate. It has a yellow color. It dissolves in cold alkalis with a red color, and forms a *triacetyl derivative*, melting at  $152^\circ$  (B. 29, R. 776).

**Benzilic Acid, Diphenyl Glycollic Acid,**  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $150^\circ$ , is produced by a molecular rearrangement of benzil (see this) when digested with alcoholic potassium hydroxide, and from diphenyl acetic acid by the action of bromine and boiling with water. We can prepare it better by the action of aqueous potash and air upon benzoin (B. 19, 1868).



When heated above its melting point benzilic acid takes on a blood-red color and dissolves with the same color in sulphuric acid. Diphenylenediphenylethane derivatives are produced by the action of concentrated sulphuric acid upon benzilic acid (B. 29, 734). It yields diphenyl acetic acid when heated with hydriodic acid and phosphorus. On distilling its barium salt it breaks up into carbon dioxide and benzhydrol; oxidation yields benzophenone.

*Anisilic Acid*,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{C}(\text{OH})\text{COOH}$ , *Cuminilic Acid*,  $(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{C}(\text{OH})\text{COOH}$ , and *Hexamethoxybenzilic Acid*,  $[(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_2]_2\text{C}(\text{OH})\text{COOH}$ , are prepared, like benzilic acid, from their corresponding substituted benzils (p. 375).

**$\beta,\beta$ -Diphenyl Propionic Acid,**  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , is a homologue of diphenylacetic acid. It melts at  $149^\circ$ . It is formed by the addition of benzene to cinnamic acid. This is accomplished by means of sulphuric acid, just as phenol-phenylethane is obtained from styrol and phenol (p. 368). The continued action of the sulphuric acid leads to a condensation to  $\gamma$ -phenylhydrindone (p. 387). Phenyltolyl-, phenylxyl-, propionic acids, etc., are prepared just like diphenylpropionic acid (B. 26, 1579). Potassium permanganate oxidizes these acids to benzophenone, phenyltolylketone, phenylxylketone, etc.

**$\gamma$ -Diphenylitaconic Acid,**  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{C} : \text{C}(\text{COOH}) \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , is obtained by the condensation of benzophenone with succinic ester through the agency of sodium ethylate (B. 30, 94).

**Triphenyl Acetic Acid,**  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{C} \cdot \text{COOH}$ , is a very feeble acid. It melts at  $264^\circ$  and decomposes into triphenylmethane and carbon dioxide. It is isomeric with the previously described triphenylmethane carboxylic acids. It is made by the action of benzene and aluminium chloride upon trichloroacetic acid, and when carbon dioxide is conducted over potassium triphenylmethane (p. 357) at  $200^\circ$ . The best procedure consists in using the *nitrile*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{C} \cdot \text{CN}$ , melting at  $127^\circ$ ; the latter is produced by the interaction of triphenylchlor- or -brom methane (p. 353) and mercuric cyanide,  $\text{Hg}(\text{CN})_2$  (A. 194, 260; B. 28, 2782), or by deamidizing hydrocyanpararosanine (B. 26, 2225).

**p-Triamido-triphenyl-acetic Nitrile, Hydrocyanpararosanine**, results upon digesting pararosanine salts with alcohol and potassium cyanide. *Hydrocyanrosanine* is similarly obtained from the rosanine salts. The hydrochlorides of these hydrocyanbodies break down under the influence of heat into  $\text{HCl}$ ,  $\text{HCN}$ , and the salts of rosanine.

**B. Sym. Diphenylethane Group:** Dibenzyl, sym. *Diphenylethane*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $52^\circ$  and boiling at  $284^\circ$ , is prepared (1) by the action of sodium (or copper) upon benzyl chloride,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ , or (2) of  $\text{AlCl}_3$  upon benzene and ethylene chloride or  $\omega$ -chloroethyl benzene (A. 235, 155), and (3) by heating benzoin,

stilbene, and toluene with hydriodic acid. It forms stilbene and toluene when heated to 500°. Chromic acid and potassium permanganate oxidize it directly to benzoic acid. It yields two dinitro-compounds by nitration.

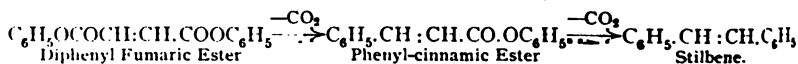
p,p-Dinitrodibenzyl has also been obtained by the action of stannous chloride upon p-nitrobenzyl chloride. It melts at 179° (A. 238, 272; B. 20, 909).

**Dibenzyl Homologues:**  $\alpha,\beta$ -Phenyltolylpropane,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(CH_3)CH_2C_6H_5$ , and  $\alpha,\beta$ -Phenylxylylpropane, are produced when concentrated sulphuric acid acts upon styrol in the presence of xylene or trimethylbenzene. The homologous benzenes, containing a methyl group, attach themselves to the unsaturated linkage in the styrol (B. 23, 3269).

**Diphenyldimethyl Ethane**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(CH_3)CH(CH_3)C_6H_5$ , melting at 123°, is formed when sodium or zinc-dust acts upon a  $\beta$ -haloid ethylbenzene,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CHX \cdot CH_3$  (B. 26, 1710).

**Stilbene, Toluylene**, sym. *Diphenyl-ethylene*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : CH \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at 124° and boiling at 306°, crystallizes in large, glistening (*σιλβειν*, to glisten) monoclinic leaflets or prisms. It is obtained by a great variety of methods. It belongs to a long-known class of aromatic substances (Laurent, 1844). It is produced:

- (1) By distilling benzyl sulphide and disulphide;
- (2) By heating polymeric thiobenzaldehyde (p. 185) to 150°, or by distilling trithiobenzaldehyde with metallic copper (B. 25, 600);
- (3) By the action of metallic sodium upon benzaldehyde or benzal chloride;
- (4) From chlorinated, asymmetrical diphenyl ethane derivatives—e.g.,  $(C_6H_5)_2CH \cdot CH_2Cl$  (p. 368),  $(C_6H_5)_2CH \cdot CCl_3$ , by a rearrangement caused by heat or zinc-dust (B. 7, 1409; J. pr. Ch. [2], 42, 44);
- (5) By the action of metallic copper, potassium sulphhydrate (B. 24, 1776), or potassium cyanide (B. 11, 1219) upon stilbene dihalides.
- (6) An interesting method for its production is that of distilling fumaric and cinnamic phenyl esters (B. 18, 1945):



When heated with hydriodic acid stilbene yields dibenzyl. The addition of halogens produces stilbene dihaloids, the haloid esters of the hydrobenzoins (p. 371). Chromic acid oxidizes stilbene to benzaldehyde and benzoic acid. *Thionessal*, tetraphenylthiophene (see this), is produced when stilbene is heated for several hours at 250°, together with sulphur. Phenanthrene is formed when stilbene is heated.

Stilbenes having the substituents in the benzene nucleus are obtained from substituted benzyl- and benzal-chlorides; thus, o-chlorbenzal chloride and copper yield o,o-Dichlorstilbene,  $(Cl \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH)_2$ , melting at 97°, and chlornitrobenzyl chloride and alcoholic potash give rise to Dichlornitrostilbene, melting at 294° (B. 25, 79; 26, 640).

The action of alcoholic potash upon o- and p-nitrobenzyl chlorides gives rise to two physical isomerides in each case: two o,o-Dinitrostilbenes, melting at 126° and 196° respectively, and two p,p-Dinitrostilbenes, melting at 210–216° and 280–284° (B. 21, 2072; 23, 1959; 26, 2232), which yield corresponding diamidostilbenes upon reduction. o<sub>2</sub>-Diamido-stilbene, (cis-) melting at 123° and (trans-) at 168°, changes to *indol* (good yield) on heating equivalent quantities of the hydrochloride and base; aniline is eliminated (B. 28, 1411). The disulphonic acid of p<sub>2</sub>-diamido-stilbene (melting at 227°), by diazotizing and combining with phenol, passes into a tetrazo-compound, *brilliant yellow*.

The mono-ethyl derivative,  $CH \cdot C_6H_4(SO_3H)N : NC_6H_4OH$ , of the latter is the substantive cotton-dye, *chrysophenine* (B. 27, 3357).

See B. 22, R. 311 (compare benzidine dyes, p. 338), for additional dye-substances. *o,o*-Dioxystilbene, melting at 92°, is produced, together with other bodies, on boiling salicylaldehyde with zinc-dust and glacial acetic acid (B. 24, 3175).

**Tolane, Diphenyl Acetylene**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C : C \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at 60°, is produced from stilbene bromide on boiling with alcoholic potash, and, further, together with diphenylvinyl ether (p. 368), on treating unsym. diphenylchlor-ethylene,  $(C_6H_5)_2C : CHCl$ , with sodium alcoholate.

The latter method proceeds more smoothly with the substituted tolans. Dimethyl Tolane, melting at 136°, and dimethoxytolane, melting at 145°, are obtained from ditolyl- and dianisylchloroethylene. *o,o*-Dichlorotolane, melting at 89°, is made from *o,o*-dichlorostilbene dichloride.

The tolans absorb two and four halogen atoms, the products being tolane di- and tetra-chlorides (see these). The elements of water are taken up by the action of glacial acetic acid and sulphuric acid, with the formation of desoxybenzoins (below) (compare vol. 1, p. 96).

#### 1. Alcohol and Ketone Derivatives of Dibenzyl :

$C_6H_5 \cdot CH \cdot OH$	$C_6H_5 \cdot CO$	$C_6H_5 \cdot CH \cdot OH$	$C_6H_5 \cdot CO$	$C_6H_5 \cdot CO$
$C_6H_5 \cdot \overset{ }{CH_2}$	$C_6H_5 \cdot \overset{ }{CH_2}$	$C_6H_5 \cdot \overset{ }{CH} \cdot OH$	$C_6H_5 \cdot \overset{ }{CH} \cdot OH$	$C_6H_5 \cdot \overset{ }{CO}$
Stilbene Hydrate	Desoxybenzoïn	Hydrobenzoïn	Benzoïn	Benzil.

**Stilbene Hydrate, Toluylene Hydrate**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at 62°, results upon reducing desoxybenzoïn with sodium amalgam.

**Desoxybenzoïn, Phenyl-benzyl ketone**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at 60° and boiling at 314°. It is obtained (1) by distilling a mixture of calcium benzoate and calcium *o*-toluate; (2) when  $AlCl_3$  acts upon a mixture of alphetoluic chloride; (3) by reducing benzoïn with zinc and hydrochloric acid (B. 21, 1296); (4) from chlorobenzil and benzil (B. 26, R. 585) by the action of hydriodic acid; (5) by heating monobrom-toluylene with water to 180–190°. One H-atom of its  $CH_2$ -group can be replaced by sodium and alkyls, but not the second (B. 21, 1297; 23, 2072). *Methyl-, isobutyl-, cetyl-desoxybenzoïn* melt at 58°, 78°, and 76° (B. 25, 2237).

Its *oxime* melts at 98°. *Isonitrosodesoxybenzoïn*, produced by  $N_2O_3$ , is identical with *o*-benzil monoxime (p. 373). Hydriodic acid converts desoxybenzoïn into dibenzyl—see also *stilbene hydrate*.

The nitration of desoxybenzoïn produces *o*-nitrodesoxybenzoïn,  $C_6H_4(NO_2)CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5$ , which, upon reduction, yields *o*-phenyl-indol,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} CH \\ \backslash \\ NH \end{smallmatrix} C \cdot C_6H_5$ . **Des-oxytoluoin**,  $CH_3 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_3$ , and **Desoxyanisoin**,  $CH_3O \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot OCH_3$ , are formed from the corresponding tolans (A. 279, 335, 339) (above).  $CS_2$ , or carbon disulphide, and caustic potash, convert the desoxybenzoïns into *desaurines*, which form brilliant golden-yellow needles. They dissolve in sulphuric acid with a violet-blue color. The exact constitution of these bodies is not yet known. The simplest desaurine very probably has the composition  $C_6H_5COC(CS)C_6H_5$  (B. 25, 1731, 2239).

**Hydrobenzoïn, Toluylene Glycol**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(OH)CH(OH)C_6H_5$ , has two asymmetric C-atoms and occurs in two optically inactive modifications (A. 259, 100): *hydrobenzoïn*, melting at 134°, and *isohydrobenzoïn*, melting at 119°. The latter has been resolved into two optically active components (see below). Both are produced, together with benzyl alcohol, when zinc and alcoholic hydrochloric acid act upon oil of almonds, or when the latter is treated with sodium amalgam, or in the electrolytic reduction of benzaldehyde (B. 29, R. 229). Both are also obtained from stilbene bromide or chloride on converting the latter by silver acetate or benzoate into esters, and saponifying these with alcoholic ammonia. With potassium acetate, isohydrobenzoïn is almost the sole product. Hydrobenzoïn predominates (with a little isohydrobenzoïn) when sodium amalgam acts on benzoïn. This is also the best method for its preparation (A. 248, 36).

*Hydrobenzoin* dissolves with difficulty in water, crystallizes in rhombic plates, melting at  $134^{\circ}$ , and sublimes without decomposition. The *diacetate* is obtained from benzaldehyde and acetyl chloride by means of zinc-dust (B. 16, 636); it melts at  $134^{\circ}$ .

*Isobenzoin* is more readily soluble in water. It crystallizes in prisms which contain water of crystallization and rapidly effloresce on exposure. Its *diacetate* is dimorphous, and crystallizes in shining leaflets, melting at  $118^{\circ}$ , or in rhombic prisms melting at  $106^{\circ}$ .

Dimolecular *anhydrides*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH} \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$  (?), melting at  $132^{\circ}$  and  $102^{\circ}$ , are obtained, together with diphenylacetaldehyde,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CH} \cdot \text{CHO}$ , from both *hydrobenzoin*s by the action of sulphuric acid or  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$ .

By crystallization from ether *isobenzoin* has been resolved into enantiomorphous dextro- and laevo-rotatory crystals (B. 30, 1531). Chromic acid or potassium permanganate changes both *hydrobenzoin*s into benzaldehydes, and nitric acid converts them into benzoin (B. 24, 1776).  $\text{PBr}_3$  changes both to the same stilbene dibromide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CHBr} \cdot \text{CHBr} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $237^{\circ}$ , which has also been made by the action of bromine upon stilbene and dibenzyl. Stilbene and bromine yield not only the body (the  $\alpha$ ) melting at  $237^{\circ}$ , but also a  $\beta$ -variety, melting at  $110^{\circ}$ . This is more readily soluble. It passes into the higher-melting variety under the influence of heat, and this again reverts by alcoholic potash into liquid monobromostilbene, whereas the  $\beta$ -modification by similar treatment changes to a solid monobromostilbene (p. 375) (B. 28, 2693). Both *hydrobenzoin*s are changed by  $\text{PCl}_5$  into  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Stilbene Dichloride, melting at  $192^{\circ}$  and  $93^{\circ}$ . The  $\alpha$ -compound is also produced when chlorine acts upon stilbene dissolved in chloroform. When heated to  $200^{\circ}$  the  $\beta$ -passes into the  $\alpha$ -variety.

Diphenyloxethylamine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CH}(\text{NH}_2)\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $161^{\circ}$ , and isodiphenyloxethylamine, melting at  $128^{\circ}$ , are produced together by the reduction of benzoinoxime, and also from the condensation products of glycocholl with benzaldehyde, as well as from benzaldehyde and benzylamine by the action of sodium hydroxide.  $\text{N}_2\text{O}_5$  converts isodiphenyloxyethylamine into *isobenzoin* (B. 28, 1866, 2524; 29, 295; 30, 1527). Diphenyl-ethylene-diamine, *Stilbene Diamine*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{NH}_2)\text{CH}(\text{NH}_2)\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $91^{\circ}$ , is produced by reducing benzil dioxime with sodium and alcohol. It is resolved by crystallization of its bitartrate into two optically active components (B. 28, 3167).

The *diacethanhydride* of an *o,o*-dioxymethylbenzoin,  $\text{O} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{O}$ , has been obtained in two modifications, melting at  $68^{\circ}$  and  $114^{\circ}$ , by the reduction of salicylaldehyde with zinc-dust and glacial acetic acid.

**Benzoin**, *o-Benzyl Alcohol Phenyl Ketone*, melting at  $134^{\circ}$ ,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , is produced when the *hydrobenzoin*s are oxidized with concentrated nitric acid, and by the condensation of two molecules of benzaldehyde with potassium cyanide in aqueous-alcoholic solution.

This reaction is also shown by other aromatic aldehydes (see B. 25, 293; 26, 60). The products are ketone alcohols,—e.g., *anisoin*,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{OCH}_3$ ; *Cuminoin*, etc., from anisic aldehyde, cuminol (see also furfural, phenylglyoxal),—and reduce Fehling's solution, being at the same time oxidized to the corresponding benzils.

Chromic acid oxidizes benzoin to benzaldehyde and benzoic acid, while nitric acid changes it to benzil; nascent hydrogen reduces it to hydrobenzoin. The latter and benzil are produced when benzoin is boiled with alcoholic potash. If air be simultaneously introduced, benzil is the chief product, and it is further changed to benzilic acid (p. 369).

*Benzoin Hydrazone* melts at  $75^{\circ}$  (J. pr. Ch. [2], 52, 124). The *phenylhydrazones* melt at  $158^{\circ}$  and  $106^{\circ}$  (B. 28, R. 788). The *oxime* melts at  $152^{\circ}$ . Alcohols and hydrochloric acid alkylize benzoin: *methyl benzoin*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{OCH}_3)\text{CO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $50^{\circ}$ , and *ethyl benzoin* at  $62^{\circ}$  (B. 26, 2412).

The hydrobromic acid ester of benzoïn—desylbromide,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CHBrCO \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $55^\circ$ —is obtained from desoxybenzoïn (see below) and bromine. Aniline converts it into desylanilide, *benzoïn*anilide,  $C_6H_5CH(NHC_6H_5)CO \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $99^\circ$ , which is also produced when aniline is heated together with benzoïn. When heated together with aniline hydrochloride to  $160^\circ$ , the product is benzoïnanililide,  $C_6H_5CH(NH \cdot C_6H_5)C(NC_6H_5)C_6H_5$ , melting at  $125^\circ$ ; and when with aniline and zinc chloride at still higher temperatures: *diphenylindol*,  $C_6H_5 \overset{NH}{\underset{C_6H_5}{C}} = \overset{C_6H_5}{C} \cdot C_6H_5$  (B. 26, 1336, 2640).

**Benzoïn-p-toluide**,  $C_6H_5CH(NHC_6H_4 \cdot CH_3)CO \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $145^\circ$ , is formed in the condensation of benzaldehyde with benzylidene toluidine by means of potassium cyanide (B. 29, 1736). o-Diamines and benzoïn condense to *dihydroquinoxalines*; urea and thioureas with benzoïn yield *glyoxalines*, while *oxazoles* are produced in the condensation of benzoïn with acid nitriles. For the condensation products of benzoïn with acetone and acetophenone consult B. 26, 65, and p. 380.

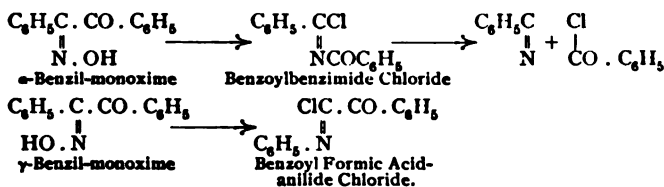
**Benzil, Dibenzoyl, Diphenylglyoxal**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $90^\circ$  and boiling at  $347^\circ$ , consists of beautiful yellow prisms. It is the most easily obtained  $\alpha$ -diketone. It is produced on boiling stilbene bromide with water and silver oxide and by digesting benzoïn with concentrated nitric acid.

Benzil and hydrazine hydrate form hydrazibenzil,  $C_6H_5C(\overset{NH}{\underset{NH}{\parallel}})CO \cdot C_6H_5$ , and **bishydrazibenzil**,  $[C_6H_5C(\overset{NH}{\underset{NH}{\parallel}})]_2$ , which yield azobenzil,  $C_6H_5C(\overset{N}{\underset{N}{\parallel}})CO \cdot C_6H_5$ , and **bisazobenzil**,  $[C_6H_5 \cdot C(\overset{N}{\underset{N}{\parallel}})]_2$ , on oxidation (B. 29, 775). The *osazone*,  $(C_6H_5)_3 \cdot C_2(NNH \cdot C_6H_5)_2$ , melting at  $225^\circ$ , becomes triphenylsotriazole on heating (A. 232, 230; B. 26, R. 198). An isomeric modification of benzilosazone, melting at  $208^\circ$ , has been obtained by the action of iodine and sodium ethylate upon benzalphenylhydrazone. When heated above its melting point it changes to the higher melting modification (B. 29, R. 863).

One molecule of hydroxylamine, acting upon benzil, produces two isomeric monoximes, the  $\alpha$ - melting at  $134^\circ$ , and the  $\gamma$ - at  $113^\circ$ .

The former passes into the latter by heating it to  $100^\circ$  with alcohol, or upon dissolving it in glacial acetic acid with hydrochloric acid.  $\alpha$ -Monoxime and hydroxylamine form  $\alpha$ -benzil dioxime, while the  $\gamma$ -monoxime yields  $\gamma$ -benzil dioxime (B. 22, 540, 709). Compare B. 26, 792, R. 52, for their behavior with phenylhydrazine.

Both monoximes break down, upon heating, into benzonitrile and benzoic acid. The department of the benzil monoximes in the Beckmann oxime rearrangement is very interesting. It is effected by means of  $PCl_5$ :  $\alpha$ -monoxime yields benzoyl benzimide chloride, readily decomposing into benzonitrile and benzoyl chloride, while the  $\gamma$ -monoxime yields benzoylformic acid-anilide chloride:



In the first instance the hydroxyl exchanged positions with the phenyl residue, in the second with the benzoyl residue, which led to the above accepted configuration of the monoximes.

Two molecules of hydroxylamine convert benzil into two isomeric benzil dioximes,

the  $\alpha$ - melting at  $237^\circ$  and the  $\beta$ - at  $207^\circ$ . A third  $\gamma$ -benzil dioxime has been prepared from  $\gamma$ -benzil monooxime; it melts at  $163^\circ$ . The  $\beta$ -dioxime is the most stable; the other modifications rapidly change to it. Under certain conditions the  $\gamma$ -dioxime rearranges itself into the  $\alpha$ -form (A. 274, 33).

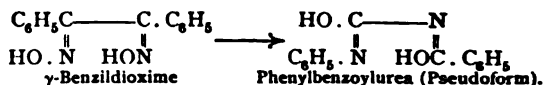
Three different esters are produced with acid anhydrides: *benzil-dioxime diacetate*—the  $\alpha$ -form melting at  $148^\circ$ , the  $\beta$ - at  $124^\circ$ , and the  $\gamma$ - at  $114^\circ$ . Sodium hydroxide saponifies the  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -diacetates to their oximes, while the  $\gamma$ -acetate yields the *anhydride*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{N})\text{C}(\text{N})\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , which also results from all three dioximes by the exit of water. Potassium ferricyanide, in alkaline solution, oxidizes all three to the *peroxide*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{N}=\text{O})\text{C}(\text{N}=\text{O})\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $114^\circ$ . This, when rapidly distilled, breaks down into two molecules of phenylcyanate.

A complete picture is also afforded by the deportment of the three dioximes in the Beckmann rearrangement, which has led to a formula for the present case of isomerism on the assumption that the oxime hydroxyls invariably exchange positions with the atomic groups adjacent to them (A. 274, 1):

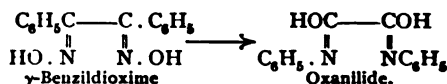
I.  $\alpha$ -Benzildioxime yields chlorides with  $\text{PCl}_5$  by a change in position first of the one and then of the second hydroxyl, which can be converted into the anhydrides: *dibenzzenylloxime* (see this) and *diphenyloxymiazole* (see this), whose hydrates are included in the following diagram for the sake of clearness:



II.  $\gamma$ -Benzildioxime in the first stage of the reaction also yields dibenzzenylloxime, but by a second change in position *phenylbenzoyl urea* is produced:



III.  $\beta$ -Dioxime by a double change in position yields *oxanilide*:

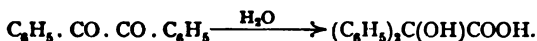


The ready transition of the  $\gamma$ -diacetate into furazane is not in harmony with the preceding configuration of the dioximes; this might rather be expected from the  $\alpha$ -diacetate.

The analogy of the benzil dioximes with the osazones of dioxosuccinic ester is rather remarkable (I, 528). These osazones also occur in three forms, one of which is the stable and the other two unstable, so that the assumption of similar causes for the isomerism is not yet excluded (B. 28, 64).

Aniline and benzil heated to  $200^\circ$  yield *benzil monanil*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO} \cdot \text{C}(\text{NC}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $106^\circ$ ; on adding  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  the product is *benzil dianil*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{NC}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{NC}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $142^\circ$  (B. 25, 2600; 26, R. 700). Benzil, being an  $\alpha$ -diketone, is particularly well adapted for the formation of heterocyclic rings. It condenses with ethylene diamine to a *dihydropyrazine* derivative, with ortho-diamines to *quinoxalines*, with  $\alpha$ -amido-diphenylamine to a *stilbazonium base* (see this), with ureas and thiureas to *urtrines* and *diuretrines*, with semicarbazide to *oxydiphenyltriazine*, etc. Hydriodic acid reduces it to desoxybenzoIn, while chromic acid oxidizes it to benzoic acid. On standing with potassium cyanide and alcohol it breaks down into benzoic acid and benzaldehyde. See B. 28, R. 465; 29, R. 645, 865; C., 1897, 1, 596, for the condensation of benzil with malonic ester and acetoacetic ester.

The conversion of benzil into benzoic acid (p. 369) by fusion with caustic potash or upon boiling with alcoholic potash is important:



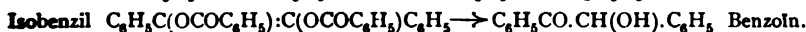
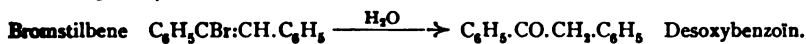
Phosphorus pentachloride changes benzil to chlorobenzil,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{COCCL}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $61^\circ$ , and later to tolane tetrachloride,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CCl}_2\text{CCl}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $163^\circ$ . The latter has also been obtained synthetically on heating benzoetrichloride with copper, whereas benzil is produced when it is heated together with glacial acetic acid or sulphuric acid.

As benzil is obtained from benzoin, so anisil,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CO})_2$ , melting at  $133^\circ$ , cumilin,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_7 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CO})_2$ , melting at  $84^\circ$ , have been prepared by the action of nitric acid upon anisoin and cuminoïn (p. 372). Anisil and a hexamethoxybenzil,  $[(\text{CH}_3\text{O})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CO}]_2$ , melting at  $189^\circ$ , have been obtained by alkaline reducing agents from anisamide and trimethylgallamide (B. 24, R. 523).

These benzils, when fused with caustic potash, yield:

*Anisilic Acid, Cumilic Acid, and Hexamethoxybenzoic Acid* (p. 369).

2. Alcohol Derivatives of Stilbene are not known in a free condition; when their esters are saponified, isomeric ketones are obtained for the most part (see phenylvinyl alcohols, p. 271):

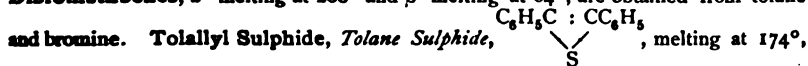


However, benzoïn reacts in most cases as if it were an unsaturated glycol with the formula  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{OH}):\text{C}(\text{OH})\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ .

**Monochlorstilbene**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}:\text{CCl} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , is an oil, boiling at  $320\text{--}324^\circ$ . It is produced when  $\text{PCl}_5$  acts upon desoxybenzoïn, and by the action of alcoholic potash on stilbene dichloride. When boiled with glacial acetic acid it is transformed into an isomeric modification, melting at  $54^\circ$ . Chlorine and bromine convert it into chlorstilbene dichloride,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CCl}_2 \cdot \text{CHCl} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $103^\circ$ , and chlorstilbene dibromide, melting at  $127^\circ$  (C., 1897, 1, 858). Methyl chlorstilbene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3):\text{CClC}_6\text{H}_5$ , is obtained from methyl desoxybenzoïn and departs itself similarly. It is an oil, and melts at  $118^\circ$  (B. 25, 2237; 29, R. 34). Monobromstilbene, melting at  $31^\circ$ , results on treating stilbene dibromide, melting at  $110^\circ$ , with alcoholic potash; whereas the stilbene dibromide, melting at  $237^\circ$ , yields a liquid bromstilbene. On the application of heat the oil passes into the solid isomeride; the latter, by further action of caustic potash, changes more readily to tolane than the liquid isomeride. Therefore, this probably has the *syn*-configuration (B. 28, 2700).

**Isobenzil, Stilbene-glycol Dibenzoate**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{O} \cdot \text{COC}_6\text{H}_5):\text{C}(\text{OCOC}_6\text{H}_5)\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , colorless needles, melting at  $156^\circ$ , is obtained by the action of metallic sodium upon the ethereal solution of benzoyl chloride (compare 1, 297). It is a polymeride of benzil. When saponified with caustic potash it is resolved into benzoic acid and benzoïn (B. 24, 1264).

**Dichlorstilbene, Tolane Dichloride**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CCl}:\text{CCl} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , exists in two modifications: *α*-, melting at  $143^\circ$ , and the *β*- at  $63^\circ$ . Both are formed by the addition of chlorine to tolane, or by the reduction of tolane tetrachloride with iron and acetic acid, as well as from chlorstilbene dichloride (see above) with caustic potash. Chlorbromstilbene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CCl}:\text{CBrC}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $174^\circ$ , is similarly prepared from chlorstilbene dibromide. Dibromstilbenes, *α*- melting at  $208^\circ$  and *β*- melting at  $64^\circ$ , are obtained from tolane



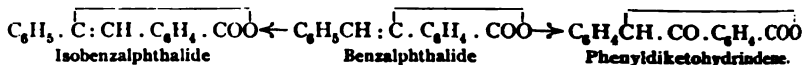
is very probably the anhydride of a thiostilbene glycol. It is formed, together with stilbene, on heating benzyl sulphide (B. 24, 3313).

3. Carboxylic Acids of the Dibenzylic Group are (a) those in which the carboxyl group is in the benzene nucleus; (b) such as have the carboxyl group in the side-chain: diphenylated fatty acids.

The first group is composed chiefly of a series of *o*-carboxylic acids produced by phthalic anhydride condensations:

(a) *o*-Desoxybenzoïn Carboxylic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot COOH (+ H_2O)$ , melting at  $75^\circ$ , is formed when boiling alkalies act on the corresponding lactone. Benzylidene Phthalide, *Benzal Phthalide*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : \overline{CC_6H_4COO}$ , melting at  $99^\circ$ , which results from the condensation of phthalic anhydride and phenylacetic acid with the elimination of  $CO_2$ .

By means of nitrobenzalphthalide, benzalphthalide can be changed to isobenzalphthalide,  $C_6H_5 \cdot \overline{C : CH \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot COO}$ , melting at  $91^\circ$ , the anhydride of  $\beta, o$  desoxybenzoïn carboxylic acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $163^\circ$ . The latter is made by decomposing  $\beta$ -phenylhydrindone (p. 387) with caustic soda. Benzalphthalide sustains a different rearrangement under the influence of sodium alcoholate; the sodium salt of  $\beta$ -phenyldiketohydrindene (p. 388) is then produced:



Hydrazine converts benzalphthalide into benzylphthalazone,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot \overline{C \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CO}$ . By reduction with glacial acetic acid and zinc it passes into benzylphthalimidine,  $C_6H_5CH_2 \cdot \overline{CHC_6H_4 \cdot CO \cdot NH}$ , melting at  $137^\circ$ . It can also be obtained by the reduction of benzalphthalimidine (B. 29, 1434, 2743).

*o, o*-Desoxybenzoïn Dicarboxylic Acid,  $COOH \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot COOH$ , melting at  $239^\circ$ , is obtained upon heating phthalic anhydride with *o*-carbophenylacetic acid and sodium acetate (B. 24, 2820). The reduction of desoxybenzoïn-mono- and dicarboxylic acids yields dibenzyl mono- and di-carboxylic acids, melting at  $131^\circ$  and  $225^\circ$ . The oxidation of *o*-desoxybenzoïn carboxylic acid produces *o*-benzil-carboxylic acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot COOH$ , occurring in two modifications, one yellow in color, melting at  $141^\circ$ , and another white, melting at  $125-130^\circ$  (B. 23, 1344, 2079; 29, 2745).

*o, o*-Benzil Dicarboxylic Acid,  $(COOH \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CO)_2$ , is white and melts at  $270^\circ$ . It forms two series of dialkyl esters—white and yellow in color respectively. The acid is formed from phthalic anhydride with zinc-dust and acetic acid and subsequent oxida-

tion, or by the oxidation of Diphtalyl,  $\overline{O \cdot OC \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot C : CC_6H_4COO}$ , melting at  $234^\circ$ . This latter body has been produced by the condensation of phthalide (p. 234) and phthalic anhydride with potassium cyanide (see formation of benzoïn, p. 372). Tetra-

methoxydiphtalyl,  $\overline{O \cdot OC \cdot C_6H_4(OCH_3)_2 \cdot C : CC_6H_4(OCH_3)_2COO}$  (B. 24, R. 820; compare B. 26, 540), is similarly made by the condensation of opianic ester. Dihydro-

diphtalylidiimide,  $NH \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH \cdot CHC_6H_4CO \cdot NH$ , melting with decomposition at  $284^\circ$ , results from the condensation of two molecules of phthalic anhydride with methyl alcoholic ammonia. This substance is isomeric with indigo white (compare B. 29, 2745).

(b) Dibenzyl Carboxylic Acid, *a*-Phenylhydrocinnamic Acid, *a, \beta*-Diphenyl-propionic Acid,  $C_6H_5CH_2CH(C_6H_5)COOH$ , appears in three physical isomerides, melting at  $95^\circ$ ,  $89^\circ$ ,  $82^\circ$ , boiling at  $335^\circ$  (B. 25, 2017). Its nitrile results upon introducing benzyl into benzyl cyanide. *a*-Phenyl-*o*-amidohydrocinnamic Acid, melting at  $148^\circ$ , is obtained in the reduction of *a*-phenyl-*o*-nitrocinnamic acid (B. 28, R. 391). It changes

very readily into its lactone— $\beta$ -phenylhydrocarbostyryl,  $C_6H_5 \cdot \overline{CH_2 - CH(C_6H_5)CO}$ ,  $\overline{NH}$

melting at  $174^\circ$ .

Stilbene Carboxylic Acid, *a*-Phenylcinnamic Acid,  $C_6H_5CH : C(C_6H_5)CO_2H$ , melting at  $172^\circ$ , is formed in the condensation of benzaldehyde with phenylacetic acid.

By reduction it becomes  $\alpha$ -phenylhydrocinnamic acid, but does not add bromine. The action of bromine upon the sodium salt produces bromstilbene (B. 26, 659).  $\alpha$ -Phenyl-o-amido-cinnamic Acid, melting at  $186^\circ$ , the reduction product of o-nitro- $\alpha$ -phenylcinnamic acid, obtained in the condensation of o-nitrobenzaldehyde with phenylacetic acid, yields  $\beta$ -phenanthrene carboxylic acid (see this) (B. 29, 496) when its diazo-derivative is shaken with copper in powder form.

Desylacetic Acid,  $\beta$ -Phenylbenzoyl Propionic Acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot COCH(C_6H_5) \cdot CH_2 \cdot COOH$ , melting at  $161^\circ$ , is obtained as ester from the interaction of sodium desoxybenzoin and chloroacetic ester. When distilled in vacuum it changes to diphenylcrotonal-

tone,  $C_6H_5C : \dot{C}(C_6H_5)CH_2COO$ , melting at  $151^\circ$  (B. 25, R. 419). See B. 29, 2585, for the formation of desylacetic acid from the condensation product of benzaldehyde with phenylpyrrocemic acid.

Dibenzyl-dicarboxylic Acid, sym. Diphenyl-succinic Acid,

$C_6H_5 \cdot CH \cdot COOH$

$C_6H_5 \cdot CH \cdot COOH$ , occurs similarly to the dialkyl succinic acids in two isomeric forms.

The  $\alpha$ -acid (+  $H_2O$ ) is produced on heating phenyl-bromacetic acid (2 mols.) with alcoholic CNK, also (together with the  $\beta$ -acid, melting at  $229^\circ$ ) from stilbene dicarboxylic acid with sodium amalgam. The acid, containing one molecule of water, melts at  $185^\circ$  when rapidly heated; it loses water and remelts at  $220^\circ$ . When heated to  $200^\circ$  with hydrochloric acid it changes to the  $\beta$ -acid. Its anhydride, melting at  $116^\circ$ , is readily produced by means of acetyl chloride.

The  $\beta$ -acid yields an anhydride (but with more difficulty) when heated with acetyl chloride (B. 23, 117, R. 574; A. 259, 61). It melts at  $112^\circ$ .

The nitriles,  $C_6H_5CH(CN)CH(CN)C_6H_5$ , the  $\alpha$ -melting at  $160^\circ$  and the  $\beta$ -melting at  $240^\circ$ , result from the condensation of phenyl-acetonitrile with mandelo-nitrile by means of potassium cyanide (B. 25, 289; 26, 60). Both nitriles yield the  $\beta$ -acid when they are saponified.

Stilbene Dicarboxylic Acid, Diphenyl Maleic Acid, decomposes immediately when separated from its salts, like the dialkyl maleic acids, into water and its anhy-

dride,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C \cdot CO > O$ , melting at  $155^\circ$ . The latter condenses, like phthalic anhy-

dride, with phenylacetic acid and quickly changes to benzaldiphenylmaleid,

$C_6H_5C - C = CH \cdot C_6H_5$

$C_6H_5C - CO > O$ , which departs itself just like benzaldehyde (p. 376) (B. 24,

3854). The salts of diphenylmaleic acid are formed when dicyanostilbene,  $C_6H_5C(CN) : C(CN)C_6H_5$ , melting at  $158^\circ$ , are saponified with alcoholic potash. This nitrile is produced when phenylchloracetonitrile is treated with CNK or  $NaOC_2H_5$ , or by the action of sodium alcoholate and iodine upon phenylacetoneitrile (B. 25, 285, 1680).

4,5-Diphenyloctan-2,7-dion,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $161^\circ$  and boiling at  $335-340^\circ$ , may be regarded as a derivative of dibenzyl. It might be designated  $\alpha, \beta$ -diacetonyl-dibenzyl. It results in the reduction of 2 molecules of benzylidene acetone in feebly acid or neutral solution (B. 29, 380, 2121).

C. Tri- and Tetra-phenyl Ethane Group.

A triphenyl ethane,  $(C_6H_5)_3CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , is not known (see C., 1897, I, 1204).

Triphenyl Ethanon, or Triphenylvinyl Alcohol,  $(C_6H_5)_3CH \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5$ , or  $(C_6H_5)_2C : C(OH)C_6H_5$ , melting at  $136^\circ$ , results from the action of benzene and aluminium chloride upon chloral, upon dichlor- or trichloroacetyl chloride (B. 29, R. 292; A. 296, 219). Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to benzophenone and benzoic acid, while alcoholic potash resolves it into diphenylmethane and benzoic acid. Bromine in carbon disulphide converts it into Triphenyl-bromethanon,  $(C_6H_5)_3CBrCO_2C_6H_5$ , melting at  $97^\circ$ , in glacial acetic acid, however, by replacement of bromine with hydroxyl triphenyloxyethanon results. It does not react with phenylhydrazine. With hydroxylamine hydrochloride in alcoholic solution, oxidation takes place and triphenylethoxyethanon,  $(C_6H_5)_3C(OC_2H_5)COC_2H_5$ , is produced. Caustic potash breaks this body down into benzylol-ether and benzoic acid.

**Triphenylmethyl Ethane, *a,a*,*β*-Triphenylpropane**,  $(C_6H_5)_3CH \cdot CH(CH_3)C_6H_5$ , is probably the product obtained by the reduction of diphenylindone (p. 386) with phosphorus and hydriodic acid. Diphenylindone is an intermediate product in the condensation of benzophenone chloride with phenylacetic ester, whereby there results—

**Triphenyl Acrylic Ester**,  $(C_6H_5)_3C : C(C_6H_5)COOR$ . The acid, melting at  $213^\circ$ , corresponding to this ester is obtained from its *nitrile*, melting at  $163^\circ$ , the condensation product of benzophenone chloride and benzyl cyanide (B. 28, 2784; 29, 2841). When diphenylindone is fused with caustic potash it yields an acid, melting at  $186^\circ$ , which is isomeric with triphenyl acrylic acid. It is probably—

***a*,*β*-Diphenylvinyl-o-benzoic Acid**,  $COOH[2]C_6H_4C(C_6H_5) : CH \cdot C_6H_5$ . Both acids, when heated with  $ZnCl_2$ , revert again to diphenylindone (B. 30, 1282).

**Tetraphenyl Ethane**,  $(C_6H_5)_4CH \cdot CH(C_6H_5)_2$ , melting at  $209^\circ$  and boiling at  $379-383^\circ$ , is formed when benzophenone (p. 345) or benzoydrol chloride,  $(C_6H_5)_3CHCl$  (p. 344), is heated with zinc, and thiobenzophenone (p. 346) with copper; further, by the reduction of tetraphenylethylene with sodium and alcohol, of benzpinacone or benzpinacoline (see below) with hydriodic acid and phosphorus, as well as by the condensation of stilbene bromide, of tetrabromethane, or of chloral with benzene and  $Al_2Cl_6$  (B. 18, 657; 26, 1952; A. 296, 221).

**Tetraphenyl Ethylene**,  $(C_6H_5)_4C : C(C_6H_5)_2$ , melting at  $221^\circ$ , is formed, together with tetraphenyl ethane, from benzophenone, and is also obtained on heating benzophenone chloride with silver or with zinc-dust, together with the benzpinacolines (B. 29, 1789). Both hydrocarbons are split into two molecules of benzophenone when oxidized.

The *alcohols* of the tetraphenyl group are the pinacones of benzophenone and its homologues. They are formed, like the pinacones of the aliphatic series, from the ketones, together with secondary alcohols, by the action of nascent hydrogen.

**Benzpinacone, Tetraphenylethylene Glycol**,  $(C_6H_5)_4C(OH)C(OH)(C_6H_5)_2$ , melts at  $185^\circ$  and splits into benzophenone and benzhydrol. It sustains a like change when boiled with alcoholic potash. It is formed from benzophenone by the action of zinc and sulphuric acid or by the decomposition of sodium benzophenone (B. 25, R. 15).

On heating benzpinacone with hydrochloric or dilute sulphuric acid to  $200^\circ$ , by the action of methyl chloride upon it, or of zinc-dust and acetyl chloride upon benzophenone, we get two

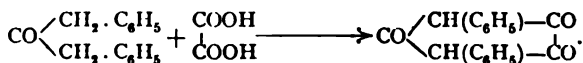
**Benzpinacolines**—the *α*-, melting at  $205^\circ$ ; the *β*-variety, at  $179^\circ$ . So far as their structure is concerned, they are imperfectly known (B. 24, R. 664).

**Tetraphenylethane Dicarboxylic Acid, Tetraphenyl Succinic Acid**,  $(C_6H_5)_4C \cdot COOH$

$(C_6H_5)_4C \cdot COOH$ , melting at  $261^\circ$  with decomposition (its *ethyl ester* at  $89^\circ$ ), is obtained from diphenyl chloroacetic ester by the action of silver (B. 22, 1538). Its *nitrile*, melting at  $215^\circ$ , is formed by the interaction of the nitrile of diphenylacetic acid with sodium and iodine.

The dilactone of a **Benzpinacone-*o*,-dicarboxylic Acid**,  $\overline{O} \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot \overline{C}(C_6H_5) \cdot C(C_6H_5)C_6H_4COO$ , melting at  $265^\circ$ , is formed on boiling *o*-benzoylbenzoic acid (p. 350) with hydriodic acid and phosphorus (B. 29, R. 498).

V. ***ω,ω*-Diphenylpropane Group: Dibenzylmethane, *α,γ*-Diphenylpropane**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , boiling at  $290-300^\circ$ , results by the reducing action of hydriodic acid upon **Dibenzyl Ketone**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $40^\circ$  and boiling at  $330^\circ$  (B. 24, R. 946). This body is produced in the distillation of calcium phenylacetate. One hydrogen atom of each of the two  $CH_2$ -groups can be replaced by alkyls. It condenses with oxalic ester and sodium ethylate to a *Triketo-R-pentene* derivative, oxalyldibenzylketone (compare p. 20 and B. 27, 1353; A. 284, 245):



Sodium reduces dibenzylketone to **dibenzylcarbinol**,  $(C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2)_2CH \cdot OH$ , boiling at  $327^\circ$ . It combines to **dibenzylidiphenol methane**,  $(C_6H_5CH_2)_2C(C_6H_4OH)_2$  (B. 25,

ith phenol. **Benzylacetophenone**,  $C_6H_5CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5$ , m. p.  $73^\circ$ , is with dibenzylketone. It is produced on reducing benzylidene acetophenone,  $:CH \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5$  (m. p.  $58^\circ$ , b. p.  $346^\circ$ ), with zinc-dust and acetic acid. This compound is the condensation-product of benzaldehyde and acetophenone (B. 20, : combines with hydrochloric acid to chlorbenzylacetophenone :



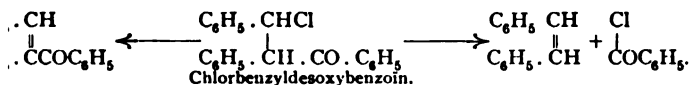
, p-Oxybenzylideneacetophenone, from the corresponding oxybenzaldehyde acetophenone, melt at  $154^\circ$  with decomposition, at  $160^\circ$ , and  $183^\circ$ . Alcoholic inverts acetyl-o-oxybenzylideneacetophenone into benzoylcumarone (see this),

$\xrightarrow{H} C \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5$ . Reduction changes o-oxybenzylidene acetophenone into l- $\gamma$ -(o-oxyphenyl)propyl alcohol,  $HO \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH(OH) \cdot C_6H_5$ , at  $97^\circ$ , which is condensed by HCl in methyl alcohol to a-phenylcumarone,  $:H_2 \cdot CH_2$

(B. 29, 244, 375).

Condensation of 2 mols. of acetophenone by heat alone, or by zinc ethide or zinc yields a homologue of benzalacetophenone, called **Dypnone**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot C(CH_3) : C \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $225^\circ$  (22 mm.), which sustains the same relation to acetone as mesityl oxide bears to acetone (B. 27, R. 339); see also triphenyl benzene

aldehyde condenses as readily as acetophenone with desoxybenzoïn (p. 371), the influence of alkalis, forming benzylidenedesoxybenzoïn,  $C_6H_5CH : C(C_6H_5) \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $101^\circ$ . This also results in the distillation of benzamarone (p. 1) upon reduction yields benzylidesoxybenzoïn,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH(C_6H_5)CO \cdot C_6H_5$  at  $120^\circ$ . This can also be prepared by the introduction of the benzyl group into benzoïn (see p. 371). If benzaldehyde and desoxybenzoïn be condensed through the action of hydrochloric acid, there is formed : chlorbenzylidesoxybenzoïn, which readily convert into the unsaturated ketone, while by distillation it is resolved into benzene and benzoyl chloride (B. 26, 447, 818) :



**Dibenzoyl Methane**,  $(C_6H_5CO)_2CH_2$ , is formed from dibenzoyl acetic acid. It is at  $31^\circ$ . Nitrous acid converts it into an isonitroso derivative,  $(C_6H_5 \cdot CO)_2C : N$ , which may be converted into the corresponding isonitroso derivative,  $(C_6H_5 \cdot CO)_2C : N$ . **Dibenzoyl Triketone**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CO \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5$ , boiling at  $289^\circ$  (175 mm. pressure), solidifies to a golden-yellow mass, melting at  $70^\circ$ . It combines with water to form a hydrate (B. 23, 3378).

**Dibenzoylacetone**, *Dibenzoylacetone*, occurs in two forms, one of which represents the *diketohydroxyl form*,  $(C_6H_5 \cdot CO)_2C : C(OH)CH_3$  ( $\alpha$ , m. p.  $80^\circ$ ), the *triketo form*,  $(C_6H_5CO)_2 \cdot CH \cdot COCH_3$  ( $\beta$ , m. p.  $107-110^\circ$ ). It results from the condensation of benzoyl chloride with soda. Similarly, dibenzoylmethane (B. 21) and Tribenzoylmethane,  $(C_6H_5CO)_3CH$ , melting at  $225^\circ$ . By boiling with sodium and acetic ester this  $\beta$ -modification is changed to the  $\alpha$ -form,  $(C_6H_5CO)_3C : C : H_3$ , soluble in alkalis (A. 291, 25).

**Dibenzoyl Acids**: **Dibenzyl Acetic Acid**,  $(C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2)_2CH \cdot COOH$ , melting at  $110^\circ$ , is derived from dibenzyl malonic acid,  $(C_6H_5CH_2)_2C(COOH)_2$ , the ester of which is derived by benzylating malonic ester. **o,o-Dinitrobenzyl Acetic Acid**,  $:H_2 - CH - CH_2 - C_6H_3(NO_2)_2$ , made in an analogous manner, may be condensed

with zinc-dust to *tetrahydronaphthol* (see this) (B. 27, 2248; 29, 636). **Dibenzyl Malonitrile**,  $(C_6H_5CH_2)_2C(CN)_2$ , melting at  $130^\circ$  and boiling at  $260^\circ$ , is derived from the corresponding nitrilo-acid amide, which is prepared from

amide. Sodium and alcohol reduce the nitrile with elimination of a cyanogen group to dibenzylethylamine,  $(C_6H_5CH_2)_2CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH_2$ , whose *hydrochloride* melts at  $190^\circ$  (B. 29, R. 1111).

**Dibenzyl Glycollic Acid**,  $(C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2)_2C(OH) \cdot CO_2H$ , **Oxatolylic Acid**, is produced from dibenzyl ketone by means of CNK and hydrochloric acid, and when vulpic and pulvic acids are boiled with dilute alkalis. It melts at  $156^\circ$ . When boiled with concentrated potassium hydroxide it decomposes into oxalic acid and two molecules of toluene (A. 219, 41).

$\alpha$ -Phenyl- $\beta$ -benzoylpropionic Acid, *Phenylphenacyl Acetic Acid*,  $C_6H_5CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH(C_6H_5)COOH$ , melts at  $153^\circ$ . Its *nitrile* melts at  $127^\circ$ . The acid is produced when CNK acts upon chlorbenzylacetophenone (p. 379). If heated with acetic anhydride it yields

the *lactone* of isomeric  $\alpha$ , $\gamma$ -Diphenyl- $\gamma$ -oxycrotonic Acid,  $C_6H_5C : CH \cdot CH(C_6H_5)COO$ , melting at  $110^\circ$ , while upon reduction with sodium amalgam,  $\alpha$ , $\gamma$ -Diphenylbutyro-

lactone,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH(C_6H_5)COO$  (A. 284, 1).

$\alpha$ , $\gamma$ -Diphenylacetoacetic Acid is isomeric with phenylphenacylacetic acid. Its *ester*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH(C_6H_5)CO_2C_2H_5$ , melting at  $79^\circ$ , is formed when two molecules of phenylacetic ester are condensed with sodium ethylate. Concentrated sulphuric acid condenses the ester to a naphthalene derivative—phenylnaphthoresorcinol (A. 296, 1).

**Dibenzoyl Acetic Acid**,  $(C_6H_5 \cdot CO)_2CH \cdot COOH$ , melts at  $109^\circ$ . Its *ester*, from benzoyl acetic ester and benzoyl chloride, yields  $CO_2$  and dibenzyl methane by dry distillation, and acetophenone, carbon dioxide, and benzoic acid when digested with sulphuric acid.

#### VI. $\alpha,\beta$ -DIPHENYL BUTANE GROUP.

**Dibenzyl Ethane**,  $\alpha,\beta$ -Diphenylbutane,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $52^\circ$ , is formed by the reduction of **Diphenylbutylene**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , which is produced when sodium and alcohol act upon the nitrile of  $\alpha$ -phenylcinnamyl acrylic acid (B. 23, 2857). **Diphenyldiethylene**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : CH : CH : CH \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $148^\circ$  and boiling at  $250^\circ$ , results on heating  $\alpha$ -phenylcinnamyl acrylic acid (B. 23, R. 333). A *tetra-iodide* of this hydrocarbon,  $C_6H_4Cl : Cl : Cl : Cl : C_6H_4$ , melting at  $144^\circ$  (B. 26, R. 19), is formed by the addition of iodine to

**Diphenyl Diacetylene**,  $C_6H_5C : C \cdot C : C \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $88^\circ$ . This is made by shaking copper phenyl acetylide,  $C_6H_5C : C \cdot Cu$  (p. 268), in ammoniacal solution with air, or by the action of potassium ferricyanide. It is the *parent hydrocarbon of indigo blue*. Its *o,o*-dinitro-*derivative*,  $C_6H_4 \cdot \begin{smallmatrix} C : C \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ NO_2 \quad O_2N \end{smallmatrix} \cdot C : C \cdot C_6H_4$  (from *o*-nitro-phenyl acetylene, p. 268), is rearranged by concentrated sulphuric acid into the isomeric di-isotogen (see this), which becomes indigo blue:  $C_6H_4 \cdot \begin{smallmatrix} CO \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ NH \quad NH \end{smallmatrix} \cdot C : C \cdot \begin{smallmatrix} CO \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ NH \quad NH \end{smallmatrix} \cdot C_6H_4$ , by reduction with ammonium sulphide (B. 15, 53).

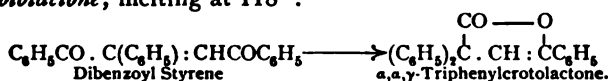
**Ketones**: **Phenethyl Benzyl Ketone**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , boiling at  $324^\circ$  to  $336^\circ$ , is produced when hydrocornicularic acid is distilled with lime (p. 382).

**Diphenacyl**, **Dibenzoyl Ethane**,  $C_6H_5CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $145^\circ$ , is made from phenacyl benzoylacetate (p. 371), as well as by the reduction of the two bromdiphenacylens, melting at  $129^\circ$  and  $161^\circ$ , with magnesium powder. These bromides are produced when sodium ethylate acts upon phenacyl bromide (B. 29, 1750, 2092). Being a  $\gamma$ -diketone, it readily forms *diphenylfurfurane*, *diphenylthiophene*, and *diphenylpyrrol*.

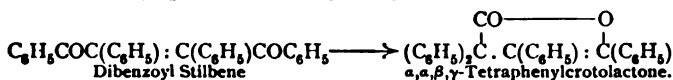
**Desylacetophenone**,  $\alpha,\beta$ -Dibenzoyl Phenyl Ethane,  $C_6H_5CO \cdot CH(C_6H_5) \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $126^\circ$ , is produced in the condensation of benzoin and acetophenone with potassium cyanide (B. 23, R. 636; 26, 60). See B. 29, R. 171, for the action of hydrazine.

**Bidesyl**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{COCH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , *dibenzoyl-dibenzyl*, results when desylbromide or iodine acts upon sodium desoxybenzoin (B. 21, 1355; 25, 285). It melts at 255°. *Iso-bidesyl*, formed simultaneously, melts at 161°. Bidesyl yields tetraphenyl pyrrol and tetraphenyl furfurane, the so-called *lepidene*.

**$\alpha,\beta$ -Dibenzoyl Styrene**, *Anhydroacetophenone Benzil*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO} \cdot \text{CH} : \text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{COC}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at 129°, is obtained from benzil and acetophenone by the action of caustic potash. When heated it rearranges itself by the migration of a phenyl group into the isomeric *triphenylcrotonolactone*, melting at 118°:



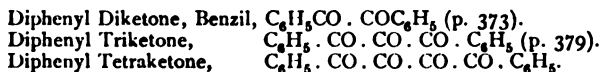
**Dibenzoyl Stilbene**, *acicular oxylepidene*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO} \cdot \text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) : \text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{COC}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at 220°, resulting from the oxidation of lepidene (see above) with nitric acid, or of thionessal (p. 370) with potassium chlorate and hydrochloric acid, also yields, on heating, *tetraphenylcrotonolactone*, *tabular oxylepidene*, melting at 136°:



Consult B. 24, 510; 25, R. 418, for the action of phenylhydrazine upon dibenzoyl styrene and stilbene. Bidesyl results from the reduction of dibenzoyl-stilbene.

**Diphenyltetraketone**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 (+ \text{H}_2\text{O})$ , melting at 87°, is red in color when hydrous, and yellow when anhydrous. It is formed in the oxidation of **Benzoyl Formoin**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{COC}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at 170°, which is produced like benzoin from benzaldehyde by condensing two molecules of phenyl glyoxal with potassium cyanide. Benzoyl formoin also results readily from the action of soda upon isonitroso-acetophenone acetate,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH} : \text{NO} \cdot \text{COCH}_3$ . Substituted diphenyltetraketones have been similarly prepared (B. 25, 3468).

Diphenyltetraketone is a member of the following homologous series:

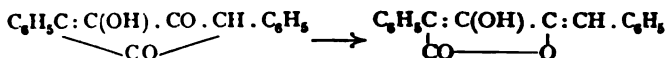


Hydroxylamine forms but one *1,4-dioxime*  $[\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{NOH})\text{CO}]_2$ , melting at 176° with decomposition; the *2,3-dioxime* or *dibenzoylglyoxime*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{COC}(\text{NOH})\text{C}(\text{NOH})\text{CO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting with decomposition at 108°, results from the reduction of its peroxide, which is formed in the interaction of nitric acid and acetophenone. Hydroxylamine converts the *2,3-dioxime* into *diphenyltetraketoxime*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5[\text{C}(\text{NOH})]_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at 225° (B. 26, 528).

**Carboxylic Acids**:  **$\alpha$ -Phenylcinnamenyl Acrylic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH} : \text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{COOH}$ , melting at 188°, and its dioxymethylene derivative,  **$\alpha$ -Phenyl Piperic Acid**, melting at 209°, are obtained from cinnamic aldehyde and piperonyl acrolein with phenylacetic acid by means of Perkin's reaction (B. 28, 1189).

The ester of benzoyl phenacyl-acetic acid,  **$\alpha,\beta$ -dibenzoyl propionic acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{COOR}$ , is obtained from benzoyl acetic ester with phenacyl bromide (p. 249). In the ketone decomposition it yields diphenacyl (p. 38) and in the acid decomposition, benzoyl propionic acid (p. 260) and benzoic acid.

dibenzylketone, melting at 240–242°, may be referred to benzoyloxalylphenyl-acetic acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CO \cdot CH(C_6H_5) \cdot COOH$ , isomeric with dibenzylpropionic acid. It is formed on heating oxalylidibenzylketone (p. 378) beyond its melting point (A. 284, 293):



Alkalies convert isoxalylbenzylketone, just like pulvic acid richer in  $CO_2$ , into dibenzyl glycollic acid.

**Dibenzylidene Succinic Acid**,  $C_6H_5CH : C(COOH) \cdot C(COOH) : CHC_6H_5$ , melting with decomposition at 201°, and **benzylidene-γ-diphenylitaconic acid**,  $(C_6H_5)_2C : C(COOH) \cdot C(COOH) : CH \cdot C_6H_5$ , are obtained by the condensation of succinic ester (1) with two molecules of benzaldehyde, and (2) with benzophenone and benzaldehyde by means of sodium ethylate (B. 30, 94).

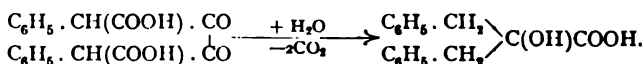
**Dibenzoyl Succinic Acid**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH \cdot CO_2H$  Its *ethyl ester*, melting at 129°, is obtained from sodium benzoyl acetic ester by the action of iodine, just as we form diaceto-succinic ester from acetoacetic ester. By the elimination of water there results *diphenyl-furfurane dicarboxylic ester*. The esters of the acid appear in three forms, of which the unstable (*labile*) variety, soluble in alkalies, is probably the enol-form,  $[C_6H_5 \cdot C(OH) : C(COOH)]_2$ , while the other two represent the syn- and anti-modifications of the keto-form (B. 29, R. 962).

**Diphenyloxalyl Diacetic Acid, Diphenylketipic Acid**,  $COOH \cdot CH(C_6H_5)CO \cdot CO \cdot CH(C_6H_5)COOH$ , is isomeric with dibenzoylsuccinic acid. Its *dinitrile*, melting at 270° with decomposition, is produced by the condensation of oxalic ester with two molecules of benzyl cyanide. When saponified with hydrochloric or sulphuric acid it yields not the free acid, but passes at once into its anhydride, a *monolactone*, **Pulvic Acid**,

$COOC \cdot CH(C_6H_5)CO \cdot C : C(C_6H_5)COOH$ , melting at 214°, and a *dilactone*,

$COOC \cdot C(C_6H_5) : C : C(C_6H_5)COO$ . Pulvic acid may also be prepared from **Vulpic**

**Acid**,  $C_{19}H_{14}O_5$ , consisting of yellow prisms, melting at 110°, and found in a certain moss and in the lichen *Cetraria vulpina*, by boiling it with lime-water. Sodium ethylate converts pulvic acid back into salts of vulpic acid. The latter is therefore very probably to be regarded as a methyl ether of pulvic acid (B. 27, R. 869; A. 288, 14). Zinc-dust and ammonia reduce pulvic acid to **Hydrocornicularic Acid**, *α,δ-Diphenyl-luxulinic Acid*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH(C_6H_5)COOH$ , melting at 134°. Distilled with lime, it yields phenylethylbenzyl ketone (p. 380), and when heated with caustic potash the products are toluene and phenylsuccinic acid (p. 262). Boiling alkalies decompose pulvic and vulpic acids into  $2CO_2$  and dibenzylglycollic acid. If it be assumed that diphenylketipic acid is formed at first, then this reaction, discarding the evolution of  $CO_2$ , is an analogue of the benzilic acid transposition (p. 374):



**Ethane-dibenzoyl- $\alpha_2$ -dicarboxylic Acid**,  $COOH \cdot C_6H_5CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5 \cdot COOH$ , is another isomeric of dibenzoylsuccinic acid. It melts at 166°. It is made by boiling **ethine diphthalyl**,  $O \cdot OC \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot C : CH \cdot CH : C \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot COO$ , melting above 350°, the *dilactone* corresponding to it, with alkalies. Ethine diphthalyl results from the condensation of two molecules of phthalic anhydride with succinic acid when two molecules of carbon dioxide are split off (B. 17, 2770). Sodium alcoholate rearranges it into bisdiketohydrindene (p. 388).

VII.  $\omega,\omega$ -DIPHENYLPENTANE GROUP.

The hydrocarbons of this group are not known.

**Ketones:** **Dibenzylidene Acetone**,  $C_6H_5CH:CH.CO.CH:CH.C_6H_5$ , yellow needles, melting at  $112^\circ$ , is formed when acetone and benzaldehyde are treated with sodium hydroxide. In the first step benzal acetone is produced (p. 272):



**Di-o-cumarketone**,  $(OHC_6H_4CH:CH)_2CO$ , melting at  $160^\circ$ , is produced in the form of its diglycose compound by the condensation of helicene (see this) with acetone. **Cinnamylidene Acetophenone**,  $C_6H_5CH:CH.CH:CH.COC_6H_5$ , from cinnamic aldehyde and acetophenone, melts at  $103^\circ$ ; its *oxime*, melting at  $131^\circ$ , is condensed to  $\alpha\alpha$ -diphenylpyridine upon the application of heat (B. 28, 1730).

**1,5-Diketones** of this group are obtained by condensing benzaldehydes (1 mol.) and acetophenones (2 mols.) with sodium hydroxide: **benzylidene diacetophenone**,  $C_6H_5CH(CH_2.CO.C_6H_5)_2$ , melting at  $85^\circ$ , and **o-oxybenzylidene diacetophenone**,  $(OH)[2]C_6H_4(CH_2.CO.C_6H_5)_2$ , melting at  $131^\circ$ . By varying the conditions and condensing two molecules of benzaldehyde with three molecules of acetophenone, two isomeric **dibenzylidene-triacetophenones**,  $(C_6H_5CH)_2(CH_2COC_6H_5)_3$ , melting at  $198^\circ$  and  $256^\circ$  respectively, are produced.

**Benzamarone**, **Benzylidenedisoxymbenzoïn**,  $C_6H_5COCH(C_6H_5)CH(C_6H_5).CH(C_6H_5)COC_6H_5(?)$ , exists in two modifications, melting at  $219^\circ$  and  $180^\circ$ . It is prepared by condensing benzaldehyde with desoxybenzoïn, as well as by the addition of desoxybenzoïn to benzylidenedesoxybenzoïn (p. 379) by the aid of sodium ethylate. Similarly, desoxybenzoïn attaches itself to the unsaturated unions of other olefine derivatives—*e. g.*,  $\alpha$ -phenylcinnamo-nitrile, benzalacetacetic ester, benzalbenzoylpyrrocemic ester, *etc.* (B. 25, 1087). By decomposition with sodium ethylate benzamarone yields the sodium salt of *amaric acid*,  $C_{22}H_{20}O_8$ , and with sodium isobutylate it forms *dimethyl-amaric acid*,  $C_{22}H_{20}O_8$  (A. 275, 50).

The dry distillation of benzamarone produces desoxybenzoïn, benzylidene desoxybenzoïn, and a body isomeric with the latter (B. 26, 818). Hydroxylamine changes it quite readily into *pentaphenylpyridine*.

**Carboxyl derivatives** of the  $\omega,\omega$ -diphenylpentane group: **Diphenacyl Acetic Acid**,  $(C_6H_5COCH_2)_2CH.CO_2H$ , melting at  $133^\circ$ , is obtained from diphenacyl malonic ester,  $(C_6H_5COCH_2)_2C(CO_2R)_2$ , or diphenacyl acetoacetic ester,  $(C_6H_5COCH_2)_2C(COCH_3)COOC_2H_5$ , melting at  $83^\circ$ , the reaction-products from phenacyl bromide upon malonic ester and acetoacetic ester (B. 22, 3225). Diphenacyl acetic acid, being an  $\epsilon$ -diketone, forms a *pyridine*-derivative with ammonia (B. 29, 798).

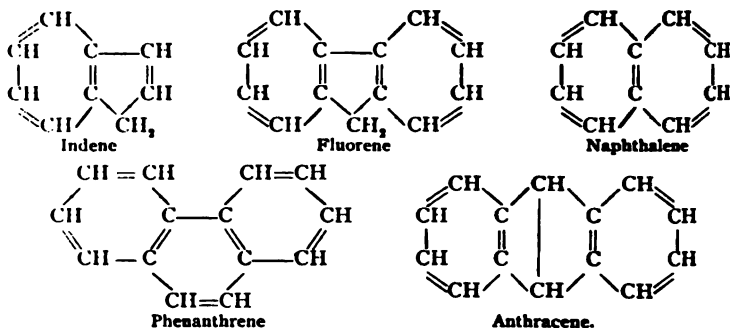
VIII.  $\omega,\omega$ -DIPHENYL HEXANE GROUP AND HIGHER HOMOLOGUES.

**Oxalyldiacetophenone**,  $C_6H_5COCH_2COCOCH_2COC_6H_5$ , melting at  $180^\circ$ , is formed in the condensation of two molecules of acetophenone and oxalic ester with sodium alcoholate. Consult B. 28, 1206, for the reduction-products of this tetraketone.

$\omega,\omega$ -Diphenyl Diketoheptane,  $(C_6H_5COCH_2CH_2)_2$ , Diphenyl Diketo-octane,  $(C_6H_5COCH_2CH_2CH_2)_2$ , and Diphenyl Diketononane,  $(C_6H_5CO.CH_2.CH_2.CH_2)_2$ , are prepared from the chlorides of adipic acid, sebacic acid, and azelaic acid by means of benzene and aluminium chloride (B. 29, R. 1157). **Cinnamylene benzylidene acetone**,  $C_6H_5CH:CH.CH:CH.COCH:CHC_6H_5$ , melting at  $106^\circ$ , is derived from  $\omega,\omega$ -diphenylheptane. It is formed from cinnamylene acetone and benzaldehyde (B. 29, 615).

## B. CONDENSED NUCLEI.

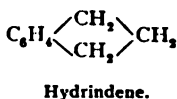
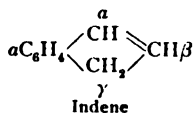
The condensed nuclei to be discussed in the following section are characterized by the fact that in them C-atoms of benzene nuclei participate in the formation of other carbocyclic rings—*e. g.* :



Although these condensed nuclei, as a rule, continue to manifest their aromatic character, they do, in harmony with their peculiar structure, exhibit in their behavior a series of wide differences from the true benzene compounds (see naphthalene). They are eventually, by suitable oxidations, changed like the homologues of benzene into benzene carboxylic acids. The parent hydrocarbons of these groups occur, like benzene, chiefly in coal-tar, from which they are obtained in greater or lesser amount. Naphthalene is technically important; this is especially true of anthracene, the hydrocarbon of alizarin.

The carbocyclic derivatives of the tri-, tetra-, and pentamethylene series constitute the transition from the fatty bodies with open chain to the benzene derivatives. Similarly, the indene and the hydrindene compounds form the transition members from the fatty-aromatic substances with open side-chains to those which contain several condensed benzene nuclei. They represent the coalescence of a benzene nucleus with the five-membered pentene. Very probably pseudophenyl acetic acid (p. 196) contains a united benzene and trimethylene ring.

## 1. INDENE AND HYDRINDENE GROUP.



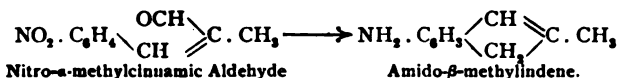
Indene has received its name from indol, because of its similarity to the latter in structure. By introducing NH for the methylene group of indene the formula of indol results.

Indene,  $C_9H_8$ , is an oil, boiling at  $178^\circ$ ; its specific gravity equals 1.040 at  $15^\circ$ . It occurs, together with coumarone, to which it is very similar in its behavior (B. 28, 114), in that fraction of coal-tar boiling at  $176-182^\circ$ , and can be extracted from it by means of its

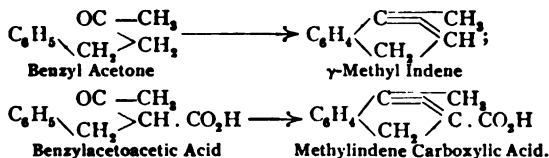
picric acid derivative (B. 23, 3276). Very appreciable amounts of indene are also present in the condensation products resulting from the chilling of illuminating gas (B. 28, 1331). It can also be obtained by the distillation of the calcium salt of synthetic hydrindene carboxylic acid (p. 387) (B. 27, R. 465). Sulphuric acid resinifies indene. Chlorine and bromine unite with it to dibrom- and dichlorhydrindenes. Like the terpenes (p. 309), it also combines with NOCl and N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>, forming indene nitrosites, the  $\alpha$ -variety melting with decomposition at 108°, and the  $\beta$ -form at 137° (B. 28, 1331). Metallic sodium and alcohol reduce indene to hydrindene. When heated to redness two molecules of indene unite, with the exit of four hydrogen atoms, to chrysene (see this): Bz.-Brom-indene, C<sub>8</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Br(C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>), boiling at 243°, is formed from hydrindene and bromine (B. 26, 2251). It yields bromphthalic acid upon oxidation.

Indene derivatives are obtained synthetically by the following methods, which to some extent recall the syntheses of the pentamethylene compounds:

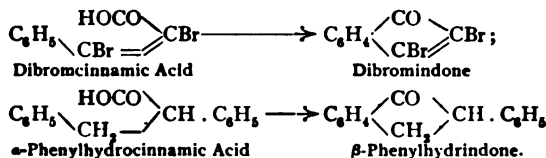
(1) Benzene compounds, having the group C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub> · C · C · CO, split off water and condense to indene derivatives: (a) Nitro- $\alpha$ -alkyl cinnamic aldehydes yield amido- $\beta$ -alkyl indenenes (B. 22, 1830):



Similarly, benzyl acetone and benzyl acetoacetic ester yield  $\gamma$ -methylindene and  $\gamma$ -methylindene- $\beta$ -carboxylic acid (B. 20, 1574; A. 247, 157) when they are heated with sulphuric acid:



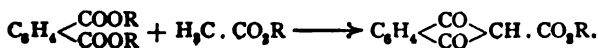
(b) Substituted cinnamic acids yield *indone* derivatives when they are treated with hot sulphuric acid, just as the hydrocinnamic acids, alkylized in the nucleus and in the side-chain, yield *dihydroindones*. Cinnamic and hydrocinnamic acids themselves react with as little readiness as cinnamic aldehyde (A. 247, 140; B. 25, 2095, 2129):



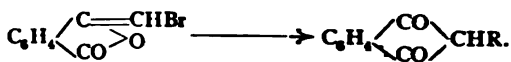
(2) The *hydrindene* derivatives have been obtained in the same manner as the tetra- and pentamethylene derivatives (p. 21): by the action of xylene halides upon malonic ester and sodium alcoholate (B. 17, 125; 18, 378):



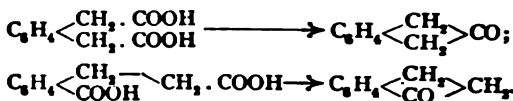
(3 a) The formation of  $\alpha\gamma$ -diketohydrindenes from o-phthalic esters and fatty acid esters or ketones (A. 252, 72; B. 27, 104, R. 19) corresponds to the condensation of oxalic esters to pentamethylene derivatives:



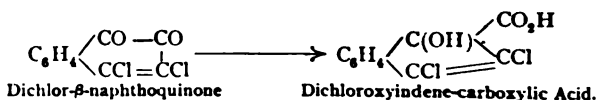
(3 b) The phthalide compounds (pp. 240, 290) of the formula  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup C=CHR \\ \diagdown CO > O \end{smallmatrix}$ , formed from phthalic anhydride and fatty acids, are transposed by sodium alcoholates into the sodium derivatives of the isomeric diketohydrindenes (B. 26, 954, 2576):



(4) The formation of dihydroindones by the distillation of salts of *o*-phenylene diacetic acid and *o*-hydrocinnamic acid (B. 26, 222, R. 708) corresponds to the cyclic ketone formation of dicarboxylic acids of the adipic acid series (p. 21):



(5) The formation of indene derivatives from naphthalene derivatives is rather remarkable; a six-membered benzene-ring is rearranged to a ring of five members—similar to the production of pentamethylene derivatives from the benzenes, or fluorene compounds from phenanthraquinone. This change occurs by the action of chlorine or hypochlorous acid upon the naphthols, naphthoquinones, amidonaphthols, etc. The first product consists of naphthalene keto-derivatives with the groups  $-CO \cdot CO-$  or  $CO \cdot CCl_2-$ ; these sustain the decomposition (B. 20, 2890; 21, 2719). Thus, dichloro- $\beta$ -naphthoquinone yields dichloroxyindene carboxylic acid:



**Indene Derivatives:**  $\gamma$ -Methyl Indene,  $C_9H_8$ :  $C_7H_5 \cdot CH_3$ , boiling at  $206^\circ$ , is obtained synthetically from benzyl acetone, and by the elimination of  $CO_2$  from its carboxylic acid. *Bz. Amido- $\beta$ -methyl-, ethyl-, isopropyl indenenes* melt at  $98^\circ$ ,  $89^\circ$ , and  $84^\circ$  (see above) respectively.

$\beta$ -Indene Carboxylic Acid,  $C_9H_8$ :  $C_7H_5 \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $222-230^\circ$ , is produced by the action of bromine at  $100^\circ$  upon a chloroform solution of hydrindene carboxylic acid (see below).

$\gamma$ -Methyl- $\beta$ -indene Carboxylic Acid, melting at  $200^\circ$ , is obtained from benzyl-acetoacetic ester.

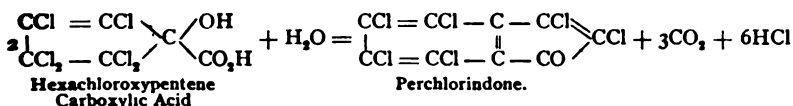
$\beta, \gamma$ -Dichloro- $\alpha$ -oxyindene Carboxylic Acid, melting at  $100^\circ$ , is obtained from  $\beta$ -dichloronaphthoquinone. Chromic acid oxidizes it to dichlorindone. It is changed to chlorindone carboxylic acid when digested with concentrated sulphuric acid (B. 28, R. 279).

$\alpha, \beta$ -Diphenylindone,  $C_{16}H_{12}$ :  $\begin{smallmatrix} \diagup C(C_6H_5) \\ \diagdown CO \end{smallmatrix} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup C(C_6H_5) \\ \diagdown \end{smallmatrix}$ , garnet-red crystals, melting at  $151^\circ$ , is produced, together with triphenylacrylic acid (p. 378), when benzophenone chloride is condensed with phenylacetic ester. It yields triphenyl propane upon reduction. It is decomposed into  $\alpha, \beta$ -diphenylvinyl-*o*-benzoic acid when fused with caustic potash. It can be recovered from this as well as from triphenylacrylic acid on heating with zinc chloride (B. 30, 1281).

$\beta, \gamma$ -Dichloro- and Dibromindone,  $C_9H_4$ :  $C_7Br_2O$ , melting at  $90^\circ$  and  $123^\circ$ , have been obtained synthetically from dichloro- and dibromocinnamic acids. The  $\gamma$ -chlorine atom in these compounds is readily replaced by OH or NHR on digesting them with caustic soda, or fatty or aromatic amines.  $\beta$ -Chloro- and  $\beta$ -Bromo- $\gamma$ -oxyindone melt at  $114^\circ$  and  $119^\circ$ .  $\beta$ -Chloro- and Bromanilido-indone melt at  $204^\circ$  and  $170^\circ$ .

Perchlorindone,  $C_9Cl_4$ :  $C_7Cl_3O$ , melting at  $149^\circ$ , is produced by a peculiar reaction

from a *pentene*-derivative, hexachloroxy-R-pentene carboxylic acid, the decomposition product of hexachlordiketeto-R-hexene, on digesting it with water or with a solution of sodium acetate (A. 272, 243; B. 28, 521):



**Hydrindene Derivatives:** Hydrindene,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4 : \text{C}_8\text{H}_6$ , is an oil, boiling at  $177^\circ$ . It results when indene is reduced with sodium and alcohol.

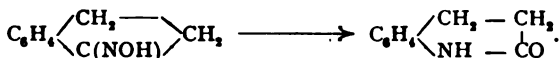
Dichlorhydrindene is an oil. Dibromhydrindene,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4 : \text{C}_8\text{H}_4\text{Br}_2$ , melts at  $44^\circ$ . They yield chlor- and bromoxyhydrindenes, melting at  $129^\circ$  and  $131^\circ$ , when digested with water. Ammonia converts the latter bodies, in the cold, into amido-oxyhydrindene, melting at  $133^\circ$ , which nitrous acid transposes into  $\beta, \gamma$ -dioxyhydrindene, *hydrindene glycol*,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4 : \text{C}_8\text{H}_4(\text{OH})_2$ , melting at  $120^\circ$  (B. 26, 1539).

Hydrindene- $\beta$ -methyl-, ethyl-, and phenylketones are formed in the distillation of hydrindene carboxylic acid with benzoic acid, propionic acid, and acetic acid (B. 26, 2251).

Hydrindene- $\beta$ -carboxylic Acid,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $130^\circ$ , is converted by distillation of its salts into indene, by bromine into indene-carboxylic acid, and is oxidized by  $\text{KMnO}_4$  to o-carbophenylglyoxylic acid (p. 265). It results when  $\text{CO}_2$  is eliminated from hydrindene- $\beta$ -dicarboxylic acid, melting at  $199^\circ$ . The ester of the latter acid may be obtained synthetically from xylene bromide and malonic ester.

$\beta$ -Acethydrindene Carboxylic Ester,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C} < \begin{smallmatrix} \text{COCH}_3 \\ \text{CO}_2\text{R} \end{smallmatrix}$ , is obtained from xylene bromide and acetoacetic ester.

$\alpha$ -Hydrindone,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4 < \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix} > \text{CH}_2$ , melting at  $41^\circ$  and boiling at  $244^\circ$ , is obtained in the dry distillation of o-carbohydrocinnamic acid (p. 245) as well as from o-cyanhydrocinnamic ester (p. 245) upon digesting with concentrated hydrochloric acid. The *phenylhydrazine* melts at  $131^\circ$ . The *oxime*, melting at  $146^\circ$ , is changed by reduction to  $\alpha$ -amidohydrindene, melting at  $220^\circ$ , which  $\text{N}_2\text{O}_5$  converts into  $\alpha$ -oxyhydrindene, melting at  $54^\circ$  (B. 26, R. 708). Phosphorus pentachloride converts  $\alpha$ -hydrindonoxime into hydrocarbostyryl (Beckmann's transposition) (B. 27, R. 598):



Hydrindone Azine,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_6 : \text{N} : \text{N} : \text{C}_8\text{H}_6$ , melting at  $165^\circ$ , results from the action of hydrazine upon the oxime. Nitrous acid converts hydrindone into isonitrosohydrindone,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4 < \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix} > \text{C} = \text{NOH}$ , melting with decomposition at  $210^\circ$ . This phenylhydrazine changes to an *osazone*, melting at  $229^\circ$ . The latter is isomeric with the dihydrazone obtained from  $\alpha, \gamma$ -diketohydrindene. It yields  $\beta$ -amido- $\alpha$ -hydrindone when it is reduced (B. 29, 2605, R. 869; C., 1897, I, 860).

When o-, m-, and p-methylhydrocinnamic acids are heated they yield o-, m-, and p-Methyl- $\alpha$ -hydrindones. The constitution of the latter is deduced from their oxidation to the various methyl-o-phthalic acids. Bz.-Chlor-, brom-, iod-, and nitrohydrindones behave similarly (B. 25, 2095).

$\beta$ -Methyl- $\alpha$ -hydrindone, melting at  $168^\circ$  (11 mm.), and  $\beta$ -Phenyl- $\alpha$ -hydrindone, melting at  $78^\circ$ , are obtained from  $\alpha$ -methyl and phenylhydrocinnamic acids. When its ethereal solution is shaken with caustic soda  $\beta$ -phenylhydrindone is changed partly to  $\beta$ -phenyloxyhydrindone, melting at  $129^\circ$ , and in part by rupture of the ring into desoxybenzoic-o-carboxylic acid,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4(\text{CO} \cdot \text{OH}) \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COC}_6\text{H}_5$  (p. 376) (B. 26, 2095).  $\gamma$ -Phenyl- $\alpha$ -hydrindone, melting at  $78^\circ$ , is prepared from  $\beta, \beta$ -diphenyl-propionic acid (B. 26, 2128).

Tetrachlor- $\alpha$ -hydrindone,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4 : \text{C}_2\text{Cl}_4\text{O}$ , melting at  $108^\circ$ , is the addition product of

chlorine and dichlorindone (p. 387). It is readily decomposed by digestion with alcoholic sodium hydrate into o-trichlorovinylbenzoic acid (p. 273). Chlordibrom-hydrindone- $\gamma$ -carboxylic Acid,  $C_8H_4 : [C_2ClBr_2O(COOH)]$ , melting at  $171^\circ$ , is made from chlorindone- $\gamma$ -carboxylic acid (p. 387) and bromine. It is similarly decomposed into bromchloromethylene-homophthalic acid (p. 393).

$\beta$  Hydrindone,  $C_8H_4(CH_3)_2CO$ , melting at  $61^\circ$  and boiling with decomposition at  $220-225^\circ$ , is obtained from calcium o-phenylene diacetate (p. 245). Its *hydrazone* melts at  $120^\circ$ . Its *oxime*, melting at  $155^\circ$ , yields  $\beta$ -amidohydrindene upon reduction (B. 26, R. 709).

$\alpha,\gamma$ -Diketohydrindene,  $C_8H_4(CO)_2CH_2$ , melting with decomposition at  $130^\circ$ , is obtained from its carboxylic acid (below). It consists of colorless needles, which dissolve readily with a yellow color in alkalis. The hydrogen atoms of the methylene groups placed between the two keto-groups have an acid nature. Phenylhydrazine converts it into a *monohydrazone*, melting at  $163^\circ$ , and a *dihydrazone*,  $C_8H_4(C : NNH \cdot C_6H_5)_2CH_2$ , melting at  $171^\circ$ . Diazobenzene chloride converts the monohydrazone into a *triketohydrindene*,  $C_8H_4(CO)_2C : NNHC_6H_5$ , which is also prepared by the decomposition of *benzaldiketohydrindene*,  $C_8H_4(CO)_2C = CHC_6H_5$ , a condensation product of benzaldehyde and diketohydrindene, with phenylhydrazine.

3,4-Dioxybenzaldiketohydrindene, melting at  $257^\circ$ , and prepared by the condensation of protocatechuic aldehyde and diketohydrindene, is a dye (B. 30, 1185). When diketohydrindene is digested alone, or when it is boiled with water, anhydrobisketohydrindene,  $C_8H_4(CO)_2C = C < \begin{smallmatrix} CH \\ CH_2 \end{smallmatrix} > CO$ , is formed. This yields intensely colored metallic derivatives. Phenylhydrazine resolves this substance into two molecules of diketohydrindene-dihydrazone (A. 277, 362).

$\beta$  Methyldiketohydrindene,  $C_8H_4(CO)_2CH \cdot CH_3$ , melting at  $85^\circ$ , is prepared from its carboxylic acid, as well as by the rearrangement of ethidene phthalide (p. 286). Methyl iodide converts its sodium derivative into  $\beta$ -dimethyldiketohydrindene,  $C_8H_4(CO)_2C(CH_3)_2$ , which can also be obtained by the action of methyl iodide upon the disodium compound of the diketohydrindene-carboxylic acid.  $\beta$ -Phenyldiketohydrindene, melting at  $145^\circ$ , is made from benzalphthalide, and *Bisdiketohydrindene*,  $C_8H_4(CO)_2CH \cdot CH \cdot (CO)_2C_6H_4$ , from ethine diphthalyl (p. 382). The latter consists of violet-colored needles, melting above  $350^\circ$  (B. 26, 2576; 29, 2376). Potassium persulphate oxidizes potassium diketohydrindene to diphthalyl ethene,  $C_8H_4(CO)_2C : C(CO)_2C_6H_4$ , which has been designated *indenigo* because its structure resembles that of indigo. It forms alizarin-red needles, which sublime with decomposition at  $200^\circ$  (B. 30, 386).

$\beta$  Acetyl- and Benzoyldiketohydrindene,  $C_8H_4(CO)_2CH \cdot COR$ , melting at  $110^\circ$  and  $108^\circ$ , are formed from phthalic esters with acetone and acetophenone. They appear to be very easily decomposed by alkalis (B. 27, 104).

$\beta$ -Dichlorodiketohydrindene,  $C_8H_4(CO)_2CCl_2$ , melting at  $125^\circ$ , is produced by the action of chlorine upon  $\gamma$ -oxychlorindone (p. 387). Dilute caustic soda decomposes it quite readily into o-phthalic acid (B. 21, 491, 2380).

Diketohydrindene Carboxylic Ester,  $C_8H_4(CO)_2CH \cdot CO_2R$ , melting at  $75-78^\circ$ , formed from phthalic ester by means of acetic ester and sodium alcoholates, is converted very readily, just like the preceding acid, into diketohydrindene (B. 26, 954).

$\beta$ -Methyldiketohydrindene-carboxylic Ester,  $C_8H_4(CO)_2C(CH_3)CO_2R$ , is formed from phthalic ester and propionic ester.

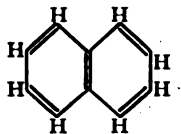
**Fluorene** is a *dibenzopentene* resulting from the union of the pentene nucleus with two benzene nuclei. It will be considered in conjunction with *chrysene-fluorene* and *picene-fluorene* after the condensed nuclei of the phenanthrene group (pp. 413, 416)—phenanthrene, chrysene, and picene—to which the two first-named bodies are intimately related.

## 2. NAPHTHALENE GROUP.\*

Garden (1816) discovered naphthalene,  $C_{10}H_8$ , among the distillation products of coal-tar. It shows great similarity to benzene, from which it differs in constitution by  $C_4H_2$ . Like benzene, it is produced by the action of intense heat upon various carbon compounds; hence its occurrence in coal-tar. Numerous derivatives are obtained from it by the replacement of its hydrogen atoms; they are very similar to the benzene compounds. Only the most important of them will be considered in the following sections.

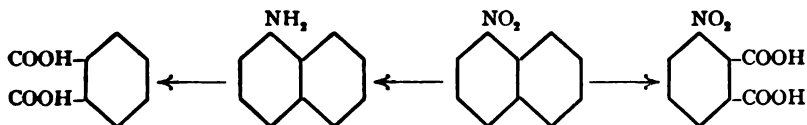
## CONSTITUTION OF THE NAPHTHALENE NUCLEUS.

The deportment of naphthalene is satisfactorily explained by the formula first suggested by Erlenmeyer, Sr. (A. 137, 346):



It consists of two benzene nuclei, having in common two carbon atoms occupying the ortho position. Graebe (1866) proved the correctness of the formula (A. 149, 20).

The oxidation of naphthalene to o-phthalic acid shows the presence of a benzene nucleus (pp. 36, 239). Further, the oxidation of dichloronaphthoquinone,  $C_{10}H_4 : C_6Cl_4O_2$ , also yields o-phthalic acid. If, however, dichloronaphthoquinone is converted by  $PCl_5$  into tetrachloronaphthalene, this, upon oxidation, will become tetrachlor-o-phthalic acid. In the second instance, therefore, the benzene nucleus, which in the first case was unattacked, is now oxidized. A perfectly similar method of demonstration, to which reference has already been made (p. 36), is as follows: Nitronaphthalene, obtained by nitration of naphthalene, yields nitro-o-phthalic acid; whereas amidonaphthalene, resulting from the reduction of the preceding nitronaphthalene, yields o-phthalic acid:



Hence it follows that naphthalene must consist of two symmetrically condensed benzene nuclei. For other formulas, like the *central formula* of Bamberger, the formula of Armstrong, etc., consult B. 23, R. 337, 692; 24, R. 651, 728:



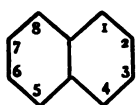
Bamberger.



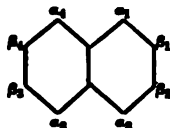
Armstrong.

\*"Tabellarische Uebersicht der Naphthalinderivate" von Reverdin und Fulda, Basel, Genf, Lyon, 1894.

**Isomerisms of the Naphthalene Derivatives.**—The isomerisms of the derivatives of naphthalene conditioned by this formula agree with the facts. The substituents are designated according to the diagram:



or

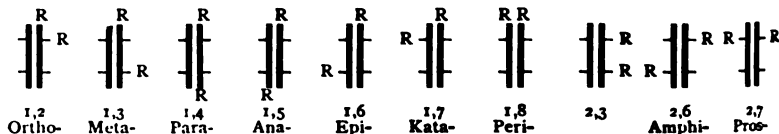


The replacement of an H-atom in naphthalene can give rise to two isomeric mono-derivatives, distinguished as  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -derivatives according as the substituent is adjacent

to the complex  $\begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{C} \diagdown \\ | \text{C} | \end{array}$  common to both groups, or separated from it by a CH-group. The positions 1, 4, 5, 8 ( $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3, \alpha_4$ ) on the one side, and 2, 3, 6, 7 ( $\beta_1, \beta_2, \beta_3, \beta_4$ ) are equivalent. Liebermann (A. 183, 254) and Atterberg (B. 9, 1736) have adduced proof of the equivalence of the four  $\alpha$ -positions. The method adopted is similar to that followed in demonstrating the equal value of the benzene hydrogen atoms (p. 32).

Whether a substituent occupies the  $\alpha$ - or  $\beta$ -position is mainly determined by its oxidation to a corresponding o-phthalic acid derivative. Thus, if [1,2,3]-nitrophthalic acid is obtained from  $\alpha$ -nitrophthalene, the nitro-group must consequently be adjacent to the contact position of the second benzene nucleus in naphthalene. The constitution of  $\alpha$ -oxynaphthalene or  $\alpha$ -naphthol is evident also from its synthesis by means of phenyl-isocrotonic acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$  (p. 278). Besides, only  $\alpha$ -derivatives of naphthalene can be converted into quinones analogous to p-benzoquinone, as these alone possess a free H-atom in the para-position with reference to the substituent. This latter circumstance also determines still other peculiarities in the behavior of the compounds of naphthalene—*e. g.*, the power of the naphthols and naphthylamines to unite with diazobodies, etc. (p. 401).

The disubstitution products of naphthalene, when the substituents are similar, can exist in ten isomeric forms, which are designated by numbers or prepositions (B. 26, R. 533): \*



The position of the substituents in the derivatives can very often be determined by the oxidation method, if thereby it can first be ascertained whether the substituents are in the same nucleus (*isonuclear*) or in different nuclei (*heteronuclear*). Isonuclear substitution products with adjacent substituents show in general the same department as the ortho-substitution products of benzene, inasmuch as they form similar condensation products (pp. 96, 153, 157, 159). However, a difference appears to exist between positions like 1, 2 and 2, 3. Thus, only those amidonaphthalenes manifest the ability to form naphthoquinoline rings in which the pyridene-ring can attach itself to  $\alpha, \beta$ -C-atoms. It must be assumed that the double linkages in naphthalene are not so easily displaced as in benzene (p. 39). The behavior of the 1,8- or peri-derivatives is remarkable. Like the o-derivatives, they exhibit a series of hetero-ring formations.

#### NAPHTHALENE-RING FORMATIONS.

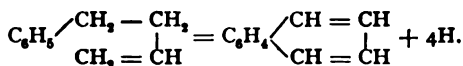
Naphthalene is produced by pyrogenic condensation from a series of carbon compounds, like *ethylene, acetylene, ether*, etc. Methods of

\* In the following diagram the double hexagon of naphthalene is replaced by two parallel lines, as was similarly done with benzene (p. 36).

producing the naphthalene nucleus by processes in which *one* benzene nucleus pre-exists are more important :

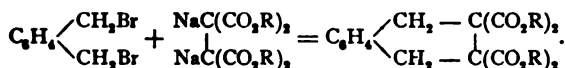
(1) A mixture of *benzene* and *acetylene* conducted through a tube heated to redness yields naphthalene (Bull. 7, 306).

(2) It is derived from phenylbutylene,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH : CH_2$ , and its dibromide, on leading their vapors over heated lime :

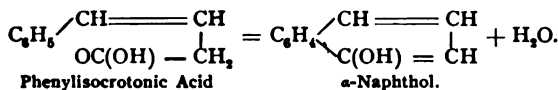


(3) A direct synthesis of the second benzene ring also ensues in a manner analogous to the formation of the trimethylene and tetramethylene ring, and of the hydrindene ring when *o*-xylene bromide acts upon disodium-acetylene-tetracarboxylic ester (Baeyer and Perkin, B. 17, 448).

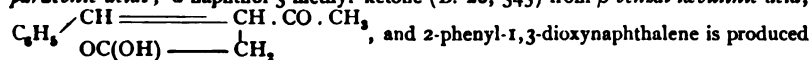
First, we get the ester of tetrahydro-naphthalene-tetracarboxylic acid, and this by saponification yields tetrahydro-naphthalene dicarboxylic acid. Naphthalene results from the distillation of its silver salt :



(4) What is further noteworthy is the formation of *α*-naphthol from phenyl-isocrotonic acid when heated (Fittig and Erdmann, B. 16, 43 ; A. 247, 372 ; 255, 263 ; 275, 284 ; compare formation of indene derivatives, p. 384).

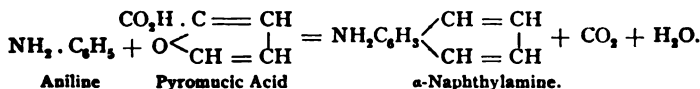


In a perfectly similar manner 5-, 6-, and 7-*chlor-1-naphthols* are obtained from *o*-, *m*-, and *p*-*chlorphenylparaconic acids*; 2- and 4-*methylnaphthols* from *α*- and *β*-*methylparaconic acids*; *α*-naphthol-3-methyl ketone (B. 26, 345) from *β*-*benzal-lavulinic acid*,



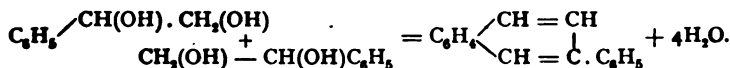
when *α,γ*-diphenylacetoacetic ester,  $C_6H_5 \begin{array}{c} \diagup CH_2 - CO \\ \diagdown \cdot ROCO - CH(C_6H_5) \end{array}$ , is digested with concentrated sulphuric acid (A. 296, 14).

(5) An interesting formation of *α*-naphthylamine consists in heating *aniline* with *pyromucic acid* and zinc chloride to 300° (B. 20, R. 221) :



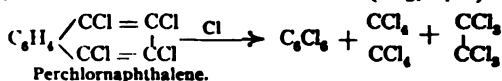
*α*-Naphthylamine is similarly formed on heating aniline hydrochloride with mannitol under pressure.

(6) Two molecules of styrolene alcohol or phenyl glycol (p. 248) can be condensed by dilute  $H_2SO_4$  to *β*-phenylnaphthalene (A. 240, 137) :

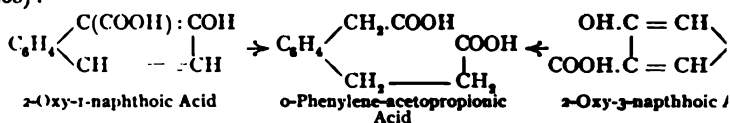


Phenylacetaldehyde is an intermediate product.

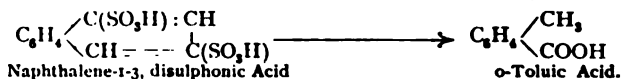
(3) When perchloronaphthalene is heated with  $\text{SbCl}_5$  to  $280\text{--}300^\circ$  it is resolved into perchlorobenzene, tetrachloromethane and hexachlorethane (B. 9, 1486):



(4) *Decomposition by Reduction in Alkaline Solution.*—A ring-decomposition analogous to that of salicylic acid (p. 47) is that undergone by 2,1- and 2,3-oxy-naphthalene acids (p. 408) when their alcoholic solutions are acted upon by metallic sodium (268):



(5) Naphthalene disulphonic acids, naphthylamine- and naphthol-sulphonic acids containing the substituents in the 1,3-position, sustain a remarkable decomposition into toluic acid when they are fused with caustic potash (B. 28, R. 364):



m-Cresol (Ch. Z. 1895, Nr. 48) is similarly produced on fusing 1,3,6- and naphthalene-trisulphonic acids with caustic potash.

**Naphthalene**,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_8$ , melting at  $79^\circ$  and boiling at  $218^\circ$ , occurs in coal-tar, and is obtained by crystallization from that portion between  $180\text{--}300^\circ$ . It is purified by distillation with steam and sublimation. It dissolves with difficulty in cold alcohol, readily in hot alcohol and in ether. It crystallizes and sublimes in shining plates. It is characterized by its great volatility and possesses a peculiar odor. It forms a crystalline compound,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_8 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{NO}_2)_3 \cdot \text{OH}$ , with *picric acid*, which melts at  $149^\circ$  (Fritzsche, J. 1857, 456). m- and p-Dinitrobenzene, nitrobenzene, trinitrotoluene, etc., form similar double compounds.

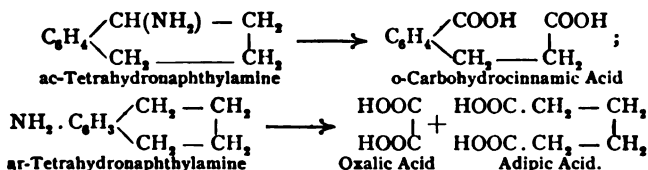
Naphthalene is applied technically in the preparation of phthalic acid and dyestuffs. It is also used in carburetting water-gas. It is employed for itching, moths, because of its strong antiseptic properties and its stupefying effect upon the lower animals.

As naphthalene has unsaturated linkages it will, under favorable conditions, take up hydrogen and chlorine: the compounds thus produced will be discussed in conjunction with other hydronaphthalene derivatives at the conclusion of the naphthalene group. Naphthalene, like benzene, is chlorinated, nitrated, and sulphonated by halogen, nitric acid, and sulphuric acid. See p. 392 for the naphthalene oxidation products.

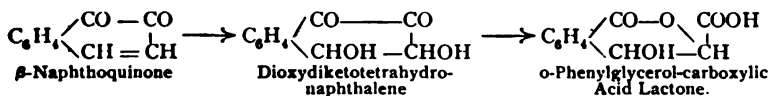
**Naphthalene Homologues.**—The methylated naphthalenes are present in coal tar. Alkyl naphthalenes also result from the brom-naphthalenes by the action of alkyl iodides and sodium, and from naphthalene by means of alkyl iodides or bromides and  $\text{Al}_3\text{Cl}$

	M. P.	B. P.
$\alpha$ -Methyl-naphthalene, . . . $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{-}\alpha\text{-CH}_3$	$-20^\circ$	$240\text{--}243^\circ$ .
$\beta$ -Methyl-naphthalene, . . . $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{-}\beta\text{-CH}_3$	$+32.5^\circ$	$241\text{--}242^\circ$ (B. 25, R. 8)
1,4-Dimethyl-naphthalene, . . . $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6\text{-}1,4\text{-(CH}_3)_2$	liquid	$262\text{--}264^\circ$ (B. 28, R. 6)
$\alpha$ -Ethyl-naphthalene, . . . $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{-}\alpha\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5$	"	$258^\circ$ .
$\beta$ -Ethyl-naphthalene, . . . $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{-}\beta\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5$	$-19^\circ$	$251^\circ$ .
Butyl-naphthalene, . . . $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9$	"	$280^\circ$ (B. 27, 1623).
$\alpha$ -Phenyl-naphthalene, . . . $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{-}\alpha\text{-C}_6\text{H}_5$	$0^\circ$	$325^\circ$ .
$\beta$ -Phenyl-naphthalene, . . . $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{-}\beta\text{-C}_6\text{H}_5$	$102^\circ$	$347^\circ$ .

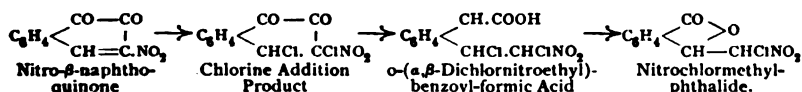
Potassium permanganate oxidizes ac-tetrahydronaphthylamine to *o*-hydrocinnam-carboxylic acid (p. 245); ar-tetrahydronaphthylamine, however, because of the oxidation of its amided benzene nucleus, is changed to *adipic acid* together with oxalic acid (B. 22, 767):



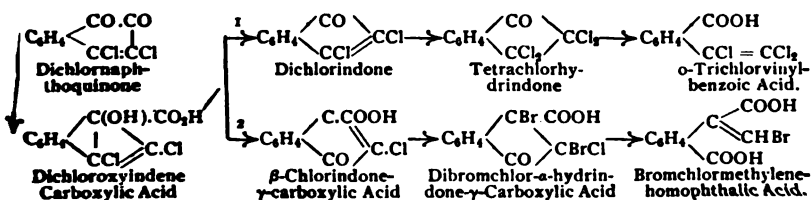
2. *Decomposition by Simultaneous Chlorination and Oxidation.*—The ring-decompositions, produced by the action of chlorine or hypochlorous acid upon  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone and its derivatives, are very numerous. They proceed in lines analogous to the benzene-ring decompositions. Two groups may be distinguished in these changes: either the naphthalene ring first resolves itself into an indene-ring, which subsequently by decomposition is converted into *o*-derivatives of benzene, as in the case of dichloronaphthoquinone (see below), or the break-down proceeds without the intermediate formation of indene, as in the case of  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone or nitro- $\beta$ -naphthoquinone (see below) (Zincke, B. 27, 2753, etc.). *Examples:* (a)  $\beta$ -Naphthoquinone, by the action of hypochlorous acid, becomes dioxidiketotetrahydronaphthalene, which by the decomposition of the ring changes to the lactone of *o*-phenylglycerol-carboxylic acid (p. 264) (B. 25, 3599):



(b) With chlorine nitro- $\beta$ -naphthoquinone first forms a chlorine addition product, which by ring-decomposition readily passes into *o*-( $\alpha,\beta$ -dichloronitroethyl)-benzoyl formic acid. Chromic acid oxidizes the latter, with loss of hydrochloric acid and carbon dioxide, to nitrochloromethylphthalide, which can be directly formed by treating nitroquinone with chlorine and water (B. 25, R. 732):



(c) Alkalies rearrange 3,4-dichlor- $\beta$ -naphthoquinone to dichloroxyindene carboxylic acid (p. 386). The latter can be decomposed (1) by changing it to dichlorindone with  $\text{CrO}_3$ , and tetrachlorhydrindone, the chlorine addition product, when acted upon with alcoholic soda, becomes *o*-trichlorovinylbenzoic acid; or (2) if the acid be heated to 100–110° with oil of vitriol it is converted into  $\beta$ -chlorindone- $\gamma$ -carboxylic acid. The bromine addition product of the latter acid is decomposed by alkalis with the formation of  $\beta$ -chlorbrom-methylene-homophthalic acid (B. 28, R. 279):



naphthalene nitrite,  $C_{10}H_7N = N \cdot O \cdot NO$ , by means of  $Ca_2O$  (B. 20, 1494). Dilute dinitronaphthalenes are obtained by the nitration of naphthalene at high temperatures. Consult B. 29, 1243, 1521, for the separation of the 1,5 and 1,8-compounds. The 1,5-( $\alpha$ -) compound melts at  $216^\circ$ ; the 1,8-( $\beta$ -) body melts at  $170^\circ$ , and when heated with potassium cyanide yields potassium *naphthocyaninate*,  $C_{10}H_7N_3O_2K$ . The two dihalonaphthalenes, when heated with sulphuric acid and reducing agents, form *naphthoquinone* or dioxynaphthoquinone (B. 27, R. 959). 1,3-( $\gamma$ -)Dinitronaphthalene, melting at  $144^\circ$ , is obtained from amidodinitronaphthalene. At very low temperatures ( $-90$  to  $-55^\circ$ ) nitric acid and naphthalene form various dinitronaphthalenes (B. 26, R. 354). When naphthalene or dinitronaphthalenes are boiled for some time with fuming nitric and sulphuric acids (B. 28, 367) tri- and tetranitronaphthalenes are produced. These explode partly with violence on heating.

3. Nitrosonaphthalenes: Mononitrosonaphthalene,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot NO$ , melting at  $89^\circ$  and decomposing at  $134^\circ$ , results from the action of nitrosyl bromide upon mercury dinaphthyl.

1,4-Dinitrosonaphthalene is a powder exploding at  $120^\circ$  and is produced when  $\alpha$ -naphthoquinone dioxime (p. 406) is oxidized with red prussiate of potash. 1,2-Dinitrosonaphthalene, melting at  $127^\circ$  (B. 19, 349; 21, 434), is similarly formed from  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone dioxime.

4. Amidonaphthalenes, Naphthylamines.—(a) *Primary amines*: The naphthylamines, in contrast to the anilines, are very easily obtained by heating the oxynaphthalenes or naphthols with ammonia-zinc chloride (p. 72).

$\alpha$ -Naphthylamine,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot \alpha-NH_2$ , melting at  $50^\circ$  and boiling at  $300^\circ$ , results from the reduction of  $\alpha$ -nitronaphthalene, or on heating  $\alpha$ -naphthol with  $ZnCl_2$  or  $CaCl_2$ -ammonia to  $250^\circ$ , and is synthetically produced when aniline and zinc chloride are heated with pyromucic acid. It crystallizes in flat needles, which are especially beautiful when they separate from aniline. It acquires a red color on exposure to the air, sublimes readily and possesses a pungent odor. In general, it deports itself perfectly similar to the phenylamines (compare p. 71).

Sodium in amyl alcohol reduces it to  $\alpha$ -tetrahydronaphthylamine (p. 411). It is oxidized to  $\alpha$ -naphthoquinone when boiled with chromic acid. Oxidizing agents (chromic acid, ferric chloride, silver nitrate) produce an azure-blue precipitate in the solutions of its salts: *oxynaphthylamine*,  $C_{10}H_7NO$  (A. 129, 255).

$\beta$ -Naphthylamine, melting at  $112^\circ$  and boiling at  $294^\circ$ , results from  $\beta$ -naphthol and  $ZnCl_2$ -ammonia. It is odorless and is not colored by ferric chloride and the like. Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to phthalic acid.  $\beta$ -Tetrahydronaphthylamine is formed by its reduction.

*Secondary and tertiary naphthylamines*: Naphthylalkylamines are formed, analogous to the alkyl anilines, from the naphthylamines with alkylogens, or upon heating the naphthylamine hydrochlorides with alcohols:  $\alpha$ -Naphthylmethylamine,  $C_{10}H_7NH \cdot CH_3$ , boils at  $293^\circ$ ;  $\alpha$ -Naphthylethylamine boils at  $303^\circ$ ;  $\beta$ -Naphthyl dimethylamine,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot \beta-N(CH_3)_2$ , melts at  $46^\circ$  and boils at  $305^\circ$  (B. 13, 2053). The Phenyl naphthylamines,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_5$ , are formed when the hydrochlorides of  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -naphthylamines are heated with aniline and zinc chloride. On heating the naphthylamines with zinc chloride or with  $HCl$  to  $180$ – $190^\circ$ , or with  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -naphthol various *dinaphthylamines* result.  $\beta, \beta$ -Dinaphthylamine,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot \beta-NH \cdot \beta-C_{10}H_7$ , melting at  $171^\circ$  and boiling at  $471^\circ$ , occurs as a by-product in the technical manufacture of  $\beta$ -naphthylamine. Heated to  $150^\circ$  with concentrated hydrochloric acid it breaks down into  $\beta$ -naphthylamine and  $\beta$ -naphthol. Heated with sulphur it forms thiodinaphthylamine,  $NH(C_{10}H_7)_2S$ , corresponding to thiodiphenylamine. When sulphuric acid

(80 per cent.) acts upon  $\beta$ -naphthylamine in the presence of oxidizing agents two naphthalene nuclei unite and *naphtidine* ( $C_{10}H_6 \cdot NH_2$ )<sub>2</sub>, results (B. 25, R. 949) (p. 410).

The *acid derivatives of the naphthylamines* show great similarity to those of the anilines (see pp. 80-91). The naphthyl benzene sulphamides,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot NH \cdot SO_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , manifest a rather remarkable deportment, similar to that of the naphthols, in that they dissolve in the alkalies, and unite similarly with diazo-salts, etc. (B. 27, 2370). Consult B. 25, R. 9, upon naphthyl carbamine-chlorethyl esters,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot NH \cdot COOC_2H_5$ ,  $H_2Cl$ , and their transposition products. See B. 29, R. 184, for the *a*-naphthylamine derivatives of succinic, tartaric and citric acids.

*Substituted Naphthylamines*.—Haloid naphthylamines result by direct substitution, or by the action of ammonia upon substituted naphthols. 1,2- and 1,4-Nitronaphthylamines are formed by the nitration of acet-*a*-naphthylamine and its subsequent saponification. The 1,4-body melts at 191°. It is oxidized to *a*-naphthoquinone. It forms *a*-nitronaphthalene by the elimination of the  $NH_2$ -group. Boiling potassium hydroxide converts *a*-nitronaphthalene into 1,4-nitronaphthol (B. 19, 796; 25, R. 432). The 1,2-compound melts at 144°, and yields  $\beta$ -nitronaphthalene (p. 395) and 2,1-nitronaphthol (p. 401).

1-Nitro-2-naphthylamine, melting at 127°, is formed by the nitration of acet- $\beta$ -naphthylamine and subsequent saponification of the acet-derivative. Nitrous acid and alcohol convert it into *a*-nitronaphthalene. 2,5- and 2,8-Nitronaphthylamines (B. 25, 2076) are produced when  $\beta$ -naphthylamine nitrate is introduced into concentrated sulphuric acid.

*Naphthylene Diamines*.—*Diamidonaphthalenes*, *naphthylene diamines*, are obtained by the reduction of dinitro- and nitroamido-naphthalenes, also by the decomposition of amidoazo-naphthalenes, and when dioxynaphthalenes and amido-oxynaphthalenes are heated with ammonia (B. 21, R. 839; 22, R. 42; 26, 188).

The *o*-naphthylene diamines adapt themselves like the *o*-phenylenediamines to condensation reactions, in that they form *naphtho-derivatives of heterocyclic rings* (see p. 95). To a certain degree the *o*-naphthylene diamines in this respect resemble the 1,8- or *peri*-compounds (p. 390).

1,2-Naphthylene Diamine, melting at 98°, is obtained by reduction from  $\beta$ -nitro-*a*-naphthylamine and  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone dioxime (p. 406). 2,3-Naphthylene Diamine, melting at 191°, is derived from 2,3-dioxynaphthalene by the action of ammonia at 240°. These two bodies yield naphthoazimides with nitrous acid, *anhydro*-bases with carboxylic acids, *quinoxalines* with *o*-diketones, etc. (B. 25, 2714; 26, 188; 27, 761). Perfectly similar hetero-ring-formations are exhibited by 1,8-(*Peri*-) naphthylene diamine, melting at 67° and obtained from 1,8-dinitro- or 1,8-dioxynaphthalene; however, it does not, in contrast to the *o*-diamines, condense with *o*-diketones, like phenanthraquinones, forming azines (B. 22, 861).

1,3-Naphthylene Diamine melts at 96° (B. 28, 1953). 1,3-(*m*-) *Naphthylene diamine derivatives* are derived from naphthylamine sulphonic acids (p. 398), which contain the  $SO_3H$ -group in the meta-position with reference to  $NH_2$ , by the action of amines.

(1,4)-Naphthylene Diamine, melting at 120°, results from the reduction of *a*-nitronaphthylamine, and the decomposition of *a*-amidoazo-naphthalene, by tin and hydrochloric acid. Ferric chloride converts it into *a*-naphthoquinone, and bleaching lime changes it to naphthoquinone dichlorimide.

See B. 25, 2080, 2082, for 2,5- and 2,8-naphthylene diamines.

5. *Diazo- and Azo-compounds of naphthalene*: Nitrous acid (or sodium nitrite) acting upon naphthylamine salts produces naphthalene *diazo-derivatives* perfectly analogous to the diazo-benzene compounds (p. 99); they yield azo-dyes with the anilines and phenols.  $\beta$ -Diazonaphthalic Acid,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot \beta \cdot NHO_2$  (p. 99), by rearrangement, yields 2-amido-1-nitronaphthalene (B. 30, 1262).

The azonaphthalenes could not be prepared by reducing nitronaphthalenes.

*a*-Azonaphthalene,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot N=N$ , results upon boiling the diazo-compound of amidoazo-naphthalene with alcohol. It crystallizes in red needles, or small steel-blue prisms, melting at 190°, and subliming without difficulty. It dissolves with a blue color in concentrated sulphuric acid.

Benzene-azo-naphthalene,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot N_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at 65°, has been similarly derived.

**o-Toluene-azo-naphthalene**,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot N_2 \cdot C_7H_7$ , melts at  $52^\circ$  (B. 26, 143).

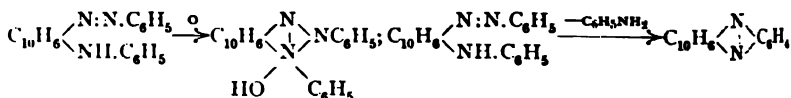
**Naphthylazoacetic Ester**,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot N_2 \cdot CH(COCH_3)CO_2R$ , melting at  $94^\circ$ , is formed from diazonaphthalene chloride and sodium acetoacetic ester. Caustic potash changes it to naphthylacetone, and by the acid decomposition it is resolved into *naphthylazoacetic acid* (B. 24, R. 571).

**Amido azonaphthalenes**: ***a*-Amido-azonaphthalene**,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot a-N_2 \cdot a-C_6H_5 \cdot a_1-NH_2$ , melting at  $175^\circ$ , is formed by adding sodium nitrite (1 molecule) to the aqueous solution of naphthylamine hydrochloride (2 molecules); the **diazo-amidonaphthalene**,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot N_2 \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_5$  (p. 107), first formed undergoes a molecular rearrangement. Tin and hydrochloric acid resolve *a*-amidoazonaphthalene into *a*-naphthylamine and (1,4)-naphthylene diamine. *Naphthalene Red* belongs to the safranin dyes and is produced when *a*-amidoazonaphthalene is heated with Na-naphthylamine hydrochloride.

***$\beta$* -Amido-azo-naphthalene**, from  *$\beta$* -naphthylamine, melts at  $156^\circ$  (B. 19, 1282).

***a*-Naphthylamine-azo-benzene Sulphonic Acid**,  $C_6H_4(SO_3H) \cdot N_2 \cdot C_{10}H_7 \cdot NH_2$ , from sulphanilic acid and naphthylamine hydrochloride, is colored orange by caustic potash and *red* by acids (test for nitrous acid).

The *o*-azo-compounds of  *$\beta$* -naphthylaliphylamines, like **Benzene-azo- *$\beta$* -naphthylphenylamine**,  $C_{10}H_6 \cdot \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1] N : N \cdot C_6H_5 \\ [2] N : N \cdot C_6H_5 \end{array} \right.$ , when oxidized form *ammonium bases* of the *pseudoamide group*, and when heated they split off aniline, forming *naphthophenazines* (B. 28, 328):



Compare further B. 18, 3132; 20, 1167; 24, R. 765, for the constitution of the products resulting from the action of diazo-salts upon  *$\beta$* -naphthylamines, which are sometimes viewed as  *$\beta$* -quinone derivatives.

6. **Hydrazone Derivatives of Naphthalene**: **Hydrazonaphthalene**,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot NH \cdot NH \cdot C_{10}H_7$ , melting at  $275^\circ$ , corresponds to hydrazo-benzene. It is formed on boiling azonaphthalene with alcoholic sodium hydroxide and zinc-dust. When digested with hydrochloric acid it changes to the isomeric **Naphtidine** or **diamido-dinaphthyl** (compare benzidine, p. 118) (B. 18, 3255).

**Naphthyl Hydrazines**,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot NH \cdot NH_2$ , are derived from the diazo-chlorides of the two naphthylamines by the action of stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid (B. 19, R. 303). The  *$\alpha$* -compound melts at  $117^\circ$ , the  *$\beta$* -modification at  $125^\circ$ . They unite with the aldehydes and ketones forming hydrazones; these form naphthindol compounds by condensation, and manifest throughout the tendency to form derivatives and hetero-ring formations similar to those shown by the phenylhydrazines (pp. 123-129) (B. 19, R. 831; 22, R. 672).

7. **Sulphonic Acids**.—On digesting naphthalene with sulphuric acid we have formed  *$\alpha$* - and  *$\beta$*  **Naphthalene-sulphonic Acids**. At lower temperatures ( $80^\circ$ ) the  *$\alpha$* -acid, melting at  $90^\circ$ , predominates, while at about  $160^\circ$  and with an excess of sulphuric acid the  *$\beta$* -acid, melting at  $161^\circ$ , is the chief product. When heated with sulphuric acid the  *$\alpha$* -acid passes into the  *$\beta$* -variety. They may be separated by means of the calcium or lead salts. The free acids are crystalline and deliquesce readily. The  *$\alpha$* -acid decomposes upon heating with dilute hydrochloric acid to  $200^\circ$  into naphthalene and sulphuric acid, whereas the  *$\beta$* -acid remains unaltered.

The  *$\alpha$* -sulpho-chloride melts at  $66^\circ$  and boils at  $195^\circ$  (13 mm.). The  *$\beta$* -sulpho-chloride melts at  $76^\circ$  and boils at  $201^\circ$  (13 mm.) (J. pr. Ch. [2] 47, 49). Protracted heating of naphthalene with concentrated sulphuric acid produces two isomeric disulpho-acids: 2,6- and 2,7-.

**Naphthalene Disulphonic Acids**.—They are separated by crystallizing their chlorides from benzene (B. 9, 592). Additional disulphonic acids of naphthalene have been prepared by sulphonating the naphthalene monosulphonic acids, by oxidizing thionaphthol-sulphonic acids, from the naphthylamine disulphonic acids, etc. A series of **naphthalene trisulphonic acids** has been made by similar indirect methods (B. 24, R. 654, 707,

15; 27, R. 81; Proc. 126, 168). Chlor-naphthalene Sulphonic Acids have been obtained in part by sulphonating the chlornaphthalenes, and in part by replacing the  $\text{NH}_2$ -group of the naphthylamine sulphonic acids by halogens (B. 24, R. 658, 707; 25, 2479; Ch. Z. 1895, 1114). Nitronaphthalene Sulphonic Acids are obtained by sulphonating the nitronaphthalenes or nitrating the chlorides of the sulphonic acids (B. 26, R. 136).

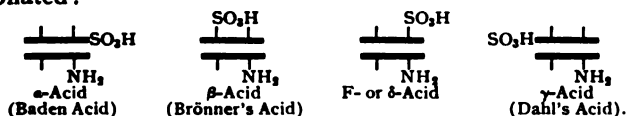
Some naphthylamine sulphonic acids possess technical value, inasmuch as they form desirable and valuable dyes by combining with the tetrazo-compounds of the benzidine series:

(a)  $\alpha$ -Naphthylamine, treated at  $130^\circ$  with an excess of concentrated sulphuric acid, forms 1,4-naphthylamine sulphonic acid, naphthalidinic acid, which can also be prepared from nitronaphthalene with ammonium sulphite by simultaneous reduction and sulphonation (Ch. Z. 1895, 1114). The acid crystallizes with  $\frac{1}{2}\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and dissolves sparingly in water. Its sodium salt has the formula  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7(\text{NH}_2)\text{SO}_3\text{Na} + 4\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . When the acid combines with the tetrazo-derivative of benzidine Congo red is produced. Tin and hydrochloric acid decompose the latter with the formation of 1,2-naphthylenediamine-4-sulphonic acid. See B. 29, 1978, for additional naphthylenediamine-sulphonic acids.

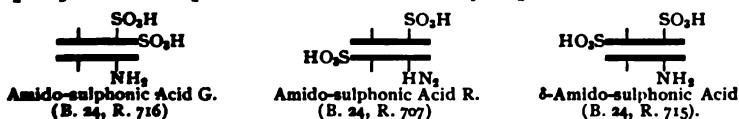
If  $\alpha$ -naphthylamine be digested with sulphuric acid at  $130^\circ$  for some time there results, instead of the 1,4-acid, 1,5-naphthylamine sulphonic acid, naphthalidinic acid, and this finally gives place to the 1,6-acid (B. 26, R. 534). 1,8- or peri-Naphthylamine Sulphonic Acid is obtained from peri-nitrosulphonic acid. The derivatives of the 1,8-acid show a tendency to part with water with the production of sultams—e. g.:

$(\text{SO}_3\text{H})_2\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{SO}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix}$ , 1,8-Naphsultam, 2,4-disulphonic Acid,  $(\text{SO}_3\text{H})_2\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{SO}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ , 1,8-Naphsultamtrisulphonic Acid (B. 27, 2137). Peri-Amidonaphthol derivatives are produced when these sultams are fused with caustic potash (B. 28, R. 636).

(b) Four different, isomeric  $\beta$ -naphthylamine sulphonic acids (A. 275, 262) are produced, according to the temperature, when  $\beta$ -naphthylamine is sulphonated:



These acids can also be prepared by the action of ammonia upon the corresponding naphtholsulphonic acids (p. 402). The  $\beta$ - and the F- or  $\delta$ -acids are particularly valuable, because by their combination with o-tetrazoditolyl beautiful red dyes having a blue tinge result. Certain  $\beta$ -naphthylaminedisulphonic acids are technically important:



See B. 27, 1193, for additional  $\beta$ -naphthylamidopolysulphonic acids. These  $\beta$ -naphthylamine sulphonic acids, which contain a sulpho-group in the m-position with reference to the  $\text{NH}_2$ -group, readily exchange the sulpho-group for the amine residue when they are heated with amines (B. 28, R. 311).

**1,4-Diazonaphthalene Sulphonic Acid**,  $C_{10}H_6 \cdot \begin{smallmatrix} SO_2 \\ N_2 \end{smallmatrix} > O$ , *diazonaphthionic acid*, is produced by the action of nitrous acid upon naphthionic acid. It forms *roselin* by combining with  $\alpha$ -naphthol, and *azorubin S* by its union with  $\alpha$ -naphthol- $\alpha$ -sulphonic acid.

By the union of various azonaphthalene diazo-sulphonic acids—*e. g.*,  $C_{10}H_7N_2 \cdot C_{10}H_5 \cdot \begin{smallmatrix} N_2 \\ SO_2 \end{smallmatrix} > O$ —with naphthol-monosulphonic acid, azo-black dyes—*e. g.*, *naphthol black*, *wool-black*, etc.—result.

8. *Naphthalene Sulphinic Acids* are derived by the reduction of the chlorides of sulpho-acids.  $\alpha$  **Naphthalene Sulphinic Acid**,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot SO_2H$ , melts at  $84^\circ$ , while the  $\beta$  acid melts at  $105^\circ$  (B. 26, R. 271). These acids behave just like the benzene sulphinic acids (p. 139) (B. 25, 230). Mixed *naphthyl sulphones* are prepared from their salts by the action of alkyl bromides (B. 29, R. 979).

9. **Naphthols**: The oxy-derivatives of naphthalene or naphthols in general show a deportment similar to that of the phenols. However, their hydroxyl-group is more reactive. They readily yield naphthylamines with ammonia. They form esters and ethers more easily than the phenols (B. 15, 1427). The naphthols occur in coal-tar (A. 227, 143).

$\alpha$ -**Naphthol**,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot \alpha-OH$ , melts at  $95^\circ$ , boils at  $278-280^\circ$ , and results from  $\alpha$ -naphthylamine by means of the diazo-compound, and upon fusing  $\alpha$ -naphthalene-sulphonic acid with alkalis. Its formation from phenyl-isocrotonic acid (p. 391) is very noteworthy. It is soluble with difficulty in hot water, readily in alcohol and ether, crystallizes in shining needles, has the odor of phenol, and is readily volatilized. Ferric chloride precipitates violet flakes of dinaphthol,  $C_{20}H_{12}(OH)_2$ , from its aqueous solution. Nitrous acid converts it into 2,1- and 4,1-nitrosonaphthol (p. 466); chlorine in acetic acid changes it to various chlorinated naphthols and ketohydronaphthalenes; potassium chlorate and hydrochloric acid oxidize it to dichloronaphthoquinone (A. 152, 301); metallic sodium and alcohol reduce it to ar-tetrahydronaphthol (p. 412), while potassium permanganate in alkaline solution breaks it down into carbophenylglyoxylic acid (p. 392). The *acetate*,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot \alpha-O \cdot C_2H_3O$ , melts at  $46^\circ$ . See B. 28, 3049, for the carbonate and phosphate.

$\beta$ -**Naphthol**,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot \beta-OH$ , melting at  $122^\circ$  and boiling at  $286^\circ$ , is derived from  $\beta$ -naphthalene-sulphonic acid, or  $\beta$ -naphthylamine. It is readily soluble in hot water and crystallizes in leaflets. Ferric chloride imparts a greenish color to the solution and separates a dinaphthol. Nitrous acid and  $\beta$ -naphthol yield 1,2-nitrosonaphthol. The *acetate*,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot \beta-OC_2H_3O$ , melts at  $70^\circ$ .

The *bismuth salt* of  $\beta$ -naphthol has been recommended, under the name of *orphenes*, as an intestinal antiseptic.

*Naphthol alkyl ethers* are formed when the naphthols are heated with alcohols and hydrochloric acid to  $150^\circ$  (B. 15, 1427).

$\alpha$ -**Naphthol Ethyl Ether** boils at  $277^\circ$ .  $\beta$ -**Naphthol Methyl Ether** and *ethyl ether* have been called *Jara-Jara* and *Neroline* and been used in perfumery (B. 26, 2706).  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -**Dinaphthyl Ethers** melt at  $110^\circ$  and  $106^\circ$  (B. 13, 1840; 14, 1951).

*Naphthol homologues*, such as 2,1 and 3,1-methyl naphthol,  $C_{10}H_8(CH_3)OH$ , melting at  $80^\circ$  and  $92^\circ$ , have been prepared from phenyl- $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -methylisocrotonic acids (A. 255, 272). 1,4-Dimethyl- $\beta$ -naphthol,  $C_{10}H_8(CH_3)_2OH$ , melting at  $136^\circ$ , is obtained from *santonin* (p. 432) (B. 28, R. 116, 619).

**Substituted Naphthols:** Substituted  $\alpha$ -naphthols can be synthesized from the substituted phenylisocrotonic acids (compare B. 26, R. 537). Otherwise they are made by methods similar to those adopted with the substituted phenols (p. 148).

**Nitronaphthols:** 4,1-Nitronaphthol,  $C_{10}H_6[4](NO_2)[1]OH$ , melting at  $164^\circ$  and 2,1-nitronaphthol,  $C_{10}H_6[2]NO_2[1]OH$ , melting at  $195^\circ$ , result from the oxidation of 4,1- and 2,1-nitroso-naphthol with potassium ferricyanide or nitric acid (B. 25, 973), or by boiling the corresponding nitronaphthylamines with caustic potash.

2,4-Dinitro- $\alpha$ -naphthol, melting at  $138^\circ$ , is produced by the action of nitric acid upon these nitro-naphthols or upon naphthalene- $\alpha$ -sulphonic acid,  $\alpha$ -naphthylamine, and  $\alpha$ -naphthol-disulphonic acid (A. 152, 299). It is almost insoluble in water, sparingly soluble in alcohol and in ether, decomposes alkaline carbonates, and forms yellow salts with one equivalent of base. The salts dye silk a beautiful golden-yellow. The sodium salt,  $C_{10}H_6(NO_2)_2 \cdot ONa + H_2O$ , finds use in dyeing, under the name of *naphthalene yellow* (Martius yellow), and is frequently used to color foods. The potassium salt of dinitro-naphthol-sulphonic acid,  $C_{10}H_6(NO_2)_2 \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} [1]OK \\ [8]SO_3K \end{smallmatrix} \right.$  (B. 24, R. 709), obtained by the nitration of naphthol-trisulphonic acid, is *naphthol yellow*.

Trinitro- $\alpha$ -naphthol melts at  $177^\circ$ .

$\alpha$ -Nitro- $\beta$ -naphthol, melting at  $103^\circ$ , is produced in the oxidation of  $\alpha$ -nitroso- $\beta$ -naphthol (p. 406), or from nitro- $\beta$ -naphthylamine by the action of caustic potash. See B. 25, 2079, R. 670, for other nitro- $\beta$ -naphthols and -naphthol ethers.

**Amido-naphthols:** These are derived by the reduction of nitronaphthols, by the action of ammonia upon dioxy-naphthalenes, the decomposition of naphtholazo-compounds, etc., etc. In the isonuclear, particularly the 1,3-amidonaphthols, the  $NH_2$ -group is more readily displaced than in the hetero-nuclear isomerides.

(1,4)-Amido- $\alpha$ -naphthol,  $C_{10}H_6(NH_2) \cdot OH$ , results from the reduction of (1,4)-nitronaphthol, and by the decomposition of  $\alpha$ -naphthol orange,  $C_{10}H_6(OH) \cdot N_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot SO_3H$ . It is very unstable. It yields  $\alpha$ -naphthoquinone by oxidation.

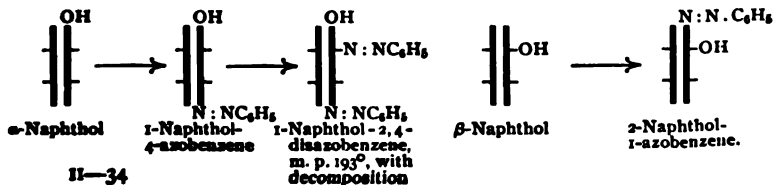
Its ethyl ether,  $C_{10}H_6(OC_2H_5)NH_2$ , melts at  $96^\circ$ . 4-Acetamido-1-naphthol, *naphthol-acetol*, melting at  $187^\circ$ , is especially well adapted for the production of pure naphtholazo-dyes (p. 402). 4-Acetamino-1-naphthol Ethyl Ether, *naphthacetin*, melts at  $189^\circ$  (B. 25, 3059).

2-Amido- $\alpha$ -naphthol, from 2,1-nitronaphthol, oxidizes in the air to imido-oxynaphthylamine or  $\beta$ -naphthoquinonimide,  $C_{10}H_6 \begin{smallmatrix} O \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ N \quad H \end{smallmatrix} \cdot C_{10}H_6 \begin{smallmatrix} NH \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \quad O \end{smallmatrix}$ , forming violet leaflets.

2,1-Amidonaphthol yields *anhydro bases* or *naphthoxazoles* (see p. 153 and B. 25, 3430) with carboxylic acids, etc.

1-Amido- $\beta$ -naphthol, from the reduction of 1-nitro- or nitroso- $\beta$ -naphthol, or by the decomposition of  $\beta$ -naphthol orange, can be oxidized to  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone. 1,3-Amido-naphthol decomposes at  $185^\circ$  (B. 28, 1952). 1,3-Amido-naphthol decomposes at  $185^\circ$  (B. 28, 1952). 2,3-Amido-naphthol, melting at  $234^\circ$ , is produced by the action of concentrated ammonia at  $135$ – $140^\circ$  (B. 27, 763) upon 2,3-dioxy-naphthalene.

**Azonaphthols:** The naphthols can be readily combined with all diazo-compounds to azo-derivatives. The  $\alpha$ -naphthols add the diazo-group as easily to the para-(4-) as to the ortho (2-) position. However, the p-position is preferred and it is only when this is occupied that the o-position is assumed (B. 29, 2945; 30, 50). The final products are o,p-disazo-compounds. With the  $\beta$ -naphthols the diazo-group attaches itself only to the  $\alpha$ -position referred to the OH-group:



These same compounds are also obtained by the action of phenylhydrazine upon the *naphthoquinones* (p. 404). *α*-Naphthoquinone-phenylhydrazone is identical with 1-naphthol 4-azobenzene. *β*-Naphthoquinone and phenylhydrazine form a compound which probably is 1-naphthol-2-azobenzene, melting at 128°, which cannot be directly made from *α*-naphthol, because it is converted by diazobenzene chloride into 1-naphthol-2,4-disazobenzene and in its other deportments justifies the assumption of the presence of a hydroxyl group (B. 24, 1592; 28, 2414).

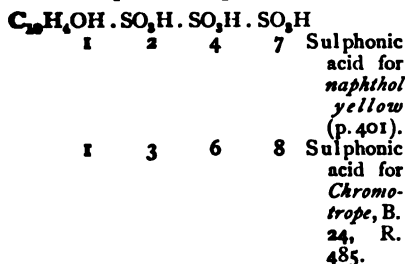
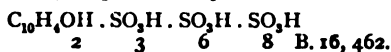
The naphthol azo-dyes are of great importance in the color industry. They are prepared almost exclusively in the form of their sulpho-acids, which are formed (1) by the union of the naphthols with diazo-sulphonic acids—*e. g.*, *α*-naphthol orange,  $\text{OH}[1]\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6[4]\cdot\text{N}_2\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{SO}_3\text{H}$ , *β*-naphthol orange,  $\text{OH}[2]\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6[1]\text{N}_2\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{SO}_3\text{H}$ , *rocelin*,  $\text{OH}[2]\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6[1]\text{N}_2\cdot\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6\cdot\text{SO}_3\text{H}$ , *Bieberich Scarlet*,  $\text{OH}[2]\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6[1]\text{N}_2\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{SO}_3\text{H})\text{N}_2\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{SO}_3\text{H}$ , form *α*- and *β*-naphthols with diazobenzene sulphonic acid, diazonaphthalene sulphonic acid, and sulphobenzeneazobenzene sulphonic acid; (2) by the combination of diazo-salts with naphtholsulphonic acids. Compare B. 29, 2945, for the dyestuffs obtained from naphthacetyl and diazo-compounds.

Amidonaphthols, together with amines, are obtained by the reduction of azonaphthols. The benzene azo-*p*-naphthol ethers, when reduced with  $\text{SnCl}_2$ , yield 2-*anilido*-1,4-*amido*-naphthol ethers,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6(\text{OR})(\text{NH}_2)(\text{NH}\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)$ ; the aniline residue enters consequently into the nucleus (B. 25, 1013); compare semidine rearrangement (p. 118).

(d) *Naphthol sulphonic acids* have been made in great numbers and introduced into trade. In method of preparation and chemical behavior they exhibit nothing new, when compared with the phenol sulphonic acids (p. 156). In the following paragraph, therefore, a table alone of the representatives of these groups which possess a technical value will be introduced: \*

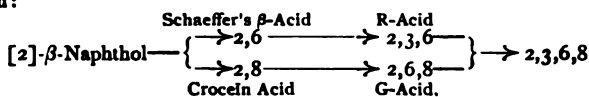
<i>α-Naphthol-mono-sulphonic Acids:</i>				<i>β-Naphthol-mono-sulphonic Acids:</i>			
$\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6\text{OH}\cdot\text{SO}_3\text{H}$				$\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6\cdot\text{OH}\cdot\text{SO}_3\text{H}$			
I	2		Schaeffer's <i>α</i> -acid, A. 152, 293.	2	6		Schaeffer's <i>β</i> -acid, A. 152, 296.
I	3		B. 26, R. 31.	2	8		<i>Crocein Acid</i> , B. 22, 453; 24, R. 654.
I	4		Neville and Winther's acid, B. 24, 3157; 27, 3458; A. 273, 102.	2	5		<i>γ</i> -Mono-sulphonic Acid, B. 22, R. 336.
I	5		L-acid, A. 247, 343.	2	7		F- or <i>δ</i> -acid (compare p. 319), B. 20, 1426; 22, 724.
I	7		B. 22, 993.				
I	8		Schöllkopf's acid, A. 247, 306; B. 23, 3088.				
<i>α-Naphthol-disulphonic Acids:</i>				<i>β-Naphthol-disulphonic Acids:</i>			
$\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_5\text{OH}\cdot\text{SO}_3\text{H}\cdot\text{SO}_3\text{H}$				$\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_5\text{OH}\cdot\text{SO}_3\text{H}\cdot\text{SO}_3\text{H}$			
I	2	4	Disulphonic Acid for Martius' yellow, p. 401.	2	3	6	R-acid, B. 24, 396.
I	2	7	B. 25, 1400.	2	3	7	<i>δ</i> -Disulphonic Acid, B. 20, 2906.
I	3	8	<i>ε</i> -Disulphonic Acid, B. 22, 3227.	2	4	8	Disulphonic Acid, C, B. 26, R. 259.
I	4	6	D. R. P. 41957.	2	6	8	G-acid, B. 24, R. 707.
I	4	7	B. 24, R. 709; 29, 38.				
I	4	3	Disulphonic Acid, S, B. 23, 3090.				

\* Compare Nietzki, "Organische Farbstoffe."

*α-Naphthol-trisulphonic Acids :**β-Naphthol-trisulphonic Acids :*

(Consult B. 27, 1207, 1209, for other β-naphthol-trisulphonic acids.)

It is the acid of Neville and Winther—of all these acids—which is principally used in the making of azo-dyes. It corresponds to naphthionic acid. It is obtained in its present state by the action of concentrated sulphuric acid upon α-naphthyl carbonate. The R-acid and G-acid also meet with application. They unite with benzene and naphthalene diazo-salts to form a series of *Ponceau*- and *Bordeaux*-dyes of the most varying hues. The most important sulphonic acids of β-naphthol are produced together or one after the other in the sulphonation of β-naphthol in the manner represented in the following diagram :



The naphthol sulphonic acids containing an OH- and SO<sub>3</sub>H-group in the 1,8- or peri-position give rise to anhydrides having a lactone nature ; these are the *sultones* (compare sultams, p. 399).

Naphsultone, C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>6</sub> {  $\begin{array}{l} [1]\text{O} \\ [8]\text{SO}_3 \end{array}$  }, melting at 154° and boiling above 360°, is formed by decomposing the diazo-derivative of peri-naphthylamine sulphonic acid. The sultone dissolves in hot alkalis forming salts of perinaphtholsulphonic acid. Sultones have also been obtained from 1,3,8- and 1,4,8-naphtholdi- and 1,3,6,8-trisulphonic acids.

*Amidonaphtholsulphonic Acids* are produced in the decomposition, by reduction, of the azo-derivatives of naphthol-sulphonic acids, and from nitrosonaphthols by reduction and sulphonation, both of which processes can be worked in common if the nitrosonaphthols be treated with sulphurous acid (B. 27, 23, 3050). In this way 1,2-nitrosonaphthol yields 1,2,4-amidonaphtholsulphonic acid, C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>6</sub>[1]NH<sub>2</sub>[2]OH[4]SO<sub>3</sub>H. The isomeric 2,1,4-acid, C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>6</sub>[1]OH[2]NH<sub>2</sub>[4]SO<sub>3</sub>H, produces, even when oxidized in the air,

*imido-oxynaphthalene-sulphonic acid*, SO<sub>3</sub>H.C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>5</sub>  $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{NH} \end{array}$ . This dye is black-violet in color and is fast to light and alkalis (B. 25, 1400 ; 26, 1279). The 2,1,6-acid, C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>5</sub>[1]OH[2]NH<sub>2</sub>[6]SO<sub>3</sub>H, is used as a photographic developer under the name of *Eikonogen*. Important dyes, from the technical point of view, are 2-amido-8-naphthol-6-sulphonic acids G (B. 25, R. 830 ; 29, 2267) and 1-amido-8-naphthol-3,6-disulphonic acid H (B. 26, R. 460, 917).

*Dioxynaphthalenes*.—Nine of the ten possible isomerides are known. The hydro-naphthoquinones resulting from the reduction of the naphthoquinones are worthy of mention :

*β-Hydronaphthoquinone*, C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>6</sub>[1,2](OH)<sub>2</sub>, melting at 60°, separates when a solution of β-naphthoquinone is boiled with sulphurous acid. It is strongly corrosive. It dissolves in the alkalis with a yellow color, which becomes an intense green upon exposure.

*α-Hydronaphthoquinone*, C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>6</sub>[1,4](OH)<sub>2</sub>, melting at 173°, is obtained from α-naphthoquinone on boiling with hydriodic acid and phosphorus, or with zinc and hydrochloric acid. Chromic acid readily oxidizes it to α-naphthoquinone.

2,3-Dioxynaphthalene melts at  $216^{\circ}$  (B. 27, 762). Also compare A. 27, 356; B. 23, 519, etc.

1,3-Dioxynaphthalene, *naphthoresorcinol*, melting at  $124^{\circ}$ , is obtained from 1,3,4-amidonaphtholsulphonic acid. It yields o-toluic acid when fused with caustic potash (see p. 195 and B. 29, 1611).

2-Phenyl-1,3-dioxynaphthalene, melting at  $166^{\circ}$ , is made by the action of concentrated sulphuric acid upon  $\alpha,\gamma$ -diphenylacetoacetic ester (p. 391). It absorbs oxygen and changes readily to phenylhydroxy- $\alpha$ -naphthoquinone. 1,7-Dioxynaphthalene melts at  $175^{\circ}$ ; see B. 29, 40; 2,7-Dioxynaphthalene, see B. 30, 1119.

*Trioxynaphthalenes*.—Two trioxynaphthalenes,  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Hydrojuglones, occur in green walnut shells of *Juglans regia* (B. 18, 463, 2567).  $\alpha$ -Hydrojuglone,  $C_{10}H_7[1,4,5](OH)_3$ , melting at  $160^{\circ}$ , is produced by the reduction of juglone. In the air it rapidly oxidizes to juglone. If it be distilled it changes to  $\beta$ -Hydrojuglone, melting at  $97^{\circ}$ , which does not yield juglone upon oxidation. It reverts again to  $\alpha$ -hydrojuglone when boiled with dilute alcoholic hydrochloric acid.

1,2,5,6-Tetraoxynaphthalene, melting at  $154^{\circ}$ , has been prepared by the reduction of naphthazarine (B. 28, R. 543).

*Thionaphthols* have been prepared by the reduction of the chlorides of naphthalene sulphonic acids or from diazonaphthalenes (compare pp. 104, 156). Thionaphthol, *naphthyl mercaptan*,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot SH$ ; the  $\alpha$ -form is liquid and boils at  $286^{\circ}$ . The  $\beta$ -variety melts at  $81^{\circ}$  and boils at  $286^{\circ}$  (B. 22, 821; 23, R. 327). Phenyl- $\beta$ -naphthyl Sulphide, melting at  $51^{\circ}$  (B. 24, 2266), is formed when the *lead salt*,  $(C_{10}H_7 \cdot \beta-S)_2Pb$ , is heated, together with brombenzene. Different dinaphthyl sulphides have been prepared by heating the naphthyl-lead-mercaptides. Other methods have been employed in making them (B. 26, 2816). Sulphur chloride and  $\beta$ -naphthol yield dioxydinaphthyl sulphide,  $S(C_{10}H_6 \cdot OH)_2$ , melting at  $211^{\circ}$ . This can be readily oxidized to a *dihydro*-compound:  $S \begin{smallmatrix} C_{10}H_6O \\ | \\ C_{10}H_6O \end{smallmatrix}$  (B. 27, 2993; 28, 114) (compare quinones with two nuclei, p. 339). Naphthalene disulphydrates,  $C_{10}H_6(SH)_2$ ; see B. 25, 2735.

(10) **Quinones**: 1,4- or  $\alpha$ -Naphthoquinone corresponds to benzo-para-quinone, while 1,2- or  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone corresponds to the ortho-quinone of the benzene series, which is only known in certain derivatives. The same views as those indicated on p. 167 for benzoquinone argue for the constitution of the 1,4- or  $\alpha$ -quinones.

**$\alpha$ -Naphthoquinone**,  $O = [I]C_{10}H_6[4] = O$  or  $O \begin{smallmatrix} [I]C_{10}H_6[4]O \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $125^{\circ}$ , crystallizes from alcohol in yellow plates, subliming under  $100^{\circ}$ . It possesses the usual quinone odor and is very volatile in a current of steam. It is formed (1) by oxidizing naphthalene in glacial acetic acid solution with chromic acid; (2) in the oxidation of 1,4-diamido- or 1,4-dioxynaphthalene, 1,4-amido-naphthol (A. 286, 70),  $\alpha$ -naphthylamine, etc., with sodium bichromate and sulphuric acid (B. 20, 2283), and (3) when benzeneazonaphthol is treated in the cold with  $PbO_2$  and sulphuric acid it is decomposed into diazobenzene sulphate and  $\alpha$ -naphthoquinone (B. 24, R. 733).

Nitric acid oxidizes  $\alpha$ -naphthoquinone to phthalic acid, while  $\alpha$ -hydro-naphthoquinone is produced in its reduction. See the nitrogen quinone derivatives (p. 406) for its phenylhydrazine and hydroxylamine derivatives.

*Substituted  $\alpha$ -Naphthoquinones*.— $\alpha$ -Naphthoquinone takes up two atoms of chlorine or bromine; the addition products readily part with hydrochloric and hydrobromic acids and become  $\beta$ -Chlor- and  $\beta$ -Brom- $\alpha$ -naphthoquinones, melting at  $117^{\circ}$  and  $130^{\circ}$ .

**Hypochlorous acid** converts *a*-naphthoquinone into *diketotetrahydronaphthylene oxide*,  $C_{10}H_6 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup CO-CH \\ \diagdown CO-CH \end{smallmatrix} O$ , which, by the breaking-down of the ethylene oxide union, readily takes up the elements of water, hydrogen chloride and  $NH_3.C_6H_5$ . The primary addition products sustain the most varied transpositions with great readiness, and form: *oxynaphthoquinone*, *chloroxynaphthoquinone*, *anilido-oxynaphthoquinone*, *oxynaphthoquinone anil*, and other bodies; compare B. 25, 3599.

**Amido-derivatives.**—Alkyl- or alphyramidonaphthoquinones are produced on heating primary amines together with *a*-naphthoquinone: 2-Anilido-*a*-naphthoquinone,  $C_{10}H_6O_2[2]NH.C_6H_5$ , consists of red needles, melting at  $191^\circ$ . 2-Amido-*a*-naphthoquinone, melting at  $203^\circ$ , is formed together with the isomeric oxy-*a*-naphthoquinone-imide on boiling amido-*a*-naphthoquinone-imide (p. 407) with water (B. 27, 3337; B. 28, 348).

**Oxynaphthoquinones.**—2-Oxy-*a*-naphthoquinone, *naphthalic acid*,  $C_{10}H_6O_2[2]OH$ , melting at  $188^\circ$ , is produced when anilido naphthoquinone (see above) is boiled with dilute sodium hydroxide or oxynaphthoquinone anil (p. 407) with alcohol and sulphuric acid.  $\beta$ -Phenyl- $\beta$ -oxy-*a*-naphthoquinone, melting at  $147^\circ$ , is prepared from  $\beta$ -phenyl-1,3-dioxynaphthalene by oxidizing it in alkaline solution with air (A. 296, 18). Iod-oxynaphthoquinone, *Iod-naphthalic acid*,  $C_{10}H_4O_2[2]OH[3]I$ , results from the iodation of naphthalic acid (B. 28, 348). Dyes of the *paroxazine*- and *paradiazine*-series are easily made from the o-oxy- and o-amidonaphthoquinone derivatives (compare also the corresponding naphthoquinone anils p. 407) and o-diamines (B. 28, 353).

5-Oxy-*a*-naphthoquinone, *Juglone*, consists of yellow needles, melting with decomposition about  $150$ – $155^\circ$ . The best method to obtain it consists in oxidizing *a*-hydro-juglone with ferric chloride. It may be synthetically prepared by oxidizing (1,5)-dioxynaphthalene with chromic acid (B. 20, 934). It dissolves in alkalis with a violet color. Nitric acid converts it into dinitro-oxyphthalic acid (*juglonic acid*) (B. 19, 164).

**Oxy-juglone**, *Dioxy-a-naphthoquinone*, melting with decomposition at  $220^\circ$ , is produced by the oxidation of the alkaline solution of juglone on exposure to the air. An isomeric 5,6-Dioxy-*a*-naphthoquinone, *naphthalizarine* or *naphthazarine*, is formed on heating various *a*-dinitronaphthalenes with concentrated sulphuric acid in the presence of reducing agents (B. 27, 3462, R. 959; A. 286, 26). It corresponds to alizarine (p. 427), which may be imagined to have arisen from naphthazarine by the addition of a benzene nucleus. It is a valuable mordant dye. *Isonaphthazarine* is probably a 2,3-Dioxy-*a*-naphthoquinone. It is produced from  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone by the action of a little bleaching lime as well as when 2,3-oxyanilido-*a*-naphthoquinone (see above) is heated with bromine (B. 25, 409, 3606). Carminic acid, the coloring substance of cochineal, is an homologous dioxynaphthoquinone. It can be viewed as 8-methyl-2,6-dioxy-*a*-naphthoquinone (p. 433).

**$\beta$ -Naphthoquinone**,  $C_{10}H_6[1,2]O_2$ , is produced on oxidizing  $\beta$ -amido-*a*-naphthol with ferric chloride (B. 17, R. 531; 21, 3472). It consists of red needles, which decompose at  $115$ – $120^\circ$ . It is distinguished from the para-quinones by being odorless and non-volatile. It closely resembles anthraquinone, and especially phenanthraquinone (p. 425); like the latter, it must be considered an ortho-diketone:  $C_{10}H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup CH:CH \\ \diagdown CO.CO \end{smallmatrix}$ .

Like *a*-naphthoquinone, it can add two atoms of chlorine and bromine, and by the elimination of halogen hydrides Chlor- and Brom- $\beta$ -naphthoquinones are formed. A little bleaching lime converts  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone into *isonaphthazarine* (together with various other products, A. 286, 59). This is a dioxy-*a*-naphthoquinone. Such a rearrangement of 4-oxy- or 4-amido- $\beta$ -naphthoquinone derivatives into oxy-*a*-naphthoquinone compounds is a phenomenon that has been frequently observed (compare oxy-*a*-naphthoquinone anil, p. 407). An excess of bleaching lime will produce a rupture in the ring of  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone and convert it into the lactone of o-phenylglycerol carboxylic acid (p. 393).

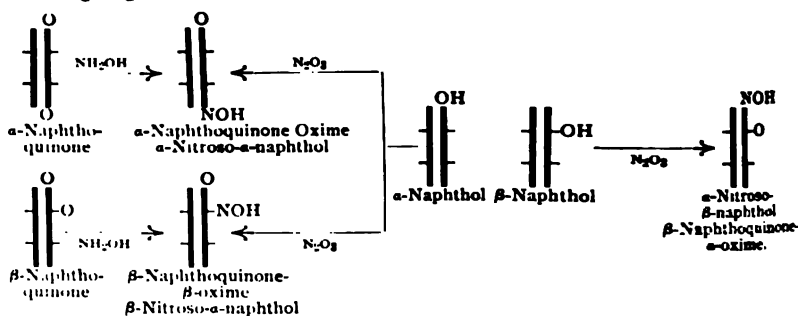
Similarly, 3-Nitro-1,2-naphthoquinone, melting at  $158^{\circ}$  and obtained by the nitration of  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone, is changed, on treating it with chlorine and water, into  $\alpha$ -dichloro-1,2-naphthoquinone.

3,4-Dichloro-1,2-naphthoquinone, on the contrary, is first rearranged by alkalis into dichloro-indene-oxy-carboxylic acid (p. 393). Potassium permanganate oxidizes  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone to phthalic acid, while sulphurous acid reduces it to  $\beta$ -naphthohydroquinone (p. 403), and hydriodic acid to  $\beta$ -naphthol (B. 26, R. 586).

#### Nitrogen Derivatives of the Naphthoquinones.

(1) *Naphthoquinone Phenylhydrazones*: Unlike the benzene quinones (p. 160), both the  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -naphthoquinones unite with phenylhydrazine and form *phenylhydrazones* (B. 28, 2414), which are, however, to be viewed rather as *azo-naphthols*.

(2) *Nitrosonaphthols or Naphthoquinoximes*.—These are produced when the alcoholic solutions of the  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -naphthoquinones are boiled with hydroxylamine hydrochloride, and by the action of nitrous acid upon the naphthols, hence they can be regarded as nitrosonaphthols,  $C_{10}H_6(O)(NOH)$  or  $C_{10}H_6(OH)(NO)$  (compare nitrosophenols, p. 151). Three isomeric bodies are formed; their relation is expressed by the following diagram:



The three isomerides are weak acids. Oxidation converts them into the corresponding nitronaphthols (p. 401).

$\alpha$ -Nitroso  $\alpha$ -naphthol,  $\alpha$ -Naphthoquinone Oxime, melting at  $190^{\circ}$ , and  $\beta$ -Nitroso- $\beta$ -naphthol,  $\beta$ -Naphthoquinone  $\beta$ -oxime, melting at  $152^{\circ}$ , are colorless compounds.  $\beta$ -Naphthoquinone oxime is best made from 1-oxy-2-naphthoic acid (p. 408) with nitrous acid, when the carboxyl group is split off (B. 26, 1280).  $\alpha$ -Nitroso- $\beta$ -naphthol,  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone  $\alpha$ -oxime, consisting of yellow-brown prisms melting at  $106^{\circ}$ , precipitates different metals from their salts, and may be used to separate nickel from cobalt, iron from aluminium, and for the determination of copper (B. 18, 2728; 20, 283). *Naphthol green* (B. 24, 3741), a wool dye, is the iron salt of  $\alpha$ -Nitroso- $\beta$ -naphthol Sulphonic Acid,  $C_{10}H_6(SO_3H)O(NOH)$ , obtained by the action of nitrous acid upon Schaeffer's  $\beta$ -naphthol sulphonic acid (p. 402). Consult B. 30, 187, for the product obtained in the action of  $NO_2$ -vapors upon Schaeffer's  $\beta$ -acid.

The *ethers* of the nitroso-naphthols, derived from the silver salts with methyl iodide and partly from the quinones with alkylhydroxylamines, are reduced to amidonaphthols by tin chloride (B. 18, 715, 2225), a proof of the "oxime formula" of the nitronaphthols.

$\alpha$ -Naphthoquinone Dioxime,  $C_{10}H_6-1,4 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup N.OH \\ \diagdown N.OH \end{smallmatrix}$ , is formed from  $\alpha$ -nitroso- $\alpha$ -naphthol with hydroxylamine hydrochloride. It melts at  $207^{\circ}$  (B. 21, 433).

$\beta$ -Naphthoquinone Dioxime,  $C_{10}H_6-1,2 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup N.OH \\ \diagdown N.OH \end{smallmatrix}$ , is derived from  $\beta$ -nitroso- $\alpha$ -naphthol and from  $\alpha$ -nitroso- $\beta$ -naphthol by the action of hydroxylamine hydrochloride (B. 17, 2064, 2582). It melts at  $149^{\circ}$ . After the manner of the glyoximes it forms the *anhydride*,  $C_{10}H_6 \begin{smallmatrix} [1]N \\ [2]N \end{smallmatrix} > O$ , melting at  $78^{\circ}$ , when digested with alkalis. This com-

group may also be designated *naphtho-furazane*. The reduction of the dioximes gives rise to naphthylenediamine.

(3) *Naphthoquinone Chlorimides* (p. 172): These are made from amido-naphthols, and the dichlorimides from the naphthylene diamines with a bleaching lime solution (B. 27, 238). They resemble the benzoquinone chlorimides, but do not exhibit the same dye-stuff condensations as the former (B. 27, 242).

$\alpha$ -Naphthoquinone Chlorimide,  $C_{10}H_6[1,4](NCl)O$ , melts at  $109^\circ$ .

$\alpha$ -Naphthoquinone Dichlorimide,  $C_{10}H_6[1,4](NCl)_2$ , melts at  $137^\circ$ .

$\beta$ -Naphthoquinone- $\alpha$ -chlorimide, melting at  $87^\circ$ , and  $\beta$ -Naphthoquinone- $\beta$ -chlorimide, decomposing at  $98^\circ$ , are derived from 2,1- and 1,2-amidonaphthols; they yield  $\beta$ , $\alpha$ - and  $\alpha$ , $\beta$ -nitrosonaphthols with hydroxylamine.  $\beta$ -Naphthoquinone dichlorimide melts at  $105^\circ$ .

(4) *Naphthoquinone-imides and Anils*: The indophenol and indo-aniline dyes of the naphthalene series belong in this group,—e. g.,  $\alpha$ -Naphthol Blue or Indophenol,  $C_{10}H_6[1]O[4]N.C_6H_5N(CH_3)_2$ ,—which results when naphthol interacts with dimethyl-p-phenylenediamine or nitrosodimethyl aniline. The simple  $\alpha$ -naphthoquinone-imide is not known. 2-Amido-1,4-naphthoquinone-imide, *diimidonaphthol*,  $C_{10}H_5[2]NH_2[1]O[4]NH$  (A. 154, 303), is produced in the oxidation of 1-oxy-2,4-diamidonaphthalene. Boiling water changes diimidonaphthol to 2-oxy-1,4-naphthoquinone-imide, melting at  $195^\circ$  (B. 23, 2454); aniline to 2-anilido-1,4-naphthoquinone anil,  $C_{10}H_5[2]NHC_6H_5[1]O[4]NC_6H_5$ , melting at  $187^\circ$  (B. 13, 123; 21, 391, 676); with hydroxylamine an oxynaphthoquinone oxime, which consists of two modifications, red and yellow, which can be changed one into the other (B. 29, 1415). 2-Oxy-1,4-naphthoquinone anil, melting at  $240^\circ$  with decomposition, is produced by the action of aniline in the cold upon  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone-4-sulphonic acid, the oxidation product of 1,2-amidonaphthol-4-sulphonic acid. This is an instance of the rearrangement of a  $\beta$  into an  $\alpha$ -naphthoquinone derivative. The p-diamines react in a manner similar to aniline, so that in this way hydroxyl indaniline dyes (see above) can be obtained (B. 27, 25, 3050).

$\alpha$ -Naphthoquinone-phenyldiimide,  $C_{10}H_6(NH)(NC_6H_5)_2$ , melting at  $129^\circ$ , is formed upon oxidizing p-amidonaphthylphenylamine with mercuric oxide (A. 286, 186).

$\beta$ -Naphthoquinone-imides, also called *imido-oxy-* or *imidoketone naphthalenes*,—e. g.,  $C_{10}H_6$ , 1,2-O(NH) (pp. 401, 403),—are produced when the alkaline solutions of the 1,2-amidonaphthols are oxidized with air.

## 11. ALCOHOLS OF THE NAPHTHALENE SERIES AND THEIR OXIDATION PRODUCTS.

A. *Alcohols*: Naphthobenzyl Alcohols, *Naphthyl Carbinols*,  $C_{10}H_7.CH_2.OH$ , the  $\alpha$ - melting at  $60^\circ$  and boiling at  $301^\circ$ , and the  $\beta$ - melting at  $80^\circ$ , result when their amines are treated with nitrous acid (B. 21, 257). The naphthobenzyl chlorides,  $C_{10}H_7.CH_2.Cl$ , the  $\alpha$ - boiling at  $178^\circ$  (25 mm.) and the  $\beta$ - melting at  $47^\circ$ , are formed when chlorine acts upon the two methyl naphthalenes (p. 394) at a boiling temperature (B. 24, 3928). Naphthobenzylamines, *menaphthylamines*,  $C_{10}H_7.CH_2.NH_2$ , the  $\alpha$ - boiling at  $292^\circ$  and the  $\beta$ - melting at  $60^\circ$ , have been made by the reduction of the corresponding naphthoic acid thiamides, as well as of the naphthonitriles.

B. *Aldehydes, Ketones*: When the naphthyl-methyl alcohols are oxidized, the products are:

$\alpha$ -Naphthaldehyde,  $C_{10}H_7.CH=O$ , boiling at  $291^\circ$ , and  $\beta$ -Naphthaldehyde, melting at  $59^\circ$  (B. 20, 1115; 22, 2148).

$\alpha$ -Naphthyl-methyl Ketone, *Acetonaphthone*,  $C_{10}H_7.CO.CH_3$ , is derived from naphthalene and acetyl chloride by means of aluminium chloride. It melts at  $34^\circ$  and boils about  $295^\circ$ . Its chloride splits off hydrogen chloride and becomes  $\alpha$ -naphthyl acetylene,  $C_{10}H_7.C \equiv CH$ . Potassium permanganate oxidizes the ketone to  $\alpha$ -naphthyl glyoxylic acid,  $C_{10}H_7.CO.COOH$ , melting at  $113^\circ$ , which is also formed by the saponification of naphthol cyanide obtained from  $\alpha$ -naphthoyl chloride. By reduction it becomes  $\alpha$ -naphthyl acetic acid,  $C_{10}H_7.CH_2.COOH$ , melting at  $131^\circ$ . 1-Naphthol-3-methyl Ketone,  $C_{10}H_7[1](OH)[3](CO.CH_3)$ , melting at  $174^\circ$ , is formed from  $\beta$ -benzal-levulinic acid by condensation (p. 391 and B. 24, 3201). See B. 28, 1946, for 1,2-naphthol methyl ketone.

*C. Naphthalene Monocarboxylic Acids :*

***α*-Naphthoic Acid**,  $C_{10}H_7\text{-}\alpha\text{-CO}_2H$ , melting at  $160^\circ$ , is derived from *α*-naphthonitrile by saponification (B. 20, 242; 21, R. 834); by fusing *α*-naphthalene sulphonic acid with sodium formate; by the action of sodium on a mixture of *α*-brom-naphthalene and chlor-carbonic ester; and from naphthalene, urea chloride, and aluminium chloride (B. 23, 1190). ***β*-Naphthoic Acid**, melting at  $182^\circ$ , is formed from *β*-naphthonitrile (B. 24, R. 725), as well as by the oxidation of *β*-alkylnaphthalenes (B. 17, 1527; 21, R. 355). Both acids are decomposed when heated with baryta into  $CO_2$  and naphthalene.

*Homologous Naphthalene Carboxylic Acids :* ***α*-Naphthyl-acetic Acid**,  $C_{10}H_7\text{-}\alpha\text{-CH}_2\text{-COOH}$ , melting at  $131^\circ$ , has been made by the reduction of *α*-naphthyl glyoxylic acid (p. 407), while the *β*-acid, melting at  $139^\circ$ , has been prepared by means of the cyanide from *β*-naphthobenzyl chloride (B. 29, 2373).

***β*-Phenyl- and β-Naphthyl-α-naphthoic Acids** are the *chrysene* and *picene* acids (see chrysene and picene, p. 416).

*Substituted Naphthoic Acids :* The nitration of *α*-naphthoic acid produces 1,5- and 1,8-nitronaphthoic acids, melting at  $239^\circ$  and  $275^\circ$  respectively. Boiling nitric acid converts them into 1,5-(*α*-) and 1,8-(*β*-) dinitronaphthalene (p. 396). 1,4-Nitronaphthoic acid, melting at  $220^\circ$ , results upon saponifying the nitrile, which is formed on treating the diazo derivative of 1,4-nitronaphthylamine with potassium cuprous cyanide.

Ferrous sulphate and ammonia reduce the 1,5-acid to a stable amido-naphthoic acid (1,5), melting at  $212^\circ$  (B. 19, 1981), whereas the same reagents reduce the 1,8 acid to (1,8)- or peri-amido-naphthoic acid, which when free, passes like the 1,5-amido sulphonic acids (p. 399), quite readily into its inner anhydride, Naphthostyryl.  $C_{10}H_6\left\{\begin{smallmatrix} [1]CO \\ [8]N \end{smallmatrix}\right\}$ , melting at  $179^\circ$  (B. 19, 1131). 1,4-Amidonaphthoic Acid melts at  $177^\circ$  (B. 28, 1842).

See B. 24, R. 637, for the nitro-*β* naphthoic acids. 2,3-Amido-naphthoic Acid, melting at  $214^\circ$ , results upon treating the corresponding oxy-naphthoic acid with ammonia (B. 28, 3080).

*Oxy-naphthoic Acids, Naphthol Carboxylic Acids*, containing the  $OH\cdot$  and  $COOH\cdot$  groups in the ortho-position, are prepared like the orthophenol carboxylic acids—i. e., by heating the sodium naphtholates with  $CO_2$  under pressure.

1,2-(*α*) Naphthol Carboxylic Acid,  $C_{10}H_6\left\{\begin{smallmatrix} [1](OH) \\ [2](COOH) \end{smallmatrix}\right\}$ , melting at  $186^\circ$ , is formed from *α*-naphthol, and from *β*-naphthol-sodium with carbon dioxide and pressure at  $120\text{--}145^\circ$ ; 2,1-(*β*) Naphthol Carboxylic Acid, melting with decomposition at  $150^\circ$ , is similarly produced, while if *β*-naphthol-sodium be heated more strongly,  $200\text{--}250^\circ$ , in a current of carbon dioxide, the product will be 2,3-naphthol carboxylic acid, melting at  $216^\circ$ . The 2,1-(*β*) naphthol carboxylic acid is distinguished by the easy mobility of its carboxyl group. Heated alone, or when boiled with water, it changes to *β*-naphthol; nitrous acid converts it into *α*-nitroso-*β*-naphthol (see p. 406 for method of preparation), and diazo-benzene salts into benzene azo-*β*-naphthol, etc. The 2,3-acid, on the other hand, is very stable, and resembles salicylic acid. Because of its striking and remarkable yellow color

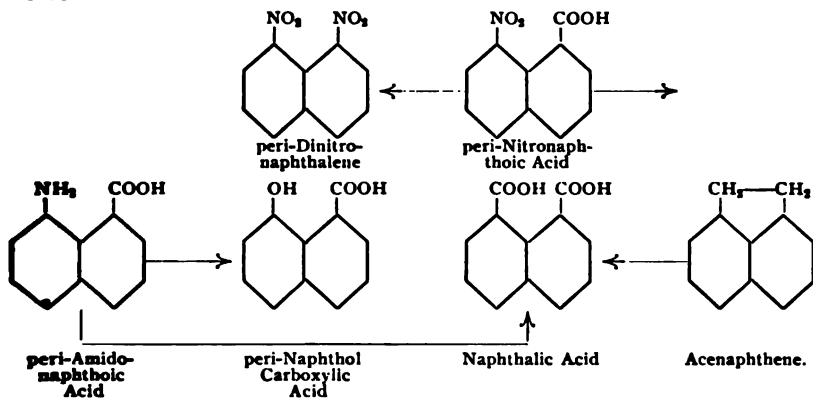
the formula of a ketodihydronaphthoic acid,  $C_{10}H_7\text{-}\begin{smallmatrix} \diagup CH_2 - CO \\ \diagdown CH = C \cdot COOH \end{smallmatrix}$ , has been proposed for this acid. The behavior of the acid toward phenylhydrazine supports this view: it is very probable that at first a hydrazine is produced, which subsequently, owing to indol condensation, forms a phenonaphtho-carbazole-carboxylic acid (B. 29, 265).

*Naphthoxanthones*,  $C_{10}H_6\text{-}\begin{smallmatrix} O \\ \diagup \diagdown \end{smallmatrix}\text{-}C_{10}H_6$  (B. 25, 1642), are produced when the three *o* naphthol carboxylic acids are heated with acetic anhydride.

(1,8)- or peri-Naphthol Carboxylic Acid is derived from (1,8)-amido-naphthoic acid by means of the diazo-compound. It breaks down into water and its *γ*-lactone,  $C_{10}H_6\left\{\begin{smallmatrix} [1]O \\ [8]CO \end{smallmatrix}\right\}$ , melting at  $169^\circ$ .

2,3-Oxynaphthoic acid and diazobenzene chloride yield a mixed azo-compound. Reduction converts this into 1,2,3-amido-oxynaphthoic acid, which, on boiling with sulphuric acid, becomes 1,2,3-dioxynaphthoic acid. This can also be obtained from  $\beta$ -naphthohydroquinone and carbon dioxide, and by oxidation it is changed to  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone-carboxylic acid (B. 28, 3089). Consult B. 29, 39.

**D. Naphthalene Di- and Poly-carboxylic Acids:** Six of these acids are known. It is remarkable that the 1,8- or peri-acid, so-called **naphthalic acid**,  $C_{10}H_6[1,8](COOH)_2$ , is produced by the oxidation of **acenaphthene** (p. 410), and also from its *half-nitrile*, which is made by saponifying the diazo-derivative of peri-amidonaphthoic acid. The following diagram represents the relations of a series of *peri-naphthalene derivatives*:



Just as in the case of other peri-derivatives, so here naphthalic acid when heated to  $180^\circ$  breaks down without melting into water and its *anhydride*,  $C_{10}H_6(CO)_2O$ , melting at  $266^\circ$ , which like phthalic anhydride condenses with phenol to *phenol-naphthalic an*,  $C_{10}H_6 \begin{smallmatrix} C(C_6H_5OH)_2 \\ CO > O \end{smallmatrix}$  (B. 28, R. 621). Compare B. 28, 360, for naphthal-imide, -anil, and

-phenylhydrazil. 1,2-Naphthalene Dicarboxylic Acid, obtained by the saponification of its nitrile, melts at  $175^\circ$  and passes into its *anhydride*, melting at  $105^\circ$  (B. 25, 2475). 1,5-Naphthalene Dicarboxylic Acid, B. 29, R. 516.

**Naphthalene Tetracarboxylic Acid**,  $C_{10}H_4[1,4,5,8](CO_2H)_4$ , with the carboxyl groups in the two peri-positions of naphthalene, results when pyrenic acid is oxidized (B. 20, 365).

**Naphthonitriles, Cyan-naphthalenes:** Naphthonitriles may be obtained by the distillation of the alkali salts of the naphthalene-disulphonic acids, or the phosphoric esters of the naphthols with potassium cyanide or yellow prussiate of potash (B. 21, R. 834).

$\alpha$ -Naphtho-nitrile,  $\alpha$ -Cyan-naphthalene,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot CN$ , melting at  $37^\circ$  and boiling at  $298^\circ$ , has also been prepared from formnaphthalide,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot NH \cdot COH$ , as well as from  $\alpha$ -naphthalene diazochloride by means of copper and potassium cyanides.

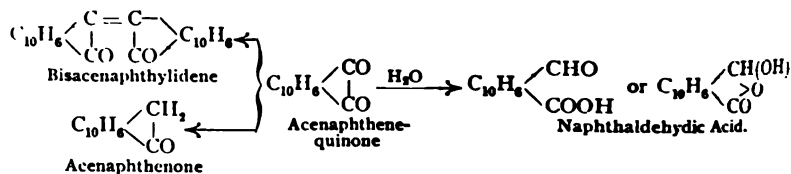
$\beta$ -Cyan-naphthalene melts at  $66^\circ$  and boils at  $304^\circ$ . 1,2-Dicyan-naphthalene,  $C_{10}H_6[1,2](CN)_2$ , melting at  $190^\circ$ , is produced when 1,2-chloronaphthalene sulphonic acid is distilled with potassium ferrocyanide (B. 25, 2475). For additional isomeric dicyan-naphthalenes see A. 152, 289; J. 1869, 483, etc.

**12. Dinaphthyl- and Dinaphyl-methane Derivatives:** Different isomeric dinaphthyls have been made by conducting the vapors of naphthylene through tubes heated to redness, by heating naphthalene with  $Al_2Cl_6$ , or from brom-naphthalene and sodium, and by heating mercury dinaphthyl,  $Hg(C_{10}H_7)_2$ , etc. (B. 28, R. 184).

The diamidodinaphthyls or naphthidines, corresponding to the benzidines or dimidiphenyls, result from the rearrangement of the hydrazonaphthalenes, or directly from the naphthylamines by the action of 80 per cent. sulphuric acid in presence of oxidants, such as ferric oxide, etc. (B. 25, R. 949). Similarly, naphthols and ferric chloride yield dinaphthols.

Dinaphthylmethane derivatives, like  $\alpha$ -dinaphthol methane,  $\text{CH}_2(\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{-OH})_2$ , and ethidene- $\alpha$ -dinaphthol,  $\text{CH}_2\text{:CH}(\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{OH})_2$ , have been made by the condensation of naphthols with aldehydes. The products from the latter and  $\beta$ -naphthol readily part with water and become *xanthenes*, hence they in all probability contain the ethylenide groups in the  $\alpha$ -position with reference to the hydroxyls:  $\beta$ -Dinaphthol methane, melting at  $190^\circ$ , yields, with  $\text{POCl}_3$ , *dinaphthoxanthene*,  $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_8\text{<O>C}_{20}\text{H}_8$ , while benzaldehyde and  $\beta$ -naphthol at once form *ms-phenylnaphthoxanthene*,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{O})$  (B. 25, 3477; 26, 83), together with an acetal (see I, p. 200).

**13. Acenaphthene:** Acenaphthene, or *peri-Ethylene Naphthylene*,  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_8\left\{\begin{smallmatrix} [1]\text{CH}_2 \\ [8]\text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}\right.$ , melting at  $95^\circ$  and boiling at  $277^\circ$ , is a peculiar derivative of naphthalene, which is obtained by conducting  $\alpha$ -ethyl naphthalene through a red-hot tube, or by the action of alcoholic potash upon  $\alpha$ -*brom-ethyl naphthalene*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{-C}_2\text{H}_4\text{Br}$ . It also occurs in coal tar. Inasmuch as acenaphthene is oxidized by sodium bichromate and sulphuric acid to naphthalic acid (p. 409) the side-chain  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_4$  must be arranged in the two *peri*-positions (1 and 8) of naphthalene. Acenaphthene-quinone,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6(\text{CO})_2$ , melting at  $261^\circ$ , is a by-product in this oxidation. Zinc-dust and acetic acid reduce it to acenaphthenone,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6\text{:CH}_2\text{:CO}$ , melting at  $121^\circ$ , while hydriodic acid and phosphorus change it to bisacenaphthylidene,  $(\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_5\text{:CO}\text{:C:})_2$ , melting at  $294^\circ$ , and alkalis decompose it into *naphthaldehydic acid* (B. 26, R. 710; A. 290, 195):



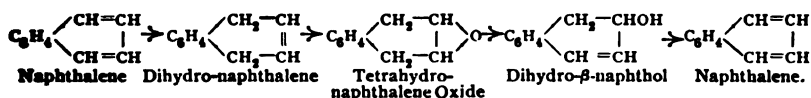
When the vapor of acenaphthene is conducted over lead oxide heated to redness two atoms of hydrogen split off and acenaphthylene,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6\text{<}\begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH} \\ \text{CH} \end{smallmatrix}\text{>}$  results. This forms *pol-lore* plates (p. 419) (B. 26, 2354), melts at  $92^\circ$  and boils at  $270^\circ$  with decomposition. Chromic acid also oxidizes it to naphthalic acid.

#### 14. Hydronaphthalene Derivatives.

Hydronaphthalene compounds attach themselves to naphthalene just as the hydroaromatic benzene derivatives did to benzene. Naphthalene and its derivatives take up hydrogen and the halogens more readily than the compounds of benzene. Those naphthalene derivatives which have added hydrogen to *one* nucleus alone are remarkable and interesting because they manifest in one substance the differences which prevail between an *aromatic* and a *hydroaromatic* or *alicyclic* nucleus. While the non-hydrogenized nucleus of the respective naphthalene compounds retains the aromatic properties, the hydrogenized *alicyclic* nucleus assumes, on the contrary, the nature of a fatty radical, and as a consequence the

whole system acquires the character of an homologous benzene derivative (Bamberger, A. 257, 1).

**A. Dihydronaphthalene Derivatives:** Dihydronaphthalene,  $C_{10}H_{10}$ , melting at  $15^\circ$  and boiling at  $212^\circ$ , is formed when naphthalene is reduced with sodium in a boiling ethyl alcohol solution. The entering hydrogen atoms assume the 1,4-position, because the hydride yields o-phenylene diacetic acid when it is oxidized. It can be viewed as the hydrocarbon of  $\alpha$ -naphthoquinone if the latter be considered as a diketone. Dihydronaphthalene resembles the olefines—*e. g.*, ethylene—in that it readily takes up two univalent atoms or radicals. Thus with bromine it forms a dibromide, with hypochlorous acid a glycolchlorhydrin (p. 412). Tetrahydronaphthylene oxide (p. 412) can be easily obtained from the latter and is capable of rearranging itself to 1,2-dihydro- $\beta$ -naphthol,  $C_{10}H_{10}O$ , boiling at  $162$ – $168^\circ$  (28 mm.), which may be oxidized to dihydroisocoumarin-carboxylic acid (p. 392), and when it splits off water naphthalene is produced (A. 288, 74):

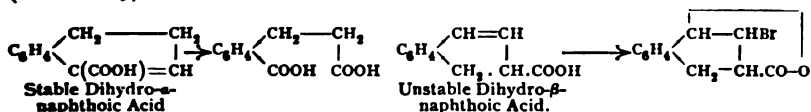


**Naphthalene Dichloride**,  $C_{10}H_8Cl_2$ , is a yellow oil formed when naphthalene is treated with potassium chlorate and hydrochloric acid. It changes to  $\alpha$ -chloronaphthalene at  $40$ – $50^\circ$ , and by the elimination of hydrogen chloride.

**Dihydronaphthoic Acids:** Sodium amalgam reduces the  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -naphthoic acids, two hydrogen atoms being added to the nucleus already carrying the carboxyl-group, and in the cold there result *unstable*, and when heat is applied *stable*, dihydronaphthoic acids,  $C_{10}H_8 \cdot CO_2H$ :

$\alpha$ -Stable melting at  $125^\circ$ ;  $\beta$ -stable melting at  $161^\circ$ .  
 $\alpha$ -Unstable " "  $91^\circ$ ;  $\beta$ -unstable " "  $104^\circ$ .

The unstable pass into the stable modifications on boiling them with caustic soda. Potassium permanganate oxidizes the stable  $\alpha$ -acid to hydrocinnamic acid, while the unstable acid yields oxalic acid and phthalic acid. The dibromide of the unstable  $\beta$ -acid, in contrast with the stable modification, readily changes to a brominated lactone. All these facts point to the following formulas for the stable  $\alpha$ - and the unstable  $\beta$ -acid (A. 266, 169):

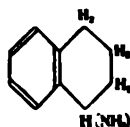


The dihydro- $\beta$ -acids, when oxidized with potassium ferricyanide, revert again to  $\beta$ -naphthoic acid.

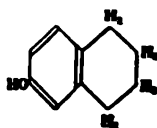
**B. Tetrahydronaphthalene Derivatives:** Tetrahydronaphthalene,  $C_{10}H_{12}$ , boiling at  $206^\circ$ , is formed in the reduction of naphthalene with sodium in amyl alcohol solution; also from  $\alpha$ -tetrahydronaphthylamine by the elimination of the  $NH_2$ -group; hence the H-atoms are only present in the one nucleus. Naphthalene Tetrachloride,  $C_{10}H_4Cl_4$ , melting at  $182^\circ$ , is produced when chlorine is conducted into a chloroform solution of naphthalene. Boiling alcoholic potash changes it to dichloronaphthalene (p. 395). See B. 28, R. 392, for the oxidation of naphthalene tetrachloride. Consult B. 24, R. 713, for the chlorine addition products of chlorinated and sulphur-containing naphthalenes. Naphthalene Tetrabromide melts at  $111^\circ$  (C. 1897, 1, 984).

The naphthylamine and naphthol hydrides are particularly interesting. Sodium acting upon the boiling amyl alcohol solution of the naphthols and naphthylamines causes these bodies to add four hydrogen atoms each to one nucleus. If the latter carries the  $NH_2$ - or  $OH$ -group, the body formed no longer possesses the character of a naphthylamine or a

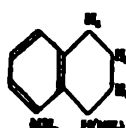
naphthol, but has that of a benzene homologue, amidated or bearing the OH group in the side-chain. Should, however, the non-substituted nucleus be hydrogenized, then the products acquire the nature of homologous anilines or phenols. E. Bamberger, who first observed these relations and explained them, designated the second class of tetrahydro-derivatives as *aromatic* (ar-), and the first class as *aliphatic-cyclic* or *alicyclic* (ac-):



ac-Tetrahydro- $\alpha$ -naphthylamine



ar-Tetrahydro- $\beta$ -naphthol



ar-, ac-Tetrahydro-1,5-naphthylene Diamine.

$\alpha$ -Naphthylamine and  $\alpha$ -naphthol upon reduction yield ar-tetrahydro- $\alpha$ -naphthylamine and -naphthol, while the  $\beta$ -compounds form both the ar- and the ac-tetrahydro-derivative; the latter predominates. 1,5-Naphthylene diamine yields ac-, ar-tetrahydro-naphthylene diamine, which, by elimination of the aromatic  $\text{NH}_2$ -group, forms ac-tetrahydro- $\alpha$ -naphthylamine:

ar Tetrahydronaphthylamines,  $\text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3 : (\text{C}_6\text{H}_6)$ . The  $\alpha$ -body boils at  $275^\circ$  and the  $\beta$ -form at  $276^\circ$ . They are feeble bases and form diazo- and azo-compounds. They exercise a reducing power with salts of the noble metals. By oxidation with potassium permanganate all yield adipic acid and oxalic acid (p. 393).

Chromic acid oxidizes the  $\alpha$ -compound to ar-tetrahydro- $\alpha$ -naphthoquinone,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}_2 : (\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$ , melting at  $55^\circ$ , which in every respect resembles benzoquinone—*e. g.*, like the latter, it does not form a hydrazone with phenylhydrazine (compare p. 406). ac-Tetrahydronaphthylamines,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 : (\text{C}_6\text{H}_7 \cdot \text{NH}_2)$ ; the  $\alpha$ -body boils at  $246^\circ$  and the  $\beta$ - at  $240^\circ$ . They are strong bases, which absorb carbon dioxide from the air. They do not form diazo-derivatives. Potassium permanganate ruptures the hydrogenized ring and produces o-cinnam-carboxylic acid.

ac-, ar-Tetrahydro-1,5-naphthylene Diamine,  $\text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3 : (\text{C}_6\text{H}_7\text{NH}_2)$ , melting at  $77^\circ$  and boiling at  $261^\circ$ , combines in itself both the properties of an aromatic and of an alicyclic amine. It contains an asymmetric carbon atom, and has been resolved into a dextro- and a levo-modification.

ar Tetrahydro- $\alpha$ -naphthol,  $\text{OH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3 : (\text{C}_6\text{H}_6)$ , melting at  $69^\circ$  and boiling at  $265^\circ$ , is also derived from ar-tetrahydro- $\alpha$ -naphthylamine by means of the diazo-derivative.

ac Tetrahydro  $\beta$ -naphthol,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 : (\text{C}_6\text{H}_7\text{OH})$ , is an oil, boiling at  $264^\circ$ . It exhibits the character of a fatty alcohol and resembles similarly constituted camphor alcohols, like menthol and borneol (pp. 313, 324).

A series of tetrahydronaphthalene derivatives has been obtained, starting with dihydronaphthalene: Thus, phenol and the latter form Tetrahydronaphthylphenol,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 : (\text{C}_6\text{H}_7 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{OH})$  boiling at  $130^\circ$  (B. 24, 179), while bromine changes it to dihydronaphthalene dibromide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 : (\text{C}_6\text{H}_6\text{Br}_2)$ . Boiling potassium carbonate converts the latter into Tetrahydronaphthylene Glycol,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 < \begin{matrix} \text{CH}_2 - \text{CHOH} \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CHOH} \end{matrix}$ , melting at  $135^\circ$ , which by oxidation is broken down into o-phenylene diacetic acid. It is an analogue of ethylene glycol. The chlorhydrin (above),  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{10}\text{Cl}(\text{OH})$ , melting at  $117^\circ$ , with caustic potash yields Tetrahydronaphthylene Oxide,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{10}\text{O}$ , melting at  $43^\circ$  and boiling at  $258^\circ$ , which manifests all the chemical properties of ethylene oxide (i, 298). Bases have converted the chlorhydrin into a series of "alkines," of which mention may be made of—

Trimethyl-oxytetrahydronaphthylene Ammonium Hydroxide,

$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 < \begin{matrix} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CHOH} \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CHN}(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{OH} \end{matrix}$ , because of its intimate connection with choline (i, 309).

The feeble alkalies convert this oxide into the isomeric  $\beta$ -ketotetrahydronaphthalene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 < \begin{matrix} \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CO} \end{matrix}$ , melting at  $18^\circ$  and boiling at  $138^\circ$  (16 mm.), which can also be

prepared by the distillation of *o*-phenylene propionacetic acid (p. 394) (B. 28, 745). It behaves like a fatty ketone (B. 27, 1547) with sodium bisulphite, phenylhydrazine, and hydroxylamine. The chlorine addition products of the naphthoquinones are *diketotetrahydronaphthalene derivatives*. They readily part with hydrogen chloride and thus yield substituted naphthoquinones (pp. 404, 405). Diketotetrahydronaphthylene Oxide,  $C_8H_6 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CO} - \text{CH} \\ \text{CO} - \text{CH} \end{smallmatrix} > O$ , melting at  $136^\circ$ , is produced by the action of bleaching lime upon  $\alpha$ -naphthoquinone (p. 404 and A. 286, 71).

*ac-Tetrahydronaphthoic Acids* are also classified into aromatic and alicyclic. *ar-Tetrahydro- $\alpha$ -naphthoic Acid*,  $COOH \cdot C_8H_8 : (C_4H_8)_2$ , with an *amide* melting at  $182^\circ$ , is derived from its nitrile, a rearrangement product from *ar-tetrahydro- $\alpha$ -naphthalene diazo-chloride* and potassio-copper cyanide.

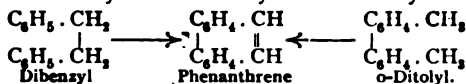
*ac-Tetrahydronaphthoic Acids*, the  $\alpha$ - melting at  $85^\circ$  and the  $\beta$ - at  $96^\circ$ , are formed when naphthoic and dihydronaphthoic acids are reduced with sodium amalgam. They resist the action of potassium permanganate more strongly than the dihydro-acids. In comparison with the latter they thus prove themselves to be saturated acids. The long-continued action of the oxidant finally changes them to phthalic and oxalic acids (A. 266, 202).

*ac-Tetrahydronaphthalene Dicarboxylic Acid*,  $C_8H_6[C_4H_8(CO_2H)_2]_2$ , melts at  $199^\circ$ , with the production of its anhydride, melting at  $184^\circ$ . The latter is also formed on heating potassium tetrahydronaphthalene tetracarboxylate, the ester of which has been synthesized from *o*-xylylene bromide and the sodium derivative of the dimalonic acid ester (p. 391) (B. 17, 448). *Tetrahydro-1,5-naphthalene Dicarboxylic Acid* melts at  $238^\circ$  (B. 29, R. 517).

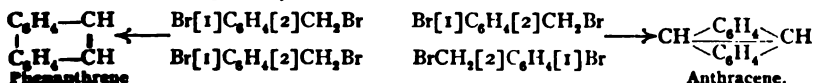
*C. Hexa-, Octo-, Deca-, and Dodeca-hydronaphthalenes*,  $C_{10}H_{14}$ ,  $C_{10}H_{16}$ ,  $C_{10}H_{18}$ , and  $C_{10}H_{20}$ , boil at  $200^\circ$ ,  $185-190^\circ$ ,  $173-180^\circ$ , and  $153-158^\circ$  respectively. They have been obtained by the action of hydriodic acid and phosphorus upon naphthalene (B. 16, 796, 3032; A. 187, 164).

### 3. PHENANTHRENE GROUP.

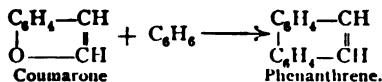
*Phenanthrene* occurs, together with anthracene, in coal-tar and in the so-called "stubb," a mass of substance obtained (together with fluoranthene and pyrene) in the distillation of mercury ores in Idria. It is prepared synthetically (1) (with diphenyl, anthracene, and other hydrocarbons) from various benzene compounds, by conducting their vapors through a red-hot tube—*e. g.*, from toluene, stilbene, diphenyl, and ethylene, and particularly from dibenzyl and *o*-ditolyl:



(2) Sodium acting on *o*-brombenzylbromide also produces it (together with anthracene, p. 421):



(3) It also appears in the condensation of coumarone with benzene (B. 23, 85):



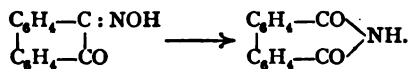
Chrysene is similarly formed from coumarone and naphthalene, and amidonaphthalene (p. 391) from furfurane and aniline.



**Phenanthraquinone**,  $(C_6H_4)_2(CO)_2$ , is formed in the action of chromic acid upon phenanthrene in glacial acetic acid solution; most readily by heating it with a chromic acid mixture (A. 196, 38). It crystallizes in long, orange-yellow needles, melts at  $198^\circ$ , and distills without decomposition. It dissolves readily in hot alcohol, ether, and benzene, but sparingly in water. It dissolves in concentrated sulphuric acid with a dark green color, and is reprecipitated by water. By adding toluene containing thiotolene and sulphuric acid to the acetic acid solution of phenanthraquinone a bluish-green coloration is produced (see thiophene).

In deportment it recalls  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone. It is odorless, not volatile in steam, unites with one and two molecules of hydroxylamine, and is not reduced by sulphurous acid.

**Phenanthraquinone-monoxime**,  $C_{14}H_8O(N.OH)$ , consists of golden yellow needles, melting at  $158^\circ$ . If it is heated together with glacial acetic acid and hydrochloric acid to  $130^\circ$  it sustains the transposition of ketoximes (p. 341), and forms diphenimide (B. 21, 2356):



The dioxime forms an anhydride,  $C_{14}H_8 \begin{array}{c} \diagup N \\ \diagdown N \end{array} O$ , melting at  $181^\circ$ . This is a furazane derivative.

Phenanthraquinone, being an o-diketone, forms phenazine derivatives with o-diamines. See B. 24, R. 630, 631, for the condensations of acetoacetic ester and acetone. By oxidation with chromic acid, or by boiling with alcoholic potash, phenanthraquinone is oxidized to diphenic acid; ignition with soda-lime produces diphenylene ketone (p. 419), fluorene (p. 417), and diphenyl. Diphenylene glycollic acid (p. 419), fluorene alcohol, and diphenylene ketone are obtained on boiling with aqueous soda-lye. Ignited with zinc-dust we obtain phenanthrene.

When phenanthraquinone is digested with concentrated sulphurous acid it is reduced to Phenanthrene-hydroquinone, Dioxyphenanthrene,  $\begin{array}{c} C_6H_4-C(OH) \\ | \\ C_6H_4-C(OH) \end{array}$ . This can also be obtained by the reduction of the chloride of diphenic acid (p. 341). With hydriodic acid phenanthraquinone forms Phenanthrene,  $\begin{array}{c} C_6H_4-CH_2 \\ | \\ C_6H_4-CO \end{array}$ , and with hydriodic acid and phosphorus in glacial acetic acid solution it yields—

Monacetyl-dioxyphenanthrene,  $(C_6H_4)_2 \begin{array}{c} \diagup COOC_2H_5 \\ \diagdown COH \end{array}$ , which on heating condenses to Tetraphenylene Furfurane,  $\begin{array}{c} C_6H_4-CH-CH-C_6H_4 \\ | \quad \quad \quad || \\ C_6H_4-CH-O-CH-C_6H_4 \end{array}$  (B. 26, R. 585). When a mixture of phenanthraquinone and aldehydes is exposed to sunlight a union follows with the production of monacidylphenanthrene hydroquinones (A. 249, 137) (compare I, 75).

Retene or Methyl Isopropylphenanthrene,  $(CH_3)(C_3H_7)C_6H_2 \begin{array}{c} \diagup \\ \diagdown \end{array} \begin{array}{c} C_6H_4 \\ CH:CH \end{array} C_6H_4$ , melting at  $98^\circ$  and boiling at  $394^\circ$ , is a homologue of phenanthrene.

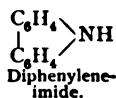
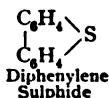
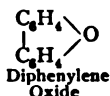
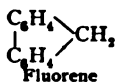
Retene occurs in the tar of highly resinous pines, and in some mineral resins. It is isolated from those portions that boil at elevated temperatures. Its picric acid compound forms orange-yellow needles, melting at  $123^\circ$ . Chromic acid in glacial acetic acid solu-



is produced. It melts at  $175^{\circ}$ . Picene is oxidized by chromic acid to an orange-red *quinone*,  $C_{22}H_{12}O_2$ , which, like chrysene, is changed on the one hand to *picene ketone*, *picene fluorene alcohol*, and *picene fluorene*,  $(C_{10}H_8)_2CH_2$ , and on the other to *picenic acid* or *dinaphthyl-carboxylic acid* and  $\beta$ -dinaphthyl (B. 26, 1751).

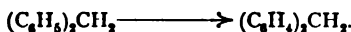
#### 4. FLUORENE GROUP.

Just as phenanthrene, chrysene, and picene were regarded as symmetrical  $\alpha_2$ -ethylene derivatives of diphenyl, phenylnaphthyl, and dinaphthyl, so *fluorene*, *chrysene-fluorene*, and *picene-fluorene* may be viewed as  $\alpha_2$ -methylene derivatives of the last-mentioned hydrocarbons, and accordingly may be designated *diphenylene methane*, *phenylene naphthylene*, and *dinaphthylene-methanes*. Fluorene is also closely allied to diphenylene oxide, diphenylene sulphide, and diphenylene-imide or carbazole (see this), dibenzo-derivatives of furfuran, thiophene, and pyrrol :

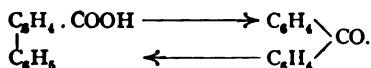


##### General Methods of Formation :

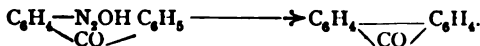
1. Fluorene is formed by conducting vapors of diphenylmethane through tubes heated to redness; chrysofluorene is similarly obtained from  $\beta$ -naphthyl phenylmethane :



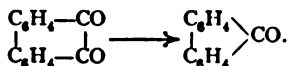
2. *o*-Diphenyl carboxylic acid, phenylnaphthyl carboxylic acid or chrysenic acid, and dinaphthyl carboxylic or picenic acid, when heated alone or in the form of salts, yield fluorene, chrysene, and picene ketones, which can be readily reduced to fluorene, chrysofluorene, and picene-fluorene ; conversely, the acids are reformed when the ketones are fused with caustic potash :



3. Fluorene ketone is also obtained from the diazo-derivative of *o*-amidobenzophenone by the elimination of nitrogen ; similarly, chrysene ketone is formed from *o*-amido-phenyl- $\alpha$ -naphthyl-ketone (B. 29, 826) :



4. Phenanthraquinone, chrysoquinone, and picequinone, when oxidized, also yield the ketones of the corresponding fluorenes :



**Fluorene**, *Diphenylene Methane*,  $C_{15}H_{10}$ , m. p.  $113^{\circ}$  and b. p.  $295^{\circ}$ , crystallizes in colorless leaflets with a violet fluorescence. It forms a compound with picric acid, melting at  $81^{\circ}$ . It results upon exposing diphenyl methane to a high heat (above), and in the reduction of diphenylene ketone with zinc dust or upon heating it to  $160^{\circ}$  with  $HI$  and phosphorus. The chromic acid mixture oxidizes it to diphenylene ketone.

**Methylhexahydrofluorene**, boiling at  $128^{\circ}$  (14 mm.), results from the action of  $P_2O_5$  upon methylbenzylcyclohexanol, the reduction product of benzylidene-methylcyclohexanon,  $(CH_3)(OH)C_6H_9:CH_2 \cdot C_6H_9 \longrightarrow (CH_3)C_6H_9 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_9$  (B. 29, 2962), produced in the condensation of benzaldehyde and methyl-cyclo-hexanon.

**Retene-fluorene**, methylisopropylidiphenylenemethane,  $(CH_3)(C_2H_5)C_6H_4 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_4$ , melting at  $92^{\circ}$ , is derived from its ketone upon distillation with zinc-dust. **Chrysosfluorene**,

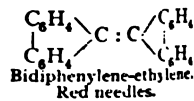
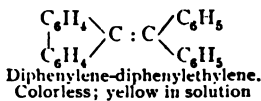
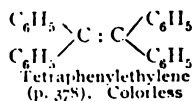
naphthylene-phenylene-methane,  $C_{10}H_8-CH_2-C_6H_5$ , melting at  $180^{\circ}$ , is derived from  $\beta$ -benzyl-naphthalene or from chryso-ketone. An isomeric isochryso-fluorene, melting at  $76^{\circ}$ , is obtained from  $\alpha$ -benzyl-naphthalene (B. 27, 953). **Picene-fluorene**, *pyrene-methane*,  $(C_{10}H_8)_2CH_2$ , melting at  $306^{\circ}$ , is produced on heating its ketone to  $160-175^{\circ}$  with hydriodic acid (A. 284, 70).

**Diphenylene-phenylmethane**, *ms.-Phenyl-fluorene*,  $(C_6H_5)_3CH$ , melting at  $146^{\circ}$ , results on heating triphenylmethane chloride,  $(C_6H_5)_3CCl$ , or potassium triphenylmethane (p. 351); from fluorene alcohol, benzene, and sulphuric acid (B. 22, R. 660), and by distilling hydrofluoric acid (p. 362) over soda-lime.

**Diphenylene-diphenyl-ethane**,  $(C_6H_5)_4CH_2$ , melting at  $217^{\circ}$ , and **Diphenylene-diphenyl-ethylene**,  $(C_6H_5)_4C:C(C_6H_5)_2$ , melting at  $229^{\circ}$ , arise in the breaking-down of *diphenylene-diphenyl-succinic anhydride*,  $(C_6H_5)_2 \cdot C \cdot CO \cdot C \cdot CO$ , melting

at  $256^{\circ}$ , one of the reaction-products of cold concentrated sulphuric acid upon benzoic acid (p. 360). Diphenylene-diphenyl-ethylene is produced on heating benzophenone chloride with fluorene. It consists of *colorless* crystals, the solutions of which are *colorless intensely yellow*. The moderated oxidation of this body with chromic acid gives rise to diphenylene-diphenyl-pinacoline, melting at  $172^{\circ}$ . Its structure is unsymmetrical:  $(C_6H_5)_2C(C_6H_5)CO \cdot C_6H_5$ , because it is decomposed by alcoholic caustic potash into diphenylene phenylmethane and benzoic acid. It also results from potassium triphenylmethane and benzoylchloride (B. 29, 2152).

**Bidiphenylene Ethane**,  $(C_6H_5)_4CH_2$ , colorless needles, melting at  $246^{\circ}$ , is produced, together with bi-diphenylene ethylene, *bifluorene*,  $(C_{10}H_8)_2C:C(C_{10}H_8)_2$ , melting at  $188^{\circ}$ , on heating fluorene with lead oxide. The second hydrocarbon is also formed on heating fluorene with bromine, chlorine, or sulphur. It consists of beautiful *red* colored needles. Its bromine addition product is colorless, and when heated with sodium in xylene solution it reverts to the red hydrocarbon (B. 25, 3140; A. 290, 238; 291, 1). The following diagram is interesting from the point of view of the color of highly condensed hydrocarbons:



Compare the yellow color of acenaphthylene (p. 410). Chromic acid oxidizes bi-diphenylene ethylene into a pinacoline, melting at  $258^{\circ}$  (together with fluorenone), which probably, like diphenylene-diphenyl pinacoline, possesses an unsymmetrical structure corresponding to the formula  $(C_6H_5)_2 \cdot C \cdot C_6H_5 \cdot C \cdot C_6H_5$ , because, like the diphenylene-diphenyl

pinacoline, it is resolved by alcoholic potash into the acid  $(C_6H_5)_3CH \cdot C_6H_5 \cdot COOH$ . The pinacoline is also produced in the reduction of fluorenone with zinc-dust and acetyl chloride. It is further identical with the bidiphenylene-ethine oxide (B. 29, 2152; A. 291, 1), produced on heating bidiphenylene-ethine dibromide with water.

**Fluorene Alcohol**,  $C_{10}H_7 \cdot CH_2 \cdot OH$ , melting at  $153^{\circ}$ , results in the action of sodium amalgam upon diphenylene ketone and by heating sodium diphenylene glycollic acid to  $120^{\circ}$ . Concentrated sulphuric acid or  $P_2O_5$  colors it an intense blue, and produces *fluorene ether*,  $(C_{10}H_7)_2O$ , melting at  $290^{\circ}$ .

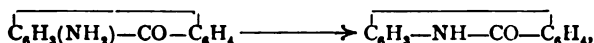
retene-, chrysene-, and picene-fluorene alcohols, melting at  $134^{\circ}$ ,  $167^{\circ}$ , and  $191^{\circ}$  respectively, are obtained by methods similar to those pursued in the preparation of fluorene alcohol.

**Diphenylene Ketone, Fluorenone**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COC}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $84^{\circ}$  and boiling at  $341^{\circ}$

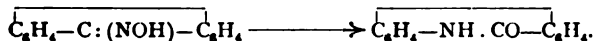
(*B.* 27, R. 641), is obtained from diphenic acid, isodiphenic acid, and o-diphenyl carboxylic acid when heated with lime; by oxidizing fluorene with a chromic acid mixture, by heating phenanthraquinone with caustic lime (*A.* 196, 45; 279, 257), and when the diazo-compound of o-amido-benzophenone (*p.* 347) is heated with water (*B.* 28, 111). Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to phthalic acid. It is converted into o-phenyl benzoic acid on fusion with potassium hydroxide. Its oxime,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}:\text{NOH}$ , melts at  $193^{\circ}$  (*p.* 420); the phenylhydrazone melts at  $151^{\circ}$  (*B.* 29, 230, R. 26).

**Retene Ketone**,  $(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ , melts at  $90^{\circ}$ . **Chrysoketone**,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7$ , melts at  $130^{\circ}$ . See *p.* 418 for the production from o-amidophenyl-*o*-methyl ketone. **Picene Ketone**,  $(\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7)_2\text{CO}$ , melts at  $185^{\circ}$ .

**Oxydiphenylene Ketone, Oxyfluorenone**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{OH})\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ , melting at  $115^{\circ}$ , obtained from sym. o-diamidobenzophenone (*p.* 347) on boiling its diazo-salts with *z*. It forms yellow-red or dark-red alkali salts, which manifest a feeble dye nature. On fusion with caustic potash it decomposes into o-phenylsalicylic acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{COOH})_2$ , which is recondensed by concentrated sulphuric acid to oxydiphenylene ketone (*B.* 23, 112). o-Oxydiphenylene ketone is also prepared from o-amido-phenylene ketone, melting at  $138^{\circ}$ , which is obtained from diphenylene ketone carboxamide (*p.* 420) with bromine and caustic potash (Hofmann's amine reaction). On o-amido-diphenylene ketone is fused with caustic potash it is rearranged into anthridone (*B.* 28, R. 455):

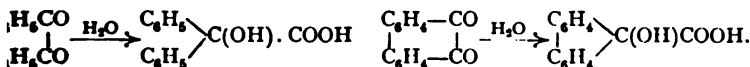


It also results by Beckmann's transposition on heating the oxime of fluorenone with chloride (*B.* 29, 230):



**Carboxylic Acids:** **Diphenylene Acetic Acid, Fluorene Carboxylic Acid**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $221^{\circ}$ , results on reducing diphenylene glycollic acid with hydriodic acid and phosphorus.

**Diphenylene Glycollic Acid, ms-Oxyfluorene Carboxylic Acid**,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{C}(\text{OH})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $162^{\circ}$ , is produced when phenanthraquinone is boiled with sodium oxide. In this instance an atomic rearrangement occurs, similar to that observed in the transition of benzil to benzilic acid, or of  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone to oxyindene carboxylic acids (*p.* 386):



It is decomposed by concentrated sulphuric acid or upon heating, when carbon dioxide and water split off and fluorene ether results. Chromic acid oxidizes it to diphenylene ketone. Analogues of diphenylene glycollic acid have been obtained from retene- and chrysene-quinone (above).

**Diphenylene-ketone Carboxylic Acids**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ . The *a*-acid, melting at  $191^{\circ}$ , is produced by the oxidation of fluoranthene with a chromic acid mixture.

Sodium amalgam converts it into a fluorenic acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ ,

melting at  $245^{\circ}$ , which yields fluorene if it be distilled with zinc-dust. Isodiphe results when it is fused with potassium hydroxide (p. 341), while heating with breaks it down into carbon dioxide and diphenylene ketone.

The  $\beta$ -acid is formed upon heating diphenylene-ketone dicarboxylic acid; it comes yellow needles that sublime without melting. The  $\gamma$ - or *ortho*-acid is formed when diphenic acid is heated. It melts at  $223^{\circ}$ . Fusion with caustic potash changes diphenic acid (B. 20, 846; 22, R. 727).

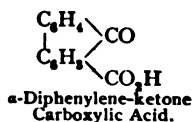
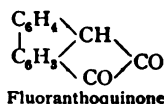
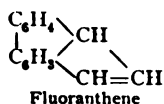
**Diphenylene-ketone Dicarboxylic Acid**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CO} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ (\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2 \end{array}$ , results when retene-

is oxidized with potassium permanganate. A sulphur-yellow, crystalline powder, above  $270^{\circ}$  breaks down into carbon dioxide and  $\beta$ -diphenylene-ketone carboxylic acid. It yields diphenyl when distilled with lime. Diphenylene-ketone is produced from silver salt.

**Fluoranthene** and **pyrene**, occurring in the "stubby fat" of Idri, also found with the condensed hydrocarbons just mentioned in the boiling fractions of coal-tar.

**Fluoranthene**,  $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{10}$ , Idryl, melts at  $110^{\circ}$ . Its *picric acid compound* melts at  $188^{\circ}$ . **Fluoranthraquinone**,  $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_8\text{O}_2$ , is obtained by oxidizing idryl with chromic acid, and may be further oxidized (with the elimination of  $\text{CO}_2$ ) to  $\alpha$ -diphenylene-ketone carboxylic acid.

The constitution of fluoranthene and of fluoranthraquinone probably corresponds to the following formulas (A. 200, 1):



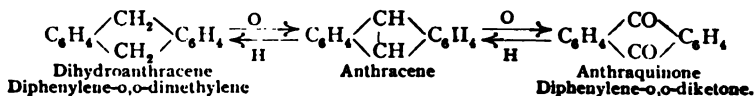
**Pyrene**,  $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{10}$ , melts at  $148^{\circ}$  and boils at  $260^{\circ}$  (60 mm.). The *picric acid compound* melts at  $222^{\circ}$ . Chromic acid oxidizes it to **Pyrenquinone**,  $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_8\text{O}_2$ .

**Pyrenic Acid**,  $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_8\text{O}_5$ , results upon further oxidation of pyrenquinone. It is a ketone-dicarboxylic acid. It forms an anhydride or imide compound quite readily (B. 19, 1997). When pyrenic acid is distilled with lime, it forms **Pyrene Ket**,  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_8(\text{CO})$ , melting at  $141^{\circ}$ . Potassium permanganate oxidizes pyrenic acid to 1,4,5,8-naphthalene tetracarboxylic acid (p. 409), and pyrene ketone to naphthalic acid.

For the constitution of pyrene consult B. 20, 365; A. 240, 147.

## 5. ANTHRACENE GROUP.

Anthracene (from *ἄνθραξ*, carbon), occurring together with the isomeric phenanthrene in the high-boiling portions of coal-tar, is the parent substance of a large group of bodies to which a series of vegetable compounds, and in particular the very important dye (*alizarine*, *purpurine*, etc.) of madder-root belong. The anthracene derivatives can be viewed as diphenylene compounds, in which two phenyl groups are linked together by two C-atoms occupying the ortho-positions with reference to one another:



Dihydroanthracene, when heated or when oxidized, loses two atoms of hydrogen, and becomes anthracene. When this occurs it may be supposed that a mutual union of the two methylene carbon atoms takes place (see, however, B. 24, R. 728).

*Synthetic Methods for the Production of Anthracene Derivatives:*

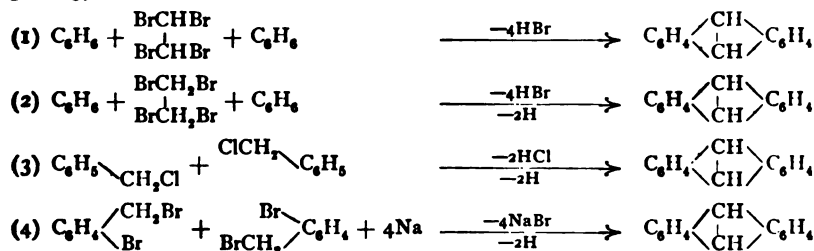
1. Anthracene may be formed from benzene, acetylene tetrabromide, and  $Al_2Cl_6$  (B. 16, 623).

2. It is also produced from methylene bromide, benzene, and  $Al_2Cl_6$ . Dihydroanthracene is the primary product, but it loses two atoms of hydrogen, and anthracene results.

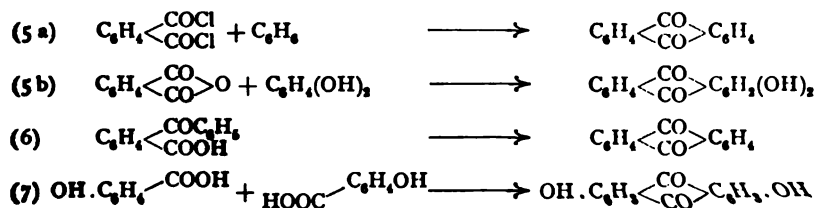
3. Further, dihydroanthracene, and subsequently anthracene, is obtained (together with toluene) from two molecules of benzyl chloride on heating it with aluminium chloride or with water to  $200^\circ$  (Limpricht, 1866), when dibenzyl will also be produced.

Anthracene may also be derived from diphenylmethane with  $Al_2Cl_6$ . It is very probable that the diphenylmethane is first resolved into benzyl chloride and benzene. Unsym. diphenylethane in an analogous manner yields ms-dimethylantracene (B. 27, 3238).

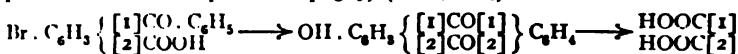
4. Finally, dihydroanthracene is obtained from two molecules of o-bromobenzyl bromide by the action of metallic sodium (B. 12, 1965) (compare p. 413):



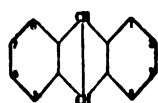
Anthraquinones are obtained (5 a) by the action of zinc-dust upon the chloride of phthalic acid and benzene. (5 b) Similarly, oxyanthraquinones are produced on heating phthalic anhydride with 1 mol. of a mono- or polyhydric phenol and sulphuric acid to  $150^\circ$ . If there is an excess of phenol present, phthaleins result (p. 363). (6) o-Benzoyl-benzoic acid and  $P_2O_5$  yield anthraquinone on the application of heat. (7) Di- and tetra-oxyanthraquinones are formed when metaoxy- and dimetadioxybenzoic acids are heated with sulphuric acid (p. 222):



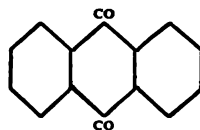
The methods just given and a series of others—*e. g.*, the production of anthracene from *o*-tolylphenyl ketone and lead oxide, and that of anthracene and methylene from *o*-tolylphenylketone and *o*-ditolylketone by means of zinc-dust (B. 23, F demonstrate the accepted symmetry of the derivatives of anthracene, which is proved by the following fact: brominated *o*-benzoylbenzoic acid from *o*-phth (p. 350) yields bromanthraquinone; the oxyanthraquinone obtained from th however, can be oxidized to *o*-phthalic acid; so that both in the synthesis and position of the molecule *o*-phthalic acid appears, which, in the first instance, nected with the one and in the second case with the second half of the molecu pare constitution of naphthalene, p. 389) (B. 12, 2124):



Therefore, anthraquinone and anthracene, genetically connected with it, have metrical constitution corresponding to the symbols:



Anthracene



Anthraquinone.

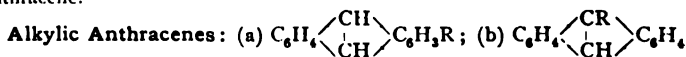
Anthracene is a nucleus resulting from the condensation of three benzene nuclei, in which the intermediate or middle member shows a para-union. The positions 8 (*α*-) are alike; also 2, 3, 6, 7 (*β*-). By the replacement of the middle hydrogen at anthracene derivatives or *meso*-derivatives are obtained. In contrast with the substituents of the two outer benzene nuclei are designated by the prefix *benz.* In the anthracene transpositions the intermediate C-atoms are first attacked.

**Anthracene**,  $C_{14}H_{10}$ , melting at  $213^\circ$  and boiling at  $351^\circ$ , is iso with tolane (p. 371) and phenanthrene (p. 413), and is produced according to the methods indicated upon p. 421. (See also B. 28, R. 148 is found in large quantities in coal-tar.

Crude anthracene, boiling at  $340$ – $360^\circ$  and beyond, is best purified by treating it with liquid sulphurous acid, which chiefly takes up the admixtures (B. 26, R. 634). For additional methods of purification see B. 18, 3034; 21, R. 75; A. 191, 288. Chemically pure anthracene is prepared by heating anthraquinone with zinc-dust.

Anthracene crystallizes in colorless monoclinic tables, showing a beautiful blue fluorescence. It dissolves with difficulty in alcohol and ether but easily in hot benzene. Picric acid unites with it, yielding  $C_{14}H_9(C_6H_2(NO_2)_3O)_3$ , crystallizing in red needles, and melting at  $138^\circ$ .

When the cold saturated solution of anthracene in benzene, or, better, in xylene (I. R. 547), is exposed to sunlight, a dimolecular modification of anthracene, *Paranthracene*,  $(C_{14}H_{10})_2$ , separates out in plates. It dissolves with difficulty in benzene, is attacked by nitric acid or bromine, melts at  $244^\circ$ , and in so doing reverts to colorless anthracene.



Benz-alkyl Derivatives      *ms*- or *γ*-Alkyl Derivatives.

(a) The benz-mono-alkyl anthracenes can exist in two isomerides (*α*- and *β*-).

**Methyl Anthracene**,  $C_{14}H_4(CH_3)_2C_6H_5 \cdot CH_3$ , melting at  $190^\circ$ , occurs in anthracene, and resembles anthracene. It is obtained on conducting the vapour of ditolyl-methane and ditolyl-ethane through a red-hot tube; also on heating ci

and chrysophanic acid (hydroxymethyl-anthraquinones) with zinc-dust, as well as by prolonged boiling of benzoyl xylene,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5(CH_3)_2$ . Concentrated nitric acid converts it into Methyl-anthraquinone. Anthraquinone-carboxylic acid is produced when methyl-anthracene, dissolved in glacial acetic acid, is oxidized by chromic acid.

Benz-dimethylantracenes,  $C_{14}H_8(CH_3)_2$ , melting at  $200^\circ$  and  $225^\circ$ , are obtained from xylol chloride, and from toluene and  $CH_2Cl_2$  by means of  $Al_2Cl_6$ , according to methods 2 and 3 (p. 421). A dimethyl anthracene has been isolated from the high-boiling aniline oils.

(b) Meso- or  $\gamma$ -Alkyl Anthracenes are obtained from the alkyl hydranthranols,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} CR(OH) \\ CH \end{smallmatrix} C_6H_4$ , by the elimination of water. This happens on boiling them with alcohol, hydrochloric acid, or picric acid (A. 212, 100). Alkyl oxanthranols are formed upon oxidation:  $\gamma$ -ethyl, isobutyl, and amyl anthracenes, melting at  $60^\circ$ ,  $57^\circ$ , and  $59^\circ$ .  $\gamma$ -Phenyl anthracene,  $C_{14}H_8(C_6H_5)$ , melting at  $152^\circ$ , is obtained from phenyl anthranol (p. 424) with zinc-dust.

$\gamma$ -Dimethyl Anthracene,  $C_6H_4(C \cdot CH_3)_2C_6H_4$ , melting at  $179^\circ$ , is derived from its dihydride, the condensation product obtained from ethidene chloride and benzene by means of  $Al_2Cl_6$  (p. 424) (see B. 21, 1176).

Substituted Anthracenes: Chlorine and bromine acting upon the  $CS_2$ -solution of anthracene first substitute the middle CH-groups with the production of  $\gamma$ -mono- and dihalogen anthracenes.  $\gamma$ -Dibrom-anthracene is also formed by the action of bromine upon anthracene hydride (p. 424).

When anthracene is introduced into concentrated nitric acid, free from  $NO_2$ , ms-Dinitroanthracene,  $C_6H_4(C \cdot NO_2)_2C_6H_4$ , results. When this is carefully heated it sublimes without decomposition; if, on the contrary, it be rapidly heated, it decomposes readily into NO and anthraquinone:  $C_6H_4(C \cdot NO_2)_2C_6H_4 \longrightarrow 2NO + C_6H_4(CO)_2C_6H_4$ . Fuming nitric acid and alcohol convert anthracene into anthracene ethyl nitrate,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} CH(OC_2H_5) \\ CH(NO_2) \end{smallmatrix} C_6H_4$ , which also quickly changes to anthraquinone, but with

alcoholic potash yields pseudo-nitroso-anthrone,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} C(OH) \\ C(NO) \end{smallmatrix} C_6H_4$  (B. 24, R. 652, 947).

$\beta$ -Amido-anthracene, Anthramine,  $C_6H_4(CH)_2C_6H_3 \cdot NH_2$ , melting at  $237^\circ$ , and meso- or  $\gamma$ -Amido-anthracene, decomposing at  $115^\circ$ , are produced on heating  $\beta$ -anthrol and anthranol (see below) with ammonia. meso-Diamidoanthracene,  $C_6H_4(C \cdot NH_2)_2C_6H_4$ , melting at  $146^\circ$ , results from the reduction of ms-dinitroanthracene.

Anthracene Sulphonic Acids result on treating anthracene with sulphuric acid and in the reduction of anthraquinone sulphonic acids (p. 426). Anthracene carefully treated with dilute sulphuric acid yields—

Anthracene Mono-sulphonic Acid,  $C_{14}H_9 \cdot SO_3H$ ; its chloride melts at  $122^\circ$  (B. 28, 2258). Concentrated sulphuric acid produces—

$\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Anthracene Disulphonic Acids, which form dioxyanthracenes on fusion with caustic potash.

Oxyanthracenes: (1)  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} CH \\ CH \end{smallmatrix} C_6H_4 \cdot OH$ . (2)  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} COH \\ CH \end{smallmatrix} C_6H_4$ .

(1)  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Monoxy-anthracene,  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Anthrol, behave like phenols or naphthols.  $\beta$ -Anthrol, from  $\beta$ -anthracene sulphonic acid and  $\beta$ -oxyanthraquinone, is changed by nitrous acid to  $\alpha$ -Nitroso- $\beta$ -anthrol,  $C_6H_4(CH)_2C_6H_3(OH)(NO)$ , which, upon reduction, yields  $\alpha$ -Amido- $\beta$ -anthrol. The latter may be oxidized to  $\beta$ -anthraquinone,

$C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} CH-C-CO-CO \\ CH-C-CH-CH \end{smallmatrix}$  (?), melting with decomposition at  $180^\circ$ , and isomeric with  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone. It corresponds to  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone (B. 27, 1438). It is only after the OH-group has been acetylated that the anthrols can be oxidized to oxyanthraquinones (see oxidation of phenols, p. 143).

Benz-Dioxyanthracenes: Two isomerides,—Chrysazol and Rufol,—having the formula  $OH \cdot C_6H_3 : (CH)_2 : C_6H_3OH$ , are obtained from  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -anthracene disul-

phonic acids. When their acetyl derivatives are oxidized and saponified, chrysazine and anthrarufin result. These are the corresponding dioxyanthraquinones (p. 426).

(2) *ms-Oxyanthracene, Anthranol*, melting with decomposition at  $165^{\circ}$ , is prepared synthetically when concentrated sulphuric acid acts at  $90^{\circ}$  upon *o*-benzylbenzoic acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \text{C(O)OH} \end{smallmatrix}$  (p. 349) (B. 27, 2789). Zinc and acetic acid reduce anthraquinone to anthranol (along with *dianthryl*,  $(\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_9)_2$  (B. 20, 1854). Anthranol can be readily oxidized to anthraquinone. Hydroxylamine hydrochloride converts it into anthraquinone oxime (B. 20, 613). For additional derivatives see B. 21, 1176; 28, R. 772.

Sunlight changes anthranol in benzene solution, similar to anthracene, into a *dianthranol* (B. 29, R. 1143).

*ms-Phenylanthranol*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{C(OH)}- \\ | \\ \text{C(C}_6\text{H}_5) \end{smallmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $141-144^{\circ}$ , is formed when sulphuric acid acts upon triphenylmethane-*o*-carboxylic acid (compare p. 362). Its oxidation product is phenyloxanthranol. It yields phenylanthracene by reduction. Substituted triphenylmethane carboxylic acids form substituted phenylanthranols. In accord with their source, the hydroxyl phenylanthranols, like *dioxyphenylanthranol*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{C(C}_6\text{H}_5\text{OH}) \\ | \\ \text{C(OH)} \end{smallmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{OH}$ , have been designated *phthalidins*, because they are formed from the phthalins, the reduction products of the phthaleins or diphenol-phthalides (p. 303). When oxidized, the phthalidins become *phthalideins*, hydroxyl phenyloxanthranols (p. 425).

*Diphenylanthrone*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{C(C}_6\text{H}_5) \\ | \\ \text{C=O} \end{smallmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $192^{\circ}$ , is a derivative of *anthrone*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 \\ | \\ \text{C=O} \end{smallmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , isomeric with anthranol. It is obtained by condensing unsymmetrical phthalylene tetrachloride (p. 240) with benzene, as well as from phenyloxanthranol by means of benzene and sulphuric acid (B. 28, R. 772).

Anthraquinone is reduced, when digested with zinc-dust and an alkaline hydroxide, to

*ms-Anthrahydroquinone*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{C(OH)} \\ | \\ \text{C(OH)} \end{smallmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ . If exposed to the air it again oxidizes to anthraquinone.

*Dioxyanthranol*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{C(OH)} \\ | \\ \text{CH} \end{smallmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_2(\text{OH})_2$ , so-called *anthrarobin*, results when alizarin is reduced with zinc dust and ammonia. It has been applied therapeutically in certain skin diseases.

*Anthracene Carboxylic Acids*: The  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -acids,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{COOH}$ , are formed from the anthracene-mono-sulphonic acids by means of the cyanides, and from the anthraquinone carboxylic acids by reduction with ammonia and zinc-dust; the  $\alpha$ -acid melts at  $200^{\circ}$ , the  $\beta$ -acid at  $280^{\circ}$ .

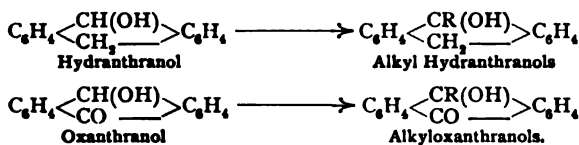
*ms-Anthracene Carboxylic Acid* is formed from its chloride, which is produced when anthracene is heated with phosgene to  $200^{\circ}$  (B. 2, 678). It melts at  $200^{\circ}$  with decomposition. Chromic acid oxidizes it to anthraquinone.

**Hydroanthracenes.**—*Anthracene Dihydride*,  $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{12}$ , results from the action of sodium amalgam upon the alcoholic solution of anthracene. It can also be obtained by many other synthetic methods. When heated with hydriodic acid and amorphous phosphorus to  $220^{\circ}$ , *Anthracene hexahydride*,  $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{16}$ , results. It melts at  $63^{\circ}$ , and boils at  $290^{\circ}$ . *Anthracene perhydride*,  $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{24}$ , is another product. It melts at  $88^{\circ}$  and boils at  $270^{\circ}$  (B. 21, 2510).

*ms-Alkylidene derivatives of anthracene dihydride* are produced in the reduction of the alkyl-oxanthranols, and *ms-dialkyl derivatives* synthetically from alkylidene chlorides, benzene, and  $\text{Al}_2\text{Cl}_6$ : *ms-Dimethyl Anthracene Hydride*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ , melting at  $181^{\circ}$ , yields anthraquinone by oxidation (A. 235, 305), just as benzophenone is obtained from unsym. diphenylethane.

Anthraquinone or diketo-dihydroanthracene must be included with the derivatives of dihydroanthracene. Thereto belong also—

**Hydro-anthranol and oxanthranol**, which result in the reduction of anthraquinone with zinc-dust; and when acted upon with alkali and alkylogens, they yield alkyl derivatives:

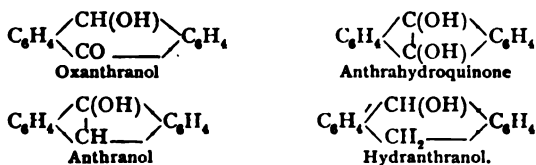


The *alkylic hydranthranols*, when boiled with hydrochloric acid, part with water and yield  $\gamma$ -alkyl anthracenes, which are also produced in the reduction of oxanthranols with zinc-dust. They are reduced by hydriodic acid to alkylidihydroanthracenes (B. 18, 2150; 24, R. 768; A. 212, 67).

**Phenyl-oxanthranol** results from the oxidation of phenylanthranol (p. 424).  $\gamma$ -Alkyl anthracenes are similarly oxidized to alkyloxanthranols.

**Anthraquinone, Diphenylene diketone**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ , melting at  $285^\circ$  and boiling at  $382^\circ$ , sublimes in yellow needles. It is not only produced by the synthetic methods presented on p. 421, but also quite easily by the oxidation of anthracene with a chromic acid mixture (technical preparation, A. Suppl. 7, 285), as well as from anthra-hydride, *ms*-dichlor-, dibrom-, and dinitro-anthracene. It is, compared with the isomeric phenanthraquinone, very stable toward oxidants. It combines with hydroxylamine to anthraquinone-oxime, subliming above  $200^\circ$ . Sulphurous acid does not reduce it (unlike the true quinones).

It reverts to anthracene if heated to  $150^\circ$  with hydriodic acid, or with zinc-dust and ammonia. A variety of intermediate products are obtained in this reaction by simply applying different reducing agents:



When fused with potassium hydroxide (at  $250^\circ$ ), it decomposes into two molecules of benzoic acid; heated with soda-lime, it yields benzene and a little diphenyl.

**Homologous Anthraquinones** are obtained partly in the synthetic way and in part by the oxidation of benz-alkylic anthracenes.

**Methyl Anthraquinone**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CO})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\cdot\text{CH}_3$ , melting at  $177^\circ$ , from nitric acid and methyl anthracene, is also present in crude anthraquinone.

**Substituted Anthraquinones:** Monobrom-anthraquinone, melting at  $187^\circ$ , is formed in the oxidation of tribromanthracene. Tetrabrom-anthracene yields—

**Dibrom-anthraquinone**, which is also produced in the bromination of anthraquinone. It yields alizarin when heated with caustic potash.

A mononitroquinone is obtained when anthraquinone is boiled with concentrated nitric acid. It melts at  $230^\circ$  (B. 16, 363).

**Dinitroanthraquinone** is formed on digesting anthracene with dilute nitric acid (1 part with 3 parts water). It consists of yellow needles or leaflets, melting at  $280^\circ$ , and, like picric acid, manifests the property of forming crystalline combinations (Fritsche's reagent) with many hydrocarbons.

**1-Amido-anthraquinone** melts at  $242^\circ$  (B. 30, 1116).

When anthraquinone is heated with sulphuric acid, or when anthracene sulphonics are oxidized, various anthraquinone-mono- and di-sulphonic acids are produced. When these are fused with caustic potash, mono- and poly-oxyanthraquinones are formed. Some of these are valuable dyes:

$\beta$ -Anthraquinone-monosulphonic Acid	— {	→ Oxyanthraquinone
	→	Alizarin (2OH)
$\alpha$ -Anthraquinone-disulphonic Acid	— {	→ Anthraflavic Acid (2OH)
	→	Flavopurpurin (3OH)
$\beta$ -Anthraquinone-disulphonic Acid	— {	→ Isoanthraflavic Acid (2OH)
	→	Anthrapurpurin (3OH)
$\gamma$ -Anthraquinone-disulphonic Acid	— {	→ Chrysazine (2OH)
	→	Oxychrysazine (3OH)
$\delta$ -Anthraquinone-disulphonic Acid	— {	→ Anthrarufin (2OH)
	→	Oxyanthrarufin (3OH).

The **Oxyanthraquinones** are derived (1) from the brom- and chloro-anthraquinones and from the sulphonic acids on fusion with alkalis when the substituting groups are replaced by hydroxyls.

By stronger fusion there generally ensues an additional entrance of hydroxyl (oxy- and dioxyanthraquinones result from the mono-sulphonic acids); the same is true in the fusion of the oxyanthraquinones (B. 1613).

(2) The oxyanthraquinones may be synthetically prepared on heating phthalic anhydride with phenols (mono- and poly-valent) and sulphuric acid to 150°. The m-oxybenzoic acids (p. 421) also yield them when similarly treated.

The introduction of hydroxyl into anthraquinone and the oxyanthraquinones is effected practically by persulphates in sulphuric acid solution. One or several hydroxyl groups will then enter the anthraquinone molecule, depending upon the conditions which prevail (B. 29, R. 988).

Continued fusion with alkalis causes the oxyanthraquinones to separate into component oxybenzoic acids (same as anthraquinone decomposes into benzoic acid); this reaction aids in the determination of the position of the isomerides (B. 12, 1; A. 280, 1).

All anthraquinones are reduced to anthracene when heated with zinc-dust.

Individual hydroxyls in the oxyanthraquinones are reduced by heating the latter with stannous chloride and sodium hydroxide (A. 183, 216). Heated to 150–200° in ammonia water, single OH-groups are replaced by amide groups.

(a) *Monoxyanthraquinones*,  $C_{14}H_8O_2(OH)$ , the  $\alpha$ - or **Erythro-oxyanthraquinone** melting at 190°, and the  $\beta$ - at 323°, are formed simultaneously on heating together phenol and phthalic anhydride. The  $\beta$ -body is also prepared from  $\beta$ -bromo- or sulphonyl-anthraquinone.

Both oxyanthraquinones yield *alizarin* when fused with caustic potash.

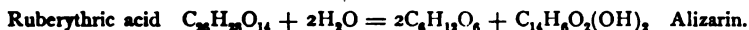
(b) *Dioxyanthraquinones*: The members of this group containing two OH-groups in the 1,2-position (p. 422) are especially interesting, because they unite with metallic oxides to form insoluble, very stable lakes which adhere closely to the fiber. Their color varies with the character of the metal. They are, therefore, very valuable mordants (B. 21, 435, 1164) (compare the similar behavior of the dioxybenzophenones, p. 348, of *naphthazarine*, p. 405, etc. For the theoretical side

consult B. 26, 1574). Alizarin, 1,2-dioxyanthraquinone, is the most important of these dyes.

Nine of the ten possible isomeric dioxyanthraquinones are known.

**Alizarin, 1,2-Dioxyanthraquinone**, melting at  $290^{\circ}$  and subliming at higher temperatures in orange-red needles, is the chief constituent of the dye of the madder root (*Rubia tinctorium*), in which it is contained as *ruberythric acid* (identical with morindin, from *Morinda citrifolia*).

Through the action of a ferment in the madder root, or when it is boiled with dilute acids or alkalis, ruberythric acid decomposes into glucose and alizarin:



The alizarin products (*garancin*, etc.) obtained by such decompositions of madder root were formerly used in dyeing. At present they have been almost entirely supplanted by pure synthetic alizarin.

Artificial alizarin was first obtained by Graebe and Liebermann, in 1868, by heating dibrom-anthraquinone with potassium hydroxide. They had previously observed that the natural alizarin yielded anthracene when it was heated with zinc-dust. Alizarin is also produced from dichlor- and monobrom-anthraquinone, from the two oxyanthraquinones and anthraquinone sulphonie acid, by fusion with caustic potash.

Technically, it is made from anthraquinone prepared from purified (50 per cent.) anthracene. The latter is converted by fuming sulphuric acid into anthraquinone-monosulphonic acid, which is then fused under pressure for several days with caustic soda at a temperature ranging from  $180$ – $200^{\circ}$ . Potassium chlorate is added as an oxidizing agent. The product of the reaction is sodium-alizarin, which is then decomposed with hydrochloric acid and brought into the market in the form of a paste (10–20 per cent.).

Alizarin also results, together with isomeric hystazarin, on heating phthalic anhydride with pyrocatechin and sulphuric acid.

Alizarin dissolves readily in alcohol and ether, and sparingly in hot water. It dissolves with a purple-red color in the alkalis; lime and barium salts throw out the corresponding salts as *blue* precipitates. Alums and tin salts produce *red-colored* precipitates (madder lakes); while ferric salts form *blackish-violet* and chromium salts *violet-brown* precipitates.

In cotton dyeing and printing the beautiful red lake and the almost black iron lake are generally employed. The goods are mordanted with alumina (by immersing them in aluminium-acetate, then heating, whereby aluminium hydroxide is deposited on the fibers) and then dipped into the solution of alizarin; the resulting alizarin-aluminate is fixed by the fibers. In dyeing with turkey-red it is customary to mordant the cloth with oil and alum, when the alumina then unites both with the oleic acid and with the alizarin.

Alizarin is decomposed by protracted fusion with caustic potash into benzoic and protocatechuic acids.

**$\beta$ -Nitroalizarin, Alizarin Orange**,  $C_6H_4(CO)_2C_6H(OH)_2(3)NO_2$ , consists of orange-red leaflets, melting at  $244^{\circ}$ . It is produced by nitrating alizarin in glacial acetic acid or by the action of  $NO_2$ -vapors. It is prepared technically. Its alumina lake is *orange* in color. **Alizarin-blue**, a derivative of anthraquinoline (B. 18, 447), results upon heating it with glycerol and sulphuric acid (see Skraup's quinoline synthesis).

**$\beta$ -Amidoalizarin** results by the reduction of  $\beta$ -nitroalizarin. Acetic anhydride converts it into an ethenyl compound, which proves that the amido-group occupies an ortho position relatively to a hydroxyl group (B. 18, 1666).

Isomeric  $\alpha$ -nitro-alizarin (1,2,4) is obtained by the nitration of diaceto-alizarin. It melts at  $195^{\circ}$  (compare B. 24, 1610).

Alizarin-amide,  $C_{14}H_6O_2 \cdot \frac{NH_3}{OH}$ , obtained by heating alizarin with ammonia-vapour to  $200^{\circ}$ , melts at  $225^{\circ}$ .

When nitro-anthraquinones are reduced hydroxylamidoanthraquinones are formed; these can be rearranged by sulphuric acid into amido-oxyanthraquinones.

Three of the dioxyanthraquinones isomeric with alizarin contain the OH-groups in one benzene nucleus. They are:

(1,3)-Purpuroxanthin, from phthalic anhydride and resorcinol; (1,4)-quinizarin, from hydroquinone; and, (2,3)-hystazarin, from pyrocatechin (B. 28, 116). They are prepared more advantageously from their *ethers*, which result by the condensation of the corresponding dioxy-benzene ethers with phthalic anhydride and  $Al_2Cl_6$ .

The following heteronuclear dioxyanthraquinones are produced when *m*-oxybenzoic acid is heated:

(1,5)-Anthrarufin, (1,7)-Metadioxyanthraquinone, (2,6)-Anthraflavic Acid. Isoanthraflavic Acid is obtained from  $\beta$ -anthraquinone-sulphonic acid. Chrysarin is another isomeride. It is obtained from its tetranitro-compound,  $C_{14}H_2(NO_2)_4O_2 \cdot (OH)_2$ , the so-called chrysammic acid, by reduction and the replacement of the amid groups. This latter acid is obtained when aloes are digested with concentrated nitric acid. Consult B. 19, 2327, upon the spectra of the dioxyanthraquinones.

*Homologous Dioxyanthraquinones:* Dioxymethylantraquinone,  $C_{14}H_8(CH_3)_2O_2 \cdot (OH)_2$ , is chrysophanic or Rheinic Acid, melting at  $178^{\circ}$  (A. 284, 193). It exists in senna leaves (of the *Cassia* varieties) and in the root of rhubarb (from the *Fava* variety). Zinc-dust reduces it to methyl anthracene.

Chrysarobin,  $C_{20}H_{24}O_7$ , a reduction product of chrysophanic acid, occurs in gon- and aroroba powder. Air oxidizes its alkaline solution to chrysophanic acid. The same occurs in the animal organism (B. 21, 447).

Methyl-alizarin, melting at  $250$ – $252^{\circ}$ , is isomeric with dioxymethylantraquinone. It is obtained from methyl-anthraquinone sulphonic acid. It is very similar to alizarin.

Various methylpurpuroxanthins have been prepared by the condensation of 1,3-dioxybenzoic acid with *o*- and *m*-toluic acids (B. 29, R. 141).

Dimethyl-anthrarufin,  $(CH_3)(OH)C_6H_2(CO)_2C_6H_2(CH_3)(OH)$ , can also be obtained by the action of sulphuric acid upon sym. oxytoluic acid (B. 22, 3273).

### (c) *Trioxyanthraquinones.*

These are produced on oxidizing anthraquinone disulphonic acids and dioxyanthraquinones, or upon fusing them with alkalis.

Purpurin,  $C_6H_4 \cdot \frac{CO}{CO} \cdot C_6H[1,2,4](OH)_3 + H_2O$ , melting at  $253^{\circ}$  (anhydrous) and sublinable, is present with alizarin in the madder root. It is prepared artificially by heating alizarin and quinizarin with manganese dioxide and sulphuric acid to  $150^{\circ}$ . Is is also obtained from tribrom-anthraquinone. It dissolves with a pure red color in hot water, alcohol, ether, and the alkalis. Lime and baryta-water yield purple-red precipitates. It yields a beautiful scarlet red with alumina mordants.

Purpurin-amide,  $C_{14}H_6O_2(OH)_2NH_3$ , is obtained on digesting purpurin with aqueous ammonia at  $150^{\circ}$ .

The following are isomerides of purpurin: anthragallol (1,2,3), a constituent of alizarin brown, anthra- or isopurpurin (1,2,7), and flavopurpurin (1,2,6), applied technically in dyeing and printing, and also oxychrysazin (1,2,5?). Consult A. 280, 1, for the determination of the constitution of these bodies from the decompositions of the disulphonic acids genetically connected with them.

*Homologous Trioxyanthraquinones:* Emodin, and a trioxymethylantraquinone, melting at  $203^{\circ}$  and isomeric with it, are formed, together with rhamnose, by the decomposition of frangulin, from the bark of *Rhamnus frangula*, by means of alcoholic

hydrochloric acid (B. 25, R. 371). Emodin also results from the decomposition of *polygamine*.

(d) *Tetra- and Poly-oxyanthraquinones*: When oxyanthraquinones are heated with fuming sulphuric acid, new hydroxyls enter these bodies, para-hydrogen atoms of the non-substituted nucleus being replaced (J. pr. Ch. [2], 43, 231; 44, 103). Thus, *alizarin* yields *quinalizarin*, *alizarin-bordeaux*,  $C_{14}H_6O_4-1,2,5,8-(OH)_4$ .

Two tetraoxyanthraquinones, *anthrachrysone* and *rufiopin*, are obtained by heating symmetrical dioxybenzoic acid and opianic acid (p. 237) or protocatechuic acid (p. 227) with sulphuric acid.

*Rufigallic Acid* is a hexa-oxy-anthraquinone,  $C_{14}H_2O_8-1,2,3,5,6,7-(OH)_6$ , which is formed when gallic acid is heated with sulphuric acid. It dissolves with an indigo-blue color in alkalis.

It dyes chrom-mordanted material brown. It appears in trade in conjunction with *anthrapurpurin* as *alizarin* or *anthracene brown*. *Anthracene blue*, formed by the action of fuming sulphuric acid upon dinitroanthraquinone, is an isomeric hexaoxyanthraquinone.

*Anthraquinone Carboxylic Acids*:  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -*Anthraquinone Carboxylic Acids* are produced in the oxidation of anthracene carboxylic acids. The  $\alpha$ -acid (m. p.  $285^\circ$ ) is also formed in the condensation of benzoyl phthalic acid and isophthalic acid (B. 29, R. 284), and the  $\beta$ -acid when chromic acid acts upon methylanthracene. The amide of the  $\alpha$ -acid, treated with bromine and alkali, yields 1-amidoanthraquinone (p. 425; B. 30, 1115). *Trioxanthraquinone Carboxylic Acid*, *purpurin carboxylic acid*,  $C_{14}H_4O_7(OH)CO_2H$ , is pseudo-purpurin, which occurs in crude purpurin (from madder). On heating, it decomposes into carbon dioxide and purpurin.

See C. 1894, II, 784, for the synthetic purpurin carboxylic acids.

*Naphanthracene*,  $C_8H_4\left\langle\begin{smallmatrix} CH \\ CH \end{smallmatrix}\right\rangle C_{10}H_6$ , melting at  $141^\circ$ , may be included among the homologous anthracenes. It is isomeric with chrysene (p. 416). It is formed when its quinone is digested with zinc-dust and ammonia.

*Naphanthraquinone*,  $C_8H_4(CO)_2C_{10}H_6$ , melting at  $168^\circ$ , is obtained from naphthoyl-*o*-benzoic acid,  $C_8H_4\left\langle\begin{smallmatrix} COOH \\ CO \end{smallmatrix}\right\rangle C_{10}H_7$ , the same as anthraquinone from benzoyl-benzoic acid (B. 19, 2209; 29, 827).

#### GLYCOSIDES OR GLUCOSIDES AND PENTOSIDES.

Glycosides or glucosides are those vegetable substances which break down into sugars, chiefly grape sugar or glucose, and other bodies, when they are exposed to the action of unorganized ferments, enzymes (1, 587). Some of them decompose into isodulcitol or rhamnose, a pentose, hence they are designated as *pentosides*. In many glycosides the exact nature of the sugar is not known. The glycosides and pentosides are therefore to be regarded as ethereal sugar derivatives. Some of them were described under their decomposition products, while many have been synthesized.

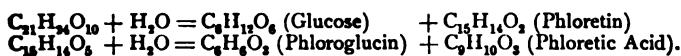
E. Fischer demonstrated that the simplest glucosides could be prepared by the action of hydrochloric acid upon alcoholic sugar solutions; they have been described (1, 549).

1. *Myronic Acid*,  $C_{10}H_{10}NS_2O_{10}$ , occurs as potassium salt in the seeds of black mustard. This crystallizes from water in fine needles. On boiling it with baryta-water, or by the action of the ferment *myrosin*, present in the seed, the salt decomposes into glucose, allyl mustard oil, and primary potassium sulphate.

2. *Arbutin*,  $C_{12}H_{16}O_7$ , and *Methyl Arbutin*,  $C_{13}H_{18}O_7$ , are found in the leaves of *Arbutus uva ursi*. Arbutin crystallizes in fine needles, with  $\frac{1}{2}$ -1 molecule of water.



the phloroglucin ester of p-oxyhydratropic acid, and the latter into phloroglucin (p. 165) and phloretic acid (p. 226) :



7. **Æsculin**,  $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{18}\text{O}_9 + \frac{1}{2}\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melts at about  $205^\circ$  when it is anhydrous. It is found in the horse-chestnut, *Æsculus hippocastanum*, and in the root of the wild jasmine, *Gelsemium sempervirens*. Acids or ferments resolve it into glucose and æsculetine or 4,5-dioxycoumarin.

8. **Daphnin**,  $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{18}\text{O}_9 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melting at  $200^\circ$ , is isomeric with the preceding. It is obtained from the bark of *Daphne alpina*. It breaks down into glucose and daphnetin or 3,5-dioxycoumarin (p. 283).

9. **Fraxin**,  $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{20}\text{O}_{10}$ , occurs in the bark of *Fraxinus excelsior*, and, like æsculin, in the bark of the horse-chestnut. It decomposes into glucose and fraxetin, the monomethyl ether of a trioxycoumarin (B. 27, R. 130).

10. **Iridin**,  $\text{C}_{24}\text{H}_{36}\text{O}_{13}$ , melting at  $208^\circ$ , occurs in the root of the violet, *Iris florentina*, etc. Dilute sulphuric acid resolves it into grape sugar and irigenin,  $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{18}\text{O}_8$ . The latter is probably a polyoxyketone. Concentrated caustic alkali decomposes it into formic acid, an aromatic oxyacid,—*iridic acid*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_4$ , melting at  $118^\circ$ , which by loss of  $\text{CO}_2$  becomes iridol or 3-oxy-4,5-dimethoxy-1-methylbenzene, melting at  $57^\circ$ ,—and iridol,  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_8\text{O}_4$ , or methoxyphloroglucin, melting at  $186^\circ$  (p. 165) (B. 26, 2010; 27, R. 514).

11. **Ruberythric Acid**,  $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{38}\text{O}_{14} = \text{HO} \cdot \text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{16}\text{O}_2 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_3(\text{OH})_7$ , melting at  $258\text{--}260^\circ$ , is the glucoside of alizarin (p. 427). It is formed in the madder root of *Rubia tinctorum*, and breaks down under the influence of hydrochloric acid into alizarin and glucose (B. 20, 2244). Purpurin is also contained in the madder root as a glucoside.

12. **Digitalin** (*Digitalinum verum*, Kiliani),  $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{46}\text{O}_{13}$ , is an amorphous glucoside. It is the active principle of the digitalis glucosides, which occur in the leaves of *Digitalis purpurea* and *lutea*. Concentrated hydrochloric acid breaks it down into digitaligenin,  $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{22}\text{O}_7$ , grape sugar,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6$ , and digitalose,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_6$ .

Its therapeutic action consists in its occasioning "less frequent but more satisfactory heart contractions."

The chief ingredient of the digitalis glycosides is without therapeutic action. It is crystalline digitonin,  $\text{C}_{27}\text{H}_{44}\text{O}_{13}$ , which is resolved by aqueous alcoholic hydrochloric acid into digitogenin,  $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{24}\text{O}_6$ , glucose, and galactose. The decomposition of the latter has led to a series of acids, the constitution of which is as yet undetermined (B. 27, R. 881; 28, R. 1056).

13. **Saponin**,  $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{34}\text{O}_{18}$ , from the root of *Saponaria officinalis*, is a white amorphous powder, which provokes sneezing and foams in aqueous solutions. Its decomposition yields glucose and sapogenin,  $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{22}\text{O}_2$ .

14. **Convolvulin**,  $\text{C}_{27}\text{H}_{50}\text{O}_{16}$ , from the jalapa root of *Convolvulus purga*, is a gummy mass, which is a powerful purgative. Among its decomposition products are, in addition to a sugar, D-Methyl-ethyl-acetic Acid, and an Oxypentadecylic Acid,  $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{27}\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3) \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{C}_6\text{H}_{13} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $50^\circ$ . Nitric acid oxidizes the latter to methyl-ethyl-acetic acid and an acid,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{18}\text{O}_4$  (B. 27, R. 885), melting at  $116^\circ$ , isomeric with sebacic acid (1, 455).

15. **Jalapin**, *scammonin*,  $\text{C}_{34}\text{H}_{58}\text{O}_{18}$ , from *Convolvulus orizabensis*, and from scammonium resin, yields acetic acid, tiglic acid, and palmitic acid upon distillation (B. 26, R. 591; 27, R. 736).

16. **Polygononin**,  $\text{C}_{21}\text{H}_{30}\text{O}_8$ , melting at  $203^\circ$ , is a glycoside, and has been obtained from the root-bark of *Polygonum cuspidatum*. It yields emodin when it is decomposed with alcoholic hydrochloric acid (B. 29, R. 86).

**Pentosides, Rhamnosides**.—The following pentosides are to be regarded as ethereal compounds of *rhamnose*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_6 = \text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_5 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$  (1, 536), or of isodulcitol :

1. **Naringin**,  $C_{21}H_{20}O_{11}$  +  $4H_2O$ , melts when anhydrous at  $170^\circ$ . It is found chiefly in the blossoms and also in other parts of the tree *Citrus decumana* of Jam. The name of the pentoside is derived from "naringi," a Sanscrit word meaning orange. Dilute acids decompose it into rhamnose and *naringenin*, melting at  $230^\circ$ . The latter is the phloroglucin ether of p-oxy-cinnamic acid, which concentrated caustic potash breaks down into phloroglucin (p. 165) and p-coumaric acid (p. 282) (B. 20, 296):



2. **Hesperidin**,  $C_{28}H_{36}O_{12}$  (?), or  $C_{30}H_{40}O_{12}$  (?), melting at  $251^\circ$ , is present in some oranges, lemons, etc. It decomposes, when heated, into glucose, rhamnose, and hesperetin, melting at  $226^\circ$ . Caustic potash resolves the latter into phloroglucin and isoferulic acid (p. 283) (B. 14, 948):



3. **Quercitrin**,  $C_{31}H_{22}O_{12}$ , is present in the bark of *Quercus tinctoria* and is applied under the name quercitrone as a yellow dye. It breaks down into rhamnose and quercetin (see this), a phenylbenzopyrene derivative (B. 26, R. 234; 28, 2303):



4. **Frangulin**,  $C_{21}H_{20}O_9$ , melting at  $286^\circ$ , occurs in the bark of *Rhamnus frangula*. When it is saponified with alcoholic hydrochloric acid rhamnose, *emodin* (p. 429) and a trioxymethylanthraquinone, isomeric with the latter, are produced (B. 25, R. 370):



#### BITTER PRINCIPLES.

Under the head of "bitter principles," or indifferent substances, is embraced a class of vegetable bodies many of which have already found their place in the chemical system. Those yet uninvestigated are:

**Aloin**,  $C_{17}H_{14}O_7$ , or  $C_{17}H_{16}O_7$  (?) (B. 23, R. 207), found in aloes, the dried sap of many plants of the aloë variety. It forms fine needles, possesses a very bitter taste, and acts as a strong purgative. If digested with nitric acid it yields *aloeic acid*,  $C_{14}H_8(NO_2)_4O_7$  (*tetranitroanthraquinone*) and chrysammic acid, *di-oxytetranitroanthraquinone*,  $C_{14}H_2(NO_2)_4(OH)_2$ . Anthracene is formed when aloin is heated with zinc-dust (B. 1, 105). It forms *alorinic acid*,  $C_9H_{10}O_3$  +  $H_2O$ , when fused with caustic potash. This breaks down into orcin and acetic acid.

**Cantharidin**,  $C_{10}H_{12}O_4$ , melts at  $218^\circ$  and sublimes readily. It is contained in Spanish flies and other insects. It tastes very bitter and produces blisters on the skin. It dissolves when heated with alkalis and forms salts of *cantharinic acid*,  $C_{10}H_{10}O_3$ . It combines with phenylhydrazine to an *addition product*,  $C_{18}H_{20}N_2O_4$ , melting at  $194^\circ$ , and a *phenylhydrazone*, melting at  $238^\circ$  (B. 26, 140). Hydriodic acid converts cantharidin into *cantharic acid*,  $C_{10}H_{12}O_4 - C_9H_{11}O \cdot CO \cdot CO_2H$ , isomeric with it. When this acid is distilled with lime, *cantharene* or *dihydro-o-xylene* (p. 294) results.

**Picrotoxin**,  $C_{13}H_{16}O_6 + H_2O$ , is found in the grains of cockle, and crystallizes in fine needles, melting at  $201^\circ$ . It has an extremely bitter taste and is very poisonous. When digested with hydriodic acid it becomes *picrotoxic acid*,  $C_{13}H_{18}O_4$  (B. 24, R. 912), melting at  $134^\circ$ .

**Santonin**,  $C_{15}H_{18}O_3$ , melting at  $170^\circ$ ,  $[\alpha]_D = -171.37^\circ$ , is the active principle of worm-seed. It dissolves in alkalis to salts of **Santonin Acid**,  $C_{15}H_{20}O_4$ , which breaks down at  $120^\circ$  into water and santonin. On boiling with baryta-water we have formed salts of isomeric **santoic acid**,  $C_{15}H_{20}O_4$ , which melts at  $171^\circ$ .

This acid, upon further oxidation, yields a tetracarboxylic acid. For its constitution see B. 29, R. 1119. Santonin is a lactone. It bears the same relation to santonic and santolic acids as coumarin to coumarinic and coumaric acids. Again, it contains the ketone group; its *phenylhydrazone* melts at  $220^{\circ}$ . When santonin is reduced with hydriodic acid or with stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid, *santous acid*,  $C_{15}H_{20}O_3$ , results. This is dextro-rotatory and melts at  $179^{\circ}$ . The corresponding levorotatory modification and the (d + l)-acid are known. When these three acids are fused with caustic potash, propionic acid, dimethyl- $\beta$ -naphthol, and hydrogen are produced. Hence it would seem that santonin is a derivative of a *hexahydrodimethylnaphthalene* (B. 27, 530; 28, R. 392; 29, R. 291, 296). When santonin is reduced with tin and hydrochloric acid, not only santous acid is formed, but also a hydrocarbon,  $C_{10}H_{13}(CH_3)_2$  ( $C_{11}H_{14}$ ), boiling at  $248^{\circ}$ , which probably is dimethylethyl-octohydronaphthalene (B. 28, R. 622).

The conversion of santonin in acetic acid solution, in sunlight, into photosantonic acid,  $C_{15}H_{18}O_5$ , and in alcoholic solution into photosantonic ethyl ether (B. 18, 2859), is remarkable.

### NATURAL DYES.

The important natural dyes, *indigo*, *alizarin*, and its allies, *euxanthic acid*, *gentisin*, etc., have found their place in the system of organic chemistry. The following are some of the natural dyes which have not yet been investigated:

**Brasilin**,  $C_{16}H_{14}O_6$ , is found in Brazil-wood and red-wood; crystallizes with  $1\frac{1}{2}H_2O$  in white, shining needles, and dissolves in alkalis with a carmine-red color on exposure to the air. Acids then precipitate *brasilin*,  $C_{16}H_{14}O_6 + H_2O$ , from the solution. The action of iodine upon brasilin also produces this compound. It regenerates brasilin by reduction. When distilled, it yields resorcinol.

Brasilin forms mono-, di-, tri-, and tetra-alkyl ethers (B. 27, 524; R. 304; 29, R. 219).

**Hæmatoxylin**,  $C_{16}H_{14}O_6 + 3H_2O$ , the coloring-matter of logwood (*Hæmatoxylon Campechianum*), is very soluble in water and alcohol, and crystallizes in yellowish prisms having a sweet taste. It dissolves in alkalis with a violet-blue color. When distilled or fused with potassium hydroxide, pyrogallic acid and resorcinol result from it. If the ammonium hydroxide solution be allowed to stand exposed to the air, there results hæmatein-ammonia,  $C_{16}H_{11}(NH_4)O_6$ , from which acetic acid precipitates the free hæmatin,  $C_{16}H_{13}O_6$  (at  $120^{\circ}$ ), a reddish-brown body, which has metallic lustre after drying (A. 216, 236). It yields penta-ethyl- and penta-acetyl ethers. The behavior of brasilin and hæmatoxylin seems to point to relations between these two bodies and the xanthone and fluorane derivatives (B. 22, R. 558; 27, R. 304; 29, R. 219).

**Carthamin**,  $C_{14}H_{18}O_7$ , occurs in safflower, the blossoms of *Carthamus tinctorium*, and is precipitated from its soda solution by acetic acid as a dark red powder, which, on drying, acquires a metallic lustre. It dissolves with a beautiful red color in alcohol and the alkalis. It yields para-oxybenzoic acid with caustic potash (A. 136, 117).

**Curcumin**,  $C_{16}H_{16}O_4$ , the coloring-matter of turmeric root, from *Curcuma longa* and *viridiflora*, crystallizes in orange-yellow prisms, melts at  $177^{\circ}$ , and dissolves in the alkalis to brownish-red salts. Ethyl vanillic acid is obtained on oxidizing diethyl-curcumin with potassium permanganate (B. 17, R. 332).

**Luteolin**, **Maclurin**, see p. 228.

**Litmus**, see p. 162.

**Usnicinic Acid**, **Lichen Substances**, etc.—A. 295, 222; B. 30, 357.

**Carminic Acid**,  $C_{11}H_{12}O_7$ , is found in cochineal, from *Coccus cacti coccinelliferi*, an insect peculiar to different cactus varieties. It is a purple-red mass, dissolving readily in water and alcohol, which forms red salts with the alkalis. Boiling nitric acid converts it into *nitrococcic acid* (p. 226). Bromine converts carminic acid into two bromides, a tribromide ( $\beta$ ) and a tetrabromide ( $\alpha$ ), which by further decomposition yield methyl-

*ditromoxypthalic acid*,  $\text{HO}[4]\text{C}_6[3,5]\text{Br}_2[6]\text{CH}_2[1,2](\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$ . The  $\beta$ -bromi probably an  $\alpha$ -naphthoquinone derivative, and carmalic acid the hydrate of a methylic  $\alpha$ -naphthoquinone (p. 405) (B. 26, 2647; 27, 2989).

Potassium persulphate oxidises the cochineal dye to two acids, which can be separated by their varying solubility in water. They are *coccinillic acid* and *coccinic*. Bromine converts the first into tribromocresotinic acid (B. 30, 690). Cochine applied in wool-dyeing for the production of scarlet-red colors. This application diminished very greatly since the discovery of the red azo-dyes, like *Bieberich scarlet* others.

Chlorophyll, *Leaf Green*, occurs in all the green parts of plants and in the chlorophyll granules, which also contain wax and other substances. The composition of chlorophyll has not yet been established. There appears to be some iron in it. See A. 81, for the decomposition of chlorophyll with alkalies and acids. It is rather remarkable that chlorophyll substances yield pyrrole when they are distilled with zinc-dust, hence appear to be intimately related to this substance. This observation was also made of the blood substances (I, 585). The hematoporphyrin obtained from the latter shows great similarity in absorption spectra to the phylloporphyrin from chlorophyll, so there seems to be some connection in the constitution of blood and vegetable dyes (B. 29, 1766; R. 415).

### III. HETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDS.

The carbocyclic substances treated in the preceding section belong to the class of isocyclic compounds which consist of rings of atoms of one and the same element. Apparently, very few elements are adapted to such a ring-formation.\*

However, substances are known in great number and complexity which are based upon ring-skeletons consisting of atoms of various elements. These bodies have been arranged under the designation "*heterocyclic compounds*." It is true that a series of inorganic bodies† can be included in this category, but it is our purpose to consider only the "organo-inorganic"—i. e., those ring-systems the members of which are formed from carbon in union with other elements, most important of which are oxygen, sulphur, but especially nitrogen. In many cases sulphur can be replaced by selenium, and there are some substances known in which phosphorus forms a ring with C-atoms.‡

From the standpoint of organic chemistry, the basal element of these rings is carbon, and accordingly the members not produced by C-atoms are designated as *hetero-atoms*, and distinguished as *mono-, di-, tri-, tetra-, etc.*, hetero-atomic rings, depending upon whether one, two, three, four, or more hetero-atoms have participated in their formation. To express the number of atoms constituting the entire ring, the rings are termed *three-, four-, five-, six-, and poly-membered rings*.

Many heterocyclic compounds have been discussed in the preceding chapters—for example, the *cyclic ethers of the glycols and thioglycols*, like ethylene oxide, diethylene dioxide, diethylene disulphide; the *cyclic alkyl-enimides*, like tetramethyleneimide or pyrrolidine, diethylenediimide, or piperazine; the *cyclic esters of oxy- and amido-acids*, like the lactides, the lactones, the lactams; the *cyclic derivatives of dibasic carboxylic acids*, like anhydrides, imides, alkylen esters, alkylenamides, etc. (see I, 313; ring-shaped compounds). These bodies attached themselves, as their names indicate, naturally to known classes of compounds with open chains. They can be readily obtained from substances with open chains and be equally readily changed back into them. In the succeeding sections, however, a series of heterocyclic bodies will be described which manifest

---

\* Nitrogen, mainly, in addition to carbon. The allotropic modifications of many elements are probably induced by the formation of isocyclic rings—e.g., that of oxygen in ozone, O<sub>3</sub>, and that of sulphur in the molecular weight, S<sub>8</sub>, etc.

† See Bischoff, "Handbuch der Stereochemie," p. 641.

‡ Finally, rings are present in the salts of dicarboxylic acids, sulphocarbonic acids, disulphonic acids, glycols, etc., containing bi- and polyvalent metals. Members are formed by the *metal atoms*.

varying department in so far that the rings upon which they are constructed can not be resolved in a simple way. Such rings are rather nuclei to which derivatives attach themselves which are related to the fundamental substances, the same as the aromatic substances are related to benzene. Usually, these substances, like benzene, contain unsaturated unions.

It has, therefore, been assumed that in these rings, as in benzene, there is a particular kind of linkage—"potential valences" (see p. 41 and B. 24, 1761). These explain the stability of these bodies. If the potential valences are dissolved by the addition of hydrogen or some such substance, then saturated bodies result; these possess the "alicyclic character" (see p. 18), and so far as their decomposability is concerned, they in the main exhibit the character of the heterocyclic substances discussed after the fatty bodies. A real fundamental difference, however, between the two rings just described does not exist. Compounds were studied in connection with the lactones and dibasic anhydrides which offered great resistance to decomposition by water absorption, etc. (see I, 379 462, 465). On the other hand, there are many bodies in which potential linkages are assumed which are very easily decomposed by certain reagents—*e. g.*, pyrom by hydroxylamine yielding succinaldehyde-dioxime (I, 327), and glyoxaline by benzoyl chloride and sodium, forming dibenzoyldiamidoethylene, etc.

The heterocyclic rings containing five and six members are, like the analogous carbon rings, the most stable and important. They will be treated in this section. The tendency to the formation of six-membered rings is shown also in the processes of *polymerization*; formaldehyde, by the coalition of three molecules, becomes six-membered trioxymethylene; acetaldehyde becomes the six-membered paraldehyde, and the cyanogen compounds polymerize to derivatives of a six-membered ring, consisting of 3 C- and 3 N-atoms, etc. (compare also the aromatic polymerization, p. 43). Three- and four-membered rings are usually formed with extreme difficulty, and are easily torn asunder (p. 443). The seven-membered rings are not well known, and are also unstable (B. 27, 2902; 28, R. 756). Special mention may be made of substances like *diphenic anhydride* and *diphenimide*, which contain seven-membered rings (p. 341). Individual compounds are known in which heterocyclic rings are assumed to be present which contain eight or more members.

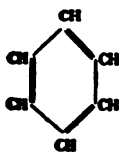
Eight-membered rings are present in the condensation product of  $\alpha$ -diamidodiphenyl and benzil (B. 26, 1704):  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}=\text{N}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ , melting at  $238^\circ$ . Upon reduction this yields a *tetrahydro derivative*, a base, melting at  $154^\circ$ .

Diphenhomazine (p. 347),  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4<\overset{\text{N}}{\underset{\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)}{\text{C}}} >\text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ , results from the condensation of two molecules of *o*-amidobenzophenone; and, finally, the cyclic alkylene esters of the succinic acid series (A. 280, 169); compare—

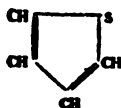
Hydrazioxalyl,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CO}-\text{NH}-\text{NH}-\text{CO} \\ | \qquad \qquad | \\ \text{CO}-\text{NH}-\text{NH}-\text{CO} \end{array}$  (B. 29, R. 180). It is probable that a 13-membered ring is present in cycloformazyl formic ester,  $\text{CO}_2\text{R} \cdot \text{C} \begin{array}{l} \nearrow \text{N} \cdot \text{NH} \\ \searrow \text{N} \end{array} [4] \text{C}_6\text{H}_4$  (p. 339), and a sixteen-membered ring in tetrasalicylide (p. 225).

Consideration in the sense of A. v. Baeyer's strain theory (p. 19) is rendered difficult

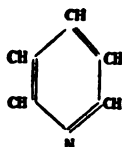
by the varying nature of the hetero-atoms entering into the composition of the ring. Certain facts most certainly contribute to the representation of the spacial relations of many of the hetero-atoms. Thiophene, with a ring of four CH-groups and one S-atom, very greatly resembles benzene, containing six CH-groups. Thiazole, consisting of three CH-groups, one N-atom, and one S-atom, similarly resembles pyridine, which has five CH-groups and one N-atom. It would therefore seem that a sulphur atom is capable of replacing the bivalent group  $\text{—CH=CH—}$  in the ring:



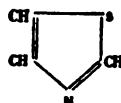
Benzene



Thiophene

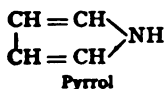


Pyridine

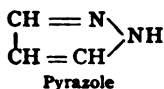


Thiazole.

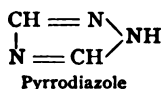
It is an almost universal rule that an N-atom can replace a methine group in a ring without causing any essential loosening of the ring-union. If we suppose a methine group in benzene to be replaced by N, the product will be pyridine, which is about as stable a ring as we have in benzene. And if the methine groups in pyrrol be successively replaced by one, two, and three N-atoms, there also results a series of derivatives in which ring-stability is very evident:



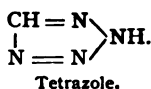
Pyrrol



Pyrazole



Pyrroldiazole



Tetrazole.

A general review of the many heterocyclic ring systems can be obtained from two points of view. *Homologous series* are obtained by arranging together the rings with similar hetero-atoms according to the increasing number of C-members. The following series of rings have been deduced in this way:

## (a) WITH AN O-MEMBER.

$\text{:C—C:}$ 	$\text{:C—C—C:}$ 	$\text{:C—C—C—C:}$ 	$\text{:C—C—C—C—C:}$ 
$\text{H}_2\text{C—CH}_2$  Ethylene Oxide	$\text{H}_2\text{C—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2$  Trimethylene Oxide	$\text{H}_2\text{C—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2$  Tetramethylene Oxide	$\text{H}_2\text{C—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2$  Pentamethylene Oxide
—	—	$\text{H}_2\text{C—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2\text{—CO}$  Butyrolactone	$\text{H}_2\text{C—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2\text{—CO}$  Valerolactone
—	—	$\text{OC—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2\text{—CO}$  Succinic Anhydride	$\text{OC—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2\text{—CO}$  Glutaric Anhydride
—	—	$\text{HC=CH—CH=CH}$  Furfurane	$\text{HC=CH—CO—CH=CH}$  Pyrone

## (b) WITH AN S-MEMBER.

$\begin{array}{c} :C-C: \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ S \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} :C-\ddot{C}-C: \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ S \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} :C-\ddot{C}-\ddot{C}-C: \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ S \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} :C-\ddot{C}-\ddot{C}-\ddot{C}-C: \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ S \end{array}$
$\begin{array}{c} H_2C-CH_2 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ S \\ \text{[Ethylene Sulphide]} \end{array}$ —	$\begin{array}{c} H_2C-CH_2-CH_2 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ S \\ \text{[Trimethylene Sulphide]} \end{array}$ —	$\begin{array}{c} COOH \cdot CH-CH_2-CH_2-CH \cdot COOH \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ S \\ \text{Tetrahydrothiophene-dicarboxylic Acid} \\ \\ CO-CH_2-CH_2-CO \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ S \\ \text{Sulphosuccinyl} \\ \\ CH=CH-CH=CH \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ S \\ \text{Thiophene} \end{array}$	—  —  $\begin{array}{c} CH=CH-CH_2-C(CH_3)_2= \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ S \\ \text{Methylpenthiophene} \end{array}$

## (c) WITH AN N-MEMBER.

$\begin{array}{c} :C-C: \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ N \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} :C-\ddot{C}-C: \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ N \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} :C-\ddot{C}-\ddot{C}-C: \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ N \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} :C-\ddot{C}-\ddot{C}-\ddot{C}-C: \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ N \end{array}$
$\begin{array}{c} CH_2-CH_2 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ NH \\ \text{[Ethylenimine]} \end{array}$ —  $\begin{array}{c} OC-CO \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ NH \\ \text{Oxalimide} \end{array}$ —	$\begin{array}{c} CH_2-CH_2-CH_2 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ NH \\ \text{Trimethylenimine} \end{array}$ —  —  —	$\begin{array}{c} CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ NH \\ \text{Tetramethylenimine} \\ \text{Pyrrolidine} \\ \\ CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-CO \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ NH \\ \text{Butyrolactam} \\ \\ OC-CH_2-CH_2-CO \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ NH \\ \text{Succinimide} \\ \\ CH=CH-CH=CH \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ NH \\ \text{Pyrrol} \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-CH \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ NH \\ \text{Pentamethylenimine} \\ \text{Piperidine} \\ \\ CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-CO \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ NH \\ \text{Valerolactam} \\ \\ OC-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-CO \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ NH \\ \text{Glutarimide} \\ \\ CH-CH=CH-CH=CH \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ N \\ \text{Pyridine} \end{array}$

Complication by virtue of isomerides arises in the case of rings having two hetero-atoms. These isomerides are occasioned by the varying positions of the hetero-atoms with reference to one another—e. g. :\*

\* In the following paragraphs the individual ring-types are represented in diagram to save space. The valences remaining free in the case of the different atoms after the ring-formation are indicated by dots, and the most important compounds or classes of compounds are arranged under the various rubrics to which they belong.

## RINGS WITH TWO N-MEMBERS.

$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{N} \diagdown \\   \\ \text{N} \end{array} \end{array}$ <p><b>Hydrazo Compounds, Diazomethane</b></p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C}-\text{N} \cdot \\   \\ \text{N} \cdot \\   \\ \text{C}-\text{N} \cdot \end{array}$ <p><b>Dimethylazirane</b></p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \ddot{\text{C}}-\text{N} \cdot \\   \\ \text{C}-\text{N} \cdot \end{array} \end{array}$ <p><b>Pyrazole Group</b></p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C}-\ddot{\text{C}}-\text{N} \cdot \\   \\ \text{C}-\ddot{\text{C}}-\text{N} \cdot \end{array}$ <p><b>Pyridazine Group</b></p>
—	$\begin{array}{c} \cdot \text{N}-\text{C}: \\   \\ \text{C}-\text{N} \cdot \\   \\ \text{C}-\text{N} \cdot \end{array}$ <p><b>Ethidene Urea, Dicyan-compounds</b></p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \ddot{\text{C}}-\text{N} \cdot \\   \\ \text{N} \cdot \end{array} \end{array}$ <p><b>Glyoxaline Group, Cyclic Ureas</b></p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C}-\ddot{\text{N}}-\text{C}: \\   \\ \text{C}-\ddot{\text{N}}-\text{C}: \end{array}$ <p><b>Pyrimidine Group, Cyclic Ureas</b></p>
—	—	—	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C}-\ddot{\text{N}}-\text{C}: \\   \\ \text{C}-\ddot{\text{N}}-\text{C}: \end{array}$ <p><b>Pyrazine Group, Diethylene-dilimide</b></p>

## RINGS WITH AN O- AND AN N-MEMBER.

$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{O} \diagdown \\   \\ \text{N} \cdot \end{array} \end{array}$ <p><b><math>\beta</math>-Benzaldoxime Ether</b></p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C}-\text{O} \\   \\ \text{N} \cdot \\   \\ \text{C}-\text{N} \cdot \end{array}$ <p><b>Betaine</b></p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \ddot{\text{C}}-\text{O} \\   \\ \text{C}-\text{N} \cdot \end{array} \end{array}$ <p><b>Isoxazole Group</b></p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C}-\ddot{\text{C}}-\text{O} \\   \\ \text{C}-\ddot{\text{C}}-\text{N} \cdot \end{array}$ <p><b>Orthoxazine Group</b></p>
—	—	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{O}-\text{C}: \\   \\ \text{C}-\text{N} \cdot \end{array} \end{array}$ <p><b>Oxazole Group</b></p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C}-\text{O}-\text{C}: \\   \\ \text{C}-\ddot{\text{C}}-\text{N} \cdot \end{array}$ <p><b>Metoxazine Group, Pentoxazoline</b></p>
—	—	—	$\begin{array}{c} \ddot{\text{O}}-\ddot{\text{C}} \\   \\ \text{C}-\text{N}-\text{C} \end{array}$ <p><b>Paroxazine Group</b></p>

The three- and four-membered systems naturally disappear in the series of rings having three and four hetero-atoms. The branching of the series in consequence of position-isomerides with the hetero-atoms becomes more frequent, so that the relations dependent upon homology frequently become obscure. In the monohetero-atomic rings also the homology usually appears solely in the case of the saturated (alicyclic) ring-systems, whereas the more important unsaturated systems, with more pronounced aromatic character, show at times very varying deportment—

# ORGANIC CHEMISTRY.

e. g.,  
membr  
pyridin  
great differe

ologous series with an N-member the group of the five-  
es into juxtaposition with that of the six-membered  
e representatives of these two groups manifest very  
their behavior.

Hence it is more practical to group the ring systems according to the number of members composing the ring. In this manner only systems of rings of approximately like stability will come together, and they will, therefore, very probably yield similar derivatives. Hence to groups of three rings will be attached such as have four, five, six, etc., members. Each of these groups will have subdivisions in accordance with the number of hetero-atoms, so that, for example, in the group of five-membered heterocyclic rings there will be discussed first the monohetero-atomic, then the di-, tri-, and tetrahetero-atomic systems. This might be called grouping according to *isologous series* :

## THREE-MEMBERED HETEROCYCLIC SUBSTANCES.

$\begin{array}{c} :C-C: \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ O \end{array}$ <p>Ethylene Oxide</p>	$\begin{array}{c} :C-C: \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ S \end{array}$ <p>[Ethylene Sulphide]</p>	$\begin{array}{c} :C-C: \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ N \end{array}$ <p>[Ethyleneimide] Oxalimide</p>
$\begin{array}{c} :C-N. \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ O \end{array}$ <p><math>\beta</math>-Benzaldoxime Ether</p>	$\begin{array}{c} :C-N. \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ S \end{array}$ <p>Thialdolaniline (p. 79)</p>	$\begin{array}{c} :C-N. \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ N \end{array}$ <p>Diazomethane, Hydrazi-compounds</p>

## FOUR-MEMBERED HETEROCYCLIC SUBSTANCES.

$\begin{array}{c} :C-C-C: \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ O \end{array}$ <p>Trimethylene Oxide</p>	$\begin{array}{c} :C-C-C: \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ S \end{array}$ <p>—</p>	$\begin{array}{c} :C-C-C: \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ N \end{array}$ <p>Trimethyleneimide</p>
$\begin{array}{c} :C-C-N. \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ O \end{array}$ <p>Betaine</p>	$\begin{array}{c} :C-C-O \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ S \end{array}$ <p>Thetene</p>	$\begin{array}{c} :C-C-N. \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ N \end{array}$ <p>Dimethylazethane</p>
—	$\begin{array}{c} :C-N-C: \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ S \end{array}$ <p>Alkylidene-thioureas</p>	$\begin{array}{c} :C-N-C: \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ N \end{array}$ <p>Alkylidene Ureas, Dicyanogen Compounds (?)</p>

## FIVE-MEMBERED HETEROCYCLIC SUBSTANCES.

$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \ddot{\text{C}} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{:} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p><i>Perfurane,</i> <math>\gamma</math>-Lactones, Succinic Anhydride</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \ddot{\text{C}} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{:} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{S} \end{array}$ <p><i>Thiophene,</i> Sulphosuccinyl</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \ddot{\text{C}} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{:} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{Se} \end{array}$ <p>Selenophene</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \ddot{\text{C}} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{:} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{N} \end{array}$ <p><i>Pyrrol,</i> <math>\gamma</math>-Lactams, Succinimide</p>
$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \ddot{\text{C}} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{N} \cdot \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p><i>Isoxazole</i> Group</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \ddot{\text{C}} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{N} \cdot \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{S} \end{array}$ <p>Isobenzothiazole</p>	—	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \ddot{\text{C}} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{N} \cdot \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{N} \end{array}$ <p><i>Pyrazole</i> Group</p>
$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{O} \text{C} \text{:} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p>Cyclic Ethers and Esters of Glycol, Alde- hyde, Carbonic Acid, and Oxalic Acid</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{S} \text{C} \text{:} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{S} \end{array}$ <p>Ethidene-ethylene Disulphide</p>	—	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{N} \text{C} \text{:} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{N} \end{array}$ <p><i>Glyoxaline</i> Group, Cyclic Ureas</p>
$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{N} \text{C} \text{:} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p><i>Oxazole</i> Group</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{N} \text{C} \text{:} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{S} \end{array}$ <p><i>Thiazole</i> Group</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{N} \text{C} \text{:} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{Se} \end{array}$ <p>Selenazole Group</p>	
$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{N} \text{N} \cdot \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p>Diazo-oxides</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{N} \text{N} \cdot \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{S} \end{array}$ <p>Diazosulphides</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{N} \text{N} \cdot \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{Se} \end{array}$ <p>Diazoselenide</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{N} \text{N} \cdot \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{N} \end{array}$ <p><i>Oso-triazole</i> Group, Azimides</p>
$\begin{array}{c} \cdot \text{N} \ddot{\text{C}} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{N} \cdot \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p><i>Furazane</i> Group</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \cdot \text{N} \ddot{\text{C}} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{N} \cdot \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{S} \end{array}$ <p>Plazthioles</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \cdot \text{N} \ddot{\text{C}} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{N} \cdot \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{Se} \end{array}$ <p>Plaselenoles</p>	
$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \text{N} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{N} \cdot \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p>Azoximes</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \text{N} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{N} \cdot \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{S} \end{array}$ <p>Azosulphimes</p>	—	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \text{N} \text{N} \text{C} \text{:} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{N} \end{array}$ <p><i>Triazole</i> Group</p>
$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \text{N} \text{N} \text{C} \text{:} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p><i>Oxybiazole</i> Group</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \text{N} \text{N} \text{C} \text{:} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{S} \end{array}$ <p><i>Thiobiazole</i> Group</p>	—	
—	$\begin{array}{c} \cdot \text{N} \ddot{\text{C}} \text{N} \text{N} \cdot \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{S} \end{array}$ <p>Triazsulpholes</p>	—	$\begin{array}{c} \cdot \text{C} \text{N} \text{N} \text{N} \cdot \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{N} \end{array}$ <p><i>Tetrazole</i> Group</p>

# SIX-MEMBERED HETEROCYCLIC SUBSTANCES.

$\begin{array}{c} \text{:O} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{C:} \\   \quad   \quad   \quad   \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p>Pentamethylene Oxide, δ-Lactones, Glutaric Acid An- hydride. <i>Pyrene</i> Group.</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{C:} \\   \quad   \quad   \\ \text{S} \end{array}$ <p>Pentithiophene Group</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:O} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{C:} \\   \quad   \quad   \quad   \\ \text{N} \end{array}$ <p>Pentamethyleneimine (line). δ-Lactams, Glu- <i>Pyridine</i> Group.</p>
$\begin{array}{c} \text{.C} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{N.} \\   \quad   \quad   \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p>Carboxyl-onium Anhydrides</p>	—	$\begin{array}{c} \text{.C} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{N} \\   \quad   \quad   \\ \text{N} \end{array}$ <p><i>Pyridine</i> Group</p>
$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{C:} \\   \quad   \quad   \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p>Cyclic Ethers and Esters of Trimethylene Glycol, Aldehyde, Carbonic Acid, Malonic Acid, etc.</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{S} \quad \text{C:} \\   \quad   \quad   \\ \text{S} \end{array}$ <p>Tetramethylene Disulphides</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:O} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{S} \quad \text{C:} \\   \quad   \quad   \\ \text{N} \end{array}$ <p><i>Pyridine</i> Group</p>
$\begin{array}{c} \ddot{\text{C}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{N} \quad \text{C:} \\   \quad   \quad   \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p>Pentoxazoline Group</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{N} \quad \text{C:} \\   \quad   \quad   \\ \text{S} \end{array}$ <p>Pentithiazoline Group</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:O} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{N} \quad \text{C:} \\   \quad   \quad   \\ \text{N} \end{array}$ <p><i>Pyridine</i> Group</p>
$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{O} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{C:} \\   \quad   \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p>Diethylene Oxide, Cyclic Anhy- drides of α-Oxyacids</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{S} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{C:} \\   \quad   \\ \text{S} \end{array}$ <p>Diethylene Disulphide</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:O} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{N} \quad \text{C:} \\   \quad   \\ \text{N} \end{array}$ <p><i>Pyrazine</i> Group</p>
$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{N} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{C:} \\   \quad   \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p>Paroxazoline Group</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{N} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{C:} \\   \quad   \\ \text{S} \end{array}$ <p>Parathiazoline Group</p>	—
$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{S} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{C:} \\   \quad   \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p>Thio-diglycolic Anhydride</p>	—	—
$\begin{array}{c} \text{.N} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{N.} \\   \quad   \quad   \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p>Azoxazine Derivatives</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{N} \quad \text{N.} \\   \quad   \quad   \\ \text{S} \end{array}$ <p>Diazthine Derivatives</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{.N} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{N} \\   \quad   \quad   \\ \text{N} \end{array}$ <p><i>Osetriazine</i> I</p>
$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \quad \text{N} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{N.} \\   \quad   \quad   \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p>Benzenylamidoxime Acetic Anhydride</p>	—	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \quad \text{N} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{N} \\   \quad   \quad   \\ \text{N} \end{array}$ <p>Unsym.-<i>Triä</i></p>
$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \quad \text{O} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{C:} \\   \quad   \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p>Polymeric Aldehyde</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \quad \text{S} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{S} \quad \text{C:} \\   \quad   \\ \text{S} \end{array}$ <p>Trithioaldehyde</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{:C} \quad \text{N} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{N} \\   \quad   \quad   \\ \text{N} \end{array}$ <p>Polymeric Cyanog <i>Cyanidine</i></p>
$\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \quad \text{N} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{N.} \\   \quad   \quad   \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p>Glyoxime-hyperoxide</p>	—	$\begin{array}{c} \text{.N} \quad \text{N} \quad \ddot{\text{O}} \quad \text{N} \\   \quad   \quad   \\ \text{N} \end{array}$ <p><i>Osetetrazones</i>, <i>Tetrazin</i></p>

indene, naphthalene, anthracene, etc., are derived from benzenoid di- and polycyclic, *condensed* nuclei are obtained from polycyclic rings that contain adjacent C-members. This is possible that the two adjacent C-members participate also in the formation of aromatic rings, like benzene, naphthalene, phenanthrene, etc. Condensed nuclei unite, as a rule, the properties of the carbocyclic and heterocyclic ring. When definite names are not given, as in the indol and quinoline groups, they are designated with prefixes benzo- or phen-, dibenzo- or diphen-, naphtho-, etc., and the name of the heterocyclic ring.

Often substances having such condensed nuclei have the heterocyclic ring and are then changed to ortho-substitution products of the carbon ring. Again, the heterocyclic ring shows itself more stable toward oxidizing agents, so that it is possible to oxidize the condensed nuclei with potassium permanganate, etc., to oxidize the condensed nuclei with the carbon ring and the production of ortho-dicarboxylic acids of the heterocyclic rings. Thus, acridine yields quinoline dicarboxylic acid, quinoline a pyridine dicarboxylic acid, benzoglyoxaline a glyoxaline-dicarboxylic acid, benzotriazole a triazole dicarboxylic acid, and phenazone a pyridine tetracarboxylic acid, etc.

Simple and condensed heterocyclic compounds have, as a rule, been obtained by the inner condensation of suitable fatty or fatty-aromatic compounds and open chains. Very often the intermediate products, leading to the ring, cannot be fixed because of their great inclination to polymerization; ortho-substitution products of benzene and naphthalene (38, 390) are especially well adapted for the production of condensed heterocyclic nuclei. They have afforded the starting-out material for the preparation of an immense number of substances belonging in this

group of heterocyclic bodies also occur in technical and natural products. A very important family of vegetable alkaloids belongs in the group of pyridine and the hydropyridines. *Pyridines* and *pyrrols* occur in coal and bone-tar. *Thiophene* and *coumarone* are also present in coal. *Furfural* and other derivatives of furfural have been found in wood. The important vegetable dye, *indigo*, and its derivatives, are derivatives of indol. Many heterocyclic bodies have been manufactured upon a technical scale, because of their coloring and therapeutic properties. This is true of the *paroxazine*, *parathiazine*, and *paradiazine*-series, e. g., *resorufin*, *blue*, *toluylene red*, *safranin*, etc.; the dyes of the *thiazole*-group, of the important febrifuges, like *antipyrene*, *salipyrine*, *tolypyrine*, etc.; to the pyrazole-group, and *piperazine* or hexa-hydropyrazine,

---

Compare Kühling, "Stickstoffhaltige Orthocondensationsproducte," 1893.

## 1. THREE-MEMBERED HETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDS.

As a rule, bodies of this class manifest "ring-strain" to a greater degree than the carbocyclic substances of the trimethylene series. They are inclined, in consequence of a rupture of the ring, to take up additional atoms or atom groups. Hence, they are produced only under the most favorable conditions, and many compounds which formerly regarded as based upon three-membered heterocyclic rings have, as a result of more recent study and investigation, had their formulas doubtful or have been discovered to be still higher steps in polymerization; compare *ethyleneimide*, *glycolide*, etc.

### A. MONOHETEROATOMIC THREE-MEMBERED RINGS.

(a) Having an O-member: *Ethylene Oxide*,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{H}_2\text{C} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{H}_2\text{C} \end{smallmatrix} \text{O}$ . The method of preparing this compound and its properties have already been described in connection with the aliphatic series (I, 298). It exhibits a great inclination toward a rupture of the ring. This is shown by the fact that it precipitates the hydroxides from solutions of metals with the simultaneous formation of glycolacidylhydrins. The same tendency is observed with the substituted ethylene oxides, like *tetramethylethylene oxide* (I, 299), *glycidic derivatives* (I, 476; II, 256), condensed nuclei containing the ring of ethylene oxide—e. g., *tetrahydronaphthylene oxide* (p. 413) and *diketotetrahydronaphthylene oxide* (p. 413), etc.

(b) Having an S-member: *Ethylene Sulphide*,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{H}_2\text{C} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{H}_2\text{C} \end{smallmatrix} \text{S}$ , corresponding to ethylene oxide, is apparently not capable of existing. It is usually its polymerides which are obtained:  $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{S})_x$  and  $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{S})_2$  diethylene disulphide (I, 305); compare *Ethylene Sulphide*,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \\ | \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \end{smallmatrix} \text{C} \text{S}$  (p. 375). See also the addition products of sulphur with ethylene and acetylene derivatives—B. 28, 1635; 30, 110.

(c) Having an N-member: *Ethylene Imide*,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{H}_2\text{C} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{H}_2\text{C} \end{smallmatrix} \text{NH}$ , also appears unstable. Ethylene diamine hydrochloride and others rather yield the six-membered ring of piperidine (I, 314). It is assumed that oxalimide,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{CO} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix} \text{NH}$  (I, 436), as well as the *lactimides*,—benzoyl-amido-cinnamic acid lactimide,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH} : \text{C} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{OC} \end{smallmatrix} \text{NCOC}_6\text{H}_5$  (p. 276),—constitute a three-membered ring consisting of two C-atoms and one N-atom.

### B. DIHETEROATOMIC THREE-MEMBERED RINGS.

Rings, consisting of C, N, and O, are assumed to be present in the nitrogen ethoximes—some of the aldioximes—e. g., the *n*-alkyl benzaldioximes,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{RN} \\ | \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} \end{smallmatrix} \text{O}$  (p. 276), which are resolved by acids into benzaldehyde and *n*-alkylhydroxylamines. The

ring occurs in different polycyclic substances,—*e. g.*, the isatogen compounds,—such as isatogenic acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{CO} \diagdown \\ \diagdown \text{N} \diagup \end{smallmatrix} \text{C} \cdot \text{COOH}$  (p. 284), and in the products obtained by reduc-

ing acidylated o-nitranilines with ammonium sulphide—*e. g.*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{NH} \diagdown \\ \diagdown \text{N} \diagup \end{smallmatrix} \text{C} \cdot \text{CCH}_3$  (see benzimide azole), etc. Compare also anthranil and anthroxan aldehydes (pp. 211, 250). Thialdolaniline,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{CH} \diagdown \\ \diagdown \text{S} \diagup \end{smallmatrix} \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , contains a ring consisting of C, N,

and S. The same may be observed of similarly formed compounds (see Usèbe's green, p. 359).

*Hydrazo- and Azimethylene-group*: Substances consisting of two N- and one C-atom are much better known. The hydrazo-derivatives belong in this class. They are obtained from the hypothetical *hydrazimethylene*,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{NH} \\ \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix} > \text{CH}_2$  (Curtius, J. pr. Ch. [2], 44, 169, 554). They are produced in the action of hydrazine upon o-diketones and  $\alpha$ -ketone carboxylic esters (1, 328)—*e. g.*, benzil, diacetyl, pyroracemic ester:

Benzoylphenylhydrazimethylene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{NH} \\ \diagdown \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix}$ , melts with decomposition at  $151^\circ$ , and diphenyldihydrazimethylene,

$\begin{smallmatrix} \text{HN} \\ \text{HN} \end{smallmatrix} > \text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) \cdot \text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{NH} \\ \diagdown \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix}$ , melts at  $147^\circ$ . Carboxylic Acids of this result from the reduction of esters of the diazo-fatty acids:

Hydraziacetic Acid,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{HN} \\ \text{HN} \end{smallmatrix} > \text{CH} \cdot \text{COOH}$  (1, 366), and Hydrazo-propionic Methyl

Ester,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{HN} \\ \text{HN} \end{smallmatrix} > \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) \cdot \text{COOCH}_3$ , melting at  $82^\circ$ . The potassium salt of a sulpho-

hydraziacetic ester,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{HN} \\ \text{HN} \end{smallmatrix} > \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , has been made by the action of potassium sulphite upon diazoacetic ester (B. 28, 1848).

The hydrazo-compounds are readily changed by oxidation to the azi-derivatives containing two atoms less of hydrogen. They evolve nitrogen on the application of heat.

See 1. c. for other rearrangements. Benzhydrazoïn,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N} \end{smallmatrix} > \text{CH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$  (p. 185), formed from benzaldehyde and hydrazobenzene, is a triphenyl hydrazimethylene.

The diazo-compounds of the aliphatic series are obtained from azimethylene or diazomethane. The latter is produced when nitrosomethylurethane is digested with methyl alcoholic potash. Compare vol. 1, 206, for its properties. It also results from the reduction of methyl nitramine (1, 171; B. 29, 961), and from the action of hydroxylamine upon methylchloramine (1, 169; B. 28, 1682).

Diazo-acetic ester (1, 365), diazo-propionic ester (1, 371), diazosuccinic ester (1, 507), and diazomethane disulphonic acid,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{N} \\ \text{N} \end{smallmatrix} > \text{C}(\text{SO}_3\text{H})_2$  (1, 405), are derivatives of diazomethane.

These bodies constitute the transition to the isocyclic ring of the diazomide or hydra-

zoic acid,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{N} \\ \text{N} \end{smallmatrix} > \text{NH}$ .

## 2. FOUR-MEMBERED HETEROCYCLIC SUBSTANCES.

### A. MONOHETEROATOMIC FOUR-MEMBERED RINGS.

**Trimethylene Oxide**,  $\text{CH}_2\langle\begin{smallmatrix}\text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2\end{smallmatrix}\rangle\text{O}$  (I, 299), is a homologue of ethylene oxide. Its properties are not well known. The inner anhydrides of certain aromatic  $\beta$ -oxycarboxylic acids,  $\beta$ -lactones of the common formula  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{C} - \text{CO} \\ | \quad | \\ \text{C} - \text{O} \end{smallmatrix}$  (p. 254), also belong in this class.

**Trimethylene Imide**,  $\text{CH}_2\langle\begin{smallmatrix}\text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2\end{smallmatrix}\rangle\text{NH}$  (I, 314), corresponding to trimethylene oxide, is produced, together with  $\beta$ -methyl pyridine, on heating trimethylene diamine hydrochloride.

### B. DIHETEROATOMIC FOUR-MEMBERED RINGS.

1. The most important bodies containing four-membered rings with two adjacent hetero-atoms are the *cyclic salts*, showing a structure analogous to that of betaine, therefore arranged under the rubric *betaines*. All carboxylic acids form betaines if they contain in the  $\alpha$ -position a group similar to ammonium hydroxide. Just as trimethylglycocoll hydrochloride,  $\text{ClN}(\text{CH}_3)_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , yields betaine,  $\begin{smallmatrix} (\text{CH}_3)_3\text{N} - \text{CH}_2 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{O} - \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix}$ ,<sup>20</sup> pyridine chloracetic acid,  $\text{ClN}(\text{C}_5\text{H}_5)\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , forms pyridine betaine,  $\begin{smallmatrix} (\text{C}_5\text{H}_5)\text{N} - \text{CH}_2 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{O} - \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix}$  (see this); triphenylphosphine-chloracetic acid,  $\text{ClP}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , triphenylphosphorbetaine,  $\begin{smallmatrix} (\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{P} - \text{CH}_2 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{O} - \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix}$  (B. 27, 273), and methyl-ethyl sulphide-bromacetic acid,  $\text{BrS}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , yields *methyl ethyl thiobetaine*, *methyl ethyl thetine*,  $\begin{smallmatrix} (\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{S} - \text{CH}_2 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{O} - \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix}$  (I, 348).

**Dimethylaziethane**,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{N} = \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) \\ | \\ \text{N} = \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) \end{smallmatrix}$  (I, 328), produced on mixing equimolecular quantities of hydrazine hydrate and diacetyl, and probably also *hydrazulmin* and *azulmic acid* (I, 437), formed by the interaction of ammonia and cyanogen, contain four-membered rings with two adjacent N-atoms.

2. The cyclic *alkylidene*-, *carbonyl*-, and *thio-carbonyl-ureas*-, *-thioureas*-, and  $\psi$ -*thioureas*-, contain rings with alternating C- and hetero-atoms:

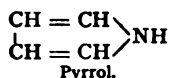
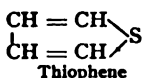
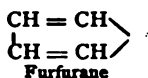
**Methylene Urea**,  $\text{CO}\langle\begin{smallmatrix}\text{NH} \\ \text{NH}\end{smallmatrix}\rangle\text{CH}_2$ , and **Methylene Thiourea**,  $\text{CS}\langle\begin{smallmatrix}\text{NH} \\ \text{NH}\end{smallmatrix}\rangle\text{CH}_2$ , are obtained by the action of chlormethyl alcohol upon urea and thiourea (M. 12, 90); **ethidene urea** and **-thiourea** are similarly formed from acetaldehyde; **methylene-diphenyl- $\psi$ -thiourea**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}:\text{C}\langle\begin{smallmatrix}\text{S} \\ \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\end{smallmatrix}\rangle\text{CH}_2$ , from diphenylthiourea and  $\text{CH}_2\text{I}_2$  (p. 87); **carbonyl-thiocarbanilide**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}:\text{C}\langle\begin{smallmatrix}\text{S} \\ \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\end{smallmatrix}\rangle\text{CO}$ , melting at  $87^\circ$ , from diphenylthiourea and  $\text{COCl}_2$ , as well as by desulphurizing thiocarbonyl-thiocarbanilide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}:\text{C}\langle\begin{smallmatrix}\text{S} \\ \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\end{smallmatrix}\rangle\text{CS}$ , melting at  $79^\circ$ , which results from the interaction of  $\text{CSCl}_2$  and diphenylurea (B. 25, 1459).

### 3. FIVE-MEMBERED HETEROCYCLIC SUBSTANCES.

#### A. MONOHETEROATOMIC FIVE-MEMBERED RINGS.

Furfurane, Thiophene (Selenophene), Pyrrol.\*

The members of the furfurane, thiophene, and pyrrol group contain five-membered monoheteroatomic rings. They form a closely allied family from the standpoint of methods of formation and chemical behavior. The parent compounds of these groups contain, in the ordinary sense of the term, a chain of four CH-groups, which is closed as a ring by O, S, or NH:



The parent bodies and their numerous derivatives, especially the thiophenes, manifest a great and, in the latter instance, a very remarkable similarity to benzene and its compounds, inasmuch as many of them show the reactions peculiar to benzene derivatives in contradistinction to the fatty substances.

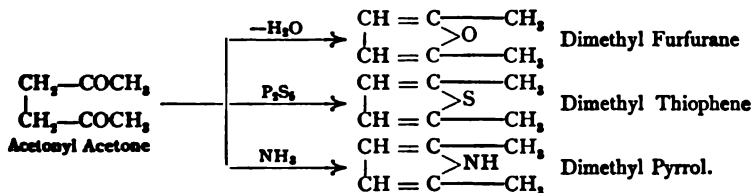
The production of blue-violet and violet-red dyes in the action of isatin (p. 258) and phenanthraquinone with sulphuric acid upon furfurane, pyrrol, and thiophene compounds is particularly noteworthy.

The common methods of forming furfurane, thiophene, and pyrrol derivatives from  $\gamma$ -diketo-compounds have frequently been mentioned after the description of the latter bodies (I, 318; II, 250, 380):

Furfuranes result by the elimination of water from the  $\gamma$ -diketones;

Phosphorus sulphide ( $\text{P}_2\text{S}_5$ ) converts  $\gamma$ -diketones into thiophenes;

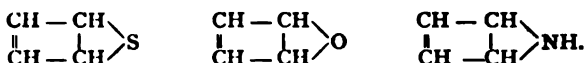
Pyrrols are produced by the action of ammonia or primary amines upon  $\gamma$ -diketones:



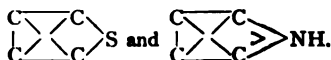
Here the  $\gamma$ -diketones react similarly to the  $\gamma$ -diolefine glycols. The furfuranes, the thiophenes, and pyrrols may be considered as the cyclic anhydrides, sulphides, and imides of the latter. Furfuranes, thiophenes, and pyrrols are also obtained by distilling mucic and isosaccharic acids alone or with BaS, and in the distillation of their ammonium salts.

\* Compare C. Paal, "Furfurane, Thiophene, and Pyrrol Syntheses," Würzburg, 1899.

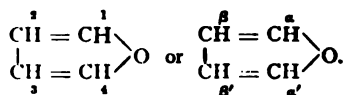
These syntheses harmonize with the accepted structural formulas furfuran, pyrrol, and thiophene. However, experiments upon the refractive power of thiophene render probable the presence of but one double linkage in this compound (B. 20, R. 103). A similar result was indicated by the heat of combustion of thiophene (B. 18, 1832). Hence following formulas have been proposed for thiophene, and for the analogous furfuran and pyrrol:



Many of the methods employed in making pyrrol derivatives and the ready transition under the influence of oxidants, of all three groups of substances into derivatives maleic acid (see pp. 450, 454, 458) accord very well with these formulas. See B. 1447, 1758, for formulas like



To distinguish the possible isomerides the replaceable hydrogen atoms of the methylene groups in furfuran, thiophene, and pyrrol are designated by numbers or letters, as in benzene:



The positions 1 and 4 are equal in value; also 2 and 3. The first are also termed  $\alpha$ , the latter  $\beta$ -positions. It is obvious that the mono-derivatives of furfuran, thiophene, and pyrrol can exist in two isomeric forms ( $\alpha$ -derivatives and  $\beta$ -derivatives).

## 1. THE FURFURANE GROUP.\*

**Furfuran, Furane,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{O}$** , boiling at  $32^\circ$ , was first obtained by distilling barium pyromucate (p. 451) (Limpricht, 1870; C. 1897, 268): ( $\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{O} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} = \text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{O} + \text{CO}_2$ ). It is present in the distillate products of pine wood. It is a liquid, insoluble in water, and has peculiar odor. Metallic sodium has no effect upon it, nor does it combine with phenylhydrazine. It yields dye substances with isatin and phenanthraquinone (see above). It reacts very violently with hydrochloric acid, and forms a brown amorphous substance (like pyrrol red, p. 457). A pine shaving moistened with hydrochloric acid assumes a green color when brought in contact with the vapors of furfuran.

*Brominated* derivatives can be obtained from brom-pyromucic acids, or by the direct action of bromine upon furfuran. Addition products result from an excess of bromine. See C. 1897, 1, 1023, for nitro- and amido-furfuran.

**Methyl Furfuran,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_6(\text{CH}_3)\text{O}$** , is in all probability *synvan*, which occurs in pitch oil. It boils at  $63^\circ$  (B. 13, 879).

**$\alpha, \alpha'$ -Dimethyl Furfuran,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_8(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{O}$** , is formed by the distillation of carbopyrrol tartaric acid (p. 451), and has been synthesized from acetonyl acetone upon heating with  $\text{ZnCl}_2$  or  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$ . It boils at  $94^\circ$ .

\* Compare "Das Furfuran, etc.," von A. Bender, 1889.

It regenerates acetyl acetone when it is heated with dilute hydrochloric acid to  $170^{\circ}$ .

**$\alpha$ , $\beta$ -Phenyl-methyl Furfurane**,  $C_6H_5 \cdot \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \\ C_6H_5 \end{smallmatrix} \right\} O$ , is produced from acetophenone-acetone (B. 17, 915 and 2759). It melts at  $42^{\circ}$  and boils at  $235-240^{\circ}$  C. Sodium, in alcoholic solution, converts it into a tetrahydro-compound.

**Diphenyl Furfurane**, melting at  $91^{\circ}$ , is obtained from diphenacyl (B. 23, R. 743; 25, 1447). **Triphenyl Furfurane**, melting at  $93^{\circ}$ , is formed from desylacetophenone (B. 21, 2933; 26, 61). **Tetraphenyl Furfurane**, **Lepidene** (B. 22, 2880), melting at  $175^{\circ}$ , is produced, together with benzil, when benzoin is heated with hydrochloric acid to  $130^{\circ}$  (p. 380).

**Furfuro-stilbene**,  $C_6H_5O \cdot CH = CH \cdot C_6H_5O$ , melting at  $101^{\circ}$ , is the stilbene of the furfurane series. It results upon heating polymeric thiofurfural (B. 24, 3591).

**Furfuryl Alcohol**,  $C_4H_3O \cdot CH_2OH$ , is a colorless syrup, which is colored green by hydrochloric acid. It results from the action of sodium amalgam and acetic acid upon the aldehyde furfural, but more easily by treatment with aqueous caustic potash (B. 19, 2154). **Furfurane carboxylic acid** is produced at the same time ( $2C_4H_3O \cdot CHO + H_2O = C_4H_3O \cdot CH_2OH + C_4H_3O \cdot CO_2H$ ) (B. 19, 2154).

**Furfuryl Methyl Ether**,  $(C_4H_3O) \cdot CH_2 \cdot O \cdot CH_3$ , boils at  $134-136^{\circ}$  (B. 26, R. 239).

**Furfurylamine**,  $C_4H_3O \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH_2$ , boiling at  $146^{\circ}$ , results in the reduction of furfuralnitrile (p. 450) and furfural hydrazone (see below).

**$\alpha$ -Furfural**, or **Furol**,  $C_5H_4O_2 = C_4H_3O \cdot CHO$ , boiling at  $162^{\circ}$ , with the sp. gr. 1.163, is the aldehyde of pyromucic acid, and is produced in the distillation of bran (*furfur*, Fownes, 1849), or of sugar (Döbereiner, 1831), and wood, as well as most carbohydrates and glucosides, with dilute sulphuric acid. When present in even the merest traces it can be detected by the red coloration given by aniline or xylydine (B. 20, 541).

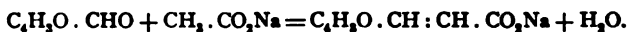
Furfural is produced quantitatively when pentoses like arabinose, etc., are distilled with hydrochloric acid. Various analytical methods for the estimation of the pentoses are based on this fact (1, 536) (B. 28, R. 629). Glucuronic acid, when heated with hydrochloric acid, breaks down into furfural, water, and  $CO_2$  (B. 29, R. 280).

Furfural is a colorless liquid with an aromatic odor. It is fairly soluble in water and very soluble in alcohol. It becomes brown on exposure to the air, and shows all the properties of an aldehyde. It combines with bisulphites, passes into furfuryl alcohol under the influence of sodium amalgam, and is changed to pyromucic acid by argentic oxide, and to the alcohol and acid through the action of caustic potash. It yields furfuraldoxime with hydroxylamine; this melts at  $89^{\circ}$  and boils at  $205^{\circ}$ . It unites similarly with phenylhydrazine, forming a *hydrazone*, melting at  $96^{\circ}$ . With orthoformic ester it yields the *acetal*,  $C_4H_3O \cdot CH(OC_2H_5)_2$ , boiling at  $187-190^{\circ}$  (B. 29, 1008).

Furthermore, furfural manifests all the condensation reactions of benzaldehyde (see below). (1) It combines with dimethylaniline to form a green dye-stuff, corresponding to malachite green. (2) It condenses with aldehydes and ketones of the fatty series to furfurane aldehydes and ketones with unsaturated side-chains. This reaction occurs quite readily on digesting with dilute caustic soda (B. 13, 2342). Thus, with acetaldehyde it forms **Furfur-acrolein**,  $C_4H_3O \cdot CH : CH \cdot CHO$ , melting at  $51^{\circ}$ ; with acetone, **Furfur-acetone**,  $C_4H_3O \cdot CH : CH \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$ ; with acetophenone, **furfural-mono- and diacetophenone**, and **Difurfural Triacetophenone** (B. 29, 2248). (3) Just as potassium cyanide in alcoholic solution changes benzaldehyde to benzoin, so it converts furfural into **furoin**,  $C_{10}H_8O_4$ , melting at  $135^{\circ}$ :  $2C_4H_3O \cdot CHO = C_4H_3O \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5O$ . This is in every way similar to benzoin. Furoin is oxidized in alkaline solution by the oxygen of the air to **Furil**,  $C_4H_3O \cdot CO \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5O$ . This corresponds to benzil. Tin and hydrochloric acid reduce it to **desoxyfuroin**,  $(C_4H_3O)CH_2 \cdot CO(C_6H_5O)$  (B. 28, R. 992). Furoin digested with caustic potash becomes **furilic acid**,  $(C_4H_3O)_2C(OH)COOH$ ,

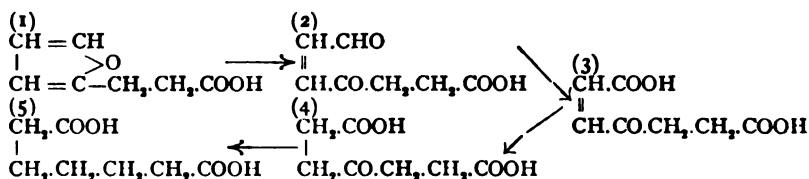
analogous to benzoic acid. Compare B. 25, 2843, for the condensation products of furfural with o-diamines.

(4) Furfurane acids, with unsaturated side-chains, are produced, in the condensation of furfural and fatty acids, on heating it with the anhydrides and sodium salts of the fatty acids. This is analogous to the formation of cinnamic acid from benzaldehyde. Furfur-acrylic acid results on heating furfurane with acetic anhydride and sodium acetate:



**Furfur-acrylic Acid**,  $C_7H_6O_3$ , melting at  $141^\circ$ , is also formed from *furfur-malonic acid*, the condensation product of furfural and malonic ester (B. 24, 143; 27, 283). Furfur-acrylic acid, like cinnamic acid, occurs in an *allotropic modification* (B. 28, 129). The acid, when heated with hydrochloric acid, has its ring decomposed, and acetone diacetic acid results. Sodium amalgam converts it into

**Furfur-propionic Acid** (1),  $C_6H_5O \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$ , melting at  $51^\circ$ . Bromine-water disrupts the furfurane ring in this compound, and the product is *furon-aldehyde* (2), which can be gradually converted step by step into furonic acid (3), hydrofuroic acid (4), or acetone diacetic acid and pimelic acid (5):



This conversion of furfural into n-pimelic acid proves that the aldehyde group is in the  $\alpha$ -position.

**Furfur-angelic Acid**,  $C_6H_5O \cdot CH : C(CH_3 \cdot CH_3) \cdot COOH$ , from furfural and butyric acid, melts at  $88^\circ$ , and passes into the corresponding **Furfur-valeric Acid** under the influence of sodium amalgam.

Furfural condenses with lævulinic acid, depending upon whether alkaline or acid solvents are employed, either to  $\delta$ - or  $\beta$ -Furfural-lævulinic acid,  $C_8H_8O \cdot CH : CH \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot COOH$ , or  $C_8H_8O \cdot CH : C(CO \cdot CH_3) \cdot CH_2 \cdot COOH$ . The latter changes readily with *benzene ring-formation* into aceto-oxycumarone (p. 462).

(5) **Furfuramide**,  $(C_4H_3O)_2N$ , melting at  $117^\circ$ , results from the action of aqueous ammonia upon furfural (same as hydrobenzamide from benzaldehyde, see this).

Boiling water decomposes it into furfural and ammonia. If boiled with KOH it undergoes a transposition into the isomeric base, **Furfurin**, melting at  $116^\circ$  (compare glyoxalines).

$\alpha$ -**Methyl Furfural**,  $C_4H_2(CH_3)O \cdot CHO$ , boiling at  $184$ – $186^\circ$ , occurs together with furfural in wood oil (B. 22, 608). It is also present in the product obtained by distilling varec with sulphuric acid. When rhamnose (I, 530) is distilled with sulphuric acid, it results, just as furfural is obtained from arabinose (B. 22, R. 752).

**Carboxylic Acids of Furfurane:  $\alpha$ -Furfurane-carboxylic Acid** (compare C. 1897, II, 268),  $C_4H_3O \cdot CO_2H$ , *pyromucic acid*, melting at  $134^\circ$  with sublimation, is obtained by the oxidation of furfural, and in the distillation of mucic and isosaccharic acids (p. 447); it, therefore, contains the carboxyl group in the  $\alpha$ -position.

**History.**—Scheele, in 1780, observed pyromucic acid as a product of the distillation of mucic acid. Pelouze (1834) determined its composition and v. Baeyer established its constitutional formula.

Its *ethyl ester*,  $C_4H_3O \cdot CO_2 \cdot C_2H_5$ , melts at  $34^\circ$  and boils at  $210^\circ$  C. Its *chloride*,  $C_4H_3O \cdot COCl$ , boils at  $170^\circ$ . Ammonia converts this into an *amide*,  $C_4H_3O \cdot CO \cdot NH_2$ ,

which is changed into *furfuryl-nitrile*,  $C_4H_3O.CN$ , by  $PCl_3$ . The nitrile can also be obtained from fururaldoxime by the exit of water. See C. 1897, 1, 1024, for the *hydrate, aside, etc.*

Bromine vapor converts pyromucic acid into a *tetrabromide*,  $C_4H_3OBr_4.CO_2H$ , which is oxidized to dibromsuccinic acid by chromic acid. Fumaric acid results on evaporating pyromucic acid with bromine water. An excess of bromine or chlorine water produces mucobromic acid and mucochloric acid (1, 365).

$\alpha$ -Brom-pyromucic Acid,  $C_4H_3BrO.CO_2H$ , is formed by heating the tetrabromide, and by brominating pyromucic acid in glacial acetic acid solution. It melts at  $184^\circ$  (B. 19, R. 241).  $\beta$ -Brompyromucic Acid, from the two dibrompyromucic acids and zinc, melts at  $129^\circ$  (B. 17, 1759).

Nitropyromucic Acid,  $C_4H_2(NO_2)O.CO_2H$ , melting at  $183^\circ$ , is formed by nitrating furfurane dicarboxylic acid and by oxidizing nitroethylene-nitrofurfurane (B. 18, 1362).

$\alpha,\alpha$ -Furfurane Dicarboxylic Acid,  $C_4H_2O(CO_2H)_2$ , *dehydromucic acid*, is produced by heating mucic acid to  $100^\circ$  with hydrochloric acid. It dissolves with difficulty in water, and when heated breaks down into carbon dioxide and pyromucic acid.

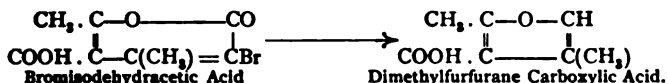
*Homologous furfurane-carboxylic acids* can be obtained synthetically from  $\gamma$ -diketone carboxylic esters by the exit of water.

Methylpyromucic Acid,  $C_4H_2(CH_3)O.CO_2H$ , melting at  $109^\circ$ , obtained from methyl furfural (B. 22, 608), is decomposed by bromine water into acetoacrylic acid (1, 382) (B. 23, 452).

$\alpha,\alpha$ -Dimethyl Furfurane- $\beta$ -carboxylic Acid, Pyrotritartaric Acid,  $C_4H(CH_3)_2.O.CO_2H$  (B. 20, 1074), Uvinic Acid, melting at  $135^\circ$  C., may be obtained (1) from acetyl acetoacetic ester; (2) from carbopyrotritartaric acid and from methronic acid by the splitting-off of carbon dioxide; (3) from tartaric acid by distillation; (4) from pyroracemic acid by protracted boiling with baryta-water or sodium acetate, etc.

When heated to  $150$ – $160^\circ$  with steam it breaks up into carbon dioxide and acetyl acetone. Rapidly distilled, it decomposes into carbon dioxide and dimethyl furfurane.

$\alpha,\beta$ -Dimethylfurfurane- $\beta$ -carboxylic Acid, melting at  $122^\circ$ , is isomeric with pyrotritartaric acid. It is formed from bromisodehydracetic acid (B. 26, 755):



(Compare the formation of coumarones from coumarine dibromides, p. 462.)

$\alpha,\alpha$ -Methylphenylfurfurane- $\beta$ -carboxylic Acid,  $C_4H(CH_3)(C_6H_5)O.CO_2H$ , from acetophenon-acetoacetic ester, melts at  $181^\circ$ , and when heated breaks down into  $CO_2$  and methylphenyl-furfurane (B. 17, 2764).

$\alpha,\alpha$ -Dimethylfurfurane- $\beta,\beta$ -dicarboxylic Acid,  $C_4(CH_3)_2O(CO_2H)_2$ , carbopyrotritartaric acid, melting at  $261^\circ$ , results upon boiling diacetsuccinic ester with dilute sulphuric acid (Knorr, B. 17, 2864; 22, 146). Consult B. 27, 1158, upon *isocarbopyrotritartaric acid*. Carbopyrotritartaric acid at higher temperatures breaks up into carbon dioxide and pyrotritartaric acid.

Methronic Acid,  $C_5H_4O_4$ , is isomeric with carbopyrotritartaric acid. It is produced by digesting acetoacetic ester with sodium succinate and acetic anhydride (B. 18, 3410). By similar action acetoacetic ester and pyrotritartaric acid yield methyl methronic acid. Methronic acid melts at  $204^\circ$ .

It is also produced, together with sylvan-acetic acid, poorer in  $CO_2$  (B. 21, R. 636), by the condensation of acetoacetic ester with glyoxal. Because of this method of formation, and also by virtue of its passage to pyrotritartaric acid, methronic acid has been ascribed the formula of a *methyl-furfurane-acetic carboxylic acid*,  $C_4HO(CH_3)(CH_2.CO_2H)CO_2H$  (B. 22, 152). Compare A. 250, 166, for another view of its constitution.

*Hydrofurfuranes*: But few hydrofurfurane derivatives have been obtained by the reduction of furfuranes—e. g., *tetrahydro- $\alpha,\alpha$ -methyl-phenyl-furfurane*,  $C_4H_8(CH_3)(C_6H_5)O$ , boiling at  $230^\circ$ , from methyl-phenyl furfurane (p. 449), *tetrahydrodiphenyl furfurane* (B. 23, R. 744), etc.

Dihydrofurfurane,  $C_4H_6O$ , boiling at  $67^\circ$ , may be prepared synthetically by reducing erythrol.  $PCl_5$  converts it into furfuran (Bull. soc. chim. 35, 418).

$\alpha$ -Methyldihydrofurfurane,  $C_5H_8(CH_3)O$ , is obtained from acetopropyl alcohol (1, 318, and B. 22, 1196). Additional dihydrofurfuran compounds have been prepared synthetically from  $\alpha$ -chlorocrotonic ester and chlorfumaric ester by condensation with sodacetoacetic ester and sodium benzoyl acetic ester (B. 29, R. 859).

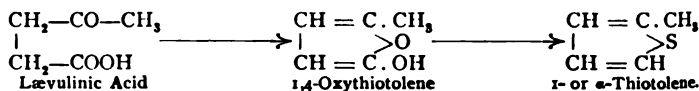
Tetramethylene oxide,  $\begin{array}{c} CH_2-CH_2 \\ | \quad | \\ CH_2-CH_2 \end{array} O$ , and its homologues (1, 299) are tetrahydrofurfuranes; the  $\gamma$ -lactones—e. g., butyrolactone,  $\begin{array}{c} CH_2-CO \\ | \quad | \\ CH_2-CH_2 \end{array} O$  (1, 345)—and the  $\alpha$ -hydrides of the succinic acid series—s. g.,  $\begin{array}{c} CH_2-CO \\ | \quad | \\ CH_2-CO \end{array} O$  (1, 447), etc.—are keto-diketotetrahydrofurfuranes. Tetronic acid,  $\begin{array}{c} CH_2-CO \\ | \quad | \\ CO-CH_2 \end{array} O$  (1, 482), and its homologues are metameric with the latter.

## 2. THIOPHENE GROUP.\*

Thiophene,  $C_4H_4S$ , an analogue in constitution of furfuran,  $C_4H_4O$  exhibits the greatest similarity to benzene. It may be viewed as benzene in which one of the three acetylene groups,  $CH:CH$ , has been replaced by S. By the replacement of the 4-H atoms in thiophene by other elements or groups we obtain innumerable derivatives, in all respects analogous to those derived from benzene. All thiophene compounds give an intense blue coloration—the indophenin reaction, B. 16, 1473—when mixed with a little isatin and concentrated sulphuric acid.

*History.*—Thiophene, as well as the methylated thiophenes, are invariably associated with the benzene hydrocarbons which are prepared technically from coal-tar. Therefore, before thiophene was discovered, the indophenin reaction was considered as characteristic of benzene hydrocarbons. V. Meyer (1883) observed an absence of this reaction when working with a benzene preparation made from benzoic acid, and that it reappeared when commercial benzene containing sulphur was employed in the test. This led to the discovery of thiophene. The same investigator ascertained the constitution of the latter and its kinship to furfuran and pyrrol. Thionessal, discovered by Laurent in 1841, is a thiophene derivative, but it was only in 1891 that Baumann and Fromm proved it to be tetraphenylthiophene.

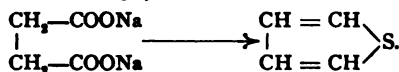
The synthetic methods of producing thiophene compounds from  $\gamma$ -dicarbonyl derivatives have been discussed (1, 318; 11, 447). The more special procedures are the ready conversion of  $\gamma$ -ketone acids into oxythiophenes by means of  $P_2S_5$ , and thiophenes result when the primary oxythiophenes are reduced with  $P_2S_5$  (B. 19, 551; 23, 1495):



**Thiophene**,  $C_4H_4S$ , boiling at  $84^\circ$ , with sp. gr. 1.062 ( $23^\circ$ ), occurs in coal-tar (B. 28, 492), just as do the methyl thiophenes; indeed, the individual thiophenes are present (to upward of 0.6 per cent.) in the corresponding commercial benzene hydrocarbons, as they have the same

\* V. Meyer, "Die Thiophengruppe," 1888.

**boiling points.** Thiophene is found in benzene, methyl thiophenes in toluene, etc. Thiophene is also formed in considerable abundance by heating a mixture of sodium succinate and phosphorus trisulphide (Volhard and Erdmann, B. 18, 454):



Thiophene also results upon heating crotonic acid, butyric acid, paraldehyde, etc., with phosphorus trisulphide: by conducting ethyl sulphide through tubes heated to redness or passing illuminating gas over heated pyrite,  $\text{FeS}_2$ , and acetylene or ethylene over boiling sulphur.

Unsaturated benzenes, when heated with sulphur, yield phenylated thiophenes. Thus, styrol forms diphenylthiophene; stilbene, tetraphenylthiophene; and acetylene dicarboxylic acid, thiophene tetracarboxylic acid (B. 28, 1635; 30, 110). Thiophene is obtained from crude benzene by shaking it with a little concentrated sulphuric acid (4-10 per cent.) (B. 17, 792).

Thiophene is a colorless liquid, with an odor resembling that of benzene. It becomes crystalline when exposed to a mixture of solid carbon dioxide and ether. Sodium has no effect upon it, even when it is heated. Mixed with a little sulphuric acid and isatin it becomes dark blue in color. The same occurs when its solution in sulphuric acid is added to phenanthraquinone in glacial acetic acid (reaction of Laubenheimer, B. 19, 673).

It is remarkable that thiophene, which from its formula cannot be regarded as a cyclic, unsaturated alkyl sulphide, does not exhibit the additive power of normal alkyl sulphides for methyl iodide, oxygen, etc. When thiophene is heated to  $200^\circ$  with piperidine, sulphur is eliminated and a base produced which yields tetramethylenedipiperidine,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{16}\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{NC}_8\text{H}_{16}$ , upon reduction (B. 28, 2217).

This very striking analogy existing between bodies of the thiophene series and the benzene series may be observed with the following representatives of both groups, the boiling and melting points of which compounds are presented in the table. The benzene derivatives have already been discussed; those of thiophene will receive attention in the succeeding pages:

BENZENE SERIES.	B. P.	THIOPHENE SERIES.	B. P.
Benzene (p. 47), . . . . .	80.5°	Thiophene, . . . . .	84°
Toluene (p. 53), . . . . .	110.3°	Thiotoluene, . . . . .	113°
p-Xylene (p. 54), . . . . .	138°	1,4-Thioxene, . . . . .	135°
Isopropyl Benzene (p. 55), . . . . .	153°	Isopropyl Thiophene, . . . . .	154°
Diphenyl (p. 35), . . . . .	254°	Dithiényl, . . . . .	266°
Diphenyl Methane (p. 342), . . . . .	261°	Dithiényl Methane, . . . . .	267°
Chlorobenzene (p. 58), . . . . .	132°	$\alpha$ -Chlorothiophene, . . . . .	130°
p-Dichlorobenzene (p. 58), . . . . .	172°	Dichlorothiophene, . . . . .	170°
Bromobenzene (p. 59), . . . . .	155°	$\alpha$ -Bromothiophene, . . . . .	150°
Tetrabromobenzene (p. 59), . . . . .	329°	Tetrabromothiophene, . . . . .	326°
p-Dinitrobenzene (p. 67), . . . . .	299°	Dinitrothiophene, . . . . .	290°
Benzoic Acid (p. 193), . . . . .	250°	$\alpha$ -Thiophene Carboxylic Acid, . . . . .	260°
Benzonitrile (p. 202), . . . . .	191°	Thiophen-nitrile, . . . . .	190°
Acetophenone (p. 189), . . . . .	202°	Acetothiēnone, . . . . .	213°
Benzophenone (p. 345), . . . . .	307°	Thiēnone, . . . . .	326°
Cinnamic Acid (p. 274), . . . m. p. 133°		Thiēnyl Acrylic Acid, . . . m. p. 138°	

1. *Thiophene Homologues.*—Homologous thiophenes, in addition to their synthetic formation from  $\gamma$ -dicarbonyl compounds, are prepared from thiophene according to methods perfectly similar to those used in the production of the corresponding benzene hydrocar-

bons from benzene; thus, from iodthiophene and an alkyl iodide by means from thiophene, alkyl bromides and aluminium chloride, etc. The halo thiophene homologues, when subjected to oxidation, etc., is analogous to the corresponding benzenes.

#### $\alpha$ -Methyl Thiophene.

$\alpha$ -Thiotolene, from iodthiophene by the aid of methyl iodide and sub-  
verted into  $\alpha$ -thiophenic acid by oxidation.

$\beta$ -Methyl Thiophene,  $\beta$ -Thiotolene, is formed when sodium pyrostatat with  $P_2S_5$ .  
Both thiotolenes occur in coal-tar.

Dimethyl Thiophenes or Thioxenes occur in crude xylene (B. 2).  
1,2-Dimethyl Thiophene boils at  $136^\circ$ . 1,3-Dimethyl Thiophene boils  
1,4-Thioxene boils at  $135^\circ$ . 2,3-Dimethyl Thiophene boils at  $145^\circ$ . It  
Thiophene, boiling at  $154^\circ$ , is formed when aluminium chloride acts upon 1  
and isopropyl bromide.

$\alpha$ -Phenylthiophene, melting at  $41^\circ$ , is prepared by heating benzoyl papier  
(B. 19, 3140).

$\alpha, \alpha'$ -Diphenyl Thiophene, melting at  $153^\circ$ , results from diphenacyl and  
from styrene or cinnamic acid with sulphur (B. 28, 890), together with  $\alpha, \beta$ -diphenyl  
thiophene, melting at  $119^\circ$ . Tetraphenyl Thiophene, Thionassal,  $C_{16}H_{10}S$ ,  
melting at  $184^\circ$ , is produced when thiobenzaldehyde is heated; also from stilben  
sulphur (A. 38, 320; B. 24, 3310), just as thiophene is formed from ethylene and  
phur (see above).

Dithienyl,  $C_4H_2S \cdot C_4H_2S$ , melting at  $83^\circ$  and boiling at  $266^\circ$ , is obtained, like  
phenyl, by conducting the vapors of thiophene through tubes heated to redness.  
isomeric  $\alpha, \alpha'$ -Dithienyl, melting at  $33^\circ$ , results in the action of sulphuric acid on  
thiophene and also by the interaction of  $\alpha$ -iodthiophene and silver (B. 27, 2919;  
2385). Dithienyl Methane,  $(C_4H_2S)_2CH_2$ , melting at  $43^\circ$  and boiling at  $267^\circ$ ,  
formed from thiophene and methylal. Thiényl Diphenyl Methane,  $(C_4H_2S) \cdot C_6H_5$ ,  
 $(C_4H_2S)_2$ , melting at  $63^\circ$  and boiling at  $335^\circ$ , is prepared from thiophene and benzoyl  
Thiényl Triphenyl Methane,  $(C_4H_2S)_3C(C_6H_5)_3$ , melting at  $237^\circ$ , is formed when  
 $P_2O_5$  acts upon triphenylcarbinol and thiophene. The homologous thiophenes may also  
be as readily condensed with triphenyl carbinol (B. 29, 1402).

Dithienyl Phenyl Methane,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(C_4H_2S)_2$ , melting at  $75^\circ$ , has been prepared  
by the condensation of benzaldehyde and thiophene (B. 29, 2205).

2. *Halogen Derivatives*: Chlorine and bromine attack thiophene in the cold. The  
action is even more energetic than with the benzenes. Iodine, in the presence of mer-  
curic oxide, also attacks it at the ordinary temperature. The three halogens first enter  
the  $\alpha$ -position. In properties the haloid thiophenes are very similar to the benzene  
haloids. When the brominated thiophenes are oxidized with strongly cooled, concen-  
trated nitric acid, the ring is ruptured and there result dibrom-maleic acid, brom-citraconic  
acid, dibromacetoacrylic acid, etc.

$\alpha$ -Chlorothiophene,  $C_4H_3ClS$ , boils at  $130^\circ$ , and Dichlorothiophene,  $C_4H_2Cl_2S$ , at  
170°. Tetrachlorothiophene,  $C_4HCl_4S$ , melts at  $36^\circ$ , and boils from  $220$ – $240^\circ$ . Its fur-  
mation serves for the complete isolation of all the thiophene that may be present in a  
thiophene-benzene (B. 18, 1490). Tribromothiophene melts at  $29^\circ$  and boils at  $260^\circ$ .  
Tetrabromothiophene,  $C_4HBr_4S$ , melts at  $112^\circ$  and boils at  $326^\circ$ . It is also produced  
in the energetic bromination of substituted thiophenes when the substituents are displaced  
(B. 26, 2457).

$\alpha$ -Iodothiophene,  $C_4H_3IS$ , boils at  $182^\circ$ .  
3. *Nitro-derivatives*: The action of nitric acid upon thiophene is so very energetic  
that in order to moderate the reaction, air charged with thiophene vapor is conducted  
into the fuming nitric acid. Mono- and dinitrothiophene are then produced (B. 17,  
2648).

Nitrothiophene,  $C_4H_3(NO_2)S$ , melts at  $44^\circ$  and boils at  $225^\circ$ .  
Dinitrothiophene,  $C_4H_2(NO_2)_2S$ , melts at  $52^\circ$  and boils at  $290^\circ$ . Caustic potash  
colors its alcoholic solution dark red. The same coloration of dinitrobenzene, caused in  
the same way, is due to admixed dinitrothiophene (B. 17, 2778).

4. *Amido-derivatives*: Nitrothiophene is reduced with much more difficulty than the nitrobenzenes. The reduction succeeds when zinc and hydrochloric acid are allowed to act upon the dilute alcoholic solution (B. 18, 1490).

*Amidothiophene*, Thiophenin,  $C_4H_3S.NH_2$ , is a bright yellow oil. It resinifies on exposure to the air. Its HCl-salt consists of deliquescent needles. It does not yield a diazo-derivative. It combines with salts of diazobenzene, forming stable, mixed azo-dyestuffs—e. g.,  $C_6H_5.N:N-C_4H_3S.NH_2.HCl$  (B. 18, 2316).

5. *Sulphonic Acids*: Like the benzene sulphonic acids, the thiophene sulpho-derivatives are produced by dissolving thiophene in sulphuric acid. In this reaction the thiophene must be diluted with petroleum ether, benzene, or some other agent. They can also be prepared from the thionyl-ketones by displacing the ketone groups by sulpho-residues (B. 19, 674, 1620, 2623; 29, 2562).

6. *Oxythiophenes*: Oxythiophene is not known. *α*-Oxy-*α*-methylthiophene, Oxythiotolene,  $C_4H_3(CH_3)S.OH$ , is synthetically prepared from lævulinic acid. *α*-Thiénylsulphhydrate,  $C_4H_3S.SH$ , is prepared by reducing *α*-thiophene-sulphonic chloride,  $C_4H_3S.SO_2Cl$ . It is present in the crude thiophene product obtained by distilling succinic acid with  $P_2S_5$ . It boils about 166°.

7. *Aldehydes and Ketones*: *α*-Thiophenaldehyde,  $C_4H_3S.CHO$ , results from the distillation of thiénylglyoxylic acid. It boils at 198°. See B. 24, 47; 25, 2588, for the thiophene aldoximes.

If oxidized, even in the air, it forms *α*-thiophenic acid. Aqueous caustic potash converts it into thiophenic acid and thiophene alcohol:  $2C_4H_3S.CHO + KOH = C_4H_3S.CO_2K + C_4H_3S.CH_2.OH$ .

*α*-Thiophene Alcohol is an aromatic liquid, boiling at 207°.

Thiophene aldehyde condenses with sodium acetate and acetic anhydride to *Thiényl Acrylic Acid*,  $C_4H_3S.CH:CH.CO_2H$ , melting at 118°. This acid corresponds to cinnamic acid.

The ketone derivatives of thiophene are obtained very easily by the action of acid chlorides upon thiophene in the presence of aluminium chloride.

*α*-Thiényl-methyl Ketone,  $C_4H_3S.CO.CH_3$ , Acetothiēnone, is an oil, boiling at 213°. If it be oxidized with permanganate, it first forms Thiényl-glyoxylic Acid,  $C_4H_3S.CO.CO_2H$ , melting at 91°, and then *α*-thiophenic acid.

Compare B. 24, 232, R. 627, 952, for the condensation products of acetothiēnone with oxalic ester. Dithiényl Ketone, *Thiēnone*,  $CO(C_4H_3S)_2$ , melting at 88° and boiling at 326°, is obtained from thiophene and  $COCl_2$ . Thiényl Phenyl Ketone,  $C_4H_3S.CO.C_6H_5$ , melting at 55° and boiling at 360°, results from thiophene, benzoyl chloride, and  $Al_2Cl_6$ .

See B. 28, 1804, for the brominated thiophene ketones.

## 8. THIOPHENE CARBOXYLIC ACIDS.

Thiophene carboxylic acids are formed by methods which are perfectly analogous to those employed in the preparation of the aromatic acids:

(1) By the oxidation of the alkyl thiophenes with a solution of alkaline potassium permanganate. *α*-Ethyl-thiophene first yields thiényl glyoxylic acid, but this changes to thiophenic acid.

(2) By the action of chlor-carbonic ester and sodium amalgam upon iod- or brom-thiophene, or by the interaction of the same reagent and thiophene, or the latter, urea chloride, and  $Al_2Cl_6$ .

*α*-Thiophene Carboxylic Acid,  $C_4H_3S.CO_2H$ , melting at 126° and boiling at 260°, is also formed upon heating mucic acid with barium sulphide (p. 447).

Its *nitrile*,  $C_4H_3S.CN$ , is produced when *α*-thiophene sulphonic acid is distilled, or by the elimination of water from thiophene aldoxime (B. 25, 1311).

*β*-Thiophene Carboxylic Acid is produced when *β*-methyl thiophene is oxidized. It melts at 136°.

(1,2)-Thiophene Dicarboxylic Acid,  $C_4H_2S.(CO_2H)_2$ , melts at 260° with decomposition. Like phthalic acid, it forms a *fluorescein* with resorcinol.

The (1,3)-acid melts at 118°. The (1,4)-acid sublimes at 300°. Sodium amalgam reduces it to—

Tetrahydro-thiophene Dicarboxylic Acid,  $C_4H_6S(CO_2H)_2$ , melting at 164°. It reduces ammoniacal silver solutions, especially upon warming. It resembles the phthalic acids (B. 19, 3274) in its entire deportment.

Thiophene Tetracarboxylic Methyl Ester,  $C_4(COOCH_3)_2S$ , melting at 127°, obtained when acetylene dicarboxylic methyl ester is heated with sulphur to 190–195° in a sealed tube (B. 28, 1635).

Thiophthene,  $\begin{array}{c} CH \\ | \\ CH-S-C-S-CH \\ | \quad | \\ CH \quad CH \end{array}$ , consists of two thiophene nuclei, having 6 C-members in common. It boils at 225°. It results when citric acid is heated with  $P_2S_5$  (B. 19, 2444).

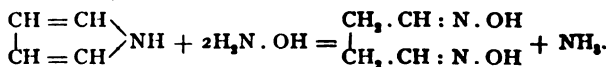
3. Selenophene.—The selenophenes are constituted analogously to the thiophenes. They contain an atom of selenium for sulphur. Selenophene,  $\begin{array}{c} CH=CH \\ | \quad | \\ CH=CH \end{array} Se$ , has not yet been prepared in a pure condition. It probably is formed when selenium ethide is conducted through tubes heated to redness (B. 18, 1772).

$\alpha,\alpha$ -Dimethyl Selenophene, Selenoxene,  $C_4H_2(CH_3)_2Se$ , boiling at 153–155°, is produced when acetylacetone is heated with phosphorus selenide (B. 18, 2093). Isatin and sulphuric acid color it a carmine-red. It also shows the *Leibniz reaction* (p. 453).

#### 4. PYRROL GROUP.\*

In pyrrol,  $C_4H_5N$ , there is a four-membered carbon chain united to a ring by the bivalent imide group. It is, therefore, a secondary amine, and, like its derivatives, possesses a feeble basic nature, as it dissolves in dilute acids. The pyrrol bodies, on the other hand, show great similarity in their behavior to the phenols; the imide hydrogen can be easily replaced by potassium. The great reactivity of the methine hydrogen in pyrrol is quite remarkable. It can be as readily, and in some instances more easily, replaced than the imide hydrogen by the most different groups and atoms. The constitution of pyrrol and its relations to furfuran and thiophene are deduced from its analogous syntheses from the  $\gamma$ -dicarbonyl compounds.

A rather remarkable occurrence is the reversal of these syntheses—*i. e.*, the decomposition of the pyrrol ring with elimination of the imide group. This is induced by the action of hydroxylamine. Dioximes are thus produced. Thus, pyrrol yields succinodioxime (B. 22, 1968):



The homologous pyrrols—*e. g.*,  $\alpha$ -methyl pyrrol,  $\beta$ -isopropyl, etc.—react similarly. This decomposition can be applied in determining the position of the substituents in the homologous pyrrols, as the  $\alpha$ -alkyl pyrrols yield the oximes of ketones, while aldioximes are obtained from the  $\beta$ -substituents. These can be readily converted into dibasic acids (B. 24, R. 649, 830).

The positions of substituents in the methine groups of pyrrols are indicated, as with furfuran and thiophene, by means of numbers, 1, 2, 3, 4, etc., or letters,  $\alpha$ ,  $\alpha_1$ ,  $\beta$ ,  $\beta_1$ , etc. (compare 448).

The derivatives obtained by replacement of the imide hydrogen atom are termed *N*- (or *N*-) derivatives to distinguish them from the C-compounds.

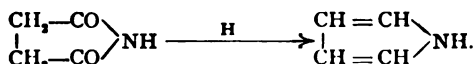
\* Ciamician, "Il Pirrolo ed i suoi derivati," Roma, 1888.

**Pyrrol**, boiling at  $131^{\circ}$ , with sp. gr. 0.9752 ( $12.5^{\circ}$ ), received its name from its property of imparting a fiery red ( $\pi\upsilon\rho\rho\acute{o}\varsigma$ ) color to a pine shaving moistened with hydrochloric acid. It was first found in coal-tar and bone oil (Runge, 1834; Anderson, 1858). It also is present in the distillation products of bituminous shales.

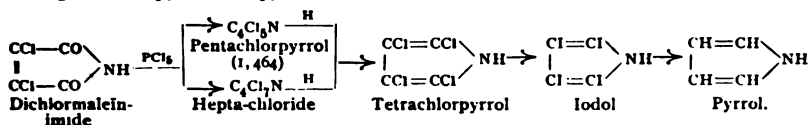
*Bone oil*, freed from the strongly basic substances (chiefly pyridine bases), consists of nitriles of the fatty acids, which are saponified upon boiling them with caustic potash, and in addition benzene hydrocarbons, pyrrol and its homologues. The pyrrol is contained in that portion of the oil boiling at  $115$ – $130^{\circ}$ , which is treated with metallic potassium, whereupon solid potassium-pyrrol separates.

The oil obtained free from bone-glue by distillation is composed almost entirely of pyrrol compounds.

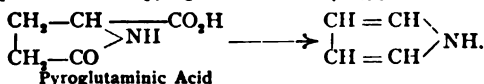
Pyrrol can be obtained synthetically (1) by the distillation of ammonium saccharate or mucate, or upon heating glycerol to  $200^{\circ}$ ; (2) when acetylene and ammonia are conducted through tubes heated to redness:  $2C_2H_2 + NH_3 = C_4H_4NH + H_2$ ; (3) from various acid imides and lactams, which may also be regarded as keto-derivatives of pyrrol hydrides. Thus, succinimide is reduced to pyrrol when it is distilled with zinc-dust (or sodium):



Succinimide and dichloraleftrimide, when heated with  $PCl_5$ , yield perchlorinated products, which, upon reduction, become tetrachlorpyrrol. The latter can be changed through tetraiodopyrrol into pyrrol:

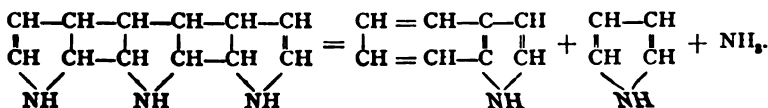


Pyrrol is also produced when pyroglutaminic acid (1, 493) is heated:



Pyrrol is a colorless liquid with an odor resembling that of chloroform. It becomes brown on exposure to the air. It is but slightly soluble in water, but dissolves very readily in alcohol and ether. In yields an indigo blue coloration with isatin and sulphuric acid, or with phenanthraquinone, etc. (p. 447) (B. 17, 142, 1034; 19, 106). Pyrrol is a very feeble base. It is dissolved very slowly in the cold by dilute acids, but is rapidly resinified by strong acids. When its solutions in dilute acids are heated, ammonia is disengaged and an amorphous red powder of varying composition is precipitated. This is *pyrrol red*.

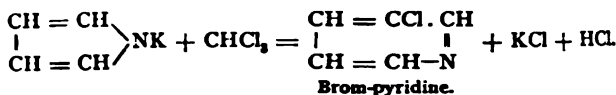
The resinifying action of acids upon pyrrols is probably due to polymerization changes (B. 26, 1711). Thus, dry hydrochloric acid precipitates  $(C_4H_5N)_3HCl$  from the ethereal solution of pyrrol. This must be regarded as the salt of a polymeric tripyrrol,  $(C_4H_5N)_3$ . Crystalline tripyrrol is obtained by neutralizing the solution of pyrrol in dilute aqueous hydrochloric acid with ammonia and then extracting with ether. Tripyrrol polymerizes further on standing, but when heated it breaks down into  $NH_3$ , indol, and pyrrol, according to the following equation (B. 27, 476):



Compare the analogous decomposition of polymeric alkyl pyrrols into alkyl iodols (p. 459).

The transition of the pyrrol ring to that of pyridine is very remarkable.

$\beta$ -Chloropyridine is formed upon heating potassium-pyrrol, or pyrrol and sodium cobaltate, with chloroform:



Similarly, bromoform yields  $\beta$ -bromopyridine, and methylene chloride, pyridine, etc. The homologous alkyl pyrrols, when heated alone to higher temperatures, also form pyridine derivatives.

**N-Derivatives of Pyrrol:** Potassium dissolves in pyrrol with an energetic evolution of hydrogen. It forms Potassium-pyrrol,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{NK} = \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} = \text{CH} \\ | \\ \text{CH} = \text{CH} \end{array} \text{NK}$ , a crystalline

mass. This compound may also be obtained by boiling pyrrol with solid caustic potash. Water regenerates pyrrol and caustic potash. Sodium does not act like potassium.

A series of N-derivatives of pyrrol may be prepared from potassium pyrrol. They are characterized by the fact that they change, on heating, to C-derivatives. This is analogous to the formation of homologous anilines from the alkyl anilines:

Alkyl iodides yield n-Alkyl Pyrrols,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_4 : \text{NR}$ , which can be directly formed if in the pyrrol syntheses primary amines be substituted for ammonia, and also in the distillation of the alkylamine salts of mucic acid, etc.

n-Methyl Pyrrol boils at  $113^\circ$ . n-Ethyl Pyrrol boils at  $131^\circ$ . n-Isoamyl Pyrrol boils at  $180-184^\circ$ .

n-Phenyl Pyrrol, from aniline mucate, melts at  $62^\circ$ .

n,4-Pyridyl Pyrrol,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{N} \cdot \text{C}_5\text{H}_4\text{N}$ , boiling at  $251^\circ$ , is obtained from  $\beta$ -amido-pyridine mucate (B. 28, 1907).

With acetyl chloride the product is: n-Acetyl Pyrrol,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{N} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , boiling at  $178^\circ$ . It is also produced (together with pyrrol-methyl-ketone) upon heating pyrrol with acetic anhydride.

Phosgene converts potassium-pyrrol into n-Carbonyl Pyrrol,  $\text{CO} \cdot \begin{array}{c} \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_4\text{H}_4 \\ | \\ \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_4\text{H}_4 \end{array}$ , melting at  $63^\circ$  and distilling at  $238^\circ$ . When heated, it is converted into isomeric dipyrrol ketone,  $\text{CO} \cdot \begin{array}{c} \text{C}_4\text{H}_3 \cdot \text{NH} \\ | \\ \text{C}_4\text{H}_3 \cdot \text{NH} \end{array}$ .

n-Pyrrol Carboxylic Ester,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{N} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , is formed when chlor-carbonic ester acts upon potassium-pyrrol. It is an oil boiling at  $180^\circ$ . It passes into Pyrrol Carbamide,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{N} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH}_2$ , if it is heated with aqueous ammonia.

n-Cyan Pyrrol,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{N} \cdot \text{CN}$ , is produced in the action of cyanogen chloride upon potassium-pyrrol. It rapidly polymerizes to a melamine derivative.

n-Anilido-derivatives of the pyrrols,  $\text{C}_4\text{R}_4\text{N} \cdot \text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5$ , have been synthetically obtained from 1,4-diketo compounds and phenylhydrazine (compare A. 289, 312).

**C-Derivatives of Pyrrol:** 1. C-Alkyl Pyrrols, homologous pyrrols, occur in bone oil. They are artificially produced:

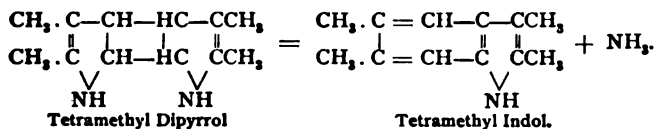
(a) On conducting the vapors of pyrrol and alcohols over zinc-dust:

(b) Upon heating pyrrol or potassium-pyrrol with alkyl iodides. n-Alkyl pyrrols result at first, but they immediately change to c-alkyl pyrrols;

(c) By splitting off carbon dioxide from the homologous pyrrol carboxylic acids (p. 460);

(d) By direct synthesis from  $\gamma$ -diketones—e. g., acetonyl acetone, etc.—upon heating with ammonia.

**Behavior:** The C-alkyl pyrrols yield the corresponding pyrrol carboxylic acids when they are fused with caustic potash. Like pyrrol itself they are readily resinified by acids. Gaseous hydrogen chloride precipitates compounds like  $[C_4H_3(CH_3)NH]_2HCl$ ,  $[C_4H_2(CH_3)_2NH]_2HCl$ , from the ethereal solutions of the mono- and  $\alpha,\beta$ -dialkyl pyrrols. In aqueous solution dilute sulphuric acid changes these salts, with the elimination of ammonia, into alkyl indols. The reaction completes itself by the assumption of a structure for polymeric alkyl pyrrols similar to that attributed to tripyrrol (B. 24, 2562; 26, 1711):



$\alpha$ -Methyl Pyrrol boils at  $148^\circ$ , while the  $\beta$ -variety boils at  $143^\circ$ .

$\alpha,\beta$ -Dimethyl Pyrrol boils at  $165^\circ$ . These three have been obtained from bone oil.  $\alpha,\alpha_1$ -Dimethyl Pyrrol, boiling at  $165^\circ$ , and  $\alpha,\beta_1$ -Dimethyl Pyrrol, boiling at  $160^\circ$ , have been prepared from their dicarboxylic acids (p. 461).

$\alpha$ -Ethyl Pyrrol, boiling at  $165^\circ$ , and  $\alpha$ -Isopropyl Pyrrol, boiling at  $175^\circ$ , are produced in the action of aldehyde or acetone and zinc chloride upon pyrrol. See B. 30, 434, for  $\alpha,\alpha_1$ -methyl isopropyl pyrrol.  $\alpha$ -Phenyl Pyrrol, melting at  $129^\circ$  and boiling at  $272^\circ$ , is formed by the rearrangement of n-phenyl pyrrol upon the application of heat (B. 28, 1905).

$\alpha,\alpha_1$ -Methyl Phenyl Pyrrol melts at  $101^\circ$ .

Tetraphenyl Pyrrol, from bidesyl with ammonia, melts at  $211^\circ$  (B. 22, 553).

$\alpha,\beta$ -Pyridyl Pyrrol, melting at  $72^\circ$ , is formed by the rearrangement of n, $\beta$ -pyridyl pyrrol. The methyl iodide of its n-methyl ether appears to be identical with nicotyrin iodmethylete obtained from nicotine (see this) (B. 28, 1912).

2. **Halogen Substitution Products:** The halogens react very energetically with the pyrrol compounds. To prevent the formation of tar it is necessary to operate with very dilute solutions. Even then, as a rule, all the available hydrogen atoms of the pyrrol nucleus will be immediately replaced. Chlorine and bromine oxidize pyrrol in alkaline solution at once and convert it into dichlor or dibrom malenimides (p. 447).

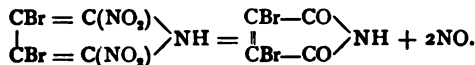
Tetrachlorpyrrol,  $C_4Cl_4NH$ , melting with decomposition at  $110^\circ$ , is also obtained by the reduction of the product resulting from the action of  $PCl_5$  upon succinimide and dichlormalenimide—the so-called pyrrol pentachloride,  $C_4Cl_5N$ , and the heptachloride,  $C_4Cl_7N$  (1, 463). It decomposes very rapidly *spontaneously*, and cannot be directly converted into pyrrol by retrogressive substitution. Potassium iodide converts it into iodol (B. 19, 3027).

Iodol, Tetra-iod-pyrrol,  $C_4I_4NH$ , melting at  $104^\circ$  with decomposition, crystallizes in yellowish-brown needles. It is best made by the action of iodine upon pyrrol in the presence of alkalis. It is odorless. It is applied as an antiseptic, having the same action as iodoform (B. 20, R. 220).

Tetrachlor-n-phenyl-pyrrol,  $C_4Cl_4 \cdot NC_6H_5$ , results when  $PCl_5$  acts upon succinil (1, 449).

3. **Nitro-derivatives:** Nitric acid converts pyrrol and alkyl pyrrols into resin and then oxidizes them to oxalic acid, etc. With fuming nitric acid nitro-derivatives are only obtained from the pyrrol ketones and carboxylic acids. The side-chains are sometimes replaced.

Dinitro-pyrrol,  $C_4H_2(NO_2)_2H_2NH$ , melting at  $152^\circ$ , is obtained from pyrrolmethyl ketone. Dinitrodibrompyrrol,  $C_4Br_2(NO_2)_2NH$ , is formed from dibrompyrrol dicarboxylic acid. It decomposes very readily with liberation of NO into dibrommalenimide:



4. **Pyrrol-azo-compounds:** Azo- and Disazo-compounds, perfectly analogous to the benzene azo-dyes, result from the interaction of benzene diazo-salts and pyrrol or homol-

time (αβλα) and is artificially prepared by heating carbopyrrolic acid with acetic anhydride. When it is heated with  $\text{PCl}_5$ , *perchlorpyrrocoll*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{Cl}_8\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$ , is produced. The latter absorbs eight additional chlorine atoms and passes into the chloride ( $\text{C}_4\text{Cl}_7\text{NCO}$ )<sub>2</sub>, which becomes tetrachlorpyrrol upon reduction (p. 459).

$\beta$ -Pyrrol Carboxylic Acid, melting at  $162^\circ$ , is obtained by fusing methyl pyrrol with caustic potash.

**Methyl Pyrrol Carboxylic Acids**,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_7(\text{CH}_3)\text{NH} \cdot \text{COOH}$ . The  $\alpha$ -acid melts at  $169^\circ$ ; the  $\beta$ -acid at  $142^\circ$ .  $\alpha, \alpha_1$ -Dimethyl-pyrrol- $\beta$ -carboxylic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{COOH}$ , melts at  $118^\circ$ . Its ester is derived from the corresponding dicarboxylic esters by the exit of carbon dioxide.

$\alpha, \alpha_1$ -Diphenylpyrrol Carboxylic Acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{NH} \cdot \text{COOH}$ , melting at  $261^\circ$ , is obtained from phenacylbenzoylacetic ester,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{R})\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$  (p. 381).  $\alpha, \alpha_1$ -Pyrrol Dicarboxylic Acid,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_2\text{NH}(\text{COOH})_2$ , from carbopyrrol glyoxylic acid (p. 461), decomposes at  $200^\circ$  into carbon dioxide and pyrrol.  $\alpha, \alpha_1$ -Dimethyl- $\beta, \beta_1$ -pyrrol Dicarboxylic Acid,  $\text{C}_6(\text{CH}_3)_4\text{NH}(\text{COOH})_2$ , from diacetosuccinic ester, breaks down at  $251^\circ$  into  $2\text{CO}_2$  and  $\alpha, \alpha_1$ -dimethyl pyrrol.  $\alpha, \beta_1$ -Dimethyl- $\beta, \alpha_1$ -pyrrol Dicarboxylic Acid, from acetoacetic ester with isonitrosoacetoacetic ester, decomposes at  $197^\circ$  into  $2\text{CO}_2$  and  $\alpha, \beta_1$ -dimethyl pyrrol.  $\alpha\alpha_1$ -Diphenyl- $\beta\beta_1$ -pyrrol Dicarboxylic Ester, melting at  $152^\circ$ , is produced when ammonia acts upon dibenzoyl succinic ester (A. 293, 107).

**Pyrrolen-phthalide**,  $\text{CO} < \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 > \text{C} < \text{NC}_6\text{H}_5 > \text{C} < \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 > \text{CO}$ , is produced when phthalic anhydride and pyrrol are heated together (B. 19, 2201). Its formula is probably analogous to that of pyrrocoll.

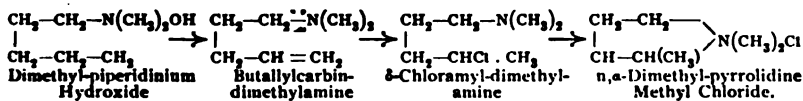
**Hydropyrrol Derivatives**: When pyrrol is reduced (zinc-dust and acetic acid) two hydrogen atoms are added and dihydropyrrol or pyrrolin,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_7\text{N}$  (I, 314), is produced. Further addition of hydrogen (by means of  $\text{HI}$  and phosphorus) leads to tetrahydropyrrol or pyrrolidine,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{N}$ . The nature of pyrrol is very essentially altered by this addition of hydrogen. Whereas pyrrol is a very feeble base, pyrroline and pyrrolidine, to even a greater degree, manifest the strong basic properties of the secondary amines of the aliphatic series.

**Pyrroline**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH} = \text{CH} \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{NH}$ , is a liquid that dissolves readily in water and boils at  $91^\circ$ . It has an alkaline reaction, smells like ammonia, and unites with acids to form salts. It is a secondary base. Nitrous acid converts it into *nitrosamine*,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_6\text{N}(\text{NO})$ , melting at  $38^\circ$ .

Pyrroline and methyl iodide unite to dimethyl-ammonium iodide,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_8\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{I}$ .

**n-Methyl Pyrroline**,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_8\text{N} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , is formed by the reduction of methyl pyrrol. It boils at  $80^\circ$ .

**Pyrrolidine, Tetramethylene-imine**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{NH}$ , as well as its homologues, have already been described in connection with the aliphatic bodies. In addition to the methods there given for its production another may be introduced at this point. It represents a transition of the six-membered piperidine ring into the five-membered pyrrolidine ring. Piperidine or pentamethylene-imine combines with alkyl iodides, forming dimethyl-piperidinium iodide, the hydroxide of which, upon distillation, changes to a compound with an open chain, *butallylcarbindimethylamine*. The hydrochloride addition product of the latter readily rearranges itself into the chlormethylate of *n, \alpha*-dimethylpyrrolidine:



Other unsaturated amines analogous in constitution to butallylcarbinderimethylamine can be changed by  $\text{HCl}$  to pyrrolidine bases (Merling, A. 264, 310; 278, 1). Pyrrolidine can be carried through changes similar to those indicated above for piperidine. It

may be combined with methyl iodide. The resulting dimethylpyrrolidylum iodide can then be decomposed by distillation with caustic potash, and the base dimethyl pyrrolidine,  $C_4H_9N(CH_3)_2$ , will be obtained. When its iodomethylate is distilled with potash the products are trimethylamine and an unsaturated hydrocarbon, Pyrrolylene,  $C_4H_6$  (B. 1569).

*n*-Methyl Pyrrolidine,  $C_4H_9N \cdot CH_3$ , boiling at  $81-83^\circ$ , is identical with the base which is produced by the elimination of carbon dioxide from *hygric acid* or *n-methyl pyrrolidine carboxylic acid*, an oxidation product of the alkaloid hygrine present in coca leaves (B. 30, 1113). *a*,2-Pyridyl-*n*-methyl Pyrrolidine is very probably the alkaloid *nicotine*. Consult B. 30, 1588, for the reduction products of *a*,*a*-dimethyl pyrrolidine.

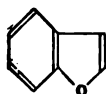
*Ketopyrrolidines* or *Pyrrolidones* are the lactams of the  $\gamma$ -amido-acids, like Butyrolactam, Pyrrolidone,  $\begin{matrix} CH_2-CO \\ | \\ CH_2-CH_2 \end{matrix} > NH$ , which have also been discovered in connection with the aliphatic bodies.

*Diketopyrrolidines* are the imides of the succinic acid series—*e. g.*, succinimide  $\begin{matrix} CH_2-CO \\ | \\ CH_2-CO \end{matrix} > NH$  (I, 448). *a*, $\beta$ -Diketopyrrolidines are produced in the condensation of oxalacetic ester with benzalanilines—*e. g.*, *a*, $\beta$ -diketo-*n*,*a*′-diphenyl- $\beta$ ′-pyrrolidine carboxylic ester,  $C_6H_5N \begin{matrix} CO & CO \\ \diagdown & / \\ CH(C_6H_5) & - & CH(CO_2R) \end{matrix}$ , melting at  $171^\circ$  (B. 30, 602). Xanthoxalanil,  $\begin{matrix} CO & CO \\ | & | \\ CH_2 & - & CO \end{matrix} > N \cdot C_6H_5$  (B. 24, 1252), the anil of oxalacetic acid, is triketo-pyrrolidone.

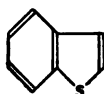
### CONDENSED NUCLEI OF THE FURFURANE, THIOPHENE, AND PYRROL GROUPS.

When two adjacent C-atoms of a furfuran, thiophene, or pyrrole nucleus participate in the formation of a benzene, naphthalene, etc., group, condensed nuclei result, which sustain the same relations to the simple heterocyclic rings that the condensed nuclei of the naphthalene, phenanthrene, and anthracene groups bear to benzene.

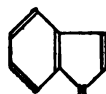
The following condensed nuclei are derived from furfuran, thiophene, and pyrrole:



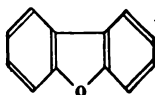
Benzofurfuran, Coumarone



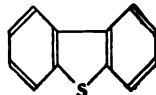
Benzothiophene



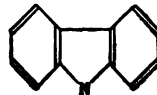
Benzopyrrol, Indol



Dibenzofurfuran, Diphenylene Oxide

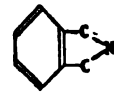
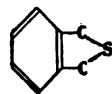
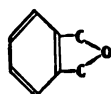


Dibenzothiophene, Diphenylene Sulphide



Dibenzopyrrol, Diphenylene-imide, Carbazole.

The dicyclic nuclei can have place-isomeric combinations:



These are designated isobenzofurfurane, isbenzothiophene, and isbenzopyrrol or isoindol. These hypothetical parent substances give rise to a series of substances which have been discussed in conjunction with compounds having open chains. From isobenzofurfurane we may consider as derivatives: *tetrachlorxylylene oxide* (p. 232), *phthalide* (p. 234), *phthalic anhydride* (p. 240). To isbenzothiophene may be referred: *xylylene sulphide* (p. 232), *thiophthalide* (p. 235), *thiophthalic anhydride* (p. 240); to isoindol: *xylyleneimine* (p. 232), *phthalimidine* (p. 234), and *phthalimide* (p. 240).

To isoindol may also be referred *methyl isoindol*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) \end{smallmatrix} \text{N}$ , derived from phthalazine (B. 26, 710).

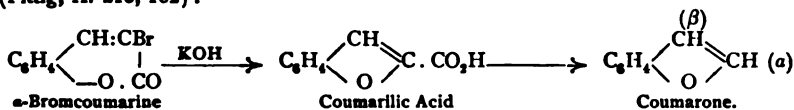
Condensed nuclei further are known in which two heterocyclic rings also participate in the formation of a benzene nucleus—e. g., benzodifurfurane and benzodipyrrol derivatives (p. 464).

*Coumarone* and *indol* should be especially mentioned as the parent substances of important groups. Indol is the mother substance of indigo. These two bodies will be considered together with benzothiophene. Next will follow the groups of dibenzo-compounds: diphenylene oxide, diphenylene sulphide, and carbazole.

## 5. BENZOFURFURANE or COUMARONE GROUP.

The coumarone compounds, as their name would imply, are produced:

(1) By the action of alcoholic potash upon coumarine dibromides or  $\alpha$ -brom-coumarines (Fittig, A. 216, 162):

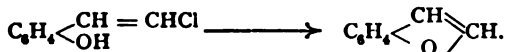


Other coumarines react similarly—e. g., umbelliferone, æsculetine, and daphnetin.

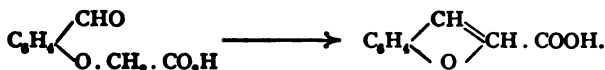
It is very certain that  $\alpha$ -brom-o-oxy-cinnamic acid and its homologues occur as intermediate products. These split off HBr and form the coumarone ring. The formation of benzoyl coumarone,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH} \\ | \\ \text{O} \end{smallmatrix} \text{C} \cdot \text{COC}_6\text{H}_5$ , from aceto-o-oxybenzalacetophenone

dibromide and caustic potash, as well as by the condensation of salicylaldehyde by means of  $\alpha$ -bromacetophenone and caustic potash, proceeds analogously (B. 29, 237, R. 290).

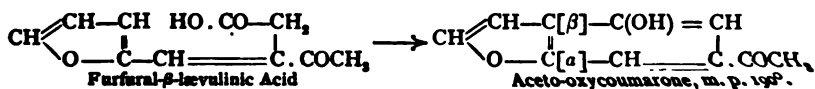
(2) Other o-disubstitution products of benzene combine to yield a coumarone ring. Caustic potash converts o-oxychlorstyrene into coumarone (B. 26, R. 678):



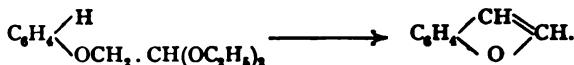
(3) By heating o-aldehydro-phenoxy-acetic acid with sodium acetate, coumarilic acid results (B. 17, 3000):



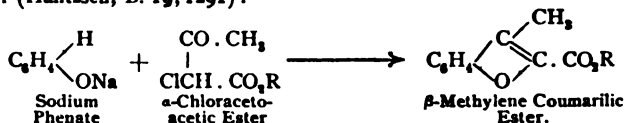
(4) The synthesis of aceto-oxy-coumarone, however, from furfural- $\beta$ -lævulinic acid represents a benzene ring formation (B. 26, 345):



(5) By the action of zinc chloride upon phenoxylacetals and their homologues (B. 3 1700):



(6) Just as the coumarines are formed from phenol and malic acid or acetoacetic ester so the coumarones are obtained from the sodium salts of the phenols with  $\alpha$ -chloracetoacetic ester (Hantzsch, B. 19, 1291):



Resorcin and two molecules of the ester yield a *benzodifurfurane*, pyrogallol with three molecules of the ester form a *benzotrifurfurane*, while a *naphthofurfurane* is obtained from naphthol.

A perfectly similar reaction is noticeable in the production of coumarone and benzodifurfurane derivatives from quinones and chlorinated quinones—*e. g.*, chloranil, when heated with acetoacetic ester (J. pr. Ch. [2], 45, 67; A. 283, 245).

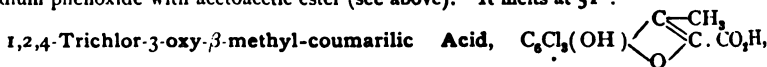
**Coumarone**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_8\text{O}$ , boiling at  $169^\circ$ , is formed by distilling coumarilic acid with lime. It is obtained from *o*-oxy-*o*-chlorstyrene; from phenoxylacetal with zinc chloride (B. 30, 1703), as well as from coal-tar (B. 23, 78). Concentrated acids convert it into a resin. With bromine it yields a *dibromide*, melting at  $88^\circ$ . Sodium and alcohol reduce it to dihydrocoumarone, *coumaran*,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_8\text{O}$ , boiling at  $189^\circ$ , together with ethyl phenol (B. 25, 2409).

**$\beta$ -Methyl Coumarone**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_8\text{O}$ , from methyl coumarilic acid, boils at  $189^\circ$ .  **$\alpha, \beta$ -Dimethyl coumarone**, from dimethyl coumarilic acid, boils at  $210^\circ$ .

**$\alpha$ -Benzoyl Coumarone**,  $\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_8\text{O}(\text{COC}_6\text{H}_5)$ , melting at  $91^\circ$ , obtained from acetyl-*o*-oxybenzalacetophenone dibromide, as well as in the condensation of salicylaldehyde with phenacyl bromide, is decomposed by fusion with caustic potash into coumarone and benzoic acid (B. 29, 237, R. 290).

**$\alpha$ -Coumarilic Acid**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_6\text{O} \cdot \text{COOH}$ , melting at  $190^\circ$ , is obtained from  $\alpha$ -bromocoumarine. Sodium amalgam converts it into hydrocoumarilic acid,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_8\text{O}_3$ .

**$\beta$ -Methyl- $\alpha$ -coumarilic Acid** melts at  $189^\circ$ . Its *ethyl ester* is produced on heating sodium phenoxide with acetoacetic ester (see above). It melts at  $51^\circ$ .



melting at  $258^\circ$ , is prepared from chloranil and acetoacetic ester.

**$\beta$ -Ketocoumaran**, *Ketodihydrocoumarone*,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_6 \begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{O} \quad \text{H} \end{array}$ , melting at  $97^\circ$ , is made from aceto-*o*-oxyacetophenone bromide (B. 30, 1081).

**Benzodimethyldifurfurane Dicarboxylic Ester**,

$\text{CO}_2\text{R} \cdot \text{C} \begin{array}{c} \text{(CH}_3\text{)} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \quad \text{C} \\ | \quad \diagdown \\ \text{O} \quad \text{C} \end{array} \text{C}_6\text{H}_2 \begin{array}{c} \text{C(CH}_3\text{)} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \quad \text{C} \\ | \quad \diagdown \\ \text{O} \quad \text{C} \end{array} \text{CO}_2\text{R}$ , is obtained from resorcinol and chloracetoacetic ester. The  $\alpha$ -compound melts at  $186^\circ$  and the  $\beta$ -body at  $141^\circ$ . **Benzo-**

**trimethyltrifurfurane Tricarboxylic Ester**,  $\text{C}_6 \left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{O} \quad \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{R} \end{array} \right\}_3$ , is similarly formed from phloroglucin. It melts with decomposition at  $297^\circ$ .

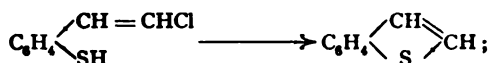
**Naphthofurfurane**,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6[\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}]$ , melting at  $61^\circ$ , is made by the action of  $\text{ZnCl}_2$  upon naphthoxylacetaldehyde,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{O} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CHO}$ , dissolved in glacial acetic acid (B.

30, 1702). **Naphthomethylfurfurane Carboxylic Ester**,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6 \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{O} \quad \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{R} \end{array}$ , melting at  $110^\circ$ , is obtained from  $\alpha$ -naphthol and chloracetoacetic ester.

**Naphthoketocoumaran**,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}_2)$ , melting at  $92^\circ$ , is formed from 2-bromo-*aceto-1-acetylnaphthol* (B. 30, 1468).

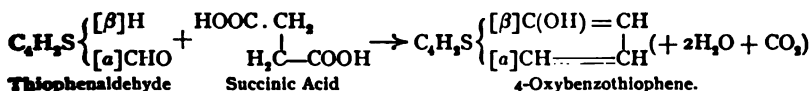
## 6. BENZOTHIOPHENE GROUP.

Benzothiophene is produced from  $\alpha$ -sulphhydryl- $\omega$ -chlorstyrene, which has only been isolated in the form of its xanthogenic ester. This is analogous to the formation of coumarone from  $\alpha$ -oxy- $\omega$ -chlorstyrene (B. 26, 2809):



which is similar to the formation of acetoxy coumarone from the condensation product of furfural and lævulinic acid.

Oxybenzothiophene results from the condensation of thiophenylaldehyde with succinic acid (B. 19, 1619):



Benzothiophene, Thionaphthene,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_6\text{S}$ , melting at  $31^\circ$  and boiling at  $221^\circ$  (C. 1897, 11, 270), has an odor like that of naphthalene. 4-Oxythionaphthene,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_6\text{S}(\text{OH})$ , melting at  $72^\circ$ , resembles  $\alpha$ -naphthol in its behavior (compare thiophene).

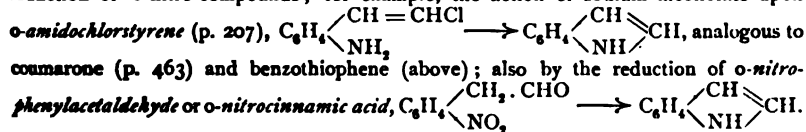
## BENZPYRROL OR INDOL GROUP.

The most important substances belonging in this group have been obtained from indigo-blue, to which the indol derivatives bear an intimate kinship. Indol, and especially the methyl indols, as derivatives of pyrrol, show most of the reactions of the latter (B. 19, 2988). By a rupture of the ring the indol bodies are converted mainly into ortho-amido-acids of benzene. Our knowledge of the constitution of indol and its derivatives, and their relations to indigo, is based chiefly upon the investigations of A. v. Baeyer (p. 473).

Indol,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7\text{N} = \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{CH} \\ \diagdown \text{NH} \end{array} \text{CH} (a)$ , melting at  $52^\circ$  and boiling at  $245^\circ$  with decomposition, is obtained:

(1) By the distillation of oxygen-containing derivatives—*e. g.*, oxindol (p. 471), indigo blue (p. 473)—with zinc-dust.

(2) By condensation of various  $\alpha$ -amido-substitution products of benzene, or by the reduction of  $\alpha$ -nitro-compounds; for example, the action of sodium alcoholate upon



It is very probable that the production of indol from phenylglycerol,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , and calcium formate proceeds in a similar manner (B. 23, R. 654).

(3) The pyrogenic formation of indol from alkylic anilines, tetrahydroquinoline, and especially from cumidine when the vapors are conducted through tubes heated to redness, are due to ortho-condensations.

(4) Finally, indol is formed (together with skatole—see this) from *albuminates* in the pancreatic fermentation (method of production), or when they are fused with caustic potash.

**Behavior:** Indol crystallizes from water in shining leaflets. It possesses a peculiar odor, resembling that of naphthylamine, and is readily volatilized in aqueous vapor. Its vapor density (under diminished pressure) corresponds to the formula  $C_8H_7N$ . A pine splinter moistened with hydrochloric acid and dipped into its alcoholic solution or the vapors acquires a cherry-red color. Indol possesses but very feeble basic properties (similar to pyrrol), and is easily resinified by acids.

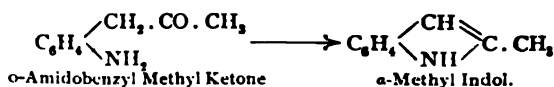
With picric acid it forms a compound which crystallizes in red needles.

The substituents of indol in the pyrrol ring are termed  $\alpha$ -,  $\beta$ -,  $n$ -, or  $Py(1,2,3)$ ; those in the benzene ring, 1,2,3,4 or  $Bz(1,2,3,4)$  (A. 236, 121).

*n*-Nitroindol,  $C_8H_6N \cdot NO$ , melting at  $172^\circ$ , formed from indol and sodium nitrite, probably has the doubled formula (C. 1891, II, 62). Various *acetyl indols* are produced when indol and acetic anhydride are heated together (B. 23, 1359, 2296).

**Homologous Indols** are produced:

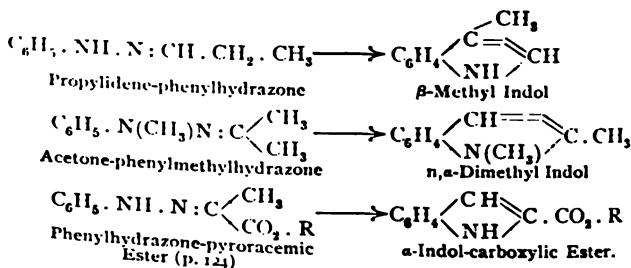
1. Take indol from *o*-amido-compounds of the benzene series by the formation of closed rings:



Similarly, *o* amido-desoxybenzoin yields  $\alpha$ -phenyl indol and *o*-methylamido-*o*-chlor-styrene: *n* methyl indol.

2. By heating the anilines with compounds containing the group  $CO \cdot CHCl$ . For example, aniline and chloracetone yield  $\alpha$ -methyl indol; with  $\beta$ -bromolevulinic acid,  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$  dimethyl indol is the product. A simultaneous evolution of  $CO_2$  occurs here. This reaction is parallel to that of the so-called *quinaldine synthesis*. For its course see B. 25, 2800; 26, 1336, 2638. Aniline and bromacetophenone yield  $\alpha$ -phenyl indol.

3. A noteworthy method for the production of the alkyl indols consists in condensing the phenylhydrazones of the aldehydes, ketones, and ketonic acids by heating them with hydrochloric acid or zinc chloride (E. Fischer, B. 19, 1563; 22, R. 14), when ammonia is split off:



The unsym. alkylphenylhydrazine derivatives react very easily with pyroracemic acid upon warming them with dilute hydrochloric acid, sulphuric or phosphoric acid; the products are *n*-alkyl-indol-carboxylic acids. The phenylhydrazones of the  $\beta$ -ketonic acids—*e. g.*, acetoacetic ester—are principally converted into pyrazole compounds. Some, when heated with concentrated sulphuric acid, yield indol compounds (B. 27, R.

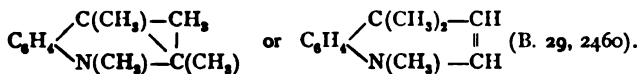
793). This is especially true of the unsym. alkylphenylhydrazones. See also indolones, p. 470.

4. The polymeric alkyl pyrrols upon standing with dilute sulphuric acid part with ammonia and pass into allylic indols—*e. g.*, tetramethyldipyrrol changes to  $\alpha,\beta,2,3$ -tetramethyl indol.

**Behavior:** The alkyl indols substituted in the pyrrol nucleus possess generally the faecal odor, and can be distilled without decomposition. The phenyl indols and indol carboxylic acids are non-volatile and odorless. They are more stable toward acids than indol, dissolve in concentrated acids, and are reprecipitated unaltered by water. Picric acid unites with all of them, forming compounds crystallizing in red needles. Most of the indol derivatives give the pine-shaving reaction, the exceptions being the indol carboxylic acids and the  $\alpha,\beta$ -dialkyl indols. The alkyl indols, like the alkyl pyrrols, yield indol carboxylic acids when they are fused with caustic potash.

The indols, like pyrrol, combine with aldehydes, acid anhydrides, and diazo-compounds, hydrogen atoms of the pyrrol nucleus being replaced by the acidyl, the diazo-group, etc. *Red* dyestuffs, resembling fuchsine and called *rosindols* (B. 20, 815), are produced by heating various indols with benzoyl chloride and zinc chloride.

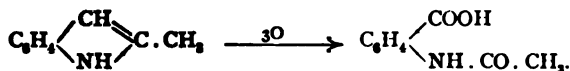
The behavior of indol by exhaustive methylation is remarkable: all of the hydrogen atoms of the pyrrol nucleus are replaced by methyl, and then by the further action of methyl iodide a body results which formerly was thought to be a dihydro- $n,\alpha,\gamma$ -trimethyl-quinoline, because its corresponding reduction product, a tetrahydro-base, could be changed to  $\alpha,\gamma$ -dimethyl-quinoline. However, the so-called dihydrotrimethyl quinoline is reconverted by the distillation of its iodhydrate into  $\alpha,\beta$ - $n$ -trimethyl indol, and when oxidized with chromic acid or potassium permanganate yields  $\beta, \beta$ -dimethyl- $\alpha$ -indolinon, so that formulas like the following have been suggested:



Compare B. 21, 1940, for the conversion of the indols into quinolines by means of chloroform and sodium alcoholate.

*n*-Methyl Indol,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_8\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)$ , boiling at  $239^\circ$ ; *n*-Ethyl Indol, boiling at  $247^\circ$ ; Allyl Indol, boiling at  $252^\circ$  (B. 26, 2174); and *n*-Phenyl Indol,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_8\text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)$ , are obtained from their carboxylic acids by the elimination of carbon dioxide. Bromine in sodium hydroxide oxidizes *n*-methyl and *n*-ethyl indol to *methyl* and *ethyl- $\psi$ -isatin* (p. 472).

$\alpha$ -Methyl Indol,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7(\text{CH}_3)\text{NH}$ , *Methyl Ketol*, arises from *o*-amido-benzyl-methyl ketone, and acetone phenylhydrazone. It melts at  $59^\circ$ . Its odor is like that of indol, and its reactions are similar. Oxidation with  $\text{MnO}_2/\text{K}$  (by rupture of the pyrrol ring at the point of the double binding) converts it into *o*-aceto-amido-benzoic acid:



$\alpha$ -Indol carboxylic acid is formed when it is fused with caustic potash.

$\beta$ -Methyl Indol, *Skatole*,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7(\text{CH}_3)\text{NH}$ , occurs in human faeces (with a little indol). It may be obtained, together with indol, from reduced indigo, by the putrefaction of albuminoids, or (with indol) in the fusion of the same with potassium hydroxide. It can be prepared without difficulty by heating propidene-phenylhydrazone with zinc chloride. It melts at  $95^\circ$  and boils at  $265^\circ$ . It has a penetrating faecal odor.

**1. 1-Trimethyl Indol** boils at  $280^{\circ}$  (see above).  **$\alpha,\beta,2,3$ -Tetramethyl Ind** ( $\text{CH}_3, \text{C}_8\text{H}_7 : [\text{C}_2(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{NH}]$ ), melts with decomposition at  $285^{\circ}$  (B. 22, 1924). It obtained from tetramethyldipyrrol (p. 458).  **$\alpha$ -Phenyl Indol**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_7(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{NH}$ , melting at  $187^{\circ}$ , has been prepared from acetophenone phenylhydrazones, from *o*-nitroxybenzoic acid, from bromoacetophenone and aniline (see above), and, lastly, by the rearrangement of  **$\beta$ -Phenyl Indol**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_7(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{NH}$ , melting at  $89^{\circ}$ , upon heating it to red with zinc chloride (B. 21, 1811). Similar rearrangements are manifested by the different *methyl phenyl indols* (B. 22, R. 44).  **$\alpha$ -Thienyl Indol**, melting at  $162^{\circ}$ , and  **$\alpha$ -Naphthyl Indol**, melting at  $196^{\circ}$ , are obtained from the phenylhydrazones of methyl and thienylmethyl ketones (B. 26, R. 44).

**2.** The *chlorine substitution* products of the indols are produced by the action of  $\text{PCl}_5$  upon their oxygen-containing derivatives—e. g.,  **$\alpha,\beta$ -dichlorindol**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4\text{Cl}_2\text{N}$  melting at  $104^{\circ}$ , from oxindol (p. 471).

**3.** Sulphoacids of the indols, containing the sulpho-group in the pyrrol-nucleus have been synthesized from methyl and ethyl aniline by condensation with *glyoxal bisphile* (1, 321) (B. 27, 3258):

***n*-Methyl Indol- $\alpha$ -Sulphonic Acid**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{SO}_3\text{H})$ , on being boiled with

hydrochloric acid, splits off  $\text{SO}_2$  very readily and becomes *n-methyl oxindol*. Tri-naphthylamines and alkyl naphthylamines react like the alkyl anilines with glyoxal bisulphite.

#### 4. Indol Carboxylic Acids.

These are produced (1), in addition to the synthetic method, from the phenylhydrazones of the pyrrolic acids, by reactions perfectly similar to those employed for the pyrrolcarboxylic acids; (2) when the indols are heated with sodium and carbon dioxide (3) by fusing the alkyl indols with caustic alkali. Ordinary oxidising agents do not attack them (B. 21, 1925). Heated alone or with lime, they break down into carbon dioxide and indols.

**$\alpha$ -Indol Carboxylic Acid**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7\text{N} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $200^{\circ}$  with decomposition, has been prepared from pyrrolic phenylhydrazone, from  $\alpha$ -methyl indol by the potash fusion, and by the latter process from *tetrahydrocarbazole*.

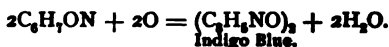
The acid also results in the reduction of *o*-nitrophenyl pyrrolic acid with zinc dust and glacial acetic acid, whereas the product will be *n*-oxyindolcarboxylic acid when sodium amalgam is used (see p. 469 and B. 30, 1045). It yields an *imide anhydride* (B. 22, 2503) corresponding to *pyrrole* if heated with acetic anhydride.

**$\beta$ -Methyl- $\alpha$ -Indol Carboxylic Acid**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_7(\text{CH}_3)\text{N} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , *skatole carboxylic acid*, results from the decay of albuminates. It melts at  $165^{\circ}$ . Another product, formed at the same time, is *Skatole Acetic Acid*,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_7(\text{CH}_3)\text{N} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , melting at  $134^{\circ}$  (B. 22, R. 701).

**$\beta$ -Indol Carboxylic Acid**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7\text{N} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , is produced when skatole is fused with caustic potash, and upon heating indol with sodium in a current of carbon dioxide. It melts with decomposition at  $218^{\circ}$ . It does not yield an imide anhydride (B. 23, 2296).

***n*- $\alpha$ -Dimethyl-indol- $\beta$ -carboxylic acid**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_7(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_3) \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , from methyl-phenylhydrazone acetoacetic ester,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7\text{N}(\text{CH}_3) \cdot \text{N} : \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{R}$ , melts at  $200^{\circ}$ .

**5. Oxyindol Derivatives:** **Indoxyl**,  $\beta$ -Oxyindol,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7\text{N}(\text{OH})$ , from indoxyl acid by the elimination of  $\text{CO}_2$ , and from indigo by fusion with caustic potash away from air (B. 26, 225), is an oil easily soluble in water, with a yellow fluorescence. It is very unstable and is readily resinified. It dissolves with a red color in concentrated hydrochloric acid. It is oxidized to *indigo blue* when its alkaline solution (best ammoniacal) is exposed to the air. Ferric chloride and hydrochloric acid effect the conversion more quickly:

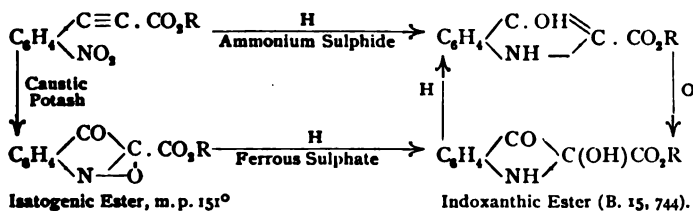


When indoxyl is digested with potassium pyrosulphate,  $\text{S}_2\text{O}_7\text{K}_2$ , we get *potassium indoxylsulphate*,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_6\text{N} \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{SO}_3\text{K}$ , which is found in the urine of herbivorous ani-

males (*Urine indican*), generally after the ingestion of indol. When digested with acids the salt decomposes into sulphuric acid and indoxyl, which forms indigo blue by the addition of a little ferric chloride. We proceed similarly in the detection of indoxyl-sulphuric acid in urine.

This potassium salt may be synthesized by fusing o-phenylglycocol-carboxylic acid with caustic potash, and subsequently treating with potassium pyrosulphate. If the potassium hydrate fusion be treated with benzyl chloride, n-Benzyl-β-benzyl-oxyindol, melting at 166°, is produced (C. 1897, 1, 862).

Indoxylic Acid,  $C_8H_7NO_3 = C_8H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} C(OH) \\ \diagup \\ NH \end{smallmatrix} \diagdown C \cdot CO_2H$ , a carboxylic acid of indoxyl, is produced from its ethyl ester by fusion with caustic soda (B. 17, 976). It melts at 123°, with decomposition. Its *ethyl ester* is obtained by reducing o-nitrophenyl propiolic ester with ammonium sulphide, or isatogenic ester, and from indoxanthic ester, which is an intermediate product in this reaction, and can be obtained by oxidizing the ester of indoxyl acid:



When digested with sulphuric acid it affords a quantitative yield of *indigo-sulphonic acid*. It possesses a phenol character, which is indicated by its solution in alkalis, from which it is again precipitated by carbon dioxide. Ethyl iodide converts the salts of indoxylic acid into ethyl indoxylic ester,  $C_8H_5(OC_2H_5)N \cdot CO_2R$ , which by saponification with baryta water, forms *Ethyl-indoxylic Acid*. This acid loses  $CO_2$  when it is heated, and becomes *ethyl indoxyl*,  $C_8H_5(OC_2H_5)N$ , which resembles indol in its chemical behavior and in its odor. When digested with hydrochloric acid, ethyl indoxylic acid yields *indoxyl*, and by nitrous acid is converted into *pseudoisatoxime* (p. 472).

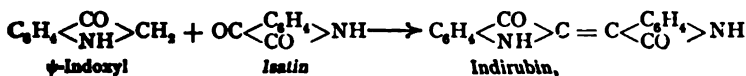
In many reactions indoxyl, as well as indoxylic acid, yields products which are derived from *pseudoindoxyl*, or *dihydro-β-ketoindol*, an isomeride of indoxyl, so that it may be assumed that in these instances

$C_8H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} C \cdot OH \\ \diagup \\ NH \end{smallmatrix} \diagdown CH$  changes to  $C_8H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} CO \\ \diagup \\ NH \end{smallmatrix} \diagdown CH_2$  (compare dihydroresorcinol, p. 296; phloroglucin, p. 165, etc.).

In the second form indoxyl and indoxylic acid react with aldehydes, ketones, and ketonic acids, —e. g., benzaldehyde, pyroracemic acid, etc.,—with the production of so-called *indogenides*. The bivalent group,  $C_8H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} CO \\ \diagup \\ NH \end{smallmatrix} \diagdown C =$ , is termed *indogen* (B. 16, 2197):



Isatin and benzene hydrocarbons also yield indogenides. Isatin may be viewed as *indogen oxide*. Isatin converts indoxyl (B. 17, 976) into the indogenide indirubin (p. 476):

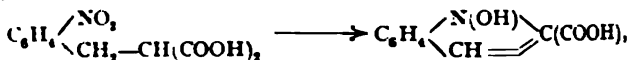


which is isomeric with indigo blue. The latter is also produced by the oxidation of indoxyl (p. 468); hence it may be viewed as diindogen:



3-Ethoxy- $\alpha$ -methyl Indol,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7\text{N}(\text{O} \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CH}_3)$ , melting at  $142^\circ$ , is obtained from ethoxyacetonephenylhydrazine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NHN} : \text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5$  (B. 25, R. 417).

$n$ -Oxyindol- $\alpha$ -carboxylic Acid, melting at  $159^\circ$  with decomposition, is isomeric with indoxyl acid. It results on boiling  $o$ -nitrobenzylmalonic acid with sodium hydroxide:



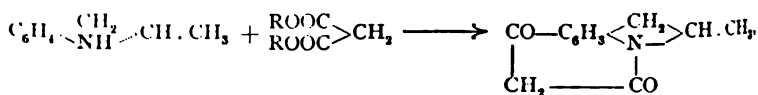
as well as by the reduction of  $o$ -nitrophenylpyrrolic acid with sodium amalgam. It is readily reduced to  $\alpha$ -indol carboxylic acid. Potassium permanganate oxidizes it, with the possible intermediate production of phenylhydroxylamine- $o$ -carboxylic acid, to  $o$ -azoxybenzoic acid, while with chromic acid it yields isatin. It can be very easily acylated or alkylized in the  $\text{NOH}$ -group.

$n$ -Methoxyindol- $\alpha$ -carboxylic Acid, melting at  $185^\circ$  with decomposition, is also reduced to indolcarboxylic acid, and oxidized by chromic acid to  $n$ -Methoxy- $o$ -isatin,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{N}(\text{OCH}_3) \end{array} > \text{CO}$ , consisting of red needles, melting at  $110^\circ$ . Bleaching lime,

hydrogen peroxide, etc., convert  $n$ -oxyindolcarboxylic acid into indoxin. This is a blue-colored, unstable dye, very similar to indigo, but soluble in alkalis. When it is dissolved in concentrated sulphuric acid and the diluted solution is allowed to stand exposed to the air, indigo separates. The yield is good (B. 29, 639; 30, 1045, 1055).

$\alpha$ -Phenyl-oxyindol,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{OH})$ , melting at  $175^\circ$ , is formed in the action of concentrated sulphuric acid upon benzoin oxime. It is doubtful whether in this derivative the hydroxyl group is attached to the nitrogen or to one of the C-atoms (see B. 29, 2062).

**Hydroindol Derivatives:** A hydro-derivative of indol itself is not known. However, when the alkyl indols are reduced with tin and hydrochloric acid, dihydro-derivatives have been produced. Thus,  $\alpha$ -methyl indol (methyl ketol) yielded dihydromethyl ketol,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{NH} \end{array} > \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , boiling at  $227^\circ$ . Its behavior differs greatly from that of the mother substance. In its properties it is closely allied to the *alkylic anilines*. In its relations to tetrahydroquinoline, which contains the six-membered hydrogenized pyridine ring condensed with the benzene ring, it behaves like ethyl- to propyl-aniline (*verle homologe*, B. 26, 1285). Silver sulphate oxidizes dihydromethyl ketol back to methyl ketol (B. 27, 827). Malonic ester and dihydromethyl ketol form a tricyclic condensation product (B. 26, 1298):

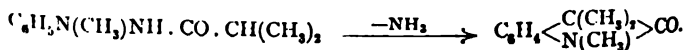


which can also be regarded as a derivative of a diketotetrahydroquinoline (see this):

$\alpha, \alpha$ -Dimethyldihydroindol,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{NH} \end{array} > \text{C} : (\text{CH}_3)_2$ , boiling at  $210^\circ$ , is readily produced by distilling  $o$ -isopropylamidobenzyl alcohol,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{OH} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{NH} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \end{array}$ .

#### Oxygen-containing Dihydroindol Derivatives.

Dihydroketoindols or Indolinons have been prepared by the condensation of acylmethylphenylhydrazides by means of lime:



$n,\beta,\beta$ -Trimethyl Indolinon, melting at  $50^\circ$  ( $25^\circ$ ) and boiling at  $265^\circ$ , is formed from isobutyrylmethylphenylhydrazide, and may also be prepared by oxidizing the base  $C_{11}H_{15}NO$ , resulting from the condensation of isobutyridenemethylphenylhydrazine with alcoholic zinc chloride, with an ammoniacal silver solution. Further, trimethylindolinon has also been produced by oxidizing the so-called trimethyldihydroquinoline from indol (see p. 468). When reduced it again yields the base  $C_{11}H_{15}NO$ , which is therefore probably Trimethyl- $\alpha$ -oxyindolin (compare C. 1897, II, 120).  $n,\beta$ -Dimethylindolinon,  $C_9H_7[C_2HNO(CH_3)_2]$ , melting at  $23^\circ$  and boiling at  $273$ – $277^\circ$ , is formed from Propionylmethylphenylhydrazide (M. 17, 479).

The anhydrides or lactams of some of the  $o$ -amido-acids of benzene belong here. They have been previously described, but because of their intimate relationship to indol will be again brought together:

1. Lactam of  $o$ -amidophenylacetic acid. This is *oxindol* or  $\alpha$ -keto-dihydroindol ( $\beta$ -ketodihydroindol is the  $\psi$ -indoxyl which was just described above).

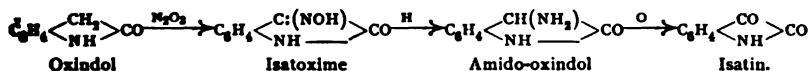
2. Lactam of  $o$ -amidomandelic acid. This is *dioxindol* or  $\alpha$ -keto- $\beta$ -oxyhydroindol.

3. Lactam (or lactime) of  $o$ -amidobenzoyl formic acid. This is *isatin* or  $\alpha,\beta$ -diketohydroindol.

These compounds change readily into one another as a result of reduction or oxidation:

1. Oxindol,  $C_8H_7NO = C_8H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix} > CO$ . Its properties have been given on p.

214. It was first obtained by the reduction of dioxindol; and in a moist condition, on exposure to air readily reoxidizes to the latter. It therefore reduces an ammoniacal silver solution. Nitrogen trioxide converts it into isatoxime (p. 472). By reduction the latter becomes amido-oxindol and this isatin by oxidation:



Di-oxindol,  $C_8H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \\ \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix} > CO$ . Its properties are given on p. 251. It is readily obtained by boiling isatin with zinc-dust and hydrochloric acid. It oxidizes readily in aqueous solution to *isatid* and *isatin*. It is also obtained by the reduction of indigo.

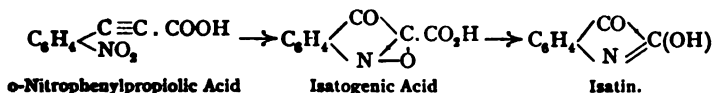
3. Isatin,  $C_8H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CO} \\ \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix} > CO$ , or  $C_8H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CO} \\ \text{N} \end{smallmatrix} = C.OH$ . Its properties are given on p.

258. The following methods for its formation may be especially mentioned:

1. The oxidation of indigo with nitric acid (*Method of preparation*, J. pr. Ch. [2], 24, II; 25, 434).

2. The oxidation of *oxindol* and *dioxindol*.

3. The action of alkali upon *o*-nitrophenylpropionic acid, when there occurs at first a rearrangement into *isatogenic acid*, which then loses carbon dioxide and becomes isatin:



If a reducing agent be added to the alkaline solution of the *o*-nitrophenylpropionic acid, *indigo* will result instead of isatin (see below).

**Behavior :**

(1) *Isatoic Acid*,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup N \cdot COOH \\ \diagdown CO \end{smallmatrix}$ , is formed when isatin is oxidized with chromic acid in glacial acetic acid solution.

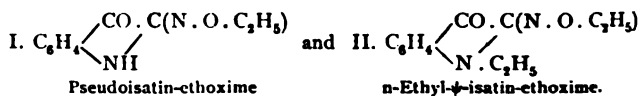
Isatin yields *nitrosalicylic acid* when oxidized with nitric acid. (2) When reduced with ammonium sulphide we get first isatid,  $C_{10}H_{13}N_2O_3$ , then dioxindol and oxindol.

(3) Ammonia and primary amines form *Imesatins* of the general formula  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup C = NR \\ \diagdown NH \end{smallmatrix} > CO$ , which, when digested with alkalis, decompose again into isatin and amines.

*o*-Phenylenediamine yields *indophenazine* (B. 29, 194, 1030); piperidine yields a *dipiperidyl isatin*,  $C_{12}H_{15}NO(NC_4H_9)_2$ , which can be converted into a dye—*isatin blue*—similar to indigo (B. 24, 1366). (4) Isatin condenses, further, with benzene hydrocarbons, phenols, etc. Water exit occurs. It forms with thiophene the blue dye *indophenine*,  $(C_6H_5NO_2 + C_4H_4S - H_2O)$ . Similar products are obtained with furfuran and pyrid. (5) The hydroxyl or lactime formula of isatin furnishes alkali salts; from the solution of the latter silver nitrate precipitates silver isatin,  $C_6H_4(OAg)NO$ , with which alkyl iodides yield *O-alkyl isatins*: Methyl Isatin,  $C_6H_4(OCH_3)NO$ , melting at  $105^\circ$ ; Ethyl Isatin,  $C_6H_4(OC_2H_5)NO$ , melting at  $88^\circ$ , which can be resaponified to isatin or isatinates. (6) The keto- (lactam or pseudo-) form of isatin yields: *n*-Methyl- $\psi$ -isatin,  $C_6H_4 : (C_2O_2N-CH_3)$ , melting at  $134^\circ$ , and *n*-Ethyl- $\psi$ -isatin, melting at  $95^\circ$ . These are obtained by the action of NaOBr upon *n*-methyl and *n*-ethyl indol (p. 467). The second compound is also formed from ethyl- $\psi$ -isatin ethyloxime (see below). *n*-Acetyl- $\psi$ -isatin,  $C_6H_4 : (C_2O_2C \cdot C_2H_5O)$  (p. 258), is obtained from isatin and acetic anhydride. (7) Similarly, two isomeric *isonitroso-compounds* are derived from isatin: *isatoxime* and pseudoisatoxime.

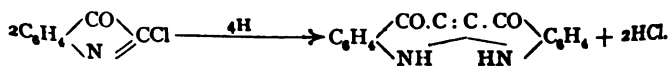
Isatoxime,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup C = NOH \\ \diagdown N > COH \end{smallmatrix}$ , melts at  $202^\circ$ , with decomposition. It is prepared from isatin and hydroxylamine; or from oxindol by action of nitrous acid, and when reduced it yields so called amido-oxindol, which can be oxidized to isatin. By the successive action of ethyl iodide upon the silver salt we obtain a *mono*- and a *diethyl* derivative from which isatin (B. 16, 1706) is formed after saponification, which would indicate that the ethyl groups are combined with oxygen.

Pseudo-isatoxime,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup CO \\ \diagdown NH \end{smallmatrix} > C = N \cdot OH$ , melting with decomposition at  $200^\circ$ , is prepared by the action of nitrous acid upon ethyl indoxyllic acid. Ethyl iodide converts it into (1) a *mono*- and (2) a *diethyl* derivative. The first alone yields isatin, whereas the second is converted into *n*-methyl- $\psi$ -isatin:



The reduction of *n*-ethyl- $\psi$ -isatin-ethoxime produces *n*-diethyl indigo (B. 16, 2201). A dioxime is formed by *n*-acetyl- $\psi$ -isatin and hydroxylamine. See B. 29, 1030, for isatin semicarbazone,  $C_6H_5NO : NNHCONH_2$ .

**8. Isatin Chloride**,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup CO \\ \diagdown N \end{smallmatrix} = CCl$ , melting with decomposition at  $180^\circ$ , is produced by digesting isatin with  $PCl_5$  in benzene solution. It dissolves with a blue color in ether. It is reduced in glacial acetic acid solution by hydriodic acid or by zinc-dust to *indigo-blue*:



We can also obtain from the isatins substituted in the benzene nucleus substitution products of indigo-blue: *dibrom*-, *dinitro*-, and *dimethyl indigo-blue*.

**Indigo-blue** (*Indigotin*),  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\langle\text{CO}\rangle\text{C}=\text{C}\langle\text{CO}\rangle\text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ , constitutes the principal ingredient of commercial **Indigo**, derived from different *Indigofera* and from woad (*Isatis tinctoria*). It occurs in these plants as a glucoside, called *indican*, which parts with its variety of glucose and becomes indigo-blue, when boiled with dilute acids, or if acted upon with a ferment (if the various portions of the plant be covered with water and exposed to the action of the air). The indigo-blue separates in the form of a powder.

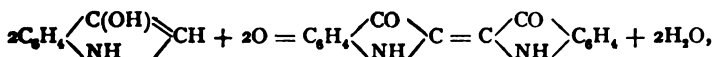
Commercial indigo contains, in addition to 20–90 per cent. of indigo-blue, various other substances, which have not been well studied, like *indigo gluten*, *indigo-brown*, and *indigo-red*, which are removed by successive treatment with dilute acetic acid, caustic potash, and hot alcohol.

A better procedure consists in first reducing indigo by means of grape-sugar and sodium hydroxide to soluble indigo-white, which can then be oxidized to indigo-blue by the exposure of the alkaline solution to the air, when the indigo-blue will separate in a pure condition (A. 195, 305).

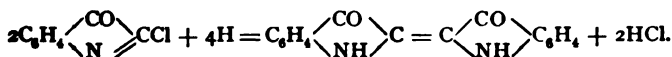
**History:** Indigo was in ancient times highly prized as a dye by the Oriental nations (*Dioscorides*, *Pliny*: *ινδικον*, *indicum*). In Europe it found general application in dyeing, from the opening up of sea-intercourse with the East Indies to the 16th century. To-day the production of indigo from plants, chiefly in Bengal, Java, Central America, is about 8,300,000 kg., equivalent in money to about \$20,000,000.

In the period of the alchemists indigo was quite frequently considered in Europe as a mineral or metal (compare *Schultz*: *Steinkohlentheer*, 2. Aufl. II, 883), presumably because of its copper-like lustre. More careful investigations into its chemical nature were first instituted in this century. *Erdmann* and *Laurent* observed simultaneously (1841) that nitric acid oxidized indigo to isatin, while *Fritzsche* found (1848) that aniline resulted when it was distilled with caustic potash. *Baeyer* and *Knop* (1865) reduced it to dioxindol, oxindol, and indol. The latter body *Baeyer* and *Emerling* (1869) obtained synthetically from *o*-nitrocinnamic acid, and when *Nencki* (1874) succeeded in oxidizing indol to indigo with ozone, the first synthesis of this interesting compound was achieved (compare, however, *Engler*, B. 28, 312). *Baeyer* and his students (1870–'78) demonstrated the constitution and synthesis of oxindol or *o*-amidophenyl acetic acid lactam, its conversion into isatin, as well as various methods for the conversion of isatin into indigo blue. *Claisen* and *Shadwell* (1879) also obtained isatin from *o*-amidobenzoyl formic acid. *Baeyer* (1880–'82), by a series of new syntheses of indigo, produced more certain evidence of its constitution and found easy methods for its production. These, and even later syntheses, have, however, not succeeded in fulfilling technical expectations.

**Syntheses of Indigo-blue:** Different methods of producing indigo have been presented in the preceding paragraphs. A particularly easy procedure is (1) the oxidation of *indoxyl* (p. 468) with ferric chloride and hydrochloric acid:

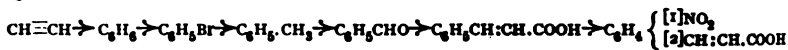


as well as (2) the reduction of *isatin chloride* (p. 472):

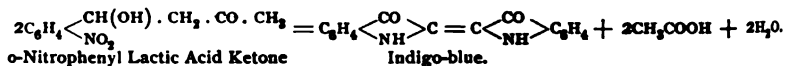


Syntheses 3, 4, and 5 commence with *o*-nitrocinnamic acid, which can be prepared in the following manner from the elements:

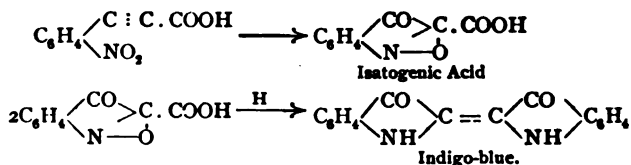
Acetylene, synthesized from carbon and hydrogen, polymerizes to benzene. Benzene with methyl iodide and sodium yields toluene, which chromyl chloride (something of that nature) will convert into benzaldehyde. The latter is changed by acetic anhydride and sodium acetate into cinnamic acid, which upon nitration is mainly changed to *o*-nitrocinnamic acid:



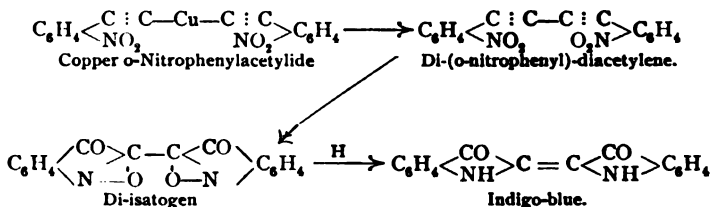
3. Potassium permanganate oxidizes *o*-nitrocinnamic acid to *o*-nitrobenzaldehyde, which condenses with acetone to *o*-nitrophenyl lactic acid methyl ketone. The alkalis decompose this ketone quite readily into acetic acid, water, and indigo-blue:



4. *o*-Nitrocinnamic acid is changed by means of the dibromide into *o*-nitrophenylpropionic acid. Alkaline reducing agents cause a rearrangement to isatogenic acid, and then, by the elimination of carbon dioxide, produce indigo:



5. On the other hand, by exit of  $\text{CO}_2$  from *o*-nitrophenylpropionic acid, *o*-nitrophenyl acetylene is produced. Potassium ferricyanide condenses its copper derivative to di-(*o*-nitrophenyl)-diacetylene (p. 380), which alkalis rearrange to di-isatogen, and reducing agents change to indigo-blue:



The following indigo syntheses are very simple:

6. Fusion of *bromacetanilide*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$ , with caustic potash. The indoxyl formed at first is then oxidized by the air to indigo-blue (B. 23, 3289).

7. Indigo can also be formed by fusing *phenylglycocoll*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , with potassium hydroxide. Toly-, xyly-, naphthyl-, phenylmethylglycocoll, behave similarly and yield indigo-blue derivatives (B. 23, 3043, 3431; 24, R. 380; 25, R. 488; 26, 2547). Phenylmethyl- and phenylethylglycocoll, when acted upon with fuming sulphuric acid (B. 26, R. 633), form their corresponding indigo-sulphonic acids.

8. The careful heating of *o*-nitroacetophenone,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \left\langle \begin{array}{c} \text{COCH}_3 \\ \text{NO}_2 \end{array} \right\rangle$ , with zinc-dust yields a sublimate of indigo-blue (B. 28, 309).

*ene-o-nitroacetophenone*,  $C_8H_5 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{COCH} : \text{CH} \cdot C_6H_5 \\ \text{NO}_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ , readily breaks down influence of sunlight into indigo-blue and benzoic acid (B. 28, 2497).  
 production of indigo when ethylene anthranilic acid,  
 $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{I} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NH} \\ \text{OH} \end{smallmatrix} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{HOOC} \\ \text{HOOC} \end{smallmatrix} > C_6H_5$ , is fused with caustic potash belongs to this class as (B. 28, 1685).

**stitution of Indigo-blue:** The formula adopted for indigo is on the following facts:

1. vapor density corresponds to the molecular formula  $C_{16}H_{10}N_2O_2$ .  
 2. ready formation of indigo-blue from indoxyl and isatin, as well  
 3. y conversion into these bodies and into other indol derivatives,  
 4. ument in favor of the view that the indigo formula is produced

union of two groups,  $C_8H_5 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{C} \\ \text{N} \end{smallmatrix} > C$ :

at these two residues must be linked to each other by C-  
 : evidenced by the synthesis from di-(o-nitrophenyl)-diacetyl-  
 : above), which would indicate that diphenyl diacetylene,  
 $C - C : C \cdot C_6H_5$ , is the parent hydrocarbon of indigo (see p.

5. formation of n-diethyl indigo from n-ethyl- $\psi$ -isatin shows the  
 of NH-groups (p. 472).

**ties:** Indigo-blue is a dark-blue powder with a reddish glimmer;  
 es metallic and copper-like under pressure. It sublimes in cop-  
 metallic, shining prisms. It is insoluble in water, alcohol, and  
 alkalis and dilute acids, and is odorless and tasteless. It dis-  
 hot aniline with a blue, in molten paraffin with a purple-red, color  
 xortment recalls the various colors of iodine solutions), and can  
 llized from these solvents. It crystallizes from hot oil of turpen-  
 eautiful blue plates. Heated at the ordinary pressure it partially  
 ses and is converted into a dark-red vapor. The same occurs  
 omposition under 30–40 mm. pressure. See B. 18, 1426, for the  
 n spectrum of indigo and its derivatives.

(wool) are dyed in two ways with indigo: (1) the wool is immersed in the  
 solution of indigotin sulphonie acid, which fixes itself directly (Saxony-blue  
 r (2) the indigo-blue is changed by fermentation to indigo-white (indigo-vat),  
 saturated with the latter and exposed to the air, when indigo-blue forms and  
 upon the fibre. (3) In printing, a mixture of o-nitrophenylpropionic acid and  
 reducing agent are sometimes substituted for the indigo. Steaming causes the  
 of indigo-blue.

Recently the bisulphite derivative of o-nitrophenyl-lactic acid ketone has been used  
 derable success as the *indigo salt*. When printed in mixture with alkali and  
 ed, it changes to indigo-blue.

**ives of Indigo-blue:** Dichlor-, dibrom-, dinitro-indigos, have been  
 rom substituted isatins and o-nitroacetophenones (see methods of formation 2  
 Be-3,5-Dimethyl Indigo,  $(CH_3)_2C_6H_3(C_6O_2N_2H_3)C_7H_5(CH_3)$ , is formed from  
 toluic aldehyde (compare method of formation 3, p. 471). n-Diethyl  
 $C_7H_4 : C_6ON \cdot C_2H_5$ , is produced from n-ethyl- $\psi$  isatin ethyloxime (p. 472).  
 3-Naphthyl Indigo,  $(C_{10}H_7 : C_6ONH)_2$ , are produced by melting together the  
 mines with chloracetic acid and caustic potash and then oxidizing in accord-  
 method 7 for the production of indigo-blue (B. 26, 2547).

Indigo dissolves in concentrated sulphuric acid with a green color. After the solution has been digested for some time indigotin monosulphonic acid, *phœnicin sulphuric acid*,  $C_{16}H_{12}N_2O_3 \cdot SO_3H$ , is produced. Water precipitates it from its solution in the form of a blue powder. It forms salts with a purple-red color; these are soluble in water. Indigotin Disulphonic Acid,  $C_{16}H_{12}N_2O_4(SO_3H)_2$ , is formed by the action of fuming sulphuric acid. It forms alkali salts which dissolve with difficulty in salt solutions, and occur in trade as *indigo carmin* in paste form.

Indigo Dicarboxylic Acid,  $C_{16}H_{12}N_2O_4(COOH)_2$ , is obtained from o-nitrophenyl aldehydic acid,  $C_6H_4(COOH) \begin{smallmatrix} COOH \\ NO_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ , just as indigo is prepared from o-nitrobenzaldehyde.

Indigo-white,  $C_{16}H_{12}N_2O_2$ , is obtained by the reduction of indigo blue (see above). It can be precipitated from its alkaline solution by hydrochloric acid (air being excluded) as a white crystalline powder soluble in alcohol, ether, and the alkalis, with a yellowish color. As results from indigo by the absorption of two hydrogen atoms, and because of its phenol-like nature, it is ascribed the formula of a *di-indoxyl*:



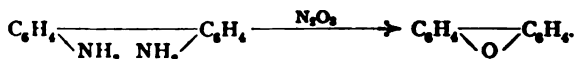
It rapidly re-oxidizes to indigo-blue by exposure to the air. It yields di-indol when heated with baryta-water and zinc-dust.

*Indigo-red* and *indigo purpurin* are isomerides of indigo-blue. The first occurs in commercial indigo, while the second is produced, together with indigo, from isatin chloride.

*Indirubin*, the indogenide of pseudoisatin, and *indin*, formed from isatin by fusion with caustic potash, or from dioxindol, are identical with indigo purpurin (B. 28, 540).

### 8. Dibenzofurfurane, Diphenylene Oxide, $\begin{smallmatrix} CH=CH & C & C & CH=CH \\ | & || & || & | \\ CH=CH & O & O & CH=CH \end{smallmatrix}$

melting at  $81^\circ$  and boiling at  $288^\circ$ , occurs in small quantities in "stubb-fat," and may be obtained synthetically (1) by distilling phenyl phosphate (p. 147) with lime; (2) by the same treatment of phenol with lead oxide; (3) on conducting phenyl ether through tubes heated to redness; (4) by decomposing the diazo-derivative of o-amido-phenyl ether with sulphuric acid (compare p. 147 and B. 29, 1876); and best by the action of dilute acids upon the tetrazo-compound of o<sub>2</sub>-diamido-diphenyl (p. 337) (B. 25, 2746):



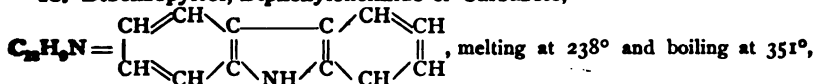
Bromine converts diphenylene oxide into dibromdiphenylene oxide, melting at  $185^\circ$ . Fuming nitric acid changes it to dinitrodiphenylene oxide, melting at  $200^\circ$ . Diamidodiphenylene oxide, melting at  $188^\circ$ , yields valuable substantive azo-dyes (p. 338). Acetyldiphenylene oxide melts at  $81^\circ$ ; see B. 24, R. 744.

### 9. Dibenzothiophene, Diphenylene Sulphide, $\begin{smallmatrix} CH=CH & C & C & CH=CH \\ | & || & || & | \\ CH=CH & S & S & CH=CH \end{smallmatrix}$

melting at  $97^\circ$  and boiling at  $333^\circ$ , is produced when phenyl disulphide,  $(C_6H_5)_2S_2$ , and phenyl sulphide,  $(C_6H_5)_2S$ , are distilled through tubes heated to redness. Chromic acid oxidizes it, in contradistinction to thiophene (p. 453), to diphenylene sulphone,  $C_{10}H_8 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \\ S \end{smallmatrix} C_{10}H_8$ , melting at  $230^\circ$ . Dinaphthylene Thiophene,  $C_{16}H_{12} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \\ S \end{smallmatrix} C_{16}H_{12}$ , melting

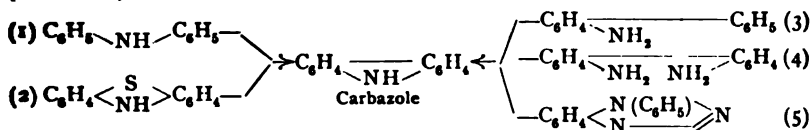
at 147°, is constituted analogously to dibenzothiophene. It results when concentrated sulphuric acid acts upon dioxydinaphthylene sulphide (B. 27, 3002).

10. Dibenzopyrrol, Diphenyleneimide or Carbazole,

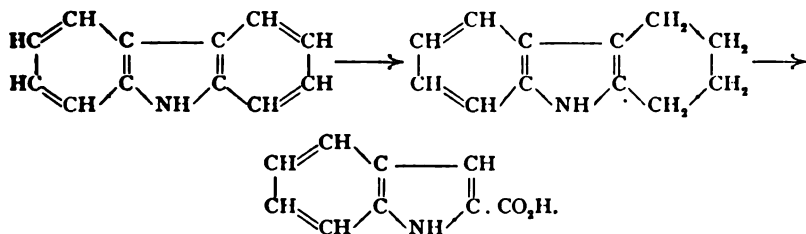


occurs in crude anthracene. It is withdrawn from it as carbazole-potassium by fusion with caustic potash. It may be synthesized:

(1) By conducting diphenylamine through tubes heated to redness; (2) by heating thioldiphenylamine with copper in powder form; (3) by distilling o-amidodiphenyl with lime (B. 24, 306); (4) by heating o-diamidodiphenyl with acids (B. 25, 133); (5) from o-amidodiphenylamine through the diazo-compound. The phenylazimidobenzene, produced at first, yields, when exposed to a higher temperature, nitrogen and carbazole (A. 291, 16):



**Behavior:** Carbazole gives the *pine-shaving reaction* (p. 457) and the blue coloration with sulphuric acid and isatin (p. 453), just the same as the pyrrol and most of the indol derivatives. This and its other deportments would justify the conclusion that it is dibenzopyrrol or benzoindol—*e. g.*, tetrahydrocarbazole, when fused with potassium hydroxide, breaks down into  $\alpha$ -indol carboxylic acid:



Carbazole, like pyrrol, is a very feeble base. It forms a stable salt with picric acid; the *picrate* melts at 182°. Nitrous acid converts it into *nitrosocarbazole*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{N}\cdot\text{NO}$ , melting at 84°. Heated with potash it yields *carbazole-potassium*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{NK}$ . Alkyl iodides convert this into *n-methyl carbazole*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{N}\cdot\text{CH}_3$ , melting at 87°, and *n-ethyl carbazole*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{N}\cdot\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , melting at 68°. Carbazole and acetic anhydride yield *n-acetyl carbazole*,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{N}\cdot\text{COCH}_3$ , melting at 69°. Chlorine produces various *chlorocarbazoles*, nitric acid, *nitrocarbazoles* (A. 202, 27; B. 29, R. 292, 650, 1112). See p. 338 for diamidocarbazole. When carbazol and oxalic acid are fused together *Tri-carbazole Carbinol* or *Carbazole Blue* (compare p. 358) results. *Dimethyl Carbazole*, *Ditolylimide*,  $(\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{NH}$ , melting at 364°, is made from o-toluidine by the pyro-genic method (B. 29, 2594).

**Hydrocarbazoles:** Tetrahydrocarbazole,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4-\text{NH}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ , melting at 119°, results from the reduction of carbazole, as well as from the phenylhydrazone of ketohexamethylene, analogously to Fischer's indol synthesis (p. 296). It behaves like an alkylic indol (compare hydronaphthalenes, p. 466). When acted upon by alkyl iodides or with chloroform, it passes in a similar manner into acridine derivatives, just as the indols become quinoline compounds (Gaz. chim. ital. 24, 111). By the potash fusion it, like

the alkylic indols, yields indol carboxylic acid (see above and B. 26, 2006). Tetrahydrocarbazole Carboxylic Acid,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7\text{NH} \text{---} \text{C}_8\text{H}_7 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , melting at  $230^\circ$ , is formed from the phenylhydrazone of ketohexahydrobenzoic acid (p. 301) (B. 22, 2185). Hexahydrocarbazole,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_8\text{NH} \text{---} \text{C}_8\text{H}_8$ , melting at  $99^\circ$  and boiling at  $267^\circ$ , is a strong base (A. 163, 352), just like the pyrrol and indol hydrides (pp. 461, 470).

The following are similar to carbazole in method of production and in their behavior: Phenyl-naphthyl-carbazole or Naphthophenocarbazole,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7\text{NH} \text{---} \text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7$  (B. 27, 3066), melting at  $330^\circ$ , occurs in coal-tar (B. 12, 2242). An isomeric naphthophenocarbazole, melting at  $120^\circ$ , is obtained by a zinc-dust distillation from its carboxylic acid,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7 \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , melting at  $335^\circ$ , which results from the indol condensation of phenylhydrazine with 2,3-oxynaphthoic acid (p. 408). Dinaphthyl-carbazole or Dinaphtho-carbazole,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{NH} \text{---} \text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7$ ; the  $\alpha$ -body melts at  $216^\circ$ , and the  $\beta$ -compound at  $170^\circ$  (B. 19, 2242).

## B. POLYHETEROATOMIC FIVE-MEMBERED RINGS.

The acetals and mercaptals of ethylene glycol—e. g., ethylene-ethidene ether,  $\text{CH}_2 - \text{O} > \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , and ethylene dithioethidene,  $\text{CH}_2 - \text{S} > \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_3$  (1, 298, 305)—are five membered rings with two O- or S-atoms. This is also the case with the ethylene esters of the carbonic acid group—e. g., carbonic ethidene ester,  $\text{CH}_2 - \text{O} > \text{CO}$ , and triethylenic carbonic ethylene ester,  $\text{CH}_2 - \text{S} > \text{CS}$  (1, 392), the ethidene esters of  $\alpha$ -oxyacids—e. g., lactic ethidene ester,  $\text{CH}_3 - \text{CH} - \text{O} > \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , and chloralide, its chlorination product (1, 340).

Several five-membered cyclic esters and amido-derivatives have also been obtained from phosphoric acid—e. g., the lactone of benzoylphenylhydrazido-phosphoric acid,  $\text{N} - \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) > \text{P}(\text{OOH})_2$ , which results on treating the reaction product of  $\text{PCl}_5$  and benzoylphenylhydrazine with methyl alcohol. o-Toluylenediamine and  $\text{PCl}_5$  or  $\text{PCl}_3$  yield compounds like  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_6 < \text{NH} > \text{PO} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_7\text{H}_6 \cdot \text{NH}_2$ .

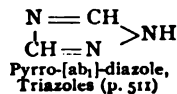
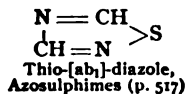
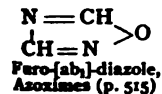
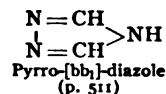
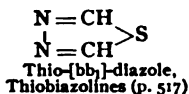
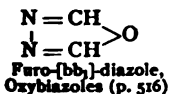
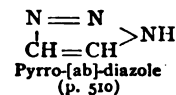
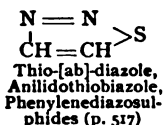
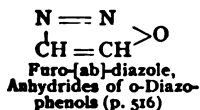
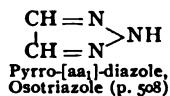
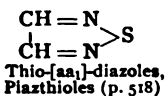
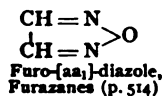
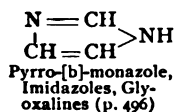
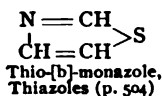
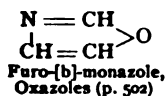
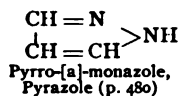
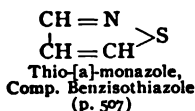
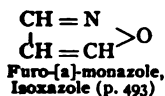
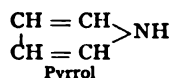
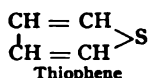
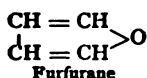
## AZOLES.

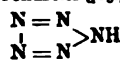
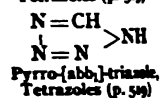
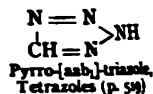
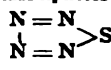
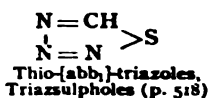
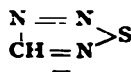
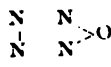
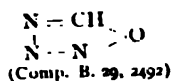
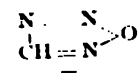
There is another group, of greater importance than those discussed. It comprises the bodies containing polyheteroatomic five-membered rings, which are embraced under the name *azoles* (A. 249, 1; B. 24, 2824; B. 22, R. 737). They contain as hetero-atoms N and O, N and S, or only N-atoms. We may view them as derived from the monohetero-atomic rings—furfurane, thiophene, and pyrrol—by the replacement of methine-groups by N-atoms, whereby, as previously indicated, the stability of the ring is very slightly affected. Viewing the numerous classes of bodies

longing here as ring-azo-substitution products of the monoheterocyclic rings, we arrive at a natural systemization of the former, and also at a simple nomenclature for them, which in many instances is quite similar to the names which have become peculiar to the individual groups. The individual azoles, depending upon whether they are derived from furfurane, thiophene, or pyrrol, by the replacement of one, two, or three CH-groups by N-atoms, are designated as furo-monazoles, thio-diazoles, pyrro-triazoles. To distinguish the metameric rings the thine groups of furfurane, etc., are termed

$\begin{matrix} [b]CH = CH[a] \\ | \\ [a_1], [b], [b_1] \end{matrix} \begin{matrix} > R, \text{ and the substituents as } a, a_1, \beta, \beta_1 \text{ (p. 7),} \\ [b_1]CH = CH[a_1], \end{matrix}$

so that we distinguish *furo-[a]-monazole*, *furo-[b]-monazole*, *pyrro-[a]-diazole*, *pyrro-[ab]-diazole*, *pyrro-[ab<sub>1</sub>]-diazole*, etc. Retaining the names of the individual bodies and the groups introduced by their discoverers, there will in the following page be placed at the beginning of each individual group the names resulting from the introduction of the nomenclature just described. This will render the constitution and the position of the azoles in the system, which follows, very evident:





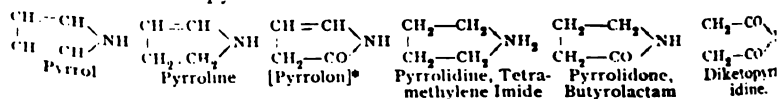
The parent substances of all the rings just given have not been prepared. In instances, however, their next homologues are known; in some cases only the *benzo* derivatives. Only single representatives of the furo- and thiotriazoles are known at present time. It is, however, not impossible that by synthesis these rings, consisting mainly of inorganic elements, may be multiplied and the system enlarged. Indeed, it may succeed to such a degree that the purely inorganic rings—*e. g.*, those constructed from four N atoms and an NH-group—will be prepared. This would be a *nitrogen* homologue of hydrazoic acid. From the standpoint of a *nitrogen chemistry* the C-containing rings could be as readily evolved from the nitrogen ring by replacing the N-atoms with CH groups, as was suggested above in the reverse case.

The numerous and important *pyrazoles*, together with their *benzo*-derivatives, the *indazoles*, consisting of dihetero-atomic rings, will be next discussed; then will follow the *boxazoles*, with their *benzo*-derivatives, the *indoxazenes*. After this will appear the *oxalines* or *imidazoles*, the *oxazoles*, and the *thiazoles*, sometimes in conjunction with the *benzo* derivatives, which it is customary to consider under the name of *unhydrobenz* (pp. 95, 153, 157), because they are formed from o-diamines, o-amidophenols, and o-amido thiophenols with carboxylic acids by the exit of water. In the trihetero atomic rings again, the groups of the pyrrolidazoles or triazoles are placed first; the *azimides* or *phenylazimides* belong to their *benzo*-derivatives. Attached to these are the furodiazoles, the *furanones*, *diazoxides*, *oxybiazoles*, *azoximes*; and the *thiodiazoles*: *azomides*, *thio-biazoles*, *thiothiazoles* (*thiazolones*), *thio-[ab]-diazoles*, and *phenylenediazosulphides*. The *triazosulpholes* and *tetrazoles* conclude the list.

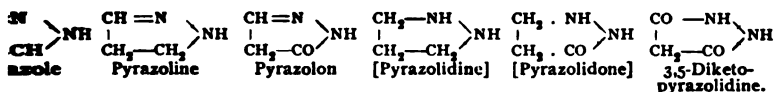
## 1. PYRAZOLE- OR PYRRO-[a]-MONAZOLE GROUP.

Pyrazole,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{N}_2$ , may be regarded as derived from pyrrol by replacement of a methine-group adjacent to an NH-group by nitrogen—*pyrrro* [a]-*monazole* (see above). See 3-methylpyrazole (p. 482) for details in regard to the constitution of pyrazole. There are a *dihydropyrazole* or *pyrazoline* and a *tetrahydropyrazole* or *pyrazolidine* corresponding to the di- and tetrahydropyrrols.

Keto-substitution products of these hydrogenized pyrazoles are keto pyrazoline or *pyrazolon*, among the derivatives of which is the febrifuge *antipyrine*, ketopyrazolidine or *pyrazolidone*, and *diketopyrazolidine*, corresponding to the butyrolactam or pyrrolidone (p. 462) and succinimide. The subjoined diagram indicates the relations existing between the Pyrazole and the pyrrol derivatives:



\* The parent substances, enclosed in brackets, are only known in their derivatives.



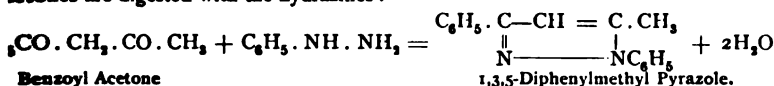
**pyrazole**,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{N}_2$ , melting at  $70^\circ$  and boiling at  $187^\circ$ , results from epichlorhydrin, zinc hydrate, and zinc chloride (B. 23, 1105). A better method consists in splitting  $\text{CO}_2$  from its carboxylic acids (B. 26, R. 282), or in the action of bromine upon **pyrazoline** (p. 486) (B. 29, 775). It is a feeble base; its salts are unstable. It does not combine with methyl iodide. An ammoniacal silver solution precipitates **pyrazole silver**,  $\text{H}_2\text{Ag}$ , corresponding to pyrrol-potassium (p. 458). The **platinum double salt**,  $(\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{N}_2 \cdot \text{HCl})_2\text{PtCl}_2$ , at  $200-210^\circ$ , loses four molecules of hydrochloric acid and becomes  $(\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{N}_2)_2\text{PtCl}_2$  (B. 26, R. 185). *n*-**Acetyl pyrazole**, boiling at  $156^\circ$ , and **benzoyl pyrazole**, boiling at  $281^\circ$ , result from the action of acetyl chloride and benzoyl chloride upon pyrazole (B. 28, 716).

The **pyrazole derivatives** are designated in the following manner:

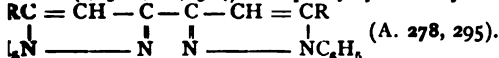
$\text{I} = \text{N}_2 > \text{NH}$  (or  $\text{n}$ ); the numbering proceeds from the imide group, beyond the imide nitrogen atom.

**Homologous Pyrazoles** are formed:

From the hydrazones of the  $\beta$ -diketones and  $\beta$ -ketone aldehydes or oxymethylene ketones. As a rule, the reactions proceed smoothly with the elimination of water, when the ketones are digested with the hydrazines:

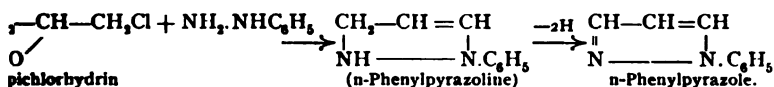


By this procedure the unsymmetrical  $\beta$ -diketo-compounds yield two isomeric pyrazoles; this is because the two possible hydrazones are formed. In the example cited the **oxalyl-pyrazole** is produced, together with 1,3,5-diphenylmethyl pyrazole. The oxalyl-pyrazoles (I, 521; II, 514) and phenylhydrazine yield the **bisphenylalkyl pyrazoles**:

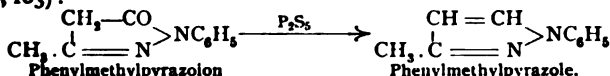


By the elimination of carbon dioxide from the homologous pyrazole carboxylic acids (p. 484).

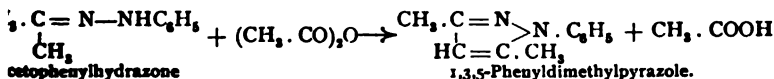
By the exit of hydrogen from the pyrazolines (p. 485). Frequently, in reactions with pyrazolines may well be expected pyrazoles appear. This is true of the interaction of the hydrazines and epichlorhydrin:



Pyrazoles also result upon distilling pyrazolons or pyrazolidones with zinc-dust or zinc (B. 26, 103):



Certain hydrazones of mono-ketones yield pyrazoles when they are heated with phosphorus anhydrides (Bull. Soc. Chim. [3], 11, 115; see B. 28, 703 Ann. 4):



**Behavior:** The homologous pyrazoles may be arranged in three groups: (1) pyrazoles with free imide-group; (2) *n*-alkyl substituted pyrazoles, which can be obtained from

the first class (or their silver salts) by the action of alkyl iodides—best by the distillation of the iod-alkylates (B. 28, 716) with an excess of alkyl iodide—or from  $\beta$ -diketones and alkyldiazines; (3) *n*-phenyl substituted pyrazoles, which are made through the phenylhydrazines, and are chiefly distinguished by their stability and power of crystallization.

All pyrazole homologues are feeble bases. They form double salts with silver nitrate, mercuric chloride, and platinic chloride. The platinum double salts, like pyrazole itself, part with 4 HCl on heating and become  $R_2PtCl_4$  ( $R$  = the pyrazole residue). The usually combine with alkyl iodide to form ammonium compounds (see above).

Potassium permanganate oxidizes the *c*-alkylized pyrazoles to pyrazole carboxylic acids, in contradistinction to the pyrroles, which are burnt up by this reagent (B. 22, 172).

In the *n*-phenylated pyrazoles during the oxidation the phenyl group is often split off and replaced by hydrogen. This is particularly true if it be amidated. The behavior is quite different during reduction. Pyrazoles with the free imide-group are but slightly altered by the reducing agents (A. 273, 266). *n*-Phenylpyrazoles are reduced to pyrazolines (p. 485), which yield intense colorations with ferric chloride, chromates, etc. (*Knorr's pyrazoline reaction*). In more energetic reductions *trimethylene diamine derivatives* are formed by the rupture of the union between the N-members. In some *n*-phenylpyrazoles the reduction is accompanied by the splitting-off of the phenyl group as benzene or some similar group.

(1) *Pyrazoles with free imide hydrogen*: 3- (or 5-) Methyl Pyrazole,

$C_4H_6N_2 = CH_3 \cdot C \overset{H}{\underset{CH}{\text{---}}} N \text{---} N$  (see below), is an oil, boiling at  $204^\circ$ . It results

- (1) from the interaction of oxymethylene acetone and hydrazine;
- (2) from its carboxylic acids;
- (3) as well from 1,3- as from 1,5-phenylmethylpyrazole by elimination of the phenyl group through oxidation (A. 279, 217–225).

The last two methods show conclusively that 3-methyl pyrazole and 5-methyl pyrazole are identical. It is concluded, therefore, that pyrazole, like benzene, possesses "oscillating linkages"; the imide hydrogen atom is capable of oscillating between the two N-atoms (Knorr, A. 279, 188). The formula presented above for pyrazole is supposed to represent this condition.

3,5-Dimethyl Pyrazole,  $NH \text{---} N = C(CH_3) \text{---} CH = C(CH_3)$ , melts at  $107^\circ$  and boils at  $220^\circ$ . It is obtained from acetyl acetone and hydrazine, and from 1,3,5-phenyl-dimethyl pyrazole by reduction (*elimination of the  $C_6H_5$ -group*) (B. 25, R. 163, 744).

3,4,5-Trimethyl Pyrazole,  $NH \text{---} N = C(CH_3) \text{---} C(CH_3) = C(CH_3)$ , melting at  $138^\circ$  and boiling at  $213^\circ$ , is obtained from methylacetyl acetone. 3,4,4,5-Tetramethyl

Pyrazole,  $N = C(CH_3) \text{---} C(CH_3)_2 \text{---} C(CH_3) = N$ , melting at  $50\text{--}55^\circ$ , and boiling at  $243^\circ$ , is formed from dimethylacetyl acetone (A. 279, 244, 247). 3- (or 5-) Phenyl-

pyrazole,  $C_6H_5C \overset{H}{\underset{CH}{\text{---}}} N \text{---} N$ , melting at  $78^\circ$ , is formed from benzoyl acetaldehyde (p. 250) (B. 28, 696).

Isomeric 4-Phenyl Pyrazole, melting at  $228^\circ$ , is obtained from 1,4-phenyl pyrazole carboxylic acid (A. 279, 254; B. 27, 3247; 28, 223, 699). 3,5-Phenyl Methyl

Pyrazole,  $NH \text{---} N = C(CH_3) \text{---} CH = C(C_6H_5)$ , melting at  $128^\circ$  and boiling at  $317^\circ$ , has been prepared from benzoyl acetone (A. 279, 248), as well as from phenylmethyl-isoxazole (p. 494), on heating with alcoholic ammonia (B. 28, 2952).

(2) *n-Alkyl Pyrazoles*: *n*- (or 1-) Methyl Pyrazole,  $C_4H_5N_2 \cdot CH_3$ , boiling at  $127^\circ$ , is formed in the interaction of pyrazole silver and methyl iodide (B. 26, R. 281; 28, 716). 1,3-Dimethyl Pyrazole,  $C_4H_5(CH_3)_2N_2 \cdot CH_3$ , boils at  $150^\circ$  (A. 279, 231); 1,3,5-Trimethyl Pyrazole,  $C_5H(CH_3)_3N_2CH_3$ , melting at  $37^\circ$  and boiling at  $170^\circ$ , crystallizes in combination with one molecule of chloroform. 1,3,4,5-Tetramethyl

**Pyrazole**,  $C_3(CH_3)_2N_2CH_3$ , boils at 190–193°. These compounds are also formed from acetyl acetone and methylacetyl acetone by the action of methylhydrazine (A. 279, 232, 235).

(3) *n*-Phenyl Pyrazoles: *n*- (or 1-) Phenyl Pyrazole,  $C_3H_5N_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at 11° and boiling at 246°, with sp. gr. 1.1125, is obtained from epichlorhydrin and phenylhydrazine (see above), as well as from its carboxylic acids. It yields, upon reduction, phenylpyrazoline together with trimethylenephenyldiamine. *n*-Tolylpyrazole,  $C_3H_5N_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_3$ , melting at 33° and boiling at 259°, yields in like manner trimethylenetolyl-diamine (Gaz. ch. ital. 18, 354). 1-Phenyl-3-methyl Pyrazole melts at 37° and boils at 255°. Its *iodmethylate* melts at 144°. The first body is derived from phenyl-methylpyrazolon (p. 481, A. 238, 203; B. 24, 648), as well as from oxymethylene acetone together with the isomeric 1-Phenyl-5-methyl Pyrazole,

$C_6H_5N-N=CH-CH=C(CH_3)_2$ . This is an oil, boiling at 255°. Its *iodmethylate* melts with decomposition at 296°. 1-Phenyl-4-methyl Pyrazole,

$C_6H_5N-N=CH-CH=C(CH_3)=CH$ , boiling at 266°, is formed by a rearrangement of the *iodmethylate* of 1-phenyl pyrazole (B. 26, R. 327). 1-Phenyl-3,5-dimethyl Pyrazole,  $C_3(CH_3)_2HN_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , boiling at 273°, is obtained from acetyl acetone. Upon reduction it yields dimethyl pyrazole and benzene, together with 1-Tetrahydrophenyl-3,5-dimethyl pyrazole, which, by oxidation, is decomposed into dimethyl pyrazole and adipic acid (B. 26, R. 246). 1-Phenyl-3,4-dimethyl Pyrazole, boiling at 278°, results from oxymethylene methylethyl ketone,  $CHOH=C(CH_3)-CO \cdot C_2H_5$  (B. 25, R. 943). 1,3-Diphenyl Pyrazole,  $C_3H_5(C_6H_5)_2N_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at 56° and boiling at 337°, is obtained from benzoylacetalddehyde (B. 21, 1135); 1,5-Diphenyl Pyrazole, melting at 54° and boiling at 340°, is derived from its carboxylic acid (B. 25, 3145); 1,3,5-Triphenyl Pyrazole,  $C_3H(C_6H_5)_3 \cdot N_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at 212°, is made from its carboxylic acid (B. 26, 1881). See A. 289, 332, for the production of 1,3,4-triphenyl pyrazole, melting at 185°, by the decomposition of 1,3,4,6-tetraphenyldihydropyridazine.

2. Haloid-, nitro-, amido-pyrazoles, pyrazole-sulphonic acids.—The halogens replace the hydrogen atoms in pyrazole. Bromine reacts most readily. The halogen atoms in the 4-position are most securely combined. In the sulphonation and nitration of pyrazole the  $NO_2$  and  $SO_3H$ -groups also enter the nucleus. *n*-Phenylated pyrazoles are nitrated and sulphonated in the phenyl residue. *n*-Sulphophenyl-pyrazole-acids have also been prepared by the introduction of phenylhydrazine-sulphonic acids in the pyrazole syntheses (A. 278, 296). In the nitropyrazoles the basic character of the pyrazoles disappears. They are acids, which form stable sodium, potassium, etc., salts.

The amido-pyrazoles result in the reduction of the corresponding nitro-bodies. They resemble the aromatic amines in their deportment. They have also been obtained by the action of hydrazines upon the nitriles of  $\beta$ -ketone-carboxylic acids and upon malono-nitrile.

4-Brom-pyrazole,  $C_3H_3BrN_2$ , melts at 97°. 3-Methyl-brom-pyrazole melts at 67° (A. 279, 227). 1,3,5-Triphenyl-brom-pyrazole melts at 142°. 1-Phenyl-tribrom-pyrazole melts at 107°. Iod-pyrazole melts at 108° (B. 26, R. 281). 4-Nitro-pyrazole,  $C_3H_3(NO_2)N_2$ , melts at 142°. 3-Methyl-4-nitro-pyrazole, melting at 134° and boiling at 325°, is made by nitrating methyl-pyrazole or 3-methyl-5-pyrazole carboxylic acid with a mixture of nitric and sulphuric acids (A. 279, 228). 4-Nitro-1,3,5-trimethyl-pyrazole, melting at 57°, yields upon reduction:

4-Amido-1,3,5-trimethyl-pyrazole, melting at 103°, which may be readily converted into diazo-compounds, and subsequently, by combination with anilines, phenols, etc., into azo-dyes. 1-Phenyl-3,4-ethylmethyl-5-amido-pyrazole, melting at 81°, is prepared from methyl propionyl-acetonitrile,  $C_3H_7COCH(CH_3)CN$ , and phenylhydrazine (Bull. Soc. Ch. [4], 4, 647). 3,5-Diamido-pyrazole,  $C_3(NH_2)_2H_2N_2$  (?), is formed from malononitrile and hydrazine acetate (B. 27, 690).

Methyl-pyrazole-sulphonic Acid,  $C_3H_5N_2(CH_3)(SO_3H)$ , melting at 258°, is formed when fuming sulphuric acid acts upon methyl-pyrazole (A. 279, 230).

3. Oxyppyrazoles: In certain reactions the pyrazolons (p. 486) behave as such. In alkylizing, these yield alkoxyppyrazoles, together with isomeric *n*-alkyl derivatives (anti-pyrrises). Further, compounds are also formed in the interaction of acid haloids and

pyrazolons, which are probably to be viewed as esters of oxypyrazoles. The alkyl iodides and alkoxy-pyrazoles yield addition products, which also result from the anti-pyridines and alkyl iodides, and when they are gently heated, alone or with alkali, they are reconverted into antipyrines. The acid esters of the oxypyrazoles also yield alkyl iodide addition products, which may be resolved into antipyrines (J. pr. Ch. [2], 54, 177; 55, 145; A. 293, 42). Alkoxy-pyrazoles are also produced by the elimination of water from the hydrazones of the  $\beta$ -ketonic esters by means of suitable reagents.

**n-Phenyl-5-ethoxy-pyrazole**,  $C_6H_5N:N:CH:CH:C(OC_2H_5)_2$ , is formed from its carboxylic ester, which is produced by the condensing action of zinc chloride upon the phenylhydrazone of oxalacetic ester, then saponifying and splitting off carbon dioxide (B. 26, R. 550).

When the ethoxy-group is saponified with hydrochloric acid *n*-phenylpyrazolon, melting at  $118^\circ$  (p. 488; B. 27, 407), results. **n-Phenyl-3-methyl-5-methoxypyrazole**,

$C_6H_5N:N:C(CH_3):CH:C(OCH_3)_2$ , boiling at  $240^\circ$ , is formed when diazomethane acts upon phenyl-methyl-pyrazolon (B. 28, 1626), or methyl iodide and sodium methylate, together with the isomeric antipyrine (p. 488); also by the action of phenylhydrazine and hydrochloric acid upon the methyl ester of acetoacetic acid. Its iodomethylate, which is also produced from antipyrine and methyl iodide, readily changes to antipyrine on boiling with sodium hydroxide (p. 488 and A. 293, 17). **n-Phenyl-3-methyl-5-ethoxypyrazole**, melting at  $38^\circ$  and boiling at  $301^\circ$ , is formed from the phenylhydrazone of acetoacetic ester by means of acetyl chloride or an excess of hydrochloric acid. It yields phenylmethylpyrazolon when it is saponified. Sodium and alcohol convert it into phenylmethylpyrazoline (B. 28, 627, 635, 706). The last two esters have also been obtained, by carbon dioxide elimination, from carbomethoxy- and carboethoxy-phenylmethylpyrazolons, products resulting from the action of chlorcarbonic methyl and ethyl esters upon phenylmethylpyrazolon (see above, and J. pr. Ch. [2], 54, 180; 55, 149).

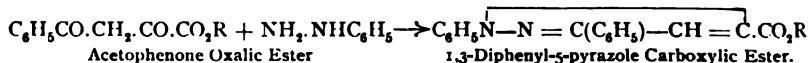
4. **Pyrazole Ketones** are produced, like the thiophene, pyrrol, and indol ketones, on heating the pyrazoles with acid chlorides:

**1-Phenyl-4-acetyl-pyrazole**,  $C_6(COCH_3)H_2N_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $122^\circ$ . Its *oxime* melts at  $130^\circ$  and its *phenylhydrazone* at  $143^\circ$  with decomposition. **1-Phenylbenzoyl-pyrazole**,  $C_6(COC_6H_5)H_2N_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , melts at  $123^\circ$ ; its *oxime* at  $143^\circ$  and its *phenylhydrazone* at  $139^\circ$  with decomposition.

#### 5. Pyrazole Carboxylic Acids are produced

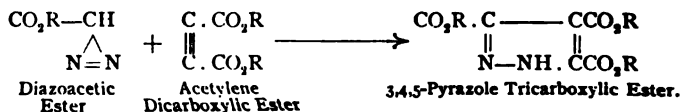
1. By oxidizing alkyl pyrazoles with potassium permanganate. When several alkyl groups are present they are gradually changed to carboxyl.

2. Pyrazole carboxylic esters are formed synthetically by the action of hydrazines upon the carboxylic esters of  $\beta$ -diketones or oxymethylene ketones:



The  $\gamma$ -diketonic esters also, which result from the interaction of bromacetone, bromacetophenone, etc., with sodium acetoacetic ester, yield, by action of diazobenzene salts with the splitting-off of the acetyl group, phenylhydrazones of  $\beta$ -diketone carboxylic esters, which condense to pyrazole carboxylic esters (B. 26, 1881).

3. Pyrazole carboxylic esters are formed by the addition of diazoacetic esters to mono- and dicarboxylic acids of the acetylene series (B. 22, 2165; A. 273, 222):



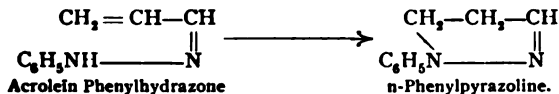
Monohalogen substitution products of the acrylic and fumaric series and  $\alpha,\beta$ -dihaloid substituted saturated acids—*e. g.*,  $\alpha,\beta$ -dibrompropionic acid, dibromsuccinic acid, etc.—react with diazoacetic ester. When the pyrazole carboxylic acids are heated carbon dioxide is evolved and pyrazole results. The carboxyl group in the 3-position is most easily split off. The next in order is that in the 5-position, while the COOH-group in the 4-position is most firmly combined (A. 278, 273). There is no N-atom adjacent to it.

3- (or 5-) Pyrazole Carboxylic Acid,  $C_3H_3N_2$ , COOH, melting at  $209^\circ$  with decomposition, is obtained from 3-methyl pyrazole (p. 482), as well as from 3,5-pyrazoline dicarboxylic acid by the exit of carbon dioxide and  $H_2$  (A. 273, 237). 4-Pyrazole Carboxylic Acid, melting at  $275^\circ$ , is obtained from pyrazole tricarboxylic acid. 3,5-Pyrazole Dicarboxylic Acid,  $C_3H_2N_2(COOH)_2$ , melting at  $289^\circ$ , is made from methyl pyrazole carboxylic acid, dimethyl pyrazole (A. 279, 218; B. 25, R. 744), as well as from diazoacetic ester by means of dibrompropionic ester. 3,4,5-Pyrazole Tricarboxylic Acid,  $C_3HN_2(COOH)_3$ , melting at  $233^\circ$ , is prepared by methods 1 and 3 (p. 484).

3-Methyl-5-pyrazole Carboxylic Acid,  $C_3H_3(CH_3)N_2$ , COOH, melts at  $236^\circ$  (B. 25, R. 744; A. 279, 217). 3,5-Dimethyl-4-pyrazole Carboxylic Acid,  $C_5H_7N_2$ , COOH, melting with decomposition at  $290^\circ$ , is derived from acetyl- or ethidene-acetoacetic ester (A. 279, 239). Two isomeric *c*-Phenylpyrazole Dicarboxylic Acids,  $C_9(C_6H_5)_2HN_2(COOH)_2$ , melting at  $235^\circ$  and  $243^\circ$ , have been obtained from diazoacetic ester by means of phenylpropion- and  $\alpha$ -bromocinnamic acid (B. 27, 3247). *n*-Phenylpyrazole Carboxylic Acid,  $C_8H_7N_2(C_6H_5)COOH$ , the 3-*acid* melts at  $146^\circ$ , and the 5-*acid* melts at  $183^\circ$  (B. 24, 1888). The 4-*acid* melts at  $220^\circ$ . It is obtained from *n*-phenylpyrazole tricarboxylic acid (B. 22, 179). *n*-Phenylmethylpyrazole Carboxylic Acids,  $C_9H_7(CH_3)N_2$ ,  $C_6H_5(COOH)$ . There are five known isomerides: (1) the 1,5,3-*acid*, melting at  $136^\circ$ , results from the action of diazobenzene chloride upon acetonyl acetoacetic ester (p. 484, method 2), as well as from acetone oxalic ester and phenylhydrazine, together with (2) the 1,3,5-*acid*, melting at  $190^\circ$ , which is also produced by a peculiar rearrangement of phenylmethyloxypyridazone (see this) (A. 253, 54; 295, 305); (3) the 1,5,4-*acid*, melting at  $166^\circ$ , is obtained from oxymethylene acetoacetic ester (A. 278, 270; 295, 311); (4) the 1,4,3-*acid*, melting at  $134^\circ$ , and (5) the 1,3,4-*acid*, melting at  $192^\circ$ , have been prepared by a half-sided oxidation of phenyldimethylpyrazole (B. 25, R. 943; 26, R. 245). 1,5-Diphenyl-3-pyrazole Carboxylic Acid,  $C_6H_5(C_6H_5)N_2$ ,  $C_6H_5(COOH)$ , melting at  $185^\circ$ , is prepared from phenylacetoacetic ester; phenylpyrazole dicarboxylic acids—compare A. 295, 306. 1-Phenyl-3,4,5-tricarboxylic Acid,  $C_9N_2$ ,  $C_6H_5(COOH)_3$ , melts at  $184^\circ$  (B. 22, 172).

## PYRAZOLINES.

Metallic sodium and alcohol reduce the pyrazoles, especially the *n*-phenylpyrazoles, to dihydropyrazoles or pyrazolines. The latter are also produced by rearrangement of the hydrazones of unsaturated aldehydes or ketones, in that the amine residue of the hydrazone adds itself to the unsaturated linkage:



While this rearrangement proceeds with many hydrazones at lower temperatures, with others it is only completed when they are distilled. Frequently it occurs that the corresponding pyrazole (p. 481) is formed instead of the pyrazoline, or is produced along with the latter.

The ketazine of acetone, bisdimethylazimethylene, is capable of a rearrangement similar to the preceding. It is changed quite readily by maleic acid into maleinate of trimethylpyrazoline:

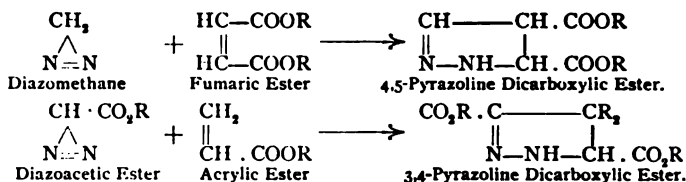


**Behavior.** The pyrazolines are feeble bases. They are, for the most part, only soluble in concentrated acids. They are less stable than the pyrazoles. Oxidizing agents convert them into very unstable dye-substances, which are probably derived from bis-pyrazolines (B. 26, 100; Knorr's pyrazoline reaction). When reduced they frequently yield trimethylene diamine derivatives; this is particularly true of the *n*-phenylpyrazolines.

**Pyrazoline**,  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_6\text{N}_2 = \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH} = \text{N} - \text{NH}$ , is an oil, boiling at  $144^\circ$ . It is formed from acrolein and hydrazine hydrate (B. 28, 69; 29, 774). **3,5,5-Trimethylpyrazoline**,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_8(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{N}_2$ , boiling at  $66-69^\circ$  (20 mm.), is obtained from mesityl oxide and hydrazine, as well as from *bis*-dimethylazimethylene (see above); its *picrate* melts at  $138^\circ$  and its *maleinate* at  $127^\circ$  (B. 27, 770). **5-Phenylpyrazoline**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_8(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{N}_2$ , is obtained from the hydrazone of cinnamic aldehyde (B. 27, 788), as well as from its dicarboxylic acid (B. 26, 261). *n*-Phenylpyrazoline,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_8\text{N}_2$ ,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $52^\circ$  and boiling at  $274^\circ$ , is converted by bromine into *n*-phenyldibromopyrazoline,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_6\text{Br}_2\text{N}_2$ ,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $39^\circ$ .

**1,3,5-Triphenyl-pyrazoline**,  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{12}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{N}_2$ , melting at  $135^\circ$ , is changed by bromine to triphenyldibromopyrazoline,  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{10}\text{Br}_2\text{N}_2$ , melting at  $179^\circ$ .

**Pyrazoline carboxylic acids** are obtained from diazoacetic ester or diazomethane by means of olefine mono- and -dicarboxylic acids or mono-haloid saturated acids (compare p. 484):



The pyrazoline carboxylic acids show the rather remarkable peculiarity that when they are heated alone they break down into nitrogen and trimethylene carboxylic acids (p. 22). Hydrazine is split off when they are heated with hydrochloric acid. Upon oxidation they become pyrazole carboxylic acids; and when their silver salts are heated, pyrazoles are produced. Upon reduction they yield pyrazoline compounds in part (p. 490) (E. Buchner, A. 273, 214).

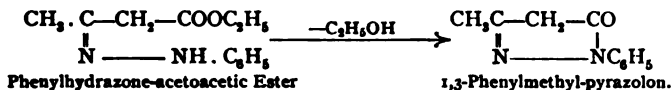
**Pyrazoline-3,5-dicarboxylic Acid**,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_4\text{N}_2(\text{COOH})_2$ , melts with decomposition at  $242^\circ$ . **Pyrazoline-4,5-dicarboxylic ester** (B. 27, 1890), **pyrazoline-3,4,5-tricarboxylic methyl ester**,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_3\text{N}_2(\text{COOCH}_3)_3$ , melting at  $61^\circ$ , and **pyrazoline-3,4,5,5-tricarbonacetic trimethyl ester**,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_3\text{N}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3)_3(\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3)$ , melting at  $105^\circ$ , are obtained from diazoacetic ester by means of fumaric and acconitic esters, while **5-Phenyl-3,4-pyrazoline Dicarboxylic Methyl Ester** (?),  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_8(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{N}_2(\text{COOCH}_3)_2$ , is formed from cinnamic ester and diazoacetic ester.

#### PYRAZOLONS.

The pyrazolons or ketodihydropyrazoles are those pyrazole derivatives which have been known for the longest time. They were discovered in 1883 and investigated by L. Knorr. Different pyrazolons have been previously discussed at the conclusion of the hydrazones of the  $\beta$ -ketonic acids, of which they are the inner anhydrides, and to which they sustain the same relation as the lactams bear to the corresponding amido-acids,

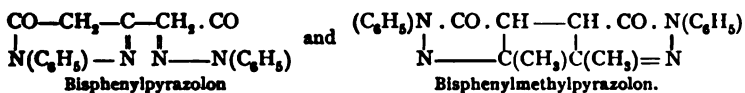
hence the designation lactazams was suggested for the pyrazolons (1, 363).

They are produced (1) by the elimination of alcohol from the hydrazones of  $\beta$ -ketonic esters:



A number of these hydrazones when acted upon with condensing agents which eliminate water—*e. g.*, hydrochloric acid, acetyl chloride, etc.—yield *alkoxy-pyrazoles* (p. 483), which subsequently are converted by saponification of the alkoxy-group into pyrazolons. Some of the phenylhydrazones of the  $\beta$ -ketonic esters, when treated with concentrated sulphuric acid, yield *indol* derivatives.

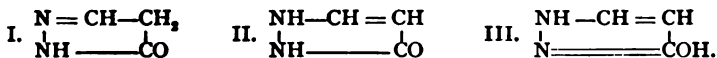
When hydrazines are condensed with the esters of  $\beta,\beta$ -diketone dicarboxylic acids—*e. g.*, diaceto-succinic ester and oxalldiacetic ester—bispyrazolons are produced (B. 28, 68):



(2) By the oxidation of the corresponding pyrazolidones.

*Behavior*: The pyrazolons, like the other pyrazole derivatives, are feeble bases (see, however, antipyrine). They also manifest the acid properties of the  $\beta$ -ketonic esters, and therefore yield unstable salts with bases just as they do with acids. They also have a series of reactions in common with the derivatives of  $\beta$ -ketonic acids. This is due to the reactivity of the  $\text{CH}_2$ -group standing between the two CO-groups; they condense to *benzylidene* derivatives with benzaldehyde, and with nitrous acid form *isonitroso*- or *nitroso*-compounds, while with diazobenzene salts they yield more or less intensely colored *azo*-compounds, etc. (B. 27, 782; 28, 625).

Different formulas have been proposed to show the constitution of the pyrazolons:



Two isomeric *n*-phenylpyrazoles, corresponding to the formulas I and II, have been made in various ways. Furthermore, formula II corresponds to antipyrine, the most important member of the group (p. 488). It is, however, very often quite difficult to arrive at a distinction between the different possible formulas. The alkoxy-pyrazoles are derived from the hydroxyl form (III) of the pyrazolons. It is true that they are also produced from pyrazolons by various alkylation methods, together with the isomeric *n*-alkyl derivatives constituted according to formula II (B. 28, 706, 1626). The reaction products of acid chlorides and pyrazolons are also probably derived from the same formula (pp. 483, 484).

**Pyrazolon**,  $\text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{N} \cdot \text{NH}$ , melting at  $164^\circ$ , is best prepared from formyl-acetic ester (1, 364) and hydrazine, but is also produced from its carboxylic acids. It condenses with benzaldehyde, nitrous acid, and diazobenzene chloride to 4-Benzal-pyrazolon,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{ON}) : \text{CH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $200^\circ$ , 4-isonitrosopyrazolon,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{ON}) : \text{NOH}$ , melting with decomposition at  $181^\circ$ , and 4-pyrazolon-azobenzene,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{ON}) : \text{N} \cdot \text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $196^\circ$  (B. 29, 249).

3-Methyl Pyrazolon,  $\text{C}_3(\text{CH}_3)\text{H}_2\text{ON}$ , melting at  $215^\circ$ , is obtained by the action of hydrazine upon acetoacetic ester or dehydracetic ester (J. pr. Ch. [2], 39, 132).

*n*-Phenyl-5-pyrazolon,  $\text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $118^\circ$ , is obtained both from *n*-phenyl-3- and 4-pyrazolon carboxylic acids and from 1-phenyl-5-pyrazolon.

done. *n*-Phenyl-3-pyrazolon,  $\text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{NC}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $154^\circ$ , result upon oxidizing 1-phenyl-3-pyrazolidone with ferric chloride, and by treating *n*-phenyl pyrazoline successively with bromine and caustic potash, etc. (B. 28, 35, 630; 29, 519 J. pr. Ch. [2], 52, 138).

*n*-Phenyl-3-methyl Pyrazolon,  $\text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) : \text{N} \cdot \text{NC}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $127^\circ$  from acetoacetic ester, the  $\beta$ -chlorocrotonic esters (B. 29, 1654), or tetrolic acid by means of phenylhydrazine, is that pyrazole derivative which is the best known, and indeed has been known for the longest time (A. 238, 147). With benzaldehyde it yields the *benzylidene* compound,  $\text{CO} \cdot \text{C}(:\text{CHC}_6\text{H}_5)\text{C}(\text{CH}_3) : \text{N} \cdot \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $107^\circ$ ; with  $\text{N}_2\text{O}$ ,

an *isonitroso*-derivative,  $\text{CO} \cdot \text{C}(\text{NOH})\text{C}(\text{CH}_3) : \text{N} \cdot \text{NC}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $157^\circ$ , which may be oxidized and reduced to *nitro*- and *amido-phenylmethyl pyrazolon*. The latter is also made by the reduction of *phenylmethyl pyrazolon asobenzene*. When the amido-derivative is oxidized it becomes *rubasonic acid*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{11}\text{N}_3\text{O}_3$ , melting at  $181^\circ$ . It is a red-colored compound, which in its behavior recalls the purpuric acid (1, 510) of the uric acid group. A large excess of the oxidant converts amidopyrazolon immediately into

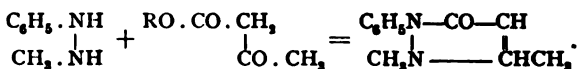
4-Keto-1-phenyl-3-methyl-pyrazolon,  $\text{CO} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) : \text{N} \cdot \text{NC}_6\text{H}_5$ , the isatin of the pyrazole group, which, by reduction, yields the corresponding secondary alcohol:

4-Oxy-1-phenyl-3-methyl pyrazolon (A. 293, 50).

Ferric chloride oxidizes phenylmethyl pyrazolon, with the union of two molecules, to *Pyrazole Blue*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}-\text{CO}-\text{C}=\text{C}-\text{CO}-\text{NC}_6\text{H}_5$ , which resembles indigo-blue in constitution and chemical behavior. Less energetic oxidants—*e. g.*, phenylhydrazine, etc.—produce *bisphenylmethylpyrazolon*, which contains two atoms more of hydrogen. This can also be prepared from phenylmethylpyrazolon silver and iodine, as well as from the diphenylhydrazone of diacetosuccinic ester (p. 473). The interaction of diazomethane and phenylmethyl pyrazolon yields phenylmethylmethoxypyrazole (p. 487), and along with it, but in small quantity, the isomeric antipyrine (compare B. 28, 1626).

**Antipyrine, 1,2,3-Phenyldimethyl Pyrazolon,**  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}-\text{CO}-\text{CH}$   
 $\text{CH}_2\text{N}-\text{CHCH}_3$

melting at  $114^\circ$ , is obtained in the form of its hydriodide when phenylmethylpyrazolon is heated to  $100^\circ$ , together with methyl iodide and methyl alcohol. It also results by the condensation of symmetrical methylphenylhydrazine with acetoacetic ester (A. 238, 160; B. 20, R. 609):



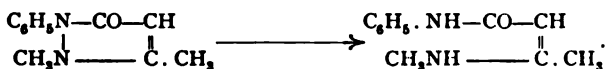
Homologues of antipyrine are formed, similarly to it, from phenylmethylpyrazolon: -2-Benzyl- and 2-Ethyl-1-phenyl-3-methylpyrazolon, *homoantipyrine*, melting at  $119^\circ$  and  $73^\circ$  respectively (J. pr. Ch. [2], 55, 153; A. 293, 3 Anm.).

Antipyrine is a strong monacid base. It is very soluble in water and alcohol, and crystallizes from ether in shining leaflets.

It is highly prized in medicine as an antipyretic. Its *salicylate*, *salipyrine*, acts similarly to it. This is also true of the homologue *toly-pyrine* or  $\gamma$ -tolyl-dimethylpyrazolon, etc.

Antipyrine yields derivatives perfectly similar to those obtained from phenylmethylpyrazolon (B. 28, 623). When antipyrine is boiled with alcoholic potash it is recon-

verted into phenylmethylhydrazine. On heating it with sodium in toluene, conducting carbon dioxide through it at the same time, the union between the two N-atoms is broken and  $\beta$ -methylamidocrotonic anilide is produced (B. 25, 769):



This is a rupture of a ring similar to that observed in the change of the pyrazolines to trimethylene diamines (p. 486).

**4-Nitrosoantipyrine**, ( $\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{11}\text{N}_2$ ). NO, results when antipyrine is acted upon with nitrous acid. Zinc and acetic acid reduce it to 4-amido-antipyrine, melting at  $109^\circ$ , the diazo-compounds of which are readily formed and yield dye-substances (A. 293, 58).

**4-Oxyantipyrine**, melting at  $182^\circ$ , results from the methylation of 4-oxy-1-phenyl-3-methylpyrazolon (p. 488) and is a compound with a pronounced phenol character (A. 293, 49).

At low temperatures methyl iodide converts antipyrine into *pseudo-iodmethylete*, having the formula,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{OCH}_3)=\text{CH}$ , as it can also be prepared from  $\text{INCH}_3=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , methoxymethylphenylpyrazole and methyl iodide. At higher temperatures methyl iodide

and antipyrine yield **4-Methyl Antipyrine**,  $\text{CO}\cdot\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2:\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\cdot\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)\text{N}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $82^\circ$ , and later **1-Phenyl-3,4-trimethyl Pyrazolon**,

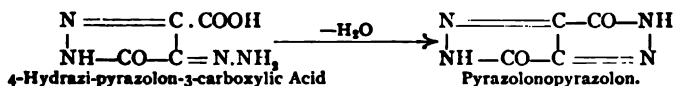
$\text{CO}\cdot\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\cdot\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2:\text{N}\cdot\text{NC}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $56^\circ$  (A. 293, 1). See C. 1897, 1, 540, for the action of phenols upon antipyrine. Consult A. 293, 42, for the addition of acid chlorides to antipyrine.

**1-Phenyl-5-methyl Pyrazolon**,  $\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{C}=\text{CH}-\text{CO}-\text{NH}\cdot\text{NC}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $167^\circ$ , is isomeric with 1-phenyl-3-methyl pyrazolon. It is produced when the corresponding pyrazolidone is oxidized with ferric chloride (B. 28, R. 78). When it is methylated **isantipyrine** (B. 25, R. 367; 28, 629) results. This is isomeric with antipyrine, and it is *poisonous*.

**Pyrazolon Carboxylic Acids**: Their esters are obtained from the hydrazones of  $\beta$ -keto- or aldehydodicarboxylic esters. The acids readily break down into CO, and pyrazolons.

**Pyrazolon-3-carboxylic Acid**,  $\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}_2-\text{C}(\text{COOH})=\text{N}-\text{NH}$ , decomposes at  $250^\circ$ . Its *methyl ester* melts at  $227^\circ$ . It is formed from oxalo-acetic methyl ester, chlorfumaric ester (B. 29, R. 860), or acetylene dicarboxylic ester with hydrazine (B. 25, 3442; 26, 1722). Nitrous acid converts it into an *isonitroso*-compound,

$\text{CO}-\text{C}(\text{NOH})\cdot\text{C}(\text{COOH})=\text{N}-\text{NH}$ , melting at  $201^\circ$ , which yields the hydrazone of *hydrazipyrazolon carboxylic acid* when treated with hydrazine hydrate. The *anhydride* of this acid, decomposing at  $126^\circ$ , represents a symmetrical dicyclic nucleus:



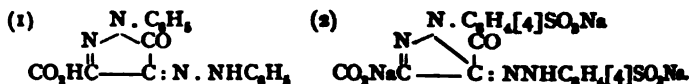
which may also be viewed as the dilactam of dioxosuccinic osazone (B. 26, 2057). By the elimination of carbon dioxide pyrazolon-3-carboxylic acid yields pyrazolon, obtained in various other ways (see B. 29, 249).

**Pyrazolon-4-carboxylic Acid**,  $\text{CO}-\text{CH}(\text{COOH})-\text{CH}=\text{N}\cdot\text{NH}$ . Its *ethyl ester* melts at  $181^\circ$ . It is formed, along with malonyl hydrazides, when hydrazine hydrate acts upon the ester of dicarboxyglutaconic acid,  $(\text{CO}_2\text{R})_2\text{CH}\cdot\text{CH}:\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{R})_2$ , and when

hydrazine and the ester of ethoxymethylenemalononic acid react (B. 28, 1053). This acid splits off  $\text{CO}_2$  quite easily and becomes pyrazolon (B. 28, 988).

**1-Phenylpyrazolon-4-carboxylic Acid**,  $\text{CO}-\text{CH}(\text{COOH})-\text{CH}=\text{N}-\text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , melts at  $93^\circ$  with decomposition. Its *ethyl ester* melts at  $118^\circ$ . It is produced when phenylhydrazine acts upon the ester of dicarboxyl-glutaconic acid or the ester of ethoxymethylenemalononic ester (1, 494). The isomeric **1-Phenyl-3-pyrazolon Carboxylic Acid**, melting at  $181^\circ$ , is produced in the form of its ester from oxaloacetic ester and phenylhydrazine. Both phenylpyrazolon carboxylic acids yield the same phenylpyrazolon (p. 488; B. 28, 41).

The ozones of the dioxosuccinic acid esters readily yield the ester of 1-phenyl-4-phenylhydrazono-3-pyrazolon carboxylic acid (1). This has a red color. It melts at  $154^\circ$ . It is the parent substance of the valuable yellow dye tartrazine (2), the chief constituent of which is the trisodium salt of tartrazinic acid or 1, p-sulphoxyphenyl-4, p-sulphoxyphenylhydrazono-pyrazolon-3-carboxylic acid:



The latter acid can also be obtained from 1, p-sulphoxyphenyl-3-pyrazolon carboxylic acid and from the diazide of sulphanilic acid, which fully demonstrates its constitution (A. 294, 219).

#### PYRAZOLIDINES.

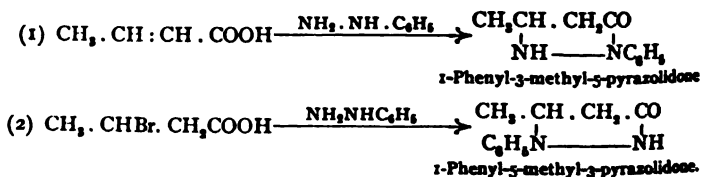
The derivatives of *tetrahydropyrazole* or *pyrazolidine* pass easily, as a general thing, into pyrazoline compounds, therefore they possess reducing properties. The simplest pyrazolidine is not yet known.

**n-Phenylpyrazolidine**,  $\text{NH}-\text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , is an oil. It boils at  $160^\circ$  (20 mm.). It is formed when sodium phenylhydrazine acts upon trimethylene bromide (B. 26, R. 402). The oxygen of the air oxidizes it to phenylpyrazoline. Alkali and methyl iodide convert it into **1-Phenyl-2-methyl Pyrazolidine**,  $\text{CH}_3-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_5$ , boiling at  $175-180^\circ$  (90 mm.). The reduction of the corresponding pyrazolidone produces **1-phenyl-3-methylpyrazolidine** (B. 26, 107). **1,3,5-Triphenyl-2-methylpyrazolidine**, melting at  $110^\circ$ , results in the reduction of triphenylpyrazole iodmethylate with sodium and alcohol.

*Pyrazolidine carboxylic acids* have been obtained by the reduction of pyrazoline carboxylic acids (B. 26, R. 282).

*Keto-derivatives of the pyrazolidines:*

(1) **Pyrazolidones** result from the interaction of hydrazines and  $\beta$ -haloid fatty acids or  $\alpha, \beta$ -olefine carboxylic acids. If phenylhydrazine be employed, it is possible for the reaction to pursue a double course, according as the secondary or tertiary group of the hydrazine is rearranged by the carboxyl group of the acid:



The resulting isomerides are distinguished by the fact that the 1-phenyl-5-pyrazolidones have only *basic* properties, whereas the 1-phenyl-3-pyrazolidones also possess *acid* properties. On oxidation the pyrazolidones readily become pyrazolones, and when reduced with sodium and alcohol they are converted, in part, into pyrazolidines (see below).

**Pyrazolidone**,  $\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{NH}$ , boiling at  $133\text{--}135^\circ$ , is obtained from acrylic acid and hydrazine. It is a base. When oxidized it yields pyrazolon (J. pr. Ch.

[2], 51, 73). **1-Phenyl-5-pyrazolidone**,  $\text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $78^\circ$ , is derived from  $\beta$ -haloid propionic acids by means of sodium formylphenylhydrazine, or from acrylic acid with phenylhydrazine in toluene solution (B. 28, 26). It is only basic, and when oxidized it becomes 1-phenyl-5-pyrazolon, melting at  $118^\circ$  (p. 488).

The isomeric **1-Phenyl-3-pyrazolidone**,  $\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $119\text{--}121^\circ$ , and obtained from  $\beta$ -haloid propionic acid with free phenylhydrazine, as well as from unsym.  $\beta$ -phenylhydrazidopropionic ester (B. 24, R. 234), possesses acid properties also, and when oxidized becomes 1-phenyl-3-pyrazolon, melting at  $154^\circ$ ; its *n*-acetyl derivative melts at  $67^\circ$  (B. 29, 517).

**1-Phenyl-3-methyl-5-pyrazolidone**, melting at  $84^\circ$  and boiling at  $321^\circ$ , is derived from crotonic acid and phenylhydrazine or from symmetrical  $\beta$ -phenylhydrazidobutyric acid (B. 27, R. 687). It is a base. It readily changes to 1,3-phenylmethylpyrazolon. When methylated it yields 1,2,3-phenyldimethylpyrazolidone, *hydroantipyrene*, melting at  $146^\circ$ . It cannot be converted by oxidation into antipyrene (B. 26, 103). **1-Phenyl-**

**3-dimethyl-5-pyrazolidone**,  $\text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $75^\circ$ , is produced from dimethyl acrylic acid and phenylhydrazine. Boiling baryta-water decomposes it into phenylazoisovaleric acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N} : \text{N} \cdot \text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$  (A. 292, 284). **1-Phenyl-5-methyl-3-pyrazolidone**, melting at  $128^\circ$  and obtained from unsym.  $\beta$ -phenylhydrazidobutyric acid, also possesses acid properties. By oxidation it yields 1,5-phenylmethylpyrazolon (p. 488).

(2) **Diketopyrazolidines** are the cyclic hydrazides of the *malonic acids*: **3,5-Diketopyrazolidine**, *Malonyl hydrazine*,  $\text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{NH}$ , is an oil. It is formed from malonic ester and hydrazine (B. 28, R. 159).

**1-Phenyl-3,5-diketopyrazolidine**, *Malonyl-phenylhydrazine*, melting at  $192^\circ$ , is obtained from the phenylhydrazide of malonic ester acid (B. 25, 1506). Consult B. 30, 1018, for its derivatives.

## 2. INDAZOLES.

Just as the benzopyrrols or indols correspond to the pyrrols, so do the benzopyrazoles or indazoles correspond to the pyrazoles.

There are two isomeric series of N-alkylic indazoles. The one series is produced by the action of alkyl iodides upon indazole or its homologues. The second series, called isindazoles, result synthetically from ortho-substituted  $\alpha$ -alkylphenylhydrazines, and therefore have the alkyl residue attached to the N-atom adjacent to the benzene nucleus; consequently, in the isomeric *n*-alkyl indazoles the alkyl residue must be joined to the second ( $\beta$ -) N-atom, and the subjoined formula:

$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH} \\ \diagup \text{N} \diagdown \end{smallmatrix} \text{NH}$ , must be ascribed to the simplest indazole from which the others are derived.

Hence the real benzopyrazole,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH} \\ \diagup \text{N} \diagdown \end{smallmatrix} \text{N}$ , is the hypothetical parent-substance of the *isindazoles*.



**$\beta,\gamma$ -Dimethyl indazole**,  $C_7H_8(CH_3)_2N_2 \cdot CH_3$ , melting at  $80^\circ$ .  **$\beta$ -Phenyl-indazole**  $C_7H_5N_2 \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $84^\circ$  and boiling at  $345^\circ$ , is formed from nitrobenzyl aniline (comp. p. 492). Methyl iodide unites with it to an *iodmethylate*, melting at  $188^\circ$ , and is oxidized by chromic acid to azobenzene-carboxylic acid (B. 24, 3058; 27, 48).  **$\gamma$ -Phenyl-indazole**, melting at  $108^\circ$  or  $116^\circ$ , is produced by the reduction of *o*-diazobenzophenone. When sodium sulphite is used for this purpose there first results an oxygen-containing body,  $C_{12}H_{10}N_2O$ , melting at  $126^\circ$ , which probably is a  $\beta$ -oxy- $\gamma$ -phenyl-indazole, that upon further reduction becomes phenyl indazole (B. 29, 1265).  **$\beta$ -2-Nitro-indazole**,  $NO_2 \cdot C_6H_3(CN_2H_3)$ , melting at  $181^\circ$ , is formed, together with *nitrocresol* (B. 26, 2349), upon diazotizing nitro-*o*-toluidine. **Bz-1,3-Nitromethyl Indazole**, melting at  $192^\circ$ , is obtained from nitroxylidine (B. 29, 305).

**$\gamma$ -Indazole Carboxylic Acid**,  $C_7H_5N_2 \cdot COOH$ , melting with decomposition at  $259^\circ$ , is derived from *o*-hydrazine-phenyl-glyoxylic acid, which is prepared from isatinic acid (p. 258), thus completing the transition from the indol to the indazole group (B. 26, 217). When the acid is heated it breaks down into indazole and carbon dioxide.

**$\gamma$ -Indazole Acetic Acid**,  $C_7H_5N_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot COOH$ , results from the moderated oxidation of *o*-hydrocinnamic acid. It melts at  $169^\circ$ , and decomposes into carbon dioxide and  $\gamma$ -methyl indazole.

**$\alpha,\gamma$ -Dimethyl Isindazole**,  $C_8H_8 \begin{smallmatrix} C(CH_3) \\ \diagup \\ N(CH_3) \end{smallmatrix} \diagdown N$ , melting at  $36^\circ$ , is made by the reduction of nitroso-*o*-ethylamido-acetophenone. **1z- $\alpha$ -Acetyl Isindazole**,  $C_8H_5N_2 \cdot COCH_3$ , **1z- $\alpha$ - $\gamma$ -Acetyl Methyl-** and  **$\alpha,\gamma$ -Acetyl Phenyl Isindazole**, melting at  $103^\circ$  and  $185^\circ$ , are formed by method 2 (p. 492) from *o*-amido-benzaldoxime, -acetophenonoxime, and -benzophenonoxime. Alkalies again resolve them into these oximes (B. 29, 1255).  **$\alpha$ -Ethyl- $\gamma$ -isindazole Acetic Acid**,  $C_7H_4N_2(C_2H_5)(CH_2 \cdot COOH)$ , melting at  $132^\circ$ , is obtained from nitroso-*o*-ethylamido-cinnamic acid. See above for  $\alpha$ -phenyl isindazole and nitro- $\alpha,\gamma$ -phenyl isindazole carboxylic acid.

**Hydro-isindazole Derivatives**:  **$\beta$ -Phenyl Dihydroindazole**,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \\ \diagup \\ NH \end{smallmatrix} \diagdown N \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $138^\circ$ , is produced by the reduction of phenyl indazole with sodium and alcohol.

**Bz-Nitro- $\alpha$ -phenyl Dihydroindazole- $\gamma$ -carboxylic Acid**, melting at  $235^\circ$ , is formed in the reduction of nitrophenyl indazole carboxylic acid (A. 264, 149).

**Indazolone**, or *Benzo-pyrazolon*, is the inner anhydride or lactazam of *o*-hydrazine-benzoic acid,  $C_8H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} CO \\ \diagup \\ NH \end{smallmatrix} \diagdown NH$  (A. 213, 333).

**Nitro-1z- $\beta$ -phenyl Indazolone** is formed from the ester of nitrophenyl hydrazidobenzoic acid (B. 30, 1100). We must include here **Camphylphenylpyrazolon Carboxylic Ester**,  $C_8H_{14} \begin{smallmatrix} C-CO_2R \\ \parallel \\ C-N(C_6H_5)-N \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $114^\circ$ , which is formed from the ester of camphor-oxalic acid and phenylhydrazine (C. 1897, II, 123).

The following are *benzodipyrazolons*:

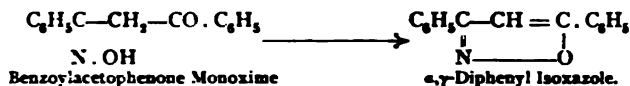
**Hexahydrobenzodipyrazolone**,  $NH \begin{smallmatrix} CO \\ \diagup \\ N \end{smallmatrix} \diagdown C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} CO \\ \diagup \\ N \end{smallmatrix} \diagdown NH$ , melting at  $275^\circ$ , is obtained from the ester of succino-succinic acid and hydrazine.

**Dicarbobenzois-*n*-phenylpyrazolon**,  $(COOH)_2C_6 \begin{smallmatrix} CO \\ \diagup \\ NH \end{smallmatrix} \diagdown NC_6H_5)_2$ , is produced by the interaction of phenylhydrazine and hydroquinone tetracarboxylic ester (Am. Ch. J. 12, 379).

### 3. ISOXAZOLE OR FURO[a]MONAZOLE GROUP.

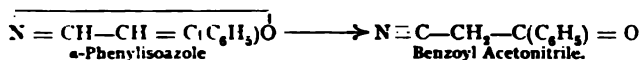
**Isoxazole** is the azole of furfuran corresponding to pyrazole or pyrro-[a]-monazole: *Furo-[a]-monazole*. In accordance with similar structure the isoxazoles are produced by methods similar to those employed for the

preparation of the pyrazoles. The latter, as known, are obtained from the hydrazones of  $\beta$ -diketo-compounds, and accordingly the isoxazole result by the exit of water from the monoximes of  $\beta$ -diketones and  $\beta$ -ketone aldehydes or oxymethylene ketones (Claisen, B. 24, 3906):

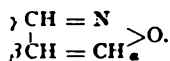


Compare B. 24, R. 767, for the formation of isoxazoles from nitroparaffins by the action of alkalis.

*Properties:* Those isoxazoles, in which the adjacent methine group of the N-member is substituted, are very stable bodies. When this CH-group is not substituted, a rearrangement of  $\beta$ -ketonic acids into nitriles occurs quite readily, especially under the influence of sodium alcoholate:



The isoxazoles, like the pyrazoles, are feeble bases. The substituents of the simplest hypothetical isoxazole are designated in the diagram:

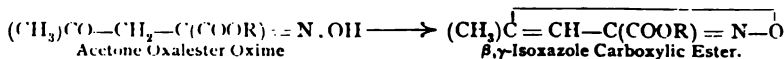


$\gamma$  **Methyl Isoxazole**,  $\text{N} = \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) - \text{CH} = \text{CH} - \text{O}$ , boiling at  $118^\circ$ , is stable. It results when hydroxylamine acts upon oxymethylene acetone. There is formed at the same time the isomeric  $\alpha$ -**Methyl Isoxazole**,  $\text{N} = \text{CH} - \text{CH} = \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) - \text{O}$ , boiling at  $123^\circ$ , which readily rearranges itself to the nitrile of acetic acid (B. 25, 1787).

$\alpha$ - $\beta$ , $\gamma$ -**Trimethyl Isoxazole**,  $\text{N} = \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) - \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) = \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) - \text{O}$ , melting at  $3.5^\circ$  and boiling at  $248^\circ$ , results from the action of alkalis upon methylacetylacetoxime and from nitroethane (J. Ch. Soc. 1891, 410).

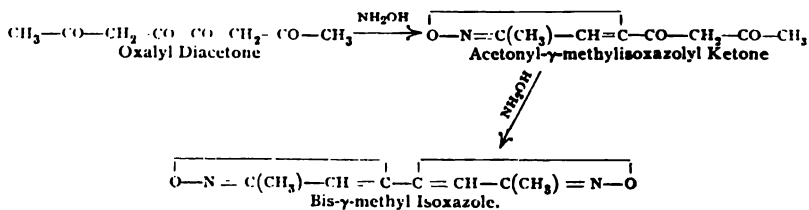
See B. 24, 3912, for ring decompositions in consequence of reductions. **Phenyl Methyl Isoxazole**, melting at  $68^\circ$ , is obtained from benzoyl acetone (p. 250). When heated with alcoholic ammonia it yields 3,5-phenylmethyl pyrazole (p. 482).

**Isoxazole Carboxylic Acids.**—Their esters are prepared from the oximes of the ketone oxalic esters:



The free acids cannot be decomposed into carbon dioxide and isoxazoles. They are completely broken down when heated (B. 24, 3908).

*Bis-isoxazoles* result from the interaction of oxalyldiketones and hydroxylamine:



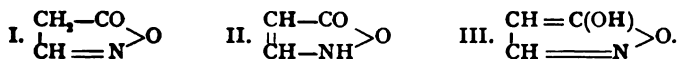
*Acetonyl-γ-methylisoxazolyl Ketone* appears as an intermediate product. It can also be made by the condensation of γ-methylisoxazole-α-carboxylic ester with acetone (B. 24, 3910).

**Isioxazolons.**—These are keto-derivatives of the hypothetical dihydro-isoxazole or isoxazoline. They correspond to the pyrazolons or lactazams, consequently can also be designated as *lactasones* or *lactoximes*. They result when the oximes of the β-ketonic esters lose alcohol (B. 24, 140; 30, 1159; A. 296, 33):



A series of compounds, obtained from glyoxal, methylglyoxal, phenylglyoxal, etc. (also their oximes), by the action of hydroxylamine hydrochloride, can also be considered as the oximes of isioxazon derivatives (comp. B. 30, 1287).

The isioxazolons, similarly to the pyrazolons, can be variously formulated:

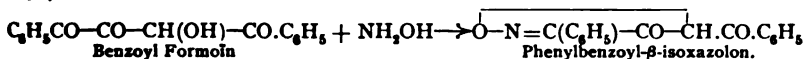


The isioxazolons have a very pronounced acid nature. They decompose the alkaline earth carbonates in the cold, and form salts not only with metals, but also with ammonia and primary amines. The constitution of these salts varies. Ethers result from the action of alkyl iodides upon the silver salts. Methylamine is liberated when phenylisioxazon-methyl ether is distilled with caustic potash. The methyl group is therefore probably linked to nitrogen, and the compound is derived from formula II (A. 296, 37).

**γ-Methyl Isioxazon**,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_5\text{NO}_3$ , melting at  $170^\circ$ , is made from the oxime of acetoacetic ester. *Barium salt*,  $(\text{C}_4\text{H}_5\text{O}_3\text{N}_2)_2\text{Ba} + 1\frac{1}{2}\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . The *ammonium salt*,  $(\text{C}_4\text{H}_5\text{O}_3\text{N}_2)_2\text{NH}_4$ ; *methyl ester*,  $(\text{C}_4\text{H}_5\text{O}_3\text{N}_2)\text{CH}_3$  (A. 296, 46). When the oxime of acetoacetic ester is condensed in the presence of diazobenzene salts the *phenylhydrazone* of γ-methyl-β-ketoisoxazoline,  $(\text{C}_4\text{H}_5\text{NO}_2) : \text{NNHC}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $192^\circ$ , results. The condensation of the same oxime in the presence of ketones or aldehydes gives rise to *Isopropylidene* and *Benzylidene Methyl Isioxazolons*,  $(\text{C}_4\text{H}_5\text{NO}_2) : \text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , melting at  $121^\circ$ , and  $(\text{C}_4\text{H}_5\text{NO}_2) : \text{CH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $141^\circ$  (B. 30, 1337).

**Isionitrosomethyl-isioxazon**—compare B. 28, 2093; 30, 1342. **γ-Phenyl Isioxazon**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_7\text{NO}_3$ , melts at  $152^\circ$ . *Silver salt*,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_7\text{NO}_3\text{Ag}$ ; *aniline salt*,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_7\text{NO}_3 \cdot \text{NH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $111^\circ$ . *Methyl ester*,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_7\text{NO}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , melts at  $78^\circ$ . The action of benzoyl chloride and alkali produces two *benzoyl esters* of phenyl isioxazolons, insoluble in alkalies, melting at  $161^\circ$  and  $115^\circ$  (B. 30, 1614). **β,γ-Dimethyl Isioxazon** melts at  $124^\circ$ . **γ,β-Methyl Ethyl Isioxazon** melts at  $50^\circ$  (A. 296, 56). **γ,β-Methyl Benzyl Isioxazon** melts at  $106^\circ$  (B. 30, 1161). **γ-Phenyl-α-imido-isioxazolin**,

$\text{O} - \text{N} = \text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) - \text{CH} - \text{C} : (\text{NH})$ , melting at  $111^\circ$ , results from cyanacetophenone,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CN}$ , or benzodiacetonitrile and hydroxylamine (B. 27, 1095; Jr. pr. Ch. [2], 47, 124). **γ-Phenyl-α-benzoyl-β-isioxazon**, melting at  $175^\circ$ , is obtained from benzoyl formoln (p. 381) and hydroxylamine (B. 25, 3468; compare B. 30, 1290):



Compare B. 30, 1085, for the so-called *pyroxolon carboxylic ester*,  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_2\text{NO}_3 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{R}$ , a reaction product of hydroxylamine and the ester of dicarboxylglutaconic acid.

#### 4. INDOXAZENE OR BENZISOXAZOLE GROUP.

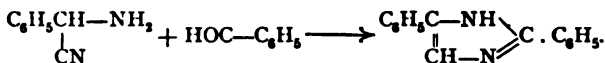
The **benzisoxazoles** or **indoxazenes** are obtained from the oximes of o-haloid or o-nitrobenzophenones (p. 347; B. 25, 1498) (compare method of formation 3 under the **indazoles**, p. 492):

**$\mu$ -Methyl Glyoxaline, Glyoxal Ethylin, Paraglyoxal Methylin,  $C_3H_5(CH_3)N_2$** , melting at  $137^\circ$  and boiling at  $267^\circ$ , results from the rearrangement of *n*-methyl glyoxaline (see above), or from glyoxal, acetaldehyde, and ammonia. Ethyl iodide converts it into  **$\mu$ -Methyl-*n*-ethyl Glyoxaline,  $C_3H_5(CH_3)N_2 \cdot C_2H_5$** , boiling at  $213^\circ$ , which is also formed from diethyl oximide chloride, and manifests physiological actions similar to those of *atropine*.  **$\mu$ -Ethyl Glyoxaline, Glyoxal Propylin,  $C_3H_5(C_2H_5)N_2$** , melts at  $80^\circ$  and boils at  $268^\circ$ .

**$\alpha$ -Methyl Glyoxaline,  $C_3H_5(CH_3)N_2$** , boils at  $263^\circ$ . It is prepared from its mercaptan by method 2 (p. 496) (B. 26, 2204).

**$\alpha, \beta, \mu$ -Trimethyl Glyoxaline,  $C_3(CH_3)_3N_2H$** , melting at  $183^\circ$  and boiling at  $271^\circ$ , is made from diacetyl, ammonia, and aldehyde.

**$\beta, \mu$ -Diphenyl Glyoxaline,  $C_6H_5(C_6H_5)_2N_2H$** , melting at  $162^\circ$ , is produced on heating  **$\beta, \mu$ -diphenyl oxazole** (p. 503) to  $300^\circ$  with alcoholic ammonia; also by the condensation of phenyl- $\alpha$ -amidoacetonitrile and benzaldehyde by means of hydrochloric acid (compare method of forming oxazoles, p. 502) (B. 29, 2103):



**$\alpha, \beta, \mu$ -Triphenyl Glyoxaline, Lophine, melting at  $275^\circ$** , is produced :

- (1) From benzil, benzaldehyde, and ammonia.
- (2) When hydrobenzamide is distilled or amarine oxidized.
- (3) By the reduction of triphenyl cyanidine or triphenyl tricyanogen; ammonia is eliminated.

(4) From benzimidine and benzoïn (B. 29, R. 673).

Lophine (from *λόφος*, tuft of feathers, alluding to its tufted crystalline form) exhibits in marked degree the property of phosphorescing when shaken with alcoholic potash; it is then decomposed into ammonia and benzoic acid. Like the glyoxalines, it does not form an acetate.

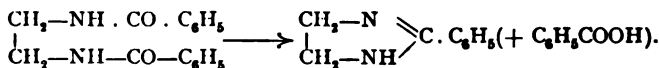
The halogen derivatives of the glyoxalines result from substitution; also by the splitting-off of hydrogen chloride from the dialkylloximide chlorides. **Tribrom-glyoxaline,  $C_3Br_3N_2H$** , melting at  $214^\circ$ , is formed from glyoxaline and bromine. **Chlor-*n*-methyl Glyoxaline,  $C_3H_4ClN_2 \cdot CH_3$** , boiling at  $205^\circ$ , and **Chlor-*n, \mu*-dimethyl Glyoxaline,  $C_3H_4Cl(CH_3)_2N_2$** ,  $CH_3$ , boiling at  $218^\circ$ , are obtained from dimethyl- and diethyloximide chloride.

**Sulphydro-derivatives** are formed by condensation from acetalyl or acetonyl thiureas and similar bodies (p. 496):

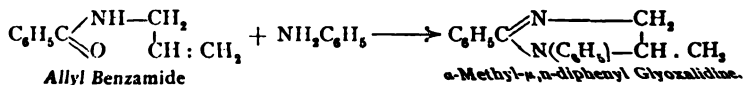
**$\mu$ -Imidazolyl Mercaptan,  $C_3H_3(SH)N_2$** , melting at  $222^\circ$  with decomposition, is changed by methyl iodide to imidazolyl- $\mu$ -methyl sulphide,  $C_3H_3(SCH_3)N_2$ , melting at  $139^\circ$  (B. 25, 2359).  **$\alpha, \beta$ -Diphenyl Glyoxaline- $\mu$ -mercaptan,  $C_2(C_6H_5)_2HN_2(SH)$** , is formed by the interaction of benzoïn and thiourea (A. 284, 8).

**$\alpha, \beta$ -Glyoxaline Dicarboxylic Acid,  $C_3H_3(COOH)_2N_2$** , is obtained from dioxytartaric acid, ammonia, and formaldehyde (A. ch. ph. 24, 525), and by oxidizing benzoglyoxaline (A. 273, 339). It breaks down, on heating, into  $CO_2$  and glyoxaline.

**Hydroglyoxalines.**—The glyoxalines cannot be reduced to hydro-derivatives. **Di-hydroglyoxalines, or glyoxalidines**, result (1) from the acidyl-compounds of ethylene diamine:



- (2) They are very probably the compounds formed from allyl acetamide and allyl benzamide by means of the hydrochlorides of aromatic bases (B. 28, 1665):

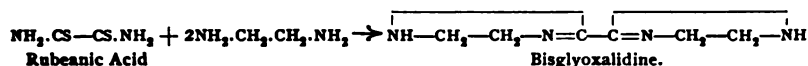


**$\mu$ -Methyl Glyoxalidine, Lysidine**,  $C_4H_8N_2 = \begin{smallmatrix} CH_3-N \\ | \\ CH_2-NH \end{smallmatrix} \rangle C \cdot CH_3$ , melting at  $105^\circ$  and boiling at  $195-198^\circ$ , is formed on heating ethylenediamine hydrochloride with sodium acetate. It forms a *very easily soluble uric acid salt*, and therefore has been recommended as a relief from gout (B. 27, 2952). The homologous glyoxalidines—*e. g.*,  $\mu$ -ethyl-,  $\mu$ -propyl glyoxalidine, etc., (B. 28, 1173, 1176)—behave similarly. Benzoyl chloride and alkali resolve methyl glyoxalidine into acetdibenzoyl ethylene diamine (B. 28, 3068).

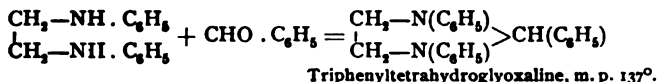
**$\mu$ -Phenyl Glyoxalidine, Ethylenebenzamidine**,  $C_8H_8(C_6H_5)N_2$ , melting at  $101^\circ$ , is also obtained from ethylenediamine and thiobenzamide (B. 25, 2135).

**$\alpha,\beta,\mu$ -Triphenyl Dihydroglyoxaline, Amarine**,  $C_{21}H_{18}N_2 = \begin{smallmatrix} C_6H_5 \cdot C-NH \\ | \\ C_6H_5 \cdot C-NH \end{smallmatrix} \rangle CH \cdot C_6H_5$ , melting at  $113^\circ$ , results from the rearrangement of hydrobenzamide. Alkyl iodides convert it into dialkyl derivatives, hence it must contain two imide groups. It yields lophine upon oxidation (p. 498). *Furfurin*, or *trifuryldihydroglyoxaline*, is analogously constituted (p. 450).

**Bisglyoxalidine**,  $(C_2H_4N_2)_2$ , melting at  $290-300^\circ$ , is a condensation product of rubenic acid and ethylenediamine (B. 24, 1846):



**Tetrahydroglyoxalidines** have been obtained from ethylene aniline and aldehydes (B. 20, 732):



We must include with the *keto*-, *thio*-, and *imido*-substitution products of hydroglyoxalines a series of cyclic urea-, thiourea-, and guanidine-derivatives, which for the most part have been already described with the fatty compounds.

1. **Ketoglyoxalidines, imidasolons, or uretines**, result from the inner condensation of  $\alpha$ -ureido-keto-compounds: Imidazoln,  $\begin{smallmatrix} CH-NH \\ | \\ CH-NH \end{smallmatrix} \rangle CO$ , melting at  $105^\circ$ , is obtained from acetyl urea (p. 496). Different uretines have been obtained from benzoln and benzil by means of various ureas (compare B. 25, 2357; 27, 1083, 1144, 2203; Gaz. chim. Ital. 19, 573).

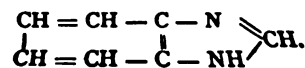
2. **Keto- and Thiotetrahydroglyoxalines** are the cyclic alkylene ureas and thioureas—*e. g.*, *ethylene urea* and *-thiourea* (1, 400, 409).

3. **Diketo- and imidoketotetrahydroglyoxalines** are found in the hydantoinn and *glyco-cyanidines*—*e. g.*, *hydantoinn*, *creatinine*, etc. (1, 401, 413).

4. **Tri keto- and imidodiketotetrahydroglyoxalines**: *oxalyl urea* or *parabanic acid* (1, 505) and *oxalyl guanidine* (B. 26, 2552).

## 6. BENZOGLYOXALINES, OR BENZIMIDAZOLES.

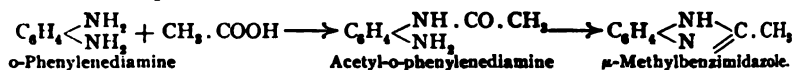
The benzimidazoles, sometimes called cyclic amidines, anhydro-bases, and aldehydines, contain the glyoxaline or imidazole ring in union with a benzene ring:



Their intimate connection with glyoxaline becomes very evident from the fact that benzimidazole becomes glyoxaline dicarboxylic acid when it is oxidized (p. 496).

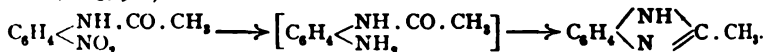
*Formation of the Benzimidazoles :*

(1) By the condensation of *o*-phenylenediamines with carboxylic acids, or their anhydrides or chlorides. An exit of water occurs (Ladenburg, B. 8, 677; 11, 826). Acidyl compounds are produced at the same time as intermediate products:

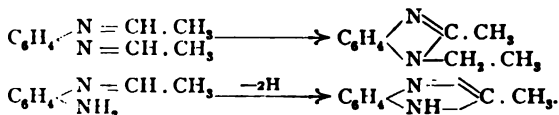


The diacidyl-*o*-phenylenediamines also yield benzimidazoles (B. 23, 1876; 25, 1992). The anhydrides of dibasic acids react like those of the monobasic—*e. g.*, succinic anhydride and *o*-phenylenediamine form benzimidazole- $\mu$ -propionic acid (B. 27, 2773). The *o*-naphthylenediamines behave like the *o*-phenylenediamines.

(2) Benzimidazoles are also produced by the reduction of acidylated *o*-nitranilines, when acidylated *o*-phenylenediamines are also formed as intermediate products (Hobbecker, B. 5, 920):



(3) *N*-alkylic benzimidazoles result when *aldehydes* act upon *o*-diamines (*aldehydines* of Ladenburg, B. 11, 590). The dialkylidene-*o*-diamine, which probably first appears, rearranges itself at once into the *n*-alkylic imidazole (B. 20, 1585). The non-alkylized imidazole is produced as a by-product from the monoalkylidene body:



Mono-alkylic *o*-diamines yield benzimidazoles (B. 25, 2826).

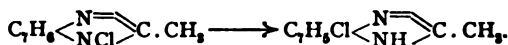
*Properties :* The benzimidazoles behave very much like the glyoxalines (p. 496); however, the basic properties are slightly less than the salt-forming power of the imido-group. Most of the benzimidazoles are soluble in aqueous alkalis. Alkyl residues are easily introduced into the imide group; acid residues, with more difficulty. Benzoyl chloride and sodium hydroxide decompose even at 0°, just as in the case of the glyoxalines, the imidazole-ring with the production of dibenzoylated *o*-diamines. They are very stable toward reducing and oxidizing agents. Certain derivatives of benzimidazole can dye cotton without the help of mordants (B. 26, 2760). In this respect they resemble the benzoxazoles (p. 503) and benzothiazoles (p. 507).

The number of known benzimidazoles is very great. See Kühling: Stickstoffhaltige Ortho-condensationsproducte, S. 177-210.

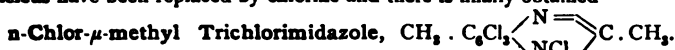
**Benzimidazole, *o*-Phenylene Formamidine**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\begin{smallmatrix} \text{N} \\ \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix} \text{CH}$ , melting at 167°, is obtained from formic acid and *o*-phenylenediamine, as well as by the action of chloroform and potash upon *o*-phenylenediamine (B. 28, R. 392). Potassium permanganate oxidizes it in part to glyoxaline dicarboxylic acid.  **$\mu$ -Methyl-benzimidazole, *o*-phenylene acetamidine**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\begin{smallmatrix} \text{N} \\ \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix} \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , melts at 176°.

**$\mu$ -Phenylbenzimidazole, phenylene benzamidine**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\begin{smallmatrix} \text{N} \\ \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix} \text{C} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at 291°, also results from the rearrangement of *o*-amidobenzophenoxime (B. 24, 2386; 29, R. 358).

$\mu$ -Methyl Tolimidazole, *o*-Toluylene Acetamidine,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \cdot \begin{smallmatrix} \text{N} \\ \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix} \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , melting at  $199^\circ$ , and obtained from *m,p*-toluylenediamine with glacial acetic acid or acetaldehyde, unites with methyl iodide to *n,\mu*-dimethyl tolimidazole, melting at  $142^\circ$ , then to its *iodmethylate*, melting at  $221^\circ$ . Silver nitrate precipitates the *silver salt*,  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_6(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{N}_2\text{Ag})$ . Chloride of lime replaces the imide hydrogen by chlorine, which readily exchanges its place with a benzene hydrogen atom:



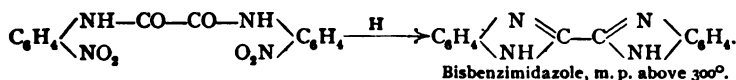
This chlorination may be continued until all of the hydrogen atoms of the benzene nucleus have been replaced by chlorine and there is finally obtained



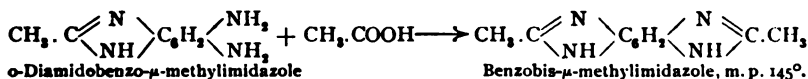
*n*-Acetyl- $\mu$ -methyl Tolimidazole,  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_6(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{N}_2 \cdot \text{COCH}_3)$ , is formed when acetyl chloride acts upon the silver salt. The *n*-benzoyl derivative, melting at  $92^\circ$ , is formed from the base and benzoyl chloride, while benzoyl chloride and sodium hydroxide produce dibenzoyltoluylenediamine.  $\mu$ -Methyltolimidazole condenses with benzaldehyde

to *cinnamyl tolimidazole*,  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_5 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{N} \\ \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix} \text{C} \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , and with phthalic anhydride to a *phthalone* (compare quinophthalone), which is oxidized by potassium permanganate to *tolimidazole- $\mu$ -carboxylic acid*,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7\text{N}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$ . Compare B. 25, 2712, upon *polymeric benzimidazoles*.

Bisbenzimidazoles are made by reducing the *o*-nitro-oxanilides (A. 209, 257):



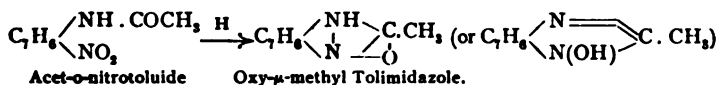
Benzobisimidazoles are formed from the *o*-diamidobenzimidazoles and carboxylic acids (B. 22, 1652):



*Benzimidazole hydrides*, *benzimidazolines*, are not known with certainty. The primary products resulting from the interaction of monoalkylic *o*-diamines and aldehydes are considered as such. They give up hydrogen and readily change to benzimidazoles (B. 25, 2827). The condensation products of acetoacetic ester with *o*-toluylenediamine (B. 25, 606) behave similarly. Methylene iodide and dibenzene-sulphon-*o*-phenylenediamine yield dibenzenesulphonmethylene-*o*-phenylenediamine,

$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{N}(\text{SO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) \\ \text{N}(\text{SO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) \end{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2$ , melting at  $148^\circ$ . It can be considered as a derivative of the simplest benzimidazoline. In an attempt to split off the benzene sulphon-groups with hydrochloric acid it was resinified (B. 28, R. 756).

These substances can be considered as derivatives of hydrobenzimidazoles, which result in the moderated reduction of acylated *o*-nitranilines with ammonium sulphide (B. 22, 1396):



These are relatively stable bodies, which yield benzimidazoles when they are distilled with *zinc-dust*.

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\langle\begin{smallmatrix}\text{NH} \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}\rangle + \text{COCl}_2 \text{ (or } \text{CSCl}_2\text{)} \longrightarrow \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\langle\begin{smallmatrix}\text{NH} \\ \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix}\rangle\text{CO (or } \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\langle\begin{smallmatrix}\text{NH} \\ \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix}\rangle\text{CS)} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\langle\begin{smallmatrix}\text{NH}_2 \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}\rangle + \text{C}(\text{NC}_6\text{H}_5)_3 \longrightarrow \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\langle\begin{smallmatrix}\text{NH} \\ \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix}\rangle\text{C}:\text{NC}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \text{Carbodiimide} \qquad \qquad \qquad \text{Phenylenephyl Guanidine.} \end{array}$$

I.  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NH} \\ \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix} \text{CO(S. NH)}$       II.  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{N} \\ \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix} \text{C.OH(SH, NH}_2\text{)}$

o-Phenylenesulpho-urea, *Thiobenzimidazole*,  $C_6H_4(N_2H_2)CS$ , melting at  $298^\circ$  with decomposition, is obtained from phenylenediamine sulphocyanide (A. 221, 9; 228, 244).

The *oxazoles* and *thiazoles* correspond to the *imidazoles*. The latter were regarded as cyclic amidines (p. 495), and the former may be looked upon as cyclic imido-ethers and alkylene thioamides (1, 269). As a rule, these bodies are as little changed by reduction to hydride bases as the glyoxalines or imidazoles; they remain unaltered or are decomposed (comp. B. 29, 2381).

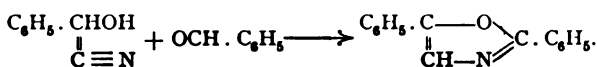
The *oxazoles* or *furo*-[b]-*monazoles*,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{N} \\ \parallel \\ \text{CH} \\ | \\ \text{CH}-\text{CH} \\ \beta \quad \alpha \end{array} \text{O}$ , are isomeric with the *isoxazoles*

$$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COCH}_2\text{Br} + \text{NH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{CH}_3 \longrightarrow \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}=\text{O})\text{N}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{O} \cdot \text{CH}_3$$

***β*-Phenyl-*μ*-methyl Oxazole.**

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \\ | \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{OH} \\ \text{Benzoin} \end{array} + \text{N} \equiv \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \text{C} - \text{N} = \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \\ | \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \text{CH} - \text{O} \\ \alpha, \beta\text{-Diphenyl-}\gamma\text{-methyloxazole} \end{array}$$

(3) When hydrochloric acid gas acts upon mandelo-nitrile (and homologues) and benzaldehydes (B. 29, 2097):

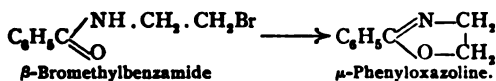


The oxazoles are feeble bases. They break down into acids and amines on evaporation with hydrochloric acid. Oxidants and reducing agents frequently rupture the oxazole ring with great ease. The parent substance of the group is not known.

**$\beta$ -Phenyl Oxazole**,  $C_7H_5(C_6H_5)NO$ , melting at  $46^\circ$  and boiling at  $222^\circ$ , is made from formamide and bromacetophenone.  **$\beta$ -Phenyl- and  $\alpha,\beta$ -Diphenyl- $\mu$ -methyl Oxazole**, melting at  $45^\circ$  and boiling at  $242^\circ$ , and melting at  $44^\circ$  and boiling at  $192$ – $195^\circ$  (15 mm.); see above.  **$\alpha$ -Methyl- $\mu$ -phenyl Oxazole**, from benzamide and chloroacetone, is converted by alcoholic ammonia into *phenylmethyl glyoxaline*.

**$\alpha,\mu$ -Diphenyl Oxazole**, melting at 74° and boiling above 360°, is formed from benzamide and phenylbromacetaldehyde by method 1, and, together with benzalmandelic amide, from the nitrile of mandelic acid and benzaldehyde by method 3 (B. 29, 205). Chromic acid oxidizes it to *phenylglyoxybenzamide*,  $C_6H_5CO.CO.NH.CO.C_6H_5$ , while sodium and alcohol reduce it to *benzylphenyloxethylamine*,  $C_6H_5CH_2.NH.CH_2.CH(OH)C_6H_5$ . Nitric acid apparently produces a nitrodiphenyl oxazole. It is converted into diphenylimidazole when heated with ammonia.

*Dihydro-oxazoles, oxazolines*, are produced by the condensation of  $\beta$ -haloid alkylamides with alkali (B. 22, 2220):



**$\mu$ -Phenyloxazoline**, boiling at  $243^{\circ}$ , is broken down, in the reduction with sodium and amyl alcohol, to oxethylbenzylamine,  $\text{OHCH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NHCH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$  (B. 29, 2382).

**$\mu$ -Methyl Oxazoline** is an oil. Its *picrate* melts at  $159^{\circ}$  (B. 23, 2502).

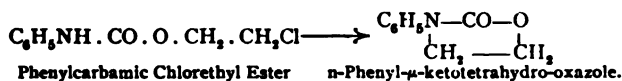
**$\beta$ -Methyl- $\mu$ -phenyl Oxazoline**, boiling at  $244^\circ$ , is obtained from  $\beta$ -bromopropylbenzamide, also from allylbenzamide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH}_2$ , with concentrated sulphuric acid (B. 26, 2840) (compare glyoxalidines, p. 499).

**Amido-oxazolines or imidotetrahydro-oxazoles** are the so-called allylene- $\psi$ -ureas.

**Ethylene- $\psi$ -urea,  $\mu$ -amido-oxazoline,**  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2-\text{N} \\ | \quad \quad \backslash \\ \text{CH}_2-\text{O} \quad \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$ ; its *picrate* melts at  $158^\circ$ .

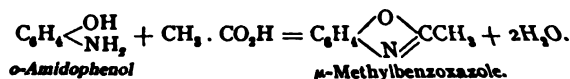
**Propylene- $\psi$ -urea,  $\mu$ -amido- $\alpha$ -methyl oxazoline**; its picrate melts at 186°. These compounds result from the action of potassium cyanate upon  $\beta$ -bromomethyl- and -propylamine.  $\alpha, \beta$ -Diphenyl- $\mu$ -amidoxazoline, melting at 154°, is formed from diphenyl-oxethylamine (p. 372) and potassium cyanate (B. 28, 1899).

Derivatives of a *ketotetrahydro-oxazole* have been obtained from carbamic- $\beta$ -haloid alkyl esters by the elimination of hydrochloric acid (B. 25, R. 9):



## 8. BENZOXAZOLES.

These, like the production of benzimidazoles from o-phenylene diamines, result upon heating o-amidophenols with carboxylic acids (p. 153):



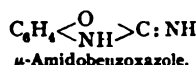
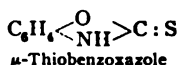
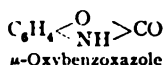
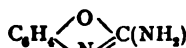
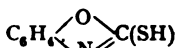
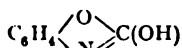
The benzoxazoles, also called alkenylamidophenols, are weak bases. They are resolved into their components on digesting them with acids. Some benzoxazole derivatives are substantive cotton dyes (B. 26 1127).

**Benzoxazole, Methenylamidophenol**,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup O \\ \diagdown N \end{smallmatrix} \text{CH}$ , melts at  $31^\circ$  and boils at  $183^\circ$ .

$\mu$ -Methyl Benzoxazole, *ethenyl amidophenol*, boils at  $201^\circ$ .  $\mu$ -Phenyl Benzoxazole melting at  $103^\circ$ , is also formed in the reduction of benzoyl-o-nitrophenol (B. 9, 1526; 29, R. 358; A. 210, 384).

$\mu$ -Amidophenyl Toluoazole,  $CH_3 \cdot C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup N \\ \diagdown O \end{smallmatrix} \text{C} \cdot C_6H_4NH_2$ , melting at  $188^\circ$ , is produced in the reduction of p-nitrobenzoyl-m-nitro-p-cresol. By combination of its diazo-derivative with  $\beta$ -naphthol, etc., carmine-red, acid-stable substantive cotton dyes are produced.

*Oxy-* and *thio-*derivatives of the benzoxazoles are obtained from o-amidophenols with  $COCl_2$  or  $ClCO_2R$  and  $CS_2$  or  $CSCl_2$ . *Amido-*derivatives result on heating thio- or oxy-compounds with amines. Here, as in the case of analogous benzimidazole compounds, two formulas may be considered for these bodies:



Isomeric alkyl compounds are derived from the two forms of  $\mu$ -oxybenzoxazole, which may be distinguished as *lactime* and *lactam ethers* or O- and N-alkyl derivatives. The amidobenzoxazoles exhibit similar conditions.

$\mu$  Oxybenzoxazole, *Carbonyl Amidophenol*,  $C_6H_5NO_2$ , melting at  $137^\circ$ , is insoluble in alkalies. Methyl iodide converts it into an n-ethyl derivative.

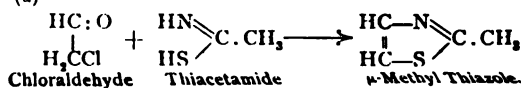
n Ethyl Benzoxazon,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup O \\ \diagdown N(C_2H_5) \end{smallmatrix} \text{CO}$ , melts at  $29^\circ$ .  $\mu$ -Ethoxybenzoxazole,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup O \\ \diagdown N \end{smallmatrix} \text{COC}_2H_5$ , is formed from imidocarbonic ester and o-amidophenol (B. 19, 2655).

$\mu$  Thiobenzoxazole,  $C_7H_5NSO$ , melting at  $193$ – $196^\circ$ , is soluble in alkalies and ammonia. It is obtained from amidophenol hydrochloride by the action of potassium xanthogenate; also from o-oxyazobenzene and  $CS_2$ .

$\mu$ -Anilidobenzoxazole,  $C_7H_5N_2O(C_6H_5)$ , melting at  $137^\circ$ , is produced simultaneously. The latter is also formed on heating thiobenzoxazole with aniline.  $\mu$ -Amidobenzoxazole,  $C_7H_5N_2O$ , melting at  $130^\circ$ , is isomeric with o-phenylene urea (p. 502). It results on splitting off hydrogen sulphide from o-oxyphenylsulphourea by means of mercuric oxide.  $\mu$ -Phenylimido-n-ethylbenzoxazon,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup O \\ \diagdown N(C_2H_5) \end{smallmatrix} \text{C:N} \cdot C_6H_5$ , is formed from n-ethyl benzoxazon and aniline (J. pr. Ch. [2], 42, 450).

## 9. THIAZOLES OR THIO-[b]-MONAZOLES.

Just as the oxazoles are prepared from acid-amides, so the thiazoles or *thio*-[b]-monazoles,  $\begin{smallmatrix} N \\ | \\ CH \\ | \\ (a) \end{smallmatrix} \begin{smallmatrix} (b) \\ CH \\ | \\ S \end{smallmatrix}$ , are obtained from the thio-amides and  $\alpha$ -haloid ketone derivatives:



Further, thiazole and its homologues result from the action of nitrous acid and alcohol upon  $\mu$ -amidothiazoles just as the benzene hydrocarbons are obtained from the anilines.

**Behavior:** Thiazole may be derived from pyridine, just as thiophene is derived from benzene—i. e., by imagining a CH:CH-group replaced by sulphur. Accordingly, the thiazoles show a like agreement or similarity in their physical and in part in their chemical properties with the pyridines, just as the thiophenes do with the benzenes.

The thiazoles are tertiary bases, forming addition-products with alkyl iodides. As a rule, they are stable toward oxidizing agents; chloric acid, however, destroys them.

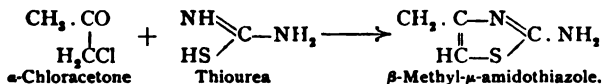
**Thiazole**,  $C_2H_3NS$ , boiling at  $117^\circ$ , has an odor like that of pyridine. It results when  $N_2O_5$  and alcohol act upon  $\mu$ -amido-thiazole.  $C_2H_3NS \cdot HCl$ .  $AuCl_3$  melts with decomposition at  $248-250^\circ$ .  $C_2H_3NS \cdot HgCl_2$  melts at  $202-204^\circ$ .  **$\alpha$ -Methyl Thiazole**,  $C_3H_5(CH_3)NS$ , boiling at  $232^\circ$ , is obtained from its amido-compound and by distilling methyl oxythiazole with zinc-dust (A. 250, 279). The isomeric  $\mu$ -methyl thiazole, boiling at  $128^\circ$ , with an odor like picoline (see this), is prepared from monochloracetone and thiocetamide.  **$\alpha, \mu$ -Dimethyl Thiazole**, boiling at  $143^\circ$ , from chloracetone and thiocetamide, when reduced by sodium and alcohol is resolved into ethyl propylamine and hydrogen sulphide. It condenses, like the  $\alpha$ -methylated pyridines, with formic aldehyde to an alkine,  $C_3HNS(CH_3)(CH_2 \cdot CH_2OH)$  (B. 27, 1009).

**Trimethyl Thiazole**,  $C_3H_3(CH_3)_3NS$ , melts at  $167^\circ$ .  **$\alpha$ -Phenyl Thiazole** melts at  $52^\circ$  and boils at  $273^\circ$ . **Triphenyl Thiazole**, melting at  $87^\circ$ , is formed from thio-benzamide and bromdesoxybenzoin or desylbromide.

**Haloid thiazoles** are prepared by acting with concentrated haloid acids upon diazo-thiazoles:

$\mu$ -Chlorthiazole boils at  $145^\circ$  and  $\mu$ -bromthiazole boils at  $171^\circ$ .

$\mu$ -Amidothiazoles result from the action of  $\alpha$ -haloid keto-compounds upon thioureas:



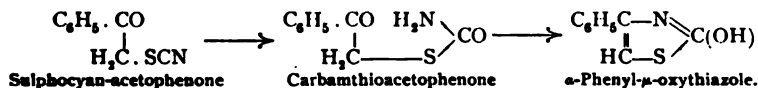
Substances are formed from the symmetrical dialkyl thioureas which are derived from imidothiazoline. Consult A. 265, 110, for isomeric monalkylamidothiazoles.

The amidothiazoles are similar to the anilines. They can be converted into diazo-compounds, and through these into haloid thiazoles, thiazoles, thiazole-azo-dyes, etc.

**$\mu$ -Amido-thiazole**,  $C_3H_3(NH_2)NS$ , melting at  $90^\circ$ , may be prepared from dichlor-ether and thiourea. Its *nitrate* is converted by  $N_2O_5$  into **Diazothiazole Hydrate**,  $C_3H_3(N : NOH)NS$ , which yields yellow to brown-colored azo-dyes with resorcinol, naphthol, etc. (A. 246, 40). **Methyl- $\mu$ -amido-thiazole**,  $C_3H(CH_3)(NH_2)NS$ , melting at  $42^\circ$  and boiling at  $136^\circ$  (30–40 mm.), is formed from chloracetone and thiourea or ammonium sulphocyanide (B. 20, 3127). **Phenyl- $\mu$ -amidothiazole**,  $C_6H_5(C_2H_5)(NH_2)NS$ , from  $\omega$ -chloracetophenone (p. 231), yields *phenyldiazothiazole hydrate* (A. 261, 14).

**$\beta, n$ -Dimethyl- $\mu$ -methyl Imidothiazoline**,  $\begin{array}{c} HC - S \\ || \quad \quad | \\ CH_3C - N \cdot CH_3 \end{array} > C : NCH_3$ , melting at  $96^\circ$ , is obtained from chloracetone and symmetrical dimethyl thiourea.

**Oxythiazoles** are obtained from  $\alpha$ -sulphocyan-ketones by the action of alkali:



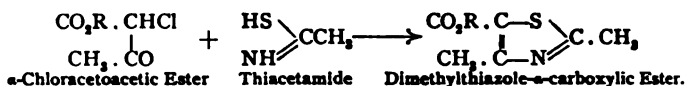
**$\beta$ -Methyl- $\mu$ -oxythiazole**,  $C_3H(CH_3)(OH)NS$ , melting at  $160^\circ$ , results from the exit of carbon dioxide from its carboxylic acid and also when alkalies act upon sulphocyan-acetone (A. 259, 297; B. 25, 3652).  **$\alpha$ -Phenyl- $\mu$ -oxythiazole** melts at  $204^\circ$  (A. 249, 16) (see above).

**Mercaptthiazoles** result upon heating  $\alpha$ -chloroketones with ammonium dithiocarbamate:

$\beta$ -Methyl- $\mu$ -mercapto-thiazole,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{SH})=\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{S}$ , melts at  $90^\circ$ .

$\beta$ -Phenylmercapto-thiazole melts at  $168^\circ$  (B. 26, 604).

**Thiazole Carboxylic Acids:** Their esters are produced in the condensation of chloroacetoacetic ester, chloroxalo-acetic ester, etc., with thioamides:



Furthermore, the *amido*-, *oxy*-, and *mercapto-thiazole* carboxylic acids are formed by reactions similar to those employed for the amido-, oxy-, and mercapto-thiazoles, if instead of the ketone derivatives the corresponding ketone carboxylic acids are introduced into the reactions.

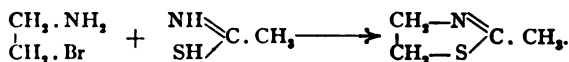
$\beta$ -Methylthiazole- $\alpha$ -carboxylic Acid,  $\text{C}_3(\text{CH}_3)\text{HNS}(\text{COOH})$ , melts at  $257^\circ$ . Its ester is obtained from amidomethylthiazole carboxylic ester (see below) by converting it into chlorthiazolecarboxylic ester and then reducing the latter.

$\mu$ -Methyl- $\alpha, \beta$ -thiazole Dicarboxylic Acid,  $\text{C}_3(\text{CH}_3)(\text{COOH})_2\text{NS}$ , melts with decomposition at  $169^\circ$ . It is formed from chloroxaloacetic ester and thioacetamide.  $\mu$ -Methyl- $\beta$ -thiazylacetic Ester,  $\text{C}_3\text{H}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{R})\text{NS}$ , boiling at  $239^\circ$ , is formed from  $\gamma$ -bromoacetoacetic ester and thioacetamide.

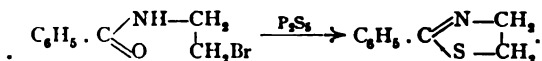
$\mu$ -Amidothiazole- $\beta$ -carboxylic Acid, Sulphuvinic Acid,  $\text{C}_3\text{HSN}(\text{NH}_2)\text{COOH}$  (+  $2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ), decomposes at  $245^\circ$ , and is formed from dibromopyrroacetic acid. Its ester, melting at  $173^\circ$ , is produced from monobromopyrroacetic ester and thiourea (A. 261, 25).

$\mu$ -Amido-methylthiazole- $\beta$ -carboxylic Ester, melting at  $175^\circ$ , is obtained from  $\alpha$ -chloroacetoacetic ester and thiourea. Its *diazohydrate* melts at  $100^\circ$  with decomposition.  $\mu$ -Oxy- $\beta$ -methylthiazole Carboxylic Ester,  $\text{C}_3(\text{OH})(\text{CH}_3)\text{SN} \cdot \text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $128^\circ$ , is formed from  $\alpha$ -sulphocyanacetoacetic ester (A. 259, 284, 298).  $\mu$ -Mercapto- $\beta$ -methylthiazole Carboxylic Ester,  $\text{C}_3(\text{SH})(\text{CH}_3)\text{SN} \cdot \text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $141^\circ$ , is formed from  $\alpha$ -chloroacetoacetic ester and ammonium dithiocarbamate (B. 26, R. 604).

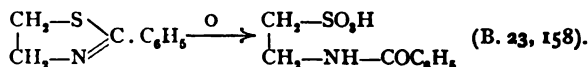
*Dihydrothiazoles* or *thiazolines* are synthesized from (1) alkyl haloids, or  $\beta$ -haloid alkylamines and thioamides (B. 24, 783; 29, 2610):



(2) By the action of  $\text{P}_2\text{S}_5$  upon acidyl- $\beta$ -bromalkylamides (B. 26, 1328):



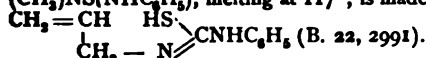
The thiazolines are much more readily decomposed than the thiazoles.  $\mu$ -Methyl Thiazoline, boiling at  $145^\circ$ , on evaporation with hydrochloric acid, becomes  $\beta$ -amidoethyl mercaptan.  $\mu$ -Phenylthiazoline, boiling at  $276^\circ$ , is obtained from benzoyl- $\beta$ -bromomethylamide by the action of  $\text{P}_2\text{S}_5$ . It yields benzoyl taurine when it is oxidized:



$\alpha$ -Methyl- $\mu$ -tolylthiazoline,  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_3(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_7\text{H}_7)\text{NS}$ , boiling at  $295^\circ$ , is made from  $\beta$ -bromopropyltolylamide and  $\text{P}_2\text{S}_5$ . Thiazoline- $\mu$ -mercaptan,  $\text{CH}_3-\text{S}-\text{CH}_2-\text{N}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)-\text{SH}$ , melting at  $107^\circ$ , is prepared from bromomethylamine and  $\text{S}_2\text{C}$  (B. 22, 1152), as well as by the action of carbon bisulphide upon vinylamine,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH} \cdot \text{NH}_2$  (B. 28, 2932).

The alkyl derivatives of pseudosulphourea, previously discussed, are *amidothiazolines*. They have mostly been obtained by rearrangement of allyl thioureas (*thiazin*-

*amines*, 1, 409) :  $\mu$ -Anilido- $\alpha$ -methyl Thiazoline, *n*-Phenylpropylene- $\psi$ -thiourea,  $C_9H_9$ ,  $(CH_3)_2NS(NHC_6H_5)$ , melting at  $117^\circ$ , is made from allyl phenylthiourea :



$\mu$ -Piperyl- $\alpha$ -methyl Thiazoline,  $C_9H_9(CH_3)_2NS(NC_5H_9)$ , boiling at  $277^\circ$ , is obtained from allylpiperylthiourea (B. 24, 265).  $\mu$ -Methylamido- $\alpha$ , $\beta$ -diphenylthiazoline,  $C_9H_9(C_6H_5)_2NS(NHCH_3)$ , melting at  $155^\circ$ , is derived from diphenyloxyethylamine (p. 372) and methyl mustard oil (B. 28, 1900).

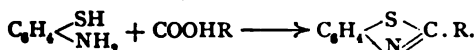
The following are derivatives of tetrahydrothiazole :

$\beta$ , $\mu$ -Diketotetrahydrothiazole, or Mustard Oil Acetic Acid,  $\begin{array}{c} CH_2 - S \\ | \quad \quad | \\ CO - NH > CO. \end{array}$  melting at  $112^\circ$ . It results on evaporating sulphocyanacetic acid or sulphocyanacetamide with acids (B. 26, R. 324 ; 1, 423).

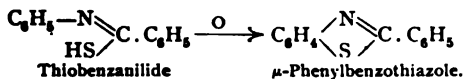
$\beta$ , $\mu$ -Ketimidotetrahydrothiazole,  $\begin{array}{c} CH_2 - S \\ | \quad \quad | \\ CO - CH_2 > CNI, \end{array}$  melting at  $71^\circ$ , is formed in the action of concentrated sulphuric acid upon sulphocyanacetamide.  $\beta$ , $\mu$ -Diketotetrahydrothiazole Acetic Acid,  $\begin{array}{c} COOH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH - S \\ | \quad \quad | \\ OC - NH > C : NII, \end{array}$  melting with decomposition at  $169^\circ$ , is formed from  $\beta$ , $\mu$ -imidoketotetrahydrothiazole acetic acid,  $COOH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH - S$   $\begin{array}{c} OC - NH > C : NH, \end{array}$  melting at  $216^\circ$ , which is the condensation product of chlorosuccinic acid and thiourea (B. 27, R. 742).

## 10. BENZOTHAIAZOLES.

The benzothiazoles, the analogues of the benzimidazoles and benzoxazoles (*anhydro-bases*) are prepared (1) from *o*-amidothiophenols (p. 157) and carboxylic acids (their chlorides or anhydrides) by the exit of water (A. W. Hofmann, B. 13, 1224):



(2) Upon heating acid anilides with sulphur, or oxidizing thioanilides with potassium ferricyanide :



Phenylbenzothiazole is also produced on heating benzylamine with sulphur. Hydrogen sulphide is evolved and thiobenzanilide is first formed, which then reacts in the sense above indicated (A. 259, 300).

The benzothiazoles are feeble bases; their odor resembles that of quinoline. Fusion with caustic potash resolves them into amidothiophenols and carboxylic acids.

Different benzothiazole derivatives are important as *substantive cotton dyes*.

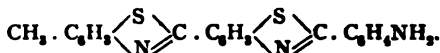
**Benzothiazole**, *Methenyl amidothiophenol*,  $C_6H_4(NSCH)$ , boiling at  $234^\circ$ , is produced from *o*-amidothiophenol and formic acid, or formanilide and sulphur.

**Benzisothiazole**,  $C_6H_4 \begin{array}{c} \swarrow CH \\ \nwarrow N \end{array} > S$ , boiling at  $242^\circ$ , is isomeric with benzothiazole.

It is formed in the reduction of the *o*-nitrobenzyl ester of carbaminthiolic acid or of *o*-nitrobenzylmercaptan (p. 180) (B. 28, 1028; 29, 160).  $\mu$ -Methylbenzothiazole,  $C_6H_4(NSC_2H_5)$ , boils at  $238^\circ$ .  $\mu$ -Phenylbenzothiazole melts at  $114^\circ$ .  $\mu$ ,*p*-Amido-

*phenyl-toluthiazole*, Dehydrothiotoluidine,  $CH_3 \cdot C_6H_4 \begin{array}{c} \swarrow N \\ \nwarrow S \end{array} > C \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot NH_2$ , me-

ing at  $191^{\circ}$ , is produced when thiotoluidine is heated with sulphur. Its *trimethylammonium chloride* derivative is the dye Thioflavin. Dehydrotoluidine, when further heated with thiotoluidine and sulphur, yields the base of the dye Primulin:



A series of benzothiazole derivatives has been obtained from chlorphenyl-mustard oil, or  $\mu$ -chlorbenzothiazole,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \begin{array}{c} \text{S} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{N} \end{array} \text{CCl}$ , melting at  $24^{\circ}$  and boiling at  $248^{\circ}$ . It results when  $\text{PCl}_5$  acts upon phenyl-mustard oil. The reduction of chlorphenyl-mustard oil leads to benzothiazole; with alcohol we get  $\mu$ -oxybenzothiazole; with sodium ethylate,  $\mu$ -ethoxybenzothiazole; with sodium sulphhydrate, sulphhydro-, with ammonia, amido-, and with aniline, anilido-benzothiazole.  $\mu$ -Oxybenzothiazole,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NSC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ , melting at  $136^{\circ}$ , is formed from chlorcarbonic ester and amidothiophenol.  $\mu$ -Ethoxybenzothiazole, *ethoxy-mustard oil*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NSCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ , melting at  $25^{\circ}$  and boiling above  $360^{\circ}$ , results upon oxidizing phenylthiomethane with potassium ferricyanide.

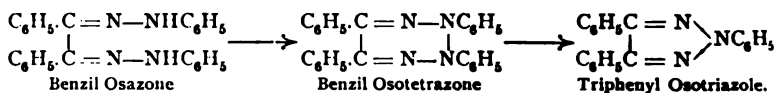
$\mu$ -Sulphydrobenzothiazole,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NSC}_2\text{H}_5\text{SH})_2$ , melting at  $179^{\circ}$ , is also obtained from amidothiophenol and  $\text{CS}_2$ ; from azobenzene with  $\text{CS}_2$ ; from phenyl-mustard oil and sulphur, etc. (B. 24, 1403).  $\mu$ -Amidobenzothiazole,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NSC}_2\text{H}_5\text{NH}_2)_2$ , melts at  $129^{\circ}$  (B. 13, 11).  $\mu$ -Anilidobenzothiazole,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NSC}_2\text{H}_5\text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , melting at  $159^{\circ}$ , is also formed from azobenzene and phenyl-mustard oil (B. 24, 1410). Bis-benzothiazole,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \begin{array}{c} \text{N} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{S} \end{array} \text{C} \cdot \begin{array}{c} \text{N} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{S} \end{array} \text{C} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4$  (B. 29, R. 87), is produced when sulphur is heated with acetanilide.

The hypothetical nucleus of Selenazole,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{N} = \text{CH} \\ \text{CH} = \text{CH} \end{array} \text{Se}$ , corresponds to thiazole. Some derivatives of it have been obtained in a manner similar to that used with the analogous thiazole derivatives.  $\mu$ -Methyl Selenazoline,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{N} = \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{Se}$ , boiling at  $161^{\circ}$ , results on treating di-acetamidoethyldiselenide,  $(\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{Se})_2$ , with phosphorus pentachloride. It is an oil with an odor resembling that of pyridine (B. 25, 3048).  $\mu$ -Imidotetrahydroselenazole, *Ethylene- $\psi$ -selenurea*,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{NH} - \text{C}(\text{NH}) \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{Se}$ , is an oil. It is obtained from bromethylamine and potassium selenocyanide (B. 23, 1003). The ring-homologous trimethylene- $\psi$ -selenurea,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 - \text{NH} - \text{C} : \text{NH} \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 - \text{Se} \end{array}$ , is prepared in an analogous way.

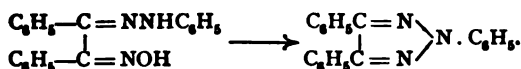
## 11. OSOTRIAZOLES OR PYRRO-[aa<sub>1</sub>]-DIAZOLES.

*Osotriazoles* (1, 328), *pyrro*-[aa<sub>1</sub>]-diazoles,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH} = \text{N} \\ \text{CH} = \text{N} \end{array} \text{NH}$ , derivatives of osotriazole, are formed:

1. By boiling with acids or distilling the osazonones of o-diketo-compounds, or the osotetrazones, which are the oxidation products of the osazonones:



2. By the action of acetic anhydride or  $\text{PCl}_5$  upon the hydrazoximes of the o-diketo compounds; water is split off in this reaction (p. 124):



The methyl phenylhydrazones of  $\alpha$ -ketoximes also yield osotriazoles with the elimination of methyl alcohol (Pechmann, A. 262, 265).

**Behavior:** Osotriazoles are mostly feeble basic liquids with an odor resembling the alkaloids. They distil without decomposition. Their imide hydrogen can be replaced by metals. The phenyl group of the *n*-phenyltriazoles can be split off after amidation by simple oxidation. Potassium permanganate oxidizes *c*-alkylosotriazoles to osotriazole carboxylic acids. However, the osotriazole ring is stable toward most reagents.

**Osotriazole**,  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_3\text{N}_3$ , melting at  $22^\circ$  and boiling at  $204^\circ$ , is obtained from its carboxylic acid (see below). Silver nitrate precipitates *osotriazole silver*,  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_3\text{N}_3\text{Ag}$ , from its aqueous solution. Benzoyl chloride produces *n*-benzoyl osotriazole, melting at  $100^\circ$ . ***n*-Phenylsotriazole**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_7\text{N}_3$ ,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , boiling at  $224^\circ$ , is formed from its carboxylic acid or from glyoxal osotetrazone. ***n*-Phenylmethylsotriazole**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}(\text{CH}_3)\text{N}_3$ ,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , boiling at  $150^\circ$  (60 mm.), is obtained from methyl glyoxal. ***n*-Phenyldimethylsotriazole**,  $\text{C}_9(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}_3$ ,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , boiling at  $192^\circ$  (60 mm.), is formed from dimethyl glyoxal (I, 328; II, 124). **Triphenylsotriazole**,  $\text{C}_9(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{N}_3$ , melting at  $122^\circ$ , is obtained from benzil (B. 21, 2806).

***n*-Phenyl-*c*-amido-*c*-methylisotriazole**,  $\text{C}_9(\text{CH}_3)(\text{NH}_2)\text{N}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $83^\circ$ , is formed from acetylamidrazonophenylhydrazone,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NHN}:\text{C}(\text{NH}_2):\text{N}:\text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5$  (B. 26, 2783; 28, 1283). It forms a *diazo-compound*, which, on boiling with water, becomes *n*-phenylmethyl oxyosotriazole,  $\text{C}_9(\text{CH}_3)(\text{OH})\text{N}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $141^\circ$ , and with potassium-copper cyanide it forms *n*-phenylmethylcyantriazole.

***n*-Phenyldiamido-osotriazole**,  $\text{C}_9\text{N}_3(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{NH}_2)_2$ , melting at  $143^\circ$ , is derived from oxalenphenylhydrazide-amidoxime,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}:\text{N}:\text{C}(\text{NH}_2)\text{C}(\text{NH}_2):\text{NOH}$ . In certain respects it shows great similarity to the aromatic *o*-diamines (p. 95), in that it forms an *azime*-like blue dyestuff; with *o*-diketones it yields *quinoxaline*-like bodies. It does not form *anhydro*-bases. Nitrous acid converts it into a stable *diazo-compound*, which is readily changed by sodium acetate to *phenylsotriazole-azimide*,

$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N} \begin{array}{c} \text{N}=\text{C}-\text{NH} \\ \text{N}=\text{C}-\text{N} \end{array} \text{N}$ . The latter can be readily decomposed into the *diazo-compound* (A. 295, 129).

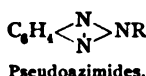
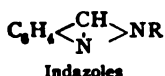
***n*-Phenyltriazole Aldehyde**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}(\text{CHO})\text{N}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $70^\circ$ , is obtained from its *oxime*, melting at  $115^\circ$ , which is formed from diisonitrosoacetone phenylhydrazone,  $\text{HON}:\text{CH}:\text{C}=\text{N}:\text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5$  (I, 479). By the exit of water the aldoxime becomes



***n*-phenylcyantriazole**,  $\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{HN}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $94^\circ$ .

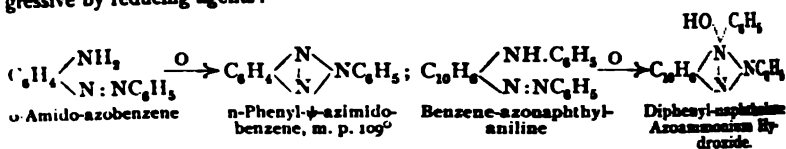
**Osotriazole Carboxylic Acid**,  $\text{C}_3(\text{COOH})\text{HN}_3\text{H}$ , melting at  $211^\circ$ , results in the oxidation of *n*-amidophenylsotriazole carboxylic acid with potassium permanganate. The latter acid is obtained by the amidation of *n*-phenylsotriazole carboxylic acid,  $\text{C}_9(\text{COOH})\text{HN}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $192^\circ$ , the oxidation product of *n*-phenylmethyltriazole. Phenylsotriazole carboxylic acid, when reduced by sodium amalgam, is resolved into prussic acid and phenylhydrazido-acetic acid. ***n*-Phenylsotriazole Dicarboxylic Acid**,  $\text{C}_9(\text{COOH})_2\text{N}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $236^\circ$ , from phenyldimethyltriazole, readily yields an *anhydride*, melting at  $184^\circ$ .

The *pseudo-azimides* may be viewed as benzo-derivatives of osotriazoles. A constitution similar to that given the indazoles has been ascribed to them, hence they may be called *indodiazoles*:



*Pseudoazimides* are produced when *o*-amido-azo-compounds are oxidized (comp. B. 25, 901; 27, 2374, etc.). The condensation can also be effected by means of thionyl chloride (B. 28, 2201).

Should the amido-group be substituted the oxidation will give rise to ammonium hydroxide compounds (B. 20, 1174; 28, 328). Heretofore, such compounds were only prepared from bases of the naphthalene series. This reaction can easily be made retrogressive by reducing agents:

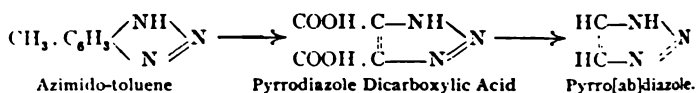


o-Anilidonaphthalene-azo-benzoic acid yields the acid of the latter compound. It readily changes to a betaine-like anhydride:

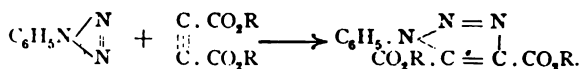
$$\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6 \begin{array}{c} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{N} \end{array} \text{N} \begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \end{array} \text{CO} \quad (\text{B. 28, 333}).$$

## 12. PYRRO[ab]DIAZOLES: $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}=\text{CH} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{N} = \text{N} \end{array} \text{NH}.$

The azimides, or benzopyrro[ab]diazoles, are isomeric with the pseudazimides. The oxidation of azimidotoluene produces pyrro[ab]diazole dicarboxylic acid, which by the loss of  $\text{CO}_2$  becomes azole, the constitution of which is proved by this method of formation (B. 26, 2736):



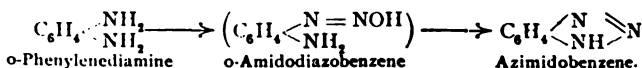
Pyrro[ab]diazole boils at  $209^\circ$ ; its *benzoyl*-derivative melts at  $111^\circ$ . Pyrro[ab]diazole Dicarboxylic Acid melts with decomposition at  $200^\circ$ . n-Phenylpyrro[ab]diazole Dicarboxylic Acid,  $\text{C}_6(\text{COOH})_2\text{N}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $150^\circ$ , is probably the acid, the ester (m. p.  $127^\circ$ ) of which is produced when diazobenzene-imide acts upon acetylene dicarboxylic ester (B. 26, R. 585):



This reaction is similar to that by which pyrazole carboxylic esters are formed from diazoacetic with acetylene dicarboxylic esters (p. 485).

Consult J. pr. Ch. [2], 53, 341, for an n-oxy-pyrro[ab]diazole dicarboxylic acid.

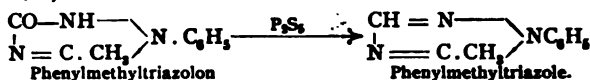
Benzopyrro[ab]diazoles or azimide-benzenes result from the action of nitrous acid upon o-diamines (p. 96):



When the benzene nucleus is substituted the n-substituted azimidobenzenes occur in two isomeric forms, determined by the position of the NR-group with reference to the benzene substituents. This is a proof of the unsymmetrical structure of the azimidobenzenes. When, however, the NH-group is free there always appears to be but one preferred position of the hydrogen atom (see uramidoazimidobenzoic acids, p. 212 and A. 291, 313). The azimidobenzenes no longer manifest the instability of the diazo- or diazido-derivatives, but can be distilled without decomposition. The imide hydrogen can be replaced by alkyls. The tertiary bases form ammonium bases with alkyl iodides.

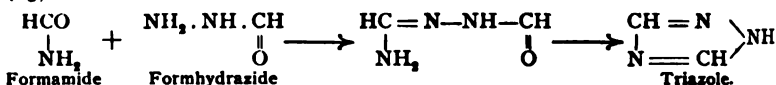


(3) Triazoles result upon distilling triazolons and urazoles with  $P_2S_5$  (see p. 481) (B. 25, 225; 27, R. 408):



The chlortriazoles formed by the action of  $PCl_5$  upon the triazolons can be reduced to triazoles (below).

(4) The method of producing triazoles by the condensation of acid hydrazides with acid amides is very simple (B. 27, R. 801). The reaction can be further simplified by allowing one molecule of hydrazine hydrochloride to act upon two molecules of the acid amide; the acid hydrazide will be formed in the first phase (Gaz. chim. ital. 26, II, 413):



**Behavior.** The triazoles, like the other pyrradiazoles, are feebly basic, nearly neutral bodies. The platinum chloride double salts behave similarly to the pyrazoles (p. 481, Gaz. chim. ital. 26, II, 417). The imide-hydrogen is replaceable by metals. c-Alkyl triazoles yield triazole carboxylic acids when they are oxidized. In the n-phenyl triazoles the phenyl group, particularly after amidation, is split off by oxidation (compare n-phenyl pyrazoles, n-phenyl osotriazoles, pp. 483, 508).

Triazole,  $C_2H_3N_3$ , melting at  $121^\circ$  and boiling at  $260^\circ$ , is obtained (1) from formamide and formhydrazide; (2) by distilling urazole with  $P_2S_5$ ; (3) from its carboxylic acid; (4) in the oxidation of mercaptotriazole with hydrogen peroxide (B. 29, 2485). n-Methyl- and n-ethyl triazoles are similarly formed from the corresponding mercaptan derivatives. 3-Methyl Triazole,  $C_3H_5(CH_3)N_3$ , melting at  $94^\circ$ , is derived from n-phenyl-3-methyl triazole by elimination of the  $C_6H_5$ -group by the oxidation process (B. 25, 225). n-Phenyl Triazole,  $C_7H_5N_3C_6H_5$ , melting at  $47^\circ$  and boiling at  $266^\circ$ , is derived from its carboxylic acid. n-Phenyl-3-methyl Triazole,  $C_9H_7(CH_3)N_3C_6H_5$ , melting at  $87^\circ$  and boiling at  $274^\circ$ , results when  $P_2S_5$  acts upon n-phenylmethyl triazolone. Isomeric 1,5-Phenyl methyl triazole, melting at  $191^\circ$ , is formed from its carboxylic acid. 1,5-Diphenyl triazole, melting at  $91^\circ$ , is produced when 1,5-phenyl-3-chlortriazole is heated to  $150$ – $160^\circ$  with phosphorus and hydriodic acid. c-Diphenyl Triazole,  $C_2(C_6H_5)_2N_3H$ , melting at  $188^\circ$ , is obtained from benzoylbenzenyl hydrazidine (p. 205). c-Difuryl Triazole,  $C_2(C_4H_3O)_2N_3H$ , melting at  $185^\circ$ , is formed when difurylhydrazidine,  $C_4H_3O \cdot C \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{NH}_2 \\ \diagdown \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix} \text{C} \cdot C_4H_3O$ , is boiled with glacial acetic acid (B. 28, 465). 1,3,5-Triphenyl Triazole, melting at  $104^\circ$ , is produced in the condensation of phenylhydrazine with benzonitrile in the presence of sodium (B. 29, R. 1125).

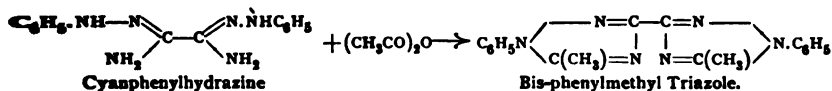
Chlortriazoles result on heating triazolons with  $PCl_5$  and  $POCl_3$  to elevated temperatures. The chlorine in them is intimately bound and can only be removed on heating with  $HCl$  +  $P$ . 1-Phenyl-5-chlortriazole melts at  $54^\circ$ . 1,5-Diphenyl-3-chlortriazole melts at  $96^\circ$ . 1-Phenyl-3,5-dichlortriazole melts at  $94^\circ$  (B. 29, 2671; C. 1897, 1, 857).

Mercaptotriazoles, from acyldithiosemicarbazides (see method 2), yield disulphides by gentle oxidation. More energetic oxidation splits off sulphur, and triazoles result. Mercaptotriazole melts at  $216^\circ$ . n-Methyl and n-Ethyl Mercaptotriazole melt at  $168^\circ$  and  $97^\circ$  (B. 29, 2484).

5-Amido-3-methyl Triazole,  $C_2(NH_2)(CH_3)N_3H$ , melting at  $148^\circ$ , is obtained from acetylamidoguanidine,  $NH_2 \cdot C \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{NHNH}_2 \\ \diagdown \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix} \text{CO} \cdot CH_3$  (B. 26, 2589). 3-Acetyl-1-phenyl-5-methyl Triazole,  $C_2(COCH_3)(CH_3)N_3C_6H_5$ , melting at  $89^\circ$ , is derived from phenylamidrazon-methyl ketone (B. 26, 2787). 3-Cyan-1-phenyl-5-methyl Triazole, melting at  $109^\circ$ , is formed from dicyanphenylhydrazine (see above).

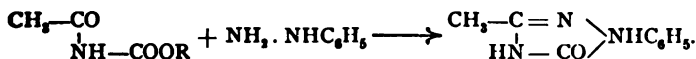
**Triazole Carboxylic Acids:** Triazole-3-carboxylic Acid,  $C_3H_2(COOH)N_3$ , melts with decomposition at  $137^\circ$ . It is produced in the oxidation of methyl triazole and when  $KMnO_4$  acts upon *n*-amidophenyltriazole carboxylic acid. *n*-Phenyl triazole-3-carboxylic Acid,  $C_9H_7(COOH)N_3$ ,  $C_9H_7$ , melting at  $184^\circ$ , is derived from phenylmethyl triazole as well as by the exit of  $CO_2$  from *n*-phenyltriazole-3,5-dicarboxylic acid,  $C_9H_5(CH_2)(COOH)N_3$ ,  $C_9H_5$ , which is prepared by the oxidation of *n*-phenyl-5-methyl triazole-3-carboxylic acid,  $C_9H_7(CH_3)(COOH)N_3$ ,  $C_9H_7$ , melting at  $177^\circ$ . The latter results from the saponification of its nitrile, as well as by the moderated oxidation of *n*-acetylphenylmethyl triazole.

**Bistriazoles** are formed in the action of acids (and their anhydrides) upon cyanhydrazine and -phenylhydrazine (B. 26, 2389) (B. 21, 3063; 30, 1194):



**Bistriazole**,  $(C_2H_2N_2)_2$ , from cyanhydrazine and formic acid, is a compound subliming above  $300^\circ$ .

**Hydrotriazole Derivatives:** The triazolons are keto-derivatives of dihydrotriazoles. They can also be viewed as oxytriazoles (compare pyrazolons, p. 486, and C. 1897, 11, 269). They are produced (1) by the interaction of acetyl methane and phenylhydrazines (Andreocci, B. 22, R. 737):



The reaction suggests the formation of phenylmethylpyrazolon from acetoacetic ester and phenylhydrazine. Acetyl urethane is acetoacetic ester in which the  $\text{CH}_3$ -group has been replaced by  $\text{NH}$  (see above).

**1-Phenyl-5-triazolon**,  $C_6H_5N-N=CH-NH-CO$ , melting at  $183^\circ$ , has been prepared from its carboxylic acid—1-phenyl-5-triazolon-3-carboxylic acid. The latter is produced when  $KMnO_4$  acts upon 1-phenyl-3-methyl-5-triazolon, melting at  $167^\circ$  and boiling above  $300^\circ$  (B. 24, R. 203).

With these 1,5-triazolons, isomeric 1,3-triazolons or oxytriazoles are produced (I) on digesting acid derivatives of phenylsemicarbazide with dilute alkali (B. 29, 1946):



(2) By the condensation of phenylsemicarbazide with aromatic aldehydes in the presence of an oxidant (C. 1897, 1, 809), which probably first changes the phenylsemicarbazide to phenylazocarbamide:

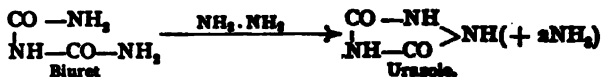


**1-Phenyl-3-triazolon**,  $C_6H_5N.NH.CO.N:CH$  or  $C_6H_5N.N:C(OH)N:CH$ , from phenylsemicarbazide and formic acid, sublimes and melts at very high temperatures. **1-Phenyl-5-ethyl-, -propyl-, -isobutyl-3-triazolon** melt at  $192^\circ$ ,  $160^\circ$ , and  $165^\circ$ .

1,5-Diphenyl-3-triazolon, melting at 290°, is obtained from benzoylphenylsemicarbazide as well as from phenylsemicarbazide and benzaldehyde. 1-Phenyl-5-styrenyl-3-triazolon,  $C_9H_9N_3O(C_6H_5)(CH=CHC_6H_5)$ , melting at 287°, is formed from cinnamylphenylsemicarbazide, or cinnamic aldehyde and phenylsemicarbazide.

The triazolons are converted into triazoles by distillation with  $P_2S_5$ , or, better, by conversion into chlortriazoles and the reduction of the latter (B. 29, 2671).

The urasoles are the diketo-derivatives of tetrahydrotriazole. They result on heating urea and its derivatives—*e.g.*, allophanic ester, biuret, etc.—with hydrazine salts:



Urasole, 3,5-Diketotriazolidine,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{O}_2\text{N}_4$ , melting at  $244^\circ$ , is obtained from hydrazodicarbonamide,  $\text{NH}_2\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{NH}_2$  (A. 283, 16). Urasole is a strong monobasic acid. It yields triazole when distilled with  $\text{P}_2\text{S}_5$ . 1-Phenyl

Urasole,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}-\text{NH}-\text{CO}-\text{NH}-\text{CO}$ , melting at  $263^\circ$ , is formed from urea and phenylhydrazine, from phenylsemicarbazido-carboxylic ester (B. 28, 829), as well as from phenylhydrazido-oxalhydroamic acid,  $\text{H}_2\text{N}-\text{C}-\text{CONHNHC}_6\text{H}_5$ , by Beckmann's

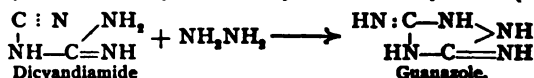
NOH

transposition (A. 295, 136). Methyl iodide converts it into *dimethylphenylurazole*, melting at  $90^\circ$ . Isomeric 3-Phenylurazole,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}-\text{CO}-\text{NH}-\text{NH}-\text{CO}$ , melting at  $203^\circ$ , is formed by the interaction of hydrazo-dicarbonamide and aniline hydrochloride (*l.c.*).

*Thio*- and *imido*-derivatives of urasole have been obtained from the corresponding thiourea- and guanidine-compounds of hydrazine (B. 29, 2506):

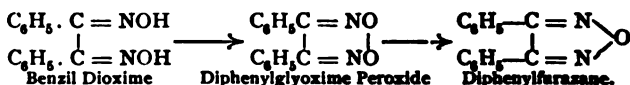
Thiourasole,  $\text{NH}\cdot\text{CS}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{NH}$ , melting at  $177^\circ$ , is obtained from hydrazo-thio-dicarbonamide,  $\text{NH}_2\text{CS}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{CONH}_2$ . Dithiourasole,  $\text{NH}\cdot\text{CS}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{CS}\cdot\text{NH}$ , melting at  $245^\circ$  with decomposition, and imido-thiourasole,  $\text{NH}\cdot\text{CS}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{C}(\text{NH})\cdot\text{NH}$ , melting at  $222^\circ$ , are formed simultaneously when strong hydrochloric acid acts upon hydrazodithiodicarbonamide (B. 29, 2506).

Diimidourasole, Guanazole,  $\text{NH}\cdot\text{C}(\text{NH})\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{C}(\text{NH})\cdot\text{NH}$ , melting at  $206^\circ$ , is obtained from hydrazine and dicyandiamide by the action of hydrazine (B. 27, R. 583):



#### 14. FURAZANES OR FURO[ $a_1$ ]DIAZOLES.

The furazanes or *osoxazoles*, *furo*-[ $a_1$ ]-*diazoles*,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}=\text{N} \\ \text{CH}=\text{N} \end{array} \text{O}$  (I, 483), correspond to the osotriazoles. Just as the latter are obtained from the osazonones (p. 508), so furazanes are produced from the glyoximes, the dioximes of  $\alpha$ -diketones, or their oxidation products, the glyoxime-peroxides (B. 28, 69), by the action of alkalis:



As we observed in connection with the isoxazoles, those furazane derivatives in which the H-atoms of both methine groups are substituted are stable bodies. If one of the groups is free, a rearrangement into nitriles of  $\alpha$ -ketonic acid oximes may readily take place. The alkyl furazanes can be oxidized to furazane carboxylic acids.

Phenyl Furazane,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}_2\text{O}$ , melting at  $30^\circ$ , is very volatile. It is formed when soda acts upon phenylglyoxime diacetate. Sodium hydroxide converts it readily into the oxime of benzoyl cyanide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}=\text{N}-\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{CN}} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}=\text{NOH}$  (B. 24, 3503).

It is stable toward acids. Dimethyl Furazane,  $C_2(CH_3)_2N_2O$ , melting at  $-7^\circ$  boiling at  $156^\circ$ , results when dimethyl glyoxime is heated with ammonia to  $160^\circ$ . Methyl Ethyl Furazane,  $C_2(CH_3)(C_2H_5)N_2O$ , boiling at  $170^\circ$ , is similarly obtained from methyl ethyl glyoxime. Diphenyl Furazane,  $C_2(C_6H_5)_2N_2O$ , melting at  $(p. 373)$ , rearranges itself by prolonged heating into isomeric dibenzylazoxime below (A. 264, 180). Dibenzoyl Furazane,  $C_2(COC_6H_5)_2N_2O$ , melting at  $11^\circ$  prepared from dibenzoylglyoxime peroxide (B. 26, 529) (p. 381).

Furazane Carboxylic Acid,  $C_2H_3(COOH)N_2O$ , melting at  $107^\circ$ , on oxidation becomes furazane propionic acid, the anhydride of dioximidovaleric acid (1, Methyl Furazane Carboxylic Acid,  $C_2(CH_3)(COOH)N_2O(+H_2O)$ , melting at  $(39^\circ)$ , and Furazane Dicarboxylic Acid,  $C_2(COOH)_2N_2O$ , melting at  $178^\circ$  decomposition, are formed when potassium permanganate acts upon dimethylfurazane. The dicarboxylic, like the monocarboxylic acid, is easily converted by boiling water cyanimidoacetic acid.

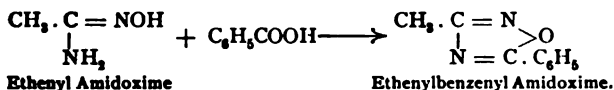
Consult B. 28, 723, vol. 1, 500, for oxyfurazane carboxylic acid.

Benzo-, naphtho-, phenanthro-furazanes, etc., have been prepared from o-dioximes of the benzene, naphthalene, and phenanthrene series (see also B. 2790).

## 15. AZOXIMES OR FURO[ab<sub>1</sub>]DIAZOLES.

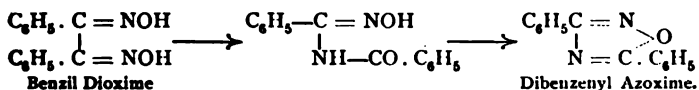
The azoximes, *furo*[a, b<sub>1</sub>]*diazoles*,  $\begin{matrix} CH=N \\ N-CH \end{matrix} \begin{matrix} \diagup O \\ \diagdown \end{matrix}$ , correspond to the triazoles or [ab<sub>1</sub>]diazoles, and just as they are obtained from the amidrazones (p. 511), azoximes are prepared:

1. From amidoximes and carboxylic acids (their chlorides or anhydrides):

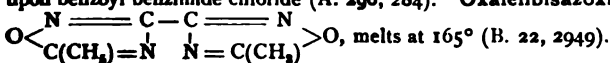


The amidoximes combine with the aldehydes of the fatty series to form *hydrazo*: which part readily with hydrogen and become azoximes.  $COCl_2$  and  $CSCl_2$  form *bonylazoximes* (furo[ab<sub>1</sub>]diazolons) and *azoximthiocarbinols* (B. 19, 1487; 22, 28, 2231).

2. Azoximes are also prepared by Beckmann's transposition from glyoximes or azanes (p. 381) (B. 27, R. 800):



Diethenyl Azoxime,  $C_2(CH_3)_2N_2O$  (B. 17, 2755), is a very volatile body. Ethyl Benzenyl Azoxime,  $C_2(CH_3)(C_6H_5)N_2O$ , melts at  $41^\circ$ . Dibenzyl Azoxime,  $C_2(C_6H_5)_2N_2O$ , melting at  $108^\circ$  and boiling at  $290^\circ$ , also results when hydroxylamine upon benzoyl benzimide chloride (A. 296, 284). Oxalenbisazoximethenyl,

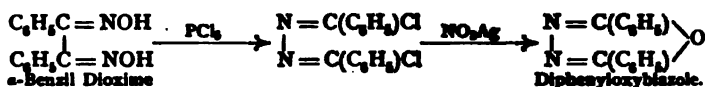


Benzenyl Carbonyl Azoxime,  $C_6H_5C=N \begin{matrix} \diagup N \\ NH-CO \end{matrix} > O$ , melting at  $198^\circ$ , and benzenylazoxim - thiocarbinol,  $C_6H_5C=N \begin{matrix} \diagup N \\ N=C(SH) \end{matrix} > O$ , melting at  $131^\circ$ , are prepared from benzenylamidoxime by means of  $COCl_2$  and  $CSCl_2$ .

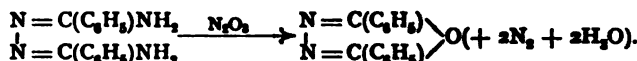
## 16. OXYBIAZOLES OR FURO[bb]DIAZOLES.

Hypothetical oxybiazole, or *furo*[b,b<sub>1</sub>]diazole,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{N} = \text{CH} \\ | \\ \text{N} = \text{CH} \end{array} \text{O}$ , yields—

Diphenyloxybiazole, *Dibenzoyl Isosaxime*,  $\text{N}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{O}$ , melting at  $140^\circ$ , which is isomeric with dibenzoylsaxime and diphenyl farasane. It is prepared, like them, from benzil dioxime (A. 352, 60):

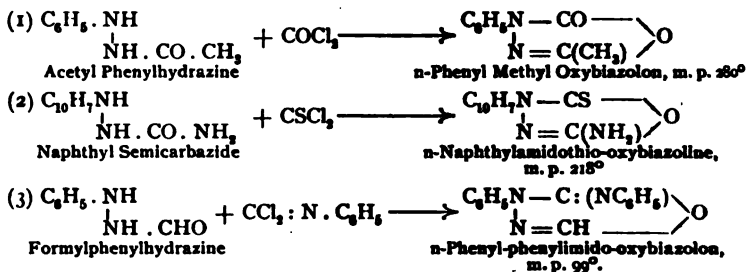


Furthermore, it also results when nitrous acid acts upon dibenzoylhydrazidine (p. 205) (B. 27, 984):



Ditolyloxybiazole,  $\text{N}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{O}$ , melting at  $234^\circ$ , is formed from ditolonylhydrazidine (B. 27, 3288).

The Keto-, thio-, or imido-oxybiazolines are derivatives of *dihydro-oxybiazole* or *oxybiazoline*. They are produced from carboxylic and urea derivatives of phenylhydrazine, naphthyl hydrazine, etc. (pp. 126, 127), through the action of phosgene,  $\text{COCl}_2$ , thiophosgene,  $\text{CSCl}_2$ , and phenyl isocyanogen chloride,  $\text{CCl}_2 : \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$  (B. 23, 2843; 24, 4178; 26, 2870):



17. The ring of *furo*[ab]diazole,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH} - \text{O} \\ | \quad \diagup \\ \text{CH} - \text{N} = \text{N} \end{array}$ , is only found condensed with benzene or naphthalene nuclei in diazo-oxides:

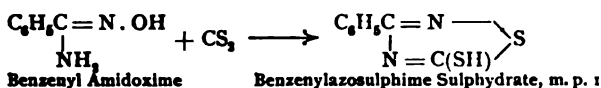
Dichlor-o-diazophenol,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{Cl}_2 \begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{N} = \text{N} \end{array}$ , is formed by the action of  $\text{N}_2\text{O}_5$  upon dichlor-o-amidophenol. Nitro-o-diazophenol,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NO}_2) \begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{N} = \text{N} \end{array}$ , from p-nitro-o-amidophenol, deflagrates at  $100^\circ$  (B. 2, 52; A. 113, 212).

Naphthalene-2,1-diazo-oxide,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6 \begin{array}{c} [2] \text{N} = \text{N} \\ | \quad \diagup \\ [1] \text{O} \end{array}$ , melting at  $76^\circ$ , results upon oxidizing an alkaline naphthalene solution with potassium ferricyanide solution. 6-Nitronaphthalene-2,1-diazo-oxide,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_5(\text{NO}_2) \begin{array}{c} [2] \text{N} = \text{N} \\ | \quad \diagup \\ [1] \text{O} \end{array}$ , from 6,2-dinitro-1-diazo-naphthalene, is a substance exploding at  $145^\circ$  (B. 27, 680, 2214).

The thiodiazole-ring derivatives, corresponding to azoximes, oxybiazoles, and diazo-oxides, which contain furodiazole rings, occur in the groups of the *exemplarim*, *this*.

biazoles, and diazosulphides. *Piazthiolen* is a thiodiazole ring analogous to the f ring.

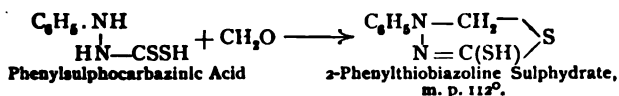
18. Azosulphimes, or Thio[ab<sub>1</sub>]diazoles:  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH} : \text{N} \\ \text{N} = \text{CH} \end{array} \text{S}$ , result from the action of carbon disulphide upon amidoximes (B. 24, 388):



Azosulphime anilides are formed when phenyl mustard oil is used.

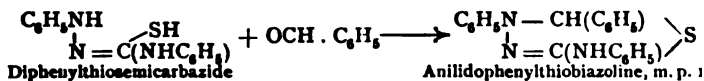
Dibenzoyl Azosulphime,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C} = \text{N} - \\ | \quad \quad \quad \diagup \\ \text{N} = \text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) \quad \text{S} \end{array}$ , results from the action of upon thiobenzamide (B. 25, 1586).

19. The thioibiazolines are derivatives of thio[bb<sub>1</sub>]diazole,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{N} = \text{CH} \\ \text{N} = \text{CH} \end{array} \text{S}$ . They result from the action of aldehydes upon phenylsulphocarbazine acid (p. 126), or, their ethers (B. 28, 2635):

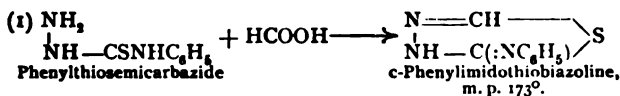


The thioibiazoline sulphydrates formed in this manner are very acid. They are toward acids. Aqueous alkalis decompose them. They oxidize quite easily to phides. See l. c. for the rearrangement of the latter (B. 29, 2127).

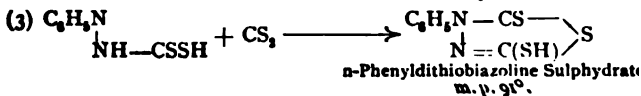
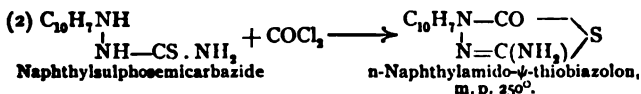
Amido-derivatives of the thioibiazolines are prepared from the thiosemicarbazide aldehydes (B. 30, 849):



(1) *Imidothioibiazolines*, (2) *ketothioibiazolines* or *pseudothioibiazolines*, and (3) *biazolines* are made by the action of carboxylic acids,  $\text{COCl}_2$  and  $\text{CS}_2$ , upon thiour dithio-carbamic acid derivatives of the hydrazines (p. 126; 24, 4190; 27, 613, 29, 2483):



Imidothioibiazoline,  $\text{S} \cdot \text{C}(\text{NH}) \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{N} : \text{CH}$ , melting at  $191^\circ$ , is obtained from formylthiosemicarbazide (B. 29, 2511). It is remarkable that the acetylthiosemicarbazides, when deprived of water by acetyl chloride, yield thioibiazolines, but when above their melting point, mercaptotriazoles result:

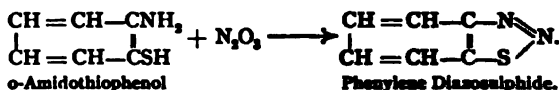


20. The addition product of phenyl mustard oil with diazomethane may be viewed as a derivative of Thio[ab]diazole:



$\alpha$ -Anilidothio[ab]diazole melts at  $172^\circ$  with decomposition. The *acetyl* derivative melts at  $162^\circ$ ; the *nitroso*-derivative melts at  $98^\circ$  (B. 29, 2588).

The phenylene diazosulphides are *benzo*-derivatives of thio[ab]diazole. They correspond to the diazo-oxides and azolmides. They are produced when nitrous acid acts upon *o*-amidothiophenols:

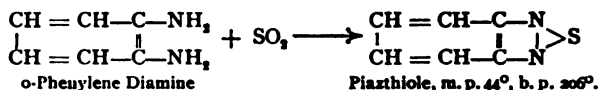


The diazosulphides are more stable than the diazo-oxides. They resemble the azolmides more particularly, as they only give up their nitrogen at higher temperatures, and then without deflagration. In doing this they yield diphenylene disulphides:

$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \text{S} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \end{array}$ . The diazosulphides are feeble bases and take up alkyl iodides (A. 277, 214).

Phenylene Diazosulphide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}_2\text{S}$ , melts at  $35^\circ$  and boils at  $129^\circ$  (10 mm.). Cumylene Diazosulphide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}_2\text{S}$ , melts at  $85^\circ$ .

21. The ring of *thio*[aa]*diazole*,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{C}-\text{N} \\ | \quad \diagup \\ \text{C}-\text{N} \end{array} > \text{S}$ , unites with the benzene nucleus to form *Piazthioles*, which also result upon treating the *o*-phenylenediamines with sulphurous acid (B. 22, 2895):



The piazthioles are feebly basic bodies, which are very stable toward oxidants. The *o*-diamines result from their reduction.

The piaselenoles correspond to the piazthioles. They are similarly formed from *o*-diamines and selenious acid. In their stability they resemble the piazthioles.

Piaselenol,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \text{N} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{N} \end{array} \text{Se}$ , melts at  $76^\circ$ .

Tolupiaselenol,  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_6(\text{N}_2\text{Se})$ , melts at  $73^\circ$  and boils at  $267^\circ$ .

22. Thio[abb]triazoles, or Triazsulpholes,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}=\text{N} \\ | \quad \diagup \\ \text{N}=\text{N} \end{array} > \text{S}$ : A series of compounds may be referred to this ring. They result from the action of nitrous acid upon thiosemicarbazide and alkyl thiosemicarbazides, whereas phenylthiosemicarbazide yields a tetrazole compound (B. 29, 2491):



The amidotriazsulpholes formed in this manner decompose, when boiled with water, into sulphur, nitrogen, and cyanamides, while with concentrated hydrochloric acid they yield nitrogen and *thiocyanamides*:

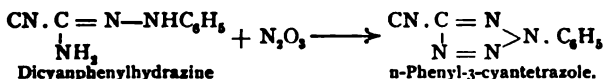
Methylamido-, ethylamido-, and allylamido-triazsulpholes melt at  $96^\circ$ ,  $67^\circ$ , and  $54^\circ$ . Amido-triazsulphole, from thiosemicarbazide and  $\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$ , deflagrates at  $128-130^\circ$ .

## 23. TETRAZOLES.

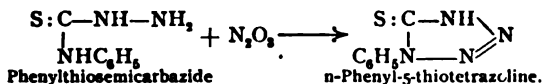
Two isomeric series of tetrazoles are possible. They can be distinguished as *Pyrrro*[aa<sub>1</sub>b]triazoles,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH} = \text{N} \\ | \\ \text{N} = \text{N} \end{smallmatrix} \text{NH}$ , and *pyrrro*[abb<sub>1</sub>]triazoles,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{N} = \text{CH} \\ | \\ \text{N} = \text{N} \end{smallmatrix} \text{NH}$ . The syntheses do not invariably afford a certain basis for the judgment of the constitution of the tetrazoles (B. 29, 1846).

Tetrazoles are produced:

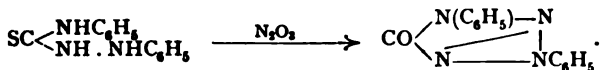
1. By the action of nitrous acid upon hydrazidines (amidrazones) (p. 205)—*e. g.*, benzenylhydrazine (B. 27, 995), dicyanphenylhydrazine (Bladin, B. 19, 2598), amidoguanidine (A. 273, 144). This is similar to the formation of triazoles from the same compounds with carboxylic acids:



A tetrazole derivative which might be derived from pyrrro[abb<sub>1</sub>]triazole is produced in the action of N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> upon phenylthiosemicarbazide (B. 28, 74):

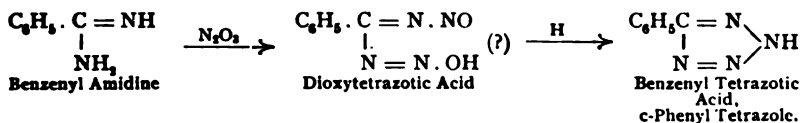


However, when nitrous acid acts upon diphenylthiosemicarbazide, sulphur is split off, and Diphenylisotetrazolon is produced:



It consists of red needles, melting at 110°. It is basic. Reduction causes it to break down again into diphenylsemicarbazide, and recalls the pseudo-azimides (p. 509) (B. 29, 1689).

2. With nitrous acid the amidines yield dioxytetrazotic acids. These, on reduction, become oxytetrazotic and tetrazotic acids. The latter are identical with the tetrazoles which are formed by the first method (A. 263, 101; B. 27, 994):



3. Finally, the tetrazoles are prepared by oxidizing suitable tetrazolium compounds, the oxidation products of formazyl derivatives (see below and p. 131).

*Behavior:* The tetrazole ring, composed of four N-atoms and one C-atom, shows in general equal stability with azole and pyrrol, containing less nitrogen. Thus, the n-phenylated derivatives, just as with the pyrazoles and the triazoles, can be converted by nitration into nitrophenyltetrazoles, and the amido-bodies from these may be oxidized to tetrazoles. The feebly basic character of pyrrol becomes in tetrazole a strong acid, due to the influence of the N-atoms. After comparing pyrrol in many respects with phenol, tetrazole may be arranged side by side with trinitrophenol. The *silver* and *cop-per* salts deflagrate violently on heating.

Tetrazole,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH} = \text{N} \\ | \\ \text{N} = \text{N} \end{smallmatrix} \text{NH}$ , melting at 156°, sublimes and is prepared by treating diazotetrazole (see below) with alcohol (A. 287, 243); by oxidizing amidophenyltetrazole carboxylic acid (B. 25, 1412), as well as in the action of KMnO<sub>4</sub> upon di-p-oxydiphenyl-

tetrazolium betaine (below). *Sodium salt*,  $\text{CN}_4\text{HNa} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; *barium salt*,  $(\text{CN}_4\text{H})_2\text{Ba} + 3\frac{1}{2}\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Tetrazole is decomposed into  $\text{CO}_2$ ,  $\text{N}_2$ , and  $2\text{NH}_3$  when it is heated with concentrated hydrochloric acid.

**c-Phenyl Tetrazole**, *Benzenyl Tetrazotic Acid*,  $\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{N}_4\text{H}$ , melts with decomposition at  $219^\circ$  (A. 263, 107). It is obtained from dioxytetrazotic acid or from benzenyl hydrazidine. **c-Tolyl-** and **c-Furyl Tetrazoles**, melting with decomposition at  $234^\circ$  and  $199^\circ$  respectively, are similarly formed from tolyl- and furylhydrazine (B. 28, 465). **n-Phenyl Tetrazole**,  $\text{CHN}_4 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , from its acid, is an oil, deflagrating when heated.

**Diphenyl Tetrazole**,  $\text{CN}_4(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , melting at  $107^\circ$ , results when p-oxyphenyl-diphenyltetrazolium hydroxide is acted upon with potassium permanganate, as well as in the oxidation of guanazyl benzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{N} \\ \diagdown \text{N} \end{smallmatrix} \text{NH}(\text{CN}_4\text{H}_2)$ , with  $\text{N}_2\text{O}_5$  or nitric acid. It is characterized by its great stability (B. 29, 1854).

**Bistetrazole**,  $(\text{CHN}_4)_2$  (?), is formed when  $\text{N}_2\text{O}_5$  acts upon the addition product of cyanogen and hydrazine (B. 26, R. 891).

**c-Amidotetrazole**, *Amidotetrazotic Acid*,  $\text{C}(\text{NH}_2)_3\text{N}_4\text{H}$ , melting at  $203^\circ$ , results when nitrous acid acts upon diazoguanidine nitrate, and by further action of the acid yields **diazotetrazole**, which explodes in concentrated aqueous solution, even at  $0^\circ$ . It

probably has the following constitution:  $\text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{N} = \text{N} \\ \diagdown \text{N} = \text{N} \end{smallmatrix} \text{N}$ . Metallic oxides form stable salts

with it. Their formula is  $\text{C}(\text{N} : \text{N} \cdot \text{OMe})_3\text{N}_4\text{Me}$ .

**Tetrazyl Hydrazine**,  $\text{C}(\text{NHNH}_2)_3\text{N}_4\text{H}$ , is produced by the reduction of diazotetrazole. It melts with decomposition at  $199^\circ$ . Nitrous acid converts it into tetrazylazo-imide,  $\text{C}(\text{N}_3)_3\text{N}_4\text{H}$ , a beautiful crystalline, exceedingly explosive substance (A. 287, 238).

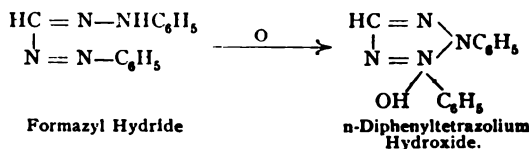
**n-Phenyl Tetrazole Carboxylic Acid**,  $\text{C}(\text{COOH})_3\text{N}_4\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $138^\circ$ , results upon saponifying synthetic n-phenylcyanetetrazole (see above).

*Derivatives of pyrro-[abb<sub>1</sub>]-triazole:*

**1-Phenyl 5-thiotetrazoline**,  $\text{S} : \text{C} - \text{NH} - \text{N} = \text{N} - \text{N} : \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$  (?), melting with decomposition at  $142-145^\circ$ , is formed from phenylthiosemicarbazide when acted upon with nitrous acid. Digestion with caustic soda converts it into isomeric **phenyltetrazole mercaptan**,  $\text{HS} : \text{C} = \text{N} - \text{N} = \text{N} - \text{N} : \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $150^\circ$ . Both compounds yield the same silver salt, which methyl iodide converts into n-phenyltetrazolemethyl sulphide. Potassium permanganate produces n-phenyltetrazole sulphonic acid,  $\text{C}(\text{SO}_3\text{H})_3\text{N}_4\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , which, upon heating with hydrochloric acid, splits off the sulpho-group and becomes

**1-phenyl-5-oxytetrazole**,  $\text{OH} : \text{C} = \text{N} - \text{N} = \text{N} - \text{N} : \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $186^\circ$ .

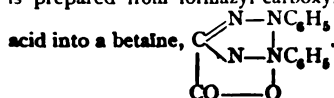
**Tetrazolium** compounds are those which result from the oxidation of formazyl bodies in a manner similar to that by which the azoammonium derivatives are obtained from the o anilido-bodies (B. 27, 2920), and the osotetrazones from the osazones (p. 508).



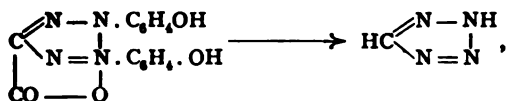
The oxidation is best effected by amyl nitrite and hydrochloric acid. The tetrazolium hydroxides are, like all ammonium hydroxides, strong bases. Ammonium sulphide reduces them to formazyl compounds.

**n-Diphenyl Tetrazolium Chloride**,  $\text{CHN}_4(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{Cl}$ , melting with decomposition at  $268^\circ$ , results by the elimination of carbon dioxide from diphenyltetrazolium

chloride carboxylic acid, melting at  $257^{\circ}$  with decomposition. The ester of this acid is prepared from formazyl carboxylic ester (p. 129), and passes just as readily as the



**p-Dioxydiphenyl-tetrazolium Betaine**, formed in an analogous manner, melts at  $179^{\circ}$  with decomposition, and can be oxidized to tetrazole (B. 28, 1693):



which demonstrates the connection between the tetrazoles and tetrazolium compounds. Similarly, p-monoxyphenyldiphenyltetrazolium chloride yields diphenyltetrazole (B. 29, 1852). Cyclophenyltetrazolium chloride carboxylic ester,

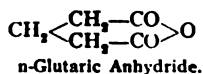
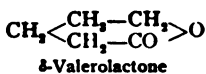
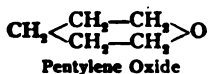
$\text{CO}_2\text{R} \cdot \begin{array}{c} \text{N}-\text{N}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \quad \text{N}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{N}=\text{N} \end{array}$ , is derived from cycloformazyl carboxylic ester (p. 339; A. 295, 335).

#### 4. SIX-MEMBERED HETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDS.

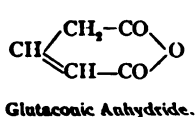
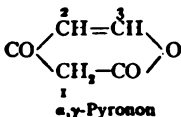
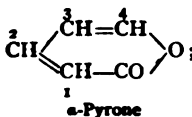
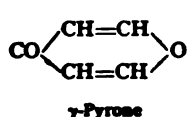
##### A. MONOHETEROATOMIC SIX-MEMBERED RINGS.

##### 1. SIX-MEMBERED RINGS WITH AN O-MEMBER.

A series of cyclic bodies belongs here. They have already been discussed, according to their character, either with the fatty bodies or fatty aromatic substances with open chain, with which they are genetically related. They are the *anhydrides of ε-glycols* (1, 300), the *δ-lactones*,—e. g., *δ-valerolactone* (1, 345),—the *anhydrides of the glutaric acids* (1, 452), etc.:

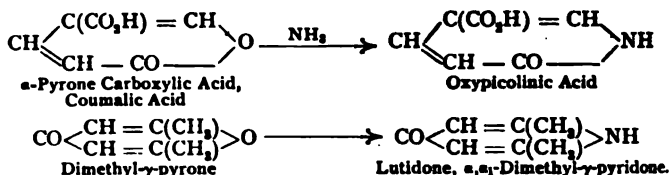


These are unsaturated δ-lactones and acid anhydrides corresponding to the saturated δ-lactones and δ-acid anhydrides. Anhydrides of unsaturated ε-glycols are not known, but there are anhydrides of diolefine dioxyketones. They are the **γ-pyrones**, which are isomeric with the diolefine-δ-oxy-acid lactones, the **α-pyrones**:



The pyrones and allied compounds are characterized by the fact that

when they are digested with ammonia the linking oxygen atom is replaced by NH, and *pyridones* or *oxypyridines* (p. 534) result:



a. The *coumalins* belong to the *\alpha*-pyrones:

*\alpha*-Pyrone, Coumalin,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}_2$ , and 2,4-Dimethyl-*\alpha*-pyrone, dimethyl coumalin,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_8(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{O}_2$  (I, 362), are obtained from their acids:

**Coumalic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , made by the action of concentrated sulphuric acid upon malic acid, and

**Dimethyl Coumalic Acid**, *isodehydracetic acid*,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_8(\text{CH}_3)_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , which is produced by the action of sulphuric acid upon acetoacetic ester (I, 496).

**Phenyl Coumalin**, 1-Phenyl-*\alpha*-pyrone,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{O}_2$ , melting at  $68^\circ$ , occurs in the coto-bark. *\delta*-Phenylvaleric acid results from its reduction. It yields *\alpha*-phenylpyridine with ammonium acetate (B. 29, 1673, 2659).

*\alpha,\gamma*-Pyrone yields: **Dehydracetic Acid**, or 1-Aceto-3-methyl pyronon,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_7(\text{CH}_3)(\text{COCH}_3)\text{O}_2$  (I, 521), resulting upon boiling acetoacetic ester, and

**Dehydraceticarboxylic Acid**, 1-Aceto-3-methylpyronon-2-carboxylic Acid, which is formed by the interaction of acetone dicarboxylic acid and acetic anhydride (I, 501, 521).

b. *\gamma*-Pyrones are uniformly produced by splitting off water from 1,3,5-triketones (B. 24, 111):



Conversely, they are readily reconverted into triketones. Although the pyrones contain a ketone oxygen atom, they do not react with hydroxylamine, etc.; compare the *xanthoncs*, p. 524.

*\gamma*-Pyrone, **Pyrocumane**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}_2$ , is formed when comanic and chelidonic acids are heated. Carbon dioxide is eliminated. It melts at  $32.5^\circ$  and boils at  $315^\circ$ .

*\alpha,\alpha\_1*-Dimethyl Pyrone,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_8\text{O}_2(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , results upon heating dehydracetic acid with hydriodic acid, or when carbon dioxide is expelled from its acid (A. 257, 253). It melts at  $132^\circ$  and boils at  $248^\circ$ . It sublimes at  $80^\circ$ . Boiling baryta-water converts it, with rupture of the ring, into diacetylacetone (compare dimethyl furfuran), which ammonia changes to lutidone.

**Oxypyrene**,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_6\text{O}_2(\text{OH})$ , *pyrocumenic acid*, *pyromeconic acid*, is obtained from cumenic and meconic acids by distillation. It melts at  $121^\circ$  and boils at  $228^\circ$ . It forms unstable salts with bases.

**Pyrene Carboxylic Acid**, **Comanic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , is obtained from chelidonic acid by the loss of carbon dioxide. It dissolves with difficulty in water. It melts at  $250^\circ$  and decomposes. When boiled with lime it decomposes into acetone, oxalic acid, and formic acid. It forms an oxypicolinic acid when digested with ammonia.

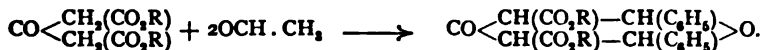
**Pyrene Dicarboxylic Acid**, **Chelidonic Acid**,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_4\text{O}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$ , melts at  $220^\circ$ , and occurs, together with malic acid, in *Chelidonium majus* (A. 57, 274). It can be readily obtained through the exit of water from acetone-dioxalic acid. It forms colorless salts. An excess of alkali converts it into salts of acetone-dioxalic acid or *xanthochelidonic acid*, which are yellow-colored.

The reduction of chelidonic acid gives rise to acetone-diacetic acid or *hydro-chelidonic acid*, and normal pimelic acid. Ammonia converts it into an oxy-pyridine dicarboxylic acid (p. 537).

Oxy-pyrone Carboxylic Acid, *Comenic Acid*,  $C_5H_2(OH)(COOH)O_2$ , from meconic acid, is converted by ammonia into dioxypicolinic or comenamic acid (p. 538), which can also be obtained from **Meconic Acid**,  $C_5H(OH)(COOH)_2O_2 + 3H_2O$ , which occurs in opium in union with morphine (A. 83, 352). It readily parts with carbon dioxide. Ferric salts color its solutions dark red.

**Dimethyl Pyrone Dicarboxylic Acid**,  $C_5(CH_3)_2(COOH)_2O_2$ ; its *diethyl ester*, melting at  $80^\circ$ , is formed by the exit of water from carbonyl diacetoacetic ester,  $CO[CH(CO_2R)COCH_2]_2$  (B. 20, 154; also B. 24, R. 573).

**Tetrahydropyrone derivatives** result from the condensation of acetone dicarboxylic esters and aldehydes by means of hydrochloric acid (B. 29, 994, 2051):



**Dimethyl- and diphenyl-tetrahydropyrone dicarboxylic diethyl esters** melt at  $102^\circ$  and  $115^\circ$ . Similarly, **diphenyldimethyl tetrahydropyrone**,  $C_{18}H_{14}O_2(CH_3)_2 \cdot (C_6H_5)_2$ , melting at  $106^\circ$  and boiling at  $236^\circ$  (20 mm.), is formed from diethyl ketone and two molecules of benzaldehyde in the presence of alcoholic potash (B. 29, 1352).

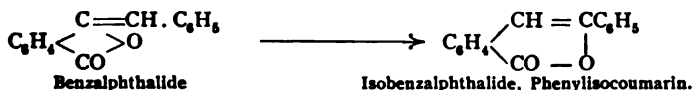
The coumarins and isocoumarins are *benzo-derivatives of a-pyrone*:



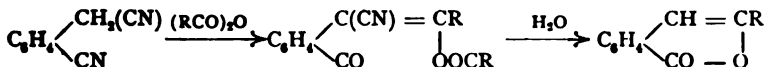
The latter are more easily converted by ammonia into benzopyridone or oxyisoquinoline derivatives than the pyrones into pyridones.

Coumarin and its homologues have been discussed as lactones of o-oxycinnamic acids immediately after the latter (p. 280). *Isocoumarins*, the lactones of benzene carboxylic acids, with hydroxylated side-chain unsaturated in the  $\beta$ -position, isomeric with the o-oxycinnamic acids, are produced by the following general methods:

1. Benzal-, xylal-, and alkylidene phthalides can be rearranged into isobenzalphthalides or isocoumarins (B. 20, 2363; 24, 3973):

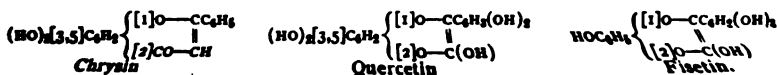


2. When acid anhydrides or chlorides act upon o-cyanobenzyl cyanide, condensation products result which, upon treatment with acids, have one cyanogen group split off and the other saponified, with the production of isocoumarins (B. 25, 3566; 27, 827):



**Benzo- and dibenzo- $\gamma$ -pyrones** are derived from  $\gamma$ -pyrone. Various *yellow vegetable dyes* are to be included in this group (v. Kostanecki).

*Chrysin*, *fisetin*, and *quercetin* are obtained from  $\beta$ -phenylbenzo- $\gamma$ -pyrone, so-called *flavone* (*flavus*, "yellow"). Judging from their decomposition products, the following formulas may probably be ascribed to them:

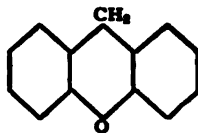
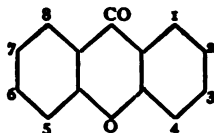


Chrysin,  $C_{15}H_{10}O_2$ , melting at  $275^\circ$ , occurring in the blossoms of different papav., may be decomposed into phloroglucin, benzoic acid, and acetic acid.

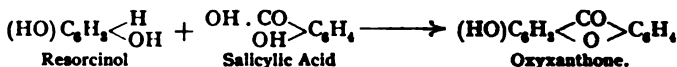
Fisetin,  $C_{15}H_{10}O_6$ , from *Rhus coccinea*, and *Quadrachne Colorado* (B. 29, R. 853), can be resolved into resorcinol, protocatechuic acid, and glycollic acid, while Quercetin,  $C_{30}H_{18}H_2$ , melting at  $250^\circ$ , and obtained from the glucoside quercitrin, found in the bark of *Quercus tinctoria*, as well as from the buds of the horse-chestnut, and from onites (B. 29, R. 779), may be broken down into phloroglucin, protocatechuic acid, and glycollic acid (B. 28, 2302).

Myricetin,  $C_{33}H_{22}O_6$ , a yellow dye present in the bark of *Myrica aspi*, is probably oxyquercetin, with the formula  $(OH)_3[3.5]C_6H_2 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [1]O-CC_6H_2(OH)_3 \\ [2]CO-C(OH) \end{array} \right.$  (B. 29, R. 778). Compare B. 30, 1077, for the synthesis of flavones and its derivatives.

The Xanthenes (5-665, yellow) or *diphenylene ketone oxides* are dibenzopyrones. They can also be viewed as keto-derivatives of Xanthene, or *methylenediphenylene oxide* (B. 26, 72):



The xanthenes possess a *chromogenic* nature. They are allied to thioxanthenes (p. 526), the acridones (p. 560), and thiodiphenylamines. Generally they are formed by condensing salicylic acid with phenols through the agency of sulphuric acid, acetic anhydride, etc. (B. 21, 502):



Xanthene, *Methylene Diphenylene Oxide*,  $C_{12}H_{10}O$ , melting at  $99^\circ$  and boiling at  $312^\circ$ , is produced by the reduction of xanthone and oxyxanthenes. o-Dioxybenzophenone is formed when it is fused with caustic potash (p. 348). Tetramethyldiamidoxanthene, *Tetramethyldiamidodiphenyl methane oxide*,

$(CH_3)_2NC_6H_2 < \begin{array}{c} CH_2 \\ O \end{array} > C_6H_2N(CH_3)_2$ , melting at  $116^\circ$ , obtained by the action of sulphuric acid upon tetramethyldiamidodioxydiphenylmethane, the leuco-base of the dye pyronine (see below) (B. 27, 3303). Dinaphthoxanthene,  $C_{20}H_{16} < \begin{array}{c} CH_2 \\ O \end{array} > C_{10}H_8$ , melting at  $199^\circ$ , results upon condensing formic aldehyde with  $\beta$ -naphthol (p. 410) (B. 26, 84).

Xanthydrol,  $C_8H_6 < \begin{array}{c} CH(OH) \\ O \end{array} > C_6H_4$ , is formed in the careful reduction of xanthone.

It is a substance which changes quite readily. Like benzhydrol (p. 344), it shows a great tendency to split off water and pass into its ether—xanthydrol ether,  $(C_{22}H_{16}O)_2O$ , melting at  $200^\circ$  (B. 26, 1276; compare also B. 28, 2310).

Xanthone, *Diphenylene Ketone Oxide*,  $C_{12}H_8O_2$ , melting at  $174^\circ$  and boiling at  $250^\circ$ , is produced from salicylic phenyl ether or phenylsalicylic acid by the action of concentrated sulphuric acid from o-diamidobenzophenone with nitrous acid (B. 27, 3363); and when fluorane and hydrofluoric acid (p. 365) are distilled with lime (B. 25, 2119). It does not unite with hydroxylamine or phenylhydrazine. It forms dioxy-benzophenone on careful fusion with KOH.

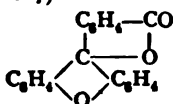
Just as benzophenone yields tetraphenylethylene, so xanthone is converted by zinc-dust, hydrochloric acid, and acetic acid into *tetraphenylene-ethylene dioxide*,  $O[C_6H_4]_2C:C[C_6H_4]_2O$ , melting at  $315^\circ$  (B. 28, 2311).

**Oxyxanthenes**,  $C_{13}H_7(OH)_2O_2$ : The four possible isomerides have been prepared by condensing salicylic acid with resorcinol, hydroquinone, and pyrocatechol (B. 1652; 26, 71).

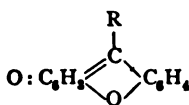
**Euxanthone**, 1,7-Dioxyxanthone,  $HOC_6H_4-\overset{CO}{\underset{O}{\text{C}}}-C_6H_4OH$ , consists of yellow needles melting at  $237^\circ$  and subliming. It occurs free and in combination with curonic acid (1, 585) as euxanthinic acid in Indian yellow. It has been synthetically produced by the action of acetic anhydride upon two molecules of  $\beta$ -resorcylic acid hydroquinone carboxylic acid (B. 24, 3982; 27, 1989; A. 254, 265).

**3,6-Dioxyxanthone** results on heating  $\alpha, \beta$ -tetraoxybenzophenone, a decomposition product of fluorescein chloride in the alkali fusion. It consists of colorless needles. Alkaline solutions show a deep violet-blue fluorescence (B. 30, 969). 1,3,7-Tricaxanthone, Gentisein,  $C_{13}H_7(OH)_3O_4 + 2H_2O$ , melting at  $315^\circ$ , is obtained synthetically from hydroquinone carboxylic acid and phloroglucin. It dyes mordanted cotton bright yellow. Gentisin (B. 27, 190; 29, R. 221), occurring in the root of *Gentiana lutea*, is its monomethyl ether. Compare B. 25, 1641, for the dinaphthoxanthones, etc.

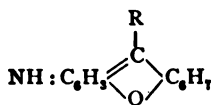
The fluoranes, fluorones, and fluorimes are related to the xanthenes (B. 25, 2127, 2887):



Fluorane



Fluorone



Fluorime.

These are the parent-substances of the fluorescein dyes (pp. 363, 366). Pyron ( $(CH_3)_2N \cdot C_6H_4-\overset{CH}{\underset{O}{\text{C}}}-C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2Cl$ ), belongs to the fluorimes. It is produced by the exit of water from and the oxidation of dioxymethyltetramethyldiamidodiphenylmethane. The leuco-compound of pyronine is 2,7-Tetramethyldiamidoxanthene, melting at  $116^\circ$ . Pyronine may be oxidized in alkaline solution to tetramethyldiamidoxanthone, melting at  $241^\circ$ . Pyronine colors silk and imparts a beautiful rose-color to cotton (B. 2896, 3304; 29, R. 1129).

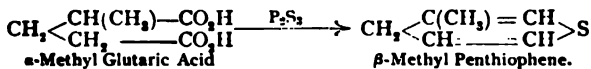
## 2. SIX-MEMBERED RINGS CONTAINING ONE S-MEMBER.

Six-membered rings containing sulphur as the hetero-atom are present

in the derivatives of hypothetical penthiophene,  $\begin{array}{c} (y)CH \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ (d)CH \quad CH \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ (a)CH \quad CH \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ S \end{array}$

a ring-homologue of thiophene. They are, however, not very numerous.

$\beta$ -Methyl Penthiophene,  $C_7H_8(CH_3)_2S$ , is an oil boiling at  $134^\circ$  with sp. gr. 0.79 (19°). It is produced from  $\alpha$ -methyl glutaric acid by the action of  $P_2S_5$ , similar to the formation of thiophene from succinic acid (p. 453) (B. 19, 3266):



It is colored the same as the thiophenes by isatin or penanthraquinone and sulphuric acid. It is more unstable than the thiophenes and is destroyed completely by very dilute potassium permanganate. Acetyl chloride and  $Al_2Cl_6$  convert it into acetyl penthiophene,  $C_8H_8(COCH_3)(CH_3)_2S$ , boiling at  $250^\circ$ .

A dibenzoderivative of penthiophene is found in Thioxanthene or methylene *o*-phenylene sulphide,  $C_6H_4\langle\overset{CH_2}{S}\rangle C_6H_4$ , melting at  $128^\circ$  and boiling at  $340^\circ$ . It is obtained pyrogenically from phenyl-tolyl sulphide, and by reducing its ketone with hydriodic acid and phosphorus.

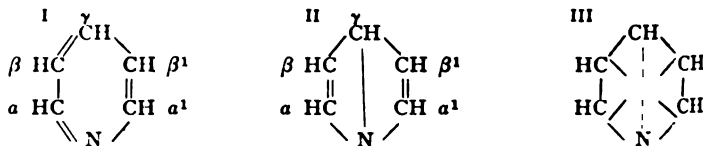
Thioxanthone, benzophenone sulphide,  $C_{13}H_{10}OS = C_6H_4\langle\overset{CO}{S}\rangle C_6H_4$ , melting at  $207^\circ$  and boiling at  $340^\circ$ , is the ketone of the preceding body. Being an analogue of xanthone, it is formed similarly to the latter from thiophenylsalicylic acid and sulphuric acid (A. 263, 1). It forms a sulphone,  $C_6H_4\langle\overset{CO}{SO_2}\rangle C_6H_4$ , on oxidation.

### 3. SIX-MEMBERED RINGS CONTAINING AN N-MEMBER.

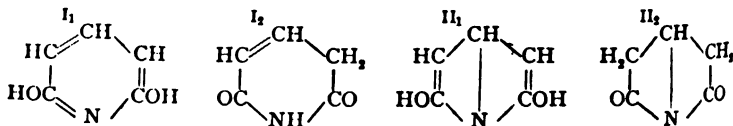
#### 1. PYRIDINE GROUP.

Pyridine,  $C_5H_5N$ , is the parent substance of many vegetable alkaloids. Its compounds, like those of benzene, show great stability toward oxidizing agents, inasmuch as those having side-chains—*e. g.*, the alkyl pyridines,  $C_5H_4(CH_3)N$ ,  $C_5H_3(CH_3)_2N$ , etc.—are converted on oxidation, like the alkyl benzenes, into acids, the pyridine nucleus not being attacked. As in the case of the aromatic derivatives, this behavior is assumed to be due to the existence of a six-membered ring, consisting of five carbon atoms and one nitrogen atom, similar to the six-membered benzene ring. Pyridine is the hydrogen derivative of this ring: it is benzene in which one CH- or methine group is replaced by a nitrogen atom.

The following structural formulas have been proposed for pyridine: (1) the formula of Körner; (2) the formula of Riedel. They differ in that in Körner's formula the nitrogen atom is linked to *two* carbon atoms, while in that of Riedel it is combined with *three* carbon atoms. To this formula that (3) of Bamberger and v. Pechmann adds itself. It is a centric formula (B. 24, 3151), for which there are no experimental proofs (see p. 40):

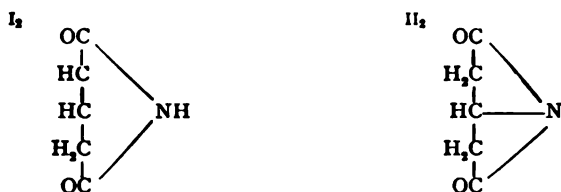


To determine whether pyridine contained an N-atom in union with two or three carbon atoms, Kekulé\* arranged a series of experiments based on the following considerations. Assuming that in the pyridine formulas I and II the  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atoms are replaced by two hydroxyl groups, the connection between the nitrogen and the carbon atom now carrying oxygen will be less intimate. This becomes evident if we imagine that the  $C(OH)$ -groups have rearranged themselves into the keto-form:



\* B. 23, 1265, and private communications.

The ordinary mode of writing pyridine obscures the connection of these pyridine derivatives with the aliphatic bodies, the derivatives of which they may be considered. This relation is more evident from the following representations:



It becomes at once plain that formula  $\text{I}_2$  represents a glutamic acid derivative—the imide of glutamic acid; while formula  $\text{II}_2$  is a  $\beta$ -amidoglutaric acid derivative—an inner imide of  $\beta$ -amidoglutaric acid. According to formula  $\text{II}_2$ , the inner imide of  $\beta$ -amidoglutaric acid would have a constitution similar to that suggested by Kekulé for furarimide, and as the latter is supposed to be prepared from ammonium malate, Kekulé began with  $\beta$ -oxyglutaric acid (1, 494), and attempted by heating its ammonium salt to prepare homofumarimide, but without result. Again, he sought to pass from  $\beta$ -oxyglutaric acid diamide ( $+ 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ), from glutamic acid and glutamondiamide, to pyridine. In fact, these three substances, when acted upon with concentrated sulphuric acid, yield glutaconimide or diosypyridine (1, 467) of formula  $\text{I}_2$ .

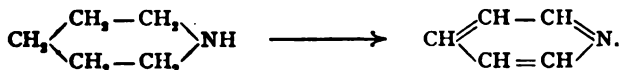
The presence of the imido-group was proved by converting the sodium compound of glutaconimide into methyl glutaconimide, from which hydriodic acid liberates methylamine, and by the preparation of nitrosoglutaconimide. The decomposition of glutaconimide gave glutamic acid. The objection that here  $\beta$ -amido-glutaric acid was first produced in conformity with formula  $\text{II}_2$ , and that from this glutamic acid arose through the elimination of ammonia, is contradicted by the deportment of the  $\beta$ -amidoglutaric acid, which, under like conditions, does not yield glutamic acid. The  $\beta$ -amidoglutaric acid, too, yielded no glutaconimide, or any amount of an isomeric body; the ring-formation failed.

The connection of glutaconimide with pyridine, which results from the distillation of the former with zinc-dust, Kekulé demonstrated by converting glutaconimide with  $\text{PCl}_5$  into pentachloropyridine, identical with an analogous body obtained from pyridine.

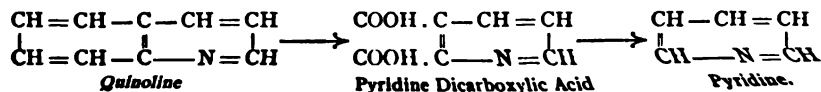
With these facts as bases, Kekulé held it as highly improbable that the nitrogen of pyridine was joined to the three carbon atoms  $\alpha$ ,  $\alpha_1$ ,  $\gamma$ , as required by Riedel's formula, whereas the Körner formula is in complete harmony with the experimental results, and is supported by them.

The centric formula of pyridine, in which the "central linkages" are in unstable equilibrium, permits of many transitions and changes without displacement of the double linkage, and therefore isolates pyridine from compounds like glutamic acid and glutaconimide, which bear close genetic relations to pyridine.

The production of pyridine from piperidine (hexahydropyridine or pentamethylene imine, p. 539) is important in determining its constitution. It results upon heating  $\text{HCl}$ -pentamethylene diamine or  $\delta$ -chloramylamine (1, 311):



The same may be said of quinoline and isoquinoline (pp. 541, 554), which are benzopyridines which have been obtained synthetically:



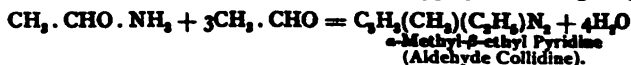
Pyridine and a series of its homologues are produced in the dry distillation of nitrogenous carbon compounds, hence they are present in coal-tar, in the tar from shales, in that from peat (very little), and in bone-oil (compare p. 48). Compare B. 30, 224, for the occurrence of pyridine in fuel oil.

Anderson (1846) isolated the first pyridine bases from bone-oil. These were more exhaustively investigated in 1879 and in the years following by Weidel and his students, also by Ladenburg and others.

Their presence in bone-oil is due to the reciprocating action of fats (glycerol esters) and substances containing ammonia (albumin, etc.); the acrolein arising from the fat probably condensing with the ammonia to pyridines (see synthetic method 1). Bone-glue, free from fats, does not yield pyridine bases, but mainly pyrrole (p. 456) (B. 13, 83). At present the pyridine bases are obtained chiefly from coal-tar (A. 247, 1). They are found in the acid used for the purifying of the tar. They can easily be isolated from it in the form of the "pyridine-base mixture," which at present is employed in Germany for the "denaturation" of spirit.

### Synthetic Methods for the Production of Pyridine Derivatives:

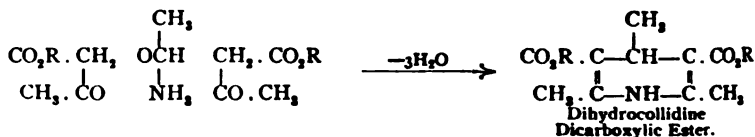
1. Alkyl pyridines are formed on heating *aldehyde ammonias* alone or with aldehydes and ketones (A. 59, 298; 155, 310; B. 23, 685, etc.):



In this reaction evidently several aldehyde molecules condense to unsaturated aldehydes, with long carbon chains, which in turn condense with ammonia, forming rings. β-Picoline (p. 532) can also be made by heating glycerol with P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> and ammoniacal substances—e.g., acetamide, or, better, ammonium phosphate (B. 24, 1676), when pyrazines are produced as by-products (see these).

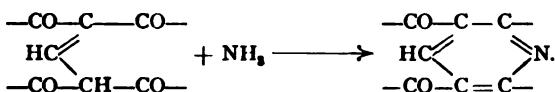
2. A method frequently pursued in synthesizing pyridine derivatives consists in the condensation of β-diketo-compounds with aldehydes and ammonia (pyridine syntheses of Hantzsch):

*Example a.*—Acetoacetic ester (2 mols.), acetaldehyde, and ammonia (or aldehyde ammonia) yield *dihydrocollidine dicarboxylic ester* or 1,3,5-trimethyldihydropyridine dicarboxylic ester, which, by the withdrawal of two hydrogen atoms, may be easily converted into its corresponding pyridine derivative (A. 215, 1; B. 18, 2579):

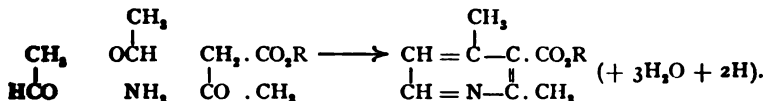


The acetaldehyde can be replaced by its homologues, by formic aldehyde or benzaldehyde (B. 29, R. 842), and the second molecule of acetoacetic ester by the 1,3-diketones—e.g., acetyl acetone, benzoyl acetone, etc. (B. 24, 1669). In the preceding reaction it may be assumed that the aldehyde and acetoacetic ester first combine to ethylidene diacetoacetic ester, CH<sub>3</sub> · CH[CH(CO<sub>2</sub>R) · COCH<sub>3</sub>]<sub>2</sub>. This is a 1,5-diketone derivative, which unites with ammonia to a pyridine ring, just as 1,4-diketones and ammonia form pyrrole (p. 456). Consequently, dihydrocollidine dicarboxylic ester is produced in excellent yield in the condensation of ethylidene acetoacetic ester and β-amido-crotonic acid ester, in that the latter attaches itself to the unsaturated linkage of the former, with consequent ring formation (B. 24, 1667).

Furthermore, pyridine derivatives are easily obtained by condensing oxymethylene acetoacetic esters with  $\beta$ -amidocrotonic esters (B. 26, 2734), or, in general, if  $\text{NH}_3$  be allowed to act upon 1,5-diketones of the constitution,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{—CO—C—CO—} \\ \text{CH} \diagup \quad \text{CH} \diagdown \\ \text{—CO—} \end{array}$ , which are prepared by condensing ethoxymethylene acetoacetic ester and analogously constituted compounds with  $\beta$ -ketonic esters or 1,3-diketones (B. 28, R. 491):

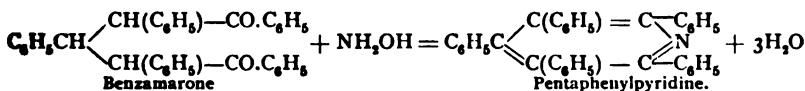


Compare B. 28, R. 1002, for another explanation of the mechanism of this reaction. *Example b.*—1,3-Dimethylpyridine-2-carboxylic ester forms upon digesting acetoacetic ester (1 mol.) with acetaldehyde (2 mols.) and ammonia:

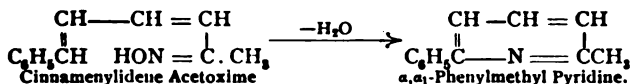


The mechanism of this reaction is probably similar to that in example a. The dihydro-product formed at first is probably oxidized by the excessive aldehyde to the corresponding pyridine. This reaction can also be varied by the use of different aldehydes.

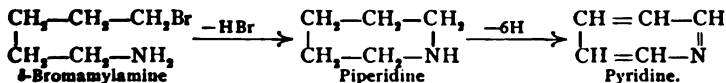
3. 1,5-Diketones, the keto-groups of which are combined with phenyl residues (1,3-dibenzoyl paraffins), yield pyridines when acted upon with hydroxylamine (A. 281, 36):



Pyridines are also produced by the dry distillation of certain oximes of diolefine monoketones (B. 28, 1726; 29, 613):



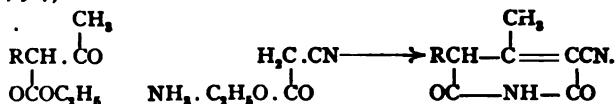
4. Pyridines are produced by oxidizing the synthetic hexahydropyridines, piperidines, or pentamethyleneimides (p. 538) with sulphuric acid or silver acetate (B. 25, 1621):



5. Oxypyridine derivatives (pyridones) result from the action of ammonia upon the pyrone compounds; the linking oxygen atom of the pyrones is replaced by the NH-group.

6.  $\alpha,\alpha_1$ -Dioxypyridines, which can also be regarded as imides of glutamic acid and its homologues, are obtained from glutaconamic acid, etc., by a ring-formation (comp. 1, 467; 11, 527); similarly, *citrazinic acid*, dioxypyridine carboxylic acid, is prepared by the action of ammonia upon aconitic ester; also from citramide (1, 530).

7. Further, glutaconimide derivatives may be made synthetically by condensing acetoacetic esters and cyanacetic ester with ammonia or primary amines (B. 29, R. 654; C. 1897, I, 927):



Similarly,  $\alpha$ -pyridones are obtained by condensing  $\beta$ -amidoketones—*e. g.*, diacetonamine,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{NH}_2$ , or acetyl acetanamine,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH} : \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) \cdot \text{NH}_2$ , with cyanacetic ester (B. 26, R. 943).

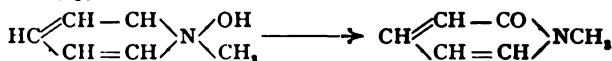
8. The fact that  $\beta$ -chlor- and  $\beta$ -brom-pyridine can be produced by heating potassium pyrrol with  $\text{CHCl}_3$  and  $\text{CHBr}_3$  is of interest. Pyrrol and sodium ethylate may be used as a substitute for potassium pyrrol. Pyridine results if  $\text{CH}_3\text{I}$ , be used, and with benzal chloride the product is  $\beta$ -phenylpyridine (B. 20, 191). Alkylpyridines (B. 19, 2196) are similarly formed from alkylpyrrols upon heating them with concentrated hydrochloric acid. Compare the conversion of alkyl indols into quinoline derivatives (p. 544).

*Behavior*: The pyridine bases are colorless liquids with a peculiar odor. Pyridine is miscible with water. The solubility of the higher members grows rapidly less. Frequently they are more soluble in cold than in hot water. The pyridines are tertiary bases and form crystalline salts with one equivalent of the acids.

1. *Salts*.—The platinum double salts of the formula  $(\text{C}_5\text{H}_5\text{N} \cdot \text{HCl})_2 \cdot \text{PtCl}_4$  lose two molecules of hydrochloric acid upon prolonged boiling and form  $(\text{C}_5\text{H}_5\text{N})_2\text{PtCl}_4$  (see pyrazoles, p. 482). The pyridines form addition compounds with many inorganic salts. These, with  $\text{HgCl}_2$  and  $\text{AuCl}_3$ , are characteristic and serve for the separation of the individual bases (A. 247, I; comp. C. 1897, II, 129, 311).

2. Alkyl iodides and pyridines form *alkyl pyridinium iodides*.

The corresponding alkyl pyridinium hydroxides appear to be very unstable. If they be treated with sodium hydroxide and potassium ferricyanide an atomic rearrangement ensues and *n*-alkylpyridones result:



(B. 25, 3326; compare also the quinolinium compounds, p. 545).

3. The pyridines also unite with chloracetic acid and its homologues, with formation of *pyridine betaines*.

4. When the alkyl pyridinium iodides are heated to  $300^\circ$  alkyl pyridines result, with a migration of the alkyl-group to  $\alpha$ - or  $\gamma$ -C-atom (Ladenburg, B. 17, 772). This is analogous to the production of homologous anilines from *n*-alkyl anilines (p. 72).

5 (a).  $\alpha$ -Methyl pyridines condense with aldehydes on heating with water; this is in the nature of the aldol formation. The *alkines*, secondary alcohols, result (B. 23, 2709). Thus,  $\alpha$ -picoline and acetaldehyde form  $\alpha$ -picolyl methyl alkine,  $(\text{C}_5\text{H}_4\text{N})\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ . The compounds with chloral are especially characteristic (B. 26, 1414).

5 (b). Pyridines with unsaturated side-chains are formed on heating  $\alpha$ -methyl picolines with aldehydes and zinc chloride. Thus,  $\alpha$ -picoline and benzaldehyde yield *stilbazole*,  $(\text{C}_5\text{H}_4\text{N})\text{CH} : \text{CHC}_6\text{H}_5$  (p. 533).

6. Oxidizing agents—*e. g.*, nitric acid, chromic acid—as a rule do not attack the pyridines. All the homologous pyridines, on the other

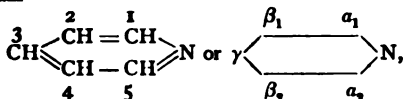
hand, and even the phenyl pyridines are oxidized by potassium permanganate to *pyridine carboxylic acids*, which finally yield pyridine upon distillation with lime.

7. Reducing agents (sodium and alcohol) convert the pyridine bases into *hexahydropyridines*, or piperidines, which can be decomposed by various methods into fatty bodies (compare piperidine decompositions, p. 539). The pyridines are reduced to *paraffins* when heated with hydriodic acid. Pyridine yields pentane.

8. *Halogen*, *nitro*-, and *sulpho*-derivatives are prepared with far more difficulty from the pyridines than from the benzenes.

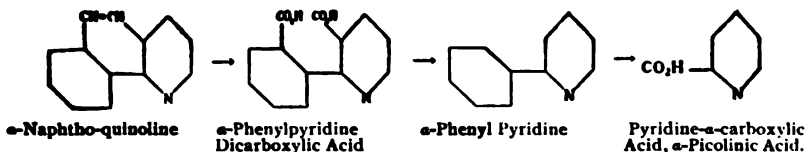
#### Isomerides.

The derivatives produced by the replacement of the hydrogen atoms in pyridine can easily be deduced in their possible isomerisms from the given structural formulas, and are perfectly analogous to the isomerisms of the benzene derivatives. Representing the five hydrogen atoms, or the affinities of the pyridine nucleus, with numbers or letters, corresponding to the diagram—



then the positions, 1 and 5, also 2 and 4 (as in benzene), are similar (p. 33). The first may be designated the *ortho*-, the latter, the *meta*-positions—while the position 3, occurring only once, corresponds to the *para* of benzene. From this we conclude that the mono-derivatives of pyridine,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_4(\text{X})\text{N}$ , can exist in three series, while six isomerides are possible with the di-derivatives  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_3(\text{X}_2)\text{N}$ . This is verified by the existence of three methyl, three propyl- and phenyl-pyridines,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_4(\text{R})\text{N}$ , of three pyridine-monocarboxylic acids,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_4(\text{CO}_2\text{H})\text{N}$ , of six dicarboxylic acids, etc. The determination of place for the pyridine derivatives usually follows from their conversion into carboxylic acids of pyridine.

*Constitution of the Pyridine Monocarboxylic Acids.*—The constitution of pyridine- $\alpha$ -carboxylic acid or picolinic acid and pyridine- $\beta$ -carboxylic acid or nicotinic acid is evident from its production in the oxidation of  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -phenylpyridines. These latter bodies have been obtained from  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -naphthoquinoline. When these are oxidized the first products are  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -phenylpyridine dicarboxylic acids, which upon the loss of  $2\text{CO}_2$  become phenylpyridines. This proof of constitution presupposes, therefore, the constitution of  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -naphthoquinolines. The diagram represents the derivation of the constitution of picolinic acid :



The behavior of the pyridine dicarboxylic acids leads to a simpler deduction of the position of their atoms (B. 18, 2967). Quinolinic acid (pyridine dicarboxylic acid), formed by the oxidation of quinoline, has the position (1,2), and cinchomeronic acid, from isoquinoline, has the position (2,3). Quinolinic acid loses one molecule of carbon dioxide when heated and forms nicotinic acid, while cinchomeronic acid yields nicotinic acid and isonicotinic acid ; therefore nicotinic acid is  $\beta = 2$  and isonicotinic acid  $\gamma = 3$ .

**Pyridine**,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_5\text{N}$ , boiling at  $114.8^\circ$ , with sp. gr. 1.003 ( $0^\circ$ ), can be prepared from bone-oil, and is obtained from all the pyridine-carboxylic acids on distillation with lime. Its hydrochloride,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_5\text{N} \cdot \text{HCl}$ , is

deliquescent, and with platinum chloride it forms a double salt,  $(C_5H_5N \cdot HCl)_2PtCl_4$ , melting at  $240^\circ$ . See B. 29, R. 295, for pyridine mercury compounds. Its *iodomethylate* melts at  $117^\circ$  (B. 29, R. 994).

*Pyridine betaine*,  $C_5H_5N \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2CO \\ | \\ \text{---}O \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting with decomposition at  $150^\circ$ , is formed by the interaction of pyridine and chloroacetic acid (B. 23, 2609). Compare I, 521; B. 26, R. 54, for the action of pyridine upon acetyl chloride and benzoyl chloride. Sodium and alcohol reduce it to piperidine, while normal pentane is produced when it is heated with hydriodic acid.

**1. Homologous Pyridines.** **Methyl Pyridines**,  $C_5H_4(CH_3)N$ , **Picolines** (from *pix*, tar; because they were obtained from coal-tar):

*a*-Picoline boils at  $130^\circ$ ; its sp. gr. is 0.965 at  $0^\circ$ , and it is oxidized by potassium permanganate to picolinic acid. *β*-Picoline boils at  $143^\circ$ ; its sp. gr. is 0.977. It is formed when strychnine is distilled (B. 23, 3555), and upon heating glycerol with  $P_2O_5$  and ammonium phosphate; also by heating trimethylenediamine hydrochloride (B. 23, 2730). It yields nicotinic acid on oxidation. *γ*-Picoline boils at  $144^\circ$ . Its sp. gr. is 0.974 at  $0^\circ$ . It has also been prepared by heating pyridine iodomethylate (p. 531). It yields isonicotinic acid when it is oxidized.

**Dimethyl Pyridines**, *Lutidines*,  $C_5H_3(CH_3)_2N$ . Bone-oil contains mainly: *αα*-*Lutidine*, boiling at  $142^\circ$ , with sp. gr. 0.942; *αγ*-*Lutidine*, boiling at  $157^\circ$ , with sp. gr. 0.9493; and *βγ*-*Lutidine*, boiling at  $164^\circ$  (B. 21, 1006; 29, 2996). *ββ*-*Lutidine*, from the corresponding carboxylic acid, boils at  $170^\circ$  (B. 23, 1113).

*a*-Ethyl Pyridine,  $C_5H_4(C_2H_5)N$ , boils at  $148^\circ$ ; its sp. gr. is 0.949 at  $0^\circ$ . *γ*-Ethyl Pyridine boils at  $165^\circ$ ; its sp. gr. is 0.952 at  $0^\circ$ . These two compounds result upon heating pyridine ethyl iodide. *β*-Ethyl Pyridine has been obtained, together with the *γ*-body, from cinchonine and brucine on heating with caustic potash. It boils at  $166^\circ$ .

Sym. (1,3,5) *Trimethyl Pyridine*,  $C_5H_2(CH_3)_3N$ , collidine, is obtained from synthetic dihydrocollidine dicarboxylic ester (p. 528) by oxidation, saponification, and the elimination of carbon dioxide. It boils at  $172^\circ$ . *1,3,4-Collidine*, boiling at  $165$ – $168^\circ$ , occurs in coal-tar (B. 29, 2998).

(1,4)-*Methyl-Ethyl Pyridine*,  $C_5H_3(CH_3)(C_2H_5)N$ , has been prepared from various aldehyde compounds, hence called *aldehydine* or *aldehydcollidine*. It boils at  $178^\circ$ .

*a*-Propyl Pyridine, Conyrene,  $C_5(C_3H_7)H_2N$ , is produced on heating conine with zinc-dust. It boils at  $167^\circ$ .

*a*-Isopropyl Pyridine is produced, together with the *γ*-compound, when pyridine propyl iodide or isopropyl iodide is heated. It boils at  $158^\circ$ .

**Parvuline**, *v*-**Tetramethyl Pyridine**, boiling at  $227$ – $230^\circ$ , occurs in coal-tar (B. 28, 796).

*ββ*-**Dibenzyl Pyridine**,  $C_5H_3(C_6H_5)_2N$ , boiling at  $89^\circ$ , is formed in the condensation of benzaldehyde with benzoyl pyridine (p. 540) (A. 280, 36).

*a*- and *β*-**Phenyl Pyridine**,  $C_6(C_6H_5)H_2N$ , boiling at  $260^\circ$  and  $270^\circ$ , result from the elimination of  $2CO_2$  from their carboxylic acids, the decomposition products of *a*- and *β*-naphthoquinoline. The *a*-body can also be made by heating the corresponding *a*-pyridone with zinc-dust (B. 29, 1678).

*p*-**Nitrophenyl Pyridine**, melting at  $117^\circ$ , is obtained from nitrosodiazobenzene and pyridine. By reduction it yields *p*-amidophenylpyridine, melting at  $102^\circ$ , which yields *a*-phenyl pyridine (B. 29, 167). **Dinitrophenyl Pyridine** melts at  $118^\circ$  (B. 29, 279). *γ*-**Phenyl Pyridine**, melting at  $77^\circ$  and boiling at  $274^\circ$ , results from a transposition of the condensation product of acetoacetic ester with benzaldehyde and ammonia (p. 528).

*aα*-**Phenyl Methyl Pyridine**,  $C_6(C_6H_5)(CH_3)H_2N$ , boiling at  $281^\circ$ , is obtained from cinnamylidene acetoxime (p. 529 and B. 28, 1727). *aα*-**Diphenyl Pyridine**, melting at  $82^\circ$ , has been obtained (1) by distilling the oxime of cinnamylene-acetophenone (method 3, p. 529); (2) from *aα*-diphenyl-*γ*-pyridine-carboxylic acid, produced on heating diphenacyl-malonic acid with ammonia; and (3) by oxidizing *a*-phenyl-

naphthocinchoninic acid (B. 29, 798; 30, 1499) Tetra- and Pentaphenyl Pyridines, melting at  $179^{\circ}$  and  $240^{\circ}$ , are produced from desoxybenzoin benzylidene acetophenone, and from benzamarene and  $\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$  (p. 529) (A. 281, 50; B. 26, 440).

$\gamma$ - $\gamma$ -Dipyridyl,  $(\text{C}_5\text{H}_4\text{N})_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melting at  $73^{\circ}$  ( $114^{\circ}$ ) and boiling at  $305^{\circ}$ , is produced, together with an oily, polymeric pyridine  $(\text{C}_5\text{H}_4\text{N})_x$ , when sodium acts upon pyridine (B. 24, 1478).  $\beta$ , $\beta$ -Dipyridyl, melting at  $68^{\circ}$  and boiling at  $287^{\circ}$ , is obtained from its dicarboxylic acid, an oxidation product of phenanthroline (p. 554). Compare B. 21, 1077, for another dipyridyl.

Vinyl Pyridine,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_4(\text{C}_2\text{H}_3)\text{N}$ , results when pyridine vapors are conducted, together with ethylene, through a tube heated to redness, as well as from  $\alpha$ -picolyl alkine by the loss of water, and from pyridyl- $\beta$ -bromopropionic acid (p. 538) by the exit of  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{HBr}$ . It boils at  $160^{\circ}$  (B. 20, 1644; A. 265, 229).

$\alpha$ -Allyl Pyridine,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_4(\text{C}_3\text{H}_5)\text{N}$ , is produced when picoline and paraldehyde are heated to  $200^{\circ}$  (A. 247, 26). It boils at  $290^{\circ}$ . Sodium and alcohol convert it into propyl piperidine (inactive conine, p. 562).

Styryl Pyridine, *Stilbazole*,  $\text{C}_4(\text{CH}:\text{CHC}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}$ , melting at  $61^{\circ}$  and boiling at  $325^{\circ}$ , is formed from  $\alpha$ -picoline with benzaldehyde and zinc chloride.

**2. Halogen Pyridines:** The pyridines containing halogens in the nucleus are obtained with difficulty by the direct action of the halogens upon the pyridines. Bromine particularly replaces the alkyl group in the homologous pyridines very easily (B. 25, 2985; 28, 1759). The replacement of the pyridine hydrogen atoms is more easily effected upon heating pyridine or the oxypyridines with phosphorus or antimony pentachlorides.

$\alpha$ -Chlor-pyridine, melting at  $166^{\circ}$ , results on treating  $\alpha$ -oxypyridine with  $\text{PCl}_5$ .  $\beta$ -Chlor-pyridine, boiling at  $148^{\circ}$ , and  $\beta$ -Brom-pyridine, boiling at  $170^{\circ}$ , are formed when  $\text{CCl}_4\text{H}$  or  $\text{CBr}_3\text{H}$  acts upon pyrrol-potassium (p. 530).  $\alpha$ -Phenyl- $\alpha$ -chlor-pyridine, melting at  $34^{\circ}$ , is obtained from phenylpyridone (B. 29, 1679). Dichlor-pyridine, melting at  $67^{\circ}$ , and trichlor-pyridine, melting at  $50^{\circ}$ , result from the action of  $\text{PCl}_5$  upon barium pyridine disulphonate.  $\alpha$ , $\gamma$ -Dichlor-picoline, boiling at  $206^{\circ}$ , is obtained from dioxypicoline (B. 28, R. 644). Tetrachlor-pyridine, melting at  $80$ – $85^{\circ}$ , and Pentachlor-pyridine,  $\text{C}_5\text{Cl}_5\text{N}$ , melting at  $124$ – $125^{\circ}$ , are prepared from pyridine and phosphorus pentachloride. The same reagent converts dioxypyridine (glutaconimide) into perchlorpyridine (Kekulé, p. 527).

**3. Pyridine Sulphonic Acids** are formed, together with pyridine, on heating piperidine with concentrated sulphuric acid.

$\beta$ -Pyridine Sulphonic Acid,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_4(\text{SO}_3\text{H})\text{N}$ , also results on treating pyridine with sulphuric acid.  $\beta$ -Cyan-pyridine, melting at  $49^{\circ}$ , is formed when its sodium salt is distilled with potassium cyanide. It is the nitrile of nicotinic acid (p. 536) and yields  $\beta$ -oxypyridine on fusion with caustic potash.

**4. Nitro-pyridines:** Nitration of the pyridine nucleus seems only possible when  $\text{NH}_2$ ,  $\text{OH}$ , or similar groups are present, which, as in the case of benzene, facilitate the nitration (p. 149).

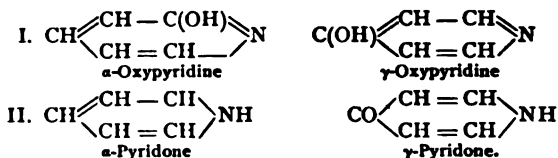
The nitration of  $\beta$ -oxypyridine (p. 534) in the form of its acetyl ester with nitric acid containing  $\text{N}_2\text{O}_5$  gives rise to two nitro-oxypyridines, melting at  $211^{\circ}$  and at  $295$ – $298^{\circ}$  with decomposition; also a dinitro-oxypyridine, melting at  $133^{\circ}$  (B. 28, R. 911). See nicotinic acid (p. 536) for the nitroamidonicotinic acids.

**5. Amido-pyridines** have been obtained from the pyridine acid-amides with bromine and caustic potash (Hofmann's reaction), and also by the exit of  $\text{CO}_2$  from amidopyridine carboxylic acids.

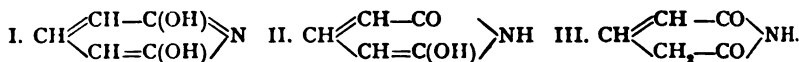
$\alpha$ -Amido-pyridine, melting at  $56^{\circ}$  and boiling at  $204^{\circ}$ , is obtained from the amide of  $\alpha$ -picolinic acid; also from  $\alpha$ - and  $\alpha_1$ -amido-nicotinic acid (B. 27, 1317, R. 410; A. 288, 253).  $\beta$ -Amido-pyridine, melting at  $64^{\circ}$  and boiling at  $251^{\circ}$ , is formed in the action of bromine and caustic potash upon the amide of nicotinic acid (B. 28, R. 322).  $\gamma$ -Amido- $\alpha$ , $\alpha_1$ -lutidine,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_2(\text{CH}_3)_2(\text{NH}_2)\text{N}$ , melting at  $186^{\circ}$  and boiling at  $246^{\circ}$ , is obtained from amido-lutidine dicarboxylic acid (B. 27, 1325). Chlorinated  $\alpha$ -amido-pyridines have been obtained by the action of  $\text{PCl}_5$  upon  $\beta$ -oxyglutaramide. Trichlor- $\alpha$ -amido-pyridine,  $\text{C}_5\text{HCl}_3(\text{NH}_2)\text{N}$ , melts at  $143$ – $144^{\circ}$ .

**6. Oxypyridines:** They correspond to the amidophenols, as they form salts both with bases and acids. They are formed with special ease from the oxypyridine carboxylic

acids by the elimination of the carboxyl groups. The most of these acids have been produced by the action of ammonia upon the corresponding pyrone derivatives. Ferric chloride imparts a red color to nearly all their solutions. On the other hand, the  $\alpha$ - and  $\gamma$ -oxy-pyridines manifest the deportment of cyclic imides or lactams. They must be viewed as *keto* or *oxo*-compounds of the hydropyridines, and are called, therefore, *pyridones*. The following formulas have been considered for the  $\alpha$ - and  $\gamma$ -monoxypyridines:



Although it is undetermined which of the two possible representations belongs to the free oxy-bodies, alkyl derivatives are obtained from both in which the alkyl residue replaces the imide or hydroxyl hydrogen (B. 24, 3144) (1, 363). The following formulas should also be considered for the  $\alpha, \alpha_1$ -dioxypyridines or glutanimides:



(Compare the pyrazolons, the isoxazolons, benzimidazolons, indoxyl, isatin, etc.)

(1) *Monoxypyridines*: 1-Oxypyridine,  $\alpha$ -Pyridone,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_5\text{ON}$ , melting at  $106^\circ$  and boiling at  $281^\circ$ , is obtained from oxyquinolinic acid (p. 537) and from oxy-nicotinic acid. Bromine water converts it into a dibromoxypyridine,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_3\text{Br}_2(\text{OH})\text{N}$ , melting at  $206^\circ$ . With ethyl iodide it yields *n-ethyl- $\alpha$ -pyridone*,  $\text{CH} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{CH} - \text{CO} \diagdown \\ \diagdown \text{CH} = \text{CH} \diagup \end{array} \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , boiling at  $247^\circ$ , while the silver salt of  $\alpha$ -oxypyridine and the same reagent yield  *$\alpha$ -ethoxy-pyridine*,  $\text{CH} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{CH} - \text{C(OC}_2\text{H}_5) \diagdown \\ \diagdown \text{CH} = \text{CH} \diagup \end{array} \text{N}$ , boiling at  $156^\circ$ .  *$\alpha$ -Methoxypyridine* can also be prepared from  $\alpha$ -pyridone and diazomethane (p. 445; B. 28, 1625).

1,3-Dimethyl- $\alpha$ -pyridone, *Pseudolutidostyryl*, *Mesitene Lactam*, melting at  $180^\circ$ , results from the action of ammonia upon dimethyl coumalin or mesitene lactone (p. 522), as well as from its carboxylic acids (1, 363).  *$\alpha$ -Phenyl Pyridone*, melting at  $197^\circ$ , is formed from phenyl coumalin and ammonium acetate. With aniline it yields  *$\alpha, n$ -diphenylpyridone*, melting at  $145^\circ$  (B. 29, 1677).

2-Oxypyridone,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_4(\text{OH})\text{N}$ , melting at  $124^\circ$ , distils without decomposition. It is produced when  $\beta$ -pyridine sulphonic acid is fused with caustic potash (B. 28, R. 911), or by the action of nitrous acid upon  $\beta$ -amidopyridine. Its ethyl ether,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_4(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)\text{N}$ , results from the interaction of  $\beta$ -bromopyridine and alcoholic potash.

3-Oxypyridine,  $\gamma$ -Pyridone,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_5\text{ON}(+ \text{H}_2\text{O})$ , melting at  $148^\circ$ , is produced by heating oxypicolinic acid and ammon-chelidonic acid. Methyl iodide converts it into the hydriodide of *n-methyl- $\gamma$ -pyridone*,  $\text{OC} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{CH} - \text{CH} \diagdown \\ \diagdown \text{CH} = \text{CH} \diagup \end{array} \text{NCH}_3$ , melting at  $89^\circ$ .

*$\gamma$ -Methoxy-pyridine*,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{O})\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{CH} - \text{CH} \diagdown \\ \diagdown \text{CH} = \text{CH} \diagup \end{array} \text{N}$ , is isomeric with it. This compound may be prepared by heating  $\gamma$ -chlorpyridine with sodium ethylate. It boils at  $190^\circ$ , and, unlike its isomeride, is broken down, when heated with hydriodic acid, into methyl iodide and  $\gamma$  pyridone.

2,4-Dimethyl-3-oxypyridine,  $\gamma$ -Lutidone,  $\text{C}_6(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{H}_5\text{ON}(+ 1\frac{1}{2}\text{H}_2\text{O})$ , melting at  $225^\circ$ , is obtained from lutidone dicarboxylic acid (p. 538), as well as from dihydracetic acid (p. 521) on heating with ammonia (B. 28, R. 644).  $\gamma$ -Ethoxylutidine, boiling at  $207^\circ$ , results upon diazotizing  $\gamma$ -amidolutidine (p. 533) in alcoholic solution (B. 27, 1328).

(2) *Dioxypyridines*: 1,5-Dioxypyridine, *glutaconimide*,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_4\text{O}_2\text{N}$  (1, 467), melting at  $183\text{--}184^\circ$ , is obtained from oxyglutarimide, glutaconamic acid, or glutacondiamide. Its salts (*chloride*,  $+ \text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; *sulphate*,  $+ 2\frac{1}{2}\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) are decomposed by much water. It

yields pyridine upon distillation with zinc dust. Phosphorus pentachloride converts it into *pentachloropyridine* (compare p. 527).

2-Methyl-1,5-dioxypyridine,  $C_5(CH_3)H_2O_2N$ , melting at  $191^\circ$ , 2-Ethyl-1,2-Benzyl-dioxypyridine, etc., have been prepared by the action of ammonia upon methyl-, ethyl-, and benzyl-glutaconic esters (B. 26, R. 318, 587). These dioxypyridines correspond to resorcinol of the benzene series, and like it they form *dyes* with phthalic anhydride (see p. 364 and B. 26, 1559).

Consult B. 25, R. 793; 28, R. 644, for 1,3-dioxypicoline.

Different isomeric dioxypyridines have, furthermore, been prepared by the fusion of pyridine disulphonic acids with caustic potash (B. 17, 1832) and by the removal of  $CO_2$  from comenamic or dioxypicolinic acid (p. 538) (B. 18, R. 633), etc.

(3) *Trioxypyridines*: 1,3,5-Trioxypyridine, *Triketopiperidine*,  $C_5H_2O_3N$ , decomposes at  $220-230^\circ$ . It corresponds to phloroglucin (p. 165). It can be obtained by boiling glutazine with hydrochloric acid. Heated with ammonia it reforms Glutazine,  $\beta$ -Imidoglutarimide,  $NH : C \begin{smallmatrix} CH_3 - CO \\ | \quad \quad | \\ CH_2 - CO \end{smallmatrix} NH (?)$ , melting with decomposition at  $300^\circ$ , which may be prepared by heating acetone dicarboxylic ester with ammonia (B. 20, 2655).

Pyromecazonic Acid is an isomeric trioxypyridine, obtained from pyromeconic acid with ammonia. Ferric chloride colors it a dark indigo-blue.

7. **Pyridyl Alcohols**: These are sometimes called *pyridyl alkinies*. They arise (1) in the aldol condensation of  $\alpha$ -methyl pyridines with aldehydes on boiling with water; (2) from their HBr-esters, the homologous pyridines brominated in the side-chain; (3) by the reduction of the corresponding ketones:

1-Picolyl Alkine,  $C_5H_4N(CH_2 \cdot CH_2OH)$ , boiling at  $179^\circ$  (22 mm.), and 1-Picolyl Methyl Alkine,  $C_5H_4NCH_2(CHOH)CH_3$ , are obtained from  $\alpha$ -picoline with formic acid and acetaldehydes (B. 22, 2583; 23, 2709, 2725). 1-Picolyl Trichlor-methyl Alkine,  $C_5H_4NCH_2CH(OH)CCl_3$ , melting at  $87^\circ$ , is formed from  $\alpha$ -picoline and chloral. Alcoholic potash converts it into  $\alpha$ -pyridyl acrylic acid (p. 538). Pyridyl- $\alpha$ -ethyl Alkine,  $C_5H_4NCH(OH)C_2H_5$ , boiling at  $213^\circ$  to  $218^\circ$ , is isomeric with  $\alpha$ -picolylmethyl alkine. It is made by reducing pyridyl ethyl ketone with sodium amalgam. 1-Picolyl-4-methyl Alkine,  $C_5H_3(CH_3)NCH(OH)CH_3$ , boiling at  $240^\circ$ , results upon boiling bromcollidine with water (B. 28, 1759).

8. **Pyridyl Ketones**: Ketones of the pyridine series are obtained in the distillation of pyridine carboxylic acids with fatty or aromatic acids (Engler, B. 24, 2525). They yield secondary alcohols, together with pinacones, by reduction.

1-Pyridyl Methyl Ketone,  $(CH_3CO)C_5H_4N$ , boiling at  $192^\circ$ , is prepared from calcium picolinate and acetate. Its *oxime* melts at  $120^\circ$ . Its *phenylhydrazone* melts at  $155^\circ$ .

2-Pyridyl Methyl Ketone, boiling at  $220^\circ$ , is obtained from calcium nicotinate and acetate. 1-Picoline-4-methyl Ketone,  $C_5H_3(CH_3)(COCH_3)N$ , boiling at  $233^\circ$ , results upon oxidizing the corresponding alkine (B. 28, 1764).

1-Pyridyl Ethyl Ketone,  $(C_2H_5CO)C_5H_4N$ , boiling at  $205^\circ$ , is changed by sodium and amyl alcohol to  $\alpha$ -ethyl piperyl alkine,  $C_5H_3CH(OH) \cdot C_2H_5NH$ , which is identical with the *pseudocomhydrin*, present in the conine alkaloids.

2-Phenyl Pyridyl Ketone,  $C_6H_5CO \cdot C_5H_4N$ , boiling at  $307^\circ$  (B. 20, 1209), forms two isomeric *oximes*, melting at  $142^\circ$  and  $162^\circ$  (B. 29, R. 832).  $\beta, \gamma$ -Diacetyl- $\alpha, \alpha$ -lutidine,  $C_6H(COCH_3)_2(CH_3)_2N$ , is produced by the action of ammonia upon methenyl-bisacetylacetone,  $(CH_3CO) \cdot CH : CH : C(COCH_3)_2$ —compare I, 478). 1-Acetacetyl Pyridine,  $(C_2H_5N)CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$ , melting at  $50^\circ$  and boiling at  $137-143^\circ$  (15 mm.), is obtained from picolinic ester, acetone, and sodium ethylate (B. 29, R. 846).

9. **Pyridine Carboxylic Acids**.—These acids of pyridine result upon oxidizing the homologous pyridines with potassium permanganate, when alkyl as well as phenyl groups are converted into carboxyl. The condensed pyridine derivatives—*e. g.*, quinoline, isoquinoline, etc.—are similarly decomposed, the benzene rings being ruptured and oxidized to carboxyl. Hence, most alkaloids, being pyridine derivatives, yield these acids upon energetic oxidation.

The lower acids can be prepared from the pyridine polycarboxylic acids by heating them with hydrochloric acid. Usually, in this treatment it is the COOH-groups, occupying the  $\alpha$ -position, which are split off. Upon heating with lime all the carboxyl groups are eliminated and pyridine is formed.

The pyridine carboxylic acids, like the other pyridine derivatives, are reduced by sodium and alcohol to piperidine carboxylic acids.

A number of pyridine carboxylic acids are reduced by sodium amalgam in aqueous-alkaline solution to *lactonic acids* of the fatty series. The group  $-\text{CH}=\text{N}-\text{CH}=\text{}$  is then converted into  $-\text{CO}-\text{O}-\text{CH}_2-$  (B. 25, R. 904; 26, R. 8; 27, R. 193, etc.).

As the pyridines are bases, their acids manifest the character of amido-acids. The basic properties disappear with the polycarboxylic acids.

The methods of determining position or place in the monocarboxylic acids have been given on p. 531. Of the dicarboxylic acids, quinolinic acid, because of its formation from quinoline (p. 527), must be the  $\alpha,\beta$ -dicarboxylic acid, and cinchomeronic acid, because of its production from isoquinoline (p. 554), must be the  $\beta,\gamma$ -dicarboxylic acid.

#### A. Pyridine-mono-carboxylic Acids:

1-Pyridine Carboxylic Acid, Picolinic Acid,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_4\text{N}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})$ , is obtained by the oxidation of  $\alpha$ -picoline. It melts at  $135-136^\circ$ , and sublimes. Ferrous sulphate imparts to its solutions, as well as to those of all pyridine carboxylic acids having the carboxyl group in the  $\alpha$ -position, a yellow-red color.

2-Pyridine Carboxylic Acid, Nicotinic Acid, was first obtained by oxidizing nicotine. It is also prepared from  $\beta$ -picoline, as well as from  $\beta$ -cyanpyridine. It melts

at  $228-229^\circ$ . Its iodmethylate forms a *betaine*,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_4(\text{COO})\text{N} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , which is identical with the alkaloid *trigonelline* (p. 564). 5-Chlornicotinic Acid, melting at  $199^\circ$ , is obtained from oxynicotinic acid, and when heated with ammonia becomes 5-Amidonicotinic Acid, which changes to  $\alpha$ -amidopyridine on heating, and by nitration yields 4,5-nitroamidonicotinic acid, melting at  $280^\circ$ . The reduction of the latter yields 4,5-diamidonicotinic acid. 1-Amidonicotinic Acid, from quinolinamic acid, also yields  $\alpha$ -amidopyridine on the application of heat, and by nitration becomes nitroamidonicotinic acid (B. 27, 1317; A. 288, 253).

3-Pyridine-carboxylic Acid, Isonicotinic Acid, is obtained from  $\gamma$ -methyl pyridine, or from cinchomeronic acid, by the splitting-off of  $\text{CO}_2$ . It melts at  $304^\circ$ .

#### Homologous Pyridine Monocarboxylic Acids:

3-Methyl-1-pyridine Carboxylic Acid is obtained on heating uvitonic acid when  $\text{ICl}_3$  splits off. It sublimes without previously fusing.

3-Methyl-nicotinic Acid results on heating methyl quinolinic acid. It melts at  $210^\circ$ .

1,3-Dimethyl-nicotinic Acid,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_2(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})$ . Its *ethyl ester* results in the condensation of acetoacetic ester with aldehyde and aldehyde-ammonia. The free acid contains two molecules of water of crystallization.

#### B. Pyridine Dicarboxylic Acids:

1,2-Pyridine Dicarboxylic Acid, Quinolinic Acid,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_3\text{N}(\text{COOH})_2$ , melting at  $190^\circ$  with decomposition, is obtained from quinoline and from 1- and 2-methyl-quinoline by oxidation with potassium permanganate (B. 19, 293). The oxidation of p-oxyquinoline with bleaching lime yields an intermediate product, *carbopyridyl glyceric acid*,

$\text{C}_5\text{H}_3\text{N} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{COOH} \\ \diagup \\ \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \end{smallmatrix} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{COOH}$ , which changes with ease to *acetonicotinic acid*,

$\text{C}_5\text{H}_3\text{N} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{COOH} \\ \diagup \\ \text{COC}_2\text{H}_5 \end{smallmatrix}$  (compare B. 26, 1501, and decomposition of  $\beta$ -naphthol and naphthoquinone, pp. 392, 393).

The anhydride melts at  $134^\circ$  and the imide at  $230^\circ$  (A. 288, 257).

2,3-Pyridine Carboxylic Acid, Cinchomeronic Acid, is obtained from cinchonine

and cinchonidine by oxidation with nitric acid and by the oxidation of isoquinoline with potassium permanganate. It melts at  $266^{\circ}$  with decomposition. It yields an *anhydride*,  $C_8H_5N(CO)_2O$ , melting at  $67^{\circ}$ . Sodium amalgam reduces it to cinchonic acid,  $C_8H_7O_4$ , which breaks up into  $CO_2$ , and *hydrocinchonic acid* or dimethyl maleic anhydride on application of heat (B. 18, 2968; 1, 465).

The methyl betafne of cinchomeronic acid is Apophyllenic Acid.

1,3-Pyridine Dicarboxylic Acid, Lutidinic Acid,  $C_5H_3N(COOH)_2 + 2H_2O$ , melts at  $235^{\circ}$  (A. 247, 37). 1,4-Pyridine Dicarboxylic Acid, *isocinchomeronic acid*, crystallizing with  $1-1\frac{1}{2}$  mols. of water, melts at  $236^{\circ}$  (B. 19, 1311).

1,5-Pyridine Dicarboxylic Acid, Dipicolinic Acid, melts at  $225^{\circ}$  (A. 247, 33).

2,4-Pyridine Dicarboxylic Acid, Dinicotinic Acid, melts at  $314^{\circ}$  (B. 19, 286).

Homologous Pyridine Dicarboxylic Acids:

3-Methyl-quinolinic Acid,  $C_8H_2(CH_3)N(CO_2H)_2$ , is produced upon oxidizing  $\gamma$ -methyl-quinoline with potassium permanganate. It melts about  $186^{\circ}$  with decomposition.

1-Methylpyridine-5,3-dicarboxylic Acid, Uvitonic Acid,  $C_6H_4(CH_3)N(COOH)_2$ , is formed when alcoholic ammonia acts upon pyrroacemic acid. It melts at  $244^{\circ}$ .

Lutidine Dicarboxylic Acid, 1,5-Dimethyl-2,4-pyridine Dicarboxylic Acid,  $C_8H(CH_3)_2N(COOH)_2$ , melting at  $316^{\circ}$ , is formed from methenylbisacetacetic ester and ammonia (compare 1, 483, and A. 241, 31).

(1,3,5)-Trimethyl-pyridine-(2,4)-dicarboxylic Acid, *Collidine Dicarboxylic Acid*,  $C_8H(CH_3)_3N(CO_2H)_2$ . The *diethyl ester* is prepared by the oxidation of dihydro-collidine dicarboxylic ester in alcoholic solution with nitrous acid. It is the starting-out substance for the preparation of a series of higher and lower pyridine carboxylic acids.

C. *Pyridine Tricarboxylic Acids*: 1,2,3-Pyridine Tricarboxylic Acid, *Carbo-cinchomeronic Acid*,  $C_6H_2N(COOH)_3 + 1\frac{1}{2}H_2O$ , melting at  $250^{\circ}$ , results upon oxidizing quinine, cinchonine (p. 572), various decomposition products of these alkaloids, and  $\gamma$ -methyl quinolinic acid, etc., with potassium permanganate. Consult C. 1897, 11, 308, for the esterification of this acid. 1,3,5-Pyridine Tricarboxylic Acid, melting with decomposition at  $145^{\circ}$ , is obtained from symmetrical collidine (p. 532) or from uvitonic acid (A. 228, 29). 1,3,4-Pyridine Tricarboxylic Acid, *Berberonic Acid*, obtained by the action of nitric acid upon the alkaloid berberine, melts at  $235^{\circ}$  (B. 25, R. 582). 1,2,5-Pyridine Tricarboxylic Acid, ( $+ 2H_2O$ ), decomposes at  $130^{\circ}$  (B. 19, 1309).

D. *Pyridine Tetracarboxylic Acids*: 1,2,3,5-Pyridine Tetracarboxylic Acid,  $C_5H_2N(COOH)_4 (+ 2H_2O)$ , melting at  $227^{\circ}$ , is obtained from collidine carboxylic acids, or from *flavonol* (p. 546), a quinoline derivative (B. 17, 2927). Consult B. 19, 1309, for the 1,2,4,5-acid, etc.

E. *Pyridine Pentacarboxylic Acid*,  $C_5N(CO_2H)_5 + 2H_2O$ , decomposing at  $220^{\circ}$ , is formed by the oxidation of collidine dicarboxylic acids.

8. **Oxypyridine Carboxylic Acids**: The views expressed on p. 534 relative to the oxypyridines or pyridones apply to the constitution of the oxypyridine carboxylic acids. The latter are obtained with remarkable ease from the corresponding pyrone carboxylic acids by the action of ammonia. When heated they break down, as a rule, quite readily into carbon dioxide and pyridones.

A. *Monoxypyridine Carboxylic Acids*: 1-Oxypyridine-4-carboxylic Acid, *Oxynicotinic Acid*,  $C_6H_4ON(COOH)$ , melting at  $303^{\circ}$ , is produced when ammonia acts upon coumalic acid ester, and by the elimination of carbon dioxide from oxyquinolinic acid.

1-Oxypyridine-2-carboxylic Acid, melting with decomposition at  $255^{\circ}$ , is made from 1-amidonicotinic acid (p. 536), and in various other ways (A. 288, 265; M. 9, 145).

3-Oxypyridine-1-carboxylic Acid, *Oxypicolinic Acid*, ( $+ H_2O$ ), melting at  $250^{\circ}$ , is produced by the action of ammonia upon comanic acid (p. 522).

1-Oxypyridine-4,5-dicarboxylic Acid, *Oxyquinolinic Acid*,  $C_6H_3ON(COOH)_2$ , decomposing at  $254^{\circ}$ , is obtained from quinolinic acid by the potash fusion, or from its methyl ether, *methoxyquinolinic acid*, melting at  $140^{\circ}$ , which results when potassium permanganate acts upon amidocarbostyryl ether. 3-Oxypyridine-1,5-dicarboxylic Acid, *Ammonochelidonic Acid*, *Chelidamic Acid*, is obtained by the action of ammonia upon chelidonic acid (p. 522).

**1,3-Dimethyl-5-pyridone Carboxylic Acid, Pseudolutidostyryl Carboxylic Acid,**  $C_8(CH_3)_2H_2ON(COOH)$ , results upon heating  $HCl$ - $\beta$ -amidocrotonic ester to  $130^\circ$  (B. 24, R. 632). **n-Phenyl Lutidone Carboxylic Acid,**  $C_8H(CH_3)_2(C_6H_5)ON(COOH)$ , is similarly produced, together with  $\gamma$ -oxyquinoline, upon heating  $\beta$ -anilidocrotonic ester. **1,5-Lutidone-2,4-dicarboxylic Acid,**  $C_8(CH_3)_2HON(COOH)_2$ , melting at  $267^\circ$ , results when ammonia acts upon dimethyl pyrone dicarboxylic ester. Pentachloride of phosphorus converts it into 3-chlorolutidine dicarboxylic acid, melting at  $224^\circ$ , which yields 3-amidolutidine dicarboxylic acid with ammonia at  $130^\circ$  (B. 27, 1323).

**B. Dioxypyridine Carboxylic Acids:** **Dioxypicolinic Acid,**  $C_6H_2O_2N(COOH)$ . *Comenamic Acid*, is derived from comenic acid (p. 522) by aid of ammonia.

**1,5-Dioxyisonicotinic Acid, Citrazinic Acid,** is formed when citramide,  $CONH_2C(OH)CH_2CONH_2$ , is heated with concentrated sulphuric acid.

An aldehyde dicarboxylic acid,  $C_6H_2O_2N(COOH)_2(CHO)$  (B. 29, R. 1105), is obtained in the action of chloroform and caustic potash upon citrazinic acid.

9. Pyridyl substituted acids of the fatty series are not very numerous. Certain pyridyl lactic acids, because of their relations to the alkaloids, have been investigated:

**$\alpha$ ,2-Pyridyl Lactic Acid,**  $C_6H_4N \cdot C(OH)(CH_3)COOH$ , is formed, along with trimethylamine, in the decomposition of the alkaloid *pilocarpine* (p. 564). Phosphorus tribromide converts it into pyridyl brompropionic acid,  $C_6H_4NCBrCH_2COOH$ . The homologous picoline- $\alpha$ -lactic acid,  $[C_6(CH_3)H_4N]C(OH)(CH_3)COOH$ , is obtained by saponifying its *nitrile*, the cyanhydrin of picolymethylketone (p. 535) (B. 28, 1765).  **$\beta$ ,1-Pyridyl-lactic Acid,**  $C_6H_4N \cdot CH_2CH(OH)COOH$ , melting at  $125^\circ$ , is prepared by decomposing its *ortho-chloride*, trichlormethyl picolylalkine,  $C_6H_4NCH_2CH(OH)CCl_2$  (p. 535), with soda, whereas with alcoholic potash the product is—

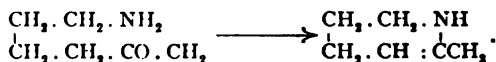
**Pyridyl- $\alpha$ -acrylic Acid,**  $C_6H_4N \cdot CH : CH \cdot COOH$ . Bromine converts this acid into *pyridylbromopropionic acid*, and hydrobromic acid changes it to *pyridylmonobromopropionic acid*,  $C_6H_4 \cdot CHBr \cdot CH_2 \cdot COOH$  (A. 265, 221).  **$\alpha$ ,2-Picoline Acrylic Acid,**  $[C_6(CH_3)H_4N]CH : CH_2COOH$ , is obtained from picoline brompropionic acid, the reaction product of  $PBr_3$  and picoline lactic acid.

#### HYDROPYRIDINE DERIVATIVES.

Hydropyridines, and, indeed, the perhydrogenized products,—the *piperidines*,—are produced when the pyridines are reduced with zinc and hydrochloric acid, or, better, with sodium and boiling alcohols, and by electrolysis (B. 29, R. 1122; C. 1897, 1, 388).

a. Hantzsch obtained *dihydropyridine* derivatives in the pyridine syntheses from acetoacetic ester and aldehyde ammonias. They part very readily with two atoms of hydrogen and revert to pyridines. Further, several dihydropyridines have been obtained as liquids, with penetrating odor and easily resinified, by the action of caustic potash upon alkylpyridinium iodides (B. 14, 1497).

b. *Tetrahydropyridines, Piperidines:* **Tetrahydropicoline,**  $C_6H_8(CH_3)N$ , boiling at  $132^\circ$ , is obtained from  $\delta$ -amidobutylmethyl ketone by ring-formation (B. 25, 2190; A. 294, 135):



The tetrahydropyridines include a series of bases, which have been prepared from the piperidines by the action of bromine and sodium hydrate, or iodine and silver oxide, by the exit of water from the oxypiperidines. Thus, the *conicefines* result from the action of phosphorus pentoxide upon conhydrin (p. 562).

The *n* alkyl derivatives of the pyridones (p. 534) and the dioxypyridines or glutaconimides are to be viewed as *keto*-derivatives of di- and tetrahydropyridines.

c. *Hexahydropyridines, Piperidines:* **Hexahydropyridine, Piperidine, Pentamethyleneimide,**  $CH_2 < \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 - CH_2 \\ | \quad | \\ CH_2 - CH_2 \end{smallmatrix} > NH$ , boiling at  $106^\circ$ , is

dissolving quite readily in water and in alcohol. Its odor is like pepper. It occurs attached to piperic acid (p. 285) as piperine in , and is produced when piperine is heated together with alcoholic . It may be synthesized (1) by heating pentamethylene diamine chloride; (2) by heating  $\epsilon$ -chlor- and  $\epsilon$ -bromamylamine with caustic (previously mentioned); and (3) by the reduction of pyridine, which it passes when heated with sulphuric acid to  $300^\circ$ , or, better, nitrobenzene to  $260^\circ$ , or by boiling with silver oxide or silver in glacial acetic acid (B. 25, 1620).

**Composition of Piperidine.**—The piperidine ring is ruptured in the following ways:

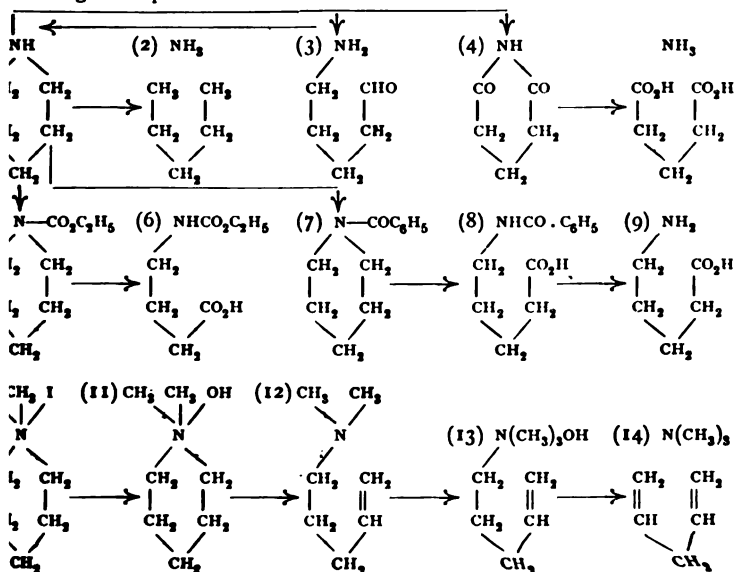
Then piperidine (1) is heated to  $300^\circ$  with hydriodic acid it is converted into amide and n-pentane.

Then piperidine is oxidized with hydrogen peroxide it changes to  $\delta$ -amidovaleric acid (3) and n-glutarimide (4). The decomposition by means of hydrogen peroxide the formation of  $\delta$ -amidoaldehydes is observed also with the homologous bases. The  $\delta$ -amidoaldehydes regenerate the piperidines with caustic potash, and lithium bisulphite form piperidine sulphonic acids (B. 28, 1459, 2273).

Chloric acid oxidizes piperidyl urethane (5) to  $\gamma$ -carbethoxyl-amidobutyric acid (6), yields  $\gamma$ -amidobutyric acid or piperidic acid with caustic potash.

Potassium permanganate oxidizes benzoyl piperidine (7) to  $\delta$ -benzoyl-amido-n-valeric acid (8), which is changed by caustic potash to  $\delta$ -amido-n-valeric acid (9) or piperidic acid (B. 17, 2544).

Piperidine and methyl iodide form dimethylpiperidinium iodide (10), which moist air converts into dimethylpiperidinium hydroxide (11). This breaks down, on heating, into dimethylpiperidine, the  $\Delta_1$ -pentenyl dimethylamine (12) and water. If dimethylpiperidine be converted into  $\Delta_1$ -pentenyl trimethylammonium hydroxide and the latter be distilled, it will break down into piperylene (1, 99) or [1,4-pentenylidene] (14), trimethylamine, and water (A. W. Hofmann, Ladenburg, B. 16, 2058; see the decomposition of the pyrrolidines, p. 461). The diagram affords a review of preceding decomposition-reactions:



Piperidine, being an imide base, is capable of forming a nitroso-compound, *n*-alkyl- and *n*-acid-derivatives:

**Nitrosopiperidine**,  $C_5H_{10}N \cdot NO$ , boiling at  $218^\circ$ , results from the action of nitrous acid upon piperidine. By reduction it becomes **Piperylhdyrazine**,  $C_5H_{10}N \cdot NH_2$ , boiling at  $146^\circ$ . See B. 30, 535, for the electrolytic reduction of nitrosopiperidine and the formation of dipiperidyl. ***n*-Methyl Piperidine**,  $C_5H_{10}N \cdot CH_3$ , boils at  $107^\circ$ . ***n*-Ethyl Piperidine** boils at  $128^\circ$ . ***n*, $\gamma$ -Brompropylpiperidine** and **trimethylene piperylium bromide**,  $C_6H_{10} : NBr < \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 \\ | \\ CH_2 \end{smallmatrix} > CH_3$ . See B. 29, 2389.

The great reactivity of piperidine with brom- and iod-benzenes, resulting in the production of *n*-phenylpiperidine (B. 21, 1921), is very peculiar. This power is very materially reduced in the case of *a*-methyl piperidine (B. 23, 1388).

***n*-Phenyl Piperidine**,  $C_5H_{10}NC_6H_5$ , boils at  $250^\circ$ . ***n*- $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Naphthyl Piperidine**, boiling at  $215^\circ$  and melting at  $56^\circ$ , are obtained without difficulty from the naphthols and piperidine (B. 29, 1175).

***n*-Acetyl Piperidine**,  $C_5H_{10}NCOCH_3$ , boils at  $226^\circ$ . ***n*-Benzoyl Piperidine**,  $C_5H_{10}NCO_2C_6H_5$ , melting at  $48^\circ$ , condenses when heated with benzaldehyde to dibenzylpyridine (p. 532). **Piperidyl Urethane**,  $C_5H_{10}NCO_2C_2H_5$ , boils at  $211^\circ$ . The oxidation of benzoyl piperidine and piperyl urethane leads to the rupture of the piperidine nucleus. See p. 539. **Piperine**, the alkaloid, is the piperide of piperic acid.

The *homologous piperidines* result when the homologous pyridines are reduced with sodium and alcohol. They are called **pipecolines**,  $C_5H_9(CH_2)_2NH$ , **lupetidines**,  $C_5H_9(CH_2)_3NH$ , **copellidines**,  $C_5H_9(CH_2)_4NH$ , etc. (compare B. 28, 2270.)

The alkyl piperidines contain asymmetric carbon atoms, hence different members of this class of bases have been decomposed, by means of their bitartrates, into optically active components—*e. g.*, ***a*-pipecoline** (B. 29, 43, 422), the **copellidine**, boiling at  $163^\circ$  (B. 29, 1959), obtained from aldehyde collidine, and  **$\beta$ -propyl piperidine**, boiling at  $174^\circ$  (B. 30, 1060), isomeric with conine, which has been synthetically prepared from *c*-chlor- $\beta$ -propylamylamine.

***a*,*a*'-Diphenyl Piperidine** melts at  $69^\circ$  (B. 30, 1499).

***n*-Methyl-*a*-pipecolyl Alkine**,  $C_5H_9[CH(OH)CH_3]NCH_3$ , boils at  $215^\circ$ , and ***n*-Methyl-*a*-vinyl piperidine**,  $C_5H_9(C_2H_5)NCH_3$ , boils at  $162^\circ$  (C. 1897, 1, 386).

**Triacetoneamine** and **vinyl diacetoneamine** (1, 219) are keto-derivatives of the piperidine series:



They are produced in the action of diacetoneamine upon acetone and benzaldehyde. The *oxime* of the vinyl diacetoneamine, melting at  $151^\circ$ , yields upon reduction, depending upon the prevailing conditions, two stereoisomeric

**$\gamma$ -Amidotrimethyl piperidines**,  $NH_2CII < \begin{smallmatrix} CH_2 - CH(CH_3) \\ | \quad \quad | \\ CH_2 - C(CH_3)_2 \end{smallmatrix} > NH$  (*a*-body melting at  $26^\circ$  and boiling at  $84$ – $86^\circ$  (20 mm.); the  *$\beta$ -body*, an oil, boiling at  $82$ – $84^\circ$  [22 mm.]), which nitrous acid changes to two stereoisomeric **vinyl diacetonealkamines**, or  **$\gamma$ -oxy-trimethyl piperidines**,  $C_5H_7N(OH)(CH_3)_3$ , melting at  $138^\circ$  and  $161^\circ$ . The latter is rearranged by sodium amylate into the first (A. 294, 336).

Sodium and alcohols reduce the pyridine carboxylic acids to *piperidine carboxylic acids*:

**Pipecolinic Acid**,  $C_5H_{10}N(COOH)$ , melting at  $261^\circ$ , is resolved by the bitartrates into *d*- and *l*-pipecolinic acids, melting at  $270^\circ$  (B. 29, 2887). **Hexahydroquinolinic Acid**,  $C_5H_9N(COOH)$ , has been obtained, similar to the hydrophthalic acids, in two stereo-isomeric forms, melting at  $227^\circ$  and  $253^\circ$ , of which each in the form of its *nitroso*-compound can be decomposed into two optically active forms (consult B. 29, 2665). **Hexahydrocinchomeronic acid** melts with decomposition at  $256^\circ$  (B. 29, 2187). **Eucaine**, derived from triacetoneamine, is an oxycarboxylic acid derivative of the piperidine series. It is a **tetramethyl-*n*-methyl- $\gamma$ -benzoxypiperidine- $\gamma$ -carboxylic ester**,  $(CH_3)_4N < \begin{smallmatrix} C(CH_3)_2 - CH_2 \\ | \quad \quad | \\ C(CH_3)_2 - CH_2 \end{smallmatrix} > C < \begin{smallmatrix} OCOC_2H_5 \\ | \\ COOCH_3 \end{smallmatrix}$ , which has been recommended as a substitute for cocaine as an anæsthetic (C. 1896, 11, 709).

*Conine*, or  $\alpha$ -propyl piperidine, *tropine*, and *ecgonine* are other important piperidine compounds. They are alkaloids or decomposition products of the latter. They will be discussed later, in the chapter relating to alkaloids.

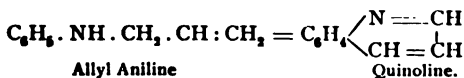
Condensed nuclei, obtained from pyridine, have been prepared in great numbers, and are arranged in the following groups: II. *Quinolines*. III. *Condensed Quinolines*—*e. g.*, naphthoquinolines, anthraquinolines, phenanthrolines, quinoquinolines. IV. *Isoquinolines*. V. *Phenanthridines*. VI. *Naphthyridines* and *Naphthinolines*. VII. *Acridines* (carbazacridines, quinacridines). VIII. *Anthrapyridines*. The alkaloids attach themselves as a distinct chapter to the preceding bodies.

## II. QUINOLINE GROUP.

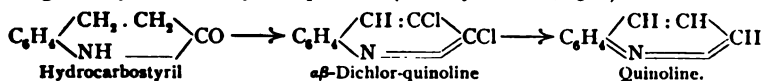
The quinoline bases, or benzopyridine group, occur with those of pyridine in bone-oil (coal-tar), and are obtained by distilling different alkaloids with lime. The parent substance of the group was first obtained by Gerhardt (1842) from the alkaloids quinine and cinchonine.

As regards synthetic methods, transpositions, and isomerides, quinoline is a naphthalene in which an  $\alpha$ -CH-group is replaced by N.

This was first shown by synthesizing quinoline from allyl aniline. This is perfectly analogous to the synthesis of naphthalene from phenyl butylene (p. 390) (Königs):



A more direct proof of the constitution of quinoline was effected through its formation from hydrocarbostyryl (p. 391);  $\text{PCl}_5$  converts the latter into a dichloride, which upon heating with hydriodic acid yields quinoline (A. Baeyer, B. 12, 1320):



A "diagonal formula" has been suggested for quinoline because of its production in the distillation of acridine:



Owing to the intimate genetic relations prevailing between the quinoline and pyridine derivatives we must assume for the pyridine nucleus of quinoline the same linkages as in pyridine itself (see p. 526). Furthermore, later researches upon the formation of quinoquinolines (p. 553) from quinolines afford additional proof against the "diagonal formula" (A. 273, 1).

### Isomerisms of the Quinoline Derivatives:

We represent the three replaceable hydrogen atoms of the pyridine nucleus in quinoline by  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ , and  $\gamma$ ; those of the benzene nucleus with 1, 2, 3, and 4.



The positions 1, 2, 3, referred to the N-atom, correspond to the ortho-, meta-, and para-positions of the benzene derivatives; 4 is known as the *Ana*-position. These positions are designated as the affinities of the benzene nucleus with o-, m-, p-, and a. Another nomenclature designates the affinities of the pyridine nucleus as Py-1, -2, and -3; those of the benzene nucleus as B-1, -2, -3, and -4. Consequently, seven mono-derivatives of quinoline are possible (B. 19, R. 443).

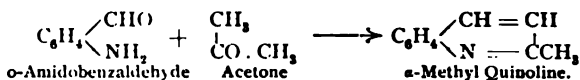
### Syntheses of the Quinoline Derivatives :

1. The condensation of the ortho-amido-compounds of such benzene derivatives as have an oxygen atom attached to the third carbon atom of the side-chain.

In this way we obtain quinoline from *o*-amido-cinnamic aldehyde,

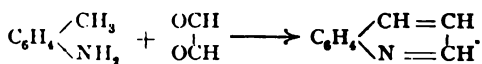
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NH}_2 \\ \diagup \\ \text{CH} : \text{CH} . \text{COH} \end{smallmatrix}$ ,  $\alpha$ -methyl-quinoline from *o*-amido-cinnamic methyl ketone, and  $\alpha$ -oxy-quinoline (carbostyryl) from *o*-amido-cinnamic acid.

2. The condensation of *o*-amidobenzaldehyde or *o*-amidobenzoketones with substances containing the group  $-\text{CH}_2-\text{CO}-$  (*e. g.*, aldehydes, ketones, acetoacetic ester, malonic ester) to quinolines by means of sodium hydroxide is dependent upon the intermediate formation of such *o* amido-derivatives (Friedländer, B. 16, 1833; 25, 1752):



$\gamma$ -Oxyquinolines are similarly formed from anthranilic acid (p. 211) with aldehydes, ketones, etc. (Ch. Zt. 17, Rep. 258; see also B. 28, 2809).

The synthesis of quinoline from *o*-toluidine and glyoxal and that of  $\beta$ -oxyquinoline from *o*-toluidine and pyroracemic ester are similar (B. 27, 628; 28, R. 743):



3. The production of quinoline and its derivatives substituted in the benzene nucleus by heating anilines with glycerol and sulphuric acid to about  $140^\circ$ , with the addition of nitrobenzene, or, better, arsenic acid (B. 29, 703) as the oxidizing agent. This method is of universal application, and can be very readily executed (Skraup):

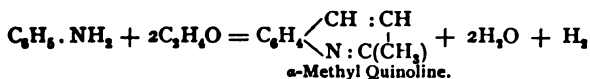


It is very probable that acrolein first results, this then combines with the aniline derivative yielding acrolein-aniline, which is oxidized to the quinoline derivative by the elimination of two hydrogen atoms by sulphuric acid. The halogen, nitro-, oxyanilines, toluidines, etc., behave similarly. The naphthylamines yield the naphthoquinolines; and the diamidobenzenes, the phenanthrolines.

Instead of using a mixture of the aromatic aniline and nitrobenzene, the corresponding nitro-body alone can be employed, which then is reduced in part by the hydrogen arising in the reaction. The first synthesis of this description was the preparation of alizarin blue (p. 554) from nitroalizarin (p. 427), glycerol, and sulphuric acid (A. 201, 333).

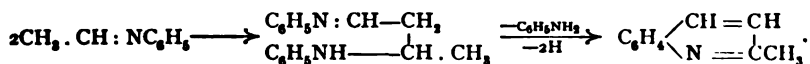
The following may be regarded as further generalizations of these syntheses :

4 (a). Quinolines substituted both in the benzene and pyridine nucleus are produced in the condensation of anilines with aldehydes, aided by sulphuric or hydrochloric acid (*Quinaldine syntheses* of Doebner and v. Miller). Aniline and acetaldehyde yield  $\alpha$ -methyl quinoline or quinaldine :



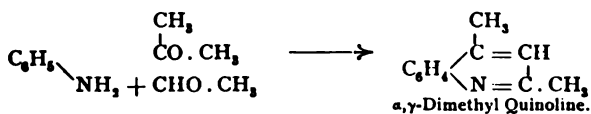
All aldehydes of the formula  $\text{CHO} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{R}$  react like acetaldehyde. The first step in the reaction consists in two molecules combining to unsaturated aldehydes,  $\text{CHO} \cdot \text{CR} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{R}$ , or condensing to aldols corresponding to them. These then act upon the anilines and form quinoline bases with a  $\text{CH}_2$ -group in the  $\alpha$ -position.

It is very probable that alkylidene anilines formed at first change to dimolecular, aldol-like condensation-products, which split off aniline and become quinaldines (B. 25, 2864; 29, 59; compare formation 2 of the indols, p. 466) :

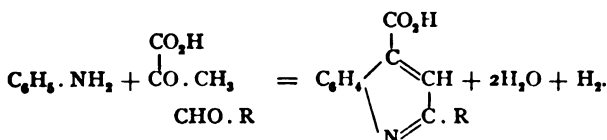


The hydrogen set free sometimes occasions a partial reduction of the reaction-product to tetrahydroquinoline derivatives (p. 550).

(b) Instead of two molecules of the same aldehyde, a mixture of two aldehydes, or an aldehyde with a ketone, may be used; in the latter case  $\alpha, \gamma$ -di- or  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma$ -trialkyl quinolines are formed (C. Beyer, B. 20, 1908)—*c. g.* :



(c)  $\alpha$ -Alkylcinchoninic acids ( $\alpha$ -alkyl-quinoline- $\gamma$ -carboxylic acids) are produced by the interaction of a mixture of pyroracemic acid and an aldehyde upon aniline (p. 549) (B. 281, 1) :



This is a reaction which, particularly when naphthylamine is substituted for aniline, proceeds so smoothly that the production of naphtho-cinchoninic acids may be applied as a test for the *detection of aldehydes in mixtures*. Pyroracemic acid alone, when heated with aniline, yields the  $\alpha$ -methyl quinoline- $\gamma$ -carboxylic acid (aniluvitonic acid), together with phenyl lutidone; this is because aldehyde is formed from one molecule of the pyroracemic acid.

5. Oxyquinoline derivatives are obtained from aniline derivatives of  $\beta$ -ketonic acids and  $\beta$ -dicarboxylic acids by a ring formation (L. Knorr, B. 17, R. 147; A. 236, 112).



When the quinolinium hydroxides are treated with alcohols, water splits off, and *alcoholates* ( $-\text{N}^{\text{H}} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{OR} \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ ) remain.

3. Quinoline, like pyridine, is but slightly attacked by nitric acid or chromic acid. Potassium permanganate, however, destroys the benzene nucleus in them, with production of  *$\alpha,\beta$ -pyridine dicarboxylic acid* (quinolinic acid, p. 536).

The homologous quinolines, containing the alkyl groups in the pyridine nucleus, and those containing the substituents in the benzene nucleus are oxidized by chromic acid in the presence of sulphuric acid to the corresponding quinoline carboxylic acids, while potassium permanganate, on the other hand, usually oxidizes those substituted in the benzene nucleus, with the formation of *pyridine polycarboxylic acids* (B. 23, 2252).

Potassium permanganate converts the  *$\alpha$ -alkyl quinolines*, by the destruction of their pyridine nucleus, into acid derivatives of  *$\alpha$ -amidobenzoic acid*. By this treatment  *$\alpha$ -phenyl quinoline* yields *benzoyl anthranilic acid* (B. 19, 1196).

The pyridine nucleus is similarly ruptured by the oxidation of the quinolinium compounds.

4. The pyridine nucleus of the quinolines, when reduced with zinc and hydrochloric acid, takes up four atoms of hydrogen, with the production of tetrahydroquinolines. Decahydroquinoline finally results by more energetic reduction.

The number of known quinoline derivatives is very great. To a certain extent they have a technical value as antiseptics, antipyretics, dyes, etc. Only the more important members of this group will receive consideration in the succeeding paragraphs.

**Quinoline**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7\text{N}$ , is a colorless, strongly refracting liquid, with penetrating odor, which possesses a powerful antiseptic action. It boils at  $239^\circ$ ; its sp. gr. = 1.095 at  $20^\circ$ . It occurs in bone-oil and coal-tar. It results when many alkaloids are distilled, and is best prepared synthetically by Skraup's method—*i. e.*, boiling a mixture of 38 grams aniline, 100 grams sulphuric acid, 24 grams nitrobenzene or arsenic acid, and 120 grams glycerol for several hours (B. 14, 1002; 27, 574; 29, 704).

It forms crystalline and very soluble salts with one equivalent of acids; the characteristic bichromate,  $(\text{C}_8\text{H}_7\text{N})_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7\text{H}_2$ , dissolves with difficulty and forms yellow needles, melting at  $165^\circ$ .

Its *iodmethylete*,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7\text{N} \cdot \text{ICH}_3$ , melting at  $72^\circ$ , is converted by sodium hydroxide into *n-methyldihydroquinoline* and *n-methyl- $\alpha$ -quinoline*.

**Quinoline betaine**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7\text{N} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{O}$ , melts at  $171^\circ$ . Its hydrochloride is formed from quinoline and chloracetic acid. *Di-, tetra-, hexa-, and decahydroquinoline* result from the reduction of quinoline (p. 551).

**Homologous Quinolines.**—The seven isomeric *methyl quinolines* are all known. The four quinolines, methylated in the benzene nucleus, sometimes called *toluquinolines* or *methylbenzquinolines*, are obtained by the reaction of Skraup from the three toluidines: *o*-methyl quinoline boils at  $248^\circ$ , the *para* at  $257^\circ$ , the *meta* at  $248^\circ$ , and the *one* at  $250^\circ$ .

**$\alpha$ -Methyl-quinoline, Quinaldine,  $C_9H_7N(CH_3)$** , boiling at  $247^\circ$ , occurs in coal-tar (25 per cent.) (B. 16, 1082). It is produced by the various synthetic methods, by the reduction of  $\gamma$ -oxyquinaldine, and by fusing ethyl acetanilide,  $C_6H_5N(C_2H_5) \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$ , with zinc chloride (B. 23, 1903). It may also be obtained by digesting aniline, paraldehyde, and crude hydrochloric acid for several hours (B. 16, 2465).

Chromic acid oxidizes it to  $\alpha$ -quinoline carboxylic acid (see p. 545).

The  $CH_3$ -group of quinaldine is very reactive. It enters readily into condensation products with aldehydes (paraffin or benzene class) (B. 20, 2041). It combines with formaldehyde to  *$\alpha$ -oxethyl quinoline*, which by loss of water forms  *$\alpha$ -vinylquinoline*,  $C_9H_6(C_2H_3)N$  (B. 27, 2689). Chloral yields the compound,  $C_9H_6N \cdot CH : CH \cdot CCl_2$ , melting at  $144^\circ$ ; boiling potassium carbonate converts it into  $\alpha$ -quinoline acrylic acid,  $C_9H_6N \cdot CH : CH \cdot CO_2H$ , while potassium permanganate oxidizes it to  $\alpha$ -quinoline aldehyde,  $C_9H_6N \cdot CHO$ . Hydrobromic acid and soda convert quinoline acrylic acid into  $\alpha$ -quinoline-lactic acid (B. 21, R. 635; 28, R. 752). Consult B. 22, 271, upon quinoline acrylic acids and quinoline aldehydes. Quinaldine, oxalic ester, and sodium ethylate yield *quinaldine oxalic acid*,  $(C_9H_6N)CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot COOH$  (B. 30, 1479). Quinaldine and phthalic anhydride yield a beautiful yellow dye—*quinophthalone* or *quinoline yellow*,  $C_9H_6(C_6O_4) : CH \cdot N \cdot C_9H_6$  (p. 240), melting at  $235^\circ$ . The sodium salt of its sulphonic acid is the quinoline yellow of commerce. It dyes silk and cotton a beautiful yellow.

See B. 29, 187, for the action of quinaldine upon phthalaldehydic acids.

**$\beta$ -Methyl Quinoline,  $C_9H_6(CH_3)N$**  (B. 20, 1916), boils at  $250^\circ$  and melts at  $10$ – $14^\circ$ .

**$\gamma$ -Methyl-quinoline, Lepidine**, occurs, together with quinoline and quinaldine, in coal-tar, and is obtained on distilling cinchonine with caustic potash. It may be synthetically prepared. It boils at  $257^\circ$ . Chromic acid oxidizes both methyl quinolines to the corresponding quinoline monocarboxylic acids. Potassium permanganate produces pyridine tricarboxylic acids.

**$\alpha, \beta$ -Dimethyl Quinoline,  $C_9H_6(CH_3)_2N$** , boils at  $261^\circ$  (B. 22, 267).

**$\alpha, \gamma$ -Dimethyl Quinoline**, boiling at  $266^\circ$ , is made from acetyl acetone and aniline, as well as from dihydrotrimethyl quinoline, which is produced by the interaction of indol and methyl iodide (p. 550).

**$\beta, \gamma$ -Dimethyl Quinoline**, from  $\beta, \gamma$ -dimethyl carbostyryl, melts at  $65^\circ$  and boils at  $290^\circ$ . *o*- and *p*-Toluquinaldine,  $C_9H_6(CH_3)_2N$  (B. 23, 3483).

**$\alpha$ -Ethyl Quinoline,  $C_9H_6(C_2H_5)N$** , boils at  $255$ – $260^\circ$ ,  **$\beta$ -Ethyl Quinoline** at  $265^\circ$ . They result on heating ethyl quinolinium iodide to  $250^\circ$  (analogous to the formation of alkyl pyridines, p. 528).  **$\gamma$ -Ethyl Quinoline** boils at  $270$ – $275^\circ$ .

Consult B. 21, R. 138, upon the trimethyl-quinolines.

**$\alpha$ -Phenyl-quinoline,  $C_9H_6(C_6H_5)N$** , is obtained from cinnamic aldehyde and aniline upon heating them with hydrochloric acid to  $200^\circ$ . It melts at  $84^\circ$  and boils above  $300^\circ$ . Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to benzoyl anthranilic acid.  **$\beta$ -Phenyl-quinoline** is an oil, which solidifies on cooling (B. 16, 1836).

**$\gamma$ -Phenyl-quinoline** is formed from its acid. It melts at  $61^\circ$ . It is closely related to the quinia alkaloids (B. 20, 622). See B. 27, 907 (p. 571), for  $\gamma$ -Quinoline Phenols.

**Nitrophenyl Quinoline,  $NO_2C_6H_4 \cdot C_9H_6N$** , melting at  $159^\circ$ , is formed from isodiazonitrobenzene and quinoline (B. 29, 168).

**$\gamma$ -Phenyl- $\alpha$ -Methyl Quinoline,  $\gamma$ -phenyl quinaldine,  $C_9H_6(C_6H_5)(CH_3)N$** , results by the condensation of benzoyl acetone with aniline (B. 20, 1771). It melts at  $99^\circ$  and yields  $\gamma$ -phenyl quinoline- $\alpha$ -carboxylic acid when its phthalone is oxidized with chromic acid. This new acid affords  $\gamma$ -phenyl quinoline.

**$\alpha$ -Phenyl- $\gamma$ -methyl Quinoline** is produced (B. 19, 1036) by distilling flavenol with zinc-dust. It melts at  $65^\circ$ .

Its *p*-amido-derivative, **Flavaniline**, applied as a beautiful yellow dye (B. 15, 1500), is  **$\alpha$ -Amidophenyl- $\gamma$ -methyl-quinoline,  $C_9H_6(CH_3)(C_6H_4NH_2)N$** . It results in the condensation of *o*-amido-acetophenone and *p*-amido-acetophenone when digested with zinc chloride (B. 19, 1038). Its monacid salts are yellow in color and have been used as dyes (B. 15, 1500). Nitrous acid converts it into so-called **Flavenol,  $C_9H_6(C_6H_4OH)(CH_3)N$** , *a, p*-Phenyl- $\gamma$ -methyl-quinoline.

Various isomeric diquinolines,  $(C_9H_6N)_2$ , have been prepared by boiling quinoline with sodium; further, by conducting its vapors through tubes heated to redness, and finally from benzidine and other diamidodiphenylenes through Skraup's quinoline synthesis (M. 8, 121; B. 17, 1965; 20, 634, etc.).

**Diquinolyl Quinoline**,  $C_9H_5N \cdot C_9H_5N \cdot C_9H_5N$ , melting at  $151^\circ$ , is formed from  $\gamma$ -acetacetyl quinoline,  $C_9H_5N \cdot COCH_2COCH_3$  (p. 549), with two molecules of *o*-amido-benzaldehyde (B. 29, R. 845).

**Triquinolyl Methane**,  $CH(C_9H_5N)_3$ , melting at  $202^\circ$ , is obtained from pararosani-line by the reaction of Skraup (B. 24, 1606, 2267). Consult p. 357 for the opinion that *aldehyde green* is a quinoline derivative.

**Halogen, Sulpho-, and Nitro-derivatives of the Quinolines.**—All those containing the substituents in the benzene nucleus are prepared by the methods in use for the introduction of such groups into benzene and naphthalene. Or the corresponding substituted benzene derivatives are subjected to the quinoline syntheses given on p. 544. It is more difficult to introduce the halogens, the nitro- or the sulpho-groups into the pyridine nucleus of quinoline. Py-chlorine derivatives of quinoline are chiefly made by the action of  $PCl_5$  upon py-oxyquinolines. The ready mobility of the halogen atoms occupying the  $\alpha$ - or  $\gamma$ -positions in quinoline is very remarkable. They can be easily replaced by OH, NHR, etc.

**$\alpha$ -Chlor-quinoline**,  $C_9H_6ClN$ , melting at  $38^\circ$  and boiling at  $267^\circ$ , is prepared from carbostyrl and  $PCl_5$  (B. 15, 333).  **$\beta$ -Chlor-quinoline**, boiling at  $255^\circ$ , is produced from quinoline and sulphur chloride, along with the compound  $(C_9H_5N)_2S_2$  and trichlor-quinoline (B. 29, 2456).  **$\alpha$ -Brom-quinoline** melts at  $49^\circ$  (J. pr. Ch. [2], 41, 41).  **$\alpha$ -Brom-quinoline**, melting at  $13^\circ$  and boiling at  $276^\circ$ , results from the action of sulphur bromide upon quinoline or by heating quinoline hydrochloride with bromine (B. 27, R. 732; 25, R. 422; 29, 2459).  **$\gamma$ -Chlor-quinoline**, melting at  $34^\circ$ , is obtained from kynurine and also from  $\gamma$ -amidoquinoline (B. 27, R. 748).  **$\gamma$ -Brom-quinoline** results when  $PBr_5$  acts upon kynurine (B. 27, R. 732).  **$\alpha$ -Iod-quinoline Iodmethylate**,  $C_9H_6IN \cdot ICH_3$ , melting at  $212^\circ$ , is produced when methyl iodide acts upon  $\alpha$ -chlor-quinoline (A. 282, 376).  **$\alpha$ -Methyl- $\beta$ -chlor-quinoline**, melting at  $72^\circ$ , is produced from methyl ketol,  $CCl_3H$  and sodium alcoholate (B. 21, 1942).  **$\alpha, \beta$ -Dichlor-quinoline**, melting at  $105^\circ$ , results in the action of  $PCl_5$  upon hydrocarbostyrl.  **$\alpha, \beta, \gamma$ -Trichlorquinoline**,  $C_9H_3Cl_3N$ , melting at  $107^\circ$ , is formed from malonanilic acid and  $PCl_5$  (B. 17, 737) (p. 544).

**Amido-quinolines**, substituted in benzene nucleus, are produced in the reduction of the corresponding nitroquinolines. The py- $\alpha$ - and  $\gamma$ -amido-quinolines result upon heating  $\alpha$ - or  $\gamma$ -chlor- (brom-) quinolines with amines.

**$\alpha$ -Amido-quinoline**,  $C_9H_6(NH_2)N$ , melting at  $114^\circ$ , is produced by the reducing-decomposition of  *$\alpha$ -phenylhydrazide-quinoline*,  $C_9H_6(NH \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_5)N$ , the reaction product of phenylhydrazine and  $\alpha$ -chlorquinoline. The oxidation of phenylhydrazido-quinoline produces  *$\alpha$ -phenylazoquinoline*,  $C_9H_6(N : NC_6H_5)N$  (B. 24, 2819).

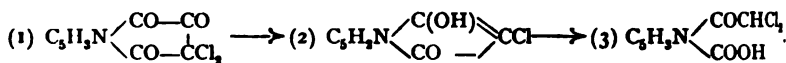
**$\alpha$ -Amidoquinoline Iodmethylate**,  $C_9H_6(NH_2)N \cdot ICH_3$ , melting at  $247^\circ$ , is formed directly from ammonia and  $\alpha$ -iod-quinoline iodmethylate (A. 282, 380).  **$\alpha$ -Phenylamido-quinoline**,  $C_9H_6(NHC_6H_5)N$ , melting at  $98^\circ$ , results upon heating  $\alpha$ -chlorquinoline and aniline to  $200^\circ$  (B. 18, 1532).  **$\gamma$ -Amido-quinoline**, melting at  $142$ – $144^\circ$ , is formed when bromine and caustic potash act upon cinchoninamide (see amidopyridines, p. 533).  **$\gamma$ -Amido-quinaldine**,  $C_9H_6(CH_2)(NH_2)N$ , melts at  $270^\circ$  (B. 21, 1980). ***p*-Methoxy- $\gamma$ -amidoquinoline**,  $C_9H_5(OCH_3)(NH_2)N$ , melting at  $120^\circ$ , results when potassium hypobromite acts upon the amide of quinic acid (B. 29, R. 674).

**Oxyquinolines.**—The oxyquinolines manifest the character both of bases and of phenols. Those containing the hydroxyl in the benzene nucleus, called also quino-phenols or oxybenzquinolines, are synthesized from the three amidophenols by Skraup's and Döbner-Müller's reactions; also by reduction of the Bz-nitroquinolines, or from the quinoline sulphonic acids by fusion with caustic potash (B. 28, R. 912).

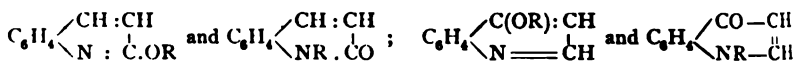
**1-Oxyquinoline**,  $C_9H_7(OH) : (C_3H_5N)$ , is most readily prepared from 1-quinoline sulphonic acid (B. 16, 712). It melts at  $75^\circ$  and boils at  $266^\circ$ . From it is obtained **1-Ethoxy-4-acetamidquinoline**, analgen,  $C_9H_7(OC_2H_5)(NH \cdot COCH_3) : (C_3H_5N)$ , melting at  $155^\circ$ , which has been recommended for the alleviation of pain. ***p*-Oxyquino-**

line, melting at  $194^{\circ}$ , results from the exit of carbon dioxide from xanthoquinic acid (p. 550).

The Bz-oxyquinolines, when acted upon in glacial acetic acid solution (Zincke's method), are converted, like the naphthols, into chlorinated quinoline-quinones, which (similar to the conversion of naphthalene derivatives into indenones) are rearranged to pyridine-derivatives of a condensed pyridine and indene ring. Thus, from p-oxyquinoline and chlorine by various transformations of the primary reaction-products, dichlortriketotetrahydroquinoline (1) results. This, on boiling with water, becomes  $\beta$ -chlor- $\alpha$ -oxypyridone (2), from which dichloracetopicolinic acid (3) is obtained by rupture of the ring (A. 290, 321):



The oxyquinolines, with hydroxyl in the pyridine nucleus, are more feeble bases and phenols than the oxybenzquinolines. As in the case of the oxypyridines or pyridones (p. 534), it is undetermined whether the hydroxyl- or keto-form should be given to the oxyquinolines of the  $\alpha$ - and  $\gamma$ -positions. Ethers, however, of the two forms—*e. g.*, *carbostyryl* and *pseudocarbostyryl*—exist:



$\alpha$ -Oxyquinoline, Carbostyryl,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_5\text{ON} (+ \text{H}_2\text{O})$ , the lactime or lactam of o-amido-cinnamic acid (p. 214), is most readily obtained by the reduction of o-nitro-cinnamic ester (B. 14, 1916). It may also be prepared from  $\alpha$ -chlorquinoline by heating it with water, and by digesting quinoline with a bleaching lime solution (B. 21, 619). It melts at  $199^{\circ}$ .

Water decomposes its salts with alkalis and acids. Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to oxalyl anthranilic acid,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{COOH} \\ \diagdown \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$ . Sodium and alcohol reduce it to tetrahydroquinoline.

*Carbostyryl Methyl Ether*, boiling at  $247^{\circ}$ , and the *ethyl ether*, boiling at  $256^{\circ}$ , or *n*-methoxy- and *ethoxy-quinolines*, are oils. They are produced by the action of the alkyl iodides upon the Na- or Ag-salts of carbostyryl, by the action of sodium alcoholates upon  $\alpha$ -chlorquinolines, and when o-amidocinnamic esters are digested with alcoholic zinc chloride.

The *pseudocarbostyryl ethers*—the *methyl*, melting at  $71^{\circ}$ ; and the *ethyl*, at  $54^{\circ}$ —are produced by the action of the alkyl iodides upon free carbostyryl in the presence of alkalis. Also when sodium hydroxide acts upon methyl- and ethyl-quinolinium iodide (p. 544). *n*-Methyl quinolon is also produced when ethoxyquinoline is heated with methyl iodide (B. 30, 930).

1-Nitrocarbostyryl,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_5(\text{NO}_2)\text{ON}$ , melting at  $168^{\circ}$ , results from the action of alcoholic ammonia upon nitrocoumarin. 3-Oxycarbostyryl, melting beyond  $300^{\circ}$ , is formed by the condensation of 6-amido-m-coumaric acid, which is produced in the electrolytic reduction of o-nitrocinnamic acid.

$\gamma$ -Methyl- $\alpha$ -oxyquinoline,  $\gamma$ -Methyl Carbostyryl, or *Lepidone*,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_6(\text{CH}_3)\text{ON}$ , melting at  $223^{\circ}$  and boiling at  $270^{\circ}$  (17 mm.), is obtained from acetoacetanilide (p. 544). Its lactime ether,  $\alpha$ -Methoxy- $\gamma$ -methyl quinoline, boiling at  $276^{\circ}$ , results when  $\text{NaOCH}_3$  acts upon  $\alpha$ -chlorlepidine. The lactam ether: *n*-methyl lepidone, melting at  $131^{\circ}$ , is prepared from acetoacetic ester and methyl aniline (p. 543), and by heating ethoxylepidine with methyl iodide (B. 30, 931).

$\beta$ -Oxy- $\alpha$ -methyl Quinoline,  $\gamma$ -Oxyquinaldine,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_6(\text{CH}_3)\text{ON} (+ 2\text{H}_2\text{O})$ , melting at  $231^{\circ}$ , from  $\beta$ -anilido-crotonic ester (p. 543), also forms two isomeric ethers:

*γ*-Methoxyquinaldine, boiling at 298°, and *n*-methyl quinaldine, melting at 175° (B. 22, 78). With methyl iodide both ethers yield the same *iodomethylate*,

$$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \text{C}(\text{OCH}_3) = \text{CH} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{N}(\text{ICH}_3) = \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$$
 which upon heating or treatment with alkalis becomes *n*-methyl quinaldine (B. 30, 922). Compare the similar behavior of methoxyphenyl-methyl pyrazole and antipyrine.

*γ*-Oxyquinoline, Kynurine,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_6(\text{OH})\text{N}$ , is made by heating kynurenic acid (oxyquinoline carboxylic acid), and by oxidizing cinchonine and cinchoninic acid with chromic acid (B. 22, R. 758). It melts at 201°.  $\text{PCl}_5$  converts it into *γ*-chlorquinoline (B. 27, R. 748) (p. 547).

*p,γ*-Dioxyquinoline,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_6\text{O}_2\text{N}$ , results in the saponification of *p*-methoxykynurine, which is formed when nitrous acid acts upon *p*-methoxy-*γ*-amidoquinoline (B. 29, R. 675).

*α,γ*-Dioxyquinoline,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_6\text{O}_2\text{N}$ , sublimes. It is formed when caustic potash acts upon *γ*-bromcarbostyryl and upon digesting *α*-amidophenyl propiolic acid with  $\text{SO}_2\text{H}_2$  (B. 15, 2151) (p. 284). The reduction of its *β*-nitroso-derivative produces *α,β,γ*-trioxyquinoline,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_6\text{O}_3\text{N}$ , which ferric chloride oxidizes to quinisatinic acid (p. 261) and quinisatin or triketotetrahydroquinoline (B. 17, 985).

**Quinoline Aldehydes and Quinoline Ketones:**

*α*-Quinoline Aldehyde,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_6(\text{CHO})\text{N}$ , melting at 71°, is obtained from quinoline acrylic acid (p. 546) with potassium permanganate.

Py-Quinoline ketones are produced by synthetic method 2 (p. 542) from *o*-amidobenzaldehyde and *β*-diketones:

*β*-Acetyl Quinaldine,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_8(\text{CH}_3)(\text{COCH}_3)\text{N}$ , melts at 57.5° (B. 25, 1756.)

*β*-Acetyl Carbostyryl,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_8(\text{COCH}_3)\text{ON}$ , melting at 232°, is formed from *o*-amido-benzaldehyde and acetoacetic ester (B. 16, 1838).

*γ*-Acetacetyl Quinoline,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_7\text{N}(\text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3)$ , melting at 65° and boiling at 206° (17 mm.), is prepared from cinchoninic ester, acetone, and sodium ethylate. It condenses with phenylhydrazine to *phenylquinolylmethyl pyrazole*, melting at 120°, and with two molecules of *o*-amidobenzaldehyde to *diquinolyl quinoline* (p. 547; B. 29, R. 845).

**Quinoline Carboxylic Acids:** They exhibit the character of amido-acids. Those substituted in the benzene nucleus have been synthesized from the amido benzoic acids (B. 28, 2809), and are produced when *Bz*-alkyl quinolines are treated with chromic acid. The Py-quinoline carboxylic acids also result from the action of a chromic acid mixture upon Py-alkyl quinolines. The alkyl groups in the *γ*-position are most easily oxidized; the *β*- with more difficulty, and the alkyl groups in the *α*-position with the greatest difficulty (B. 23, 2254) (p. 544). When they are heated, carbon dioxide is expelled and the respective quinolines are produced. The acids, carrying the carboxyl in the *α*-position, are colored reddish-yellow by ferrous sulphate.

*o*-Quinoline Carboxylic Acid,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_6\text{N}(\text{COOH})$ , melts at 187°. The *meta*-acid melts at 248–250°. The *para*-acid melts at about 291°. The *ana*-acid melts at 360° (A. 237, 325; B. 19, R. 443, 548).

*α*-Quinoline Carboxylic Acid, Quinaldic Acid, crystallizes from hot water in needles containing 2H<sub>2</sub>O; it melts at 156°, and decomposes. It is obtained from quinaldine.

*β*-Quinoline Carboxylic Acid is also produced by heating *Acridic Acid*. It melts at 171°.

*γ*-Quinoline Carboxylic Acid, Cinchoninic Acid, was first produced upon oxidizing cinchonine with potassium permanganate or nitric acid. It contains 1 or 2H<sub>2</sub>O (B. 20, 1609). It melts at 254°. It readily affords quinoline; potassium permanganate oxidizes it to *α,β,γ*-pyridine tricarboxylic acid.

*α*-Alkyl Cinchoninic Acids result from the condensation of aldehydes with pyroracemic acid and anilines (B. 22, R. 23; A. 281, 1) (p. 543).

*α*-Methyl Cinchoninic Acid, Aniluvitonic Acid,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_8(\text{CH}_3)(\text{COOH})\text{N} (+ \text{H}_2\text{O})$ , is obtained by the condensation of pyroracemic acid with aniline (p. 84) (B. 22, 1769). It melts at 240°, and breaks down.

*α*-Methyl-quinoline-*β*-carboxylic Acid results from the condensation of *o*-amido-benzaldehyde with acetoacetic ester (p. 543), and melts at 234° with decomposition.

**Acridic Acid,  $\alpha,\beta$ -Quinoline-dicarboxylic Acid,  $C_9H_6N(COOH)_2$ ,** is produced when acridine is oxidized with potassium permanganate, just as quinoline yields  $\alpha,\beta$ -pyridine dicarboxylic acid. It crystallizes in needles with  $2H_2O$ , or plates with  $1H_2O$ , and decomposes at  $120-130^\circ$ .

**$\alpha,\gamma$ -Quinoline-dicarboxylic Acid** results when  $\alpha$ -cinnameryl-cinchoninic acid is oxidized with potassium permanganate (B. 22, 3009). It melts at  $246^\circ$  with decomposition.

**Oxyquinoline Carboxylic Acids:**

**$\alpha$ -Oxyquinoline- $\beta$ -carboxylic Acid,  $C_9H_6(OH)(COOH)N$ ,** results in the condensation of o-amido benzaldehyde with malonic acid (p. 543) and melts above  $320^\circ$ .

**$\alpha$ -Oxyquinoline- $\gamma$ -carboxylic Acid** is formed on melting cinchoninic acid with potash. It melts at  $310^\circ$  and decomposes. Both acids decompose into  $CO_2$  and carbostyryl on heating their silver salts.

**Kynurenic Acid** is a  $\gamma$ -oxyquinoline carboxylic acid. It occurs in the urine of dogs after the ingestion of meat. It contains  $1H_2O$  and melts at  $257^\circ$ . Fusion with caustic potash converts it into  $CO_2$  and kynurine.

**$\rho$ -Oxyquinoline- $\gamma$ -carboxylic Acid,  $C_9H_6(OH)N(CO_2H)(+H_2O)$ , *Xanthoquinic acid*,** results on fusing parasulphocinchoninic acid with KOH. It melts at  $320^\circ$  with decomposition. Its *methyl phenol ether*, **Quinic Acid,  $C_9H_6(O \cdot CH_3)N(CO_2H)$ ,** is obtained by oxidizing quinine and quinidine with chromic acid in sulphuric acid solution. It melts at  $280^\circ$ .

**$\gamma$ -Oxyquinaldine- $\beta$ -carboxylic Acid,  $C_9H_6(CH_3)ON(COOH)$ ,** melting at  $245^\circ$  with decomposition, results in the condensation of anthranilic acid with acetoacetic ester (B. 27, 1396).

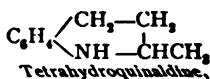
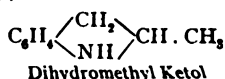
#### HYDROQUINOLINES.

*Dihydroquinolines* are obtained on treating alkyl quinolinium iodides with sodium hydroxide. Thus, the iodmethylete of cinchoninic acid yields *n-methyl dihydrocinchoninic acid*,  $C_9H_7: [C_9H_6(COOH)N \cdot CH_3]$ , along with *n-methyl quinolon- $\gamma$ -carboxylic acid* (A. 282, 365; compare B. 25, 3326). These substances are, however, very easily altered.

Methyl iodide and trimethyl indol (p. 468) yield a base having the formula of a *trimethyl dihydroquinoline*,  $C_9H_8N(CH_3)_3$ , boiling at  $244^\circ$ , which, however, upon the distillation of its iodmethylete again affords trimethyl indol, and by oxidation trimethyl indolinone (p. 471). It is reduced to a base having the formula of a *trimethyl tetrahydroquinoline*,  $C_9H_{10}N(CH_3)_3$ , which is also convertible into a dimethyl quinoline, but in other respects exhibits a behavior different from that of other tetrahydroquinolines (B. 29, 2460).

*Ketodihydroquinolines* or *quinolons* are the n-alkyl ethers of the oxyquinolines (p. 548).

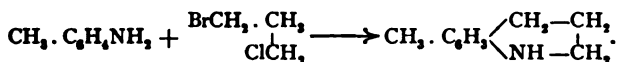
**Tetrahydroquinolines:** These are produced when the quinolines are reduced with tin and hydrochloric acid, or with sodium and alcohol. The pyridine nucleus then takes up four hydrogen atoms. This procedure changes the chemical nature of the quinolines very materially. *The tetrahydroquinolines behave like secondary fatty-aromatic amines.* Nitrous acid converts them into n-nitrosamines, which readily rearrange themselves to Bz.p-nitrosamines. With the salts of diazobenzene they yield diazoamido-compounds, which readily pass over into p-azophenyl derivatives. This alteration in the chemical character of quinoline is similar to that seen in the indols by their change to dihydroindols (p. 471). The tetrahydroquinolines are to be regarded as ring-homologues of the dihydroindols:



whereas the basal substances, the indols and the quinolines, behave very differently. The tetrahydroquinolines are oxidized to quinolines again by chromic acid, silver acetate, or  $\text{Hg}(\text{NO}_3)_2$  (B. 27, 824).

**Tetrahydroquinoline**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{11}\text{N}$ , boiling at  $244^\circ$ , is liquid at the ordinary temperature. It is formed when tin and hydrochloric acid act upon quinoline and  $\alpha$ - and  $\gamma$ -chloroquinolines; also by the action of sodium and alcohol upon carbostyryl (B. 23, 1142). Nitrous acid converts it into a nitroso-body, which is easily rearranged to *p*-nitroso-tetrahydroquinoline, melting at  $134^\circ$  (B. 16, 732). With benzoyl chloride it forms *n*-benzoyl-tetrahydroquinoline, melting at  $75^\circ$ ; with methyl iodide, *n*-Methyl tetrahydroquinoline, **isoline**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{13}\text{N} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , boiling at  $245^\circ$ , which is said to have the same action as **isoline** (a febrifuge); the hydrochloride of *o*-oxy-*n*-methyltetrahydroquinoline,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_9(\text{OH})\text{N} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , melting at  $114^\circ$ , and thallin, the sulphate of *p*-methoxytetrahydroquinoline,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_9(\text{OCH}_3)\text{NH}$ , melting at  $42^\circ$  and boiling at  $283^\circ$ , and possessing the action of a febrifuge.

**Tetrahydrotoluquinoline**,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C}_8\text{H}_9$ ; [ $\text{C}_9\text{H}_9\text{N}$ ], boiling at  $257^\circ$ , is produced on boiling toluidine with trimethylene chlorobromide (B. 24, 2061; 25, 2805):



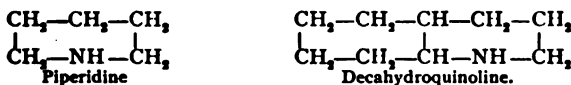
The nitroso-compound melts at  $51^\circ$ ; the benzene-diazo-body at  $99^\circ$ .

**Tetrahydroquinaldine**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_9 \begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{NH} - \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$ , boiling at  $247^\circ$ , is also produced

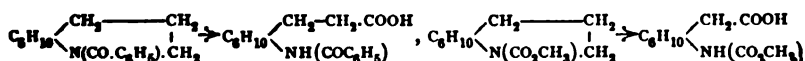
in the reduction of *o*-nitrophenethylmethyl ketone,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{l} \text{NO}_2 \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COCH}_2$  (B. 14, 890). It is changed to benzoylamido-phenylacrylic acid when its benzoyl derivative is oxidized. It has an asymmetric C-atom, and by means of its bitartrate it is resolved into two optically active components (B. 27, 77). The  $\delta$ -lactams of *o*-amidophenyl fatty acids—*e. g.*, Hydrocarbostyryl, or *o*-amido-phenylpropionic acid lactam, are keto-derivatives of tetrahydroquinoline. Hydrocarbostyryl has been obtained by the Beckmann rearrangement of  $\alpha$ -hydrindone oxime (p. 387), as well as from its acid,  $\beta$ -hydrocarbostyryl carboxylic acid,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_9\text{NO}(\text{COOH})$ , melting at  $146^\circ$  with decomposition. Its ester results in the reduction of nitrobenzyl malonic ester (B. 29, 665). See pp. 253, 255, 256, for oxyhydrocarbostyryl. Quinisatine, or *o*-amido-benzoyl glyoxylic acid lactam, is triketotetrahydroquinoline.

**Hexa- and Decahydroquinolines**: When quinoline or tetrahydroquinoline is heated to high temperatures with hydriodic acid and phosphorus, the benzene nucleus also takes up hydrogen, and the reaction-product yields, in addition to a little hexahydroquinoline,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{13}\text{N}$ , boiling at  $226^\circ$  (B. 27, 1459), and other products:

**Decahydroquinoline**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{15}\text{N}$ , melting at  $48^\circ$  and boiling at  $204^\circ$ . It is a very volatile, strongly alkaline substance, which has an odor astonishingly like that of conine. While tetrahydroquinoline resembles the mixed fatty aromatic bases, decahydroquinoline manifests the properties of a secondary amine of the aliphatic series. It is the piperidine of the quinoline group:



When its benzoyl- and urethane-derivatives are oxidized, decahydroquinoline sustains decompositions similar to those of piperidine; the products are benzoylated *o*-amido-hexahydrophenylpropionic acid and the methyl urethane of *o*-amido-hexahydrophenylacetic acid:

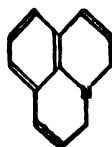


Free *o*-amido-hexamethylenepropionic acid readily parts with water and becomes Decahydrocarbostryl,  $C_6H_{10}$   $\begin{matrix} CH_2-CH_2 \\ NH-CO \end{matrix}$  (p. 300) (B. 27, 1458).

Julole and lilole compounds are derivatives of hydroquinolines. They are probably derived from the hypothetical parent substances:



Lilole



Julole.

Lilole must be considered as a combination of the quinoline nucleus with the pyrrol nucleus, or of the pyridine nucleus with the indol nucleus, while julole is a combination of the quinoline nucleus with the pyridine nucleus.

Diketomethyl Lilolidine,  $CO-C_6H_3 \begin{matrix} CH_2 \\ N \\ CH \end{matrix} CH_3$ , is obtained from malonic ester and dihydromethyl ketol (p. 470). It has been described in connection with the latter.

Ketomethyl Juloline,  $(CH_3)_2C-C_6H_3 \begin{matrix} CH_2-CH_2 \\ N-CH_2 \\ HC-CO \end{matrix}$ , melting at  $130^\circ$ , is formed from tetrahydroquinoline and acetoacetic ester (B. 24, 845).

Julolidine,  $CH_2-C_6H_3 \begin{matrix} CH_2-CH_2 \\ N-CH_2 \\ CH_2-CH_2 \end{matrix}$ , melting at  $40^\circ$ , is produced on boiling tetrahydroquinoline with one molecule of trimethylene chlorbromide, or aniline with two molecules of trimethylene chlorbromide (B. 25, 2801). Both julole derivatives are bases, whereas diketojulolidine,  $CO-C_6H_3 \begin{matrix} CH_2-CH_2 \\ N-CH_2 \\ CH_2-CO \end{matrix}$ , obtained from tetrahydroquinoline and malonic ester, has only acid properties.

### III. CONDENSED QUINOLINES.

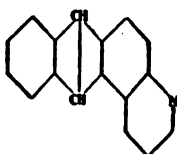
Condensations similar to those effected through aniline in the quinoline syntheses can be carried out with the higher aromatic amines—*e. g.*, naphthylamine, anthramine, the amidoquinolines, the phenylenediamines, etc. All these amines yield with glycerol (Skraup), or with aldehydes, etc. (Döbner-Miller, p. 543), higher condensed bases, containing the quinoline nucleus.

In these reactions the pyridine ring, as a rule, then attaches itself only to two such members of the benzene nucleus, which, according to the requirements of the Kekulé formula, are doubly linked (B. 26, R. 402; 27, R. 631). This would argue against the various centric and diagonal formulas which have been suggested for the derivatives of benzene and of pyridine.

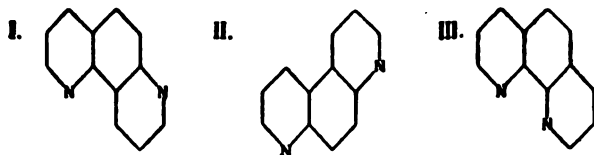
A.  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Naphthoquinolines are obtained from both naphthylamines:



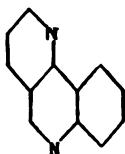
B. Anthraquinolines are formed from amidoanthracenes:



C. *m*- and *p*-Phenylenediamines yield *phenanthrolines* (I) and *pseudo-phenanthrolines* (II); a third isomeric *phenanthroline* (III) is obtained from *o*-amidoquinoline. For practical purposes these three isomerides may be distinguished as *o*-, *m*-, and *p*-phenanthrolines:



D. Quinoquinolines are obtained from the  $\gamma$ -amidoquinolines:



In their chemical behavior all of these bases resemble the quinolines.

A.  $\alpha$ -Naphthoquinoline,  $C_{12}H_9N$ , melts at  $52^\circ$  and boils at  $251^\circ$ .  $\beta$ -Naphthoquinoline melts at  $93^\circ$ . The latter is obtained from the  $\beta$ -naphthylamines substituted in the  $\alpha$ -position by bromine or  $NO_2$ , through the splitting-off of the substituents. Potassium permanganate converts the naphthoquinolines into two phenylpyridine dicarboxylic acids (p. 531). The hydrides of the naphthoquinolines are noteworthy. In using tin and hydrochloric acid the pyridine nucleus, as in the case of quinoline, is hydrogenized:

Tetrahydro-( $\alpha$ )-naphthoquinoline,  $C_{10}H_8$ ,  $\begin{matrix} CH_2-CH_2 \\ | \\ NH-CH_2 \end{matrix}$ , melting at  $46^\circ$ , and the  $\beta$ -body, melting at  $63^\circ$ , behave like *alkylic*  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -naphthylamines. Sodium and boiling amyl alcohol produce *ar*-Octahydro-( $\alpha$ )-naphthoquinoline,  $\begin{matrix} CH_2-CH_2 \\ | \\ CH_2-CH_2 \end{matrix} > C_6H_2 < \begin{matrix} CH_2-CH_2 \\ | \\ NH-CH_2 \end{matrix}$ , melting at  $48^\circ$  and boiling at  $216^\circ$  (37 mm.), and

the  $\beta$ -compound, melting at  $60^\circ$  and boiling at  $325^\circ$  (717 mm.). In these bodies not only the pyridine nucleus, but also the outer benzene nucleus, has taken up hydrogen atoms, which accounts for their *aromatic benzene amine*—alkylic aniline—character. From  $\beta$ -naphthoquinoline there is simultaneously formed an isomeric *ac-Octohydro-( $\beta$ )-*

naphthoquinoline,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4$ — $\text{CH}_2$ — $\text{CH}$ — $\text{CH}_2$ — $\text{CH}_2$ , melting at  $91^\circ$  and boiling at  $321^\circ$ , in which the middle benzene nucleus is hydrogenized. It therefore corresponds to decahydroquinoline and possesses the properties of a piperidine.

B. Anthraquinoline,  $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{11}\text{N}$ , melts at  $170^\circ$  and boils at  $446^\circ$ . Its solutions exhibit an intense blue fluorescence. Chromic acid oxidizes it to anthraquinone quinoline, corresponding to anthraquinone. Its dioxy-compound is

Alizarin Blue, Dioxyanthraquinone quinoline,

$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ — $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{CO} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix}$ — $\text{C}_6(\text{OH})_2$ — $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}=\text{CH} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{N}=\text{CH} \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $270^\circ$ . It consists of metallic, bluish-violet-colored needles. It is produced when m-nitro-alizarin or amido-alizarin is heated with glycerol and sulphuric acid (B. 18, 445; 29, 708). It unites with acids and bases to form salts. It occurs in trade in the form of a bluish-violet paste, and, like alizarin, is applied in dyeing. Since reducing agents decolorize it (zinc-dust, grape sugar) and it again separates on exposure to the air, it is adapted to the vat-dyeing.

By the action of sulphuric acid more hydroxyl groups are introduced into alizarin-blue. The products are *alizarin-blue green*, *alizarin-green*, *alizarin-indigo-blue*. These are mixtures of sulpho-acids of tri-, tetra-, and penta-oxyanthraquinone quinolines (B. 26, R. 711).

C. (m)-Phenanthroline,  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_8\text{N}_2$  (+  $2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ), melting at ( $65^\circ$ )  $78^\circ$ , is obtained from meta-diamidobenzene or 2-amidoquinoline (B. 16, 2519; 23, 1016). p-Phenanthroline, Pseudophenanthroline, is derived from p-diamidobenzene or amidoazobenzene with glycerol and sulphuric acid. It melts at  $173^\circ$ . Potassium permanganate oxidizes the phenanthrolines to  $\alpha,\beta$ - and  $\beta,\beta$ -dipyridyl dicarboxylic acids (B. 24, 2623).

a-Methyl-o-phenanthroline,  $\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_7(\text{CH}_3)\text{N}_2$  (+  $2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ), melting at ( $53^\circ$ )  $76^\circ$ , is prepared from 1-amidoquinoline (B. 22, 253).

D. a-Methyl- $\gamma$ -quinoquinoline,  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_7(\text{CH}_3)\text{N}_2$ , melting at  $206^\circ$  and boiling at  $360^\circ$ , is prepared from  $\gamma$ -amidoquinoline, glycerol, sulphuric acid, and nitrobenzene (B. 27, R. 632).

#### IV. ISOQUINOLINE GROUP.

While quinoline or benzopyridine results from pyridine by the attachment of the benzene nucleus to its carbon atoms occupying the  $\alpha,\beta$ -positions, the formula of the isomeric isoquinoline or isobenzopyridine is produced by the benzene nucleus joining itself to the  $\beta,\gamma$ -C-atoms of pyridine. Its *nitrogen* member is therefore separated from the benzene nucleus by a methine group:



Quinoline



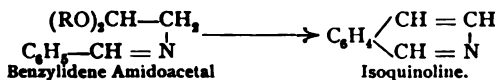
Isoquinoline.

This constitution seems evident from the oxidation of isoquinoline to  $\beta,\gamma$ -pyridine dicarboxylic acid, as well as from the methods by which it is obtained synthetically.

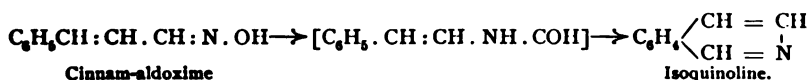
Quinoline is similar to isoquinoline in its deportment. It is found with it in coal-tar (Hoogewerff and van Dorpp, 1885). It is the mother substance of a class of important alkaloids belonging to the opium bases—*e. g.*, *papaverine*, *narcotine*, *hydrastine*, etc. (p. 578).

### Syntheses of Isoquinoline Derivatives :

1. Isoquinolines are produced by ring-formation from benzene compounds of the constitution  $C_6H_5-CH=N-C-CO$  or  $C_6H_5-CH=N-CO$ . For example, *isoquinolines* are formed on digesting benzylidene amidoacetal or benzylamidoacetaldehyde with sulphuric acid (B. 27, R. 628; 28, 764):

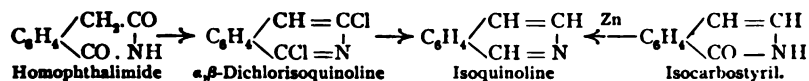


*a-Methyldihydroquinoline* (B. 26, 1904) is obtained from acetphenethylamide,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot NHCOCH_3$ . *Trichlorisoquinoline* is produced by the action of  $PCl_5$  upon *hippuramide*,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CONH_2$ , just as malonanilic acid,  $C_6H_5NH \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot COOH$ , under like treatment yields trichlorquinoline (p. 547). The formation of isoquinoline from cinnam-aldoxime and from benzylidene-acetoxime upon heating them with  $P_2O_5$  is remarkable (B. 27, 2795; 28, 818). It will be necessary to assume here an atomic rearrangement similar to that in the Beckmann transposition:



2. The linking oxygen atom in the lactones of the formula

$C_6H_5 \begin{array}{l} \diagup CR=CR_1 \\ \diagdown CO-O \end{array}$ , so-called isocoumarins, can readily be exchanged for the NH-group by means of cold aqueous ammonia. The products are isoquinolines or isocarbostyrls, which by successive treatment with  $PCl_5$  and HI and phosphorus, or with zinc-dust, are converted into isoquinolines. Homophthalides and homologous homophthalides, under similar treatment, are also changed to isoquinolines (B. 21, 2299; 25, 1138, 1493, 3563; 26, 1842):



**Isoquinoline**,  $C_9H_7N$ , melting at  $23^\circ$  and boiling at  $240.5^\circ$ , is very similar to quinoline. It occurs, together with ordinary quinoline, in the crude quinoline from coal-tar. It is separated from the accompanying compounds by the crystallization of the sulphates (B. 18, R. 384). In addition to the methods given above it is also produced by distilling benzylidene ethylamine,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH:N \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3$ , through tubes heated to redness (B. 25, 734). Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to phthalic acid (destroying the pyridine nucleus) and  $\beta,\gamma$ -pyridine dicarboxylic acid (by destroying the benzene nucleus).

Alkyl phthalic acid imides are produced from the halogen alkyl addition products of isoquinoline (B. 21, R. 786).

Its *iodmethylate*,  $C_9H_7N \cdot ICH_3$ , melting at  $159^\circ$ , is changed, like the quinolinium and pyridinium iodides (p. 530), by potassium ferricyanide and sodium hydroxide into *n-methyl isoquinolon* (B. 26, R. 270). Nitric acid changes isoquinoline into a *12-nitroisoquinoline*, melting at  $110^\circ$  (B. 29, R. 792). *2,3-Methylene Dioxisoquinoline*,  $(CH_2O)_2C_9H_7N$ , melting at  $124^\circ$ , is obtained from piperonal acetalamine,

and upon reduction yields tetrahydro-2,3-methylenedioxyisoquinoline or hydrohydrazine (p. 578; A. 286, 1).

Bz-1- and 3-Methyl Isoquinolines, boiling at 258° and melting at 83°, and boiling at 264°, are prepared from o- and p-methylbenzylidene amidoacetal (C. 1897, 1, 865).

*α*-Methyl Isoquinoline,  $C_9H_8(CH_3)N$ , boiling at 248° (its sulphate at 247°), results from the action of sulphuric acid upon acetophenone amidoacetal (B. 27, R. 628). It is probably identical with the methyl isoquinoline isolated from *papaveroline* (B. 23, R. 653). *β*-Methyl Isoquinoline, melting at 68° and boiling at 246°, is produced when methyl isocarbostyryl is distilled with zinc-dust. *γ*-Methyl Isoquinoline, boiling at 256°, is formed when dimethylhomophthalimide is distilled with zinc-dust (B. 21, 2300). *β*-Ethyl Isoquinoline,  $C_9(C_2H_5)H_8N$ , boiling at 256°, and *β*-Phenyl Isoquinoline,  $C_9(C_6H_5)H_8N$ , melting at 104°, are obtained from ethyl- and phenyl-isocarbostyryl (B. 25, 3573; 27, 2237). *α*-Phenyl Isoquinoline, melting at 88°, is derived from benzophenone imido-acetal,  $(C_6H_5)_2C:NCH_2CH(OC_6H_5)_2$  (C. 1897, 1, 865).

A beautiful red dye—Quinoline Red—is produced by condensing benzotrichloride with quinaldine and isoquinoline when they are heated with zinc chloride. This compound has a constitution analogous to that of malachite green (B. 20, 4).

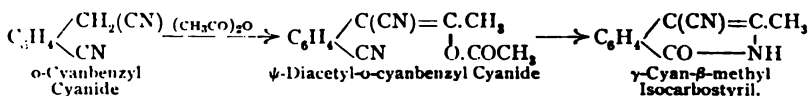
In addition to its coloring properties, it possesses the remarkable power of rendering photographic plates orthochromatic.

Isoquinolines, with halogens in the pyridine nucleus, result when  $PCl_5$  acts upon the isocarbostyryls (below) and homophthalimides (p. 244). Chlorine atoms in the *α* position have the same reactivity as the chlorine atoms in the *α*- or *γ*-position of quinoline (p. 547).

*β*-Chloroquinoline,  $C_9H_6ClN$ , melting at 48° and boiling at 281°, is produced by the partial reduction of *α,β*-dichloroquinoline,  $C_9H_5Cl_2N$ , melting at 122° and boiling at 306°, which is produced on treating homophthalimide with  $POCl_3$  (B. 19, 2355).

*α*-Chlor-*β*-methyl and *α*-Chlor-*β*-phenyl Isoquinolines, melting at 36° and 77°, are obtained from the corresponding isocarbostyryls. The latter combines with aniline to *α*-Anilido-*β*-phenyl Isoquinoline,  $C_9H_7NHC_6H_5N$ , melts at 126° (B. 25, 2709).

*Oxyisoquinolines, isocarbostyryls*, are metameric with the carbostyryls (below). They result from the action of ammonia upon isocoumarins (p. 555). Another universal method of producing the isocarbostyryls consists in rearranging the reaction products of acid anhydrides and o-cyanbenzyl cyanide (p. 286) with alkalis:



The alkyl cyanisocarbostyryls produced in this way are readily decomposed by concentrated sulphuric acid. The cyanogen group is eliminated and *β*-alkylic isocarbostyryls result (B. 27, 827, 2232; 29, 2543).

Isocarbostyryls, like the carbostyryls, yield ethers of the hydroxyl and keto-forms. The latter are obtained from isocarbostyryls and alkyl iodides, while the former are mostly made through the interaction of *α*-chloroisoquinolines and sodium alcohols.

Isocarbostyryl, *α*-Isoquinoline,  $C_9H_7ON$  (p. 286), results from isocoumarin and ammonia, and from isocarbostyryl carboxylic acid,  $C_9H_7ON \cdot COOH$ , a reaction-product of ammonia and isocoumarin carboxylic acid, by the elimination of  $CO_2$ .

*α*-Methoxyisoquinoline,  $C_9H_8 \begin{array}{l} \swarrow CH=CH \\ \searrow C(OC_6H_5)=N \end{array}$ , boiling at 240°, is produced by the interaction of the silver salt of isocarbostyryl and methyl iodide. The isomeric

*n*-Methyl-*α*-isoquinoline,  $C_9H_8 \begin{array}{l} \swarrow CH=CH \\ \searrow CO-N(CH_3) \end{array}$ , melting at 54° (40°: B. 26, R. 270;

27, 205), is obtained from isocarbostyryl, methyl iodide, and alkalis (B. 26, R. 236), or by the action of alkaline potassium ferricyanide upon methyl isoquinolinium iodide (p. 555); other *n*-alkyl isoquinolones are produced by the action of primary amines upon isocoumarin (B. 27, 198), or its carboxylic acid. *β*-Methyl Isocarbostyryl,  $C_9(C_6H_5)H_8ON$ , melts at 211°; *β*-ethyl isocarbostyryl melts at 141°; *β*-isopropyl isocarbostyryl

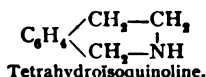
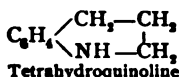
melts at 221° (B. 29, 2393).  $\beta$ -Phenyl Isocarbostyryl, *isobenzal phthalimidine*, melting at 197°, also results from the action of ammonia upon isobenzalphthalide (B. 18, 2448; 27, 2237).

A *bz-2,3,4-Trioxo- $\gamma$ -methyl Isocarbostyryl*,  $C_6H(OH)_3 : [C_3H_3(CH_3)ON]$ , is derived from the corresponding isocoumarin derivative, which is produced when concentrated sulphuric acid acts upon gallacetol,  $C_6H_2(OH)_3 \cdot CO \cdot O \cdot CH_2 \cdot COCH_3$  (B. 26, 419).

**Hydroisoquinolines.**—1. *Dihydroisoquinolines*:  $\alpha$ -Methyl Dihydroisoquinoline,  $C_9H_9(CH_3)N$ , boiling at 237–241°, and  $\alpha$ -Phenyldihydroisoquinoline,  $C_9H_8(C_6H_5)N$ , melting at 195°, result when  $P_2O_5$  or  $ZnCl_2$  acts upon phenyl ethyl acetamide and phenethyl benzamide,  $C_6H_5CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot NHCO \cdot C_6H_5$ .

The *n*-alkyl derivatives of the isocarbostyryls are ketodihydroisoquinolines.

2. *Tetrahydroisoquinolines*: They are produced when isoquinoline is reduced with tin and hydrochloric acid, or, better, with sodium and alcohol. The pyridine nucleus is hydrogenized. Tetrahydroisoquinoline shows the properties of the alkylic benzylamines, while tetrahydroquinoline manifests those of an alkylic aniline:



**Tetrahydroisoquinoline**,  $C_9H_{11}N$ , boiling at 233°, is a powerful base, which absorbs carbon dioxide from the air and reduces warm ammoniacal silver solutions. Its *sulfroso*-compound melts at 33°. The *iodmethylate* of *n*-methyl tetrahydroisoquinoline,  $C_9H_{10}N(CH_3)I$ , melting at 189°, is obtained from methyl iodide and tetrahydroisoquinoline. *n*-Benzoyl Tetrahydroisoquinoline, boiling at 245° to 250° (50 mm.), is converted by  $KMnO_4$  into  $\omega$ -benzoylamidoethyl-*o*-benzoic acid,

$C_6H_4 \begin{array}{l} \diagup CH_2-CH_2 \\ \diagdown COOH \quad NHCOCH_2C_6H_5 \end{array}$  (p. 539). The latter readily parts with water and becomes the benzoyl derivative of—

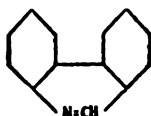
**Hydroisocarbostyryl**, *Ketotetrahydroisoquinoline*,  $C_6H_4 \begin{array}{l} \diagup CH_2-CH_2 \\ \diagdown CO-NH \end{array}$ , melting at 71° (B. 26, 1220).

The homophthalimides—*e. g.*,  $C_6H_4 \begin{array}{l} \diagup CH_2-CO \\ \diagdown CO-NH \end{array}$  (p. 244)—are *diketotetrahydroisoquinolines*.

The alkaloids *berberine*, *hydrastine*, *narcotine* (p. 577), are derivatives of tetrahydroisoquinoline.

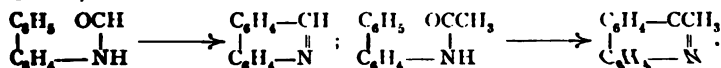
## V. PHENANTHRIDINE.

It can be considered both as a benzo-derivative of quinoline and of isoquinoline. It results also from phenanthrene by replacing one of the intermediate  $-CH=$  groups by nitrogen:



It is isomeric with the naphthoquinolines (p. 553).

Phenanthridines are produced upon heating the acyl derivatives of  $\alpha$ -amidodiphenyl (B. 29, 1182):



Phenanthridine,  $C_{13}H_9N$ , melting at  $104^\circ$  and boiling above  $360^\circ$ , results in the pyrogenic way from benzyldene aniline :

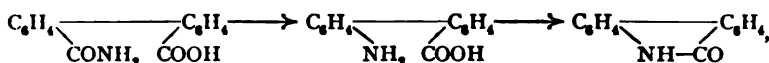


and when phenanthridone is distilled with zinc-dust. Bleaching lime and cobalt re-oxidize it to phenanthridone (B. 26, 1964), while tin and hydrochloric acid reduce

it to dihydrophenanthridine,  $C_{13}H_9CH_2 - NHC_6H_4$ , melting at  $90^\circ$  (A. 266, 142).

ms-Methyl-, ethyl-, and phenyl-phenanthridine melt at  $85^\circ$ ,  $55^\circ$ , and  $109^\circ$  (B. 29, 1184).

Phenanthridone,  $C_{13}H_7CO \cdot NHC_6H_4$ , melting at  $293^\circ$ , is produced on treating diphenamic acid with bromine and caustic potash :

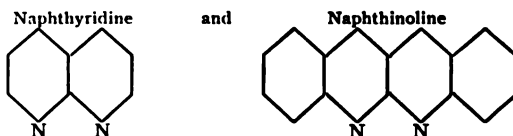


as well as by the rearrangement of o-amidophenylene ketone (p. 418), on fusion with caustic potash ; by transposition of diphenylene ketone oxime with zinc chloride, and, finally, from o-diphenyl urethane,  $C_6H_5C_6H_4NHCO_2C_6H_5$ , on digesting it with zinc chloride (B. 26, R. 712 ; 28, R. 455 ; 29, 230, 1188). Phenanthridone and phosphorus pentachloride

yield *chlorphenanthridine*,  $C_{13}H_8CCl = NC_6H_4$ , melting at  $116^\circ$ . n-Methyl Phenanthridone,  $C_{13}H_9ONCH_3$ , melting at  $108^\circ$ , is formed in the action of alkaline potassium ferricyanide upon *methyl phenanthridinium iodide*,  $C_{13}H_9N \cdot ICH_3$  (B. 26, 1962 ; compare pyridinium and quinolinium compounds, pp. 530, 544).

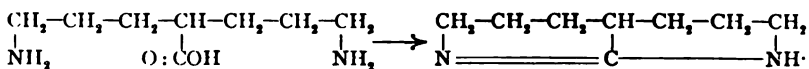
## VI. NAPHTHYRIDINE, NAPHTHINOLINE.

The union of two pyridine nuclei or of two quinoline nuclei in the manner of naphthalene gives rise to the hypothetical parent substances :



Thus far only hydrides of these bodies have been prepared.

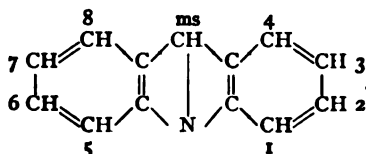
Octohydronaphthyridine,  $C_{14}H_{14}N_2$  (forms a *platinum salt*), melts at  $227^\circ$ , and is prepared from  $\gamma,\gamma$ -diamidodipropyl acetic acid (B. 26, 2137) :



Tetrahydronaphthinline,  $C_{16}H_{14}N_2$ , melting at  $212^\circ$ , is formed by the reduction of o<sub>2</sub>-dinitrobenzylacetic acid,  $C_6H_4 - \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}(\text{COOH}) - \text{CH}_2 - C_6H_4$  (p. 379), in a manner similar to that of the naphthyridine body. Mercury acetate oxidizes it *very easily* to *dihydronaphthinline*,  $C_{16}H_{12}N_2$ , melting at  $201^\circ$ , the salts of which show an intense green fluorescence. It is reduced by sodium amalgam in glacial acetic acid solution to *hexahydronaphthinline*,  $C_{16}H_{18}N_2$  (+  $1\frac{1}{2}H_2O$ ), melting at  $128^\circ$  (B. 27, 2244).

## VII. ACRIDINE GROUP.

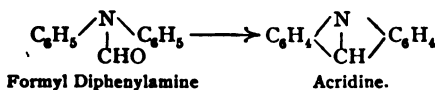
Acridine represents an anthracene, one of the intermediate CH-groups of which is replaced by nitrogen :



Its relations to quinoline and pyridine follow from its oxidation to quinoline dicarboxylic acid and pyridine tetracarboxylic acids (pp. 549, 538).

Acridine occurs in the crude anthracene of coal-tar. Different of its derivatives are important technically as dyes. Acridines may be synthesized :

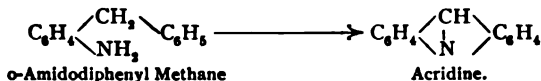
1. From diphenylamine and acids, or from the acidyl derivatives of diphenylamine, if they be heated together with zinc chloride. This is analogous to the formation of the phenanthridines from acidyl-o-amido-diphenylenes (p. 557) (Bernthsen, A. 224, 1) :



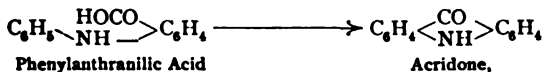
This reaction is a certain proof of the para-union in acridine.

Homologous acridines are similarly obtained from diphenylamine and the higher fatty acids. In them the hydrogen of the CH-group is replaced by alkyls. They are called meso-derivatives (B. 18, 690; 25, R. 940). The substituted diphenylamines (B. 24, 2039), ditolylamine, phenylnaphthylamine, etc., react just like diphenylamine.

2. Various acridine compounds have been prepared from the o-amido-derivatives of di- and tri-phenylmethane (B. 26, 3085) :



3. Acridones are prepared from the alphyanthranilic acids (B. 26, R. 712; 27, R. 642), just as anthraquinone is obtained from benzoyl benzoic acid :



or by the action of phenols (naphthols, etc.) upon acetanthranilic acid (B. 25, 1983, 2740).

The acridines are very stable compounds. They are more feeble bases than the pyridines and quinolines. They combine with alkyl iodides to alkyl acridinium iodides, which are converted by alkaline potassium ferricyanide (similar to the pyridinium and quinolinium iodides) into n-alkyl acridones. When the acridines are reduced they become dihydroacridines, which readily revert to the acridines.

**Acridine**,  $C_{13}H_9N$ , melts at  $110^\circ$ . It sublimes at  $100^\circ$ . Its solutions have a blue fluorescence. It is isomeric with phenanthridine and the naphthoquinolines. In addition to the general reactions it is also produced when diphenylamine is heated with chloroform and zinc chloride to  $200^\circ$  (B. 17, 101), and in the distillation of acridone with zinc-dust (B. 26, R. 714). Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to *acridic acid*, or quinoline- $\alpha,\beta$ -dicarboxylic acid, from which it was concluded that quinoline and pyridine had the diagonal formula (pp. 526, 541) (Riedel, B. 16, 1612).

In the oxidation of the acridinium compounds the heterocyclic nucleus is ruptured and phenylamidobenzoic acid,  $C_6H_5 \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot COOH$ , is produced.

**ms-Methyl Acridine**,  $C_{13}H_9(CH_3)N$ , melting at  $114^\circ$ , is obtained from acetyldiphenylamine. Like quinaldine (p. 546) and picoline (p. 531) it combines with chloral to  $C_{13}H_8NCH_2CH(OH)CCl_3$ . This is converted by alkalis into *ms-acridyl-acrylic acid*,  $C_{13}H_8NCH:CH \cdot COOH$ , which potassium permanganate oxidizes to *acridyl aldehyde*,  $C_{13}H_8NCHO$ , and the latter to *ms-acridyl carboxylic acid*,  $C_{13}H_8NCOOH$  (B. 20, 1541).

**ms-Phenyl Acridine**,  $C_{13}H_8(C_6H_5)N$ , results upon heating diphenylamine and benzoic acid. It crystallizes from benzene, with one molecule of benzene. It melts at  $181^\circ$ .

**Chrysaniline**, **ms-p-Amidophenyl-2-amidoacridine**,

$NH_2 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot \begin{array}{c} \diagup \\ N \\ \diagdown \end{array} \begin{array}{c} C(C_6H_4NH_2) \\ \diagup \\ N \\ \diagdown \end{array} \cdot C_6H_4$ , melting at  $268^\circ$ , is the chief constituent of the beautiful yellow dye, *phosphin*, which is obtained as a by-product in the rosaniline manufacture. It forms red-colored salts; these dye silk and wool a beautiful yellow. Their solutions exhibit a beautiful yellow-green fluorescence.

The formation of chrysaniline from pararosaniline proceeds, evidently, according to the diagram of method 2 for the acridines.

**Dihydroacridine**,  $C_6H_4 \cdot \begin{array}{c} CH_2 \\ \diagup \\ NH \\ \diagdown \end{array} \cdot C_6H_4$ , is formed when acridine is reduced with zinc-dust and hydrochloric acid. It *no longer* manifests basic properties, and melts at  $168^\circ$ . It reduces ammoniacal silver nitrate with the reformation of acridine.

**Acridone**, *ketodihydroacridine*,  $C_6H_4 \cdot \begin{array}{c} CO \\ \diagup \\ NH \\ \diagdown \end{array} \cdot C_6H_4$ , melting at  $354^\circ$ , can be distilled. It is formed when sulphuric acid at  $100^\circ$  acts upon phenyl anthranilic acid, and by the dry distillation of the anilide of salicylic acid, when it may be assumed that the latter first rearranges itself to phenyl anthranilic acid. The salicyl toluides also yield methylated acridones (B. 29, 1189).  $PCl_5$  converts it into *chloracridine*,  $C_6H_4 \cdot \begin{array}{c} CCl \\ \diagup \\ N \\ \diagdown \end{array} \cdot C_6H_4$ , melting at  $119^\circ$ . With methyl iodide and caustic potash it forms **n-Methyl Acridone**,  $C_6H_4 \cdot \begin{array}{c} CO \\ \diagup \\ N(CH_3) \\ \diagdown \end{array} \cdot C_6H_4$ , melting at  $203^\circ$ , which is also produced when caustic potash and potassium ferricyanide act upon methyl acridinium iodide. Acridine is formed when acridone is heated with zinc-dust. Sodium and alcohol convert it into dihydroacridine. The following are obtained in the same way as acridone:

4-Methyl Acridone,  $CH_3 \cdot C_6H_3 \cdot \begin{array}{c} CO \\ \diagup \\ NH \\ \diagdown \end{array} \cdot C_6H_4$ , melting at  $346^\circ$ ;

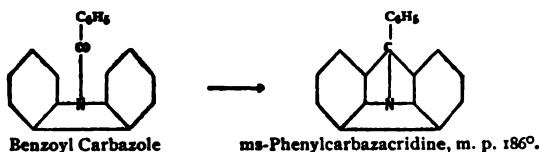
2-Methyl Acridone, melting at  $338^\circ$ ;

2,4-Dimethyl Acridone, melting at  $297^\circ$  (B. 27, R. 642);

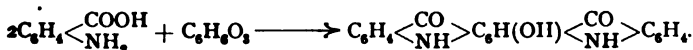
Phenonaphthacridone,  $C_6H_4 \cdot \begin{array}{c} CO \\ \diagup \\ NH \\ \diagdown \end{array} \cdot C_{10}H_6$ ; and

Dinaphthacridone,  $C_{10}H_6 \cdot \begin{array}{c} CO \\ \diagup \\ NH \\ \diagdown \end{array} \cdot C_{10}H_6$  (B. 25, 2744).

Peculiar acridine derivatives have been obtained by the condensation of acidyl carbazoles (B. 24, R. 829; 25, R. 114):



**Quinacridine**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\langle\text{CH}\rangle\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\langle\text{CH}\rangle\text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ , melting at  $213^\circ$ , is a compound which was obtained in the zinc-distillation of an oxygen-containing body—oxyquinacridone. The latter results upon heating phloroglucin with anthranilic acid:



It does not fuse. It begins to decompose above  $400^\circ$ . It is insoluble in almost all solvents. Sodium amalgam reduces quinacridine to tetrahydroquinacridine, melting at  $272^\circ$  (B. 29, 76).

#### VIII. ANTHRAPHYRIDINES.

The  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -anthrapyridines are isomeric with acridine:



**$\alpha$ -Anthrpyridine**,  $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_9\text{N}$ , melting at  $275^\circ$ , results from the reduction of  $\alpha$ -anthrpyridine quinone,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\langle\text{CO}\rangle\text{C}_5\text{H}_3\text{N}$ , melting at  $280^\circ$ , which is made by condensing  $\beta$ -benzoyl picolinic acid with sulphuric acid.  **$\beta$ -Anthrpyridine**, melting at  $166^\circ$ , is similarly formed from  $\beta$ -anthrpyridine quinone, the condensation product of  $\gamma$ -benzoyl nicotinic acid (B. 28, 1658).

#### ALKALOIDS.\*

Formerly, all nitrogen-containing bodies occurring in plants, and possessing basic, alkaline character, or derivatives of the same, from which bases could be isolated, were designated as alkaloids.

Many of them (betaine, asparagine, theine; 1, 310, 490, 515) have, in accord with their constitution, been already discussed with the various amido-derivatives; the most of those remaining which have been studied recently show themselves to be derivatives of pyridine, quinoline, and isoquinoline, or of their corresponding hydro-derivatives. Several have been prepared artificially (*piperine*, *conine*, *trigonelline*, and *arekaidine*); in the case of others, synthesis has had the way made plain by analysis, or it has been attained, as in the case of *hydrastine*, for the basic decomposition product of the alkaloid. Like the benzene derivatives, they have much in common in their whole deportment. They are the chief

\* Consult "La Constitution chimique des Alcaloïdes végétaux," par Amé Pictet. Paris, G. Masson, 1897 (II. ed.).

constituents of the active principles of the vegetable drugs employed as medicines or poisons.

Because of their great number and their oftentimes unusually remarkable physiological and pharmacological properties they constitute one of the most interesting classes of carbon compounds.

*Occurrence.*—The vegetable alkaloids occur almost exclusively in the dicotyledons; but *one*, the poorly investigated *colchicine*, is formed in a monocotyledon, while the large families of the Compositæ and Labiatae do not furnish them. In plants they are generally combined with widely distributed *plant acids*—*e. g.*, *malic acid* (1, 487), *citric acid* (1, 529), and *tannic acid* (p. 543). Many are accompanied by acids which usually are found associated with definite alkaloids—*e. g.*, the opium alkaloids are united with *meconic acid* (p. 523), and the quinia alkaloids with *quinic acid* (p. 301). The alkaloids prized for their pharmacological properties are the subject of technical isolation. The artificially prepared carbon compounds, having similar physiological action, hold a subordinate position compared with them—*e. g.*, *quinine* and *antipyrine* (p. 488); *atropine* and several *tropelines* (p. 567); *cocaine* and *eucaine* (p. 540).

Some alkaloids contain no oxygen, and then are generally liquid and volatile—*e. g.*, *piperidine*, *conine*, *nicotine*, and *sparteine*. Most of them do, however, contain that element, and are solid and non-volatile. Nearly all are tertiary amines; some, however (like the hydrides of the pyridine nucleus, belong to the secondary amines. Many (like *pilocarpine*) are ammonium bases. Tannic acid, phospho-molybdic acid, platonic chloride, and many double salts (like  $\text{HgI}_2 \cdot \text{KI}$ ) precipitate all these bases from their aqueous solutions. The bases are regained from these compounds by alkalies.

The alkaloids have a more or less bitter taste. Most of them are optically active and, indeed, lævorotatory (1, 67). *Conine*, *nicotine*, and *pilocarpine* are dextrogyratory. Piperine is inactive. Many alkaloids give characteristic colors with chlorine water, nitric acid, or concentrated sulphuric acid.

## I. THE PYRIDINE GROUP OF THE ALKALOIDS.

**Piperine**,  $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{19}\text{NO}_2 = \text{CH}_2 \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{N} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} : \text{CH} [\text{I}] \text{C}_6\text{H}_5, \left\{ \begin{array}{l} [3] \text{O} \\ [4] \text{O} \end{array} \right\} \text{CH}_2$ , melting at  $128^\circ$ , occurs in different varieties of pepper, the fruit of *Piper nigrum* and *Piper longum*. It dissolves with a deep red color in sulphuric acid. It is decomposed by boiling alcohol into piperidine and piperic acid.

The two decomposition products of piperine have been built up from their elements, and by allowing the chloride of piperic acid to act upon piperidine the synthesis of piperine itself has been realized (B. 27, 2958). The synthesis of conine presupposes that of piperidine, and is represented by diagram under conine. Artificial piperines have been prepared from the synthetic  $\alpha$ -alkyl and  $\alpha$ -phenyl piperic acids with the assistance of the chlorides (B. 28, 1195).

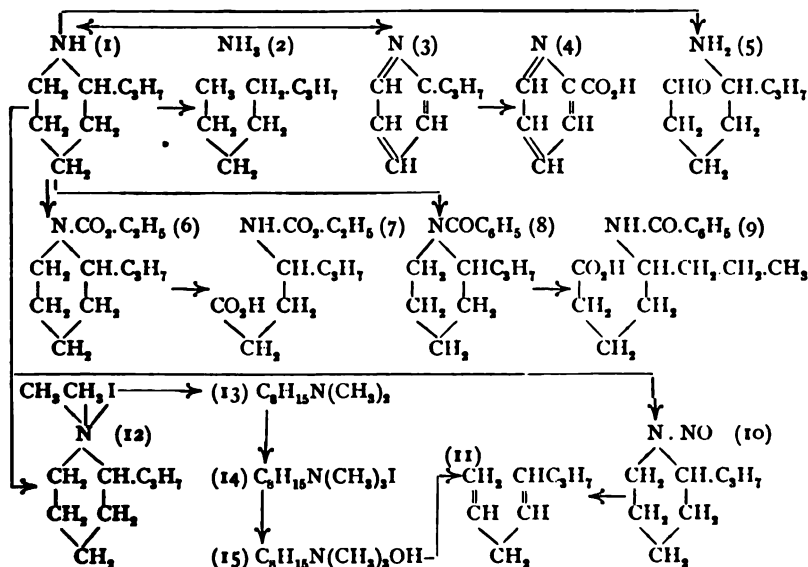
**$\alpha$ -Conine**, *d, \alpha, n*-propyl piperidine,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{N} = \text{CH}_2 \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH} - \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{NH}$ , boiling at  $167^\circ$ , with sp. gr. 0.886 ( $0^\circ$ ),  $[\alpha]_D = +18.3$  (B. 27, 3062), occurs together with *n*-methyl conine and  $\gamma$ -conicefine,  $\text{CH}_2 \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} - \text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5) \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{NH}$  (B. 28, 302), conhydrin, and pseudoconhydrin

(p. 564), in hemlock (*Conium maculatum*), especially in the seeds. It is a colorless liquid with a stupefying odor. It is a very powerful poison.

**History:** Giesecke (1827) discovered conine. A. W. Hofmann (1881) determined its molecular magnitude, and in 1884 demonstrated that it yielded conyryne or  $\alpha$ -propyl pyridine upon distillation with zinc-dust. Obtaining picolinic acid by oxidation, he thus proved the  $\alpha$ -position of the propyl group. The synthesis of optically inactive conine, its decomposition into d- and l-conine, and thereby the first complete synthesis of an optically active alkaloid, are due to Ladenburg (1886) (B. 22, 1403).

The following diagrams represent the decomposition of conine, which corresponds to that of piperidine (p. 539), and also the synthesis which presupposes that of piperidine and pyridine.

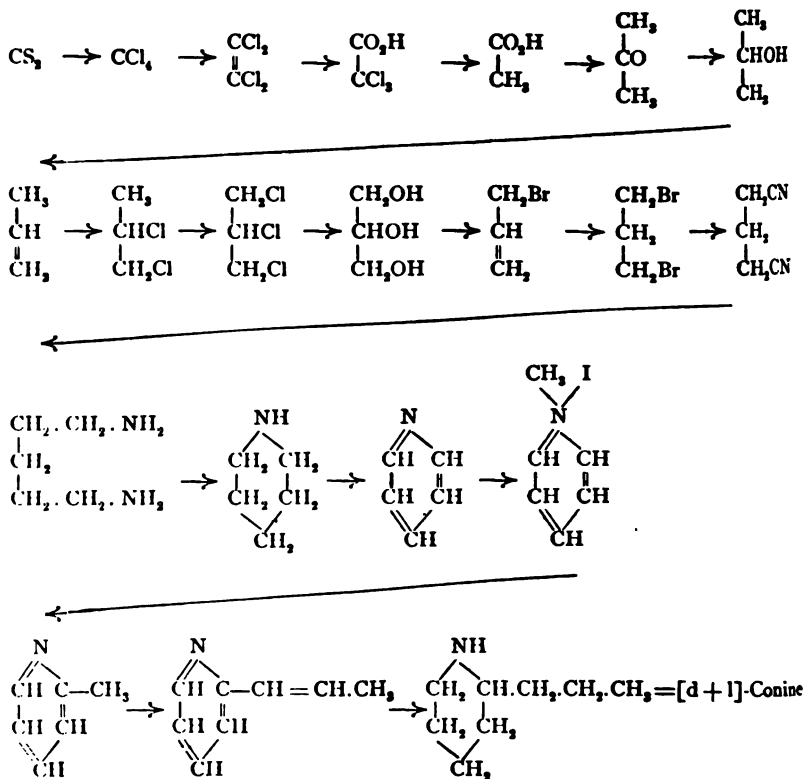
**Decomposition of Conine:** The reduction of natural d-conine (1) by hydriodic acid resolves it into n-octane (2) and ammonia (B. 18, 13). The distillation with zinc-dust leads to conyryne (3), or  $\alpha$ ,n-propyl pyridine, which hydriodic acid reduces to inactive [d + l]-conine, while upon oxidation it becomes picolinic acid (4) or pyridine- $\alpha$ -carboxylic acid. Hydrogen peroxide oxidizes conine to  $\delta$ -amido-n-octyl aldehyde, or  $\delta$ -propylamidovaleraldehyde (5) (B. 28, 1460). Nitric acid oxidizes conylurethane (6) to carbethoxyconinic acid or  $\gamma$ -carboethylamido-n-heptan acid (7) (B. 15, 1947), which yields coninic acid when heated with hydrochloric acid. Potassium permanganate oxidizes benzoyl conine to benzoyl homoconinic acid or  $\delta$ -benzoylamido-n-octan acid (8) and benzoyl- $\alpha$ -amidovaleric acid (9) (B. 19, 502). Nitrous acid converts conine into nitroso-conine (10), which breaks down, on heating with phosphorus pentoxide, into water, nitrogen, and conylene (11). Methyl iodide and conine combine to dimethylconinium iodide (12), which is changed by sodium hydroxide to dimethylconine,  $C_8H_{15}N(CH_3)_2$  (13) (B. 14, 708), of uncertain constitution (A. 279, 341). Dimethyl conine and methyl iodide also combine, and the resulting iodide (14) is converted by silver oxide into trimethyl conylum hydroxide,  $C_8H_{15}N(CH_3)_3OH$  (15), which breaks down, upon distillation with water, into trimethylamine and conylene (10) (1, 99):



**Synthesis of Conine** (B. 22, 1404). We begin with the synthesis of trichloroacetic acid (1, 274), which by reduction yields synthetic acetic acid (1, 244). From this we pro-

ceed to glycerol (1, 471), which can be converted into allyl bromide. Allyl bromide and hydrobromic acid combine to trimethylene bromide, the latter yielding, by the action of trimethylene cyanide, pentamethylene diamine, from which piperidine results by the elimination of ammonia (1, 314). Piperidine may be oxidized to pyridine, the iod-methylate of which—pyridinium iodide—is changed at 300° into  $\alpha$ -picoline iodhydrate. Picoline and paraldehyde at elevated temperatures yield  $\alpha$ -allyl pyridine, which is reduced to inactive conine.

d-Conine d-tartrate separates first from a solution of dextro-tartrate of inactive conine; and caustic potash resolves it into a *conine identical with the natural conine*. As dextro-tartaric acid can be prepared from synthetic racemic acid (1, 523) the synthesis of conine is complete.



d-Conine Hydrochloride melts at 218°. Nitroso-d-conine is a bright yellow-colored oil. d-Conylene Urethane boils at 245°. Benzoyl-d-conine is a thick oil.

Inactive *r*-(racemic) or (d + l)-conine and l-conine behave physiologically and chemically like d-conine. Sodium and alcohol also reduce  $\alpha$ -ethyl pyridyl ketone to (d + l)-conine. The first product is  $\alpha$ -ethyl pyridine alkine,  $\alpha$ -ethyl pyridyl carbinol, boiling at 213–218° (p. 535), then  $\alpha$ -ethyl piperyl alkine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NHCH(OH)} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , melting at 100°, identical with *pseudoconhydrine*, which has also been discovered in *Conium maculatum*. Inactive conine is best prepared by reducing  $\gamma$ -coniceine (p. 538) (B. 29, 1956).

Isoconine or Isoconicine—consult B. 27, R. 203; 29, 1959, 2706 (see 1, 511).

**Trigonelline, Nicotinic Acid Methyl Betaine**,  $\text{CH} \begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \text{---} \text{C} \text{---} \text{CH} \\ \text{CH} \text{= CH} \text{N} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{---} \text{O} \\ \text{---} \text{N} \end{array} \text{---} \text{CH}_3$ , melting at 188°, occurs in the seeds of *Trigonella fanum græcum*, and in small amount, together with choline, in the seeds of *Pisum sativum*, and also in flax—*Cannabis sativa*. As Jahns has shown, trigonelline is identical with nicotinic acid betaine, synthesized by Hantzsch (1866) (B. 27, 769).

**Arecaidine, Tetrahydronicotinic Acid Methyl Betaine**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_9(\text{COO})\text{N} \cdot \text{CH}_3 (+ \text{H}_2\text{O})$ , melting at 224°, occurs, together with arecoline,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{13}\text{NO}_2$  (chief constituent), arecaine,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{13}\text{NO}_2$ , and guvacine,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_9\text{NO}_2$ , in the nut of *Areca Catechu*. It and its dihydro-derivative, dihydroarecaidine or hexahydronicotinic acid methyl betaine, have been obtained synthetically from the chlormethylate of nicotinic ester by the action of tin and hydrochloric acid. It forms arecoline, boiling at 209°, when treated with methyl alcohol and  $\text{HCl}$  (esterified), which by saponification yields arecaidine, and it is therefore tetrahydro- $\alpha$ -methylnicotinic methyl ester (B. 25, R. 198; 30, 729). The constitution of arecaine and guvacine has not yet been definitely established.

**Pilocarpine**,  $\text{CH} \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \text{---} \text{CH} \\ \text{CH} \text{= CH} \text{N} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \text{---} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_3 \\ \text{CO} \text{---} \text{O} \end{array}$ ,  $[\alpha]_D = +101.6^\circ$ , and **Pilocar-**

**pidine**,  $\text{CH} \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \text{---} \text{CH} \\ \text{CH} \text{= CH} \text{N} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \text{---} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_3 \\ \text{COOH} \end{array}$ , occur in the Jaborandi leaves of *Pilocarpus pennatifolius*.

Pilocarpine is a poison which acts like nicotine (A. 238, 230). The injection of it into milch cows occasions a very appreciable increase in the sugar of the milk (B. 26, R. 247). When pilocarpine is treated with hydrochloric acid, or when it is boiled with water, it changes in part to pilocarpidine, and in part to  $\beta$ -pyridine- $\alpha$ -lactic acid (p. 538) and trimethylamine. Potassium permanganate oxidizes pilocarpine nitrate to  $\beta$ -pyridine tartronic acid, which by further oxidation becomes nicotinic acid.  $\beta$ -Pyridine- $\alpha$ -lactic acid and  $\text{PBr}_3$  form  $\beta$ -pyridine- $\alpha$ -bromopropionic acid, which trimethylamine converts at 150° into pilocarpidine. By treating pilocarpidine with methyl iodide and caustic potash, then oxidizing the methyl group, which has attached itself to the pyridine nitrogen, with silver permanganate, pilocarpine is produced (Hardy and Calmels, B. 19, R. 703; 20, R. 575; see B. 28, 1762).

**Cytisine, Ulexine, Sophorine**,  $\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{14}\text{N}_2\text{O}$ , melting at 152°, occurs in the seeds of *Cytisus Laburnum*, as well as in other *Cytisus*-varieties, in *Ulex europæus* and in *Sophora tomentosa* and *speciosa* (B. 23, 3201; 24, 634; 27, R. 509, 884; 28, R. 237; 29, R. 36, 53).

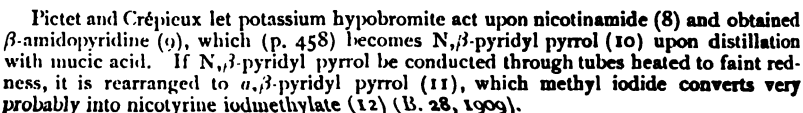
**Nicotine,  $\alpha$  Pyridyl- $\beta$ -tetrahydro-n-methyl pyrrol (?)**,

$\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{14}\text{N}_2 = \begin{array}{c} \text{N} \\ \text{CH} \text{CH} \text{NCH}_3 \\ \text{CH} \text{C} \text{---} \text{CH} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH} \text{CH}_2 \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$ , boiling at 247°, with sp. gr. 1.011 (15°), and

levogyatory (B. 26, R. 193), occurs in the leaves of the tobacco plant, *Nicotiana tabacum*, in quantities varying from 0.6 to 8 per cent., depending upon the varieties. As a rule, the better qualities of tobacco contain less nicotine than the poorer sorts.

Nicotine is very soluble in water. It has a disagreeable odor and burning taste. It is a very violent poison.

**History:** Posselt and Reiman discovered nicotine (1828). Since 1891 Blau, but more especially Pinner, has studied its transposition reactions. The constitutional formula proposed by Pinner harmonizes with its deportment, and has more recently been fortified by the experiments of Amé Pictet and Crépieux (1895), which doubtless will eventually terminate in a synthesis of nicotine.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{N} \quad (5) \\
 \diagup \quad \diagdown \\
 \text{CH} \quad \text{CH} \\
 \diagdown \quad \diagup \\
 \text{CH} \quad \text{C} - \text{C}(\text{Br}) - \text{CO} \\
 \diagup \quad \diagdown \\
 \text{CH} \quad \text{C} - \text{CO} - \text{CH}(\text{Br})
 \end{array}
 \rightarrow
 \left(
 \begin{array}{c}
 \text{N} \\
 \diagup \quad \diagdown \\
 \text{CH} \quad \text{CH} \\
 \diagdown \quad \diagup \\
 \text{CH} \quad \text{C} - \text{C}(\text{OH}) - \text{CO} \\
 \diagup \quad \diagdown \\
 \text{CH} \quad \text{C} - \text{CO} - \text{CH}(\text{OH})
 \end{array}
 \right)
 \xrightarrow{2\text{H}_2\text{O}}
 \begin{array}{c}
 \text{N} \quad (3) \\
 \diagup \quad \diagdown \\
 \text{CH} \quad \text{CH} \\
 \diagdown \quad \diagup \\
 \text{CH} \quad \text{C} - \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\
 \diagup \quad \diagdown \\
 \text{CH} \quad \text{CH}
 \end{array}
 \quad (6) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{H}_2\text{NCH}_3 \\ \text{CO}_2\text{H} - \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$$


The preceding diagram represents a tabular view of the rearrangement reactions of nicotine and the production of nicotyrine iodmethylete from nicotinic acid.

**Sparteine**,  $C_{18}H_{28}N_2$ , boiling at  $311^\circ$ , is a colorless, thick oil, occurring in *Spartium angustifolium*. It is a diacid base and is a powerful narcotic. Tin and hydrochloric acid reduce it to dihydrosparteine,  $C_{18}H_{30}N_2$ , while hydrogen peroxide oxidizes it to *mono-*, *di-*, and *trioxysparteine* (B. 30, 195). Hydriodic acid splits off a methyl group from sparteine (B. 21, 826). Diethylmethylamine, pyridine, and  $\alpha$ -picoline are produced when it is distilled with zinc-dust (B. 26, 3035).

## II. TROPINE GROUP.

**Solanum Bases.**—Several very similar alkaloids are found in many varieties of solanum, of which the best known are the two isomerides: optically inactive *atropine*, discovered by Mein in 1833, as well as by Geiger and Hesse, and lævogyratory *hyoscyamine*. If they are introduced in very small quantity into the eye they cause dilatation of the pupil, and are therefore used in medicine as *mydriatics*. Both bases are found in *Hyoscyamus niger* and *albus*, in *Datura stramonium*, in the deadly nightshade, *Atropa belladonna*, and in *Duboisia myoporoides*. The less investigated bases which accompany them are *belladonnine* (B. 17, 152, 383), *hyoscine*, *scopolamine* (B. 25, 260; 29, 1771, 2009, 2439), *apopatropine* (below) (B. 25, R. 573; 26, R. 285), all of which, as acid decomposition products, yield tropic and atropic acids; as basic constituents they yield bodies closely allied to tropine.

**Atropine**,  $\text{CH} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3-\text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2-\text{CH} \\ \text{CH}_2-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3) \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{O}-\text{CO} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \diagdown \text{CH} \end{array}$ , melting at  $115^\circ$ , is

produced when the isomeric *hyoscyamine* is heated to  $108.6^\circ$ . This body changes in part to atropine on treatment with aqueous or alcoholic sodium hydroxide (B. 21, 1717, 2777, 3069). It is very probable that the two bases are physical isomerides. Atropine is decomposed into *tropine* and *tropic acid*, or  $\alpha$ -phenylhydracrylic acid,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$  (p. 252), when it is heated with hydrochloric acid or baryta-water. Conversely, atropine is formed when tropic acid and tropine are evaporated with dilute hydrochloric acid (Ladenburg).

Both the basic and the acid decomposition products of atropine contain symmetric carbon. Indeed, tropic acid has been resolved into its optically active components, and from tropine there have been obtained dextro- and lævo-tropic acid: *dextro-atropine*, melting at  $110^\circ$  to  $120^\circ$ , and *lævo-atropine* (B. 22, 2590). The latter is very similar to lævo-hyoscyamine, but it is not identical with it.

**Apopatropine**, *Atropamine*,  $C_{17}H_{21}\text{NO}_3$ , melting at  $60-62^\circ$ , results from the action of nitric acid upon atropine. It is made synthetically by evaporating tropine atropate with dilute hydrochloric acid. It is decomposed by baryta-water into tropine and atropic acid (p. 278); it is the *tropine* of atropic or  $\alpha$ -phenylacrylic acid.

**Tropines.**—Just as tropine yields atropine with atropic acid, so it is capable of entering combination with other acids producing ester-like derivatives, which have been called *tropines* (Ladenburg, A. 217, 82; 27, R. 202). Of these, phenylglycolyl-tropine, or *Homatropine*,  $C_8H_7\text{N}(\text{CH}_3) \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , is noteworthy because its mydriatic action is not so prolonged. It is obtained from tropine and mandelic

acid. It is employed as a substitute for atropine, and is applied in the form of hydrobromide. It melts at 95.5–98.5°.

Only those tropines possess mydriatic action in which the acid radical contains alcoholic hydroxyl.

*Lactyl Tropine* melts at 74° (B. 28, R. 492).

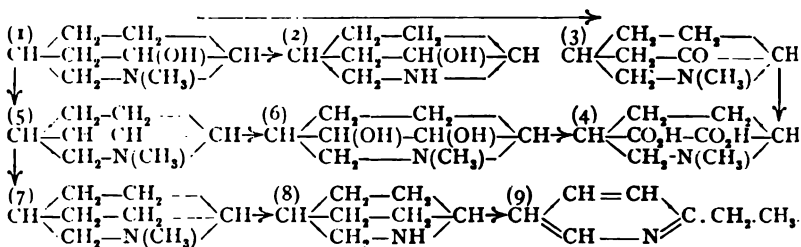
*Benzilo-tropine* is the tropine of benzoic acid (p. 367) (B. 27, R. 202).

**Tropine**,  $\text{CH} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \diagdown \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}(\text{OH}) - \text{CH} \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{N}(\text{CH}_3) \end{array}$ , melting at 62° and boiling at 233°, is the basic

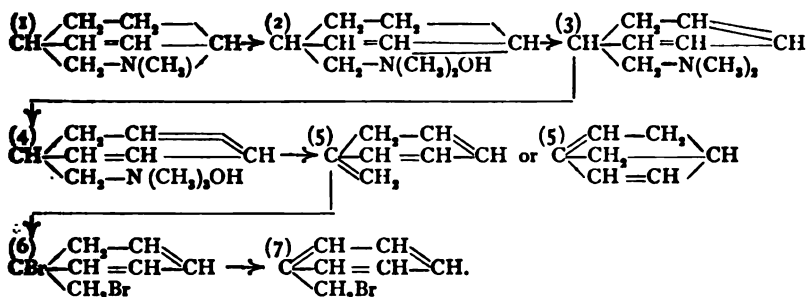
decomposition product of atropine. Merling regards it as an n-methyl piperidine, the  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -carbon atoms of which are joined through the group  $-\text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}(\text{OH}) -$ , so that tropine can, upon the other hand, be viewed as an oxyhexahydrobenzene derivative. Ecgonine, the basic decomposition product of cocaine, is a tropine carboxylic acid. These kinships will in a measure account for the similar actions of atropine and cocaine. As ecgonine is not capable of forming a lactone, Einhorn assumes that its alcoholic hydroxyl is attached to the  $\beta$ -carbon atom, and this explains the formula given above for tropine.

The constitution of tropine follows further from its decomposition reactions. We are indebted mainly to Ladenburg and Merling for our knowledge of these:

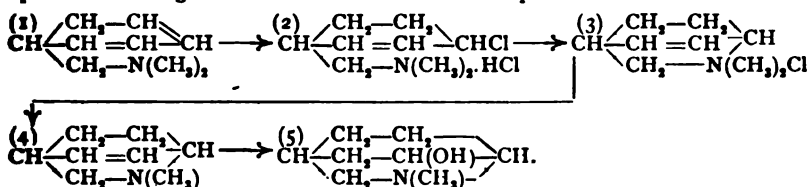
**Decomposition of Tropine.**—a. *Conversion of tropine into tropic acid, and into  $\alpha$ -ethyl pyridine and picolinic acid:* Potassium permanganate oxidizes tropine (1) to tropigenine (2), whereas with chromic acid it first yields a ketone, tropinone (3), which upon reduction does not yield tropine again, but a  $\psi$ -tropine, which is always obtained by the decomposition of an alkaloid associated with cocaine (p. 569) (B. 29, 1636, 2228). When tropinone is further oxidized with chromic acid, tropic acid (4) results, which by proper decomposition is converted into normal adipic acid (B. 28, 3271). Glacial acetic acid and hydrochloric acid split off water from tropine, and tropidine (5) results. The latter is oxidized by potassium permanganate to dihydroxytropidine (6). Further oxidation changes this body to tropic acid (4) (B. 28, 2277). Zinc and hydrochloric acid reduce tropidine to hydrotropidine (7), a saturated compound, the chlorhydrate of which splits off methyl chloride in a current of hydrochloric acid gas, and becomes nordihydropipidine (8). When the latter is distilled with zinc-dust,  $\alpha$ -ethyl pyridine (9) is produced, which upon oxidation becomes picolinic acid (Ladenburg, B. 20, 1647):



b. *The conversion of tropidine into benzyl bromide* (Merling, B. 24, 3108; 26, 1060). Tropidine (1) takes up methyl iodide, and, exposed to moist silver oxide, exchanges the iodine atom for hydroxyl, with the formation of tropidine methyl ammonium hydroxide (2), which is converted by boiling water into  $\alpha$ -methyl tropidine or  $\Delta_{3,5}$ -dihydrobenzyltrimethylamine (3).  $\alpha$ -Methyl tropidine adds methyl iodide and acts further like the preceding body, with the production of  $\alpha$ -methyl tropidine methyl ammonium hydroxide (4), which boiling water changes to tropilidene (5). The latter takes up two bromine atoms; its dibromide (6), heated to 100°, breaks down into HBr and benzyl bromide (7). Einhorn and Willstätter (A. 280, 96) view tropilidene as a dihydrobenzene, in which two C-atoms holding the p-position are linked by the  $\text{CH}_2$ -group, similar to what we have, according to Bretz, in camphor. Consult B. 29, 402, 490; 30, 721, for analogous decompositions of tropinone and dihydropipidine.



**Synthesis of Tropine.**— $\alpha$ -Methyl tropidine or  $\Delta_{1,2}$ -dihydrobenzyltrimethylamine (1) forms a dihydrochloride: hydrochlor- $\alpha$ -methyl tropidine chlorhydrate (2). Sodium hydroxide splits off hydrochloric acid from this and there remains tropidine methyl ammonium chloride (3). By distillation the latter changes to tropidine (4), which takes up water on boiling with caustic alkali and reverts to tropine:



**1-Cocaine**,  $\text{CH} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CH}-\text{CH} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CH}_2-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{O} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$ , melting at  $98^\circ$ , is laevogyrotory. It is present in the leaves of *Erythroxylon coca*. It is a very superior local anæsthetic, and is applied in the form of hydrochloride. When it is digested with hydrochloric acid it breaks down into ecgonine, benzoic acid, and methyl alcohol.

It yields benzoyl ecgonine and methyl alcohol when boiled with water.

Conversely, cocaine can be again re-formed from ecgonine, from benzoyl ecgonine, and from benzoyl ecgonine ester by introducing benzoyl into ecgonine ester, or, better, by esterifying benzoyl ecgonine with methyl alcohol. In this way certain alkaloids—*e. g.*, *cinnamyl cocaine*, *truxilline*, etc.—associated with cocaine (B. 27, 783 Ann.) become valuable technically. In their decomposition they yield ecgonine methyl ester and ecgonine (B. 22, 2960, R. 953).

**Truxillic Acids**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} - \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$  and  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 - \text{CH} - \text{CH} - \text{CO}_2\text{H}$  (?),  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} - \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$  and  $\text{CO}_2\text{H} - \text{CH} - \text{CH} - \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$  (?), polycinnamic acids, dicinnamic acids, and also "natural isocinnamic acid," were discovered by Liebermann in his study of the secondary alkaloids of cocaine. By distillation they yield ordinary cinnamic acid. The  $\alpha$ -acid melts at  $274^\circ$ ; the  $\beta$ -acid at  $206^\circ$ . Acetic anhydride and sodium acetate convert the first into the anhydride (m. p.  $191^\circ$ ) of  $\gamma$ -truxillic acid, melting at  $228^\circ$  (B. 22, 126). When the  $\beta$ -acid is fused with caustic potash it changes to  $\delta$ -truxillic acid, melting at  $174^\circ$ . Potassium permanganate oxidizes the  $\beta$ -acid to benzil (B. 22, 2254)—a reaction which, together with the inability to take up bromine and the stability of  $\beta$ -truxillic acid toward cold potassium permanganate, argues for the constitutional formula given above (B. 27, 1410).

**d-Cocaine**, melting at  $43-45^\circ$ , occurs in small quantities in the mixed cocaine bases (B. 23, 926). It is obtained synthetically from d-ecgonine (B. 23, 982). See B. 27, 1874, 1880, for cocaines substituted in the benzoyl group.

**Tropa-cocaine**, *Benzoyl- $\psi$ -tropine*,  $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{19}\text{NO}_3$ , melting at  $49^\circ$ , and found in

small amounts in the coca alkaloids, breaks down into benzoic acid and  $\psi$ -tropine, melting at  $108^\circ$  and boiling at  $241^\circ$ . The latter appears to be a stereoisomeride of tropine, because it can also be prepared by the reduction of tropinone, and when oxidized reverts to the latter. Indeed, tropine can be directly rearranged to  $\psi$ -tropine by means of sodium amylate. Potassium permanganate oxidizes  $\psi$ -tropine to  $\psi$ -tropigenine, which, like tropigenine, yields nortropinone upon oxidation (B. 29, 936, 1636, 2231).

Mention may also be made here that crude cocaine contains small quantities of Hygrine,  $C_8H_{15}NO$ , boiling at  $92-94^\circ$  (20 mm.). It is a derivative of n-methyl pyrrolidine, probably

$\begin{array}{c} CH_3CH \\ | \\ CH_2CH_2 \end{array} > \begin{array}{c} COCH_2CH_3 \\ NCH_3 \end{array}$ , as it forms an oxime, and when oxidized becomes hygric acid, or n-methyl pyrrolidine carboxylic acid, which parts with carbon dioxide very readily (B. 28, 578) (p. 461).

1-Ecgonine, *Tropine Carboxylic Acid*,  $CH \begin{array}{c} CH_2-CH_2 \\ | \quad | \\ CH_2-CH(OH) \\ | \quad | \\ CH_2-NH(CH_3) \end{array} > C.CO + H_2O$ , melts

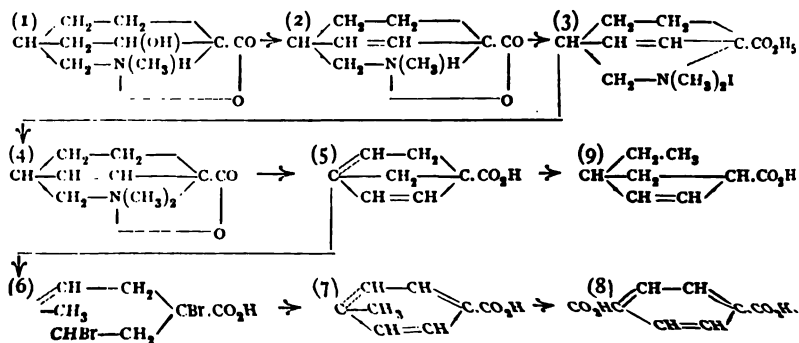
at  $205^\circ$  when anhydrous. It is the basic decomposition product of l-cocaine. When digested with caustic potash it changes to d-ecgonine, melting at  $254^\circ$ . See B. 24, 7; 26, 962, for the esters, amides, and nitriles of the ecgonines.

$\alpha$ -Ecgonine,  $CH \begin{array}{c} CH_2-CH_2 \\ | \quad | \\ CH_2-C(OH) \\ | \quad | \\ CH_2-N(CH_3) \end{array} > \begin{array}{c} COOH \\ CH \end{array}$ , melting at  $305^\circ$ , is a position isomeride

of ecgonine. It has been prepared by adding hydrocyanic acid to tropinone (p. 568) and then saponifying the cyanhydrin (B. 29, 2216).

Anhydroecgonine (see below), melting at  $234^\circ$ , is produced on boiling ecgonine hydrochloride with phosphorus oxychloride (B. 20, 1221). The connection or relation of ecgonine to tropine follows as a consequence of the rearrangement of anhydroecgonine (observed by Einhorn), upon heating with hydrochloric acid to  $280^\circ$ , into tropidine, carbon dioxide being eliminated (B. 23, 1338).

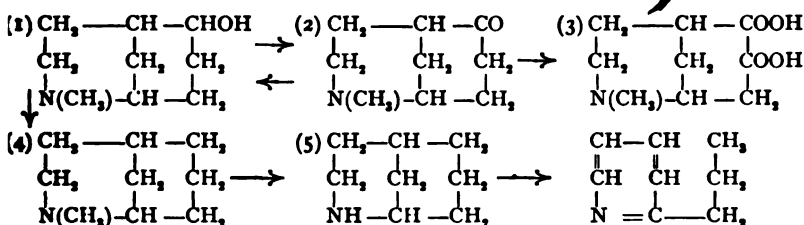
**Decomposition of Ecgonine:** The conversion of anhydroecgonine into p-toluic acid and terephthalic acid gives a clue as to the position of the carboxyl group in the tropidine ring of anhydroecgonine and also in ecgonine (B. 27, 2439). If the anhydroecgonine (2) obtained by treating ecgonine hydrochloride (1) with  $POCl_3$  be acted upon with methyl iodide after its conversion into the ethyl ester, anhydroecgonine ethyl ester iodomethylate (3) will be produced, and moist silver oxide will change it to anhydroecgonine methyl betaine (4). Boiling alkalis convert the latter into dimethylamine and p-methylene dihydrobenzoic acid (5), melting at  $33^\circ$ . Its amide melts at  $125^\circ$ . By the addition of 2HBr p-methylene dihydrobenzoic acid becomes p-toluic acid dihydrobromide (6), which boiling sodium hydroxide changes to p-toluic acid (7), and terephthalic acid (8) is its oxidation product. The reduction of p-methylene benzoic acid produces  $\Gamma a\Delta_2$ -4-ethylcyclopentene Carboxylic Acid (9), boiling at  $250-253^\circ$ . Its amide melts at  $158^\circ$ .



If the preceding formula is correct, then p-methylene dihydrobenzoic acid would have as basis a ring-system similar to that observed with camphor (A. 280, 96; B. 27, 2439). Hydroecgonidine,  $C_9H_{18}NO_2$ , melting at  $200^\circ$ , is a saturated body. It is formed in the reduction of anhydroecgonine, and it can be decomposed like the latter. Here, however, the intermediate product, lacking above, between (4) and (5) can be fixed. It is a tetrahydromethylbenzylamine-p-carboxylic ester, the iodemethylate of which yields tetrahydromethylene benzoic acid when decomposed with alkali (B. 30, 702).

Pelletierine,  $C_9H_{18}NO$ , iso-, methyl-, and pseudopelletierine (named after the chemist Pelletier), was discovered by Tauret in *Punica granatum*. Pseudopelletierine alone has been closely studied by Ciamician and Silber. They recognized this base as a near relative of the tropine series.

Pseudopelletierine,  $C_9H_{18}NO$  (2), melting at  $48^\circ$  and boiling at  $246^\circ$ , corresponds to ropinone (p. 568). By reduction it yields the alcohol corresponding to tropine: methyl granatoline (1), which chromic acid again converts into pseudopelletierine and subsequently oxidizes to methyl granatic acid (3), corresponding to tropic acid, whereas potassium permanganate splits off the methyl group and forms granatoline, analogous to tropigenine (p. 568). Hydriodic acid and phosphorus reduce methyl granatoline to methyl granatine (4) and granatine (5); the latter, distilled with zinc-dust, yields *a-propyl pyridine* (6):



When pseudopelletierine is decomposed with methyl iodide and alkali it is changed into a dihydroacetophenone analogous to dihydrobenzaldehyde. It, therefore, conducts itself like a ring homologue of tropinone (B. 29, 481, 2972).

### III. QUINOLINE GROUP OF THE ALKALOIDS.

**Quina-bases.**—The *quina-barks* (cortex chinæ) are derived chiefly from the various Cinchona species: *Cinchona Calisaya*, *C. lancifolia*, *C. Pitayensis*, etc.; also from the *Rubiaceæ*. They contain, in addition to tannin and *quinic acid* (p. 301), a series of bases, the most important of which are:

Quinine,  $C_{20}H_{24}N_2O_8$ ,  
Cinchonine,  $C_{19}H_{22}N_2O$ ,

Conquinine,  $C_{20}H_{24}N_2O_8$ ,  
Cinchonidine,  $C_{19}H_{22}N_2O$ .

**Quinine**,  $\text{CH}_3\text{O} \cdot \text{C}_9\text{H}_7\text{N} \cdot \text{C}_9\text{H}_{11}(\text{OH})(\text{CH}_3)\text{N} (?) + 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melts, when anhydrous, at  $177^\circ$ . It consists of silky needles when crystallized from alcohol and ether. Pelletier and Caventou discovered quinine in 1820. It is one of our most valued medicines, especially for intermittent fevers, —e. g., malaria, etc.,—and is an antidote for many infections produced by micro-organisms. \*

\* "Grundzüge der Arzneimittellehre," von C. Binz, 12. Aufl., 1894.

It is found (2-3 per cent.) in the yellow calisaya bark. It reacts alkaline, tastes bitter, and being a diacid base, forms primary and secondary salts.

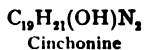
The neutral *sulphate*,  $(C_{20}H_{24}N_2O_2)H_2SO_4 + 8H_2O$ , and the primary *hydrochloride*,  $C_{20}H_{24}N_2O_2 \cdot HCl + 2H_2O$ , are employed in medicine. The former consists of long, shining needles, which fall to a white powder on exposure. It dissolves readily in dilute sulphuric acid, the solution exhibiting a beautiful blue fluorescence.

When chlorine water and then ammonia are added to the solution of quinine salt, there is produced a green precipitate, dissolving in an excess of ammonium hydroxide with an emerald-green color. On adding an alcoholic iodine solution to the sulphate in acetic acid, a *periodide*,  $4Qu \cdot 3SO_4H_2 \cdot 2HI \cdot I_2 + 6H_2O$ , called *herapathite*, is precipitated. This crystallizes in emerald-green plates with golden lustre, and polarizes light the same as tourmaline.

Quinine is a tertiary diamine, and with metallic iodides yields the iodides,  $C_{20}H_{24}N_2O_2 \cdot CH_3I$  and  $C_{20}H_{24}N_2O_2 \cdot 2CH_3I$ . The first of these yields the so-called methyl quinine,  $C_{20}H_{22}(CH_3)_2N_2O_2$ , when it is boiled with caustic potash. See B. 26, 1968, for the ethyl iodide derivatives.

**Cinchonine**,  $C_9H_8N \cdot C_9H_{11}(OH)(CH_2)N$ , is associated with quinine and occurs principally in the gray quinia bark (*Cinchona Huanaco*) (upward of 2.5 per cent.). It crystallizes from alcohol in white prisms, sublimes in needles in a current of hydrogen, and melts at  $255^\circ$ . Like quinine, it seems to dissipate fever, but to a less degree. Cinchonine is converted by boiling amyl alcoholic potash into cinchonidine (m. p.  $201^\circ$ ), which is probably a stereoisomeride (B. 29, 2185).

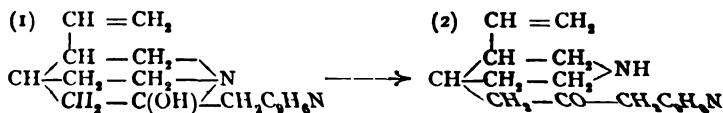
Quinine and cinchonine are similarly constructed; they contain one hydroxyl, and the former an additional methoxyl group. It is, therefore, methoxycinchonine:

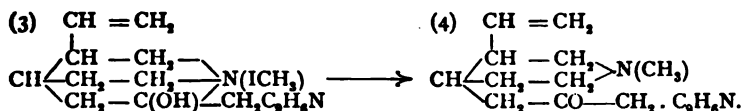


They yield acetyl derivatives when heated with acetic anhydride. Quinine heated to  $150^\circ$  with hydrochloric acid splits off the methyl group, with formation of *apoquinine*,  $C_{19}H_{20}(OH)_2N_2$ . The two nitrogen atoms of both alkaloids are tertiary.

**Decomposition of Cinchonine and Quinine:** When cinchonine (1) and quinine are boiled with acetic acid, the union of that carbon atom to which hydroxyl is attached is severed from the one nitrogen atom, which then becomes an imido-group, while the  $C(OH)$ -group becomes a keto-group. Cinchonine yields the isomeric *quinchotoxine* (2), melting at  $58-60^\circ$ , which, like the corresponding *quinotoxine*, is very poisonous, but does not have any antipyretic properties. Quinchotoxine forms a methyl derivative (4), the iod-methylate of which appears to be identical with that of methyl cinchonine. The latter has been prepared by adding methyl iodide to cinchonine (3) and splitting off hydriodic acid (B. 13, 2292).

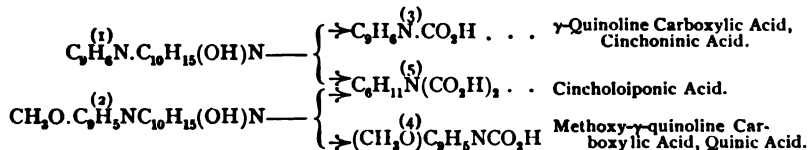
These observations have led v. Miller and Rhode (B. 28, 1056) to regard cinchonine, which contains a quinoline ring, as a compound of quinoline with a piperidine ring, effected through a  $CH_2$ -group. The N-atom of the piperidine ring is linked through the group  $C(OH)$ , to which the  $CH_2$ -group is attached, with the  $\gamma$ -carbon atom of the piperidine ring. The formulas recall those of tropine and ecgonine (p. 568):





The following of the many other decomposition reactions of cinchonine and quinine may be considered:

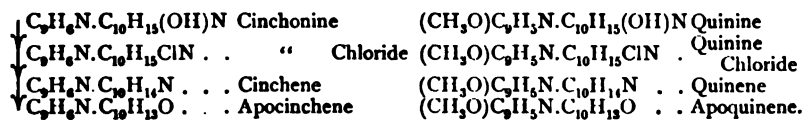
**Oxidation of Cinchonine and Quinine:** Potassium permanganate oxidizes cinchonine to cinchotenine,  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{10}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5 + 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melting at  $197^\circ$ . This is an oxycarboxylic acid, which can be as readily decomposed into a keton-imide as cinchonine itself. When cinchotenine is formed, formic acid appears, and a vinyl group probably becomes a carboxyl group. This would seem to be indicated by the addition of two bromine atoms, one molecule of hydrogen chloride, or  $\text{HI}$  to cinchonine (B. 19, 2856). Cinchonine and quinine, when more energetically oxidized with potassium permanganate, yield cinchoninic acid, quinic acid, and eventually  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma$ -pyridine tricarboxylic acid, or carbocinchomeronic acid (p. 536). It follows from this that cinchonine and quinine are  $\gamma$ -quinoline derivatives. When oxidized with chromic acid and dilute sulphuric acid, cinchonine (1) and cinchotenine yield, in addition to cinchoninic acid (3), *cincholoiponic acid* (5) ( $\lambda\omega\pi\acute{o}\varsigma$ , "remaining"),  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{13}\text{NO}_4 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ , melting at  $125\text{--}127^\circ$  with decomposition. This is probably a hexahydrohomocinchomeronic acid,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_9\text{N}(\text{CH}_2\text{COOH})(\text{COOH})$  (B. 28, 12; 29, R. 843; 30, 1326). Cincholoiponic acid (5) is also found, when chromic acid is the oxidant, among the oxidation products of quinine (2) along with *quinic acid*, which is a methoxy- $\gamma$ -quinoline carboxylic acid (4).



On the other hand, cinchonine is broken down by a chromic acid mixture into cinchoninic acid and *meroquinene* (from  $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\rho\acute{o}\varsigma$ , "part"). The latter also results from a hydrolytic decomposition of cinquene and quinene, brought about by phosphoric acid at  $170\text{--}180^\circ$ . Lepidine or  $\gamma$ -methyl quinoline and p-methoxylepidine are produced at the same time. Meroquinene is converted into  $\beta$ -ethyl- $\gamma$ -methyl pyridine on heating with corrosive sublimate and hydrochloric acid. When oxidized it becomes cincholoiponic acid. It probably should be regarded as  $\beta$ -vinyl- $\gamma$ -piperidine acetic acid (B. 30, 1326).

Lepidine and methoxylepidine are also formed in the alkali fusion of cinchonine and quinine (B. 23, 2675).

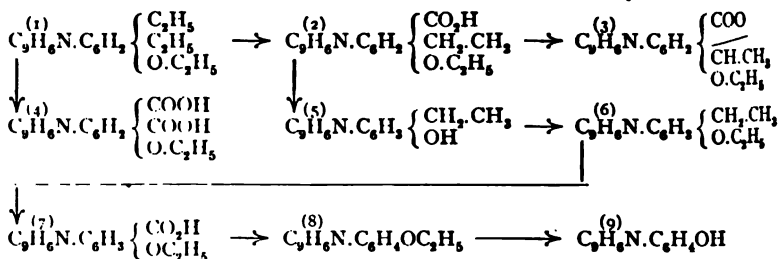
**Decomposition of Cinchonine and Quinine Chlorides:**  $\text{PCl}_5$  converts cinchonine and quinine into *cinchonine* and *quinine chlorides*, and these compounds, boiled with alcoholic potash, yield *cinchene* and *quinene*, which, when heated to  $190^\circ$  together with concentrated hydrochloric or hydrobromic acid, give up ammonia and absorb water, thus forming *apocinchene* and *apoquinene*:



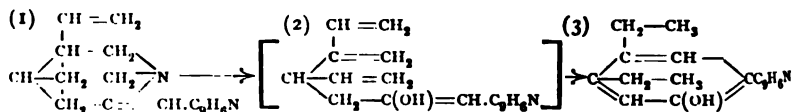
When apoquinene is heated to  $250^\circ$  with zinc-ammonium chloride it becomes amido-apocinchene, from which apocinchene may be obtained through the diazo-compound. As cinchonidine and conquinine can also be changed to cinchene and quinine, the four *quinis-alkaloids* (Königs, B. 27, 903), cinchonine, quinine, cinchonidine, and conquinine,

nine, are derived from cinchene. On the other hand, when the chlorides of the four alkaloids are reduced and the chlorine atoms replaced by hydrogen, four different desoxy-compounds result: *desoxycinchonine*, *desoxycinchonidine*, *desoxyquinine*, and *desoxycinquinine*. The isomerism of the two pairs of alkaloids appears, therefore, to be occasioned by the asymmetry of the tertiary carbon atom to which hydroxyl is attached.

**Decomposition of Apocinchene into  $\gamma$ -O-Oxyphenyl Quinoline:** Apocinchene is a phenol. Its ethyl ether (1) can be gradually oxidized to *ethyl apocinchenic acid* (2), the lactone of *ethyl apocinchene oxy-acid* (3), and *quinoline phenetol-dicarboxylic acid* (4), which forms an inner anhydride very readily, and consequently contains the  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ -groups in the o-position. Boiling concentrated hydrobromic acid decomposes ethyl apocinchenic acid into *homoapocinchene* (5), carbon dioxide and ethyl bromide being split off. Sulphuric acid and manganese dioxide oxidize *ethyl homoapocinchene* (6) to *ethyl homoapocinchenic acid* (7). If the silver salt of the latter be heated,  *$\gamma$ -quinoline phenetol* (8) is formed, which is converted by hydrobromic acid into  *$\gamma$ -quinoline phenol* (9). Apocinchene is, therefore, very probably  $\gamma$ ,2-oxy-4,5-diethylphenyl quinoline, and apoquinene accordingly  $\gamma$ ,2-oxy-4,5-diethylphenylmethoxyquinoline.

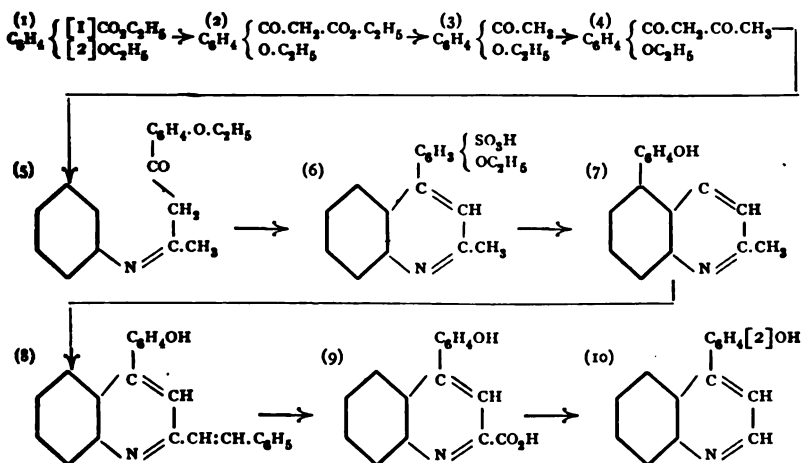


The following diagram represents the formation of  $\gamma$ ,o-oxydiethylphenylquinoline, or apocinchene (3), by the hydrolysis of cinchene (1), assuming the formula (p. 573) given above for cinchonine:



The rearrangement of the hypothetical intermediate product (2) into the phenylquinoline derivative finds an analogy in the transpositions of the olefine terpenes (p. 309) into hydroaromatic compounds—e. g., the production of isopulegole from citronellal (p. 308). It is probable that the breaking down of methyl cinchonine (p. 573) with methyl iodide and alkali would afford a better insight into the nature of the intermediate product (see A. 277, 277).

The synthesis of  $\gamma$ ,o-Oxyphenylquinoline is identical with that of  *$\gamma$ -quinoline phenol* from apocinchene. It presupposes that of salicylic acid. The *diethyl ester of salicylic acid* (1), *acetic ester*, and sodium form *o-ethoxybenzoylacetate* (2), which is converted by boiling dilute sulphuric acid into *o-ethoxyacetophenone* (3). Acetic ester and sodium ethylate transpose the latter compound into *o-ethoxybenzoyl acetone* (4), from which *o-ethoxybenzoylacetone-mono-anil* (5) is obtained by digesting it with acetic acid and aniline. This anil condenses to  *$\gamma$ ,o-ethoxyphenylsulphonic acid quinaldine* (6) on treating it with concentrated sulphuric acid. If the sulpho-acid be boiled with concentrated hydrobromic acid,  *$\gamma$ ,o-oxyphenylquinaldine* (7) will result, and potassium permanganate will oxidize its *benzylidene* compound (8) to  *$\gamma$ ,o-oxyphenylquinaldic acid* (9). The latter decomposes at  $250^\circ$  into carbon dioxide and  *$\gamma$ ,o-oxyphenylquinoline* (10), identical with the  $\gamma$ -phenylquinoline prepared from apocinchene (Leathorn and Jaeger, B. 27, 3055).



**Strychnos Bases.**—In the fruit of the different strychnos, principally in that of *Strychnos nux vomica* and in St. Ignatius' bean (*Strychnos Ignatii*), are found two very poisonous bases: *Strychnine* and *brucine*. Their constitution is undetermined. They were discovered (1818 and 1819) by Pelletier and Caventou.

**Strychnine**,  $C_{21}H_{22}N_2O_8$ , melting at  $284^\circ$  and boiling at  $270^\circ$  (5 mm.) (B. 19, R. 30), is laevorotatory, reacts alkaline, has an extremely bitter taste, and occasions tetanus. Its most closely allied transposition products indicate that the one nitrogen atom belongs to a hydrogenized quinoline or indol ring and that it has sacrificed its basic character by union with a CO-group. Gradual oxidation with dilute and concentrated sulphuric acid converts strychnine into picric acid and an acid,  $C_{10}H_5N_2O_6$ , which splits off  $CO_2$  when heated with water and very probably yields a dinitrodioxyquinoline,  $C_9H_5N(NO_2)_2(OH)_2$  (Tafel, B. 26, 333).

**Brucine**,  $C_{23}H_{26}N_2O_8 + 4H_2O$ , melts at  $178^\circ$  when anhydrous. It is laevorotatory. Its action is similar to that of strychnine, but less powerful. When fused with caustic potash it yields, in addition to lutidines and collidines, tetrahydroquinoline (B. 18, R. 73; 20, 460, 813).

It dissolves with a red color in concentrated nitric acid. On application of heat it becomes yellow and violet after the addition of stannous chloride.

The *veratrum alkaloids* occur, together with veratric acid (p. 228), in the white hellebore (from *V. album*) and in the sabadilla seeds (from *V. Sabadilla*). Crystalline **Veratrine** (B. 26, R. 284), or **cevadine**,  $C_{31}H_{40}NO_9$ , melts at  $202^\circ$ . It dissolves in concentrated sulphuric acid with a yellow color, which gradually changes to blood-red. It yields  $\beta$ -picoline (B. 23, 2707) by dry distillation.

#### IV. THE ISOQUINOLINE GROUP OF THE ALKALOIDS.

**Opium Bases.**—In opium, the dried juice of the green seed capsules of poppy (*Papaver somniferum*), we find not only meconic acid and meconine (p. 235), but a series of bases, of which may be mentioned:

Morphine, $C_{17}H_{19}NO_3$ (9 per cent.)	Papaverine, $C_{20}H_{21}NO_4$ (0.8 per cent.)
Codeine, $C_{18}H_{21}NO_3$ (0.3 per cent.)	Narcotine, $C_{27}H_{23}NO_7$ (5 per cent.)
Thebaine, $C_{19}H_{21}NO_3$ (0.4 per cent.)	Narceine, $C_{23}H_{27}NO_5$ (0.2 per cent.)

The constitution of *papaverine*, *narcotine*, and *narceine* remains unexplained. The nature of morphine, the principal base of opium, and its associates, *codeine* and *thebaine*, is not certainly known. They are very

probably not isoquinoline bodies, but are treated, however, with the other opium bases. Morphine is the most important of them from a medical point of view.

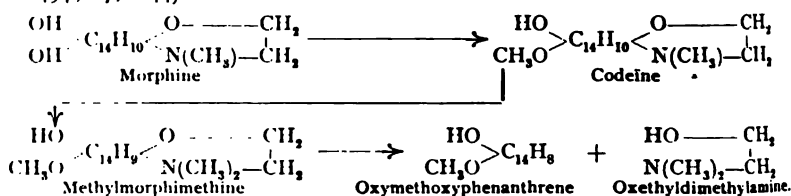
**Morphine**,  $C_{17}H_{19}NO_3 + H_2O$ , crystallizes from alcohol in small prisms, tastes bitter, and in small quantities produces sleep. It shows an alkaline reaction, and represents a tertiary, monacid base. Its official hydrochloride,  $C_{17}H_{19}NO_3 \cdot HCl + 3H_2O$ , forms delicate, silky needles. It is used to relieve pain and to produce sleep.

The solutions of morphine and its salts are colored dark blue by ferric chloride; the solution in concentrated sulphuric acid acquires a blood-red coloration on the addition of a little nitric acid. It is readily oxidized, two molecules uniting, with the exit of two hydrogen atoms, to **pseudomorphine**,  $(C_{17}H_{18}NO_3)_2$  (A. 294, 206). It contains two hydroxyl groups, and departs itself as a dihydric phenol, forming salts with one metal atom, but yielding diacidyl derivatives. It forms phenanthrene on distillation with zinc-dust.

**Apomorphine**,  $C_{17}H_{17}NO_3$ , results when water is split off from morphine by heating the latter with concentrated hydrochloric acid to 140–150°. Its hydrochloride is applied in the liberation of mucus.

**Codeine**, **Methyl Morphine**,  $C_{17}H_{17}(\text{OH} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{OH} \\ \text{O} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \end{smallmatrix})NO$ , melting at 150°, is contained in opium, and is obtained from morphine by means of methyl iodide and potassium hydroxide (B. 14, 1413).

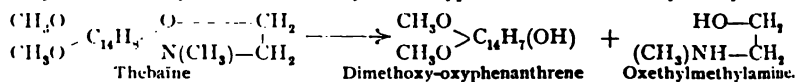
Codeine iodmethyrate, which is also produced from morphine methyl hydroxide (Const. B. 30, 354) and methyl iodide, yields, upon heating with alkali, the so-called **methylmorphimethine**, melting at 118°. When this is digested with acetic anhydride it is resolved into acetoxymethoxyphenanthrene and acetoxyethylidimethylamine (B. 26, R. 494; 27, 1144):



**Apocodeine** is obtained, like apomorphine, from morphine.

**Thebaine**,  $C_{19}H_{21}NO_3 = C_{17}H_{15}(OCH_3)_2NO$ , consists of silvery plates, melting at 193°. It breaks down into  $2CH_3Cl$  and **morphothebaine**, when heated with concentrated hydrochloric acid. This new isomeric base melts at 191° (B. 27, 2961).

Thebaine or its iodmethyrate is decomposed, like codeine, on boiling with acetic anhydride, into acetylthebaol, an acetoxymethoxyphenanthrene and oxethylmethylamine:

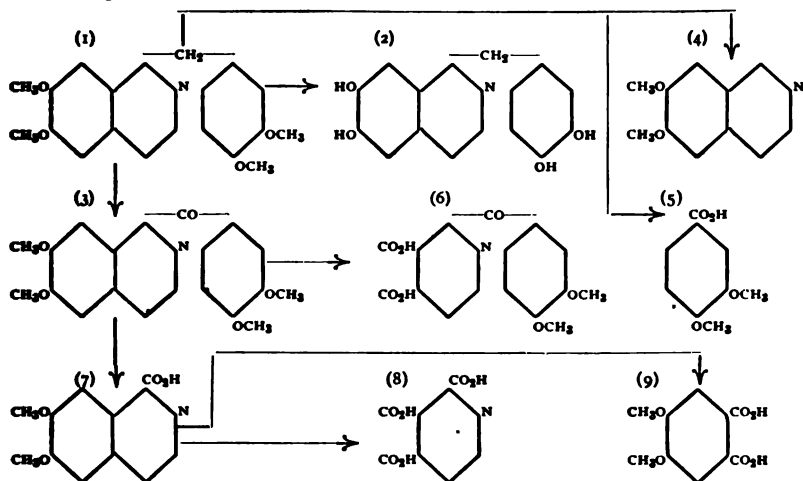


Boiling dilute hydrochloric acid changes thebaine, a tertiary base, into the secondary base **Thebenine**,  $C_{17}H_{15}(\text{OH})(OCH_3)NO$ . When this is treated with ethyl iodide and decomposed with caustic potash, methyldiethylamine and thebenol,  $C_{16}H_{19}(OCH_3)(OH)$ , result. **Pyrene** (p. 420) (B. 30, 1357) is produced in the distillation of thebenol with zinc dust.

**Papaverine** (1), **Tetramethoxybenzylisoquinoline**,  $C_{20}H_{21}NO_4$ , melts at 148°. Its constitution becomes evident from its decompositions. Hot hydriodic acid decomposes it into  $4CH_3I$  and the base **papaveroline** (2). Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to **papaveraldine** (3), or tetramethoxybenzoylisoquinoline.

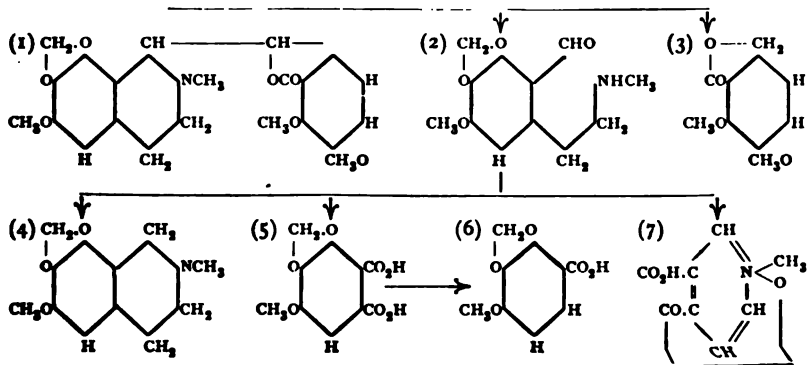
Papaverine breaks down into veratric acid (5) and dimethylisoquinoline (4) when fused with caustic potash.

The oxidation of papaveraldine gives rise to papaveric acid,  $\alpha$ -dimethoxybenzoyl-pyridine- $\beta,\gamma$ -dicarboxylic acid (6), dimethoxyisoquinoline carboxylic acid (7),  $\alpha,\beta,\gamma$ -pyridinitricarboxylic acid (8), and methemipinic acid (9) (G. Goldschmidt, B. 21, R. 650). Compare the following diagram. The hydrogen atoms are omitted from the rings in order that the representation may be clear:



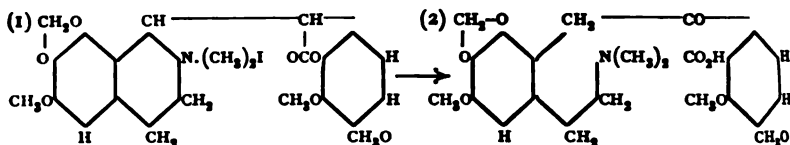
Narcotine (1), *Meconinehydrocotarnine*,  $C_{22}H_{23}NO_7$ , melting at  $176^\circ$ , is separated from morphine by potassium hydroxide, in which it is insoluble (1817, Robiquet). Boiling water decomposes it into cotarnine (2), melting at  $132^\circ$  (1844, Wöhler, A. 50, 1), an amidoaldehyde and meconine (p. 235) (3). The latter yields opianic acid (p. 237) and hemipinic acid (p. 242) on oxidation.

Cotarnine is an aldehyde. It forms salts with acids, water being eliminated and the isoquinoline ring being closed. Cotarnine upon reduction becomes hydrocotarnine (4), while potassium permanganate oxidizes it to cotarnic acid (5), a methylmethylenedioxybenzene dicarboxylic acid, which yields methylmethylenegalic acid (6) on being heated with hydrochloric acid, and gallic acid with hydriodic acid (W. Roser, A. 249, 156; 254, 334; 272, 221). Nitric acid oxidizes cotarnine to apophyllenic acid (7) (see B. 29, 2190). It must be observed that the position assumed, in the following formulas, for the dioxymethylene and methoxy-groups in the isoquinoline nucleus is wholly arbitrary:

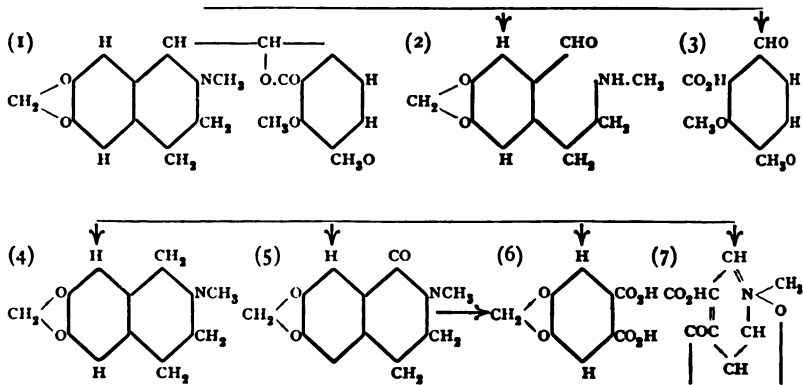


In the attempt to prepare narcotine by condensing opianic acid and hydrocotarnine with sulphuric acid an isomeric isonarcotine, melting at  $194^{\circ}$ , resulted. It may be recognized by the red coloration it gives with concentrated  $H_2SO_4$  (B. 29, 183, 2040).

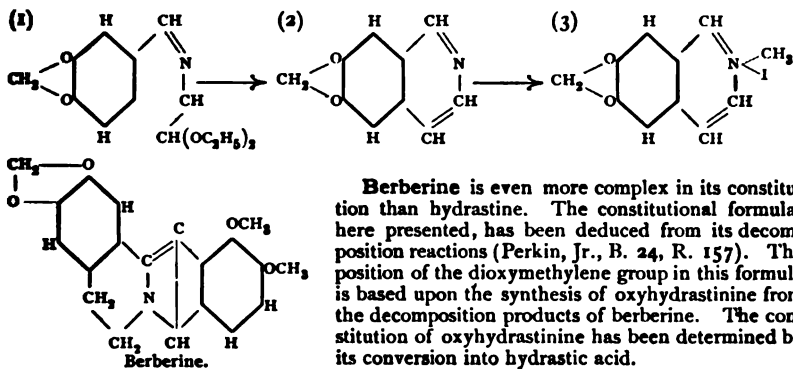
Narceine (2),  $C_{33}H_{47}NO_8 + 3H_2O$ , melting at  $170^{\circ}$ , and when anhydrous at  $140-145^{\circ}$ , occurs, together with narcotine, in opium, and is formed when the iodmethylate (1) of narcotine is acted upon with caustic potash (A. 286, 248):



Hydrastine (1),  $C_{21}H_{21}NO_6$ , melting at  $132^{\circ}$ ,  $[\alpha]_D = -67^{\circ}$  in chloroform (1851, Durand), occurs, together with berberine,  $C_{36}H_{41}NO_8 + 5\frac{1}{2}H_2O$ , melting at  $120^{\circ}$  (it is found with hydrastine in *Berberis vulgaris*), in the roots of *Hydrastis canadensis*, a North American plant belonging to the Ranunculaceae. It is constituted similarly to narcotine. When acted upon by oxidizing agents it breaks down into opianic acid (3) (p. 237) and hydrastinine (2), melting at  $116^{\circ}$ , which carries the hydrastine. Hydrastine, like cotarnine, is an aldehyde. Reducing agents convert it into the corresponding alcohol, which at once loses water and becomes hydrohydrastine (4), Bz-2,3-methylenedioxy-tetrahydroisoquinoline. Potassium permanganate oxidizes hydrastinine first to oxyhydrastinine (5), then to hydrastininic acid, which nitric acid converts into the methyl imide of hydrastinic acid (6) or normetahemipine-methylene ether acid. Hydrastinine itself, like cotarnine, is oxidized by nitric acid to apophyllenic acid (6). The isoquinoline ring is present in the salts of cotarnine and hydrastine. The formation of salts follows in consequence of the exit of water (W. Roser, A. 249, 172; Freund, A. 271, 311):



The synthesis of hydrastinine was effected in the following manner: Piperonal-acetalamine (1) condenses with sulphuric acid to Bz-2,3-methylenedioxyisoquinoline, melting at  $124^{\circ}$  and boiling at  $215^{\circ}$  (50 mm.), which becomes hydrohydrastinine (see above), melting at  $60-61^{\circ}$ , upon reducing its iodmethylate (3), melting at  $244^{\circ}$ , with tin and hydrochloric acid. Potassium bichromate and sulphuric acid change the hydro-derivative back to hydrastinine (Fritsch, A. 286, 18):



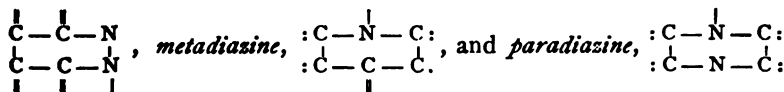
## B. POLYHETERO-ATOMIC SIX-MEMBERED RINGS.

### AZINES.

Polyhetero-atomic six-membered rings, containing oxygen and sulphur as ring members, occur in a series of bodies which have already been discussed at the conclusion of allied bodies. Dialkylene ethers—*e.g.*, *diethylene oxide* (I, 298)—and the anhydrides of  $\alpha$ -oxyacids—*e.g.*, *glycolide*, *diglycolic anhydride* (I, 339)—contain rings consisting of four carbon atoms and two oxygen atoms. The six-membered ring of *diethylene disulphide* (I, 305), and of *thianthrene* or *diphenylene disulphide* (II, 518), contains two sulphur atoms, while three oxygen atoms or three sulphur atoms are present in the polymeric aldehydes and the thioaldehydes—*e.g.*, *trioxymethylene*, *triethiomethylene*, *paraldehyde*, *trithioaldehyde* (I, 194, 203), etc. (see II, 441).

Those members of this division containing N-atoms as ring members require more exhaustive consideration. This was done also with like bodies of the five-membered series. They may be regarded, like the azoles, as derived from furfuran, thiophene, and pyrrol by the replacement of methine groups of monoheteroatomic rings, and accordingly they can be grouped under the common name of *azines*.

The *oxazines*, *oxdiazines* (azoxazines), and *dioxdiazines* are then the rings with the hetero-atoms: N and O, 2N and O, 2N and 2O; the *thiazines* and *thiodiazines* (diazthines) are the rings with the hetero-atoms S and N, S and 2N, and the *diazines*, *triazines*, and *tetrazines* are the six-membered rings with 2, 3, and 4 N-atoms. The place isomerides of diheteroatomic azines are distinguished according to the position of the hetero-atoms with reference to one another by the prefixes *ortho*-, *meta*-, and *para*-. Thus, the three possible diazines as *orthodiazine*,



(B. 22, 2083; A. 249, 1; J. pr. Ch. 38, 185); the oxazines as *orthoxazines*, *metoxazines*, *paroxazines*; the thiazines as *orthothiazines*, *metathiazines*, and *parathiazines*.

The parent substances of important classes of dyes: compare *resorfin*, *methylene blue*, *toluylene red*, *safranines*, *indulines*, are the dibenzo-derivatives of the paroxazines, parathiazines, and paradiazines.

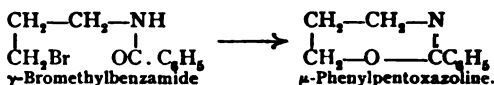
### 1. OXAZINES.

A. The ring of orthoxazine,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{C} - \text{C} - \text{N} \\ | \quad | \\ \text{C} - \text{C} - \text{O} \\ | \quad | \end{array}$ , is present in the oxime anhydrides of the  $\gamma$ -aldehydo- and  $\gamma$ -ketonic acids—e. g., benzal levoxime,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH} : \text{CH} - \text{CH}_2 - \text{CO}$

(p. 288), which bear the same relation to the oxime anhydrides of the  $\beta$ -ketonic acids, the isoxazolons (p. 495), as the  $\delta$ -lactones to the  $\gamma$ -lactones (B. 25, 1930). The ring formation of the oximes of o-benzaldehyde and o-benzo-ketone carboxylic acids occurs without difficulty. Derivatives of *benzorthoxazines* are produced: *Benzorthoxazinon*, o-Benzaloxime carboxylic anhydride,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} = \text{N} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CO} - \text{O} \end{array}$ , is derived from phthalaldehydic acid (p. 236). It readily rearranges itself to the isomeric phthalimide (B. 24, 2347). There is an intermediate formation of o-cyanbenzoic acid (see the indoxazenes, p. 495). *Benzomethylorthoxazinon*, o-Acetophenouoxime carboxylic anhydride,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \text{C}(\text{CH}_3) = \text{N} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CO} - \text{O} \end{array}$ , melts at  $179^\circ$  (B. 16, 1995, and p. 238).

B. The following contain the *Metoxazine* ring,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{C} - \text{N} - \text{C}(\mu) \\ | \quad | \\ \beta\text{C} - \text{C} - \text{O} \\ | \quad | \end{array}$ :

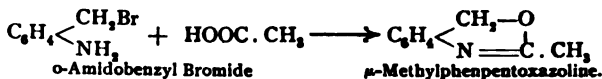
I. The *pentoxazolines*, which are produced by the splitting-off of HBr from the  $\gamma$ -bromalkylamides. This is similar to the formation of the five-membered oxazolines (p. 503) from the  $\beta$ -bromalkylamides (B. 24, 3213):



$\mu$ -Phenyl- $\alpha$ -methyl Pentoxazoline,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NO}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)$ , and  $\mu$ -Phenyl- $\alpha$ -dimethyl- $\gamma$ -methyl Pentoxazoline,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NO}(\text{CH}_3)_2(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)$ , melting at  $32^\circ$ , are obtained from  $\gamma$ -chlorbutyl- and  $\gamma$ -bromisohexylbenzamide.

$\mu$ -Allylamido- and  $\mu$ -phenylamido- $\gamma$ -methyl Pentoxazoline, or *n-allyl*- and *n-phenyl butylene- $\psi$ -urea*,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 - \text{N} \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CH}(\text{CH}_3) - \text{O} - \text{C}(\text{NHR}) \end{array}$ , are obtained from  $\gamma$ -chlorbutyl-amine by means of allyl- and phenyl-mustard oil (B. 29, 1428; 30, 1319).

II. Derivatives of *benzometoxazine* or *phenpentoxazoline* are formed from o-amido-benzylhalogenides (p. 180) and acid anhydrides (B. 27, 3515):



The *coumazonic acids* (p. 236 and B. 16, 2585) also belong here—e. g.,  $\mu$ -Methyl Coumazonic Acid, *Benzotrimethylmetoxazine*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2 - \text{O} \\ | \\ \text{N} = \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$ , melting at  $218^\circ$ , and  $\mu$ -Phenyl Coumazonic Acid, *Benzodimethyl- $\mu$ -phenylmetoxazine*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2 - \text{O} \\ | \\ \text{N} = \text{C} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \end{array}$ , melting at  $220^\circ$ , which have been obtained from 3-amido-

4-oxypropylbenzoic acid with acetyl chloride and benzoyl chloride. Carbon dioxide is liberated.

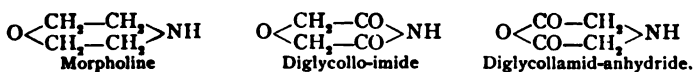
The *imido-* and *thio-coumazones* are derivatives of *dihydrobenzometoxazine*. The former result upon the exit of water from the urea derivatives of *o*-amidobenzyl alcohol (p. 185), the latter by the action of  $\text{CS}_2$  upon the alcoholic solution of *o*-amidobenzyl alcohol and related compounds:



The imido-coumazones are isomeric with the keto-tetrahydroquinazolines (p. 592), and when digested with aromatic amines become quinazoline compounds (p. 589). The O-member is replaced by NR. The thiocoumazones behave similarly (B. 27, 2424).

**Phenylimidocoumazone**, *Benzodihydrometoxazine anil*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{ON}:(\text{NC}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , melting at  $146^\circ$  (B. 22, 2938), forms stable salts with acids; with acid anhydrides and chlorides it yields addition products. **Thiocoumazone**, *Benzodihydrothiometoxazine*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{ON}:\text{S}$ , melting at  $142^\circ$ , is an acid, and forms a sparingly soluble potassium salt (B. 25, 2979; 27, 1866).

**C. Paroxazines**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{N}-\text{C}-\text{C} \\ | \quad \quad | \\ \text{C}-\text{C}-\text{O} \end{array}$ : I. Only saturated derivatives of the simple nucleus are known. The following are *tetrahydroparoxazines*: **Morpholine** (I, 310) and its alkyl compounds. *n*-Benzyl Morpholine, boiling at  $261^\circ$ , is produced from dibromethylbenzylamine, and also from chlorethylbenzylamine (B. 24, R. 821; 29, 2386). **Diglycollo-imide** and the derivatives of isomeric diglycollamid-anhydride (B. 25, 2272) are *diketotetrahydroparoxazines*:



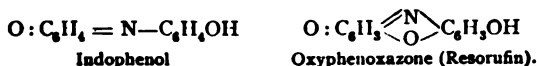
II. *Benzoparoxazine* yields:  $\beta$ -Phenylbenzoparoxazine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \text{O}-\text{CH}_2 \\ | \\ \text{N}-\text{C} \end{array} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $103^\circ$ , and  $\beta$ -methylbenzoparoxazine. They are obtained by the reduction of *o*-nitrophenylphenacyl ether,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \text{O} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \\ | \\ \text{NO}_2 \end{array} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , and *o*-nitrophenylacetol (B. 23, 172).

**Benzomorpholine**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \text{O}-\text{CH}_2 \\ | \\ \text{NH}-\text{CH}_2 \end{array}$ , boiling at  $268^\circ$ , is made from *o*-oxethylamidophenol (p. 152). **Benzoketomorpholine**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \text{O}-\text{CO} \\ | \\ \text{NH}-\text{CH}_2 \end{array}$ , is produced by reducing glycol-*o*-nitrophenyl ether acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NO}_2)\text{OCH}_2\text{COOH}$  (B. 20, 1943).

III. The group of *dibenzoparoxazine* or *phenoxazine*, *benzonaphtho-*, and *dinaphthoparoxazine* has been more fully developed. A series of important dyes belongs to it:

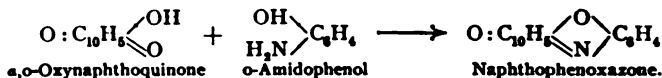
**Phenoxazine**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ | \\ \text{NH} \end{array} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ , melting at  $148^\circ$ , is produced on heating *o*-amidophenol with pyrocatechol (p. 160).

The dyes of the phenoxazine group contain quinone unions (p. 167). They may also be regarded as quinone anils, indophenols, or indamines (p. 174), in which the two nuclei are further united by an oxygen atom in the ortho-position with reference to the tertiary nitrogen:

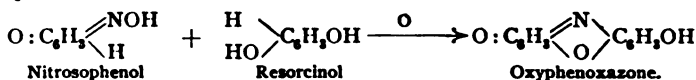


The parent bodies of the phenoxazine dyes are distinguished as *phenoxazones*, or *phenoxazines* (B. 25, 2995), depending upon whether they are quinone-monomide or di-imide derivatives. They are produced:

1. Upon condensing o-oxyquinones and o-oxyquinone-imides with o-amidophenols. The oxy-p-quinones of the naphthalene series are mainly best adapted for these condensations (B. 26, 2375; 28, 353):



2. Oxy- and amido-derivatives of the phenoxazones and phenoxazines, the real dyes, result by the condensation of quinone dichlorimides, nitrosophenols, or nitrosodimethyl aniline with polyhydric phenols or tertiary amidophenols:



**Resorufin, Oxyphenoxazone**,  $\text{O} : \text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{NO})\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{OH})$ , is produced when nitric acid containing  $\text{N}_2\text{O}_5$  acts upon an ethereal solution of resorcinol (p. 160) (Weselsky, A. 162, 273); and from nitrosoresorcinol by means of resorcinol (B. 24, 3366). *Resazurine*,  $\text{O} : \text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{N} \\ \diagdown \text{NO} \end{array} \text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{OH})$ , is an intermediate product in this reaction. The

alkaline solutions of resorufin are rose-red, with a magnificent cinnabar-red fluorescence. **Orcirufin** is obtained, like resorufin, from orcinol (p. 162). **Gallocyanine**, *Dimethyl-amido-oxyphenoxazon-carboxylic acid*,  $\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{NO})\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{OH})\text{COOH} : \text{O}$ , is produced by the action of nitrosodimethylaniline upon gallic acid (p. 230). With mordants, especially chromic oxide, it forms violet-colored and stable *lakes* (calico printing).

**Chloroxydiphenoxazone**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NO})\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{Cl}(\text{OH}) : \text{O}$ , melting with decomposition at  $235^\circ$ , is obtained from p-dioxychloroquinone and amidophenol (B. 26, 2375).

**Naphthophenoxazone**,  $\text{O} : \text{C}_{10}\text{H}_5(\text{NO})\text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ , melts at  $192^\circ$ . **Naphthophenoxazine**,  $\text{NH} : \text{C}_{10}\text{H}_5(\text{NO})\text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ , melting at  $243^\circ$ , is prepared from o-amidophenol and oxy-naphthoquinone imide (p. 407).

**Dimethyl Naphthophenoxazime Chloride**,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_5(\text{NO})\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 : \text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{Cl}$ , from  $\beta$ -naphthol and nitrosodimethyl aniline, is the so-called *naphthol blue*, which dyes cotton mordanted with tannin a violet-blue (B. 23, 2247). *Nile blue* is an amido-derivative of naphthol blue, while *cyanamine* is an anilido-derivative. For other derivatives consult A. 289, 90; B. 29, R. 1000).

**Oxyphenoxazime**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{N} \\ \diagdown \text{O} \end{array} \text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{OH} \\ \diagdown \text{NH} \end{array}$ , results from the oxidation of o-amidophenol. It condenses to triphenendioxazine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{N} \\ \diagdown \text{O} \end{array} \text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{O} \\ \diagdown \text{N} \end{array} \text{C}_6\text{H}_3$ , with another molecule of amidophenol (p. 153; B. 23, 182; 27, 2784). See B. 29, 2076, for methyl triphenendioxazine.

## 2. THIAZINES.

A. Orthothiazines:  $\begin{array}{c} \text{C} - \text{C} - \text{N} \\ | \quad \quad | \\ \text{C} - \text{C} - \text{S} \end{array}$ , are not known.  
(a)  $\text{C} - \text{N} - \text{C}(\mu)$

B. Metathiazine,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{C} - \text{C} - \text{S} \\ | \quad \quad | \\ (\beta) \quad (\gamma) \end{array}$ . The following bodies are derived from this

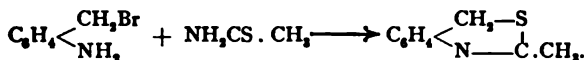
ring:

I. The *penthiazolines*, corresponding to the pentoxazolines. They are prepared from the  $\gamma$ -haloid alkylthiobenzamides.

$\mu$ -Phenyl Penthiazoline,  $\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{N} \begin{smallmatrix} | \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{S} - \text{C} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $45^\circ$ , is obtained from thiobenzamide (p. 204) and trimethylene chlorbromide (B. 26, 1077).  $\mu$ -Phenyl- $\alpha$ -dimethyl- $\gamma$ -methyl Penthiazoline,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NS}(\text{CH}_3)_2(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)$ , melting at  $34^\circ$ , is derived from  $\gamma$ -bromisohexylthiobenzamide.  $\mu$ -Mercapto- $\gamma$ -methyl Penthiazoline and  $\gamma$ -methyl- $\alpha$ -dimethyl- $\mu$ -phenyl Penthiazoline, melting at  $131^\circ$  and at  $180^\circ$ , are made from  $\gamma$ -chlorbutylamine and  $\gamma$ -bromisohexylamine by the action of carbon bisulphide (B. 29, 1429; 30, 1321; see also B. 29, R. 648 and 684).

Diketopenthiazolidine, Sinapan-propionic Acid,  $\text{CH}_2 - \text{CO} - \text{NH} \begin{smallmatrix} | \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{S} - \text{CO} \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $159^\circ$ , results when  $\beta$ -iodpropionic acid acts upon xanthogenamide (B. 24, 3848).

II. Derivatives of *benzometathiazine* or *phenpenthiazole* are produced in the interaction of *o*-amidobenzyl haloids and carbon-thiamides (pp. 180, 204) (B. 27, 3519):



$\mu$ -Methyl Phenpenthiazole, melting at  $46^\circ$ , is produced by the action of  $\text{P}_2\text{S}_5$  upon  $\mu$ -methyl phenpentoxazole; also from *o*-acetylamidobenzyl alcohol and  $\text{P}_2\text{S}_5$ , as well as from *o*-acetylamidobenzyl sulphide and  $\text{PCl}_5$ . Consult B. 30, 1143, for other derivatives.

The *imido*- and *thio-coumothiazones*, corresponding to the imido- and thiocoumazones, belong here. Like them, they result from the action of  $\text{CS}_2$  and alcoholic potash upon the thio-urea derivatives of *o*-amidobenzyl alcohol—or amidobenzyl alcohols in general (p. 180):

Thiocoumothiazone, *Benzodihydrothiothiazine*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NH} - \text{CS} \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{S} \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $166^\circ$ , is an acid. It forms *n*-phenylthiotetrahydroquinazoline when boiled with aniline, the ring sulphur atom being replaced by  $\text{NC}_6\text{H}_5$  (pp. 581, 592). Imido-coumothiazone, *Benzylene- $\psi$ -thiourea*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NH} - \text{C} : \text{NH} \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{S} \end{smallmatrix}$  or  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{N} = \text{C} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{S} \end{smallmatrix}$ , melting at  $137^\circ$ , is produced in the reduction of *o*-nitrobenzyl sulphocyanide, as well as from *o*-amido-benzyl chloride and thiourea. Potassium permanganate oxidizes it to *a*-quinazolon, while digested with aniline it forms phenylimido-coumothiazone, *benzodihydrothiazine anil*, melting at  $197^\circ$ , which results upon expelling water from *o*-oxytolylphenylthiourea (B. 22, 2933; 27, 2429).

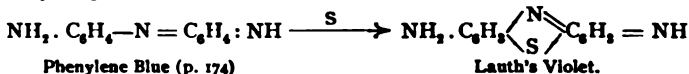
C. Parathiazine,  $\text{C} - \text{N} - \text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} | \\ \text{C} - \text{S} - \text{C} \end{smallmatrix}$ : Ketodihydrobenzothiazine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NH} - \text{CO} \\ \text{S} - \text{CH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ , is a benzo-derivative which may possibly originate from this ring. It melts at  $179^\circ$ , and is produced by the interaction of *o*-amidothiophenol and brom-acetic acid (B. 30, 607).

The symmetrical dibenzo-derivatives—*e. g.*, *dibenzo*- and *dinaphtho-parathiazine*, or *thiodiphenylamine* (p. 80), and *thiodinaphthylamine* (p. 396)—are more important. Thiodiphenylamine corresponds to phenoxazine or dibenzoparoxazine (p. 581), and, like the latter, is the parent substance of a series of more important dyes, among which is the very valuable methylene blue.

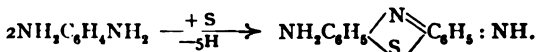
Thiodiphenylamine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{S} \\ \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ , melting at  $150^\circ$  and boiling at  $370^\circ$ , is prepared analogously to phenoxazine by heating *o*-amidothiophenol and pyrocatechol to  $220^\circ$ . An easier course consists in heating diphenylamine to  $250^\circ$  with sulphur or  $\text{S}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (B. 21, 2063). It is a neutral body, the imide hydrogen of which can be replaced by alkyl and acid radicals. See B. 24, 2910, for the *urea derivatives*. Tetrachlor-

thiodiphenylamine melts at  $235^{\circ}$  (B. 29, 1363). Nitric acid oxidizes thiodiphenylamine to nitrodiphenylamine sulphoxide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\langle\begin{smallmatrix}\text{SO} \\ \text{NH}\end{smallmatrix}\rangle\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NO}_2$ , which can be reduced to *amidothiodiphenylamine*. The reduction of *dinitrodiphenylsulphoxide* yields *Diamidothiodiphenylamine*, *Leucothionine*,  $\text{NH}_2\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\langle\begin{smallmatrix}\text{S} \\ \text{NH}\end{smallmatrix}\rangle\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{NH}_2$ , which is produced on heating *p*-diamidodiphenylamine,  $(\text{NH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{NH}$ , with sulphur. It is the leuco-base of the simplest thionine dye into which it can be converted by oxidation with ferric chloride. The *tetramethyl derivative* of leucothionine is the leuco-base of methylene blue (see below).

The dye-substances of the thiodiphenylamine group contain quinone unions. Like the paroxazine dyes, they are to be viewed as indophenol and indamine derivatives, in which the two phenyl groups are further united by sulphur:



The *phenthiazimes* and *phenthiazones*, like the phenoxazimes and phenoxazones, are distinguished according as they represent quinonediimide or monimide derivatives. Lauth's dye-substances belong to the phenthiazimes (Bernthsen, A. 230, 73; 251, 1). They result upon oxidizing paraphenylenediamines in the presence of hydrogen sulphide. It is probable that indamines occur as intermediate products (p. 174):



Another procedure which may be adopted in the preparation of these dyestuffs is based upon the fact that indamines and thiosulphuric acid yield thiosulphonic acids, which change to the leuco-bases of the thiazine dyestuffs upon boiling them with dilute acids. Therefore, the dyestuffs can be obtained by oxidizing a mixture of one molecule of *p*-diamine with one molecule of a monamine, which form the indamine, in the presence of a thiosulphate. Thiazones are produced when *p*-amidophenols are oxidized in the presence of hydrogen sulphide.

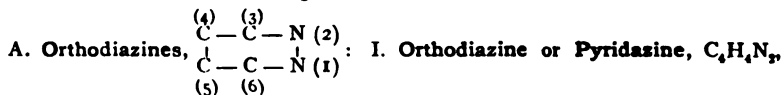
*Amidophenthiazine*, *Thionine*, *Lauth's Violet*,  $\text{NH}_2\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NS})\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{:NH}$ , is obtained from *p*-phenylenediamine, and also from its leuco-base, *diamidothiodiphenylamine*, by oxidation.

**Methylene Blue**, *Tetramethylamidophenthiazinium chloride*,  $(\text{CH}_3)_4\text{N}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NS})\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{:N}(\text{CH}_3)_4\text{Cl}$  (Caro, 1877), results upon oxidizing two molecules of dimethyl-*p*-phenylenediamine in  $\text{H}_2\text{S}$ -solution, or one molecule of dimethyl-*p*-phenylenediamine with one molecule of dimethyl aniline and thiosulphate.

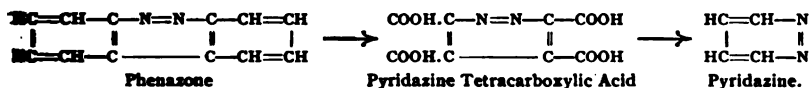
It dyes silk, or cotton mordanted with tannic acid, a beautiful *fast blue*.

**Phenthiazone**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{SN})\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}$ , results upon oxidizing oxythio-diphenylamine. **Oxyphenthiazone**, **Thionol**,  $\text{HO}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NS})\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{:O}$ , is produced on boiling thionine with dilute acids or alkalis.

### 3. DIAZINES.



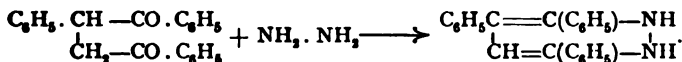
melting at 8° and boiling at 208°, may be prepared from its tetracarboxylic acid, the oxidation product of dibenzorthodiamine or phenazone (p. 587):



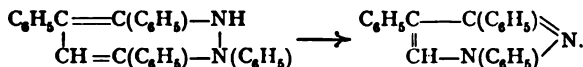
Pyridazine is an oil with an odor like that of pyridine. It forms very soluble salts, and addition compounds with  $\text{AuCl}_3$ ,  $\text{HgCl}_2$ , etc. Pyridazine Dicarboxylic Acid,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_2\text{N}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$ , melting with decomposition at 205°, is obtained from the dipotassium salt of the tetracarboxylic acid.

3,4,6-Triphenyl Pyridazine,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{N}_2$ , melting at 171°, is readily produced by oxidizing its dihydro-derivative.

*Dihydropyridazines* are formed from the 1,4-diketones and hydrazines, either without or together with the  $\alpha$ -amidopyrrols, which are to be expected:



3,4,6-Triphenyldihydropyrazine, melting at 187°, becomes pyridazine, by heating it or by treating it with chromic acid. 1,3,4,6-Tetraphenyldihydropyridazine,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_2(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_4\text{N}_2$ , melting at 149°, is obtained from desylacetophenone and phenylhydrazine. It yields 1,3,4-triphenylpyrazole (p. 483) (A. 289, 310) upon dry distillation:



See below for the *ketodihydropyridazines* or *pyridazones*.

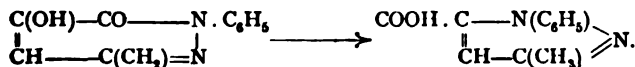
The ring-homologues of the pyrazolones are *ketotetrahydropyridazines* or *pyridazinones* (B. 28, R. 68), and as these are formed from the hydrazones of  $\beta$ -ketonic esters, so the pyridazinones are prepared from  $\gamma$ -ketonic ester hydrazones (p. 126):



The pyridazinones are not so stable as the pyrazolones.

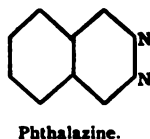
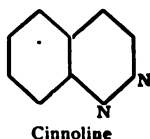
Pyridazinone,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_5\text{ON}_2$ , is an oil, boiling at 170°. It results from saponification and by the removal of  $\text{CO}_2$  from pyridazinone-3-carboxylic ester,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_5(\text{ON}_2) \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{R}$ , melting at 172°. This is a condensation-product of hydrazine with succinyl-formic ester, or formyl succinic ester (B. 28, R. 239). Pyridazinone is readily decomposed by boiling alkalies, with the splitting-off of hydrazine. 3-Methyl Pyridazinone, melting at 94°, and 3-Phenyl Pyridazinone, melting at 149°, are prepared from lævulinic ester and benzoyl propionic ester. 3-Phenylpyridazinone 5-carboxylic ester, melting at 156°, is obtained from benzoyl propionic ester and hydrazine hydrate (B. 28, R. 68). 1-Phenyl-3-methyl Pyridazinone,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_3)(\text{ON}_2)\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at 107° and boiling at 340-350°,

yields 1-Phenyl-3-methyl pyridazine,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}-\text{CO}-\text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \\ | \\ \text{CH}-\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)-\text{N} \end{array}$ , on treatment with  $\text{PCl}_5$  and ice-water. It contains two atoms less of hydrogen. It melts at 82°. Phenyl-methylchlorpyridazine is formed at the same time, and can be converted by  $\text{NaOC}_2\text{H}_5$  into ethoxyphenylmethylpyridazine. This on saponification becomes oxyphenylmethylpyridazine, which sustains rearrangement into 1-phenyl-3-methylpyrazole-5-carboxylic acid on being heated to 170° with hydrochloric acid (p. 485):



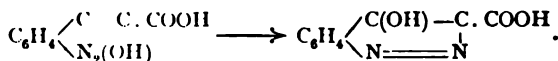
**Maleic Acid Hydrazine**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH} - \text{CO} - \text{NH} \\ \parallel \quad \quad \quad | \\ \text{CH} - \text{CO} - \text{NH} \end{array}$ , melting above  $250^\circ$ , is *diketotetrahydropyridazine*, which is formed, together with isomeric maleic hydrazil, or *n-amido-maleinimide*, from maleic anhydride and hydrazine (B. 28, R. 429). *Diketohexahydropyridazines*, or *ortho-piperazones*, are cyclic hydrazides of the succinic acid series, which are produced on heating the chlorides of these acids with the hydrazine hydrochlorides (p. 129): **n-Phenylortho-piperazone**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 - \text{CO} - \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \\ | \\ \text{CH}_3 - \text{CO} - \text{NH} \end{array}$  (I. 449).

**II. Benzorthodiazines.**—There are two isomeric benzorthodiazines, depending upon whether the benzene ring attaches itself to the C-atom (3) and (4) or (4) and (5) of orthodiazine. The **cinnolines** and **phthalazines** correspond to these two isomerides:



**Cinnoline**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} - \text{CH} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{N} - \text{N} \end{array}$ , melting at  $39^\circ$ , is a strong base. It is poisonous. Its *iodmethylate* melts at  $168^\circ$ .

All the cinnoline derivatives known at present have been obtained from **oxycinnoline carboxylic acid**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4[\text{C}_2\text{N}_2(\text{OH})(\text{COOH})]_2$ , melting at  $260^\circ$ , which is produced on digesting *o*-phenylpropionic acid diazochloride with water (p. 284):



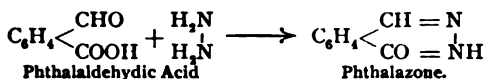
The acid loses  $\text{CO}_2$  and becomes **oxycinnoline**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4\text{N}_2(\text{OH})$ , melting at  $225^\circ$ .  $\text{PCl}_5$  converts this into **chlorcinnoline**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4\text{N}_2\text{Cl}$ , the chlorine atom of which may be easily replaced by  $\text{OH}$ ,  $\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5$ ,  $\text{NHC}_2\text{H}_5$ , etc. Iron filings and sulphuric acid reduce chlorcinnoline to **dihydrocinnoline**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4(\text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{N}_2)$ , melting at  $88^\circ$ , which mercuric oxide oxidizes to cinnoline (B. 25, 2847; 30, 521).

**Phthalazine**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} = \text{N} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CH} = \text{N} \end{array}$ , melting at  $91^\circ$ , and boiling at  $316^\circ$  (its chlorhydrate melts at  $231^\circ$ ), is produced when a hydrazine solution acts upon  $\omega$ -tetrachlor-, or, better, tetrabrom-*o*-xylene (p. 233):  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \text{ClIBr}_2 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CHBr}_2 \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \text{H}_2\text{N} \\ | \\ \text{H}_2\text{N} \end{array} \longrightarrow \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} = \text{N} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CH} = \text{N} \end{array}$  Phthalazine and methyl iodide form an *iodmethylate*,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_6\text{N}_2 \cdot \text{ICH}_3$ , melting at  $235\text{--}240^\circ$ , which silver oxide converts into *n*-methylphthalazone, and caustic potash into *n*-methylphthalazone and **dihydro-*n*-methylphthalazine**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} = \text{N} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{NCH}_3 \end{array}$ , which oxidizes very rapidly in the air to *n*-methylphthalazone (see the allied rearrangements of the alkyl quinolinium iodides (p. 544). Sodium amalgam reduces phthalazine to **tetrahydrophthalazine**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NH} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NH} \end{array}$ , while with zinc-dust and hydrochloric acid the product is *o*-xylene diamine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2)_2$  (B. 26, 2210; 28, 1830, 2210). **Chlorphthalazine**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4(\text{C}_2\text{HCN}_2)$ , melting at  $113^\circ$ , as well as **methyl-, propyl-, and isobutyl chlorphthalazone**, melting at  $130^\circ$  and  $67^\circ$  (the third being an oil), result from the action of  $\text{POCl}_3$  upon phthalazone and alkylic phthalazones. The reduction of these chlorides

leads to derivatives of isoindol (p. 232). Thus, chlorophthalazine forms *dihydroisoindol*,  
 $\text{H}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)\text{N}(\text{H})$  (p. 462); and methyl chlorophthalazine, *methyl isoindol*,

$\text{H}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)\text{N}(\text{H})\text{CH}_3$ , which yields dihydromethylisoindol upon further reduction. The  
 analogues behave similarly (B. 29, 1434).

*Ketodihydrophthalazines*, *phthalazines*, have been obtained from aromatic o-aldehyde-  
 and ketone carboxylic acids by means of the hydrazines:



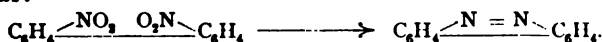
**Phthalazone**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_6\text{ON}_2$ , melting at  $183^\circ$  and boiling at  $337^\circ$ , combines with alco-  
 holic potash to *potassium-phthalazone*,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_6\text{ON}_2\text{K}$ . Acetyl chloride converts it into  
*acetyl-phthalazone*, while methyl iodide converts it into phthalazine iodmethylate.

**c-Methyl Phthalazone**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_8\text{ON}_2$ ,  $\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{N}-\text{CO}-\text{NH}$ , melting at  $220^\circ$  and boiling at  
 $248^\circ$ , is obtained from o-acetophenone carboxylic acid (B. 26, 524, 535). c-Propyl-,  
 isobutyl-, and Benzyl Phthalazone melt at  $156^\circ$ ,  $113^\circ$ , and  $152^\circ$  (B. 29, 1434).

The cyclic hydrazides of the o-phthalic acids are *diketophthalazines*. They cor-  
 respond to the orthopiperazones (p. 585), and can therefore be designated benzortho-  
 piperazones: Phthalyl Hydrazine,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_6\text{N}_2$ ,  $\text{CO}-\text{NH}-\text{CO}-\text{NH}$ , melting beyond  $250^\circ$ , results  
 from the action of hydrazine upon phthalic ester, chloride, or anhydride (J. pr. Ch. [2],  
 447; 54, 66). Phthalyl Phenylhydrazine (p. 240) results when phthalyl phenyl-  
 hydrazide is heated (B. 28, R. 429).

III. **Phenazone**,  $\text{CH}(\text{CH}=\text{CH})-\text{C}(\text{N}=\text{N})=\text{C}(\text{CH}=\text{CH})-\text{CH}$ , is a *dibenzo-ortho-*

*azone*. It consists of yellow needles, melting at  $156^\circ$ . When o-dinitrodiphenyl is  
 reduced with sodium amalgam and methyl alcohol, an intramolecular formation of the azo-  
 group occurs:

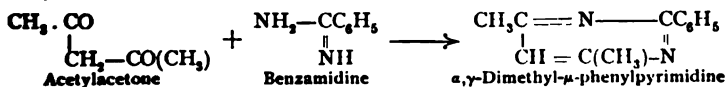


*Phenazone dioxide* and *phenazone monoxide* are intermediate products. Phenazone  
 is also formed on heating diphenylene-o<sub>2</sub>-dihydrazine with hydrochloric acid to  $150^\circ$ .  
*Dihydrophenazone*,  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_8(\text{N}_2\text{H}_2)$  (B. 24, 3083), is formed in the reduction of phen-  
 azone with tin and hydrochloric acid.

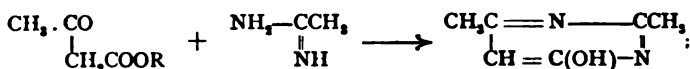
Phenazone is isomeric with phenazine (p. 598). It may also be regarded as derived  
 from phenanthrene by replacing the intermediate CH-groups by N-atoms. Phenanthri-  
 dine will then form the intermediate step. The relations of phenazone to orthodiazine or  
 pyridazine become evident from its oxidation to pyridazine tetracarboxylic acid by potas-  
 sium permanganate (p. 584). Tolazone,  $(\text{C}_7\text{H}_4)_2\text{N}_2$ , melting at  $187^\circ$ , is prepared from  
 o<sub>2</sub>-dinitrodiphenyl (B. 26, 2239).

B. **Metadiazines**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{(}\beta\text{)} \\ \text{C} \end{array} - \begin{array}{c} \text{(}\alpha\text{)} \\ \text{C} \end{array} - \text{N} : \text{I. Metadiazines, or Pyrimidines, are the}$   
 $\begin{array}{c} \text{(}\gamma\text{)} \\ \text{C} \end{array} - \text{N} - \begin{array}{c} \text{(}\mu\text{)} \\ \text{C} \end{array}$   
 analogues of the imidazoles or glyoxalines (p. 496), and, like these, can be viewed as  
 cyclic amidines. Pyrimidines are produced:

1. From amidines of fatty or aromatic carboxylic acids and  $\beta$ -diketones (Pinner, B.  
 26, 2125):

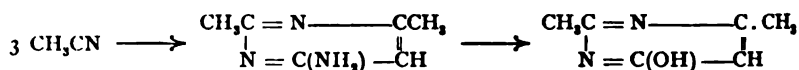


Similarly, amidines and trimethylene bromide yield tetrahydropyrimidines, while oxypyrimidines result if  $\beta$ -ketoic esters be employed (B. 23, 3820):



and with  $\beta$ -ketone dicarboxylic esters, oxypyrimidine carboxylic esters are produced (compare action of acetmalonic ester upon amidines, B. 23, 161).

2. A rather remarkable formation of the pyrimidines is that due to the polymerization of nitriles (cyan-alkyls) when they are heated to  $150^\circ$  with sodium or sodium alcoholate (1, 267). The *cyan-alkines*, resulting in this way, are amidopyrimidines, because they change to oxypyrimidines on treatment with nitrous acid, and these are identical with the oxypyrimidines prepared by method of formation (1) (B. 22, R. 327):



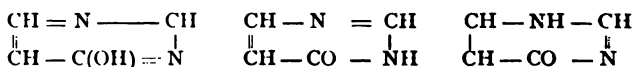
The course of the reaction is not yet fully explained. Probably dicyanalkyls are the first products (1, 267).

Cyanalkines are also obtained when sodium or sodium alcoholate acts upon mixtures of two alkyl cyanides.

$\mu, \alpha$ -Phenyl Dimethyl Pyrimidine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}(\text{CH}_3)_2(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{N}_2$ , (see above), melts at  $83^\circ$  and boils at  $276^\circ$  (B. 25, 2125).  $\alpha, \mu$ -Diethyl- $\beta$ -methyl Pyrimidine, *Cyanconine*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2(\text{CH}_3)\text{N}_2$ , boiling at  $205^\circ$ , has a narcotic odor and acts similarly to conine (see this). It is prepared from cyanethine by successive conversion into the corresponding oxypyrimidine, chlorpyrimidine, and reduction of the latter (B. 22, R. 328). Consult B. 28, 476, R. 67, for additional alkyl pyrimidines.

$\mu, \alpha$ -Dimethyl- $\gamma$ -amidopyrimidine, Cyanmethine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}(\text{CH}_3)_2(\text{NH}_2)\text{N}_2$ , melting at  $180^\circ$ , and  $\mu, \alpha$ -diethyl- $\beta$ -methyl- $\gamma$ -amidopyrimidine, Cyanethine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2(\text{CH}_3)(\text{NH}_2)\text{N}_2$ , melting at  $189^\circ$ , are obtained from methyl and ethyl cyanide, and, like the rest of the cyanalkines, are strongly alkaline bases. Cyanbenzylidine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}(\text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2(\text{NH}_2)\text{N}_2$ , melts at  $106^\circ$  (B. 29, R. 787).

The *oxypyrimidines* possess both a phenol and a basic character.  $\text{PCl}_5$  converts them into *chlorpyrimidines*. Derivatives of the keto- or pyrimidone form are obtained from the oxypyrimidines. They correspond to the three possible formulas:

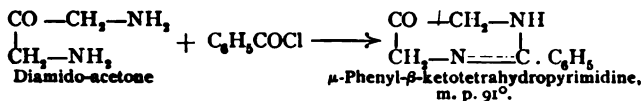


$\mu$ -Phenyl Oxypyrimidine,  $\mu$ -Phenyl Pyrimidone,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{ON}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)$ , melting at  $208^\circ$  and boiling at  $260$ – $263^\circ$  (30 mm.), results upon heating its *carboxylic acid*.  $\mu$ -Phenyl Pyrimidone-carboxylic acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{ON}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{R})$ , the ester of the preceding acid, melts at  $214^\circ$  and is produced by condensing dicarboxylglutaconic ester with benzamidine or benzamidoxime. Its silver salt and ethyl iodide form  $\gamma$ -ethoxy- $\mu$ -phenyl- $\beta$ -carboxylic ester, melting at  $59^\circ$  (B. 30, 1488, 1564).

$\mu, \alpha$ -Dimethyl- $\gamma$ -oxypyrimidine, melting at  $192^\circ$ , results from acetoacetic ester and acetamidine, or when nitrous acid acts upon cyanmethine.

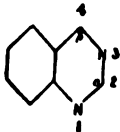
**Hydropyrimidines:**  $\mu$ -Phenyl Tetrahydropyrimidine,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 - \text{NH} \\ | \qquad \qquad | \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{N} = \text{CC}_6\text{H}_5 \end{array}$ , is formed from benzamidine and trimethylene bromide (B. 26, 2122).

*Ketotetrahydropyrimidines* are obtained from the condensation of diamido-acetone and acid chlorides (B. 25, 1564 ; B. 27, 277):

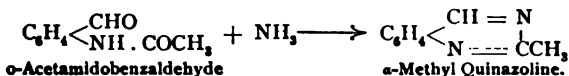


The uracil derivatives, which are closely allied to uric acid, are also keto-derivatives of pyrimidine hydrides. *Uric acid* must be considered as the ureide of isodialuric acid, a *diketodioxytetrahydropyrimidine*. It represents the naphthalene-like union of the pyrimidine ring with the imidazole ring,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CO}-\text{NH}-\text{C}-\text{NH} \\ || \quad \quad || \\ \text{NH}-\text{CO}-\text{C}-\text{NH} \end{array} > \text{CO}$  (see the *allaxazines*, B. 28, 1968, and B. 28, R. 909). The cyclic *ureides* and *guanides* of the malonic acid series (1, 507 ; B. 26, 255), the ureide of mesoxalic acid or *alloxan*, a *triketohexahydropyrimidine* (1, 508), etc., belong here.

**II. Benzometadiazines:** The benzometadiazines or benzopyrimidines are the *quinazolines*, sometimes called *phenmiazines*. They are *metameric*, on the one hand, with the phthalazines and the cinnolines, and, upon the other, with the quinoxalines (p. 594). They may also be viewed as derivatives of the quinolines or isoquinolines by the substitution of an azo-ring:



The simplest quinazoline is not known. Derivatives of it are produced when the acyl compounds of *o*-amidobenzaldehyde or of *o*-amido-benzoketones (pp. 181, 190) are treated with alcoholic ammonia (B. 28, 279):



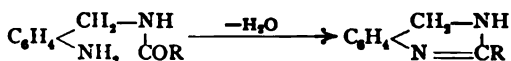
The quinazolines are stable tertiary bases which distil without decomposition. They take up alkyl iodides. Sodium and alcohol reduce them to dihydroquinazolines (B. 26, 1385). Chromic acid in glacial acetic acid oxidizes the quinazolines, in which the CH-group adjacent to the benzene nucleus is free, to ketodihydroquinazolines (or oxyquinazolines, etc.).

**$\alpha$ -Methyl Quinazoline**,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7(\text{CH}_3)\text{N}_2$ , melts at  $35^\circ$  and boils at  $238^\circ$ .  **$\alpha,\beta$ -Dimethyl Quinazoline** is an oil boiling at  $249^\circ$ . It is formed when ammonia acts upon *o*-acetamidophenone.  **$\alpha$ -Phenylquinazoline**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_7(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{N}_2$ , melting at  $101^\circ$  and boiling above  $300^\circ$ , results when ammonia acts upon *o*-benzoylamidobenzaldehyde, as well as from *o*-amidobenzyl-benzamide instead of the expected dihydro-derivative.  **$\alpha$ -Methyl- $\beta$ -phenyl Quinazoline**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_7(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{N}_2$ , melts at  $48^\circ$ . It is obtained from *o*-acetamido-benzophenone. Chromic acid oxidizes it to  $\beta$ -phenylquinazoline- $\alpha$ -carboxylic acid.

Ketohydroquinazolines and  $\text{PCl}_5$  yield chlorquinazolines.  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Chlorquinazo-

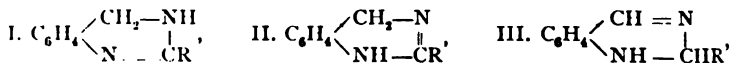
lines, melting at 108° and 96°, are obtained from  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -quinazolons.  $\alpha$ -Chlor- $\beta$ -phenyl Quinazoline, melting at 113°, is made from phenyl- $\alpha$ -quinazolone (B. 29, 1310).  $\alpha,\beta$ -Dichlorquinazoline, melting at 115°, is obtained from benzoylene urea (p. 592).

*Dihydroquinazolines*, containing the same atomic grouping,  $\begin{array}{c} -N= \\ | \\ -NH- \end{array} CR$ , as the anhydro-bases of the o-phenylenediamines, the benzimidazoles (p. 499), are to be regarded as the ring homologues of the latter: as *anhydro-bases* of the o-*amidobenzylamines*. They result by the elimination of water from the acidyl compounds of o-amidobenzylamine and its substitution products (B. 24, 3096; 25, 3037; 27, R. 74; 29, R. 1131):



The reaction proceeds the same if the acidyl-group replaces the aromatic  $NH_2$ -residue. Further, the o-amidobenzylacidylamines can rearrange themselves to o-acidylamido-benzylamines (B. 26, 1891, R. 374). The same anhydro-bases may also be obtained by reducing the corresponding o-nitrobenzylamine compounds.

The dihydroquinazolines are rather strong bases, forming stable salts. Free imide-hydrogen in them is readily replaced by alkyls. Like the quinazolines, they yield keto-dihydroquinazolines upon oxidation. They decompose upon distillation with zinc-dust. Sodium and alcohol reduce them to tetrahydroquinazolines. It may be noted that three isomeric, hydrogenized dihydro-compounds are possible from each c-alkyl quinazoline:



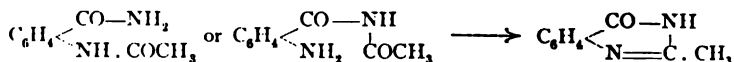
which, probably, adopting the nomenclature of the hydrobenzenes, might be distinguished by the prefixes  $\Delta_1$ ,  $\Delta_2$ , and  $\Delta_3$ . Only two isomerides are possible for the dihydroquinazoline itself:

$\Delta_1$ -Dihydroquinazoline,  $C_6H_4 \begin{array}{c} CH_2-NH \\ | \\ N- \end{array} \begin{array}{c} CH_2-NH \\ | \\ CH \end{array}$ , melting at 127°, results from the reduction of o-nitrobenzyl formamide (B. 24, 3097), as well as by that of  $\alpha$ -chlorquinazoline (see above).

n.(3)-Phenyl Dihydroquinazoline,  $C_6H_4(C_6H_5)_2N_2$ , melting at 95°, is prepared from o-nitrobenzylformanilide. Under the name of *orexine* it has been recommended as a stomachic.

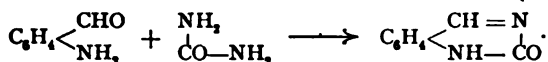
$\alpha$ -Methyl Dihydroquinazoline,  $C_6H_4(CH_3)_2N_2$ , is obtained from o-amidobenzylacetamide.  $\beta$ -Phenyl Dihydroquinazoline, melting at 166°, is produced by reducing  $\alpha$ -chlor- $\beta$ -phenylquinazoline (B. 29, 1310).

$\beta$ -Ketodihydroquinazolines,  $\beta$ -quinazolons, are formed, just like the dihydroquinazolines, from the acidyl derivatives of o-amidobenzamide:



Analogous products are obtained on heating acidyl derivatives of anthranilic ester with ammonia or with primary amines, or from anthranilic acid and the amides of fatty acids (B. 27, R. 516; 28, R. 783) (p. 213).  $\beta$ -Ketodihydroquinazolines, as mentioned, are produced, in addition to these synthetic methods, by oxidizing quinazolines and dihydroquinazolines.

*α-Ketodihydroquinazolines*, *α-quinazolons*, are produced when o-amido-benzaldehydes and -benzene ketones are heated with urea (B. 29, 1300):



The quinazolons possess both feeble phenol and basic characters, hence can also be regarded as oxyquinazolines. They combine with alkyl iodides to n-alkyl derivatives of the keto-form. The isomeric *alkoxyquinazolines* are obtained from the *chlorquinazolines* (p. 589).

*β-Ketodihydroquinazoline*, *β-Oxyquinazoline*,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_6\text{ON}_2$ , melting at  $214^\circ$ , is produced from anthranilic acid and formamide (J. pr. Ch. [2], 43, 215; 51, 564). Methyl iodide converts it into n-methylketodihydroquinazoline,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_6\text{ON}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , melting at  $71^\circ$ .

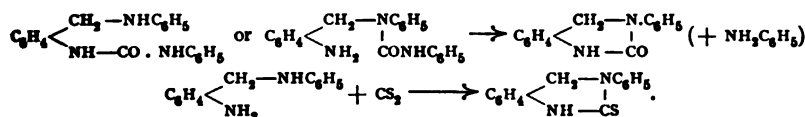
*α-Methyl-β-ketodihydroquinazoline*, melting at  $232^\circ$ , is obtained from o-acetamidobenzamide or o-amidobenzoylacetamide (see above), and also in the oxidation of α-methylquinazoline (B. 28, 279). *α-Phenyl-β-ketodihydroquinazoline*,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_6(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{NO}_2$ , melting at  $236^\circ$ , is made from phenylquinazoline or o-benzoylamidobenzamide. *n-Phenyl-β-ketodihydroquinazoline*, melting at  $139^\circ$ , is obtained by oxidizing n-phenyldihydroquinazoline (B. 24, 3055).

*α-Ketodihydroquinazoline*, *α-Quinazolone*, is formed from o-amidobenzaldehyde and urea, as well as by oxidizing benzylene-ψ-thiurea (p. 177) with  $\text{Ba}(\text{MnO}_4)_2$ . *β-Phenyl-α-ketodihydroquinazoline*, melting at  $251^\circ$ , is prepared from o-amidobenzophenone and urea (B. 29, 1310).

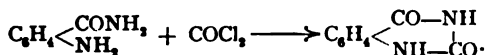
*Tetrahydroquinazolines* are produced by the reduction of quinazolines, dihydroquinazolines, and thiotetrahydroquinazolines. They also result in the condensation of o-amidobenzylamines with aldehydes (J. pr. Ch. [2], 53, 414; 55, 356). They may be readily decomposed into benzene ortho-derivatives:

*Tetrahydroquinazoline*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 - \text{NH} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{NH} \quad \text{CH}_2 \end{array}$ , is amorphous, and results from the interaction of o-amidobenzylamine and formaldehyde. *n(3)-Phenyl Tetrahydroquinazoline*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5)$ , melting at  $119^\circ$ , is derived from o-amidobenzylaniline and formaldehyde, also from phenyldihydro- and phenylthio-tetrahydro-quinazoline (B. 25, 2858). *α-Phenyl Tetrahydroquinazoline* melts at  $100^\circ$  (B. 25, 3033). See B. 29, 1308, for *β-Phenyltetrahydroquinazoline*. *n-Dibenzoyl-α,β-dimethyl Tetrahydroquinazoline*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{N}_2(\text{COC}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , melts at  $155^\circ$  (B. 26, 1385).

*α-Keto- and thiotetrahydroquinazolines* correspond to the cyclic phenylene ureas and -thiureas (p. 502). They are, like these, produced when  $\text{COCl}_2$  or  $\text{CS}_2$  acts upon o-amidobenzylamines, or by the exit of  $\text{NH}_3$  or amine from the urea derivatives of the o-amidobenzylamines (B. 25, 2856; 27, R. 74, etc.):



*Diketotetrahydroquinazolines* are similarly produced from the o-amidobenzamides by means of  $\text{COCl}_2$ ,  $\text{ClCO}_2\text{R}$ , etc., or from urea derivatives of o-amidobenzamide or of the anthranilic acids:



Keto- and tetrahydroquinazolines are indifferent bodies. Mention has already been made of their formation from benzometoxazine derivatives, the imido- and thiocoumazones, by heating them with aromatic amines. Oxidants convert them into diketotetrahydroquinazolines, which also result from the oxidation of imido-coumazones (B. 27, 2420). The diketotetrahydroquinazolines possess acid properties and dissolve only in alkalis.  $\text{PCl}_5$  converts them into *dichlorquinazolines*.

*n*-(3)-Phenyl- $\alpha$ -ketotetrahydroquinazoline,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7\text{ON}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $189^\circ$  (B. 27, 74).  $\beta$ -Phenyl- $\alpha$ -ketotetrahydroquinazoline, melting at  $193^\circ$ , is obtained from *o*-amidobenzhydrol and urea, as well as from the corresponding phenylthiotetrahydroquinazoline. The latter is brominated, and the brom-dihydro-phenylquinazoline is then converted by soda into ketoquinazoline (B. 29, 1307).

$\alpha$ -Thiotetrahydroquinazoline,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7\text{SN}_2$ , melts at  $211^\circ$ . *n*-Phenyl- $\alpha$ -thiotetrahydroquinazoline,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7\text{SN}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melts at  $260^\circ$  (B. 27, 2432).  $\beta$ -Phenyl- $\alpha$ -thiotetrahydroquinazoline, melting at  $230^\circ$ , is obtained from *o*-amidobenzhydrol and hydrosulphocyanic acid (B. 29, 1305).

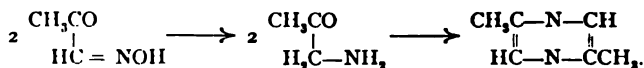
Diketotetrahydroquinazoline, Benzoylene Urea,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4(\text{C}_2\text{O}_2\text{N}_2\text{H}_2)_2$ , melts above  $360^\circ$  and sublimes. *n*-Phenyl Diketotetrahydroquinazoline,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4(\text{C}_2\text{O}_2\text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , melts at  $272^\circ$  (B. 27, 974, 2410, R. 392; compare also B. 30, 1682).

$\alpha$ -Thio- $\beta$ -ketotetrahydroquinazoline,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_4(\text{C}_2\text{OSN}_2\text{H}_2)_2$ , melting at  $284^\circ$ , is prepared from anthranilic ester and hydrosulphocyanic acid (B. 30, 1098; C. 1897, 1, 592).

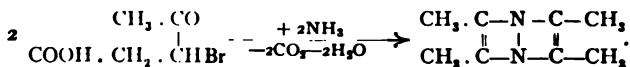
**C. Paradiazine,**  $\begin{matrix} (\gamma) \text{C} - \text{N} - \text{C}(\beta) \\ (\delta) \text{C} - \text{N} - \text{C}(\alpha) \end{matrix}$ : I. Paradiazines are the pyrazines, or *piazines*, which can be regarded as pyridines, the methine group of which is substituted in the  $\gamma$ -position by N. It is almost universally accepted that there is a "para-union" of the two N-atoms in the pyrazines, harmonizing with the formula  $\text{N} \begin{matrix} \text{CH} = \text{CH} \\ \text{CH} = \text{CH} \end{matrix} \text{N}$  (Wolff, B. 26, 722).

Pyrazines are formed (1) by condensing two molecules of  $\alpha$ -amidoaldehydes and  $\alpha$ -amidoketones, when an exit of water occurs. Hence they are called *aldines* or *ketines*.

Instead of isolating the amido-ketones, the solution of them obtained in the reduction of isonitrosoketones can be distilled with the addition of  $\text{HgCl}_2$ , the oxidizing agent (B. 26, 1832, 2207):



(2) The synthesis of pyrazines from  $\alpha$ -chlor- or bromketo-compounds and ammonia also depends upon the intermediate formation of  $\alpha$ -amidoketones. Thus,  $\beta$ -bromlavulinic acid and ammonia yield tetramethylpyrazine, with the evolution of carbon dioxide:



Pyrazines occur also in the fermentation products of sugar. Thus,  $\alpha, \gamma$ -dimethyl- and trimethyl-pyrazine have been isolated from fusel oil. Pyrazines also result in the action of ammonia upon grape-sugar. In this instance the products are pyrazine, methyl- and dimethyl pyrazines (B. 30, 224; J. pr. Ch. [2], 54, 481).

The pyrazines are feeble bases, which give a neutral reaction to litmus. They form readily dissociated salts with acids. Like the pyridines, they form characteristic compounds with metallic salts—*e. g.*, mercuric chloride, auric chloride, etc.

Sodium reduces the pyrazines to piperazines or hexahydropyrazines corresponding to the piperidines. Potassium permanganate oxidizes alkylic pyrazines to pyrazine carboxylic acids, which part with carbon dioxide very readily.

Pyrazine,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH} - \text{N} - \text{CH} \\ \parallel \quad \quad \parallel \\ \text{CH} - \text{N} - \text{CH} \end{array}$ , melting at  $55^\circ$  and boiling at  $115^\circ$  (B. 27, R. 396), is

a substance smelling like heliotrope and subliming at the ordinary temperature. It is produced when amidoacetaldehyde or amidoacetal (1, 317) is distilled with a sublimate solution, also by eliminating carbon dioxide from the pyrazine carboxylic acids, and upon distilling piperazine with zinc-dust (B. 26, R. 441).

Methyl Pyrazine,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_3)\text{N}_2$ , boiling at  $135^\circ$ , is obtained from its carboxylic acid (B. 28, R. 551), and constitutes the chief constituent of the bases produced in the action of ammonia upon grape-sugar.  $\alpha,\gamma$ -Dimethyl Pyrazine, *Ketine*,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}_2$ , is an oil, boiling at  $153^\circ$ . It is formed in the reduction of isonitrosoacetone, and, together with pyridine bases and other alkylic pyrazines,—e. g.,  $\alpha,\gamma,\delta$ -methyl diethyl pyrazine, b. p.  $179^\circ$  (B. 24, 4105; 26, R. 442),—upon distilling glycerol with ammonium salts.

$\alpha,\delta$ -Dimethyl Pyrazine melts at  $48^\circ$  and boils at  $155^\circ$  (J. pr. Ch. [2], 54, 492). Trimethyl Pyrazine, boiling at  $172^\circ$ , is produced on heating the brom-methylate of  $\alpha,\gamma$ -dimethyl pyrazine (B. 29, R. 980). Tetramethyl Pyrazine,  $\text{C}_4(\text{CH}_3)_4\text{N}_2(+3\text{H}_2\text{O})$ , melts at  $86^\circ$  ( $75^\circ$ ) and boils at  $190^\circ$ . It is produced when ammonia acts upon  $\beta$ -bromolævulinic acid (1, 381), or by reducing  $\beta$ -isonitroso-lævulinic acid (B. 25, 1723).

$\alpha,\gamma$ -Diphenyl Pyrazine,  $\text{C}_6(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}_2$ , melting at  $196^\circ$ , results from  $\alpha$ -amidoacetophenone, and from *n*-dibenzyl-dihydro- $\alpha,\gamma$ -diphenylpyrazine,

$\text{C}_6\text{H}_7\text{N} < \begin{array}{c} \text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) = \text{CH} \\ \text{CH} = \text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) \end{array} > \text{NC}_6\text{H}_7$ , by the exit of toluene (B. 27, R. 135). The isomeric  $\alpha,\delta$ -diphenyl pyrazine, melting at  $89^\circ$ , is similarly formed from *n*-benzyl-dihydro- $\alpha,\delta$ -diphenyl pyrazine (see below) by the splitting-off of toluene.  $\alpha,\gamma$ -Diphenyl-dimethyl Pyrazine,  $\text{C}_6(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}_2$ , melting at  $126^\circ$ , is prepared from isonitroso-phenylacetone (B. 29, R. 548).

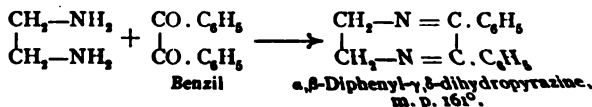
Tetraphenyl Pyrazine, *Tetraphenylaldine*,  $\text{C}_6(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_4\text{N}_2$ , melting at  $246^\circ$ , is made by reducing the benzil monoxides or dioximes (p. 373) (B. 27, 213).

Pyrazine Monocarboxylic Acid, melting with decomposition at  $230^\circ$ , pyrazine dicarboxylic acid,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_2(\text{COOH})_2\text{N}_2(+2\text{H}_2\text{O})$ , melting at  $256^\circ$ , and pyrazine tetracarboxylic acid,  $\text{C}_4(\text{COOH})_4\text{N}_2$ , melting at  $205^\circ$ , etc., result upon oxidizing the methylated pyrazines with potassium permanganate. Consult B. 26, R. 442, for other pyrazine carboxylic acids.

*Dihydropyrazines*, containing two imide groups, are prepared, together with the isomeric indols, in the action of anilines upon  $\alpha$ -alkylamidoketone derivatives,  $\text{RIINC} \cdot \text{H}_2 \cdot \text{CO}-$ , or from  $\alpha$ -bromketones and primary amines.

*n*-Dibenzene Sulphon-dihydropyrazine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SO}_2\text{N} < \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} = \text{CH} \\ \text{CH} = \text{CH} \end{array} > \text{NSO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $163^\circ$ , is obtained from benzene sulphamidoacetal (B. 26, 98). *n*-Diphenyl-dihydro- $\alpha,\gamma$ -diphenyl Pyrazine, *diphenyldiisotindol*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2(\text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ , melting at  $181^\circ$ , is formed from aniline and phenacyl bromide (p. 248). Different dihydropyrazine derivatives, like *n*-dibenzyl- $\alpha,\gamma$ -diphenyldihydropyrazine, melting at  $163^\circ$ , *n*-benzyl- $\alpha,\delta$ -diphenyldihydropyrazine, etc., are produced by the condensation of benzylamine and phenacyl bromide (B. 27, R. 134).

Dihydropyrazines, with tertiary N-atoms, are obtained from 1,2-diketones and ethylene diamine (B. 22, 346; 26, R. 1009):



**n-Diphenyl Tetrahydrophenylpyrazine**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 - \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) - \text{CH} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) - \text{CC}_6\text{H}_5 \end{array}$ , is similarly formed from ethylene diphenyl diamine and phenacyl bromide (B. 26, R. 93).

**Hexahydropyrazines, piperazines**, have already been discussed on p. 314 as cyclic dialkylene-imides. In addition to the synthetic methods given there, the piperazines are also prepared by the reduction of the pyrazines with sodium and alcohol (B. 26, 724):

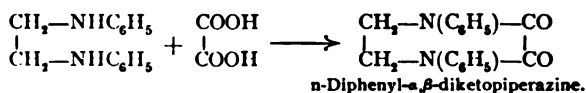
$\mu$ -Methyl Piperazine,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_9(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{N}_2$ , boils at  $155^\circ$ .

Di- and poly-alkylic piperazines occur each in two stereoisomeric forms: Di-, Tri-, Tetramethyl Piperazine—see J. pr. Ch. [2], 55, 49. Consult B. 29, R. 384, for methenyl piperazine,  $\text{N} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{N} (?)$ , made from piperazine and formaldehyde.

**n-Diphenyl Piperazine**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 - \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) - \text{CH}_2 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CH}_2 - \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) - \text{CH}_2 \end{array}$ , melting at  $163^\circ$ , results from the interaction of ethylene bromide and aniline (B. 22, 1777). **n-Dibenzyl Piperazine**, melting at  $92^\circ$ , is also produced when caustic potash acts upon bromethylbenzylamine.

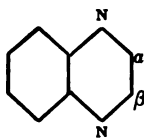
The cyclic double-acid amides are  $\alpha, \gamma$ -diketopiperazines. They have already received consideration (I, 358) after the  $\alpha$ -amidocarboxylic acids. **Diphenyl Diketopiperazine, diphenyl diacipiperazine**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 - \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) - \text{CO} \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CO} - \text{N}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5) - \text{CH}_2 \end{array}$ , is formed from anilidoacetic acid—see p. 84. Consult B. 25, 2919, 3275, etc., for stereoisomeric diacipiperazines.

$\alpha, \beta$ -Diketopiperazines are produced in the condensation of oxalic acid with derivatives of ethylene diamine (B. 23, 2028):



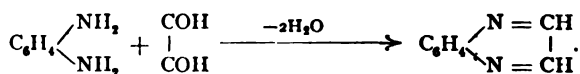
Chromic acid oxidizes this diketopiperazine to a tetraketopiperazine.

## II. Benzoparadiazines: Quinoxalines.—



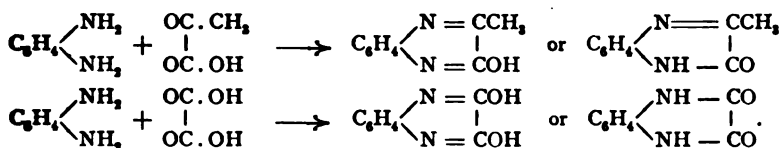
The quinoxalines, just like the benzimidazoles, are condensation products of o-diamines (p. 95). They result:

1. By the condensation of o-phenylenediamines with glyoxal and 1,2-diketone compounds (Hinsberg, A. 237, 327):



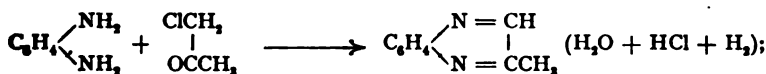
Similarly, benzil yields  $\alpha, \beta$ -diphenylquinoxaline; dioxytartaric acid,  $\alpha, \beta$ -quinoxaline carboxylic acid; etc. The reactions are very complete, even at the ordinary temperatures.

$\alpha$ -Ketone carboxylic acids—*e. g.*, pyroracemic acid and mesoxalic acid—become *oxyquinoxalines*, while oxalic acid yields *dioxyquinoxalines* (B. 30, 768):

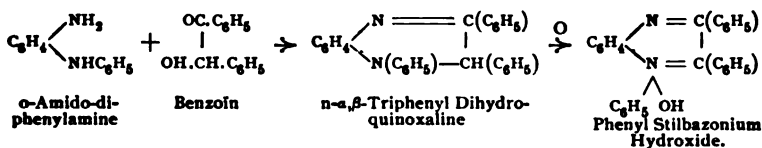


The *o*-naphthylenediamines react like the *o*-phenylenediamines, forming *naphthoquinoxalines*. The tetra-amidobenzenes yield *benzodiparadiazines*.

2.  $\alpha$ -Chloroketo-compounds,  $\alpha$ -aldehyde alcohols, and  $\alpha$ -ketone alcohols—*e. g.*, benzoin, furoin, arabinose, and glucose—condense with *o*-phenylenediamines. Water and hydrogen are eliminated and quinoxalines remain:

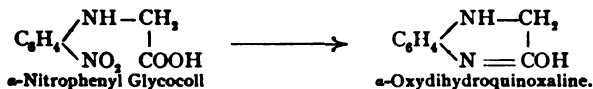


with monoalkylic *o*-phenylenediamines, on the other hand, the products are dihydroquinoxalines, which ferric chloride oxidizes to azonium bases of the quinoxalines (B. 24, 719, 1875; 25, 1627):

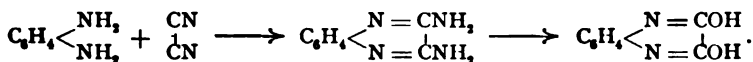


The azonium bases are immediately produced by the action of monoalkylic or phenylated *o*-diamines upon 1,2-diketones (B. 25, 1010; 27, 2355). See also B. 25, 1627.

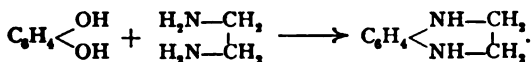
3. *o*-Nitrophenyl  $\alpha$ -amido-fatty acids, when reduced, yield *oxydihydroquinoxalines*, which are also obtained from *o*-phenylenediamines and  $\alpha$ -haloid fatty acids (A. 292, 250):



4. *o*-Phenylenediamines condense with cyanogen to *diamido-quinoxalines*, which dilute hydrochloric acid changes to *dioxyquinoxalines*:



5. *Tetrahydroquinoxalines* are produced in the condensation of dioxybenzenes with alkylenediamines:



**Behavior:** The quinoxalines are feeble monacid bases. Their odor resembles that of quinoline or piperidine. They are readily soluble in alcohol and ether, and more sparingly soluble in hot than in cold water. They are stable in the presence of oxidizing agents, while reducing agents convert them into hydroquinoxalines.

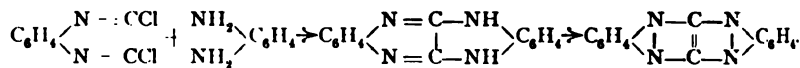
Quinoxaline,  $C_8H_6N_2$ , is obtained from o-phenylenediamine and glyoxal, by digesting the aqueous solution at  $60^\circ$  with sodium bisulphite. It melts at  $27^\circ$  and boils at  $229^\circ$ . Its iodomethylate melts with decomposition at  $175^\circ$ .

Toluquinoxaline,  $C_9H_8(CH_3):N_2C_2H_2$ , obtained in a similar way from toluenylenediamine, boils at  $245^\circ$ .  $\alpha,\beta$ -Dimethyl Toluquinoxaline,  $C_{11}H_{10}(CH_3)_2:N_2C_2(CH_3)_2$ , from diacetyl and toluenylenediamine, melts at  $54^\circ$  and boils at  $270^\circ$ .  $\alpha,\beta$ -Diphenyl Quinoxaline,  $C_{18}H_{14}N_2(C_6H_5)_2$ , melts at  $124^\circ$  (B. 27, 2181).

Bz-Chloroxy- $\alpha,\beta$ -diphenyl Quinoxaline has been recommended as an indicator in alkalimetry under the name of *luteol* (B. 28, R. 628).

Oxyquinoxaline,  $C_8H_4[N_2C_2H(OH)]_2$ , melting at  $265^\circ$ , is made from its carboxylic acid (see below).

$\alpha$ -Methyl- $\beta$ -oxytoluquinoxaline,  $CH_3C_8H_4[N_2C_2(CH_3)(OH)]_2$ , melting at  $220^\circ$ , and  $\alpha$ -Phenyl- $\beta$ -oxytoluquinoxaline,  $CH_3C_8H_4[N_2C_2(C_6H_5)(OH)]_2$ , melting at  $196^\circ$ , are prepared from toluenylenediamine with pyroracemic acid and phenylglyoxylic acid. They are soluble both in alkalis and in acids. The solutions of the first are colorless, and those of the second yellow in color.  $\alpha,\beta$ -Dioxyquinoxaline,  $C_8H_4[N_2C_2H_2O_2]_2$ , from o-phenylenediamine and oxalic acid, or  $\alpha,\beta$ -diamidoquinoxaline (see above) by means of hydrochloric acid is converted by  $PCl_5$  into  $\alpha,\beta$ -Dichlorquinoxaline, melting at  $150^\circ$ . When the latter is digested with o-phenylenediamine a condensation results, the solutions of which are yellow in color and exhibit an intense yellow-green fluorescence. This fact has given it the name fluo flavine,  $C_8H_4:(N_2C_2H_2):C_8H_4$ , melting at  $360^\circ$ . It loses two hydrogen atoms when it is oxidized, and becomes Quinoxalophenazine,  $C_8H_4:(N_2C_2):C_8H_4$  (B. 29, 784):



$\alpha,\beta$ -Dioxynaphthoquinoxaline, *Naphthylene Oxamide*,  $C_{10}H_6(N_2C_2O_2H_2)_2$  (B. 30, 772).

$\alpha,\beta$ -Quinoxaline Dicarboxylic Acid,  $C_8H_4[N_2C_2(COOH)_2]_2 (+ 2H_2O)$ , from dioxytartaric acid and o-phenylenediamine, melts at  $190^\circ$  with decomposition (B. 27, 2185).

It forms an *anhydride*,  $C_8H_4 \begin{array}{c} \diagup N = C - CO \\ \diagdown N = C - CO \end{array} O$ , melting at  $251^\circ$ . Ammonia converts the latter into quinoxaline dicarbonamic acid, which with bromine and caustic potash yields  $\alpha$ -amidoquinoxaline- $\beta$ -carboxylic acid,  $C_8H_4[N_2C_2(NH_2)(COOH)]_2$ , melting with decomposition at  $210^\circ$  (B. 28, 1657).

$\alpha$ -Oxyquinoxaline- $\beta$ -carboxylic Acid,  $C_8H_4[N_2C_2(OH)(COOH)]_2$ , melting at  $265^\circ$  with decomposition, is produced by saponifying the acid ureide produced in the interaction of alloxan and o-phenylenediamine (A. 292, 248).

*Dihydroquinoxalines*: The dihydroquinoxalines are distinguished by their yellow-green fluorescence:

Dihydro- $\alpha,\beta$ -diphenyl Quinoxaline,  $C_8H_4 \begin{array}{c} \diagup N = CC_6H_5 \\ \diagdown NH - CHC_6H_5 \end{array}$ , melts at  $146^\circ$ , and is produced in the reduction of diphenylquinoxaline with stannous chloride, or from benzoin and o-phenylenediamine (B. 24, 1870; 27, 2182). *n*-Methyl Dihydro- $\alpha,\beta$ -diphenyl Quinoxaline (B. 25, 1632) is oxidized to *methylphenostilbazonium hydroxide*,  $C_8H_4 \begin{array}{c} \diagup N = C \cdot C_6H_5 \\ \diagdown N = C \cdot C_6H_5 \end{array}$  (see p. 595).

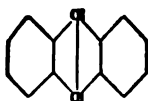
$\begin{array}{c} CH_3 \quad OH \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ N - C - CCH_3 \\ | \quad \quad | \\ N(CH_3) - CO \end{array}$   
*n*-Methyl-ketodihydro- $\beta$ -methyl Quinoxaline, *n,\beta*-Dimethyl Quinoxalone,  $C_8H_4 \begin{array}{c} \diagup N - C - CCH_3 \\ \diagdown N(CH_3) - CO \end{array}$ , melts at  $78^\circ$  and boils at  $308^\circ$ . It results from the condensation of methyl-o-phenylenediamine and pyroracemic acid (B. 25, 1630).

Tetrahydroquinoxaline,  $C_{10}H_{10}N_2$ , melting at  $97^\circ$  and boiling at  $289^\circ$ , is obtained from pyrocatechol and ethylenediamine (B. 21, 378), or by saponifying its dibenzonal-

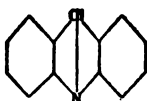
*phenic derivative*,  $C_6H_4(NSO_2C_6H_5)_2 > (CH_2)_2$ —the reaction-product of ethylene bromide and dibenzene sulphon-o-phenylenediamine (B. 28, R. 756).

$\alpha, \beta$ -Diphenyl Tetrahydroquinoxaline,  $C_{18}H_{16}N_2(C_6H_5)_2$ , is produced in two isomeric forms, melting at  $105^\circ$  and  $142^\circ$ , when diphenylquinoxaline is reduced with sodium and alcohol (B. 27, 2184).

**III. Dibenso-paradiazines : Phenazine Group.**—Phenazine is analogous in constitution to anthracene and acridine :



Anthracene

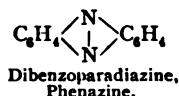
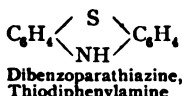
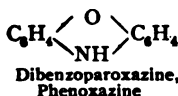


Acridine



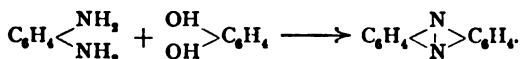
Phenazine.

On the other hand, it is, in its methods of formation and general deportment, very closely related to the dibenzo-derivatives of paroxazine and parathiazine (pp. 581, 583):

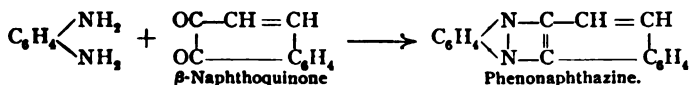


It is the parent substance of an extensive class of dyestuffs, which are to some degree quite important from the technical standpoint—*e. g.*, the eurhodines, toluylene-red, the indulines, safranines, etc., which are in part derived from phenazine itself and partly from higher, condensed paradiazines—*e. g.*, naphthophenazine, naphthazine, etc.

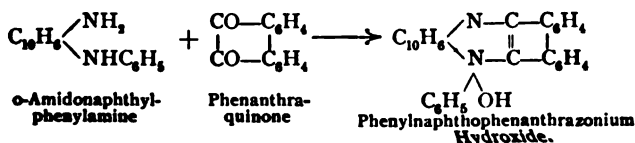
**Methods of Formation :** 1. Phenazines result by the exit of water and hydrogen in the condensation of o-diamines and o-dioxybenzenes :



2. Azines are also produced from o-diamines and o-quinones—*e. g.*,  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone, phenanthraquinone, croconic acid, etc. :

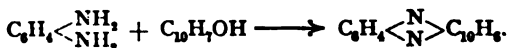


Isatin and o-phenylenediamine similarly yield *indophenazine*,  $C_{12}H_8N_2O$ , (B. 29, 200). On the other hand, *azonium bases* result if monosubstituted o-diamines and o-quinones are condensed (see quinoxalines, p. 594) :

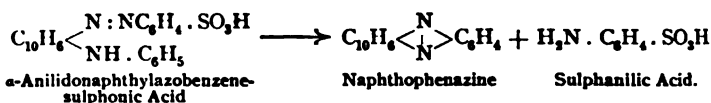


Such *azonium* compounds are also produced by the action of azines and alkyl iodides, and by the deamidation of induline and safranine bases (p. 600).

3. Furthermore, azines result in the oxidation of a mixture of o-diamines and *o*-naphthol:



4. By the decomposition of o-anilido-(toluido-, etc.)-azo-bodies. Thus, o-anilidonaphthylazobenzene-sulphonic acid, produced by the combination of naphthylphenylamine with diazobenzene-sulphonic acid, breaks down, on boiling with dilute acids, into naphthophenazine and sulphanilic acid:



*Behavior:* The phenazines are mostly yellow-colored, feebly basic bodies that cannot be distilled without suffering decomposition. They dissolve in concentrated sulphuric acid with a red to blue color. They are again precipitated upon addition of water. They combine with alkyl iodides to azonium iodides (p. 600). They are reduced to colorless, dihydro-compounds,—e. g., *dihydrophenazine*,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NH} \\ \text{NH} \end{smallmatrix} C_6H_4$ ,—which are readily re-oxidized to azines.

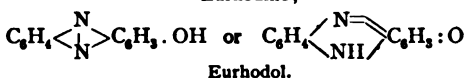
*Phenazine*,  $C_{12}H_8N_2$ , was first obtained from calcium azobenzoate by distillation, and was called *Azodiphenylene* (p. 587), with which it is isomeric. It may also be prepared from o-phenylenediamine and pyrocatechin, and by conducting aniline vapors through a tube heated to redness, by the deamidation of amidophenazines, and upon boiling formazyl carboxylic ester,  $CO_2R \cdot C \begin{smallmatrix} \text{N} \\ \text{N} \end{smallmatrix} \cdot NHC_6H_5$ , with concentrated acids (B. 25, 3205); together with various other products in the oxidation of o-amidodiphenylamine,  $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6H_5 \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}$  (B. 26, 383). It melts at 171°.

Ammonium sulphide reduces phenazine to *dihydrophenazine*. Consult A. 292, 260, for its reduction in acid solutions.

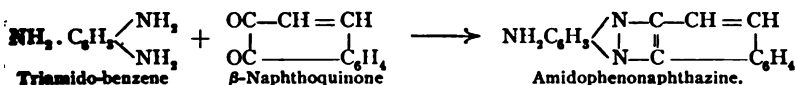
*Toluphenazine*,  $CH_3 \cdot C_6H_3 : N_2 : C_6H_4$ , melting at 117°, is obtained from toluenylenediamine and pyrocatechol; also from o-amidophenyltolylamine and lead oxide (B. 29, 1873).

*α,β-Naphthophenazine*,  $C_{10}H_6 : N_2 : C_6H_4$ , melting at 142°, is produced, in addition to the common methods (see above), from naphthylphenylnitrosamine,  $C_{10}H_7 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NO} \\ \text{N} \end{smallmatrix} \text{—} C_6H_5$ , just as acridine (p. 559) is obtained from formyldiphenylamine. Sym. *α,β-naphthazine*,  $C_{10}H_6 : N_2 : C_{10}H_6$ , melting at 243°, is formed in like manner from *β,β*-dinaphthyl-nitrosamine (B. 26, 185). Unsym. *α,β-Naphthazine*, melting at 283°, was first made by heating nitronaphthalene with lime (*naphthase*, Laurent, 1840), and was consequently long regarded as azonaphthalene. It was also prepared from *α,β*-naphthylenediamine and *β*-naphthoquinone. It is most easily made by condensing nitroso-*β*-naphthylamine and *α*-naphthylamine (B. 29, 2086). *Phenanthrophenazine*,  $C_{14}H_8 : N_2 : C_6H_4$ , melts at 217° and is obtained from phenanthraquinone and o-phenylenediamine.

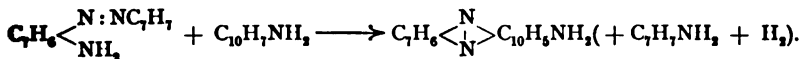
The entrance of salt-forming groups, like  $NH_2$  and  $OH$ , converts the phenazines into dyestuffs. In addition to the normal formulas, *para-quinoid* pseudo-forms come into consideration for these amido- and oxy-phenazines (eurhodines and eurhodols) (A. 290, 260):



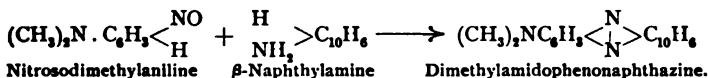
**Amido-phenazines:** a. *Monamido-phenazines*, the eurhodines, are produced (1) analogously to the parent substances, from amidated o-diamines and quinones:



(2) By the action of aromatic monamines upon o-amidoazo-bodies:



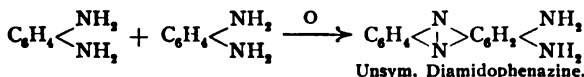
(3) By the condensation of quinone dichlorimides or p-nitroso-dimethyl aniline with monamines, in which the p-position is occupied (if this be free, indamines result, p. 174):



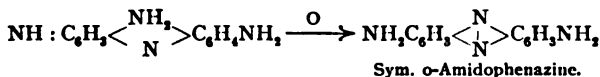
The eurhodines are feeble bases. Their salts are scarlet red in color. They dissolve in concentrated sulphuric acid with a carmine-red color, which, upon the addition of water, passes successively into black, green, and finally red, which is due to the gradual dissociation of polybasic salts, only stable in the presence of concentrated acids. The ethereal solutions have a yellow-green fluorescence. If they be heated with acids, they become oxyphenazines. They are not applicable technically.

**Amidophenazine**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{N})\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{NH}_2$ , has been prepared from o-diamidophenazine upon heating it with zinc-dust. It results in the oxidation of the dimethyldiphenylamines,  $\text{NH}_2[2]\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{NHC}_6\text{H}_4[3]\text{NH}_2$ , or  $(\text{NH}_2)_2[2,4]\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5$  (B. 29, 1874). It consists of red bronze needles that melt at  $265^\circ$ .

b. *Unsym. diamidophenazines* are formed in the oxidation of o-diamines (p. 95):



c. *Sym. diamidophenazines, Toluylene-red Group*: Symmetrical diamidophenazines are produced when amidated indamines are oxidized (p. 174):



Instead of using the prepared indamine, a mixture of a p-diamine with a m-diamine may be oxidized, or quinone chlorimides may be allowed to act upon a m-diamine. Thus, toluylene-red, dimethyldiamidotoluphenazine,  $\text{NH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ , is produced by oxidizing dimethylparaphenylenediamine with m-toluylenediamine (p. 95). Toluylene-blue appears as an intermediate product (p. 174).

It crystallizes in orange-red needles. It is applied in dyeing under the name *Neutral Red*. Its monacid salts are rose-red in color; the diacid, blue; and the triacid, green; the last two are stable only in the presence of strong acids. It colors silk and cotton, mordanted with tannin, a scarlet-red. It yields *dimethylmonamidotoluphenazine* by depamidation.

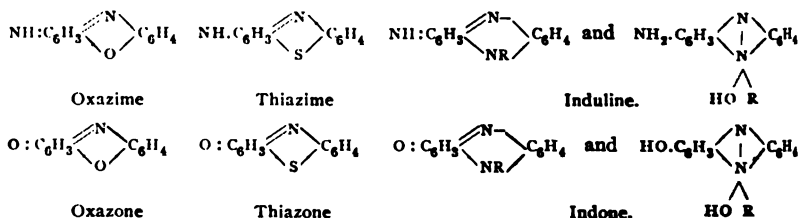
**Oxyphenazines**, *eurhodols*, are formed (1) when the amidophenazines are heated to  $180^\circ$  with concentrated hydrochloric acid; (2) synthetically, by condensing o-diamines with o-quinones containing hydroxyl. The eurhodols resemble the eurhodines in color and fluorescence.

*a*-**Oxynaphthophenazine**,  $\text{HOC}_6\text{H}_3\text{N}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ , from amidonaphthophenazine or produced by the condensation of oxy- $\beta$ -naphthoquinone with o-phenylenediamine, yields two isomeric *methyl ethers*—an oxygen and a nitrogen ether—corresponding to the two formulas presented (p. 599) for eurhodol.

**Dioxyphenazines** are obtained similarly to the monooxy-bodies. The condensation of o-phenylenediamine with dioxydiketotetrahydronaphthalene (produced by the action of hypochlorous acid upon  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone) gives rise to naphthophenazine oxide,  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_8\text{N}_2\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6\text{:O}$ . This is a body resembling ethylene oxide. Hydrochloric acid rearranges it into  $\beta$ -oxynaphthophenazine,  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_8\text{N}_2\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6\text{OH}$ , melting at  $198^\circ$  (B. 26, 617; A. 286, 61).

**Azonium Compounds**: These are important because they are to be regarded as the parent substances of the dyestuffs of the induline, indone, and safranin series, from which they are produced by diazotizing in strongly acid solution, and to which they revert upon treatment with ammonia or alkalis. See p. 597 for their synthetic methods of formation. The phenylazonium salts have been chiefly isolated by means of their *ferric chloride double salts*. **Ethyl Phenazonium Iodide**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{N}_2\text{:C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I})\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , and  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6(\text{N}_2\text{CH}_2\text{I})\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6$ , are produced by the union of the corresponding azines and alkyl iodides (B. 30, 391). **Phenyl Phenazonium Chloride** results from the de-amidation of aposafranin chloride. The *ferric chloride double salt*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{N}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{:Cl})\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{:FeCl}_2$ , melts at  $186^\circ$ . **Phenyl Naphthophenazonium Chloride**,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6(\text{N}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{:Cl})\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_6$ , is obtained from rosinduline and isorosinduline (p. 601). An isomeric **Isophenyl Naphthophenazonium Chloride** has been prepared from  $\psi$ -rosinduline (p. 601) and also by condensation of  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone with phenyl-*a*-phenylenediamine (B. 29, 2316, 2967).

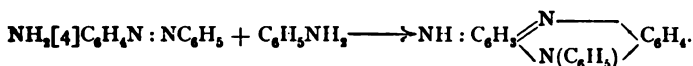
**Indulines, Indones, and Safranines**.—These dyestuffs sustain the same relation to the phenazines as the oxazines and oxazones (p. 580) to phenoxazine, and the thiazines and thiazones to thiodiphenylamine (p. 583). They are quinone-anils, indamines, and indophenols (p. 173), in which the two aromatic nuclei are further linked to each other by the group NR; hence, they are to be considered as meso-alkyl- or alaryl-derivatives of the paraquinoid forms of the eurhodines and eurhodols (p. 599). However, the induline salts can be converted, by means of their diazo-bodies, through de-amidation, into *azonium salts* (p. 598), and would therefore have to be viewed as amidated azonium salts; but the corresponding azonium hydrates appear, however, to part readily with water and then pass into the paraquinoid forms (B. 29, 2316, 2752, 2771):



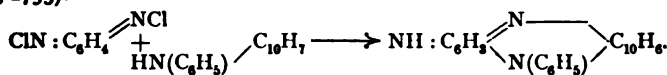
To save space, the paraquinoid formulas for the bases are mostly employed; they will be readily understood from what has been expressed above. The radical (R) may be an alkyl- or an aryl-group. The

phenylated derivatives primarily are important technically (A. 286, 187; B. 28, 1579).

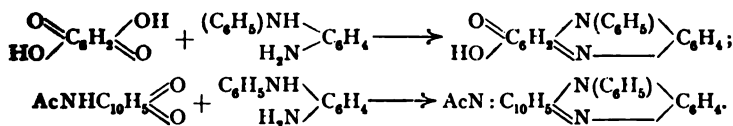
The *indulines* are prepared universally (1) by heating p-amidazo-bodies with monamines in the presence of some mineral acid:



The intermediate and by-products in this reaction are p-quinone di-imide derivatives—*q.*, quinone dianil, anilidoquinone dianil, dianilidoquinone dianil, or azophenine (p. 173), etc. They are to be considered as the real generators of the indulines (B. 25, 2731). Thus, quinone dichloridiimide and phenyl-β-naphthylamine form isorosinduline (B. 29, 2753):



(2) Indulines and indones result from the condensation of oxyquinones and amidoquinones with phenylated o-diamines (B. 28, 1714; A. 290, 262):



Indones are formed when the indulines are heated with concentrated mineral acids.

The indulines are among the longest known aniline dyestuffs (Caro and Dale, 1865; Griess and Martius, 1866). Their constitution has been made more evident by a series of investigations prosecuted in recent years by Fischer and Heppe, Kehrmann, Nietzki, etc. (A. 272, 306; 290, 247; B. 29, 1442, 2318, 2771).

The indulines are classified:

1. Benzo-indulines, . . NH: C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>(N<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>, from phenazine.
2. a. Isorosindulines, . . NH: C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>(N<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>6</sub> } , from naphtho-phenazine.
- b. Rosindulines, . . NH: C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>5</sub>(N<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub> }
3. Naphthindulines, . . NH: C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>5</sub>(N<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>6</sub>, from naphthazine.

The *ms-alkyl* derivatives, corresponding to these *ms-phenyl*-compounds, have also been prepared in various ways (see B. 30, 394, etc.).

The benzo-indulines and iso-rosindulines, on the one side, being derivatives of benzoquinone, and the rosindulines and naphthindulines being derivatives of naphthoquinone, exhibit among themselves great similarity. The first two groups form violet to blue-colored, sparingly soluble salts. Their application in calico printing depends upon their solubility in *acetine* (1, 475) (*acetine print*). The ros- and naphth-indulines are strong bases. Their salts have an intense red color, and show red fluorescence. When their strongly acid solutions are diluted a change in color similar to that observed with the safranines occurs. The indulines, like the quinones, readily yield anilido-compounds upon digestion with anilines. Similarly, the indones, when heated with alkalis, become oxyindones. See the safranines for the action of ammonia upon the indulines.

Benzene Induline, Aposafraanine, C<sub>18</sub>H<sub>13</sub>N<sub>3</sub>, results by de-amidation of phenosafraanine. Further de-amidation yields the phenylphenazonium salt, which regenerates aposafraanine by treatment with ammonia. Aposafraanine, digested with aniline, forms anilido-aposafraanine (B. 28, 1709; 29, 2967). Benzene induline is also obtained from p-amidoazobenzene and aniline. Amidophenyl benzene induline, NH<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>.N:C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>(N<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>, melting at 150°, is a side-product. By de-amidation it yields *phenylbenzene induline*. If p-amidoazobenzene be heated with p-phenylene-

amine, a mixture of various amidindolines is produced, and these form *paraphthylar* base, a good cotton dyestuff (A. 286, 195).

Isosulindoline,  $C_{10}H_9N_2C_6H_4(C_6H_5):NH$ , from quinone dichlorimide and phenyl- $\beta$ -naphthylamine, becomes phenyl-naphthophenazonium (B. 29, 2753) by de-amidation. Its dimethyl derivative is obtained from p-nitrosodimethyl aniline with aniline and  $\beta$ -naphthylamine. *Baker Blue* (A. 272, 311) is an anilido-derivative of this compound.

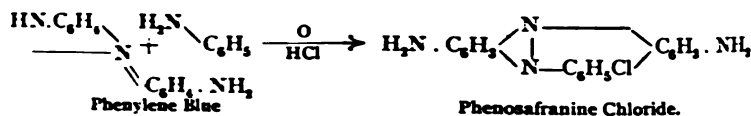
Rosindoline,  $NH:C_6H_5(N_2C_6H_4)C_6H_5$ , melting at  $199^\circ$ , is formed from benzene- $\alpha\beta$ - $\beta$ -naphthylamine and aniline, from o-oxy- $\alpha$ -naphthoquinone-imide and o-amido-phenylamine, as well as from 4-acetamido-o-naphthoquinone and phenyl-o-phenylamine. o-Rosindoline, an isomeride, is also produced by the last method. It differs from rosindoline in the position of the  $N$ .  $C_6H_5$ -group with reference to the naphthalene nucleus (B. 24, 2167; A. 290, 262).

Rosindoline and isosulindoline by de-amidation are converted into phenyl-naphthophenazonium salts, which regenerate rosindoline with ammonia. Phenyl Rosindoline melts at  $235^\circ$ . *Ascarmine* is its disulphonic acid (D. R. P., 45,370).

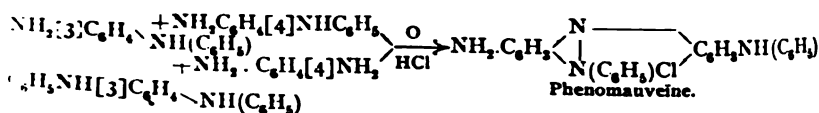
Naphthosulindoline,  $NH:C_6H_4(N_2C_6H_4)C_{10}H_7$ , melts at  $250^\circ$ . It is obtained from benzene- $\alpha\beta$ - $\beta$ -naphthylamine with naphthylamine and aniline (A. 262, 262; 272, 311). *Naphthyl violet* is its anilido-derivative. *Naphthyl Blue* is the anilido-derivative of decyl naphthosulindoline; it is produced by the inner condensation of benzene- $\alpha\beta$ - $\beta$ -naphthylamine.

Rosindone,  $O:C_6H_4(N_2C_6H_4)C_6H_5$ , of the *indones* (see A. 286, 242), occurs in the form of its sulphonic acid as a poscon-red dyestuff having technical application. Isorosindone,  $C_6H_4(N_2C_6H_4)C_6H_5:O$ , melting at  $224^\circ$ , is also obtained from nitro-phenol and phenyl- $\beta$ -naphthylamine (B. 29, 2755).

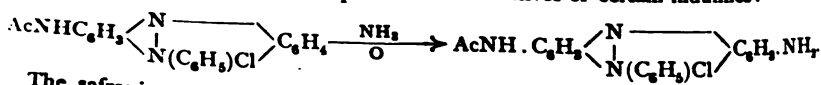
**Safranines:** Safranine salts should be regarded as *symmetrical di-anilido-derivatives of the azonium salts*, as the unsymmetrical structure formerly proposed for these compounds has been abandoned by all investigators who have been active in this domain of research (B. 29, 1442). They are produced (1) upon oxidizing a mixture of an indoamine and a monamine:



(2) By oxidizing a mixture of m-amido-derivatives of diphenylamine with p-diamines or quinone dichlorimides (B. 28, 1579; 29, 1444):



(3) By the action of ammonia upon the acet-derivatives of certain indolines:



The safranines usually form monacid, red-colored salts. The solutions in concentrated sulphuric or hydrochloric acids are green in color. Upon dilution they become blue, then red (dissociation of unstable polyatomic salts; compare the euhodines, p. 500). The reverse in color-change occurs upon adding acid to the dilute salt solutions. The sparing solubility of their nitrates is noteworthy. The alcoholic solutions usually

exhibit a strong yellowish-red fluorescence. Views in regard to the structure of the free bases have been proposed. Reducing agents convert safranines into leuco-compounds, which in the presence of alkalis are rapidly reoxidized by the air to safranines.

The lowest member of the safranines is—

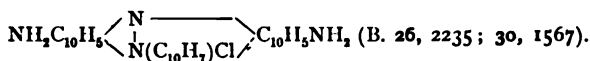
**Phenosafranine**,  $C_{16}H_{15}N_4Cl$ . It consists of leaflets, green in color, or of steel-blue needles. Baryta separates *safranin*.

When its monodiazocompound is boiled with alcohol, aposafranin chloride is produced; the acetyl derivative of the latter, upon treatment with ammonia, again yields an acetyl phenosafranin (B. 30, 1565). Unsym. dimethyl- and diethylphenosafranines (B. 28, 1356) are obtained from dimethyl- and diethyl-p-phenylenediamine with two molecules of aniline. Dimethylphenosafranin is the basis of the dyestuff *fuchsia*. *Girofl* of commerce is an homologue. n-Tetraethylphenosafranin is the violet dye-stuff *amethyst*.

**Tolu-safranin**,  $C_{18}H_{13}(CH_3)_2N_4Cl$ , from toluenylenediamine, o-toluidine (1 molecule) and aniline (1 molecule), is the chief constituent of common *safranin*, occurring in commerce as a brown paste or yellow-red powder, employed in cotton and silk dyeing as a substitute for safflor. The necessary base-mixture for its production is obtained from the "aniline oil for safranin." This is partially diazotized and the product broken up into paratoluylenediamine and orthotoluidine by reduction.

**Naphthophenosafranin Chloride**,  $NH_2C_{10}H_7(N_2C_6H_5 \cdot Cl)C_6H_5NH_2$ . Its acetyl derivative is produced from acetyl rosinduline and ammonia (B. 30, 1566).

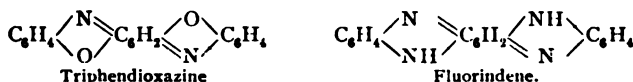
The dyestuff **indazine**,  $C_8H_5NIIC_6H_5(N_2ClC_6H_5)C_6H_5N(CH_3)_2$ , is closely allied to the safranines in its method of formation. It melts at  $218^\circ$ , and is obtained from diphenyl-n-phenylenediamine and nitrosodimethyl aniline. The analogous non-methylated body, from nitroso-aniline and diphenyl-m-phenylenediamine, or from m- and p-amido-diphenylamine, is identical with **Phenomauveine**, which is closely related to mauveine, the first aniline dye to prove valuable technically (Perkin, 1856). Mauveine is produced by oxidizing aniline containing toluidine with potassium bichromate or lead peroxide. **Magdala Red** belongs to the safranines (Hofmann, B. 2, 412). It results from amidoazonaphthalene and  $\alpha$ -naphthylamine hydrochloride. It probably has the following constitution:



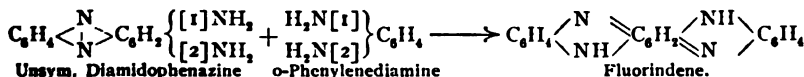
**Safraninones** and **Safranols** are to be viewed as sym. amido- and oxyderivatives of the indones. Like the safranines, they are prepared from m-oxydiphenylamines with nitrosodimethyl aniline or nitrosophenol (B. 28, 270, 503, 1354, 1578).

**Safraninone**,  $C_{18}H_{13}N_2O$ , and **Safranin**,  $C_{18}H_{13}N_2$ , are made by boiling phenosafranin with baryta-water or caustic potash (B. 30, 399).

**Fluorindenes**: Fluorindene is the simplest representative of this class of dyestuffs. It corresponds to triphenioxazine (p. 580):



The fluorindenes result by oxidizing or heating the salts of o-diamines; unsym. diamidophenazines appear as intermediate products (p. 600):

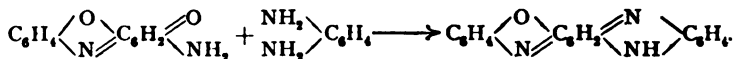


The fluorindenes usually form green-colored crystals, which sublime without decomposition, and are sparingly soluble. Their solutions show a beautiful brick-red fluorescence.

**Methyl Fluorindene**,  $C_8H_4 = (N_2H)^- C_6H_2 : ^-(N_2CH_3) = C_6H_4$ , is obtained from the hydrochloride of diamidophenazine and methyl-o-phenylenediamine (B. 28, 395).

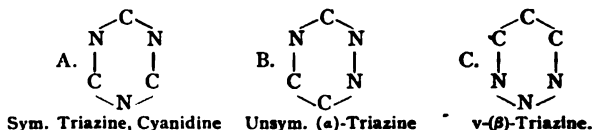
**Phenyl Fluorindene**,  $C_6H_5N_2HC_6H_2N_2(C_6H_5)_2C_6H_5$ , results from the condensation of aposafranin chloride (p. 601) with o-phenylenediamine (B. 29, 367). **Diphenyl Fluorindene**,  $C_6H_5 = (N_2C_6H_5) : C_6H_5 : (N_2C_6H_5) = C_6H_5$ , is produced in the oxidation of azophenine, and also from phenylinduline by sublimation (B. 28, 293).

**Triphenazine Oxazine** is a mixed oxazine-phenazine. It is formed from unsym-dioxyphenazine with o-amidophenol, or from amidophenoxazone with o-phenylenediamine (B. 28, 299):



#### 4. TRIAZINES.

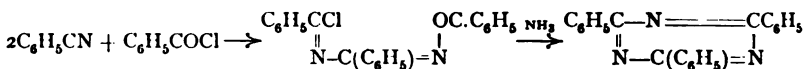
Derivatives of the three possible metameric triazines are known:



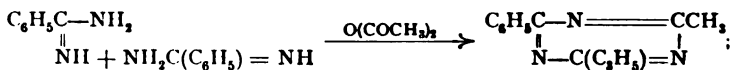
**A. Sym. Triazines, Cyanidines:** The formula of symmetrical triazine corresponds to the hypothetical *Trihydrocyanic Acid*, to which the metallo-hydrocyanic acids (I, 231) have been referred. Furthermore, a series of polymeric cyanogen compounds—*e. g.*, cyanuric acid, sulphocyanuric acid, cyanuric chloride, melamine, isomelamine, etc.—are derivatives of this triazine. They have already been discussed.

*Alkyl- and phenyl-derivatives* of sym. triazine or cyanidine are obtained:

1. By the action of aluminium chloride upon a mixture of benzonitrile and benzoyl chloride or acid chlorides. When benzoyl chloride is used, the reaction (best with the addition of ammonium chloride) proceeds as follows (B. 25, 2263):



2. By the action of anhydrides of the fatty acids upon aromatic carbon-amidines (B. 25, 1624):



carbonyl chloride acts the same as the anhydride of the fatty acid, with the production of oxycyanidines (B. 25, 1424).

The cyanidines are weak, monacid bases. They are more or less readily decomposed into ammonia and carbonic acids.

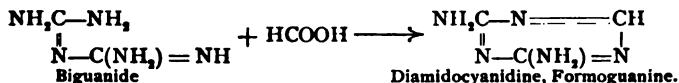
**Diphenyl Methyl Cyanidine**,  $C_6(C_6H_5)_2(CH_3)N_3$ , melting at  $110^\circ$ , is made from benzamidine and acetic anhydride. It is oxidized to *diphenylcyanidine carboxylic acid*, which loses water readily and becomes *diphenyl cyanidine*,  $C_2(C_6H_5)_2HN_3$ , melting at  $75^\circ$  (B. 23, 2382).

**Triphenyl Cyanidine, Cyanphenine**,  $C_3(C_6H_5)_3N_3$ , was first obtained from benzoyl chloride and potassium cyanate (Cloëz, 1859), then by the polymerization of benzonitrile with concentrated sulphuric acid; from benzonitrile, benzoyl chloride, and  $Al_2Cl_6$  (see above), as well as by the action of sodium upon a mixture of cyanuric chloride and brom-benzene (proof of constitution). Compare B. 29, R. 1124, for the action of sodium upon benzonitrile. Nascent hydrogen decomposes it into ammonia and lophine; compare the similar conversion of Cyanur-triethyl, *triethyl cyanidine*, into triethyl gly-oxaline (B. 28, R. 66). Perchlortrimethyl Cyanidine,  $C_3(CCl_3)_3N_3$ , melting at  $96^\circ$ , results from the polymerization of trichloroacetonitrile.

Diphenyl Oxycyanidine,  $C_6H_5(C_6H_5)_2(OH)N_3$ , melting at  $289^\circ$ , from benzenylamine and  $COCl_2$  (B. 23, 163), forms a well crystallizing sodium salt.  $PCl_5$  converts it into diphenylchlorocyanidine, melting at  $139^\circ$ , which behaves like an acid chloride. Thus, ammonia readily changes it into diphenylamidocyanidine, melting at  $172^\circ$ .

Methyl Dioxycyanidine,  $\begin{array}{c} CH_3C-N \\ | \quad \quad | \\ N-C(OH)-N \end{array}$ , is obtained from acetyl urethane and urea (A. 288, 318).

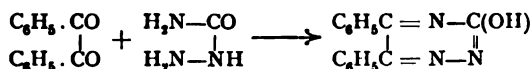
Diamido-cyanidines are also found in the guanamines, which are produced on heating guanidine fatty-acid salts or biguanide with fatty acids:



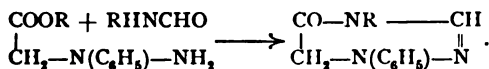
Piperyl Amido-cyanidine,  $C_3(NC_6H_5)_3(NH_2)HN_3$ , melting at  $194^\circ$ , is similarly obtained by heating piperyl guanide with formic acid, or by treating it with chloroform and caustic potash, even at  $0^\circ$  (B. 25, 525).

Normal cyanuric acid (1, 419) is a trioxycyanidine, cyanuric chloride is a trichlorocyanidine, melamine is triamidocyanidine, and ammeline and ammeline (1, 427) are oxydiamido- and dioxyamidocyanidines. Isocyanuric acid and its derivatives are to be regarded as derivatives of a triketohexahydrocyanidine.

B. Unsym. (*a*)-Triazines.—But few derivatives of the simple ring are known: 1,2-Diphenyl-3-oxy-*a*-triazine,  $C_6H_5(C_6H_5)_2(OH)N_3$ , melting at  $218^\circ$ , is produced in the condensation of benzil with semicarbazide (B. 28, R. 110):

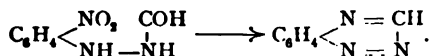


*n*-Phenyl- and *n*-phenyl-*n*-alkyl ketotetrahydro-*a*-triazines are made by heating the unsym. phenylhydrazido-acetic acid ester (p. 127) with formamide and substituted formamides (B. 28, 1228):

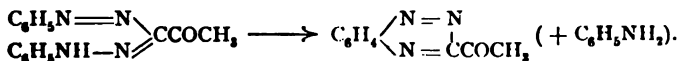


*n*-Diphenyl Ketotetrahydrotriazine, melting at  $205^\circ$ , is obtained from formanilide. An isomeric *n*-diphenyl ketotetrahydrotriazine,  $\begin{array}{c} CH_2-N(C_6H_5)-CH \\ | \quad \quad | \\ CO-N(C_6H_5)-N \end{array}$ , melting at  $174^\circ$ , has been prepared from anilido-acetic acid phenylhydrazide,  $C_6H_5NHCH_2CON(C_6H_5)NH_2$  (p. 127) with crystallized formic acid (B. 26, 2616).

The derivatives of *benzo*- or *phen-a*-triazine are more numerous. They are produced (1) by the reduction of sym. *o*-nitrophenylacidyl hydrazines:



(2) By the condensation of formazyl compounds on boiling them with concentrated acids (B. 25, 3206, 3540; 26, 2788):

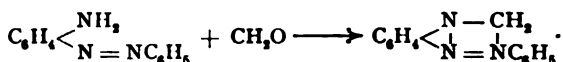


The *phen-a*-triazines are yellow-colored, crystalline compounds, having an alkaloid-like odor. They are very slightly basic.

Phentriazine,  $C_8H_4(CN_3)_2$ , melting at  $75^\circ$  and boiling at  $235-240^\circ$ , results from the reduction of *o*-nitrophenylformylhydrazine, or by the exit of  $CO_2$  and aniline from formazyl carboxylic ester. Phenmethyl Triazine,  $C_8H_4[CN_3(CH_3)]_2$ , melting at  $89^\circ$

and boiling at 250–255°, is obtained from *o*-nitrophenylacetylhydrazine. **Phentriazyl Methyl Ketone**,  $C_6H_4[CN_2(COCH_3)]$ , melting at 114°, is derived from formazyl methyl ketone.

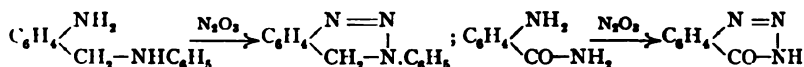
The *phendihydro- $\alpha$ -triazines* are related to the phen- $\alpha$ -triazines. They are obtained, instead of the expected alkylidene amido-derivatives (B. 24, 1002, R. 948), from *o*-amido-azo-compounds and aldehydes:



These compounds are *colorless*. They are feebly basic, stable bodies, which can be heated with hydrochloric acid to 150° without decomposition.

**Tolu-*n*-tolyl- $\alpha$ -dihydrotriazine**,  $C_7H_4[CH_2N_2(C_7H_7)]$ , melts at 178°. **Naphtho-*n*,*c*-diphenyl- $\alpha$ -dihydrotriazine**,  $C_{10}H_6[CHN_2(C_6H_5)_2]$ , melting at 193°, is formed from benzene-azo- $\beta$ -naphthylamine and benzaldehyde.

*C. Phendihydro- $\beta$ -triazines* are derived from adjacent  $\alpha$ - or  $\beta$ -Triazine. They are ring homologues of the azimido-benzenes, and are prepared from the *o*-amidobenzylamines and *o*-amidobenzamides with nitrous acid, just as the phendihydrometadiazines or dihydroquinazolines are obtained from the carboxylic acids (p. 590):



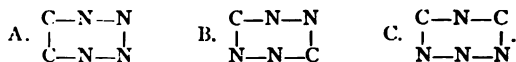
**Phen-*n*-phenyl Dihydro- $\beta$ -triazine**,  $C_6H_4[CH_2N_2(C_6H_5)]$ , melts with decomposition at 128° (B. 25, 445).

**Phen-*n*-benzyl Dihydro- $\beta$ -triazine**,  $C_6H_4[CH_2N_2(C_6H_7)]$ , melts at 91° (B. 28, R. 383).

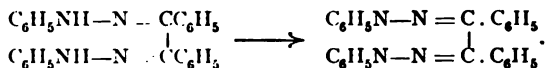
**Phenketodihydro- $\beta$ -triazine**, *Benzazimide*,  $C_6H_4[CON_2H]$ , melts with decomposition at 212°. It is formed when  $N_2O_3$  acts upon *o*-amidobenzenylamidoxime (J. pr. Ch. [2], 37, 432; 43, 446; 48, 92; B. 29, 626; R. 785).

## 5. TETRAZINES.

Only the first two of the three possible metameric tetrazine rings are known in certain derivatives:

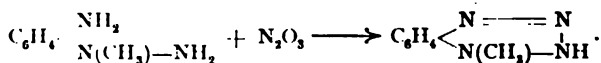


A. The **osotetrazones** are derived from adjacent tetrazine. They result in the oxidation of the osazones, and are to be viewed as *n*-dialkyl- or dialkyl-dihydro- $\gamma$ -tetrazines:



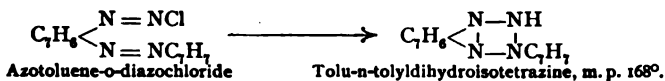
They become triazoles if heated or if acted upon with hydrochloric acid and ferric chloride.

**Phen-*n*-methyl Dihydrotetrazine**, melting at 62°, is a *benzo-derivative* of  $\gamma$ -tetrazine. It is formed when nitrous acid acts upon *o*-amidophenylmethylhydrazine, and corresponds to the phendihydro- $\beta$ -triazines (J. pr. Ch. [2], 41, 176):



The *isophendihydrotetrazines*, on the other hand, are constituted analogously to the

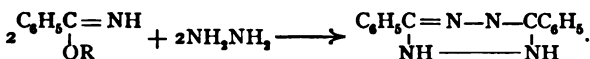
phenyldihydro-*a*-triazines. They result by the reduction of the diazo-salts of *o*-amido-azo-compounds (p. 115) (B. 19, 1457; 21, 543):



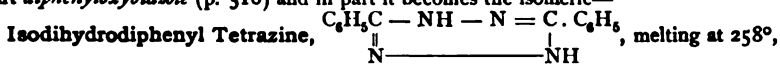
B. Sym. Tetrazine,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH} - \text{N} = \text{N} \\ | \quad \quad | \\ \text{N} \quad \quad \text{N} = \text{CH} \end{array}$ , yields several aliphyl derivatives, which are characterized by their intense red color, and their stability toward acids, but which are decomposed by alkalis (B. 26, 2126; 27, 984, 3273):

Diphenyl Tetrazine,  $\text{C}_6(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}_4$ , forms bluish-red leaflets, melting at  $192^\circ$ . It is easily produced by oxidizing—

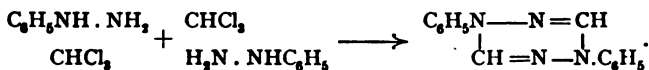
Dihydrodiphenyl Tetrazine, consisting of yellow needles. This is produced in the action of excessive hydrazine upon benzimido-ether:



The dihydro-derivative is converted into tetrazine by heating, by moderated oxidants, and even by the oxygen of the air. It can be regained from the tetrazine by reducing the latter with zinc-dust and glacial acetic acid. If the body be boiled with these reagents, the reduction extends further: ammonia and *diphenyl triazole* (p. 512) are produced. When dihydrodiphenyl tetrazine is boiled with hydrochloric acid, it forms in part *diphenyloxybiazole* (p. 516) and in part it becomes the isomeric—



which cannot be oxidized to a tetrazine. *n*-Derivatives of this body may be synthesized from aromatic hydrazines with chloroform and caustic potash:



*n*-Diphenyl Isodihydrodrotetrazine, melting at  $180^\circ$ , is obtained by heating formyl phenylhydrazine (B. 30, 1263). *n*-Ditolyl Isodihydrodrotetrazine melts at  $185^\circ$  (B. 23, R. 250).

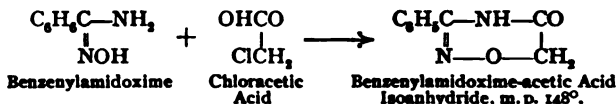
Urazine, *Bishydrazidicarbonyl*, *Diurea*,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{HN} - \text{NH} - \text{CO} \\ | \quad \quad | \\ \text{CO} - \text{NH} - \text{NH} \end{array}$ , melting at  $270^\circ$ , is a *p*-diketohexahydrodrotetrazine. It is produced when hydrazidicarbonylic ester or hydrazidicarbonyl,  $\text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH}_2$ , is heated with hydrazine. It is a strong, monacid base (J. pr. Ch. [2], 52, 482; C. 1897, 11, 264. Diphenyl Urazine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N} - \text{NH} - \text{CO}$

$\text{CO} - \text{NH} - \text{N} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , melting at  $264^\circ$ , is produced when phenylsemicarbazide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{CONH}_2$ , and phenylcarbazine ester are heated, or when alkalis act upon diphenylcarbazidodicarboxylic ester (B. 21, 2329; A. 263, 282; B. 29, 829). An isomeric *diphenyl urazine* is formed when  $\text{COCl}_2$  acts upon sodium phenylhydrazine (B. 26, R. 20).

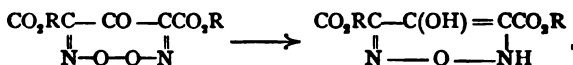
6. Substances consisting of polyhetero-atomic six-membered rings, which contain O- and S-members, in addition to nitrogen, are not very numerous. Some are produced in reactions similar to those in which the corresponding five-membered rings are formed.

Just as the five-membered azoximes (p. 515) are prepared from the amidoximes and carboxylic acid chlorides, so their corresponding six-membered ring homologues are

prepared from amidoximes and  $\alpha$ -chlor-fatty acids (B. 22, 3161; 27, 3353; 28, 1374; 29, 2656):

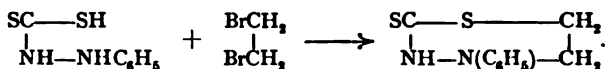


The five-membered furazanes or azoxazoles (p. 514) have corresponding six-membered *azoxazine* derivatives. The reduction of dilonitrosoacetone dicarboxylic ester peroxide leads to oxyazoxazine dicarboxylic ester:

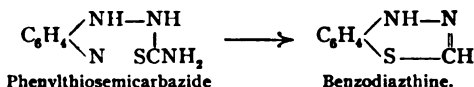


from which a series of additional azoxazine compounds has been prepared by rearrangement (B. 26, 999).

The *thiodiazines* or *diazthines* are homologues of the thio-[b,b<sub>1</sub>]-diazoles. An *n*-phenylthiopentahydrodiazthine, melting at 94°, is formed in the condensation of phenylsulpho-carbazinic acid with ethylene bromide (B. 27, 2516):



*Benzo-derivatives of the diazthines* are produced when the phenylthiosemicarbazides are treated with hydrochloric acid (B. 27, 861) (p. 128):



**Benzodiazthine**, *Phenylsulphocarbazine*, melting at 129°, is decomposed by fusion with caustic potash into *o*-amidothiophenol. **Benzo-*n*-methyldiazthine**, from unsymmetrical phenyl-methyl semicarbazide, and others behave similarly.

The **thialdines** (I, 203) contain a six-membered ring, with two S-members and one N-member. They are produced by the action of ammonia, etc., upon the trithioaldehydes.

# INDEX.

**A.**  
**ABIETIC acid**, 334  
**Acenaphthenone**, 410  
**Acenaphthene**, 48, 409, 410  
     quinone, 410  
**Acenaphthylene**, 410  
**Acetacetyl pyridine**, 535  
     quinoline, 549  
**aldehyde-phenylhydrazine**, 113  
**amidine**, 129  
**amido-azobenzene**, 115  
     cinnamic acid, 276  
     cinnam-lactimide, 276  
     hydrazobenzene, 118  
     naphthol, 401  
     phenetol, 154  
     triphenyl methane, 352  
**amino-naphthol ethyl ether**, 401  
**anilide**, 82, 189  
**coumaric acid**, 280  
**Acetenyl benzene**, 268  
     hydrindene carboxylic ester, 387  
     iodosobenzoic acid, 210  
     nitrotoluide, 501  
**Acetoacetanilide**, 84  
     acetic ester, 464  
         phenyl-hydrazine, 127  
     amido-mandelic acid, 252  
         phenyl-acetic acid, 214  
     benzoic acid, 238  
         anhydride, 198  
     benzoyl benzoic acid, 350  
     butyric acid, 46  
     isatinic acid, 258  
     methyl pyrone, 522  
         carboxylic acid, 522  
**Acetone**, 55  
     oxalester oxime, 494  
     phenyl hydrazone, 467  
         methyl hydrazone, 466  
     nicotinic acid, 536  
**Acetonyl acetone**, 447  
     methylisoxazolyl ketone, 494, 495  
     oxindol, 214  
     oxybenzalacetophenone, 463  
**Aceto-oxycoumarone**, 463

**Aceto-oxypthalide**, 237  
     phenone, 69, 176, 189, 257, 271, 407  
         acetoacetic ester, 262  
         acetone, 250  
         alcohol, 248  
         anil, 189  
         anilide, 249  
         carboxylic acid, 238, 265  
         chloride, 189  
         homologues, 189  
         orthoethers, 189  
         oxalic ester, 484  
         phenylhydrazone, 189  
         substitution products, 190  
         sulphonic acid, 191  
     phenon-oxime, 189  
         carboxylic anhydride, 580  
     phenylhydrazone, 481  
     phthalaldehydic acid, 237  
     piperone, 221  
     pyrocatechol, 221  
     salicylic acid, 224  
     thienone, 455  
     trimethylene carboxylic acid, 23  
     veratron, 221  
**Acetparatoluidine**, 68  
     phenylhydrazide, 125  
     toluides, 75  
     vanillon, 221  
**Acetyl acetophenone**, 250  
     amidobenzophenone, 347  
     amidrazone, 130  
     anisol, 221  
     anthranilic acid, 212  
     aurines, 361  
     benzene, 189  
     benzenylamidoxime, 208  
     bornylamine, 326  
     carbanilide, 86  
     carbazole, 477  
     carbostyryl, 549  
     diketo hydrindene, 388  
     dioxindol, 252  
     diphenylene oxide, 476  
     durene, 190

- Acetylene benzenes, 268  
     dicarboxylic ester, 484  
     phenetol, 271  
 Acetyl-fenchylamine, 326  
     hexahydro-cresol, 315  
     hydrazobenzenes, 117  
     indols, 466  
     isatin, 258, 472  
     isindazole, 493  
     isocaproic acid, 329  
     mesitylene, 190  
     methyl indazole, 492  
         isindazole, 493  
         pentamethylene, 26  
         penthiothene, 525  
         tolimidazole, 501  
     opianic acid, 238  
     oxybenzalacetophenone, 464  
     phenyl carbamate, 91  
     phenylene diamine, 500  
     phenyl isindazole, 347, 493  
         methyl triazole, 512  
         urea, 86  
     piperidine, 540  
     pyrazole, 481  
     pyrrol, 458  
     quinoline, 549  
     toluene, 190  
     trimethylene, 22  
     xylene, 190  
 Acicular oxylepidene, 381  
 Acid esters, 146  
     fuchsine, 357  
     green, 355  
     yellow, 115, 138  
 Acidum cinnamyllicum, 274  
 Acidylated benzenes, 189  
 Acridic acid, 550  
 Acridine group, 559  
 Acridines, 80, 559  
 Acridone, 213, 225, 347, 560  
 Acrolein phenylhydrazone, 485  
 Acrylaldehydophenoxyl acetic acid, 272  
 Acrylic ester, 486  
 Addition-reaction, 43  
 Adipic acid, 296, 393  
 Adipin ketone, 26  
 Æsculetin, 283, 463  
 Æsculetinic acid, 283  
 Æsculin, 283, 431  
 Æsculus *hippocastanum*, 431  
 Alanine, 87  
 Albumen, 253  
 Albuminates, 466  
 Alcohol carboxylic acids, 27, 233  
     derivatives of dibenzyl, 371  
     of stillbene, 375  
 Alcohols, 32, 407  
     of the naphthalene series, 407  
 Alcohols of triphenyl methane, 361  
 Aldehyde, 441, 442  
     acids, 236  
     alcohols, 233  
     collidine, 528, 532  
     green, 358, 547  
     phenylhydrazones, 466  
 Aldehydes, 182, 407  
     of triphenylmethane, 361  
 Aldehydines, 96, 500  
 Aldehydo benzoic acid, 238  
     cinnamic acid, 286  
     dicarboxylic acids, 245  
     isophthalic acid, 245  
     phenoxycetic acid, 218, 463  
     phenylhydrazylamine, 187  
     nitrobenzaloxime, 187  
 Aldehydrazones, 122  
 Aldol aniline, 79  
 Alicyclic nucleus, 410  
     saturated compounds, 18  
     unsaturated compounds, 18  
 Aliphatic substitution products, 61  
 Alizarin, 159, 420, 426, 427, 433  
     amide, 428  
     blue, 427, 554  
         green, 554  
     bordeaux, 429  
     brown, 428, 429  
     green, 554  
     indigo-blue, 554  
     orange, 427  
     yellow, 349  
 Alkali blue, 359  
 Alkaloids, 561  
 Alkines, 412  
 Alkoxy-pyrazoles, 487  
 Alkylaliphylsulphones, 139  
     benzaloximes, 444  
     benzenes, 50  
     benzoic acids, 194  
     camphor, 331  
     coumarins, 281  
     cyan-camphor, 331  
     dithiocarbamic acids, 73  
 Alkylen-dianilines, 79  
 Alkylc anilines, 470  
     anthracenes, 422  
     derivatives of anthracene diby-  
         dride, 424  
     diphenyls, 335  
     hydranthanols, 425  
     indols, 467  
     rhodamines, 366  
     rosanilines, 358, 357  
 Alkylidene anilines, 79  
     thioureas, 440  
     ureas, 440  
 Alkylisoquinolines, 244

ydrazones, 467  
 reas, 85  
 , 482  
 158  
 namic acid, 275  
 amic acid, 275  
 acid, 274, 276  
     dibromide, 256  
     dibromide methyl ester, 256  
     dichloride, 256  
 none, 273  
 ethyl pentoxazoline, 580  
 iazsulpholes, 518  
 imethylmethylene ether, 270  
 de, 498  
 , 268  
 acetic ester, 260, 287  
 -urea, 580  
 55  
 , 269  
 17  
 oil, 429  
 269  
 ydrazine, 122  
 , 533  
 chine, 269  
 chol methylene ether, 270  
     270  
 32  
  
 432  
 id, 196  
 d, 196  
 : acid, 252  
 /lamines, 70  
 497, 499  
  
 83  
 , 202  
 ialaldehydic acid, 236  
  
 benone, 190, 249  
 , 427  
 cid, 170  
 ene, 423  
 uinone, 425  
 , 423  
 ine, 489  
 zene, 108, 109, 115  
     sulphonic acids, 137  
 pponnds 114  
 bthalenes, 398  
 ene, 115  
 lehyde, 187  
     acet derivatives, 187  
     hetero-ring forma-  
         tions of, 187

Amido-benzaldehyde oxime, 187  
 benzene sulphonic acids, 137  
 benzhydrol, 344  
 benzdine, 338  
 benzoic acid, 211, 214  
     lactam, 212  
 benzophenone, 347  
     oxime, 347  
 benzo-thiazole, 508  
 benzoxazole, 504  
 benzoyl formic acid, 258  
     lactam, 471  
     glyoxylic acid, 261  
 benzyl alcohol, 180  
     aniline, 181  
     chloride hydrochloride, 180  
     methyl ketone, 466  
 butyl phenyl ether, 146  
 camphor, 330  
 chlorstyrene, 465  
 chlorstyrolene, 268  
 cinnamic acid, 276  
 compounds, 31, 70  
 coumaric acid, 282  
 derivatives, 351, 405  
 desoxybenzoin, 466  
 diimido-phenol, 172  
 dimethyl aniline, 95  
     phene, 179  
 dinitro phenol, 154  
 diphenyl, 336  
     amine, 95, 118  
 diphenylene ketone, 419  
     methanes, 343  
 ditolyl, 336  
 ethyl benzene, 77  
     indene, 386  
 furfurane, 448  
 hemipinic acid, 242  
 hexahydrobenzoic acid, 300  
     phenylacetic acid, 300  
 hexamethylene, 295  
 hydratropic acid, 214, 252  
 hydrindene, 387, 388  
 hydrindone, 387  
 hydrocarbostyryl, 215  
     cinnamic acid, 214, 255  
 isophthalic acid, 242  
     propyl benzene, 77  
     indene, 386  
 lutidine, 533  
     dicarboxylic acid, 538  
 mandelic acid, 78, 251  
     lactam, 251  
     lactam, 471  
 methyl benzenes, 75  
     indene, 385, 386  
     oxazoline, 503

- Amido-methyl thiazole carboxylic ester, 506  
     thiazole, 512  
 naphthalenes, 396  
 naphthoic acid, 408  
 naphthols, 401  
 naphthol sulphonic acids, 403  
 naphthoquinone, 405  
     imide, 407  
 nicotinic acid, 536  
 nitro-hydrocinnamic acid, 214  
     phenyl-acetic acid, 214  
 octyl benzene, 77  
 oxazoline, 503  
 oxindol, 214, 471  
 oxybiphenyls, 340  
     hydrindene, 387  
     naphthoic acid, 409  
 pentamethyl benzene, 76  
 phenanthrenes, 414  
 phenazines, 599  
 phenol, 70, 152, 503  
 phenols, 152  
     condensation of, 153  
 phenol sulphonic acid, 156  
 phenthiazine, 584  
 phenyl acetic acid, 214  
     aceto lactam, 471  
     acetylene, 268  
     alanine, 253  
         hydrochloride, 254  
     amido-acridine, 560  
     benzene induline, 601  
     fatty acids, 214  
     glyceric acid, 255  
     guanidine, 128  
     lactic acid, 253  
     methane, 95  
     methyl pyrazolon, 488  
         quinoline, 546  
     osotriazole carboxylic acid, 509  
     propionic acid, 285  
     sulphides, 158  
     toluoxazole, 504  
         thiazole, 507  
 phthalic acids, 241  
 phthalide, 236  
 polymethyl benzenes, 76  
 propiophenone, 249  
 propyl benzene, 77  
     indene, 386  
 pyrazoles, 483  
 pyridines, 533  
 quinoline iodmethylete, 547  
 quinolines, 547  
 quinone, 170  
 quinoxaline-carboxylic acid, 596  
 sulphonic acids, 399
- Amido-styrolene, 267  
 terebenthene, 326  
 tertiary butyl benzene, 77  
 tetramethyl diamido-triphenyl methane, 358  
 tetraoxybenzene, 166  
 tetrazole, 520  
 tetrazotic acid, 520  
 thiazole, 505  
     carboxylic acid, 506  
 thiazolines, 506  
 thiophene, 455  
     phenol, 157  
     phenols, condensation of, 157  
 trimethylphenene, 179  
     piperidenes, 540  
     pyrazole, 483  
 triphenyl carbinols, 354  
     methane, 352
- Amidrazones, 125, 129, 205  
 [Aminobenzene], 74  
 [Aminophene], 74  
 Ammon-chelidonic acid, 537  
 Ammonium hydroxides, 77  
 Amygdalic acid, 430  
 Amygdalin, 430  
 Amygdonitriloglycoside, 430  
 Amyl anthracene, 423  
*Andropogon nardus*, 321  
 Anethol, 259, 268, 269, 282  
*Anethum feniculum*, 269  
     *graveolens*, 271  
*Angrecum fragans*, 280  
 Anhydrides of diazophenols, 479, 516  
 Anhydroacetophenone benzil, 381  
     bases, 96, 401, 480, 507  
     bis-amido benzophenone, 347  
     bisketo hydrindene, 388  
     ecgonine, 570  
     formaldehyde-aniline, 79  
     geraniol, 309  
     hippuric phenyl ester, 200  
     oxyvinyl benzoic acid, 286  
         benzoic acid anhydride, 286  
         benzoic acid imide, 286  
     sulphamine-benzoic acid, 216
- Anil-acetoacetic ester, 84  
     biguanide, 128  
     guanidine, 128  
 Anilic acid, 240  
 Anilides of fatty acids, 81  
 Anilido-acetic acid, 84  
     phenyl hydrazide, 11  
     amido-naphthol ethers, 402  
     aposafranine, 601  
     benzimidazoline, 502  
     benzothiazole, 508  
     benzoxazole, 504

- ido-butyldiene aniline, 79  
   crotonic ester, 84  
   dicarboxylic acids, 91  
   dimethyl pyrrol, 124  
   methyl thiazoline, 507  
   naphthoquinone, 405  
     anil, 407  
   oxynaphthoquinone, 405  
   phenitidine, 154  
   phenyl carbamic ethyl ether, 86  
     isoquinoline, 556  
     thiobiazoline, 517  
   phosphoric dichloride, 80  
   propionic acid, 84  
   pyrrols, 124, 458  
   thiobiazole, 479, 517  
     diazole, 518  
 line, 66, 74, 391, 466  
   black, 75  
   blue, 79, 359  
   haloids, 91  
   oil, 76  
   potassium, 73  
   salts, 75  
 lines, 70  
 l-pyroracemic acid, 84  
   succinimide, 129  
   uvitonic acid, 84, 549  
 saldoxime, 218  
 se oil, 269  
 sic acid, 145, 225, 269  
   aldehyde, 219  
 sidine, 152  
 sil, 375  
 silic acid, 369, 375  
 soln, 372  
 sol, 145, 146  
 solines, 366  
 syl alcohol, 217  
 tidalin, 144  
 ol, 269  
 thracene, 48, 384, 422  
   blue, 429  
   brown, 429  
   carboxylic acids, 424  
   derivatives, 421  
   dihydride, 424  
   disulphonic acid, 423  
   ethyl nitrate, 423  
   group, 420  
   hexahydride, 424  
   mono-sulphonic acid, 423  
   oil, 49  
   perhydride, 424  
   sulphonic acids, 423  
 thrachrysonc, 429  
 thraflavic acid, 428  
 thragallo, 428  
 thramine, 423  
 Anthranil, 212, 256  
   carbonic acid, 212  
 Anthranilic acid, 211  
 Anthranol, 424  
 Anthra-purpurin, 428  
   pyridine quinone, 561  
   pyridines, 561  
   quinolines, 554  
   quinone, 423, 424, 425  
     carboxylic acids, 429  
     disulphonic acid, 426  
     mono-sulphonic acid, 426  
     quinoline, 554  
 Anthrarobin, 424  
 Anthrarufin, 424, 428  
 Anthrol, 423  
 Anthroxanaldehyde, 250, 256  
 Anthroxanic acid, 259  
 Antibenzaldoxime-methyl ether, 185  
   febrine, 75, 82  
   phenylglyoxylic acid oxime, 258  
   pyrine, 75, 120, 121, 443, 480, 488  
 Apiol, 268, 270  
 Apione, 166  
 Apionol, 166, 271  
 Apotatropine, 567  
   camphoric acid, 332  
   cinchene, 573  
   codeine, 576  
   morphine, 576  
   phyllenic acid, 537  
   quinene, 573  
   safranine, 601  
 Arbutin, 429  
*Arbutus uva ursi*, 429  
 Archil, 162  
 Arecaidine, 565  
 Arecaïne, 565  
 Arecoline, 565  
 Aristol, 144  
*Arnica Montana*, 163  
 Aromatic acid amides, 199  
   amido-ketones, hetero-ring for-  
     mations of the, 190  
     monocarboxylic acids,  
       211  
   compounds, 30  
   derivatives, 29  
   hexacarboxylic acid, 246  
   monocarboxylic acids, 191  
   monoketones, 188  
   nitrolic acids, 208  
   pentacarboxylic acids, 246  
   polyalcohols, 247  
   substitution products, 61  
   tetracarboxylic acids, 246  
 Arsenanilido-dibromide, 81  
   dichloride, 81  
 Arsenobenzene, 132

Arsenphenylamines, 81  
*Artemisia Borellieri*, 319  
     *cina*, 315  
 Artificial camphor, 323  
     isocinnamic acid, 275  
     musk, 57, 68  
*Asafatida*, 160, 283  
 Asarone, 268, 270  
 Asaronic acid, 231  
*Asarum europæum*, 270  
 Aseptol, 156  
 Asparagine, 253  
 Aspartic acid, 253  
 Asperula essence, 281  
*Asperula odorata*, 281  
 Atroglyceric acid, 255  
     lactic acid, 252  
 Atropic acid, 278  
 Atropine, 253, 498, 567  
 Atroxindol, 214  
 Auramine, 348  
 Aurantia, 93  
 Aurine, 143, 361  
 Aurines, 351, 359, 360  
 Azimethylene, 445  
     group, 445  
 Azimide benzenes, 510  
 Azimides, 96, 441, 480  
 Azimidobenzene, 97, 511  
     benzoic acid, 214  
 Azimidol, 122  
 Azines, 397, 579  
 Azobenzene, 112, 113  
     azoresorcinol, 161  
     monocarboxylic acid, 215  
     benzide, 113  
     benzil, 373  
     benzoic acid, 215  
     black, 400  
     camphenone, 330  
     camphor, 330  
     carmine, 602  
     compounds, 112, 487  
         of naphthalene, 397  
     derivatives, 31  
     diphenylene, 337, 598  
     dyes, 114  
     imido compounds, 63  
 Azoles, 478, 479  
 Azonaphthalene, 397  
     naphthols, 401, 406  
 Azonium compounds, 600  
 Azoopianic acid, 238, 242  
     phenine, 173  
     phenols, 155, 173  
     phenylene, 215  
     phenylmethane, 113  
     rubin, 400  
     styrolene, 267

Azosulphime anilides, 517  
     sulphimes, 441, 479, 480, 517  
     toluenes, 113  
     trimethyl benzenes, 113  
 Azoxazine derivatives, 442  
 Azoximes, 441, 479, 480, 515  
 Azoxyaniline, 112  
     benzene, 70, 111, 155  
     benzide, 111  
     benzoic acids, 215  
     compounds, 111, 112  
     derivatives, 63  
 Azoxylenes, 113  
     toluene, 112  
 Azuline, 361  
 Azulmic acid, 446  
 Azylines, 116

## B.

BADEN acid, 399  
 Baldrianic camphor, 324  
 Balsams, 334  
 Basler blue, 602  
 Bay-oil, 270  
 Benzal acetoacetic ester, 287  
     acetone, 272  
     amido sulphonc acid, 186  
     angelic lactone, 288  
     aniline, 185  
     azine, 185  
         tetrabromide, 185  
     benzamidine, 204  
     bromide, 184  
     butyric acid, 278  
     chloride, 184  
 Benzaldehyde, 66, 69, 176, 183  
     condensations, 449  
     substitution products, 186  
     sulphonic acid, 188  
     diacetal ester, 184  
     diethyl acetoacetic ester, 288  
         ether, 184  
     diketohydrindene, 388  
     dimethyl ether, 184  
     diphenylmaleid, 377  
     doxime-o-acetic acid, 186  
         carboxylic acid, 236  
             anhydride, 236, 580  
         ether, 439, 440  
 Benzaldoximes, 185  
     ethylamine, 185  
     glutaric acid, 289  
     lævoxime, 288  
     lævulinic acid, 255, 288, 391  
     malonic acid, 288

- Benzalmalonic acid ethyl ester**, 288  
     half-nitrile of, 288  
     mesityl oxide, 273  
     phenylhydrazone, 185  
     phthalide, 376  
     propionic acid, 278  
     pyrazolon, 487  
**Benzamerone**, 383  
     amide, 199, 206  
         bromide, 203  
         chloride, 203  
         haloids, 209  
         iodide, 203  
         sulphonic acid, 216  
     amidine, 204  
         diazo-benzene, 204  
         hetero-ring formations, 205  
         phenyl-thiurea, 204  
         urethane, 205  
     amidoxime, 204  
     anilide, 199  
         imide chloride, 203  
**Benzantialdoxime acetate**, 186  
**Benzaurin**, 360  
**Benzazimide**, 213, 366  
**Benzelnes**, 359, 360  
**Benzene**, 18, 30, 45, 47, 437  
     azocarbonamide, 127  
         dimethyl aniline, 115  
         diphenylamine, 115  
         ethane, 113  
         methane, 112, 113  
         naphthalene, 397  
         naphthyl-phenylamine, 398  
         nitroethane, 114  
         phenol, 155  
         resorcinol, 161  
         sulphonic acid, 103  
     derivatives, 30  
     diazoacetanilide, 109  
         anilide, 108  
         carbonamide, 103  
         carboxylic acids, 114  
         sulphones, 103  
     azthine, 128  
     carboxylic acid, 239, 242, 243  
     sulphonic acids, 136  
     sulphoxide, 139  
     halogen substitution products, 57  
     hexabromide, 293  
         carboxylic acid, 43  
     hydrazophenetol, 155  
     hydrocarbons containing a single  
         nucleus, 47  
     induline, 601  
     of crystallization, 351  
     oxyquinones, 170  
     pentacarboxylic acid, 246  
     phenolphthalide, 363  
**Benzene** phthalin, 361  
     pyrogallolphthalide, 363  
     ring, decomposition of, 44  
         formation, 450  
         formations, 41  
     resorcinol phthalide, 363  
     sulphamide, 135  
     sulphinic acid, 139  
     sulpho-diazobenzene amide, 135  
     sulphone, 140  
     sulphonhydrazide, 135  
     sulphonic acid, 69, 135  
     sulphonitramide, 135  
     tetracarboxylic acid, 246  
     theory, Kekulé, 30  
     thiosulphonic acid, 139  
     tricarboxylic acid, 191, 245  
     sulphonic acid, 136  
**Benzenylamidine**, 204  
     amido-thio-phenol, 199  
     amidoxime, 208  
         acetic acid, 608  
         anhydride, 442  
         butyric acid, 208  
         ethyl ether, 208  
         glycollic acid anhy-  
             dride, 208  
         methyl ether, 208  
     azoxime-thiocarbinol, 515  
     bromoxime-acetic acid, 208  
     carbonyl azoxime, 515  
     chloroxime-acetic acid, 208  
     compounds, 203  
     dioxytetra-azotic acid, 205  
     diphenyldiurefide, 204  
     ethyl ether, 208  
     fluoroxime acetic acid, 208  
     hydrazidine, 204, 205  
         drazoxime ethidene, 208  
         droxylamine-acetic acid, 208  
     methoxime bromide, 208  
     nitroxime-acetic acid, 208  
     oximido-carbonic ester, 208  
         glycollic acid, 208  
     tetrazotic acid, 205, 519  
     trichloride, 208  
**Benzglycocylamidine**, 213  
     hydrazoln, 117, 185, 445  
     hydrol carboxylic acids, 349  
         ether, 344  
         lactone carboxylic acid, 349  
     hydrols, 344  
         droxamic acid, 206, 207  
             ethyl ether, 207  
             methyl ether, 207  
         imic acid chloride, 208  
     drylamine, 344  
         benzoic acid, 349  
         lactone, 349

- Benzhydrylhydroxylamine, 349  
 Benzidam, 74  
 Benzidine, 337  
   disulphate, 337  
   dyes, 138, 338  
   rearrangement, 79, 118  
   sulphonic acid, 339  
 Benzil, 373  
   carboxylic acid, 376  
   dianil, 374  
   dicarboxylic acid, 376  
   dioxime diacetates, 374  
   dioximes, 373  
 Benzilic acid, 369  
 Benzilmonanil, 374  
   monoximes, 373  
 Benzilo-tropine, 568  
 Benzimidazole, 497, 500  
   hydrides, 501  
   azoles, 499, 501  
   azolines, 501  
   imidazolon, 502  
   imido-ethyl ether, 204  
   imidothio-ethyl ether, 204  
   isothiazole, 181, 479, 507  
   isoxazole group, 495  
 Benzoazimidole, 511  
   bisimidazoles, 501  
   methylimidazole, 501  
   diazthine, 608  
   furfurane, 463, 464  
   hydrometoxazine anil, 581  
   thiazine anil, 583  
   thiometoxazine, 581  
   thiazine, 583  
   methylidifurfurane dicarboxylic ester, 464  
   phenyl metoxazine, 580  
   pyrazolons, 493  
   pyrrol, 463  
   furazane, 515  
   furfurane, 462, 463  
   glyoxalines, 499  
 Benzoic acid, 69, 176, 193, 464  
   thionyl hydrazone, 216  
   trichloride, 208  
   anhydride, 198  
   sulphinide, 216  
 Benzoin, 372, 502  
   anilamide, 373  
   anilide, 373  
   indulines, 601  
   hydrazone, 372  
   oxime, 470  
   resin, 274  
   toluide, 373  
 Benzoisothiazole, 507  
   keto morpholine, 581  
   lactic acid, 300  
 Benzometadiazines, 589  
   methyldiazthine, 608  
   orthoxazinon, 580  
   morpholine, 581  
   nitrile, 69, 83, 202  
   paradiazines, 594  
   phenol, 142  
   phenone, 345, 367  
   bromide, 345  
   carboxylic acids, 349  
   chloride, 345  
   dicarboxylic acid, 350  
   dilactone, 351  
   phenones, 344  
   phenone sulphide, 526  
   synthesis, 345  
   phenonoxime, 346  
   pyrazolon, 493  
   pyrone, 523  
   pyrrodiazole, 510  
   pyrrol, 462  
   quinone, 167, 299  
 Benzorthodiazines, 586  
   oxazinon, 580  
   oxazole, 504  
   azoles, 153, 503  
   oxyazo benzene, 172  
 Benzoylacetalddehyde, 250  
   aldoxime, 250  
   acetic acid, 259  
   ester, 259  
   acetoneacetic ester, 261  
   acetone, 250, 481  
   acetonitrile, 260, 494  
   phenone monoxime, 494  
   acetyl, 250  
   acrylic acid, 288  
   amido-cinnamic acid, 276, 277  
   cinnam-lactimide, 276  
   anthranilic acid, 212  
   azide, 201  
   azimide, 198  
   benzhydroxamic ester, 207  
   benzoic acid, 395  
   benzylamine, 200  
   bromide, 198, 199  
   butane, 189  
   butylcarbinol, 249  
   carbinol, 190, 248, 255  
   acetate, 248  
   benzoate, 248  
   chloride, 248  
   oxime, 249  
   chloride, 198, 257, 467  
   chlorimide, 199  
   conine, 564  
   coumarone, 379, 463, 464  
   crotonic acid, 288  
   cyanacetic ethyl ester, 263

- isocyanacetic methyl ester, 263  
     acetoester-carboxylic acid, 265  
     cyanide, 257  
         oxime, 258  
 diazobenzene, 114, 201  
     ketohydrindene, 388  
     methyl aniline, 347  
     oxybenzene, 349  
     sulphide, 199  
 enguanidine, 213  
     urea, 213, 592  
 fluoride, 198  
 formaldehyde, 249  
 formic acid, 257  
 formoin, 381, 495  
 formoxime, 249  
 formoximic acid chloride, 258  
 glycocoll, 200  
     collic acid, 198, 200, 261  
     oxylic acid, 261  
 hydrazine, 200  
     iodide, 198  
     isatin, 258  
     isatinic acid, 258  
     isonitroso-acetic ester, 261  
         succinic ester, 263  
     malonic ester, 263  
     mesitylene, 345  
     nitride, 198, 201  
     peroxide, 184, 198  
     phenacyl-acetic acid, 381  
     phenol, 348  
     phenyl-alanine, 253  
         hydrazimethylene, 445  
         hydrazine, 201  
         hydrazone-glyoxylic ester, 261  
     phthalic acid, 350  
     piperidine, 540  
     propane, 189  
     propionaldehyde, 250  
     propionic acid, 255, 261  
     pyrazole, 481  
     pyroracemic acid, 261  
         ethyl ester, 261  
     sulphide, 199  
     tetrahydroisquinoline, 557  
         quinoline, 258, 551  
         methylene, 190  
     toluides, 199  
     tricarballic acids, 264  
         methylene, 190, 260  
             carboxylic acid, 260  
     tropine, 569  
     xylene, 345  
 isphenylhydrazide-imide-chloride, 203  
 pinacolines, 378  
 pinacone, 378  
 11—52
- Benzpinacone dicarboxylic acid, 378  
     pyrrol, 465  
     sulph-hydroxamic acid, 135  
     terephthalic acid, 349  
     thiazoles, 157, 507  
     thiophene, 269, 462, 463, 465  
     trichloride, 208  
         furfurane, 464  
         methyl metoxazine, 580  
         trifurfurane tricarboxylic ester, 464  
 Benzylacetamide, 180  
     acetate, 178  
     acetoacetic acid, 385  
         ester, 260  
     acetone, 190, 291, 385  
     acetophenone, 379  
         succinic ester, 263  
     alcohol, 176  
         carboxylic acid, 234  
         phenyl ketone, 372  
         sulphonic acid, 181  
     amine, 179, 252  
         carboxylic acid, 235  
     angelic lactone, 287  
     aniline, 179  
     arabioside, 177  
     benzene, 342  
         group, 342  
     benzoic acid, 349  
         ester, 198  
     benzyl-oxyindol, 469  
     carbinol, 177  
     chloramine, 179  
     chloride, 177  
     chlormalonic ester, 262  
     cyanide, 203  
     desoxybenzoin, 379  
     dimethyl carbinol, 177  
         sulphine iodide, 178  
     diphenyldihydropyrazine, 593  
     diphenyls, 350  
     disulphide, 178  
     durene, 343  
 Benzylene-thio-urea, 583  
     ethyl ether, 177  
         ketone, 190  
     glutaconic ester, 289  
     glycollic acid, 253  
     hydride, 183  
     hydroxylamines, 180  
     hyposulphurous acid, 178  
     idene acetone, 272  
         acetophenone, 379  
         aniline, 185  
         bisdesoxybenzoin, 383  
         derivatives, 487  
         desoxybenzoin, 379  
         diacetophenone, 383

## Benzylidene diphenylitaconic acid, 382

- hydrazone, 185
  - imide, 184
  - methyl isoxazolones, 495
  - nitroacetophenone, 475
  - phenylenediamine, 185
  - phthalide, 376
  - isophthalic acid, 349
  - lævulinic acid, 261
  - malon-carboxylic acid, 265
  - malonic acid, 262
  - mesitylene, 343
  - methoxime chloride, 208
  - methylocarbinol, 177
    - ether, 177
    - ketone, 190
    - nitramine, 179
  - morpholine, 581
  - mustard oil, 180
  - oxethylamine, 179
  - oxyvaleric acid, 255
    - lactone, 255
  - pentaethyl benzene, 343
  - phenol, 343
  - phenyl ether, 177
    - methyl-pyrazolon, 488
    - oxethylamine, 503
  - phosphates, 178
  - phthalazone, 376, 587
  - phthalimide, 241
    - imidine, 376
  - succinic acid, 262
    - anhydride, 262
  - sulphide, 178
  - sulphone, 178
  - sulphonic acid, 178
  - sulphoxide, 178
  - sulphydrate, 178
  - tartronic acid, 262
  - thiourea, 180
  - toluenes, 343
  - urea, 180
  - xylene, 343
- Berberine, 578
- Berberonic acid, 537
- Bergamot oil, 310
- Bergapten, 286
- Betalne, 439, 440, 446
- Betel-phenol, 270
- Bidesyl, 381
- Bidiphenylene ethane, 418
  - ethylene, 418
- Bieberich scarlet, 138, 402, 434
- Bifluorene, 418
- Biguanide, 128
- Bihydroisothujol, 314
  - quinone, 339
- Bilberry, 301
- Bindshedler's green, 174

## Biphenol, 339

## Biphenyl, 335

- carboxylic acids, 340
  - dicarboxylic acids, 340
  - sulphonic acid, 339
  - methylolid, 340
  - sulphonic acid, 339
- Bipyrocatechine, 339
- Biresorcinol, 339
- Bisacenaphthylidene, 410
  - acetyl glyoxylic ester phenyl hydrate, 339
  - azobenzil, 373
  - benzimidazoles, 501
  - benzothiazole, 508
  - diketohydrindene, 388
  - dimethylazimethylene, 486
  - glyoxalidine, 499
  - glyoxaline, 497
  - hydrazibenzil, 373
    - carbonyl, 607
  - isoxazoles, 494
- Bismarck brown, 95, 116
- methylbenzoyl carbinol, 248
  - isoxazole, 494
- muth triphenyl, 133
- nitro-benzyl hydroxylamine, 180
- phenylalkyl carbamate, 161
  - methylpyrazolon, 487, 488
  - pyrazoles, 481
  - pyrazolon, 487
- tetrazole, 520
- triazoles, 513
- Bitter almond oil, 183
  - green, 354, 355
  - principles, 432
- Bordeaux dyes, 403
- Borneo camphor, 324
- Borneol, 324
  - acetyl ester, 325
  - methyl ether, 325
- Bornylamine, 326
  - chloride, 325
- Brasilein, 433
- Brasilin, 433
- Briganum hirtum*, 145
- Brilliant green, 355
  - yellow, 370
- Bromacetanilide, 84, 474
  - acetophenone, 190, 248
  - anilic acid, 170
  - anilido-indone, 386
  - aniline sulphonic acid, 137
  - benzaldehyde, 186
  - benzenes, 59
  - benzoic acid, 209
  - benzophenone, 346
    - oxime, 346
  - benzoyl formic acid, 258

ombenzyl alcohol, 180  
     bromide, 180  
 camphoric acid, 332  
 camphoro-anhydridic acid chlorides,  
     333  
 chlormethylene homophthalic acid,  
     393  
 cinnamic acid, 275, 276  
 coumarin, 281, 463  
 cyclohexane, 294  
 diphenacylens, 380  
     phenyl, 336  
 ethylbenzamide, 503  
     naphthalene, 410  
 hydratropic acid, 252, 253  
 hydrocinnamic acid, 254  
 omide of phthalaldehydic acid, 237  
     indene, 385  
 isodehydracetic acid, 451  
     phthalic acid, 242  
 lævulinic acid, 466  
 mandelic acid, 251  
 naphthalenes, 395  
 naphthoquinone, 404, 405  
 nitro-diphenyl, 336  
     hydrindone, 387  
 nitrosobenzene, 70  
 oxycinnamic acid, 463  
     hydrindene, 387  
     indone, 386  
 pentamethyl benzene, 63  
 phenanthrene, 414  
 phenol, 149  
 phenylhydrazine, 120  
 phthalide, 236  
 piperonal, 220  
 propylpiperidine, 540  
 pseudocumene, 63  
 pyrazole, 483  
 pyridine, 533  
 pyromucic acid, 451  
 quinolines, 547  
 resacetophenone, 249  
 salicylic acid, 225  
 styrene, 271  
 styrolene, 267  
 thiophene, 454  
 toluene, 62  
 xylene, 63  
 rönner's acid, 399  
 rucine, 575  
 ilow's reaction, 125  
 atallylcarbindimethylamine, 461  
 atenyl trioxbenzene methyl methylene  
     ether, 270  
 atyl benzenes, 56  
     benzoic ester, 198  
     naphthalene, 394  
     phenylketone, 189

Butyrolactam, 438, 462, 480  
     lactone, 437  
     phenone, 189  
         carboxylic acid, 238  
 Butyrylaceto-phenone, 250  
     fenchylamine, 326  
 Buzylene, 131  
     compounds, 131  
     derivatives, 64  
  
 C.  
 CAFFEIC acid, 282  
 Cajeput oil, 315  
 Calcium formate, 465  
     isoferulate, 269  
     quinate, 301  
 Camphan group, 321  
 Camphanic acid, 332  
 Camphel alcohol, 325  
     amine, 326, 328  
 Camphelylisocyanate, 328  
 Camphene, 308, 321  
     dibromide, 321  
     glycol, 325  
     hydrochloride, 321  
 Camphenilan, 322  
     aldehyde, 322  
 Camphenilanic acid, 322  
 Camphenilol acid, 322  
 Camphenilon, 322  
 Camphenone, 330  
 Campho acid, 322, 332  
 Camphol, 324  
     actone, 332  
     alcohol, 325  
     amide, 328  
     amine, 326, 328  
 Campholene, 329  
     dibromide, 329  
 Campholenic acid, 328  
 Campholic acid, 328  
 Campholide, 332  
     imidine, 332  
 Camphopyro acid, 332  
 Camphor, 25, 290, 308, 321, 326, 327  
 Camphoranic acid, 333  
     carboxylic acid, 330  
     constitution of, 327  
     dichloride, 328  
     dioximes, 329  
 Camphoric acid, 27, 331  
     diamide, 331  
     dichloride, 331  
     imide, 331  
     methyl imide, 331  
         isoimide, 331  
     anhydride, 331

- Camphorimine, 328  
 methylene carboxylic acid, 330  
 nitrilo acid, 331
- Camphoro-anhydridic acid, 333  
 onic acid, 333  
 oxime, 328  
 phorone, 26, 331  
 pinacone, 326  
 quinone, 322, 329  
 semicarbazone, 328
- Camphoryl hydroxylamine, 331  
 malonic ester, 333
- Camphylamine, 326  
 isoazolon, 496  
 phenylpyrazolon carboxylic ester, 493
- Cantharene, 294, 432
- Cantharic acid, 432
- Cantharidin, 432
- Cantharinic acid, 432
- Caoutchouc, 307, 334
- Carbanile, 89, 106
- Carbanilic acid, 85
- Carbanilide, 85
- Carbazole, 336, 462, 463, 477  
 blue, 477  
 potassium, 477
- Carbazotic acid, 150
- Carbinol benzoic acid, 233, 251  
 bromide benzoic acid, 235
- Carbinols, 353
- Carbobenzoyl acetic acid, 265  
 propionic acid, 265  
 lactone, 265
- benzyl malonic acid, 265
- cinchomeric acid, 537
- cyclic compounds, 17, 18
- diphenylimide, 90, 502
- ethoxy-phenylmethylpyrazolons, 484
- hydrocinnamic acid, 393
- Carbolic acid, 142, 143  
 mandelic acid, 264  
 methoxy-phenylmethylpyrazolons, 484
- Carbonic acid, 441, 442  
 ethidene ester, 478
- Carbon-oil acid, 143
- Carbonyl amidophenol, 153, 504  
 amidothiophenol, 157  
 benzenyl azoxime, 208  
 oxime anhydrides, 442  
 pyrrol, 458  
 thiocarbanilide, 446  
 phenylglyoxylic acid, 265  
 pyridyl glyceric acid, 536  
 pyrotritaric acid, 451  
 pyrrol glyoxylic acid, 460  
 styryl, 288, 548  
 carboxylic acid, 187, 288
- Carbostyryl formation, 277  
 styrylic acid, 212  
 styryl methyl ether, 548
- Carboxyethylanthranilamide, 212
- Carboxyl-apocamphoric acid, 322, 332  
 derivatives of the oxytriphenyl  
 carbinols, 363  
 of triphenyl carbinol, 362  
 of triphenylmethane, 361
- Carboxylic acids, 27, 379, 381, 419, 445  
 of dibenzyl group, 375  
 of furfurane, 450
- Carminic acid, 405, 433
- Carone, 319
- Caronic acid, 319  
 anhydride, 319
- Carthamin, 433
- Carthamus tinctorium*, 433
- Carvacrol, 144, 145, 298
- Carvacrotin aldehyde, 219
- Carvacrotinic acid, 226
- Carvene, 311
- Carvenone, 319
- Carveol, 319  
 methyl ether, 317
- Carvestrene, 312
- Carvol, 145
- Carvomenthene, 293, 313  
 menthylamine, 317
- Carvone, 299, 320  
 tanacetone, 319
- Carvoxime, 321
- Carvum carvi*, 145
- Carylamine, 317
- Castoreum, 142
- Catechin, 228, 232
- Catechinic acid, 232
- Catechu-tannin, 232
- Caucasian petroleum, 291
- Central formula, 40
- Cetraria vulpina*, 382
- Cetyl benzene, 57
- Cetyldesoxybenzoin, 371
- Cevadine, 575
- Chavibetol, 268, 270
- Chavica beetle, 269
- Chavicol, 268, 269
- Chelidamic acid, 537
- Chelidonic acid, 522
- Chloracetoacetic ester, 464  
 acetone, 466  
 aceto-phenone, 190, 248  
 acridine, 560  
 aldehyde, 504  
 anil, 169, 464  
 anilamic acid, 170  
 amide, 170

- aloranic acid, 170  
 anilido-indone, 386  
 aniline, 92  
 benzaldehyde, 186  
 benzene hexachloride, 293  
 benzenes, 58  
 benzoic acid, 209  
   phenone oxime, 346  
   thiazole, 508  
   trichloride, 224  
 bromstilbene, 375  
 camphor, 328  
 carbazole, 477  
 carbonylphenyl-ortho-phosphoric acid  
   dichloride, 224  
 carbostyryl, 285  
 cinnamic acid, 62, 275, 276  
 desoxybenzoin, 379  
 dibrom-hydrindone-carboxylic acid,  
   388  
 diphenyl, 336  
 ethyl benzene, 177  
 hydratropic acid, 252, 253  
 hydrocinnamic acid, 255  
 chlorination, exhaustive, 43  
   done carboxylic acid, 393  
   isonitrosoacetophenone, 258  
   phthalic acid, 242  
   lutidine dicarboxylic acid, 538  
   methyl benzamide, 234, 236  
     benzanilide, 234  
     benzoic acid, 234, 236  
     benzonitrile, 234  
     benzoyl chloride, 234  
   methylene camphor, 330  
     glyoxaline, 497, 498  
     isoquinoline, 556  
     trichlorimidazole, 501  
 naphthalenes, 395  
 naphthalene sulphonic acids, 399  
 naphthols, 391  
 naphthoquinone, 404, 405  
 nicotinic acid, 536  
 nitrocamphor, 328  
   hydrindone, 387  
 nitrosobenzene, 70  
 alorobenzil, 375  
   benzylacetophenone, 379  
 alor-o-diketo penta-methylenes, 26  
 alorophyl, 434  
   oxydiphen oxazone, 582  
   phenyl quinoxaline, 596  
   hydrindene, 387  
   indone, 386  
   naphthoquinone, 405  
   phenanthridine, 558  
   phenol, 149  
   phenyl benzoyl hydrazine, 201  
   hydrazine, 120  
 Chlorphenyl isoquinoline, 556  
   mustard oil, 508  
   paraconic acid, 263, 391  
   quinazoline, 590  
 phthalazine, 586  
 propyl benzene, 177  
 pyridine, 26, 533  
 quinazolines, 590  
   oline, 547, 556  
 quinone, 45  
 salicyl chloride, 224  
 salicylic acid, 225  
 stilbene dibromide, 375  
   dichloride, 375  
 styrene, 271  
 styrolene, 267  
 thiazole, 505  
 thiophene, 454  
 toluene, 62  
 toluic acid, 235  
 triazoles, 512  
 Chromotrope, 403  
 Chrysamine, 338  
   ammic acid, 428  
   aniline, 356, 560  
   anisic acid, 214  
   arobin, 428  
   azin, 428  
   azine, 424  
   azol, 423  
 Chrysene, 48, 416  
   fluorene, 388, 417  
     alcohols, 419  
 Chrysenic acid, 408, 416  
 Chrysin, 523  
 Chrysofluorene, 418  
   Idine, 116  
   ketone, 416, 419  
   phanic acid, 428  
   phenine, 370  
   quinone, 416  
*Cicuta virosa*, 56, 283  
 Cinchene, 573  
 Cinchomeronic acid, 536  
 Cinchona bark, 301  
 Cinchonine, 256, 572  
 Cinchoninic acid, 549  
 Cinene, 311  
 Cineol, 315  
 Cineolic acid, 315  
 Cinnamcarboxylic acid, 392  
 Cinnamenyl acetone, 273  
   oxime, 273  
   acrylic acid, 285  
   angelic acid, 285  
   crotonic acid, 285  
   cyanoacrylic acid, 289  
   malonic acid, 289  
 Cinnamic acid, 254, 266, 274

- Cinnamic acid, amide, 275  
     anhydride, 275  
     anilide, 275  
     chloride, 275  
     derivatives, 275  
     dibromide, 256  
         ethyl ester, 256  
         methyl ester, 256  
     dichloride, 256  
     ethyl ester, 275  
     methyl ester, 275  
     nitrile, 275  
     phenyl ester, 275  
   aldehyde, 272  
     cyanhydrin, 256  
 Cinnamon oil, 272  
 Cinnamyl alcohol, 266, 271  
   aldehyde, 266  
     cyanhydrin, 287  
   amine benzylidene acetone, 383  
   carboxylic acid, 286, 287  
   cyanide, 287  
   formic acid, 287  
   idene-acetophenone, 383  
   methyl ketone, 272  
   pyrrols, 460  
   tolimidazole, 501  
 Cinnolines, 586  
 Cis-benzene hexachloride, 293  
 Citraconanil, 91  
 Citraconanilic acid, 90  
 Citrazinic acid, 529, 538  
 Citrel, 310  
 Citrene, 311  
 Citronellal, 310  
   nellic acid, 310  
   nellol, 309  
*Citrus aurantium*, 311  
   *bergamia risso*, 286  
   *decumana*, 432  
 Coal tar, 48  
 Cocaine, 274, 569  
 Coccinic acid, 434  
*Coccus cacti coccinelliferi*, 433  
 Cochenillic acid, 434  
 Codeine, 576  
 Coerulein, 366  
 Coerulignone, 339  
 Coffee bean, 301  
 Coke, 48  
 Collidine, 532  
   dicarboxylic acid, 537  
 Colophonium, 291  
 Colophony, 322, 334  
 Copellidine, 540  
 Comanic acid, 522  
 Comazonic acids, 580  
 Comenic acid, 523  
 Common camphor, 327  
 Condensation, aromatic, 43  
 Condensations of o-diamines, 95  
 Condensed nuclei, 29, 384  
 Congo yellow, 338  
 Coniferine, 272, 430  
 Coniferyl alcohol, 272, 430  
 Conine, 541, 562  
   hydrochloride, 564  
   tartrate, 564  
 Constitution of benzene nucleus, 39  
 Convolvulin, 431  
*Convolvulus orisabensis*, 431  
   *purga*, 431  
 Conylene urethane, 564  
 Conyryne, 532  
 Coriander oil, 310  
 Coriandrol, 310  
 Cotarnic acid, 242  
 Coto bark, 287, 349  
 CotoIn, 349  
 Coumalic acid, 522  
 Coumalin, 522  
 Coumaran, 464  
 Coumarates, 279  
 Coumaric acid, 277, 279, 280, 282  
   dimethyl ether, 279, 280  
 Coumarilic acid, 281, 463, 464  
 Coumarin, 281, 285  
   bromide, 281  
   homologues, 281  
   monomethyl ester acid, 281  
   propionic acid, 289  
 Coumarinic acid dimethyl ether, 279  
   dimethyl ester, 281  
 Coumarins, 279, 523  
 Coumarone, 442, 462, 463, 464, 465  
 Coumaroxime, 281  
 Creolin, 144  
 Cresol, 143, 144, 160  
   benzefne, 360  
 Cresolin, 144  
 Cresorcin, 161, 162  
 Cresotinic acid, 47, 225, 251  
   chloride, 224  
 CroceIn acid, 403  
 Croconic acid, 27, 97, 171  
   hydride, 171  
 Crotonic acid, 165  
 Crotonylene, 57  
 Crystal violet, 357, 358  
   base, 358  
 Crystallin, 74  
 Crystalline veratrine, 575  
 Cubebine, 272  
 Cubebs, 272  
 Cumaric aldehyde, 272  
 Cumarone, 269, 271  
 Cumarones, 168

- acid, 278  
 , 184  
 43  
 5  
 369  
 ie, 273  
 imi, 56  
 ohol, 177  
 ine, 179  
 2  
 sulphide, 518  
 433  
 lora, 433  
 20  
 ne, 238, 260, 263  
     carboxylic acid, 265  
 , 130  
 oride, 237, 238  
 de, 238  
 , 349  
 id, 236, 241, 242, 243  
     ester, 241  
 lorida, 241  
 tic ester, 245  
 hol, 234, 235  
 ine, 235  
 oride, 234, 235  
 nide, 244  
 588  
 331  
 cid, 287, 288  
     ethyl ester, 288  
     methyl ester, 288  
 8  
 288  
 methane, 349  
 8  
 4  
 amic ester, 245  
 p, 442  
 id, 331  
 88  
 -camphor, 330  
 es, 409  
 202, 205, 604  
 drazine, 130  
 thyl triazole, 512  
 Cyanpyrrol, 458  
     toluenes, 202  
     toluic acid, 244  
     triphenylmethane, 362  
 Cyanur-triethyl, 604  
 Cyclic alkyleneimides, 435  
     urea derivatives, 85  
     alkylidene-ureas, 446  
     amidines, 96  
     ammonium salts, 137  
     anhydrides of oxy-acids, 442  
     carbonyl-ureas, 446  
     derivatives of dibasic carboxylic  
         acids, 435  
     diazides, 137  
     double-acid amide, 252, 253  
     esters of amido-acids, 435  
         of oxy-acids, 435  
     ethers, 441, 442  
         of the glycols, 435  
         of the thioglycols, 435  
     guanidines, 96  
     ketones, 26  
     sulphureas, 97  
     thiocarbonyl thioureas, 446  
     ureas, 96, 439, 441  
 Cyclobenzoquinone, 299  
     diolefines, 18  
     diphenyltetrazolium chloride carbox-  
         ylic ester, 521  
     formazylcarboxylic ester, 339  
     heptadiene, 28  
     heptane, 28  
     heptanon, 28  
     heptene, 28  
     hexadien, 294  
     hexadienes, 293  
     hexandion, 296  
     hexane, 48, 291  
         diol, 294  
         triol, 295  
     hexanhexene, 295  
     hexanol, 294, 296  
         carboxylic acid, 301  
     hexanon, 296, 301  
     hexanpentol, 295  
     hexantriones, 297  
     hexenes, 293  
     olefines, 18  
     paraffins, 17, 18  
     pentadene, 25  
     pentan acetic acid, 27  
         carboxylic acid, 27  
         dicarboxylic acid, 27  
         pentanon, 26  
         tetracarboxylic acid, 27  
         2,3-dion-1,4-dicarboxylic es-  
             ter, 28  
     pentane, 25

Cyclopentanol, 26  
 pentanon, 26  
 pentene, 25  
 propane, 22  
 triolefines, 18  
 Cymene, 53, 56, 144, 326  
 Cymophenol, 145  
 thiophenol, 145  
 Cytisine, 565

## D.

DAHLIA, 358  
 Dahl's acid, 399  
 Dambonite, 295  
 Dambose, 295  
*Daphne alpina*, 431  
     *mezerium*, bark of, 283  
 Daphnetic acid, 283  
 Daphnetin, 283, 463  
 Daphnin, 283, 431  
 Decahydrocarboxyryl, 552  
     naphthalene, 413  
     quinoline, 545, 551  
 Decompositions of the naphthalene ring,  
 392  
 Dehydraceticarboxylic acid, 522  
     dracetic acid, 522  
     drofichtelite, 416  
     mucic acid, 451  
     thiotoluidine, 158, 507  
 Dermatol, 230  
 Desaurines, 371  
 Desoxyanisoin, 371  
     benzoïn, 371  
     carboxylic acid, 376  
     toluoin, 371  
 Desylacetic acid, 377  
     acetophenone, 380  
     anilide, 373  
     bromide, 373  
 Determination of position of benzene sub-  
 stitution products, 34  
     of positions, 36  
 Dextromandelic acid, 251  
     tropic acid, 253  
 Diacetanilide, 82  
     benzidine, 337  
     caffecic acid, 283  
 Diacetyl-dibenzyl, 377  
     osotriazone, 124  
     phenolphthaleïn, 364  
     phenylhydrazide, 126  
     phenylhydrazone, 123  
 Diacetylbenzene, 233  
     cyanbenzyl-cyanide, 244  
     durene, 233

Diacetylisdurene, 233  
     lutidine, 535  
     mesitylene, 233  
 Diagonal formula, 40  
 Dialphylsulphoureas, 73  
 Diamido-anthracene, 423  
     azo-benzene, 115, 116  
     benzenes, 94  
     benzidine, 338  
     benzoic acids, 214  
     benzo-methylimidazole, 501  
     phenone, 348  
     biphenyl dicarboxylic acid, 341  
     disulphonic acid, 339  
 cyanidine, 605  
 dimethyl aniline, 97  
     diphenyl, 338  
 dinaphthyls, 410  
 dioxyquinone, 166, 170  
 diphenic acid, 340  
 diphenyl, 337  
     ene oxide, 476  
     methane, 343  
     phthalides, 363  
     sulphide, 158  
 ditolyl sulphide, 158  
 hexamethylene, 296  
 hydrazobenzene, 117  
 hydromellitic tetraethyl esters,  
 246  
 hydroquinone, 164  
 mesitylene, 95, 232  
 naphthalenes, 397  
 phenazine, 96, 599  
 phenols, 154  
 phenyl-tolyl, 338  
 pseudocumene, 95  
 pyrazole, 483  
 quinone-imide, 154, 172  
 stilbene, 370  
 tetraoxybenzene, 166  
 thiodiphenylamine, 584  
 toluenes, 95  
 triphenyl carbinol, 354  
     methane, 352  
 Diamidrazone, 130  
 Diamines, 94  
 Dianilidoquinone, 168, 170, 173  
     anil, 168, 170, 173  
     dianil, 168, 170, 173  
     toluquinone, 170  
 Dianisidine, 340  
 Dianthranol, 424  
 Dianthryl, 424  
 Diatropic acid, 278  
 Diazides, 153  
 Diazines, 584  
 Diazoacetic ester, 99, 445, 484, 486  
     alkali salts, 101

- diazoamidobenzene, 108  
   benzoic acid, 215  
   bodies, 63, 73  
   compounds, 78, 106  
   toluenes, 109  
 benzene acid, 98, 102  
   amidobrombenzene, 109  
     toluene, 107  
   anhydride, 102  
   anilide, 108  
   chloride, 99, 102, 125  
   cyanide, 103  
   diazo-resorcinol, 161  
   ethylamine, 109  
   imide, 111  
   methyl ether, 102  
   nitrate, 102  
   perbromide, 70, 102  
   piperidine, 109  
   potassium, 102  
   sulphocyanide, 102  
   sulphonic acid, 103  
     acid anhydrides, 137  
     acids, 137  
   sulphoxide, 125  
   sulphoxyl, 100  
   thiophenyl ester, 157  
 benzenes, 99  
 benzoic acids, 215  
 compounds, 63, 73, 99, 100  
   of naphthalene, 397  
 cyanides, 114  
 derivatives, 78  
 hydrazo-compounds, 131  
 imido-benzoic acid, 215  
   compounds, 110  
 methane, 70, 145, 439, 440, 445, 486  
   disulphonic acid, 445  
 naphthalene sulphonic acid, 400  
 naphthalic acid, 397  
 naphthionic, 400  
 azonium salts, 101, 102  
 oxides, 441, 480, 516  
 oxyamido benzene, 70  
   compounds, 110  
 perbromides, 105  
 perhalides, 102  
 phenolcarboxylic acid, 155  
   cyanide, 155  
 phenols, 154  
 phenylene diamine, 116  
 propionic ester, 445  
 pseudo-cumene acid, 99  
 selenide, 441  
 succinic ester, 445  
 sulphides, 441, 517  
 tetrazole, 520  
 thiazole hydrate, 505  
 11—53
- Diazotoluene acid, 99  
 Diazthine derivatives, 442  
 Diazthines, 608  
 Dibenzal diphenyldihydrotetrazone, 131  
 Dibenzamide, 199  
 Dibenzamidine urea, 205  
 Dibenzene sulphodihdropyrazine, 539  
   sulphone methylenephenylene-  
     diamine, 501  
   sulphonhydroxylamine, 135  
 Dibenzenylazo-sulphime, 517  
   azoxime, 374, 515  
   hydrazidine, 205  
   isazoxime, 516  
 Dibenzhydroxamic acid, 207  
 Dibenzofurfurane, 462, 476  
 Dibenzolacetylmethane, 379  
   paradiazines, 597  
   pentene, 388  
   pyrones, 523  
   pyrrol, 462, 477  
   thiophene, 158, 462, 476  
 Dibenzoyl, 373  
   acetic acid, 380  
   acetone, 379  
   acid, 255  
   benzenes, 350  
   diamidoethylene, 497  
   dibenzyl, 381  
   dimethyl-tetrahydroquinazo-  
     line, 591  
   ethane, 380  
   ethyl ester, 255  
   furazane, 515  
   glyoxime, 381  
   hydrazine, 201  
   malonitrile, 379  
   methane, 379  
   methyl ester, 255  
   phenolphthalein, 364  
   phenyl ethane, 380  
   propionic acid, 381  
   styrene, 381  
   stilbene, 381  
   succinic acid, 382  
 Dibenzyl, 369  
   acetic acid, 379  
   amine, 178  
   adine-triacetophenones, 383  
   benzenes, 350  
   carbinol, 378  
   carboxylic acid, 376  
   cyanurate, 180  
   dicarboxylic acid, 376, 377  
   diphenol methane, 378  
   diphenyldihdropyrazine, 593  
   ethane, 380  
   ethylamine, 380  
   glycollic acid, 380

- Dibenzyl guanidine, 180  
   homologues, 370  
   hydrazine, 180  
   hydroxylamine, 180  
   idene acetone, 383  
     phenylene diamine, 185  
     succinic acid, 382  
   ketone, 378  
   malonic acid, 379  
   methane, 378  
   monocarboxylic acid, 376  
   nitrosamine, 179  
   oxalate, 178  
   piperazine, 594  
   pyridine, 532  
   succinic ester, 260  
   urea, 180  
     chloride, 180  
 Dibromacetophenone, 249  
   aniline, 92  
   anthranilic acid, 68, 213  
   anthraquinone, 425  
   benzophenone, 346  
   chlor-hydrindone carboxylic acid,  
     393  
   cinnamic acid, 275, 385  
   cyclohexane, 295  
   diazophenol sulphonic acid, 155  
   diphenyl, 336  
   diphenylene oxide, 476  
   durene, 63  
   gallic acid, 230  
   hydrindene, 387  
   hydroatropic acid, 255  
     cinnamic acid, 256  
   indigo, 475  
   indone, 385, 386  
   iodacetophenone, 249  
   isodurene, 63  
   menthane, 318  
   nitro-acetophenones, 249  
   prehnitol, 63  
   quinone, 163  
     chlorimide, 172  
     phenolimide, 173  
   shikimic acid, 301  
   stilbenes, 375  
   styrolene, 267  
   thiophene, 454  
 Dicumaphor, 328  
 Dicarbobenzobis-phenylpyrazolon, 493  
   phenylglyoxylic acid, 266  
 Dicarboxethyldiphenylcarbazine, 128  
 Dichloracetophenone, 249  
   amidophenol, 153  
   aniline, 92  
   benzenes, 59  
   cinnamic acid, 275  
   diazophenol, 153, 516  
   Dichloridihydroterephthalic acid, 304  
     diketohydrindene, 388  
     diphenyl, 336  
     ethyl benzene, 247  
     hydrindene, 387  
     hydrocinnamic acid, 256  
       quinone dicarboxylic ester,  
         305  
       quinone disulphonic acid,  
         164  
   indigo, 475  
   indol, 468  
   indone, 386, 393  
   isoquinoline, 244, 556  
   maleimide anil, 91  
   methoxyphthalic acid anhydride  
     241  
   methylchlorvinyl-o-diketone, 46  
   methylene phthalide, 286  
   naphthalenes, 395  
   naphthoquinone, 386, 393, 406  
   nitroacetophenone, 249  
     ethyl benzoyl formic acid  
       393  
     salicyl chloride, 224  
     stilbene, 370  
   oxyindene carboxylic acid, 386, 393  
   phenol, 149  
   phenyl paraconic acid, 263  
   picoline, 533  
   piperonal, 220  
     chloride, 220  
   pyridine, 533  
   quinazoline, 590  
   quinoline, 547  
   quinone, 163  
     dicarboxylic ester, 305  
   quinoxaline, 596  
   salicyl chloride, 224  
   stilbene, 370, 375  
   styrolene, 267  
   tetraoxybenzene, 166  
   thiophene, 454  
   tolane, 371  
 Dichroines, 141  
 Dicumarketone, 383  
 Dicyanaminobenzoyl, 212  
   benzene, 242  
   compounds, 439  
   diamide, 129  
   naphthalene, 409  
 Dicyanogen compounds, 440  
   phenyl hydrazine, 130  
   stilbene, 377  
 Diesoanhydride of dioxyhydrobenzoin, 3  
 Diethenyl azoxime, 515  
 Diethoxydiphenylmethane, 346  
   quinoxime, 165  
 Diethylacetophenone, 189

- Diethylamidophenol, 154  
     diphenyl tetrazone, 131  
 Diethylene-diimide, 439  
     diphenylamine, 79  
     disulphide, 442  
     oxide, 442  
     hexa hydrobenzene, 292  
     indigo, 472, 475  
     ketohexamethylene, 296  
     methylamido-pyrimidine, 588  
         pyrimidine, 588  
     phenols, 145  
     phenosafranine, 603  
     phthalide, 235  
     protocatechuic acid, 228  
     succino-succinic ester, 305  
     terephthaly, 233  
 Diformazyl, 130  
 Difurfural triacetophenone, 449  
 Difuryl triazole, 512  
 Digallic acid, 231  
 Digitaligenin, 431  
 Digitalin, 431  
*Digitalinum verum*, 431  
*Digitalis lutea*, 431  
     *purpurea*, 431  
 Digitalose, 431  
 Digitogenin, 431  
 Digitonin, 431  
 Diglycolanil, 84  
     anilic acid, 84  
 Diglycollamid anhydride, 581  
 Diglycollo-imide, 581  
 Diglycolphenylamidic acid, 84  
 Dihalogen anthracenes, 423  
 Dihaloid ethyl benzene, 266  
 Diheteroatomic four-membered rings, 446  
     three-membered rings, 444  
 Dihippenylurea, 201  
 Dihydrazino-biphenyl-disulphonic acid, 339  
 Dihydric aromatic alcohols, 232  
     phenols, 158  
 Dihydro-acetophorone, 296  
     acridin, 560  
     arecaldine, 565  
     benzaldehyde, 301  
     benzene, 294  
         tetrabromide, 294  
     benzenes, 293  
     benzoic acid, 301  
     camphene, 322  
     campholene lactone, 329  
     carboxylic acid, 170  
     carveol, 316  
     carvone, 319  
     carvylamine, 317  
     collidine dicarboxylic ester, 528  
     coumarone, 464  
 Dihydrocuminic acid, 301  
     cymene, 294  
     diethyl benzene, 294  
     diphenyl, 335  
         quinoxaline, 596  
         tetrazine, 607  
     diphthalyldiimide, 376  
     eucarvone, 316, 319  
     eucarvylamine, 317  
     fencholene, 324, 334  
     furfurane, 452  
     glyoxalines, 498  
     indones, 385  
     isocoumarin-carboxylic acid, 26  
         392  
         phorol, 298  
         quinolines, 557  
     isoxylene, 307  
     ketoIndol, 469  
     ketoIndols, 470  
     methyl indol, 191  
         isopropyl benzene, 294  
         phthalazine, 586  
 naphthalene, 411  
     derivatives, 411  
     dibromide, 412  
 naphthnoline, 558  
 naphthoic acids, 411  
 naphthol, 264, 392, 411  
 oxazoles, 503  
 phenanthridine, 558  
 phenazine, 598  
 phenazone, 587  
 phentriazine, 115  
 phthalic acid, 303  
 pyrazine, 374  
 pyrazines, 593  
 pyrazole, 480  
 quinoxaline, 181  
     azolines, 590  
 quinoxaline, 545, 550  
 quinoxalines, 373  
 resorcin, 161  
 resorcinol, 296, 307  
     dioxime, 296  
     homologues, 297  
 safrol, 270  
 shikimic acid, 301  
 sparteine, 567  
 terephthalic acid, 304  
 terephthalic acid cis-dimethyl est  
     304  
 terephthalic acid dimethyl est  
     304  
 terephthalic acid transdiphenyl  
     ter, 304  
 toluene, 294  
 Dihydroxamic acid ethyl ether, 207  
     methyl ether, 207

- Dihydroxybenzyl pyridine, 289  
 Dihydroxylene, 294, 432  
 Diimidonaphthol, 407  
     urazole, 514  
 Diindogen, 469  
 Di-indoxyl, 476  
 Diiodocinnamic acid, 275  
     cyclohexane, 295  
     diphenyl, 336  
 Di-iodothymol, 144  
     phenol sulphonic acid, 156  
     styrolene, 267  
 Di-isonitroso-anethol peroxide, 250, 269  
     superoxides, 269  
     propyl-succino-succinic ester, 305  
 Diketodiphenyl pyrrolidine carboxylic ester, 462  
     hexahydrobenzene carboxylic ester, 307  
     hexamethylene, 161, 168, 296  
         tetracarboxylic ester, 307  
     hydrindene, 388  
         carboxylic ester, 388  
     hydroindol, 471  
     julolidine, 552  
     methyl lilolidine, 552  
         pentachlorohexene, 162  
 Diketone carboxylic acids, 261  
 Diketones, 233  
     penthiazolidine, 583  
     piperazines, 594  
     pyrazolidine, 480, 481, 491  
     pyrrolidine, 480  
     pyrrolidines, 462  
     tetrahydroglyoxalines, 499  
         naphthalene derivatives, 413  
         naphthylene oxide, 405, 413, 444  
         pyridazine, 586  
         quinazolines, 592  
         quinoline, 213, 470  
         thiazole, 507  
             acetic acid, 507  
     triazolidine, 514  
 Dill oil, 320  
 Dimesitylmethane, 343  
 Dimethoxyanthranilcarboxylic acid, 238, 242  
     benzoic acid, 228  
     diphenyl methane, 346  
     phthalaldehydic acid, 237  
         azone, 237  
     phthalic acid, 242  
         anhydride, 241  
     phthalide, 235  
     pyridine, 534, 588  
     quinone, 170  
 Dimethoxytolane, 371  
 Dimethylacridone, 560  
     americ acid, 383  
     amido-azo-benzene sulphonic acid, 138  
         benzaldehyde, 187  
         hydrol, 344  
         ophenone, 347  
     methyl coumarin, 282  
     nitrobenzhydrol, 344  
     phenol, 153, 154  
     phenyl glyoxylic ester, 259  
         trichlorethyl alcohol, 252  
     pyrimidine, 588  
     triphenyl methane, 352  
 aniline, 78  
     ethyl iodide, 78  
 anisidine, 153  
 anthracene, 423  
     hydride, 424  
 anthracenes, 423  
 anthrarufin, 428  
 apionol, 166  
 aziethane, 439, 440, 446  
 benzamide, 199  
     chloride, 203  
 benzoic acid, 195  
 benzyl alcohol, 177  
 biphenyl-dicarboxylic acid, 341  
 caffeic acid, 283  
 carbazole, 477  
 coumalic acid, 522  
 coumalin, 522  
 coumarin, 282  
 coumarone, 464  
 cyclohexandion, 297  
     hexane, 292  
 diamidotoluphenazine, 599  
 dihydroindol, 470  
     resorcinol, 297  
 dihydroxy-heptamethylene, 29  
 diketohexamethylene, 297  
     hydrindene, 388  
 diphenyl tetrazone, 131  
 furazane, 515  
 furfuran, 447, 448  
     carboxylic acid, 451  
     dicarboxylic acid, 451  
 gentisin alcohol, 218  
 hydrothymoquinone, 163  
 indazole, 493  
 indol, 466  
     carboxylic acid, 468  
 indolinon, 471  
 isindazole, 493  
 isophthalate, 242  
 isoxazolone, 495

- methylketohexamethylene, 296  
     hexene, 298  
 methyl imido-thiazole, 505  
 naphthalene, 394  
 naphthol, 400  
 naphthophenoxazine chloride, 582  
 nicotinic acid, 536  
 oximide chloride, 497  
 oxy pyrimidine, 588  
 phenolphthalein, 364  
 phenosafranin, 603  
 phenylene diamine, 116  
     green, 174  
 phenylimido-oxalic ester, 91  
     urazole, 514  
 piperazine, 594  
 protocatechuic aldehyde, 220, 270  
 pyrazine, 593  
 pyrazole, 482  
     carboxylic acid, 485  
 pyridine, 532  
     dicarboxylic acid, 537  
 pyridone, 534  
     carboxylic acid, 538  
 pyrone, 522  
     dicarboxylic acid, 523  
 pyrrol, 447  
     carboxylic acid, 461  
     dicarboxylic acid, 461  
 quinit, 295  
 quinoline, 191, 543, 546, 589  
 quinoxalone, 596  
 selenophene, 456  
 terephthalic acid, 243  
 tetrahydrobenzene, 293  
     pyrone dicarboxylic diethyl esters, 523  
 thiazole, 505  
 thiophene, 447, 454  
 tolane, 371  
 tolimidazole, 501  
 toluquinoxaline, 596  
 umbelliferone, 283  
 naphthacridone, 560  
 naphthol methane, 410  
 naphthoxanthene, 410  
     anthones, 525  
 naphthylamine, 396  
     carbazole, 478  
     carboxylic acid, 417  
     derivatives, 409  
 naphthylene-methanes, 417  
     thiophene, 476  
     ethers, 400  
     methane derivatives, 409, 410  
     sulphides, 404  
 nicotinic acid, 537  
 Dinitranilines, 93  
 Dinitroanthracene, 423  
     quinone, 425  
     azobenzene, 113  
     azoxybenzene, 112  
     benzene-azobenzene, 113  
     benzenes, 66  
     benzidine, 337  
     benzophenone, 347  
     benzyl acetic acid, 379  
         benzidine, 337  
     brom pyrrol, 459  
     chlorobenzene, 67  
     cinnamic acid, 278  
     diacetdiamido-diphenyl, 337  
     dibenzyl, 370  
     diethyl hydroquinone, 164  
     dioxiquinoline, 575  
     diphenic acid, 341  
     diphenyl, 336  
         amine, 93  
     diphenylene oxide, 476  
         methane, 343  
         phthalides, 363  
     durenes, 68  
     hydrocinnamic acid, 211  
         mellitic tetraethyl esters, 246  
         quinone, 164  
         diacetate, 164  
 naphthalenes, 396  
 naphthol, 401  
     oxanilide, 91  
     oxyphthalic acids, 241  
         pyridines, 533  
 phenol, 150  
     ether, 146  
 phenols, 150  
 phenyl acetoacetic ester, 260  
     diazosulphide, 103  
     malonic ester, 262  
     nitrosohydroxylamine, 70  
     pyridine, 532  
     phthalic acid, 243  
     pyrrol, 459  
     resorcin, 161  
 Dinitrosobenzenes, 70  
     naphthalenes, 396  
     resorcinol, 161  
     toluene, 70  
 Dinitrostilbenes, 370  
     styrolene, 268  
     thiophene, 454  
     tolyl methyl nitramine, 99  
     xylene, 68  
 Diolefine benzenes, 268  
 Dioethyl benzene, 233  
 Dioxindole, 251, 471  
 Dioxosuccinic ester, 122  
 Dioxyalcohol acid, 255

- Dioxyamidocyanidine, 605  
 anthracenes, 423  
 anthranol, 424  
     quinone, 427  
     quinoline, 554  
     quinones, 426  
 benzaldehydes, 219  
     aldiketohydrindene, 388  
 benzene, 159  
 benzoic acids, 227  
     phenone, 168, 348  
 benzyl alcohols, 218  
     amine, 218  
 biphenyl, 339  
 cinnamic acid, 282, 283  
 coumarin, 283  
 dihydroshikimic acid, 301  
 diketotetrahydronaphthalene, 393  
 dimethyl triphenyl methane, 360  
 diphenyl methane, 343  
     phthalide, 364  
     sulphone, 139  
     tetrazolium betaine, 521  
 diquinoylbenzene, 171  
 durylic acid, 229  
 hexahydroisophthalic acid, 304  
     isophthalo-nitrile, 297  
     terephthalic acid, 304  
 hydrindene, 387  
 hydrocampholenic acid, 328  
     fluorane carboxylic acid, 362  
 isonicotinic acid, 538  
 mesitylene, 162  
 methyl cinnamic acid, 283  
     methylanthraquinone, 428  
 monocarboxylic acids, 227  
 naphthalene, 404  
 naphthalenes, 403  
     quinone, 404, 405  
 naphthoic acid, 409  
     quinone, 396, 405  
     quinoxaline, 596  
 naphthyl sulphide, 404  
 phenanthrene, 415  
 phenazines, 600  
 phenylaceticdicarboxylic triethyl  
     ester, 306  
     aceto-dicarboxylic ester, 246,  
     307  
     acrylic acid, 282  
     anthranol, 424  
     fatty acids, 229  
     olefine carboxylic acids, 282  
     propionic acid, 229, 230  
 phthalaldehydic acid, 237  
 phthalic acid anhydride, 241  
 picoline, 535  
 picolinic acid, 538  
 pyridine carboxylic acid, 538
- Dioxypyridines, 534  
     quinoline, 549  
     quinone, 170  
         dicarboxylic ester, 306  
         dihydro-carboxylic ester,  
         306  
     quinoxaline, 596  
     quinoyl, 171  
     stilbene, 371  
     tartaric acid, 159  
     terephthalic acid, 243  
         ethyl ester, 243  
     terpineol, 316  
     tetranitroanthraquinone, 432  
         zotic acid, 519  
         acids, 205  
     thymoquinone, 170  
     toluene, 161  
     toluic acids, 229  
     triphenyl-carbinol, 360  
         methane, 359  
             carboxylic acid,  
             362  
         methanes, 359  
     xanthone, 525  
     xylene, 161  
 Dipentene dihydrobromide, 312  
     chloride, 311  
     iodide, 312  
     group, 310  
     nitrosochloride, 312  
     tetrabromide, 312  
 Diphenacyl, 380  
     acetic acid, 383  
     acetoacetic ester, 383  
     malonic ester, 383  
 Diphenamino-acid, 341  
 Diphenhomazine, 436  
 Diphenic acid, 337, 340  
     anhydride, 341, 436  
     chloride, 341  
 Diphenimide, 341, 415, 436  
 Diphenine, 117  
 Diphenoldisulphide, 160  
     ethane, 368  
 Diphenols, 143  
 Diphenoxyacetic acid, 146  
 Diphenyl, 335  
     acetaldehyde, 368  
     acetic acid, 229, 368  
     acetoacetic acid, 380  
         nitrile, 368  
     acetylene, 371  
     allophanic acid, 86  
     amidine-thiomethyl, 87  
     amidocyanidine, 605  
     amidoxazoline, 503  
     amine, 71, 79  
         base, 359

- phenyl aminol methane, 344  
 anthrone, 424  
 azophenylene, 80, 173  
 benzamide, 200  
 benzene, 341  
 benzylsultam, 353  
 biuret, 86  
 brommethane, 344  
 butane, 380  
     group, 380  
 butylene, 380  
 butyrolactone, 380  
 carbazide, 127  
 carbinol, 344  
     chloride, 344  
 chlormethane, 344  
     triazole, 512  
 cresol, 359  
 crotonolactone, 377  
 cyanamide, 90  
 diacetylene, 380  
 diacipiperazine, 84, 594  
 dichlor-ethane, 368  
     methane, 345  
     ethylene, 380  
     hydrazimethylene, 445  
     hydro-diphenyl pyrazine, 593  
         tetraazine, 205, 206  
 isoIndol, 593  
 ketohexane, 383  
     nonane, 383  
     octane, 383  
     piperazine, 594  
 methyl ethane, 370  
     pyrazine, 593  
     tetrahydropyrone, 523  
 nitro methane, 346  
 selenide, 158  
 iphenylene acetic acid, 419  
     diamine, 338  
     hydrazine, 337  
     ketone, 425  
     phenyl ethane, 418  
         ethylene, 418  
         pinacolone, 418  
     succinic anhydride, 418  
     selenide, 160  
     sulphide, 157  
     sulphone, 160  
     glycollic acid, 415, 419  
     imide, 462, 477  
     ketone, 415, 419  
         carboxylic acids, 419  
         dicarboxylic acid, 416, 420  
         oxides, 524  
     methane, 417  
     oxide, 143, 462, 463, 476
- Diphenylene phenylmethane, 418  
     sulphide, 158, 336, 462, 463, 476  
     sulphone, 476  
 Diphenyl ethane, 367  
     derivatives, 367  
     group, 369  
     ethenyl-amidine, 83  
     ethylene, 368, 370  
         diamine, 372  
         glycolmononitrite, 368  
     fluorindene, 604  
     formamidine, 82, 83  
     furazane, 374, 515  
     furfurane, 380, 449  
         dicarboxylic ester, 382  
     glycollic acid, 369  
     glyoxal, 373  
     glyoxaline, 498  
         mercaptan, 498  
     glyoxylic acid hydrazone, 258  
     guanidine, 88  
     hexane group, 383  
     hydantoin, 86  
     hydrazine, 116  
     indol, 373  
     indone, 386  
 Diphenylene, 338  
 Diphenyl iodonium hydroxide, 60  
     iodide, 60  
 isodihydrotetrazine, 126, 607  
 isoxazole, 494  
 itaconic acid, 369  
 ketipic acid, 382  
 ketocyclopentene acetic acid, 28  
 dihydro-triazine, 126  
 ketone, 345  
 ketotetrahydrotetrazine, 605  
 lævulinic acid, 382  
 maleic acid, 252, 377  
 methane, 369  
     carboxylic acid, 349  
     dicarboxylic acid, 349  
 methanes, 342  
 methyl-benzaldehyde, 361  
     cyanidine, 205, 604  
     ethyl glyoxaline, 496  
     oxazole, 502, 503  
     pyrazole, 481  
     pyrazoline, 273  
 monochlor-ethane, 368  
     ethylene, 368  
 nitrosamine, 98  
 octan-dion, 377  
 oxalyl diacetic acid, 382  
 oxazole, 251, 503  
 oxide, 146, 336  
 oxybiazole, 374, 516

- Diphenyl oxycrotonic acid, 380  
     cyanidine, 205, 605  
     ethylamine, 372  
     triazine, 605  
 parabanic acid, 91  
 pentane group, 383  
 phenylene, 341  
 phosphine chloride, 132  
 phosphinic acid, 132  
 phthalides, 362, 363  
 piperazine, 79, 594  
 piperidine, 540  
 propane, 378  
 propionic acid, 369, 376  
 pyrazine, 593  
 pyrazole, 273, 483  
     carboxylic acid, 485  
         ester, 484  
 pyrazolon, 260  
 pyridine, 532  
 pyrrol, 380  
     carboxylic acid, 461  
     dicarboxylic ester, 461  
 quinoxaline, 596  
 selenide, 140, 158  
 selenium oxide, 139  
 selenone, 140  
 succinic acid, 377  
 sulphide, 140  
 sulphocarbazine, 128  
     carbazon, 114, 128  
     carbodiazone, 128  
 sulphone, 140  
 sulphoxide, 139, 140  
 telluride, 158  
 tetrahydrophenyl pyrazine, 594  
     pyrone-dicarboxylic-  
         diethyl esters, 523  
         quinoxaline, 597  
         ketone, 381  
         ketoxime, 381  
         zine, 206, 607  
         zole, 206, 520  
         zolum chloride, 520  
             carboxylic  
                 acid, 520  
             hydroxide, 131, 520  
 thiocarbonic ester, 148  
     phen, 380, 454  
 thiurea, 85, 87  
 tolyl carbinol, 353  
     methane, 351  
 triazole, 512  
     azolon, 513  
     chlor-ethane, 368  
     ketone, 379  
 urazine, 127, 128, 607  
 urea, 85, 207  
     chloride, 85  
 Diphenyl vinyl-benzoic acid, 378  
     dinitrite, 368  
     ethyl ether, 368  
     nitrite, 368  
     xylylmethanes, 351  
 Diphthalic acid, 341  
 Diphthalide ether, 237  
 Diphthalyl ethene, 388  
 Diphthyl, 376  
 Dipicolinic acid, 537  
 Dipiperidyl isatin, 472  
 Di-propyl succino-succinic ester, 305  
 Diprotocatechuic acid, 227  
*Dipterix odorata*, 281  
 Dipyrrolyl, 533  
 Dipyrrolyl ketone, 460  
 Diquinolines, 547  
 Diquinolyl-quinoline, 547  
 Diquinoyldioxime, 161  
     tetraoxime, 172  
 Diresorcinol, 161  
 Disazoamido-compounds, 64  
     compounds, 112  
 Disdiazamido-compounds, 106  
     benzene amide, 107, 109  
     anilide, 109  
     methylamine, 109  
 Disulphanilic acid, 137  
 Disulphobenzoic acid, 216  
     cyanides, 97  
 Disulphoxides, 138  
 Ditertiary-amylyl-hydroquinone, 163  
     resorcinol, 161  
 Dithiényl, 454  
     ketone, 455  
     methane, 454  
     phenyl methane, 454  
 Dithiobenzoic acid, 199  
     hydroquinone, 164  
     urazole, 514  
 Ditoluene sulph-hydroxamic acid, 135  
 Ditolyl, 336  
     amines, 79  
     imide, 477  
     isodihydratotetrazine, 607  
     ketone, 345  
     oxybiazole, 516  
     phthalides, 363  
     urea chloride, 85  
 Diurea, 607  
 Diurefnes, 374  
 Divinyl benzene, 268  
 Dragon's blood, 193  
*Dryobalanops camphora*, 324  
 Durene, 55  
 Duroquinone, 169  
 Durylic acid, 196  
     quinone, 229  
 Dypnone, 189, 379

## E.

- ECGONINE, 541, 570  
 Eikonogen, 403  
 Ellagic acid, 230  
 Emodin, 428  
 Emulsin, 430  
 Eosin, 366  
     scarlet, 366  
 Epichlorhydrin, 481  
 Erythrin, 229  
 Erythrol, 229  
     tetra benzoate, 198  
 Erythro-oxyanthraquinone, 426  
 Erythrosine, 366  
 Esters of glycol, 441  
     of monobasic aromatic acids, 197  
     of trimethylene glycol, 442  
 Estragol, 268, 269  
 Estragonal oil, 269  
 Ethane-dibenzoyl-dicarboxylic acid, 382  
 Ethenyl amidophenol, 153, 504  
     amido-thiophenol, 83, 157  
     benzenyl azoxime, 208, 515  
     phenylhydrazidine, 129  
 Ethers of the nitroso-naphthols, 406  
 Ethidene aniline, 79  
     diacetoacetic ester, 62  
     dibenzamide, 200  
     ethylene disulphide, 441  
     phthalide, 286  
     thiourea, 446  
     urea, 439, 446  
 Ethine diphthalyl, 382  
 Ethoxy acetamidoquinoline, 547  
     benzidine, 340  
     benzothiazole, 86, 508  
     benzoxazole, 504  
     cinnamic ester, 287  
     cyanaminobenzoyl, 212  
     lutidine, 534  
     methylene aniline, 82  
     methyl indol, 470  
     mustard oil, 86, 508  
     phenyl carboxylic ester, 588  
         pyridazone, 585  
         succinamide, 154  
     pyridine, 534  
     tolimidazole, 502  
 Ethyl acetanilide, 82  
     amido cinnamic acid, 277  
         triazsulpholes, 518  
     aniline, 78  
     anthracene, 423  
     benzene, 54  
     benzoic acid, 195  
         ester, 198  
     benzoin, 372  
         quinone, 169  
     benzoxazolon, 504  
 Ethyl benzoylacetate, 260  
     benzylidioxy pyridine, 535  
     carbazole, 477  
     chavicol, 269  
     cinnamic acid, 278  
     coumarin, 282  
     cyclopentene carboxylic acid, 570  
     diphenyl, 336  
 Ethylene benzamidine, 499  
     dibenzamide, 200, 204  
         phenyl diamine, 79  
         disulphone, 139  
     thioethidene, 478  
     ethidene ether, 478  
     imide, 438, 440, 444  
     isobutylidene-diphenyl-diamine, 79  
     naphthylene, 410  
     oxide, 437, 440, 444  
     phenylhydrazine, 121  
         urea, 85  
     protocatechuic acid, 228  
     selenurea, 508  
     succinic acid, 129  
     sulphide, 438, 440, 444  
     thiourea, 499  
     urea, 499, 503  
 Ethyl gallic ester, 230  
     glyoxalidine, 499  
     glyoxaline, 498  
     indene, 385  
     indol, 467  
     indoxyl, 469  
     indoxyl acid, 469  
         ester, 469  
     isatin, 467, 472  
     isindazole acetic acid, 277, 493  
     isocarbostyryl, 556  
         diphenyl urea, 86  
         quinoline, 556  
         thioacetanilide, 83  
     mercapto triazole, 512  
     mesitylene, 56  
     naphthalene, 394  
     orthobenzoate, 208  
     phenanthridine, 558  
     phenazonium iodide, 600  
     phenols, 144  
     phenyldithiomethane, 86  
         ether, 146  
         hydrazine, 121  
         methylpyrazolon, 488  
         propionic ester, 284  
             amide, 284  
             chloride, 284  
         urea, 85  
     piperic acid, 285  
     piperyl alkine, 535, 564  
     pyridine alkine, 564

**Furfuraldoxime**, 449  
     lævulinic acid, 463  
     monoacetophenone, 449  
**Furfuramide**, 450  
     amidine, 205  
**Furfurane**, 437, 441, 447, 448, 462, 479  
     carboxylic acid, 450  
     dicarboxylic acid, 451  
     group, 447  
     angelic acid, 450  
**Furfurin**, 450, 499  
**Furfur-malonic acid**, 450  
**Furfurodiazoles**, 515  
**Furfuro**, 73, 443, 449  
     lævulinic acid, 450  
**Furfuro-stilbene**, 449  
**Furfur-propionic acid**, 450  
     valeric acid, 450  
**Furfuryl alcohol**, 449  
     amine, 449  
     methyl ether, 449  
     nitrile, 451  
**Furil**, 449  
**Furilic acid**, 449  
**Furo-diazole**, 479, 514  
     diazoles, 480, 514, 516  
**Furoin**, 449  
**Furol**, 449  
**Furomonazole**, 493  
     group, 493  
     monazoles, 479, 502  
**Furon-aldehyde**, 450  
**Furyl tetrazole**, 520

## G.

**Galbanum**, 160, 283  
**Gall-acetophenone**, 221  
**Gallein**, 366  
**Gallic acid**, 230  
**Gallipot resin**, 334  
**Gallobromol**, 230  
     carboxylic acid, 244  
     chlor-acetophenone, 249  
     cyanine, 582  
**Gallyl-gallic acid**, 231  
**Garancin**, 427  
*Gelsemium sempervirens*, 431  
**Gentisein**, 525  
**Gentisin**, 433, 525  
     aldehyde, 220  
**Gentisinic acid**, 229  
**Geranic acid**, 310  
**Geraniol**, 310  
**Geranium oil**, 309  
**Glucomethyl-cumar ketone**, 273  
**Glucose**, 429, 430  
     pentabenzoate, 198

**Glucosides**, 429  
**Glutaconimide**, 534  
**Glutaric anhydride**, 437, 442  
**Glutarimide**, 438, 442  
**Glutazine**, 535  
**Glycerol tribenzoate**, 198  
**Glycide derivatives**, 444  
**Glycocoll**, 137  
**Glyco-cumar alcohol**, 271  
     cumaric aldehyde, 272, 430  
**Glycol-chlorhydrin**, 411  
     dibenzoate, 198  
     diphenyl ether, 146  
**Glycolide**, 444  
     monophenyl ether, 146  
     phenyl urea, 86  
**Glycosine**, 497  
**Glycosides**, 429  
     vanillin, 430  
**Glyoxal bisulphite**, 468  
     ethylin, 497, 498  
**Glyoxalidines**, 498  
**Glyoxaline dicarboxylic acid**, 498  
     group, 439, 441  
**Glyoxalines**, 96, 373, 479, 496  
     osotetrazone, 124  
     propylin, 497, 498  
**Glyoxime hyperoxide**, 442  
**Green oils**, 49  
**Grénat soluble**, 151  
**Guaiacol**, 159  
**Guanazole**, 514  
**Guanazyl benzene**, 206  
**Gum benzoin**, 193  
     lac, 334  
     resins, 334  
**Guvacine**, 565

## H.

**HÆMATEIN-AMMONIA**, 433  
**Hæmatin**, 433  
**Hæmatoxylin**, 433  
*Hæmatoxylin campechianum*, 433  
**Hair**, 253  
**Haloid acetophenones**, 190  
     anhydrides of aromatic acids, 198  
     benzaldehydes, 186  
     nitrophenols, 151  
     pyrazoles, 483  
**Heavy oil**, 49  
*Hedeoma pulegoides*, 320  
**Helianthine**, 95, 138  
**Helicin**, 272, 430  
**Heliotrope**, 98  
**Heliotropine**, 220, 270  
**Hemellitic acid**, 195  
**Hemimellibenzylic alcohol**, 177

- Hemimellibenzylamine, 179  
   mellithene, 55  
   mellitic acid, 245  
   picnic acid, 241  
     anhydride, 241  
   terpene, 307  
 Heptacarboxylic compounds, 28  
   chlor-cyclohexandion, 297  
     ketotetrahydrobenzene, 298  
     resorcinol, 161, 297  
   methylene, 28  
     terpene, 28  
   naphthene, 292  
 Hesperetol, 269  
 Hesperidin, 283, 311, 430, 432  
 Hesperitinic acid, 283  
 Hetero-atoms, 435  
   cyclic carbon derivatives, 95  
     compounds, 435  
     derivatives, 17  
   ring formations, 122, 126, 127, 128,  
     129, 130, 131  
   of amidoximes, 208  
   of anthranilic acid,  
     213  
 Hexabromotriketo-hexylene, 297  
   carboxylic compounds, 29  
 Hexacetyl derivatives, 166  
   chlor- $\alpha$ -oxycyclopentene carboxylic  
     acid, 27  
   benzene, 59  
   cyclohexandion, 297  
   diketohexene, 159, 169, 299  
   ketodihydrobenzene, 299  
     R-pentene, 26, 45  
   oxypentene carboxylic acid, 387  
   pentene oxycarboxylic acid, 45  
   triketo-hexylene, 165, 297  
   ethyl benzene, 57  
   hydric phenols, 166  
   hydroanthranilic acid, 300  
     benzene, 290, 291, 307  
       hexacarboxylic acids,  
         307  
   benzodipyrzolon, 493  
   benzoic acid, 300  
     amide, 300  
     ethyl ester, 300  
     methyl ester, 300  
   carbazole, 478  
   cinchomeric acid, 540  
   cumene, 292  
   cymene, 292, 313  
   dicarboxylic acids, 302  
   diethyl phenol, 294  
   dimethylnaphthalene, 433  
     phenol, 294  
   dioxibenzoic acid, 301  
   hexaoxybenzene, 295  
 Hexahydroisophthalic acid, 302  
   mellitic acid, 307  
   mesitylene, 292  
   naphthalene, 413  
   naphtholins, 558  
   oxybenzoic acid, 301  
     toluic acid, 315  
   phenol, 294  
   phthalic acids, 302  
     anhydride, 302  
   pseudocumene, 292  
   pyrazines, 594  
   pyridine, 538  
   quinoline, 545, 551  
   quinolinic acid, 540  
   salicylic acid, 301  
   terephthalic acids, 301  
   tetraoxybenzoic acid, 301  
   toluene, 53, 292  
   toluic acid, 300  
   trioxybenzoic acid, 301  
   xylene, 292  
 iodbenzene, 60  
 keto-hexamethylene, 171, 297  
 methoxy-aurine, 361  
 methoxybenzil, 369, 375  
   benzilic acid, 375  
 methoxyl-rosaniline, 361  
 methyl benzene, 56, 57  
 methylene, 292  
 methylene carboxylic acid, 300  
   dicarboxylic ester,  
     307  
   tetracarboxylic acid, 3  
   tetracarboxylic ester,  
 methyl-leucaniline, 78  
   pararosaniline, 357  
   phloroglucin, 165  
   triamidotriphenyl carbine  
     358  
   methan  
     358  
   keto-hexamethylene, 11  
 nitrodiphenylamine, 93  
 oxybenzene, 166  
   biphenyls, 339  
   diphenyl, 340  
   phenylmelamine, 90  
   pararosaniline, 359  
   rosaniline, 80  
 Hexyl phenyl ketone, 189  
 Hipparaffin, 200  
 Hippenyl urethane, 201  
 Hippuramide, 555  
 Hippurazide, 200, 201  
 Hippuric acid, 200  
   anhydride, 200  
   phenyl ester, 200  
 Hippuroflavin, 200

- spuryl-hydrazine, 200  
   phenylbuzylene, 131, 202  
 fmann's violet, 358  
 matropine, 567  
 moantipyrine, 488  
   benzoylated paraffins, 190  
   caffelic acid, 283  
   camphoric acid, 333  
   ferulic acid, 283  
   isophthalic acid, 244  
   linalool, 310  
 homologous anthraquinones, 425  
   cinnamic acids, 278  
   dioxyanthraquinones, 428  
   furfurane carboxylic acids, 451  
   indols, 466  
   naphthalene carboxylic acids, 408  
   phenyl glyoxylic acids, 259  
   phenylhydrazines, 120  
   pyrazoles, 481  
   rosanilines, 357  
   series, 437  
   trioxyanthraquinones, 428  
 homologues, 31  
 mooxybenzaldehyde, 219  
   phthalic acid, 238, 244  
   phthalimide, 244  
   phthalonitrile, 244  
   piperonylic acid, 229, 270  
   protocatechuic, 229  
   pyrocatechol, 160  
   salicylic aldehyde, 219  
   saligenin, 217  
   terephthalic acid, 244  
   terpenoylformic acid, 324  
   terpenylic acid, 324  
     methyl ketone, 324  
   vanillic acid, 229  
   vanillin, 270  
 ro, 253  
 ydrastic acid, 242  
   tine, 578  
   tinine, 578  
   tropic acid, 197  
     nitrile, 203  
 ydraziacetic acid, 445  
   benzil, 373  
   zide, 363  
   dines, 129, 205  
   methylene, 445  
   zine anisol, 155  
     benzoic acids, 215  
     cinnamic acid, 277, 492  
     compounds, 116  
     derivatives of naphthalene, 398  
     phenols, 155  
   zines, 63  
   zino-diphenyl, 339
- Hydrazioxalyl, 436  
   propionic methyl ester, 445  
   pyrazolon, 489  
     carboxylic acid, 489  
 Hydrazobenzene, 116, 117  
   disulphonic acid, 138  
   benzoic acid, 215  
   bodies, 112  
   compounds, 116  
   zoic acid, 110, 201  
   naphthalene, 398  
   toluenes, 117  
   ximes, 124  
   xylenes, 117  
   zulmin, 446  
 Hydrindene, 384, 387  
   carboxylic acid, 265, 387  
   derivatives, 385, 387  
   dicarboxylic acid, 387  
   ethyl ketone, 387  
   glycol, 387  
   methyl ketone, 387  
   phenyl ketone, 387  
 Hydrindone, 387, 388  
   azine, 387  
 Hydrinic acid, 251  
 Hydroanthracenes, 424  
   anthranol, 425  
   antipyrine, 49  
   aromatic carboxylic acids, 299  
     derivatives, 18  
     hydrocarbons, 290  
     ketone carboxylic acid, 47  
     keto chlorides, 159  
     nucleus, 410  
     substances, 29  
     terpenes, 308  
   atropic acid, 278  
   benzamide, 184, 497  
   benzene derivatives, 290  
     tetracarboxylic acids, 306  
     tricarboxylic acids, 306  
   benzoIn, 371, 372  
   caffelic acid, 229  
     dimethyl ether acid, 230  
     methylene ether acid, 230  
   camphorylacetic acid, 333  
     malonic acid, 333  
   carbazoles, 477  
   carbons, 351  
   carbostyryl, 214, 551  
     carboxylic acid, 551  
   chelidonic acid, 522  
   chloranilic acid, 166  
   cinchoninic acid, 537  
   cinnamenyl acrylic acid, 278  
   cinnamic acid, 191, 197, 284  
     carboxylic acid, 245, 265, 393

- Hydrocinnamic nitrile, 203  
   cinnamide, 272  
     anti-oxime, 272  
     phenyl hydrazone, 272  
     syn-oxime, 272  
   cinnamyl alcohol, 177  
   coerulignone, 339  
   cornicularic acid, 262, 382  
   cotoIn, 349  
   coumaric acids, 226  
   coumarilic acid, 253, 280, 464  
   coumarin, 227  
   coumarone, 217  
   coumoquinone, 163  
   cyanic acid, 430  
     pararosanine, 369  
     rosaniline, 369  
   ecgonidine, 571  
   euthiochronic alkali salts, 166  
   ferulic acid, 230  
   furfuranes, 451  
   glyoxalines, 498  
   hydrastinine, 578  
   Indol derivatives, 470  
   isindazole derivatives, 493  
   isocarbostyrl, 557  
     ferulic acid, 230  
     quinolines, 557  
   juglones, 404  
   lytic condensations, 43  
   methyl ketol, 470  
   naphthalene derivatives, 410  
   naphthoquinone, 403  
   nitric acid, 110, 111  
   paracoumaric acid, 254  
   phorone, 163  
   piperic acid, 283, 285  
   pyridine derivatives, 538  
   pyrimidines, 588  
   pyrrols, 461  
   quinolines, 550  
   quinone, 159, 162  
     bisoxychlorphosphine, 163  
     carboxylic acid, 229  
     chlorphosphine, 163  
     diacetate, 163  
     diethyl ether, 163  
     methyl ether, 163  
     ethyl ether, 163  
   quinones, 167, 366  
   quinone, substitution products of,  
     163  
     tetracarboxylic ester, 246  
   quinoxalines, 596  
   quinoze dibenzoate, 163  
   resorcylic esters, 305  
   terpenes, 308, 313  
   tetrazones, 131  
   toluquinone, 163
- Hydroumbellic acid, 230  
   xyloquinone, 163  
 Hygric acid, 462, 570  
 Hygrin, 462, 570  
 Hyoscyamine, 253  
 Hypnone, 189  
 Hystazarin, 159, 428
- I.
- IDRYL, 420  
*Illicium anisatum*, 269  
   *religiosum*, 270, 301  
 Imesatins, 472  
 Imidazole dicarboxylic acid, 497  
 Imidazoles, 96, 479, 480, 496, 497, 502  
 Imidazolone, 499  
 Imidazolyl mercaptan, 498  
   methyl sulphide, 498  
 Imido-benzimidazolines, 502  
   benzophenone, 346  
   benzoyl cyan-methane, 260  
   coumazones, 581  
   coumothiazone, 583  
 Imidodiketotetrahydroglyoxalines, 499  
   glutarimide, 535  
   ketone naphthalenes, 407  
   ketotetrahydrothiazole acetic aci  
     507  
   oxybiazolines, 516  
     naphthalenes, 407  
     naphthalene-sulphonic acid, 4  
   phenylcarbamic thiomethyl ester,  
     oxide, 153  
     uracil, 260  
   tetrahydro-oxazoles, 503  
     selenazole, 508  
   thiobiazolines, 517  
     urazole, 514  
 Inactive mandelic acid, 251  
   pinene, 322  
   quinic acid, 301  
   tropic acid, 253  
 Indamines, 174  
 Indazine, 603  
 Indazole acetic acid, 493  
   carboxylic acid, 493  
 Indazoles, 277, 480, 491, 492, 509  
 Indazolone, 493  
 Indene, 384  
   carboxylic acid, 386  
   nitrosites, 385  
 Indenigo, 388  
 Indican, 473  
 Indigo, 74, 256, 258, 433, 443, 463, 470, 471, 473  
   blue, 284, 465, 473  
   brown, 473  
   carmine, 476

- Indigo dicarboxylic acid, 476  
     fera anil, 74  
     gluten, 473  
     purpurin, 476  
     red, 473, 476  
     salt, 475  
     sulphonic acid, 469  
 Indigotin, 473  
     disulphonic acid, 476  
     monosulphonic acid, 476  
 Indigo white, 476  
 Indin, 476  
 Indirubin, 469, 476  
 Indoanilines, 173  
     amine, 96  
 Indogen, 469  
 Indogenides, 469  
 Indogen oxide, 469  
 Indol, 74, 124, 268, 370, 462, 463, 465  
     carboxylic acids, 468  
     condensation, 127  
     derivatives, 487  
 Indolinons, 470  
 Indone, 385, 600  
 Indophenazine, 472  
     phenin, 472  
         reaction, 452  
     phenol, 96, 173, 407  
 Indoxanthic ester, 469  
     azene group, 495  
     azenes, 480  
 Indoxin, 470  
 Indoxyl, 468, 469  
 Indoxyllic acid, 468, 469  
     ester, 284  
 Induline dyes, 173  
 Indulines, 115, 580, 600  
 Inosite, 295  
     hexaacetate, 295  
 Iodacetophenone, 190  
 Iodbenzaldehyde, 186  
 Iodbenzenes, 59  
 Iodbenzoic acid, 209  
 Iodcinnamic acid, 276  
 Iodcyclohexanol, 295  
 Iodhydrocinnamic acid, 254  
 Iodine greens, 358  
 Iodisophthalic acid, 242  
 Iodmandelic acid, 251  
 Iodnaphthalenes, 395  
 Iod-naphthalic acid, 405  
 Iodnitrohydrindone, 387  
 Iodobenzene, 60  
 Iodol, 459  
 Iodomethylate, 355  
     of tetramethyl rosaniline  
         iodide, 358  
 Iodosobenzaldehyde, 186  
     benzene, 60  
 Iodosobenzene sulphonic acid, 137  
     benzoic acids, 209  
     naphthalenes, 395  
 Iod-oxynaphthoquinone, 405  
 Iodphenol, 149  
 Iodphthalic acids, 241  
 Iod-pyrazole, 483  
 Iod-quinoline iodmethylate, 547  
 Iodsalicylic acid, 225  
 Iodthiophene, 454  
 Iodtoluene, 62  
 Ionone, 310  
 Iregenone dicarboxylic acid, 266  
     tricarboxylic acid, 266  
 Iretol, 166, 431  
 Iridic acid, 164, 231  
 Iridin, 431  
 Iridol, 164, 431  
*Iris florentia*, 431  
 Isamino-camphor, 329  
 Isantipyryne, 489  
 Isapiol, 166, 271  
 Isatid, 471  
 Isatin, 258, 284, 470, 471  
 Isatinates, 258  
     blue, 472  
     carboxylic acid, 392  
     chloride, 472  
     semicarbazone, 472  
 Isatinic acid, 258  
     lactam of, 258  
 Isatogenic acid, 284, 445  
     ester, 260, 469  
 Isatoic acid, 212, 471  
 Isatoxime, 472  
 Isatropic acid, 278  
 Isindazoles, 492  
 Isoacetophorone, 298, 307  
     allyl benzene, 268  
     amyl phenyl ketone, 189  
     pyrrol, 458  
     anthraflavic acid, 428  
     benzalphthalide, 376  
         phthalimidine, 557  
     benzil, 375  
     benzofurfurane, 463  
         pyrrol, 463  
         thiazol, 441  
         thiophene, 463  
     benzylidiphenyl, 350  
     bidesyl, 381  
     borneol, 325  
         acetate, 321, 325  
     butyl anthracene, 423  
         chlorphthalazone, 586  
         desoxybenzoin, 371  
     butylidene methyl phenyl hydrazine,  
         471  
         phthalide, 286

- Isobutyl phenyl ketone, 189  
   phthalazone, 586  
   salicylic aldehyde, 219  
 butyrylacetophenone, 250  
   methyl phenylhydrazide, 471  
 campholic acid, 328  
 camphor, 330  
 camphoric acid, 332  
 camphoronic acid, 323, 329  
 caprolactone, 324  
 carbopyrotartaric acid, 451  
   styril, 286, 556  
   carboxylic acid, 290, 556  
 carveol, 317  
 carvone, 321  
 chryso-fluorene, 418  
 cinchomeronic acid, 537  
 conicine, 565  
 conine, 565  
 coumarin, 285, 286, 523  
   carboxylic acid, 290  
 cyanphenyl chloride, 83, 89  
 cyclic derivatives, 17  
 dehydracetic acid, 522  
 diazobenzene potassium, 98  
   benzenes, 69  
   hydrates, 103  
   salts, 101  
 dihydrodiphenyl tetrazine, 607  
   phen-tetrazines, 115  
 nitroresorcin, 161  
 phenic acid, 341  
 phenylbenzene, 341  
   dihydrotetrazine, 206  
   oxyethylamine, 372  
 durene, 55  
 duridine, 76  
 durylic acid, 55, 196  
 eugenol, 270  
   methyl ether, 259, 270  
 fencholen alcohol, 325  
 fenchonoxime, 334  
 ferulic acid, 282, 283  
 geranic acid, 301, 310  
 hexahydromellitic acid, 307  
 homopyrocatechol, 160  
 hydrobenzoin, 371, 372  
 indol, 248, 463  
 ketocamphoric acid, 329  
 lauronic acid, 332  
 Isologous series, 440  
   menthoxime, 318  
 Isomerism of benzene derivatives, 32  
 Isomerisms of naphthalene derivatives, 390  
   naphthazarine, 405  
   nicotinic acid, 536  
   nitrosoacetophenone, 189, 249, 257  
   benzoyl acetone, 250  
 Isoskroso camphor, 329  
   compounds, 487  
   desoxybenzoic, 371  
   hydrindone, 387  
   methyl-isoxazolon, 495  
   phenylacetic acid, 258  
   propiophenone, 260  
   pyrazolon, 487  
 orcin, 162  
 oxalyldibenzylketone, 381, 382  
 oxycumic acid, 226  
 phendihydrotetrazines, 606  
 phenyl naphthophenazonium chlorid  
   600  
 phorone, 298  
 phthalaldehyde, 233  
   dioxime, 233  
 phthalic acid, 242  
 phthalophenone, 351  
 phthalyl dichloride, 242  
   dihydrazide, 242  
 prene, 307, 309, 311  
 propylamidobenzyl alcohol, 470  
   benzene, 55  
   benzoic acid, 195  
   coumarin, 288  
   dihydrobenzoic acid, 301  
   isocarbostyrl, 556  
   mandelic acid, 252  
   phenol, 144  
   pyridine, 532  
   pyrrol, 459  
   thiophene, 454  
 propylidene, 495  
 pulegol, 310  
 pulegon, 296  
 purpuric acid, 151  
 purpurin, 428  
 quinoline, 272, 286  
   group, 244, 554  
 rosindone, 602  
 rosindulines, 602  
 safrol, 144, 270, 259  
 tetrahydropyromellitic acid, 306  
 thujonamine, 317  
 thujone, 319  
 valerophenone carboxylic acid, 238  
 vanillic acid, 228  
 vanillin, 220  
 Isoxazole, 479, 480, 493  
   carboxylic acids, 494  
   ester, 494  
   group, 439, 441  
 Isoxazolons, 259, 495  
 Isoxylene, 53, 54  
 Isoxylic acid, 195  
 J.  
 JALAPIN, 431

Japan camphor, 308, 324, 327  
 Jara-jara, 400  
*Juglans regia*, 404  
 Juglone, 405  
 Juglonic acid, 241, 405  
 Julin's chloride of carbon, 59  
 Julole compounds, 552  
 Julolidine, 552  
 Juniper berry, 322

## K.

KAIRINE, 551  
 Kairoline, 551  
 Ketine, 593  
 Keto-benzimidazolines, 502  
   chlorides, 143  
   coumaran, 464  
   derivatives of the pyrazolidines, 490  
   dihydro-acridine, 560  
     benzothiazine, 583  
     coumarone, 464  
     cymene, 320  
     Indol, 471  
     naphthoic acid, 408  
     pyrazoles, 486  
     quinazolines, 213, 590  
 Ketoglyoxalidines, 499  
   hexahydro-cymene, 62, 318  
     methylene, 296, 307  
       carboxylic ester, 302,  
       307  
       dicarboxylic acid, 304  
   hexanes, 294  
   hydrazones, 122  
   hydrobenzene dicarboxylic acid, 304  
   imido-tetrahydrothiazole, 507  
   isocamphoric acid, 323  
   menthans, 318  
   methyl juloline, 552  
 Ketone carboxylic acids, 28, 238, 257  
   derivatives of dibenzyl, 371  
   tricarboxylic acid, 266  
   oxybiazolidines, 516  
 Ketones, 380, 383, 407, 466  
 Ketoic acids, 466  
   pentamethylene, 26  
     carboxylic ester, 28  
   phenyl-methyl-pyrazolon, 488  
     paraconic ester, 264  
   pyrazolidine, 480  
   pyrrolidines, 462  
   tetrahydroglyoxalines, 499  
     isoquinoline, 557  
     naphthalene, 412  
     oxazole, 503  
     pyrimidines, 589  
     quinazolines, 591  
 Ketoxy-hydroindol, 471

II—54

Kino-tannin, 232  
 Knorr's pyrazoline reaction, 482, 486  
 Kynurenic acid, 550  
 Kynuric acid, 212  
 Kynurine, 549

## L.

LACMOID, 161  
 Lactam ethers, 504  
 Lactams, 441, 442, 471  
   of amidophenyl fatty acids, 214  
 Lactazam formation, 127  
 Lactazams, 259  
 Lactazones, 495  
 Lactic ethidene ester, 478  
 Lactime ethers, 504  
   of isatinic acid, 258  
 Lactimides, 444  
 Lactone derivatives of fluorescein, 366  
   of phenolphthalein,  
     364  
 Lactones, 441, 442, 446  
 Lactoximes, 259, 495  
 Lactyl tropelne, 568  
 Lævomandelic acid, 251  
   tropic acid, 253  
 Lævulinic acid, 236  
   phenylhydrazine, 127  
 Lakes, 426  
 Laurobenzene, 190  
 Lauronic acid, 332  
*Laurus camphora*, 327  
 Lauth's dyestuffs, 96  
   violet, 584  
 Lead tetraphenyl, 133  
 Leaf green, 434  
 Lecanora, 162  
 Lepidene, 381, 449  
 Lepidine, 546  
 Lepidone, 548  
 Leucaniline, 352, 353  
 Leucaurines, 359, 360  
 Leucine, 253  
 Leucohenaurine, 359  
   benzeline, 359  
   crystal violet, 358  
   derivatives, 352  
   malachite-green, 352  
 Leuconic acid, 27, 171  
   rosolic acids, 359, 360  
   thionine, 584  
 Licareol, 310  
 Lichen substances, 433  
 Light oil, 49  
*Ligustrum vulgare*, 430  
 Lilole compounds, 552  
 Limet oil, 310  
 Limonene, 308, 310, 311

Limonene hydrochlorides, 311  
 nitroso chloride, 311  
 tetrabromides, 311  
 Limonetrile, 316  
 Linalool, 309, 310  
 Linaloolene, 309  
*Liquidambar orientalis*, 271  
 Litmus, 162, 433  
 Lophine, 497, 498  
 Lupetidines, 540  
*Lupinus luteus*, 253  
 Luteolin, 228, 433  
 Llutidine dicarboxylic acid, 537  
 Lutidines, 532  
 Lutidinic acid, 537  
 Lutidone, 534  
 dicarboxylic acid, 538  
 Lysene, 144  
 Lysidine, 499

## M.

MACI oil, 270  
 Maclurin, 232, 433  
 tannic acid, 228  
 Madder lakes, 427  
 Magdala red, 603  
 Magnesium diphenyl, 133  
 Malachite-green, 78, 351, 352, 354, 355  
 Maleic acid, 45  
 hydrazine, 586  
 Maleinonil, 91  
 phenylhydrazil, 129  
 Malic acid, 464  
 Malonanilic acid, 91  
 anilide, 91  
 Malonic acid, 442  
 Malonyl hydrazine, 491  
 phenylhydrazide, 129  
 hydrazine, 491  
 Manchester brown, 116  
 Mandelic acid, 251, 257  
 nitrile, 251  
 chloralide, 251  
 Mandelnitrilglycoside, 430  
 Mandelo-nitrile diglucose, 430  
 Mannitol hexabenzozoate, 198  
 Maringa tannic acid, 228  
 Martius yellow, 401, 402  
*Mateza roritina*, 295  
 Matezite, 295  
 Matricaria camphor, 327  
 Mauvaniline, 356  
 Mauveine, 603  
 Meconic acid, 523  
 Meconine, 235  
 acetic acid, 264  
 hydrocotarnine, 577  
 Melaniline, 88

Melilotic acid, 226, 280  
 methyl ether, 280  
*Melilotus officinalis*, 280, 281  
 Mellimide, 247  
 Mellithyl alcohol, 177  
 Mellitic acid, 43, 57, 191, 246  
 Mellophanic acid, 56, 246  
 Menaphthylamines, 407  
 Mentha camphor, 308, 313  
 diene alcohols, 317  
 dien ketones, 320  
 Menthan, 309  
 bases, 317  
 group, 310  
*Mentha piperita*, 313  
*pulegium*, 320  
 Menthene, 293, 309, 313  
 alcohols, 316  
 bases, 317  
 glycol, 315  
 Menthonamide, 318  
 Menthoic acid, 318  
 Menthol, 313, 318  
 Menthomenthene, 313  
 naphthene, 313  
 Menthone, 292, 296, 308, 318  
 nitrile, 318  
 Mentoxime, 318  
 Menthylamine, 317  
 chloride, 314  
 Mercaptans, 156  
 Mercapto-methyl penthiazoline, 583  
 thiazole carboxylic ester,  
 506  
 thiazoles, 505  
 triazole, 512  
 Mercury dialphyls, 133  
 phenyl, 133  
 thiophenate, 157  
 Mesicerine, 233  
 Mesidic acid, 55, 242  
 Mesidine, 76  
 hydroiodide, 72  
 Mesitene lactam, 534  
 Mesitol, 144  
 Mesityl alcohol, 177  
 amine, 179  
 Mesitylene, 50, 53, 55  
 glycerol, 233  
 glycol, 232  
 Mesitylenic acid, 55, 195  
 Mesityl glyoxylic acid, 259  
 isophthalic acid, 243  
 Mesorcin, 161, 162  
 Meta-compounds, 35  
 diazines, 587  
 dioxyanthraquinone, 428  
 hemipinic acid, 242  
 anhydride, 242

- Metanilic acid**, 137  
**Metaphthalophenone**, 351  
     thiazine, 582  
**Metazines**, 580  
**Methenylamidophenol**, 504  
     thiophenyl, 89  
     diphenyldiamine, 83  
     piperazine, 594  
**Methoxy-amidoquinoline**, 547  
     benzaldehyde, 219  
     benzyl alcohol, 217  
         malonic acid, 262  
     cinnamic acid, 280  
     indol carboxylic acid, 470  
     isatin, 470  
**Methoxyl-coniferine**, 430  
**Methoxymandelic acid**, 252  
     methyl-quinoline, 548  
     oxybenzaldehyde, 220  
         cinnamic acid, 283  
     phthalaldehydic acid, 237  
     styrene, 272  
     phenylglyoxylic acid, 259  
         methacrylic acid, 282  
     phthalide, 236, 237  
     pyridine, 534  
     quinaldine, 549  
     quinolinic acid, 537  
     quinone, 170  
     tetrahydroquinoline, 551  
**Methronic acid**, 451  
**Methyl acetanilide**, 82  
     acetyl cyclohexanone, 319  
         hexamethylenecarboxylic  
         ester, 302, 307  
     acridine, 560  
     acridone, 560  
     adipic acid, 314  
     alizarin, 428  
     amido-chlorstyrene, 466  
         diphenyl thiazoline, 507  
         thiazole, 505  
         thiophenol, 507  
         triazulpholes, 518  
     aniline, 78, 83  
     anthracene, 422  
         quinone, 423, 425  
     antipyrine, 489  
     arbutin, 429  
**Methylated diphenyl phthalides**, 363  
     atropic acid, 279  
     benzamide, 199  
     benzene-azo-methyl amidobenzene,  
         114  
     benzidine, 338  
     benzimidazole, 500  
     benzoic ester, 198  
     benzoin, 372  
         paroxazine, 581  
**Methylbenzothiazole**, 157, 507  
     benzoxazole, 153, 503, 504  
     benzoyl-acetic ester, 260  
     benzyl chloride, 177  
         cyanide, 203  
         isoxazonol, 495  
         malonic acid, 262  
**Methyl-brom-pyrazole**, 483  
     carbazole, 477  
     carbostyryl, 84, 548  
     carboxyanthranilic ester, 212  
     cetyl benzene, 57  
     chavicol, 269  
     chlorphthalazone, 586  
         quinoline, 547  
         stilbene, 375  
     cinchoninic acid, 549  
     cinnamic acid, 278  
         aldehyde, 272  
     coumaric acid, 282  
     coumarilic acid, 464  
     coumarin, 279, 282  
     coumarone, 146, 464  
     cumar-alcohol, 271  
         ketone, 273  
     cyclohexane, 292  
         pentanol, 26  
         pentanon, 26  
         pentenon, 26  
     desoxybenzoin, 371  
     dibenzamide, 200  
         bromoxypthalic acid, 434  
     ethyl pyrazine, 593  
     hydro-diphenyl quinoxaline, 596  
         isoquinoline, 557  
         quinazoline, 590  
         quinoline, 555  
         resorcinol, 297  
     ketohydrindene, 388  
         carboxylic ester,  
         388  
     methyl penthiazoline, 583  
     oxpyridine, 535  
     oxycyanidine, 605  
         naphthoquinone, 405  
     phenylamine, 80  
         glyoxalidine, 498  
**Methylene blue**, 95, 158, 443, 580, 584  
     coumarilic ester, 464  
     dibenzyl ether, 177  
     dimethyl apionol, 166  
     oxybenzyl glycol, 248  
         cinnamyl formic acid, 287  
         isoquinoline, 555, 578  
         phenylethylene methyl gly-  
         col, 248  
         phenyl-diamine, 29  
         phenylene oxide, 524  
         sulphide, 526

- Methylene-diphenyl thiourea, 446  
     pyrocatechol, 343  
     metahemipinic ether acid, 242  
     methyl gallic ether acid, 230  
     phthalide, 285  
         dibromide, 285  
     phthalimidine derivatives, 286  
     protocatechuic acid, 228  
     thiourea, 446  
     urea, 446  
 Methyl-ethyl-acetic acid, 431  
     aniline, 78  
         ethyl iodide, 78  
     furazane, 515  
     glyoxaline, 498  
     isoxazonol, 495  
     pyridine, 528, 532  
     thetine, 446  
     thiobetalne, 446  
     eugenol, 269  
     fluorindene, 603  
     formanilide, 82  
     furazane carboxylic acid, 515  
     furfurane, 448  
         acetic carboxylic acid, 451  
     furfural, 450  
     gluco-cumar-ketone, 430  
     glyoxalidine, 499  
     glyoxaline, 497  
         phenyl hydrazone, 124  
     granatoline, 571  
     green, 358  
     heptenone, 310  
     hexahydrofluorene, 418  
         methylene dicarboxylic ester, 302  
         methyl ketone, 302  
     hexyl-keto-hexene, 298  
     homo-oxybenzoic acid, 226  
         salicylic acid, 226  
     hydrindone, 387  
     hydrocotoin, 349  
         quinone, 163  
     idene carboxylic acid, 383  
     imidohydrocinnamic ester, 260  
     indazole, 492  
     indene, 383  
         carboxylic acid, 386  
     indol, 466, 467  
         acetic acid, 127  
         carboxylic acid, 468  
         sulphonic acid, 468  
     isatin, 259, 472  
         tolylimide, 259  
     isobutyl-keto-hexene, 298  
         carbostyryl, 286, 556  
         coumarin, 286  
 Methylisoformanilide, 82  
     indol, 463  
     phthalic acid, 242  
     propyl benzenes, 56  
         cyclohexane, 292  
         diphenylenemethane, 411  
         hexahydrophenol, 313  
         ketohexamethylene, 296  
             hexene, 298  
                 carboxylic ester, 302  
         phenanthrene, 415, 416  
         phenol, 144  
         pyrrol, 459  
         succino-succinic ester, 302  
         tetrahydrobenzene, 293  
     quinoline, 556  
     isoxazole, 494  
     isoxazonol, 494  
     ketodihydro-methyl quinoxaline, 596  
         quinazoline, 591  
     hexamethylenes, 296  
     hexene, 298  
         carboxylic ester, 302  
         307  
     ketol, 124, 467  
     mercapto-thiazole, 506  
         triazole, 512  
     morphimethine, 576  
     morphine, 576  
     naphthalene, 394  
     naphthol, 391, 400  
     naphtho-phenazonium iodide, 600  
     nicotinic acid, 536  
     nitropyrazole, 483  
     noropianic acid, 237  
     opianic ester, 237  
     oxazoline, 503  
     oxindol, 468  
     oxyquinoline, 544, 548, 596  
         thiazole, 505  
     paraconic acid, 391  
     pelletierine, 571  
     penthiofene, 438  
     phenanthridine, 558  
     thridinium iodide, 558  
     thridone, 558  
     throline, 554  
     pheno-stilbazonium hydroxide, 592  
     phenpenthiazole, 181, 583  
         pentoxazole, 181  
     phenyl ether, 146  
         furfurane-carboxylic acid, 451  
         hydrazine, 121  
         hydrazone acetoacetic ester, 468  
         iso-crotonic acid, 278

- Methyl-phenyl itaconic acid, 289  
   methane, 351  
   oxazole, 503  
   oxazoline, 503  
   paraconic acid, 263  
   phthalazone, 238  
   propionic acid, 285  
   pyrrol, 459  
   quinazoline, 589  
   quinoline, 347  
   sulphone, 139  
   thiocarbamin chloride, 87  
   urea chloride, 85  
 phthalazone, 238, 587  
 phthalide, 235  
 phthalimide, 241  
 pipercolyl alkine, 540  
 piperazine, 594  
 piperic acid, 285  
 piperidine, 540  
 protocatechuic acid, 228  
 purpuroxanthins, 428  
 pyrazine, 593  
 pyrazole, 480, 482  
   carboxylic acid, 485  
   sulphonic acid, 483  
 pyrazolon, 487  
 pyridazinone, 585  
 pyridine carboxylic acid, 536  
   dicarboxylic acid, 537  
 pyridines, 532  
 pyrogalloldiethyl ether, 164  
   methyl ether, 164  
   mucic acid, 451  
 pyrrol, 458  
   carboxylic acid, 461  
 pyrrolidine, 462  
   carboxylic acid, 462  
 pyrroline, 461  
 quinaldone, 549  
 quinazoline, 187, 589  
 quinoline, 542, 545  
   carboxylic acid, 549  
 quinolinic acid, 537  
 quinoquinoline, 554  
 salicyl chloride, 224  
 selenazoline, 508  
 styrolene, 268  
 sulphonic phenyl ester, 147  
 terephthalic acid, 243  
 tetrahydrobenzene, 293  
   isoquinoline, 557  
   quinoline, 551  
 thiazole, 504  
   carboxylic acid, 506  
   dicarboxylic acid, 506  
 thiazoline, 506  
 thiazylacetic ester, 506  
 thioacetanilide, 83  
 Methyl thiophene, 454  
   tolimidazole, 501  
   tolylthiazoline, 506  
   triazole, 512  
     methylene, 22  
   phenyl dioxazine, 582  
     methane carboxylic acids, 362  
   umbelliferone, 283  
   vinyl-piperidine, 540  
   violet, 357, 358  
 Metoxazine group, 439  
 Middle oil, 49  
*Mimosa catechu*, 159  
 Mixed azo-bodies, 112  
   compounds, 113  
 Monacet-diamido-diphenylamine, 118  
   acetyl-dioxyphenanthrene, 415  
   acid menthan alcohols, 313  
   amido-phenazine, 599  
*Monarda punctata*, 144  
 Monoalkylamido-phenols, 154  
   brom anthraquinone, 425  
   cinnamic aldehyde, 272  
   hexahydrobenzoic acid, 300  
   toluic acid, 300  
   methylene phthalide, 285  
   quinone, 163  
   stilbene, 375  
   chlorcinnamic aldehyde, 272  
   quinone, 163  
   stilbene, 375  
 halogen anthracenes, 423  
 heteroatomic five-membered rings, 447  
   four-membered rings, 446  
   three-membered rings, 444  
 hydric phenyl-paraffin alcohols, 176  
 ketazocamphor-quinone, 330  
 nitroquinone, 425  
 nitrosonaphthalene, 396  
   terephthalic acid, 243  
 phloreticphloroglucin ester, 226  
 thiopyrocatechol, 160  
 Monoxylalcohol acids, 250  
   anthracene, 423  
   quinones, 426  
   benzaldehydes, 218  
   benzoic acids, 222  
   benzyl alcohols, 217  
   phenyldiphenyl tetrazolium chloride, 521  
   olefine carboxylic acids, 279  
 pyridine, 534  
   carboxylic acid, 537  
   triphenyl methane, 359  
 Monthiohydroquinone, 164

Mordant dye, 405  
 Morin, 232  
*Morinda citrifolia*, 427  
 Morindin, 427  
 Moringa tannic acid, 159  
     tannin, 232  
 Morphine, 576  
 Morpholine, 581  
     thebaine, 576  
 Muscat nut oil, 270  
 Mustard oil, 83, 97, 269  
     acetic acid, 507  
 Myrcene, 309  
 Myricetin, 524  
 Myristicine, 270  
 Myristicin acid, 230  
 Myronic acid, 429  
 Myrosin, 429

## N.

NAPHANTHRACENE, 429  
 Naphanthraquinone, 429  
 Naphsultamdisulphonic acid, 399  
 Naphsultone, 403  
 Naphthacetin, 401  
 Naphthacetol, 401  
 Naphthaldehyde, 407  
 Naphthaldehydic acid, 410  
 Naphthalene, 48, 67, 384, 392, 394  
     azo-compounds, 138, 397  
     diazo-oxide, 516  
     carboxylic acid, 409  
     chloride, 411  
     sulphonic acids, 394, 398  
     disulphhydrates, 404  
     group, 389  
     homologues, 394  
     monocarboxylic acids, 408  
     poly-carboxylic acids, 409  
     red, 398  
     ring formations, 390  
     sulphinic acids, 400  
     sulphonic acids, 398  
     tetrabromide, 411  
     carboxylic acid, 409  
     chloride, 411  
     trisulphonic acids, 398  
     yellow, 401, 403  
 Naphthalic acid, 405, 409  
 Naphthalidinic acid, 399  
 Naphthalizarin, 405  
 Naphthazarin, 396  
 Naphthazarine, 405, 426  
 Naphthazine, 598  
 Naphthenes, 291, 300  
 Naphthenic acids, 300  
 Naphthindulines, 602

Naphthinoiline, 558  
 Naphthionic acid, 399  
 Naphthoazimides, 397  
     benzyl alcohols, 407  
     amines, 407  
     chlorides, 407  
     cyaninate, 396  
     derivatives of heterocyclic rings  
     397  
     diphenyl-dihydrotriazine, 606  
     fuzazane, 407, 515  
     furfurane, 464  
 Naphthoic acid, 408  
     ketocoumaran, 464  
 Naphthol, 391, 392, 400, 464  
 Naphthol, alkyl ethers, 400  
     azobenzene, 401, 402  
     black, 400  
     blue, 407, 582  
     carboxylic acids, 408  
     diazobenzene, 401  
     sulphonic acids, 402  
     ethyl ether, 400  
     green, 406  
     homologues, 400  
     methyl ether, 400  
     ketone, 407  
     monosulphonic acids, 402  
     orange, 402  
 Naphthols, 400  
 Naphthol sulphonic acids, 402, 406  
 Naphthol trisulphonic acids, 403  
     yellow, 401, 403  
 Naphthomethylfurfurane carboxylic ester  
     464  
     nitriles, 409  
     phenazine oxide, 600  
     phenazines, 398  
     ocarbazole, 478  
     osafarine chloride, 603  
     oxazine, 582, 598  
     oxazone, 582  
 quinoline, 531, 553  
 quinone, 393, 405  
     anils, 407  
     carboxylic acid, 409  
     chlorimides, 407  
     dichlorimide, 407  
     oxime, 406  
     imides, 407  
     phenyldiimide, 407  
     hydrazones, 406  
 quinones, 402, 404  
 quinoxalines, 595  
 quinoximes, 406  
 resorcinol, 404  
 styryl, 408  
 Naphthoxanthones, 408  
 Naphthoxazoles, 401

- Naphthoxylacetaldehyde, 464  
 Naphthyl-acetic acid, 407, 408  
     acetylene, 407  
     amido-thiobiazolon, 517  
     thio-oxybiazoline, 516  
 amine, 391  
     azo-benzene sulphonic acid, 398  
     disulphonic acids, 399  
     sulphonic acids, 399  
 amines, 396, 468  
     acid derivatives of, 397  
 azoacetic acid, 398  
     ester, 398  
 benzene sulphamides, 397  
     blue, 602  
     carbamine chlorethyl esters, 397  
     carbinols, 407  
     dimethylamine, 396  
 Naphthylene diamines, 397  
     diamine sulphonic acid, 399  
     oxamide, 596  
     phenylene-methane, 418  
 Naphthylenes, 293  
     ethylamine, 396  
     hydrazines, 398  
     indigo, 475  
     indol, 468  
     iodo-chlorides, 395  
     mercaptan, 404  
     methylamine, 396  
         ketone, 407  
     naphthoic acids, 408  
     phenylhydrazone, 468  
     piperidine, 540  
     sulphones, 400  
     violet, 602  
 Naphthyridine, 558  
 Naphtidine, 397, 398  
 Naphtidines, 410  
 Naphtrisultamsulphonic acid, 399  
 Narceine, 578  
 Narcotine, 241, 575, 577  
 Naringenin, 432  
 Naringin, 430, 432  
 Natural dyes, 433  
     isocinnamic acid, 274, 276  
 Neroline, 400  
 Neutral red, 599  
 Neville and Winther's acid, 402  
 New Victoria green, 355  
 Nicotine, 462, 565  
 Nicotinic acid, 536  
     methyl betaïne, 565  
 Nile blue, 582  
 Nitranilic acid, 170  
 Nitranilide, 98  
 Nitraniline-p-sulphonic acid, 67  
 Nitranilines, 92  
 Nitriles of aromatic monobasic acids, 201  
     of phthalic acid, 241  
 Nitroacetophenone, 190, 284, 474  
     alizarin, 427, 428  
     amido cinnamic acid, 278  
         diphenyl, 337  
         nicotinic acid, 533, 536  
         tetraoxybenzene, 166  
     amines, 63, 80  
     anilines, 67  
     azobenzene, 113  
     benzal acetone, 273  
     benzaldehyde, 186  
         oxime, 186  
         hydrazone, 186  
         malonic acid, 288  
     benzazides, 201  
     benzene, 75  
         azo-amido-benzene, 115  
         diazoxymido-methane, 110  
     benzenes, 66  
     benzidine, 337  
     benzmalonic ester, 262  
     benzoic acid, 210  
         nitrile, 210  
         phenone, 347  
     benzoyl-acetic acid, 260  
         acetoacetic ester, 262  
         acetone, 250  
         formic acid, 258  
             amide, 258  
             nitrile, 258  
             oxime, 258  
             phenylhydrazones, 258  
         malonic ester, 263  
     benzyl alcohol, 180  
         amine, 181  
         aniline, 181  
         chloride, 180  
         cyanides, 211  
         formamide, 181  
         malonic acid, 469  
         nitrobenzaloxime, 187  
         nitrobenzene, 343  
         phenyl nitrosamine, 181  
         sulphocyanide, 180  
     bromacetophenones, 249  
         benzaldehyde, 187  
         hydrocinnamic acid, 254, 255  
     carbazole, 477  
     carbostyryl, 548  
     chlorbenzaldehyde, 187  
         methyl phthalide, 393  
         styrolene, 268  
     cinnamenyl acrolein, 272  
     cinnamic acid, 277, 465, 474  
         aldehyde, 272  
         ethyl ester, 277

- Nitrococcic acid, 226, 433  
   compounds, 31, 63  
   coumaric acid, 279, 280, 281  
   coumarinic dimethyl ether, 281  
   cresols, 151  
   desoxybenzoin, 371  
   diamido-diphenyl, 337  
     triphenyl methane, 352  
   azobenzene acids, 99  
     imide, 111  
   phenol, 516  
   bromhydrocinnamic acid, 256  
     ethyl ester, 256  
  
   methyl aniline, 78  
   phenyl, 336  
     amines, 80, 92  
     amine-suboxide, 584  
     disulphides, 137  
     methane, 343  
   ethoxy benzonitrile, 67  
   formyl hydrazide, 120  
   furfurane, 448  
 Nitrogen derivatives of the naphthoqui-  
   nones, 406  
   haloid benzenes, 67  
     benzoic acids, 210  
   hydratropic acids, 211  
   hydrazo-benzenes, 117  
   hydrocinnamic acids, 211  
     quinone, 164  
   indazole, 492, 493  
   iodanisol, 151  
   isophthalic acid, 242  
     quinoline, 555  
   malachite greens, 355  
   mandelic acid, 251  
   mesitylenes, 68  
   methylcinnamic aldehyde, 385  
     indazole, 493  
   mono-carboxylic acids, 210  
   naphthalene-diazo-oxide, 516  
     sulphonic acids, 399  
   naphthalenes, 395  
   naphthoic acids, 408  
   naphthol, 401  
   naphthols, 401  
   naphthoquinone, 393, 406  
   naphthylamines, 397  
   opianic acid, 238  
   oxanilic acid, 91  
   oxy pyridines, 533  
   phenanthrenes, 414  
   phenol, 150  
   phenols, 149  
   phenyl acetaldehyde, 465  
     acetic acids, 210  
     acetylene, 268  
     alanine, 253  
  
 Nitrophenyl benzoic acid, 340  
   bromolactic acid, 256  
   chlorolactic acid, 256  
   diazomercaptan hydrosul-  
     phide, 103  
   hydroindazole-carboxylic  
     acid, 493  
   ether, 146  
   glyceric acid, 255  
   glycidic acid, 255, 256  
   glycin, 84  
   hydracrylic acid, 254  
   hydrazine, 120  
   indazon, 493  
   isindazole carboxylic acid, 493  
   lactic acid, 253, 254  
     aldehydes, 248  
     ketones, 249  
     lactones, 254  
     methyl ketone,  
       474  
   methyl pyrazolon, 488  
   naphthalene, 395  
   nitroacrylic acid, 253, 278  
   propionic acid, 284, 471  
     ethyl ester, 284  
     ester, 469  
   pyridine, 532  
   pyroracemic acid, 468, 470  
   quinoline, 546  
  
   phthalic acids, 241  
   phthalide, 235  
   prehnitol, 68  
   pyrazole, 483  
   pyrazoles, 483  
   pyridines, 533  
   pyromucic acid, 451  
   quinolines, 547  
   quinone, 169  
   salicylic acid, 225, 472  
 Nitrosamines, 63, 78, 80  
 Nitrosites, 267, 270  
 Nitrosoacetanilide, 98  
   alkylamines, 151  
   aliphyl-hydroxylamines, 70  
   anilides, 83, 98  
   aniline, 94  
   anthrol, 423  
   antipyrine, 489  
   benzaldehyde, 187  
   benzene, 70  
     sulphonic acid, 137  
   benzoic acid, 211  
   carbazole, 477  
   compounds, 78  
   conine, 564  
   cresol, 152  
   derivatives, 69, 93  
   dimethyl aniline, 78, 94

- Nitrosodiphenylamine, 80, 94  
   ethylamido-cinnamic acid, 277  
   formanilide, 98  
   hydrazines, 63  
   hydroxylamines, 63  
   indazole, 492  
   indol, 466  
   mono-carboxylic acids, 211  
   naphthalenes, 396  
   naphthol, 400  
     naphthoquinone oxime, 406  
   naphthols, 406  
     sulphonic acid, 406  
   orcin, 162  
   phenol, 151, 152, 168  
   phenols, 151  
   phenylglycin ester, 126  
     semicarbazide, 131  
   phloroglucin diethyl ether, 165  
   phthalimidine, 234  
   pinene, 323  
   piperidine, 540  
   tetrahydroquinoline, 550  
   thymol, 152  
   toluene, 70  
 Nitrostyrolene, 254, 267  
   thiophene, 454  
   toluenes, 68  
   trimethyl-pyrazole, 483  
   phenylcarbinol, 353  
     methane, 351  
   xylene, 68  
 Nonaphthene, 292  
 Nopic acid, 301, 323  
 Norhemipinic acid, 241  
 Normal diazo-hydrates, 102  
 Normeconine-acetic acid, 264  
 Normetahemipinic anhydride, 242  
 Noropianic acid, 237  
 Norpinic acid, 323  
 Nucleus acidylated alkyl benzenes, 190  
   syntheses, 19  
   synthetic, 257  
     reactions, 50  
  
 O.  
 OAK-RED, 232  
 Octadecyl benzene, 57  
 Octochloroacetylacetone, 46  
   ketotetrahydrobenzene, 298  
   hydrocarbostyryl, 300  
   naphthalene, 413  
   naphthoquinoline, 553  
   naphthyridine, 558  
   naphthene, 292  
 Octyl benzene, 57  
   II—55  
  
 Oil of absinthe, 319  
   of bergamot, 311  
   of bitter almonds, 430  
   of cassia, 272  
   of celery, 311  
   of cumin, 320  
   of dill, 311  
   of garlic, 268  
   of lavender, 310  
   of lemons, 310  
   of *Matricaria parthenium*, 327  
 Olefine benzenes, 266  
   dioxybenzenes, 269  
   monoxybenzenes, 269  
   phenols, 268  
   terpenes, 308  
   tetraoxybenzenes, 270  
   trioxybenzenes, 270  
 Olefinic terpene acids, 310  
   alcohols, 309  
   aldehydes, 310  
   group, 309  
*Oleum cine*, 311, 315  
 Olive soaps, 144  
 Opianic acid, 235, 237  
 Opianoximic acid, 237  
   anhydride, 237  
 Opium bases, 575  
 Orcendialdehyde, 233  
 Orcin, 161, 162  
   aurine, 361  
 Orcinol, 161  
 Orcins, 366  
 Orcirufin, 582  
 Origanum, 310  
 Orpholum, 400  
 Orsellic acid, 162, 229  
 Ortho-benzoic acid piperidide, 209  
   compounds, 35  
   diazines, 584  
   phosphor-anilide, 80  
   phthalophenone, 351  
   quinones, 167  
   thiazines, 582  
 Orthoxazine group, 439  
 Orthoxazines, 580  
 Osazone, 387  
 Osazones, 122  
 Osobenzene, 48  
   tetrazones, 124, 131, 442, 606  
   triazine derivatives, 442  
   triazole, 479, 508  
     carboxylic acid, 509  
     group, 441  
   triazoles, 124, 508  
 Oxaldiamidoxime, 130  
   enbisazoximethenyl, 515  
 Oxalic acid, 393, 441  
 Oxalimide, 438, 440, 444

- Oxalines, 496  
   phenylhydrazide, 129  
     hydrazilic acid, 129  
 Oxalylanthranilic acid, 212  
   diacetone, 494  
   acetophenone, 383  
   guanidine, 499  
   urea, 499  
 Oxanildioxime, 91  
   anilic acid, 90  
   anilide, 89, 91, 374  
   anthranol, 425  
   atolylic acid, 380  
   azines, 580  
   azole group, 439, 441  
   azoles, 373, 479, 480, 502  
   azolines, 503  
   ethyl-amidophenol, 152  
     anisidine, 153  
   ime anhydrides, 259  
   imido-propiofenone, 250  
   indol, 214, 465, 471  
 Oxodihydrobenzenes, 149  
   cumaein, 259  
   menthlyic acid, 314  
   tetrahydrobenzenes, 149  
 Oxyacetophenone, 221  
   anthraquinones, 426  
   antipyrine, 489  
   azobenzenes, 155  
   benzal acetone, 273  
   benzoic acid, 222  
     phenone, 348  
     thiazole, 157, 508  
     thiophene, 465  
   benzoxazole, 153, 504  
   benzyl alcohol, 217  
     amine, 217  
     benzenes, 343  
     idene acetophenone, 379, 383  
   biazole group, 441  
     azoles, 479, 480, 516  
     azoline derivatives, 126  
     azolon derivatives, 127  
     phenyl carboxylic acids, 340  
     phenyls, 339  
   camphenilanic acid, 322  
   camphor, 329  
   carbostyryl, 548  
   chlorstyrene, 463, 464  
     styrolene, 269  
   chrysazin, 428  
   cinnamic acid, 280  
   cinnamylidene acetic acid, 287  
   cinnoline carboxylic acid, 586  
   coumarin, 283  
   cyclopentan carboxylic acid, 27  
   diamido-cyanidine, 605  
     triphenyl methanes, 359  
 Oxydihydroquinoxaline, 595  
   methyl benzenes, 144  
   phenyl amine, 154  
   phenylene ketone, 419  
     triazine, 374  
   ethyl benzenes, 144  
     benzoic acid lactone, 235  
   fluorene carboxylic acid, 419  
   fluorenone, 419  
   furazane carboxylic acid, 515  
   hexahydro-cymene, 313  
     isophthalic acid, 304  
     methylene carboxylic acid, 301  
   hydratropic acid, 226  
   hydrindene, 387  
   hydrobenzene dicarboxylic acid, 304  
     carbostyryl, 253, 254, 551  
     quinone, 165  
       tri-ethyl ether, 165  
       methyl ether, 166  
   indol, 468  
     carboxylic acid, 262, 468, 470  
   isophthalic acid, 243  
     propyl benzoic acid, 236  
       lactone, 235  
   quinolines, 556  
   juglone, 405  
   mandelic acid, 252  
     lactone, 252  
   mesitylenic acids, 226  
   methylbenzoic acid, 233, 234, 235, 251  
     lactone, 234  
     coumarin, 283  
   methylene acetophenone, 287  
     camphor, 330  
       anhydride, 330  
       cyanhydrin, 330  
   compounds, 256  
   menthone, 318  
   phenyl acetic ester, 287  
     ethyl ester, 257  
   methylquinoline, 548  
     tetrahydroquinoline, 551  
     thiazole carboxylic ester, 506  
     thiophene, 455  
     tolimidazole, 501  
   naphthoic acid, 394, 408  
   naphtho phenazine, 600  
     quinone, 405  
       anil, 405, 407  
       oxime, 407  
   naphthylamine, 396  
   nicotinic acid, 537  
   pentacarboxylic acid, 265  
     decyllic acid, 421  
   phenazines, 600  
     oxazime, 582  
     oxazine, 153

- xyphenoxazone, 582  
   thiazone, 584  
   phenylacetic acid, 226  
     lactone, 227  
   acetonitrile, 226  
   alanine, 253  
   benzoic acid, 340  
   ethylamine, 217, 254  
   glyoxylic acid, 259  
   indazole, 493  
   lactic acid, 253  
   methyl pyrazolon, 488  
   pyridazone, 585  
   mustard oil, 153  
   olefine alcohols, 271  
     aldehydes, 272  
     carboxylic acids, 279  
     ketones, 273  
   phthalide, 349  
   propionic acid lactone, 227  
     acids, 226  
   pyrroacemic acid, 259  
   succinic acid, 262, 281  
   thiourea, 153  
   urea, 153  
 phosphazobenzene anilide, 80  
 phthalic acid anhydride, 241  
   acids, 241  
 phthalide, 235  
 picolinic acid, 537  
 picric acid, 161  
 pipitzaholic acid, 170  
 pyrazoles, 483  
 pyridine carboxylic acids, 537  
   dicarboxylic acid, 537  
 pyridines, 522, 533  
 pyridone, 534  
 pyrone, 522  
   carboxylic acid, 523  
 pyrrodiazole dicarboxylic acid, 510  
 quinaldine, 85, 548  
   carboxylic acid, 213  
 quinazoline, 591  
 quinoline carboxylic acids, 550  
 quinolines, 547  
 quinolinic acid, 537  
 quinone homologues, 170  
 quinones, 170  
 quinoxaline, 596  
 suberanic acid, 29  
 terephthalic acids, 243  
 terpenylic acid, 320  
 thionaphthene, 465  
   phene, 455  
   tolene, 455  
 thymoquinone, 170  
 toluenes, 143, 144  
 toluic acids, 225  
 tricarboxylic acids, 246, 265
- Oxytrimellitic acid, 246  
   mesic acid, 246  
   methyl piperidines, 540  
   phenyl methane, 359  
     carboxylic acids, 362  
   uvitic acid, 243  
   xanthone, 524  
   xanthonenes, 525
- P.
- PÆNOL, 221  
 Palmityl benzene, 190  
 Papaveraldine, 576  
 Papaveraline, 576  
 Papaverine, 576  
 Para-anthracene, 422  
   azines, 581  
   banic acid, 499  
   camphoric acid, 332  
   compounds, 35  
   coto bark, 349  
     oil, 270  
   diazine, 592  
     dyes, 405  
   glyoxal methylin, 498  
   leucaniline, 352, 357  
   mandelic acid, 251  
     derivatives of, 251  
 Paramide, 247  
   oxybenzoic acid, 254  
   quinones, 167  
   rosaniline, 353, 356  
     constitution of, 356  
   rosolic acids, 361  
   thiazine, 443, 583  
     group, 442  
 Paroxazine, 443  
   dyes, 405  
   group, 439, 442  
 Parsley seeds, 271  
 Parvuline, 532  
 Pelargonium oil, 309  
 Pelletierine, 571  
*Penicillium glaucum*, 251  
 Pentaamidocyclopentadecin, 172  
   phenol, 172  
   toluene, 97  
   bromaniline, 92  
     diketo-oxy-hexene hydrate, 297  
   toluene, 292  
   carbocyclic compounds, 25  
   chloraniline, 92  
   diketo-hexene, 299  
   naphthalene, 395  
   orcin, 162  
   phenol, 298

- Pentachloropyridine, 533  
     resorcinol, 46  
     xylene, 237, 250  
 hydric phenols, 166  
 ketocyclopentane, 171  
     pentamethylene, 27  
 methyl benzene, 56  
     benzoic acid, 196  
     diphenyl methane, 343  
 methylene, 25  
     imide, 442, 538  
     piperidine, 438  
     oxide, 437, 442  
 methyl phenol, 145  
     triamidotriphenylmethane, 358  
     violet, 358  
 Pentamines, 97  
     phenylpyridine, 383, 529  
     pyridines, 533  
 Penthiazoline group, 442  
 Penthiofen, 525  
 Penthiofene group, 442  
 Pentol, 25  
 Pentosides, 429, 431  
 Pentoxazoline, 439  
     group, 442  
 Peonine, 361  
 Peppermint oil, 313, 318  
 Perchloracetoacrylic acid, 46  
     acroyl acrylic acid, 45  
     diphenyl, 336  
     indone, 27, 386, 387  
     naphthalene, 394, 395  
     pentene, 25  
     pyrocoll, 461  
     trimethyl cyanidine, 604  
     vinyl acrylic acid, 45  
 Peri-naphthalene derivatives, 409  
 Perkin's reaction, 273, 277  
 Pernitroso camphor, 330  
 Persea cassia, oil of, 272  
*Persea cinnamomum*, 272  
 Persio, 162  
 Peru balsam, 274  
 Pesacetophenone diethyl ether, 221  
*Petroselinum sativum*, 271  
*Phaseolus vulgaris*, 295  
 Phaseomannite, 295  
 Phellandrene, 312  
     nitrosite, 312  
*Phellandrium aquaticum*, 312  
 Phenacetin, 154  
 Phenacetol, 146  
 Phenacylacetone, 250  
     anilide, 249  
     chloride, 248  
 anthraquinone, 97, 415  
     dioxime, 414  
 Phenanthraquinone monoxime, 415  
     anthrene, 48, 384, 413, 414  
     carboxylic acids, 414  
     dibromide, 414  
     group, 413  
     hydroquinone, 415  
     octo-chloride, 414  
     sulphonic acids, 414  
     tetrahydride, 414  
     anthridine, 557  
     anthridone, 558  
     anthrofurazane, 515  
     anthroline, 545  
     anthrone, 415  
     anthrophenazine, 598  
     ates, 143  
     azine, 160, 215  
     group, 597  
     azone, 337, 587  
     benzyl dihydro-triazine, 606  
     diol, 159  
 Phene, 47  
 Phenethyl benzyl ketone, 380  
 Phenetidine, 154  
 Phenetol, 146  
     carbamide, 154  
     keto-dihydro-triazine, 606  
     methyl dihydrotetrazine, 122  
     metadiazine, 187  
     methylol, 176  
     triazine, 605  
     morpholine, 153  
 Phenol, 45, 142, 171, 174, 464  
     alcohol-ethers, 145  
     alcohols, 217  
     aldehydes, 218  
     ates, 143  
     benzines, 360  
     derivatives of triphenyl carbinol, 360  
     methanes, 359  
     diazobenzene, 155  
     chlorides, 154  
     mercaptan hydrosulphide, 155  
     disulphonic acid, 156  
     ethers, 146  
     ethylene ether, 146  
     glyoxylic acids, 269  
     ketones, 220  
     monocarboxylic acids, 221  
     naphthalein, 409  
     phenylethane, 368  
     phthalein, 364  
     anhydride, 365  
     anilide, 364  
     oxime, 364  
     phthalol, 361

- Phenols, 31, 51, 114, 135, 140, 144, 158,  
     164, 166  
     salicylic ester, 224  
     sulphonic acid, 156  
     trisulphonic acid, 156  
 Phenomauvefine, 603  
     naphthacridone, 560  
     oxanthones, 525  
     quinone, 168  
     safranine, 603  
 Phenose, 295  
     oxalkylamines, 146  
     oxazine, 153, 160, 581  
     oxethylamine, 146  
     oxycetaldehyde, 146  
     acetals, 464  
     acetic acid, 146  
         acryl methyl ketones,  
         273  
     acetoacetic ester, 146  
     acetone, 146  
     butyric acid, 146  
 Phenoxylacetal, 464  
     diphenylphosphine, 132  
     phosphazobenzene, 80  
 Phenoxypypropylamine, 146  
     phenyl dihydro-triazine, 181, 606  
     triazine, 206  
     tetrazines, 442  
     tetrol, 166  
     thiazimes, 584  
     azone, 584, 605  
     thiol, 156  
     triazine, 122, 131, 605  
     azyl methyl ketone, 606  
 Phenylacetaldehyde, 184, 254, 271, 276  
     acetate, 147  
     acetic acid, 191, 194, 196  
         anhydride, 198  
     acetobutyric acid, 261  
         carboxylic acid, 244  
     acetone, 190  
     aceto-nitrile, 203  
         succinic ester, 263  
     acetyl-acetone, 250  
         chloride, 198  
         pyrazole, 484  
     acetylene, 266, 267, 268, 284  
         carboxylic acid, 284  
         di-iodide, 267  
     acridine, 560  
     acrolein, 272  
     acrylic acid, 274, 278  
     actazam, 350  
     alanine, 84, 253  
     alcohol aldehydes, 248  
         dicarboxylic acids, 262  
         ketone carboxylic acids,  
         261  
 Phenylaldehyde ketones, 249  
     alkylamines, 77  
         ammonium bases, 77  
         hydrazines, 121  
     allophanic ester, 86, 148  
     allyl acetic acid, 279  
         nitrile, 279  
     allylene, 268  
         malonic acid, 289  
         sulphone, 139  
     amidoacetic acid, 252  
         methyl ester, 252  
         nitrile, 252  
     azobenzene-sulphonic acid,  
         138  
     cinnamic acid, 377  
     hydrocinnamic acid, 376  
     lactic acid, 256  
     methylisotriazole, 509  
         pentoxazoline, 580  
     propionic acid, 253  
     quinoline, 547  
     thiazole, 505  
     amine, 71, 74  
     ammonium bases, 77  
     amphiglyoxime, 249  
     angelic acid, 278  
     anthracene, 423  
     anthranilic acid, 212  
     anthranol, 424  
     antiglyoxime, 249  
     arsenic compounds, 132  
 Phenylated carbylamines, 83  
     fatty ketones, 189, 190  
     pararosanilines, 359  
     phenylene diamines, 95  
     rosanilines, 359  
     ureas, 85  
     azimidoethoxybenzene, 511  
     azocarbamide, 103  
         formazyl, 131  
     benzaldoxime, 186  
         sultime, 346  
         amide, 199  
     benzene induline, 601  
         sulphazide, 119, 125  
     benzenes, 335  
         hydrylbenzoic acid, 350  
         imidazole, 204, 500  
     benzoic acid, 340  
         ester, 198  
         paroxazine, 581  
         thiazole, 199, 204, 507  
     benzoxazole, 203, 504  
     benzoyl isoxazolon, 495  
         propionic acid, 377, 380  
         pyrazole, 484  
         urea, 374  
     benzyl-benzoic acid, 350

- Phenylketodihydro-triazine, 126  
   ketols, 248  
   ketone dicarboxylic acids, 263  
     oxybutyric acid, 261  
     tetrahydro-oxazole, 503  
     tricarboxylic acids, 264  
   lactic acid, 252, 253  
   lævulinic acid, 261  
   lutidon-carboxylic acid, 85  
   lutidone carboxylic acid, 538  
   maleic acid, 289  
     anhydride, 289  
   malic acid, 263  
   malonic acid, 262  
     ester, 262  
   mercaptan, 156  
   mercapto-thiazole, 506  
   mesaconic acid, 289  
   methyl acetylene, 268  
     acrylic acid, 278  
     carbinol, 176  
     chlorpyridazone, 585  
     cyantriazole, 509  
     dihydotetrazine, 606  
     ethoxypyrazole, 127, 484  
     furfurane, 449  
     glycol, 247  
       oxaline, 503  
     isoxazole, 494  
     ketone, 189  
     methoxypyrazole, 484  
     nitramine, 98  
     nitrosamine, 98  
     osotriazole, 509  
     oxazole, 502  
     oxybiazolon, 516  
       osotriazole, 509  
     pyrimidine, 205  
     pentoxazoline, 580  
     pyrazole, 124, 481, 482, 483  
       carboxylic acids,  
         485  
     pyrazolidine, 490  
     pyrazolidone, 490, 491  
     pyrazolon, 127, 481, 487,  
       488, 489  
       azobenzene, 488  
     pyridazinone, 127, 585  
     pyridazone, 585  
     pyridine, 529, 532  
     quinoline, 546  
     succinic acid, 262  
     sulphydantoin, 87  
     triazole, 512  
       carboxylic acid,  
         513  
       triazolon, 128, 513  
   monohaloid acrylic acid, 275  
   mustard oil, 89
- Phenyl mustard oil acetic acid, 88  
 Phenyl naphthalene, 394, 395  
   naphthoic acid, 408  
   naphthophenazonium chloride, 600  
     quinone, 395  
     xanthene, 410  
   naphthylamines, 396  
     carbazole, 478  
     sulphide, 404  
   nitramines, 98  
   nitro-ethylene, 267  
     methane, 178  
     paraffins, 178  
     propylene, 267  
   nitrosamines, 97  
     ohydrazine, 131  
     ohydroxylamine, 70  
   olefine alcohols, 271  
     aldehydes, 272  
     carboxylic acid, 273  
       acids, 255  
     keto carboxylic acids, 287  
     ketols, 287  
     ketone carboxylic acid, 288  
     ketones, 272  
   orthoformic ester, 147, 157  
   piperazone, 586  
   osotriazole, 509  
     azimide, 509  
     carboxylic acid, 509  
     dicarboxylic acid, 509  
   oxalacetic ester, 259, 263  
   amic-diphenyl-amidine, 91  
   anthranol, 425  
   azole, 503  
   azoline, 203, 503  
   oxybenzoic acid, 340  
   butyric acid, 255  
   crotonic acid, 287  
   hydrindone, 387  
   indol, 470  
   ketone dicarboxylic acids, 264  
   naphthoquinone, 405  
   olefine carboxylic acid, 287  
   phenylpropyl alcohol, 379  
   propionic acid, 252  
   pyrimidine, 588  
   quinoline, 213  
     carboxylic ester, 544  
   quinoxaline, 596  
   succinic acid, 263  
   tetrazole, 520  
   thiazole, 505  
   thiophene, 261  
   valeric acid, 255  
   parabanic acid, 91  
   paraconic acid, 255, 263  
   paraffin alcohol acids, 250  
     alcohols, 175

- enylparaffin aldehyde carboxylic acids, 256  
     dicarboxylic acids, 262  
     diketones, 250  
      $\beta$ -ketone carboxylic acid, 259  
     ketone carboxylic acids, 257  
     tricarboxylic acid, 264  
 penthiazoline, 204, 583  
 pentoxazoline, 203  
 phenacyl acetic acid, 380  
     anthridine, 558  
     azonium chloride, 600  
 phenylimido-oxybiazolon, 516  
 phosphine, 132  
 phosphorus compounds, 132  
 phthalide, 349  
 phthalimidine, 234  
 piperic acid, 381  
 piperidine, 58, 540  
 propiolic acid, 266, 267, 284  
     ester, 259  
 propionic acid, 197  
 propionitrile, 203  
 propyl alcohol, 177  
     aldehyde, 184  
     amine, 179  
 propylene thiourea, 507  
 propylidene acetic acid, 278  
     triazolon, 513  
 pyrazole, 481, 482, 483  
     carboxylic acid, 485  
     dicarboxylic acids, 485  
 pyrazoles, 483  
 pyrazolidine, 490  
 pyrazolidon-carboxylic acid, 129  
 pyrazolidone, 491  
 pyrazoline, 481, 485, 486  
     dicarboxylic methyl ester, 486  
 pyrazolon, 260, 284, 487  
     carboxylic acid, 490  
 pyridazinone, 585  
     carboxylic ester, 585  
 pyridine, 531, 532  
     dicarboxylic acid, 531  
 pyridone, 534  
 pyridyl ketone, 535  
 pyrimidone, 588  
     carboxylic acid, 588  
 pyrone, 522  
 pyrroacemic acid, 280, 259  
 pyroldiazole dicarboxylic acid, 510  
 pyrrol, 458, 459  
 quinaldine, 546  
 quinazoline, 589  
     carboxylic acid, 589  
 quinazolon, 347
- Phenylquinoline, 546  
     rosinduline, 602  
     salicylic acid, 340  
     selenides, 158  
     selenium hydrate, 158  
     semicarbazide, 86, 127  
     serin, 256  
     silicates, 147  
     silicon compounds, 133  
     styrenyl triazolon, 513  
     succinic acid, 262  
     sulphamic acid, 80  
     sulphide, 157  
     sulphocarbazinic acid, 128  
         carbizine, 128, 157, 608  
         cyanate, 89  
     sulphone acetic acid, 139  
         semicarbazide, 128  
         ureas, 87  
     sulphurethane, 86  
         ethanes, 86  
     sulphuric acid, 147  
     tellurides, 158  
     tetrahydropyrimidine, 588  
         pyrimidine, 204, 205  
         quinazoline, 181, 591, 592  
     tetrazole, 519, 520  
         carboxylic acid, 520  
         mercaptan, 520  
         methyl sulphide, 520  
     tetrazotic acid, 205  
     tetrose, 248, 256  
     thiazole, 505  
     thiazoline, 204, 506  
     thiobiazoline sulphhydrate, 517  
         biazolon sulphhydrate, 128  
         hydantoin, 87  
         pentahydrodiazthine, 128, 608  
     thiophene, 454  
     salicylic acid, 224  
     semicarbazide, 88  
     tetrazole, 519  
     tetrazoline, 520  
     thiuramsulphide, 87  
     thiourea, 87  
     tin compounds, 133  
     tolyl, 336  
         carbinol, 344  
         ketone, 345  
         methane, 343  
         phthalide, 363  
         propane, 267, 370  
     triazole, 126, 512  
         aldehyde, 509  
         carboxylic acid, 513  
         dicarboxylic acid, 513  
     triazolon, 513  
         carboxylic acid, 513

- Phenyltribrom-pyrazole, 483  
     carboxylic acid, 485  
     iodethylene, 267  
     methyl ammonium iodide, 72  
     pyrazolon, 489  
     oxybutyric acid, 256  
         lactone, 256  
     uracil, 260  
     urazole, 127, 128, 514  
     urea, 85  
         bromide, 85  
         chloride, 85  
     urethanes, 85  
     valeric acid, 197  
     valerolactone carboxylic acid, 263  
     vinylamine, 267, 276  
         ethyl ether, 271, 287  
     xylylpropane, 370  
 Phlobaphene, 232  
 Phloretic acid, 226, 431  
 Phloretin, 165, 226, 431  
 Phloridzin, 430  
 Phlorine, 366  
 Phloroglucin, 46, 136, 165, 366, 464  
     carboxylic acid, 230  
     triacetate, 165  
         carboxylic ester, 246, 306,  
         307  
     ethyl ether, 165  
     methyl ether, 165  
     oxime, 165  
     glucite, 165, 295  
 Phoenicin sulphuric acid, 476  
 Phorone, 169  
 Phosphaniline, 132  
     phazobenzene anilide, 80  
         chloride, 80  
 Phosphenyl chloride, 132  
 Phosphin, 356, 560  
 Phosphino-benzene, 132  
 Phospho-benzene, 132  
 Phosphorphenylamines, 80  
 Phthalaldehyde, 233  
     chlorides, 237  
     dioxime, 233  
     aldehydic acid, 235, 236, 257  
         methyl ether, 236  
     amic acid, 240  
     anil, 241, 350  
     azine, 233, 463, 586  
     azines, 586  
     azone, 236, 587  
 Phthalein, 364, 586  
 Phthaleins, 351, 363  
 Phthalic acid, 191  
     aldehydes, 233  
     acids, 238, 239  
     anhydride, 240, 463  
     diamide, 240  
     Phthalidacetic acid, 264, 287  
         carboxylic acid, 264  
         propionic acid, 264  
 Phthalide, 234, 463  
     anil, 234  
     chloride, 234  
 Phthalidines, 364  
     ideins, 424  
 Phthalides, 362  
 Phthalidines, 364  
 Phthalidins, 424  
     imide, 236, 240, 463  
         acetic acid, 289  
     imidine, 234, 463  
 Phthalin, 362  
 Phthalins, 364  
 Phthalone, 501  
 Phthalonic acid, 265  
     nitrile, 241  
     phenones, 350  
 Phthalyl acetic acid, 289  
     alcohol, 232  
     chloride, 240  
     cyanacetic ester, 290  
     diacetic acid, 265  
     malonic acid, 265  
     ene tetrachloride, 240  
     green, 363  
     hydrazine, 241, 587  
     hydroxamic acid, 241  
     phenylhydrazide, 241  
         hydrazine, 241, 587  
     propionic acid, 264  
     superoxide, 240  
 Piaselenol, 518  
 Piaselenols, 441, 480, 518  
 Piazines, 592  
 Piazselenoles, 96  
 Piazthiolen, 517  
 Piazthioles, 96, 441, 479, 480, 518  
 Picamar, 165  
 Picean ring, 323  
 Picene, 416  
     fluorene, 388, 417, 418  
         alcohol, 417, 419  
     ketone, 417, 419  
     perhydride, 416  
 Picenic acid, 408, 417  
 Picoline acrylic acid, 538  
     lactic acid, 538  
     methyl ketone, 535  
 Picolines, 532  
 Picolinic acid, 531, 536  
 Picolyl alkines, 535  
     methyl alkine, 535  
     trichlor methyl alkine, 535  
 Picramic acid, 154  
 Picramide, 68, 93  
 Picrate, 179

- Picric acid, 68, 150, 394, 467  
 Picrocyaminic acid, 151  
   erythrin, 229  
   toxic acid, 432  
   toxin, 432  
 Picryl chloride, 68  
 Picylenmethane, 418  
 Pilocarpidine, 565  
   carpine, 565  
 Pimaric acid, 334  
 Pimelic acid, 314, 522  
 Pimelin, 296  
   ketone, 307  
*Pimpinella anisum*, 269  
 Pinacoline, 418  
 Pinene, 25, 308, 322  
   glycol, 325  
   hydrobromide, 323  
   chloride, 323  
   nitrosobromide, 323  
   chloride, 323  
 Pinic acid, 323  
 Pinite, 295  
 Pinol, 325  
   dibromide, 326  
   glycol, 326  
   hydrate, 325  
   nitrosobromide, 326  
 Pinonic acid, 323, 328  
 Pinoyl formic acid, 323  
*Pinus lambertina*, 295  
   *maritima*, 334  
 Pinyllamine, 323, 326  
 Pipecolines, 540  
 Pipecolinic acid, 540  
 Piperazine, 443  
 Piperazines, 594  
*Piper betle*, 270  
   *cubeba*, 272  
   hydronic acid, 283  
 Piperic acid, 285, 289  
 Piperidine, 285, 442, 472  
 Piperidines, 538  
 Piperidyl urethane, 540  
 Piperine, 540, 562  
 Piperonal, 220, 270  
   acetalamine, 578  
 Piperonyl carboxylic acid, 259, 270  
 Piperonyl acrolein, 27  
   acrylic acid, 283  
   alcohol, 218  
 Piperonylene acetone, 273  
   malonic acid, 2. 9  
   pyrroacemic acid, 287  
 Piperonylic acid, 228, 270  
   idene acetone, 273  
 Piperyl-amido-cyanidine, 605  
   hydrazine, 540  
   methyl thiazoline, 507  
 Piptzaholic acid, 170  
 Pitch, 49  
 Pittical, 361  
 Polei oils, 320  
 Polybenzoyl cyanide, 258  
   carboxylic acids, 238  
 Polygonin, 431  
*Polygonum cuspidatum*, 431  
 Polyhaloid phenols, 149  
   membered rings, 435  
 Polymeric aldehyde, 442  
   cyanogen compounds, 442  
 Polymerization, 43, 436  
 Polynitrohydrocarbons, 66  
   oxanthraquinone, 429  
   phenylamines, 79  
   fatty hydrocarbons, 335  
   quinoyl compounds, 170  
   quinoyls, 170  
   salicylide, 225  
   sulphonic acids, 136  
   terpenes, 308  
 Ponceau dyes, 403  
 Populin, 430  
*Populus tremula*, 430  
 Potassium carbon monoxide, 166  
   chloranilate, 170  
   euthiocarbonate, 170  
   chromate, 164  
   indoxyl sulphate, 468  
   oxybenzylsulphonate, 184  
   phthalimide, 79  
 Potential valence, 436  
 Prehnidine, 76  
 Prehnitic acid, 56, 246  
 Prehnitol, 56  
 Prehnitylic acid, 56, 196  
 Pricrylmalonic ester, 262  
 Primary amines, 396  
 Prism formula, 40  
 Propenyl anisol, 269  
   benzene, 268  
   benzoic acid, 273  
   phenol, 269  
   pyrocatechol, 270  
   trimethoxybenzene, 270  
   veratrol, 270  
 Propidene-phenylhydrazine, 466, 467  
   phthalide, 286  
 Propionylacetophenone, 250  
   benzene, 189  
   fenchylamine, 326  
   methylphenylhydrazide, 471  
   phenol, 221  
 Propiophenone, 189  
 Propyl acetanilide, 82  
   benzene, 55  
   benzoic acid, 195  
   benzoic ester, 198

- Propyl chlorphthalazone, 586  
 Propylene urea, 503  
   glyoxalidine, 499  
   mesitylene, 57  
   phenol, 144  
   phthalazone, 587  
   piperidine, 540, 562  
   pyridene, 532  
   pyrogallol ether, 165  
   tetraoxybenzene, 166  
 Protocatechuic acid, 227, 282  
   aldehyde, 219  
     methylene ether, 220  
 Protocotoin, 349  
 Pseudoazimide group, 398  
   azimides, 480, 509  
   azimido-derivatives, 115  
   carbostyryl ethers, 548  
   conhydrin, 535, 564  
   cumene, 49, 53, 55  
     sulphonic acid, 144  
   cumenol, 144  
   cumenyl glycol, 232  
   cumidine, 76  
   cumoquinone, 169  
   cumylglyoxylic acid, 259  
     hydrazine, 120  
   indoxyl, 469  
   ionone, 310  
   isatin ethoxime, 472  
   isatoxime, 469, 472  
   leucaniline, 352  
   lutidostyryl, 534  
     carboxylic acid, 538  
   morphine, 576  
   nitroso-anthrone, 423  
   opianic acid, 238  
   pelletierine, 571  
   phenanthrolines, 554  
   phenyl-acetic acid, 196  
     thiohydantoic acid, 88  
     hydantoin, 88  
   phthalimidine, 234  
   purpurin, 429  
   saccharin-chloride, 216  
   tolyl-acetic acid, 196  
 P'tyalin, 430  
*Ptychotis ajowan*, 56, 144  
 Pulegon, 296  
   amine, 317  
 Pulejone, 320  
 Pulvic acid, 382  
 Pure yellow, 115, 137  
 Purpur, French, 162  
 Purpurin, 420, 428  
   -amide, 428  
   carboxylic acid, 429  
*Purpuroxanthin*, 428  
 Pyranine, 525  
 Pyrantin, 154  
 Pyrazine, 593  
   dicarboxylic acid, 593  
   group, 439, 442  
   monocarboxylic acid, 593  
   tetracarboxylic acid, 593  
 Pyrazines, 592  
 Pyrazole, 124, 437, 479, 480, 481  
   blue, 488  
   carboxylic acid, 485  
     acids, 484  
     esters, 484  
   dicarboxylic acid, 485  
   formation, 127  
   group, 439, 441  
   ketones, 484  
   monazole group, 480  
   silver, 481  
   sulphonic acids, 483  
   tricarboxylic acid, 485  
     ester, 484  
 Pyrazoles, 480, 482  
 Pyrazolidine, 480, 481, 490  
   carboxylic acids, 490  
 Pyrazolidone, 480, 481, 490, 491  
 Pyrazoline, 480, 481, 485, 486  
   carboxylic acids, 486  
   dicarboxylic acid, 486  
     ester, 486  
   tricarbonacetic trimethyl ester, 486  
     carboxylic methyl ester, 486  
 Pyrazolon, 259, 480, 481, 486, 487  
   azobenzene, 487  
   carboxylic acid, 489  
   opyrazolon, 489  
 Pyrene, 48, 420, 576  
   ketone, 420  
 Pyrenic acid, 420  
 Pyrenquinone, 420  
 Pyridazine, 584, 585  
   dicarboxylic acid, 585  
   group, 439, 442  
 Pyridazinone-carboxylic ester, 585  
 Pyridine, 106, 437, 438, 443, 531  
   betaine, 446  
   betaines, 530, 532  
   carboxylic acid, 531, 535  
   dicarboxylic acid, 536  
   group, 442, 526  
   pentacarboxylic acid, 537  
   polycarboxylic acids, 545  
   sulphonic acids, 533  
   tetracarboxylic acid, 537  
   tricarboxylic acid, 537  
 Pyridone, 534  
 Pyridones, 522

- Pyridyl acrylic acid**, 538  
 alcohols, 535  
 alkynes, 535  
 brompropionic acid, 538  
 ethyl alkine, 535  
   ketone, 535  
 ketones, 535  
 lactic acid, 538  
 methyl ketone, 535  
   pyrrolidine, 462  
 pyrrol, 458, 459  
 tetrahydro-methyl pyrrol, 565
- Pyrimidine group**, 439, 442
- Pyrimidines**, 587
- Pyrocatechin**, 159  
 carbonic ester, 159  
 carboxylic acid, 228  
 chlorphosphine, 159, 160  
 diacetyl ester, 159  
   benzoyl ester, 159  
   methyl ether, 159  
 ethylene ester, 159  
 monobenzoyl ester, 159  
   methyl ether, 159  
 oxychlorphosphine, 159, 160  
 sulphite, 159
- catechol**, 159  
 cyclic esters, 160  
 hetero-ring formations from,  
   159  
   homologues, 160  
   sulphuric acid, 159
- Pyrocoll**, 460, 461, 468  
 comane, 522  
 comenic acid, 522  
 condensation, 43  
 gallol, 164, 464  
   carboxylic acid, 230  
   dimethyl acetate, 164  
     ester, 164  
   ethyl ester, 164  
   phthaleins, 366  
   trimethyl ester, 164  
 genic syntheses, 49
- Pyromecazonic acid**, 535
- meconic acid**, 522
- mellitic acid**, 246
- mucic acid**, 391, 450
- Pyrone**, 437, 522  
 carboxylic acid, 522  
 dicarboxylic acid, 522  
 group, 442  
 racemic anilide, 84  
   chloride, 83, 84  
 tritartaric acid, 451
- Pyroxolon carboxylic ester**, 495
- Pyrrodiazole**, 437, 479, 511  
 dicarboxylic acid, 510
- Pyrrodiazoles**, 508, 510
- Pyrrol**, 437, 438, 441, 443, 447, 457, 462,  
 465, 479, 480  
 azo benzene, 460  
 carbamide, 458  
 carboxylic acids, 460, 461  
   ester, 458  
 diazo benzene, 460  
 dicarboxylic acid, 461
- Pyrrolen-phthalide**, 461  
 glyoxylic acid, 460
- Pyrrolidine**, 461, 480
- Pyrrolidone**, 462, 480
- Pyrroline**, 461, 480
- Pyrrolon**, 480
- Pyrrol red**, 457
- Pyrrolylene**, 462
- Pyrro-monazole**, 480, 496  
 group, 480  
 monazoles, 479  
 triazole, 480, 519  
 triazoles, 479, 519
- Pyrroyl-pyrrol**, 460
- Pyrrolyl-dimethyl diketone**, 460  
 methyl ketone, 460
- Q.**
- QUATERNARY ammonium derivatives**, 73
- Quebrachite**, 295
- Quebracho-bark**, 295
- Quercetin**, 523
- Quercite**, 295
- Quercitrin**, 432
- Quercus tinctoria*, 432
- Quina-bases**, 571  
 acetophenone, 221  
 acridine, 561  
 aldic acid, 549  
 aldine, 187, 466, 546  
 alizarin, 429  
 azolon, 187  
 azolons, 590
- Quinene**, 573  
 hydrone, 168
- Quinia-red**, 232
- Quinic acid**, 299, 301, 550
- Quinide**, 301
- Quinine**, 571  
 isatin, 261, 549, 551  
 isatinic acid, 261  
   lactam, 261
- Quinite**, 168, 294, 297
- Quinizarin**, 428
- Quinoanils**, 172
- Quinogens**, 169
- Quinoid derivatives of fluorescein**, 366  
 of phenolphthalein,  
   364

- Quinoline, 73, 187, 545  
   acrylic acid, 546  
   aldehyde, 546, 549  
   betaïne, 545  
   carboxylic acid, 549  
   dicarboxylic acid, 550  
   group, 541  
   iodmethylete, 545  
   ketones, 549  
   lactic acid, 546  
   oxalic acid, 546  
   phenols, 546  
   red, 556  
   yellow, 546  
 Quinolinic acid, 536  
 Quinone, 75, 166, 167, 301, 404  
   aniliniimide, 174  
   benzoylphenylhydrazone, 172  
   chlorimide, 172  
   dianil, 80, 173  
   chlorimide, 172  
   methyl-aniliniimide, 174  
   oxime, 67, 167, 168, 172  
     carboxylic ester, 305  
   haloids, 169  
   homologues, 168  
   imides, 115, 172  
   monanil, 172  
   monohydrazine, 168  
   monoxime, 167, 168, 172  
   nitrogen derivatives, 172  
   phenol addition products, 168  
     imide, 173  
   phenylhydrazones, 172  
     imide, 172  
   tetrabromide, 297  
     carboxylic ester, 246  
     hydro-tetracarboxylic ester, 307  
 Quinophthalone, 546  
   oxaline dicarboxylic acid, 596  
   oxalines, 96, 374, 397, 594, 596  
   oxalophenazine, 596  
   oxime, 152  
 Quinoyl, 167, 170
- R.**
- REACTION of Liebermann, 141  
   of Plugge, 142  
 Rearrangements of diazoamido compounds, 109  
 Red bergamot oil, 286  
   corallin, 361  
   oil, 355  
 Regularities in substitution, 69  
 Resacetophenone, 221  
 Resaurine, 361  
 Resazurin, 161  
 Resin acids, 334  
   oils, 291  
   soaps, 334  
 Resins, 334  
 Resocyanine, 283  
 Resorcin, 464  
   dialdehyde, 233  
 Resorcinol, 46, 159, 160  
   benzefine, 360  
   diacetyl ester, 161  
   benzoate, 161  
   carbonic ester, 161  
   methyl ether, 161  
   monocarboxylic acids, 228  
   methyl ether, 161  
   phthaleins, 365  
 Resorcylic aldehyde, 220  
 Resorcylic acid, 228  
 Resorufin, 161, 443, 580, 582  
 Retene, 415  
   diphenic acid, 416  
   dodecahydride, 416  
   fluorene, 418  
     alcohols, 418  
   glycollic acid, 416  
   ketone, 416, 419  
   quinone, 416  
 Réuniol, 310  
 Rhamnose, 431  
 Rhamnosides, 431  
*Rhamnus frangula*, 428, 432  
 Rhenic acid, 428  
 Rhodamine dyes, 154  
 Rhodamines, 366  
 Rhodanides, 106  
 Rhodinal, 310  
 Rhodinic acid, 310  
 Rhodinol, 309  
 Rhodizonic acid, 171, 298  
 Ring alcohols, 294  
   amines, 295  
   formations, 19, 41  
   hexene, 292  
   etones, 296, 318  
   shaped chain, 30  
   strain, 444  
 Roccella, 162  
 Rocellin, 400, 402  
 Rosamine chloride, 360  
 Rosamines, 360  
 Rosaniline, 79, 355, 356  
   constitution of, 356  
   dyes, 351  
   sulphonic acid, 357  
 Rose benzal, 366  
 Rosemary oil, 315, 324  
   oil, 309

Roshydrazine, 359  
 Rosindols, 467  
 Rosindone, 602  
 Rosindulines, 602  
 Rosolic acids, 359, 360, 361  
 Rubazonic acid, 488  
 Rubeanhydride, 130  
 Rubeanic acid, 499  
 Ruberythric acid, 427, 431  
*Rubia tinctorium*, 427, 431  
 Rufigallic acid, 230, 429  
 Rufiopin, 429  
 Rufol, 423  
 Rule of Crum-Brown, 69

## S.

SACCHARIN, 134, 216  
 Safranines, 76, 96, 580, 600, 602  
 Safraninones, 603  
 Safranols, 603  
 Safran surrogate, 151  
 Safrinine, 443  
 Safrol, 268, 270  
 Safrosine, 366  
 Sage, 322  
 Salicin, 430  
 Salicylaldehyde, 463  
     amide, 225  
     amine, 217  
     anilide, 225  
     chloride, 224  
 Salicylic acid, 222, 280  
     methyl ester, 224  
     aldehyde, 218  
 Salicylide, 225  
     chloroform, 225  
 Salicyl-lactic acid, 253  
 Salicylo-nitrile, 225  
     phosphorous chloride, 224  
 Salicylous, 218  
 Saligenin, 217, 430  
 Salipyrine, 443, 488  
*Salix helix*, 430  
 Salol, 224  
 Santoic acid, 432  
 Santonic acid, 432  
 Santonin, 400, 432  
 Santous acid, 433  
*Saponaria officinalis*, 431  
 Saponin, 431  
*Sassafras officinalis*, oil of, 270  
 Scammonin, 431  
 Schaeffer's acid, 402, 403  
 Schaeffer's naphthol sulphonie acid, 406  
 Schizomycetes, 251  
 Schöllkopf acid, 402

*Scorzonera hispanica*, 430  
 Secondary naphthylamines, 396  
     phenylamines, 77  
 Sedanonic acid, 303  
 Selenazole, 508  
     group, 441  
 Selenophene, 447, 456  
     phthalide, 235  
 Selenoxene, 456  
 Selephene, 441  
 Semidine rearrangement, 118  
 Sesquiterpenes, 308  
 Shellac, 334  
 Shikimic, 299, 301  
*Shikimino-ki*, 270  
 Shikimol, 270  
 Silico-benzoic acid, 133  
     tetraphenylamide, 81  
 Silver benzamide, 199  
     formanilide, 82  
     isatin, 472  
 Sinalbin, 226  
 Sinapan-propionic acid, 583  
*Siphonia elastica*, 334  
 Six-membered heterocyclic compounds,  
     521  
 Skatole, 466, 467  
     acetic acid, 468  
     carboxylic acid, 468  
 Sobreritrite, 325  
 Sobrerol, 325  
 Sobrerone, 325  
 Sodium acetanilide, 82  
     benzamide, 199  
     dibenzamide, 199  
     formanilide, 82  
 Solid green, 161, 355  
 Soluble blue, 359  
 Sophorine, 565  
 Sparteine, 567  
 Spirolyous, 218  
 Stilbazole, 530, 533  
 Stilbazonium base, 374  
 Stilbene, 178, 268, 370  
     carboxylic acid, 376  
     diamine, 372  
     bromide, 372  
     carboxylic acid, 252, 377  
     chloride, 372  
     glycol, 375  
     dibenzozate, 375  
     hydrate, 371  
     sulphide, 178  
 Storax, 266, 271, 274  
 Strain theory, 19  
 Strychnine, 256, 575  
 Stubb, 413  
     fat, 420  
 Styeric acid, 255

- Stycerine, 248  
 Styphnic acid, 161  
 Styracine, 275  
 Styrene, 49  
 Styrolene, 254, 255, 266  
     alcohol, 247  
     dichloride, 247  
     homologues of, 268  
 Styrolenes containing substituents in the  
     side group, 267  
     substituted in the benzene nu-  
     cleus, 267  
 Styrone, 266, 271  
 Styrylamine, 271  
     pyridine, 533  
 Suberan carboxylic acid, 28  
 Suberane, 28  
 Suberone, 28  
 Suberyl alcohol, 28  
 Suberylene, 28  
     glycollic acid, 29  
 Substantive dyes, 338  
 Substituted anthracenes, 423  
     anthraquinones, 425  
     aromatic mono-carboxylic acids,  
     209  
     benzoyl formic acids, 258  
     fluoresceins, 366  
     naphthalenes, 395  
     naphthoic acids, 408  
     naphthols, 401  
     naphthoquinones, 404  
     naphthylamines, 397  
 Succinamil, 91  
 Succinanic acid, 91  
 Succinic acid, 465  
     anhydride, 437, 441  
     phenylhydrazilic ester, 129  
 Succinimide, 438, 441, 462  
 Succino-rhodamine, 367  
     succinic acid, 244, 305  
         diethyl ester, 305  
         methyl ester, 305  
     ester, 307  
 Succinyldiphenylhydrazide, 129  
     phenylhydrazine, 129  
 Sulphamine benzoic acid, 216  
 Sulphanilic acid, 137  
 Sulphanilide, 80  
 Sulphazides, 119  
     hydrylchlorstyrene, 465  
 Sulphinic acids, 134, 138  
 Sulpho-acid indols, 468  
     acids, 133  
     benzene azophenol, 156  
     disulphide, 139  
     sulphide, 139  
     benzide, 140  
     benzoic acid, 216  
 Sulphobenzoic anil, 216  
     camphoric acid, 332  
     camphylic acid, 332  
     carbanilamide, 87  
     carbanile, 89  
     cinnamic acid, 278  
     hydraziacetic ester, 445  
     hydrazine-cinnamic acid, 277  
     isophthalic acid, 242  
 Sulphones, 134, 139  
 Sulphonic acids, 133, 398  
     of phenol, 156  
     phosphazobenzene chloride, 81  
     phthalic acids, 241  
     quinolines, 547  
     succinyl, 438, 441  
     terephthalic acid, 243  
 Sulphovinic acid, 506  
 Sulphoxylphenyl-p-sulphoxylphenylhydra-  
     zono-pyrazolon-carboxylic acid, 490  
 Sulphurized azo-dyes, 137  
 Sulphydrobenzothiazole, 157, 508  
     benzoxazole, 153  
     derivatives, 498  
 Sultams, 399  
 Sultones, 403  
 Sylvic acid, 334  
 Sylvan, 448  
 Sylvestrene, 312  
 Symmetrical azo-bodies, 112  
     constitution, 30  
     structure, 33  
 Synbenzaldoxime-N-methyl ether, 186  
     phenylglyoxylic acid oxime, 258  
 Syringaic acid, 231  
*Syringia vulgaris*, 430  
 Syringin, 430
- T.**
- TABULAR OXYLEPIDENE, 381  
 Tanacetene, 312, 319  
 Tanacetophorone, 26  
*Tanacetum vulgare*, 319  
 Tanacetyl alcohol, 316  
 Tannic acid penta-acetate, 231  
     acids, 231  
 Tannin, 231  
     of coffee, 232  
     of oak, 232  
 Tartrazine, 490  
 Tartrazinic acid, 490  
 Taurine, 137  
 Teraconic acid, 324  
     crylic acid, 324  
 Terebic acid, 319, 324  
 Terephthalaldehyde, 233  
     dioxime, 233  
     aldehydic acid, 238

- Terephthalic acid, 243  
     phthalophenone, 351  
 Terpadienes, 309  
 Terpan, 309  
     group, 310  
 Terpene alcohols, 308  
     ketones, 308  
 Terpenenes, 312  
 Terpenes, 290, 293, 307  
 Terpenogen group, 309  
 Terpenylic acid, 324  
 Terpene, 314  
     hydrate, 310, 314  
 Terpinene nitrosite, 312  
 Terpineol, 316  
 Terpinolene, 312, 317  
 Tertiary alcohols, 31  
     amyl phenol, 145  
     butyl phenol, 145  
     carvomenthol, 314  
     menthol, 314  
     naphthylamines, 396  
     phenylamines, 77  
 Tetra-alkylic para-phenylene - diamines, 116  
     amidobenzene, 97  
         diphenyl-azo-phenylene, 95  
         phenylene-bisazobenzene, 116  
     benzyl urea, 180  
     brombenzoquinone, 167  
         cyclohexandion, 297  
         dichlorfluorescein, 366  
         fluorescein, 366  
         phenolphthalein, 364  
             diethyl ethers, 365  
             mono - ethers, 365  
             oxime, 365  
         quinone, 163  
         terephthalic acid, 243  
 Tetrabromtetrachlorfluorescein, 366  
     thiophene, 454  
     xylene, 233  
     carboxylic acids, 265  
     chlorbenzoquinone, 167  
         hydrindone, 387, 393  
         ketodihydrobenzene, 299  
         phenol, 149  
         n-phenylpyrrol, 459  
         phthalic acid, 241  
         pyridine, 533  
         pyrrol, 459  
         quinone, 45, 163  
         terephthalic acid, 243  
         tetraketohexamethylene, 170, 297  
         thiodiphenylamine, 584  
         phene, 454  
 Tetrachlortriketopentamethylene, 170  
     xylene oxide, 232, 463  
 Tetracid methan alcohols, 316  
     derivatives, formation of, 69  
     ethyl benzene, 57  
         phenosafranine, 603  
     hydric phenols, 166  
     hydroacids, 47  
         benzene, 293  
             dibromide, 293  
             nitrosate, 293  
             nitroso chloride, 293  
         benzoic acid, 300  
         carbazole, 468, 477  
             carboxylic acid, 478  
         carveol, 314  
         carvone, 318  
         carvylamine, 317  
         dicarboxylic acids, 303  
         oxyterephthalic acid, 244, 305  
         pentene tribromide, 312  
         phenyl, 335  
         furfurane, 451  
     fenchene, 324  
     glyoxalidines, 499  
     isoquinoline, 557  
     keto-quinazoline, 181  
     methyl-phenyl-furfurane, 451  
     naphthalene, 411  
         derivatives, 411  
     naphthoic acids, 413  
     naphthol, 412  
     naphthoquinolines, 553  
         quinone, 412  
     naphthylamines, 393, 412  
     naphthylene diamine, 412  
         dicarboxylic acid, 413  
         glycol, 392  
         oxide, 411, 412, 444  
         phenol, 412  
     naphtinolin, 379, 558  
     nicotinic acid methyl betaine, 565  
     oxyterephthalic acid, 304  
     phenol, 295  
     phenyl dimethyl pyrazole, 483  
     phthalazine, 586  
     phthalic acids, 303  
     picoline, 538  
     prehnitic acid, 307  
     pyrazole, 480  
         derivatives, 490  
     pyro-mellitic acid, 306  
     pyrrol, 461  
     quinaldine, 191, 470, 551  
     quinazoline, 591  
     quinoline, 465, 545, 551

- Tetrahydroquinone, 297  
     quinoxaline, 596  
     terephthalic acid, 303  
     thiophene - dicarboxylic acid, 438, 456  
     thioquinazoline, 181  
     toluene, 293  
     toluic acid, 301  
     iodofluorescein, 366  
     phthalic acid, 241  
     pyrrol, 459  
     terephthalic acid, 243  
     tetrachlorfluorescein, 366  
     methoxybenzyl isoquinoline, 576  
         diphthalyl, 376  
     methylamidophentiazimium chloride, 584  
     apionol, 166  
     benzenes, 55  
     benzoic acids, 196  
     diamido-azoxy-benzene, 112  
         benzhydrol, 344  
         benzophenone, 78, 348  
         diphenyl methane oxide, 524  
         diphenyl phthalide, 363  
         imidobenzophenone hydrochloride, 348  
         thiobenzophenone, 348  
         triphenyl carbinol, 354  
         triphenyl methane, 352  
         triphenyl methane carboxylic acid, 362  
         xanthene, 524, 525  
         xanthone, 525  
     dipyrrol, 467, 468  
     methylene carboxylic acid, 24  
         diglyoxylic acid, 24  
         piperidine, 453  
         sulphide, 442  
     group, 24  
     imide, 480  
         pyrrolidine, 438  
     imine, 461  
     oxide, 437, 444  
     indol, 467, 468  
     methyl-benzoxypiperidine carboxylic ester, 540  
     paraileucaniline, 358  
     phenols, 145  
     phenylglyoxylic acid, 259  
     piperazine, 594  
     pyrazine, 593  
     pyrazole, 482, 483  
     pyridine, 532  
     violet, 358
- Tetramidoanisol, 154  
     diphenyl, 338  
 Tetramines, 97  
     nitroanthraquinone, 432  
     benzophenone, 347  
     diphenyl acetic acid, 369  
         methane, 393  
     naphthalenes, 396  
     phenol, 151  
     oxyanthraquinone, 429  
     benzaldehydes, 420  
     benzene, 166  
         tetraacetyl ester, 166  
     biphenyls, 339  
     cinnamic acid, 283  
     diphenyl acetic acid, 369  
     naphthalene, 404  
     quinone, 170  
     phenylaldine, 593  
         crotonaldehyde, 381  
         dihydropyridazine, 483, 585  
     phenylene-ethylene dioxide, 524  
         furfurane, 415  
         ethane, 378  
         ethane dicarboxylic acid, 378  
         ethylene, 378  
         furfurane, 449  
         guanidine, 89  
         hydrazine, 117  
         methylene glycol, 378  
         pyrazine, 593  
         pyridines, 533  
         pyrrol, 459  
         silicon, 133  
         succinic acid, 378  
         tetrazone, 131  
         thiophene, 454  
         thiourea, 87  
         urea, 85  
     salicylide, 225  
     tolylloxamide, 91  
 Tetrazine group, 442  
 Tetrazines, 606  
 Tetrazinic acid, 490  
 Tetrazole group, 441  
 Tetrazoles, 437, 480, 519  
 Tetrazolium, 520  
 Tetrazones, 64, 121, 131  
 Tetrazylazolamide, 520  
     hydrazine, 520  
 Tetroxy terephthalic ester, 306  
 Thebaine, 576  
 Thebenine, 576  
 Thebenol, 576  
 Thetine, 440  
 Thiacetamide, 504  
 Thialdines, 608  
 Thialdolalanine, 79, 440  
 Thianthrene, 160

- Thiazines, 582  
 Thiazole, 437  
     carboxylic acids, 506  
     group, 441, 443  
 Thiazoles, 479, 480, 502, 504, 511  
 Thiazoline-mercaptan, 506  
 Thiēnone, 455  
 Thiēnyl acrylic acid, 455  
     diphenyl methane, 454  
     glyoxylic acid, 455  
     indol, 468  
     methyl ketone, 455, 468  
     phenyl ketone, 455  
     sulphurate, 455  
     triphenyl methane, 454  
 Thioacetanilide, 83  
     aldol aniline, 79  
     anilides, 83  
     anilines, 158  
     anisol, 158  
     benzaldehyde, 184  
     benzamide, 204  
     benzanilide, 204  
     benzimidazole, 502  
     benzoic acid, 199  
     benzophenone, 346  
     benzoxazole, 504  
     biazole group, 441  
     biazoles, 517  
     biazolines, 88, 479, 480, 517  
     carbanilic ethyl ester, 86  
     carbonyl-thiocarbanilide, 446  
         ureas, 446  
     chlorstyrolene, 269  
     coumarin, 281  
     coumazonones, 581  
     coumothiazone, 583  
     cresol, 157  
     cumazone, 181  
     cumothiazone, 181  
     cymene, 145, 157  
     diazines, 608  
         azoles, 479, 480  
         glycol-anilic acid, 84  
         glycollic anhydride, 442  
         phenylamine, 80, 158, 160, 583  
         imides, 158  
     flavin, 508  
     formanilide, 83  
     ketotetrahydroquinazoline, 592  
     methyl phenyl-carbaminatē, 87  
     monazoles, 504  
     naphthene, 465  
     naphthol, 404  
 Thionbenzoic acid, 199  
     esal, 370, 454  
 Thioniac, 584  
     dyes, 80  
 Thionol, 584  
 Thionylamines, 80  
     anilines, 73, 80  
     benzene, 139  
     benzidine, 337  
     bromaniline, 80  
     chloraniline, 80  
     nitraniline, 80  
     phenylhydrazone, 125  
     toluidine, 80  
     oxybiazolines, 516  
     phenaldehyde, 455, 465  
 Thiophene, 48, 257, 437, 438, 441, 443,  
     447, 452, 456, 462, 472,  
     479  
     alcohol, 455  
     carboxylic acids, 455  
     dicarboxylic acid, 455  
     of crystallization, 351  
     sulphonic acids, 455  
     tetracarboxylic methyl ester,  
         456  
     phenin, 655  
     phenol, 156  
         ethyl ether-sulphonic acid,  
             105  
         sulphonic acid, 105  
     phenyl acetal, 157  
         acetone, 157  
         amine, 157  
     phthalic anhydride, 240, 463  
     phthalide, 235, 463  
     resorcinol, 161  
     salol, 224  
     tetrahydroglyoxalines, 499  
         quinazolines, 591  
     tolene, 454  
     toluidine, 158  
     triazoles, 480, 518  
     urazole, 514  
 Thioxanthenes, 526  
 Thioxanthone, 526  
 Thioxenes, 454  
 Thioxycyanidine, 605  
 Three-membered heterocyclic substances,  
     440, 444  
 Thujamenthol, 314  
     menthone, 319  
     oil, 319  
 Thujen, 312  
 Thujonamine, 317  
 Thujone, 319  
 Thujyl alcohol, 316  
 Thymodialdehyde, 233  
 Thymoll, 169  
 Thymol, 144, 318  
 Thymooxycumic acid, 226  
     quinone, 144, 169  
 Thymotic acid, 226  
 Thymotin alcohol, 218

- Thymotin aldehyde, 219  
*Thymus vulgaris*, 144  
 Tin diphenyl chloride, 133  
     tetraphenyl, 133  
 Tolallyl sulphide, 375  
 Tolane, 368, 371  
     dichloride, 375  
     sulphide, 375, 444  
     tetrachloride, 375  
 Tolazone, 587  
 Tolidine disulphonic acid, 339  
 Tolidines, 118, 338  
 Tolimidazole-carboxylic acid, 501  
 Tolu balsam, 274  
     benzylamine, 179  
 Toluene, 49, 52, 53  
     azo-naphthalene, 398  
     disulphonic acid, 136  
     sulphamide, 135  
     sulphinic acid, 139  
     sulphonic acids, 135  
     hydroquinone, 70, 163  
 Toluic acid, 191, 194, 394  
     aldehyde, 184  
     anhydride, 198  
     formaldehyde, 249  
     idines, 62, 75  
 Tolunitriles, 202  
     phenazine, 598  
     piaselenol, 518  
     quinaldine, 546  
     quinone, 152, 168  
         dioxime, 70, 172  
     quinoxaline, 596  
     safranine, 603  
     tolyl-dihydrotriazine, 606  
 Toluylazido-ethoxy benzene, 511  
     chloride, 198  
 Toluylene, 370  
     acetamidine, 501  
     blue, 174  
     diamines, 95  
     glycol, 371  
     hydrate, 371  
     red, 95, 443, 580  
         group, 599  
     urea, 502  
 Tolly-acetic acid, 196  
     acetonitrile, 203  
     acrylic acid, 278  
     azimidotoluene, 511  
     carbinol, 177  
     glyoxylic acid, 259  
     hydrazines, 120  
     hydrazine sulphonic acid, 135  
     hydroxylamines, 70  
     isocyanides, 83  
     methyl ketone, 56  
     phenyl ketone, 345  
 Tolly-phthalide, 349  
     phosphor ebiloride, 132  
     pyrazole, 483  
     sulphamic acid, 80  
     tetrazole, 520  
     trianilidophosphonium chloride, 132  
 Tolypyrrine, 443, 488  
 Tonka bean, 281  
 Trans-benzene hexachloride, 293  
 Triacetyl benzene, 233  
     gallic acid, 230  
     acid menthan alcohols, 315  
     amido-azobenzene, 95, 116  
         benzoic acid, 214  
         cyanidine, 605  
         diphenyl, 338  
             tolyl carbinol, 355  
             methane, 353  
     phenol, 154  
     phloroglucin, 165  
     toluene, 97  
     triphenyl-acetic nitrile, 369  
         amine, 80  
         carbinols, 355  
         methanes, 352  
 amines, 97  
 azine group, 442  
 azines, 604  
 azole carboxylic acid, 513  
 azoles, 479, 480, 504, 511  
 azolons, 513  
 azsulpholes, 441, 480, 518  
 benzal-diamine, 184  
 benzamide, 199  
 benzoyl hydroxylamine, 207  
     methane, 379  
 benzylamine, 178  
     hydroxylamine, 180  
     urea, 180  
 bromaceto-benzoic acid, 265  
     aniline, 92  
     fluorane, 365  
     glyoxaline, 498  
     hemimellitene, 63  
     mesitylene, 63  
     phenylazocarboxylic acid, 104  
     pseudocumene, 63, 292  
         cumenol, 149  
     pyrogallol, 164  
     quinone, 163  
     resorcinol, 161  
     terpan, 312  
     thiophene, 454  
     carbazole carbinol, 359, 477  
     carboxylic acids, 245, 265  
     chloraceto-benzoic acid, 265  
         pentachlor-butyrlic acid, 46  
     amido-pyridine, 533

oraniline, 92  
 benzene hexachloride, 293  
 cyanidine, 605  
 dinitrobenzene, 68  
 ethidine acetophenone, 288  
 isoquinoline, 555  
 methylphenyl orthophosphoric acid  
   chloride, 224  
 naphthalenes, 395  
 orcin, 162  
 oxymethyl coumarilic acid, 464  
 pentene dioxycarboxylic acid,  
   143  
 phenol, 149  
 phenomalic acid, 45  
 phosphanil, 81  
 pyridine, 533  
 pyrogallol, 164  
 quinoline, 91, 547  
 quinone, 163  
 tetraketo-hexamethylene, 170, 297  
 triketopentamethylene, 170  
 vinyl benzoic acid, 393  
 derivatives, formation of, 69  
 ethyl cyanidine, 604  
   gallic ether acids, 230  
   oxyhydroquinone ether-acid,  
     231  
   phenyl silicide, 133  
   pyrogallol carboxylic acid, 230  
 furyldihydroglyoxaline, 499  
 gonelline, 565  
 hydrazine derivatives, 359  
 hydric aromatic alcohols, 232  
   phenols, 164  
 iodstyrolene, 267  
 ketocyclopentan-dicarboxylic ester, 28  
   hexamethylene, 165  
     dicarboxylic ester,  
       306  
   hydrindene, 388  
   piperidine, 535  
   pyrolidone, 462  
 ketones, 233, 250  
 ketotetrahydroquinoline, 549  
 mellitic acid, 245  
 mesic acid, 55, 136, 245  
   trimethyl ester, 245  
 methyl amidophenol, 154  
   ammonium phenol, 153  
   benzoic acid, 195  
   cyclohexane, 298  
   dihydroquinoline, 471  
 methylene, 22  
   benzamidine, 204, 205  
   carbanilide, 85  
   carboxylic acids, 22  
   diamine derivatives, 482  
   dicarboxylic acid, 23

Trimethylene imide, 438, 440, 446  
   oxide, 437, 440, 446  
   piperylium bromide, 540  
   sulphide, 438  
   tricarboxylic acid, 23  
   ethyl benzene, 56  
   gallic ether acids, 230  
   glyoxaline, 498  
   hexamethylene, 292  
   indol, 468  
   indolinon, 471  
   isoxazole, 494  
   keto-hexamethylene, 296  
     hexene, 298, 307  
   oxyindolin, 471  
   oxytetrahydronaphthylene am-  
     monium hydroxide, 412  
   piperazine, 594  
   pyrazine, 593  
   pyrazole, 482  
   pyrazoline, 486  
   pyridine, 532  
     dicarboxylic acid, 537  
   quinolines, 546  
   salicylic aldehyde, 219  
   thiazole, 505  
   tricarballic acid, 333  
   phenyl-pararosaniline, 359  
 nitraniline, 93  
 nitrobenzenes, 67  
   butyl toluene, 68  
   chlorbenzene, 67, 150  
   cresol, 151  
   diethyl hydroquinone, 164  
   phenyl tolyl methane, 351  
   naphthalenes, 396  
   naphthol, 401  
   oxytoluic acid, 226  
   phenol, 150  
   phenyl acetoacetic ester, 260  
     malonic ester, 262  
     methane, 351  
   phloroglucin, 165  
   pseudocumene, 68  
   resorcinol, 161  
     diethyl ester, 161  
 nitroso-phloroglucin, 165  
   trimethyl benzene, 68  
   phenyl carbinol, 353  
 nitroxylenes, 68  
 nitroxylidine, 93  
 oxy alcohol acids, 256  
   anthraquinone carboxylic acid, 429  
   anthraquinones, 428  
   aurine, 361  
   benzaldehydes, 220  
   cinnamic acid, 283  
   dicarboxylic acids, 244  
   phenyl tolyl carbinol, 361

- Trioxyhexahydrocymene**, 315, 316  
   hexamethylene, 165, 295  
   methylantraquinone, 428  
     isocarbostyryl, 557  
   naphthalenes, 404  
   phthalic acid, 244  
   pyridines, 535  
   quinoline, 549  
   triphenyl methane, 359, 360  
   xanthone, 525  
**phenazine oxazine**, 604  
   benzene, 189  
   dioxazine, 582  
**phenyl acetic acid**, 369  
   acrylic ester, 378  
   amine, 71, 80  
   arsine, 132  
   benzene, 342  
   benzyl-glyoxaline, 496  
   biuret, 86  
   bromethanon, 377  
     methane, 353  
     pyrazole, 483  
   carbinol, 353  
     amine, 353  
     carboxylic acid, 363  
     carboxylic acid lac-  
       tone, 362  
     chloride, 353  
     phenylamine, 353  
   chlormethane, 353  
   croto lactone, 381  
   cyanidine, 604  
     urate, 89  
     urtriamide, 90  
   dihydroglyoxaline, 184, 497,  
     499  
     pyrazine, 585  
   ethane, 377  
   ethanon, 377  
   ethoxyethanon, 377  
   furfurane, 449  
   glyoxaline, 497, 498  
   guanidine, 87, 88  
   isocyanurate, 89  
     melamine, 89, 90  
**phenylum iodide**, 78  
   melamine, 90, 351  
   methane carboxylic acid 361,  
     362  
     group, 351  
     potassium, 351  
   methylamine, 353  
     ethane, 378  
     pyrazolidine, 490  
**phenylol methane**, 360  
   osotriazole, 509  
   oxyethanon, 377  
   pararosanine, 359
- Triphenyl phosphine**, 132  
   phosphin-oxide, 132  
   phosphorbetaine, 446  
   propane, 378  
   pyrazole, 483  
   pyrazoline, 486  
   pyridazine, 585  
   rosanine, 80  
     hydrochloride, 35  
   stibine, 133  
   tetrazolium hydroxide, 206  
     hydroglyoxaline, 499  
   thiazole, 505  
   thiurea, 87  
   triazole, 512  
     brompyrazoline, 486  
   urea, 85  
   vinyl alcohol, 377
- Tripyrrol**, 457  
   quinolyl methane, 547  
   quinoyl, 171, 297  
   resorcinol, 161  
   sazo-compounds, 112  
   thioaldehyde, 442  
     benzaldehyde, 184  
     carbonic ethylene ester, 478  
     cinnamic aldehyde, 272  
     vanillin, 220  
     toluene sulphonamide, 136
- Tropa-cocaine**, 569  
**Tropaeoline**, 138  
**Tropaeoline Y**, 156  
**Tropic acid**, 252  
**Tropelnes**, 567  
**Tropine**, 253, 541, 567, 568  
   carboxylic acid, 570  
   group, 567
- True terpenes**, 308  
**Truxillic acids**, 569  
**Turpentine oil**, 311, 322  
**Twin nuclei**, 29  
**Tyrosine**, 253
- U.**
- ULEXINE**, 565  
**Umbellic acid**, 282, 283  
**Umbelliferone**, 160, 283, 463  
**Unsymmetrical azo-bodies**, 112  
**Uracil derivatives**, 589  
**Uramido-benzoic acid**, 212  
**Urazine**, 607  
**Urazoles**, 514  
**Urea**, 253  
   chlorides, 85  
**Ureides**, 86  
**Ureines**, 374, 499  
**Urine indican**, 469

green, 359  
 cid, 162  
   acid, 433  
 acid, 451  
 cid, 55, 242  
 c acid, 537

## V.

OHYDROQUINONE, 221  
   lactam, 438  
   lactone, 437  
   acetophenone, 250  
   : acid, 228  
   l, 219, 270, 272  
   nic acid, 270  
   oxime, 220  
   l alcohol, 218  
   ics, 334  
   c acid, 228, 270  
   l, 159  
   yl-carboxylic acid, 259, 270  
   um alkaloids, 575  
   amine, 317  
   a blue, 348  
     orange, 151  
   nic acid, 23  
   nisol, 269  
   enzene, 49, 266  
   enzoic acid, 273  
   liacetonalcamines, 540  
   guaiacol, 269  
   phenol, 269  
   phenyl acetic acid, 273  
   pyridine, 533  
   rimethylene, 22  
   iline, 356  
   acid, 382

## W.

R BLUE, 359

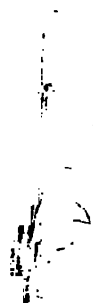
Wool-black, 400  
 Wormwood oil, 319

## X.

XANTHENES, 410, 524  
 Xanthochelidonic acid, 522  
   gallol, 164  
 Xanthogen anilide, 86  
 Xanthogenic esters, 105  
 Xanthone, 348, 362, 524  
 Xanthoxalanil, 462  
 Xanthydrol, 524  
   ether, 524  
 Xenylamine, 336  
 Xylene, 49, 52, 54, 266  
   alcohol, 232  
   dichlor-dimalonic esters, 265  
   sulphonic acids, 136  
   sulphide, 232  
   sulphonic acids, 136  
   tetrachloride, 233  
 Xylenols, 144, 149, 298  
 Xylic acid, 191, 195  
 Xylidic acid, 243  
 Xylidines, 76  
 Xylonitrile, 202  
   quinone, 169  
 Xylorcin, 161  
 Xyllylamine, 179  
 Xylylene alcohols, 232  
   diamines, 95  
   dimalonic tetra-ethyl esters, 265  
   imine, 463  
   sulphide, 463  
 Xyllyl glyoxylic acid, 259

## Y.

YELLOW CORALLIN, 361  
 Ylangol, 310





# *MEDICAL BOOKS*

NOTE SUBJECT INDEX  
P A G E S I X

THERE HAVE BEEN SOLD MORE  
THAN 165,000 COPIES OF  
GOULD'S DICTIONARIES

SEE PAGES  
12 AND 13

*P. BLAKISTON'S SON & COMPANY*  
*Publishers of Medical and Scientific Books*  
*1012 WALNUT STREET, PHILADELPHIA*

# Montgomery's Gynecology

---

New Edition—Just Ready

---

A modern comprehensive Text-Book. By EDWARD E. MONTGOMERY, M.D., Professor of Gynecology in Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia; Gynecologist to the Jefferson and St. Joseph's Hospitals, etc. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 539 Illustrations, many of which are from original sources. Octavo. Cloth, \$5.00; Leather, \$6.00

\* \* This is a systematic modern treatise on Diseases of Women. The author's aim has been to produce a book that will be thorough and practical in every particular. The illustrations, nearly all of which are from original sources, have for the most part been drawn by special artists who, for a number of months, devoted their sole attention to this work. The present edition has been thoroughly revised.

"The book is one that can be recommended to the student, to the general practitioner—who must sometimes be a gynecologist to a certain extent whether he will or not—and to the specialist, as an ideal and in every way complete work on the gynecology of to-day—a practical work for practical workers."—*The Journal of the American Medical Association*.

---

# Byford's Gynecology

---

Third Revised Edition

---

A MANUAL FOR STUDENTS AND PHYSICIANS

---

By HENRY T. BYFORD, M.D., Professor of Gynecology and Clinical Gynecology in the College of Physicians and Surgeons of Chicago; Professor of Clinical Gynecology, Women's Medical School of Northwestern University, and in Post-Graduate Medical School, etc. Third Edition, Enlarged. 363 Illustrations, many of which are from original drawings and several of which are Colored. 12mo.

Cloth, \$3.00

"As a book to help the student to quickly review what ought to be gotten up, so as to be prepared for the early examination, it is of great service. Such a book would also make a most excellent text-book for the college class room."—*Virginia Medical Semi-Monthly*, Richmond.

## By JAMES TYSON, M.D.,

Professor of Medicine, University of Pennsylvania,

Physician to the Pennsylvania Hospital, etc.

### **The Practice of Medicine. Third Edition.**

A Text-Book for Physicians and Students, with Special Reference to Diagnosis and Treatment. With Colored Plates and many other Illustrations. Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 134 Illustrations. 8vo. 1240 pages.

Cloth, \$5.50; Leather, \$6.50

\* \* This edition has been entirely reset from new type. The author has revised it carefully and thoroughly, and added much new material and new illustrations.

"We are firmly convinced that at the present time Dr. Tyson's book on Practice can be most heartily commended to both the practitioner and student as a safe, reliable, and thoroughly up-to-date guide in the practice of medicine."—*The Therapeutic Gazette*.

"The clinical descriptions are clear and full, and the methods of treatment described are those generally recognized as being the most modern and satisfactory."—*The London Lancet*.

### **Guide to the Examination of Urine. Tenth Edition.**

For the Use of Physicians and Students. With Colored Plate and Numerous Illustrations Engraved on Wood. Tenth Edition, Revised, Enlarged, and in many parts entirely rewritten. Cloth, \$1.50

\* \* A French translation of this book has been published in Paris.

"The book is probably more widely and generally known and appreciated than any of its similars in subject and scope."—*New York Medical Journal*.

"The book is a reliable one, and should find a place in the library of every practitioner and student of medicine."—*Boston Medical and Surgical Journal*.

### **Handbook of Physical Diagnosis. Fourth Edition.**

Revised and Enlarged. With two Colored Plates and 55 other Illustrations. 298 pages. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.50

"Like everything else emanating from this distinguished author this little book is replete with practical information from beginning to end."—*The Chicago Medical Recorder*.

"The author approaches his subject from a practical point of view and the little work will prove a good friend to the student."—*The American Journal of the Medical Sciences*.

NEW THIRD EDITION—NOW READY

# MORRIS' ANATOMY

Rewritten—Revised—Improved

WITH MANY NEW ILLUSTRATIONS

Out of 102 of the leading medical schools 60 recommend "Morris." It contains many features of special advantage to students. It is modern, up-to-date in every respect. It has been carefully revised, the articles on Osteology and Nervous System having been rewritten. Each copy contains the colored illustrations and a Thumb Index.

Octavo. With 846 illustrations, of which 267 are printed in colors.

CLOTH, \$6.00; LEATHER, \$7.00

"The ever-growing popularity of the book with teachers and students is an index of its value, and it may safely be recommended to all interested."—From *The Medical Record*, New York.

"Of all the text-books of moderate size on human anatomy in the English language, Morris is undoubtedly the most up-to-date and accurate."—From *The Philadelphia Medical Journal*.

---

## McMurrich—Embryology

THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE HUMAN BODY

With 270 Illustrations

A Text-Book for Medical Students. By J. PLAYFAIR  
McMURRICH, Professor of Anatomy, Medical Department,  
University of Michigan. 527 pages. Cloth, \$3.00

NINTH EDITION

**POTTER'S MATERIA MEDICA,  
PHARMACY, AND THERAPEUTICS**

**An Exhaustive Handbook**

Including the Action of Medicines, Special Therapeutics of Disease, Official and Practical Pharmacy, and Minute Directions for Prescription Writing, etc. Including over 650 Prescriptions and Formulæ. By SAMUEL O. L. POTTER, M.A., M.D., M.R.C.P. (Lond.), formerly Professor of the Principles and Practice of Medicine, Cooper Medical College, San Francisco; Major and Brigade Surgeon, U. S. Vol. Ninth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 8vo.

*With Thumb Index in each copy.*

Cloth, \$5.00; Leather, \$6.00

\* \* This is the most complete and trustworthy book for the use of students and physicians. Students who purchase it will find it to contain a vast deal of information not in the usual text-books arranged in the most practical manner for facilitating study and reference. It cannot be surpassed as a physician's working book.

**WHITE AND WILCOX. Materia Medica,  
Pharmacy, Pharmacology, and Thera-  
peutics. Fifth Edition.**

A Handbook for Students. By W. HALE WHITE, M.D., F.R.C.P., etc., Physician to, and Lecturer on Materia Medica and Therapeutics at, Guy's Hospital, etc. Fifth American Edition, Revised by REYNOLD W. WILCOX, M.A., M.D., LL.D., Professor of Clinical Medicine and Therapeutics at the New York Post-Graduate Medical School and Hospital; Visiting Physician, St. Mark's Hospital; Assistant Visiting Physician, Bellevue Hospital. 12mo.

Cloth, \$3.00; Leather, \$3.50

## SUBJECT INDEX.

Gould's Medical Dictionaries, - - Pages 12, 13  
 Morris' Anatomy, - - - - Page 4  
 Compendis for Students, - - - - Page 27

SUBJECT.	PAGE	SUBJECT.	PAGE
Alimentary Canal (see Surgery) .....	24	Medical Jurisprudence ....	18
Anatomy .....	7	Mental Therapeutics .....	8
Anesthetics .....	18, 19	Microscopy .....	18
Autopsies (see Pathology) ..	20	Milk .....	8, 10
Bacteriology .....	8	Miscellaneous .....	18
Bandaging (see Surgery) ..	24	Nervous Diseases .....	19
Blood, Examination of ..	8	Nose .....	25
Brain .....	8	Nursing .....	20
Bright's Disease .....	26	Obstetrics .....	20
Chemistry. Physics .....	9	Ophthalmology .....	14
Children, Diseases of .....	11	Organotherapy .....	18
Climatology .....	19	Osteology (see Anatomy) ..	7
Clinical Charts .....	25	Pathology .....	20
Compendis .....	27	Pharmacy .....	21
Consumption (see Lungs) ..	16	Physical Diagnosis .....	11
Cyclopedia of Medicine ..	13	Physical Training .....	17
Dentistry .....	11	Physiology .....	22
Diabetes (see Urin. Organs) ..	25	Pneumotherapy .....	19
Diagnosis .....	11	Poisons (see Toxicology) ..	18
Diagrams (see Anatomy) ..	8	Practice of Medicine .....	22
Dictionaries, Cyclopedias ..	12	Prescription Books (Pharmacy) .....	21
Diet and Food .....	13	Refraction (see Eye) .....	14
Disinfection .....	16	Rest .....	19
Dissectors .....	7	Sanitary Science .....	16
Ear .....	14	Serum-Therapy .....	17
Electricity .....	14	Skin .....	23
Embryology .....	7	Spectacles (see Eye) .....	14
Emergencies .....	24	Spine (see Nervous Diseases) .....	19
Eye .....	14	Stomach .....	23
Fevers .....	15	Students' Compendis .....	27
Food .....	13	Surgery and Surgical Diseases .....	24
Formularies .....	21	Technological Books .....	9
Gynecology .....	15	Temperature Charts .....	25
Hay Fever .....	25	Therapeutics .....	17
Heart .....	15	Throat .....	25
Histology .....	15	Toxicology .....	18
Hydrotherapy .....	19	Tumors (see Surgery) .....	24
Hygiene .....	16	U. S. Pharmacopœia .....	22
Hypnotism .....	8	Urinary Organs .....	25
Insanity .....	8	Urine .....	25
Intestines .....	23	Veneral Diseases .....	26
Latin, Medical (see Pharmacy) .....	21	Veterinary Medicine .....	26
Life Insurance .....	19	Visiting Lists, Physicians' (Send for Circular.) ..	16
Lungs .....	16	Water Analysis .....	16
Massage .....	17	Women, Diseases of .....	15
Materia Medica .....	17		
Mechanotherapy .....	17		

Self-Examination for Medical Students. 3500 Questions on Medical Subjects, with References to Standard Works in which the correct replies will be found. Together with Questions from State Examining Boards. 3d Ed. Paper Cover, 10 etc.

**SPECIAL NOTE.**—The prices given in this catalogue are net; no discount can be allowed retail purchasers under any consideration. This rule has been established in order that everyone will be treated alike, a general reduction in former prices having been made to meet previous retail discounts. Upon receipt of the advertised price any book will be forwarded by mail or express, all charges prepaid.

## ANATOMY. EMBRYOLOGY.

- MORRIS.** Text-Book of Anatomy. Third Revised and Enlarged Edition. 846 Illustrations, 287 of which are printed in colors. *Thumb Index in Each Copy.* Cloth, \$6.00; Leather, \$7.00  
 "The ever-growing popularity of the book with teachers and students is an index of its value."—*Medical Record, New York.*
- BROOMELL.** Anatomy and Histology of the Human Mouth and Teeth. 2d Edition, Enlarged. 337 Illus. Cloth, \$4.50
- DAVISON.** Mammalian Anatomy. With Special Reference to the Cat. 108 Illustrations. \$1.50
- DEAVER.** Surgical Anatomy. A Treatise on Anatomy in its Application to Medicine and Surgery. With 499 very handsome full-page Illustrations Engraved from Original Drawings made by special Artists from dissections prepared for the purpose. Three vols. By *Subscription only.*  
 Half Morocco or Sheep, \$30.00; Half Russia, \$33.00
- GORDINIER.** Anatomy of the Central Nervous System. With 271 Illustrations, many of which are original. Cloth, \$6.00
- HEATH.** Practical Anatomy. 9th Edition. 321 Illus. \$4.25
- HOLDEN.** Anatomy. A Manual of Dissections. Revised by A. HAWSON, M.D., Demonstrator of Anatomy, Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia. 320 handsome Illustrations. 7th Ed. In two compact 12mo volumes. 850 pages. Large New Type.  
 Vol. I. Scalp—Face—Orbit—Neck—Throat—Thorax—Upper Extremity. \$1.50  
 Vol. II. Abdomen—Perineum—Lower Extremity—Brain—Eye—Ear—Mammary Gland—Scrotum—Testes. \$1.50
- HOLDEN.** Human Osteology. Comprising a Description of the Bones, with Colored Delineations of the Attachments of the Muscles. The General and Microscopical Structure of Bone and its Development. With Lithographic Plates and numerous Illustrations. 8th Edition. \$5.25
- HOLDEN.** Landmarks, Medical and Surgical. 4th Ed. .75
- HUGHES AND KEITH.** Dissections. With 527 Colored Plates and other Illustrations. In three parts.  
 I, Upper and Lower Extremity. \$3.00  
 II, Abdomen—Thorax. \$3.00  
 III, Head—Neck—Central Nervous System. \$3.00
- LAZARUS-BARLOW.** Pathological Anatomy. 21 Plates and 171 other Illustrations. \$6.50
- McMURRICH.** Embryology. The Development of the Human Body. 276 Illustrations. \$3.00

- MARSHALL.** Physiological Diagrams. Eleven Life-Size Colored Diagrams (each seven feet by three feet seven inches). Designed for Demonstration before the Class.  
In Sheets, Unmounted, \$40.00; Backed with Muslin and Mounted on Rollers, \$60.00; Ditto, Spring Rollers, in handsome Walnut Wall Map Case, \$100.00; Single Plates—Sheets, \$5.00; Mounted, \$7.50. Explanatory Key, .50. *Purchaser must pay freight charges.*
- MINOT.** Laboratory Text-Book of Embryology. 218 Illustrations. \$4.50
- POTTER.** Compend of Anatomy, Including Visceral Anatomy. 7th Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Numerous Tables, 16 Plates and 188 other Illustrations. \$1.00; Interleaved, \$1.25
- TOMES.** Dental Anatomy. 6th Edition. *In Press.*
- WILSON.** Anatomy. 11th Edition. 429 Illus., 26 Plates. \$5.00
- YUTZY.** Guide to the Dissection of the Human Body. Based on Morris' Anatomy. Paper Cover, .25

### BACTERIOLOGY.

- CONN.** Agricultural Bacteriology. Including the Study of Bacteria as relating to Agriculture, Soil, Dairy and Food Products, Sewage, Domestic Animals, etc. Illustrated. \$2.50
- CONN.** Bacteria in Milk and Its Products. Designed for Students of Dairying, Boards of Health, Bacteriologists, etc. Illustrated. \$1.25
- EMERY.** Bacteriological Diagnosis. 2 Colored Plates and 32 other Illustrations. \$1.50
- HEWLETT.** Manual of Bacteriology. 75 Illustrations. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. \$4.00
- HEWLETT.** Serum-Therapy. Bacteriological Therapeutics and Vaccines. Illustrated. \$1.75
- SMITH.** Laboratory Exercises in Bacteriology. A Handbook for Students. Illustrated. \$1.50
- WILLIAMS.** Bacteriology. A Manual for Students. 99 Illustrations. 3d Edition, Revised. \$1.50

### BLOOD, Examination of.

- DA COSTA.** Clinical Hematology. A Practical Guide to the Examination of the Blood, with Reference to Diagnosis. Six Colored Plates and 48 other Illus. Cloth, \$5.00; Sheep, \$6.00

### BRAIN AND INSANITY (see also Nervous Diseases.)

- BARR.** Mental Defectives. Illustrated. *In Press.*
- BLACKBURN.** A Manual of Autopsies. Designed for the Use of Hospitals for the Insane. Illustrated. \$1.25
- CHASE.** General Paresis. Illustrated. \$1.75
- DERCUM.** Mental Therapeutics, Rest, Suggestion. *See Cohen, Physiologic Therapeutics, page 17.*
- GORDINIER.** The Gross and Minute Anatomy of the Central Nervous System. With full-page and other Illus. \$6.00

- IRELAND. The Mental Affections of Children. 2d Ed. \$4.00  
 LEWIS (BEVAN). Mental Diseases. A Text-Book having Special Reference to the Pathological Aspects of Insanity. 26 Lithographic Plates and other Illustrations. 2d Ed. \$7.00  
 MANN. Manual of Psychological Medicine. \$3.00  
 PERSHING. Diagnosis of Nervous and Mental Disease. Illustrated. \$1.25  
 REGIS. Mental Medicine. By H. M. BANNISTER, M.D. \$2.00  
 STEARNS. Mental Diseases. With a Digest of Laws Relating to Care of Insane. Illustrated. Cloth, \$2.75; Sheep, \$3.25  
 TUKE. Dictionary of Psychological Medicine. Giving the Definition of Terms and the Symptoms, Pathology, and Treatment of Mental Disorders. Two volumes. \$10.00  
 WOOD, H. C. Brain and Overwork. .40

## CHEMISTRY AND TECHNOLOGY.

*Special Catalogue of Chemical Books sent free upon application.*

- ALLEN. Commercial Organic Analysis. A Treatise on the Modes of Assaying the Various Organic Chemicals and Products Employed in the Arts, Manufactures, Medicine, etc., with Concise Methods for the Detection of Impurities, Adulterations, etc. 8vo. \$3.50  
 Vol. I. Alcohols, Neutral Alcoholic Derivatives, etc., Ethers, Vegetable Acids, Starch, Sugars, etc. 3d Edition. \$4.50  
 Vol. II, Part I. Fixed Oils and Fats, Glycerol, Explosives, etc. 3d Edition. \$3.50  
 Vol. II, Part II. Hydrocarbons, Mineral Oils, Lubricants, Benzenes, Naphthalenes and Derivatives, Creosote, Phenols, etc. 3d Edition. \$3.50  
 Vol. II, Part III. Terpenes, Essential Oils, Resins, Camphors, etc. 3d Edition. *In Press.*  
 Vol. III, Part I. Tannins, Dyes, and Coloring Matters. 3d Edition, Enlarged and Rewritten. Illustrated. \$4.50  
 Vol. III, Part II. The Amines, Hydrazines and Derivatives, Pyridine Bases. The Antipyretics, etc. Vegetable Alkaloids, Tea, Coffee, Cocoa, etc. 8vo 2d Edition. \$4.50  
 Vol. III, Part III. Vegetable Alkaloids, Non-Basic Vegetable Bitter Principles. Animal Bases, Animal Acids, Cyanogen Compounds, etc. 2d Edition, 8vo. \$4.50  
 Vol. IV. The Proteids and Albuminous Principles. 2d Edition. \$4.50  
 BAILEY AND CADY. Qualitative Chemical Analysis. \$1.25  
 BARTLEY. Medical and Pharmaceutical Chemistry. A Text-Book for Medical, Dental, and Pharmaceutical Students. With Illustrations, Glossary, and Complete Index. 5th Ed. \$3.00  
 BARTLEY. Clinical Chemistry. The Examination of Feces, Saliva, Gastric Juice, Milk, and Urine. New Edition. *In Press.*  
 BLOXAM. Chemistry, Inorganic and Organic. With Experiments. 9th Ed., Revised. 284 Engravings. \$6.00  
 BUNGE. Physiologic and Pathologic Chemistry. From the Fourth German Enlarged Edition. \$3.00  
 CALDWELL. Elements of Qualitative and Quantitative Chemical Analysis. 3d Edition, Revised. \$1.00

- BROOMELL.** Anatomy and Histology of the Human Mouth and Teeth. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 337 handsome Illustrations. Cloth, \$4.50; Leather, \$5.50
- FILLEBROWN.** Operative Dentistry. Illustrated. \$2.25
- GORGAS.** Dental Medicine. A Manual of Materia Medica and Therapeutics. 7th Edition. Cloth, \$4.00; Sheep, \$5.00
- GORGAS.** Questions and Answers for the Dental Student. Embracing all the subjects in the Curriculum of the Dental Student. Octavo. \$6.00
- HARRIS.** Principles and Practice of Dentistry. Including Anatomy, Physiology, Pathology, Therapeutics, Dental Surgery, and Mechanism. 13th Edition. Revised by F. J. S. GORGAS, M.D., D.D.S. 1250 Illus. Cloth, \$6.00; Leather, \$7.00
- HARRIS.** Dictionary of Dentistry. Including Definitions of Such Words and Phrases of the Collateral Sciences as Pertain to the Art and Practice of Dentistry. 6th Edition. Revised and Enlarged by FERDINAND J. S. GORGAS, M.D., D.D.S. Cloth, \$5.00; Leather, \$6.00
- RICHARDSON.** Mechanical Dentistry. 7th Edition. Thoroughly Revised and Enlarged by DR. GEO. W. WARREN. 691 Illustrations. Cloth, \$5.00; Leather, \$6.00
- SMITH.** Dental Metallurgy. 2d Edition. Illustrated. \$2.00
- TAFT.** Index of Dental Periodical Literature. \$2.00
- TOMES.** Dental Anatomy. 263 Illustrations. 6th Ed. *In Press.*
- TOMES.** Dental Surgery. 4th Edition. 289 Illus. \$4.00
- WARREN.** Compend of Dental Pathology and Dental Medicine. With a Chapter on Emergencies. 4th Edition. Illustrated. \$1.00; Interleaved, \$1.25
- WARREN.** Dental Prosthesis and Metallurgy. 129 Illus. New Edition, Enlarged and Revised. *Nearly Ready.*
- WHITE.** The Mouth and Teeth. Illustrated. .40

## DICTIONARIES. CYCLOPEDIAS.

- GOULD.** The Illustrated Dictionary of Medicine, Biology, and Allied Sciences. Being an Exhaustive Lexicon of Medicine and those Sciences Collateral to it: Biology (Zoology and Botany), Chemistry, Dentistry, Pharmacology, Microscopy, etc., with many useful Tables and numerous fine Illustrations. 1633 pages. Fifth Edition. Sheep or Half Morocco, \$10.00; with Thumb Index, \$11.00  
Half Russia, Thumb Index, \$12.00
- GOULD.** The Medical Student's Dictionary. 11th Edition. Illustrated. Including those Words and Phrases generally used in Medicine, with their Proper Pronunciation and Definition, Based on Recent Medical Literature. With Table of Eponymic Terms and Tests and Tables of the Bacilli, Micrococci, Mineral Springs, etc., of the Arteries, Muscles, Nerves, Ganglia, Plexuses, etc. Eleventh Edition. Enlarged and illustrated with a large number of Engravings. 840 pages. Half Morocco, \$2.50; with Thumb Index, \$3.00  
Flexible Leather, Burnished Edges, Thumb Index, \$3.50

**GOULD.** The Pocket Pronouncing Medical Lexicon. 4th Edition. (30,000 Medical Words Pronounced and Defined.) Containing all the Words, their Definition and Pronunciation, that the Medical, Dental, or Pharmaceutical Student Generally Comes in Contact with; also Elaborate Tables of Eponymic Terms, Arteries, Muscles, Nerves, Bacilli, etc., etc., a Dose List in both English and Metric Systems, etc., Arranged in a Most Convenient Form for Reference and Memorising. Fourth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 838 pages.  
Full Limp Leather, Gilt Edges, \$1.00; Thumb Index, \$1.25  
165,000 Copies of Gould's Dictionaries have been sold.

**GOULD AND PYLE.** Cyclopaedia of Practical Medicine and Surgery. Seventy-two Special Contributors. Illustrated. One Volume. A Concise Reference Handbook of Medicine, Surgery, Obstetrics, Materia Medica, Therapeutics, and the Various Specialties, with Particular Reference to Diagnosis and Treatment. Compiled under the Editorial Supervision of **GEORGE M. GOULD, M.D.**, Author of "An Illustrated Dictionary of Medicine," etc.; and **WALTER L. PYLE, M.D.**, Assistant Surgeon Wills Eye Hospital; formerly Editor "International Medical Magazine," etc., and Seventy-two Special Contributors. With many Illustrations. Large Square 8vo, to correspond with Gould's "Illustrated Dictionary."  
Full Sheep or Half Mor., \$10.00; with Thumb Index, \$11.00  
Half Russia, Thumb Index, \$12.00 net.

**GOULD AND PYLE.** Pocket Cyclopaedia of Medicine and Surgery. Based upon above book and uniform in size with "Gould's Pocket Dictionary."  
Full Limp Leather, Gilt Edges, \$1.00  
With Thumb Index, \$1.25

**HARRIS.** Dictionary of Dentistry. Including Definitions of Such Words and Phrases of the Collateral Sciences as Pertain to the Art and Practice of Dentistry. 6th Edition, Revised and Enlarged by **FREDERICK J. S. GORGAS, M.D., D.D.S.**  
Cloth, \$5.00; Leather, \$6.00

**LONGLEY.** Pocket Medical Dictionary. Cloth, .75

**TREVES AND LANG.** German-English Medical Dictionary.  
Half Calf, \$3.25

## DIET AND FOOD.

**ALLEN.** Proteids and Albuminous Principles. An analytical Study of Food Products. 2d Edition. \$4.50

**BURNETT.** Foods and Dietaries. A Manual of Clinical Dietetics, with Diet Lists for Various Diseases, etc. 3d Ed. \$1.50

**DAVIS.** Dietotherapy. Food in Health and Disease. With Tables of Dietaries, Relative Value of Foods, etc. See *Cohen, Physiologic Therapeutics*, page 17.

**GREENISH.** Microscopical Examination of Foods and Drugs. Illustrated. \$3.50

**HAIG.** Diet and Food. Considered in Relation to Strength and Power of Endurance. 4th Edition. \$1.00

**LEFFMANN.** Select Methods in Food Analysis. 2d Edition. Illustrated. In Press.

**EAR (see also Throat and Nose).**

- BURNETT.** Hearing and How to Keep It. Illustrated. .40  
**HOVELL.** Diseases of the Ear and Naso-Pharynx. Including Anatomy and Physiology of the Organ, together with the Treatment of the Affections of the Nose and Pharynx which Conduce to Aural Disease. 128 Illustrations. 2d Ed. \$5.50  
**PRITCHARD.** Diseases of the Ear. 4th Edition, Enlarged. Many Illustrations and Formulae. *In Press.*

**ELECTRICITY.**

- BIGELOW.** Plain Talks on Medical Electricity and Batteries. With a Therapeutic Index and a Glossary. 43 Illustrations. 2d Edition. \$1.00  
**HEDLEY.** Therapeutic Electricity and Practical Muscle Testing. 99 Illustrations. \$2.50  
**JACOBY.** Electrotherapy. 2 volumes. Illustrated. *See Cohen, Physiologic Therapeutics, page 17.*  
**JONES.** Medical Electricity. 3d Edition. 117 Illus. \$3.00

**EYE.**

- A Special Circular of Books on the Eye sent free upon application.*  
**DARIER.** Ocular Therapeutics. *Just Ready.* \$3.00  
**DONDERS.** The Nature and Consequences of Anomalies of Refraction. With Portrait and Illus. Half Morocco, \$1.25  
**FICK.** Diseases of the Eye and Ophthalmoscopy. Translated by A. B. HALM, M.D. 157 Illus. Cloth, \$4.50; Sheep, \$5.50  
**GOULD AND PYLE.** Compend of Diseases of the Eye and Refraction. Including Treatment and Operations, and a Section on Local Therapeutics. With Formulae, Useful Tables, a Glossary, and 111 Illus., several of which are in colors. 2d Edition, Revised. Cloth, \$1.00; Interleaved, \$1.25  
**GOWERS.** Ophthalmoscopy. 4th Edition. Illus. *In Press.*  
**GREEFF.** The Microscopic Examination of the Eye. Illustrated. \$1.25  
**HARLAN.** Eyesight, and How to Care for It. Illus. .40  
**HARTRIDGE.** On the Ophthalmoscope. 4th Edition. With 4 Colored Plates and 68 Wood-cuts. \$1.50  
**HARTRIDGE.** Refraction. 104 Illustrations and Test Types. 12th Edition, Enlarged. \$1.50  
**HANSELL AND SWEET.** Treatise on Diseases of the Eye. With 253 Illustrations. \$4.00  
**HANSELL AND REBER.** Muscular Anomalies of the Eye. Illustrated. \$1.50  
**HENDERSON.** Notes on the Eye. 138 Illus. 3d Ed. \$1.50  
**JENNINGS.** Manual of Ophthalmoscopy. 95 Illustrations and 1 Colored Plate. \$1.50  
**MORTON.** Refraction of the Eye. Its Diagnosis and the Correction of its Errors. 7th Edition. *In Press*  
**OHLEMANN.** Ocular Therapeutics. Authorised Translation, and Edited by Dr. CHARLES A. OLIVER. \$1.75

- PARSONS. Elementary Ophthalmic Optics. With Diagrammatic Illustrations. \$2.00
- PHILLIPS. Spectacles and Eyeglasses. Their Prescription and Adjustment. 3d Edition. 52 Illustrations. \$1.00
- SWANZY. Diseases of the Eye and Their Treatment. 8th Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 168 Illustrations. 1 Plain Plate and a Zephyr Test Card. \$2.50
- THORINGTON. Retinoscopy. 4th Edition, Carefully Revised. Illustrated. \$1.00
- THORINGTON. Refraction and How to Refract. 200 Illustrations, 13 of which are colored. 2d Edition. \$1.50
- WALKER. Student's Aid in Ophthalmology. Colored Plate and 40 other Illustrations and a Glossary. \$1.50
- WORTH. Squint: Its Causes, Pathology, Treatment. \$2.00
- WRIGHT. Ophthalmology. 2d Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 117 Illustrations and a Glossary. \$3.00

### FEVERS.

- GOODALL AND WASHBOURN. Fevers and Their Treatment. Illustrated. \$3.00
- WILCOX. Fever Nursing. *Just Ready.* \$1.00

### GYNECOLOGY.

- BYFORD (H. T.). Manual of Gynecology. 3d Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 363 Illustrations. \$3.00; Sheep, \$3.50
- FULLERTON. Surgical Nursing. 3d Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 69 Illustrations. \$1.00
- GALABIN. Diseases of Women. Sixth Edition. By ALFRED LEWIS GALABIN, M.A., M.D., F.R.C.P. 6th Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 284 Illustrations. Octavo. Cloth, \$5.00
- LEWERS. Diseases of Women. 146 Illus. 5th Ed. \$2.50
- MONTGOMERY. Practical Gynecology. A Complete Systematic Text-Book. 2d Edition, Revised and Enlarged. With 539 Illus. Cloth, \$5.00; Leather, \$6.00
- ROBERTS. Gynecological Pathology. With 127 Full-page Plates containing 151 Figures. \$6.00
- WELLS. Compend of Gynecology. 145 Illustrations. 3d Edition, Revised and Enlarged. \$1.00; Interleaved, \$1.25

### HEART.

- THORNE. The Schott Methods of the Treatment of Chronic Heart Disease. Fourth Edition. Illustrated. \$2.00

### HISTOLOGY.

- CUSHING. Compend of Histology. By H. H. CUSHING, M.D., Demonstrator of Histology, Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia. Illus. *Nearly Ready.* \$1.00; Interleaved, \$1.25
- LAZARUS-BARLOW. Pathological Anatomy and Histology. Illustrated. \$6.50

- STIRLING.** Outlines of Practical Histology. 368 Illustrations. 2d Edition, Revised and Enlarged. With new Illus. \$2.00
- STÖHR.** Histology and Microscopical Anatomy. Edited by A. SCHAPER, M.D., University of Breslau, formerly Demonstrator of Histology, Harvard Medical School. Fifth American from 10th German Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 353 Illustrations. \$3.00

### HYGIENE.

- CANFIELD.** Hygiene of the Sick-Room. A Book for Nurses and Others. Being a Brief Consideration of Asepsis, Antisepsis, Disinfection, Bacteriology, Immunity, Heating, Ventilation, etc. \$1.25
- CONN.** Agricultural Bacteriology. Illustrated. \$2.50
- CONN.** Bacteriology of Milk and Milk Products. Illus. \$1.25
- COPLIN.** Practical Hygiene. A Complete American Text-Book. 138 Illustrations. New Edition. *Preparing.*
- HARTSHORNE.** Our Homes. Illustrated. .40
- KENWOOD.** Public Health Laboratory Work. 116 Illustrations and 3 Plates. \$2.00
- LEFFMANN.** Select Methods in Food Analysis. 53 Illustrations and 4 Plates. 2d Edition. *In Press.*
- LEFFMANN.** Examination of Water for Sanitary and Technical Purposes. 5th Edition. Illustrated. *Just Ready.* \$1.25
- LEFFMANN.** Analysis of Milk and Milk Products. Illustrated. Second Edition. \$1.25
- LINCOLN.** School and Industrial Hygiene. .40
- McFARLAND.** Prophylaxis and Personal Hygiene. Care of the Sick. *See Cohen, Physiologic Therapeutics, page 17.*
- NOTTER.** The Theory and Practice of Hygiene. 15 Plates and 138 other Illustrations. 8vo. 2d Edition. \$7.00
- PARKES AND KENWOOD.** Hygiene and Public Health. 2d Edition, Enlarged. Illustrated. \$3.00
- ROSENAU.** Disinfection and Disinfectants. Illus. \$2.00
- STARR.** The Hygiene of the Nursery. Including the General Regimen and Feeding of Infants and Children, and the Domestic Management of the Ordinary Emergencies of Early Life, Massage, etc. 6th Edition. 25 Illustrations. \$1.00
- STEVENSON AND MURPHY.** A Treatise on Hygiene. By Various Authors. In three octavo volumes. Illustrated. Vol. I, \$6.00; Vol. II, \$6.00; Vol. III, \$5.00
- THRESH.** Water and Water Supplies. 3d Edition. \$2.00
- THRESH.** Examination of Water and Water Supplies. *In Press.*
- WILSON.** Handbook of Hygiene and Sanitary Science. With Illustrations. 8th Edition. \$3.00
- WEYL.** Sanitary Relations of the Coal-Tar Colors. Authorised Translation by HENRY LEFFMANN, M.D., PH.D. \$1.25

### LUNGS AND PLEURÆ.

- KNOPE.** Pulmonary Tuberculosis. Its Modern Prophylaxis and Treatment in Special Institutions and at Home. Illus. \$3.00
- STELL.** Physical Signs of Pulmonary Disease. Illus. \$1.25

## MASSAGE. PHYSICAL EXERCISE.

- GULICK. Physical Education by Muscular Exercise. Illustrated. *Just Ready.* .75
- OSTROM. Massage and the Original Swedish Movements. Their Application to Various Diseases of the Body. A Manual for Students, Nurses, and Physicians. Fifth Edition, Enlarged. 115 Illustrations, many of which are original. \$1.00
- MITCHELL AND GULICK. Mechanotherapy. Exercise, Orthopedics, Massage, Ocular Corrections, etc. Illustrated. *See Cohen, Physiologic Therapeutics, below.* *Just Ready.*
- TREVES. Physical Education. Its Value, Methods, etc. .75

## MATERIA MEDICA AND THERAPEUTICS.

- BRACKEN. Outlines of Materia Medica and Pharmacology. \$2.75
- COBLENTZ. The Newer Remedies. Including their Synonyms, Sources, Methods of Preparation, Tests, Solubilities, Doses, etc. 3d Edition, Enlarged and Revised. \$1.00
- COHEN. Physiologic Therapeutics. Methods other than Drug-Giving useful in the Prevention of Disease and in the Treatment of the Sick. Mechanotherapy, Mental Therapeutics, Suggestion, Electrotherapy, Climatology, Hydrotherapy, Pneumatotherapy, Prophylaxis, Dietetics, Organotherapy, Phototherapy, Mineral Waters, Baths, etc. 11 volumes, 8vo. Illustrated. (*Subscription.*) Cloth, \$27.50;  $\frac{1}{2}$  Mor., \$38.50  
*Special Descriptive Circular will be sent upon application.*
- GORGAS. Dental Medicine. A Manual of Materia Medica and Therapeutics. 7th Edition, Revised. \$4.00
- GROFF. Materia Medica for Nurses, with Questions for Self-Examination. 2d Edition, Revised and Improved. \$1.25
- HELLER. Essentials of Materia Medica, Pharmacy, and Prescription Writing. \$1.50
- HEWLETT. Serum-Therapy, Vaccines, etc. \$1.75
- POTTER. Handbook of Materia Medica, Pharmacy, and Therapeutics, including the Action of Medicines, Special Therapeutics, Pharmacology, etc., including over 600 Prescriptions and Formulæ. 9th Edition, Revised and Enlarged. With Thumb Index in each copy. Cloth, \$5.00; Sheep, \$6.00
- POTTER. Compend of Materia Medica, Therapeutics, and Prescription Writing, with Special Reference to the Physiological Action of Drugs. 6th Edition. \$1.00; Interleaved, \$1.25
- MURRAY. Rough Notes on Remedies. 4th Edition. \$1.25
- SAYRE. Organic Materia Medica and Pharmacognosy. An Introduction to the Study of the Vegetable Kingdom and the Vegetable and Animal Drugs. Comprising the Botanical and Physical Characteristics, Source, Constituents, and Pharmacopœial Preparations, Insects Injurious to Drugs, and Pharmacæ Botany. With sections on Histology and Microtechnique, by W. C. Stevens. 374 Illustrations, many of which are original. 3d Edition. *In Press.*
- SCOVILLE. The Art of Compounding. 3d Edition, Revised and Enlarged. *Just Ready.* \$2.50

- TAVERA.** Medicinal Plants of the Philippines. \$2.00  
**WHITE AND WILCOX.** *Materia Medica, Pharmacy, Pharmacology, and Therapeutics.* 5th American Edition, Revised by **RYNOLD W. WILCOX, M.A., M.D., LL.D.,** Professor of Clinical Medicine and Therapeutics at the New York Post-Graduate Medical School. Cloth, \$3.00; Leather, \$3.50

### MEDICAL JURISPRUDENCE AND TOXICOLOGY.

- REESE.** *Medical Jurisprudence and Toxicology.* A Text-Book for Medical and Legal Practitioners and Students. 6th Edition. Revised by **HENRY LEFFMANN, M.D.** Cloth, \$3.00; Leather, \$3.50

"To the student of medical jurisprudence and toxicology it is invaluable, as it is concise, clear, and thorough in every respect."  
*—The American Journal of the Medical Sciences.*

- TANNER.** *Memoranda of Poisons. Their Antidotes and Tests.* 9th Edition, by **DR. HENRY LEFFMANN.** .75

### MICROSCOPY.

- CARPENTER.** *The Microscope and Its Revelations.* 8th Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 817 Illustrations and 23 Plates. Cloth, \$8.00; Half Morocco, \$9.00  
**GREENISH.** *Microscopical Examination of Foods and Drugs.* Illustrated. \$3.50  
**LEE.** *The Microtome's Vade Mecum. A Handbook of Methods of Microscopical Anatomy.* 887 Articles. 5th Edition, Enlarged. \$4.00  
**ORTEL.** *Medical Microscopy. A Guide to Diagnosis, Elementary Laboratory Methods and Microscopic Technic.* 131 Illustrations. \$2.00  
**REEVES.** *Medical Microscopy, including Chapters on Bacteriology, Neoplasms, Urinary Examination, etc.* Numerous Illustrations, some of which are printed in colors. \$2.50  
**WETHERED.** *Medical Microscopy. A Guide to the Use of the Microscope in Practical Medicine.* 100 Illustrations. \$2.00

### MISCELLANEOUS.

- BERRY.** *Diseases of Thyroid Gland.* Illustrated. \$4.00  
**BUXTON.** *Anesthetics.* Illustrated. 3d Edition. \$1.50  
**COHEN.** *Organotherapy.* See *Cohen, Physiologic Therapeutics,* page 17.  
**FRENKEL.** *Tabetic Ataxia.* Illustrated. \$3.00  
**GOULD.** *Borderland Studies. Miscellaneous Essays.* 12mo. \$2.00  
**GOULD.** *Biographic Clinics. Volume I. The Origin of the Ill-Health of DeQuincy, Carlyle, Darwin, Huxley, and Browning.* \$1.00  
**GOULD.** *Biographic Clinics. Volume II. The Origin of the Ill-Health of Wagner, Parkman, Mrs. Carlisle, Spencer, Whittier, Ossoli, George Eliot, and Nietzsche.* \$1.00

- GREENE. Medical Examination for Life Insurance. Illus. With colored and other Engravings. 2d Edition. *In Press.*
- HAIG. Causation of Disease by Uric Acid. The Pathology of High Arterial Tension, Headache, Epilepsy, Gout, Rheumatism, Diabetes, Bright's Disease, etc. 6th Edition. \$3.50
- HENRY. A Practical Treatise on Anemia. Half Cloth, .50
- OSGOOD. The Winter and Its Dangers. .40
- OSLER. Essays and Addresses. *In Press.*
- PACKARD. Sea Air and Sea Bathing. .40
- RICHARDSON. Long Life and How to Reach It. .40
- ST. CLAIR. Compend of Medical Latin. 2d Edition. *In Press.*
- SCHEUBE. Diseases of Warm Countries. Illustrated. \$8.00
- TISSIER. Pneumotherapy, Aerotherapy, Inhalation Methods. *See Cohen, Physiologic Therapeutics, page 17.*
- TURNBULL. Artificial Anesthesia. 4th Ed. Illus. \$2.50
- WARDEN. The Paris Medical School. Paper, .75
- WEBER AND HINSDALE. Climatology and Health Resorts. Including Mineral Springs. 2 vols. Illustrated with Colored Maps. *See Cohen, Physiologic Therapeutics, page 17.*
- WILSON. The Summer and Its Diseases. .40
- WINTERNITZ. Hydrotherapy, Thermotherapy, Phototherapy, Mineral Waters, Baths, etc. Illustrated. *See Cohen, Physiologic Therapeutics, page 17.*

## NERVOUS DISEASES.

- DERCUM. Rest, Suggestion, Mental Therapeutics. *See Cohen, Physiologic Therapeutics, page 17.*
- GORDINIER. The Gross and Minute Anatomy of the Central Nervous System. With 271 original colored and other Illustrations. Cloth, \$6.00; Sheep, \$7.00
- GOWERS. Syphilis and the Nervous System. \$1.00
- GOWERS. Manual of Diseases of the Nervous System. A Complete Text-Book. Revised, Enlarged, and in many parts Rewritten. With many new Illustrations. Two volumes.
- Vol. I. Diseases of the Nerves and Spinal Cord. 3d Edition, Enlarged. Cloth, \$4.00; Sheep, \$5.00
- Vol. II. Diseases of the Brain and Cranial Nerves; General and Functional Disease. 2d Ed. Cloth, \$4.00; Sheep, \$5.00
- GOWERS. Epilepsy and Other Chronic Convulsive Diseases. 2d Edition. \$3.00
- GOWERS. Clinical Lectures. Illustrated. Second Series. *Just Ready.* \$2.00
- HORSLEY. The Brain and Spinal Cord, the Structure and Functions of. Numerous Illustrations. \$2.50
- ORMEROD. Diseases of the Nervous System. 66 Wood Engravings. \$1.00
- PERSHING. Diagnosis of Nervous and Mental Diseases. Illustrated. \$1.25
- PRESTON. Hysteria and Certain Allied Conditions. Their Nature and Treatment. Illustrated. \$2.00
- WOOD. Brain Work and Overwork. .40

### NURSING (see also Massage).

*Special Catalogue of Books for Nurses sent free upon application.*

- CANFIELD. Hygiene of the Sick-Room. A Book for Nurses and Others. Being a Brief Consideration of Asepsis, Antisepsis, Disinfection, Bacteriology, Immunity, Heating and Ventilation, and Kindred Subjects for the Use of Nurses and Other Intelligent Women. \$1.25
- CUFF. Lectures to Nurses on Medicine. 4th Edition. \$1.25
- DAVIS. Bandaging. Its Principles and Practice. 163 Original Illustrations. \$1.50
- FULLERTON. Obstetric Nursing. 6th Ed. 45 Illus. \$1.00
- FULLERTON. Surgical Nursing. 3d Ed. 60 Illus. \$1.00
- GROFF. Materia Medica for Nurses. With Questions for Self-Examination. 2d Edition, Revised and Improved. \$1.25
- HADLEY. General, Medical, and Surgical Nursing. A very Complete Manual, Including Sick-room Cookery. \$1.25
- HUMPEREY. A Manual for Nurses. Including General Anatomy and Physiology, Management of the Sick-room, etc. 24th Edition. 79 Illustrations. \$1.00
- STARR. The Hygiene of the Nursery. Including the General Regimen and Feeding of Infants and Children, and the Domestic Management of the Ordinary Emergencies of Early Life, Massage, etc. 6th Edition. 25 Illustrations. \$1.00
- TEMPERATURE AND CLINICAL CHARTS. See page 25.
- VOSWINKEL. Surgical Nursing. Second Edition, Enlarged. 112 Illustrations. \$1.00
- WILCOX. Fever Nursing. *Just Ready.* \$1.00

### OBSTETRICS.

- EDGAR. Text-Book of Obstetrics. By J. CLIFFORD EDGAR, M.D., Professor of Obstetrics and Clinical Midwifery, Medical Department of Cornell University, New York City, etc. 1221 Illustrations. *Just Ready.* Cloth, \$6.00; Sheep, \$7.00
- FULLERTON. Obstetric Nursing. 6th Ed. Illus. \$1.00
- LANDIS. Compend of Obstetrics. 7th Edition, Revised by Wm. H. WELLS, M.D., Demonstrator of Clinical Obstetrics, Jefferson Medical College. 52 Illus. \$1.00; Interleaved, \$1.25
- WINCKEL. Text-Book of Obstetrics, Including the Pathology and Therapeutics of the Puerperal State. Illustrated. \$5.00

### PATHOLOGY.

- DANIEL. Laboratory Exercises in Tropical Medicine. *Just Ready.* \$4.00
- BLACKBURN. Autopsies. A Manual of Autopsies Designed for the Use of Hospitals for the Insane and other Public Institutions. Ten full-page Plates and other Illustrations. \$1.25
- COPLIN. Manual of Pathology. Including Bacteriology, Technique of Post-Mortems, Methods of Pathologic Research, etc. 330 Illustrations, 7 Colored Plates. 3d Edition. \$3.50

- DA COSTA.** Clinical Hematology. A Practical Guide to the Examination of the Blood. Six Colored Plates and 48 Illustrations. Cloth, \$5.00; Sheep, \$6.00
- LAZARUS-BARLOW.** Pathological Anatomy. With 7 Colored Plates and 171 other Illustrations. \$6.50
- LAZARUS-BARLOW.** General or Experimental Pathology. Illustrated. 2d Edition. *Just Ready.* \$6.50
- MACLEOD.** The Pathology of the Skin. Colored and other Illustrations. \$5.00
- MARTIN.** Manual of Pathology. Illustrated. *Just Ready.* \$4.00
- ROBERTS.** Gynecological Pathology. Illustrated. \$6.00
- THAYER.** Compend of Special Pathology. Illustrated. \$1.00; Interleaved, \$1.25
- THAYER.** Manual of General and Special Pathology. 131 Illustrations. 711 pages. 2d Edition. Full Limp Morocco, Gilt Edges, Round Corners. \$2.50
- VIRCHOW.** Post-Mortem Examinations. 3d Edition. .75
- WHITACRE.** Laboratory Text-Book of Pathology. With 121 Illustrations. \$1.50

## PHARMACY.

*Special Catalogue of Books on Pharmacy sent free upon application.*

- COBLENTZ.** Manual of Pharmacy. A Complete Text-Book by the Professor in the New York College of Pharmacy. 2d Ed., Revised and Enlarged. 437 Illus. Cloth, \$3.50; Sheep, \$4.50
- COBLENTZ.** Volumetric Analysis. Illustrated. \$1.25
- BEASLEY.** Book of 3100 Prescriptions. Collected from the Practice of the Most Eminent Physicians and Surgeons—English, French, and American. A Compendious History of the Materia Medica, Lists of the Doses of all the Official and Established Preparations, an Index of Diseases and their Remedies. 7th Edition. \$2.00
- BEASLEY.** Druggists' General Receipt Book. Comprising a Copious Veterinary Formulary, Recipes in Patent and Proprietary Medicines, Druggists' Nostrums, etc.; Perfumery and Cosmetics, Beverages, Dietetic Articles and Condiments, Trade Chemicals, Scientific Processes, and many Useful Tables. 10th Edition. \$2.00
- BEASLEY.** Pharmaceutical Formulary. A Synopsis of the British, French, German, and United States Pharmacopœias. Comprising Standard and Approved Formulas for the Preparations and Compounds Employed in Medicine. 12th Ed. \$2.00
- GREENISH.** Microscopical Examination of Foods and Drugs. Illustrated. \$3.50
- ROBINSON.** Latin Grammar of Pharmacy and Medicine. 4th Edition. With elaborate Vocabularies. *Just Ready.* \$1.50
- SAYRE.** Organic Materia Medica and Pharmacognosy. An Introduction to the Study of the Vegetable Kingdom and the Vegetable and Animal Drugs. Comprising the Botanical and Physical Characteristics, Sources, Constituents, and Pharmacopœial Preparations, Insects Injurious to Drugs, and Pharmacal Botany. With sections on Histology and Microtechnique, by W. C. STREYER. 374 Illustrations. Third Edition. *In Press.*

- SCOVILLE.** The Art of Compounding. Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged. *Just Ready.* Cloth, \$2.50
- STEWART.** Compend of Pharmacy. Based upon "Remington's Text-Book of Pharmacy." 5th Edition, Revised in Accordance with the U. S. Pharmacopoeia, 1890. Complete Tables of Metric and English Weights and Measures. \$1.00; Interleaved, \$1.25
- TAVERA.** Medicinal Plants of the Philippines. \$2.00
- UNITED STATES PHARMACOPŒIA.** 7th Decennial Revision. Cloth, \$2.50 (postpaid, \$2.77); Sheep, \$3.00 (postpaid, \$3.27); Interleaved, \$4.00 (postpaid, \$4.50); Printed on one side of page only, unbound, \$3.50 (postpaid, \$3.90).  
Select Tables from the U. S. P. Being Nine of the Most Important and Useful Tables, Printed on Separate Sheets. .25
- POTTER.** Handbook of Materia Medica, Pharmacy, and Therapeutics. 600 Prescriptions. 9th Edition. Cloth, \$5.00; Sheep, \$6.00

## PHYSIOLOGY.

- BIRCH.** Practical Physiology. An Elementary Class Book. 62 Illustrations. \$1.75
- BRUBAKER.** Text-Book of Physiology. Illus. *Nearly Ready.*
- BRUBAKER.** Compend of Physiology. 11th Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Illustrated. \$1.00; Interleaved, \$1.25
- JONES.** Outlines of Physiology. 96 Illustrations. \$1.50
- KIRKES.** Handbook of Physiology. 17th Authorized Edition. Revised, Rearranged, and Enlarged. By PROF. W. D. HALLIBURTON, of Kings College, London. 681 Illustrations, some of which are in colors. Cloth, \$3.00; Leather, \$3.75
- LANDOIS.** A Text-Book of Human Physiology. Including Histology and Microscopical Anatomy, with Special Reference to the Requirements of Practical Medicine. 5th American, translated and edited from the last German Edition by A. P. BRUBAKER, M.D., and A. A. EHRNER, M.D. *In Press.*
- STARLING.** Elements of Human Physiology. 100 Illus. \$1.00
- STIRLING.** Outlines of Practical Physiology. Including Chemical and Experimental Physiology, with Special Reference to Practical Medicine. 3d Edition. 289 Illustrations. \$2.00
- TYSON.** Cell Doctrine. Its History and Present State. \$1.50

## PRACTICE.

- COHEN.** Physiologic Therapeutics. The Treatment of Disease by Methods other than Drug-giving. *See page 17.*
- FAGGE.** Practice of Medicine. 4th Edition, by P. H. FRA-SMITH, M.D. 2 volumes. Vol. I, \$6.00; Vol. II, \$6.00
- FOWLER.** Dictionary of Practical Medicine. By various writers. An Encyclopedia of Medicine. Cloth, \$3.00; Half Morocco, \$4.00

**GOULD AND PYLE.** *Cyclopedia of Practical Medicine and Surgery.* A Concise Reference Handbook, with particular Reference to Diagnosis and Treatment. Edited by Drs. GOULD and PYLE, Assisted by 72 Special Contributors. Illustrated, one volume. Large Square Octavo, Uniform with "Gould's Illustrated Dictionary."

Sheep or Half Mor., \$10.00; with Thumb Index, \$11.00  
Half Russia, Thumb Index, \$12.00

*Complete descriptive circular free upon application.*

**GOULD AND PYLE'S** *Pocket Cyclopedia of Medicine and Surgery.* Based upon the above and Uniform with "Gould's Pocket Dictionary." Full Limp Leather, Gilt Edges, Round Corners, \$1.00; with Thumb Index, \$1.25.

**HUGHES.** *Compend of the Practice of Medicine.* 6th Edition, Revised and Enlarged.

Part I. Continued, Eruptive, and Periodical Fevers, Disease of the Stomach, Intestines, Peritoneum, Biliary Passages, Liver, Kidneys, etc., and General Diseases, etc.

Part II. Diseases of the Respiratory System, Circulatory System, and Nervous System; Diseases of the Blood, etc.

Price of each part, \$1.00; Interleaved, \$1.25

Physician's Edition. In one volume, including the above two parts, a Section on Skin Diseases, and an Index. 6th Revised Edition. 625 pp. Full Morocco, Gilt Edge, \$2.25

**TAYLOR.** *Practice of Medicine.* 6th Edition. \$4.00

**TYSON.** *The Practice of Medicine.* By JAMES TYSON, M.A., Professor of Medicine in the University of Pennsylvania. Complete Systematic Text-book, with Special Reference to Diagnosis and Treatment. 3d Edition, Enlarged and Revised. Colored Plates and 125 other Illustrations.

Cloth, \$5.50; Leather, \$6.50

## STOMACH. INTESTINES.

**FENWICK.** *Cancer of the Stomach. Just Ready.* \$3.00

**HEMMETER.** *Diseases of the Stomach. Their Special Pathology, Diagnosis, and Treatment.* With Sections on Anatomy, Analysis of Stomach Contents, Dietetics, Surgery of the Stomach, etc. 2d Edition, Revised. With 15 Plates and 41 other Illustrations, a number of which are in colors.

Cloth, \$6.00; Sheep, \$7.00

**HEMMETER.** *Diseases of the Intestines. Their Special Pathology, Diagnosis, and Treatment.* With Sections on Anatomy and Physiology, Microscopic and Chemie Examination of Intestinal Contents, Secretions, Feces and Urine, Intestinal Bacteria and Parasites, Surgery of the Intestines, Dietetics, Diseases of the Rectum, etc. With Full-page Colored Plates and many other Original Illustrations. 2 volumes. Octavo.

Price of each volume, Cloth, \$5.00; Sheep, \$6.00

## SKIN.

**BULKLEY.** *The Skin in Health and Disease.* Illustrated. .40

**CROCKER.** *Diseases of the Skin. Their Description, Pathology, Diagnosis, and Treatment, with Special Reference to the Skin Eruptions of Children.* 3d Edition, Thoroughly Revised. With New Illustrations. Cloth, \$5.00; Sheep, \$6.00

**MacLEOD.** *The Pathology of the Skin.* Colored and other Illustrations. \$5.00

- SCHAMBERG.** Diseases of the Skin. 3d Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 106 Illustrations. Cloth, \$1.00; Interleaved, \$1.25
- VAN HARLINGEN.** On Skin Diseases. A Practical Manual of Diagnosis and Treatment, with Special Reference to Differential Diagnosis. 3d Edition, Revised and Enlarged. With Formulas and 60 Illustrations, some of which are printed in colors. \$2.75

## SURGERY AND SURGICAL DISEASES

(see also Urinary Organs).

- BERRY.** Diseases of the Thyroid Gland. Illustrated. \$4.00
- BERRY.** Surgical Diagnosis. *In Press.*
- BINNIE.** Operative Surgery. Illustrated. *Preparing.*
- BURRELL AND BLAKE.** Case Teaching in Surgery. *Just Ready.* .75
- BUTLIN.** Operative Surgery of Malignant Disease. 2d Edition. Illustrated. Octavo. \$4.50
- CASPER AND RICHTER.** Functional Kidney Diagnosis. \$1.50
- DAVIS.** Bandaging. Its Principles and Practice. 163 Original Illustrations. \$1.50
- DEAVER.** Surgical Anatomy. A Treatise on Human Anatomy in its Application to Medicine and Surgery. With about 500 very handsome full-page Illustrations Engraved from Original Drawings made by special Artists from Dissections prepared for the purpose. Three volumes. Royal Square Octavo. *By Subscription only. Now Ready.*  
Half Morocco or Sheep, \$30.00; Half Russia, \$33.00
- DEAVER.** Appendicitis: its Symptoms, Diagnosis, Pathology, Treatment, and Complications. Elaborately Illustrated with Colored Plates and other Illus. 3d Edition. *Nearly Ready*
- DOUGLAS.** Surgical Diseases of the Abdomen. Illustrated by 20 Full-page Plates. Cloth, \$7.00; Sheep, \$8.00
- DULLES.** What to do First in Accidents and Poisoning. 5th Edition. New Illustrations. \$1.00
- FULLERTON.** Surgical Nursing. 3d Ed. 69 Illus. \$1.00
- HAMILTON.** Lectures on Tumors. 3d Edition. \$1.25
- HEATH.** Minor Surgery and Bandaging. 12th Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 195 Illus., Formulas, Diet List, etc. \$1.50
- HEATH.** Clinical Lectures on Surgical Subjects. \$2.00
- HORWITZ.** Compend of Surgery and Bandaging. Including Minor Surgery, Amputations, Fractures, Dislocations, Surgical Diseases, etc., with Differential Diagnosis and Treatment. 5th Edition, very much Enlarged and Rearranged. 167 Illus., 98 Formulas. Cloth, \$1.00; Interleaved, \$1.25
- JACOBSON.** Operations of Surgery. 4th Ed., Enlarged. 550 Illus. Two volumes. Cloth, \$10.00; Leather, \$12.00
- KRAY.** Medical Treatment of Gall-Stones. \$1.25
- KEHR.** Gall-stone Disease. Translated by WILLIAM WOTKINS SYMOUR, M.D. \$2.50
- MAKINS.** Surgical Experiences in South Africa. 1899-1900. Illustrated. \$4.00
- MAYLARD.** Surgery of the Alimentary Canal. 97 Illustrations. 2d Edition, Revised. \$3.00

- MOULLIN.** Text-Book of Surgery. With Special Reference to Treatment. 3d American Edition. Revised and edited by JOHN B. HAMILTON, M.D., LL.D., Professor of the Principles of Surgery and Clinical Surgery, Rush Medical College, Chicago. 623 Illustrations, many of which are printed in colors. Cloth, \$6.00; Leather, \$7.00
- VOSWINKEL.** Surgical Nursing. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 111 Illustrations. \$1.00
- WALSHAM.** Manual of Practical Surgery. 8th Ed., Revised and Enlarged. 622 Engravings and 20 Skiagrams. 1277 pages. \$4.50

### TEMPERATURE CHARTS, ETC.

- GRIFFITH.** Graphic Clinical Chart for Recording Temperature, Respiration, Pulse, Day of Disease, Date, Age, Sex, Occupation, Name, etc. Printed in three colors. Sample copies free. Put up in loose packages of fifty, 50 cts. Price to Hospitals, 500 copies, \$4.00; 1000 copies, \$7.50.
- KEEN'S Clinical Charts.** Seven Outline Drawings of the Body on which may be marked the Course of Disease, Fractures, Operations, etc. Each Drawing may be had separately, twenty-five to pad, 25 cents.

### THROAT AND NOSE (see also Ear).

- COHEN.** The Throat and Voice. Illustrated. .40
- HALL.** Diseases of the Nose and Throat. 2d Edition, Enlarged. Two Colored Plates and 80 Illustrations. \$2.75
- HOLLOPETER.** Hay Fever. Its Successful Treatment. \$1.00
- KNIGHT.** Diseases of the Throat. A Manual for Students. Illustrated. *Just Ready.* \$3.00
- KYLE (J. J.).** Diseases of the Ear, Nose, and Throat. A Compend for Students. Illustrated. \$1.00; Interleaved, \$1.25
- McBRIDE.** Diseases of the Throat, Nose, and Ear. With Colored Illustrations from Original Drawings. 3d Ed. \$7.00
- POTTER.** Speech and its Defects. Considered Physiologically, Pathologically, and Remedially. \$1.00

### URINE AND URINARY ORGANS.

- CASPER AND RICHTER.** Functional Kidney Diagnosis. \$1.50
- HOLLAND.** The Urine, the Gastric Contents, the Common Poisons, and the Milk. Memoranda, Chemical and Microscopical, for Laboratory Use. Illustrated and Interleaved. 6th Edition. \$1.00
- KLEEN.** Diabetes and Glycosuria. \$2.50

- MEMMINGER.** *Diagnosis by the Urine.* 2d Edition. 24 Illustrations. \$1.00
- MORRIS.** *Renal Surgery, with Special Reference to Stone in the Kidney and Ureter and to the Surgical Treatment of Calculous Anuria.* Illustrated. \$2.00
- MOULLIN.** *Enlargement of the Prostate. Its Treatment and Radical Cure.* 3d Edition. Illustrated. *In Press.*
- MOULLIN.** *Inflammation of the Bladder and Urinary Fever.* Octavo. \$1.50
- TYSON.** *Bright's Disease and Diabetes. Including Articles on Ocular Manifestations by Prof. G. E. DE SCHWIMMER. Colored Plates and other Illustrations.* 2d Edition. *In Press.*
- TYSON.** *Guide to Examination of the Urine. For the Use of Physicians and Students. With Colored Plate and Numerous Illustrations engraved on wood.* 10th Edition, Revised, Enlarged, and partly Rewritten. With New Illustrations. *Just Ready.* \$1.50
- VAN NUYS.** *Chemical Analysis of Urine.* 39 Illus. \$1.00

### VENEREAL DISEASES.

- GOWERS.** *Syphilis and the Nervous System.* \$1.00
- STURGIS AND CABOT.** *Student's Manual of Venereal Diseases.* 7th Revised and Enlarged Edition. 12mo \$1.25

### VETERINARY.

- BALLOU.** *Equine Anatomy and Physiology.* 29 Graphic Illustrations. \$1.00; Interleaved, \$1.25

**JACOBSON.** *The Operations of Surgery.* By  
W. H. A. JACOBSON, F.R.C.S., Surgeon to  
Guy's Hospital; Consulting Surgeon Royal  
Hospital for Children and Women; and F.  
J. STEWARD, F.R.C.S., Assistant Surgeon  
Guy's Hospital. Fourth Edition—Revised,  
Enlarged, and Improved. 550 Illustrations.  
Two Volumes, Octavo, 1524 pages.

Cloth, \$10.00; Sheep, \$12.00

"The important anatomical points are clearly set forth, the conditions indicating or contraindicating operative interference are given, the details of the operations themselves are brought forward prominently, and frequently the after-treatment is considered. Herein is one of the strong points of the book."—*New York Medical Journal.*

"We know of no series of books issued by any house that so fully meets our approval as these ? Quiz-Compendes?. They are well arranged, full and concise, and are really the best line of text-books that could be found for either student or practitioner."  
—*Southern Clinic.*

## BLAKISTON'S ?QUIZ-COMPENDS?

The Best Series of Manuals for the Use of Students.

Price of each, Cloth, \$1.00. Interleaved, for taking Notes, \$1.25

These Compendes are based on the most popular text-books and the lectures of prominent professors, and are kept constantly revised, so that they may thoroughly represent the present state of the subjects upon which they treat. The authors have had large experience as Quiz-Masters and attaches of colleges, and are well acquainted with the wants of students. They are arranged in the most approved form, thorough and concise, containing nearly 1000 illustrations and lithograph plates, inserted wherever they could be used to advantage. Can be used by students of any college. They contain information nowhere else collected in such a condensed, practical shape.

POTTER. HUMAN ANATOMY. Seventh Edition. 138 Illustrations and 16 Plates of Nerves and Arteries.

HUGHES. PRACTICE OF MEDICINE. Part I. Sixth Edition, Enlarged and Improved.

HUGHES. PRACTICE OF MEDICINE. Part II. Sixth Edition, Revised and Improved.

BRUBAKER. PHYSIOLOGY. Eleventh Edition. Illus.

LANDIS. OBSTETRICS. Seventh Edition. 52 Illus.

POTTER. MATERIA MEDICA, THERAPEUTICS, AND PRESCRIPTION WRITING. Sixth Revised Edition.

WELLS. GYNECOLOGY. Third Edition. 145 Illus.

GOULD AND PYLE. DISEASES OF THE EYE. Second Edition. Refraction, Treatment, Surgery, etc. 109 Illus.

HORWITZ. SURGERY. Including Minor Surgery, Bandaging, Surgical Diseases, Differential Diagnosis and Treatment. Fifth Edition. With 98 Formulas and 71 Illustrations.

LEFFMANN. MEDICAL CHEMISTRY. Fourth Edition. Including Urinalysis, Animal Chemistry, Chemistry of Milk, Blood, Tissues, the Secretions, etc.

STEWART. PHARMACY. Fifth Edition. Based upon Prof. Remington's Text-Book of Pharmacy.

BALLOU. EQUINE ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY. 29 graphic Illustrations.

WARREN. DENTAL PATHOLOGY AND DENTAL MEDICINE. Fourth Edition, Illustrated.

HATFIELD. DISEASES OF CHILDREN. 3d Edition.

ST. CLAIR. Medical Latin. 2d Edition. *In Press.*

SCHAMBERG. DISEASES OF THE SKIN. Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 106 Illustrations.

CUSHING. HISTOLOGY. Illustrated. *In Press.*

THAYER. SPECIAL PATHOLOGY. 34 Illustrations.

KYLE. DISEASES OF THE EAR, NOSE, AND THROAT. 85 Illustrations.

**DA COSTA**

---

## **Clinical Hematology**

---

**A Practical Guide to the Examination of the Blood by Clinical Methods. With Reference to the Diagnosis of Disease. With Colored Illustrations. Cloth, \$5.00**

**\*\*A new, thorough, systematic, and comprehensive work, its purpose being, first, to show how to examine the blood, and second, how to diagnose from such examination diseases of the blood itself and general diseases. The author's aim has been to cover not alone the field of original research, but to supply a book for the student, the hospital physician and the general practitioner. It will be found wanting in none of these respects.**

---

**THAYER**

---

## **Manual of Pathology**

---

**GENERAL AND SPECIAL**

**Second Edition. 131 Illustrations. 711 Pages.  
12mo. Full Limp Morocco, Gilt Edges,  
Round Corners, \$2.50.**

**This book shows evidence of clinical as well as pathological knowledge. It is a practical, concise, up-to date manual by a teacher of experience.**

# **The Pocket Cyclopedia of Medicine and Surgery**

**Full Limp Leather, Round Corners, Gilt Edges, \$1.00  
With Thumb Index, \$1.25**

*Uniform with "Gould's Pocket Dictionary"*

A concise practical volume of nearly 600 pages, containing a vast amount of information on all medical subjects, including Diagnosis and Treatment of Disease, with Formulas and Prescriptions, Emergencies, Poisons, Drugs and Their Uses, Nursing, Surgical Procedures, Dose List in both English and Metric Systems, etc.

**By Drs. Gould and Pyle**

Based upon their large "Cyclopedia of Medicine and Surgery." ❖ ❖ ❖

\*.\* This is a new book which will prove of the greatest value to students. It is to the broad field of general medical information what "Gould's Pocket Dictionary" is to the more special one of definition and pronunciation of words. The articles are concise but thorough, and arranged in shape for quick reference. In no other book can be found so much exact detailed knowledge so conveniently classified, so evenly distributed, so methodically grouped. It is *Multum in Parvo*. **Sample Pages Free.**

A NEW EDITION

## CROCKER ON THE SKIN

The Diseases of the Skin. Their Description, Pathology, Diagnosis, and Treatment, with Special Reference to the Skin Eruptions of Children. By H. RADCLIFFE CROCKER, M.D., Physician to the Department of Skin Diseases, University College Hospital, London. With new Illustrations.

Third Edition, Rewritten and Enlarged

OCTAVO. JUST READY; CLOTH, \$5.00

\* \* \* This new edition will easily hold the high position given the previous printings. The author is a member of American, English, French, German, and Italian Dermatological Societies, and a recognized authority the world over.

## STURGIS—MANUAL OF VENEREAL DISEASES

By F. R. STURGIS, M.D., Sometime Clinical Professor of Venereal Diseases in the Medical Department of the University of the City of New York. Seventh Edition, Revised and in Part Rewritten by the Author and FOLLEN CABOT, M.D., Instructor in Genito-Urinary and Venereal Diseases in the Cornell University Medical College. 12mo. 216 pages. Cloth, \$1.25

\* \* \* This manual was originally written for students' use, and is as concise and as practical as possible. It presents a careful, condensed description of the commoner forms of venereal diseases which occur in the practice of the general physician, together with the most approved remedies.

## **FOR THE DISSECTING ROOM**

---

### **Holden's Anatomy—Seventh Edition**

#### **320 Illustrations**

A Manual of the Dissections of the Human Body. By JOHN LANGTON, F.R.C.S. Carefully Revised by A. HEWSON, M.D., Demonstrator of Anatomy, Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia, etc. 320 Illustrations. Two small compact volumes. 12mo.

Vol. I. Scalp, Face, Orbit, Neck, Throat, Thorax, Upper Extremity. 435 pages. 153 Illustrations.

Oil Cloth, \$1.50

Vol. II. Abdomen, Perineum, Lower Extremity, Brain, Eye, Ear, Mammary Gland, Scrotum, Testes. 445 pages. 167 Illustrations.

Oil Cloth, \$1.50

*Each volume sold separately.*

---

### **Hughes and Keith—Dissections Illustrated**

A Manual of Dissections by ALFRED W. HUGHES, M.B., M.R.C.S. (Edin.), late Professor of Anatomy and Dean of Medical Faculty, King's College, London, etc., and ARTHUR KEITH, M.D., Joint Lecturer on Anatomy, London Hospital Medical College, etc. In three parts. With 527 Colored and other Illustrations.

I. Upper and Lower Extremity. 38 Plates, 116 other Illustrations. Cloth, \$3.00

II. Abdomen. Thorax. 4 Plates, 149 other Illustrations. Cloth, \$3.00

III. Head, Neck, and Central Nervous System. 16 Plates, 204 other Illustrations. Cloth, \$3.00

*Each volume sold separately.*

\* \* \* The student will find it of great advantage to have a "Dissector" to supplement his regular text-book on anatomy. These books meet all requirements, and as they can be purchased in parts as wanted, the outlay is small.

# EDGAR'S OBSTETRICS

A NEW TEXT-BOOK

1221 Illustrations

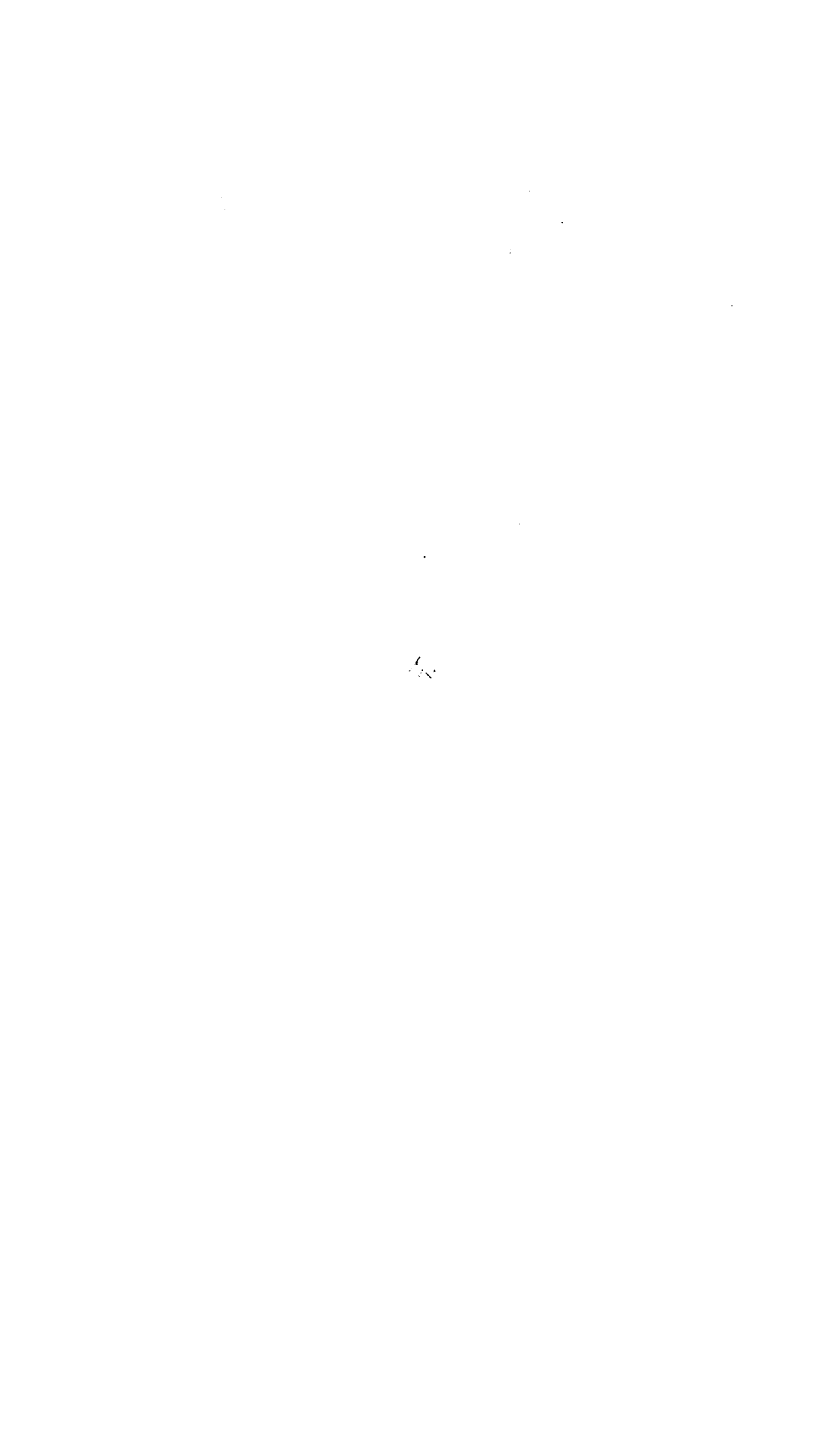
Edgar's Obstetrics excels all other works on this subject in completeness, in uniformity and consistency in arrangement, thoroughness and clearness in handling details, and in the number and usefulness of its illustrations. See page 20.

---

OCTAVO. CLOTH, \$6.00; SHEEP, \$7.00

---









4. 1. 7

4. 1. 7



THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY  
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

This book is under no circumstances to be taken from the Building

[illegible]



